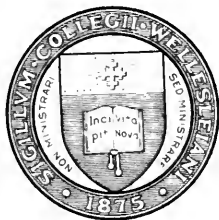


LIBRARY OF
WELLESLEY COLLEGE



GIFT OF
SWEET FUND

THE
HOLY BIBLE,

In the Authorized Version;

WITH NOTES AND INTRODUCTIONS

BY

CHR. WORDSWORTH, D.D.

BISHOP OF LINCOLN.

VOL. VI.

DANIEL, THE MINOR PROPHETS, AND INDEX.

London,
RIVINGTONS, WATERLOO PLACE;
HIGH STREET, | TRINITY STREET,
Oxford. | Cambridge.
1872.

NOTICE.

THE present Volume contains an INDEX to the Bishop of Lincoln's Commentary on the OLD TESTAMENT; an INDEX to the NEW TESTAMENT will be found at the end of the Fourth Part, or Second Volume, of that Work.

INTRODUCTION TO THE BOOK OF DANIEL.

DANIEL is the prophet of the latter days. His Book is the manual of the faithful in times of trial and trouble. He teaches men how to read aright the history of the past, and to interpret the great events which are now passing before their eyes, and prepares them for greater things to come, even to the end of Time. He also instructs them, by precept and example, how to live and move in the midst of the active business of public affairs, so as not to be distracted by it; but to cherish an inner, hidden, spiritual life, even in the thickest crowds of this world; and in its most stirring strifes and struggles to preserve calmness and quietness, and to hold communion with the Unseen; to remain steadfast and unmoved amid the shocks of political revolutions, and to have the windows of the heart ever open to the far-off peace and glory of the Jerusalem that is above¹, and, while still sojourning as exiles and captives upon earth, to have their conversation in heaven².

Happily for the present age, the shafts of a sceptical criticism, which a few years ago were discharged in a volley against the Book of Daniel, appear now to be almost spent. Its quiver seems to be empty. The attacks made upon this Book with much eagerness and activity have stirred up able champions³ of the Faith; and thus, by God's providence overruling evil for good, the assaults of Unbelief⁴ have been made the occasions and means of strengthening our belief in the Genuineness, Authenticity, and Inspiration of the Book of Daniel, and have secured to the Church those spiritual blessings which may be derived from a careful study of it.

The first of these benefits is this. Daniel is well characterized by S. Jerome⁵ as "*Omnium temporum conscius, et totius mundi polyhistor.*" His eye, illumined with Divine light, ranges over the outspread chart of universal history, and contemplates Eternity. The Book of Daniel (whose name itself, meaning *God is Judge*, was very significant of his office) reveals an Almighty Being as the Supreme Arbiter of the destinies of nations, and as exercising a Moral Government over their affairs, and as punishing them for their sins, and rewarding them for their virtues, and as silently and imperceptibly guiding and controlling all things—even in the darkest and most troubled times, when the cause of Truth might seem to some to be lost—to the manifestation of His own glory, to the trial and victory of His faithful servants, and to the accomplishment of His gracious purposes in the revelation of the Gospel to all nations, and in the full and final subjection of all things to the Universal Sovereignty of Christ.

It is shown in the Book of Daniel, that this Almighty Disposer and Ruler of all things is no other than the Lord God of Israel, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob; the God of Daniel and of all the Hebrew Prophets, in whom, as St. Peter declares⁶, the Spirit of Christ dwelt, and who prepared His way and foretold His sufferings, His kingdom, and glory. And therefore this Almighty Governor is no other than that God Who is worshipped by the Universal Church of Christ.

Daniel was a prince of the royal house of Judah⁷, and was taken from his home at Jerusalem in early life to Babylon; he was a captive and an exile there in the midst of a heathen Court in an idolatrous city. Seventeen years after his deportation, the City and Temple of Jerusalem were burnt with fire by the Chaldean armies, and many of the sacred vessels of gold and silver were taken from its Temple by Nebuchadnezzar, and were placed in the house of his god at Babylon. The Jewish

¹ Dan. vi. 10.

² Phil. iii. 20.

³ Such as *Hengstenberg* on the genuineness of Daniel, translated into English (Edinburgh, 1848), *Hävernick*, über Daniel (Hamburg, 1832), and the editions of Daniel by *Kliefoth* (Schwerin, 1862), *Kranichfeld* (Berlin, 1868), *Keil* (Leipzig, 1869), the Lectures of *Caspari* (Leipzig, 1869), and especially the Lectures of *Dr. Pusey* (2nd ed., 1863).

⁴ The principal objections that have been raised against the Book will be considered in the following notes, and need not be repeated here.

⁵ Ad Paulinum. Epist. 103.

⁶ 1 Pet. i. 11.

⁷ Dan. i. 3, 4.

Monarchy could no longer show any visible signs of existence; the Jewish people were scattered throughout the East. Babylon seemed to have triumphed over Sion; and the Chaldean gods—Bel, Nebo, and Merodach—to be more powerful than Jehovah. But man's midnight is God's noon. The King of Babylon, who had burnt Jerusalem, and had carried captive its king, its princes, its priests, and its people, and had adorned the house of his idols with the vessels of the Lord God of Israel, was made to bear witness to Jehovah, and to promote His glory and worship even by those very means which he had devised for the aggrandisement and adoration of himself.

He set up an image of gold, in self-deification¹, and summoned the rulers and nobles of his provinces to come and fall down and worship it. Jerusalem had been destroyed by God on account of its besetting sin—Idolatry. Nebuchadnezzar had been God's instrument in destroying it. That destruction was a merciful visitation; it did its appointed work. Whatever sins were committed by the Jewish nation after the Babylonish captivity, Idolatry was not one of them. We see a striking specimen of the healing influences of that captivity, in the refusal of the three Hebrew captives—Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego—to fall down and worship the golden image which Nebuchadnezzar the King had set up; although they knew that, on account of that refusal, they would be cast into the fiery furnace. The King of the world, the God of Israel, then rose up to judgment. He had seemed to have been conquered by the King and gods of Babylon; but, by making the fire to loose the bands of His faithful confessors, who had refused to worship any one but their own God, and who had therefore been cast into the furnace by the King of Babylon, while it slew the men who cast them into it, and by restraining the fire from scorching the garments of His servants and from singeing a hair of their heads, and by sending One like the Son of God² to walk with them in the midst of the fire, and by checking the rage of the infuriated King, the conqueror of Jerusalem and of all the surrounding nations, and by making him proclaim the Majesty of the Lord God of Israel to that vast assembled multitude, which he had convened to worship himself, Almighty God vindicated His own Omnipotence, and made "the fierceness of man turn to His own praise," and showed that He can and will protect His own faithful servants in the hottest fire of persecution, and will give to them the presence of Christ, and will make even the enemies of His Church, in the fiercest paroxysms of their fury, to become heralds of the Most High, and will convert those very things which they have set up for their own glorification, to be trophies of His triumphs, and to be monuments of His power.

The next evidence of God's moral attributes in punishing sin, and of His Divine Majesty and Omnipotence in ruling the World, was displayed in the person of Nebuchadnezzar himself.

Let us observe how this was effected.

If Nebuchadnezzar, in the hour of his pride, when walking in his royal palace and gazing on the magnificence of his capital, and exclaiming in vainglorious self-complacency, "Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty³?" had, without any previous notice, been suddenly bereft of reason, and been driven to herd with the beasts of the field, it could not have been known that this was a retributive act executed upon him for his pride by the One True God, the Lord God of Israel, the God of Daniel the prophet of Christ. The mental aberration of the King might then have been ascribed to some secondary physical cause, or to the envy of one of the gods of Babylon. But mark the process by which the true origin of this visitation was pointed out. God had previously sent a dream to Nebuchadnezzar which portended the punishment. The wise men of Babylon were summoned to the King's presence, but were not able to interpret it⁴. Then Daniel, the Hebrew captive, the prophet of the Lord God of Israel, was sent for, and he revealed to the King the meaning of the vision of the tree which he had seen⁵, with strong branches and lofty stem, and flourishing leaves and rich fruits. He interpreted the sentence of the Watcher pronounced against the tree: "Hew it down and destroy it, yet leave the stump in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field, and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the beasts of the field." Daniel unfolded to Nebuchadnezzar that this was a decree of the "Most High," and that it was intended to teach him, and others by him, that "the Most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever He will⁶." Daniel warned him of the coming doom, and exhorted him to escape it by repentance. But the King slighted that warning, and incurred the punishment predicted by the prophet of the Lord.

Thus, then, the judgment on Nebuchadnezzar for his pride was shown to have been executed by

¹ See note below, on iii. 1.

² iii. 25.

³ iv. 30.

⁴ iv. 18.

⁵ iv. 20—27.

⁶ iv. 23. 25.

the Lord God of Israel, the God of Daniel. It was displayed to be an act of the moral government of the Most High. And this was what Nebuchadnezzar himself publicly acknowledged, when he was brought by God's visitation to self-abasement and repentance, and was restored to his reason and his kingdom. Then he issued a royal edict to "all people, nations, and languages¹," and declared what Daniel had revealed to him²; and blessed the Most High, and praised and honoured Him that liveth for ever, and pronounced with his own lips the moral of the visitation on himself: "Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honour" (not Bel, Merodach, or Nebo, but) "the King of Heaven, all Whose works are truth, and His ways judgment: and those that walk in pride He is able to abase³."

Let us now proceed to remark the fuller development of the truth that all kingdoms of the world are subject to the sway of One Moral Governor, and that this Moral Governor is the God Who was adored by the Hebrew Nation, and Who is now worshipped by the Christian Church.

A great annual festival was celebrated in honour of the gods of Babylon. The city kept holiday. The King of Babylon, the youthful Belshazzar, invited "a thousand of his lords" to a banquet in his palace, and the monarch occupied a conspicuous place in their sight⁴. He ordered the sacred vessels of gold and silver, which had been taken from the Temple of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar, and were placed in the house of his god, to be brought forth and set before him; and, in sacrilegious mockery of the Majesty of Him to Whom they had been dedicated, and Whom he regarded as a conquered deity of a despised nation, he and his princes, his wives, and his concubines drank wine in those sacred vessels, and praised the gods of Babylon—"the gods⁵ of gold, of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone." "In the same hour came forth fingers of a man's hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaister of the wall of the King's palace; and the King saw the part of the hand that wrote⁶."

"Then the King's countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, so that the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against another."

These things were visible to the assembly of those thousand lords of Babylon at that royal banquet.

Belshazzar summoned the wise men of Babylon that they might interpret the writing, but they could not. Then the Queen (probably the Queen-Mother) came into the banqueting hall, and reminded Belshazzar of Daniel, who was sent for. The aged prophet of the Lord God of Israel did what none of the wise men of Babylon had been able to do; and thus he showed that the God of Israel, to Whom he ascribed all his own knowledge⁷, was wiser than all the diviners and gods of Babylon. He interpreted the writing on the wall. The truth of his interpretation was proved by the fulfilment of his words: "God hath numbered thy kingdom and finished it; thou art weighed in the balances and art found wanting; thy kingdom is divided and given to the Medes and Persians."

Those thousand lords, who saw and heard the venerable seer, now about ninety years of age, had come to do honour to the gods of Babylon, and had worshipped them, and had profaned the holy vessels of the Lord God of Israel; and they, with the King of Babylon, were made to be witnesses of the wisdom, righteousness, and power of Daniel's God, in the presence of those idols whom they worshipped, but who could not help them in their distress. The God of Israel was brought face to face into conflict with the gods of the heathen, and confounded them and their votaries; and thus an idolatrous festival, in which God's majesty had been insulted, was made an occasion for displaying His tremendous might and justice in the presence of the lords of Babylon, and for proclaiming Him to the Eastern World. He was then displayed to the Babylonians, and He is manifested to all in this history, as the Lord and Judge of Nations, and as holding in His hands a balance, and as weighing kingdoms therein⁸, and as numbering their days, and as dividing out their territory and transferring it from one dynasty to another by His sovereign will, and as using the festivals of their worldly pride, revelry, sacrilege, and idolatry as occasions for punishing them, and for vindicating Himself. These attributes are ascribed to Him by Daniel, and the fulfilment of Daniel's prophecies are pledges that Daniel's utterances are Divine oracles, and therefore unerringly true.

The kingdom of Babylon was taken from the royal race of Nebuchadnezzar, and was given to the Medes and Persians. Earthly dynasties are changed by God, but His kingdom is unchangeable.

¹ iv. 1.² iv. 18-27.³ iv. 37⁵ v. 3.⁶ v. 5, 6.⁴ v. 1: "He drank wine before the thousand."⁷ ii. 28.⁸ Cp. Isa. xl. 15.

His seed continues for ever. His faithful servants remain. This was exemplified in Daniel. He remained unmoved amid the ruin of empires. "He continued unto the first year of King Cyrus¹." He "prospered in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian²." How much is contained in these few simple words³! Monarchs are weighed in the balance and found wanting. The days of their kingdoms are numbered and brought to an end. The sand of their hour-glass is soon run out; but there is no change in that kingdom which is given to the saints of Him Who is the King of Kings and Lord of Lords. This truth was manifested, even in this world, in the history of Daniel. He was faithful to God, and was the prophet of Christ, and he, who in his youth had been brought to Babylon before the destruction of Jerusalem, lived under many successive reigns, amid the shifting scenes of Eastern politics, and through all the seventy years of the Jewish captivity predicted by Jeremiah⁴, and saw the transfer of the kingdom of Babylon to the Medes and Persians, and witnessed the fulfilment of the prophecy of Isaiah⁵, which had pointed out Cyrus the Persian as the restorer of the City of God.

The Medo-Persian princes envied the influence of Daniel, whom Darius the King had set over the 120 provinces of his kingdom, probably on account of his long experience, and tried political integrity, and supernatural wisdom displayed in the interpretation of the handwriting on the wall, and in his prophecy of the fate of Babylon, which Darius himself, and the nephew of Darius, Cyrus the Persian, had been God's instruments in fulfilling.

The Medo-Persian princes under Darius endeavoured to work the ruin of Daniel. They prevailed on the pride of Darius the King (who, according to the Medo-Persian creed, was regarded as a personification of deity), and induced him to issue a decree (which, coming from the Medo-Persian monarch, the representative of an unerring deity, was to be unchangeable) that prayer should be offered only to himself during thirty days, and that any one who made a petition to any other personage should be cast into the den of lions. Not one of those thirty days, they well knew, would Daniel allow to pass by without prayer to his God. As soon as he heard that the decree was signed he went to his chamber and prayed to God for protection, his windows being open to Jerusalem, then lying in ruins; "he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God as he did aforetime⁶."

The aged prophet of God was seized by his enemies, violently rushing into his chamber⁷, and was cast into the den of lions. But God shut the mouth of the lions, and Daniel passed the night among them unharmed. By the command of Darius he was taken out of the den, and his enemies were cast into it and were slain by them.

Remark now the progress of incidents tending to one and the same end. Nebuchadnezzar, the King of Babylon, who had designed to glorify himself, was led by the force of events to make a decree that none should speak evil against the God of the Hebrews⁸. But Darius the Mede, who was also betrayed into an act of self-deification, went a step farther. He was brought by strong conviction to issue a decree to all people, nations, and languages that "in every dominion of his kingdom men should tremble and fear before the God of Daniel: for He is the living God, and steadfast for ever, and His kingdom that which shall not be destroyed, and His dominion shall be even unto the end⁹."

Thus the malice of the enemies of God and of His servant was overruled by Him for the manifestation of His Divine attributes. The fire of the Chaldean furnace gave light to the truth and power of God. The lions of Darius were witnesses of God's faithfulness, might, mercy, and justice, and of His love to His faithful servant. Darius, the King of 120 provinces, the deified monarch of the East, even when he was assuming the Divine prerogative of exalting himself to be the sole object of prayer, was made to become a herald of God's power and glory to all "people, nations, and languages" in his vast dominions, and to enjoin universal reverence and homage to the God of Daniel; whose prophecies, let us ever remember, are directed to the Coming of Christ as their end, and to the future overthrow of all God's enemies, and to the full and final establishment of Christ's kingdom, which alone is universal and everlasting.

Here is a warning to all who resist God, and who, in private or public life, take up arms against the Church. Here is a cheering encouragement to all who remain faithful to Christ in evil days, and who serve and worship Him, although the Powers of this world, idolizing themselves, may be

¹ i. 21.² vi. 28.⁴ See below on ix. 2.⁵ Isa. xlv. 26-28.³ See the notes below on those passages.⁶ vi. 10.⁷ See on vi. 6.⁸ iii. 29.⁹ vii. 26.

leagued against Him. There is a furnace of fire, "the lake of fire," hotter and more lasting than that of Nebuchadnezzar. There is "the worm that dieth not, and the fire that is not quenched¹." There is a den of lions, the bottomless pit, in which the roaring² lion, the devil, will be chained with his victims for ever, and of which, as the beloved Disciple says, Christ holds the key³; and Christ has told us who are they whom He will visit with His wrath at the Great Day⁴. He has also revealed to us the future glory of all who remain loyal to Him in times of trial and persecution⁵.

The above-mentioned marvellous events, occurring at intervals during a period of seventy years, in the reigns of Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar, and Darius, and displayed to the Eastern World, and to the Hebrew people scattered throughout it, were visible signs of the sovereignty of the Lord God of Israel. They were parts of *one uniform plan* showing Him to be the Arbiter of the destinies of Nations, and the Ruler of all earthly kingdoms, and proving also that His Government is a Moral one, administered according to fixed rules of equity and justice, in punishing pride, sacrilege, and rebellion against Him, and in rewarding those who fear Him, love Him, trust in Him, and obey Him; and that these moral attributes are exercised in converting the weapons which man forges and wields against Him and His Church into instruments for chastening and abasing His enemies, and for the manifestation of His own power and glory.

This series of marvellous manifestations of the God of Israel were like so many comings-forth of His Divine Majesty from the dark cloud in which He was veiled. He thus cheered and guided His captive and exiled People in the wilderness of the East, as He had cheered and guided their forefathers by the pillar of cloud and fire in the desert of Arabia. These manifestations not only consoled them in their distress, but they quickened their hopes for the future. They were consigned to writing by Daniel in the pages of Holy Writ, in order to comfort the Hebrew Church in succeeding ages, especially in the fierce persecution⁶ which, as Daniel foretold, she would have to endure in the days of Antiochus Epiphanes, the King of Syria; and also in order to encourage the Church of Christ in the latter days, and to prepare her to encounter the conflict that awaits her, which was foreshadowed by that persecution, and to look beyond the storm of Antichristianism, which is now gathering around her with dark clouds, to the heavenly light and eternal calm of the kingdom of Christ.

These moral purposes of this miraculous agency, and of its Divinely-inspired record in the Book of Daniel, are exhibited in a clearer view by being there combined with Visions and Prophecies, which extend to the First Advent of Christ, and far beyond it, even to His Second Coming to judge the World.

The Miracles in the Book of Daniel are indissolubly linked with its Prophecies. The Miracles drew attention to the Prophecies, and the fulfilment of the Prophecies corroborates the truth of the Miracles. The Prophecies are like waymarks, which direct the eye to the end for which the Miracles were wrought, and to which the Divine agency, that was exerted in them, tends as its final consummation. This end is, in a word, the manifestation of the Glory of CHRIST, not only as the Saviour and Redeemer of the World, by His sufferings and Death⁷, but as the Almighty Ruler of all Nations, and as the appointed Universal Judge of quick and dead.

This is the main design and scope of the Book of Daniel, the prophet, the prince, and statesman of the East; and this is a purpose on which it would be well for all men and nations to meditate, especially in the present eventful times. Here they may recognize clear evidences of the Truth of Christianity. Here they may learn to see the infatuation of Unbelief, and to read its future shame and utter confusion, and endless misery; and to humble themselves with reverential fear and love before the awful Majesty of Christ.

Observe how this design is accomplished.

Nebuchadnezzar the King had a dream, in which he saw a vision of a quadriform Image, described in the second chapter of this Book. He summoned the wise men of Babylon, the most celebrated city in the heathen world for skill in divination; but they could not declare to him the interpretation of the vision, nor tell him what the vision was. They were therefore doomed to destruction. But Daniel interceded for them, and was brought before the King. He claimed no skill in such matters for himself; he ascribed all his knowledge to God; he desired his companions

¹ Mark ix. 44. Cp. Rev. xx. 10—15.

² 1 Pet. v. 8.

³ Rev. vii. 14.

⁴ See viii. 23—25; xi. 21—35.

⁵ Rev. i. 18; ix. 1; xx. 1.

⁶ Rev. xx. 15; xxi. 8.

⁷ See on ix. 24—26.

to join with him in prayer to God; and then the vision and interpretation were revealed to him. Nebuchadnezzar received a present pledge from Daniel that the *interpretation* would prove true, inasmuch as Daniel gave him a description, which Nebuchadnezzar recognized as true, of the *vision* itself. The history of following times, as related in the pages of secular annalists, who have recorded the fortunes of the four great Empires of the world in succession—the Babylonish, the Medo-Persian, the Greek, and the Roman—afford a clear evidence of the truth of Daniel's interpretation of the vision, and of the Divine prescience of the Lord God of Israel, from Whom he received it. The World is a witness to it.

In the eighth chapter of the Book of Daniel we have a prophetic episode with regard to the great Empire, the Medo-Persian, which followed that of Babylon, and also concerning the third Empire, the Greek Monarchy, that of Alexander the Great, which supplanted the Medo-Persian.

Let us consider the striking proofs which this Vision gives of Daniel's inspiration, and also of the workings of God's government for a distinct and definite end—the establishment of the Kingdom of Christ.

About five centuries and a half before the Christian era the prophet was transported in a vision to the royal palace at Susa, the capital of Elam, afterwards known as the principal province of Persia, but then under the sway of Babylon and of its Chaldean King, Belshazzar. He there saw a vision of a ram with two horns standing before the river Ulai. One of the horns was higher than the other, and the higher of the two came up last. He saw the ram pushing with his horns to the west and north and south, and destroying all before him, and becoming great. In process of time a he-goat came from the west, and so rapid was his course that he seemed not to touch the ground, and he had a conspicuous horn between his eyes, and he ran upon the ram and smote him, and brake his horns, and cast him to the ground, and stamped upon him, and waxed great. But suddenly when he was strong, he was broken, and in his place four eminent horns arose, toward the four winds of heaven.

Such was the Vision which Daniel saw in the third year of Belshazzar.

The prophet himself did not understand it. But the angel Gabriel came by God's command and touched him, and raised him from the ground, and explained it.

"The ram which thou sawest having two horns are the kings of Media and Persia. The rough goat is the King of Grecia. The great horn between his eyes is the first king. Now that being broken, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power¹."

Such was the interpretation.

Eighteen years afterwards, in the third year of Cyrus, when the dominion had passed from Babylon to Persia, the prophet Daniel, as he himself relates in the tenth and eleventh chapters, was on the banks of another river—the Hiddekel, or Tigris—and there he was visited by CHRIST Himself². From His lips he heard a declaration revealing in fuller terms what had already been shown to him by the angel Gabriel in the previous vision at Susa.

"There shall stand up yet three Kings in Persia" (that is, three kings after Cyrus), "and the fourth king shall be far richer than they all, and he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia. And a mighty king shall stand up, that shall rule with great dominion; but his kingdom shall be broken and divided towards the four winds, but not to his posterity, nor according to his dominion³."

Let us review what is placed before us in those two visions.

The first vision was seen while Babylon was still Queen of the East. But no mention is made of her, and in that chapter where this vision is recorded Daniel no longer writes in the Chaldean tongue, the language of Babylon, as he does in the five previous chapters, but in Hebrew. Instead of Babylon we hear the names of Media and Persia. And of these two, that which came up the last, Persia, is declared to be the greatest. These Powers are represented as combined, like horns in one head, and pushing in all directions except the East.

We are also apprised in the second vision (in the eleventh chapter⁴) that after Cyrus there should arise three Kings of Persia, and that the fourth should be richer than the three, and should invade a particular region called Javan, or Grecia⁵. We hear also the destiny of this combined Power. We are informed that a third Empire will arise in that very region, which will be invaded by the Persian Power—the region of Greece. We learn that this region will have a king, and that its first king will come with great speed and fury, and will smite the power of Persia and cast it to the

¹ viii. 20.

² See on x. 5, 6. Rev. i. 15; x. 2–6.

³ xi. 2–4.

⁴ viii. 21; x. 20; xi. 2. Cp. Zech. ix. 13.

⁵ xi. 2.

earth, and trample upon it. We hear that this Grecian king will wax very great, but that suddenly he will be broken in his strength, and in his place will succeed four other Powers, but not of his family, nor equal to him in dominion.

These particulars were revealed to Daniel, and by him to the world.

This being the case, let us consider with what feelings we should have received these details from Daniel if we had been living in his age.

Looking at the world as it was when these prophecies were uttered, we should have thought it very improbable that any portion of them would be fulfilled.

Babylon was then supreme. Persia was comparatively insignificant. And yet we hear nothing of Babylon; but a Medo-Persian kingdom occupies the picture, and of these two Powers, the last, or Persian, is represented as the greatest.

Besides this, in the second vision the exact number of Persian kings is specified from a particular date down to a certain time, when it is said that the monarch of Persia would invade Greece.

In the age of Daniel, the name of Greece was scarcely known in the East. What could tempt an Oriental Monarch to the regions of the West? And what follows? Something more surprising still. The almost unexplored territory of Greece is represented as having a king, and this king, it is said, will come to the East and assail its mighty monarchy with great velocity and violence, and will stamp upon it and crush it.

In the age and country in which Daniel wrote, the power of Greece was of little account. It would have seemed very unlikely, that it should ever be worth while for a Monarch of the East to invade Greece, and it would have appeared impossible that Greece should dare to assault the colossal Empire of Asia.

Remark also; Greece was then divided into numerous petty provinces, some with Republican Governments, some with Monarchical, and all jealous of each other. Who would, then, have believed that they would coalesce under one head and have a King? Such an event had not occurred since the mythical age of the Trojan War. And who would have supposed that this King, this first King, would have ventured to march into Asia, and have been able to achieve the conquest of the East? And who would have imagined, that, when he had accomplished this incredible feat, he would suddenly disappear, and that his power would not descend to his posterity, but be diffused into four principalities?

Such, however, was the Prophecy. Let us now turn to history.

Descending gradually from the time in which these visions were seen, and these prophecies uttered, and looking round on the face of the world, we first see a Power arising to the East of Babylon, composed of two nations—the Medes and Persians. The Persians were at first inferior to the Medes, but, at length, they gained the mastery over them, and were united, like two horns on one head, in the person of Cyrus.

Cyrus besieged Babylon and took it, and became Lord of the East. He and his successors carried their arms into Lydia, Ionia, Egypt, Ethiopia, Arabia, Sarmatia, and Scythia, whence it is said in the Book of Esther¹ concerning Ahasuerus, or Xerxes, King of Persia, “He reigned from India even unto Ethiopia, over an hundred and seven and twenty provinces.” Here, then, the light begins to dawn upon us. The vision, dark before, is growing clear. In the Persian Monarch, and in his power and conquests, we recognize the two-horned Ram pushing far and wide, which Daniel saw in the night visions in the palace of Susa, the future capital of the Persian Monarchy, and we acknowledge the truth of the angel’s interpretation, “The Ram which thou sawest is the King of Media and Persia.”

We pursue our downward course, and we next see three Persian Kings arising in succession after Cyrus—Cambyses, Smerdis, Darius Hystaspes, and the fourth, Xerxes. This number, as we have seen, was predicted to Daniel². It was also announced in the prophecy that the fourth, by his strength, through his riches, “would stir up all against the realm of Grecia.”

Let us now turn our eyes to the plains of Thrace. We see there an immense army, consisting of near two millions of men, equipped in the warlike costume of various nations. They serve Xerxes, the King of Persia, the fourth King from the time of Cyrus. He brought them under his sway by his strength and wealth derived from his father Darius. Whither are they going? He has stirred them up to invade the realm of Greece.

Here, then, we see more light. The Prophecy becomes History.

¹ i. 1.

² Dan. xi. 2.

Let us proceed. Pass over a century and a half; and what do we next behold? We look northward to the land of Grecia. In the year B.C. 335 a Council was held at Corinth, the centre of that country; and the purpose of the representatives who were there assembled together of the different Greek provinces, which, for many centuries, had been torn by feuds, and had never been able to act in concert, was to choose a Head, in order that he might lead them to war, and revenge insults and injuries inflicted on their ancestors a century and a half ago by the Persian power, which had stirred up its armies against the land of Greece, and destroyed her temples, and burnt her cities. And whom do they choose for their commander-in-chief? A youthful Prince, twenty years of age, who has newly succeeded to the throne of Macedon, a province which, a few years before, was despised by the Greeks as barbarous. Wonderful event, fulfilling the Prophecy of Daniel. That Prophecy calls him "the first King of Grecia," and, since the time of Agamemnon, the troops of Grecia were never united under a single Head before the days of Alexander the Great. In the words of the first book of Maccabees¹, "He was the first who reigned over Greece." Nor is this all. Alexander was chosen Generalissimo of the Greeks, and war was declared against Persia. Alexander was young; he was poor; when he crossed the Hellespont, B.C. 334, he could only muster thirty-two thousand men². But the King of Persia, Darius, abounded in wealth, and could bring into the field an army of many hundred thousands³. Nor are we to imagine that these were a mere effeminate multitude. The Persian cavalry was the most celebrated in the world; and Darius enlisted in his service the brave and hardy tribes of northern and eastern Asia. But, it was written in the Scripture of truth that the He-Goat, who was the King of Grecia, should come from the west, scarce touching the ground with his feet⁴. When Alexander was asked how he was able to effect what he did, his reply was, "By never putting off." It was prophesied, in the book of Daniel, that he would come in the fury of his power against the Ram, and would stamp upon him. And so it was. Witness the passage of the Phrygian River Granicus; witness the straits of the Cilician Issus, and the plains of the Assyrian Arbela. In the former the He-Goat rushed upon the Ram. In the latter he trampled him underfoot. Indeed his Pagan historian recounts these very words as used by Alexander, "We have routed our enemies at the Granicus, and we have crushed and trampled underfoot all in our rear⁵."

Nor was he content with this. He carried his arms far beyond the confines of Persia. He invaded Samarcand and Tartary; he traversed the Indian Caucasus; and marched over the heights of Affghanistan; and penetrated the fastnesses of Cabul; and crossed the Indus, and erected altars to the deities of Greece on the banks of the Hyphasis in the province of Lahore. He sent a fleet down the Indus to explore the Persian Gulf; he designed to connect the navigation of the Indus with that of the Nile; and the royal vessel of Alexander was seen floating on the waters of Ulai and Hiddekel—that is, on those very rivers where, two centuries before, his exploits had been revealed by Almighty God in a vision to the man greatly beloved, Daniel the Prophet⁶.

Daniel had seen in his vision the He Goat in the height of his power; he saw also his end. "When he was strong, the great horn was broken⁷;" "when he stood up, his kingdom was broken⁸." And what is the record of history?

His end was no less wonderful than his rise and progress. Armies and deserts had no power against him: he braved the most tempestuous seas; he stemmed the torrent of the fiercest flood. Asia lay prostrate at his feet. In the flower of youth, and in the full vigour of body and mind, he came to the gates of Babylon, that once royal and golden city, the queen of the East. He designed to make it his own capital, and to raise it to its former glory. But the Word of the Lord had gone forth against Babylon; "Babylon is fallen, is fallen, no more to rise; she shall become pools of water, and she shall never more be inhabited⁹."

Alexander was warned that disasters would befall him at Babylon, and he paused for a time

¹ 1 Macc. i. 1.

² "Hæc tunc parvâ manu" (says *Justin*, xi. 6) "universum terrarum orbem utrum admirabilis vicierit, an aggredi ausus fuerit, incertum est."

³ *Justin* (xi. 6) says that the Persians had 600,000 men at the Granicus. There were 500,000 at the Issus when Darius himself was present. See *Blancard's* note on *Arrian*, p. 40 and p. 101; ed. 1668.

⁴ "Nihil enim" (*S. Jerome* in *Dan.* vii.) "Alexandri victoriis velocius, qui ab Illyrico usque ad Gangem percurrit, et in sex annis partem Europæ et omnem Asiam subjugavit."

⁵ *Curtius*, iii. 11: "Omnia post tergum strata et pedibus abjecta memorabat."

⁶ The exploring fleet of Nearchus sailed down the Indus, and along the coast westward, to the Persian Gulf, to execute the plan of the commerce which was afterwards carried on from Alexandria in Egypt to the Indian Ocean. See *Arrian*, vi., and *Dean Vincent's* work on this subject. After he had married Statira, the eldest daughter of Darius, at Susa, Alexander sailed down the Ulai, or Euleus, to the Persian Gulf, and up the Hiddekel, or Tigris, to Opis; and thence marched to Ecbatana, and so to Babylon, where he died. (*Arrian*, vii. *Plutarch*, Vit. Alex. *Diodori Sic.*, xvii. *Curtius*, x.)

⁷ *Dan.* viii. 8.

⁸ *Dan.* xi. 4.

⁹ *Isa.* xiii. 20; *xiv.* 4. 23. *Jer.* l. 3. 30. 39; *li.* 29. 62.

before its gates. But at length he entered Babylon, and celebrated a festival, and received the homage of ambassadors from remote regions of the east and west; and within a few months afterwards the Conqueror of the world lay stretched on the bed of sickness and of death¹.

It had been predicted in the prophecies of Daniel that when "he was strong he should be broken²," and "when he stood up his kingdom should be broken³." Such was the language concerning him uttered two centuries before by the Spirit of God. And what had the Holy Spirit said, by the mouth of Daniel, would become of his kingdom? Alexander had a brother; he had also two sons. Were they to be his heirs? No; it was written in the Scripture of truth, His kingdom shall not descend to his posterity⁴. But to whom would it come? It was written again, that, in the place of the one horn which was to be broken, four other horns should arise⁵, and that his kingdom would be divided among them. And what was the fact? After a few years of transitory struggle⁶, the kingdom of Alexander settled down into four parts under four of his generals⁷. Thus the kingdom of the one great horn was parted among the four horns which arose in his place, and so the prophecy was fulfilled⁸.

These visions are full and circumstantial, and have been fulfilled, as we have seen, in their minutest details. What thence may we conclude? Surely we may infer that these prophecies are from Him, "with Whom a thousand years are as one day," and Who sees the present and future at one glance. We have evidence here that Almighty God has spoken to man, that He has vouchsafed us a revelation of Himself, and that in reading the Book of Daniel we have an oracle from God.

Further, Almighty God (as we see from these prophecies) not only marks what is done by men and nations, but He uses them as His instruments for the execution of His own purposes. On account of their sins, men are delivered into the hands of oppressors. Jerusalem (after she had been warned by God speaking to her by Isaiah and Jeremiah, and other Prophets) was punished for her iniquities by Nebuchadnezzar, and her children were carried captive, and "sat down by the waters of Babylon and wept⁹." But the King of Babylon abused his power with cruelty and pride; he did not profit by the warning given by God in the destruction of Jerusalem; and he refused the teaching of God speaking to him by the voice of Daniel. He was elated with pride, and magnified himself against the Most High. God raised up Cyrus against Babylon, and transferred the government from the Chaldeans to the Persians. But Persia also failed to learn the lesson which God had taught by the example of Jerusalem and of Babylon. It exercised its sway with violence. In the words of the Prophet, "It raised itself up, and it had three ribs in the mouth of it between its teeth, and they said, Arise, devour much flesh¹⁰." Especially was it guilty of savage barbarity in ravaging the coasts of Asia and Greece. And its monarchs claimed adoration. And what was the consequence? After a time of probation God deprived Persia of the power which it abused, and He raised an avenger in that very country which Persia had invaded. He brought Alexander the Great from the shores of Greece, and gave him "might, and dominion, and victory over the face of the earth." By putting to flight the myriads of Darius before the small force of Alexander (as had been foretold by the Prophet), God showed that no king is saved by the multitude of an host¹¹, and that when it seemeth Him good He poureth contempt upon princes¹², and is wonderful among the Kings of the earth¹³. God in His mercy brought Alexander to Jerusalem, and there is good reason to believe that he had there an opportunity of knowing the sacred oracles, especially the Book of Daniel¹⁴. But still the pride of man refused to acknowledge the sovereignty of God. Alexander claimed divine honour for himself; the son of Philip would be worshipped as the progeny of Jove¹⁵. He attempted to plant his capital at Babylon, which God had said should never be rebuilt; but, instead of establishing there a glorious throne, he found a miserable death.

Here is instruction for all. In His dealings with men God offers them knowledge and happi-

¹ In the summer of B.C. 323. See *Clinton's Fasti Hellenici*, ii., p. 162. He was then thirty-two years and eight months old, and had reigned twelve years and eight months. See *Arrian*, vii., p. 502. It is not improbable that forebodings concerning a sudden death were derived by the Chaldeans from the prophecy of Daniel. See also *Plut.*, *Alex.* 73. An Indian Brahmin, when going to his funeral pile, had said that he would meet Alexander at Babylon. *Arrian*, vii. 483.

² Dan. viii. 8.

³ Dan. xi. 4.

⁴ Dan. xi. 4.

⁵ Dan. viii. 8.

⁶ Which terminated at the battle of Ipsus, in Phrygia, B.C. 301, when Antigonos, the rival of Lysimachus, was slain.

⁷ Cassander had Greece as his share; Lysimachus, Thrace and

Northern Asia; Ptolemy, Egypt, Libya, Arabia, and Palestine; and Seleucus, Syria.

⁸ *S. Jerome* says, in Daniel vii. 7, p. 1105, "Alexandro mortuo in Babylone, surrexerunt pro eo quatuor duces ejus, qui sibi regnum diviserunt."

⁹ Ps. cxxxvii.

¹⁰ Dan. vii. 5.

¹¹ Job xii. 21.

¹² See *Josephus*, *Ant.* xi. 8. 5.

¹³ See *Justin*, xi. 11; and the interesting speech of Callisthenes, in *Arrian*, iv. p. 275, concerning the adoration claimed by Alexander.

¹¹ Ps. xxxiii. 15.

¹³ Ps. lxxvi. 12.

ness, on certain terms, and gives them freedom of choice between good and evil. He never leaves Himself without a witness. And yet, in spite of examples and warnings, man is prone to idolize himself. But he never gains the mastery; he may domineer for a few short years, but in the end he is brought low. The departed Empires of Babylon, Persia, and of Greece are monuments of the haughtiness and weakness of man, and of the righteousness and power of God.

We are taught by these prophecies to read History aright.

In popular language, History is divided into Sacred and Profane. Some events intimately concern the spiritual welfare of man, and are recorded in the pages of Inspiration, and may therefore be considered as holding a peculiar place. But all History is Sacred. The destinies of all nations are under Divine control. Every thing is permitted or ordered by God's Providence. An Alexander, as well as a David, is an instrument in His hand. All History, sacred and profane, records the operations of God. And yet is it not to be feared, that many persons are satisfied with looking at the surface of things, and that they pore over the narratives of past and present events without raising their eyes to the throne of God? When this is the case, how profitless is the study of History! How worthless are the most vivid descriptions of the siege of Babylon, and of the battles of Marathon, Salamis, Granicus, and Arbela, and of the stirring events of our own days, unless they remind us of that all-wise, all-just, all-mighty, eternal Being, Who, amid the storm of battles and the shock of empires, is visibly and silently working out His everlasting decrees, and achieving His own victories and establishing His own kingdom, the kingdom of Christ.

It is probable, that many celebrated diplomatists and statesmen know little of the inner life of politics, and that many historians know little of history. How little did Arrian and Quintus Curtius and other historians of Alexander the Great know of Alexander's real mission! How little did Alexander himself know of it! How little do many readers of that history know of it! But they who have the Book of Daniel in their hands, and who read that history by the light of Divine revelation, may learn to recognize in it a fulfilment of sacred prophecy, and trace the working of God for the Coming of Christ. In the history of the Christian Church, especially as written in the Acts of the Apostles, we see the results of that working, and also of God's operations in the Fourth Empire, the Empire of Rome¹. The true Christian sees the Divine Footsteps amid the storm of revolutions. "Thy way, O Lord, is in the sea, and Thy path in the great waters²." In the darkest gloom of the night he beholds the bright form of Christ walking on the waves. The Christian student of history regards Alexander as preparing the way for the Advent of Christ. The Hebrew Scriptures were translated into Greek at Alexandria, by the command of Ptolemy, one of Alexander's successors. The consequent dissemination of the Old Testament prepared the world for the reception of the New. The conquests of Alexander propagated the Greek tongue, and the Apostles of Christ used it for evangelizing the world.

Thus Alexander the Great was a pioneer for Christ. The battles of the Granicus and Issus, the campaigns of Scythia and India paved the way for the glorious march of the Gospel and for the peaceful triumphs of the Cross. The fierce he-goat of the West, who came forth to destroy, opened a way for the "Lamb of God Who taketh away the sins of the world³."

So it will ever be, even to the end. "The fierceness of man shall turn to Thy praise, O Lord, and the fierceness of them shalt Thou refrain. He shall refrain the spirit of princes, and is wonderful among the kings of the earth⁴."

Yet further; let us also note the final consummation to which the Vision of all the four great empires tends. That consummation is the establishment of an everlasting kingdom—the kingdom of CHRIST. He is the Stone cut out without hands⁵. It was foretold in Daniel's prophecies that the Stone would smite the Image upon its feet of iron and clay and break them to pieces, and would become a Mountain and fill the earth. This is to be the climax of the kingdom of Nebuchadnezzar, the great monarch of the East, and of the succeeding dynasties, the Medo-Persian, the Grecian, the Roman, and of all the European kingdoms which have branched forth from it. They are all displayed by Daniel as tending towards the Kingdom of Christ, and as being absorbed by it.

We live in the times when the Roman Empire has been dismembered, and has ramified into many independent kingdoms represented by the toes of the Image. It was foretold by Daniel that

¹ The reader is requested to refer to the *Introduction* to the Acts of the Apostles, pp. 7–15, for the fuller demonstration of this.

² Ps. lxxvii. 19.

³ For further evidence of this process, by which the conquests of Alexander were made conducive to the spread of the Gospel, see the *Introduction* to the Acts of the Apostles, pp. 9, 10.

⁴ Ps. lxxvi. 10, 12.

⁵ Dan. ii. 34, 35, 44, 45.

no single great Empire like that of Rome would ever arise after it and be paramount in the world. More than two thousand years have passed since that prophecy was delivered, and no such one Empire has risen. It was foretold also by Daniel, that the feet and toes of the Image would be partly of iron and partly of clay, that they would have the strength of the one and the brittleness of the other¹. This prophecy describes the character of the kingdoms of these latter days, and seems to be now in course of fulfilment. The nations of Europe, for the most part, no longer recognize Christianity as the fundamental principle of Government and Law. In their eyes Christ is no longer King of kings and Lord of lords. Some of them have abandoned their religious character, and have abdicated their religious functions. They no longer look upward to God as the origin and well-spring of all lawful authority, as the Christian Scriptures represent Him to be². Their dynasties no longer derive from Him their claim to allegiance. They are not emanations from above, but are evaporations from beneath, from the lower level and misty regions of earth; and, like all such evaporations, they have little consistency and permanence. They are evanescent exhalations of the fickle breath of popular plébiscites³. They have indeed something of the strength of iron, by reason of the military force which has now become a necessity in nations which do not own the influence of Christianity, and are not subject to that moral control which is produced by faith in the everlasting verities of the unseen world—namely, the presence, power, justice, and omniscience of God, and the realities of a future state of everlasting rewards and punishments. The government of the Sword is almost the only government under which their existence is possible. They almost deify War; as Daniel has foretold they would do⁴. But they have also an admixture of the miry clay which clings to all constitutions that rest their pretensions to obedience on what is earthy; and in this respect, therefore, they are fragile, like potters' vessels⁵.

It is also revealed by Daniel that these popular Governments, which have branched off from the Roman Empire, will eventually be antagonistic to Christianity. This may be concluded from the prophecy of Daniel, that they will be broken in pieces by the Stone, representing Christ and His kingdom, which will stand for ever⁶, and being shivered to pieces by Him, they will be scattered to the winds like the chaff of the summer threshing-floor⁷. Unless they were hostile to Christ, this would not be their doom. Their future destruction is a proof and consequence of their defection from Him, and of their hostility to Him. And, inasmuch as Nations will not exist, *as Nations*, in a future state, therefore, in proportion as the world draws nearer to its end, national sins will be followed more rapidly by national punishments. The last times will be marked by terrible national calamities and confusions. They will be times of trouble and trial; as Daniel has foretold (xii. 1).

Thus, by means of a vision revealed to the greatest monarch of the East, and interpreted by the prophet Daniel, Almighty God has given a warning to Kings and Nations in these latter days. Let them not be elated by their wealth and power, or dazzled by their glory. Their existence is fleeting and transitory. They will be like the spectral phantoms of the ancient Monarchies of Babylon, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which have vanished for ever. But there is a kingdom which will never pass away—the Kingdom of Christ—and it will bruise and break in pieces all earthly kingdoms that oppose it, and it will become a great mountain, and fill the earth. Therefore, in times of trouble and trial, and of rebuke and blasphemy, let the subjects and citizens of Christ's kingdom possess their souls in patience. Let them contend valiantly for the faith, and, if need be, suffer joyfully for it. Their victory is certain. The storm will soon be over, and be succeeded by an everlasting calm.

But Almighty God had another gracious purpose to serve by these prophecies, especially for those who live in these latter days. He had shown in the dream of Nebuchadnezzar the vanity of earthly kingdoms, and the future triumph of Christ. But He had another warning to give through Daniel himself to future ages—namely, that they must expect to see corruptions, even in the Church of God. This He displayed in the growth and domineering sway of a mysterious Power rising up out of the fourth, or Roman, Empire.

¹ See on Dan. ii. 33, 34. 41. 43.

² See Rom. xiii. 1—4.

³ *S. Hippolytus* (ed. Lagarde, p. 172), in commenting on this portion of Daniel, says, "The empire of Rome, which was strong as iron, is typified by the iron legs of the image seen by Nebuchadnezzar in his dream; then come the toes, which are partly of iron and partly of clay, to represent the democratic governments which will arise after it, and in which will be iron mingled with miry clay."

⁴ See the note below, on chap. xi. 33.

⁵ The Psalmist anticipates the prophecy of Daniel, when, speaking of Christ's sovereignty, he says (Ps. ii. 9), "Thou shalt bruise them with a rod of iron; Thou shalt break them in pieces like a potter's vessel."

⁶ ii. 34—44.

⁷ ii. 35. The stone (observes *S. Hippolytus*, p. 172) is represented as falling on the toes of the image and breaking them, because it will fall on the last kingdoms of the earth.

We who live in the latter days, and who have in our hands the Apocalypse of St. John, which is the sequel and completion of Daniel's prophecies, may recognize the fulfilment of that prophecy in past and present events in Christendom¹. The Roman Papacy, which grew up out of the fourth Empire, has too clearly identified itself with that Power, and we need not be staggered by its claims. Daniel and St. John and St. Paul² have prepared us for them, and have warned us against them, and have also revealed to us its future doom.

But another form of corruption in the Church of God, and of hostility to it, was revealed to Daniel, and through him to the world.

This form is that of Infidelity; open enmity to the Truth, and persecution of it.

Almighty God displayed its origin in the vision of the Power rising out of the third, or Greek Empire, in the person of Antiochus Epiphanes, king of Syria (B.C. 175—164), the first open, deliberate, and systematic persecutor of the Church of God, in its spiritual character as a Church; and He prepared the Jewish Nation to encounter the sufferings which awaited it under Antiochus Epiphanes³, by revealing his stealthy rise, his insidious policy, his wily stratagems, his specious flatteries, his prodigal liberality and luxury, his fierce and impious aggressions, and sudden fall⁴.

The history of Antiochus Epiphanes persecuting the Hebrew Church in its faith, worship, and sacred ministry, and of the courageous Maccabees, who were raised up to resist him, and at last triumphed over him, is full of interest for the Church of Christ in the present day.

Daniel represents it as a typical foreshadowing of the workings of that Infidel Antichristianism which will try the faith, and exercise the patience, and test the courage of the Christian in the last times. He passes on at once, by an almost imperceptible transition, from a prophetic description of the sufferings of the Jewish Church under Antiochus Epiphanes to a prophetic description of the sufferings of the Christian Church from the Antichristian spirit of Infidelity in the latter days. The former is there shadowed off into the latter⁵. Antiochus Epiphanes will be reproduced in larger proportions, and intensified energy, in the Antichristianism of the latter days.

This invests the history of Antiochus and the Maccabees with so much interest for us⁶.

The moral of that history, as foretold by Daniel, and as narrated in the Books of the Maccabees, is this. The calamities of the Hebrew Church were from *within*. They did not proceed from the power of the Persecutor himself, Antiochus, but from the sins of the Rulers, spiritual and temporal, of the nation which was persecuted by him. The principal authors of the miseries of the Hebrew Church were its Priests⁷. They were beguiled and won over by the smooth flatteries and soft speeches of Antiochus, and by his liberal profusion; and in their turn they endeavoured to ingratiate themselves with him, and to gain honour, popularity, and preferment by concessions, compromises, and bribes. They secularized the Church of God. They set up Gentile gymnasia in Jerusalem where the Hebrew youth were trained in Hellenic exercises. They mimicked Greek fashions, and endeavoured to assimilate the manners of its population to Greek usages. The effects of foreign travel, of commerce, of Greek philosophy, literature, religion, and the arts, made themselves felt. Palestine lay between two Greek kingdoms, Syria and Egypt, from which many Hellenic influences filtered into it and permeated it. Many of the Jews denied their own circumcision. Three of the recreant and time-serving High Priests of Jerusalem—namely, Jesus (who, by means of bribery, supplanted his elder brother in the priesthood⁸) and Onias, who supplanted Jason—grecized their own names. Jesus became Jason; Onias was metamorphosed into Menelaus. His successor,

¹ See below, vii. 8—11. 21—26.

² See below, *Prelim. Note* to chap. vii., and on vii. 4.

³ "These things" (says *Josephus*, the Jewish historian, *Ant.* x. 11. 7) "our nation suffered under Antiochus Epiphanes, as Daniel had seen in a vision, and, accordingly, he wrote what would come to pass many years before they occurred." The history of the fulfilment is in the five books of the Maccabees published by *Dr. Cotton*, Oxford, 1832; and in *Archbishop Ussher's* "Annales," pp. 311—336; and see Professor *Westcott's* article on the Maccabees, *Bibl. Diet.*, ii. 164—180.

See viii. 23—25, and xi. 21—35.

⁵ See below, on xi. 35.

⁶ It is well said by Professor *Westcott* (*Art. Maccabees*, *Bibl. Diet.* ii., 167): "It would be easy to point out parallels in Maccabean history to the noblest traits of patriots and martyrs in other countries, but it may be enough here to claim for the contest the attention which it rarely receives. It seems, indeed, as if the indifference of classical writers were perpetuated in our own days, though there is no struggle—not even the wars of Joshua

or David—which is more profoundly interesting to the Christian student. For it is not only in their victory over external difficulties that the heroism of the Maccabees is conspicuous: their real success was as much imperilled by internal divisions as by foreign force. They had to contend, on the one hand, against open and subtle attempts to introduce Greek customs, and on the other, against an extreme Pharisaic party, which is seen from time to time opposing their counsels (1 Macc. vii. 12—18; § 2, end).

⁷ See below, on Dan. viii. 9, and my sermons "On the Maccabees and the Church." London: Rivingtons. 1871.

⁸ Eventually Jason fled for protection, first, to the Ammonites, and afterwards to the Lacedemonians, with whom he claimed relationship, and there perished. Menelaus came also to a miserable end by a punishment appropriate to sacrilege. B.C. 163. 2 Macc. xiii. 3—8. Alcimus was paralyzed when attempting to lay open the Temple to the heathen (1 Macc. ix. 54—56).

Joachim, hellenized himself into Alcimus¹, and disparaged the zeal, and thwarted the efforts, of Judas Maccabæus, that heroic champion of God and his Country, and attempted to betray him to his heathen enemies. In a word, Jerusalem was no more to be Jerusalem, but to become a Greek city—an Athens, an Alexandria, or an Antioch².

This process of secularization was the source of the weakness and of the woes of the Jewish Church. Many of its Priests renounced their belief in the religion of their forefathers, and apostatized from the faith of Moses and the Prophets. Thus they became the victims of the persecuting power of Infidelity. God withdrew His grace and protection from them. He punished them by taking away the spiritual privileges which they had scorned, and by giving them over to their enemies. He forsook the Sanctuary which they had profaned, and abandoned the Jerusalem which they had heathenized. The Holy of Holies was no longer the shrine of the Living God, Who had once revealed Himself on the Mercy Seat. The Temple on Moriah, where Abraham had offered up Isaac in will, and where David had seen the Angel, became a Temple of Jupiter Olympius. The High Priest himself sent a deputation to the Tyrian games in honour of Hercules. The sacred processions of palm-bearers and singers of hosannas, who once chanted sacred melodies in the streets of Sion, at the festival of Tabernacles, were succeeded by bearers of the ivy-tufted thyrsus, who sang lyrical dithyrambs in honour of the Greek Dionysus, whose ivy leaf was branded upon the flesh of his votaries; and the effusion of the waters, drawn forth in golden urns from the well of Siloam, and poured out upon the brazen altar of burnt sacrifice in the Temple, was superseded by libations from the sacrifices of unclean animals, immolated on the altar of Jehovah, surmounted by an idol altar, "the abomination of desolation³."

These desecrations were due, not to the power of the Persecutor, but to the cowardice, ambition, covetousness, mutual jealousy, treachery, and apostasy of the Priests.

Then it was that a fierce persecution broke out, and raged against the faithful few. Their courage was put to the test. As Daniel has foretold, the people that knew their God were strong and did exploits⁴. They were tried and purified, and made white⁵. Then grey-haired holy sires, like Mattathias, on their death-beds exhorted their sons to be firm, and fight valiantly for the God of their fathers⁶. Others, as Eleazar⁷, the Scribe, gladly welcomed death rather than break the law of God and eat what was unclean. Then, in the very presence of the fierce Persecutor himself, who had prepared his instruments of torture, Hebrew mothers encouraged their sons to suffer the most cruel torments for the sake of that law, and gave themselves joyfully to the death which they had exhorted their children to endure⁸. Then Judas Maccabæus, the son of Mattathias, rallied the faithful around him, and, with a small force, defeated the Syrian army at Emmaus, and recovered Jerusalem, and purified the Temple, and instituted the Feast of Dedication, which was afterwards honoured by the presence of Christ Himself, the Lord of the Temple⁹.

We should read the Book of Daniel to little profit, if we did not "transfer in a figure¹⁰" these things to ourselves.

The Prophet Daniel, by passing without interruption from the persecution of the Hebrew Church by Antiochus Epiphanes to the persecution of the Christian Church by the Antichristian spirit of Unbelief¹¹, and by speaking of that time as a time of trouble such as never was¹², and as the eve of the end, teaches us to regard the time of Antiochus as a foreshadowing of the latter days. By this treatment of his subject the venerable Seer, the "man greatly beloved," who was also a Civil Ruler, a great Statesman, and, for a time, Prime Minister of the East, and therefore well qualified to declare in what the true greatness and happiness of Kingdoms and States consist, warns the Church to beware of the fascinating flatteries of secular policy, which, in a self-idolizing spirit of spurious charity, specious liberality, and heartless scepticism, would tempt her to forget her Divine origin and her heavenly destiny, to rescind her sacred charter, and to cancel her authentic commission, and to assimilate herself to a mere political institution; to change her Christian schools and colleges into mere secular gymnasiums and scientific museums, or artistic studios and literary

¹ 1 Macc. vii. 21.

² Cp. 2 Macc. vi. 9: "Jason promised (to Antiochus Epiphanes) to write them of Jerusalem Antiochians."

³ 1 Macc. i. 54.

⁴ Dan. xi. 32.

⁵ Dan. xi. 35.

⁶ 1 Macc. ii. 49—69.

⁷ 2 Macc. vi. 18—31.

⁸ 2 Macc. vii. 1—41. It is much to be wished that a chapter like this, and chapter vi. from the Second Book of Maccabees, and chapters i.—vi. of the First Book of Maccabees were

publicly read in our churches, in lieu of some other chapters from the Apocrypha. They would be very seasonable and instructive for the present times. The ancient Christian Church recognized their use, and preached many homilies upon them, on the annual festival of the Maccabees, August 1. See *S. Greg. Nazianz.*, Orat. xv. *S. Chrys.*, Hom. in Macc. *S. Leo*, Sermon. 82; *S. Aug.*, Sermon. 300 and 301.

⁹ See below, on John x. 22.

¹⁰ 1 Cor. iv. 6.

¹¹ Dan. xi. 36.

¹² Dan. xii. 1.

athenæums; to treat the Holy Scriptures, not as divine oracles, but as human lucubrations; to rationalize away the definite, supernatural, doctrines of her Creed into mere philosophical theorems; to dissolve her Sacraments into picturesque symbolisms, and ideal and visionary shadows, without inner life and vivifying energy; and to regard her sacred Ministry as a mere fiction and functionary of the civil power, and not as a Divine institution of Christ, Very God, and Very Man, by means of which, as by an appointed channel, the regenerating, sanctifying, and restorative gifts of His grace, flowing from His precious Death, are dispensed and ministered to the faithful.

This warning is not unnecessary. "In the latter days," says St. Paul, "men will not endure sound doctrine¹." They will proscribe Creeds and Catechisms, and distinctive Formularies of faith, and will take up arms against Holy Scripture, and against the Sacraments of Christ, and the Christian Priesthood. Many who ought to defend these things, will be the first to betray them. "Men," he says, "will be lovers of their own selves, boasters, proud, blasphemers, unthankful, unholy², without natural affection, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are good;" and our Lord asks, "When the Son of Man cometh, shall He find faith on the earth³?" He has foretold that the last days of the world will be like the last days of Jerusalem⁴; and we know from the Jewish historian, Josephus⁵, and from the Epistle of the first Bishop of Jerusalem, St. James, what the character of those days was. St. Augustine speaks the language of all Christian Antiquity when he says⁶, "As the world approaches to its end, errors will increase, Iniquity and Infidelity will abound."

But even Infidelity itself will strengthen the faith of the Christian. Infidelity is foretold by Holy Scripture, and its prevalence is another proof that Scripture is true.

The Prophet Daniel, by reminding us of the analogies between the times of Antiochus and the latter days, and by setting before us the disastrous consequences of the worldly ambition and temporizing compromises of Hebrew High Priests, such as Jason, Menelaus, and Alcimus, delivers a caution to the Christian Priesthood and Episcopate, and exhorts them not to allow themselves to be seduced from their steadfastness by worldly allurements, and to endure patiently and contend boldly for the Faith; and by the various successive phases of the policy of Antiochus, who began with smooth speeches and plausible blandishments, and at last threw off the mask, and displayed himself in his true colours as a bold blasphemer and a fierce persecutor, he prepares the Church of the latter days for the time when the Powers of this world, after they have gained over to themselves some of her Priests by flattery, will despise their own instruments, and will again do what they did in the first ages of Christianity, when they violently assailed the Church⁷. "Then," says the Prophet, "shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time⁸."

In that time of trial many "will be purified, and made white and tried⁹." The courage of Christian Maccabees will then be put to the proof. Then the Judge will be at the door. The more fiercely Antichrist rages, the nearer Christ will be. Then will be the eve of Resurrection and Judgment¹⁰, and of the triumph of the faithful, and of the subjection of all things to Christ.

It is an unspeakable blessing for the Church, that these things were revealed to Daniel, and we may find a profitable employment in comparing them with similar revelations to the Prophets Joel¹¹ and Ezekiel¹² and Zechariah¹³, and especially in the Apocalypse of St. John¹⁴. All these portions of the Apocalypse refer to the same period—the eve of the end. All those prophecies speak of a time of severe trial before the end comes; and they unite in assuring us, that the time of trial will be followed by the full and final victory of Christ.

Daniel is the only prophet of the old dispensation who specifies the time of the first Coming of Christ¹⁵. He is the only prophet who uses those significant words "Messiah the

¹ 2 Tim. iv. 3.

² 2 Tim. iii. 2, 3.

³ Luke xviii. 8.

⁴ See on Matt. xxiv. 1, p. 85, and throughout that chapter.

⁵ See his words below, on Dan. ix. 24—27.

⁶ Tractat 25 in S. Joannem.

⁷ S. Augustine says, in Psalm ix., "Præpersecutio Ecclesiæ violenta fuit cum proscriptionibus, tormentis, caedibus. Christiani ad sacrificium cogebantur. Altera persecutio fraudulenta est, quæ per hereticos et falsos fratres agitur. Tertia superest per Anti-Christum ventura, quæ nihil perniciosius, quoniam et violenta et fraudulenta erit."

⁸ Dan. xii. 1.

⁹ xii. 10.

¹⁰ xii. 2, 3.

¹¹ See on Joel iii. 2. 12—16.

¹² See on Ezekiel xxxviii., xxxix.

¹³ See on Zechariah xiv. 2—15.

¹⁴ Rev. vi. 15—17; xi. 17, 18; xix. 15—20; xx. 8, 9.

¹⁵ ix. 24—27. S. Jerome says, "Nullus prophetarum tam aperte dixit de Christo; non enim solum scribit Eum esse venturum, quod est commune cum cæteris, sed etiam quo tempore venturus sit, docet; et reges per ordinem digerit, et annos enumerat, ac manifestissima signa prænunciat." And Theodoret (Pref. Com. in Daniel) says, "Daniel foretold the Advent of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ more clearly than all the other Prophets, for he not only predicted what He would do, but he pre-announced the time of His Coming, and specified the number of years which would precede it, and plainly revealed the calamities which would fall upon the Jews for their unbelief in Him."

Princee¹." No prophet has given a clearer view of the future glory, Majesty, and judicial dignity, of Christ².

But Daniel warned the Jews not to be deceived by false expectations, but to expect a *suffering* Messiah; a Messiah who would take away sin, and make reconciliation for iniquity, and yet be cut off by His own people³; he also warned them to look for the future total destruction of that Temple and City which it was his own earnest desire, and theirs, to see rebuilt, in order that the Messiah might come to it, as it was prophesied He would do⁴, and which, by its very destruction, has proved Messiah to have come.

Here is a striking proof of Daniel's inspiration. It is a vain attempt of the modern Porphyries⁵ of sceptical Criticism, who would destroy the credit of Daniel if they could, to allege that Daniel's prophecies were written in the days of the Maccabees. Then, on their own theory, they would still leave us these wonderful prophecies which the world saw fulfilled long after the days of the Maccabees, namely, the cutting off of Christ, and the destruction and desolation of Jerusalem for its sin in rejecting Him. If Daniel could foretell such seemingly incredible things as these, who can be perplexed by any predictions, however precise, in such a book as his?

But the point on which we would now dwell is, that Daniel himself conquered by suffering, and that the Messiah of Daniel conquered by suffering also, and that we likewise are thus taught how to conquer. Daniel bore a striking resemblance in certain respects to Christ Himself. He was a Prince of the House of Judah, and was a man of suffering and sorrow; he was an exile and a captive; he is called "Son of Man"⁶. He is also called a man greatly beloved, a *man of desire*; or (as it is literally) "a man of desires," or even, in the abstract, "desires"⁷, and thus may seem to be a type of Him Who is "the desire of all nations"⁸, the "dearly beloved Son," in Whom the Father is well pleased⁹. Daniel was like Christ in wisdom. "To be wiser than Daniel" was a proverb even in his own day¹⁰. He was like Christ in dutiful loyalty to Rulers who scorned and persecuted him¹¹. He was like Him in intercession¹². He was also like Christ in the manner of his suffering, and in its consequences. He was condemned on account of his reverence and obedience to God. The princes of Persia raged against him, as the rulers of Judah raged against Christ¹³. Daniel was cast into the pit or den of lions, so Christ is said by the Psalmist to be in the pit, and His soul to be among lions¹⁴. The prison house of Daniel was closed with a stone, sealed with the King's seal and the seals of his lords¹⁵; a stone was on the mouth of the grave of Christ, and it was sealed with the seal of the Chief Priests¹⁶. Daniel arose from that pit¹⁷ to honour and glory; so did Christ from the grave. After Daniel's resurrection, a decree went forth "to all people, nations, and languages that dwell in all the earth, Peace be multiplied unto you. I make a decree, That in every dominion of my kingdom men tremble and fear before the God of Daniel; for He is the living God, and steadfast for ever, and His kingdom that which shall not be destroyed"¹⁸. And after the Resurrection of Christ, a commission was given to the Apostles to preach the Gospel of peace to all nations¹⁹, and Christ promised to be with them even to the end of the world. After his deliverance from the den of lions "Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian." Here is a faint gleam of Christ's glory by suffering. Daniel is described as interceding for his people (like the great Intercessor Himself) and praying for their restoration. And while he was praying he was visited by Gabriel the Angel whose special function it appears to have been to bring messages of the Incarnation of Christ²⁰. And here we may remark, in passing, that the Book of Daniel, by what is called its *Angelo-phany*, or visions of angels (against which some have excepted as incredible) does a special work very appropriate to his office as Prophet of the latter days. It delivers a prophetic protest against that materializing philosophy, and purblind sciolism, and Sadducean scepticism, which are the bane of the present age, and it quickens the spiritual sight of the faithful in their communion with the unseen world, and trains them for the glorious

¹ ix. 25.

² See ii. 44, 45; vii. 13, 14, 26, 27.

³ ix. 24—26.

⁴ See on Haggai ii. 7; see Mal. iii. 1.

⁵ Porphyry was so much staggered by the exact coincidence of Daniel's prophecies with the events of history that he had no other alternative but to say, "Danielem non tam ventura prædixisse, quam narrasse præterita." A striking testimony to the prophecies of Daniel; as *S. Jerome* (Præfat. in Daniele) observes, "Quæ quia vidit Porphyrius completa, superatus historiae veritate in hanc prorupit calumniam, cujus impugnatio testimonium veritatis est."

⁶ Dan. viii. 17.

⁷ x. 11, 19.

⁸ See on Haggai ii. 7. "Daniel vir desideriorum portendit Christum desideratum omnibus gentibus" (*A Lapide*).

⁹ Matt. iii. 17; xvii. 5.

¹⁰ Ezek. xxviii. 3.

¹¹ Cp. Ezek. xiv. 20.

¹² The same word is used in both cases. See below, on vi. 6.

¹³ Ps. xxii. 21; lvii. 4, 6.

¹⁴ Dan. vi. 17.

¹⁵ Matt. xxviii. 26. See below, on Dan. vi. 17.

¹⁶ The Septuagint uses the same word *ἀδελφός* for both. See Ps. lxxxviii. 4, 6. Dan. vi. 7, 21; and for the *pit* also into which Jeremiah was cast, see above, the note on Jeremiah xxxvii. 16, and on xxxviii. 6, 13, his resemblance to Christ, pp. 93, 94.

¹⁷ vi. 25.

¹⁸ Matt. xxviii. 19, 20.

¹⁹ See ix. 21—26; and cp. Luke i. 19, 26.

appearance of Christ Himself, coming with myriads of Angels to Judgment, and for the blessed society of Angels hereafter, in the heavenly city of His everlasting kingdom.

Daniel, while praying, received a prophecy of the time of Christ's Coming, and of His Passion, and the consequent destruction of Jerusalem for its sins¹. Nor was this all. He had finally, in the third year of Cyrus (which was his last vision), a revelation of Christ². Christ displayed Himself as defending and succouring the Hebrew Nation against the Powers of darkness, which, by means of some in the Persian and Grecian monarchy³, thwarted and opposed them. Those Powers of darkness probably knew from the word of prophecy that the Son of God would come in human flesh to the City and Temple of Jerusalem, and therefore they endeavoured to hinder and frustrate their restoration. And in order that it might not be supposed that God ever forsakes His people, or that He does not heed the affairs of the world in times of confusion, Christ unravelled to Daniel the intricate windings and labyrinthine mazes of the future policy of the Kings of Syria and Egypt⁴, and revealed what the Hebrew Church would suffer under Antiochus Epiphanes, and also what the Christian Church would have to endure from the overflowings of Infidelity and Ungodliness in the latter days. He also declared that the sufferings of those future times of trial would be to the faithful a path and entrance to everlasting glory.

Christ vouchsafed these revelations to Daniel, in order that the Hebrew Church, having these prophecies in her hand, might not faint and falter in her day of trouble, and in order also that the Christian Church, studying diligently the words of her Divine Lord in the Book of Daniel, may look beyond the present distress to the future victory and everlasting bliss which will succeed it.

The last of Our Lord's eight beatitudes in the Sermon on the Mount is reserved for those who suffer for righteousness' sake. The position of that beatitude—the Octave—seems to be prophetic. The last beatitude looks forward to the last age of the Church, the age of suffering and of glory. The greatest blessing is reserved for the last. In that beatitude alone the word *blessed* occurs twice, to mark the special emphasis of that benediction; and the word *persecute* occurs three times—"Blessed are they that are *persecuted* for righteousness' sake; blessed are ye when men shall revile you and *persecute* you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for My Name sake; rejoice and be exceeding glad, for great is your reward in heaven; for so *persecuted* they the *prophets* that were before you⁵." Daniel the prophet, the man greatly beloved in the Old Testament, was a precursor of St. John, the beloved disciple and prophet of the New⁶. Both were "persecuted for righteousness' sake." Both were delivered by God. Daniel lived to see the decree for the restoration of the Temple at Jerusalem, to which in the fulness of time Christ came. St. John lived to see the building up of the Universal Church of Christ, in which He ever dwells, and the glories of the heavenly Jerusalem. Both had visions of Christ. The sequel and completion of the Book of Daniel is to be found in the Apocalypse of St. John. Both are examples to those who live in the latter days, and cheer them under persecution by the gleams of everlasting glory that will follow. Great is their reward in heaven.

"Go thy way till the end be, for thou shalt rest and stand in thy lot at the end of the days." These are the concluding words of the Book of Daniel, and they are addressed to all who like him, placed as he was in the midst of the temptations of an evil world, stand the trial of their faith with patience and charity, with self-denial and sanctity of life, with perfect trust and fervent prayer, and with holy boldness and courage, and unwavering reliance on the truth, the love, the righteousness, and omnipotence of God, and look forward from the turmoils of earth to the eternal peace of the Jerusalem that is above.

Lastly, well does S. Augustine say, "The World is our Book, in which we read what is foretold in the Book of God's Word⁷." The World's history authenticates that Word. According to Daniel's prophecies, the Babylonish kingdom was transferred to the Medes and Persians⁸; and the kingdom of the Medes and Persians was given to the King of Grecia⁹. According to Daniel's prophecy, the kingdom of Grecia was not continued after its first king, but was divided into four¹⁰ smaller kingdoms; according to his prophecy, these were absorbed into the fourth¹¹, or Roman, Empire. According to his prophecy, the kingdom of Christ then appeared in the world, and spread

¹ ix. 21–27.

² See x. 5. 16.

³ See below, *Prelim. Note* to chapters x.—xii.

⁴ x. 13. 20.

⁵ Matt. v. 10–12.

⁶ For the points of resemblance see the note on ix. 23.

⁷ "Liber noster est orbis terrarum; in eo lego completum quod in libro Dei promissum." S. Augustine, Epist. 162 ad Donatum.

⁸ ii. 39; v. 28.

¹⁰ viii. 8, 22; xi. 40.

⁹ ii. 39; viii. 21; xi. 3.

¹¹ ii. 4.

itself far and wide. According to Daniel's prophecy, Messiah the Prince was cut off¹, and made an atonement for sin. According to his prophecy, Jerusalem was made desolate for its guilt in cutting Him off. According to Daniel's prophecy, the Hebrew Nation suffered a fierce persecution under the King of Syria, Antiochus Ephiphanes, the time of whose² rise and whose actions are clearly foretold. According to Daniel's prophecy, the persecutor was suddenly destroyed³. According to Daniel's prophecy, a great spiritual corruption has shown itself in the Christian Church⁴. According to Daniel's prophecy, great trials and troubles have come, and are coming, on the nations. According to his prophecy, the Church of Christ, the Mighty King, the Merciful Saviour, the Everlasting Judge, is now beleaguered by enemies from within and without, not unlike those who assaulted the Hebrew Church in the days of Antiochus.

These things are written in capital letters on the pages of the world's history. Every eye may read them. What, therefore, shall we say? Since these prophecies of Daniel—so numerous, so various, so circumstantial, so minute⁵, and so marvellous—have been fulfilled, can it be supposed that the *other* prophecies of Daniel, which have not as yet been fulfilled, will not, in due time, be fulfilled also? Surely they will. The past fulfilment of the many prophecies is a pledge of the future fulfilment of the few. "That man," says St. Augustine⁶, "is a fool, who does not believe the Prophets in the few prophecies which remain to be fulfilled, when he sees so many of their prophecies to have been fulfilled already."

Especially are the prophecies of Daniel to be believed, which remain to be fulfilled, since he is expressly called "Daniel the Prophet"⁷ by Christ Himself, and since his prophetic veracity is thus avouched to us by Him Who is the Truth⁸, and since those few prophecies of Daniel which remain unfulfilled are reiterated by Christ⁹ Himself, and by the beloved disciple St. John in the Apocalypse¹⁰.

And what are these few, but most solemn, prophecies of Daniel, that still await their fulfilment? Those which foretell the second Advent of Christ, and the Resurrection of the dead, and the Universal Judgment to come, and the subjection of all things to Christ, and the everlasting glory of His saints; "I beheld till the thrones were set, and the Ancient of Days did sit. His throne was like the fiery flame, and His wheels as burning fire; a fiery stream issued and came forth before Him. Thousand thousands ministered unto Him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before Him; the Judgment was set, and the books were opened¹¹. I saw in the night visions, and behold One like the Son of Man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of Days, and they brought Him near before Him, and there was given Him dominion and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages should serve Him. His dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and His kingdom that which shall not be destroyed¹². And the saints of the Most High shall receive the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever¹³. The judgment shall sit, and the kingdom and dominion and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven shall be given to the people of the saints of the Most High, Whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey Him¹⁴." And again, "Many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament, and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever¹⁵."

May God give us all grace to meditate continually on these gracious promises. May He enable us to remain steadfast in the day of trial, that the words spoken to Daniel, the man greatly beloved, may be fulfilled in us also,—“Thou shalt rest, and stand in thy lot, at the end of the days¹⁶.”

C. LINCOLN.

RISEHOLME, LINCOLN,
Advent, 1870.

The most important Commentaries on the Book of Daniel are those of *S. Hippolytus* (collected by Lagarde, 1858), *S. Jerome*, *Theodoret*, *Rashi*, *Abarbanel*, *Maldonatus*, *Pintus*, *Pererius*, and *A. Lapide*, *Sanctius*, *Maldonatus*, *Luther*, *Calvin*, *Broughton*, *Willet*, *Calovius*, *C. B. Michaelis*, *W. Lowth*, *Venema*, *Hävernich*, *Kranichfeld*, *Kliefoth*, specified above, p. v; and the Lectures of *Caspari* and *Dr. Pusey*. May I be permitted to refer to my Sermons preached at Cambridge, in 1871, "On the Maccabees and the Church," as completing my exposition of the Book of Daniel?

¹ x. 24. 26.

² viii. 25.

³ viii. 23; xi. 21.

⁴ See on vii. 24—27.

⁵ Especially those in the tenth chapter, concerning the kings of Egypt and Syria; see the *Prelim. Note* to chapter x.

⁶ *S. Aug.*, in Psalm lxii.

⁷ Matt. xxiv. 15.

⁸ Matt. xxiv. 30; xxvi. 64. John v. 28.

⁹ Dan. vii. 9—14.

¹⁰ See on vii. 18.

¹¹ xiii. 2.

¹² John xiv. 6.

¹³ Rev. xx. 4. 12.

¹⁴ See vii. 13.

¹⁵ vii. 26.

¹⁶ Dan. xii. 13.

THE BOOK OF DANIEL.

I. ¹ IN the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah ^a came Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon unto Jerusalem, and besieged it. ² And the Lord gave Jehoiakim king of Judah into his hand, with ^b part of the vessels of the house of God: which he carried ^c into the land of Shinar to the house of his god; ^d and he brought the vessels into the treasure house of his god.

³ And the king spake unto Ashpenaz the master of his eunuchs, that he should bring ^e certain of the children of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the princes; ⁴ children ^e in whom *was* no blemish, but well favoured, and skilful in all wisdom, and cunning in knowledge, and understanding science, and such as *had* ability in them to stand in the king's palace, and ^f whom they might teach the learning and the tongue of the Chaldeans. ⁵ And the king

Before
CHRIST
about
607.

a 2 Kings 24. 1.
2 Chron. 36. 6.

b about
603;
Jer. 27. 19, 20.
c Gen. 10. 10.
& 11. 2.

d Isa. 47. 11.
Zech. 5. 11.

e 2 Chron. 36. 7.
* Foretold
2 Kings 20. 17, 18.

f Isa. 39. 7.
e See Lev. 24.
19, 20.

f Acts 7. 22.

Crit. I. 1. *In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah came Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon unto Jerusalem, and besieged it*] It has been alleged by some recent critics, that this statement is at variance with the facts as recorded in Jer. xxv. 1, where the expedition of Nebuchadnezzar is described as not having taken place before the fourth year of Jehoiakim; and where the fourth year of Jehoiakim is called the first year of Nebuchadnezzar.

But the statement here made is rather a proof of the genuineness of this book.

The author is writing from the point of view which a person like Daniel might take, who lived at Babylon; but Jeremiah writes from the point of view which a person would take who lived at Jerusalem. Nebuchadnezzar arrived at Jerusalem in the fourth year of Jehoiakim, but he set out on his expedition from Babylon in the previous year—the third of Jehoiakim. Cp. *Kranichfeld*, 21; *Keil*, 49.

Secondly, though it was not till the fourth year of Jehoiakim that Nebuchadnezzar actually succeeded to the throne of Babylon, yet he had been already associated in it with his father Nabopolassar, who was aged and infirm, and near his end. See note above, on Jeremiah xxv. 1; and *Berosus* in *Joseph. c. Apion* i. 19; and *Antiq. x. ii. 1*; and *Pusey*, p. 60; *Hengstenberg*, pp. 43—53, and 147. Nebuchadnezzar, acting for his father, would naturally be called “King of Babylon,” because he came from Babylon to Jerusalem with all royal power, and because he was afterwards known by that title; just as Sennacherib is called “King of Assyria,” when acting in a military expedition, for his father Sargon, whose successor on the Assyrian throne he afterwards was. See note above, on 2 Kings xviii. 13, and *Keil*, p. 53.

2. *the Lord gave Jehoiakim—into his hand*] The Prophet Daniel, writing at Babylon, declares that the victory of the Babylonians over the king and people of Jerusalem, and the taking away of the sacred vessels from the Temple, were not due to human power, but to the divine will of the Lord God of Israel (*S. Jerome*).

— *with part*] Literally, *and from the end*; from one end to the other, i. e., some vessels of all kinds. Others were brought afterwards to Babylon (2 Kings xxiv. 13; 2 Chron. xxxvi. 10).

— *of the vessels*] See above, on 2 Kings xxiv. 10—12; 2 Chron. xxxvi. 7—10; and on the subsequent restoration of them by Cyrus, see on Ezra i. 7.

— *into the land of Shinar*] Here is another evidence of the genuineness of this book. The term “land of Shinar” for Babylon,—a term used in Genesis x. 10; xi. 2; xiv. 1. Josh. vii. 21,—had, at this time, become antiquated to the Hebrews, and is only used by them writing in Palestine as a poetical phrase (see Isaiah xi. 11; Zech. v. 11, the only places where it occurs besides this, and those specified above); but it remained

indigenous in the country itself where Daniel lived (cp. *Hengst. 271*). The framers of the *Septuagint* thought it necessary to explain it to their readers by “*Babylon*.”

— *into the treasure house of his god*] So that it seemed that the god of Nebuchadnezzar had now conquered the God of Jerusalem: these vessels thus placed appeared to be trophies of their victory, as the Ark of God brought into the house of Dagon seemed to be a proof that Dagon had triumphed over Jehovah (1 Sam. v. 2). But in both cases, the things which appeared to be signs of the victory of the gods of the heathen, and of the defeat of the God of Israel, were made to be means of shame to the one, and of glory to the other.

3. *Ashpenaz*] The *Sept.* has *Abi-ezdri*.

— *the master of his eunuchs—the king's seed*] Thus the prophecy of Isaiah to Hezekiah, when he displayed his riches to the Babylonian ambassadors, was fulfilled; “Of thy sons, that shall issue from thee, which thou shalt beget, shall they take away, and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon” (Isaiah xxxix. 7).

But observe how, in Daniel's history, this punishment was mercifully overruled for good; how it was made subservient to the manifestation of God's glory, and the honour and welfare of the captives themselves. Compare the promise to faithful eunuchs and strangers in Isaiah lvi. 3 (and the note there) and in Jeremiah xxxviii. 7, 13, and the remarks there offered on the history of Ebedmelech, one of the eunuchs of the king's house at Jerusalem.

— *the princes*] Hebr. *partemim*, “phorthommin” (*Theodotion*). This word is of Oriental, perhaps Persian, origin; in the Pehlevi dialect, *pardom* signifies *first*; in Zend, *frathema*, in Sanscrit, *prathama* means *first* (*Gesen.* 694; *Euerst*, 1160). It occurs also in Esther i. 3 and vi. 9, and nowhere else.

4. *the learning*] Literally, *the writing* (cp. v. 17), the Aryan dialect and literature of the Chaldeans; this was probably the ordinary language which Daniel spoke in the court of Babylon (cp. *Pusey*, 33, 43), not the Aramaic, in which the wise men spoke to Nebuchadnezzar (ii. 4). Cp. Isaiah xxxvi. 11. *Ezra* iv. 7, and *Keil*, 62.

— *the Chaldeans*] It has been objected by some as improbable, that Daniel should have submitted to learn the language and literature of the Chaldeans. But Moses set the example, of whom it is said by St. Stephen that “he was learned” (i. e. was trained) “in all the wisdom of the Egyptians;” see Acts vii. 22, and the note there. *S. Jerome* well observes that they learnt it, not in order to adopt all that it contained, but to be able to form a judgment upon it, and to refute its errors: “Discent eâ mente doctrinam Chaldeorum, quâ Moyses omnem sapientiam Ægyptiorum didicerat, non ut sequantur, sed judicent.” Daniel walked unscathed in the fiery furnace of Heathen Literature, worship, and polity. That was his trial. Cp. *Pusey*, 421. See also the notes above, on 1 Kings iv. 30

Before
CHRIST
about
606.

† Heb. the wine
of his drink.

g Gen. 41. 46.

f Gen. 10. 8.

ver. 19.

h Gen. 41. 45.

2 Kings 21. 17.

i ch. 4. 8. & 5. 12.

x Deut. 32. 38.

Ezek. 4. 13.

Hos. 9. 3.

l See Gen. 39. 21.

Ps. 106. 46.

Prov. 16. 7.

† Heb. snider.

|| Or, term, of,

continuance?

|| Or, The

steward.

† Heb. of pulse.

† Heb. that we

may eat, &c.

appointed them a daily provision of the king's meat, and of † the wine which he drank: so nourishing them three years, that at the end thereof they might stand before the king.

6 Now among these were of the children of Judah, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishaël, and Azariah: 7 h unto whom the prince of the eunuchs gave names: i for he gave unto Daniel the name of Belteshazzar; and to Hananiah, of Shadrach; and to Mishaël, of Meshach; and to Azariah, of Abed-nego.

8 But Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself k with the portion of the king's meat, nor with the wine which he drank: therefore he requested of the prince of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself.

9 Now God had brought Daniel into favour and tender love with the prince of the eunuchs. 10 And the prince of the eunuchs said unto Daniel, I fear my lord the king, who hath appointed your meat and your drink: for why should he see your faces † worse liking than the children which are of your || sort? then shall ye make me endanger my head to the king.

11 Then said Daniel to || Melzar, whom the prince of the eunuchs had set over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishaël, and Azariah, 12 Prove thy servants, I beseech thee, ten days; and let them give us † pulse † to eat, and water to drink. 13 Then let our countenances be looked upon before thee, and the countenance of the children that eat of the portion of the king's meat: and as thou seest, deal with thy servants.

14 So he consented to them in this matter, and proved them ten days. 15 And at the end of ten days their countenances appeared fairer and fatter in flesh than all the children which did eat the portion of the king's meat. 16 Thus Melzar took away the portion of their meat, and the wine that they should drink; and gave them pulse.

and on Exod. iii. 22, with regard to the consecration of Science and Literature to the service of God and His Church.

The Chaldees were the depositories of the philosophy and learning of the East at that time. Cp. *Strabo* xvi. 1. *Plin.* H. N. vi. 21, on the celebrity of their schools and colleges; and see on Isa. xlvii. 10, speaking of Babylon, "Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, it hath perverted thee."

5. daily provision of the king's meat] According to the Eastern custom, the retainers of the Court were provided with food from the royal refectory (*Athen.* iv. 10). The term for "king's meat" is the Aryan word *path-bag*; which is supposed by some to mean "food of a father" (*Gesen.* 695). The Persian word *bag*, "food," Sanskrit *bhag*, seems to be the root of the Greek *phago*, "to eat," and *pat* is the root of *pater*, "father." In Sanskrit, *paiti* means "lord." Cp. *Fuerst*, 1163. Some suppose that *path* (in Zend) *paiti*, (Sanskrit), is only a preposition equivalent to "for," and that *path-bag* means "for food" (*Kranichfeld*).

— three years] See on ii. 1.

7. gave names] In token of subjection. Cp. 2 Kings xxiii. 34; xxiv. 17. So Joseph in Egypt received another name from Pharaoh the king. Gen. xli. 45.

— Daniel—Belteshazzar] His former name, *Daniel*, means, *God is my judge*. On the remarkable appropriateness of this name, see *Caspary*, p. 71, who well observes that of all Hebrew names none could have been better fitted to describe his character, and mission, and office, than the name *Daniel*. By means of Daniel, God judged the Heathen World, with its gods, its wisdom, and its power and pride: by him God showed their impotence, and declared that He would deliver His people from their grasp. By Daniel, God reveals the Universal Judgment to come (vii. 9—22), and the Resurrection from the dead (xii. 2). He displays the throne of Judgment, and the Books opened (vii. 10), and the Son of Man coming near to the Ancient of Days, attended with myriads of Angels, and all the Powers of this world judged by His Divine Sentence, and shows His Supreme Dominion over all. See vii. 9—11; cp. xii. 2. The latter name given to Daniel (*Beitshazzar*) signified probably, *Bel is the prince*. Nebuchadnezzar himself speaks of "Daniel, whose name is Belteshazzar, after the name of my god" (iv. 8). Daniel was probably about fourteen years of age at this time. Cp. *Pusey*, pp. 16, 17.

Such is often the condition of God's saints in this world. They receive heathen names, and are subject to heathen powers;

but their heart is unchanged. Their old names survive in their lives.

— Hananiah—Shadrach] The former means, *the Lord gave graciously*. The sense of the latter is not known; and this obscurity is in itself an argument for the genuineness of this book. If it had been written by a Hebrew in the days of Antiochus Epiphanes and the Maccabees (as some modern critics, following the sceptic Porphyry, have ventured to affirm), a name would have been specified which would have been intelligible to Hebrew readers.

— Mishaël—Meshach] The former means, *Who is as God?* *Meshach* has not been explained.

— Azariah—Abed-nego] The former name means, *The Lord helps*. The latter, *the servant of Nego or Nebo*, the Babylonish Deity (Isa. xlii. 1. *Caspary*, 74).

8. Daniel purposed—that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king's meat] Because it had been offered to idols (cp. Exod. xxxiv. 15. 1 Cor. x. 20), and because it had been killed with the blood (Lev. iii. 17; vii. 26; xvii. 10—14; xix. 26). The temptation to which the Hebrew exiles were exposed, of eating meat offered to idols, is evident from Hos. ix. 3, "They shall eat unclean things in Assyria;" and Ezek. iv. 13, 14, "The children of Israel shall eat their defiled bread among the Gentiles whither I shall drive them."

— wine] Offered in libation to idols. Cp. 1 Cor. viii. 10. 13. *Hengst.* 64.

9. God had brought Daniel] Daniel did not murmur against God, because he was a captive and an exile, but recognized God's working in all his afflictions, and received a blessing from them—as Joseph did in Egypt (Gen. xxxix. 4. 21). Cp. Ps. cvi. 46. God "made them to be pitied of all those that carried them away captive."

— tender love] Or compassion.

11. Melzar] Rather, *the overseer of wine*. Melzar is an official name, in the Aryan dialect, "præfectus vino" (*Gesen.* 479), like *Rabshakeh* at the Assyrian court. See on 2 Kings xviii. 17.

15. their countenances appeared fairer] It is not earthly food, but divine grace, which gives beauty (*S. Hippolytus*). By this immediate reward vouchsafed to their faith and obedience, God showed His presence with them, and gave them a pledge of His future help in coming struggles.

¹⁷ As for these four children, " God gave them " knowledge and skill in all learning and wisdom: and || Daniel had ° understanding in all visions and dreams. ¹⁸ Now at the end of the days that the king had said he should bring them in, then the prince of the eunuchs brought them in before Nebuchadnezzar. ¹⁹ And the king communed with them; and among them all was found none like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah: therefore ^p stood they before the king. ²⁰ ^q And in all matters of † wisdom and understanding, that the king inquired of them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and astrologers that were in all his realm.

²¹ ^r And Daniel continued even unto the first year of king Cyrus.

II. ¹ And in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar Nebuchadnezzar

of his people from the Babylonian captivity, though he did not die then. So till is used, Ps. 110. 1. & 112. 8.

Before
CHRIST
about
606.

in 1 Kings 3. 12.

James 1. 5, 17.

n Acts 7. 22.

|| Or, he made

Daniel under-

stand.

o Num. 12. 6.

2 Chron. 26. 5.

ch. 5. 11, 12, 14.

& 10. 1.

603.

p Gen. 41. 46.

ver. 5.

q 1 Kings 10. 1.

† Heb. wisdom of

understanding.

r ch. 6. 28. & 10. 1.

He lived to see

that glorious

time of the return

¹⁷. God gave them knowledge and skill in all learning] Literally, in every book or writing, or in all letters, or literature (Theod. Sept.). See above, v. 4. The Author of this book, Daniel himself, ascribes all his intellectual and spiritual endowment and attainments, not to his Chaldean instructors (v. 4), nor to his own ability, but to God. Cp. ii. 18—23, 28.

²⁰. magicians and astrologers] See on ii. 2.

²¹. Daniel continued even unto the first year of king Cyrus] That is, he continued steadfast and unshaken to the fall of Babylon, and to the end of the Babylonian Captivity, and the issuing of the edict of Cyrus for the return of the Jews to Jerusalem and for the rebuilding of the Temple.

In other words, Daniel lived during the whole seventy years of the Captivity; from the fourth year of Jehoiakim to the first year of Cyrus. See above, on Jer. xxv. 1, 11; and on 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22; and on Ezra, i. 1, 2. It is not implied here that Daniel did not continue longer than this; we know that he did (see x. 1); but his continuance during the whole of that long and eventful period is here asserted.

For a similar use of the Hebrew word, signifying until, see on Gen. xlix. 10, and compare the notes on Matt. i. 25, and Jer. i. 3, where it is said that Jeremiah prophesied unto the end of the eleventh year of Zedekiah, and unto the carrying away of Jerusalem captive; that is, till that critical catastrophe; but we know from Jeremiah himself that he continued to prophesy in Egypt after that event.

Daniel's reputation for wisdom and sanctity became proverbial in the East; and he is therefore classed with Noah and Job by Ezekiel xiv. 14. 20, who says to the King of Tyre, "Art thou wiser than Daniel?" (xxviii. 3).

The following excellent remarks on the modest statement in the text here ("Daniel continued even unto the first year of King Cyrus"), are from Dr. Pusey's Lectures on Daniel, Lect. I., p. 20:—

"Daniel continued even unto the first year of king Cyrus are the simple words; but what a volume of tried faithfulness is unrolled by them! Amid all the intrigues, indigenous, at all times, in dynasties of Oriental despotism, where intrigue, too, rolls round so surely and so suddenly on its author's head; amid all the envy towards a foreign captive in high office as a king's councillor; amid all the trouble, incidental to the insanity of the king, or to the murder of two of his successors, in that whole critical period for his people, Daniel continued. We should not have had any statement of his faithfulness, but for the conspiracy against his life under the new Median dynasty which knew not those past years (vi. 4). The president and Satraps sought in vain to find any occasion against him concerning the kingdom; forasmuch as he was faithful, neither was any error or fault found in him. The picture is the greater, because the lines which mark it are so few. They are a few simple touches of truth. It is the fact which is so eloquent. It is not the language of panegyric to say, Daniel continued even unto the first year of king Cyrus; Daniel was in the gate of the king; this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian (i. 21; ii. 49; vi. 28). The force of the words is not drawn out; but, as perseverance is the one final touchstone of man, so these scattered notices combine in a grand outline of one, an alien, a captive, of that misused class who are proverbially the intriguers, favourites, pests of Oriental courts, who revenge on man their ill-treatment at the hand of man; yet, himself, in uniform integrity, outliving envy, jealousy, dynasties; surviving in untarnished incorruptible greatness the seventy years of the Captivity; honoured during the forty-three years of Nebuchadnezzar's reign;

doing the king's business (viii. 27) under the insolent and sensual boy Belshazzar; owned by the conquering Medo-Persians; the stay, doubtless, and human protector of his people during those long years of exile; probably commissioned to write the decree of Cyrus which gave leave for that long longed-for restoration of his people, whose re-entrance into their land, like Moses of old, he was not to share. Deeds are more eloquent than words. Such undeviating integrity, beyond the ordinary life of man, in a worshipper of the One God, in the most dissolute and degraded of the merchant-cities of old, first Minister in the first of the World-Monarchies, was in itself a great fulfilment of the purpose of God in converting the chastisement of His people into the riches of the Gentiles" (Dr. Pusey).

PRELIMINARY NOTE TO THE SECOND AND THIRD CHAPTERS.
ON DANIEL'S SUPERNATURAL WISDOM, AND ON THE
MIRACLES IN THIS BOOK.

It has been alleged by some recent critics as an objection to the truth of the following chapter, which relates Daniel's interpretation of Nebuchadnezzar's dream, and to the veracity of the third chapter, which records the deliverance of the three children from the fiery furnace, that they display an incredible amount of the marvellous, and a profuse waste of thaumaturgical power.

But this allegation may be easily refuted.

Nebuchadnezzar was the greatest Monarch of the Eastern World. The people of the God of Israel were now in captivity. Their Temple and City had been destroyed, and the sacred Vessels of the Temple had been carried away by Nebuchadnezzar from the sanctuary of the Lord, and had been placed by him in the house of his god (i. 2).

It might therefore be supposed by the king and princes of Babylon, and by the various nations subject to his sway, that he had vanquished the Lord God of Israel, and that the God of the Hebrews was inferior in power to the idol deities, Bel, Merodach and Nebo,—who were worshipped at Babylon.

The People of God also, the Hebrew nation, now captives and exiles, might be tempted to despair of help from the God whom their fathers had worshipped at Jerusalem, which was now lying in ruins, and to lapse into the idolatries which met their eye on every side in Babylon and Assyria.

Almighty God, in His great goodness, interposed to rescue Nebuchadnezzar and his subjects, and to deliver His chosen people, from these dangerous errors.

He sent a dream to Nebuchadnezzar, which none of the wise men of Babylon,—the votaries of her deities,—were able to discover and to interpret; but which was discovered and interpreted by Daniel, the servant of the Lord. To Daniel the wise men of Babylon owed the preservation of their lives from destruction; Daniel claimed none of the honour of the revelation for himself, but ascribed it all to the Lord God of Israel.

The subject matter of Nebuchadnezzar's dream concerned the four great successive Empires of this world; and the revelation declared that all earthly Powers are subservient to the God of Daniel and of Jerusalem.

Thus God by Daniel's instrumentality manifested His own glory. He brought Nebuchadnezzar to own His Omniscience and Universal Sovereignty (ii. 47); and He assured the Hebrew Nation of His power and will to defend them, if they would serve and obey Him.

As S. Jerome well says: "Vidit rex somnium futurorum, ut, interpretante sancto quod viderat, Deus glorificaretur, et captivorum, Deoque in captivitate servientium, sit grandis solatium."

Before
CHRIST
603.

a Gen. 41. 8.
ch. 4. 5.
b Esth. 6. 1.
ch. 6. 18.
c Gen. 41. 8.
Ex. 7. 11. ch. 5. 7.

dreamed dreams, ^a wherewith his spirit was troubled, and ^b his sleep brake from him.

² ^c Then the king commanded to call the magicians, and the astrologers, and the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans, for to shew the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king.

³ And the king said unto them, I have dreamed a dream, and my spirit was troubled to know the dream.

⁴ Then spake the Chaldeans to the king in Syriack, ^d O king, live for ever: tell thy servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation.

⁵ The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, The thing is gone from me: if ye will not make known unto me the dream, with the interpretation thereof,

d 1 Kings 1. 31.
ch. 3. 9. & 5. 10.
& 6. 6. 21.

He also showed that all earthly kingdoms are transitory, and are subordinate and introductory to an everlasting kingdom which will be supreme over all—the kingdom of CHRIST.

In the deliverance of the three children from the fiery furnace, into which they were cast for refusing to worship the idol of Nebuchadnezzar, God made His own supremacy still more manifest; because this deliverance was effected in the presence of great multitudes gathered from all parts of the immense Babylonish Empire, who would carry the news of the deliverance, and of Nebuchadnezzar's edict grounded upon it, into all parts of the Eastern world, and thus would become missionaries of Jehovah.

There was, therefore, "a dignus vindice nodus," an adequate reason, for such miraculous interposition as that which is described in these two chapters. (See further below, the remarks at the beginning of the following chapter.)

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S DREAM—THE FOUR GREAT WORLDLY EMPIRES IN SUCCESSION, FOLLOWED BY THE EVERLASTING KINGDOM OF CHRIST.

CH. II. 1. *And*] This copula, *and*, links this chapter, containing what is marvellous, to the plain historical statement in the foregoing chapter.

— *in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar*] In the former chapter (v. 1) it is said, that "Nebuchadnezzar the king came to Jerusalem, and besieged it in the third year of Jehoiakim," and that he afterwards gave command concerning captive children from Jerusalem, among whom Daniel was one (vv. 3—6), that they should be nourished *three years*, that at the end thereof they might stand before the king (v. 5). And now Nebuchadnezzar is related to have dreamed in his *second year*, and Daniel stands before him and interprets it.

How (it has been asked) are these statements to be reconciled?

The answer is as follows:—

In the present passage, Daniel, writing at Babylon, follows the Babylonish reckoning, i. e. he is speaking of the years of the actual *reign* of Nebuchadnezzar—alone, after the death of his father Nabopolassar. In the former passage (i. 1), he calls Nebuchadnezzar "King of Babylon" by anticipation (see the note there), because he was acting as king in his father's stead, and because he was his immediate successor. Cp. *Hengst.* p. 50—53. 272. *Pusey*, 398. *Keil*, 51, 55.

Daniel was sent a captive from Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar *before* his actual accession to the throne; and the end of the three years of Daniel's captivity coincided with the *second* year of Nebuchadnezzar's actual sovereignty at Babylon.

There is therefore no contradiction here; but rather an argument in favour of the genuineness of the book. The author writes as a person would write who lived, not in Palestine, but at Babylon; and therefore was not a Hebrew living at Jerusalem (as some have alleged), but resident in Chaldea.

— *dreamed dreams*] The plural (dreams) marks the vastness of the subject.

— *his sleep brake from him*] Literally, *his sleep was away from him*; on account of the terror caused by the dream.

2. *the magicians*] Hebr. *chartummin*. See above, on Gen. xli. 8. 24. Cp. *Exod.* vii. 11. 22; viii. 7, where the word is applied to the magicians of Egypt, who had much in common with those of Babylon. See *Diod. Sic.* ii. 29—31. Cp. *Pusey*, 421. *Hengst.* 278, who observes that the classification here of the Chaldean wise men shows intimate acquaintance with the subject.

— *the astrologers*] Rather, enchanters and exorcists by incantation (*Gesen.* 87. *Hengst.* 278. *Kranich.* 73). Hebr. *ash-sháphim*. It occurs only in Daniel (i. 20; ii. 2. 10. 27; iv. 7;

v. 7. 15). On the enchantments of Babylon, see *Isaiah* xlvii. 9. 12.

— *sorcerers*] Or *wizards*; Hebr. *mecashphim*. See *Exod.* vii. 11; xxii. 18 (where it is rendered by *witch*, as in *Deut.* xviii. 10, and *Malachi* iii. 5).

— *Chaldeans*] Hebr. *casdim*, here signifying a particular class—the priests of Bel, among the magi (*Herod.* i. 181. *Diod. Sic.* ii. 24. *Hävernicks*, *Dan.* p. 108. *Pusey*, 420).

Here we have four classes of "wise men" of Babylon, which were combined together in a College under a president (*Diod. Sic.* ii. 29; below, v. 48). In the history of Belshazzar's feast (v. 7. 11), the *mecashphim* are omitted and *gazerin*, or "fati-dici," added—casters of nativities, framers of horoscopes (cp. *Isaiah* xlvii. 13). Cp. v. 27, and iv. 7.

What Daniel here means to declare, is, that the representatives of all the various classes of priests, diviners, exorcists, enchanters, soothsayers, &c., of Babylon were summoned and brought together to interpret the dream, and were unable to do it; but what all the collective wisdom of Babylon could not do, was done by himself alone, by inspiration of God.

4. *in Syriack*] Or Aramaic, the popular language of Babylon. Cp. *Xenophon*, *Cyrop.* vii. 5. 31. They spake in the popular language, so that all who were present might hear and understand the justice of their cause.

THE CHALDEE PORTION OF THE BOOK OF DANIEL.

With the following words the Chaldee portion of Daniel begins, and is continued to the end of the seventh chapter, as *S. Jerome* says: "Ab hoc loco usque ad visionem anni tertii regis Balshasar, quam Daniel vidit in Susis, Hebraicis quidem literis, sed lingua scribuntur Chaldaicæ, quam vocat hic Syriacæ." This portion is written in Chaldee, the language of the great Nation of the heathen world at that time, in order that the Babylonians might know and adore the majesty of the Lord God of Israel (the nation subdued by them, not by their own power, but as God's ministers), as manifested in the events here recorded. Cp. on Jer. x. 11, and *Pusey*, pp. 10. 57.

The portion of the Book of Daniel which concerns the great Empires of the World (chap. ii. 4, to the end of chap. vii.), is written in the language of the most potent monarchy of the Ancient World—the Chaldee. But that which concerns the history of the Hebrew people (chap. i.) and the future destinies of the Hebrew and Christian Churches (chaps. viii., ix., x., xi., xii.), is written in the sacred language—the Hebrew. Cp. *Caspari*, 130—132. This book begins and closes with Hebrew. Thus it bears on its face a contrast between the World and the Church. It shows that both the World and the Church are under divine government, and that both exist for God's glory; but that the World, and all the glory of the World, will pass away, and that the Church of God will stand for ever and ever.

— *O king, live for ever*] Cp. iii. 9; v. 10; vi. 6. 21. *Neh.* ii. 3.

5. *The thing is gone from me*] This rendering is questionable. It is found in *Sept. Theodot. Vulg.* and *Arabie*, and so *S. Hippolytus* and others; but it is doubtful whether the word *azdá*, which is rendered, "*is gone from me*," can bear the sense, *escaped me*, and is forgotten. The meaning seems rather to be, *The word, or command, is gone forth from me* and cannot be revoked (*Gesen.* 25. *Leengerke*, *Hävernicks*). It is rendered by others, *The word is firmly established by me* (*Targum, Winer, Hengst.*), or is *unalterable* (*Fuerst*), and by others (*Delitzsch, Kranich, Kliefoth, Keil*), *the word is made known, or promulgated by me*.

It is not said—nor is it probable—that the dream *had*

ye shall be *† cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made a dunghill. ⁶ But if ye shew the dream, and the interpretation thereof, ye shall receive of me gifts and || rewards and great honour: therefore shew me the dream, and the interpretation thereof.

⁷ They answered again and said, Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation of it.

⁸ The king answered and said, I know of certainty that ye would † gain the time, because ye see the thing is gone from me. ⁹ But if ye will not make known unto me the dream, ⁹ *there is but* one decree for you: for ye have prepared lying and corrupt words to speak before me, till the time be changed: therefore tell me the dream, and I shall know that ye can shew me the interpretation thereof.

¹⁰ The Chaldeans answered before the king, and said, There is not a man upon the earth that can shew the king's matter: therefore *there is* no king, lord, nor ruler, *that* asked such things at any magician, or astrologer, or Chaldean.

¹¹ And *it is* a rare thing that the king requireth, and there is none other that can shew it before the king, ¹¹ except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh.

¹² For this cause the king was angry and very furious, and commanded to destroy all the wise *men* of Babylon. ¹³ And the decree went forth that the wise *men* should be slain; and they sought Daniel and his fellows to be slain.

¹⁴ Then Daniel † answered with counsel and wisdom to Arioch the || † captain of the king's guard, which was gone forth to slay the wise *men* of Babylon: ¹⁵ he answered and said to Arioch the king's captain, Why is the decree so hasty from the king?

Then Arioch made the thing known to Daniel.

Before
CHRIST
603.

e 2 Kings 10. 27.
Ezra 6. 11.
ch. 3. 29.
† Chald.
made pieces.
† ch. 5. 16.
† Or, fee,
ch. 5. 17. ver. 48.

† Chald. buy,
Eph. 5. 16.

g Esth. 4. 11.

h ver 28.
ch. 5. 11.

† Chald.
returned.
|| Or, chief
marshal.

† Chald.
chief of the exe-
cutioners, or,
slaughter-men,
Gen. 37. 36.

gone from the king, i. e. that he had forgotten it. Cp. *Kranichen*, 78—80. What Nebuchadnezzar did, was this—he tried the wise men of Babylon by two tests; first, whether they could tell him his dream; secondly, whether they could tell him the meaning of it. If they told him his dream correctly, he would feel sure that the interpretation also which they gave of it was correct, as he himself says, “Tell me the dream, and I shall know that ye can show me the interpretation thereof” (v. 9).

What Cræsus, the king of Lydia, did, about fifty years afterward, was very like this device of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, and may perhaps have been suggested by it. Cræsus tested the different Oracles of Asia and Greece by sending messengers to inquire of them what he himself was doing at a particular time; and he resolved to be guided with regard to a campaign he was meditating against Cyrus by the advice of that particular Oracle which gave the best answer to this inquiry (*Herod.* i. 46—50).

Observe also the difference between the case of Cræsus and Nebuchadnezzar. Cræsus (as *Herodotus* relates, i. 54), being betrayed by faith in heathen Oracles (with which Satan deceived the world), fell a victim to his credulity, and lost his kingdom, which was destroyed by Cyrus. But Nebuchadnezzar was led by faith in Daniel, and in Daniel's God, to proclaim the truth to his vast empire; and his reign was prolonged by God to more than forty years, as a reward for his confession of the truth.

—ye shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made a dunghill] These modes of punishment, mentioned again in iii. 29, prevailed among the Babylonians. As to cutting in pieces, cp. *Ezek.* xvi. 40. The conversion of houses into dunghills was an easy thing at Babylon, where the houses were for the most part built of clay burnt in the sun (*Hengst.* 272). Some persons have explained the words in the same sense as those in 2 Kings x. 27, where Baal's house is made a draught-house (*Havernick*, 59, 60. *Keil*).

The writer of this book shows his knowledge and discrimination by specifying another mode of punishment when he is speaking of what was inflicted by the *Medo-Persians*—viz., the casting into a den of lions (vi. 7).

6. rewards] Chald. *nebizbah* (cp. v. 17), from the verb *bazben*, to ask for (*Gesen.*); others derive it from an Aryan root, *nuvāzan*, a gift (*Bohlen*). It may be connected with the Zend *bakhsh* and Turkish *bachshish*, a gift. Cp. *Fuerst*, 896.

8. ye would gain the time] Literally, ye would buy the opportunity, *καὶ πὺν ἐξαγοπῆτε* (*Sept.*), *tempus redimitis* (*Fulg.*). Compare on Col. iv. 5, *καὶ πὺν ἐξαγοραῖσθενοι*, “redeeming the time,” or rather “buying back for yourselves the opportunity.” Ye see that the decree is gone forth from me, and that I am resolved to execute it immediately, and ye would gain the opportunity of rescuing yourselves out of my hands. There is also probably a reference to the notion of the Chaldeans, as among the Persians (see *Esther* iii. 7), that some days were more lucky than others. The day then present was an ill-omened one, and they would gain one, more propitious to their own destiny. Nebuchadnezzar spake these words with vehement indignation; see v. 12, “The king was angry and very furious.”

9. one decree] One and the same, which cannot be changed, —for you all.

10. There is not a man upon the earth that can shew the king's matter] Thus the wise men of Babylon, speaking to the King of Babylon, prepared the way for the manifestation of the glory of Daniel and Daniel's God, who performed that very thing which they declared impossible for any man on the earth to do.

11. a rare thing] A heavy and hard thing.

13. Daniel and his fellows to be slain] Daniel had been delivered to the care of the wise men, that he might learn the literature of the Chaldeans (i. 4), as Moses was learned in the wisdom of the Egyptians (*Acts* vii. 22). But neither Moses was tainted by the superstitions of the wise men of Egypt, nor Daniel with those of Babylon. Here was their trial and their victory. They remained faithful among idolaters.

14. Arioch] A name occurring in *Gen.* xiv. 1, as that of a king of Ellasar, associated with kings of Elam and Shinar: it is probably derived from *Ari*, a lion.

—captain of the king's guard] Literally, chief of the executioners. Cp. *Gen.* xxxvii. 36; xxxix. 1; xl. 3. 2 Kings xxv. 8. *Jer.* xxxix. 9. *Gesen.* 317.

Before
CHRIST
603.

¹⁶ Then Daniel went in, and desired of the king that he would give him time, and that he would shew the king the interpretation.

¹⁷ Then Daniel went to his house, and made the thing known to Hananiah, Mishaël, and Azariah, his companions: ¹⁸ that they would desire mercies † of the God of heaven concerning this secret; ‖ that Daniel and his fellows should not perish with the rest of the wise *men* of Babylon.

¹⁹ Then was the secret revealed unto Daniel ^k in a night vision.

Then Daniel blessed the God of heaven. ²⁰ Daniel answered and said,

¹ Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever :

^m For wisdom and might are his :

²¹ And he changeth ⁿ the times and the seasons :

^o He removeth kings, and setteth up kings :

^p He giveth wisdom unto the wise,

And knowledge to them that know understanding :

²² ^q He revealeth the deep and secret things :

^r He knoweth what *is* in the darkness,

And ^s the light dwelleth with him.

²³ I thank thee, and praise thee, O thou God of my fathers,

Who hast given me wisdom and might,

And hast made known unto me now what we ^t desired of thee :

For thou hast *now* made known unto us the king's matter.

²⁴ Therefore Daniel went in unto Arioch, whom the king had ordained to destroy the wise *men* of Babylon: he went and said thus unto him; Destroy not the wise *men* of Babylon: bring me in before the king, and I will shew unto the king the interpretation.

²⁵ Then Arioch brought in Daniel before the king in haste, and said thus unto him, † I have found a man of the † captives of Judah, that will make known unto the king the interpretation.

²⁶ The king answered and said to Daniel, whose name *was* Belteshazzar, Art thou able to make known unto me the dream which I have seen, and the interpretation thereof?

²⁷ Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said, The secret which the king hath demanded cannot the wise *men*, the astrologers, the magicians, the soothsayers, shew unto the king;

²⁸ ^u But there is a God in heaven that revealeth secrets, and † maketh known to the king Nebuchadnezzar ^x what shall be in the latter days.

i Matt. 18. 19.
j C. add from
be ore G. d.
|| Or, that they
should not destroy
Daniel, &c.
k Num. 12. 6.
Joh 33. 15, 16.

l Ps. 113. 2.
A 115. 1.
m Jer. 32. 19.
n 1 Chron. 29. 30.
Es h. . 13.
ch 7. 25. & 11. 6.
o Job 1. 18.
Ps. 75. 6, 7.
Jer. 27. 5.
ch. 4. 17.
p James 1. 5.

q Job 12. 22.
Ps. 25. 14.
ver. 28, 29.
r Ps. 139. 11, 12.
Heb. 4. 13.
s ch. 5. 11, 11.
James 1. 17.

t ver. 15.

1 Chald.
That I have
found.
† Chald. children
of the captivity of
Judah.

u Gen. 40. 8.
& 41. 16.
ver 45, 47.
Amos 4. 13.
† Chald. hath made known.

x Gen. 49. 1.

18. *they would desire mercies of the God of heaven*] This name, "the God of heaven," was specially given to Jehovah after the Babylonish Captivity. His *earthly* Temple was in ruins; but He was the God of *heaven*, and supreme over all the host of heaven who were worshipped at Babylon. See above, on 2 Chron. xxxvi. 23, p. 293. It occurs five times in the present chapter. Cp. Ezra i. 2; v. 11, 12; vi. 9, 10; vii. 12, 21, 23; Neh. i. 4, 5; ii. 4, 20. Daniel took good care that no one should impute the praise of his wisdom to himself, but that it should be ascribed to the God of Israel, Whom he calls "the God of heaven." He not only prayed for illumination from God, but desired others to unite with him in prayer for it; and thus also he showed his modesty and charity, "ne solus de suo merito videretur presumere" (*S. Jerome*). And when he had received the revelation, he blessed God openly for it (v. 20), and publicly declared to Nebuchadnezzar that all his own knowledge and wisdom were from "the God of heaven" (v. 28—30).

20. *Blessed be the name of God for ever and ever*] Observe the change of style here to the noble Hebrew rhythm and cadence, like that in the grand thanksgiving hymn of David in 1 Chron.

xxix. 10, "Blessed be thou, Lord God of Israel, our Father, for ever and ever," which seems to have been in Daniel's mind at this time. Cp. Ps. lxxii. 18; evi. 48.

Here is another proof of the gemminess of this book. The style varies with the occasion. There is the simple historical narrative in Chaldee; the impassioned language of prayer in chap. ix. 15—19; the prophetic style concerning the seventy weeks, ix. 24—27; and here are jubilant utterances like those of the Psalms; affording evidence, when taken together, that the writer was intimate with the Chaldee learning and literature, and yet that his mind was imbued with the spirit of Hebrew prophecy and psalmody—in a word, just such a personage as Daniel himself was. Cp. *Pusey*, 37.

21. *times and the seasons*] Cp. Acts i. 7. 1 Thess. v. 1, and below, vii. 25.

27. *soothsayers*] Literally the *deciders* or *determiners* (Chald. *gāzerin*, from *gāzar*, to cut), who, from the position of the stars and other modes of divination, professed to determine the fate of individuals and nations (*Gesen.* 166).

28. *in the latter days*] The days of the Messiah, which are described in *ver.* 44, 45 as the consummation to which all God's

Thy dream, and the visions of thy head upon thy bed, are these; ²⁹ as for thee, O king, thy thoughts † came *into thy mind* upon thy bed, what should come to pass hereafter: [†] and he that revealeth secrets maketh known to thee what shall come to pass.

³⁰ ^z But as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for *any* wisdom that I have more than any living, || but for *their* sakes that shall make known the interpretation to the king, ^a and that thou mightest know the thoughts of thy heart.

³¹ Thou, O king, † sawest, and behold a great image. This great image, whose brightness *was* excellent, stood before thee; and the form thereof *was* terrible. ³² ^b This image's head *was* of fine gold, his breast and his arms of silver, his belly and his || thighs of brass, ³³ his legs of iron, his feet part of iron and part of clay.

³⁴ Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out || ^c without hands, which smote the image upon his feet *that were* of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces. ³⁵ Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became ^d like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that ^e no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image ^f became a great mountain, ^g and filled the whole earth.

³⁶ This *is* the dream; and we will tell the interpretation thereof before the king.

³⁷ ^h Thou, O king, *art* a king of kings: ⁱ for the God of heaven hath given thee a kingdom, power, and strength, and glory. ³⁸ ^k And wheresoever the children of men dwell, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heaven hath he given into thine hand, and hath made thee ruler over them all. ^l Thou *art* this head of gold.

³⁹ And after thee shall arise ^m another kingdom ⁿ inferior to thee;

dispensations, in the government of the world, eventually tend. See on Gen. xlix. 1. Num. xxiv. 14. Deut. iv. 30. Hos. iii. 5, below, x. 14.

— *the visions of thy head upon thy bed, are these*] When thou wast lying asleep, with thy head pillowed on thy bed, God gave thee visions of the future, even to the end of time. Thus He showed His Omniscience and Omnipotence. Thou, in thy waking hours, when going forth at the head of thine armies, hast designed and executed great things, and hast meditated on future conquests; but what are all the power and intelligence which thou hast when thou art waking, in comparison with what God will do without thee, when thou wilt long have ceased to breathe, and what He has revealed to thee when thou wert asleep!

³⁰. *as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for any wisdom that I have*] Joseph in Egypt is (as it were) reproduced in Daniel in Babylon. We see the same temperance and abstinence in both; the same spiritual wisdom and the same modesty and humility in both; and the same faith in God and thankfulness to Him (see Gen. xl. 8; xli. 16), and the same deference to earthly authority, while they themselves were ministers of the Most High. In Joseph the slave, and in Daniel the captive, God put to shame all the wisdom and power of heathen Egypt and Babylon; Daniel, in his kindness, saved the lives of the wise men of Babylon, and he here apologizes for them. It is no fault of theirs, he says, that they cannot—nor is it any merit of mine that I can—reveal the future. It is not for man to do what belongs only to God.

All the saints of God are eminent in humility and in reverence. Moses was the meekest of men (Num. xii. 3). By the grace of God, says the great Apostle, I am what I am (1 Cor. xv. 10).

THE QUADRIFORM IMAGE, REPRESENTING THE FOUR GREAT EMPIRES.

31. *a great image*] Rather, *one great image*, representing all

Before
CHRIST
603.

† Chald.
came up.
y ver. 22, & 28.

z So Gen. 41. 16
Acts 3. 12.

|| Or, but for the
intent that the in-
terpretation may
be made known
to the king.
a ver. 47.

† Chald.
wast seeing.

b See ver. 38, &c.

|| Or, sides.

|| Or, which was
not in hands: as
ver. 45.

c ch. 8. 25.

Zech. 4. 6.

2 Cor. 5. 1.

Heb. 9. 24.

d Ps. 1. 4.

Hos. 13. 3.

e Ps. 37. 10, 36.

f Isa. 2. 2, 3.

g Ps. 80. 9.

h Ezra 7. 12.

Isa. 47. 5.

Jer. 27. 6, 7.

Ezek. 26. 7.

Hos. 8. 10.

i Ezra 1. 2.

k ch. 4. 21, 22.

Jer. 27. 6.

l ver. 32.

m ch. 5. 28, 31.
n ver. 32.

the four successive Earthly Monarchies; *Isleem (image)*, the same word as in the following chapter (iii. 1, &c.) signifies literally, a shadow, then a likeness (Gesen. 710).

The words are literally, *One image great (Theodot. Sept. Symm.)*. A great image, having unity; but having four parts, following in order, and thus denoting variety and succession; and (as we shall see) foreshadowing those four great Empires which prepared the way, in a continuous series, for the fifth Empire, the Everlasting Kingdom of CHRIST. These same four Empires (as was rightly affirmed by the ancient Expositors, S. Hippolytus, Eusebius, Apollinarius, S. Jerome, and others) are represented again by the four beasts below in vii. 3—7, and by the four chariots in Zech. vi. 1.

32—35. *This image's head*] For the meaning of these verses, see below on ver. 37—45.

34. *without hands*] Without human agency, i.e. by Divine power. See v. 44. Cp. viii. 25. Job xxxiv. 20. Lam. iv. 6.

35. *chaff*] Ps. i. 4. Hos. xiii. 3.

36. *we will tell*] Observe Daniel's modesty. He says, "We will tell," not "I will tell."

37. *Thou—a king of kings*] So called in Ezek. xxvi. 7.

37, 38. *The God of heaven hath given thee a kingdom—the beasts of the field—hath he given into thine hand*] As Jeremiah declared (xxvii. 6, 7; xxviii. 14). Cp. Ezek. xxvi. 7. Thy kingdom is not from thyself; it is from God.

38. *Thou art this head of gold*] Ostenditur primum regnum Babylonium, auro pretiosissimo comparatum (S. Jerome).

39. *another kingdom inferior to thee*] The Medo-Persian, represented by the two arms of silver (S. Jerome, S. Hippolytus, Josephus, Antiq. x. 10. 4).

— *inferior to thee*] The Medo-Persian Monarchy, not united, organized, compacted, and consolidated within, like thine; and not so capable of resisting and repelling attacks from without; as was proved by its sudden fall beneath the arms of Alexander the Great (Ktiefoth, Hofmann, Keil, Pusey, 61. 136).

Before
CHRIST
603.

And another third kingdom of brass, which shall bear rule over all the earth.

o ch. 7. 7, 23.

⁴⁰ And ^o the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things: and as iron that breaketh all these, shall it break in pieces and bruise.

p ver. 33.

⁴¹ And whereas thou sawest ^p the feet and toes, part of potters' clay, and part of iron, the kingdom shall be divided; but there shall be in it of the strength of the iron, forasmuch as thou sawest the iron mixed with miry clay.

|| Or, brittle.

⁴² And as the toes of the feet were part of iron, and part of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong, and partly || broken. ⁴³ And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave † one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay.

† Chald. this
with this.
† Chald.
their days.
q ver. 28.

⁴⁴ And in † the days of these kings ^a shall the God of heaven set up a king-

— [third kingdom of brass] The Greek monarchy. *Alexandria*; "significant regnum Macedonum, successorumque Alexandri" (S. Jerome; and so S. Hippolytus, and most modern Expositors).

^{40.} the fourth kingdom shall be strong as iron] Rather, a fourth kingdom. The Roman; "Regnum quantum perspicue pertinet ad Romanos;" S. Jerome, and so SS. Hippolytus, Irenæus, and Chrysostom, and all ancient and most modern Expositors, Jewish and Christian. As Joseph Mede says, "The Roman Empire to be the fourth kingdom of Daniel, was believed by the Church of Israel before our Saviour's time; and this belief was received by the disciples of the Apostles and the whole Christian Church for 300 years."

— shall it break in pieces and bruise] By its military conquests; as described by the Roman poet:—

"Tu regere imperio populos, Romane, memento;
Hæ tibi erunt artes, pacisque imponere morem,
Parcere subjectis, et debellare superbis."

(Virg. Æn. vi. 852.)

This is shown in the remarkable words of Dionys. Halicarn. (Antiq. Rom. i. 2, 3; see Bp. Newton, p. 197), where he compares the Roman Empire with the preceding great Empires of the world, and proves that it was far more extensive and dominant than any before it.

The literal translation of the words is, "and as iron that breaketh, so shall it bruise and break all these." The fourth Empire, the Roman, by its extensive conquests in Europe, Asia and Africa, bruised and brake all the nations, which still retained the elements of the preceding dynasties—the Assyrian, Medo-Persian, and Greek.

^{41.} the kingdom shall be divided] The Prophet here declares—says S. Irenæus, writing in the second century after Christ (v. 26)—that the Roman Empire will be divided into several kingdoms; and S. Jerome—writing in the fourth century—observes, that in his own age this prophecy had partly been already fulfilled, in the distraction of the Roman Empire by intestine feuds and civil wars; and it was further accomplished in the division into the Eastern and Western Empires, and eventually by their subdivision into many minor States.

— there shall be in it of the strength of the iron] The kingdoms of Europe which have branched off from the division of the Roman Empire, have retained some of its strength, impaired, however, by internal weakness and dis-union, and by the admixture of the "miry clay" of democracy, hurtful to stability and continuance. In France alone there have been eleven different political constitutions in the last seventy-seven years, i. e., between 1793 and 1870, and while this note is passing through the press (Sep. 4, 1870), there is now a twelfth.

^{42.} Broken] brittle.

^{43.} they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another] They shall endeavour to unite themselves by means of marriages contracted from motives of worldly interest and state policy (such as the union of Pompey with Julia, and of Antony with Octavia); but having nothing sacred in them, and therefore not blessed by God, and not imparting any real strength to those who contract them.

There is a reference in this phrase to the connexion of the sons of God with the daughters of men in Gen. vi. 2; and to such

"strange marriages" as those described in Ezra ix. 2, and Neh. xiii. 23; and also to the Levitical law which forbade the sowing together of diverse seeds (Dent. xxii. 9). And there is a contrast between the weakness of the human seed of this fourth earthly kingdom, the most famous of all, with the strength of the Divine Seed in the next following kingdom of heaven—the Church, the Bride of Christ; united to Him in mystical wedlock; of which it is said that "He shall see His seed, He shall prolong His days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in His hand" (Isaiah liii. 10). This marriage of the Lamb will be consummated in heaven, and its fruit will endure for ever.

THE STONE CUT OUT WITHOUT HANDS.

^{44.} in the days of these kings] That is, while the series is still continued, of these four successive Kingdoms—the Prophet does not speak of Kings personally, but of Kingdoms (*Kliefoth*, 95)—and before it has come to an end. This must evidently mean, in the decline of the fourth or last kingdom; to which a reference has just been made (Cp. *Kranich*, 109). It is predicted of these kingdoms, that they would not be contemporaneous, but succeed one another, as in the human figure to which they are compared, there is first the head, then the breast and arms, then the belly and thighs, then the legs and toes. "Here," says Davison (on Prophecy, 356) "is represented a clear statement of the rise of four kingdoms, not contemporaneous, but successive; and diverse from one another, and kingdoms of conquest." And yet all the kingdoms have a certain coexistence, because one flowed into the next, and the strength of the one was absorbed into the other; and therefore the Stone, which was cut out without hands, is said to be in the days of these Kings; and since the Stone is mentioned after the rise of the fourth, and strikes the feet of the image, therefore it must have appeared after the fourth; i. e. after the rise of the Roman Empire. No kingdom has ever had any pretence to universality after the fourth Empire, save the Kingdom of CHRIST, which is further described by attributes belonging to it and to it alone.

THE KINGDOM OF THE GOD OF HEAVEN.

— a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed] "The kingdom," as distinguished from all others, "the kingdom of heaven," "the kingdom of God," terms adopted by Christ Himself from this passage of Daniel, and applied to His own kingdom—the Church. See Matt. iv. 17, 23; v. 3; vi. 10; viii. 11; xiii. 11, 19, 24, 31, 33, 38, 41, 47, 52; xvi. 19; xviii. 4; xxii. 2; xxv. 1. The Christian Church is ever praying for its establishment, saying, "Thy Kingdom come."

Our Blessed Lord, in adopting this phrase from the Prophet Daniel, gives a tacit approval to the interpretation which had been given to this prophecy, and which was prevalent in the Hebrew Church in His days. "Ask the Jews, What is meant by the Stone? they answer as one man, *The Messias*. Go on to the Image which the Stone smote on the toes, and they are unanimous in saying, *It is the Roman Empire*. Demand further concerning the kingdom of the Mountain, and they agree that it is the kingdom of the *Messiah*, that shall extend itself and subdue all kingdoms, and be everlasting. The people, thus instructed, were prepared to hear from John the Baptist, and from our Blessed Lord, speaking of 'the kingdom of heaven.'" (Bp. Chandler, i. 100, who quotes various Rabbinical authorities in support of these statements).

dom, ' which shall never be destroyed: and the † kingdom shall not be left to other people, * *but* it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.

⁴⁵ ' Forasmuch as thou sawest that the stone was cut out of the mountain || without hands, and that it brake in pieces the iron, the brass, the clay, the silver, and the gold; the great God hath made known to the king what shall come to pass † hereafter: and the dream *is* certain, and the interpretation thereof sure.

⁴⁶ " Then the king Nebuchadnezzar fell upon his face, and worshipped Daniel, and commanded that they should offer an oblation * and sweet odours unto him. ⁴⁷ The king answered unto Daniel, and said, Of a truth *it is*, that your God *is* a God of gods, and a Lord of kings, ^y and a revealer of secrets, ^y seeing thou couldst reveal this secret.

⁴⁸ Then the king made Daniel a great man, ^z and gave him many great gifts, ^z and made him ruler over the whole province of Babylon, and ^a chief of the governors over all the wise *men* of Babylon.

⁴⁹ Then Daniel requested of the king, ^b and he set Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, over the affairs of the province of Babylon: but Daniel ^c *sat* in the gate of the king.

III. ¹ Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, whose height *was*

Before
CHRIST
603.
r ch. 4. 3, 34.
& 6, 26 &
7. 14, 27.
Mic. 4. 7.
Luke 1. 32, 33.
† Chald. *kingdom*
thereof.
s Ps. 2. 9.
Isa. 60. 12.
1 Cor. 15. 24.
† Isa. 28. 16.
ver. 35.
|| Or, *which was*
not in hands.
† Chald.
after this.
u See Acts 10.
25. & 14. 13.
& 28. 6.
x Ezra 6. 10.

y ver. 28.

z ver. 6.

a ch. 1. 9. & 5. 11.

b ch. 3. 12.

c Esth. 2. 19, 21.
& 3. 2.

about
589.

— *it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever*] This prophecy has been already fulfilled in part. The Gospel of Christ has cast down the strongholds of Pagan dynasties (2 Cor. x. 5), and eventually the Church of Christ will destroy all earthly Powers that oppose it (Isa. lx. 12). It will do this, not by its own might, but by His. It will be "a burdensome Stone," to its enemies (Zech. xii. 3), by virtue of His Power, Who describes Himself as the Stone which breaks all that fall upon it, and which will grind to powder all upon whom it falls; Matt. xxi. 44, and cp. à *Lapide* here; our blessed Lord uses the remarkable word *ἀκμήσει* there, the same word as is used in the Greek version of Theodotion (made after the Christian era) of the present passage of Daniel. Against this kingdom the gates of hell shall not prevail (Matt. xvi. 18); and it shall exist for eternity. "The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdom of the Lord and of His Christ, and He shall reign for ever and ever, King of kings and Lord of lords (Rev. xi. 15). Cp. below, vii. 14. 27.

⁴⁵ *the stone was cut out—without hands*] That is, without human help. Our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ calls Himself by this title—"a stone;" see Matt. xxi. 42. 44. Cp. 1 Pet. ii. 4. 7; and above, on Isa. xxviii. 16. Zech. iii. 9. He is this Stone cut out without hands; for He was not born by human generation, but by operation of the Holy Ghost (S. Irenæus, iii. 28; v. 26; S. Justin Martyr, Dialog. c. Tryphon, §§ 70 and 76; and so S. Jerome, here; S. Augustine, tract. 9, in Joann.). He is the Rock on which the Church—the Kingdom of Heaven—is built (see on Matt. xvi. 18); and He has become a great Mountain, and breaks all that resist Him (cp. Ps. cx. 1. 2), and fills the earth (S. Jerome). Christ is the Stone Who was cut out without hands, and Who will destroy all earthly kingdoms, and break them in pieces like a potter's vessel (Ps. ii. 9), and establish His eternal kingdom at the Resurrection of the just (S. Irenæus, v. 26. Cp. Tertullian, c. Marcion. iv. 35; Prosper Aquitan. de Promiss. ii. 33).

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S CONFESSION.

⁴⁶—⁴⁹. *Nebuchadnezzar fell upon his face, and worshipped Daniel—sat in the gate of the king*] Nebuchadnezzar worshipped Daniel according to the Oriental use of prostration (1 Sam. xx. 41. 2 Sam. xiv. 14). But the act was something more than that; even an act of adoration of Daniel's God. The second verb here used, *segid*, is the same as in iii. 5, and is rendered *worship* ten times in the third and fourth chapters. Cp. the use of *sagad* in Isa. xlv. 15. 17. 19; xlv. 6.

Daniel allowed this act, as an act of homage, not to himself, for he had disclaimed all honour to himself (v. 23), but to his God; he allowed the oblation (or meat-offering) and sweet odours (or incense) to be offered as a public testimony from the

greatest Monarch of the world to the Omniscience and Omnipotence of the Lord God of Israel. As the king himself declared, "*Your God is a God of gods, and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing thou*" (His servant) "couldst reveal this secret."

As the elevation of Joseph in Egypt by Pharaoh, and that of Mordecai by Alasuerus in Persia, were public declarations of God's majesty to those kingdoms, so the ascription of glory by Nebuchadnezzar to the Lord God of Israel was like a royal proclamation of His divine attributes, which were made more permanently manifest to the Eastern world by the elevation of Daniel to "be ruler of the whole province of Babylon, and chief of the governors over all the wise men of Babylon;" (whence we may explain the reference in Ezekiel xxviii. 3 to the far-famed wisdom of Daniel); and by the display of Daniel's influence with the king, in the promotion of his three friends Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego; and by Daniel's position as chief minister, "sitting in the gate of the king." Cp. Esther ii. 19. 21; iii. 2.

PRELIMINARY NOTE TO CHAPTER III.

ON THE MIRACULOUS AGENCY IN THE BOOK OF DANIEL.

The following chapter displays the first of the miracles recorded in this Book; and suggests the duty of examining the objections which have been raised by some critics in recent times against its veracity. It is alleged (says *Hengstenberg*) that "We find in Daniel an aimless profusion of miracles. Of what use was it to Nebuchadnezzar to know who would be his successors, or to be acquainted with the revolutions that were to take place afterwards in his monarchy? Was it worth such a manifold variety of miracles to satisfy his political curiosity? What was the object of making known to Belshazzar, by a writing, "which nobody but Daniel could read, that the Medes and Persians were to be masters of his capital?" (*Bertholdt*, Comm. i. 22; *Griesinger*, p. 49; *Kirms*, p. 11.)

"Undoubtedly it is the existence of an aim worthy of God, that distinguishes the miracles of Scripture from the heathen prodigies; and the genuineness of the Book of Daniel would fare badly, if such an aim could not be pointed out in the miracles contained in it. But we need not here have recourse to conjectures and possibilities; the Book itself gives us distinct and express explanations concerning the objects of the miracles. 'The aim of the narratives in the Book of Daniel' (observes *Griesinger*, p. 81) 'is not hidden: that Jehovah is mightier than all the gods of the heathen; that He alone determines the destinies of the kingdoms of the world; that those who in wicked pride exalt themselves above Jehovah, and afflict His beloved people, are not allowed by Him to go unpunished; this is constantly repeated, not merely as occasion might call for

Before
CHRIST
about
580.

threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof six cubits: he set it up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon.

it, but designedly.' Let a person read carefully through the first six chapters, and he will find in every single miraculous occurrence this object distinctly stated. After Daniel, for instance, has told and interpreted to Nebuchadnezzar his dream, Nebuchadnezzar in astonishment acknowledges (ii. 46) that the God of the Jews is a God above all gods, a Lord above all kings, who reveals secrets. In chap. iii. Nebuchadnezzar,—when he had (v. 15) arrogantly defied the God of Israel, and God had, by the miraculous deliverance of his worshippers, vindicated His honour against the idols,—praises Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, because they would not worship any god but their own God; and prohibits all his subjects from blaspheming the God of Israel, because there is no other god who can deliver as He can.

"In regard to the miracle of the writing on the wall, it is expressly said (chap. v. 21) that it was wrought to manifest the Omnipotence of the God whom Belshazzar, in his rash insolence, had outraged at an idolatrous feast, and compared disparagingly with the idols.

"In Daniel's deliverance from the lions' den, Darius the Mede sees an evidence of the Omnipotence of the God of Israel, and issues a command that all his subjects shall fear and reverence the God of Israel (vi. 25-27).

"But the question may be further asked, Whether, in the time of Daniel, the attainment of this object, the manifestation of the Omnipotence of the God of Israel before the heathen kings and nations, was of such importance that the means employed exhibit no disproportion to the end.

"This question can only be answered in the affirmative by all who acknowledge the divine origin of Revealed Religion in general, and have a corresponding apprehension of the sublimity of the aims to be realized by it; and for the following reasons—

"1. The people of the covenant, being carried away into captivity, into the midst of idolatrous people, were exposed in a far greater degree to the temptation of apostatizing, which, even previously in their fatherland, they had not been able to resist. The wholesome influence which had been secured by their living together under the institutions of religion, and by its central point, the Temple, was gone. According to the ideas of the ancient World, the thought pressed upon them, that the derision of the heathen—who inferred from the impotency of the people of Israel the impotency of their God—was well founded. Even the better sort, who were mindful of the repeated declarations of the Hebrew Prophets, and acknowledged that the cause lay, not in the impotency of God, but in the corruption of the people, could not tell how to understand it that God had not, "for His name's sake," protected His people from total ruin. The hope of the promised deliverance found nothing on which to fasten, in the visible appearance of things.

"Such being their state of mind, it was certainly most fitting (if the maintenance of the true religion among the people of the covenant, the necessary condition of the appearance of the Messiah, was of any importance), that the weakness of their faith should be assisted even by sensible means of support, and that the Omnipotence of the true God should be made known in a striking manner in what was actually visible; so that the elevation of Daniel by these miraculous events to the highest dignities in the heathen court, might serve as a sign and a pledge of the approaching exaltation of the whole people. This reason is stated by *S. Jerome*:—"Quod quidem et in Joseph apud Pharaonem et Ægyptium factum legimus, et in Mardocheo apud Asserum: ut in utraque gente haberent captivi et peregrinantes Judei solatia, videntes hominem gentis sue Ægyptiorum esse principem vel Chaldaeorum" (*Hengstl.*).

To these remarks may be added those of *Dr. Pusey* (On Daniel, Lect. vii. p. 450).

"Some have objected to 'the objectless prodigality of miracles (in the Book of Daniel); which, as miracles, are improbable, and rest on incorrect statements.' The 'prodigality' of miracles of power, as distinct from the miracle of superhuman knowledge, consists in this, that in seventy years, *three* miracles are recorded—the deliverance of Daniel's three friends in the furnace, of Daniel himself in the lion's den, and the miraculous handwriting in the midst of the idolatrous feast. 'Objectless' they can only seem to those to whom all revelation of God seems to be objectless. It was a grand theatre. On the one side was the World-Monarchy, irresistible, conquering, as the heathen thought, the God of the vanquished. On the other, a handful of the worshippers of the One only God, captives, scattered, with no visible centre of unity, without organization or power to resist, save their indomitable faith, inwardly upheld by God,

outwardly strengthened by the very calamities which almost ended their national existence; for they were the fulfilment of His Word, in Whom they believed. Thrice, during the seventy years, human Power put itself forth against the Faith; twice in edicts which would, if obeyed, have extinguished the true faith on earth; once in direct insult to God. Faith, as we know, 'quenched the violence of fire,' and 'stopped the mouths of lions' (Heb. xi. 33, 34). In all three cases, the assault was signally rolled back; the Faith was triumphant in the face of all the representatives of the Power and Intelligence of the Empire: in all, the Truth of the One God was proclaimed by those who had assailed it. Unbelief, while it remains such, must deny all true miracles and all superhuman prophecy. But, if honest, it dare not designate as 'objectless,' miracles which decided the cause of Truth on such battlefields" (*Dr. Pusey*).

THE GOLDEN IMAGE.

CH. III. 1. *Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold*] The purpose for which this image was made and set up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon, was political. This appears from the fact that the king assembled the civil officers of his empire to be present at its inauguration. The idea of forming it might have been suggested by his vision of the *image*, in which he himself, as the Sovereign of the East, was represented as the "*head of gold*" (ii. 38). The same word, *tsélem*, for *image*, is used in both chapters.

Nebuchadnezzar intended to claim homage for himself by setting up this image, and by ordering all to worship it. The erection of the image, and the command to all to fall down and worship it, on pain of death if they disobeyed the order, was an apotheosis of himself. The divinization of the Monarch passed into the usages of the Persians, and from thence to the Macedonians, Syrians (witness the title "Theos" annexed to the name of their kings), and Romans. Cp. *Pusey*, 440. *S. Hippolytus* says, "The King, being elated in his heart by the vision of the head of gold, made an image in resemblance of it in order that he himself might be adored by all." And *S. Jerome* says unhesitatingly, "Nabuchodonosor statuum sibi fieri jubet, ut ipse adoretur in statuâ;" and so *Theodoret*, *Pocrius*, *Maldonatus*, and *Pintus*, and *Corn. à Lapide*, "Patet statuum hanc non fuisse Belis, vel aliorum deorum Babyloniorum, sed ipsius Nabuchodonosoris." And *M. François Lenormant* (in his *Manuel d'Histoire Ancienne de l'Orient*, i. 237) says of Nebuchadnezzar, that he claimed (as his inscriptions show) to be a son of the god Merodach, "Il se crut un dieu, et il voulut que chacun se prosternât devant sa propre statue."

Perhaps a prejudice had been created in the minds of the Babylonians against Nebuchadnezzar on account of the honour he had paid to Daniel the Hebrew captive, and to Daniel's God—the deity of an enslaved and despised people. The Chaldean King may have been even suspected of having deserted the national faith and worship, for a foreign creed; and he may have incurred the jealousy and suspicion of his subjects, especially of the Chaldean wise men, the soothsayers, wizards, and astrologers, who saw themselves eclipsed by Daniel; and the King may have desired to dissipate this prejudice, and to conciliate his people by a claim of divine honour for himself.

If this was the case, then the accusation and condemnation of these three Hebrew captives who had been "set over the affairs of the province of Babylon" (v. 12), and their miraculous deliverance from the fiery furnace, were more remarkable; because God thereby frustrated Nebuchadnezzar's intention, and vindicated His own honour, and made Nebuchadnezzar's purpose of self-deification to be the occasion of manifesting more clearly His own divine Supremacy. See on v. 12.

BABYLON AND PAPAL ROME.

This history is a specimen of God's dealings with mankind in every age. We may see it reproduced in these last days. It has been shown already in the notes in this commentary, that the history of the great City and Empire of Babylon foreshadows that of Papal Rome. See above on Isaiah xiv. xvi. xvii. Jeremiah l. li. Habakkuk ii. and below. Rev. xiii. and xvii. It is not improbable, that the recent great gathering of the spiritual officers of the vast empire of the western Babylon—Papal Rome—to do homage to the Roman Pontiff, who, on the promulgation of the dogma of his own personal Infallibility, amid a storm of thunder and lightning, on July 18, 1870, in the presence of assembled multitudes, with the sound of jubilant music, has, as it were, set up a golden image of himself to be

² Then Nebuchadnezzar the king sent to gather together the princes, the governors, and the captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, to come to the dedication of the image which Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

³ Then the princes, the governors, and captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces, were gathered together unto the dedication of the image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up; and they stood before the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up.

⁴ Then an herald cried † aloud, To you † it is commanded, ^a O people, † Chald. with might.
nations, and languages, ⁵ that at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, † Chald. they command.
a ch. 4. 1. & 6. 25.

adored by all, may be made an occasion of humbling his pride and impairing his power, and of displaying more clearly to the world the outraged majesty of the Most High. The very day of the promulgation of that dogma was signalized by the breaking out of a terrible war in Europe, which has already had the effect of drawing off the troops of France, the protectress of Rome; and that promulgation has also been followed by the rejection of the Papal Concordat by Austria.

Some who carefully read this portion of Scripture, and endeavour to “discern the signs of the times,” will hardly fail to compare the great assembly of rulers from all parts of the empire to worship the golden image—probably of himself (see on v. 1), which Nebuchadnezzar the King of Babylon set up, with the Council recently convened to the Vatican from all parts of Christendom by the mighty Potentate of the mystical Babylon.

Rome is called *Babylon* by the Holy Spirit in the Apocalypse (see below, on Rev. xiii.). Nebuchadnezzar called himself the “supreme Lord,” “*Vicar King*” of heaven (see his own remarkable words, quoted above in the notes on Isa. xiv. 14. 21, and note, on Isa. xlvii. 5); and the Roman Pontiff calls himself “Ruler of the World,” “Rector Orbis,” and claims to be God’s Vicar on Earth (see notes on Rev. xiii. 14, xvii. pp. 249—252). He is a *Vicar King*. He has now set up an image of himself to be worshipped by all (cp. the note below, on the words “*idol shepherd*” of Zechariah xi. 17). He threatens all with the fiery furnace of hell who will not fall down and worship the golden image which he has set up. Whosoever will not acknowledge the Pontiff-King to be infallible, “let him be anathema,” were his words, uttered in the church of St. Peter at Rome on July 18, 1870. But doubtless there will be many Shadrachs, Meshachs, and Abed-negos who will refuse to adore. His fires touch them not. One like the Son of God walks by their side. The proud Potentate of the Western Babylon will be humbled in the day of his pride (iv. 30); and in the hour of its revelry, Babylon will fall. Cp. below, v. 1—30.)

— an image of gold.] Not of solid gold, but covered over with gold, as was the “golden altar” of incense.

— height was threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof six cubits.] This image did not represent a human form in its integrity; the height would have been out of all proportion to its breadth, for a height of sixty cubits would have required a breadth of more than ten cubits, to be symmetrical. But it was probably a colossal pillar with a human head at the top of it; such as was not uncommon in ancient Oriental sculpture and even in Greek Art (Münter and K. O. Müller, in *Hengst*. p. 79. *Pusey*, 441).

This peculiar form of the image—a pillar with a human head—is in harmony with what has been already suggested, that the making of this image was suggested by the image seen by Nebuchadnezzar in his dream, and that it was intended to serve for his own glorification. Daniel, in interpreting that dream, had said, “Thou art this head of gold” (ii. 38). Nebuchadnezzar would have no desire to represent the other parts of that visionary image; rather he would try to forget them—he was concerned only with the head of gold, and his purpose probably was to exalt that, and to perpetuate it—if he could.

S. Irenæus remarks on the numbers 6 and 60 in this image, and takes occasion to compare them with the number 666 in the Apocalypse (see below on Rev. xiii. 18, p. 235). The number six in Holy Scripture has an ominous character. See the note there, and on 1 Kings x. 14; Ezra ii. 13.

— plain of Dura.] Probably on the lofty table-land which still bears the name of *Dura*, to the E.S.E. of Babylon. At a place called *Mokattab*, there still remains a large square pedestal of brick, which is supposed by some to have been the base of the Colossus of Nebuchadnezzar (*Oppert*, *Keil*).

2. the princes, the governors, and the captains, the judges, the treasurers, the counsellors, the sheriffs, and all the rulers of the provinces.] This minute specification of the different grades and classes of civil officers, and the repetition of the catalogue in v. 2, is designed to show emphatically that Nebuchadnezzar had an important political purpose to serve in gathering them together on the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon, to the inauguration of the golden image that he had set up. See above, on v. 1.

This specification also affords an additional proof of the genuineness of this book. There are seven classes of civil officers here specified; and the precise distinction, and the names assigned to each, show intimate acquaintance with the organization of the Babylonish government and the system of its administration; such as few persons could have (especially such as lived at Jerusalem three hundred years afterwards, as some modern critics imagine its author to have done), but such as would be possessed by one who was in a position like that which Daniel is represented as filling in that Empire.

The seven classes are:—

1. *Achashdarpennyaya*, a word derived from *Khshatra*, an old Persian term (whence the modern *Shah*) for *satrap*; and *pavan* in *Zend* a *guardian*. It occurs three times in this chapter and six times in chapter vi., and is always translated *princes* (cp. *Gesen*. 34; *Keil*, 101).

2. *Sigenayya*, from the old Persian *sakana*, to command; it occurs in ii. 48, three times in this chapter; once in chap. vi. v. 7, and is rendered *governors*.

3. *Pachardthá*, from the old Persian word for *governor*, *Nehem*. v. 14. 18. *Hag. i.* 1. 14. It is always rendered *captains*, its radical meaning seems to be, one who stands at the side of another (*Max Müller*).

4. *Adargazerayya*, the superior judges; from *adar*, dignity, and *gazar*, to decide. It is always translated *judges*.

5. *Gedábrayya*, an Aryan word from *gedabar*, with the same meaning as *gizebar* (perhaps connected with *gaza*, a treasure), a chief treasurer.

6. *Dethabrayya*, the Persian *databara*, a guardian of law.

7. *Tipethayya*, pronouncers of legal sentences or verdicts.

On these official designations, see *Pfeiffer*, *Dubna*, p. 422; *Hengst*. 280, who comments on “the exact knowledge which the writer shows of the political constitution of the Chaldeans;” and *Pusey*, 38, 409 and 460, 566—569, with *Max Müller’s* analysis of these words, and *Kranich*. 143—146, and *Keil*, 100.

4. O people, nations, and languages.] We are here reminded of the mystical Babylon of the Apocalypse, which claims sovereignty over all “kindreds, and tongues, and nations” (Rev. xiii. 7), and reigns over “peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues” (Rev. xvii. 15), and commands them to fall down and worship the image which she has set up (Rev. xiii. 8. 12. 14. 15, where the words to make an image and worship the image occur as here).

5. at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psalter, dulcimer, and all kinds of music.] Here is another confirmation of the writer’s claims to credibility, on account of his intimate acquaintance with Babylonish usages; and though some recent critics have disputed that claim, on the ground that some of the instruments here mentioned are of Greek origin, it remains unshaken.

The Babylonians were much addicted to music, vocal and instrumental, in social life and in religious ceremonies. See *Isaiah* xiv. 11. *Ps.* cxxxvii. 3. *Herod.* i. 191. *Ctesias* in *Athen.* xii. 530. *Curtius*, v. 3. *Rawlinson*, *Anc. Monarch.* iii. 451.

The instruments here specified are six:—
1. *Karná*, the horn (*keren*, *képas*, *cornu*).

Before
CHRIST
about
550.
|| Or, singing.
† Chald.
symphony.
b Jer. 29, 22.
Rev. 13. 15.

flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, || † dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king hath set up: 6 and whoso falleth not down and worshippeth shall the same hour ^b be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace.

c ch. 6. 12.

7 Therefore at that time, when all the people heard the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and all kinds of musick, all the people, the nations, and the languages, fell down and worshipped the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

d ch. 2. 4. & 3. 10.
e ch. 2. 6, 21.

8 Wherefore at that time certain Chaldeans ^c came near, and accused the Jews. 9 They spake and said to the king Nebuchadnezzar, ^d O king, live for ever. 10 Thou, O king, hast made a decree, that every man that shall hear the sound of the cornet, flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, shall fall down and worship the golden image: 11 and whoso falleth not down and worshippeth, *that* he should be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace.

e ch. 2. 49.

12 ^e There are certain Jews whom thou hast set over the affairs of the province of Babylon, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego; these men, O king, † have not regarded thee: they serve not thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.

† Chald. have set no regard upon thee.

13 Then Nebuchadnezzar in *his* rage and fury commanded to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego. Then they brought these men before the king.

|| Or, of purpose, as Ex. 21. 13.

14 Nebuchadnezzar spake and said unto them, *Is it* || true, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, do not ye serve my gods, nor worship the golden image which I have set up?

15 Now if ye be ready that at what time ye hear the sound of the cornet,

2. *Mashrokhāh*, the flute, connected with *sharak*, to pipe; the syrinx, or paupipe.
3. *Kithrōs*, the cithara (guitar, or harp).
4. *Sabca*, an original Semitic word, appearing in the Greek *σαμβύκη*, Latin *sambuca*, a four-stringed instrument with shrill tone (*Athen.* iv. 175; xiv. 633—637). "*Sambucam citius caloni aptaveris alto*" (*Persius*, v. 55).
5. *Psalterin*, the Greek and Latin *psaltery*, like a harp, but distinguished from the *cithara*, in that the *cithara* had strings *above* the sounding-board, and the psaltery had strings *below* it (*Augustine*, in Ps. xxxiii. and xlii.). Such harps are found in Egyptian and Assyrian monuments (*Rosellini, Layard*). Cp. *Rawlinson*, iii. 452.
6. *Samphoniyah*, supposed by some to be the Greek and Latin *symphonia*, and to be the Italian *sampogna*, or bagpipe. Cp. the word *siphon*; but there is no certain instance in which the word *symphonia* is used in Greek or Latin literature for a musical instrument. See *Pusey*, 29. The supposed Greek etymology is not established: the word may be of Aramaic origin (*Meyer, Hävernick; Hengst.* pp. 11, 12; *Pusey*, 29). But even if the word be Greek, then, if we consider the extensive commerce of Babylon (Isa. xliii. 14. Ezek. xvi. 17. *Pusey*, 25), and its love of music, we need not be surprised that it should have imported musical instruments from Asia Minor, and even from Greece, and that the names of those instruments should have been introduced with them. See the remarks of *Hengst.* pp. 11—16. *Kliefoth*, 116.
6. *the same hour*] The division of the day into twelve *hours* was received by the Babylonians, and passed from them into Greece (*Herod.* ii. 109).
— *be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace*] This punishment—the burning of men alive in an oven—was peculiar to the Babylonians. Cp. Ezek. xvi. 41; xxiii. 25. Jer. xxix. 22. *Michaelis de poenis capitalibus*, § 23. *Hengst.* 272. *Pusey*, 459. When the kingdom passed into the hands of Persians, another mode of punishment—characteristic of them—succeeded, that of casting men alive into a den of lions (vi. 7). The knowledge of the author is evinced by his discrimination between the two: and here is another evidence of the genuineness of the book.
8. *certain Chaldeans—accused the Jews*] The Chaldeans

were jealous of the honour and promotion granted by the King to Daniel and his three friends, as were the presidents under Darius (vi. 4), and they eagerly seized this opportunity of working their ruin. "There are certain Jews whom thou hast set over the affairs of the province of Babylon." They do *not* mention *Daniel*, nor specify any *names* at first, "They came near and accused the *Jews*;" and when they saw that Nebuchadnezzar's wrath was kindled, then they proceeded further, and mentioned their *names* (v. 14), and charged them, first, with personal ingratitude to the King who had advanced them, and then with impiety to the gods, from whom the kings of Babylon were supposed to be sprung. These men whom thou hast preferred to us thy loyal subjects, and on whom thou hast lavished thy bounties, they regard not thee nor thy gods. This is the return which they make for thy favours!
12. *Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego*] These Chaldeans do not mention Daniel; they began their attack with the weaker, but if they had succeeded there, they would have aimed at higher prey, and have accused Daniel also.
In the time of Darius, the presidents attacked Daniel, because his services had been rendered to a former dynasty.
— *they serve not [thy gods]* The Babylonians and Assyrians exacted from the nations, which they conquered, submission to their own gods. It is wholly a mistake to imagine, as some have done, that they were tolerant in this matter. See *Pusey*, 414; and *Kranichen*, 151.
— *nor worship the golden image*] There are two distinct charges against the three friends; they would not serve Nebuchadnezzar's gods (v. 14), *nor* the image of gold (v. 18). Therefore the worship of the golden image was a *different* thing from the worship of Nebuchadnezzar's gods; it was probably the worship of *himself*. See above, on v. 1, and below, v. 14 and v. 18, where the same distinction is observed. This has been already observed by *St. Jerome*, "Manifestè probatur, alios esse deos Nabuchodonosor, aliam statuam auream, quam in cultum sui jussit erigi."
14. *Is it true*] Or rather, *Is it of set purpose and design*? Have you really made up your minds? or is it merely by inadvertence that you did not fall down and worship? See *Gesen.* 701; *Fuerst*, 1175; and so *Kliefoth, Hitzig, and Keil*. Others render it, *Is it with malice prepense, or in scorn?* (*Fuerst*, 175; *Kran.* 156.)

flute, harp, sackbut, psaltery, and dulcimer, and all kinds of musick, ye fall down and worship the image which I have made; ^f *well*: but if ye worship not, ye shall be cast the same hour into the midst of a burning fiery furnace; ^g and who is that God that shall deliver you out of my hands?

Before
CHRIST
about
530,
^f As Ex. 32, 32
Luke 13. 9.
^g Ex. 5. 2.
2 Kings 18. 35.

¹⁶ Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, ^h we are not careful to answer thee in this matter. ¹⁷ If it be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of thine hand, O king. ¹⁸ But if not, be it known unto thee, O king, that we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up.

¹⁹ Then was Nebuchadnezzar full of [†] fury, and the form of his visage was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego: *therefore* he spake, and commanded that they should heat the furnace one seven times more than it was wont to be heated. ²⁰ And he commanded the [†] most mighty men that were in his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, and to cast them into the burning fiery furnace.

²¹ Then these men were bound in their ^{||} coats, their hosen, and their ^{||} hats, and their *other* garments, and were cast into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.

²² Therefore because the king's [†] commandment was urgent, and the furnace exceeding hot, the ^{||} flame of the fire slew those men that took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego.

²³ And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace.

²⁴ Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was astonished, and rose up in haste, and spake, and said unto his ^{||} counsellors, Did not we cast three men bound into the midst of the fire? They answered and said unto the king, True, O king.

²⁵ He answered and said, Lo, I see four men loose, ⁱ walking in the midst of the fire, and [†] they have no hurt; and the form of the fourth is like ^k the Son of God.

[†] Chald. *filled*.
[†] Chald. *mighty of strength*.
^{||} Or, *mantles*.
^{||} Or, *turbans*.
[†] Chald. *word*.
^{||} Or, *spark*.
ⁱ Isa. 43. 2.
[†] Chald. *there is no hurt in them*.
^k Job 1. 6.
[†] 38. 7.
Ps. 34. 7. ver. 23.

15. *who is that God*] Nebuchadnezzar knew that they had a God different from his own gods; but he challenged and defied His power. And what was the result? The very thing which the King said was impossible, was done by the God whom he defied.

21. *their coats, their hosen, and their hats*] Rather, *their shirts, their tunics, and their mantles*. According to Herod. (i. 195), the dress worn in Babylon consisted of an under linen garment reaching to the feet, a woollen garment over it, and a woollen mantle.

We have here, —

1. *Sarbdā*, supposed by some (*Gesen.* 595; *Pusey*, 570) to be loose trousers, *braceæ*. The *Pœcile* at Athens, representing the Medo-Persian combatants at Marathon, is called "*Braccatis illita Medis Porticus*" (*Pers.* iii. 53). But it is more probable that the word here means the *shirts*.

2. *Petish*, not from Greek *petasus*, a hat, but the Aramaic *petsho*, tunic (*Gesen.* 672).

3. *Carbeldā*, a cloak or mantle; from *cirbel*, to gird on (*Gesen.* 413; *Keil*, 107). Cp. *Hengst.* 11. 274.

23. *fell down bound into the midst of the burning fiery furnace*] The words "singing hymns to God, and blessing Him; and Nebuchadnezzar heard them singing hymns, and was astonished," are added here in the version of *Theodotion*. "The Song of the three Children," which here follows in the *Greek*, *Syriac*, *Arabic*, and *Latin* copies, but is not found in the Hebrew, is placed at the end of Daniel with the other additions to that Book, viz. the History of Susannah, and Bel and the Dragon." See *Bp. Walton's Biblia Polyglotta*, tom. iii. pt. ii. p. 191. These writings were probably of Alexandrine origin, and may have been composed in the 3rd century before Christ, and passed from the *Sept.* into the version of *Theodotion*. Cp. *S. Jerome* here; *Pusey*, 608; and see *Keil*, *Einleit.* § 251, p. 732, for an account of these additions.

24. *counsellors*] *Chald.* *had-daberin*, perhaps from *daberin*, leaders, with the article *ha* prefixed (*Gesen.* 216). Others suppose it to be from an Aryan word, *haddabera*.

25. *like the Son of God*] So *Theodot. Vulg. Syriac.* In v. 28 Nebuchadnezzar says, "God hath sent His angel." With this declaration from the mouth of Nebuchadnezzar, we may compare the words of the Roman Centurion at the Crucifixion, "Truly this man was the Son of God" (*Matt.* xxvii. 54. *Mark* xv. 39). The Holy Spirit sometimes prophesies by the mouth of heathens, as Pilate (*John* xix. 19—22), and of unbelievers, as Caiaphas (*John* xi. 51); see *S. Hippolytus* here. However this may be, there seems good reason for believing with *Tertullian*, *S. Justin Martyr*, *S. Hilary*, and others (see *à Lapide* here) that the fourth was no other than Christ, Who afterwards revealed Himself to Daniel. See x. 5, 6. In the Paschal Antiphon of the Latin Church are the words, —

"Surrexit Christus de sepulcro,
Qui tres pueros liberavit de camino;
Alleluia!"

"How discriminating and wise was this fire" (exclaims *S. Jerome* here, commenting on this miraculous event), by which the *chains*, with which the three friends were bound (v. 21), were burnt, and they themselves were loosed by the fire, and yet no smell of fire passed on them or on their garments. "O quàm sapiens ignis! quàm inenarrabilis Dei potentia! vineulis stricta sunt corpora, uruntur vineula, corpora non uruntur! Speciem autem quarti, quem similem dicit filio Dei, vel Angelum debemus accipere, vel certè, ut plerique arbitrantur, DOMINUM SALVATOREM." So *S. Irenæus*, iv. 37; and in v. 5 he refers to this history, in connexion with that of Jonah delivered from the whale's belly, as a proof of the divine power which will be exhibited hereafter in the resurrection of the dead.

Before
CHRIST
about
580.
† Chald. door.

26 Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the †mouth of the burning fiery furnace, and spake, and said, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, ye servants of the most high God, come forth, and come *hither*. Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, came forth of the midst of the fire.

1 Heb. 11. 34.

27 And the princes, governors, and captains, and the king's counsellors, being gathered together, saw these men, ¹upon whose bodies the fire had no power, nor was an hair of their head singed, neither were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them.

28 Then Nebuchadnezzar spake, and said, Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that ^mtrusted in him, and have changed the king's word, and yielded their bodies, that they might not serve nor worship any god, except their own God.

m Ps. 34. 7, 8.
Jer. 17. 7.
ch. 6. 22, 23.

29 ⁿTherefore †I make a decree, That every people, nation, and language, which speak †any thing amiss against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, shall be °†cut in pieces, and their houses shall be made a dung-hill: ^pbecause there is no other God that can deliver after this sort.

n ch. 6. 26.
† Chald.
a decree is made
by me.
† Chald. error.
o ch. 2. 5.
† Chald.
made pieces.
p ch. 6. 27.
† Chald.
made to prosper.

30 Then the king †promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, in the province of Babylon.

about
570.
a ch. 3. 4. & 6. 23.

IV. ¹ Nebuchadnezzar the king, ^a unto all people, nations, and languages,

28—30.] In these words of Nebuchadnezzar we see a reply to the objections made in recent times against this narrative, as if it displayed a profuse waste of marvellous power. Surely such a declaration as is here uttered from the mouth of the greatest Monarch of the known world, who had set up an image in order that he himself might be adored by all the nations of the East, was an adequate cause for the divine interposition, which made this grand congregation to become an illustrious auditory and magnificent theatre for hearing the proclamation of the majesty and glory of the Lord God of Israel from the mouth of Nebuchadnezzar. See above, Prelim. Note to this chapter.

29. *cut in pieces—made a dunghill*] See above, on ii. 5. Chr. IV. 1. *Nebuchadnezzar the king*] This royal decree was doubtless preserved in the archives of Babylon. It was a state-paper; and the accuracy of this transcript could therefore easily be tested. No historian would have ventured to forge such a document as this, relating to events which concerned the greatest King and the most powerful Monarchy in his own age. And the tone of the decree is such as to show that it was not fabricated by Daniel (see on v. 8)—though it was probably transcribed by him from the original—nor by any Jew.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S MADNESS.

It has been alleged by some, that if the statement herein contained with regard to Nebuchadnezzar's insanity, and his subsequent recovery, had been true, the fact must have been recorded in profane history; and that it cannot be accepted as credible, because it is not confirmed by heathen testimony (*Bluk. Hitzig*).

But this allegation rests on weak foundations.

The records now extant of the Babylonian Empire are few and scanty. Nebuchadnezzar's name does not even once occur in the pages of the father of profane history—Herodotus. Of the writers mentioned by Josephus as dealing with Babylonish history, four treated of it in its relation to Tyre and Phœnicia; and one, Berosus, who was a Priest of Bel at Babylon in the age of Alexander the Great, is known to us only from the fragments which are preserved of his writings by Josephus and Eusebius and later writers, and which passed into their hands through the confused compilation made by Alexander Polyhistor a little before the time of Julius Cæsar. And with such a slender supply of documents before us, we have no means of ascertaining whether the events related in this chapter were fully recorded by Babylonish annalists.

But, even in this limited supply of external testimonies, we may recognize some confirmation of the statements in this chapter.

Josephus, in his work against Apion (i. 20), having given an account, derived from Berosus, of the glory of Nebuchad-

nezzar—his conquests, and his buildings at Babylon (cp. *Eusebii Chron.* ed. Aucher, pp. 62—71, Venet. 1818), quotes a fragment of *Berosus*, in which it is said that "Nebuchadnezzar, having begun his fortifications, fell into sickness, and departed out of this life, having reigned forty-three years." In this record there is a connexion of the buildings of Babylon with the disease of Nebuchadnezzar; and this is more fully elucidated by a fragment of *Abydenus* quoted by Eusebius (*Præp. Evang.* ix. 41, and in *Eusebii Chronicon*, as preserved in the Armenian Version, i. p. 57). *Eusebius* (in *Chronico*, p. 57) thus writes, "Abydenus has committed to writing all these events, in harmony with Daniel, who speaks thus of Nebuchadnezzar's pride, 'Is not this great Babylon that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty?' In proof that this account is true, listen to the words of Abydenus: 'Nebuchadnezzar, who was stronger than Hercules, penetrated into Libya and to Spain with his armies, and subdued them, and carried away captive part of their inhabitants, and settled them on the right side of the Euxine. After this, as the Chaldeans relate, when he had ascended up to his royal palace, he was seized by some Gods' (i. e. he who had captured others, was himself taken prisoner by divine retribution), 'who took possession of his mind; and he thus spake, "I, Nebuchadnezzar, O ye mighty Babylonians, will foretell the calamity which is coming upon you, and which neither my ancestor Belus nor his queen Beltis are able to persuade the fates to avert. A Persian mule (Cyrus) will come, using as his allies our deities, and will bring slavery upon you. And the Mede also, in whom the Assyrians once gloried, will make common cause with him. Would to God that before he betrays our citizens, some Clarybdis or sea would take him away and destroy him root and branch! or that, being carried by some other way through the wilderness, he may be hurried to a place where are neither cities, nor any path of men, and where wild beasts range, and where is the haunt of birds, and that he may roam there alone among the rocks and ravines, and that I may have a more prosperous end, before he conceives this design in his mind.'"

It is remarkable that the fate, which Nebuchadnezzar here imprecates upon the invader, was that which befell himself. He was *driven from the paths of men*, and his dwelling was *with the beasts of the field*, and his hairs grew like eagles' feathers, and his nails like birds' claws (*rr.* 25, 30—33). "Nebuchadnezzar, having delivered this oracle, forthwith died, and his son Evil-Merodach reigned in his stead" (*Euseb. Præp. Evang.* ix. 41).

The historian Abydenus, quoted by Eusebius (*Chron.* p. 60), adds some other words, and thus ends: "He" (Nebuchadnezzar) "who had reigned in glory, suddenly vanished; and his son Evil-Merodach succeeded, who was soon put to death by his son-in-law Neriglissar, who had a son, Labosoracæus, who perished

that dwell in all the earth; Peace be multiplied unto you. ² † I thought it good to shew the signs and wonders ^b that the high God hath wrought toward me.

^{3 c} How great are his signs! and how mighty are his wonders! his kingdom is ^d an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion is from generation to generation.

⁴ I Nebuchadnezzar was at rest in mine house, and flourishing in my palace:

⁵ I saw a dream which made me afraid, ^e and the thoughts upon my bed and the visions of my head ^f troubled me.

⁶ Therefore made I a decree to bring in all the wise men of Babylon before me, that they might make known unto me the interpretation of the dream.

^{7 s} Then came in the magicians, the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the sooth-sayers: and I told the dream before them; but they did not make known unto me the interpretation thereof.

⁸ But at the last Daniel came in before me, ^h whose name was Belteshazzar, according to the name of my god, ⁱ and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods: and before him I told the dream, saying,

⁹ O Belteshazzar, ^k master of the magicians, because I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in thee, and no secret troubleth thee, tell me the visions of my dream that I have seen, and the interpretation thereof.

¹⁰ Thus were the visions of mine head in my bed; † I saw, and behold ^l a tree in the midst of the earth, and the height thereof was great. ¹¹ The tree grew, and was strong, and the height thereof reached unto heaven, and the sight thereof to the end of all the earth: ¹² the leaves thereof were fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it was meat for all: ^m the beasts of the field had shadow under it, and the fowls of the heaven dwelt in the boughs thereof, and all flesh was fed of it.

¹³ I saw in the visions of my head upon my bed, and, behold, ⁿ a watcher

Before CHRIST about 570.

† Chald. *It was seemly before me.*
b ch. 3. 26.
c ch. 6. 27.
d ver. 34.
e ch. 2. 28, 29.
f ch. 2. 1.

g ch. 2. 2.

h ch. 1. 7.

i Isa. 63. 11.
ver. 18. ch. 2. 11.
& 5. 11, 14.

k ch. 2. 48.
& 5. 11.

† Chald. *I was seeing.*
l Ezek. 31. 3, &c.
ver. 20.

m Ezek. 17. 23.
& 31. 6.
See Lam. 4. 20.

n Ps. 103. 20.
ver. 17, 23.

by a violent death; and he (Neriglissar) appointed Nabonadarius to succeed him (so *Euseb.* Chron. p. 60), who had no claim to the throne; to whom Cyrus, when he had taken Babylon, gave the principality of Carmania."

Eusebius then adds, "Daniel, in his history, relates the cause of Nebuchadnezzar's madness. And if the Greek or Chaldean historians conceal his madness, and (or) say that it was received from God, and if they call the madness itself, which entered into him, a god or a demon, this is not to be wondered at, since it is their custom to ascribe such things to a god, and to call gods demons." Cp. *Hengst.* pp. 88—90.

Another confirmation of Daniel's narrative of Nebuchadnezzar's madness is supplied by his own inscription (described below on v. 30) concerning his buildings at Babylon, which indicates an interruption of his work (*Rawlinson*, Bampton Lectures, v. 166, p. 440, note 29).

— *Peace be multiplied unto you* [It is remarkable that the Apostle of Christ, St. Peter, writing from *Babylon* (see below on 1 Pet. v. 13) to the Jewish Christians scattered throughout Asia, appears to refer to this passage of Daniel, and adopts these words of Nebuchadnezzar the King of Babylon, "*Peace be multiplied unto you*." St. Peter takes the words as they stand in the *Sept.* here (1 Pet. i. 2); and it is observable also that they are repeated at the beginning of his second Epistle (2 Pet. i. 2), a silent proof of the genuineness of that Epistle; and they do not occur in any other place of the New Testament. In both places, St. Peter says, "*Grace and Peace be multiplied unto you*," teaching us that there can be no peace without grace from God; and he says, "*Grace and peace be multiplied unto you* through the knowledge of God, and of Jesus Christ our Lord."

3. *How great are his signs!—his kingdom is an everlasting kingdom* [Cp. v. 34; ii. 44; vii. 17.

4. *flourishing*] Literally, like a green tree. Cp. Ps. lii. 9; xxi. 11. There is a reference here to the tree seen in the vision (v. 11.)

5. *the visions of my head*] Cp. v. 10, and ii. 28.

6. *made I a decree to bring in all the wise men of Babylon*] Why (it has been asked by some), did not Nebuchadnezzar summon Daniel at once? If Daniel had shown his superior

wisdom (as is related in the second chapter), surely he would have been called forthwith, before the wise men.

Probably, from motives of state-policy, Nebuchadnezzar wished to show deference to the national corporation and college of royal councillors. The wise men were too powerful and formidable to be passed over. If he had slighted them, he would have exposed himself and Daniel to danger. It may even be supposed that Daniel advised him to call them first; and this is made more probable by the statement that afterwards Daniel was *not sent for*, but *came* (v. 8). Certain it is, that the whole matter was so ordered by the providence of Daniel's God, that Daniel's wisdom, and the power of Him whom Daniel worshipped, might again be publicly manifest to the world, by his interpretation of the dream, which the magicians attempted to interpret, but in vain.

8. *according to the name of my god, and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods*] It is an evidence of the genuineness of this decree, that Nebuchadnezzar takes good care not to alienate his subjects by renouncing the national faith, and by declaring himself a convert to Judaism. Daniel is represented as one of the *magicians*, bearing the name of *Nebuchadnezzar's* own god, *Bel*; and as having the spirit, not of the God of the Jews, but of *the holy gods*. The testimony from Nebuchadnezzar to Daniel and Daniel's God, is plainly more valuable, because it comes from unwilling lips. Also it is evident, that this decree could not have been forged by any Jew; he would not have spoken in such terms as these, of God's prophet, and of the Lord God of Israel.

13. *a watcher and an holy one*] That is, a *watcher* who was also an *holy one*—a *holy watcher*; an angel. The word rendered *watcher*, is *ir*, and occurs only in this book, in the present verse and in v. 17 in the mouth of Nebuchadnezzar, and in v. 23, where it is used by Daniel himself. It is from the root *ur*, to be hot, ardent, wakeful (*Gesen.* 615, 625). It is applied to archangels, as Gabriel, in the Syriac Liturgies (*Castell.* Lex. Syr. 649). The word *watcher* is also frequently applied to angels in the Book of Enoch (xii. 24; xiii. 11; xv. 8; xx. 1).

It is worthy of notice, that the messenger of the Homeric Deities was called *Iris* (*Hom.* II. ii. 787; iii. 121; viii. 398)

Before
CHRIST
about
570.
o Deut. 33, 2.
ch. 8, 13.
Zech. 14, 5.
Jude 14.
† Chald. with
night.
p Matt. 3, 10.
q Ezek. 31, 12.

r ch. 11, 13.
& 12, 7.

and "an holy one came down from heaven; ¹⁴ he cried † aloud, and said thus, ¹⁵ Hew down the tree, and cut off his branches, shake off his leaves, and scatter his fruit: ¹⁶ let the beasts get away from under it, and the fowls from his branches: ¹⁵ nevertheless leave the stump of his roots in the earth, even with a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the beasts in the grass of the earth: ¹⁶ let his heart be changed from man's, and let a beast's heart be given unto him; and let seven ¹⁷ times pass over him. ¹⁷ This matter is by the

whence the name of the rainbow (*Hom. II. xi. 27*). "Consuetudo Græci Latiniq[ue] sermonis *Irin* vocat, que per multicolorem arcum ad terras descendere dicitur" (*S. Jerome*; cp. also à *Lapide* here). The following scholion is prefixed to the Chigi MS. of Theodotion: "The word *ir* signifies a wakeful one;" and a similar gloss is quoted here by Nobilius. See *Field*, Hexapla, p. 904, note.

¹⁵. *even with a band of iron and brass*] Signifying the restraint with which Nebuchadnezzar in his lunacy was to be prevented from hurting himself and others (*S. Jerome*; *Pusey*, 433).

Here is an answer to the objection of some (*Griesinger*, *Bertholdt*), that it is not probable that Nebuchadnezzar should have been left by his relatives and courtiers to roam about as a wild beast, exposed to the ridicule of his subjects. It is not said that he was so left; rather, he seems to have been watched and confined as far as could be under the circumstances.

¹⁶. *let his heart be changed*] Here the angel passes from the tree, to speak of the person signified by the tree—namely Nebuchadnezzar himself. So our Blessed Lord went immediately from the barren leafy fig-tree, to what was typified by it, namely the temple and city of Jerusalem (see Matt. xxi. 18—23. Mark xii. 13—15); and thus He showed what was symbolized by the tree.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S DISEASE.

— *let a beast's heart be given unto him*] The celebrated physician, *Dr. Mead* (in his work "Medica Sacra," on the Diseases mentioned in Scripture, p. 59) observes that the ancients called persons affected with this species of madness *lycanthropoi* or *cynanthropoi*, because they went abroad imitating wolves or dogs, opening the sepulchres of the dead. See *Aetius*, Lib. Med. vi. *Paul. Ægineta*, iii. 16. In like manner, the daughters of *Prætus* are related to have been affected, who, as *Virgil* says (*Ecl. vi. 48*), "implerunt falsis mugitibus agros." *Serius* there observes, that *Juno* possessed their minds with such a species of madness, that, fancying themselves cows, they ran into the fields, bellowed, and fled from the plough. These, according to *Ovid* (*Met. xiv. 326*), the physician *Melampus*

"— per carmen et herbas
Eripuit furis."

Schenkins (*Observ. Med. de Lycanthropiâ*) records a remarkable instance of it in a husbandman of Padua, who, imagining himself a wolf, attacked and killed several persons in the fields; and when he was taken, persevered in declaring himself a wolf. On this form of insanity, called *Lycanthropy*,—in which men suppose themselves to be wolves or other wild beasts, and act accordingly,—the reader may refer to the interesting details collected by *Hengstenberg*, 91, 92; *Trusen*, *Krankheiten*, 1553; and especially *Dr. Pusey*, p. 425, who thus writes:—

"It is now conceded that the madness of Nebuchadnezzar agrees with the description of a rare sort of disease, called *Lycanthropy*, of which our earliest notice is in a Greek medical writer of the 1th century after our Lord, in which the sufferer retains his consciousness in other respects, but imagines himself to be changed into some animal, and acts, up to a certain point, in conformity with that persuasion.

"*Marcellus* (4th cent.) mentions two sorts, 'They who are seized by the *lycanthropic* or *lycanthropic* disease, in the month of February go forth by night, imitating in all things wolves or dogs, and until day especially live near tombs.' The disease is one from which there have been recoveries. *Mercurialis* says, 'The disease is horrible, yet not destructive to life, even if it last for months; nay, I have read that it has been thoroughly cured after years.'

"The remarkable expressions, *his heart was made like the beast's*, *let a beast's heart be given to him*, fit most naturally with this form of disease. The rest of the description would

be in conformity with this, that Nebuchadnezzar, when affected with this disease, ate grass as an ox, and allowed his hair and nails to grow unshorn and unpared, as if he was the animal. The growth of the nails described is exactly that which modern physiologists have stated to be their growth when so neglected. *His nails*, Daniel says, *were like birds' claws*. 'The nails,' says *Kölliker*, 'so long as they are cut, grow unremittingly; when this is omitted, their growth is confined. In this case, and in the people of Eastern Asia, the nails become 1½ or 2 inches long (among the Chinese, according to *Hamilton*, 2 inches), and curve round the fingers and ends of the toes.' The principles which regulate the excessive growth of hair, are, *Dr. Rolleston* tells me, less ascertained. Both being, I believe, called excremental, the excessive growth of both would probably be simultaneous. But both may have been the result of personal neglect, which is so strangely humiliating a part of a most distressing form of mental disease, and which I have seen as the result of disappointed pride.

"The expression however, *let a beast's heart be given unto him*, may only signify the privation of the characteristic of man, reason, as the king wrote of himself, *my reason returned unto me*. And there is a distinct form of insanity, in which the eating of grass is one of the characteristic features. In many classes of the insane, the eminent Commissioner of the Board of Lunacy for Scotland, *Dr. Browne*, informs me, the eating garbage, excrement, even grass, is a symptom of general debasement and of perverted appetites.

"*Dr. Browne* tells me, as the result of the experience of above 30 years, 'My opinion is, that of all mental powers or conditions, the idea of personal identity is but rarely enfeebled, and that it is never extinguished. The Ego and Non-Ego may be confused. The Ego however continues to preserve the personality. All the Angels, Devils, Dukes, Lords, Kings, "gods many," that I have had under my care, remained what they were before they became Angels, Dukes, &c., in a sense, and even nominally. I have seen a man, declaring himself the Saviour, or St. Paul, sign himself *James Thomson*, and attend worship as regularly as if the notion of divinity had never entered into his head.

"I think it probable,—because consistent with experience in similar forms of mental affection,—that Nebuchadnezzar retained a perfect consciousness that he was Nebuchadnezzar, during the whole course of his degradation, and while he ate "grass as oxen," and that he may have prayed fervently that the cup might pass from him.

"A very large proportion of the insane pray, and to the living God, and in the words supplied at their mother's knee or by Mother Church, and this whatever may be the form or extent of the alienation under which they laboured, and whatever the transformation, in the light of their own delusions, they may have undergone. There is no doubt that the sincerity and the devotional feeling is as strong in these worshippers as in the sane. I do not say that all madmen pray, or can pray; but, as you suppose, monomaniacs, and melancholics, chronic maniacs, and cements (in vast numbers), the hallucinated, &c. Those of the Edinburgh School of Philosophy, and educated medical men, would not, I conceive, take any exception to the view which I have given, because the very conception of partial insanity involves the possibility of the sentiment of devotion and the recognition of a Supreme Being remaining intact, while other powers are diseased."—*Dr. Pusey*.

I have been favoured with the following communication on this subject by an eminent person who enjoys the highest reputation for his skill in the treatment of lunatics—*E. Palmer*, Esq., M.D., of the Lincolnshire County Asylum, at Bracebridge, near Lincoln:—

"The enclosed description of the epidemic outbreak of *Lycanthropy* in France in the 16th century is taken from *Ésquirol*, who is a very trustworthy writer. *M. Calneil*, whose

decree of the watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones: to the intent 'that the living may know 'that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will, and setteth up over it the basest of men.

Before
CHRIST
about
570.
s Ps. 9, 16.
t ch. 2, 21. & 5, 21.
ver. 25, 32.

¹⁸ This dream I king Nebuchadnezzar have seen. Now thou, O Belteshazzar, declare the interpretation thereof, "forasmuch as all the wise men of my kingdom are not able to make known unto me the interpretation: but thou art able; * for the spirit of the holy gods is in thee.

u Gen. 41 5, 15.
ch. 5, 8, 15.

x ver. 8.

¹⁹ Then Daniel, ' whose name was Belteshazzar, was astonished for one hour, y and his thoughts troubled him. The king spake, and said, Belteshazzar, let not the dream, or the interpretation thereof, trouble thee.

y ver. 8.

Belteshazzar answered and said, My lord, ' the dream be to them that hate thee, and the interpretation thereof to thine enemies.

z See 2 Sam.
18, 32.
Jer. 29, 7.

²⁰ ^a The tree that thou sawest, which grew, and was strong, whose height reached unto the heaven, and the sight thereof to all the earth; ²¹ whose leaves were fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it was meat for all; under which the beasts of the field dwelt, and upon whose branches the fowls of the heaven had their habitation: ²² ^b it is thou, O king, that art grown and become strong: for thy greatness is grown, and reacheth unto heaven, ' and thy dominion to the end of the earth. ²³ ^d And whereas the king saw a watcher and an holy one coming down from heaven, and saying, Hew the tree down, and destroy it; yet leave the stump of the roots thereof in the earth, even with

a ver. 10, 11, 12.

b ch. 2, 38.

c Jer. 27, 6, 7, 8.

d ver. 13.

book "De la Folie, &c.," Paris, 1845, I send, your lordship will find gives full and authentic particulars of several cases occurring in the epidemic in the Jura, at Dôle and other places; and in *Friedreich* (a German treatise on the Literary History of Pathology, Würzburg, 1830), p. 23, numerous references to the older literature of the subject in the works on Lycanthropy by *Mei* (Viteb. 1650), *Müller* (Lips. 1673), *Nifanius* (Giess. 1664), *De Nyand*, *Saltzman*, *Wolffshusius*, and *Wolffius*, 1666.

"It very commonly occurs that patients on their recovery from insanity have a full recollection of their sayings and doings, and of all that happened to them during their attack, which, of course, implies that during the attack they were conscious of their condition. In the case of Nebuchadnezzar, it was not until 'the end of the days'—or, as may be supposed, at the first dawn of intelligence, when partially lycanthropical and partially self-conscious, and in a state somewhat resembling that of a person awakening from a dream—that he lifted up his eyes unto heaven, being probably not yet rational enough to offer up a prayer in words, but still so far conscious as to be able dimly to perceive his identity. But when his understanding returned to him, there came back not only a recollection of his sin and the decree of the Most High, but also a vivid reminiscence of all the circumstances of his abasement amongst the beasts of the field; and he at once acknowledged the power and dominion of God."

The extract from *Esquirol* is as follows:—

"A la démonomanie se rapporte comme sous-variété la zoantropie, déplorable aberration de l'esprit qui pervertit même l'instinct de sa propre existence, qui persuade au lypénianique qu'il est changé en bête. Cette étrange folie a été observée dès la plus haute antiquité; elle se rattache aux cultes des anciens païens qui sacrifiaient des animaux à leurs dieux.

"La Lycanthropie a été décrite par Actius et par les Arabes. Elle s'est montrée depuis le quinzième siècle, et l'on a donné en France le nom de loups-garoux aux lycanthropes; ces malheureux fuient leurs semblables, vivent dans les bois, dans les cimetières, dans les vieilles ruines, courent les campagnes pendant la nuit, en faisant des hurlements; ils laissent croître la barbe, les ongles, et se confirment ainsi dans leur déplorable conviction en se voyant couverts de longs poils et armés de griffes. Poussés par le besoin ou par une féroce atrocité, ils se précipitent sur les enfans, les déchirent, les tuent et les dévorent. Roulet, à la fin du seizième siècle, fut arrêté comme loup-garou, et avoua qu'avec son frère et un cousin, après s'être frottés le corps d'un onguent, ils étaient changés

en loups, et qu'alors ils couraient les champs et mangeaient les enfans" (*Esquirol*, Des Maladies Mentales, Paris, 1838, vol. i. p. 521). *Dr. Palmer*.

— seven times] Supposed by some (e.g. *Josephus*) to mean seven years (*Sept.*, *Josephus*, *Maurer*, *Hitzig*, *Kranichen*); but this is doubtful. Cp. vii. 25; xii. 7. Some (as *Theodoret*) suppose it to be equivalent to 3½ years; two times being a summer and winter. It may signify an indefinite time (*Pusey*, *Keil*), or rather a period clearly known to God, but not revealed to man. In Holy Scripture, the number six is symbolical of toil, trouble, and suffering; seven, the sabbatical number, is symbolical of rest after toil and suffering; eight (the octave of the first number in the series of seven) is the symbol of resurrection after toil and rest. See above, on Ezekiel, p. 280, and below, on Matt. v. 2; xxiv. 1; xxvii. 52. Luke xxiv. 1; and on Revelation, pp. 220, 221.

What, therefore, is meant in the present passage is, that after a period of suffering Nebuchadnezzar would come at last to a time of rest, represented by the number seven, and after that to a time of restoration to health and reason. Cp. *rv. 32* and *34*.

M. Lenormant (*Histoire*, i. 298) asserts, on the authority of a Babylonish inscription, that the affairs of the kingdom were managed, during the king's mental aberration, by a person called Bellabarisrouk, whose son married a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar. Probably Daniel himself had some considerable share in their administration.

¹⁹ *Daniel—was astonished*] Being amazed and distressed by the dreadful calamity which he saw was portended by the vision, he felt tender compassion for his king and benefactor. As *S. Jerome* observes, "Tacitus intellexit Daniel somnium esse contra regem, et timorem cordis vultus pallore signabat; dolebatque pro eo qui ei plurimum honoris detulerat. Et ne videretur insultare atque lætari contra hostem regem, loquitur ad eum" (*S. Jerome*). The king's kindness to Daniel is evinced by his words "Let not the dream or the interpretation thereof trouble thee," and Daniel's tender forbearance towards the king may be inferred from those words of the king to him.

— one hour] Or rather, a short time: literally the twinkling of an eye. The original word is *shâdh*, from *shâdh*, to look (*Gesen.* 841). It is not to be supposed that Daniel remained a whole hour, and kept the king in suspense during all that time for the interpretation of his dream. Cp. below, v. 33. Gal. ii. 5.

²⁰ *The tree that thou sawest, which grew*] Rather, the tree which thou sawest that it grew (*Gesen.* 196).

Before
CHRIST
about
570.
e ch. 5. 21.

a band of iron and brass, in the tender grass of the field; and let it be wet with the dew of heaven, ^e and let his portion be with the beasts of the field, till seven times pass over him;

^f ver. 32. ch. 5. 21, &c.
^g Ps. 106. 20.
^h Ps. 83. 18. ver. 17, 32.
ⁱ Jer. 27. 5.
^k Matt. 21. 25. Luke 15. 18, 21.
^l 1 Pet. 4. 8.
^m Ps. 41. 1, &c. || Or, an healing of thine error.
ⁿ 1 Kings 21. 29.
^o Prov. 16. 18. ch. 5. 20.
²⁴ This is the interpretation, O king, and this is the decree of the most High, which is come upon my lord the king: ²⁵ That they shall ^f drive thee from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field, and they shall make thee ^g to eat grass as oxen, and they shall wet thee with the dew of heaven, and seven times shall pass over thee, ^h till thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and ⁱ giveth it to whomsoever he will. ²⁶ And whereas they commanded to leave the stump of the tree roots; thy kingdom shall be sure unto thee, after that thou shalt have known that the ^k heavens do rule.

²⁷ Wherefore, O king, let my counsel be acceptable unto thee, and ^l break off thy sins by righteousness, and thine iniquities by shewing mercy to the poor; ^m if it may be || ⁿ a lengthening of thy tranquillity.

²⁸ All this came upon the king Nebuchadnezzar. ²⁹ At the end of twelve months he walked || in the palace of the kingdom of Babylon. ³⁰ The king ^o spake, and said, Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for the

^{25.} thy dwelling shall be with the beasts] Nebuchadnezzar, aspiring to be more than man, and even to be equal with God, was debased to be less than man, even to dwell with the beasts of the field—a fit punishment for pride.

— they shall make thee to eat grass] Rather, they shall give thee grass to eat, and let thee be wet with the dew of heaven.

^{26.} that the heavens do rule] That the heaven, where God reigns, and not the earth, where thou art king, has the sovereignty over all. The regal throne and sceptre are in heaven: and by them all earthly things are governed. By this phrase, the heavens rule, Daniel prepared the way for the Gospel, "the kingdom of heaven."

^{27.} Wherefore, O king—break off thy sins by righteousness] Daniel was no fatalist; he knew from God's dealings with Nineveh (Jonah iii. 5; ep. Jer. xviii. 7; xxxviii. 2, 17, 18), that the judgments denounced by God may be averted by repentance, "Neque enim Deus hominibus sed vitiiis irascitur" (says S. Jerome) "quæ quàm in homine non fuerint, nequaquam punit quod mutatum est."

This text has been first misinterpreted, and then made the groundwork of erroneous doctrine. It has been rendered *buy off*, or *redeem thy sins by alms* (Sept., Vulg., Bertholdt, and many Roman Catholic theologians, as Bellarmine, de Pœnit. iv. 8. See *A Lapide* here. Cp. Pfeiffer, *Dubia*, 424); but this is an incorrect rendering. The original word, *perak* (see next note), here used, means to *break off*, as in Gen. xxvii. 40. Exod. xxxii. 2. (Gesen. 692; Hengst. 118; Keil, 130).

— by righteousness] This is the correct rendering, not *alms-giving*, as some have translated it. The original word, *tsidekâh* (righteousness), never signifies *alms* in the Old Testament; though the Rabbis have given it that signification, and though it doubtless includes *alms-giving* among the external evidences of the inner principle. Cp. note below, on Matt. vi. 1. Daniel recommends Nebuchadnezzar to practise the virtues which were opposite to that tyrannical cruelty, haughty contempt, and violent oppression, which characterized Oriental monarchs. The contrast to them is seen in the portrait of the Messiah, as drawn in the Psalms and in the prophets (Ps. lxxii. 4. Isa. xi. 4; xli. 2).

— by shewing mercy to the poor] The afflicted and distressed, such as the captive exiles of Israel. The Psalmist notes that this lesson was learnt by some of their captors (Ps. evi. 46); "God made all those that led them away captive to pity them." Cp. what is said concerning Evil-Merodach, the son of Nebuchadnezzar, and his kind treatment of Jehoiachin, king of Judah (2 Kings xxv. 27). Probably Daniel's influence had some effect in producing such results as these.

^{28.} All this came upon—Nebuchadnezzar] Daniel, whose inspiration was proved by the fulfilment of his interpretation, now becomes a sacred historian, and comments on the events from a divine point of view, as a preacher sent from the God of Israel, the Lord of all the kingdoms of the world. In v. 31, Nebuchadnezzar again speaks.

^{29.} he walked in the palace of the kingdom of Babylon] Compare the narrative of Abydenus, as quoted above, on v. 1.

^{30.} The king spake] Literally, the king answered and said; such was the proud and infatuated reply that he made to the solemn warning.

— Is not this great Babylon, that I have built] This is also confirmed by external evidence, as Berosus, in *Joseph. Ant.* x. 11, 1; c. Apion, i. 19; *Abydenus*, in *Euseb. Præp. Evang.* ix. 41; who describe the buildings of Nebuchadnezzar at Babylon; and especially by the Inscription, still extant, in which Nebuchadnezzar himself describes the power, and glory, and majesty of his own royal buildings at Babylon. That inscription was found in 1862 by Sir Hartford Jones at Hillah, on the west bank of the Euphrates, about four miles south of the site of ancient Babylon. It came into the collection of the East India Company in London, from whence it has passed into the British Museum. It is engraved on a square block of black basalt, about a French metre in height, and ten centimètres in thickness. The block is covered with inscriptions on all sides, and they are arranged in ten columns, making 619 lines. It has been translated by M. Oppert (who spent two years at Babylon), and was published by him at Rheims, 1866. A portion of it has been printed in the cuneiform character, with a Latin version, by Ménant, *Grammaire Assyrienne*, p. 336. A facsimile of the whole inscription has been published by the East India Company, and another copy by Rawlinson. Probably Nebuchadnezzar ordered many copies of the inscription to be circulated; a fragment of a cylinder containing part of a copy was published by Ker Porter. The text of the first column of it was published, with an interpretation and another portion of it by Oppert, in his "Expédition scientifique en Mésopotamie," ii. 303.

The reader who examines this inscription will observe how often the words "I have built" occur in it. It seems to have been providentially preserved to afford evidence of the genuineness of the Book of Daniel, especially in the passage before us, where Nebuchadnezzar is described as looking with self-confidence and self-adulation from the roof of his palace on the glories of the city below him, and saying in the pride of his heart, "Is not this great Babylon that I have built?"

The following are extracts from it:—"Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, the mighty lord, the chosen of Merodach, the worshipper of Nebo . . . the king-vicar, who judges without injustice, who has thought day and night for the rebuilding of the pyramid and the tower, and has spread abroad the glory of Babylon and Borsippa" (a city near Babylon, perhaps on the S.W. at Birs-Nimrud; it is often mentioned in this inscription), "the minister of the gods, the eldest son of Nabopolassar, king of Babylon. He himself has created me, the god who begat me of my mother . . . Merodach is the great god who created me, Nebo his son sustains my kingdom. . . . Merodach, the first-born, the highest of gods, has heard my prayer and accepted me, and I have spread abroad his worship. I have changed

house of the kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty?

³¹ P While the word *was* in the king's mouth, there fell ^a voice from heaven, *saying*, O king Nebuchadnezzar, to thee it is spoken; The kingdom is departed from thee. ³² And ^r they shall drive thee from men, and thy dwelling *shall be* with the beasts of the field: they shall make thee to eat grass as oxen, and seven times shall pass over thee, until thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will.

³³ The same hour was the thing fulfilled upon Nebuchadnezzar: and he was driven from men, and did eat grass as oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven, till his hairs were grown like eagles' feathers, and his nails like birds' claws.

³⁴ And ^s at the end of the days I Nebuchadnezzar lifted up mine eyes unto heaven, and mine understanding returned unto me, and I blessed the most High, and I praised and honoured him ^t that liveth for ever, whose dominion is ^{ch. 2. 44. & 7. 14.} an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom is from generation to generation:

³⁵ and ^x all the inhabitants of the earth *are* reputed as nothing: and ^y he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and *among* the inhabitants of the earth: and ^z none can stay his hand, or say unto him, ^a What doest thou?

³⁶ At the same time my reason returned unto me; ^b and for the glory of my kingdom, mine honour and brightness returned unto me; and my counsellors

Before
CHRIST
about
570.

p ch. 5. 5.
Luke 12. 20.
q ver. 21.
about
569.
r ver. 25.

about
563.
s ver. 26.

t ch. 12. 7.
Rev. 4. 10.
u Ps. 10. 16.
ch. 2. 44. & 7. 14.
Micah 4. 7.
x Isa. 40. 15, 17.
y Ps. 115. 3.
& 135. 6.
z Joh 34. 29.
a Job 9. 12.
Isa. 45. 9.
Rom. 9. 20.
b ver. 26.

inaccessible hills into roads for carriages. I have punished the wicked. I have chastised the enemies of my country, and have captured them in great number. I have divided the spoil of their cattle, and have heaped together before my god in the city of Babylon silver, and gold, and precious metals." [Does he refer, among these, to the sacred vessels of silver and gold and other precious things taken from the temple of Jerusalem and placed in the house of his god? See above, i. 2, and below, v. 2, 3.] "*I have built* like a mountain in bitumen and brick, at the outskirts of Babylon, the temple of sacrifices. *I have built at Babylon*, in honour of the supreme giver" (Mylitta Zarpanit, see *Herod.* 13. 131. 199; *Hengst.* 130, 131), "the mother who bare me, the temple of the goddess of the heights of the mountains. *I have built at Babylon*, in bitumen and brick, the temple of the god Nebo. *I have built at Babylon* the temple of great light to the god Sin" (the moon god). "*I have built at Babylon* the temple to the god Samas" (the sun god). "*I have built at Babylon*, in the form of a square, in bitumen and brick, the temple of the god Ao" (the god of plenty). "*I have built at Babylon*, in bitumen and brick, the temples of the depths and of the height of the mountains to the great goddess (Nana) who rejoices and sustains my soul. *I have built at* the entrance of the wall at Babylon, in form of a square, the temple of the queen of the house of Oannes, who has mercy on me." He then describes his buildings at Borsippa, near Babylon; and adds, "Ingour-Bel and Nivit-Bel are the great fortifications which surround Babylon. Nabopolassar, my father, king of Babylon, began them." He then describes the portion of the work done by his father: "I, his eldest son, who honour his memory, I have completed Ingour-Bel and Nivit-Bel—the indestructible" (p. 22). "Thus I have strengthened and entirely protected the whole country of Babylon" (p. 23). "I have made the pyramid and the tower to shine as the rays of the sun. . . . I have raised up the royal palace, the house of wonder to men, the dwelling of my majesty at Babylon" (p. 24). He then describes its foundation by his father and its completion by himself. "I built it of brick and bitumen, with great beams of cedar riveted with iron, and glazed brick, inscribed and painted, around its gates. I adorned it with silver, and gold, and precious stones of all kinds and value, and infinite treasures. I built six walls of fortifications round it." He then describes the plans he adopted to render his fortifications (Ingour-Bel and Nivit-Bel) impregnable. Cp. above, the note on Isaiah xiii. 19, where Babylon is described; and xiv. 8, 14, 21, where portions of this inscription are inserted. He closes with these words—"By thy help, O mighty Merodach, *I have built* this house! May happiness be

there! May I dwell there without sorrow, and find tranquillity (cp. v. 27), and multiply my race sevenfold! May I gather there the tributes of the kings of all mankind, from the star of the west to the star of Nebo at the sun-rising! May no rebels ever triumph, may I never pardon wickedness, and may they who lift their head aloft in Babylon reign because of me to far-off ages!"

Another illustration of Nebuchadnezzar's words—"Is not this great Babylon that I have built for the house of the kingdom by the might of my power and for the honour of my majesty"—has lately been brought to light in the extant remains of the *Kasr* or palace at Babylon (described above, in the note on Isaiah xiii. 19), which was constructed "of bricks of a pale yellow colour and of the best possible quality, which are all stamped with the name and titles of *Nebuchadnezzar*." (*Layard*, Nineveh and Babylon, 505, 506; *Rawlinson*, Ancient Monarchies, iii. 355.)

— *for the house of the kingdom*] The capital, in which all the glory and power of the kingdom are concentrated. Cp. Amos vii. 13, where Bethel is called "the house of the kingdom."

³³. *The same hour*] Rather, *in the same instant*. See above, on v. 19. The same word is used here as there.

— *his hairs were grown like eagles' feathers, and his nails like birds' claws*] This is perfectly true in cases of the disease here described. See above, on v. 16.

³⁴. *at the end of the days I Nebuchadnezzar lifted up mine eyes unto heaven, and mine understanding returned unto me*] It has been alleged by some, that it is not probable that in a state of insanity Nebuchadnezzar should have retained his consciousness, and have lifted up his eyes to heaven in penitential sorrow, and with prayer for pardon and restoration. But this allegation is refuted by many known instances of like acts of contrition and supplication under such circumstances. See above, v. 16. I have preached to a congregation of three hundred patients in the Lunatic Asylum near Lincoln (under Dr. Palmer's superintendence), and have administered the Holy Communion to some of them; and can testify, from personal observation, to their reverent and devout demeanour.

It may also be supposed that Daniel (whose inspiration had just been avouched by the fulfilment of his interpretation) was instant in prayer to God for the king's recovery; and we know that "the effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much" (James v. 16).

— *mine understanding returned*] By saying that *his reason* returned, he intimates that he had not lost his human shape, but his rational mind (*S. Jerome*).

Before
CHRIST
about
563,
c. Job 42. 12.
Prov. 22. 4.
Matt. 6. 33.
d Ps. 33. 4.
Rev. 13. 3.
e 16. 7.
e Ex. 18. 11.
ch. 5. 10.
about
538.
a Esth. i. 3.

and my lords sought unto me; and I was established in my kingdom, and excellent majesty was added unto me.

37 Now I Nebuchadnezzar praise and extol and honour the King of heaven, all whose works are truth, and his ways judgment: and those that walk in pride he is able to abase.

V. ¹ Belshazzar the king ^a made a great feast to a thousand of his lords, and drank wine before the thousand.

THE PROPHETIC MORAL OF THE HISTORY.

37. *those that walk in pride he is able to abase*] It is to be borne in mind, in reading the Book of Daniel, that the narratives contained in it are so constructed as to have a moral and spiritual meaning to all future ages, especially to the Church of God in times of peril.

The history of the pride and madness of Nebuchadnezzar, and of his consequent humiliation, and the history of the pride and impiety of Belshazzar (who did not profit by the warning in Nebuchadnezzar's example; see the words of Daniel, v. 18—22), and of his sudden destruction, were doubtless designed to have a prophetic significance for those Hebrews who would have to suffer persecution under the pride and frantic impiety of Antiochus Epiphanes; and they have still a message of comfort to those who, in the latter days, will have to endure much from the arrogance of Antichristianism. Let them derive patience and hope from these histories. Antichrist may rage and vaunt his power for a time, but "those who walk in pride, God is able to abase."

BELSHAZZAR.

CH. V. 1. *Belshazzar the king*]

Who was Belshazzar?

In order to answer this question, we must examine the history of the kings of Babylon after Nebuchadnezzar.

Nebuchadnezzar was succeeded by his son Evil-Merodach (cp. 2 Kings, xxv. 27. Jer. lii. 31. *Berosus*, fr. 14, in *Joseph. c. Apion*, i. 20. *Euseb. Chron.* pp. 45. 71), who reigned two years (according to *Berosus*; a longer reign is assigned to him by *Alex. Polyhist.* in *Euseb. Chron.* p. 45, and *Josephus*, Ant. x. 11. 2); and he is said to have lived dissolutely, in riot and licentiousness. A conspiracy was formed against him by his brother-in-law; or, according to *Josephus* (Ant. x. 11. 2), his son; according to others (*Euseb. Chron. Armen.*), his son-in-law, Neriglissar; and he was dethroned and murdered, and Neriglissar reigned in his stead.

Neriglissar occupied the throne from B.C. 559 to B.C. 556, and was succeeded by his son, then only a boy, Laborosoarchod (*Berosus*, in *Joseph. c. Ap.* i. 20. *Euseb. Chron.* p. 71), who reigned only nine months, and was deposed and put to death; and the throne was seized (B.C. 555) by one of the conspirators, Nabonadius, or Nabonnedus (as he is called by *Berosus*), or Labynetus (as he is named by *Herodotus*, i. 191).

There has been a great variety of conjectures as to the person of Belshazzar. It has been supposed by some that he was Evil-Merodach (*Hofmann, Hävernick, Zünder, Niebuhr, Oehler, Kranichfeld, Kliefoth, Keil*). But it does not seem probable that *Belshazzar* was the same as *Evil-Merodach*. *Belshazzar* is a Chaldean name, being derived from Bel, the god of Babylon, and bears much resemblance to the name *Belteshazzar*, given to Daniel by Nebuchadnezzar, from "the name of his god." See i. 7; ii. 26; iv. 8, 9, 19; v. 12; x. 1.

If Belshazzar was the same person as Evil-Merodach, why did not Daniel here call him Evil-Merodach? That name is found in Hebrew history and Hebrew prophecy (2 Kings xxv. 27; Jer. lii. 31). Why should Daniel produce confusion in the minds of his Hebrew readers by giving him another name? According to the best authorities, Evil-Merodach reigned only two years, and died B.C. 559. But Daniel speaks of the *third* year of Belshazzar.

If Belshazzar had been the same as Evil-Merodach, who reigned two years only, and showed his kindness to the Hebrews by marks of special favour to their king Jehoiachin (2 Kings xxv. 27—30. Jer. lii. 31), it is not likely that Daniel, who had been so illustrious under Nebuchadnezzar, should have so soon fallen into obscurity as to be almost unknown, as he was under Belshazzar, according to the history in this chapter (vv. 11—13).

We have no reason to think that Belshazzar is a mere "*alias*" for Evil-Merodach, or any other Babylonish monarch.

The death of Belshazzar is connected in this chapter with the capture of Babylon by the Medes and Persians. B.C. 538 (vv. 30,

31), "God hath numbered thy kingdom and finished it. Thy kingdom is divided and given to the *Medes and Persians*" (v. 28). The moral of the history is in this: that the capture of Babylon was a divine retribution for the sacrilegious profanation of the vessels of the temple of the Lord at the impious feast of Belshazzar (v. 23). But the theory which identifies Belshazzar with Evil-Merodach would make a gap of twenty years between verses 30 and 31, and between the death of Belshazzar and the fulfilment of Daniel's prophecy by the capture of Babylon.

Belshazzar has been identified by others (as *Hengst.*) with Nabonnedus. But if he was the same as Nabonnedus, why was he not called Nabonnedus? And Nabonnedus was not at Babylon, but at Borsippa, when Cyrus besieged and took Babylon.

It is much more probable that Belshazzar was the son of Nabonnedus and his associate in the throne, and occupied the chief place at Babylon as such, in the absence of his father, Nabonnedus.

Nabonnedus, hearing of the approach of Cyrus from the West, had issued forth with an army to meet him, and was defeated in battle, and took refuge at Borsippa, near Babylon, where he was shut up by the troops of the conqueror, and after the capture of Babylon capitulated to him, and was sent away to a distance from Babylon, and died in exile (*Berosus*, in *Joseph. c. Apion*, i. 20. *Euseb. Can.* pp. 45. 73).

It appears from extant monuments, namely, from cylinders of Nabonnedus discovered at Mugheir, that a prince called Bilshar-uzur (Belshazzar) was his son, and was associated with him in the Empire. In those cylinders the protection of the gods is desired "for Nabonadid and his son Bil-Sharuzur;" and their names are coupled together in a way that implies the sovereignty of the latter (British Museum Series, Plate 68, No. 1. *Rawlinson*, Ancient Monarchies, iii. 515, whose remarks are confirmed by *Oppert*, who, when in Babylonia in 1854, read and interpreted those cylinders at the same time, and in the same way, as *Sir H. Rawlinson* did in England. See *Oppert's* letter to Olshausen, dated Jan. 16, 1854, in *Zeitschrift d. Deutsch. Morg. Ges.* viii. 598). This opinion was further corroborated by another learned Orientalist, *Dr. Hincks*, who deciphered an inscription of Nabonnedus, in which he prays for Belshazzar his eldest son, and in which he is represented as co-regent. See *Pusey*, pp. 402, 403.

Yet further, the present chapter begins with the description of a magnificent feast, and ends with the narrative of the fall of the Babylonish Empire, and its transfer to the Medes and Persians.

These two events are intimately connected in this chapter; the latter is the sequel of the former.

Now we find that Hebrew Prophecy had foretold that *Babylon* would be taken at a festival (see on Isaiah xxi. 4, 5); and the pages of secular history, both in Herodotus and Xenophon, exhibit the fulfilment of that prediction (the passages are cited above in the notes on that prophecy of Isaiah; see also the notes on Jeremiah li. 30—32. 39. 46. 57).

Those critics who separate the feast of Belshazzar by an interval of many years from the capture of Babylon, do violence to the text of Daniel, and mar the harmony of prophecy and history.

The only objection to the conclusion that Belshazzar was the last king of Babylon, and that Babylon was taken at the feast described by Daniel in the present chapter, that seems to have any force, is grounded on the fact that Nebuchadnezzar is here called Belshazzar's father (vv. 2. 11. 13. 18), and Belshazzar is called his son (v. 22).

But on examination this objection will be seen to have little weight.

Nebuchadnezzar, had but one son, who succeeded him on the throne, Evil-Merodach. That Belshazzar was not Evil-Merodach seems to be certain from considerations already adduced. And further, Evil-Merodach was cut off by a secret conspiracy. Belshazzar, as described in Daniel, is seen on the last night of his life, surrounded by a thousand of his lords in a royal banquet-hall. This was not likely to be a scene for the action of a

² Belshazzar, while he tasted the wine, commanded to bring the golden and silver vessels ^b which his || father Nebuchadnezzar had [†] taken out of the temple

Before
CHRIST
about
538.

b ch. 1. 2. Jer. 52. 19.

|| Or, grandfather: as Jer. 27. 7. 2 Sam. 9. 7. 2 Chron. 15. 16. ver. 11, 13.

† Chald. brought forth.

clandestine conspiracy against him. But the historians tell us that the last king of Babylon was slain by enemies (the Medo-Persian soldiery of Cyrus) rushing into his palace at a festival in the night time. See the passages quoted in the notes on Isaiah xv. 19. 21; xxv. 5; and on Jeremiah li. 30—32. Cp. on Habakkuk ii. 5—13.

This is in harmony with Daniel's narrative.

The word *father* is often used in Holy Scripture to designate any ancestor. David is called Asa's father (2 Chron. xiv. 1). David is also called the father of Ahaz (2 Kings xvi. 2), and of Josiah (2 Chron. xxxiv. 2, 3).

"Neither in Hebrew nor in Chaldee is there any word for grandfather" (*Pusey*, 405).

It seems very probable that Nabonnedus, the actual father of Belshazzar, endeavoured to strengthen his position on the throne of Babylon by allying himself in marriage with a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar, and that Belshazzar was the grandson of Nebuchadnezzar by his mother's side, and that the queen mentioned in this chapter (v. 10) was the queen-mother, and a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar.

In the ancient Assyrian Inscriptions, Sargon, the father of Sennacherib, and an usurper, speaks of "the Kings my fathers;" and Sennacherib, his son, speaks also of "the Kings my fathers" (2 Kings xix. 11, 12. Cp. 2 Chron. xxxii. 13, 14), whose son, or descendant, he could only have been, and in all probability was, by a marriage with one of the female line of the older Assyrian dynasty.

The facts may be stated in the following summary from a learned modern historian, *M. François Le Normant* (*Histoire Ancienne de l'Orient*, i. 241):—

"Nabonahid s'avance à la rencontre de Cyrus, mais il éprouva une défaite complète, et alla, suivi d'un petit nombre de soldats, se renfermer dans Borsippa, tandis que Cyrus mettait le siège devant Babylone. Il résulte de ce fait, rapporté par Bérosee, que le dernier monarque Chaldéen ne s'était pas senti en mesure de défendre efficacement l'immense périmètre de la première enceinte élevée par Nabuchodonosor, laquelle enveloppait à la fois Babylone proprement dite, Borsippa et Cusha, et qu'il l'avait laissé franchir sans obstacle à l'armée perse.

"Babylone, couverte par sa seconde enceinte et par l'impugnabile citadelle que lui formait la cité royale, n'était pas facile à réduire; pourvus de vivres pour plusieurs années, ses habitants dédaignaient un assiégeant moins bien approvisionné qu'eux-mêmes. Mais le temps fixé par la Providence pour le châtiement de la ville Chaldéenne était arrivé. Cyrus, qui tout récemment avait épuisé par des canaux le Gynndès, affluent du Tigre, résolut de reproduire le même travail et d'entrer dans Babylone par le lit de l'Euphrate. Il ouvrit des écluses qui faisaient déverser les eaux du fleuve dans le lac artificiel creusé par Nitocris, et ses troupes, descendant alors dans l'Euphrate, où elles n'eurent de l'eau qu'au-dessus du genou, s'engagèrent dans la ville ou plutôt entre ses deux quartiers. Les habitants pouvaient encore les prendre comme dans un filet, en fermant sur eux les portes d'airain de leurs quais, et les accabler du haut de leurs murs. Mais ils célébraient alors une fête, et dans leur tumultueuse insouciance ils laissèrent occuper par l'ennemi le centre de la ville, avant que les quartiers éloignés en fussent seulement instruits. Ainsi se vérifièrent les prophéties qui annonçaient le dessèchement du fleuve de Babylone, l'orgie de ses guerriers et de ses prêtres, suivie du sommeil de la mort, ses portes ouvertes devant les ministres de la justice divine, et *Cyrus* (nommé par Isaïe, contemporain d'Ezéchias) prenant possession de cette orgueilleuse cité dont Jérémie avait décrit la prise au temps de sa plus haute puissance.

"Nabonahid, en se retirant à Borsippa, avait laissé dans Babylone même son fils *Belsarossor* (le dieu Bel protégé le roi), le *Balthasar* du livre de Daniel, associé par lui à la royauté. C'est au milieu même de la nuit de fête pendant laquelle les Perses surprirent Babylone, racontée d'une manière si saisissante dans le livre de Daniel. Le fils de Nabonahid ayant profané dans cette orgie les vases sacrés du temple de Jérusalem, un signe effrayant—des doigts écrivant sur la muraille les trois fameux mots: *Mané, Thécel, Phares*—lui annonça le châtiement que lui réservait la Providence. La nuit même, en effet, il fut tué par Darius le Mède, l'un des généraux de Cyrus, que ce prince avait chargé de conduire l'expédition nocturne, et qui reçut, en récompense de son succès, la satrapie de Babylone.

"Nabonahid échappa au sort funeste de son fils. Il n'attendit pas dans Borsippa un siège qui n'eût probablement pas été long, et se rendit à Cyrus, qui l'envoya en Carmanie, où il

finît ses jours. Dès lors le royaume babylonien avait cessé d'exister, quoique la ruine de la ville elle-même ait été grande et lente" (*F. Le Normant*).

To this historical summary may be added the following recapitulation, from the work of a learned Anglican divine (*Archdeacon Lee*, *On Inspiration*, Lect. viii. p. 388.):—

"The account (Dan. v. 30) of the death of 'Belshazzar, king of the Chaldees' (a name which does not occur except in the Bible), on the night of the conquest of Babylon by Cyrus, seems to present an irreconcilable opposition to that of the Chaldean historians.

"Josephus (c. Apion, lib. i. c. 20. t. ii. p. 452) has preserved a fragment of Berosus, in which it is stated that Cyrus invaded Babylonia in the seventeenth year of the reign of Nabonnedus; that, as soon as Nabonnedus was aware of his approach, he assembled his forces to oppose him, but was defeated, and fled with a few adherents to the city of Borsippa; in fine, that Cyrus captured that city, treated Nabonnedus with kindness, and provided him with a settlement in Carmania, where he died.

"The name (Nabonnedus) given by Berosus to the last Chaldean king, is repeated, with immaterial variations, in the canon of Ptolemy, by Alexander Polyhistor and Abydenus (*Euseb. Chron. Armen.* i. pp. 45. 60), and by Megasthenes (*Euseb. Præpar. Evang.* ix. 41. ed. Gaisford, t. ii. p. 442). Herodotus alone calls him Labynetius (i. 188), adding (191) that the city was stormed by night during a festival; which fact is also vouched for by Xenophon, who states further (*Cyrop.* vii. 5. 30) that the king (whom he merely describes as 'an impious king') then perished."

"Colonel Rawlinson (dating from Bagdad, January 25, 1854) has communicated to the 'Athenæum' (No. 1377, p. 341, March 18, 1854) a discovery which he has 'recently made in Babylonian history, and which is of the utmost importance for Scriptural illustration.' A number of clay cylinders have been recently disinterred in the ruins of Um-Qur (the ancient Ur of the Chaldees), two of which contain a memorial of the works executed by Nabonidus (the last king of Babylon) in Southern Chaldea. The most important fact which they disclose is, that the eldest son of Nabonidus was named Bel-shar-azar, and that he was admitted by his father to a share in the government. This name is undoubtedly the Belshazzar of Daniel, and thus furnishes us with a key to the explanation of that great historical problem which has hitherto defied solution. We can now understand how Belshazzar, as joint king with his father, may have been Governor of Babylon, when the city was attacked by the combined forces of the Medes and Persians, and may have perished in the assault which followed; while Nabonidus, leading a force to the relief of the place, was defeated, and obliged to take refuge in the neighbouring town of Borsippa (or Birs-i-Nimrud), capitulating, after a short resistance, and being subsequently assigned, according to Berosus, an honourable retirement in Carmania. By the discovery, indeed, of the name of Bel-shar-azar, as appertaining to the son of Nabonidus, we are, for the first time, enabled to reconcile authentic history with the inspired record of Daniel."

For another confirmation of the opinion that Belshazzar was now Viceroy at Babylon, see below, the note on v. 7.

— *a great feast*] It was the anniversary of a religious festival (*Xen. Cyr.* vii. 5. 15; *Herod.* i. 191), and therefore a sacred act. See the authorities and details given at large above, in the notes on Isaiah xxi. 5, and on Jer. li. 30—32. 46, which may serve as comments on this chapter.

This may help to explain the circumstance that the Babylonians should have indulged in festal revelry when their city was besieged. The festival was a service of worship to their god; and not only was religion used as a plea for sensual indulgence, but sensual indulgence was a part of it (*Herodotus* i. 199). When all the preparations for the siege were made, Cyrus determined to wait for the arrival of a certain festival, during which the whole population were wont to engage in drinking and revelling; and then silently in the dead of night to turn the water of the river and make the attack. All fell out as he hoped and wished. The festival was even held with greater pomp and splendour than usual, for Belshazzar, with the insolence of youth, abandoned himself to the delights of the season, and entertained a thousand lords in his palace. The rest of the population was occupied in feasting and dancing. Riot and mad excitement held possession of the city: the siege was forgotten, ordinary precautions were neglected, the river gates were left open. Following the example of their king, the

Before
CHRIST
about
538.

which was in Jerusalem; that the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, might drink therein.

e Rev. 9. 20.

³ Then they brought the golden vessels that were taken out of the temple of the house of God which was at Jerusalem; and the king, and his princes, his wives, and his concubines, drank in them. ⁴ They drank wine, and praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass, of iron, of wood, and of stone.

d ch. 4. 31.

⁵ In the same hour came forth fingers of a man's hand, and wrote over against the candlestick upon the plaister of the wall of the king's palace: and the king saw the part of the hand that wrote.

† Chald.
brightnesses,
ver. 9.
† Chald.
changed it.
|| Or, girdles,
Isa. 5. 27.
† Chald. bindings, or, knots.

⁶ Then the king's countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, so that the joints of his loins were loosed, and his knees smote one against another.

e Nahum 2. 10.

Babylonians gave themselves up for the night to orgies in which religious frenzy and drunken excess formed a strange medley (*Rawlinson*, iii. 517). According to Herodotus (i. 188, 190, 191) Babylon was taken by Cyrus, when Labynetos (Nabonnedus) was king; and at a festival celebrated at night; and Xenophon describes the monarch who was actually at Babylon at that time, as a young man, addicted to revelry, and relates that he was slain at the festival celebrated by him (*Cyropæd.* iv. 6. 3; v. 2. 27; vii. 5; viii. 5. 32).

—before the thousand] Or, over against the thousand whom he had invited (*S. Jerome*; *Pusey*, 459) at a separate table; either for safety's sake, or so as to be elevated above all, and conspicuous to all. The consequence of this was, that the pale countenance and troubled demeanour of the panic-stricken king of Babylon (see v. 6) were visible to all his thousand guests in that vast banquetting-hall of the palace.

On the enormous number of guests entertained by Oriental princes, see *Esther* i. 3—5, and *Kranich*, p. 214.

2. the golden and silver vessels—in Jerusalem] See above, i. 2, and 2 Kings xxv. 15, and 2 Chron. xxxvi. 10, and on *Ezra* i. 7, on their subsequent restoration by Cyrus, after the various vicissitudes through which they passed. They were torn from the Temple, which was destroyed; they were not melted down, but were carried to Babylon; and were placed, not in the royal palace, but in an idol temple, to do honour to a false god. They were brought out of that idol temple, and placed on the table at the royal banquet; they were not rifled and carried off by the soldiers who broke into the palace and killed the king, in the tumult and confusion of that fatal night; but they were safely preserved and carried back to Jerusalem, and placed in the restored Temple there. And thus those very vessels, which had been taken from the Temple of Jerusalem by the Chaldean conqueror to be ornaments of his victory, and to be monuments of the power of his god, and were employed by Belshazzar for the sacrilegious mockery of God, and at the idolatrous worship of his false deities in a night of festal revelry, were eventually made to be public trophies of God's victory over Babylon, and permanent mementos of His love to His people.

Surely God's hand was in all this. Yet further; these sacred vessels had a symbolical meaning. All God's servants and saints are His "vessels;" they are dedicated to His service; placed in His Temple, the Church; and not one of them will ever be lost, if they remember that they are chosen vessels (see on 2 Tim. ii. 20, 21); they will be preserved intact amid the ruins of material temples, and of all earthly kingdoms, and will be for ever "vessels of honour meet for the Master's use" in the heavenly Jerusalem. See above, on *Ezra* i. 7.

—wives and his concubines] These words are omitted by the *Sept.*, probably because the presence of women at such feasts was not in accordance with the Greek usage; but the history in this respect is true to Babylonian custom (*Herod.* i. 191; *Xenophon*, *Cyrop.* v. 2, 28; *Curtius*, v. 1. 38).

The word used for wife here is *shigal*, and is the same as in v. 23, and in *Neh.* ii. 6, *Ps.* xlv. 9; in both which passages it is rendered queen. It means a queen consort, and is a different word from that in v. 10, which is there rendered queen, and signifies a queen regnant.

3. drank in them] Observe the repetition of these words. The drinking of wine in these sacred vessels by the king of Babylon, his princes, his wives and concubines, who praised their gods of gold and silver, is regarded by the writer with recreation.

4. They—praised the gods of gold, and of silver, of brass,

of iron, of wood, and of stone] Observe these words, which, for the sake of greater emphasis, are repeated in v. 23 with the additional words, *which see not, nor hear*. Remark also how they are adopted by St. John in the Apocalypse, as if he would thus teach us that this eventful history of Daniel concerning the sins and fall of the literal Babylon was a figurative foreshadowing of the sins and fall of the mystical Babylon, Papal Rome, and would lead us to regard this history of the past as also a prophecy of the future.

After speaking of the loosing of the four angels bound in the great river Euphrates—the river of Babylon (see on Rev. ix. 14), St. John adds (Rev. ix. 20), "They repented not of the works of their hands, that they should not worship idols of gold, and silver, and brass, and stone, and of wood: which neither can see nor hear,"—the words of Daniel. St. John is speaking of the mystical Babylon—Rome (see the notes thereon below, Rev. ix. 14—20, and on xvi. 12 and xvii. 2); therefore in the Apocalypse, Euphrates, the great river of Babylon—the cause of its commercial wealth, and also its defence and protection—is to be interpreted mystically; and the sense is, that, as the Medo-Persian soldiers of Cyrus, formerly subjects of Babylon,—who were closed in for a time in the dry bed of the Euphrates, which was the strength and glory of Babylon,—were loosed, and took the literal City while indulging in idolatrous revelry, so some nations, who once were vassals of the mystical Babylon, will become its enemies (see on Rev. xvii. 16), and will take it captive in an hour of self-confident exultation, when it is glorifying itself, and is profaning the Name of God by acts of religious homage to other objects of worship. See below, in the notes on the Book of Revelation xvi. 12, page 246, as a commentary here.

On the great religious festival of the Immaculate Conception (Dec. 8, 1869) the Vatican Council met, which decreed on July 18, 1870, that the Roman Pontiff is Infallible; and that decree was followed on the next day by the breaking out of the war which has humbled France, the protectress of Rome, and has brought into Rome the troops of an Italian sovereign, of the House of Savoy, formerly the most devoted vassal of the Papacy, in obedience to which it massacred its own Piedmontese Protestant subjects (see *Milton's* Sonnet xviii. "Avenge, O Lord, Thy slaughter'd saints," &c.). This may be a premonitory symptom of Rome's future doom.

5. In the same hour] Or instant. See iv. 19, 33.

—over against the candlestick] The candlestick. In v. 2 it is said that the golden and silver vessels taken from the Temple at Jerusalem were on the table, and it is supposed by some that the candlestick here mentioned was the golden candlestick from that sacred building, and that the judgment pronounced by God on Babylon was made legible by the light of the candlestick of God's holy house at Jerusalem. The Golden Candlestick of the Second Temple is still seen sculptured on the arch of Titus at Rome among the trophies of his victory.

The candlestick was on the high table at which the king himself sat, so that the letters were illumined by the light of the candlestick, and were clearly seen by the guests at the banquet; and also it was evident from that juxtaposition that the writing was addressed to the king who sat there.

—upon the plaister] There were chambers, says *Layard* (*Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 651), in the palace of Sennacherib, whose walls were coated with plaster, like the walls of Belshazzar's palace at Babylon.

—the part of the hand] The end of the hand (*Gesen.* 683). Cp. v. 24.

7 'The king cried † aloud to bring in ⁸ the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the soothsayers. And the king spake, and said to the wise men of Babylon, Whosoever shall read this writing, and shew me the interpretation thereof, shall be clothed with || scarlet, and have a chain of gold about his neck, ⁹ and shall be the third ruler in the kingdom.

Before
CHRIST
about
538.
f ch. 2. 2. & 4. 6.
† Chald.
with might.
g Isa. 47. 13.
|| Or, purple.
h ch. 6. 2.

⁸ Then came in all the king's wise men: ¹ but they could not read the writing, nor make known to the king the interpretation thereof.

⁹ Then was king Belshazzar greatly ^k troubled, and his † countenance was changed in him, and his lords were astonished.

k ch. 2. 1.
† Chald.
brightnesses,
ver. 6.

¹⁰ Now the queen, by reason of the words of the king and his lords, came into the banquet house: and the queen spake and said, ¹ O king, live for ever: let not thy thoughts trouble thee, nor let thy countenance be changed:

l ch. 2. 4. & 3. 9.

¹¹ ^m There is a man in thy kingdom, in whom is the spirit of the holy gods; and in the days of thy || father light and understanding and wisdom, like the wisdom of the gods, was found in him; whom the king Nebuchadnezzar thy || father, the king, I say, thy father, made ⁿ master of the magicians, astrologers, Chaldeans, and soothsayers; ¹² ^o forasmuch as an excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, || interpreting of dreams, and shewing of hard sentences, and || dissolving of † doubts, were found in the same Daniel, ^p whom the king named Belteshazzar: now let Daniel be called, and he will shew the interpretation.

m ch. 2. 48.
& 4. 8, 9, 18.
|| Or, grand-father,
ver. 2.

|| Or, grand-father,
ver. 2.
n ch. 4. 9.
o ch. 6. 3.
|| Or, of an interpreter, &c.
|| Or, of a dissolver.
† Chald. knots.
p ch. 1. 7.

¹³ Then was Daniel brought in before the king. And the king spake and said unto Daniel, Art thou that Daniel, which art of the children of the captivity of Judah, whom the king my || father brought out of Jewry? ¹⁴ I have even heard of thee, that ^q the spirit of the gods is in thee, and that light and understanding and excellent wisdom is found in thee. ¹⁵ And now ^r the wise

|| Or, grandfather.

q ver. 11, 12.

r ver. 7. 8.

7. the wise men of Babylon] Called also (v. 8) the "King's wise men," contrasted with the one wise man of God—Daniel.

—scarlet] Or purple, the Chaldee *argevânâ*, in Hebrew *argâmân*, in Sanscrit *râgavan* (*Gesen.* 76). Cp. Ezek. xxvii. 16, 17, where it is translated purple, as *argâmân* always is in our Version, where it occurs about thirty times; and as *argevân* is in 2 Chron. ii. 7.

—chain of gold] Like Joseph (Gen. xli. 42).

—third ruler] This is the correct translation, and is found in *Sept.*, *Theodot.*, *Vulg.*, *Syriac*, *Arabic*. Cp. ii. 30.

Why did Belshazzar promise that he who interpreted the writing should be the *third* ruler? Why did he not promise that he should be the *second* ruler? Joseph, who interpreted Pharaoh's dream, was raised to the *second* place in the kingdom (Gen. xli. 40); and under Darius a like place seems to have been occupied by Daniel himself (vi. 2, 3).

It may be submitted to the reader's consideration, whether the reason of this may not have been, that the *second* place in the kingdom was now occupied by Belshazzar himself. Reasons have been already given for the opinion that Belshazzar was *riceroy* at Babylon in the place of his father Nabonnedus, who was now at Borsippa. See on v. 1. And this slight circumstance, that the *third*, and not the *second* place, is promised by Belshazzar to the interpreter of the writing, incidentally confirms that opinion; namely, that Belshazzar was associated with his father Nabonnedus in the throne of Babylon. In like manner, Darius himself was afterwards set over Babylon by Cyrus, the conqueror and captor of that city.

The Babylonians thought themselves secure, and laughed at the measures of the besiegers (*Xenophon*, *Cyrop.* vii. 5. 13, 14); therefore we need not be surprised, with some, that Belshazzar made this promise.

10. the queen] Chal. *malcetha*; probably the queen-mother, the wife of Nabonnedus, the father of Belshazzar, and perhaps a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar. See on v. 1. She took no part in the banquet with the wives of the king (v. 2), but was sent for by the king to give her advice.

11. There is a man in thy kingdom] It is singular that

Daniel, who had been made chief over the wise men by Nebuchadnezzar (ii. 48, 49), should now have been almost forgotten, except by the queen-mother. This may be explained by the dissolute character of the king, and also of his predecessors. See above, on v. 1. Like Rehoboam, they rejected the old counsellors, for younger advisers. It is not said here that Daniel was unknown to the king: he had heard of him (see vv. 13, 14), but was glad to set him aside, especially as Daniel had foretold the fall of the Babylonish monarchy (ii. 39). If the queen (as seems probable) was a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar, it was very natural that her mind, in the present crisis, should have turned immediately to Daniel, who had rendered such signal service to her father in the interpretation of his dreams (ii. 26—44; iv. 8—27). Observe, though Daniel was treated with so much indifference and neglect by Belshazzar, yet he did not relax his allegiance to the king. When he had been favoured with visions from the King of heaven, he did not forget his duty to his earthly sovereign—even Belshazzar. He "rose up and did the king's business." See viii. 1. 27. A noble instance of genuine loyalty! Cp. vi. 21 for another example of the same spirit.

—in the days of thy father—the king Nebuchadnezzar thy father] The person who is called "thy father," is more exactly defined by the queen-mother to be *Nebuchadnezzar*, and is thus distinguished from Nabonnedus, the proper father of Belshazzar.

In an extant Assyrian inscription, Jehu (the son of Nimshi) is called the "son of Omri," although he was only his successor. Cp. the note above, on v. 1, and on 2 Kings x. 32.

—the king, I say, thy father] Or, O king, thy father.

—magicians] *Chartummin*. See ii. 10. 27; iv. 7.

—astrologers] *Ashpin* (ii. 10. 27; iv. 7).

—soothsayers] *Gazerin* (ii. 27; iv. 7).

13. the king my father brought out of Jewry] All men knew that the captives of Judah had been brought to Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar; and therefore the reference to him as the father (or ancestor) of Belshazzar could not produce any ambiguity.

Before
CHRIST
about
538.

men, the astrologers, have been brought in before me, that they should read this writing, and make known unto me the interpretation thereof: but they could not shew the interpretation of the thing: ¹⁶ and I have heard of thee, that thou canst † make interpretations, and dissolve doubts: * now if thou canst read the writing, and make known to me the interpretation thereof, thou shalt be clothed with scarlet, and have a chain of gold about thy neck, and shalt be the third ruler in the kingdom.

¹⁷ Then Daniel answered and said before the king, Let thy gifts be to thyself, and give thy || rewards to another; yet I will read the writing unto the king, and make known to him the interpretation.

¹⁸ O thou king, 'the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar thy father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honour: ¹⁹ and for the majesty that he gave him, "all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down. ²⁰ * But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened || in pride, he was † deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: ²¹ and he was ^v driven from the sons of men; and || his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; ² till he knew that the most high God ruled in the kingdom of men, and that he appointeth over it whomsoever he will.

²² And thou his son, O Belshazzar, ^a hast not humbled thine heart, though thou knewest all this; ²³ ^b but hast lifted up thyself against the Lord of heaven; and they have brought the vessels of his house before thee, and thou, and thy lords, thy wives, and thy concubines, have drunk wine in them; and thou hast praised the gods of silver, and gold, of brass, iron, wood, and stone, ^c which see not, nor hear, nor know: and the God in whose hand thy breath is, ^d and whose are all thy ways, hast thou not glorified:

²⁴ Then was the part of the hand sent from him; and this writing was written.

²⁵ And this is the writing that was written, MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN.

²⁶ This is the interpretation of the thing: MENE; God hath numbered thy kingdom, and finished it. ²⁷ TEKEL; ^e Thou art weighed in the balances, and art found wanting. ²⁸ PERES; Thy kingdom is divided, and given to the ^f Medes and ^g Persians.

† Chald.
interpret.
8 ver. 7.

|| Or, fee, as
ch. 2. 6.

t ch. 2. 37, 38.
& 4. 17, 22, 23.

u Jer. 27. 7.
ch. 3. 4.

x ch. 4. 30, 37.

‡ Or, to deal
proudly.
Ex. 18. 11.
† Chald.
mad - to come
down.
y ch. 4. 32, &c.
|| Or, he made his
heart equal, &c.
z ch. 4. 17, 25.

a 2 Chron. 33. 23.
& 36. 12.

b ver. 3, 4.

c Ps. 115. 5, 6.

d Jer. 10. 23.

e Job 31. 6.
Ps. 62. 9.
Jer. 6. 30.

f Foretold,
1st. 21. 2.
ver. 31. ch. 9. 1.

g ch. 6. 28.

17. Daniel answered—Let thy gifts be to thyself] Daniel declines the king's gifts as Elisha declined those of Naaman, and for a like reason. See on 2 Kings v. 16. Daniel's address to Belshazzar is in a very different tone from that of his language to Nebuchadnezzar (iv. 19). Belshazzar was at this time guilty of profane sacrilege against God; and the Prophet, as His minister, pronounced sentence upon him.

20. in pride] Or, into pride.

23. which see not, nor hear, nor know] Words adopted in the Apocalypse by St. John, speaking of the mystical Babylon. See above, on v. 4.

24. Then was the part of the hand] Therefore was the end of this hand sent from His face before Him. Cp. v. 5.

25. And this is the writing that was written] Rather, that is written. It was still visible, but Daniel alone was able to read it; and the proof that he read it aright, and interpreted it correctly, was shown in the fulfilment of it on that same night by the capture of Babylon by the Medes and Persians.

— MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN] These words have a twofold sense. MENE signifies numbered and ended (Gesen.

485, 486; Pusey, 130). MENE and TEKEL are participles of the *Peil* form. TEKEL signifies weighed (cp. Hebr. *shekel*, Gesen. 873); and to Daniel it conveyed also the meaning of being found light in the scale, with allusion to *katal*, in hiphil *hekel*, to make light (Gesen. 733; Pusey, 130). UPHARSIN means, and (they are) dividing, from *paras*, Chaldee, to divide, Hebr. *paras*, to break, to part asunder (Gesen. 690); and to Daniel it conveyed an allusion to the Persians; so as to bear a second sense, and Persians, from *Paras*, Hebr. and Chaldee, Persia, the Persians (2 Chron. xxxvi. 20. 22. Ezra i. 1; iv. 5; vi. 14. Dan. vi. 9. 13). Hence *Parsi*, a Persian (Neh. xii. 22). Cp. below, vi. 28. Gesen. 690; Pusey, 130.

The pre-eminence of the Persians over the Medes is here foretold. The divinely-illuminated eye of Daniel saw the forces of Cyrus the Persian in the darkness of the night, ready to spring forth from the bed of the Euphrates, and to surprise the infatuated city in its revelry, and to divide the kingdom to others.

28. Medes and Persians] The Medes are placed before the Persians by Daniel as an historian (cp. vi. 9. 13. 16; viii.

²⁹ Then commanded Belshazzar, and they clothed Daniel with scarlet, and put a chain of gold about his neck, and made a proclamation concerning him, ^h that he should be the third ruler in the kingdom.

³⁰ ⁱ In that night was Belshazzar the king of the Chaldeans slain.

³¹ ^k And Darius the Median took the kingdom, † *being* || about threescore and two years old.

VI. ¹ It pleased Darius to set ^a over the kingdom an hundred and twenty princes, which should be over the whole kingdom; ² and over these three presidents; of whom Daniel *was* first: that the princes might give accounts

Before
CHRIST
about
535.

h ver. 7.

i Jer. 51. 31,

39, 57.

k ch. 9. 1.

† Chald. he as

the son of, &c.

|| Or, now.

a Esth. 1. 1.

20), because the Medes were the elder nation and more celebrated; but as a prophet he foretold the supremacy of Persia, which in a later book (the Book of Esther) holds the first place. See i. 3. 14, 18, 19. Cp. Isa. xxi. 2, foretelling the siege of Babylon, "Go up, O Elam; besiege, O Media; and Isa. xiii. 17. Jer. li. 28, 37.

²⁹ Then commanded Belshazzar, and they clothed Daniel with scarlet] Belshazzar hoped that the punishment would be deferred, as is evident from his decree that Daniel should be third ruler in the kingdom, as if it were to stand for some time; and he desired to conciliate Daniel, and Daniel's God. "Non mirum, si Belshazzar audiens tristia solverit præmium quod pollicitus est. Aut enim post tempus credidit ventura quæ dixerat; aut dum Dei prophetam honorat, sperat se veniam consecuturum" (S. Jerome). Almighty God ordered this, that it might be a public testimony to His own power and truth; and also it suggests the hope that the youthful king was penitent in his last hour, and that his repentance may not have been unavailing.

³⁰ In that night was Belshazzar—slain] The reader is requested to refer to the narrative of the events as recited above from Xenophon and Herodotus, in the notes on the wonderful prophecies of Jeremiah 1. 30—37; li. 22 and 46, which, together with the notes on Isa. xxi. 5; xlv. 27, may serve as a comment on these words of Daniel.

DARIUS THE MEDE.

³¹ And] This copula connects what follows with what has gone before, and appears to refute the conjecture of some modern writers, that a considerable interval elapsed between the death of Belshazzar and the succession of Darius the Median. See above, on v. 1.

—Darius the Median] The name *Darius*, like Ahasuerus, Cyaxares, Xerxes, and Artaxerxes, is an appellative or official name. See above, on Esther iv. 5—7, and *Pusey*, 124, and *Keil*, 167. That name was prior to this time. See above, 1 Chron. xxix. 7, as to the word *daric*, from an older Darius. The person here called *Darius* was probably Cyaxares II., son and successor of Astyages, and brother of Mandane, the mother of Cyrus (S. Jerome). He reigned over Media in the time between his father and nephew, from B.C. 569 to B.C. 536 (*Gesen*. 207).

The following summary is derived from Xenophon's *Cyropædia* :—

Astyages, the King of Media, the son of Cyaxares I., gave his daughter Mandane to Cambyses, King of Persia, who was the father of Cyrus, by her (i. 2). When Cyrus had arrived at man's estate, Astyages died, and was succeeded on the throne of Media by Cyaxares II., the brother of Mandane. Croesus, King of Lydia, formed an alliance with the King of Babylon against the growing power of the Medes and Persians. Cyrus, as general of the combined Medo-Persian forces (iii. 3. 20), overthrew the army of Croesus. Cyaxares, who is described by Xenophon as a luxurious and passionate prince, was jealous of his successes, and detached himself from him. But the Median soldiery continued loyal to him (iv. 5. 18). Cyrus remaining at the head of the Medo-Persian army, behaved with great generosity to his uncle, and allowed him, as King of Media, to direct the plan of the campaign, while he held the first place in the field (vi. 1. 6); and after he had taken Sardis and captured Croesus, its king (vii. 2. 1), and subdued Western Asia, he turned back to Babylon, and took the city at night-time, while it was engaged in feasting, and slew the king.

After the capture of Babylon, Cyrus marched to Media, and gave to Cyaxares rich presents, and offered to him Babylon as his royal residence (viii. 5. 17); and Cyaxares, who had no son, gave him his daughter in marriage and the kingdom of Media as a dowry (*Xenophon*, *Cyrop.* viii. 5. 19—28).

—took the kingdom] Rather, *received it*. See below, on vii. 18, and *Pusey*, 129, 131. The royalty was assigned to Darius by Cyrus, the conqueror of Babylon, who received it

from God, "Who called him from the east to his foot, gave the nations before him, and made him ruler over kings. He gave them as the dust to his sword, and as driven stubble to his bow" (Isa. xli. 2), as Cyrus himself confessed. See on 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22. Ezra i. 2. "Thus saith Cyrus, King of Persia, The Lord God of heaven hath given me all the kingdoms of the earth, and He hath charged me to build Him an house at Jerusalem."

The fall of Babylon was the building up again of Sion.

Cir. VI. 1. an hundred and twenty princes] Or, *satraps*. As to the etymology of the word here used for *princes*, see above on Esther iii. 12; and cp. viii. 9, ix. 3, and Ezra viii. 36. There are 127 provinces mentioned in Esther i. 1, as forming the Persian Empire (see the note there). The kingdom had then been enlarged.

Almost the same words as those which are here used occur in Xenophon's history of Cyrus (viii. 6. 1). "When he was at Babylon, it pleased him to send satraps to rule the conquered nations." Darius acted as the representative of Cyrus. The twenty satrapies into which the Persian Empire was divided by Darius Hystaspes, according to Herodotus (iii. 89), were different from these. The arrangement made by Darius Hystaspes was mainly made for the collection of tribute. In the days of Cyaxares II. and of Cyrus, tribute and taxes were not regularly levied, but were voluntary gifts and subsidies, offered to the Monarch.

² presidents] The word *sarac*, here rendered *president*, is found only in this chapter (v. 2, 3, 4, 6, 7), and seems to be descriptive of an office peculiar to the Medo-Persian Government (*Gesen*. 595; *Hengst*. 282).

—of whom Daniel was first] Daniel was advanced by Darius in consequence of his supernatural wisdom, which was proved in that night when Cyrus became master of Babylon, according to Daniel's prediction, that the kingdom would be divided and given to the Medes and Persians (v. 28, 29).

THE RESULTS OF DANIEL'S WORK IN THE EAST.

Observe the continuous chain of marvellous events.

Daniel had been accredited to Darius by publicly foretelling an event in which Darius himself was personally concerned. Daniel's character is now about to be further proved and manifested by his loyalty, and by his marvellous deliverance from the den of lions. These things produced the public attestation of Darius the king to the truth and power of Daniel's God. Doubtless these events were reported to Cyrus, the great conqueror of the East. The prophecies of Isaiah and Jeremiah concerning Cyrus himself (Isa. xlv. 28; xlv. 1), and the taking of Babylon by him, were probably shown by Daniel to Cyrus and others, in due time, in the course of two years. Hence Cyrus was led to do a thing which was altogether contrary to the policy of Eastern Nations, namely, to part with a large number of his own subjects—the Jewish captives scattered over all his kingdom—and they might all have left the East for Palestine, if they had been willing; and to issue a decree for their return, and for the rebuilding of the Temple of God, which the Chaldeans had destroyed (Ezra i. 2).

In modern days, it has been alleged by some that there is a lavish waste of miraculous power in the Book of Daniel, and that no adequate results followed from it (see above, *Prelim. Note* to chapters ii. and iii.); and thus they have tried to insinuate a spirit of unbelief with regard to these miracles.

But the restoration of the Jews, and the rebuilding of the Temple and the City; and the fulfilment of prophecies foretelling that restoration; and the subsequent accomplishment of prophecies connected with that Temple and City, especially as to the coming of the MESSIAH to them; and the consequent attestation given to the truth of the whole scheme of doctrine delivered by the Patriarchs and Prophets, and afterwards by

Before
CHRIST
about
538.
b ch. 5. 12.
about
537.
c Eccles. 4. 4.

unto them, and the king should have no damage. ³ Then this Daniel was preferred above the presidents and princes, ^b because an excellent spirit was in him; and the king thought to set him over the whole realm.

⁴ ^c Then the presidents and princes sought to find occasion against Daniel concerning the kingdom; but they could find none occasion nor fault; forasmuch as he was faithful, neither was there any error or fault found in him.

⁵ Then said these men, We shall not find any occasion against this Daniel, except we find it against him concerning the law of his God.

⁶ Then these presidents and princes || assembled together to the king, and said thus unto him, ^d King Darius, live for ever. ⁷ All the presidents of the kingdom, the governors, and the princes, the counsellors, and the captains, have consulted together to establish a royal statute, and to make a firm || decree, that whosoever shall ask a petition of any God or man for thirty days, save of thee, O king, he shall be cast into the den of lions. ⁸ Now, O king, establish the decree, and sign the writing, that it be not changed, according to the ^e law of the Medes and Persians, which † altereth not.

⁹ Wherefore king Darius signed the writing and the decree.

¹⁰ Now when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his

|| Or, came tumultuously.
d Neh. 2. 3.
ver. 21. ch. 2. 4.

|| Or, interdict.

e Esth. 1. 19.
& 8. 8.
ver. 12. 15.
† Chald.
passeth not.

Christ, to Whom they bore witness; and the rearing, not merely of that Temple and City, but the establishment of the faith of the world in the Scriptures of the Old and New Testaments, and in HIM Who is the subject of them all; and the building up of the Spiritual Temple of the Universal Church of Christ, which will never be destroyed, but be glorified for ever in heaven—were surely adequate reasons for these miracles which are related by Daniel, and which were links in this continuous chain of cause and effect.

These are known results of those miracles; but there are others which will never be revealed till the Great Day of Doom.

Doubtless many of those multitudes who were assembled in the plain of Dura from many lands to worship the golden image, were brought to the knowledge of the true God by the marvellous deliverance of the three children, and by Nebuchadnezzar's avowal and decree. Doubtless many hearts in the vast Chaldean Empire were touched by Nebuchadnezzar's confession of his pride, and by his thankfulness to God for his recovery. Many even at Belshazzar's feast may have been awed into emotions of repentance by the calm bearing of Daniel in that panic-stricken assembly. Many in the 120 provinces of Persia may have been led to seek after God by the promulgation of the decree of Darius, requiring all his subjects to fear the God of Daniel, Whose kingdom should never be destroyed (ver. 26—28). Myriads among the nations of the East were moved by the decree of Cyrus, acknowledging the One True God as the Giver of all his victories, and as the Author of all his power, and restoring the sacred vessels that had been profaned by Belshazzar, and encouraging God's people to return to Jerusalem and to build the Temple there. "Then said they among the heathen, the Lord hath done great things for them" (Ps. cxxvi. 3). Thus the Nations of the World were prepared for the coming of CHRIST, and for the feast of Pentecost, and for the descent of the HOLY GHOST, and for admission to the Church of Christ, and for the everlasting bliss and glories of heaven.

3. over the whole realm] Next to the king. Cp. Esther x. 3.

4. princes] Or, satraps (v. 1).

6. assembled] Or, pressed tumultuously. See margin, and Gesen. 756. They seem to have desired to overawe the king by their urgency and importunity, and to extort the decree from him. Observe, the same word is repeated in vv. 11 and 15; and remark that it is the same word as is used by the Psalmist to describe the raging, or tumultuous assembling of the heathen against Christ; of Whom also it is said that the Chief Priests stood and vehemently accused Him (Luke xxiii. 10). These two portions of Scripture—Daniel vi. and Psalm ii.—are the only places where that word occurs. Thus it leads us to recognize Daniel here as a type of Christ. See below, v. 17.

7. all the presidents] See v. 2. It has been supposed by some (C. B. Michaelis, Keil) that the word presidents is a general one, comprising the four classes of rulers which follow;

but it does not seem reasonable to abandon the sense in which the word has hitherto been used in this chapter.

— the governors] The word *segan*, or *sagan*, here used (properly a deputy), is employed in other places to designate magistrates of Babylon (Jer. li. 23. Ezek. xxiii. 6. Cp. Isa. xli. 25), whence it passed into the nomenclature of Jerusalem (Ezra ix. 2. Neh. ii. 16, and passim). Cp. Gesen. 579. The Medo-Persians for the most part retained in Babylonia the Chaldean form of polity.

— princes] Satraps.

— counsellors] Compare iii. 24; iv. 36.

— captains] Civil governors, or prefects. See iii. 2, 3, 27. The word *pechak* is also used often in the Books of Esther (iii. 12, &c.) and Nehemiah (ii. 7, &c.), and in Ezra (v. 3, &c.). Cp. Hag. i. 1. 14; ii. 2. 21; Mal. i. 8.

— ask a petition—save of thee, O king] The Persian kings were regarded as the representatives of Ormuzd, dwelling in them; their subjects revered them as the offspring of the gods; and assigned to them divine honours. *Æschyl.* Pers. 160. *Plutarch.* Themist. c. 27. *Q. Curtius*, viii. §. 11. *Brisson*, De Reg. Pers. p. 8. Cp. *Hengst.* 103—105; *Pusey*, 443; and the note above, on Esth. iv. 11. *Kranichf.* 240.

— thirty days] A month.

— cast into the den of lions] The word rendered *den*, is *gób*. It seems to have been a subterranean cistern. "Depressa in altum fovea" (says S. Jerome); (Greek, *laccus*, *λάκκος*; Lat. *lacus*), from the root *gáb*, to dig (cp. *cavo*), or, as others think, from *gáb*, a vault, an arched building. Cp. Gesen. 152. 161; and *Pusey*, 415; *Keil*, 180. It had probably a mouth at the top and a door at the side, closed by a stone.

This history is connected by the writer of the Epistle to the Hebrews, with that of the three children at Babylon. Both those miracles are authenticated by him. See on Heb. xi. 33.

8. according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not] Darius being a Median (v. 31), and the Medes being the older and more powerful nation up to this time, the Medes are put before the Persians. But afterwards the Persians obtained the supremacy, and accordingly are placed before the Medes in the Book of Esther. See on v. 28.

Here is another evidence of the genuineness of the Book of Daniel. If (as some allege) he had lived after the date of the Book of Esther, he would have adopted the current language of that period. Cp. *Hengst.* 267.

The law of the Medes and Persians altered not, because the King, who ratified it, was regarded by them as a divine personage, and therefore infallible. See on v. 7; *Aleeren*, Ideem, i. 446. 487.

10. he went into his house] Daniel did not go into some secret place, or into the fields or gardens of Babylon, where he might have said his prayers with impunity, but into his house, where he knew his enemies would search for him, and there he kneeled down. He prayed in a visible attitude of supplication.

house; and his windows being open in his chamber ^ftoward Jerusalem, he kneeled upon his knees ^gthree times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime:

¹¹ Then these men assembled, and found Daniel praying and making supplication before his God.

^{12h} Then they came near, and spake before the king concerning the king's decree; Hast thou not signed a decree, that every man that shall ask a petition of any God or man within thirty days, save of thee, O king, shall be cast into the den of lions?

The king answered and said, The thing *is* true, ⁱaccording to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not. i ver. 8.

¹³ Then answered they and said before the king, That Daniel, ^kwhich *is* of the children of the captivity of Judah, ^lregardeth not thee, O king, nor the decree that thou hast signed, but maketh his petition three times a day. k ch. 1. 6. & 5. 13. l ch. 3. 12.

¹⁴ Then the king, when he heard *these* words, ^mwas sore displeased with himself, and set *his* heart on Daniel to deliver him: and he laboured till the going down of the sun to deliver him. m So Mark 6. 26.

¹⁵ Then these men assembled unto the king, and said unto the king, Know, O king, that ⁿthe law of the Medes and Persians *is*, That no decree nor statute which the king establisheth may be changed. n ver. 8.

¹⁶ Then the king commanded, and they brought Daniel, and cast *him* into the den of lions. Now the king spake and said unto Daniel, Thy God whom thou servest continually, he will deliver thee.

^{17o} And a stone was brought, and laid upon the mouth of the den; ^pand the king sealed it with his own signet, and with the signet of his lords; that the purpose might not be changed concerning Daniel. o Lam. 3. 53. p So Matt. 27. 66.

He went thither as soon as he knew that the decree was signed; he took refuge immediately in prayer to God, and asked for deliverance from those who forbade prayer on pain of death. He knew their malice; but he knew also God's power, and he resolved to be a confessor of Him.

— *his windows being open*] Not closed with lattice-work. Cp. Ezek. xl. 16.

— *in his chamber*] Or upper room; the most retired and undisturbed part of his house. Cp. 2 Sam. xviii. 33; 1 Kings xvii. 19.

— *toward Jerusalem*] Showing that he prayed to the God Who set His Name there. Although the Temple and City were in ruins, and Daniel was at a distance of many hundred miles from Jerusalem, and could only hold spiritual communion with the God of his fathers, Who was worshipped at Jerusalem; yet he would show that he honoured the external ordinances of religion, by directing his eyes thither; and that he desired to see its restoration. He remembered also the prayer of Solomon at the dedication of the Temple (as *S. Jerome* observes), and acted in the spirit of it. "If they shall bethink themselves in the land whither they have been carried captive—and pray unto Thee toward their land which Thou gavest unto their fathers, the City which Thou hast chosen, and the House which I have built for Thy Name, then hear Thou their prayer" (1 Kings viii. 47—50).

David had spoken in similar language with regard to the Ark (Ps. v. 7; xxviii. 2. Cp. Ps. cxxi. 1; cxxxviii. 2).

— *he kneeled upon his knees three times a day—as he did aforetime*] He prayed immediately; he prayed visibly; he prayed frequently and regularly. Thus he showed his faith in God. Thus he taught us the duty of kneeling in prayer, and of constant prayer, and of confessing God before men, even before enemies, by outward acts of devotion, although the performance of such acts may expose us to the peril of a cruel death.

Daniel did not court persecution: he did not run recklessly into danger, and tempt his enemies to the sin of accusing him. He retired to his upper chamber, his private oratory; and his accusers pressed in upon his privacy violently

and tumultuously, and found him. He did as he *did aforetime*. Daniel, the Prime Minister of the great Empire of Persia, which consisted of 120 provinces, found time for regular prayer *three times a day*—as David the king did (Ps. lv. 17)—probably at the third, sixth, and ninth hours (*S. Jerome*. Acts ii. 15; iii. 1; x. 3. 9. 30); especially at the time of the offering of the evening oblation. See 1 Kings xviii. 36. Ezra ix. 5; below, ix. 21.

15. *assembled*] Tumultuously broke in upon him. Cp. above, on v. 6.

— *and found Daniel praying*] They broke into the chamber with violence; but Daniel did not rise up from his knees when he heard the noise of their coming.

12. *Hast thou not signed a decree*] They do not mention Daniel's name; just as they who had accused the three children to Nebuchadnezzar did not at first specify them, but called them "certain Jews." See iii. 12. "Tacet de Danielis nomine, ut quum rex generaliter se jussisse responderit, verbo suo teneatur, ne aliter super Daniele faciat quam locutus est" (*S. Jerome*).

15. *assembled*] Ran together tumultuously; it is the same word as in vv. 6 and 11.

16. *Thy God whom thou servest continually, he will deliver thee*] Darius had heard of the deliverance of the three children (who were inferior in dignity to Daniel) from the fiery furnace; and he believed that Daniel, who had been proved by his supernatural gifts, in interpreting the handwriting on the wall, and in foretelling the fall of Babylon, to be specially favoured by Heaven, would be delivered by that God Whom he worshipped three times a day, when by this worship he incurred the peril of death.

DANIEL A TYPE OF CHRIST.

17. *a stone was brought, and laid upon the mouth of the den*] An opening at the side, by which they supplied food to the lions, and cleaned out the den.

— *the king sealed it with his own signet, and with the signet of his lords*] Daniel in the lion's den was a signal

Before
CHRIST
about
537.

f 1 Kings 8,
41, 48.
Ps. 5. 7.
Jonah 2. 4.
g Ps. 55. 17.
Acts 2. 1, 2, 15.
& 3. 1. & 10. 9.
h ch. 3. 8.

Before
CHRIST
about
537.
¶ Or, *table*.
q ch. 2. 1.

¹⁸ Then the king went to his palace, and passed the night fasting : neither were || instruments of musick brought before him : ^a and his sleep went from him.

r ch. 3. 15.

s ch. 2. 4.

t ch. 3. 28.
u Heb. 11. 33.

¹⁹ Then the king arose very early in the morning, and went in haste unto the den of lions. ²⁰ And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel : and the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, ^r is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions ? ²¹ Then said Daniel unto the king, ^s O king, live for ever. ²² ^t My God hath sent his angel, and hath "shut the lions' mouths, that they have not hurt me : forasmuch as before him innocency was found in me ; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt.

²³ Then was the king exceeding glad for him, and commanded that they should take Daniel up out of the den.

x Heb. 11. 33.

y Deut. 19. 19.

z Esth. 9. 10.
See Deut. 24. 16.
2 Kings 14. 6.

So Daniel was taken up out of the den, and no manner of hurt was found upon him, ^x because he believed in his God.

a ch. 4. 1.

b ch. 3. 29.

c Ps. 9^v. 1.

d ch. 4. 31.

e ch. 2. 41.
& 4. 3, 31.
& 7. 14, 27.
Luke 1. 33.
f ch. 4. 3.
† Heb. *kand*.

²⁴ And the king commanded, ^y and they brought those men which had accused Daniel, and they cast *them* into the den of lions, *them*, ^z their children, and their wives ; and the lions had the mastery of them, and brake all their bones in pieces or ever they came at the bottom of the den.

²⁵ ^a Then king Darius wrote unto all people, nations, and languages, that dwell in all the earth ; Peace be multiplied unto you. ²⁶ ^b I make a decree, That in every dominion of my kingdom men ^c tremble and fear before the God of Daniel : ^d for he *is* the living God, and stedfast for ever, and his kingdom *that* which shall not be ^e destroyed, and his dominion *shall be even* unto the end. ²⁷ He delivereth and rescueth, ^f and he worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, who hath delivered Daniel from the [†] power of the lions.

type of Christ (cp. above, on v. 3) in the pit of the old lion, Satan—the pit of death. Cp. the note above, on Jer. xxxviii. 13. Christ says by David, "Save me from the lion's mouth" (Ps. xxii. 21) ; "My soul is among lions; they have digged a pit before me. Awake up my glory. I myself will awake right early" (Ps. lvii. 4. 8).

This typical reference is displayed in these details. A stone was placed on the mouth of the cave where Daniel was among the lions. A stone was on the mouth of the grave of Christ (Matt. xxvii. 66).

The stone on the mouth of the cave of lions was sealed with the king's seal and with the seal of his lords. The stone on the mouth of the sepulchre of Christ was sealed with the seal of the Chief Priests and of the Pharisees, the foes of Christ (Matt. xxvii. 66). In both cases, what was done, was done by evil men to preclude any access of friends, and to prevent the escape of him who was confined beneath the sealed stone ; and in both cases these devices of malicious enemies turned, under God's controlling providence, to their confusion, and supplied additional proof of the miraculous deliverance of Daniel and of Christ. Daniel's enemies were cast into the lions' den, and Christ "by His death destroyed him that had the power of death, that is, the Devil" (Heb. ii. 14). Well, therefore, might the author of the work "De Promissis et Prædictionibus Dei," ascribed by some to *Prosper Aquitanus* (ii. 35), say "Ille omnia figurata surgant in nostro Jesu Domino."

Hence also, among the Christian monuments in the Catacombs, and among the emblems of Death and Resurrection through Christ, we find representations of Daniel the prophet in the den of lions. See *Aringhi*, Roma Subterranea, p. 101.

¹⁸ *neither were instruments of musick brought before him*] The rendering is not certain here. The original word translated *instruments* is *dacharâh*, which is derived from *dâchâh*, to press, to strike, also to stretch out ; some render it *tables*, or *food* (*Theodoret*, *Fulg.*, *Arabic*, *Syriac*, and so *Fuerst*, 323). The interpretation *musical instruments*, is from later Rabbis,

as *Ibn Esra*, *Saadia*, and others (*Fuerst*, 323). The word is by some rendered *concubines* (*Gesen.* 195 ; *Kranich.* 245 ; *Keil*, 181), which is not likely (see the last words of v. 31).

²¹ *O king, live for ever*] Daniel prefaces his address with a dutiful salutation to Darius, teaching a lesson of loyalty to kings, although personally they may have injured us. Cp. on v. 11. Daniel showed a tender sympathy with the king in his weakness, and acknowledged his compassionate words towards himself.

²² *hath sent his angel*] Cp. iii. 28.

— *hath shut the lions' mouths*] Words adopted by the writer to the Hebrews, who thus corroborates this history of the miracle (Heb. xi. 33).

²⁴ *their children, and their wives*] According to the Persian custom in punishments (Herod. iii. 119), but forbidden in the Mosaic law (Deut. xxiv. 16), "the children shall not be put to death for the father." The princes invoked a cruel despotism against Daniel, and it recoiled on themselves.

— *brake all their bones*] So ravenous were the lions, and yet they had spared Daniel all night. God shut their mouths, and preserved Daniel among the lions, as Noah was preserved among the wild beasts in the Ark, as Jonah was preserved in the whale's belly ; and as Christ was safe among the wild beasts in the wilderness (Mark i. 13). See note above, on Gen. p. 37.

²⁵ *Then king Darius wrote*] Observe the gradual progress of God's dispensations. By the miraculous deliverance of the three children from the fiery furnace at Babylon, Nebuchadnezzar, the great conqueror and mighty monarch of the East, had been brought to issue a universal decree, *forbidding* his subjects *to speak any thing against* the God of Israel (iii. 29) ; Darius proceeds a step farther, and promulgates an edict, *commanding* all his subjects *to honour* the God of Israel ; and eventually the illustrious prince who overthrew the Babylonish Empire, Cyrus, issued a decree declaring that "the Lord God of heaven had *given* unto him all the kingdoms of the earth, and had charged him to build the house of the Lord God of Israel, He is the God." 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22, 23. Ezra i. 2.

²⁸ So this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius, ² and in the reign of ¹ Cyrus the Persian.

VII. ¹ In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon ^a Daniel [†] had a dream and ^b visions of his head upon his bed: then he wrote the dream, *and* told the sum of the || matters.

² Daniel spake and said, I saw in my vision by night, and, behold, the four winds of the heaven strove upon the great sea.

³ And four great beasts ^c came up from the sea, diverse one from another.

⁴ The first *was* ^d like a lion, and had eagle's wings: I beheld till the wings thereof were plucked, || and it was lifted up from the earth, and made stand upon the feet as a man, and a man's heart was given to it.

Before
CHRIST
about
537.

g ch. 1. 21.
h Ezra 1. 1, 2.
about
555.

a Num. 12. 6.
Amos 3. 7.
† Chald. saw.
b ch. 2. 28.
|| Or, words.

c Rev. 13. 1.

d Deut. 28. 49.
2 Sam. 1. 23.
Jer. 4. 7, 13.
& 48. 40.
Ezek. 17. 3.
Hab. 1. 8.
|| Or, wherewith.

28. So this Daniel] Or, And this Daniel,—against whom the princes of the Medo-Persian Empire had conspired, and who had been cast into the den of lions,—even he prospered in the reign of Darius and Cyrus.

— Cyrus the Persian] See above, on i. 21.

Daniel's Vision of the FOUR BEASTS; and of the LITTLE HORN, and of the CONSUMMATION OF ALL THINGS.

This Vision was prior in time to the events recorded in the two former chapters. See vii. 1, compared with v. 30 and vi. 1. The reason of this arrangement is to be found, as *S. Jerome* remarks, in the fact that the former chapters contain a series of successive miraculous events under Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar, and Darius; but the two following chapters narrate *Visions of Daniel himself*.

It is almost universally allowed by ancient and modern expositors, from the times of *S. Irenaeus* and *S. Hippolytus* (ed. Lagarde, pp. 151. 176—178), *Tertullian*, *S. Jerome*, *Theodore*, to our own day (see especially *Dr. Pusey*, pp. 67—81), that the Four Beasts in the following vision of Daniel represent the same Four Great Empires—viz., the Babylonian, Medo-Persian, Macedonian, and Roman—as had been displayed in the quadriform Image seen by Nebuchadnezzar, and described in the second chapter (ii. 31—41).

What purpose, it may be asked, was served by this *repetition*? The answer is this:

Nebuchadnezzar, the greatest king of the Eastern world, is the Representative of Earthly Power. To him, and to all temporal Potentates, in every age and clime, God declared by the vision of the Image which he saw, and of the Stone which broke the Image in pieces, and became a Mountain and filled the earth, that no earthly monarchy is permanent, but that one Empire succeeds and supersedes another; and that they all will be supplanted by the kingdom of CHRIST, which will last for ever.

But Almighty God had another lesson to teach, and another warning to give, to future generations. That warning is as follows:

Although the kingdoms of this world will pass away, and although the kingdom of Christ will never be destroyed, yet, in the kingdom of Christ (namely, the Church of God), great conflicts will arise, with manifold corruptions and confusions, and its loyal subjects will be persecuted, and their faith and patience will be severely and sorely tried; and not till after those conflicts and trials will the kingdom of Christ be fully settled and established; but ultimately it will be triumphant, and all who have stood the test will then be rewarded with everlasting glory. This is what God proclaimed to the Church of every age by the Vision of the Prophet Daniel.

The Vision of Daniel is the complement of that of Nebuchadnezzar. In the Vision of the King, God spake specially to Kings and Rulers, and to all civil Authorities. In the Vision of the Prophet, he speaks to the Members of Christ's Church universal, especially to those who bear office in it. We shall see in subsequent notes on this chapter how the Vision of Daniel the Prophet is illustrated and explained by the Apostle of the Gentiles, St. Paul (2 Thess. ii. 3—9), and by the beloved Disciple St. John in the Apocalypse, especially chapters xiii., xvii., xix., xx.

CH. VII. 1. In the first year of Belshazzar] When the Kingdom of Babylon, represented by the first beast (v. 4), was still standing, but was approaching its dissolution; so that Daniel

soon after had personal evidence of the truth of the (Vision, and of his own interpretation of Nebuchadnezzar's dream (ii. 39).

— he wrote] He wrote it at the time, that others might know it, and that it might not be said to have been fabricated after any of the events herein prophetically described had taken place.

2. the great sea] Not a literal sea, as is evident from the fact that in v. 17 these beasts (which are there said to represent kingdoms) come out of the clay. The Earth itself is a Sea: the sea is an emblem of the world, swelling with human pride and passion, and troubled with political agitations and popular revolutions (*S. Hippolytus* here, and *S. Jerome*). Cp. Rev. viii. 8; xvii. 15. "The wicked are like a troubled sea," Isa. lvii. 20; and are contrasted with "the crystal sea" and the everlasting calm of the kingdom of heaven (Rev. iv. 6; xv. 2).

So in the Apocalypse of St. John (Rev. xiii. 1), the Beast is described as rising from the sea. See below, on Rev., p. 221. That Beast is Daniel's Fourth Empire, the Roman. In St. John's age, the other Three Beasts of Daniel (the Babylonian, Medo-Persian, and Greek Empires) had passed away (see the note there), and the Roman had absorbed them all; and therefore St. John's Beast is described as having their attributes. i. e. of the Lion, the Bear, and the Panther. Thus, at the beginning of the Vision, Daniel is accompanied by St. John; and the vision of the Prophet is illumined by the revelation of the Evangelist.

3. four great beasts] God sees all things at once, the world's future lies open before Him; and He showed to Daniel at one glance the Four Beasts, representing the Four great Empires of the world, as He showed them to Nebuchadnezzar in the image. But in that Vision, as here, it is declared that, though displayed at once, they were to rise one after another in succession (see ii. 39); and here the beasts are called by ordinal numbers—first, second, third, fourth (vv. 4—7).

We must note what the word *Beast* signifies in the prophecies of Scripture. It does not imply what is *bestial*, in the ordinary sense of the word; but what has vigorous energy, which it uses with fierce and savage violence. The word in the Revelation is *θηρίον*, *fera*. See below, on Rev. xiii. 1, p. 221.

4. The first was like a lion, and had eagle's wings] The Lion, the king of beasts, joined with the Eagle, the king of birds. What Gold is among metals (ii. 38), the Lion and Eagle are among animals. The King of Babylon had already been compared in Hebrew Prophecy to the Lion and Eagle. He was a Lion in strength and an Eagle in swiftness; and in his variegated feathers, we may recognize an emblematic symbol of the plumage of many tributary nations in his armies, with which he flew to victory in all lands (Jer. iv. 7; xlix. 19. 22; l. 17. 44. Ezek. xvii. 3. 12). This imagery is illustrated by the colossal figures of winged lions with human heads and eagles' wings, in Assyrian sculptures (*Layard*, Nineveh, 348, *Münter*, Relig. d. Babylon. 98. 193).

— I beheld] Rather, I continued gazing (*Pusey*). So in vv. 6, 7. 9. 11. 13, the words rendered I beheld, and I saw, would be better rendered, I was gazing, or, as the Sept. will renders it, *ἐθεώπων*, which word is repeated seven times in that Version in this chapter.

— the wings—were plucked] The Babylonian Empire was deprived of its power and glory, and it was no longer elated with pride as if it were more than human; but the heart of a man (*ἐνὸς*, man in his weakness, see on Gen. iv. 26. Ps. viii. 4) was given it. "Put them in fear," says the Psalmist (ix. 20), "that the heathen may know themselves to be but men."

Before
CHRIST
about
555.

e ch. 2. 39.
|| Or, it raised up
one dominion.

f ch. 8. 8, 22.

g ch. 2. 40.
ver. 19, 23.

h ch. 2. 41.
Rev. 13. 1.
i ver. 20, 21, 24.
ch. 8. 9.

⁵ And behold another beast, a second, like to a bear, and || it raised up itself on one side, and it had three ribs in the mouth of it between the teeth of it: and they said thus unto it, Arise, devour much flesh.

⁶ After this I beheld, and lo another, like a leopard, which had upon the back of it four wings of a fowl; the beast had also ^f four heads; and dominion was given to it.

⁷ After this I saw in the night visions, and behold ^g a fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, and strong exceedingly; and it had great iron teeth: it devoured and brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with the feet of it: and it was diverse from all the beasts that were before it; ^h and it had ten horns.

⁸ I considered the horns, and, behold, ⁱ there came up among them another little horn, before whom there were three of the first horns plucked up by the

5. like to a bear—raised up itself on one side—three ribs in the mouth of it] The bear, an “all-voracious animal” (*Aristot. De Animalibus*, viii. 3), symbolizes the Medo-Persian Empire (as the ancient expositors *Hippolytus*, *Jerome*, *Theodoret*, agree, and most moderns); it has two sides, like the two arms in the image, which represented the two members of that same Empire—the Median and the Persian; it raised itself on one side, the Persian, under Cyrus; and had three ribs in its mouth. It seized, as its prey, three kingdoms—the Lydian, Babylonian, and Egyptian (*Theodoret*, partly; *Newton*, *Chandler*, *Pusey*, *Hofmann*, *Kliefoth*, *Keil*), and it devoured much flesh in the conquests of its enormous armies with which it overran the world, under Cyrus, Cambyses, Darius, Xerxes, and Artaxerxes Longimanus. See the summary in *Heeren*, *Ideen*, 1. 5. 13—18, and *Pusey*, 70—74).

6. leopard] Or panther, *Sept. πάρδαλις*, *Fulg.* *pardus*; distinguished by its swiftness (*Habak. i. 8*) and insatiability (*Cyril*, *Pusey*) “*velocissimus, præcepse fertur ad sanguinem*” (*S. Jerome*). Such was Alexander the Great. See *S. Hippolytus* and *A. Lapidé* here.

—four wings] Significant of the rapidity of Alexander’s conquests, reaching as it were to the four winds of heaven. Compare the description of the victories of this monarchy below, viii. 5—8. “*Nihil Alexandri victoriis velocius*” (*S. Jerome*).

—four heads] Probably the four successors of Alexander; and their dynasties (*S. Jerome*) in Macedonia, Greece, Thrace, Asia, Syria, and Egypt. Compare the description of this division into four, below, viii. 21, 22, and xi. 2—4.

—dominion was given to it] Was given by God. “*Ostendit non Alexandri fortitudinis, sed Dei esse voluntatis*” (*S. Jerome*).

THE FOURTH BEAST.

7. a fourth beast] Observe, this fourth beast is not called (as all the foregoing three are) by the name of any particular animal. There must be some reason for this.

What is it?

It may be conjectured, that the Holy Spirit, writing by Daniel in this prophecy, foresaw that He would continue His own work five centuries afterwards by St. John in the Apocalypse. The vision of Daniel is marvellously pre-adjusted to the vision of St. John; and the vision of St. John marvellously completes the vision of Daniel. The one prophecy is dovetailed into the other. If the name of any one particular animal had been given to this fourth beast in Daniel, the work of continuity by St. John would not have been so easy. By leaving this fourth beast without a name, Daniel prepared the way for St. John describing a power represented by a beast rising from the sea, and having a composite character, viz. of a lion, bear, and leopard (or panther, *Rev. xiii. 1, 2*), i. e. as having absorbed the characteristics of Daniel’s three former Empires, symbolized respectively by the lion, bear, and leopard. The Roman Empire did this; it swallowed up in itself all former dynasties.

Hence we may conclude that St. John’s beast is Daniel’s fourth beast, i. e. that St. John’s beast is the Roman Empire; and this is further confirmed by other evidence in the Apocalypse, e. g. its ten horns, as here (*Rev. xiii. 1*; *xvii. 12*).

Observe also, the beast in the Apocalypse is compounded of Daniel’s three beasts in an inverted order, thus—leopard, bear, lion. And why? Because the process of absorption was this—the fourth beast, or Roman Empire, absorbed the

power of the Greek Leopard, which had absorbed the preceding Monarchy of the Medo-Persian Bear, which had absorbed the foregoing empire of the Babylonian Lion.

Thus we are landed on solid ground. The four Beasts before us cannot be literal animals, but must be symbolical. We are expressly told in the prophecy that the beasts signify kingdoms (*vv. 17, 23*); and the fourth is represented in the Apocalypse as having a composite character such as no literal animal has.

Hence also we are enabled to pursue the prophetic history of the fourth beast from the present chapter of Daniel to its full development, transformation, and final consummation in the Apocalypse, where again the two visions come into contact and coalesce. Daniel describes the destruction of that fourth beast by fire (*v. 11*), and so St. John, *Rev. xix. 20*; *xx. 10*.

—it had great iron teeth] Similarly, in the corresponding vision of Nebuchadnezzar (*ii. 40*), the fourth, or Roman, Empire, is described as strong as iron, and as bruising all things as iron does.

—it had ten horns] Explained by the angel, in *v. 24*, to be ten kings, or kingdoms (*see v. 23*, “the fourth kingdom shall be diverse from all kingdoms”), that should arise from it. “Let us affirm,” (writes *S. Jerome* in the fourth century) “what all ecclesiastical authors have handed down to us, that, when the Roman Empire is to be destroyed, ten kings will arise who will divide the Roman world among them.” So *S. Augustine*, *De Civ. Dei*, x. 23; and (before *S. Augustine* and *S. Jerome*) *S. Irenæus* said (*v. 26*), “Daniel, contemplating the end of the last (or fourth) kingdom, speaks of the kings among whom its power will be divided.” And so *S. Hippolytus* (*p. 179*); and *S. Cyril* of Jerusalem (*Cateches. xv.*), who says, “The first [beast] is the kingdom of the Assyrians; the second, of the Medes and Persians; the third, of the Macedonians; the fourth, of the Romans, which now exists.” Cp. *Lactant. vii. 17*, and the notes below, on *Rev. xiii. 1, p. 221*.

These ten horns also appear in the head of the beast in the Apocalypse of St. John, and serve to connect the two visions together. See the note on *Rev. xiii. 1*. They correspond also to the ten toes on the two feet (the Eastern and Western Empires of Rome) in Nebuchadnezzar’s vision. See above, on *ii. 41*, and *Pusey*, 77. “The description implies that the ten horns symbolize ten kingdoms, not ten kings only.”

THE LITTLE HORN COMING FORTH OUT OF THE FOURTH BEAST.

8. I considered the horns, and, behold, there came up among them another little horn, before whom there were three of the first horns plucked up by the roots: and, behold, in this horn were eyes like the eyes of man, and a mouth speaking great things] The Horn is called a little horn because it sprang from small beginnings; but afterwards it became great, and absorbed into itself the power of the fourth Beast.

The last words in this description—a mouth speaking great things—are repeated in the description of the little horn in *v. 11*, and in *v. 20*, and again in *v. 25*. And in *v. 11* it is said, “Because of the great words that the horn spake, the beast was slain and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame.” Thus we may observe two things,—

(1) That the horn is nearly connected with the beast; and the beast suffers for what the horn does.

roots: and, behold, in this horn *were* eyes like the eyes * of man, and a mouth speaking great things.

⁹ ^m I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and ⁿ the Ancient of days did ^k Rev. 9. 7. ^l Ps. 12. 3. ver. 25. ^{Before CHRIST about 555.}
Rev. 13. 5. ^m Rev. 20. 4. ⁿ Ps. 90. 2. ver. 13, 22.

(2) *A mouth speaking great things* is the characteristic of the horn.

If now we turn to the description of the Beast in the Revelation of St. John, we find these same words—a *mouth speaking great things*, the “ipsissima verba” of the *Septuagint* here, *στόμα λαλοῦν μεγάλα*—occur in Rev. xiii. 5. This phrase is like a *catchword* which connects Daniel’s vision with St. John’s, and is a clue for the interpretation of Daniel’s prophecy.

In the Apocalypse of St. John the Beast receives a mortal wound, but recovers, and is stronger than before (xiii. 3).

Also, *it makes war with the saints* (xiii. 7), as the horn is here described by Daniel as doing. See v. 21. The phrase is another *catchword*. St. John again adopts the “ipsissima verba” of the *Septuagint* Version of Daniel, in v. 8. *ἐποίησε πόλεμον πρὸς τοὺς ἁγίους*: i.e. *he was making war with the saints*.

Further, in the Apocalypse, the Beast there described is localized. It is said that “a woman sits upon it” (i.e. upon the Beast), and so sitting she is described as the *great City* that *reigned* in St. John’s age (see Rev. xvii. 18.), and as sitting on *seven hills* (xvii. 9): in a word, as the City of Rome. See the notes below, on Rev. xvii. 2, pp. 244–246, to which the reader is requested to refer for a comment on this prophecy.

Hence, it is clear that the prophecy of Daniel points to the City of Rome.

Yet further, it is no less evident that this part of the prophecy which concerns the horn, and points to Rome, does not point to it as a *heathen* city, but as a *Christian*.

This is apparent from the fact that the Beast, in its final stage of existence, is described as continuing till the second advent of Christ (see v. 11), and as destroyed by Him on account of the great words which the Horn spake.

But *Heathen* Rome has long since disappeared. Here again the prophecy of St. John in the Apocalypse meets us and explains how it comes to pass that the Beast is described as existing even till the day of doom. He says that the Beast received a mortal wound, but revived (xiii. 3), and had a mouth *speaking great words, and made war with the saints*; and that a Woman clothed in scarlet (the contrast to the faithful Church in white) sat upon it, and ruled it. The reader is requested to refer to Rev. xvii. 3–5, pp. 246, 248, where it is shown that this Woman is the Church of Papal Rome.

The fourth Beast or Kingdom, i.e. the Roman Kingdom, as a heathen Power, received a mortal wound; but it revived in the Papacy. See below, on Rev., p. 250. The Beast still subsists; its energy is concentrated in the Horn which *speaks great things, and makes war with the saints*. Its persecutions of the faithful are too many to be enumerated: sufficient evidence is given of this in the notes below, on Rev. xiii. 2–7, pp. 223, 224. And because it has acted and still acts thus, the doom which awaits it (as foretold both by Daniel and by St. John), is, to be consumed by the fire of Christ’s Coming to judgment.

Let us also observe, that we are brought into contact here, not only with St. John in the Apocalypse, but with St. Paul in his prophecy in the Second Epistle to the Thessalonians (ii. 2–6). There it is said that a certain Power was then *letting or restraining* the rise of another Power, which would come up in its place; and that when that former Power had ceased to *let or restrain*, then that other Power would arise in its place. It is shown in the notes there, that the *restraining* power of which St. Paul here speaks, was the *heathen* power of Rome. The power which has now arisen in its place is *Papal* Rome. This power is described by St. Paul in terms which bear a striking resemblance to the features of the little horn in Daniel, and to the Beast on which the Woman sits in the Apocalypse. The power of the “Lawless One” in St. Paul is called “a *Mystery*”—“a mystery of iniquity” (2 Thess. ii. 3); and the power in the Apocalypse is also called “*Mystery*” (xvii. 5, 7). In St. Paul’s prophecy, the Lawless One seats himself in the Temple of God, i.e. in the Christian Church; and claims divine honour (2 Thess. ii. 4). This is also predicated of the power in the Apocalypse (Rev. xiii. 4, 8). And this prophecy has been fulfilled in a striking manner by the Roman Pontiff setting himself down in the Church of God—St. Peter’s Church at Rome—and on the very altar, and there receiving the adoration of cardinals kneeling before him and kissing his feet, while they are treading on the Altar of God. Pope Pius IX. did this on June 17, 1846. See below, notes on 2 Thess. ii. pp. 32, 33; and on Rev. xiii., pp. 233, 234). And on July 18, 1870, in that

same church he claimed to himself the divine attribute of Infallibility; and solemnly, in the presence of a vast multitude, on that same day he pronounced an anathema on all who do not recognize him as Infallible.

The Power described by St. Paul is called the “lawless one,” the “son of perdition” (2 Thess. ii. 3); and the power in the Apocalypse is said to “*go to perdition*” (Rev. xvii. 8–11) and to be consumed by the brightness of Christ’s presence, Who will be revealed in flaming fire (2 Thess. i. 8); and this also is specified in Daniel’s description (v. 11) and in the Apocalypse (Rev. xviii. 8; xix. 20; xx. 10).

The little horn rises up *after*, and yet *among* the ten horns—“in the midst of them,” says *S. Irenæus* (v. 25)—of the fourth Empire; that is, they are contemporary (*Pusey*, 77); and this is what St. John more fully explains when he says that these ten horns did not exist in his time, but were to receive power together with the beast (Rev. xvii. 12), and would give their power to the beast, and yet would rise up in rebellion against the woman which sat upon it—a prophecy which has now been partly fulfilled. See on Rev. xvii. 13, 16, 17.

The King and people of Italy, formerly the most devoted vassals of the Papacy, have now been used by God as His instruments to despoil it of its territory. “These,” says St. John xvii. 16 (speaking of powers once friendly to her), “shall hate the whore, and make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh.” They have devoured the flesh of her temporal power.

There are two little horns in Daniel’s prophecies. One, that which is described here, growing up from small beginnings to a great power, out of the fourth, or Roman, Empire; the other, that in viii. 9, growing up from the third or Greek monarchy.

Let us now return and review some other characteristics of the little horn. *Before it* (i.e. in its presence and by its means), *three of the first horns were plucked up by the roots*.

The Papal Power rose upon the ruins of the Greek Empire in Italy (i.e. the Exarchate of Ravenna), and of the Civil Power of Rome and of the Franks (see *Sigonius*, De Regno Ital., iii. A.D. 772–774, and A.D. 798–801).

Also *it had eyes like the eyes of man*. Although the horn *speaks great things*, and manifests himself as if he were God (see on 2 Thess. ii. 2, and the foregoing notes), yet he is but a man. The *eyes* are described as a characteristic feature, as if he claimed special powers of clear-sightedness and intellectual illumination; but his eyes are not pure, like those of God, nor spiritual, like those of the true Teacher of His Word, like the eyes of the living creatures in the Apocalypse (see Rev. iv. 6, 8), and of Christ Himself (see Rev. v. 6, and Zech. iii. 9), but eyes of *man*, carnal eyes, looking to his own advantage and aggrandisement. As *S. Jerome* says here, “He is called a man in order that we may not suppose him to be a devil or demon, but a human being in whom Satan dwells, for he is the *man of sin*” (spoken of by St. Paul), “who will sit in the Temple of God, making himself to be as God.” And, before *S. Jerome*, *S. Irenæus* (v. 25, 27) identifies the power here described by Daniel with that portrayed by St. Paul, and by St. John in the Apocalypse.

Here we are brought into contact with a wonderful prophecy of Zechariah concerning “the *idol shepherd*,” i.e., the Christian Pastor who makes himself to be an *idol*, or object of adoration. That prophecy has a peculiar applicability to the Roman Pontiff, who claims to be “*Episcopus Episcoporum*,” and to have the oversight of all things—spiritual and temporal—in Christendom, and to see into all spiritual mysteries; and claims also to be the One *Shepherd* of the whole Church; and makes himself an *idol*, and claims divine honour. His doom is there foretold: “his right eye shall be utterly darkened.” The reader is requested to refer to the note below, on Zech. xi. 17.

— *a mouth speaking great things* Another attribute of the Roman Pontiff, as already described in the Apocalypse. See above, the first note on this verse.

9. *the thrones were cast down* [Rather, *the seats* (of Judgment) were set (*Sept., Vulg., Arabic, Syriac*). Literally, *they* (i.e., the attendant ministers) set the seats, in an orderly manner, where every thing was duly arranged.

The Prophet here describes the last great Assize as a regular proceeding, like the preparations made for holding a judicial assembly, or royal court. In the argument which is prefixed to the “*Persians*” of Æschylus, it is said that the drama of Phrynicus (on which the “*Persians*” of Æschylus was

Before
CHRIST
about
555.

o Ps. 104. 2.
Rev. 1. 14.
p Ezek. 1. 15, 16.
q Ps. 50. 3.
& 97. 3.
Isa. 30. 33.
& 66. 15.
r 1 Kings 22. 19.
Ps. 68. 17.
Heb. 12. 22.
Rev. 5. 11.
s Rev. 20. 4, 12.
t Rev. 19. 20.

* Chald. a pro-
longing in life
was given them.
u Ezek. 1. 26.
Matt. 21. 30.
& 26. 64.
Rev. 1. 7, 13.
& 14. 14.
x ver. 9.
y Ps. 2. 6, 7, 8.
& 8. 6. & 110. 1, 2.
Matt. 11. 27.
& 28. 18.
John 3. 35.
1 Cor. 15. 27.
Eph. 1. 22.
z ch. 3. 4.

sit, ° whose garment *was* white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne *was* like the fiery flame, ° and his wheels *as* burning fire. ¹⁰ A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: ° thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: ° the judgment was set, and the books were opened.

¹¹ I beheld then because of the voice of the great words which the horn spake: ° I beheld *even* till the beast was slain, and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame.

¹² As concerning the rest of the beasts, they had their dominion taken away: yet † their lives were prolonged for a season and time.

¹³ I saw in the night visions, and, behold, ° one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to ° the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. ¹⁴ And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all ° people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is ° an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

a Ps. 145. 13. ch. 2. 44. ver. 27. Micah 4. 7. Luke 1. 33. John 12. 34. Heb. 12. 28.

founded) ended with a description of a setting of seats covered with tapestry for the royal assembly. Or the description may be derived from the proceedings preparatory to the holding a court of the Hebrew Sanhedrim. In Psalm lxxxix. 8, angels are represented as attendants on the future Judgment. Cp. Jude 14; 2 Thess. i. 7, 10; below, v. 10.

— the Ancient of days] The Everlasting One. See below, v. 9. Cp. Ps. xc. 2; Rev. iv. 2.

— garment—white as snow—hair—like the pure wool] Emblems of unsullied holiness. Cp. Rev. i. 14, where the Son of Man is described: “His head and His hairs were white as wool, as white as snow;”

— his throne was like the fiery flame—his wheels as burning fire] Compare Ezek. i. 15—20. 26—28; x. 9—13.

10. thousand thousands] Of angel ministers attendant upon the Throne of Judgment (Ps. lxxviii. 17. Heb. xii. 22. Rev. v. 11)

— the judgment was set] The judgment seated itself (Sept., Vulg.). The abstract word (Judgment) is used, leaving to the reader's imagination to fill up all the circumstances of that awful Session of the Judge, which no human language can describe. So Milton, speaking of Christ's Presence, says, with grand sublimity, “Far off His Coming shone.”

— the books were opened] Literally, and books were opened. Here is another phrase by which the prophecies of Daniel are linked on to the Apocalypse, where it is said, “I saw a great white throne, and Him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened” (literally, and books were opened, there is no article), “and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works” (Rev. xx. 11, 12).

11. because of the voice of the great words which the horn spake—the beast was slain] The horn is no longer called “the little horn,” for he has become great, and is the moving power of the beast, and the beast is identified with him, and is made responsible for his acts; so that because of the horn's great words (i. e. his proud and blasphemous language) the beast is destroyed, and his body given to the flame.

Here again we are brought into contact with the Apocalypse. There the doom of the beast, on which the woman sits (which is the royal, seven-hilled city, i. e. Rome), is described. Because of his opposition to Christ, he is taken and cast into the lake of fire (Rev. xix. 20; xx. 10). Here his body is given to the burning flame.

And here is another point of contact also with St. Paul's prophecy concerning the “lawless one,” who sits in the Temple of God, and claims divine honour for himself (2 Thess. ii. 4), he is consumed with the spirit of Christ's mouth, and with the brightness of His presence (2 Thess. ii. 8), which will be with flaming fire (2 Thess. i. 7—10).

12. yet their lives] Rather, for their lives were given them (only) for a season (an appointed season, Gesen. 247) and time

assigned to them (by God Himself). That is, the other three beasts (i. e. the three foregoing monarchies—the Babylonish, Medo-Persian, and Greek) were only of short duration, allotted to them by divine power (see the ancient Interpreters, and C. B. Michaelis, Hävernicks, Kranichfeld, Kliefoth, Keil), their lives were for a short season, in comparison with that of the fourth beast, whose existence will be continued even to the Coming of Christ.

13. One like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven] One Who was like Man, and was Man, but more than Man, will come on the clouds of heaven (Justin Martyr, e. Tryphon. § 70, and S. Irenæus, iv. 37 and iv. 56). Our Lord adopted these words when He stood before the High Priest and the Council, “Hereafter shall ye see the Son of Man (a title derived from this passage of Daniel) sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven” (Matt. xxvi. 64. Cp. Matt. xxiv. 30). “Behold He cometh with clouds and every eye shall see Him” (Rev. i. 7). Cp. Rev. xiv. 14.

The Jews before our Lord's age acknowledged this passage of Daniel to be a prophecy of the Second Coming of the Messiah; and they gave to the Messiah a special title, viz. Anani (he of the clouds), derived from this prophecy, as Bishop Chandler says (i. 108), “Anani was a known name for the Messiah, because the word for clouds in Daniel is Anani; (Sanhedr. eap. xi. sect. 33), R. Sal. Jarchi, ibid.; Breschith R. on Gen. xxviii. 10; Targum on 1 Chron. iii. 24.” Bp. Pearson on the Creed, Art. vii. pp. 292, 294. Pusey on Daniel, p. 85. Archdeacon Rose on Pearson on the Creed, p. 546. Some of the Rabbis explain the words like the Son of Man by, “the Lord our righteousness” (Jer. xxiii. 6), and the words, “they brought him to the Ancient of days, by the Psalm ex. 1, “The Lord said unto My Lord, Sit thou on my right hand.”

What a striking contrast is here displayed between Christ in His First Advent, meek and lowly, riding into Jerusalem on an ass, even the foal of an ass (see on Zech. ix. 9. Matt. xxi. 5), and in His Second Coming, “making the clouds His chariot, and walking upon the wings of the wind”! (Ps. civ. 3.)

— they brought him near before him] This is a phrase specially applied by the Prophets to Christ, our King and Priest, brought near to the Father in glory. See above, on Jer. xxx. 21, and Justin Martyr, Apol. i. 51; Tertullian, Marcion. iii. 7.

14. there was given him dominion] All power was given to Christ in His Human nature; as God, He had it from eternity. And therefore, after His Passion as Man, when He had arisen from the dead, having triumphed over Satan, Sin, and the grave, He adopted these words and said, “All power is given unto Me in Heaven and in earth” (Matt. xxviii. 18. Cp. Phil. ii. 7—9).

— an everlasting dominion] “He shall reign for ever and ever, King of kings, and Lord of lords” (Rev. xi. 15).

DANIEL'S WORDS ADOPTED BY CHRIST.

One of the strongest evidences of the genuineness and authenticity of the Book of Daniel as we have it, is derived

¹⁵ I Daniel ^b was grieved in my spirit in the midst of *my* † body, and the visions of my head troubled me.

Before
CHRIST
about
555.

¹⁶ I came near unto one of them that stood by, and asked him the truth of all this.

b ver. 28.
† Chald.
sheath.

So he told me, and made me know the interpretation of the things.

¹⁷ ^c These great beasts, which are four, *are* four kings, *which* shall arise out of the earth.

c ver. 3.

¹⁸ But ^e the saints of the † most High shall take the kingdom, and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever.

d Isa. 60. 12,
13, 14.
ver. 22, 27.
2 Tim. 2. 11, 12.
Rev. 2. 26, 27.
& 3. 21. & 20. 4.
† Chald. *high*
ones, that is,
things, or, *places*.
e ver. 7.
† Chald. *from all*
those.

¹⁹ Then I would know the truth of ^e the fourth beast, which was diverse † from all the others, exceeding dreadful, whose teeth *were* of iron, and his nails of brass; *which* devoured, brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with his feet; ²⁰ And of the ten horns that *were* in his head, and of the other which came up, and before whom three fell; even of that horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spake very great things, whose look *was* more stout than his fellows. ²¹ I beheld, ^f and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them; ²² ^g Until the Ancient of days came, ^h and judgment was given to the saints of the most High; and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom.

f ch. 8. 12, 24.
& 11. 31.
Rev. 11. 7. & 13.
7. & 17. 14. & 19.
19.
g ver. 9.
h ver. 18.
i Cor. 6. 2.
Rev. 1. 6. & 5. 10.
& 20. 4.
i ch. 2. 40.

²³ Thus he said, The fourth beast shall be ⁱ the fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces.

²⁴ ^k And the ten horns out of this kingdom *are* ten kings *that* shall arise:

k ver. 7, 8, 20.
Rev. 17. 12.

And another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings. ²⁵ ^l And he shall speak *great* words against the most High, and shall ^m wear out the saints of the most High,

l Isa. 37. 23.
ch. 8. 24, 25. &
11. 28, 30, 31, 36.
Rev. 13. 5, 6.
m Rev. 17. 6. & 18. 24.

from our Lord's testimony to it, and from His adoption of language from it concerning Himself.

Our Lord refers to "*Daniel the prophet*" as the writer of a book which was well known to the Jews in His own age, and was received by them as a part of Holy Scripture, and which He exhorts them carefully to read, and quotes from it (Matt. xxiv. 15, Mark xiii. 14). The book which they had, bearing Daniel's name, and which we have, was authenticated by Christ as the book of "Daniel the prophet." The Son of God Himself has avouched it, and has set His Divine seal upon it.

Yet further; in speaking of Himself, coming hereafter in glory, He adopted the language of that book. His own words "the Son of Man coming in the clouds of heaven" and having "all power given to him," and having an "everlasting kingdom," are all from the Book of Daniel. Cp. Dan. vii. 13, 14, 26, 27, with Matt. x. 23; xvi. 27, 28; xix. 28; xxiv. 30; xxv. 31; xxvi. 64. Compare also John v. 27—29 with Dan. xii. 2, 3.

Every one who believes in the Divinity of Christ must also believe in the genuineness and authenticity of the Book of Daniel. And they who impugn the genuineness and authenticity of Daniel, do, by implication, offer an insult to Christ Himself, as if He had either been deceived by a counterfeit work, or were willing to abet the fraud of imposing it as a portion of Holy Scripture upon others. Cp. *Hengst.* 219, 220.

This argument is further confirmed by the use which the divinely inspired Apostles of our Blessed Lord make of this Book. The prophecy of St. Paul in 2 Thess. ii. 2—8, and the prophecies of St. John in the Apocalypse (xiii., xvii., xviii., xx., xxi.), are continuations of Daniel's prophecies, and are based upon them, as already specified in the notes on this chapter.

¹⁶. *I came near unto one of them that stood by*] I came near to one of the attendant Angels (v. 10). Hence it appears that the vision was still apparent to his eyes.

¹⁷. *four kings*] Or kingdoms. See below on v. 23, and above on v. 3, and below, viii. 20, 21. "Non de personis, sed de rebus et regnis, agitur" (*A Lapide*).

— *the earth*] As contrasted with the "kingdom of heaven." See on Matt. xxiv. 30. Luke xxi. 35. Rev. i. 7.

¹⁸. *the saints—shall take the kingdom*] Rather they shall receive it from God. The same word (*kebal*) is used here as in v. 31, where it is said that Darius the Median *took* the kingdom; and as is used also in ii. 6, where it is rendered by *receive* ("Ye shall receive of Me gifts"). And the sense is, that as Darius the Mede received an earthly kingdom from Cyrus, who received it from God, so will the saints *receive the kingdom* from Christ; they will receive it as a gift.

Our Blessed Lord refers to this phrase also when He declares that at the great day of doom He will say to those on His right hand, "Come, ye blessed of My Father, inherit the kingdom" (Matt. xxv. 31); and Luke xxii. 29, "I appoint unto you a kingdom."

²³. *diverse from all kingdoms*] The fourth kingdom, the Roman, was diverse from all other kingdoms, in that it was first a temporal kingdom in heathen times, and then became partly spiritual and partly temporal in Papal times, and also in that it is to continue till the Second Coming of Christ. See v. 14.

²⁴. *ten horns*] Or kingdoms. See v. 7.

— *shall subdue three kings*] See v. 8.

²⁵. *speak great words against the most High*] By claiming for himself the attributes of God—such as Infallibility. See v. 8. 20.

— *shall wear out the saints*] Shall consume and waste them by persecution (*Gesen.* 121). Cp. v. 21. Although he wills himself to be regarded as having the attributes of God, yet he will persecute the Saints of God. So it is said of the Power in the Apocalypse, that it will seek to be adored as God (Rev. xiii. 4. 8. 12. 15; xiv. 9; xx. 4. Cp. 2 Thess. ii. 4), and yet make war against the Saints (Rev. xiii. 7).

That this has been fulfilled, and is fulfilled, in the Roman Papacy, is shown at large in the notes on Rev. xiii., pp. 229, 231, to which the reader is requested to refer.

Before
CHRIST
about
555.

n ch. 2. 21.

and ⁿ think to change times and laws : and ^o they shall be given into his hand
^p until a time and times and the dividing of time.

o Rev. 13. 7. p ch. 12. 7. Rev. 12. 14.

— and think to change times and laws (literally, law)] Thus he is again identified with the *εὐνομος*, or lawless one, in St. Paul's prophecy, 2 Thess. ii. 8.

To change times or seasons is an attribute of God alone, see above, ii. 21, where it is said of Him that "He changeth the times and the seasons." And to think to change times is equivalent to claiming an equality with God, Who only orders and rules the seasons according to His will (cp. Gen. i. 14, and Acts i. 7).

In a remarkable manner does the Roman Pontiff think to change times and seasons in the spiritual world, which is the Church. This has been affirmed by Roman divines to be his right. For example, *Cardinal Cusanus* asserts that a doctrine which is true at one time, and a sacrament (instituted by Christ) which is good to be received in a particular manner at one time, ceases to be such at another time in the history of the Church: in a word, that the Roman Church has power to change the times and seasons of Christian doctrine and discipline and worship. His words are as follows:—

"You will say, perhaps, that the Church does not now follow the same practice in the administration of the Communion as heretofore, when men of the greatest sanctity affirmed, both in word and deed, that communion in both kinds is necessary, by virtue of Christ's command. Could the Church err at that time? you will ask. I reply, 'Certainly not.' 'But if not,' you answer, 'how can that be not true now, which formerly was affirmed universally to be true?'"

"Be not at all disturbed," replies the Cardinal, "by this circumstance, that at different times different rites in sacrifices, and even in sacraments, are found to prevail, the truth being unchanged. Be not troubled at this, that the Scriptures are accommodated to the times, and are differently understood at different seasons, so that in one age they are expounded in one way, according to the universal practice then current, and when that practice is changed, their sense is changed also."

"For Christ" (he adds), "to whom the Father has given the rule over heaven and earth, being enthroned as Monarch over both, dispenses His mysteries in a wonderful order of angels and men, according to the variations of the times, and dictates what is suitable for every season, either by secret inspiration or by manifest illumination."

"Therefore, although the interpretation which the Church now gives to the precept of the Gospel is different from that which she gave formerly, yet this signification, which is now current in the Church, being divinely dictated to her, as suited to the times, for her government, ought to be accepted by you as the way of salvation."

Again, he does not hesitate to say that the "Church cannot be bound by the letter of Scripture, although it is always bound by the spirit: for when the letter does not tend to spiritual edification, then it receives that which rather serves for the spirit. . . . The letter, therefore, of Scripture is not essential to the Church, but it is the spirit which gives life. Therefore it is not surprising, that the practice of the Church at one time interprets Scripture in one way, and at another time in another way: for the interpretation moves in a parallel line with the practice; and the practice which so moves is the spirit that gives life."

"Lastly: This is the true doctrine concerning the texts of Scripture, and also concerning that, 'Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and drink His Blood, ye have no life in you' (John vi. 53). As the Church receives Scripture, so she interprets it. The Scriptures follow the Church [of Rome], which is prior to Scripture, and for which Scripture exists, and not conversely: and they who have not considered this have vainly impugned the Church, and separated themselves from it. But the dispensation of the Sacraments is confided to their ministers, by illumination; that is, the Sacraments are to be administered by them in such a manner as they think most expedient for the good of souls, and the glory of God, according to time and place" (*Cardinal Cusanus*, Opera, ed. Basil. 1566, p. 833, quoted in the Sequel of the present writer's Letters to Gordon, pp. 120—123).

For many hundred years the Church of Christ knew nothing of sundry dogmas which the Roman Pontiff now propounds as necessary to be received on pain of damnation. In our own day we have been told (on December 8, 1851) that the time had arrived for promulgating the doctrine of the Immaculate Conception. And now (July 18, 1870) it is affirmed by him

that the season is come, in which the world must adore him as infallible; and all who do not receive the dogma of his Infallibility are declared by him to be cut off from communion with Christ, and from hope of eternal salvation.

By thus changing the times and seasons of the doctrine and worship of the Church, he changes the law of the Church. In a word, Divine Law is no longer to have her seat "in the bosom of God," but in that of the Bishop of Rome.

THE SYMBOLICAL MEANING OF THREE YEARS AND A HALF.

25. a time and times and the dividing of time] i. e. a time, and two times (dual), and half a time, i. e. 3½ times, or three years and a half. So *Irenæus*, v. 25; *S. Hippolytus*, p. 182; *S. Jerome* here, and *S. Augustine*, xx. 24.

We find this period presented to us in various forms in the prophecies of Scripture; sometimes as 3½ years, as here, and in Rev. xii. 14, where the faithful Woman, the Church of Christ, is said to be driven into the wilderness for a time, times, and half a time (Rev. xii. 6); sometimes as forty-two months (which are equivalent to 3½ years), as in Rev. xi. 2, where the Holy City is said to be trodden down by the Gentiles forty-two months; and Rev. xiii. 5, where the Beast (as here) is said to have power forty-two months; sometimes as 1260 days (equivalent to forty-two months of thirty days each, or 3½ years), as in Rev. xi. 3, where the two Witnesses of God are said to prophesy or preach in sackcloth for 1260 days; and Rev. xii. 6, where the faithful Church is said to be in the wilderness 1260 days.

Reasons are given below, in the note on Rev. xii. 1, p. 221, for the opinion, that this period is not to be understood literally, and is not designed to enable us to construct thereby a prophetic ephemeris, or apocalyptic almanack. No; Prophecy is not intended to make us prophets, but to excite us to watch its fulfilment, and to comfort us when it is fulfilled.

This period of 3½ years = 42 months = 1260 days, is not designed to tell us the exact time during which any condition of things will continue. But it is a chronological symbol of affliction and distress followed by victory, and serves to warn us that the Church of God must expect to suffer, and that the Witnesses of God will endure persecution, during the period of the domination of the Beast. The sufferings of the Church of God will synchronize with those of the Witnesses (which probably represent the Word of God, i. e. the two Testaments, see on Rev. xi. p. 216), and will be contemporaneous with the sway of the Papal Power, but will be succeeded by a time of triumph and glory.

This chronological symbol of suffering has an historical basis, and has also an analogical value.

It has been observed that 3½ years are twice noted in the New Testament as the time of drought and barrenness, and of the sufferings of the great Representative of Ancient Prophecy, Elijah (see Luke iv. 25; James v. 17; and the note on 1 Kings xvii. 1, p. 66), in those dark days when Ahab introduced idolatry, and Jezebel (the symbol of false teachers, see Rev. ii. 20) domineered in Israel (1 Kings xxi. 25. 27), and persecuted the true prophets of the Lord (1 Kings xviii. 3, 4).

It has also been observed, "that the waste of sacred things at Jerusalem by Antiochus Epiphanes" the king of Syria, the type of Antichrist, lasted for 3½ years (cp. *Vitringa*, in Apoc. p. 449; *Abp. Ussher*, Annal. V. T., B. C. 168, p. 323; *Dean Prideaux*, Connexion, on B. C. 161, Book iii. near the end, from *Josephus*, proem. Bell. Jud. and i. 1, and B. J. v. 9. 4, where he says that under "Antiochus, called Epiphanes, our Sanctuary was made desolate for three years and six months;" and *S. Hippolytus*, p. 155, ed. Lagarde. See below on xii. 6); and that after that time "the Jews retained that number of 3½ years as famous, and often made use of it when they would express any thing very sad and afflictive" (*Lightfoot*, quoted below on Rev., p. 222); "and perhaps," adds the same learned writer, "it would have been much for the reputation of the Commentators on the Book of Revelation" (and we may add on the Book of Daniel also), "if they had looked upon that number, viz. 3½ years (i. e. a time, times, and half a time), and (its equivalent) the 42 months and 1260 days, as spoken allusively, and not applied to any precise or determinate time." Compare *Vitringa*, in Apocalyp. p. 463, who says well, "Inasmuch as the Holy Spirit designates this period of time (in the prophetic books) sometimes as 42 months, sometimes as 1260 days, sometimes as 3½ years, He seems to me thereby to teach us that He is speaking of a mystical time to be explained by the parallelism of other portions of God's word,"

²⁶ "But the judgment shall sit, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and to destroy it unto the end.

²⁷ And the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him.

²⁸ Hitherto is the end of the matter.

As for me Daniel, my cogitations much troubled me, and my countenance changed in me: but I kept the matter in my heart.

VIII. ¹ In the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar a vision appeared unto me, even unto me Daniel, after that which appeared unto me at the first.

Before
CHRIST
about
555.

q ver. 10, 22.
r ver. 14, 18, 22.

s ch. 2, 41.
Luke 1, 33.
John 12, 34.
Rev. 11, 15.
t Isa. 60, 12.
|| Or, rulers.

u ver. 15.
ch. 8, 27.
& 10, 8, 16.
x Luke 2, 19, 51.
about
553.

a ch. 7, 1.

which supply the historical basis of the period. "It is clear to me that He is alluding to some period of severe affliction of the Jewish Church, such as it endured under Antiochus Epiphanes (as Daniel foretold, xii. 6), and to that period of 3½ years of famine and barrenness under Alab, when the heaven withheld its rain, and when Elijah, the Witness of Divine Truth, who strenuously withstood the idolatry of Israel, was fed by the ravens at Cherith, and by the widow of Sarepta. I am of opinion therefore that when the Holy Spirit characterizes the affliction of the Two Witnesses" (in the Apocalypse, and the Woman in the wilderness, i. e. the faithful Church) "by this period, He rather intends to describe to us the quality of the period than its quantity."

Besides, it is to be borne in mind that the number 42 (42 months) is the exact number of the Stations of the Ancient Hebrew Church of God in its pilgrimage through the wilderness (when it was miraculously preserved and fed) to Canaan, the type of Heaven; and is therefore a symbol of the pilgrimage of the Christian Church in the wilderness of the world through which it is passing to its promised land. See the note above on Numbers xxxiii. 1, p. 184.

Yet further, 3½ years were probably the duration of the earthly ministry of Him Who vouchsafed for our sakes to be a "Man of Sorrows," and "had not where to lay His head," and Who passed through the agony of Gethsemane and Calvary to the glories of Olivet and the Right Hand of God. See below, note on John v. 1; vii. 8, and on Daniel ix. 26.

Hence, on the whole, we need not wonder that Divine Prophecy should have adopted this period (3½ years = 42 months = 1260 days), resting on so solid an historical basis, as a chronological symbol of severe trial and intense suffering to the Church of God and to all its faithful members. And it also cheers them with a promise, that, if they endure unto the end, they will enter into such rest as to which Israel came after the forty-two stations in the wilderness of Arabia; and receive such attestations from God as were given, after 3½ years of suffering, to Elijah standing on Mount Carmel, in opposition to idolatrous Princes, Priests, and People, and at length carried up to heaven with a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and obtain such a victory as was won by Judas Maccabæus after 3½ years of persecution, and will celebrate a similar joyful Feast of Dedication; and above all, will enter into that everlasting glory and heavenly bliss, which has been purchased for them by the blood of Christ; Who after the 3½ years of His ministry, and the agony of Gethsemane, and His Death on Calvary, overcame by suffering, and raised Himself from the Dead, and ascended in triumph into heaven from Mount Olivet, and hath opened the Kingdom of Heaven to all believers; and will come again in glory to receive them for ever to Himself. Cp. below on Rev. xii., p. 222.

It is not intended hereby to deny that this symbol of 3½ years may not again (as many ancient expositors have supposed) have an historical reality in the final sufferings of the Church under the persecution of the infidel Antichristianism in the last days, which the prophet describes below, xii. 7 (see the note there and on xii. 11—13), coming to a head in intensified fury for that time of 3½ years.

But on this we may not venture to speak confidently. Time will show. May God keep safe under the shadow of His wings all those who are exposed to that terrible storm!

²⁶ unto the end] That is, for ever.

²⁷ the most High, whose kingdom is everlasting] Thus the Son of Man (see v. 14) is identified with the most High Himself. Cp. above ii. 44. Rev. xi. 15.

Up to this point from chap. ii. 4 to the end of the seventh chapter, Daniel has written in Chaldee; henceforth to the end

of the Book he writes in Hebrew. For the reason of this see above on ii. 4.

Cn. VIII. 1. In the third year—after that which appeared unto me at the first] In the former vision, in the first year of Belshazzar (vii. 1), Daniel had seen the four great Monarchies of the world. He is now carried in the spirit to Susa (see on v. 2), and there has a vision of the second and third of those four Monarchies, viz. the Persian and the Greek (v. 20, 21), and of the Power which would rise from the Greek Monarchy (i. e. the power of Antiochus, King of Syria), which would persecute the Church of God, and be a type of the Antichristianism of the last days before the coming of Christ. He was transported in a trance to Susa, because it was the capital of Persia, and because the vision concerned the Persian Monarchy.

THE FINAL CAUSE OF THIS VISION.

Why was this vision vouchsafed to Daniel?

(1) In order to show that the victories of the mighty Conqueror of Persia, Alexander the Great, were foreseen and foreordained by the God of Daniel, the Lord God of Israel; and that He is the Sovereign Ruler of the world, to be adored and obeyed by all.

(2) In order to act upon the minds of God's people, and even on some of the Rulers of the world, in regard to the Hebrew Nation.

It is not easy to estimate aright the influence exercised by these prophecies on the minds and actions of the monarchs of Persia and of Græcia. Reasons have already been given for the opinion that they operated powerfully upon Persian sovereigns, such as Darius Hystaspes and Xerxes, and had no small weight in producing the Persian expeditions into Greece in their reigns, which were undertaken to check the growing power of Greece—foretold by Daniel—and to avert the calamities which are pre-announced in this chapter, and which led to some of the greatest battles in the world's history, such as Marathon, Thermopylae, and Salamis. See above, *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 300; and on Ezra vii. 25; and *Introd.* to Esther, p. 365. The History of Greece cannot be rightly written or read without reference to the Book of Daniel. The key to it is there.

(3) There is also good reason to believe that the favourable disposition of Darius, Xerxes, and Artaxerxes Longimanus toward the Jews—as shown in the Books of Ezra, and Nehemiah, and Esther—were produced by a desire to propitiate the favour of Daniel's God, whose divine attributes had been shown by Daniel's personal history and prophetic gifts. See *Introd.* to Esther, p. 365.

(4) The fulfilment of these prophecies of Daniel concerning Persia and Greece would exercise also a powerful influence on the whole Hebrew nation. It would prepare them to endure with patience the persecutions which awaited them under Antiochus Epiphanes, and which are foretold by Daniel, v. 23—25.

Unless those persecutions had been foretold, the success which attended the godless and sacrilegious designs of Antiochus against the City and Temple of Jerusalem, and against the sacred services of the sanctuary, would have staggered and dismayed the faithful—as if that impious Persecutor were more powerful than God Himself. Wherefore, they might ask, under the pressure of that terrible affliction, have our forefathers been brought back from Babylon to Jerusalem? Why has our Temple been rebuilt, if we are to endure more terrible woes than we ever suffered in the land of our exile? Have we not been mocked by vain promises of happiness? Have not all God's assurances of favour to us proved illusory and abortive? Such questions might have been asked, if Daniel's prophecies

Before
CHRIST
about
553.

b Esth. 1. 2.

† Heb. the second.

c ch. 5. 19.
& 11. 3. 16.

|| Or, none
touched him in
the earth.

² And I saw in a vision; and it came to pass, when I saw, that I was at ^b Shushan in the palace, which is in the province of Elam; and I saw in a vision, and I was by the river of Ulai.

³ Then I lifted up mine eyes, and saw, and, behold, there stood before the river a ram which had two horns: and the two horns were high; but one was higher than † the other, and the higher came up last. ⁴ I saw the ram pushing westward, and northward, and southward; so that no beasts might stand before him, neither was there any that could deliver out of his hand; ^c but he did according to his will, and became great.

⁵ And as I was considering, behold, an he goat came from the west on the face of the whole earth, and || touched not the ground: and the goat had †^d a

† Heb. a horn of sight. d ver. 21.

had not been written. But in reading those prophecies, the faithful and devout Jews—such as the Maccabees—in the times of Antiochus, would see that all that they then endured had been predicted by Daniel; and they would see that the three children at Babylon and Daniel himself had joyfully suffered for the faith, and had been mercifully delivered by God; and they would recognize with thankfulness and joy that there was a promise in those prophecies of like victory to themselves.

Thus these persecutions themselves, having been foretold by Daniel, would serve to exercise and confirm the faith of the devout, and would stimulate their hope and keep alive their expectation of those greater events which are also predicted by Daniel, namely, the Coming of Messiah the Prince (ix. 24—27), and His sufferings and of the glory to which they would lead.

And in our own latter days these prophecies of Daniel minister warning, comfort, and encouragement to us. They tell us that a time of severe trial is before us—a time of severer trial than that of the persecutions of the people of God under Antiochus; “a time of trouble such as never was since there was a nation” (xii. 1).

They prepare us for that time. They train us with a holy discipline to encounter its dangers, and not to be seduced by its flatteries, but to stand steadfast unto the end. They encourage us to look beyond the severe trial, to the glorious victory which will follow it. They quicken our faith in the future fulfilment of those other prophecies of Daniel which reach onward to Christ's Second Coming, and to the General Resurrection and Universal Judgment of quick and dead, and to the full and final triumph and eternal glory of the Saints of God (vii. 9. 14. 27; xii. 2, 3).

(5) There is something solemn in the consideration that Antiochus Epiphanes himself might have read the prophecies of Daniel, which concern his own acts of impious violence against the Church of God, and his miserable end. See vii. 23—25; and especially xi. 21—36.

God speaks in His Word to the persecutors as well as to the persecuted. He spake to Pharaoh, to Ahab, to Herod; to the Chief Priests who crucified Christ. They heard the voice of prophecy sounding in their ears, and they held it in their hands. They fulfilled the prophecies which were read every Sabbath day (as St. Paul declares, Acts xiii. 7), in condemning Him of Whom those prophecies spake.

And so it is in these latter days. The spirit of Anti-christianism has the pages of Prophecy now open before its eyes. It may see itself described by Daniel and by St. John. Assuredly it is an awful thought, that it is fulfilling the prophecies which are read in our Churches, and which foretell its sin and its doom. Yet it will not hear; it will not know them. But “blessed are they that hear and keep the sayings that are written in this book; for the time is at hand.”

2. in a vision—at Shushan in the palace] Daniel was in a trance or ecstasy, and seemed to himself to be in the royal palace of Susa; as Ezekiel speaks of being in a vision at Jerusalem. Ezek., chaps. viii.—xi., xl. 2. (Hävern; Hengst. 31.; Pusey, 407; Kran.; Kliefoth; Keil.

This is necessary to be observed; because some rationalistic critics have alleged that in the time when the Chaldean monarchy was still standing (“the third year of Belshazzar”), Daniel could have had no right to be at Susa, and could “not have done the king's business” (v. 27) at Susa, where the Chaldean king had no authority.

Daniel does not say that he was in bodily presence at Susa; and when he states that “he rose up, and did the king's business,” he means that he awakened from his trance in which

he had appeared to be at Susa, and transacted the king's business where he really was, viz. in Chaldaea.

Susa was a royal residence of Persian kings in the days of Cyrus (Xen. Cyrop. viii. 6. 22; Anab. iii. 5. 15). The ruins of Susa (about 300 miles east of Babylon) are still visible, between the left branch of the *Kerkhah* and the right branch of the *Dizful*, which flows into the *Kuran* River. For a description of the ruins of the palace, see *Rawlinson*, *Anc. Mon.* iv. 292; cp. there, p. 492.

The history of Nehemiah (i. 1) and of Esther (i. 2. 5; ii. 3. 5. 8; iii. 15; viii. 14; ix. 6. 11, 12) is connected with the palace of Susa; and there can be little doubt that the vision displayed to Daniel when he supposed himself to be there, and when he had a revelation of the future destiny of the Persian Empire, was often in the mind of Nehemiah and Esther and other Jews who dwelt at Susa and in other cities of Persia.

— *Elam*] the western portion of the Persian satrapy, or Province of Susiana, which is called Cissia by *Herodotus*, iii. 91, v. 45.

— *river of Ulai*] called *Euleus* by the Greeks and Romans (*Arrian*, *Alex. Exped.* vii. 7. *Plin.* N. H. vi. 31), probably the river *Kuran*, which is formed of two branches, the *Dizful* and *Shaster* rivers. It is supposed by some (as *Duncker* and *Keil*) that *Utai* (or *Euleus*) or *Ula* (as it is called in the Assyrian Inscriptions, *Layard*, 146) is a Semitic name of the stream called *Choaspes* by *Herodotus*, i. 188. Others suppose that the *Choaspes* is the modern *Kerkhah* on the west of Susa; and the *Euleus* the modern *Dizful* (to the east of Susa) which flows into the *Kuran*, cp. *Rawlinson*, iii. 270, who says “the proper *Euleus* (*Ulai*) was the eastern branch of the *Kerkhah* (*Choaspes*) from *Pai Pul* to *Ahwaz*; but the name was naturally extended northwards to the *Choaspes* above *Pai Pul*, and southwards to the *Kuran* below *Ahwaz*.”

3. a ram which had two horns: and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher came up last] The ram was the Medo-Persian monarchy. See the explanations given in v. 20. “The ram which thou sawest having two horns are the kings (or kingdoms) of Media and Persia.” He beholds the Medo-Persian Empire forming itself; and he foresees that Persia, which had been a dependency on Media, would gain the ascendancy—as it did under Cyrus. The King of Persia, when at the head of his army, bore, instead of a diadem, the head of a ram (*Ammian. Marcellin.* xix. 1).

4. I saw the ram pushing westward, and northward, and southward] It butted in those three directions; it came from the East. Westward, it conquered Babylon, Syria, Asia Minor, and it pushed toward Greece. Northward, it overran Colchis and Armenia and Scythia. Southward, it subdued part of Arabia, Egypt, and Ethiopia.

— no beasts] No kingdoms. vii. 17.

5. an he goat came from the west] The king of Javan or Græcia, Alexander the Great. Alexander claimed to be a son of Jupiter Ammon, who was represented in the form of a he goat (*A Lapide*). See the explanation, v. 21. Some of Alexander's successors are portrayed in their coins with goat's horns. (*Spanheim*, de Usu Numismat. i. Diss. vii.) Pyrrhus wore on his helmet the horns of a goat (*Plutarch* in *A Lap.*).

In the *Syriac* version it is expressly stated that the he goat is “Alexander the son of Philip,” and that the ram is “Darius the Median king.”

— on the face of the whole earth, and touched not the ground] Therefore (in vii. 6) he is compared to a panther with four wings.

notable horn between his eyes. ⁶ And he came to the ram that had *two* horns, which I had seen standing before the river, and ran unto him in the fury of his power. ⁷ And I saw him come close unto the ram, and he was moved with choler against him, and smote the ram, and brake his two horns: and there was no power in the ram to stand before him, but he cast him down to the ground, and stamped upon him: and there was none that could deliver the ram out of his hand. ⁸ Therefore the he goat waxed very great:

And when he was strong, the great horn was broken; and for it came up ^e four notable ones toward the four winds of heaven.

⁹ And out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed exceeding

Before
CHRIST
about
553.

e ch. 7. 6. & 11. 4.
ver. 22.

f ch. 7. 8. & 11. 21.

The Roman poet described the "*whole earth*" as not sufficient to gratify the ambition of Alexander.

"*Unus Pellæo juveni non sufficit orbis;*

Æstuat infelix angusto limite mundi

Ut Gyare clausus scopulis parvæque Seripho."

(*Juvenal*, x. 168.)

— *a notable horn between his eyes*] A horn to be gazed at and admired, between his eyes; a symbol of strength and intelligence. Such was the power of Alexander the Great: cp. v. 21.

The he goat is represented according to the well known symbol of Persepolis, with its one beautiful horn between its eyes. (*Pusey*.)

⁶ *he came to the ram—and ran unto him in the fury of his power*] In the victories succeeding one another with marvellous celerity, by which Alexander overthrew the empire of Persia. See below, on Zechariah ix. 1, where Persia is called by a symbolic name, *Hadrach* (i. e. strong-weak), on account of these sudden reverses.

⁷ *And I saw him come close unto the ram, and he—smote the ram*] As Alexander did at the river Granicus, when at the head of his army, not equal to one-fifth of the number of his opponents, he plunged into the stream and swam across it, and rushed on them *in the fury of his power*, and overwhelmed them (*Arrian*, *Exped. Alex.* i. 14. *Quint. Curt.* iv. 9).

— *he cast him down to the ground, and stamped upon him: and there was none that could deliver the ram out of his hand*] The immense forces of Persia were unavailing against the attack of Alexander. At Issus the Persian army numbered 600,000 men, whereas the army of Alexander did not amount to more than 47,000 (*Arrian*, *Exped. Alex.* ii. 8; iii. 12. *Plutarch*, in *Alex.* § 18. *Polyb.* xii. 19).

⁸ *when he was strong, the great horn was broken*] Alexander was suddenly cut off by a fever at Babylon, in the prime of life, at the age of thirty-two, and in the zenith of his glory, after a reign of twelve years and eight months, in June B.C. 323.

The Jewish historian *Josephus* asserts (*Antiq.* xi. 8. 5) that when Alexander was in Syria, and was marching toward Jerusalem, the High Priest, Jaddua, went forth in his sacerdotal robes, and with a religious procession to meet him; and that he showed him the prophecies of Daniel, in which his victories were foretold. This was probably either in B.C. 332 or 331 (when he was in Syria, cp. *Ussher*, *Annales*, B.C. 332, and *Prideaux*, *Connexion*, B.C. 332; *Bp. Newton*, *Dissert.* xv.), after the battles of Granicus (B.C. 333) and of Issus (B.C. 333), but before the battle of Arbela, B.C. 331, and the capture of Persepolis, B.C. 330, and the death of Darius.

Alexander married Roxana, daughter of Oxyartes, King of Bactria, B.C. 328, and celebrated his marriage at Susa, B.C. 325, and received embassies from the principal Oriental nations at Babylon, B.C. 324—as displayed in the beautiful frieze of Thorwaldsen—and died there in the following year.

— *four notable ones*] Alexander's four successors, called, in Greek, Diadochi, who held whatever survived of his conquests (*Dr. Pusey*, 67, cp. xi. 4). This is expressly stated by an insertion here in the *Syriac* version, and so *Josephus*, *Ant.* x. 11. 7. Of these (after the extinction of Alexander's family and the death of Antigonus in the battle of Ipsus, B.C. 301), Lysimachus had Thrace and Bithynia; Cassander had Macedonia and Greece; Seleucus, Syria, Babylonia, and the East; Ptolemy, Egypt, Palestine, and Arabia Petræa. Thus the empire was divided "toward the four winds of heaven." See *Diod.* Sic. xxi. 1. *Polyb.* v. 67.

⁹ *And out of one of them*] Out of the Syrian dynasty of Seleucus Nicator, who gave his name to the Era of the Seleucidæ, sometimes called the Era of Javan, or Græcia, which began

B.C. 312, twelve years after the death of Alexander. The Greeks of Syria commenced it in September, and other Syrians in the month of October; from it the Books of the Maccabees date their chronology, and there it is called the era of the Kingdom of the Greeks. See 1 Maccabees i. 10, and *Prideaux* on B.C. 312, and *Bentley's* Correspondence, p. 711; *Sir H. Nicholas*, *Chronol.* p. 9.

— *came forth a little horn*] Literally, *a horn from smallness* (*mits-tseirah*, cp. Gen. xliii. 33), from small beginnings. See xi. 23, where it is said of him that "he shall become strong from a small people." In the other passage, vii. 8, where the words are rendered "*little horn*," there is no preposition (*min*), and the word is *tseir* (*little*). Cp. *Hofmann*, *Kran.*, *Klif.*, *Keil*.

This horn is Antiochus Epiphanes, who came out of one of the four kingdoms of Alexander's successors, viz. the kingdom of Syria, see the first Book of the Maccabees, i. 10, where there is reference to this passage of Daniel, as follows, "And there came out of them" (namely, the successors of Alexander) "a wicked root, Antiochus, surnamed Epiphanes, son of Antiochus the king, who had been a hostage at Rome," and he reigned B.C. 175 ("quum, nesciente senatu, per dolum cepisset imperium," says *S. Jerome* here), and "entered into Egypt with a great multitude, with chariots, and elephants, and horsemen, and a great navy; and Ptolemy was afraid of him and fled. And after that Antiochus had smitten Egypt, he returned again, and went up against Israel and Jerusalem with a great multitude, and entered proudly into the sanctuary, and took away the golden altar, and the candlestick of light, and all the vessels thereof, and the table of shewbread, and the censers of gold, and the veil, and the silver and the gold and the precious vessels; and when he had taken all away, he went into his own land, having made a great massacre, and spoken very proudly; and after two years the king sent his chief collector of tribute (cp. 2 Macc. v. 24) unto the cities of Juda, who came unto Jerusalem with a great multitude, and spake peaceable words unto them, but all was deceit; . . . and when he had taken the spoils of the city he set it on fire; and they builded the city of David with a great wall, and put therein a sinful nation, wicked men; and it was a place to lie in wait against the sanctuary; thus they shed innocent blood on every side of the sanctuary and defiled it; inasmuch that the inhabitants of Jerusalem fled away, and her own children left her; her sanctuary was laid waste like a wilderness (cp. 2 Macc. vi. 6), and her feasts were turned into mourning. Moreover King Antiochus wrote to his whole kingdom that all should be one people, and all the heathen agreed according to the commandment of the king; yea, and many also of the Israelites consented to his religion, and sacrificed unto idols, and profaned the Sabbath; for the king had sent letters unto Jerusalem and the cities of Juda, that they should follow the strange laws of the land, and forbid burnt-offerings, and sacrifice and drink-offerings in the Temple; and set up altars and groves, and chapels of idols, and sacrifice swine's flesh, and leave their children uncircumcised. Whosoever would not do according to the king's commandment he should die. Then many of the people were gathered unto them, to wit, every one that forsook the law. Now the fifteenth day of the month Casleu they set up the abomination of desolation ["the image of Jupiter Olympius," *S. Jerome*] upon the altar, and builded idol altars throughout the cities of Juda; and burnt incense at the doors of their houses; and when they had rent in pieces the books of the law which they found, they burnt them with fire, and they did sacrifice upon the idol altar which was upon the altar of God. At which time they put to death certain women that had caused their children to be circumcised; and they hanged their infants about their necks, and slew them that had circumcised

Before
CHRIST
about
553.

great, ^g toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the ^h pleasant land.

g ch. 11. 25. h Ps. 48. 2. Ezek. 20. 6, 15. ch. 11. 16, 41, 45.

them. Howbeit many in Israel were fully resolved and confirmed in themselves not to eat any unclean thing, wherefore they chose rather to die, that they might not profane the holy covenant; so they died." Cp. *Josephus*, *Antiq.* x. 11. 7, where he states that what Antiochus Epiphanes did was foretold by Daniel the prophet, and so *Hippolytus*, p. 153, ed. Lagarde, and *S. Jerome* here. And on the history of these events as described by profane historians, see the full collections in *Archbp. Ussher's Annales*, pp. 311—336, A.C. 175 to A.C. 164, in which year Antiochus died, having reigned eleven years and some months. See *Prideaux*, *Connexion*, Book iii.; and my sermons "On the Maccabees and the Church."

The following CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE of the principal events in Jewish history in the times of ANTIOCHUS EPIPHANES, king of Syria, may serve to illustrate this chapter of Daniel; and also chapter xi. :—

B.C.

175. (= the 137th year of the Era of the Greeks, see on v. 9). Antiochus Epiphanes, younger son of Antiochus the Great, usurps the throne of Syria.

At Jerusalem, Jason, who assumed this Greek name instead of his name Jesus, supplants his brother Onias in the Priesthood, which he buys of Antiochus (2 Macc. iv. 7—11. *Joseph. Antiq.* xii. 6).

174. Apostate Jews, assisted by the High Priest, introduce Gentile customs and set up Gentile schools at Jerusalem, and send offerings to the Tyrian Hercules (1 Macc. i. 15—21. 2 Macc. iv. 13—15. *Joseph. Ant.* xii. 6).

173. Conflict between Antiochus and his nephew Ptolemy Philometor for Cœle-Syria and Palestine.

172. Menelaus (who assumed this Greek name instead of his name Onias) supplants his brother Jason in the priesthood, which he buys of Antiochus (2 Macc. iv. 23—25. *Joseph. Ant.* xii. 6; xv. 3).

171. Antiochus defeats the forces of Ptolemy his nephew, the youthful king of Egypt, near Pelusium. He professes friendship for his nephew in order to deceive him and despoil him of his kingdom. He overruns a great part of Egypt (1 Macc. i. 16—19).

170. The Jews having heard a false rumour of the death of Antiochus, attack his garrison at Jerusalem.

Antiochus besieges and takes Jerusalem, puts 40,000 Jews to the sword and sells 40,000; enters the Temple, being conducted into it by the renegade Priest and traitor Menelaus; spoils it of its sacred vessels, sacrifices swine on the altar, and sprinkles the Temple with the broth made of their flesh (1 Macc. i. 23, 24. 2 Macc. v. 11—16. *Joseph. xiii.* 16. *Sulp. Sever. Hist.* ii. 18. *Phot. Bibl.* 244).

168. Antiochus having returned into Egypt, and being near Alexandria, is commanded by the Roman Envoy, C. Popilius, to retire from Egypt (*Polyb. Legat.* 92. *Vell. Pat.* i. 10. *Val. Max.* vi. 4. *Justin. Hist.* xxiv. 3).

Antiochus Epiphanes (two years after he himself had plundered the Temple, sends Apollonius, his Collector of Taxes, to Jerusalem with an army of 22,000 men, and with orders to kill all the adults and to sell into slavery all women and children. Apollonius, on the Sabbath day, plunders and destroys a great part of the city, and kills many of the inhabitants, and carries others into captivity. A fortress is built by the Syrians in the city of David, where they deposited the plunder of the Temple, and where a Syrian garrison was quartered (1 Macc. i. 30—42. 2 Macc. v. 24—26. *Joseph. Ant.* xii. 7).

Judas Maccabæus and others retire to the mountains, in order to escape the pollutions of idolatrous worship and "the desolation of the sanctuary" and the "taking away of the daily sacrifice," three years and a half before the cleansing of the Temple by him, and the institution of the Feast of Dedication (1 Macc. i. 39—41. 43. 54. 2 Macc. v. 27. *Joseph. Bell. Jud.* i. 1. *Ussher, Ann.* p. 323; and notes above, on vii. 25).

Antiochus enforces conformity to the Greek religion (1 Macc. i. 43—53); orders the Temple at Jerusalem to be called the Temple of Jupiter Olympius (2 Macc. vi. 1, 2); and commands idolatrous altars to be built, and idolatrous sacrifices to be offered there and in other cities of Judah: forbids circumcision and the observance of the Sabbath and holy days, and makes it criminal to profess the Hebrew religion (1 Macc. i. 43. 46—51. 2 Macc. vi. 6—9).

Many Jews fell away from the faith, and became wor-

shippers of Dionysus, and carried ivy in processions in his honour (2 Macc. vi. 7). The heathen pollute the Courts of the Temple with the grossest impurities (2 Macc. vi. 4, 5), and burn the copies of the Scriptures (1 Macc. i. 56—58).

On the 15th day of Cisleu (corresponding to the latter half of November and the first half of December) in B.C. 168, the abomination of Desolation (the image of Jupiter Olympius) was set up on the altar in the Temple (1 Macc. i. 57). On the 25th Cisleu idolatrous sacrifices are offered on the idolatrous altar set up on the altar of God (1 Macc. i. 59).

167. Many Jews remain firm, and die as Martyrs, especially the priest Eleazar, ninety years of age (2 Macc. vi. 18—31), and Razis the Jewish Senator (2 Macc. xiv. 37), and the mother and seven sons at Antioch (2 Macc. vii.), who are called Maccabees from their elder brother. The Christian Church celebrated the Festival of the Maccabees, in the East and the West, in the fourth century on Aug. 1; and sermons preached on that day are extant in the works of *S. Chrysostom*, *S. Greg. Nazianzen*, *S. Leo*, and *S. Augustine* (*Bingham*, xx. c. vii.).

The Priest Mattathias and his five sons, also called Maccabees, the principal of whom was Judas Maccabæus, dwell at Modin near Diospolis (1 Macc. ii. 1—5, 66; iii. 4. 9; iv. 1—26), they are joined by the *Assidæi* or religious ones (1 Macc. ii. 42—48).

166. Mattathias dies (1 Macc. ii. 49—70); Judas Maccabæus his son prays to God and is strengthened (2 Macc. viii. 1—4). Antiochus Epiphanes celebrates the festal games with almost incredible splendour and luxury at Daphne near Antioch in Syria; described by *Polybius* in *Athen.* v. 4; x. 10. *Ussher*, p. 33. Many thousands of soldiers, infantry and cavalry, crowned with golden crowns and bearing silver shields, and clad in purple and embroidered cloaks; 1000 oxen as victims; images of gods and goddesses; 600 boys bearing golden vessels; 200 women sprinkling the spectators with perfume; women on golden litters; gladiatorial spectacles for thirty days in succession; 1000 couches for guests at banquets—such were some of the features of this brilliant festival. In the midst of it the king acted like a buffoon and a libertine; and at this time a reverse of fortune awaited him and his end was near. In the midst of this magnificent display Judas Maccabæus is preparing to deliver Jerusalem (*Joseph. xii.* 9. 1 Macc. iii. 8, 9. 2 Macc. viii. 6, 7).

165. Judas Maccabæus prays and obtains a great victory with 10,000 men against 65,000 under Lysias the general of Antiochus. Antiochus marches to Armenia. Judas Maccabæus recovers Jerusalem; overthrows the idol altars, and cleanses the sanctuary on the 25th day of Cisleu, and offers sacrifice there, three years after it had been polluted by the heathen, and keeps the Feast of Dedication with great joy for eight days, after the manner of the Feast of Tabernacles, and restores the worship of the Temple (1 Macc. iv. 42—54. 2 Macc. x. 3—7. *Joseph. xii.* 11).

The persecution itself lasted three years and a half. See above on B.C. 168, and notes on vii. 25.

The nations in the neighbourhood of Jerusalem, the Edomites, Moabites, Ammonites, and Tyrians are much enraged against the Jews (1 Macc. v. 1—15).

164. Antiochus Epiphanes in Persia, at Ecbatana, receives the tidings announcing the defeat of his army under Lysias by Judas Maccabæus, and the recovery of Jerusalem, and the Dedication of the Temple. He is transported with violent rage and orders his charioteer to get ready his horses and chariot that he may march into Judæa, and boasts that he will make Jerusalem to be the grave of the Jews (1 Macc. vi. 4—7. 2 Macc. ix. 3, 4). Soon afterwards he is seized with a sudden and loathsome disease, and dies miserably, declaring that his death is coming as a penalty for his impiety against the God of the Hebrews (1 Macc. vi. 10—13. 2 Macc. ix. 11—27).

— the south] Namely, Egypt, invaded by Antiochus Epiphanes. See below xi. 5. 1 Macc. i. 16. *S. Jerome*, here.

— the east] Babylonia, Persia, and Armenia, invaded by Antiochus Epiphanes. See 1 Macc. iii. 31. 37; vi. 1—4. *Appian*, *Syr. cap.* 45. *Polyb.* xxxi. 11.

— the pleasant land] The Holy Land, invaded by Antiochus, see on v. 9, literally the glory, or splendour (*Heb. tsebi. Gese.*

¹⁰ And it waxed great, *even* || to ^k the host of heaven; and ^l it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them. ¹¹ Yea, ^m he magnified *himself* even || to ⁿ the prince of the host, ^o and || by him ^p the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down. ¹² And ^a || an host was given *him* against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression, and it cast down ^r the truth to the ground; and it ^s practised, and prospered.

¹³ Then I heard ^t one saint speaking, and another saint said unto || † that

q ch. 11. 31. || Or, the host was given over for the transgression against the daily sacrifice. r Ps. 119. 43, 142. Isai. 59. 14. s ver. 4.
ch. 11. 28, 36. t ch. 4. 13. & 12. 6. 1 Pet. 1. 12. || Or, the numberer of secrets, or, the wonderful numberer. † Heb. Palmot.

Before CHRIST about 553.
i ch. 11. 28.
|| Or, against the host.
k So Isai. 11. 13.
l Rev. 12. 4.
m Jer. 48. 26, 42.
ch. 11. 36. ver. 23.
|| Or, against.
n Josh. 5. 14.
o ch. 11. 31.
& 12. 11.
|| Or, from him.
p Ex. 29. 35.
Num. 28. 3.
Ezek. 46. 13.
Isai. 59. 14. s ver. 4.
† Heb. Palmot.

700; cp. 2 Sam. i. 19. Isaiah iv. 2; xxiv. 16; xxviii. 4, 5. Ezek. xx. 6, 15, "the glory of all lands," and xxvi. 20). The term is explained by Daniel himself in xi. 16. 41, where the word *land* is added. Cp. xi. 45; cp. also Ps. xlviii. 2; cvi. 24. Jerem. iii. 19. Zech. vii. 14.

¹⁰. It waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground. Some of the host and of the stars represent persons, conspicuous luminaries in the Hebrew Church (*S. Jerome, Theodoret, S. Gregory*, 32 Moral. c. 12). Cp. Matt. xxiv. 29, Jude 13, where heresiarchs are called "wandering stars;" and Rev. i. 20, where Chief Teachers, or Angels of Churches, are called stars; and Rev. viii. 10; ix. 1, where the apostasy of an eminent leader in Christendom is compared to the fall of a star; and in viii. 12, a third part of the stars is said to be smitten; and xii. 4, where the dragon is said to sweep down the third part of the stars from heaven.

To borrow the words of *S. Augustine* slightly modified, "The stars fall from heaven, whenever persons, who seemed to shine by God's grace in the firmament of the Church, and who ought to be like firm-set constellations guiding men in their voyage over the troubled waters of this world to the calm harbour of heaven, apostatize from the truth, and wander like wild and fitful meteors in the lurid sky, and at last are quenched in gloom."

Such was the defection of many priests and others in the Jewish Church in the days of Antiochus Epiphanes, especially Jason and Menelaus, the high priests (*Joseph*, xii. 6. 2 Macc. iv. 5, 23—25). See note above, on v. 9, and below, xi. 32—35, where it is said of Antiochus, that "such as do wickedly against the covenant shall he corrupt by flatteries—and many shall cleave to them with flatteries, and some of them of understanding" (bright stars in the firmament of the Church) "shall fall."

— and stamped upon them] After Antiochus had swept some of the stars from the heaven, he stamped upon them and extinguished their light. This was the condition of the unhappy men among the Jews, who, instead of contending and suffering as Confessors and Martyrs for the Truth in the days of Antiochus, betrayed it. They were trodden underfoot in the dust, like fallen and quenched stars, by the very man who had swept them from the sky. Such is the fate of all renegades and apostates in the Church of God.

¹¹. Yea, he magnified himself even to the prince of the host] Antiochus (the type of Antichrist) magnified himself even against God Himself; as *S. Jerome* explains it, "He will exalt himself against God, and persecute His Saints." Compare Isaiah xiv. 13, "Thou hast said in thy heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God. I will be like the most High." And below, xi. 36, where it is said of Antiochus, "He shall exalt himself and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvellous things against the God of gods." The Author of 2 Macc. ix. 10, in the history of Antiochus, refers to this passage when he describes him as "the man who thought that he could reach to the stars of heaven."

— and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away] The daily (Heb. *tamid*, lit. continual). The word sacrifice is not in the original here, nor in v. 12, nor in the parallel passage, xi. 31. Cp. xii. 11. And the prophecy foretells the cessation of daily worship generally; though, doubtless, it specially applies to the suspension of the continual sacrifice; *ôlat ha-tamid*, the burnt sacrifice, offered daily, morning and evening (Num. xxviii. 3. 6. 10. 15. 23, 24. 31; xxix. 6. 11. 16—38. *Gesen.* 867). In Latin it is called "juge sacrificium." Cp. *S. Jerome* here, who says that this is a prophecy that Antiochus would take away "the sacrifice which was offered daily, morning and

evening, and that he would cast down the place of its sanctification, and that he would do this, not by his own strength, but on account of the sins of the people.

The word *tamid* (continual) may be extended to all the appointed sacrifices and offerings of the Hebrew Ritual. Cp. Exod. xxv. 30, where it is applied to the shewbread. Cp. Num. iv. 7. Exod. xxvii. 20, concerning the camp; xxx. 8. Cp. Lev. xxiv. 2—4, 8, the incense; Lev. vi. 13, the fire; vi. 20, the *minchah*, or meat offering. And this prophecy, like that in xi. 31, predicts what is related in the first Book of Maccabees to have taken place in the persecution under Antiochus (1 Macc. i. 45). See above, on v. 9.

— and the place of his sanctuary was cast down] The fulfilment under Antiochus of this prophecy is described in 1 Macc. i. 45, 46; iii. 45. Jerusalem lay void as a wilderness, the sanctuary was trodden down, and aliens kept the stronghold, the heathen had their habitation in that place (iv. 37, 38). The sanctuary was desolate and the altar profaned, and the gates burnt up, and shrubs were growing in the courts as in a forest, or in one of the mountains. Cp. 2 Macc. vi. 4, 5.

¹². And an host was given him against the daily sacrifice] Power was given to Antiochus by God against the sanctuary and its sacred services, because of the sins of the apostate priests and people, who were punished by the loss of the spiritual blessings which they had despised and betrayed. Cp. v. 23.

This is to be explained from the meaning of the word translated *host*, *tsaba*; this word properly signifying a military host. It is used to denote the service of the Levites encamped around the tabernacle, as an army is encamped around the tent of its general. See Num. iv. 23. 30. 35. 39. 43; viii. 24, 25; and see the margin there. The priests and Levites were like a host whose duty it was to watch and guard the Temple and its Ritual. But in the days of Antiochus a part of this host, instead of watching for the service of God to defend it, was given into the hands of Antiochus against the daily sacrifice to pollute it.

This is explained below, in xi. 32, where those treacherous Jews, who apostatized from God to Antiochus, are described as "doing wickedly against the covenant." This was signally exemplified in the persons of Jason and Menelaus, the high priests, who betrayed their sacred office, and made themselves sycophants and minions of Antiochus; and, in order to gratify him and to gain advantage for themselves, introduced into Jerusalem heathen usages and idolatrous sacrifices. See on v. 9.

— by reason of transgression] These calamities, under Antiochus, came upon Jerusalem on account of her own sins and the sins of her priests and rulers (see v. 23)—not by any power of Antiochus against the Lord God, Who had been worshipped there. God used the Persecutor as an instrument for punishing her transgressions against Himself, and for chastening His people; see my sermons "On the Maccabees." 1871.

The same truth is asserted in the Gospels concerning the destruction of Jerusalem by the armies of Rome (see the note below, on Matt. xxiv. 15). The word used for *transgression* here and v. 12 (*pasha*) recurs in ix. 24, "to finish the transgression" (Lat. *pervariatio*); and the participle of its cognate verb (*pasha*) is used in v. 23, "when the transgressors are come to the full," and it is applied specially to God's own people the Jews, transgressing His Law, and bringing divine retribution on themselves, their city, and their country, by their sins.

— it cast down the truth] The treacherous host, which fell away to Antiochus, and which ought to have fought and died for the Truth, cast it down to the ground, and prospered for a time. This prophecy was fulfilled by the priests Jason and Menelaus and their partisans. See below, xi. 32—34.

¹³. I heard one saint] One holy angel. Cp. iv. 13.

Before
CHRIST
about
553.

Or, making

desolate,

ch. 11. 31.

& 12. 11.

† Heb. evening

morning.

† Heb. justified.

u See ch. 12. 8.

1 Pet. 1. 10, 11.

x Ezek. 1. 26.

y ch. 12. 6, 7.

z ch. 9. 21.

Luke 1. 19, 26.

certain *saint* which spake, How long shall be the vision concerning the daily sacrifice, and the transgression of desolation, to give both the sanctuary and the host to be trodden under foot?

¹⁴ And he said unto me, Unto two thousand and three hundred † days; then shall the sanctuary be † cleansed.

¹⁵ And it came to pass, when I, *even* I Daniel, had seen the vision, and "sought for the meaning, then, behold, there stood before me * as the appearance of a man. ¹⁶ And I heard a man's voice * between the banks of Ulai, which called, and said, ^z Gabriel, make this *man* to understand the vision.

— *that certain saint*] The word rendered *certain* is *palmoni*, which is a compound of *pelóni* ("such an one," from *páláh*, to distinguish) and *almóni*, "concealed." (*Fuerst*, 102. 1113, from *alm*, to be hid). See Ruth iv. 1, where the two words (*pelóni almóni*) occur. (*Gesen*. 677.) It means a person who is discerned by the speaker, but whom he does not wish to name. This was some great Angel, whose name was Wonderful and not to be revealed, and who Himself is the Revealer; as it is said at the beginning of the Apocalypse, "The revelation of Jesus Christ." Is it not probable (we may ask with *Junius*, *Calvin*, *Glassius*, and others) that it was no other than He Who said to Manóah, "Why askest thou thus after My Name, seeing it is secret?" See above, on Judges xiii. 17; Isa. ix. 6, "His name shall be called *Wonderful*;" and cp. below, xii. 6.

Aquila rendered the word by *penimi*, i. e. an Angel who sees God's face. See *Beresith rabba*, fol. 24. c.

Some suppose the name to be compounded of *pálá*, to be wonderful and hidden, and *mánáh*, to number; and thus they explain it to mean a *numberer of secrets*.

The Angel here speaking was, probably, He Who is the Wisdom of the Father and Who reveals His Will to the world, the Eternal Logos, or Word of God (John i. 1. 14). See on v. 14.

— *How long shall be the vision concerning the daily sacrifice*] How long shall be the duration of that which is revealed in the vision concerning the taking away of the daily sacrifice, and concerning the *transgression of desolation*, that is, the sin of some in the Hebrew nation which will cause that desolation? See below, ix. 27; xii. 11.

— *the host*] See vv. 10. 12.

2300 DAYS.

14. *Unto two thousand and three hundred days*] Literally, to morning and evening (see v. 26) two thousand and three hundred. The term "morning and evening" (used for twenty-four hours; see *S. Jerome* here) is probably employed with reference to the morning and evening sacrifice (i. e. the daily sacrifice) which was interrupted.

In order to ascertain the sense of this prophecy we must consider to what it extends. It does not merely concern the taking away of the daily sacrifice, but that which led to it, viz. the sins of the Jewish Rulers, especially the High Priests Jason and Menelaus, and which is called the *transgression of desolation*, i. e. the transgression which was the cause of the desolation of the Sanctuary.

According to the calculation used in the Book of Daniel and the Apocalypse, where $3\frac{1}{2}$ years = 42 months = 1260 days, we find that 2300 days would be equivalent to 6 years, 4 months, and 20 days. See above on vii. 25.

The Feast of Dedication, instituted by Judas Maccabæus at the cleansing of the Temple in the winter of B.C. 165 (1 Macc. iv. 42—58. 2 Macc. x. 3—6. *Joseph*. Antiq. xii. 11. *Clinton*, Fasti Hellen. iii. 321), a little more than a year before the death of Antiochus, seems to be the *terminus ad quem* or point to which this prophecy reaches, which ends with the words, "then shall the Sanctuary be cleansed;" and the *terminus a quo*, or point from which it is to be dated, would fall late in the summer of B.C. 171, which would nearly coincide with the profanation of the holy vessels by the traitorous High Priest Menelaus (2 Macc. iv. 32. 39), and the murder of the faithful High Priest Onias at Antioch (2 Macc. iv. 33, 34), and the commencement of the profane acts of Antiochus.

According to 1 Macc. i. 21 the persecution began in the 143rd year of the era of the Greeks (see on v. 9) and lasted to the 149th year, in which Antiochus died, 1 Macc. vi. 16 (*A Lapide*), but the transgression began earlier than the 143rd year (see 1 Macc. i. 11—15).

In the year B.C. 171, Antiochus being in Egypt where he defeated Ptolemy, and hearing that the Jews were exulting in

a false rumour of his death, marched into Judæa (2 Macc. v. 20. 1 Macc. i. 21). Jerusalem was besieged and taken by Antiochus, who slew 40,000 men and sold as many into captivity. Antiochus entered the Temple, and sacrificed a sow on the altar of burnt offering, and the broth thence made was sprinkled over the Temple; and the golden altar of incense and table of shewbread, and the candlestick, and the golden censer, and the veil of the Temple were taken away by him, and Menelaus was left by him to be High Priest (1 Macc. i. 20—28. 2 Macc. v. 11—16. 23. *Joseph*. Ant. xiii. 16. See above the *Chronological Table* at v. 9). Therefore we may accept the interpretation of *S. Jerome* here, who says, "Let us read the Books of the Maccabees and the history of Josephus, and we shall find six years of the desolation of Jerusalem, and three of the pollution of the Temple by the erection of the statue of Jupiter, until the dedication by Judas Maccabæus" (and so nearly *Lengerke*, *Wieseler*, *Maurer*, and others).

Perhaps the reason of this particular period prescribed for the punishment of the faithless and renegade Jews, viz. 2300 days, may have been as follows:—

The Priests were untrue to their obligation, they imitated the manners and customs of the heathen, by erecting secular gymnasia in Jerusalem, and by renouncing their circumcision (1 Macc. i. 11—15. 2 Macc. iv. 11—13. *Joseph*. Ant. xii. 5. 1). They betrayed their sacred charge and the service of the Temple; especially the sacrifices offered daily, i. e. every twenty-four hours. According to their sin was their punishment. As to their forefathers in the wilderness, God said "Your children shall wander in the wilderness *forty years*, and bear your whoredoms, until your carcases be wasted in the wilderness. After the *number of the days* in which ye searched the land, *even forty days*, each day for a year, shall ye bear your iniquities." But God was not extreme to mark what was done amiss. He mercifully abated something from the execution of this threat (as there was abatement in the application of the law concerning forty stripes, see 2 Cor. xi. 24), and the fact is that they only wandered about *thirty-eight years and a half* after the commission of their sin. See above, on Numbers xiv. 34.

To apply this here. May we not say, that according to a rigorous rule of retribution they might have been condemned to 24 hundred days of desolation for the 24 hours of profanation? But God graciously shortened the days, and made them to be 23 hundred days. A similar abatement may be noticed in the other denunciation, where it is said that the land should be desolate *seventy years*, in order to enjoy her *sabbaths* which had been polluted (2 Chron. xxxvi. 21); but God made some relaxation in the execution of this threat, for though Nebuchadnezzar came against Jerusalem in B.C. 606, and the Jews were not restored till B.C. 536, a period of seventy years, yet Jerusalem was not actually destroyed till about eighteen years after the first invasion of Judah by Nebuchadnezzar.

15. *as the appearance of a man*] Probably the great Angel mentioned in v. 13, and no other than the Son of God (so *Calvin* and others). No other person than God would give a command to the Archangel Gabriel; as He does here.

This interpretation is confirmed by the fuller descriptions in x. 5—7.

16. *Gabriel*] Whose name signifies *strong man* (Heb. *gêbôr*) of God (*El*), "robustus Dei" (*S. Jerome*), and who is seen in Holy Scripture as specially employed in messages concerning Christ, "the mighty God" (*El Gîbbôr*), Isa. ix. 6. See below, on x. 21, and note on Luke i. 19. 26. When the strong man, Satan, was to be overcome by the Stronger than he, or, as *S. Jerome* says, "When Christ was about to be born, and to wage war against the Devil, and to triumph over the world, then Gabriel (the strong man of God) who had come 500 years before to Daniel, came from heaven to Zacharias in the Temple, and to the Virgin Mary at Nazareth, to announce the Incarnation."

¹⁷ So he came near where I stood: and when he came, I was afraid, and *fell upon my face: but he said unto me, Understand, O son of man: for at the time of the end *shall be* the vision.

Before
CHRIST
about
553.
a Ezek. 1. 28.
Rev. 1. 17.

¹⁸ ^b Now as he was speaking with me, I was in a deep sleep on my face toward the ground: *but he touched me, and †set me upright. ¹⁹ And he said, Behold, I will make thee know what shall be in the last end of the indignation: ^d for at the time appointed the end *shall be*.

b ch. 10. 9, 10.
Luke 9. 32.
c Ezek. 2. 2.
† Heb. made me
stand upon my
standing.

²⁰ ^e The ram which thou sawest having *two horns are* the kings of Media and Persia.

d ch. 9. 27.
& 11. 27, 35, 36.
& 12. 7.
Hab. 2. 3.
e ver. 3.

²¹ ^f And the rough goat *is* the king of Grecia: and the great horn that *is* between his eyes ^g *is* the first king.

f ver. 5.

²² ^h Now that being broken, whereas four stood up for it, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power.

g ch. 11. 3.

²³ And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the transgressors †are come to the full, a king ⁱ of fierce countenance, and understanding dark sentences, ^k shall stand up. ²⁴ And his power shall be mighty, ^l but not by his own power: and he shall destroy wonderfully, ^m and shall prosper, and practise, ⁿ and shall destroy the mighty and the †holy people. ²⁵ And ^o through his

† Heb. are accom-
plished.

i Deut. 28. 50.

k ver. 6.
l Rev. 17. 13, 17.
m ver. 12.
ch. 11. 36.

n ver. 10.
ch. 7. 25.
o ch. 11, 21, 23, 24

† Heb. people of the holy ones.

17. *O son of man*] Only Ezekiel and Daniel among the prophets are addressed by this title, "Son of man" (*Ben Adam*); for the reason of this see above on Ezek. ii. 1, p. 161. It specially marks the universality of Daniel's prophetic mission. Though of the royal race of Judah, yet he is not a prophet in Palestine, but in a heathen land, and his prophecies not only relate to Israel and Judah, but extend to every nation of mankind in every land and age. He, "a son of man," foretells the time of the first coming of the "Son of Man" in humility, and describes His future Coming in glory; see on Matt. xvi. 13.

— *at the time of the end*] Or, *until the time of the end*. The prophecy concerning Antiochus Epiphanes has a double significance. It not only predicts the persecution of God's people under his godless sway, but it reaches onward from that persecution to the great outbreak of Anti-Christianism, typified by it, which will rage against the Church in "the time of the end," i. e. in the last day. Cp. xi. 21—36—45, where the prophecy concerning Antiochus Epiphanes, melts away and expands into a prophecy concerning the Anti-Christianism of the latter days.

19. *for at the time appointed the end shall be*] Or, *for it shall be at the appointed time of the end*; i. e. it shall reach to the consummation of all things.

21. *the first king*] Alexander the Great (v. 5). As the Author of the First Book of Maccabees says, "It happened after that Alexander, son of Philip the Macedonian, who came out of the land of Chetitim, had smitten Darius, King of the Persians and Medes, that he reigned in his stead the *first* over Greece" (1 Macc. i. 1).

22. *that being broken—four kingdoms*] The four dynasties of Alexander's successors (v. 8).

— *not in his power*] Not with power equal to that of Alexander the Great.

23. *in the latter time of their kingdom*] When the dynasties of the four successors of Alexander were soon about to be absorbed into the Roman Government.

— *when the transgressors are come to the full*] When the faithless Priests and Rulers of Judah (such as Jason and Menelaus) have filled up to the measure of their iniquity. See v. 12, and 1 Macc. i. 11. 13: "In those days went there out of Israel wicked men saying, Let us go and make a covenant with the heathen which are round about. Then certain of the people went to the King, who gave them licence to do after the ordinances of the heathen; whereupon they built a place of exercise (gymnasium) at Jerusalem, according to the customs of the heathen, and made themselves uncircumcised" (literally, uncircumcision), "and forsook the holy covenant, and joined themselves to the heathen, and were sold to do mischief" (lit. the wicked thing). Cp. 2 Macc. iv. 7, where it is related that Jason (who took this Greek name instead of the Hebrew Jeshua or Jesus) "the brother of Onias" (the true High Priest) "laboured underhand to be High Priest, promising unto the

King 360 talents of silver, and of another revenue 80 talents, and 150 more if he might have licence to set up a place of exercise for the training up of the youth in the fashions of the heathen, and to write them of Jerusalem by the name of Antiochians. . . and he forthwith brought his own nation to the Greek fashion. . . Such was the height of Greek fashions and increase of heathenish manners through the profaneness of Jason, that the priests had no courage to serve any more at the altar; but despising the Temple, and neglecting the sacrifices, hastened to be partakers of the unlawful allowance in the place of exercise."

SPIRITUAL USE OF THIS PROPHECY.

The prophet Daniel here provides a safeguard for the faithful; he warns them that the City and Temple would be profaned and destroyed by an impious persecutor (Antiochus Epiphanes, King of Syria); and he teaches them that these calamities were not to be ascribed to any power of the Persecutor prevailing against God, but to the justice and might of God, employing the Persecutor as His own instrument for punishing the sins of Priests and People against Himself. Thus, the persecution, which fulfilled this prophecy, would strengthen their faith in His Divine Word, assuring them that eventually the Persecutor would be overthrown, and that God's Truth would triumph, and that His loyal servants would be rewarded with eternal glory.

For similar reasons, the prophetic Scriptures of both Testaments reveal the temporary successes of an infidel Anti-Christianism persecuting the Church, on account of the cowardice and treachery of her priests in the last days; and the ultimate victory of Christ, and the everlasting happiness of the faithful.

— *a king of fierce countenance*] Antiochus Epiphanes: of *hard countenance*, "impudens facie," *Vulg.* The description rather refers to his bold and shameless impiety without fear of God or man, than to his courage. Cp. 1 Macc. i. 10.

This description of Antiochus will doubtless have a second accomplishment in his Antitype. It will be fulfilled in the bold effrontery and open godlessness, and also in the wily duplicity and specious plausibility, and ultimately in the wild, ruthless, and savage cruelty of the Infidel Anti-Christianism of the last days. See what follows.

— *understanding dark sentences*] Dissembling his true meaning by dark sayings, in order to deceive. This is explained more fully in v. 25, where it is said that "through his policy he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand;" "working deceitfully," and "corrupting by flatteries;" see xi. 21. 23. 32.

24. *not by his own power*] No, but by the permission of God, using him to punish the transgressors (v. 23. *Theodore, Hävern.*)

— *he shall destroy wonderfully—shall destroy the mighty and the holy people*] Rather, *and shall destroy mighty ones, and the people of the Holy Ones*. See the History in 1 Macc. i. 24—28. 37—39. 54—64.

Before
CHRIST
about
553.

p ver. 11.
ch. 11. 36.
|| Or, prosperity.
q ver. 11.
ch. 11. 36.
r Job 34. 20.
Lam. 4. 6.
ch. 2. 34. 45.
s ch. 10. 1.
t Ezek. 12. 27.
ch. 10. 14.
& 12. 4, 9.
Rev. 22. 10.
u ch. 7. 28.
& 10. 8, 16.
x ch. 6. 2, 3.
y See ver. 16.
about
538.

a ch. 1. 21, &
5. 31, & 6. 28.
|| Or, in which he,
&c.
b 2 Chr. 36. 21.
Jer. 25. 11, 12.
& 29. 10.
c Neh. 1. 4.
Jer. 23. 12, 13.
ch. 6. 10.
James 4. 8, 9, 10.

policy also he shall cause craft to prosper in his hand; ^p and he shall magnify himself in his heart, and by || peace shall destroy many: ^q he shall also stand up against the Prince of princes; but he shall be ^r broken without hand.

^{26 s} And the vision of the evening and the morning which was told is true: ^t wherefore shut thou up the vision; for it shall be for many days.

^{27 u} And I Daniel fainted, and was sick certain days; afterward I rose up, ^x and did the king's business; and I was astonished at the vision, ^y but none understood it.

IX. ¹ In the first year ^a of Darius the son of Ahasuerus, of the seed of the Medes, || which was made king over the realm of the Chaldeans; ² in the first year of his reign I Daniel understood by books the number of the years, whereof the word of the Lord came to ^b Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem.

^{3 c} And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer and supplications, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes: ⁴ and I prayed unto the Lord

25. and by peace shall destroy many] He shall destroy many in security, that is, when off their guard, as 1 Macc. i. 30, where it is said that his "Chief Collector of Tribute came unto Jerusalem and spake peaceable words unto them, but all was deceit, for when they had given him credence, he fell suddenly upon the city and smote it very sore, and destroyed much people of Israel." Cp. 2 Macc. v. 25.

— against the Prince of princes] Against God Himself (Ps. cxxxvi. 3. Cp. v. 11).

— he shall be broken without hand] Antiochus Epiphanes, the type of Anti-Christ, was permitted by God to rage against the Hebrew Church and People for their sins (see v. 12, vv. 23, 24); but he was suddenly cut off, for his impiety and oppression of God's truth, not by human might, but by a visitation of God, as he himself confessed. See 1 Macc. vi. 8. 13. 2 Macc. ix. 2—18.

Christ is the "Stone cut out without hands," i.e. without any human help (ii. 34), Who will break all earthly powers that oppose Him (ii. 35, cp. our Lord's own words, Matt. xxi. 44. Luke xx. 18); and the Infidel Anti-Christianism of the latter days, like Antiochus, will be "broken without hand," i.e. without human might, but by the hand of God. See below, xi. 45.

26. of the evening and the morning] See on v. 14.

— shut thou up the vision] Seal it up carefully so that it may be kept safely (ep. xii. 4. Ezek. xxviii. 12) "for many days," as it is added here, even for our own time, when it will have a second fulfilment in the working of an infidel Anti-Christianism, typified by Antiochus Epiphanes.

27. did the king's business] At Babylon, where he saw the vision (see on v. 1); Daniel had been disabled for doing it during many days on account of the effect of the vision upon his mind and body.

Though Daniel was neglected by Belshazzar, who was then on the throne (v. 1), yet (such was his faithfulness and loyalty) he did not neglect the king's business. See above, on v. 11—14.

— none understood it] An important declaration; showing that the prophets are not the authors of the prophecies delivered by their agency. The Holy Spirit is the Author of them "The Spirit of Christ" spake in them and by them, "and they inquired and searched diligently" what the Spirit Who was in them "did signify." See below, *Introd.* to the Minor Prophets, pp. ix—xi; and on Hos. xi. 1; and on 1 Pet. i. 11.

CH. IX. 1. In the first year of Darius the son of Ahasuerus] See on v. 31; vi. 28.

— which was made king] Darius was made ruler by Cyrus, and received the kingdom of Babylon from him. See v. 31.

2. in the first year of his reign] B.C. 538, two years before the decree of Cyrus (in the first year of his reign), for the return of the Jews and the rebuilding of the Temple (2 Chron. xxxvi. 22. Ezra i. 1).

— I Daniel understood by books the number of the years] I understood in the writings (the holy writings, observe the definitive article) the number of the years which the word of the Lord was to Jeremiah the Prophet to accomplish as to the desolations of Jerusalem seventy years.

Inasmuch as sixty-eight years had now passed since the first captivity of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar (2 Kings xxiv. 1. 2 Chron. xxxvi. 6), Daniel meditated on the near approach of the end of the captivity as foretold by Jeremiah.

Daniel was also encouraged to look for a speedy restoration of the Jews, by considering the prophecies of Isaiah, which had foretold that Cyrus, the Conqueror of Babylon, would issue a decree for the rebuilding of Jerusalem. See Isa. xlv. 28.

— whereof the word of the Lord came to Jeremiah the prophet, that he would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem] The seventy years began B.C. 606, with the first captivity of Jerusalem. See above, on Jer. xxv. 10, 11—14; xxix. 10; and on 2 Chron. xxxvi. 21, 22, where it is said that in the first year of Cyrus, king of Persia (viz. B.C. 536) that the word of the Lord spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished.—Observe, the historian adopts Daniel's language, as does Ezra i. 1: "The Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, The Lord God of heaven hath given me all the kingdoms of the earth; and He hath charged me to build Him an house at Jerusalem which is in Judah. Who is there among you of all His people? his God be with him, and let him go up."

The City of Jerusalem was not wholly desolate during seventy years. Its desolation began indeed in part at the first captivity when Daniel himself was carried away and many others by Nebuchadnezzar, and some of the vessels of the Temple (see i. 1—6). But God mercifully gave to His people a respite for repentance. There is a second period for the desolations of Jerusalem dating from the destruction of the Temple and the City by Nebuchadnezzar, B.C. 586 (see on Zech. i. 12), and ending with its dedication in the sixth year of Darius Hystaspes. See *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 295; and Ezra vi. 1. 15. 22.

3. And I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer] The knowledge of God's merciful intentions to Jerusalem did not supersede Daniel's prayers, but quickened them. In sackcloth and ashes (says *S. Jerome*) he prays for what God had promised; not that he did not believe God's promise, but he prayed lest security might beget negligence, and negligence might provoke indignation. Man's will must work together with God's grace. The Coming of Christ may be hastened by men's repentance, and by the prayers of His Church. See below, on Acts iii. 19—21, and on 2 Pet. iii. 12, where Christians are exhorted not only to expect that Coming, but to hasten it. Therefore the Church ever prays,—“Thy kingdom come.”

3, 4. I set my face—with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes, and I prayed unto the Lord] Daniel's prayer must have been well known to Nehemiah, who also says of himself (Neh. i. 4), "I sat down and wept, and mourned certain days, and fasted, and prayed before the God of heaven," and who adopted much of its language. See Neh. ix. 2. Cp. Dan. ix. 4. Neh. ix. 32. Dan. ix. 6. Neh. ix. 33, 34. Dan. ix. 8, 9. Neh. ix. 16, 17. Dan. ix. 15. Neh. ix. 10. See *Pusey* on Daniel, pp. 354—356.

Daniel's prayer was doubtless in the mind of Ezra also, when he prayed at the time of the evening oblation (Ezra ix. 5. Cp. below, v. 21), and confessed his sins and the sins of the people. See Ezra ix. 5—15. Cp. Ezra ix. 7 with Dan. ix. 5—8. Ezra ix. 10, 11 with Dan. ix. 9—11. Ezra ix. 15 with Dan. ix. 14.

The prayer of Daniel, the prayer of Ezra, and the prayer of Nehemiah, are all grounded on the doctrine and language of

my God, and made my confession, and said, O ^d Lord, the great and dreadful God, keeping the covenant and mercy to them that love him, and to them that keep his commandments; ^e we have sinned, and have committed iniquity, and have done wickedly, and have rebelled, even by departing from thy precepts and from thy judgments: ^f neither have we hearkened unto thy servants the prophets, which spake in thy name to our kings, our princes, and our fathers, and to all the people of the land.

^g O Lord, ^h righteousness || *belongeth* unto thee, but unto us confusion of faces, as at this day; to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and unto all Israel, *that are near, and that are far off*, through all the countries whither thou hast driven them, because of their trespass that they have trespassed against thee. ⁱ O Lord, to us *belongeth* ^j confusion of face, to our kings,

to our princes, and to our fathers, because we have sinned against thee. ^k To the Lord our God *belong* mercies and forgivenesses, though we have rebelled against him; ^l neither have we obeyed the voice of the LORD our God, to walk in his laws, which he set before us by his servants the prophets. ^m Yea,

ⁿ all Israel have transgressed thy law, even by departing, that they might not obey thy voice; therefore the curse is poured upon us, and the oath that is written in the ^o law of Moses the servant of God, because we have sinned against him. ^p And he hath ^q confirmed his words, which he spake against us, and against our judges that judged us, by bringing upon us a great evil: ^r for under the whole heaven hath not been done as hath been done upon Jerusalem.

^s As it is written in the law of Moses, all this evil is come upon us: ^t yet ^u made we not our prayer before the LORD our God, that we might turn from our iniquities, and understand thy truth. ^v Therefore hath the LORD ^w watched upon the evil, and brought it upon us: for ^x the LORD our God is righteous in all his works which he doeth: ^y for we obeyed not his voice. ^z And now, O Lord our God,

^a that hast brought thy people forth out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand, and hast ^b gotten thee ^c renown, as at this day; ^d we have sinned, we have done wickedly. ^e O Lord, ^f according to all thy righteousness,

I beseech thee, let thine anger and thy fury be turned away from thy city Jerusalem, ^g thy holy mountain: because for our sins, ^h and for the iniquities of our fathers, ⁱ Jerusalem and thy people ^j are become a reproach to all *that are about* us. ^k Now therefore, O our God, hear the prayer of thy servant, and his supplications,

^l and cause thy face to shine upon thy sanctuary ^m that is desolate, ⁿ for the Lord's sake. ^o O my God, incline thine ear, and hear; open thine eyes, ^p and behold our desolations, and the city ^q which is called by thy name: for we do not ^r present our supplications before thee for our righteousnesses, but for thy great mercies. ^s O Lord, hear; O Lord, forgive; O Lord,

e Num. 6. 23.
k Jer. 25. 29.

Ps. 67. 1. & 80. 3, 7, 19.
† Heb. whereupon thy name is called.

f Lam. 5. 18.

g ver. 19. John 16. 24.

h Isa. 37. 17.

i Ex. 3. 7. Ps. 80. 14, &c.

Before
CHRIST
about
538.

d Ex. 20. 6.
Deut. 7. 9.
Neh. 1. 5. & 9. 32.
e 1 Kings 8.
47. 48.

Neh. 1. 6, 7.
& 9. 33, 34.
Ps. 106. 6.
Isa. 64. 5, 6, 7.

Jer. 14. 7. ver. 15.
f 2 Chr. 36. 15,
16. ver. 10.
g Neh. 9. 33.
† Or, thou hast,
&c.

h ver. 7.

i Neh. 9. 17.
Ps. 130. 4, 7.

k ver. 6.

l Isa. 1. 4, 5, 6.
Jer. 8. 5, 10.

m Lev. 26. 14,
&c. Deut. 27. 15,
&c. & 28. 15, &c.
& 29. 20, &c.
& 30. 17, 18.
& 31. 17, &c.
& 32. 19, &c.

Lam. 2. 17.
n Zech. 1. 6.

o Lam. 1. 12.
& 2. 13.

Ezek. 5. 9.
Amos 3. 2.

p Lev. 26. 14, &c.
Deut. 28. 15.

Lam. 2. 17.
q Isa. 9. 13.

Jer. 2. 30. & 5. 3.
Hos. 7. 7, 10.

† Heb. intreated
we not the face of
the, &c.

r Jer. 31. 28.
& 44. 27.

s Neh. 9. 33.
ver. 7.

t ver. 10.
u Ex. 6. 1, 6.
& 32. 11.

1 Kings 8. 51.
Neh. 1. 10.

Jer. 32. 21.
† Heb. made thee
a name.

x Ex. 14. 18.
Neh. 9. 10.

Jer. 32. 20.
y ver. 5.

z 1 Sam. 12. 7.
Ps. 31. 1. & 71. 2.

Mic. 6. 4, 5.
a ver. 20.

Zech. 8. 3.
b Ex. 20. 5.

c Lam. 2. 15, 16.
d Ps. 44. 13, 14.
& 79. 4.

Moses in the Pentateuch; especially in Deuteronomy. See the references in the margin.

— *made my confession*] Confession is made in two ways. We must confess our own sins, and those of our Country (cp. v. 20); and we must confess God's goodness to us and to all men. Such is Daniel's confession here (cp. *S. Augustine* on Ps. xxix).

7. *as at this day*] That is, as we now feel by bitter experience.

15. *that hast brought thy people forth out of the land of Egypt*] Daniel thankfully commemorates God's ancient mercies to His people, in order that he may entreat Him to renew them (*S. Jerome*).

— *as at this day*] Thou, O God, art glorified not only in Thy mercies to Israel, but in the chastisement of Israel for their sins against Thee. The Assyrians and Chaldeans have

executed Thy judgments, and Thou art magnified thereby at this day. But now, O God, Who hast scattered Thy people for their sins, show Thy might and love to Thy people on their repentance.

16. *thy holy mountain*] Zion, the city of David, and of the Temple; the centre of Christendom. See on Isa. ii. 2, "The mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it;" and Micah iv. 1, and above, on Ezekiel, pp. 274, 275.

19. *O Lord, hear*] Observe the fervour of the prayer in the triple repetition of the holy Name *Adonai* (Lord) and in the addition in the original of the paragoge letter, *He*, to each of the imperatives *Hear, Forgive, Hearken, Do* (*C. B. Michaelis*).

Before
CHRIST
about
538.

1 Ps. 79. 9, 10.
& 102. 15, 16.
m Ps. 32. 5.
Isa. 65. 24.

n ch. 8. 16.

† Heb. *with weariness*, or, *flight*.
o ch. 8. 18.
& 10. 10, 16.
p 1 Kings 18. 26.
† Heb. *to make thee skilful of understanding*.
† Heb. *word*.
q ch. 10. 12.
r ch. 10. 11, 19.
† Heb. *a man of desires*.

harken and do; defer not, ¹ for thine own sake, O my God: for thy city and thy people are called by thy name.

²⁰ And whiles I *was* speaking, and praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the Lord my God for the holy mountain of my God; ²¹ yea, whiles I *was* speaking in prayer, even the man ⁿ Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, being caused to fly [†] swiftly, ^o touched me ^p about the time of the evening oblation.

²² And he informed *me*, and talked with me, and said,

O Daniel, I am now come forth [†] to give thee skill and understanding. ²³ At the beginning of thy supplications the [†] commandment came forth, and ^q I am come to shew thee; ^r for thou art [†] greatly beloved: therefore ^s understand the matter, and consider the vision.

s Matt. 24. 15.

21. *the man Gabriel*] The Angel whose special office it was to bring tidings of joy, as here, concerning the Incarnation of Christ. See viii. 16. Gabriel is called a *man*, as the Angels are in Acts i. 10. Here is comfort to us; we men may be "equal to the Angels" (Mark xii. 25. Luke xx. 36).

— *being caused to fly swiftly*] So *Fulg.*, *Syriac*, and the sense of *flying* is also given to the word in *Sept.* and *Arabic*, and by *Theodotion* and by Hebrew Rabbis and by many later expositors, and by *Hävernick*, *Lengerke*, and *Hitzig*.

The original words are *muāph bāyāph*; *muāph* is the hophal participle from *yāaph*, to go swiftly, or from *yāph*, to fly (*Gesen.* 357. 614), and *yēāph* signifies swiftness, or weariness arising from swiftness of flight (*Gesen.* 357).

Keil supposes that the whole phrase describes Daniel's own lassitude when he had seen the Angel in the former vision (viii. 17. 27), and applies it to him, and renders the words, "whom I had seen when I was exhausted with weariness." *Fuerst* (386) translates it *shining in splendour*.

On the whole, the rendering in the text seems preferable. The rapidity of the flight of the Angel was a circumstance worth noticing. God was so merciful and loving, that no sooner did Daniel begin his prayer (v. 23) than the Angel Gabriel was sent from heaven to bring a gracious answer to it. A blessed encouragement to prayer. The celerity of the flight of angels was marked in the history of our Lord's Ascension into heaven. While the Apostles were still standing on the Mount of Olives, and following Him with their eyes as He went up, two angels stood immediately at their side to announce that He was already in heaven (Acts i. 10, 11). These things may afford us some idea of the speed with which the saints will be caught up into the clouds to meet the Lord in the air at the Great Day (1 Thess. iv. 17). We boast our own speed on railways, or that of electricity; but what is this compared with the speed of angels coming from the Throne of God?

— *touched me*] The verb here used (*nāga*) occurs also in viii. 5, and x. 16, and is rightly rendered in our Authorized Version and *Sept.* and *Fulg.* Cp. Rev. i. 17, where St. John says that the glorious Person Who appeared to him, laid His right hand upon him, and said "Fear not." Cp. also below, x. 10.

— *about the time of the evening oblation*] A remarkable time, when many mercies were vouchsafed to the saints of old, as to David (see on 2 Sam. xxiv. 15), to Elijah (see on 1 Kings xviii. 29), to Ezra (Ezra ix. 5). This time, the time of the offering of the Paschal Lamb, and the time when the Lamb of God expired on the Cross, brought many mercies with it, by the virtue of that One Great Sacrifice flowing back upon all other sacrifices, and upon the time itself at which they were offered.

Though the Temple of Jerusalem was in ruins, yet Daniel in his daily private prayer had his windows open towards it (see vi. 10), and though the morning and evening sacrifice had ceased to be offered, yet he observed the times of its oblation. Thus, in his inner life, Jerusalem was still standing, and its ritual was still observed. He had a temple and an altar in his heart, and he himself was the ministering priest—even at Babylon: he looked in faith to the heavenly Jerusalem, and to the sacrifice of Christ ever presented there.

22. *he informed me*] He made me to understand.

23. *the commandment came*] A word came forth from God commanding me to come to thee. The first emotions of the devout soul are noticed by God. Cp. below, x. 12, and Luke xv. 20, where the father sees the returning prodigal a long way off, and runs and falls on his neck and kisses him.

— *greatly beloved*] Literally, *desires*, Heb. *chamudōth*; cp. the phrase in Hag. ii. 7, where Christ is called *chemdah*, "the desire of all nations;" Christ is He for Whose Coming all nations longed, and in Whom they delight as their supreme joy. See the note there. Daniel is called in x. 10, 19, a *man of desires*, one in whom God delighted, on account of his faith, courage, obedience, and prayers, as Abraham the father of the faithful is called "the friend of God" (James ii. 23), and David "the man after God's own heart" (1 Sam. xiii. 14. Acts xiii. 22), and Solomon was called *Jedidiah*, because he was beloved of the Lord (2 Sam. xii. 25), and St. John was the disciple whom Jesus loved (John xiii. 23; xix. 26; xx. 2; xxi. 7. 20). Above all, Christ is "the beloved Son in Whom the Father is well pleased" (Matt. iii. 17; xii. 18; xvii. 5).

DANIEL THE MAN GREATLY BELOVED; AND THE BELOVED DISCIPLE ST. JOHN.

Daniel is the St. John of the Old Testament; and St. John is the Daniel of the New. The love of God chose them, and endued them with special graces. As *Bishop Ken* says (in his excellent Sermon on Daniel, preached at Whitehall, before the Court, A.D. 1685), "It was this *love of God* which made His *greatly beloved Daniel* prosperous in adversity, that gave him freedom in captivity, friendship among enemies, safety among infidels, victory over his conquerors, and all the privileges of a native in strange countries. It was this love of God that gave His *greatly beloved, knowledge and skill in all learning, and wisdom and understanding in all visions and dreams*. It was this love of God that delivered him in dangers; from the conspiracy and malice of the Median princes, and from the fury of the lions; that sent an angel into the den to stop their mouths; that signally revenged him of his enemies, and did by a miracle vindicate his integrity. It was the love of God that sent the angel Gabriel to visit him, to be his interpreter, to strengthen, and comfort, and encourage him; to reveal secrets to him, and to assure him that his prayers were heard. It was the love of God which gave him the spirit of prophecy, that excellent spirit, that Spirit of the Holy Gods, as the Babylonians styled it, by which he foretold the rise and period of the Four Monarchies, the return of the captivity, and wrote long beforehand the affairs of future ages. But beyond all this, it was the love of God that presented him with a clearer landskip of the Gospel than any other prophet ever had. Daniel was the beloved prophet under the Old dispensation, as *John* was the beloved disciple under the New, and both being animated with the same Divine Love, there was a wonderful harmony between them; both of them had miraculous preservations, one from the lions, the other from the boiling caldron; both engaged young in the service of God, and consecrated their lives by an early piety, and both lived to a great and equal age, to about an hundred years; both had the like intimacy with God, the like admittance into the most adorable mysteries, and the like abundance of heavenly visions; both had the like lofty flights, and ecstatic revelations. Read what Daniel saw of the *Ancient of Days*, and of His throne, and of the angels His attendants, and you must needs say, that his visions in this life were next to beatific. His prophecies of the Messias, of the precise time of His Coming, and of His cutting off; of the destruction of Jerusalem, and of Antichrist; of the Son of Man, and of the universality and perpetuity of His kingdom, the Church Catholic; of the Day of Judgment, of the Resurrection, of Heaven, and of Hell, were so literally fulfilled in the Gospel,

²⁴ * Seventy weeks are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city, || to finish the transgression, and || to make an end of sins, ' and to make reconciliation for iniquity, " and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and † prophecy, * and to anoint the most Holy.

²⁵ † Know therefore and understand, that * from the going forth of the commandment || to restore and to build Jerusalem unto ^a the Messiah ^b the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street † shall be built again, and the || wall, ^c even † in troublous times.

²⁶ And after threescore and two weeks ^d shall Messiah be cut off, ^e || but not for himself: || and ^f the people of the prince that shall come ^g shall destroy the

Before CHRIST about 535.
* They begin from the 20th of Artaxerxes. See Num. 11. 34. Ezek. 4. 6.
|| Or, to restrain.
|| Or, to seal up.
Lam. 4. 22.
† Isa. 53. 10.
u Isa. 53. 11.
Jer. 23. 5. 12.
Heb. 9. 12.
Rev. 14. 6.
† Heb. prophet.
x Ps. 45. 7.
Luke 1. 35.
John 1. 9.
Heb. 9. 11.
y ver. 23. Matt. 24. 15. z Ezra 4. 24. & 6. 1, 15. & 7. 1, &c. Neh. 2. 1, 3, 5, 6, 8. || Or, to build again Jerusalem: as 2 Sam. 15. 25.
Ps. 71. 20. a John 1. 41. & 4. 25. b Isai. 55. 4. † Heb. shall return and be built. || Or, breach, or, ditch. c Neh. 4. 8.
16, 17, 18. & 6. 15. † Heb. in strait of times. d Isai. 53. 8. Mark 9. 12. Luke 24. 26, 46. e 1 Pet. 2. 21. & 3. 18. || Or, and shall have nothing. John 14. 30. || Or, and [the Jews] they shall be no more his people, ch. 11. 17. or, and the prince's [Messiah's, ver. 25] future people. f Matt. 22. 7. g Luke 19. 44.

and so legible there, and all his predictions so express and full, and particular, that for this very reason his writings were questioned by both the Gentiles and the Jews, because they looked more like the history of things past than a prophecy of things to come. But the Jews' own historian (*Josephus*) esteemed Daniel one of the greatest prophets, for the same reason for which others unjustly reproach him. The mouth of Truth, our Blessed Saviour, has declared *Daniel a prophet* (Matt. xxiv. 15. Mark xiii. 14); and the greater clearness his prophecies have, the more likely they are to be wrote by Daniel, who the more greatly he was beloved, the greater were the communications of divine love to him, and the greater by consequence were his illuminations."

24—27. Seventy weeks—desolate] It is generally supposed that these *seventy weeks* are weeks of *years* (Lev. xxv. 8), and are distinguished from "weeks of *days*" (Dan. x. 3); and that, as all Hebrew and Christian Antiquity agree (see the authorities in *Bp. Chandler*, i. 116; *Hengstl.*, *Christol.* iii. 99), they make a period of 490 years.

There is a reference in these *seventy weeks* to the *seventy years* of Jeremiah. It would have been of no comfort to Daniel (who as "a man of desires" was to be cheered by the Angel) to be told that Jerusalem, which was desolate for seventy years, should stand for *seventy weeks*. Besides, the magnitude of events here specified required a longer time. An expression not perfectly precise was used, so that it might excite attention, and keep up an interest in it, and be made clear by fulfilment.

There is a reference also to the year of Jubilee; *seven weeks* of years made the period succeeded by the Jubilee, when debts were cancelled, and slaves set free, and lands restored. This was typical of the great period of ten times seven times seven years, which was to bring in the Great Evangelical Jubilee (Luke iv. 18, 19), in which all debts of sin were cancelled, and an enslaved World was set free, and Paradise was restored by Christ dying for us on the Cross. Cp. note on Matt. xvii. 22.

— *are determined upon thy people and upon thy holy city*] *To close up the transgression* (Heb. *hap-pesha*, see above, viii. 13; the verb here is from *cald.*, to shut: *Keil*, 285).

And to seal up the sins. Sin is here regarded as a captive, shut up and hidden, in a prison with a stone, as Daniel himself had been closed up (Dan. vi. 17), and sealed with a seal (cp. *Hengstl.*; *Keil*).

And to make atonement for iniquity: so as to cover it, and make propitiation for iniquity. The verb is *cáphar* in piel, which is used about forty times in Leviticus, and always rendered *make atonement*, except in vi. 3, and viii. 15, and xvi. 20. The sins of the penitent are covered by the atonement; the sins of the ungodly are *shut up*, and *sealed up*, so as to have no longer any power against God's people.

And to bring in everlasting righteousness: lit. righteousness of ages; righteousness from everlasting to everlasting (Heb. ix. 12); righteousness given by God in Christ, Who is "the Lord our Righteousness" (Jer. xxiii. 6). Cp. Isa. xlvii. 3, "I bring near My righteousness," and Isa. li. 5—8, "My righteousness is near; My righteousness shall be for ever. My salvation from generation to generation;" and Isa. liii. 11; and Rom. i. 17; iii. 25, 26.

And to seal up vision and prophet: all visions and prophecies have their fulfilment and end in Christ. See Matt. xi. 13. Luke xxii. 37. John i. 46. *Tertullian*, c. Jud. c. 8.

And to anoint a Holy of Holies, i. e. an *all Holy One*, lit. a *Holiness of Holinesses*, a term used to express the holiness of things dedicated to God (Exod. xxx. 10. 29. 36. Lev.

ii. 3. 10; vi. 10; vii. 1. 6; and *passim*), i. e. a Person, not a Place, Who was to have all Holiness in Himself; and this is fulfilled in Him Who is "the Holy One of God" (Mark i. 24. Luke iv. 34. Cp. Acts iii. 14; iv. 17. 30); the Messiah or Christ, viz. the Anointed One, the Divine Prophet, Priest, and King, Whom God the Father anointed with the Unction of the Holy Ghost. See Isa. lxi. 1. Acts x. 38. Heb. i. 9; and the *Syriac* Version here; and *Theodoret* and *Hengstl.*, 123. 127; and cp. *Pusey*, 179—181. and *Tertullian*, c. Jud. 8.

"No one can doubt," says *S. Jerome*, "that this is a prophecy concerning the Advent of Christ, Who appeared in the world after those seventy weeks; and by Whom transgression was closed up, and sin was ended, and iniquity was abolished, and everlasting Righteousness was proclaimed, which overcame the rigour of the Law; and Vision and Prophecy were filled up; for 'the Law and the Prophets were till John; and then the Holy One of Holies was anointed.'"

And thou shalt know and understand; from the going forth of the commandment (lit. *the word*) *to restore* (lit. *to bring back*) *and to build Jerusalem, unto Messiah the Prince.* This is the only place where the word *Messiah*, thus put absolutely, occurs; and from this passage it passed into the creed and the popular language, not only of Jews (John i. 45), but of Samaritans; see John iv. 25, "I know that *Messias* cometh;" and it is used in the *Targum* to explain prophetic passages of the Old Testament concerning Him. See *Pusey*, 182.

Jesus of Nazareth was the only descendant of David after the times of Daniel, to Whom the title of *Prince* can be assigned.

Seven weeks, and (there shall be) *threescore and two weeks, and the street shall be built again and the wall* (or *foss*, *Gesen.* 314), *even in troubled times*, i. e. in times of straitsness or distress such as are described by *Nehemiah* (ix. 36, 37).

The year from which these weeks are to be dated will be examined at the close of this note. We may only premise here—

(1) It is clear that the weeks are *not* to be dated from the decree of Cyrus to rebuild the Temple (b.c. 536). The Temple would certainly have been mentioned, if that had been the case. They must be dated from the promulgation of a decree concerning the *City*, as distinct from the Temple.

(2) The *seven weeks* precede the *sixty-two*, as the *sixty two* precede the *one week* in the midst of which Messiah was to be cut off.

This disintegration of the seventy weeks of years into four distinct portions was designed to mark the succession of special events, viz:—

Within *seven weeks* (i. e. 49 years) the wall of Jerusalem would be built, and the City settled. This was fulfilled by *Nehemiah's* reformation, and the sealing up of the Canon of the Old Testament within 49 years after the decree to restore the City.

After *sixty-two* weeks following the seven, Messiah would begin His ministry.

In the midst of the week following the sixty-two He would be cut off.

In the second half of that week He would confirm the covenant. This is what is now stated, *And after the sixty and two weeks shall Messiah be cut off* (cp. Isa. liii. 8), and *there shall not be to Him* (i. e. His people, whose Prince He was, being King of the Jews, will be disowned by Him, for rejecting Him), as He Himself said, "Your house" (no longer Mine) "is left unto you desolate" (Matt. xxiii. 38. Cp. on Exod. xxxii. 7). They disowned Him when they said, "We have no king but Cæsar" (John xix. 12). Cp. *Pusey*, 183.

And the people of a Prince (the Roman General, Titus) *that shall come, shall destroy the city and the sanctuary* (of

Before
CHRIST
about
533.

city ^h and the sanctuary; ⁱ and the end thereof shall be ^k with a flood, and unto the end of the war || desolations are determined.

²⁷ And he shall confirm || ^l the covenant with ^m many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease,

|| Or, it shall be cut off by desolations.

|| Or, a.

1 Isa. 42. 6. & 55. 3. Jer. 31. 31. Ezek. 16. 60, 61, 62.

m Isa. 53. 11.

h Matt. 24. 2.
i Matt. 24. 6, 14.
k Isa. 8. 7, 8.
ch. 11. 10, 22.
Nahum 1. 8.
Matt. 26. 28. Rom. 5. 15, 19. Heb. 9. 28.

the Jewish people who have rejected their own "Messiah, the Prince," v. 25), and the end thereof shall be with that flood; and unto the end, war, desolations (lit. desolatenesses, v. 18) decreed (see Gesen. 308); even till the doom of Jerusalem, shall be war, (and) desolations decreed, for her sins. As our Lord Himself declared, "not one stone shall be left on another" (Matt. xxiv. 2), and Jerusalem shall be "trodden under foot of the Gentiles till the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled" (Luke xxi. 24).

And he shall confirm a covenant with many during one week by his own ministry for 3½ years (S. Jerome, and Hengst., Christol. iii. 240, and see above, on vii. 25), and by the ministry of His Apostles after His Resurrection (S. Jerome).

And in the half of the week He shall cause the sacrifice (the bloody sacrifices of the Law) and the oblation (minchah, the meat-offering) to cease (by offering Himself once for all, Heb. vii. 27), after a ministry of three years and six months (S. Jerome), and by fulfilling and superseding the Levitical "shadows of the good things to come" by the substance of those good things in Himself (Heb. x. 1, 2. Col. ii. 17). This consummation was declared by His own words, "It is finished" (John xix. 30), and by the rending in twain of the Veil of the Temple at the Crucifixion (Matt. xxvii. 51).

And (He shall come) upon the wing of abominations that maketh desolate; that is, Christ shall execute vengeance on that abominable wing, or wing of abomination (the word wing, *cánaph*, is used in Scripture for army, as in Latin and English "the wings of an army;" see Isa. viii. 8. Jer. xlviii. 40; xlix. 22; and note below, on Matt. xxiv. 15), under which the Jews sought to shelter themselves, and for which they forsook Him, Who dwelleth upon the wings of the Cherubim in the Temple, and under Whose wings their fathers trusted (Ps. xxxvi. 7; kiii. 7; xci. 4), and Who would have gathered them together as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings (see Matt. xxiii. 37); but they would not be sheltered by His wing and be safe under His feathers (Ps. xci. 4). They trusted in a wing of their own, but that wing was not a heavenly one like that in the Holy of Holies, but an abominable one, one which God hated, a wing not of holiness but of abominations; and it was not a wing that would protect them, but a wing that would make them desolate. And therefore our Lord said to them, because they rejected the protection of His wings and relied on the defence and shelter of an abominable wing, "Behold, your house is left unto you desolate." See Matt. xxiii. 38.

This interpretation is confirmed by the words in the *Septuagint*, "abomination of desolation," βδέλυγμα ἐρημώσεως, the very words used by our Lord in speaking to the Jews, and referring to this passage of Daniel, "When ye shall see the abomination of desolation spoken of by Daniel the Prophet stand in the holy place" (Matt. xxiv. 15).

It is carefully to be observed, that all the miseries of the Jews always came from themselves; indeed this is true of every Church and Nation;—its woes are from its own sins. "What" (said Josephus to the Jews) "has brought the army of Rome against us? Is it not the wickedness of the inhabitants of Jerusalem?" (B. J. v. 9. 4.) The wing of abomination that maketh desolate was the Jewish army of factious zealots and assassins (see Josephus, B. J. v. 3. 1, and v. 6. 1), to which the Jews looked for help when besieged by the Roman legions and which profaned the Temple itself with blood. "The Temple itself" (said Josephus to the Jews, v. 9. 4) "has been the scene of treacheries, murders, and adulteries, and is polluted by our own hands."

The wing of abomination that maketh desolate was that human agency of false prophets and false Christs, to which, when they had crucified the Messiah, the Jews looked in vain for shelter and deliverance, and which hovered and brooded over them with a dark and abominable wing—like that of a baleful and unclean bird; and brought nothing with it but desolation. Cp. the note below, on Matt. xxiv. 15.

Josephus (B. J. iv. 6. 3) refers to this passage, and explains it when he says that those zealots and assassins "caused the fulfilment of the prophecies against their own country; for there was an ancient saying" (this of Daniel) "that the city would be taken at that time, and that the Holy Place would be consumed with fire in war, whenever sedition should arise

and when their own hands would pollute the Temple of God. The zealots did not disbelieve these sayings, and yet made themselves the instrument of the fulfilment." Josephus also says (B. J. vi. 2. 1), referring again to Daniel, "Who does not know the writings of the ancient prophets, and the prophecy which is directed against the wretched City, and is now about to be fulfilled? for they prophesied that it would be taken when any one began civil bloodshed. And are not the City and Temple full of the corpses of your own countrymen? Therefore God, yea, God Himself, brings fire upon it, to cleanse it by means of the Romans, and destroys the City filled with such abominations."

And again, Josephus says (B. J. iv. 3. 12), "One may say that it was the blood of the zealots alone that polluted our Sanctuary;" and again (B. J. iv. 5. 2), "I think that God, having condemned to destruction the City as being polluted, and having willed that the Holy Place should be cleansed with fire, cut off these its defenders and friends." Again (v. 1. 5), "The City was torn in pieces by intestine factions of treacherous, cruel men; so that the aged men and women wished for the Romans, and longed for an external war to deliver them from their civil miseries." "I suppose" (he says, v. 13. 6) "that if the Romans had delayed to come against these miscreants, the City would either have been swallowed up by an earthquake, or have been overwhelmed by a deluge, or have been destroyed by thunder from heaven as Sodom was; for it was by the madness of these men that the people were destroyed."

Yea even until that which is filled up and determined is poured out (i. e. until the vials of God's wrath filled up to the brim—see 1 Thess. ii. 16, "the wrath is come upon them to the uttermost"—are poured out) upon the desolate; i. e. upon Jerusalem, made utterly desolate; or it may be in an active sense, up n the desolator, as in the margin (cp. Field, Hexapla, p. 927), i. e. upon Jerusalem causing her own desolations by her sins; and this interpretation is confirmed by the use of the same word (*shōnem*, the part. of *shānem*, Gesen. S35) in xii. 11, the abomination that maketh desolate, where the words "abomination of desolation" (βδέλυγμα ἐρημώσεως) are again used by the *Septuagint*. See also the parallel in viii. 13, where the same word is used as here, "the transgression of desolation," literally (as in the margin), the transgression that maketh desolate. This rendering has also the advantage of further inculcating the great truth, which Daniel (like the other Hebrew prophets) desired to impress on his readers (as our Lord does on His hearers), that all the terrible woes that were poured out upon Jerusalem were not due to any failure of God's love to her, but to her own sins. Her own iniquities were the abominations, which caused her desolations. May we not see these terrible events reproduced in apostate Nations, and in infidel, profligate, and distracted Cities in these latter days?

THE SEVENTY WEEKS.

Daniel learnt from Jeremiah that seventy years were determined "for the desolations of Jerusalem." See v. 2.

We have seen that though the work of desolation began in such a manner, and at such a time, as to fulfil that prophecy, yet that the work of desolation did not actually take effect till about twenty years after that beginning. God mercifully "shortened the days" and abated the punishment. See on v. 2.

The revelation of the seventy weeks between the going forth of the command to restore Jerusalem, and Messiah the Prince, is connected in this chapter with those seventy years.

The same mode of considering this period seems to be suggested by that connexion. This is confirmed by the text.

The round number seventy weeks is exhibited afterwards in minuter detail, as follows:—

First we have a mention of seventy weeks (or 490 years), v. 24. Then the term is expressed by seven weeks and three-score and two weeks, viz. 49 years + 434 years = 483 (v. 25), and Messiah's cutting off is said to be in the midst of a week, i. e. after 3½ years more, viz. the time, times, and half a time of Christ's ministry. See above, on vii. 25.

The Messiah was to be cut off in the midst of the 70th week (v. 27).

There remain 3½ years more to make up the seventy

|| and for the overspreading of "abominations he shall make it desolate, ° even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured || upon the desolate.

Before
CHRIST
about
538.

|| Or, and upon
the battlements

shall be the idols of the desolator. n Matt. 24. 15. Mark 13. 14. Luke 21. 20. o See Isai. 10. 22, 23. & 23. 22. ch. 11. 36. Luke 21. 24. Rom. 11. 26. || Or, upon the desolator.

weeks. These $3\frac{1}{2}$ years are a time of probation *after* the cutting off of the Messiah.

That is, on the whole, the time between the going forth of the commandment to restore Jerusalem and the *cutting off* of the Messiah is $49+43\frac{1}{2}+3\frac{1}{2}$ years = 486 $\frac{1}{2}$ years.

Christ's Death took place at the Passover probably in A.D. 30. It must be remembered, that in our common Chronology the Birth of Christ is placed four years too late. See below, on the Acts of the Apostles, p. 22.

In order to approximate to the beginning of Daniel's period thus defined, we must deduct 30 years from 486 $\frac{1}{2}$, which leaves 456 $\frac{1}{2}$ years B.C.

If we examine the events of Jewish history at that period, we find that very nearly at that time Ezra, the Priest and Scribe, came with a commission from Artaxerxes Longimanus, king of Persia, to Jerusalem. That commission was given in the seventh year of Artaxerxes (Ezra vii. 1—8).

The actual commencement of the reign of Artaxerxes was probably February, B.C. 464 (*Clinton*, Fasti, vol. ii. p. 314), and according to this calculation Daniel's seventy weeks of years would begin in February, B.C. 458.

Reasons have been adduced by many learned writers for fixing on the commission to Ezra in the seventh year of Artaxerxes as the starting-point of Daniel's weeks. See *Prideaux*, Connexion, on B.C. 458, part i. book v. *Wouters*, Dilucidationes in lib. ii. Esdræ, cap. ii. Quæst. ii. sect. 3; and especially *Dr. Pusey*, 167—170.

It is true, that there is no express mention of rebuilding the city of Jerusalem in the commission of Artaxerxes to Ezra (vii. 12—28); but Ezra himself seems to refer to this passage of Daniel, and to affirm that he had such a commission. He says (ix. 9), "Our God hath not forsaken us in our bondage, but hath extended mercy unto us in the sight of the Kings of Persia, to give us a reviving, to set up the house of our God, and to repair the desolations thereof, and to give us a wall" (*gâder*, cp. Micah vii. 11) "in Judah and Jerusalem."

The commission to Ezra seems to have been a very full one, "The King granted him *all his request*" (vii. 6).

This will account for the fact, that thirteen years afterwards Nehemiah, at Shushan, was much grieved and astonished when he heard that the gates and walls of Jerusalem (not the city, for its houses were then inhabited, see Hagg. ii. 4) were *not yet rebuilt*. See Neh. i. 3, 4; ii. 8—15.

Further, we do not find in the book of Nehemiah any express decree of Artaxerxes authorizing him to build the City. Nehemiah—assuming that a commission to build had been already given, but not executed—says to the King, "If it please the King, that thou *wouldest send me unto Judah*, unto the city of my fathers' sepulchres, that *I may build it*." He does not ask for a commission that the city may be built, but that he himself may go and execute the commission to build it.

It may be noticed here that an effort has been made by *Hengstenberg* (Christol. iii. 223) to show that Artaxerxes began to reign B.C. 474, and that his *twentieth year* (in which *Nehemiah* received a commission to build Jerusalem, Neh. i. 1; ii. 1—11) fell B.C. 455, and from that point the seventy weeks of Daniel are dated by *Hengstenberg*. But this supposition would reduce the reign of Xerxes to ten years. Ancient writers assign him twenty-one years; Scripture itself speaks of his twelfth year (Esther iii. 7. Cp. *Clinton*, ii. 314; *Pusey*, 167).

Another theory may be seen in the learned work of Mr. J. W. Bosanquet, entitled "Messiah the Prince." 1869.

Observe the following connexion of periods in Holy Scripture: *seventy years of desolations* of Jerusalem, and the decree for its restoration, connected with *seventy weeks of years* to the Coming of Christ and His Crucifixion, to be followed by another desolation of Jerusalem; namely, by the Roman armies. But this latter desolation led to the building up of the Universal Church of Christ, which will never be destroyed. See above, ii. 44; vi. 26.

PRELIMINARY NOTE TO CHAPTERS X., XI., XII., ON THE MORAL AND SPIRITUAL USES OF THESE PROPHECIES.

The following chapters contain a series of prophecies reaching from the third year of Cyrus, when Babylon had been taken, and the Jews had been invited by him to return to

Jerusalem and to rebuild the Temple—even to Christ's Second Coming, and the Universal Resurrection and Judgment, at the end of the World.

They foretell the succession of Kings of Persia, and the rise of Alexander the Great and his military conquests, and the partition of his kingdom among his successors; and they exhibit with marvellous minuteness the counsels and campaigns of two of the Dynasties which rose up from that partition, namely, the kingdom of Syria on the north of Palestine, and the kingdom of Egypt on the south of it. The prophet's eye is specially directed toward those two kingdoms, because they had the nearest connexion with the future condition of his own people; those two kingdoms were hostile the one to the other, but both of them were unfriendly to the Jews.

At first sight we might be disposed to marvel at the laborious and microscopic analysis with which the prophet disentangles the intricate and labyrinthine details of the policy of those two kingdoms, Syria and Egypt. Was it worth while—we might be inclined to ask—to dwell with such scrutinizing minuteness on the tactics and manœuvres of a crafty diplomacy, and on the restless aggressions of selfish ambition?

The answer to this inquiry is; it has pleased God to show thereby, that the most complex skein of secular politics is unravelled by His Divine hand; and that when the Church of God is almost tempted to despair, in the seemingly hopeless confusion to which the affairs of this world are reduced; and even to imagine that, in a spirit of indifference or of disdain, God has left the world to itself, and has no longer any concern with the schemes of political cabinets and the movements of military campaigns, His eye is ever upon them, and that silently and imperceptibly He is working out His own plans by their means, for the trial and purifying of His Church, and for the future triumph of the Faith.

Here is comfort for Christians in times of public distress.

There was something very appropriate in the revelation of such things as these to Daniel, the Statesman and Prime Minister of the East, "the man greatly beloved," the Prophet of the Lord, the Counsellor of Kings, and the intrepid Confessor of the Truth, who sanctified statesmanship by prayer, and spiritualized politics by holiness of life. It was also very fit, that such visions should be displayed in the reign of Cyrus, who had consecrated to God the successes of his own military valour, by issuing a royal decree for the return of God's people, and for the restoration of His holy House at Jerusalem.

It has been well said by *Hengstenberg* (on Daniel, p. 155), "Great was the need of prophecy after the Babylonish captivity. There interposed over the Jews then a still stronger trial of their faith in the coming."

"In the earlier prophets, the deliverance from the captivity, and the deliverance by Christ, were dissolved into one. All their distresses, the Jews now hoped, were to find a termination with the former. In this hope they saw themselves miserably deceived; and this deception would be the more dangerous to them, because with their present external fidelity to the Lord, it must have been far more difficult for them to seek the cause in themselves than formerly. The condition of the new colony at Jerusalem was, in the beginning, miserable; the tokens of favour which had been shown them by Cyrus were partly taken from them by the Samaritans; if it fared better with them afterwards for a while under the Persian kings and Alexander, yet this was not by any means the prosperity they had expected; and soon, under the successors of Alexander, under whom Judæa, as a middle kingdom between the two, peculiarly suffered, there followed the severest oppressions. Calvin justly observes, 'If the affairs of our World ever seemed in such confusion, as to awaken the suspicion that the Almighty was asleep in the heavens, and had forgotten the human race, they certainly appeared so at that period, when revolutions occurred in such number and variety that the most sagacious were baffled.'

"Other reasons conspired to make these assaults especially full of trial to the people of God.

"The time from the Babylonian captivity to the birth of Christ was a kind of middle age, in which every immediate operation of God upon the theocracy ceased. No longer did the hand of God, as formerly so often, display itself from the

Before
CHRIST
about
534.

a ch. 1. 7.
b ch. 8. 26.
Rev. 19. 9.
c ver. 14.
† Heb. *great*.
d ch. 1. 17.
e 8. 16.
† Heb. *weeks of days*.

X. ¹ In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia a thing was revealed unto Daniel, ^a whose name was called Belteshazzar; ^b and the thing *was* true, ^c but the time appointed *was* † long: and ^d he understood the thing, and had understanding of the vision.

² In those days I Daniel was mourning three + full weeks. ³ I ate no

cloud, in a mode visible even to the corporeal eye. Soon, too, the voice of the Prophets was silent. Thus every thing seemed to say, that the special Providence of God towards His people had now ceased. Now, does it not from this point of view appear in the highest degree suitable to the entire character of God as displayed in history, that He should offer His people a means of strengthening their faith during this assault of temptation, by causing their manifold fortunes to be exactly predicted beforehand, and representing their calamities as actually caused by themselves, and by repeating the former promise of the Messianic Kingdom—and thus saving the authority of the earlier Prophets from suspicion, and directing the eyes of the suffering people from the present to the future? . . . If such disclosures respecting the future were to be imparted, Daniel, of all the prophets during the captivity and since, was the most suitable instrument for it. God, in the gift of prophecy, is always guided by man's capacity to receive it; so that a man who, like Daniel, had passed his whole life in offices of State, must have been peculiarly adapted for the accurate apprehension of communications, which for the most part related to political revolutions."

These truths are displayed in the following chapters (x., xi., xii.), to the end of the Book. The persecutions which the Jews had to endure under Antiochus Epiphanes, King of Syria—who endeavoured first to win them by flatteries, and to seduce them from their allegiance to God by temptations—in which he was too successful, even with some who held the chief place in the Hebrew Church; and then proceeded to war against the loyal servants of the Lord with savage and ruthless cruelty, and to pollute and lay waste the sanctuary—would have staggered many even of the faithful, unless the Lord God had mercifully prepared them for these severe trials by the prophecies of Daniel. They might have been tempted to imagine that the Lord Himself had been conquered by the arms of the Syrian Persecutor, or that the religion of the Hebrew People was no longer approved by God. But the prediction of these calamities by Daniel proved to them that these trials were foreseen by God, and were designed to try their faith, and to purify them by a salutary discipline (xi. 35. Cp. xii. 10). And the prediction also that the Persecutor himself would suddenly be cut off (viii. 25), supported them in their distresses and encouraged them to endure to the end.

But the prophet Daniel has yet a greater work to do.

Antiochus Epiphanes was a type of Antichrist. The persecution which the Hebrew Church endured under Antiochus was a foreshadowing of what the Christian Church will have to endure in the Antichristianism of the latter days.

Daniel had already predicted in a foregoing prophecy the workings of that great *spiritual* Power in the Church, which yet domineers in the world, and endeavours to subdue all things to its sway—the power of the Roman Papacy. He had foreshown its acts and its doom. See above, on vii. 8—11. 20. 24—26.

But he had another prophetic work to perform for the Church of these latter days.

In the prophecy now before us he foretells the rise and progress, and future destiny of that Infidel spirit, which now prevails in the world, and which will conspire stealthily, and at last rage furiously, against the Christian Faith, as Antiochus Epiphanes conspired and raged against the Hebrew Church, and will endeavour to uproot and destroy it, and will, like its Syrian prototype, come suddenly to a miserable end.

Daniel connects these two prophecies together by one common word. Each of these two powers is called by him "*a little horn*;" a horn—the emblem of power—little in its beginnings but becoming great by degrees, and violent in its aggression. Satan, like a ferocious beast of prey, wars against the Church with these *two horns*. With regard to the former—the spiritual power—see vii. 8. 11: as to the latter, see viii. 9. The one, he foretold, was to come up from the fourth, or Roman, Empire, in the West. The other, he predicted, would spring up first in Antiochus Epiphanes, in the third, or Greek, Empire, and would reproduce itself with fierce fury in the Infidel Antichristianism of the last days.

St. John, the beloved disciple (who may be called the

Daniel of the New Testament, see above, ix. 23), has described both these Powers, which are called "*little horns*" by Daniel. The former, that of the Papacy, is fully represented in the Apocalypse; the workings of the Infidel Antichrist are revealed in St. John's first Epistle (1 John ii. 18. 22; iv. 3).

In the following prophecy of Daniel, the agency of the spirit of Unbelief and rebellion against God, which showed itself in the days of Antiochus, is intimately connected with the fury of its rage against the Church of Christ in the last days. Daniel passes on at once, by a sudden transition, from Antiochus to Antichrist (see on xii. 30); just as our Lord, in His prophecy on the Mount of Olives, having described the last days of Jerusalem, proceeded immediately to describe the last days of the World, which were typified by them (see below, on Matt. xxiv. 3, p. 8). So Daniel, by a rapid glance of inspiration, sees in Antiochus a forerunner of Antichrist, and displays the former as enlarged, expanded, and developed, in one grand dissolving view, into the vast dimensions of the latter.

Daniel has thus prepared Christendom for the conflicts of the latter days. He has given us warnings and encouragements, not only against spiritual Antichristianism in the Church, but against infidel Antichristianism in the World. The warnings and encouragements which he gave to the Hebrew Church, and by which he qualified her to encounter the rage of Antiochus, and by which he stimulated the courage of Judas Maccabæus and his brethren, and enabled them to resist and defeat the forces of Antiochus, and to recover Jerusalem, and to celebrate there a Feast of Dedication, have still a living power for ourselves; and these words of Daniel, "*the man greatly beloved*," being joined, as they are, with new promises for those who endure in the last days of the world (see below, xii. 1—4. 7—13), and having been succeeded and enlarged by the utterances of St. John, the beloved disciple, in the Apocalypse, proclaiming the future victory and everlasting glory of Christ's Church, will raise up in these latter days, by God's help, many Christian Maccabæes, to do battle against the Antichristian Antiochus of Infidelity, and will enable them to restore the ruined places of the Christian Zion, and to celebrate an eternal Feast of Dedication in the courts of the heavenly Jerusalem.

CH. X. 1. *In the third year of Cyrus* B.C. 534.

— *a thing*] Literally, *a word*, a thing spoken. What follows was not a symbolical *vision*, like that of the quadriform image, or of the four beasts, and of the ram and he-goat, but a *spoken prophecy*; to be written in Holy Scripture "*in perpetuum rei memoriam*."

— *Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar*] Thus the prophet connects himself in the third year of Cyrus, with himself in the first year of Nebuchadnezzar, when he received the name—seventy-two years before this time (i. 7); a remarkable proof of God's goodness, and an evidence of the stability of God's servants amidst successive revolutions of Empires; and suggesting to the reader of the following prophecies, that whatever may be the changes of the world and of its dynasties, as revealed therein, God will be ever faithful and true, His servants will stand unmoved, and His Church will never fail.

— *the time appointed was long*] The word rendered here by "*time appointed*," is *tsábá*, which generally signifies a *host* (see viii. 10, 11, 12), or *army*, or *warfare*, *battle*, or *service* (see Gesen. 699); and the meaning here is, that the *warfare*, struggle, service, and endurance which would be required by the calamities which are about to be revealed by the prophet, would be *great* as to length of time, and intensity of suffering.

2. *I Daniel was mourning*] Divine things are not revealed to the joyous in this world, but to those who mourn for the sorrows of the Church. "*Blessed are they that mourn*" (Matt. v. 4).

— *weeks*] Literally, *weeks of days*—to distinguish these weeks from the weeks of *years* in what has just gone before (ix. 24).

3. *I ate no pleasant bread*] Literally, *no bread of desires*, pleasant food. Cp. xi. 38. 43. Daniel was a man greatly beloved, literally, *a man of desires* (ix. 23; x. 11. 19); the same word is used there as here, and he ate no bread of desires, no pleasant and delicate viands for three weeks—in a season of penitential humiliation and prayer; and his abstinence com-

† pleasant bread, neither came flesh nor wine in my mouth, ^c neither did I anoint myself at all, till three whole weeks were fulfilled.

Before
CHRIST
about
534

⁴ And in the four and twentieth day of the first month, as I was by the side of the great river, which is ¹ Hiddekel; ⁵ then ² I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and ³ behold † a certain man clothed in linen, whose loins were ⁱ girded with ^k fine gold of Uphaz: ⁶ his body also was ^l like the beryl, and his face ^m as the appearance of lightning, ⁿ and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms ^o and his feet like in colour to polished brass, ^p and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude.

† Heb. bread of desires.
^c Matt. 6. 17.
^f Gen. 2. 14
^g Josh. 5. 13.
^h ch. 12. 6, 7.
† Heb. one man.
ⁱ Rev. 1. 13, 14,
15, & 15. 6.
^k Jer. 10. 9.
^l Ezek. 1. 16.
^m Ezek. 1. 11.
ⁿ Rev. 1. 14.
† 19. 12.
^o Ezek. 1. 7.
^p Rev. 1. 15.
^q Ezek. 1. 21.
^r Rev. 1. 15.
^s 2 Kings 6. 17.
Acts 9. 7.

⁷ And I Daniel ^a alone saw the vision: for the men that were with me saw not the vision; but a great quaking fell upon them, so that they fled to hide themselves.

⁸ Therefore I was left alone, and saw this great vision, ^r and there remained no strength in me: for my ^{||} ^s comeliness was turned in me into corruption, and I retained no strength. ⁹ Yet heard I the voice of his words: ^t and when I heard the voice of his words, then was I in a deep sleep on my face, and my face toward the ground.

rch. 8. 27.
|| Or, vigour.
s ch. 7. 28.
t ch. 8. 18.

¹⁰ ^u And, behold, an hand touched me, which † set me upon my knees and upon the palms of my hands. ¹¹ And he said unto me, O Daniel, ^x † a man greatly beloved, understand the words that I speak unto thee, and † stand upright: for unto thee am I now sent.

u Jer. 1. 9
ch. 9. 21.
Rev. 1. 17.
† Heb. moved.
x ch. 9. 23.
† Heb. a man of desires.
† Heb. stand upon thy standing.

And when he had spoken this word unto me, I stood trembling.

¹² Then said he unto me, ^y Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy

y Rev. 1. 17.

mended him to the favour of God (see v. 12). Even from his youth he had practised temperance and self-mortification. When he had first been brought to Babylon "Daniel purposed in his heart that he would not defile himself with the portion of the king's meat, nor with the wine which he drank," and God gave him a visible token of approval (i. 15).

— *neither did I anoint myself*] To anoint oneself with oil was a sign of joy (Amos vi. 6), and to omit it was a sign of sorrow (2 Sam. xiv. 2).

⁴. *in the four and twentieth day of the first month*] The month Abib, or Nisan, when the Passover was kept. The remembrance of that great national deliverance gave additional earnestness to the prayers of the prophets. And the glorious vision which he is about to describe was given him three days after the twenty-first day of Abib; namely (as seems probable) on the octave of the day on which CHRIST afterwards rose from the dead.

Daniel, "the man greatly beloved," had this revelation on that day; and the Apocalypse was vouchsafed to the beloved disciple, St. John, when he was "in the spirit on the Lord's day," which was certainly the first day of the week, and perhaps Easter day (see below, on Rev. i. 10).

— *Hiddekel*] Tigris (Gen. ii. 14). There was a propriety in the place, as well as in the time, of this Vision, which concerned the Persian Empire. It was seen by Daniel in the third year of the great king of Persia, Cyrus; and on the banks of the great river of Persia, the Tigris; near which was Arbela, the battle-field of Alexander's victory over Darius.

⁵. *6. behold a certain man*] Literally, *Behold one man* (so *Sept., Vulg.*), a man standing alone, and distinguished from all other men. The same phrase is applied to CHRIST in Ezek. ix. 2 (see the note there). This man was *clothed in linen*, the priestly dress (see Exod. xxviii. 42; xxxix. 28. Lev. vi. 10; xvi. 4); and in this respect also he resembled the Man described in Ezekiel (ix. 2, 3, 11; x. 2, 6, 7). Who, it has been already observed, was no other than the Eternal Word of God. Both in Ezekiel, and here in Daniel (cp. below, xii. 6, 7), particular stress is laid on this characteristic,—the linen clothing. And this is reproduced in the Apocalypse, where CHRIST is revealed to St. John as having a priestly garment, reaching down to the foot (Rev. i. 13), the clothing given to the saints (Rev. xix. 8, 14).

In the description of Daniel, His loins are girded with fine gold of Uphaz or Ophir (cp. Jer. x. 9), and Christ in the Apocalypse is "girt with a golden girdle" (Rev. i. 13). His body is like the beryl (Heb. *tarshish*), the chrysolite, or topaz (see Ezek. i. 16); His face as lightning, His eyes as lamps of fire, His arms and His feet appeared like glowing brass: so Christ is described in the Apocalypse (see Rev. i. 16), where it is said that His countenance was as the sun shineth in his strength.

Also here Daniel says that His voice was as the voice of a multitude; and in the Apocalypse it is as the voice of many waters. Daniel was astounded by the vision, and he fell with his face to the ground: and a hand touched him, and he is raised up on his knees. So St. John falls to the ground as dead; but He Who appeared to him touches him with His right hand, and he is lifted up and strengthened.

On a comparison of this passage with the parallel ones in Ezekiel (ix. 2, 3; x. 2) and in the Apocalypse (i. 13—15; xix. 12), we may conclude with the best Expositors that we have here a revelation of CHRIST. The same glorious Form—the Eternal Logos—which appeared to Ezekiel at Jerusalem, showed Himself to Daniel on the banks of the Ulai (viii. 15) and at the river Tigris, having Michael and other angels waiting upon Him; and St. John in Patmos saw Him in heavenly glory.

⁷. *I Daniel alone saw the vision: for the men that were with me saw not the vision; but a great quaking fell upon them*] So likewise when Christ appeared to St. Paul, "the men who journeyed with him stood speechless, hearing a voice, but seeing no man" (Acts ix. 7). Thus it was shown that the two visions were especially designed respectively for Daniel and St. Paul.

⁸. *there remained no strength in me—my comeliness was turned in me into corruption*] This vision of Christ produced more amazement and panic in Daniel than the appearance of the Angel Gabriel had done (viii. 17; ix. 21).

¹⁰. *set me upon my knees and upon the palms of my hands*] I could not rise higher, being disabled by fear and trembling. The word which is rendered *he set me*, rather means, "make me to totter."

¹². *from the first day*] The first movements of the faithful to repentance and prayer are noted by God and His holy Angels. See above, ix. 23.

Before
CHRIST
about
534.

z ch. 9, 3, 4, 22, 23. b
Acts 10, 4.

a ver. 20.

b ver. 21.

ch. 12, 1.

Jude 9.

Rev. 12, 7.

|| Or, *the first*.

c Gen. 49, 1.

ch. 2, 28.

d ch. 8, 26.

ver. 1.

Hab. 2, 3.

e ver. 9.

ch. 8, 18.

f ch. 8, 15.

g ver. 10.

Jer. 1, 9.

h ver. 8.

|| Or, *this servant*

of my lord.

God, ^z thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words. ^{13 a} But the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, || one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of Persia. ¹⁴ Now I am come to make thee understand what shall befall thy people ^c in the latter days: ^d for yet the vision *is* for many days.

¹⁵ And when he had spoken such words unto me, ^e I set my face toward the ground, and I became dumb.

¹⁶ And, behold, ^f one like the similitude of the sons of men ^g touched my lips: then I opened my mouth, and spake, and said unto him that stood before me, O my lord, by the vision ^h my sorrows are turned upon me, and I have retained no strength. ¹⁷ For how can || the servant of this my lord talk with this my lord? for as for me, straightway there remained no strength in me, neither is there breath left in me.

¹⁸ Then there came again and touched me *one* like the appearance of a man,

— *I am come*] He says three times, "*I am come*." See below, v. 14, 20. He does not say that he was commanded to come. Christ comes of His own free will. Cp. viii. 16.

13. *the prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days*] During the one and twenty days, or three weeks, when thou wast praying for the welfare of thy people who were just returning to Jerusalem, and for the rebuilding of the Temple (see v. 2), *the prince of the kingdom of Persia*, that is, one of the angels, who, under Satan, the prince of the powers of the air, the ruler of the darkness of this world (see below, on Eph. ii. 2; vi. 12), exercises power in this lower world, especially in thwarting the advancement of the Kingdom of God, and in disturbing the peace, and in marred the prosperity of His Church, came to withstand Me. See *Hooker*, I. iv. 3, quoted on Eph. ii. 2; and see on Matt. viii. 29.

This "*prince of the kingdom of Persia*" (as *Prosper*, *Rupertus*, *Cassianus*, and many modern interpreters, such as *Keil* and others, agree) endeavoured to estrange the minds of the monarchs of that empire from the Hebrew People, and to excite suspicions of them, and prejudices against them; and for this purpose he stirred up the malignant passions of their adversaries against them in the days of Zerubbabel, and obstructed the restoration of the Temple all the days of Cyrus king of Persia, even until the reign of Darius king of Persia (see Ezra iv. 5—24); and afterwards in the days of Nehemiah, he, by means of Sanballat and others, retarded the building of the walls of Jerusalem (Neh. ii. 19; iv. 1, 7; vi. 1, 17). As *S. Jerome* says here, the prince of the kingdom of Persia endeavoured to prevent the restoration of the Jews, and rehearsed their sins before God, that they might not be restored, and attempted to frustrate Daniel's prayers for their restoration, but Michael stood up as their friend. Cp. *Keil*, 359.

It has indeed been supposed by some interpreters that the Princes of Persia and Græcia who are here mentioned, were good Angels, and were zealous for the welfare and honour of their respective kingdoms, and yet were enemies of the ascendancy of Israel. But (as even a heathen poet, *Pindar*, says) Envy of what is good is far off from what is divine.

We have here an insight into the inner workings of God's providence in the history of nations.

Daniel here reveals to us (what is more clearly displayed in the New Testament) that the Evil One has still great power in this lower world; and that he has evil angels which do his work in the kingdoms of earth. Satan knew well that the return of the Hebrew People to Jerusalem, and the restoration of the Temple at Jerusalem, were steps in advance toward the Advent of Christ, and toward the Evangelical dispensation of His acts and sufferings, by which Satan's own kingdom would be destroyed, and toward that future final consummation in which all the kingdoms of this world will become the kingdom of the Lord and of His Christ (Rev. xi. 15).

Satan therefore employed his subordinate angels, here called *princes*, who had a charge from him over the kingdoms of this world in succession, especially that of Persia, and afterwards that of Greece, to harass the Hebrew nation, and to vex the Church of God, and, if possible, to prevent, or at least to postpone that event—the Coming of the Lord to His Temple—

which, as Hebrew prophecy revealed, would be so disastrous to the Powers of Darkness.

But Christ and His good angels contended against Satan and his angels, and prevailed over them (cp. v. 20), and gave effect to Daniel's prayers, and to the efforts of good men in behalf of the Church of God.

This passage, therefore, which unfolds to us the spiritual conflict between the Prince of Persia and Michael the Prince of the Hebrew Nation, and shows that the prayers of saints—such as Daniel—exercised an influence over that conflict, suggests many interesting reflections with regard to the operations of evil Angels, and also concerning the ministry of good Angels, and concerning the work of the Church on earth, in the holy offices of prayer and fasting. The faithful in their secret orisons have a powerful sway (like Moses praying on the hill, and helping the arms of Joshua against Amalek in the plain below, Exod. xvii. 8—16) over the struggle of unseen Powers, which affect the destiny of Nations. Daniel uplifts the veil and shows us the secret workings of that unseen mechanism; the effects of which we behold in this world's history.

On this subject the reader may consult *Bp. Bull's* sermons (xi. and xii.) on the existence and ministry of Angels; and *Petavius*, de Dogm. Theol., vol. iii. 1—109; and *Gerhard*, *Loc. Theol.*, vol. ii. 15—19.

— *Michael, one of the chief princes*] Michael's name means "*Who is as God?*" and is called "*your prince*" v. 21, a guardian and champion of God's Church against Satan. See below, on Jude 9, where he is called an Archangel, and is described as contending with Satan for the body of Moses; and on Rev. xii. 7, where he is revealed as having angels under him, and as fighting against the Devil and his angels, and as prevailing over him (cp. *Lightfoot*, i. 347—349).

— *I remained there with the kings of Persia*] To contend with them, and prevail over them (see the use of the word in Gen. xlix. 4, where it is rendered *excel*), and to remain master of the field (cp. *Keil*, 348), and to make them friendly to the Hebrew Nation. As *S. Hippolytus* says (p. 184), there was a design among some in Persia, to hinder the return of the Jews to their own land; but I resisted their adversaries, that thy prayer, O Daniel, might be granted. See below, v. 20.

Hence we may learn that the favour shown by the Persian Kings Darius and Artaxerxes to the Jewish Church, was a consequence, not only of the acts of such good men as Zerubbabel and Jeshua, Ezra and Nehemiah, and the Prophets Haggai and Zechariah, but was due to the co-operation also of Daniel's prayers, and to the ministry of Michael, and to the power of Christ before His Incarnation.

16. *One like the similitude of the sons of men*] Christ. See above, v. 5, and below, v. 18, and vii. 13. We may again compare what He Who was "*like unto the Son of Man*" did to St. John in Patmos, Rev. i. 17. "*When I saw Him*" (says the beloved disciple) "*I fell at His feet as dead*." And He laid His right hand upon me, saying, *Fear not*; I am the first and the last. Write the things which thou hast seen." So He here comes to Daniel, and touches him, and says, *Fear not*; and strengthens him, and shows to him what is written in the Scripture of Truth.

and he strengthened me, ¹⁹ and said, O man greatly beloved, ^k fear not: peace be unto thee, be strong, yea, be strong.

Before
CHRIST
about
534.

And when he had spoken unto me, I was strengthened, and said, Let my lord speak; for thou hast strengthened me.

¹ ver. 11.
^k Judg. 6. 23.

²⁰ Then said he, Knowest thou wherefore I come unto thee? and now will I return to fight ¹ with the prince of Persia: and when I am gone forth, lo, the prince of Grecia shall come. ²¹ But I will shew thee that which is noted in the scripture of truth: and there is none that [†] holdeth with me in these things, [‡] but Michael your prince. XI. ¹ Also I ^a in the first year of ^b Darius the Mede, even I, stood to confirm and to strengthen him. ² And now will I shew thee the truth.

¹ ver. 13

[†] Heb. strength-
eneth himself.

^m ver. 13.
Jude 9.
Rev. 12. 7.
^a ch. 9. 1.
^b ch. 5. 31.

Behold, there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia; and the fourth shall be far richer than they all: and by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia.

³ And ^c a mighty king shall stand up, that shall rule with great dominion, and ^d do according to his will.

^c ch. 7. 6. & 8. 5.
^d ch. 8. 4.
ver. 16, 36.

⁴ And when he shall stand up, ^e his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided toward the four winds of heaven; and not to his posterity, ^f nor according to his dominion which he ruled: for his kingdom shall be plucked up, even for others beside those.

^e ch. 8. 8.
^f ch. 8. 22.

⁵ And the king of the south shall be strong, and one of his princes; and he

^{20. now will I return to fight with the prince of Persia]} The evil angel who endeavoured to use the power of Persia as an instrument against the Church of God. See above, on v. 13.

The Prophet Zechariah supplies here, as elsewhere, a sequel to the prophecies of Daniel: Zechariah has revealed the destinies of Persia—which he calls *Hadrach* (i. e. *strong—weak*) see the notes below, on Zech. ix. 1—8. Persia, once strong, was weakened by God employing the arms of Alexander the Great as His instrument, in order that the way might be prepared for the Gospel of Christ.

— *the prince of Grecia shall come*] The Evil-angel, which after the humiliation of the Persian Monarchy, stood up, and endeavoured to create a new opposition to God's Kingdom by means of the Greek Monarchy,—and succeeded for a time, especially by means of that terrible persecution which the Hebrew Church had to endure under Antiochus Epiphanes, who sprung up from the Greek Monarchy. See its rise and progress described in viii. 9—12, “Out of one of them came forth a little horn, which waxed great, even to the host of heaven; yea he magnified himself even to the prince of the host, and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down.” His acts, foreshadowing those of Antichrist in the last days, are foretold at large in the following prophecy (xi. 21—35).

^{21. but I will shew thee]} Do not despond and faint, O man greatly beloved, although two great earthly Monarchies in succession, the Persian and the Grecian, will be used as instruments of ill against thy Church and Nation. Fear not; I am with thee and with them, and will overrule all things for good. *I will shew thee what is noted in the writing of truth.* The Powers of this world will be allowed to try the faith and courage of thy people; some will fall; but others will be purified by affliction, and be glorified by suffering (xi. 35; xii. 10). Be of good courage, for although none is on My side (says Christ) but Michael, in these things (or against those powers), yet we are stronger than our adversaries, for ours is the cause of God. And I reveal these things to thee, that, when they are come to pass, thy people may know that I am true, and that the prophecy which I deliver to thee, and by thee, concerning the final overthrow of all God's enemies, and concerning thine own everlasting reward, and that of all His faithful people, will be fulfilled also (xii. 1—3. 12, 13.)

CH. XI. 1. *Also I in the first year of Darius]* The Son of God continues to speak here (see on x. 5.) The Eternal Word of God declares, that not only in the third year of Cyrus (x. 1, B.C. 534), when that Monarch had issued an edict for the restoration of the Jews and the rebuilding of the Temple, was He

zealous for the welfare of God's ancient people, the Jews, but even immediately after the capture of Babylon (B.C. 538), in the first year of Darius, He stood up to confirm and strengthen Michael in his championship for the people of God.

Here we see that the glorious Person, Who revealed Himself to Daniel, was greater than Archangels, and that they derive their strength from Him. He was the LORD CHRIST. Cp. on Heb. i. 6.

^{2. there shall stand up yet three kings in Persia]} Cambyses (son of Cyrus), B.C. 529; Pseudo-Smerdis, B.C. 522; Darius Hystaspis, B.C. 521 (S. Jerome).

— *the fourth]* Xerxes, B.C. 485—465; concerning whose vast wealth and immense armaments, see *Herod.* iii. 96; vi. 27—29; vii. 19—24. *Æschyl.* Pers. 9. 11. 40—60. 90. 168. 173, and *passim.* *Diodor. Sic.* xi. 1. *Justin.* ii. 2.

— *he shall stir up all]* Literally, *them all*, his whole force.

^{3. a mighty king]} Alexander the Great. Daniel passes over nine kings of Persia after Darius and Xerxes, because under Darius and Xerxes, Persia came into conflict with Græcia, and he hastens to describe the results of that conflict in its relation to the people of God. “Notandum, quod quatuor post Cyrum regibus Persiæ commemoratis, novem præterierit, et transierit ad Alexandrum. Non enim curæ fuit Spiritui Prophetali historiæ ordinem sequi, sed præclara quæque perstringere (S. Jerome).”

^{4. his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided toward the four winds]} On the sudden breaking-up of Alexander's kingdom (see above, viii. 8. 22) Cassander reigned in Greece toward the west; Lysimachus in Thracæ toward the north; Seleucus in Syria, toward the east; Ptolemy in Egypt, towards the south.

— *not to his posterity]* His son Alexander Ægus, by Roxana, was slain, when fourteen years of age, by Cassander (*Diod. Sic.* xix. 105; *Justin.* xv. 2); his other son, Hercules, by Barsine, was soon after murdered by Polyperchon, instigated by Cassander (*Diod. Sic.* xx. 28; *Justin.* xv. 2). Thus Alexander's family became extinct.

— *for others beside those]* For others than his own posterity. It is remarkable, that, in accordance with this prophecy, none of the “four successors” of Alexander were his lineal descendants.

THE KING OF THE NORTH AND THE KING OF THE SOUTH.

^{5. And the king of the south shall be strong, and one of his princes; and he shall be strong above him]} Rather, *and the king of the south (of Egypt) shall be strong; and one of his princes* (that is one of the princes of the king of Egypt or of

Before
CHRIST
about
534.

† Heb. *shall as-
sociate themselves.*

† Heb. *rights.*

|| Or, *whom she
brought forth.*

|| Or, *in his place,
or, office, ver. 20.*

† Heb. *vessels of
their desire.*

|| Or, *shall war.*

g Isa. 8. 8.
ch. 9. 26.

|| Or, *then shall
he be stirred up
again.*
h ver. 7.

shall be strong above him, and have dominion; his dominion *shall be* a great dominion.

6 And in the end of years they † shall join themselves together; for the king's daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north to make † an agreement: but she shall not retain the power of the arm; neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and || he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in *these* times.

7 But out of a branch of her roots shall *one* stand up || in his estate, which shall come with an army, and shall enter into the fortress of the king of the north, and shall deal against them, and shall prevail: 8 and shall also carry captives into Egypt their gods, with their princes, *and* with † their precious vessels of silver and of gold; and he shall continue *more* years than the king of the north.

9 So the king of the south shall come into *his* kingdom, and shall return into his own land.

10 But his sons || shall be stirred up, and shall assemble a multitude of great forces: and *one* shall certainly come, 5 and overflow, and pass through: || then shall he return, and be stirred up, ^h *even* to his fortress.

11 And the king of the south shall be moved with choler, and shall come

the south) shall arise, *and shall be strong above him*, i. e. shall be stronger than the king of Egypt (see *Sept., Vulg.*).

This was fulfilled by Seleucus the first, or Nicator, king of Syria, who was originally a general of Ptolemy Lagus, king of Egypt.

The king of Egypt was strong, for Ptolemy (the son of Lagus) had added Cyprus, Phœnicia, Caria, and many islands and cities, to his empire; but the king of Syria, Seleucus Nicator, was stronger than he, as his name (Nicator, or Conqueror) implied. "Victor victorum extitit," says *Justin* (xvii. 2. Dan. xi.); he annexed the kingdoms of Thrace and Macedonia to Syria, and thus became master of three parts out of four of Alexander's dominions; and he (as *Appian* affirms, *De Bell. Syr.* c. 61) was the greatest king after Alexander.

The king of Syria is called the *king of the north*, and the king of Egypt is called the *king of the south* (as is observed in the *Syriac Version* here), with reference to Palestine, which lay between them; and these two kingdoms only (Egypt and Syria) among the four which branched off from Alexander's monarchy, make the subject of this prophecy, because they only had to do with the Hebrew nation.

Palestine was ground to powder between the upper and nether millstones of Syria and Egypt. As an ancient father says, "Cætera regna dimittens (Daniel) tantum de Ægypti et Syriæ narrat regibus, quia in media Judæa posita nunc ab illis, nunc ab istis regibus tenebatur; et Scripturæ Sanctæ propositum est, non externam absque Judææ historiam texere, sed eam quæ Israël populo copulata est" (*S. Jerome*).

The succession of the kings of the north (Syria) and of the south (Egypt) was as follows. (See *Clinton*, F. II., iii. 308. 379).

Syria.

B.C. 312 Seleucus Nicator.
" 280 Antiochus Soter.
" 261 Antiochus Theus.
" 246 Seleucus Callinicus.
" 226 Seleucus Ceraunus.
" 223 Antiochus the Great.
" 187 Seleucus Philopator.
" 175 Antiochus Epi-
phanes, reigns till
B.C. 164.

Egypt.

B.C. 323 Ptolemy, Soter, son
of Lagus.
" 283 Ptolemy Philadel-
phus.
" 247 Ptolemy Euergetes.
" 222 Ptolemy Philopator.
" 205 Ptolemy Epiphanes.
" 181 Ptolemy Philometor.
" 169 Ptolemy Philometor
and Ptolemy Physcon (his brother)
conjunctly.
" 146 Ptolemy Physcon
alone.

6. *And in the end of years—times*] This prophecy was thus fulfilled in the *end of years*, that is, after some considerable lapse of time, sixty-one years—the king of the north (or Syria), Antiochus Theus, and the king of the south (or Egypt),

Ptolemy Philadelphus, having waged war against one another, joined themselves together in a truce; for the king's daughter of the south (Berenice, daughter of Ptolemy) came with a great dowry to the king of the north (Antiochus Theus) to make an agreement (or to set matters right and straight); but she did not retain the power of the arm (she was not able to support the league by her help), neither did he (the king of Egypt) stand, nor his arm; but she was given up. After the death of Ptolemy Philadelphus, her father, Berenice was rejected by Antiochus for his former wife Laodice, who, however, murdered her own husband, and caused the death of Berenice (*Appian*, c. 65). And they that brought her (into Syria), and he that begat her—rather *he whom she bare* (her own son), and he that strengthened her (her father, and all who endeavoured to support her), were worsted. See *S. Jerome* here, and *Appian*, *de Bell. Syr.* c. 65, 66.

— *in these times*] Rather, *in their own times*; at the seasons foretold and appointed by God.

7. *But out of a branch of her roots shall one stand up in his estate, or, in his place*] Ptolemy Euergetes, the brother of Berenice, succeeded Ptolemy Philadelphus, his father; and in order to avenge the wrong done to his sister Berenice, invaded Syria, the kingdom of Seleucus Callinicus, the son of Antiochus Theus, and slew Laodice, and made himself master of Syria and Cilicia and a great part of Asia. See *S. Jerome* here, and *Polyb.* v. 58; *Justin*, xxvii. 1; *Appian*, *de Bell. Syr.* c. 65; *Br. Newton*, 268; *Pusey*, on Daniel, 138, 139.

8. *their gods, with their princes*] Rather, *with their molten images* (*Gesen.* 553). Ptolemy Euergetes took the images of the Syrian deities into Egypt; and recovered the Egyptian images which had been taken captive by Cambyzes; and on this account he received the title of Euergetes (or benefactor) from the Egyptians (*S. Jerome*).

— *and he shall continue*] Or, *he shall stand some years above the king of the north*. Ptolemy Euergetes prevailed over Seleucus Callinicus, and survived him.

9. *So the king of the south*] The word *his* is not in the original, and the sense is, "the king of the south shall come to kingdom, or with kingdom, i. e. with royal power and victory. See the *Syriac* here. Cp. v. 17.

10. *But his sons*] The sons of Seleucus Callinicus, who endeavoured to avenge the cause of their father, *shall stir themselves up*. These sons were Seleucus Ceraunus (who was murdered when setting forth on a campaign against Egypt), and Antiochus, called afterwards the Great (*S. Jerome*; *Appian*).
— *and one shall certainly come*] Antiochus the Great, who recovered Syria and overcame the forces of Egypt (*Polyb.* v. 68, 69; and *S. Jerome*).

— *to his fortress*] The fortress of Egypt, Raphia.

11. *the king of the south*] Ptolemy Philopator, the son and successor of Ptolemy Euergetes.

forth and fight with him, *even* with the king of the north: and he shall set forth a great multitude; but the multitude shall be given into his hand. ¹² *And* when he hath taken away the multitude, his heart shall be lifted up; and he shall cast down *many* ten thousands: but he shall not be strengthened *by it*.

¹³ For the king of the north shall return, and shall set forth a multitude greater than the former, and shall certainly come † after certain years with a great army and with much riches.

¹⁴ And in those times there shall many stand up against the king of the south: also † the robbers of thy people shall exalt themselves to establish the vision; but they shall fall.

¹⁵ So the king of the north shall come, and cast up a mount, and take † the most fenced cities: and the arms of the south shall not withstand, neither † his chosen people, neither *shall there be any strength to withstand*.

¹⁶ But he that cometh against him ¹ shall do according to his own will, and ^k none shall stand before him: and he shall stand in the † glorious land, which by his hand shall be consumed.

¹⁷ He shall also ¹ set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom, and † upright ones with him; thus shall he do: and he shall give him the

Before
CHRIST
about
534.
Fulfilled abou
217.

† Heb. at the end
of times, even
years, ch. 4. 16.
& 12. 7.

† Heb. the chil-
dren of robbers.

† Heb. the city of
munitions.

† Heb. the people
of his choices.

i ch. 8. 4, 7.
ver. 3. 36.
k Josh. 1. 5.
† Or, goodly land,
ch. 8. 9.
ver. 41, 45.
† Heb. b, the land
of ornament.
12 Chr. 20, 5.
† Or, much up-
rightness: or,
equal conditions.

— *he shall set forth a great multitude*] Antiochus the Great mustered an enormous army and encountered Ptolemy Philopator near Raphia, on the frontier of Egypt, but was defeated by him (*Polyb.* v. 40, 86. *Justin*, xxx. 1. *S. Jerome*).

— *given into his hand*] The hand of the king of Egypt.

¹². *And when he hath taken away the multitude*] Ptolemy Philopator was greatly elated by his victory over Antiochus the Great, but derived no benefit from it. He spent his days in the indulgence of the worst passions. He had murdered his own father, mother, and brother, and he killed his wife, who was also his sister, and at last fell a victim to his own debauchery, and was succeeded by his son Ptolemy Epiphanes, a child of five years old. “*Itu omnem magnitudinem nominis ac majestatis oblitus, noctes in stupris, dies in conviviis consumit; nec jam spectator rex, sed magister, nequitiae*” (*Justin*, xxx. 1).

¹³. *the king of the north shall return*] After fourteen years subsequent to the battle of Raphia, Antiochus the Great returned with a vast army and invaded Egypt, presuming on the weakness of the young king Ptolemy Epiphanes, then under the tutelage of Agathocles (*Justin*, xxxi. 1. *S. Jerome* here).

¹⁴. *And in those times there shall many stand up against the king of the south*] Agathocles, Ptolemy's guardian, behaved traitorously to him; and Philip, king of Macedonia, allied himself with Antiochus the Great, in order to divide Egypt between them (*Polyb.* xi. 3, 4; xv. 20, 25. *Justin*, xxxi. 1. *Joseph*, *Antt.* xii. 3. 3. *S. Jerome*).

— *also the robbers of thy people*] Literally, *sons of violent ones of thy people* (*Gesen.* 690), men who broke God's law (cp. *Ezek.* xviii. 10) and delighted in war and rapine, among the Jews themselves; such as the *λῃσταί* and *σικαρί* were in our Lord's age and in the last days of Jerusalem; Jewish rebels and robbers, factious and seditious adventurers, took advantage of the confusions in Egypt, and allied themselves with Antiochus against Ptolemy, but were defeated by his general Scopas, who subdued Palestine, and placed a garrison in Jerusalem, and returned with its spoils to Alexandria. Cp. *Joseph*. xii. 3. 3.

— *to establish the vision*] Literally, *to establish vision*; i. e. in a wide and general sense, to accomplish prophecy, though unconsciously on their part.

The sins of these factious Jews led to the fulfilment of the prophecies of Daniel, especially of his predictions concerning Antiochus Epiphanes and the miseries of their own country, and of the profanation of the City and Temple of Jerusalem under Antiochus.

The wickedness of men, even of the most impious miscreants among the Jews themselves, was used by God as His own instrument for fulfilling the prophecies of Holy Scripture, and for exercising and confirming the faith of the pious and devout. So likewise the sins of those who crucified Christ, and who thus brought ruin on their country, proved the truth of God's holy Word (see *Acts* xiii. 27), and established the hearts of believers.

— *they shall fall*] These factious Jews were defeated by Scopas. See the foregoing note.

¹⁵. *So the king of the north—withstand*] Or, *And the king of the north* (Antiochus the Great) *shall come and cast up a rampart and take a city of fortifications* (Sidon), *and the arms of the south shall not withstand, even his choice people* (that is, of the south, or of Egypt); *and there shall not be strength to withstand*. Antiochus defeated Scopas, the general of Ptolemy, near the springs of the Jordan at Pameas. Scopas retreated into Sidon; and Ptolemy sent reinforcements to help him there; but he was blockaded by Antiochus, and capitulated; and Antiochus made himself master of Palestine (*Joseph*. xii. 3. 3. *S. Jerome*).

¹⁶. *he that cometh against him*] Antiochus, who came against him (i. e. against the king of the south), overcame all opposition.

— *he shall stand in the glorious land*] He shall occupy Palestine, the land of glory, derived from God's special presence there. See above, on viii. 9; and below, on xi. 41.

— *which by his hand shall be consumed*] So *Fulg.*, *Syriac*, and *Symmachus*; or, *and it shall be completely in his power* (*Hävernick*, *Kliefoth*); or, *and destruction shall be in his hand* (*Gesen.* 399; *Keil*, 366; *Fiehl*, 930). His hand will bring destruction with it; either to Egypt, or to Palestine; see *Joseph*. xii. 3. 3. It is true that Antiochus showed some regard for the Temple, its priesthood and sacrifices; but, as *Josephus* testifies, Palestine suffered grievously from his incursions. The precise meaning of the word here used, *cālāh*, is doubtful, but the sense is clear, that Antiochus will spoil the land of his foes.

¹⁷. *He shall also set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom*] Antiochus concentrated his forces against Egypt, and endeavoured to subdue it by power or by policy. Or the sense may be, *and he shall enter with force his whole kingdom*, i. e. the whole kingdom of his adversary (that of Egypt).

— *and upright ones with him*] Rather, *and adjustments, lit., right things, with him* (cp. *Prov.* xvi. 13; *Gesen.* 375) by means of which matters were to be set to rights. See above, on v. 6; they shall make an agreement or put things to rights and arrange them by a diplomatic compromise which was hollow and insincere; and see what follows, and the margin here.

— *and he shall give him the daughter of women, corrupting her*] Antiochus gave to Ptolemy Epiphanes, then only twelve years old, his daughter Cleopatra, only eleven years of age, in marriage, not for any virtuous purpose such as a father ought to have, when betrothing his daughter, but in order to corrupt her, to make her a vicious instrument in his own hands against her husband. She is called a *daughter of women*, as being distinguished by female arts, as well as by female beauty.

Some (as *Lengerke*, *Maurer*, *Hitzig*, *Hävern.*, *Kliefoth*) understand the word *corrupting her* as referring to Egypt,

Before
CHRIST
about
534.
Fulfilled about
193.

† Heb. *to corrupt*.
m ch. 9. 26.
† Heb. *for him*.
† Heb. *his*
reproach.

n Job 20. 8.
Ps. 37. 36.
Ezek. 26. 21.
|| Or, *in his place*,
ver. 7.
† Heb. *one that*
counsel an exactor
to pass over.
† Heb. *angers*.
|| Or, *in his place*.
o ch. 7. 8. &
S. v. 23, 25.

b.c. 175.
p ver. 10.

q ch. 8. 10, 11, 25.

daughter of women, † corrupting her: but she shall not stand on his side,
m neither be for him.

18 After this shall he turn his face unto the isles, and shall take many: but
a prince † for his own behalf shall cause † the reproach offered by him to cease;
without his own reproach he shall cause it to turn upon him.

19 Then he shall turn his face toward the fort of his own land: but he shall
stumble and fall, " and not be found.

20 Then shall stand up || in his estate † a raiser of taxes in the glory of the
kingdom: but within few days he shall be destroyed, neither in † anger, nor in
battle.

21 And || in his estate ° shall stand up a vile person, to whom they shall not
give the honour of the kingdom: but he shall come in peaceably, and obtain
the kingdom by flatteries. 22 p And with the arms of a flood shall they be over-
flown from before him, and shall be broken; q yea, also the prince of the

which was to be injured by this alliance; but the former seems the better sense.

— but she shall not stand on his side] Cleopatra did not promote her father's interest, but her husband's, with whom she joined in an embassy of congratulation to the Romans on their victory over her father; and made a promise of assistance to them (*Liv.* xxxvii. 7).

18. After this shall he turn his face unto the isles] Antiochus, being thwarted in his designs on Egypt, fitted out a fleet against the islands and maritime coasts of the Mediterranean, and gained some successes there (*Polyb.* xviii. 35; *xxi.* 14. *Liv.* xxxiii. 19, 20. 38. *Appian*, de Bell. Syr. 33—39. *Justin*, xxi. 8; xxxii. 2. *Strabo*, xvi. 1. 18. *S. Jerome* here.)

— but a prince] Or military leader (*Gesen.* 735). The Romans were exasperated by the aggressions of Antiochus; and Acilius, the Roman Consul, routed him at Thermopylae, and drove him from Greece; Livius and Emilius conquered his fleets; and finally Scipio (Asiaticus) routed him in a pitched battle near the city of Magnesia, at the foot of Mount Sipylus, and compelled him to submit to ignominious conditions, and to give hostages; among whom was his own son,—afterwards called Antiochus Epiphanes (*Justin*, xxxi. 6, 7, 8. *Appian*, de Bell. Syr. 18. 22. 30—36. *Florus*, ii. 8. *Bp. Newton*, 279). Thus the Romans caused the reproach to cease which had been offered by him (Antiochus) to them in the person of their allies, and made his own reproach to turn upon him. The Hebrew word here rendered without is equivalent to the Latin "ne dicam" or, "nedum" (ep. *Gesen.* 121); and the sense is, the Romans caused the reproach offered by him to cease, not to mention that they made it turn back on himself.

Others render the words thus: 'And he (Antiochus) will make a prince (a king generally) to cease, to his shame; but the shame done by him will turn back on himself. But the former rendering is preferable (ep. *Kliefoth*, 416).

Not only will the Romans cause the reproach to cease, which Antiochus brought upon them by insulting their allies, but, besides this, they will make his reproach to recoil on himself; so that his invasion of the islands will result in the loss of his own territory.

19. he shall turn his face toward the fort of his own land] Antiochus, who had made violent and ambitious aggressions on others, was driven back to seek shelter in his own fortresses; but found none there.

— he shall stumble and fall, and not be found] Antiochus, humbled and distressed by the Romans, came to a miserable end, being cut off with all his army in Elymais (*Strabo*, xvi. 10. 80. *Justin*, xxxii. 2. *S. Jerome* here).

20. Then shall stand up in his estate a raiser of taxes] Rather, Then shall one stand up in his stead, one who causes an exactor to pass over the glory of the kingdom (see margin). Antiochus the Great was succeeded by his son Seleucus Philopator, who reigned twelve years, "absque ullis praeliis, avarus et sacrilegus" (says *S. Jerome*); he oppressed his kingdom with heavy taxes (raised to pay tribute to Rome) and sent Heliodorus to plunder the Temple of Jerusalem (2 Macc. iii. 2—7. *Josephus*, de Macc. § 6).

But after an ignominious reign he came to an unhappy end, within few days after that act of sacrilege, by the treachery

of the same Heliodorus (*Appian*, de Bell. Syr. c. 45. 66. *Liv.* xli. 19).

ANTIOCHUS EPIPHANES.

21. And in his estate shall stand up a vile person] In his stead shall stand up a vile person, Heb. *nibzeh* (the niphal from *bázâh* to despise, *Gesen.* 110). It is remarkable that it is the same word as is twice applied to the Messiah Himself in the prophecy of Isaiah liii. 3, concerning Christ Himself, as He seemed to be in the eyes of men. "He is despised and rejected of men—He was despised and we esteemed Him not." Antiochus, a type of Antichrist, was a *nibzeh* or despised person: he was in reality such as Christ seemed to be in the eyes of many even of His own nation.

Antiochus Epiphanes, of whom the Prophet Daniel is now speaking, was the younger son of Antiochus the Great; he was a hostage at Rome, from whence he escaped. He was brother and successor of Seleneus, and an usurper, for he supplanted his nephew Demetrius, the son of Seleucus and lawful heir of the throne.

— to whom they shall not give the honour of the kingdom] The kingdom (of Syria) was not given him, but he gained it by craft and flattery. So (says *S. Hippolytus*) Antichrist will prevail by flattery; he will at first appear to be amiable and gentle, kind to the poor and the fatherless and widow, and professing even a love for the Scriptures; but all this will be a specious and plausible delusion, for the attainment of his own ends.

ANTIOCHUS A TYPE OF ANTICHRIST.

The acts of Antiochus are presented with great minuteness of detail in this prophecy of Daniel for two reasons; first in order that the Jews reading this prophecy might be prepared to endure the persecution under Antiochus, and might be cheered by the promise of deliverance from it, which was also revealed in this prophecy; and secondly because, as all ancient Christian expositors agree, Antiochus was a type of Antichrist, and because the persecution of the Hebrew nation was a foreshadowing of the persecution which awaits the Christian Church in the last days.

This prophecy is designed to supply warnings and comforts to her in that terrible struggle which will be followed by the Second Advent of Christ. *S. Jerome* says here, "Sicut Salvator habet Salomonem et ceteros sanctos in typum Adventus sui, sic Antichristus pessimum regem Antiochum, qui sanctos persecutus est, templumque violavit, rectè typum Adventus sui habuisse credendus est." See above, the *Introduction* to this book, and my sermons "On the Maccabees." 1871.

— peaceably] Impereptibly and stealthily. Cp. below, v. 24. And above, viii. 25.

22. And with the arms of a flood] Although Antiochus Epiphanes was a despised person, and came to the kingdom by subtlety, yet his power grew to become very strong, as is described in the foregoing vision of Daniel, where he is called "a little horn," which waxed exceeding great toward the South (Egypt), and toward the East, and toward the pleasant land (Judaea), and even to the host of heaven (see on viii. 9, 10), and many (e. g. Heliodorus and all the competitors of Antiochus and the forces of Egypt) were overwhelmed by it as with a flood; and even the prince of the covenant, even high priests of Jerusalem (*Theodoret*). See the use of the word covenant in

covenant. ²³ And after the league *made* with him 'he shall work deceitfully: for he shall come up, and shall become strong with a small people. ²⁴ He shall enter || peaceably even upon the fattest places of the province; and he shall do *that* which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers' fathers; he shall scatter among them the prey, and spoil, and riches: *yea*, and he shall † forecast his devices against the strong holds, even for a time. ²⁵ And he shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the south with a great army;

Before CHRIST about 534.
Fulfilled about 171.
r ch. 8. 25.
|| Or, into the peaceable and fat, &c.
† Heb. think his thoughts.
Fulfilled about 170.

And the king of the south shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand: for they shall forecast devices against him. ²⁶ Yea, they that feed of the portion of his meat shall destroy him, and his army shall * overflow: and many shall fall down slain.

s ver. 10. 22.

²⁷ And both these kings' † hearts *shall be* to do mischief, and they shall speak lies at one table; but it shall not prosper: for 'yet the end *shall be* at the time appointed.

† Heb. their hearts.
t ver. 29, 35, 40.
ch. 8. 19.

²⁸ Then shall he return into his land with great riches; and "his heart *shall be* against the holy covenant; and he shall do *exploits*, and return to his own land.

u ver. 22.

²⁹ At the time appointed he shall return, and come toward the south; * but it shall not be as the former, † or as the latter.

Fulfilled about 169.
x ver. 23.
y ver. 25.

rr. 28. 30. 32. Cp. 1 Macc. i. 15; and compare the descriptions just quoted of the acts of Antiochus in Palestine (above, viii. 9, 10). Antiochus, soon after his accession to the throne, removed the pious and virtuous Onias from the priesthood (b.c. 175), and, being bribed with money, placed his brother in his place, whose Hebrew name was Jesus, and who assumed the Greek name Jason in its stead, and introduced Greek customs into Jerusalem (b.c. 174). *Theodoret*, 2 Macc. iv. 7—13. 22. *Joseph. de Macc.* § 4.

²³ And after the league (lit. covenant) made with him] Antiochus made a covenant with Jason the high priest, but he broke it and gave the priesthood to his brother Menelaus (b.c. 172). 2 Macc. iv. 23. 25).

— shall become strong with a small people] And therefore (as before observed) he is called "a little horn," viii. 9. He sprang up from weak beginnings, and grew up to a mighty aggressive power.

²⁴ peaceably] Stealthily. Cp. v. 21.

— upon the fattest places of the province] Of Coele Syria and Palestine, and of Egypt.

— he shall scatter among them the prey] Antiochus Epiphanes exceeded his predecessors in squandering with lavish prodigality—even in the public streets of the city—what he had gained by fraud and force; *Polyb.* x. 10, and apud Athenæum, v. 5.). Cp. 1 Macc. iii. 30. "He feared that he should not be able to bear the charges any longer, nor to give such gifts or to give so liberally as he did before, for (lit. and) he had abounded above the kings that were before him." And *Joseph.*, Ant. xii. 7. 2. Therefore he marched into Persia "to gather much money." Antiochus also differed from his fathers in that he scattered the spoils of his victories even among the vanquished themselves, to gain them over to him by flatteries.

— the strong holds] Especially of Pelusium, on the frontier of Egypt (see *Sept. and Arabic*).

— even for a time] That is, for a set time; and not beyond the limits set to him by God. This is inserted in order to keep up the patience of those who should live in those days of trial.

²⁵ against the king of the south] Antiochus waged war against Ptolemy Philometor, his youthful nephew, the son of his own sister Cleopatra, and overthrew him, and made himself master of Egypt for a time. 1 Macc. i. 16—19. *Polyb.* Legat. 72. *Liv.* xxviii. c. i. *S. Jerome* here.

— he shall not stand] See 1 Macc. i. 18, "Ptolemy was afraid, and fled."

²⁶ they that feed of his meat—shall destroy him] The courtiers of the young king of Egypt, such as Eulaeus his prime minister, conspired to ruin his monarchy; and the people of Alexandria set up his younger brother, Ptolemy Physcon or Euergetes, as his rival to the throne (*Enseb.*, Chron. Græc. p. 60 and 68).

— his army shall overflow] Rather, be overflowed, or overwhelmed as by a flood. Cp. v. 10; for the history, see 1 Macc. i. 16—19.

— and many shall fall down slain] As the historian says, describing this campaign, "Many were wounded to death: thus they got the strong cities of Egypt, and he took the spoil thereof" (1 Macc. i. 18, 19).

²⁷ And both these kings' hearts—table] Antiochus, having gained great advantages in Egypt, and Ptolemy Philometor his nephew, made professions of reconciliation, one to the other, but these were hollow pretences, and they were all the while plotting one against the other. *S. Jerome* says, "No one can doubt that Antiochus made peace with Ptolemy, and was associated with him at an entertainment, and devised stratagems against him." Cp. *Polyb.* Legat. 84. Lib. xxviii. 19. *Liv.* xlv. 19; xlv. 11, whence it appears that Ptolemy Philometor professed obligations to his uncle Antiochus, and laid the blame of the war on Eulaeus, while at the same time he was preparing to break the league with Antiochus, and made an accommodation with his own brother, Ptolemy Physcon. But these artifices did not prosper on either side. Antiochus, having retired from Egypt, returned and invaded it; but did not succeed in subduing it.

— the end shall be at the time appointed] By God. Cp. vv. 24. 29. 35. 40.

²⁸ Then shall he return into his land with great riches] It is related by *Polybius* (apud Athenæum, v. 5, p. 199), that Antiochus made great display of his riches, gold, silver, and jewels, which he took, in part, out of Egypt, "having violated the treaty that he made with the king Philometor, who was but a boy;" and in 1 Macc. i. 19 it is recorded that he got "the strong cities of Egypt, and took the spoils thereof."

— against the holy covenant] The facts are thus recorded in the first Book of Maccabees: "After that Antiochus had smitten Egypt, he went up against Israel and Jerusalem with a great multitude, and entered proudly into the sanctuary" (being introduced by the traitorous high priest, Menelaus, who had assumed that Greek name instead of Onias; 2 Macc. v. 15), and took away the golden altar, and the candlestick, and the table of shewbread, and the censers of gold, and the other holy vessels; and when he had taken all away he went into his own land, having made a great massacre and spoken very proudly" (1 Macc. i. 20—24). Cp. 2 Macc. iv. 23; v. 11—14, where it is related that 40,000 Jews were then slain, and 40,000 carried captive and sold. Antiochus also commanded swine to be sacrificed on the altar, and sprinkled the Temple with broth made therewith (*Joseph.* xiii. 16.), and carried away 1800 talents from the Temple to his own city Antioch (2 Macc. v. 21—23).

²⁹ At the time appointed he shall return] Two years after his former invasion of Egypt he shall return to it, b.c. 168.

— toward the south] Egypt.

— but it shall not be as the former, or as the latter] Rather, so the latter, i. e. his latter expedition into Egypt, shall not be as successful as the former invasion was; Ptolemy Philometor

Before
CHRIST
about
534.
Fulfilled about
168.
z Num. 24. 24.
Jer. 2. 10.
a ver. 28.
b ch. 8. 11.
& 12. 11.

|| Or, *astonisheth*.

|| Or, *cause to
dissemble*.

c Mal. 2. 7.
d Heb. 11. 35, &c.

³⁰ ^z For the ships of Chittim shall come against him: therefore he shall be grieved, and return, and have indignation ^a against the holy covenant: so shall ^b he do; he shall even return, and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant. ³¹ And arms shall stand on his part, ^b and they shall pollute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily sacrifice, and they shall place the abomination that || maketh desolate. ³² And such as do wickedly against the covenant shall he || corrupt by flatteries:

But the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits.

³³ ^c And they that understand among the people shall instruct many: ^d yet they

and his brother Physcon had made a covenant together, and sent an embassy into Greece for help against their uncle Antiochus. See what follows.

30. the ships of Chittim] The article *the* is not in the original, *ships of Chittim shall come*, ships of Macedonia (cp. 1 Macc. i. 1) taken by the Romans from Persens. The *Sept.* has the word "*Romans*;" as to the history, see *Polyb.* xxviii. 16—19; xxix. 8—11. *Lic.* xlv. 11, 12. 19. *Appian*, *Syr.* c. 66. *Justin*, xxiv. 3. On the word *Chittim*, see above, Gen. x. 4, Num. xxiv. 21.

In answer to an appeal from Egypt the Roman Senate sent an envoy, C. Popilius Læna, who met Antiochus near Alexandria, and delivered to him the mandate of the Senate that he should retire from Egypt, which was an ally of Rome; and when Antiochus, having received it, said that he would take it into consideration with his counsellors, Popilius drew a circle round him with his staff on the sand of the shore, and commanded him not to go forth from it till he had given an answer to the message; "*virgâ, quam in manu gerebat, circumscripsit regem, ac 'Prius quàm hoc circulo excedas,' inquit, 'redde responsum Senatui quod referam.'*" Antiochus was confounded, and after a little hesitation obeyed, and evacuated Egypt (*Lic.* xlv. 12).

— *he shall—return, and have indignation against the holy covenant—and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant*] Antiochus, repulsed from Egypt, marched into Syria, and wreaked his vengeance on the Jews. He sent Apollonius against Jerusalem, with a command to put all the adults to death: see the CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE above, on viii. 9. He had intelligence with, or turned his thoughts, or directed his attention, to such apostate priests as Menelaus, who forsook the holy covenant and dallied with heathenism. Cp. 1 Macc. i. 11—15, "In those days went there out of Israel wicked men who persuaded many, saying, Let us go and make a covenant with the heathen; and they made themselves uncircumcised and forsook the holy covenant, and joined themselves to the heathen, and were sold to do mischief. Many also of the Israelites consented to his religion, and sacrificed unto idols, and profaned the sabbath" (v. 43).

The profanation of the Temple, and all the miseries which Jerusalem endured under Antiochus Epiphanes, were due to the worldliness, cowardice, and treachery of the priests, who being allured by the flattery, and largesses, and honours lavished on them by Antiochus, and hoping for more favours from him, sacrificed the honour of God, the sanctity of His House, and the welfare, dignity, and honour of their Church and Country to their own secular interests. Cp. viii. 23, the "transgressors are come to the full."

The same remark may be applied to the destruction of Jerusalem and the Temple by the Romans. It was due to the sins of their priests and rulers. See on Matt. xxiv. 15.

Here is a solemn warning to the Christian Church, especially to its Bishops and Clergy. In the latter days, their faith and courage will be tried by worldly temptations, and also by the malignant cruelty of Antichristianism raging against the Church of God. See above, the *Introduction* to this book.

31. arms shall stand on his part] Even at Jerusalem, arms (forces, compared to the arms of the human body) shall stand on his part. These arms of the priests, which ought to have been stretched out in prayer to God, and in encouraging the people to fight the good fight, will perfidiously work for Antiochus,—the type of Antichrist.

— *they shall pollute the sanctuary of strength*] *They shall pollute*; i.e. the pollution of the Temple is ascribed to the apostate priests joining themselves to Antiochus, and enabling him to do what he did. *They shall pollute the sanctuary of strength*, or literally, *the sanctuary, the fortress*. They shall profane the holy place, and forsake and betray their true strength and fortress,

the Temple—the Temple of the Lord,—the spiritual stronghold of His people (Cp. Ps. xviii. 3, 6; xxxi. 4, 5. Isa. xxiv. 5). See on viii. 11, and 1 Macc. i. 37. 43. 45. 50, &c. The king had sent letters by messengers to Jerusalem and the cities of Judea that they should follow the strange laws (or the laws of strangers) of the land, and pollute the sanctuary—and whoever would not do according to the commandment of the king, he should die.

— *and shall take away the daily sacrifice*] See on viii. 11.

— *and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate*] See 1 Macc. i. 54, "In the fifteenth day of the month Casleu they set up the abomination of desolation upon the altar," where the words are the same (ἡ ἀβὺλονμα ἐρημώσεως) as in the *Sept.* here. This was the statue of Zeus placed in the Temple of Jehovah, which was thenceforth to be dedicated to that heathen deity, "an idol altar was set upon the altar of God" (1 Macc. i. 59; cp. 2 Macc. vi. 2—7; *S. Jerome* here; *Ussher*, 327). It made the temple desolate, by depriving it of the presence of God and of His worshippers. The Jewish historian *Josephus* (*Ant.* xii. 7. 3.) expressly states that was a fulfilment "of the prophecy of Daniel spoken 408 years before;" and thus declares the judgment of the Jewish Church in his own age (he was contemporary with the Apostles) as to the genuineness, and inspiration of the Book of Daniel.

Our Blessed Lord has taught us to blend this prophecy with the still future events of the latter days and the last persecutions of the Church, which are foreshadowed by it. "When ye shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place (whoso readeth let him understand), then let them which be in Judea flee into the mountains" (*Matt.* xxiv. 15, 16); as Judas Maccabeus did, in order to return in victory and to purify the Temple. Daniel, in speaking of the setting up of the abomination of desolation in the Temple in the days of Antiochus, does in fact virtually speak of the setting up of the abomination of desolation under Antichrist; because the Holy Spirit Who inspired him saw in Antiochus a precursor and type of Antichrist, and passes on at once from the one to the other. See below, on v. 36.

32. shall he corrupt] Rather, *he shall make profane*; he shall pervert them from the true religion to heathenism. (See *Gesen.* 293; *Kliefoth*, 459; *Keil*, 382.) These temporizing Priests secularized and paganized themselves (see above, on v. 30), and they lent themselves as ready tools to do the work of Antiochus in abolishing the true religion and desecrating the Temple. The hearts of the Priests were unhallowed; no wonder that the abomination of desolation was set up in the sanctuary. Another solemn warning for the latter days.

— *the people that do know their God shall be strong*] See 1 Macc. i. 62, "Many in Israel were fully resolved and confirmed not to eat any unclean thing, wherefore they chose rather to die." See the heart-stirring story of the holy courage of the aged Eleazar (2 Macc. vi.), of Mattathias (1 Macc. ii.), of the seven brethren and their mother in 2 Macc. vii., and of Judas Maccabeus and his brethren, and his victory over the forces of Antiochus, 2 Macc. x., and his recovery of Jerusalem and restoration of the Temple, 1 Macc. iii. and iv.

It is to be regretted that these histories, in the First and Second Books of Maccabees, are not read publicly (as they were formerly) in the Church of God. They have an especial interest for all who live in these latter days.

33. they that understand] Observe,—this word (the hiphil form of the Hebrew *sâcal*), is repeated v. 35, and again xii. 3 and 10, where the word is rendered "they that are wise." The World boasts its own wisdom, and counts the servants of God as fools; but the Confessors and Martyrs for God, though mocked by the World, are they who *understand*, and who only are *wise*; and the time will come, when this will be seen and owned by all. See *Wisdom* iii. 2—4; v. 1—9; cp. below, xii. 10.

shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, *many* days.

³⁴ Now when they shall fall, they shall be holpen with a little help: but many shall cleave to them with flatteries. ³⁵ And *some* of them of understanding shall fall, * to try || them, and to purge, and to make *them* white, *'even* to the time of the end: * because *it* is yet for a time appointed.

³⁶ And the king ^h shall do according to his will; and he shall ⁱ exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvellous things ^k against the God of gods, and shall prosper ^l till the indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done. ³⁷ Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, ^m nor the desire of women, ⁿ nor regard any god: for

Before
CHRIST
about
531.

e ch. 12. 10.
1 Pet. 1. 7.
|| Or, *by them*.
f ch. 8. 17, 19.
ver. 40.
g ver. 29.
h ver. 16.
i ch. 7. 8, 25.
& 8. 25.
2 Thess. 2. 4.
Rev. 13. 5, 6.
k ch. 8. 11, 21, 25.
l ch. 9. 27.
m 1 Tim. 4. 3.
n Isa. 14. 13.
2 Thess. 2. 4.

— *yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame*] Daniel warns those who would have to endure persecution under Antiochus, that they must not expect deliverance *in this present transitory world*, but must look for their reward in the *future eternal world*. Daniel's three friends, confessing God at Babylon, had been delivered from the flames; he himself had been delivered from the lions; but they at Jerusalem, in the Church of God, must rely on the proofs given of God's love to their fathers (as recorded in Holy Scripture), and on His promises of everlasting joy in a better world.

The confessors and martyrs of the days of the Maccabees are celebrated in the Epistle to the Hebrews; "others were tortured," (the word in the original is cognate with that in 2 Macc. vi. 19. 28), "not accepting deliverance, that they might obtain a better resurrection" (Heb. xi. 35; see also *vv.* 36, 37). Let the reader peruse 2 Macc. vi. and vii. here; and let him recognize in these words and in that narrative an exhortation to courage and endurance in these latter days.

³⁴ *with a little help*] That of Judas Maccabæus, to whom they said, "How shall we, *being so few*, fight against so great a multitude and so strong?" (1 Macc. iii. 17; cp. 1 Macc. iv. 8; 2 Macc. ii. 21).

— *many*] *Lit. the many*, the courageous champions of the truth shall teach the *many*, but not all will learn; some *will cleave to them only with flatteries*.

— *but many shall cleave to them with flatteries*] They shall profess attachment to them, but in time of trial will fall away. See 1 Macc. vi. 21; vii. 6; ix. 23. 2 Macc. xiv. 4.

³⁵ *some of them of understanding shall fall*] God shall allow some of the faithful, as Eleazar (2 Macc. vi.) and the heroic mother and seven sons (2 Macc. vii.), to be slain, in order to try them, and purify them, and make them white (there are two metaphors here—one from smelting metals in a furnace, the other from whitening robes in a fuller's bleaching-mill; see next note), to sanctify and glorify them through sufferings; as St. Peter says (1 Pet. i. 6, 7), "For a season, if need be, ye are in heaviness through manifold temptations, that the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ." And the author of the "Book of Wisdom" says (iii. 1—4), "The souls of the righteous are in the hand of God, and there shall no torment touch them. Though they be punished in the sight of men, yet is their hope full of immortality. And having been a little chastised, they shall be greatly rewarded; for God proved them and found them worthy (or, meet) for Himself. As gold in the furnace hath He tried them, and received them as burnt offering." Cp. 2 Macc. vi. 12.

— *even to the time of the end*] Even to the end of time. This is the connecting link between the present prophecy concerning Antiochus and the prophecy which now follows (*vv.* 36—45) concerning Antichrist. The persecution under Antiochus casts its shadow forward even to the end of time. Antiochus will be reproduced, and fully developed in Antichrist; and therefore God's work of purifying His Church by persecution reaches to the end of time, but it will not reach beyond the time appointed by Him. Here is comfort for the faithful in the present time, and in the coming trials.

— *to make them white*] To cleanse them of their spots and stains, of worldly affections and earthly defilements, by the absterive ablation of persecution, as garments are whitened by the fuller. See Mal. iii. 2, "He is like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' sope;" and Mark ix. 3; cp. xii. 10, and Rev. iii. 4, 5; vii. 14. Persecutions are permitted by God, not for destruction, but for purification.

— *for a time appointed*] The time is in God's hands, Who

will set a limit to the sufferings of His saints, and reward those who endure. Cp. Matt. xxiv. 13, and above, viii. 19.

THE APPEARING AND WORKING OF THE INFIDEL ANTICHRIST.

³⁶ *the king shall do according to his will*] Daniel's prophecy concerning Antiochus Epiphanes, the type, is now expanded and absorbed into a prophecy concerning Antichrist, the antitype. The acts of Antiochus raging against Jerusalem will be reproduced on a vast scale of enormous proportions in Antichrist persecuting the Christian Church.

It is a common practice of the Hebrew prophets "subitō a typo avolare ad antitypum," to pass suddenly and imperceptibly from speaking of a type to speak of its antitype. Thus, for example, Isaiah passes from Cyrus to Christ (Isa. xl. 1—3; see the notes). In Psalm lxxii. there is a sudden transition from Solomon to Christ: see the notes there.

Similarly, our Lord's prophecy of the judgment which would fall on Jerusalem for its sins, expands into a prophecy concerning His future Universal Judgment of the World. See above, on Matt. xxiv. 1; cp. *A Lapidæ*, Proleg. ad Proph. Can. 3.

What now follows to the end of the book cannot be applied to Antiochus; see *Keil*, 385; *Pusey*, 90, 91; *Kliefohn*, 463, who says, "What now follows concerning '*the king*' far transcends in all its dimensions the measure of Antiochus; e.g. the proud blasphemy against all gods: although there are many features in the prophecy which were foreshadowed in him."

The fulfilment is reserved for the latter days. Many signs of that accomplishment are now visible.

Daniel calls Antichrist "*the king*," as filling the whole prophetic picture, and as completely occupying his own thoughts, so that he does not name him. This is characteristic of Inspiration.

It is to be regretted, that some popular histories, which have been written in modern times concerning the acts of Antiochus Epiphanes, are blemished by an indiscriminating ascription to him of many passages in the following prophecies of Daniel, which do not refer to Antiochus, but to Antichrist.

— *the God of gods*] The true God, the God of Israel. See ii. 47; Deut. x. 17; Josh. xxii. 22; Ps. exxxvi. 2.

— *till the indignation be accomplished*] Till God's anger shall have done its work in chastening His people for their sins, and in purifying His Church (cp. viii. 23; above, v. 30). Even Antichrist will be an instrument in God's hand (as Antiochus was) for punishing the rebellious against God.

THE DESIRE OF WOMEN.

³⁷ *nor the desire of women*] This is explained by many modern interpreters (as *Hävernick*, *Lengerke*, *Gesenius*, *Maurer*, *Hitzig*) as referring to a Syrian goddess, Anaitis, or Mylitta (worshipped by women), whose temple Antiochus plundered. Others interpret it as signifying desire for women; others, female affection. Cp. 2 Sam. i. 26.

But these words—which are placed between "God of his fathers" and "any god"—seem rather to refer to an object of divine worship, and to an object also of female desire.

Therefore they may best be interpreted to signify the Messiah: the "Seed of the woman" (Gen. iii. 15), the "Desire of all nations" (Hagg. ii. 7; cp. the phrase in Ezekiel xiv. 16), especially of women. "The desires of becoming a mother to the Messiah were very great in every of the daughters of Jacob" (*Bishop Taylor*, "Life of Christ," p. 2). "Every of the daughters of Abraham hoped to have the honour to be His mother or something of His kindred" (*Bishop Taylor*, "Marriage Ring," vol. v. p. 249).

Here also Daniel is followed by St. John in his Epistles,

Before
CHRIST
about
534.

|| Or, But in his
stead.

† Heb. as for the
almighty God, in
his seat he shall
honour, yea, he
shall honour a
god, whom, &c.

|| Or, munitions.

† Heb. Mauzzim,
or, Gods protec-
tors.

he shall magnify himself above all. ³⁸ || But † in his estate shall he honour the God of || † forces: and a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and † pleasant things. ³⁹ Thus shall he do in the † most strong holds with a strange god, whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall cause them to rule over many, and shall divide the land for † gain.

⁴⁰ ° And at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him: and

† Heb. things desired, Isa. 44. 9.

† Heb. fortresses of munitions.

† Heb. a price.

o ver. 35.

describing the characteristics of Antichrist. Christ is called here "the desire of women." Here is a reference to the doctrine of the Incarnation. Antichrist is here described as not reverencing the Father, nor knowing Him Whose Incarnation was the desire of all holy Womanhood in the Tribe of Judah. And St. John says, "He is the Antichrist that denieth the Father and the Son (1 John ii. 22)." "There are many Antichrists," says St. John (1 John ii. 18), that is, there are many forms of opposition to Christ; but there is one special Person and Power who is called "the Antichrist" by him (1 John ii. 18. 22; iv. 3), and of him it is said by St. John, "Every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh" (the seed of the woman) "is not of God, and this is that spirit of Antichrist" (lit. of the Antichrist) "whereof ye have heard that it should come" (1 John iv. 2, 3). The Antichrist of St. John's Epistles, who is here foretold by Daniel, will be an openly Infidel person and power; and is not to be confounded with that power which has already arisen in the Church of God, and has a semblance of religion, and is therefore called "a Mystery," and is described by Daniel as rising up after the dissolution of the Roman Empire (see on vii. 8. 20. 25); and is also described by St. Paul in 2 Thess. ii. 3—7; and by St. John in the Apocalypse (xiii. 3, 14; xvii. 8. 17).

It ought not to be forgotten that in the *Apocalypse* St. John never uses the word "Antichrist," which occurs five times in his two *Epistles* (1 John ii. 18, twice; ii. 22; iv. 3; 2 John 7). In the *Apocalypse* St. John is describing the religious form of opposition to Christ, which has been portrayed by Daniel in a foregoing prophecy (vii. 8. 11. 20. 25, 26), and is already revealed in the Roman Papacy. In his *Epistles* St. John describes the *Infidel* Antichrist of the last days, which is the subject of Daniel's prophecy here.

Both these Powers had been described by Daniel; the former, or religious form, is the "little horn" rising from the fourth, or Roman, Empire, in chapter vii. But the Infidel Antichrist is that Power and Person which is described here (chap. xi), and which was prefigured by Antiochus Epiphanes, the other little horn rising from the third Empire. See viii. 9—25, and the repetition in the present chapter, *vv.* 21—35.

³⁸. But in his estate] In his place; i. e. instead of any god. See *Keil*, 357.

THE GOD OF FORCES.

— shall he honour the God of forces] Instead of reverencing God or Christ, or any heathen deity, he will honour the God of forces, Heb. *mauzzim*, lit. of fortresses or munitions. See *vv.* 7. 10. 19. 31. 39. Antichrist will idolize military force—he will worship War—as his only deity. Cp. *Kliefoth*, p. 471, and *Keil*, 357. As the infidel king, Mezentius, said, "Dextra mihi Deus, et totum quod missile libro" (*Virg. Æn. x.* 421); as Capaneus in *Æschylus* (*Sept. c. Thebas*, 420—430), and in *Euripides* (*Phœnix*, 1170—1150), vented words of defiance against heaven, and vaunted that with his own strength he would storm the city in spite of the gods; as the impious man in the Book of Job dares to rush against God Himself (see on Job xv. 26); and as the king of Babylon in Isaiah gloried that he would exalt his throne above the stars (*Isa. xiv.* 14), and as Sennacherib boasted that no god could resist his power (*Isa. xxxvii.* 12. 21), so Antichrist, in his arrogant self-confidence, will defy War, and defy God.

— a god whom his fathers knew not shall he honour with gold, and silver, and with precious stones, and pleasant things] This cannot apply to Antiochus Epiphanes, who was very zealous for the honour of the heathen deities of his fathers, Zeus and Dionysus (1 Macc. i. 47; 2 Macc. vi. 2. 7), and of whom it is recorded, "that he had a truly royal mind in two things—in his liberal gifts to cities, and in the worship of the gods" (*Liv. xli.* 20).

But, as before said, Antichrist will worship a new deity—the God of forces. He will divinize War; he will honour War with all his wealth, gold and silver, and dedicate all to it.

May we not say that the present aspect of Europe and the world presents many phenomena which show a rapid tendency to the fulfilment of this prophecy?

Dynasties have been shaken, thrones have been cast to the ground, the legitimate succession of kings, claiming allegiance by virtue of God's command that rulers should be revered as His representatives (see on Rom. xiii. 1—5), has been superseded and supplanted by popular *plébiscites*, confessedly proceeding on the principle that the People, and not God, is the source of power. What the People make, they will unmake. Insurrections and revolutions follow in rapid succession from this principle. And now that the belief in God's moral government of the world has been weakened, and the nations are no longer actuated and guided by a sense of religious duty to Him as the Ruler of all things, and the Supreme Arbiter of their destinies; or by a loyal spirit of allegiance to their Sovereigns as God's vicegerents, it follows, that in the absence of moral and religious control, they must, if they are not to be in a perpetual state of political agitation and convulsion, be governed by military force. The Sword will be the World's Ruler, instead of God. Already we see signs of this development predicted by Daniel. The nations no longer rely on the faith of treaties, but on the power of armies. In no period of the world's history was the mechanical industry and skill of mankind concentrated with such intensity on the fabrication of implements of mutual destruction—such as revolvers, needle-guns, and mitrailleuses—as at present. Its faculties seem to be strained for slaughter. War is worshipped instead of God. And the prophet's prediction that War would be honoured, as Antichrist's god, with gold and silver, is fully realized in the facts, that while the nations give little to God's honour and service, untold treasures are lavished on War. The Crimean war cost England eighty millions. The terrible War now raging on the Continent of Europe has cost France 200 millions of money for indemnity to Prussia, besides the enormous expense in carrying it on.

³⁹. Thus shall he do in the most strong holds with a strange god] Or, and he will deal with fortresses of forces, or munitions (*mauzzim*, as in *v.* 38) by help of a strange god; he shall storm strongholds by his aid, and lead captive their inhabitants.

— whom he shall acknowledge] Or, whoever shall acknowledge him, he (Antichrist) will advance in glory. He will promote to honour, not God's faithful servants, but his own creatures and votaries, and will cause them to rule over many, and divide the land for gain, or rather for reward to his followers. Cp. *Kliefoth*, 473; *Keil*, 357.

THE CONFLICT OF TWO DIFFERENT FORMS OF ANTICHRISTIANISM.

⁴⁰. at the time of the end shall the king of the south push at him] To understand the phraseology of this prophecy in this and the following passages concerning "the holy mountain" (*v.* 45), and the "taking away of the daily sacrifice," and the "setting up of the abomination of desolation" and the 3½ years, or 1260 days (*xii.* 7), and the 1290 days (*xii.* 11), and the 1335 days (*xii.* 12), we must bear in mind that the *historical basis* of Daniel's prophecy concerning Antichrist and the persecution of the Christian Church by him, and the opposition which he will encounter from a power called "the king of the south," and the duration of the persecution, and the blessedness of those who endure with patience and courage to the end, is to be found in the history of Antiochus Epiphanes, "the king of the north" (i. e. of Syria, north of Judæa) the persecutor of the Hebrew Church, and the rival of "the king of the south" (i. e. Egypt), which was also the foe of God's ancient people, the Jews, from the days of the Exodus; and that what is said concerning Antichrist, the Antitype, is to be explained from its analogical reference to what is said of Antiochus Epiphanes, the Type.

In the history of Antiochus Epiphanes ("who was the king of the north"), the king who is called "the king of the south,"

the king of the north shall come against him ^p like a whirlwind, with chariots, ^q and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, ^r and shall overflow and pass over. ⁴¹ He shall enter also into the || [†] glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown:

But these shall escape out of his hand, ^s even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon.

⁴² He shall [†] stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape. ⁴³ But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be ^t at his steps.

⁴⁴ But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many.

Before
CHRIST
about
534.

p Isa. 21. 1.
Zech. 9. 14.
q Ezek. 38. 4, 15.
Rev. 9. 16.
r ver. 10. 22.
|| Or, goodly land,
ver. 16.
† Heb. land of
delight, or, orna-
ment.
s Isa. 11. 14.
† Heb. send forth.

t Ex. 11. 8.
Judg. 4. 10.

is the king of Egypt, a country famous for its idolatry (see *v.* 8), and also famous for its enmity to Israel, the Church of God.

In the Apocalypse of St. John, Papal Rome is therefore called *Egypt* (see on Rev. xi. 8); and when Daniel says that "the king of the south" will push at, or assail, the Infidel Antichrist, he foretells that a struggle will arise in the last times between two Powers opposed to the true Church. He predicts a conflict between two opposite forms of Antichristianism—Infidelity on the one side, and the Papacy on the other.

As the Holy Land lay between Syria on the north, and Egypt on the south, and was often assailed by each, so the Catholic Church, the spiritual Palestine, the true Zion, lies between the cold northern blasts of Infidelity, and the scorching southern heat of Romanism, and is injured by both.

—*the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships*—The Infidel Antichrist will come against the Papal Power with violent fury and with a vast gathering of forces of different kinds. Daniel adopts the language of Ezekiel, who describes the assaults of the Infidel Antichrist under the name of Gog, and represents his power and rage as that of a multitudinous and tumultuous flood, rushing together and sweeping onward, "of horses and horsemen," "coming like a storm," "a great company, a mighty army." See on Ezek. xxxviii. 1. 4. 9. 15.

Infidelity has been engendered by the corruptions and usurpations of Rome, and is raging against her.

⁴¹ *He shall enter also into the glorious land* [The Holy Land (see *v.* 16, and *v.* 45, and viii. 9). By the name "*glorious land*" Daniel designates the Christian Church, the Spiritual Zion. Here also he follows Ezekiel, who, using the same symbolism, represents the attack of the Infidel Antichrist against the Church "in the latter days" (*v.* 16) as an invasion of "the land of Israel." See above, on Ezek. xxxviii. 16. 18, and Ezek. xxxix. 2. 4, where the destruction of Antichrist in his impious assault against Christ's Church is described as taking place "on the mountains of Israel." See on Ezek. xxxix. 2. 4. 9. 11. The same figurative language is used by the prophet Joel, "The Lord will roar out of Zion." See on Joel iii. 2. 12. 13. 16, where the last struggle of God's enemies against the Church is described as an attack upon Jerusalem; and see Zech. xii. 3, "I will make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people," and *v.* 9, "I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem," and xiv. 2, "I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle" (cp. *ibid.* *v.* 4. 12).

The reader is requested to refer to the notes on those passages, and on the thirty-eighth and thirty-ninth chapters of Ezekiel, and to the prophecy in the Apocalypse, which describes the vast gathering together of Infidel Powers from various quarters against the Christian Church (which is called the "camp of the saints and the beloved city") in the last days, and their total rout and destruction (Rev. xx. 8, 9). Those prophecies afford the best comments on this passage of Daniel.

—*these shall escape (or, be delivered, see xii. 1, where the same word is used) out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon* [We are not to take these words literally. Edom, Moab, and Ammon have no longer any distinct nationality. They have been effaced from the map of the world. But they have a figurative significance grounded on an historical basis. Antiochus Epiphanes used the Edomites and Ammonites (the kinsmen and inveterate enemies of Israel) against the Jews; 1 Macc. iv. 61; *v.* 3—8; cp. *v.* 9, and com-

pare also *Josephus*, Ant. xii. 8. 1. And, as in Hebrew prophecy, *Israel* and *Jerusalem* are often used as symbolical names of the People and Church of Christ, so *Moab*, *Ammon*, and *Edom*, which were kinsmen and neighbours of the literal Israel and Jerusalem, and yet were their bitterest enemies, are symbolical names of persons and societies of men who are allied to the Christian Church by some common articles of religious profession and yet are hostile to her; in a word, heretical and schismatical societies. See above, on Obadiah, *Prelim. Note*, p. 57, and on Isaiah xiii. *Prelim. Note*, pp. 37, 38, and xxxiv. 6, and lxiii. 1, and on Jeremiah xlviii. 1, p. 112, and xlix. 7, and on Ezekiel xxv. 12—14, p. 214; *Keil*, 392. *Kliefoth*, 479, says, "The Moabites and Edomites are representatives of those enemies of Christ's Church who fall away from her and rise up against her. These will be on good terms with Antichrist."

It may be expected, that many heretics and schismatics (the Edomites, Moabites, and Ammonites of modern times) will make common cause with Infidelity against the Christian Church. To apply the words of the Psalmist, "The tabernacles of the Edomites and Ismaelites, the Moabites and Hagarenes, Gebal, and Ammon, and Amalek; the Philistines also with them that dwell at Tyre; Assur also is joined with them; they have helped the children of Lot" (Ps. lxxxiii. 3—8)—their religious Antitypes will be leagued with Antichrist against the Church of God. Being his friends, and submitting to him, they will escape, or be delivered from his rage, in this present world; but it is only of the faithful members of Christ's Church that it is said "*they will be delivered*" (observe, the same word is used there as here) at the Great Day, "every one that shall be found written in the book" (see xii. 1).

⁴² *the land of Egypt* [Papal Rome, "called spiritually *Egypt*" in the Apocalypse (see above, on *v.* 40), will not escape, but will be a victim of the rage of Infidelity.

⁴³ *the precious things of Egypt* [There was an historical foreshadowing of this event also in the acts of Antiochus; he overran Egypt and plundered it (see 1 Macc. i. 17—19). So Antichrist will spoil Papal Rome. The wealth of the Papacy will be secularized by an Infidel Power. Already the territory of the Papacy has been spoiled, and her Monastic Institutions have been suppressed, and their property confiscated to secular uses by the temporal arm in Italy and Spain and other Roman Catholic countries. This is also foretold in the Apocalypse; see below, on Rev. xvii. 16, 17, and the lament in Rev. xviii. 12—14, "The merchandise of gold, and silver, and precious stones, and all things which were dainty and goodly are departed from thee."

—*and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps* [These which were allies of Egypt (cp. Ezek. xxx. 5; Nah. iii. 9) represent here the allies of the spiritual Egypt, i. e. of the Roman Papacy; they will succumb to Antichrist.

⁴⁴ *But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him* [He shall be enraged by some tidings which will still further exasperate him against the Church of God. Antiochus heard, when in Egypt, that the Jews rejoiced at the news of his supposed death, and he raged more fiercely than before against Jerusalem; see 2 Macc. v. 5. 15, "When this that was done came to the king's ear, he thought that Judea had revolted, whereupon removing out of Egypt in a furious mind" ("the great fury" in Daniel), "he took the city by force of arms, and there were destroyed in the space of three days fourscore thousand; and he presumed to go into the holy

Before
CHRIST
about
534.
u Ps. 48, 2.
ver. 16, 41.
2 Thess. 2, 4.
|| Or, *good y.*
† Heb. *mountain*
of *delight of holiness*.
x 2 Thess. 2, 8.
Rev. 19, 20.
a ch. 10, 13, 21.
b Isa. 2, 20, 21.
Jer. 30, 7.
Matt. 24, 21.
Rev. 16, 18.
c Rom. 11, 26.
d Ex. 32, 32.
Ps. 56, 8, & 69, 28.
Ezek. 13, 9.
Luke 10, 20. Phil. 4, 3. Rev. 3, 5, & 13, 8. e Matt. 23, 46. John 5, 28, 29. Acts 24, 15. f Isa. 66, 24. Rom. 9, 21.

⁴⁵ And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in "the || † glorious holy mountain; * yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.

XII. ¹ And at that time shall ^a Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people: ^b and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation *even* to that same time: and at that time thy people ^c shall be delivered, every one that shall be found ^d written in the book.

² And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, ^e some to everlasting life, and some to shame ^f and everlasting contempt.

temple, Menelaus (the priest), that traitor to the laws and to his own country, being his guide;" and committed other enormities (see *rv. 17—26*).

The news from Jerusalem and Palestine came to Antiochus "from the east and from the north," because it reached him in Egypt; and excited him to march northward to the Holy Land, and to assault Jerusalem (see above, on *rv. 28—30*).

This is the historical basis of the prophecy. It foretells that the Infidel Antichrist, just before the final crisis, will receive some intelligence which will exasperate him to a violent paroxysm of frenzy, and stimulate him to make a furious onslaught upon the Church of Christ. Cp. *Rev. xii. 12*.

⁴⁵ *he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace*] Or of his royal military tent; Heb. *apadno* (see *Klief. 481; Keil, 393*).

— *between the seas in the glorious holy mountain*] That is, between the Mediterranean Sea on the west, and the Dead Sea on the east (see on *Joel ii. 20. Zech. xiv. 8. Ezek. xlvii. 18, 19*); and in the *glorious holy mountain* of Jerusalem (see on *viii. 9*, and so *Sept. and Field*, and *Lengerke, Maurer, Hitzig, Keil*).

This could not be said of Antiochus, for he did not "come to his end" in Palestine, but in Persia, B.C. 161 (1 Macc. vi. 1—16. 2 Macc. ix. 1—28. *Polyb. xxxi. 2. Joseph., Antt. xiii. 8. 1*). And while there are many points of resemblance between Antiochus and the Infidel Antichrist, there are some striking differences, which continually remind the reader that the prophet Daniel is *not* speaking of Antiochus, who was a *type* of Antichrist, but of Antichrist the Antitype.

The words which are here used are *not* to be taken literally, but figuratively; as "*the glorious land*," in *v. 41*, is an expression applied metaphorically to the spiritual Israel—the *Christian Church*. See the note there.

This prophecy also is to be explained from *Ezek. xxxviii. and xxxix.* There the Infidel Antichrist, making his last attack on the Christian Church, is described in the symbolical language of prophecy, as Gog, coming with an immense force against *the land of Israel* ("in the latter days" (*xxxviii. 16*), and as rushing thither to his own destruction, and as finding his own grave and that of his immense host "upon the *mountains of Israel*" (see on *Ezek. xxxix. 2, 4—9*, and *Joel iii. 2, 12, 13*, and *Zech. xii. 3*, and *xiv. 2*, quoted above in the note on *v. 41*, to which the reader is requested to refer.)

— *he shall come to his end*] Antichrist will suddenly be cut off; when he has been concentrating his forces in a furious attack on the Christian Church; or, as he has before expressed it, speaking of him under the type of Antiochus, "He shall stand up against the Prince of princes" (cp. *Rev. xvii. 14*), "but he shall be broken without hand" (see above, on *viii. 25, 26*); and so St. John predicts in the Apocalypse, "Satan shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog" (a prophecy taken up from Ezekiel, just quoted), "to gather them together to battle; the number of whom is as the sand of the sea. And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city" (the Church of Christ); "and fire came down out of heaven, and destroyed them" (*Rev. xx. 8, 9*; see the notes there). Then follows the final General Resurrection and the Universal Judgment of the Great Day (*Rev. xx. 11—15*), as here in Daniel *xii. 2*.

CH. XII. 1. *At that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people*] See on *x. 13*, where Christ, Who is here speaking, says, "Michael one of the chief princes came to help Me;" and *x. 21*, where He says, "there is none that holdeth with Me in these things but Michael your prince" (cp. *Jude 9. Rev. xii. 7, 8*). The name *Michael* means "Who is as God?" It is very fitting that he should be

employed to overthrow Antichrist, who will set himself above God. See above, *xi. 36, 37*.

— *there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time*] The times of the last struggle of Antichrist against Christ and the Church are thus described. Our Blessed Lord, by adopting these words, has taught us to apply them to those times, "Then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world. And except those days should be shortened, no flesh should be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened" (*Matt. xxiv. 21, 22. Mark xiii. 19, 20*).

Our Blessed Lord has also taught us to look forward to the last days as days of great tribulation, by the order and character of the eight Beatitudes in the Sermon on the Mount. The eighth or last Beatitude is reserved for those who suffer persecution for righteousness' sake; in that last Beatitude the word "*persecute*" occurs three times, and the word "*blessed*" is repeated (see on *Matt. v. 10—12*).

— *at that time thy people shall be delivered*] Thy people, that is, all faithful servants of Christ, will be delivered at that time, and not before that time. The servants of God must not expect deliverance in this present world (as the wicked may, see on *xi. 41*), but rather affliction and persecution. But the time is coming, when they will be delivered with a great deliverance, "all they who are found written in the book," or, as it is expressed in the Apocalypse, "all they whose names are written in the Lamb's book of life" (*Rev. xxi. 27. Cp. Rev. iii. 5; xiii. 8; xx. 12*).

² *And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt*] Our Blessed Lord refers to these words also, and explains them, when He says, "The hour is coming, in the which all that are in the graves shall hear His Voice, and shall come forth; they that have done good, unto the resurrection of life; and they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of damnation" (*John v. 28, 29*). And He speaks of the *shame and contempt* which will then cover some who have once been glorious in this world, "Whosoever shall be ashamed of Me and of My words in this adulterous and sinful generation, of him shall the Son of Man be ashamed when He cometh in the glory of His Father with the holy angels" (*Mark viii. 38. Luke ix. 26*). In the mention of the angels there is another point of resemblance between those statements of Christ in the Gospels and this prophecy of Christ to Daniel concerning Michael.

On this passage of Daniel, prophetic of the general Resurrection, see *Bp. Pearson* on the Creed, Art. xi., pp. 378, 384, and the notes, where he adverts to the objections raised by some from the word *many* instead of *all*. The assertion that many of them will arise does not imply a denial that *all* will arise; which is proved by other Scriptures (see on *1 Thess. iv. 16—18. 1 Cor. xv. 51. Rev. xx. 5—14*), and here the word *many* seems to signify *multitudes*. The stress is upon it. The Hebrew *min*, used here, sometimes denotes the *author*, or *cause* (*Gesen. 481*). A multitude, formed of those who sleep in the dust, will arise. He uses the word *many*, in order to denote that they who arise will not be few; and that the whole multitude, which is innumerable, of those who sleep will be awakened. Cp. *A Lapide*, and *Kliefoth*, 490. Their vast number will be no impediment to the exercise of the divine power over them. The dead who sleep in the earth in all countries of the globe, from the time of Adam, will be indeed an immense multitude; but this multitude, however great, will be awakened in a moment by the Judge from their graves, and summoned to His Judgment-seat, and each will receive his final doom for everlasting bliss or woe.

³ And ^e they that be || wise shall ^h shine as the brightness of the firmament ;
¹ and they that turn many to righteousness ^k as the stars for ever and ever.

⁴ But thou, O Daniel, ^m shut up the words, and seal the book, *even* to ⁿ the time of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.

⁵ Then I Daniel looked, and, behold, there stood other two, the one on this side of the † bank of the river, and the other on that side of the bank ^o of the river.

⁶ And *one* said to ^p the man clothed in linen, which *was* || upon the waters of the river, ^q How long shall it be to the end of these wonders ?

⁷ And I heard the man clothed in linen, which *was* upon the waters of the river, when he ^r held up his right hand and his left hand unto heaven, and sware by him ^s that liveth for ever ^t that it shall be for a time, times, and || an half ; ^u and when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of ^x the holy people, all these *things* shall be finished.

⁸ And I heard, but I understood not: then said I, O my Lord, what shall be the end of these *things* ?

Before
CHRIST
about
531.
g ch. 11. 33, 35.
|| Or, teachers.
h Prov. 4. 18.
Matt. 13. 13.
i James 5. 20.
k 1 Cor. 15. 41, 42.
l ch. 8. 26. ver. 9.
m Rev. 10. 4.
n ch. 10. 1. ver. 2.
† Heb. tip.
o ch. 10. 4.
p ch. 10. 5.
|| Or, from above.
q ch. 8. 13.
r Dent. 32. 40.
Rev. 10. 5, 6.
s ch. 4. 34.
t ch. 7. 25.
u 11. 13.
Rev. 12. 11.
|| Or, part.
x Luke 21. 24.
Rev. 10. 7.
x ch. 8. 21.

The moral is, Do not be afraid of the *many*. Multitudes will arise and rage against Christ and His Church in the latter days, but none of them can escape death; they will all sink into the dust, and they will all be called forth to be judged by Him at the Great Day. Therefore fear not them, but Him.

S. Augustine (de Civ. Dei, xx. 23), commenting on this passage, says "Ponit aliquando Scriptura pro omnibus, multos. Abraham dictum est, 'Patrem multarum gentium posui te; cui tamen' in alio loco, 'In semine' inquit tuo benedicentur omnes gentes" (Gen. xvii. 5; xxii. 18).

³, *they that be wise shall shine*] Our Lord adopts these words also, "Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father" (Matt. xiii. 43), and He applies them specially to the wise and faithful among His own ministers, "Who is that faithful and wise steward, whom his Lord shall make ruler over His household, to give them their portion of meat in due season?" (Luke xii. 42).

— *they that turn many to righteousness*] Literally, they that justify many, or make them righteous—by the instrumentality of the Word and Sacraments received with faith in "Jesus Christ, the Righteous" (1 John ii. 1), "the Lord our Righteousness" (Jer. xxiii. 6), dying and rising again, Who is made unto us righteousness (Rom. iii. 22; v. 18; ix. 30. 1 Cor. i. 30).

— *as the stars for ever and ever*] When Antichrist is destroyed by the Spirit of the Lord, the people of God, whose names are written in the Book will be saved; and according to the difference of their deserts, some will rise to everlasting life, and some to everlasting shame. The Teachers of divine knowledge will be like to the firmament, and they who have instructed others will resemble the stars in brightness. For it is not enough to know wisdom, unless you teach it to others; "Tacitus sermo doctrinæ, alium non ædificans, mercedem operis recipere non potest" (*S. Jerome*).

⁴, *shut up the words, and seal the book*] Shut up the words of this prediction, and seal the book—the whole book of thy prophecies, now completed, and to be carefully preserved and kept, and therefore rolled up, and sealed, till the latter days, when it will be fulfilled, and be interpreted by the fulfilment. Cp. viii. 26; and below, v. 9.

— *many shall run to and fro*] Rather, many shall diligently seek after and eagerly peruse the words of this prophecy. The Hebrew word *shûl* here used, signifies to traverse the sea, as merchantmen do in ships, in order to visit distant lands and find merchandise there. Cp. Zech. iv. 10, "The eyes of the Lord which run to and fro." 2 Chron. xvi. 9; and Amos viii. 12, "They shall run to and fro to seek the word of the Lord." The consequence of this "running to and fro" is here expressed, *knowledge shall be increased in the latter days*. The world may boast of its own knowledge; but true knowledge can only be increased by diligent and eager perusal of God's Holy Word, especially of the prophetic Scriptures, in the latter days; cp. the rendering of *Syriac*, *Theodotion*, *Arabic*, and *S. Jerome*, "Quod ait pertransibunt, id est percurrent, plurimi, multorum significat lectionem;" and compare *Kliefoth*, 494, and *Keil*, 403.

river, and the other on that side of the bank of the river. And one said to the man clothed in linen, which was upon the waters of the river] Two Angels are seen, one on one side of the river, and the other on the other side of the river, Hiddekel, or Tigris (x. 4), the great river of the sovereign power of the World at that time, Persia. These two Angels wait upon the Man clothed in linen, Who is Christ. He is clothed in linen as our High Priest, Who is ever walking amid the Candlesticks of the Churches, and observing them (Rev. i. 13, and see above on x. 5), and Who stands on the waters (see *rv*. 6, 7), thus showing His power over the stream-like, fluctuating, unsubstantial powers of this world; as He trod on the foaming waves of the Sea of Galilee (see on Matt. xiv. 25. John vi. 19), and as He will tread under His feet at the Great Day all the surging and swelling billows of this World's pride and presumption. These two Angels are ready to do Christ's bidding, on each side of the river. Christ stands on the waters of all earthly things; He has them all under His feet. They flow away, but He remains firm for ever; and Angels attend upon Him on the right hand and on the left hand, and do His commands in all the earth. And they learn the future destinies of the World from Him; they ask Him, "*How long? How long shall it be to the end? or, rather, How long shall the end* (the final crisis) *of these wonders be?*" And He alone, Who is the Eternal Word of God, can answer these questions.

⁷, *he held up his right hand and his left hand—and sware*] To show the certainty of what He said. So in the Apocalypse He stands on the sea, and lifts up His hand to heaven and swears that there shall be time no longer. See on Rev. x. 5—7.

— *for a time, times, and an half*] Three and a half times. See on vii. 25. The word here used is *môed*, it is a cognate word with the Chaldee *iddân*, a set time; see *Gesen*. 457. 609.

This term of *three and a half* years had an historical basis in the persecution of the Hebrew Church and People under Antiochus Epiphanes, which, dating from the coming of Apollonius, the general of Antiochus, to Jerusalem, lasted three years and a half. See *Joseph.*, Bell. Jud. i. 1; and *S. Hippolytus*, p. 155, and *Ussher*, 323, and the passages quoted above, in the note on vii. 25, and on viii. 9.

Whether the final and fiercest persecution of the Christian Church in the days of Antichrist may not last three years and a half, as many of the ancient Expositors have supposed (see *Hippolytus*, 185, and others), is known to God only. It may be so. In the meantime, it may suffice to remember that this period of three years and a half, in which it is said that Antichrist will accomplish "to scatter the power" (or hand) "of the holy people," is a chronological symbol of intense suffering, such as the Hebrew People endured in the days of Antiochus Epiphanes, when the Temple was profaned, and its worship abolished, and idol sacrifices offered upon the altar, and the faith and courage of the worshippers of the Lord were put to the severest trials. What therefore is here said by the "Man clothed in linen," i. e. by Christ, is this: that in the days of Antichrist, the Church will suffer persecution like that (see above, on viii. 23—26; and xi. 36—39. 45), and more severe than that (see *v*. 1) which the Jewish Church suffered in the days

Before
CHRIST
about
534.

⁹ And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words *are* closed up and sealed ^y till the time of the end.

¹⁰ ^z Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; ^a but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but ^b the wise shall understand.

¹¹ And from the time ^c that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and [†] the abomination that ^{||} maketh desolate set up, *there shall be* a thousand two hundred and ninety days.

¹² Blessed is he that waiteth, and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days.

¹³ But ^d go thou thy way till the end *be*: ^{||} ^e for thou shalt rest, ^f and stand in thy lot at the end of the days.

y ver. 4.
z ch. 11. 35.
Zech. 13. 9.
a Hos. 14. 9.
Rev. 9. 20.
& 22. 11.
b ch. 11. 33, 35.
John 7. 17.
& 8. 47. & 18. 37.
c ch. 8. 11.
& 11. 31.
† Heb. to set up
the abomination,
Sec.
|| Or, astonisheth.
d ver. 9.
|| Or, and thou,
Sec.
e Isa. 57. 2.
Rev. 14. 13.
f Ps. 1. 5.

of Antiochus; but as the suffering endured under Antiochus was followed by a glorious victory, due, under God, to the valour of the faithful and courageous Maccabees, so the sufferings of the Church under Antichrist will be succeeded by a triumphant jubilee, and by the dedication of the Temple of the Church glorified in the heavenly Jerusalem.

^{9.} *closed up and sealed till the time of the end* See v. 4.

^{10.} *Many shall be purified, and made white* Cp. xi. 35.

— *none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand* Worldly men boast of their intelligence, but, in fact, they are fools; and they may despise holy men as if they were fools, but they, and they only, are wise; see above, xi. 33.

^{11.} *And from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away* The word “sacrifice” is not in the original. Cp. above, viii. 11, 12, and xi. 31. The prophet is speaking generally of the continual service of the Christian Church, which will be interrupted in the times of the last fierce persecution; as the ritual of the Temple was abolished under Antiochus. The World has already seen some tendencies to this sacrilegious suppression of Christian preaching and worship. In England, the public use of the Book of Common Prayer and Ministration of the Sacraments was prohibited by public authority (A.D. 1613), and churches were closed in France during the great Revolution at the close of the last century. The Apocalypse warns us to expect a time when God’s “Two witnesses” (i. e. the Two Testaments) will be slain in the street of the great city, and will seem to be extinct for a time; see on Rev. xi. 3, 4). And the treatment which God’s Two Witnesses (viz. the Holy Scriptures of the Old and New Testament) are even now receiving from the World, and even from some who vaunt their superior intelligence, and even from Councils and Senates, setting God’s Law at defiance, and treating Holy Scripture as a mere secondary and subordinate thing in elementary public Education—may suggest the solemn reflection that the time there described may not be far distant.

— *the abomination that maketh desolate set up* Some form of Infidelity and Impiety will be established by Law even in the Christian Church, as our Lord Himself foretells (Matt. xxiv. 15); as a heathen altar was set up by Antiochus Epiphanes in the Temple at Jerusalem. That altar, erected with the collusion of recreant priests, such as Jason and Menelaus, creatures and sycophants of Antiochus, was an abomination to God and to all His faithful people, and made that Temple desolate, which was formerly thronged by crowds of worshippers, and deprived it of the Presence of God, Who left it to itself; compare our Lord’s words to the Jews, “Behold your house” (no longer God’s house) “is left unto you desolate.” Matt. xxiii. 38. See on xi. 31.

So will it be in the last times. The Church itself will be betrayed by some in high place in her ministry, and by means of their timid and treacherous concessions and compromises it will be polluted by a form of worship which will make it execrable in the sight of God, and will cause all good men to weep and hide their faces in shame and sorrow, and to forsake the courts of the Sanctuary.

— *a thousand two hundred and ninety days* These numbers, like other numbers in Daniel and the Apocalypse, have an historical basis, and an analogical value and significance. They are easy of explanation from the history of the persecution under Antiochus. That persecution lasted three years and a

half (see above on vii. 25, and here, v. 7), that is, 1260 days. The prophet, building on the groundwork of that historical basis, says that the final and fiercest persecution of the Church will last 1290 days, i. e. thirty days or a month more than the persecution under Antiochus; in other words, that it will be like that persecution, but will exceed it in intensity and duration.

^{12.} *Blessed is he that waiteth* As our Lord says, speaking of that last persecution, “He that shall endure unto the end shall be saved” (Matt. xxiv. 13). Much patient endurance will be necessary in the latter days; but when Antichrist rages most fiercely, then Christ’s Coming will be most near.

— *and cometh to the thousand three hundred and five and thirty days* This also is to be explained analogically from the history of the Hebrew Church in the days of Antiochus Epiphanes.

Judas Maccabæus and his brethren, and other faithful men, endured patiently, and fought nobly for the true faith and worship, and at the last, after 1260 days, or three years and a half from the coming of Apollonius against Jerusalem, and the beginning of the persecution (B.C. 168), they restored the Temple and worship of God; and in the next year (B.C. 161) the Persecutor, Antiochus Epiphanes, suddenly came to his end (cp. 1 Mace. iv. 52 with 1 Mace. vi. 16); and Judas Maccabæus overcame the Edomites and Ammonites, and subdued the cities of Gilead (1 Mace. v. 3—36. 2 Mace. x. 16, 17. 38); and Lysias, the general of Antiochus, and Antiochus Eupator, the son and successor of Epiphanes, granted them full liberty to restore the worship of the Temple, and to live according to their own law; and the Romans concurred in this settlement (see 2 Mace. xi. 1—38). The Jews were blessed in waiting patiently for more than three years and a half, or 1260 days. The term here specified, 1335 days = 1260 + 75 days, i. e. = 3½ years + 2½ months, was probably the time, or very near it, between the beginning of the persecution and the happy settlement here described. In like manner, blessed will they be who endure patiently in the last fierce persecution of the Church, till God arises to restore and to glorify her, and to put all her enemies under the feet of Christ.

^{13.} *go thou thy way—thou shalt rest, and stand in thy lot at the end of the days* Thou shalt rise up from the grave, and stand in thy lot: i. e. remain for ever in it. There is an allusion to the distribution of the conquered land of Canaan by allotment among the Israelites by Joshua (see on Joshua xiv. 1). So our Divine Joshua, Jesus Christ, will assign a lot to each of His faithful soldier servants. To each the promise is, Thou shalt rise from the grave, and receive thy lot in the everlasting inheritance of the heavenly Canaan, and be a partner of the glory and victory of Christ and His Church: thy lot will be there.

They who are alive at Christ’s Coming will not prevent, or go before, them that are asleep (1 Thess. iv. 15). The holy Patriarchs, Prophets, Apostles, Evangelists, Martyrs, and Confessors, and all who have died in the true faith, will rise first; they will all stand, each in his lot, at the end of the days. Then they “that are alive and remain to the Coming of the Lord will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so will they ever be with the Lord.”

“Even so come, Lord JESUS” (Rev. xxii. 20).

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION TO THE MINOR PROPHETS	vii
CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER OF THE PROPHETS	xxix
HOSEA	1
JOEL	29
AMOS	39
OBADIAH	57
JONAH	62
MICAH	70
NAHUM	87
HABAKKUK	95
ZEPHANIAH	105
HAGGAI	113
ZECHARIAH	120
MALACHI	156

INTRODUCTION TO THE MINOR PROPHETS.

THE twelve Minor Prophets form one book¹. This is the light in which they were viewed by the ancient Hebrew and Christian Churches; and in order that their works may be profitably studied, they ought not to be regarded as separate writings, but as constituting one harmonious whole.

It is true that each of these prophetic writings has a distinct character of its own; each does its own appointed work. But that appropriate work of each fits in with accurate precision, and is adjusted with beautiful symmetry, to that which is done by the rest and by all².

"The goodly fellowship of the prophets" may be compared to a row of statues standing in their niches in the west front of some noble cathedral: each has its proper place; but each has also a relation to the others and to the whole; and together they form a group, graceful in unity as well as in its constituent parts.

The writings of the twelve Minor Hebrew Prophets, as well as those of the four Major Prophets, are arranged in chronological order³ in the Hebrew Bibles, and in our authorized English Version. Hosea, who stands at the head of the Minor Prophets, was contemporary with Isaiah, who holds the first place among the Major Prophets. The names of both have a similar meaning⁴. Both prophesied in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, Kings of Judah⁵, that is, at the beginning of the ninth century, and during the greater part of the eighth century before Christ.

The writings of the Minor Prophets extend in a continuous chain with successive links in a parallel line with those of the Major Prophets till the days of the Captivity at Babylon. The series of the Major Prophets ends with Daniel at Babylon. But the line of the Minor Prophets reaches beyond the Captivity to the restoration of the Jews by Cyrus, and to the rebuilding of the Temple of Jerusalem under Zerubbabel and Jeshua, and also to the reparation of the walls of the City under Nehemiah and Ezra, in the fifth century before Christ.

The prophets Haggai and Zechariah strengthened the hands of Zerubbabel and Jeshua, and stirred up the people to rebuild the Temple. The prophet Malachi saw it rebuilt; and he was a fellow-labourer with Ezra, "the Priest and Scribe," in a still greater work, that of completing the Canon of the Old Testament. Malachi is called by the Jews "the Seal of the Prophets."

¹ See Acts vii. 42; xv. 15. *Josephus*, C. Apion. i. 8. *Kimchi* (Præf. ad Hoseam). *S. Greg. Nazianz.* (Carm. xxxiii.) says, "The twelve (prophets) are joined in one book;" and so *Theodoret*, Proem. in Duodecim Prophetas, p. 1308, ed. Schulze, Hal., 1769. Cp. *Hottinger*, Thesaur. Philol. 477. *Keil*, Einleitung, § 81.

² Compare *Delitzsch* (Einleitung in die Prophet. Weissagungsbücher, prefixed to his Commentary on Isaiah, p. xx); and *Dr. Pusey's* Lectures on Daniel, p. 308, who thus writes:—

"It has been pointed out how the citations of each earlier Prophet by those who came after, presuppose that those former books were of recognized authority. Amos, when he opens and almost closes his prophecy with the words of Joel, or applies more extensively those of Hosea, intends manifestly to carry on a message already recognized as Divine. So also Obadiah, when he uses words of the prophecies of Balaam, Amos, Joel, and a Psalm. Micah alludes emphatically to those parting words of his great predecessor in the Book of Kings, to expressions of the Psalms and Proverbs, to Joshua, to David's elegy over Saul and Jonathan, as well as to the Pentateuch; Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Ezekiel, employ words or thoughts of his. Jonah, by adopting the form *And*, joins on his prophetic history to the sacred histories before him, and blends his mission to the heathen with the history of the people of God.

"Nahum, in the opening of his prophecy against Nineveh, manifestly refers to Jonah's appeal to God in regard to it. For Nahum had to exhibit the stricter side of God's dealings as to that same city. God had said in Jonah how He forgave on repentance; Nahum opens his book by saying in that selfsame form of words, that He was indeed longsuffering, but would not

finally spare the guilty. Nahum and Zephaniah use language of Isaiah. Zephaniah uses that of Habakkuk, as also of Joel, Amos, Micah; Habakkuk's hymn shows one well acquainted with the Psalms. Whom does not Jeremiah employ?

"The appeal in his day to the great prophecy of the destruction of Jerusalem in Micah, in its own words, shows that the book must have been in public use.

"Even before the Captivity, God, by Ezekiel, speaks of the prophets before him as one whole; Ezek. xxxviii. 17, '*Thus saith the Lord God, Art thou [Gog] he of whom I have spoken in old time by My servants the prophets of Israel which prophesied in those days many years, that I would bring thee against them?*'

"When, then, Daniel, studying Jeremiah's prophecy of the seventy years of the Captivity, says, '*I understood by the books*' (Dan. ix. 2, i. e. the bible, scriptures), '*the number of the years which the Word of God was to Jeremiah the prophet, to fulfil as to the desolations of Jerusalem seventy years,*' this exactly expresses what we see from the writings of the prophets before the Captivity to have been the fact, that the books of the prophets were collected together.

"The Captivity set God's seal on the true prophets of God over against the false prophets, and gained a reverence for them among those also of the people who had derided and persecuted or slain them before. The former prophets (Zech. i. 4. 6), is a standing expression for the prophets before the Captivity."

³ See the Chronological Table at the close of this Preface.

⁴ See below, *Prelim. Note* to Hosea.

⁵ See Isaiah i. 1, and Hosea i. 1.

⁶ *Hottinger*, Thes. Phil. 483.

In reading the Hebrew Prophets, it is requisite to have a careful regard to those principles of interpretation which were laid down by our Blessed Lord and by the Apostles, and which were applied by ancient Christian Expositors, such as S. Cyril of Alexandria in the Eastern Church, and S. Jerome and S. Augustine (especially in his work on the City of God) in the Western.

This has been too often forgotten. The system of Interpretation which is more popular in recent times, is that described by St. Paul when he says, "The letter" (that is the letter of Scripture taken alone, without the spirit) "killeth; but the spirit giveth life!" This kind of exposition has had the effect of separating Hebrew Prophecy from Christianity, and of isolating it, as if it were a thing to be contemplated at a distance, with which we ourselves have little to do.

The Infidelity now prevalent is due in a great measure to the abandonment of the ancient principles of Interpretation, in the exposition of the Old Testament.

In our own times the Old Testament has been regarded for the most part as a subject for critical disquisitions on matters of History, Geography, and Physics—things most useful and absolutely necessary in themselves, but by no means sufficient for the Interpretation of the Old Testament.

The design of the Old Testament is to prepare the way for Christ; and every reverent expositor of it will make it his principal study to enable the readers of it to see Christ in every part of it.

Unless he does this, he is untrue to his mission; and he is leaving open a wide door for the entrance of Unbelief.

How mean and trivial must many of the incidents in the history of the Patriarchs appear, unless, with St. Paul, S. Justin Martyr, S. Irenæus, S. Jerome, S. Chrysostom, and S. Augustine, and all Christian Antiquity, we read that history by the light of the Gospel, and regard the acts of the Patriarchs as foreshadowings of the history of Christ! As S. Augustine says in his book against Faustus the Manichæan², "Not only the words of the Patriarchs were prophetic, but their lives were a prophecy. All the Hebrew Monarchy was like a grand Prophecy of a Mighty One, namely, of Christ. Therefore not only in those things which the Patriarchs said, but also in what they did, and in all things which happened by God's providence to the Hebrew Nation, we ought to search for prophecies concerning Christ and His Church. As the Apostle St. Paul says, '*figuræ nostræ fuerunt*,' they were types of us³."

If we dwell on the letter of the Old Testament, and do not endeavour to penetrate beneath the surface into its inner spiritual meaning—if we look at it merely as a book affording scope for critical, geographical, and historical discussions, we may become what the Manichæans of old were—ingenious disputers about the Old Testament; but we shall not be firm believers in it, nor make others to be so; but perhaps cavillers against it.

Again, how cumbrous, slavish, and even repulsive, will many of the ritual requirements prescribed in the Books of Leviticus and Numbers appear, if considered simply in themselves, without continual reference to Christ, and to the Great Sacrifice of Calvary!

How superfluous, unaccountable, and incredible are the miracles recorded in the Exodus of the Israelites from Egypt—the three days' darkness, the slaying of the first-born of Egypt, the passage through the Red Sea, the Pillar of the Cloud and Fire; and the Giving of the Law, amid thunders, on Mount Sinai, and the Manna coming down from heaven for forty years, and the smitten Rock gushing with water in the wilderness, and the flowing back of the river Jordan at the presence of the Ark, and the falling down of the walls of Jericho at the sound of the trumpets, and the staying of the sunlight at Bethhoron at the command of Joshua—if these things are regarded merely as incidents in the records of the Hebrew Nation, not exceeding the population of London in numbers, and going to take possession of a petty strip of territory, not much larger than Devonshire and Cornwall! Must not every critical reader, and even a thoughtful child, reject such histories as fabulous, if he is not continually invited by the commentator and preacher on the Old Testament, to read the books of Exodus, Numbers, and Joshua, not merely as historical annals of the Hebrew Nation, but as having a spiritual, prophetic, and typical character, and as recording events which were foreshadowings of the Son of God Himself, and of His Death and Resurrection and Victory over Death and Satan, and of the mysteries of the Gospel, which concern the welfare of all men and all Nations in every age and clime, even to the Day of Doom, and in the countless ages of Eternity?

An Expositor of the Old Testament, who does not continually remind his readers of these truths, is surrendering them into the hands of Scepticism.

There may be, and doubtless have been, many fanciful allegorical speculations of wild en-

¹ 2 Cor. iii. 6.

² Lib. xvii. c. 24.

³ 1 Cor. x. 6.

⁴ See above, for example, the notes on Exodus xii.—xx., and the *Introduction* to Joshua, pp. ix.—xvii, for further illustrations of this statement.

thusiasts in the interpretation of the Old Testament, and these are much to be regretted. But the abuse of what is good does not take away its use; and what is here advocated, is that sound, sober, spiritual interpretation of the Old Testament which is commended to our acceptance and imitation by Christ and His Apostles in the New, and by all primitive Antiquity. The right clue for commenting on the Old Testament was put into the hands of the Church by her Divine Master on the Day of His Resurrection, when He had overcome Sin, Satan, and Death by His Divine Power. In His walk to Emmaus with the two disciples on that day He “began with *Moses and all the Prophets*, and expounded unto them *in all the Scriptures* the things *concerning Himself*.” And He said to His assembled Apostles, “These are the words which I spake unto you while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled which were written in the law of Moses, and in the Prophets, and in the Psalms concerning Me. Then opened He their understanding that they might understand the Scriptures.”

It is evident from these words of Christ Himself, that the primary duty of the Christian Commentator on the Old Testament is to lead his readers to behold Christ “in all the Scriptures;” and that there cannot be any right understanding of the Scriptures, unless their eyes are opened to see Him there. It is much to be feared, therefore, that with all our boasting of greater advances in Biblical Criticism, we have fallen very low from the standard of Apostolic and primitive times, in many of our expositions of the Old Testament. We are wise in the “letter that killeth,” but not “in the spirit that giveth life.”

We have a warning against this servile system of exposition in the history of Hebrew Criticism.

Many of the Jewish Rabbis in our Lord’s age had an accurate knowledge of the original language of the Old Testament; they held it in their hands, and heard it read in their synagogues. Many of them dwelt in the country where most of the events took place which it records. But they did not understand it. The great “Hebrew of the Hebrews,” the holy Apostle St. Paul¹, expressly affirms that the most learned among the Jews did not *know* (that is, did not comprehend) “the voices of the Prophets” which were read in the synagogues every Sabbath day; and that “they fulfilled those Scriptures by condemning Him” of Whom the Prophets wrote. He affirms that “a veil was on their hearts in the reading of the Old Testament,” and he does not hesitate to say, that the manner in which the Spirit giveth life to the reader, is by enabling the inner eye to see Christ in the Old Testament: or, in the Apostle’s words, “the veil is done away in Christ, in the Old Testament: When the heart turneth to the Lord, then the veil is taken away from it.”

Many in the present day study the Old Testament in a spirit not unlike that of the Hebrew Rabbis. They treat it as a common book; and rely on their own philological skill alone for its interpretation. No wonder that a veil is on their hearts in reading and expounding it.

Holy Scripture cannot be otherwise than a sealed book to the most learned and laborious critics, if they do not approach it with meekness and reverence, but handle it with familiarity, and cavil at it in a self-confident, disdainful, and presumptuous temper, as if they themselves were wiser than St. Paul and St. Peter, and all the prophets, and even than He Who inspired them. That such persons as these should not be permitted to understand Scripture, is no marvel. Rather it would be a marvel if they were permitted to do so. Scripture would not be true, if they could interpret it aright. For Scripture tells us that men cannot understand Scripture except by the help of the Spirit Who wrote it. And the Spirit will not deign to enlighten those who grieve Him by self-confident presumption. God is “the Father of lights.” And we cannot see “the wondrous things of His law,” unless He vouchsafes to open our eyes and enlighten them. It is only in His light that we can see light. But He will not enlighten the proud. “He resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble.” “Surely He scorneth the scornors.” “Mysteries are revealed unto the meek.” “Them that are meek shall He guide in judgment; and such as are gentle, them shall He learn His way.” “The secret of the Lord is with them that fear Him.” “He that keepeth the law getteth the understanding thereof.” “If any man willeth to do God’s will, he shall know of the doctrine.” We must become like little children if we would enter the kingdom of God. He hideth mysteries from the wise and prudent, and “revealeth them unto babes.” Balaam’s ass saw the angel, and rebuked the disobedient prophet who rode upon her, who did not see the angel. Spiritual pride is punished by spiritual blindness. The will must be rectified, and the heart must be purified, if the mind is to be clarified, and if the spirit is to be glorified. “In the Scriptures,” says George Herbert¹⁴, “heaven lies flat, subject to every mounter’s bended knee.” Doubtless the

¹ Luke xxiv. 27.

² Luke xxiv.

³ 2 Cor. iii. 6.

⁹ Eccles. iii. 19.

¹⁰ Ps. xxv. 13.

¹¹ Eccles. xxi. 11.

⁴ Acts xiii. 27; xv. 21. ⁵ 2 Cor. iii. 14.

⁶ James i. 17.

¹² John vii. 17.

¹³ Matt. xi. 25.

¹⁴ The Temple, Part I

⁷ James iv. 6. ¹ Pet. v. 5.

⁸ Prov. iii. 34.

reader of Scripture, and much more the preacher of God's Word, and the interpreter of Holy Scripture, must use all helps of sound reason and critical learning, and diligent labour, and careful study, for the understanding of that Word. He must use them with as much industry as if every thing depended on his use of them. But he must use them with reverence, humility, and faith, and with constant and fervent prayer for the illumination and guidance of the Holy Spirit. He must use them with continual and loving communion with Christ, Who is ever walking with devout souls to a spiritual Emmaus, and is opening to them the Scriptures, and is making Himself known to them in the "breaking of bread¹." He must use them with devout attention to every whisper of the Holy Spirit, interpreting one portion of Scripture by another, and to His voice in the Church Universal, especially in her Creeds, which we have received from the unanimous consent of undivided Christendom, and which our Reformers commend to our reverent use in the exposition of Scripture². "Faith," says St. Augustine, "opens the door to the understanding; but Unbelief shuts it." "When I was a young man," says that great expositor³, "I approached the study of the Bible with shrewdness of disputation, and not with meekness of inquiry. And thus by my own perverse temper, I closed the door of the Bible against myself, because I sought with pride for what can only be found by humility." The Written Word is like the Incarnate Word, "it is set for the fall and rising again of many in Israel, and for a sign which shall be spoken against⁴." What Christ says of Himself, the Incarnate Word, is true of the Written Word, "Whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken, and on whomsoever it shall fall it will grind him to powder⁵." It is like Him, "a stumbling stone and a rock of offence," to some; but to others it is like Him, "Who is the corner stone, elect, precious; and he that believeth in Him shall not be ashamed⁶."

The writer of this Introduction has ventured to dwell longer on this all-important subject in this place, because the present portion of a work in which he has now been permitted to labour for nearly twenty years, affords the last opportunity⁷ which he can expect to have of stating the principles on which it has been his earnest endeavour to compose this Commentary on the Prophetical Books, and on the other parts of the Old Testament.

We may now revert to the point from which we have digressed.

The holy Apostles teach us that "whatever things were written aforetime" (that is, were written in the Old Testament) "were written for our learning, that we, through patience and comfort of the Scriptures might have hope⁸." Whatever the Hebrew Prophets spoke, was not spoken by any private utterance of their own, but by the inspiration of the Holy Ghost, by Whose power they were borne along as on a strong stream⁹. The Apostles teach us that "all the Prophets give witness" to Christ¹⁰, and that the Spirit which was in the Prophets was "the Spirit of Christ¹¹." They assure us that the Prophets "inquired and searched diligently concerning the salvation" purchased for us by Christ, and of the grace vouchsafed to us through Him; and that "it was revealed unto them, that not unto themselves, but unto us, they did minister the things which are now reported unto us, by them that have preached the Gospel unto us, with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into¹²."

It is this characteristic of Hebrew Prophecy which imparts a special interest to it. The Holy Ghost, the Comforter, Who was afterwards sent by Christ to teach the Apostles all things, and to guide them into all truth¹³, speaks to us in the Hebrew Prophets. The Hebrew Prophets were not the original authors of their own prophecies. The Holy Ghost was the Author¹⁴. He speaks in them, by them, and *through* them¹⁵. The prophetic writings are *not sources* from which, but they are *channels* through which, the living waters of the Holy Spirit flow.

The truth therefore is, that we, who live under the Gospel, and have the benefit of the exposition which our Blessed Lord and the Apostles and Evangelists have given us, in the New Testament, of

¹ Luke xxiv. 35.

² See the *Reformatio Legum*, by Archbishop Cranmer and others, where it is said that the Articles of the Christian Faith set down in the Creeds, ought always ever to be before the eyes of the expositors of Scripture, who ought never to interpret Scripture so as to be at variance with them (*Ref. Leg.*, De Summâ Trinitate, c. 13).

³ *S. Aug.*, Sermon. 51.

⁴ Luke ii. 34.

⁵ Matt. xxi. 44. Luke xx. 18.

⁶ 1 Pet. ii. 4—6. Rom. ix. 33; x. 11.

⁷ The Commentary on Daniel, though later in publication, takes an earlier place in this Commentary on the Bible.

⁸ Rom. xv. 4.

⁹ See below, on 2 Pet. i. 21.

¹⁰ Cp. Acts x. 43. As *St. Ignatius* expresses it, "The prophets lived a Christward life" (*ad Magnes.* c. 8).

¹¹ 1 Pet. i. 11.

¹² 1 Pet. i. 12.

¹³ John xvi. 13.

¹⁴ See below, on Hos. xi. 1, for some evidence of the unhappy results, in modern days, of the opposite theory.

¹⁵ *διὰ* = through. This is the preposition used in the passages of the New Testament which describe the agency of the Holy Spirit in the prophetic writings. See below, on Matt. i. 22; ii. 5. 15. 17. 23; iii. 3; iv. 14; viii. 17; xiii. 35; xxiv. 15; xxvii. 9; in all which the preposition *διὰ* is used; and in the Nicene Creed, "Who spake by" (*lit.* through) "the prophets."

the meaning of the prophetic writings, and who stand on the vantage-ground of more than two thousand years after them, and see how they have been fulfilled, have a much clearer view of their scope and purport, than the Prophets themselves had, by whose instrumentality they were written¹. They "searched and inquired diligently" what that meaning was. We know what it is. The Holy Spirit, which was in the Prophets, has revealed it to us in the Gospels and Epistles of the New Testament. He has taught us there what He Himself meant when He spake by the Prophets in the Old, and what the Prophets by whom He spake earnestly longed to know; and therefore our Lord says, "Blessed are your eyes, for they see; for verily I say unto you, that many Prophets have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them²."

It would therefore be a low and erroneous notion, to imagine that the Hebrew Prophets have done their work, and that their prophecies belong only to the past. Rather, we may say that they are co-extensive with Christianity, and that they possess a living and growing energy, and are ever adapting themselves to events that are arising from time to time in the Christian Church; and that they will continue to possess this vitality, and to exert this elastic and expansive agency, even to the end.

The Son of Sirach, speaking of them, says, "Let the memorial of the Twelve Prophets be blessed; and let their bones flourish again out of their place³!" This prayer is verified. By reason of the presence and might of the Holy Spirit moving in them and speaking by them, they have a perpetual freshness, a perennial spring; their prophecies have a luxuriant exuberance, and are ever putting forth new leaves, and buds, and blossoms; and they wait for the full ripeness of their summer season, in the last ages of the Church and the World, when they will bear an abundance of spiritual fruitage to be gathered by the hand of Faith⁴.

Hence we need not scruple to say that among all the writings of the Old Testament, none possess a more practical value for all classes of society in the present age, than those of the Hebrew Prophets.

The most illustrious evidence of the divine truth and inspiration of the Hebrew Prophets is reserved to be displayed in the latter days, in the great conflict, which seems even now to be near at hand, between Truth and Error, between Faith and Unbelief, between the Church and the World, between Christ and Antichrist; and in the final victory, which will crown the patience and courage of the faithful, at the consummation of all things, and at the general Resurrection of the dead, and at the Universal Judgment, when Christ will appear in glory. The prophetic writings may be rightly regarded as a Manual, not only for the Christian Preacher, but also for the Christian Citizen, Patriot, and Statesman, who are called to do battle for the Truth in days of doubt and distress, and who may be perplexed and staggered by the temporary success of evil in Civil Polity, and may even be tempted to despair of the cause of piety and of God in the moral government of the world.

If there is any thing which the Hebrew Prophets declare with a more distinct and articulate utterance than another, it is this—that in the latter days of the world, Unbelief and Iniquity will abound, and will triumph for a time; but that eventually all things will be put under the feet of the Divine Governor of the World, the Great Arbiter of the Destinies of Nations; and that all wilful and presumptuous sin will then be punished and crushed; and that Faith, having struggled steadfastly unto the end, will receive a glorious reward.

Thus the Hebrew Prophets supply spiritual comfort to the Christian Confessor in public and private life. They inspire the heart of the soldier of Christ with holy courage, and give him hopes full of immortality.

In the following pages the design has been to supply at the beginning of the work of each several Prophet, a clue to the main purport of his prophecy. The reader is requested to refer to what is there said. But it may be of use to state in a brief synoptical summary what seems to be their leading principle respectively; and thus to exhibit, as it were, in one view the component parts of the whole.

¹ See below, on Hos. xi. 1.

² Matt. xiii. 16, 17. Luke x. 23, 24.

³ Eccles. xlix. 10.

⁴ This truth, which is so well expressed by *Lord Bacon*, (*Advancement of Learning*, p. 101), ought ever to be present to the mind of the expounder and reader of Hebrew Prophecy. *Lord Bacon* says, "Divine Prophecies, being of the nature of their Author, 'with Whom a thousand years are as one day,' have springing and germinant accomplishment through many ages." And the same writer well observes (*Ibid.* p. 267), "that the Scriptures, being written to the thoughts of men and

to the succession of all ages, with a foresight of all heresies, contradictions, and different estates of the Church, are not to be interpreted only according to the latitude of the proper sense of the place, and respectively towards that present occasion whereupon the words were uttered, but have in themselves infinite springs and streams of doctrine to water the Church in every part; and therefore, as the literal sense is, as it were, the main stream, or river, so the moral sense chiefly, and sometimes the allegorical or typical, is that of which the Church has the most use."

The prophet HOSEA, who stands at the head of the Minor Prophets, justifies God's dealings with the Hebrew Nation from the beginning to the end.

Hosea, the first of the Prophets, takes up the language of the last preceding Book of Holy Scripture, that of the Canticles, or Song of Solomon¹. In order to show that Hosea's language is not to be understood literally, but spiritually, and that the Marriage between God and Israel is mystical, Israel is represented by Hosea not only as a beloved *Wife* (as the Church is in the Canticles), but also as a dear *Son*, a type of Christ the beloved Son Himself².

He treats the relation of God to His People under the endearing figure of that of a Bridegroom to a Bride. The Church of Israel was espoused to God in the Wilderness of Sinai; but, as the Prophet declares, she was unfaithful to Him: she followed strange gods; and she is therefore charged by Him with spiritual harlotry and adultery. This, he tells us, was the cause of all her misery. No failure of God's love to her—far from it—was the origin of her woe. He was very merciful and long-suffering to her; but her own sins of unthankfulness and faithlessness to Him, even in those places which had been distinguished by His wonderful acts of love to her, such as the wilderness of Arabia, even Horeb itself, in the first instance, and, when she had been brought by God into the promised Land of Canaan, such places as Beersheba, Bethel, and Gilgal³, places illustrious in her past history as the scenes of God's miracles of mercy to her fathers, were polluted by her sins, which were the bitter source of all her sorrows.

On account of her long-continued and inveterate sins, the Prophet warns her that she must expect to suffer severe punishment. She will be carried away captive from her own land—the land of promise—and be scattered in a distant region. But even in this captivity and dispersion there will be divine love⁴. By the merciful discipline of chastisement she will be weaned from her idolatry; she will be made sensible of her misery, and be humbled and brought to repentance⁵; and she will at last be betrothed again to God, and be restored to Him in Christ.

There will always be a faithful remnant in Israel. Christ Himself will be born of the seed of Abraham. Some of this faithful remnant, especially the Apostles and primitive Preachers of Christ (who were all Jews), will convert the Heathen to the Gospel, which is the fulfilment of the Mosaic Law; and Gentile Teachers will be employed by God to bring the Jews back to Him in Christ. This will be like a resurrection from the dead⁶, a new birth from the grave, into life with God in Christ⁷.

Such is a brief summary of Hosea's prophecy. It is a prophetic history of Israel for nearly four thousand years. It teaches us how to read that history; it gives cheering hopes of the future; and shows that all God's dealings with Israel have been dictated by righteousness and love. And therefore the Prophet concludes with this question and answer:—

Who is wise? and he shall understand these things;
Prudent? and he shall know them.
For the ways of the Lord are right,
And the just shall walk in them⁸.

JOEL, the prophet of Judgment, takes up the message of Hosea, the prophet of Salvation⁹.

By a grand and sublime generalization, Joel teaches his readers to regard the Lord God of Israel as ever speaking to Mankind in His judicial character and office, and leads them to recognize and admire Him as Ruler of the natural world, and as Arbiter of the destinies of Nations, according to certain fixed laws of moral government, by which He orders all things, and will continue to order them even to the end of time.

All judicial visitations upon men and nations, whether they be in the natural world, as plagues of locusts, and other physical epidemics, or by means of mighty Empires, which are instruments in God's hands for punishing sins and for working out His own plans—are parts of one great "Day of the Lord." They are only like oscillations of the pendulum, and like faint notes of the clock, which will sound a final alarm with deep and solemn tones in the summons of the World to the Judgment-seat of Christ¹⁰.

Joel proclaims God's offers of mercy and salvation to the penitent and faithful¹¹; and he foretells the first Advent of the Great "Teacher of righteousness¹²," and the outpouring of the Holy Ghost, the fruit of Christ's coming, on all nations, and the overthrow of all enemies of Christ and His Church in the great final conflict, where they will be gathered together, in what is called by a grand

¹ See below, on Hos. i. 2.

² See on Hos. xi. 1.

⁷ See below, on Hos. i. 10, 11; iii. 5.

³ Hos. iv. 15; ix. 15; xii. 11. Hosea's words are taken up by Amos (iv. 4; v. 6).

⁸ Hos. xiv. 9. See the note there, p. 28.

⁹ On the meaning of their names see on Hos. i. 1; Joel i. 1.

¹⁰ See on Joel, *Prelim. Note*, p. 29.

¹¹ See Joel ii. 20.

¹² Joel ii. 23.

⁴ Hos. ii. 14—23; iii. 4.

⁵ Hos. xi. 10, 11.

⁶ Hos. vi. 1—3; xiii. 13, 14.

metaphor "the Valley of Jehoshaphat," (that is, of the Judgment of the Lord) for His great Harvest and Vintage, when they will be crushed by Him with the same ease as sheaves of corn are crushed under the sharp-toothed engine on the threshing floor, or as ripe clusters of grapes are crushed beneath the feet of him who treadeth the wine-press¹.

Then will be the delivery and victory of the faithful; then will be new outpourings of grace, symbolized by the gushing forth of living waters² from the House of the Lord, to water the parched and barren places of the earth, as in the vision of Ezekiel³; and Judah will dwell safely for ever, for the Lord dwelleth in Zion, the Church militant on earth, to be glorified for ever in heaven⁴.

The next prophet, Amos, takes up the words of Joel⁵, and continues the chain of prophecy. Joel had displayed a sublime view of God's judicial majesty in one magnificent panorama. Amos disintegrates that great whole, and represents the divine attribute of Justice, in its visitations on individual Nations. These Nations not only have a literal significance, but are representatives of various forms of hostility to God and His Church in every age, and especially in the latter days. Such were the heathen nations of Syria, Palestine, Tyre, Edom, Ammon, Moab. All of these are typical nations, and find their counterpart in the history of Christendom.

Amos also declares that God will visit with special judicial chastisement all forms of corrupt religion, and all sins of evil living in His Church⁶. Indeed he dwells upon them with special emphasis and with comprehensive fulness, in seven consecutive chapters⁷. Israel, the ancient Church of God, had received signal blessings from Him; but (as Hosea had already shown) it had requited those favours with unthankfulness. Therefore, after long forbearance, God will scatter Israel. But in that dispersion (as Hosea had already declared⁸) there would be mercy. The chastisement will bring Israel to repentance; and Israel will be gathered in Christ and His Church. Then the tabernacle of David, that was fallen, will be reared from its ruins⁹. A faithful remnant of Israel—the Apostles and first Preachers of the Gospel—will go forth and bring the heathen to Christ¹⁰; and the heathen, in their turn, when they have been converted to Christianity, will assist in restoring the Jews to God in Christ¹¹. The Gentiles, having been evangelized by faithful Jews, will evangelize the Jewish Nation; and finally, Jews and Gentiles will dwell together as brethren and fellow-citizens in the spiritual Sion of the Universal Church of Christ.

The prophets Joel and Amos prepared the way for OBADIAH, JONAH, NAHUM, and HABAKKUK. Joel had proclaimed God's judicial majesty in a sublime and comprehensive prophecy, displaying its acts in one grand panorama, embracing all nature and history, civil and ecclesiastical, even to the Day of doom, and the full and final victory of Christ.

Amos had particularized God's judicial workings in the moral government of the world, and in the divine visitations on its several kingdoms, Heathen and Hebrew, and in the ordering all things, even the penal discipline of Israel's dispersion, for the future triumph of the Gospel, and for the reception of all the faithful of all nations into the Christian Church.

The four Prophets, OBADIAH, JONAH, NAHUM, and HABAKKUK, exhibit God's judicial dealings in a still more special and particular manner, in what may be termed a characteristic series of four prophetic *monographs*.

Obadiah directs his prophecy against Edom; Jonah and Nahum address their predictions to Nineveh, the great capital of Assyria. Habakkuk concentrates his utterances on Babylon, the great city which succeeded Nineveh in the Empire of the East.

But it must be remembered that Edom, Nineveh, and Babylon are not merely literal and historical countries and cities, hostile to Israel and Judah; but they have also a prophetic, representative, and symbolical character. They foreshadow three distinct forms of enmity to the Church and people of God. They exhibit three peculiar phases of the Anti-Christianism of the latter days. Edom, the neighbour and kinsman of Israel and Judah, and yet eagerly seizing every opportunity of displaying an unfriendly and unbrotherly spirit toward the Hebrew People of God; exulting with savage and perfidious delight in their distresses, and especially in the fall of Jerusalem and in the captivity of its king and inhabitants by the armies of Babylon, represents the uncharitable temper of those who have some ties of spiritual neighbourhood and alliance with the Church of Christ, and yet, instead of sympathizing with her in her sorrows, and aiding her in her warfare against unbelief and vice, find

¹ Joel iii. 1. 13.

³ Ezek. xlvii. 1. Cp. 286.

⁴ Joel iii. 20, 21.

⁶ Amos ii. 4; iii. 1—13; iv. 1—13; v. 1—27.

⁷ Amos iii.—ix.

² See on Joel iii. 18, p. 35.

⁵ Amos i. 2. Cp. Joel iii. 16.

⁸ See above, p. xii., and Hos. xiii. 9.

⁹ Amos ix. 11. Cp. the speech of St. James at the Council of Jerusalem, Acts xv. 16, 17.

¹⁰ Amos ix. 12.

¹¹ Amos ix. 14.

pleasure in her sufferings, and exert their influence to thwart, hamper, vex, and weaken her. These are the modern Edomites, who are ready to make common cause even with Babylon itself against the Christian Sion; and they may read a solemn warning to themselves in the prophecy of Obadiah. On the other hand, the faithful Church of God, and every true member of it, may find comfort there, in the assurance of future glory and eternal felicity in Christ¹.

The prophet JONAH was sent to preach repentance to Nineveh, the capital of Assyria, the proud and powerful Empire which showed its enmity against Israel and Judah at different times, in the days of successive Assyrian kings, Pul, Tiglath-pileser, Shalmaneser, Sargon, and Sennacherib.

God's exceeding kindness, even to His bitterest enemies, was thus displayed. He earnestly desired that Nineveh should repent and be saved; and this divine attribute of mercy towards all nations, even heathen Assyrias, is more clearly exhibited, because it stands in striking contrast to that narrow and exclusive spirit of Judaism which showed itself in Jonah himself, grudging and even censuring the extension of God's compassion to Nineveh², and eager to confine His love within the narrow precincts of Palestine.

Jonah himself is a prophecy. The calming of the sea, after his act of self-devotion, was a figure of the peace produced in the troubled sea of the World, after a far greater and more willing Sacrifice. Jonah's three days' burial in the whale's belly, and his resurrection from the sea, and his preaching to Nineveh after that resurrection, and the repentance of Nineveh, and its salvation from the impending doom, was a foreshadowing of the death, burial, and resurrection of a far "greater than Jonah³," and of His preaching of repentance after His resurrection from the grave, by the ministry of His Apostles and their successors, with whom He is "present alway, even unto the end of the world⁴."

The Book of Jonah is like a beautiful rainbow of hope, set by God's hand in the dark cloud of human sin and suffering. It shows that whatever judgments are executed by Him on His bitterest enemies, are not consequences of any desire on His part to punish, but are due to their sins, evoking and arming the divine justice against themselves.

The Prophet NAHUM is the complement of Jonah. Nineveh repented at the preaching of Jonah, but it relapsed into sin, and its moral condition became worse than before, by apostasy. God warned it of its doom by Nahum. And Nahum has also a message to men and nations in these latter days. If, having received the message of the Gospel from the divine Jonah, which is Christ, they fall away by unbelief, as it was prophesied by Christ and His Apostles⁵ that many would do, then they may see their destiny in the prophecy of Nahum, foretelling the misery and shame, confusion, overthrow, and desolation of the great city of Nineveh, which is the prophetic type of the sin and doom of the Infidel form of Anti-Christianism.

The prophet HABAKKUK completes the series of prophets whose writings consist solely of special prophecies directed against particular countries and cities, opposed to God and His ancient People.

Obadiah had prophesied against Edom; and Jonah and Nahum had prophesied to Nineveh; Habakkuk prophesies against Babylon. He shows that Babylon's victories were not due to itself, but that it was used by God for executing His judicial purposes on the Nations of the world, especially on His own people Judah, for their sins against Him; and that though Babylon was employed as an instrument by God⁶, and its power was wielded as a weapon in God's hand, yet that God would visit Babylon also for its presumption and self-confidence⁷; and that though Babylon would prosper and triumph for a time, and though the patience of God's faithful servants would thus be sorely tried, and though the vision of judgment would tarry long, yet it would come at length⁸, and the Divine Omnipotence would eventually be shown, by the overthrow of Babylon, the proud mistress of the Eastern World, and then there would be heard a shout of awe-struck and yet joyful adoration from the lips of the faithful: "The Lord is in His holy Temple, let all the Earth keep silence before Him⁹."

These things "were written for our learning." Habakkuk first casts his eye backward to the victories of the Exodus; and in the language of the sublimest poetry¹⁰ he derives faith and hope for the future, from God's past miracles of mercy to His chosen people; and he closes his prophecy with a noble profession of trust in God. However dark may be the prospects of the Church of God, the true believer will never despair¹¹; no, whatever her outward condition and circumstance may be, "although the fig-tree shall not blossom, neither shall fruit be in the vines, the labour of the olive

¹ See below, Obadiah 19—21.

² See below, *Prelim. Note* to Jonah, p. 62, and Jonah iv. 1—3.

³ See on Jonah i. 17. ⁴ Matt. xxviii. 19, 20.

⁵ Luke xviii. 8. Matt. xxiv. 12. 37. 40. 1 Tim. iv. 1.

⁶ 2 Tim. iii. 1.

⁶ Hab. i. 6—11.

⁷ Hab. i. 12.

⁸ See Hab. i. 12—17; ii. 2—20.

⁹ Hab. ii. 20.

¹⁰ See Hab. iii. 1—15.

¹¹ See Hab. iii. 17.

shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and there shall be no herd in the stalls, yet," he will say, "I will rejoice in the Lord, I will joy in the God of my salvation¹."

Habakkuk's prophecy casts its shadow forward to our own days. As the Edom of Obadiah has its antitype in our own times in the treacherous friends and false allies of the Christian Church; as the Nineveh of Jonah and of Nahum represents the proud self-confident spirit of bold and open Infidelity, so the Babylon of Habakkuk has its counterpart in another form of hostility to God which has long exercised the faith and patience of Christendom.

The Babylon of Habakkuk and of other Hebrew Prophets, especially Isaiah and Jeremiah, is not merely an historical city opposed to the literal Jerusalem, but it has also a typical character. Babylon symbolizes a great Spiritual Power, which is now dominant in the world, and which is called "Babylon" in the New Testament². It resembled that Power in its creature-worship, idolatry, and superstition, combined with a vainglorious profession of spiritual wisdom and sagacity, and of supernatural gifts and abilities to penetrate into the inner mysteries of the unseen world; and by its claim to perpetuity and universal supremacy; and by its oppression of God's faithful people; and by its pride and arrogance and defiance of God, as displayed especially in two critical events, which stand forth in bold relief in the history of Babylon in the pages of Holy writ—namely, first, in the making of the golden image and the setting up of that idol in the plains of Dura, and in the royal decree that it should be worshipped by all nations, on pain of condemnation to death; and secondly, in that great religious festival (for Belshazzar's feast had this character)³ when the rulers and nobles of Babylon praised their gods of silver and gold, and outraged the majesty of God by drinking wine in the sacred vessels taken from His Temple in Jerusalem; and were elated with self-confident joy and exultation, and indulged in festal revelry at a time when the enemy was at their gates, and their own doom was at hand.

The mystical Babylon, which is even now setting up an idol⁴ in the person of the Roman Pontiff, to be adored as divine by all, and which has connected that act with a religious festival of her own institution⁵, in open defiance of the teaching of Holy Scripture and the primitive Church, and in contravention of the unique sinlessness of Christ, may read her own destiny in the prophecy of Habakkuk; and all true citizens of the Christian Zion may derive patience and comfort from it, in the present trials of their faith.

The Book of the Prophet MICAH is inserted between that of Jonah and Nahum, and is set in beautiful relief and bright contrast against the darkness and gloom which characterize the predictions of Obadiah, Nahum, and Habakkuk, denouncing God's judicial visitations on those who rebel against Him.

Micah is the prophet of divine love. He is the messenger of consolation to all nations. He is the herald of universal salvation to all, through Christ.

Jonah had given vent to feelings of resentment and impatience because God spared Nineveh, the great capital of Assyria, the enemy of God's people, to which Jonah, in the exclusive spirit of Judaism, would have restrained God's favour. God had taught Jonah a lesson of sympathy and largeness of heart; and Jonah's history and prophecy had imparted that lesson to others. Micah learnt that lesson, and applies it with affectionate fulness in his prophecy. He declares that though God will visit with judicial retribution all forms of hostility which are symbolized by Edom, Assyria, and Babylon, yet He has mercy in store in Christ for all, even for His bitterest enemies, if they will turn to Him with repentance.

Micah proclaims aloud with a thrice repeated appeal, "Hear ye," the solemn truth, that though God is gracious to Zion, if Zion is faithful to God, yet He does not confine His love to her. No, He will chasten Zion, as He punished Nineveh, if she presumes on His grace, and abuses it to an occasion for sin⁶. He will make her desolate, "for the iniquities of her princes, priests, and people;" "Zion shall be a ploughed field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps, and the mountain of the house," (the Temple itself) "as the high places of the forest⁷." But God will temper judgment with mercy. His promises to David the King of Zion will never fail. The Redeemer will come to Zion, the promised Messiah, God blessed for evermore, He, Whose "goings forth are from everlasting," "He will come forth" as Man "from Bethlehem of Judah⁸." He will come forth as a mighty Conqueror

¹ Hab. iii. 18.

² The reasons for this identification are given at large below, in the notes on the Book of Revelation, xiii.—xvii., pp. 224—252. All successive investigation, and more recent events, have only served to confirm the writer in the conclusion there stated.

³ See above, on Isa. xxi. 6.

⁴ Cp. note on Zech. xi. 17; and above, on Daniel iii. 1—7.

where reasons are given for the opinion that the idol was an image of the ruler of Babylon himself.

⁵ That of the Immaculate Conception, on which day the Roman Council met, Dec. 8, 1869.

⁶ Micah i. 2—13; ii. 1—12; iii. 1—12.

⁷ Micah iii. 12.

⁸ Micah v. 2.

and will overthrow His enemies, symbolized by Assyria¹ the foe of Israel and Judah, and will raise up shepherds to feed His flock, and rulers to guide them and to defend them from their adversaries. In other words, Christ, Very God and Very Man, begotten of His Father from eternity, and born as Man of the Virgin Mary, of the seed of David, of the house of Judah, at Bethlehem, will overthrow the spiritual enemies of all true Israelites. He will vanquish Sin, Satan, and Death. He is "the breaker up" Who will tear asunder the bars of the grave, and raise Himself, and lead forth the glorious army of His saints from the darkness of the tomb. "Their king shall pass before them, and the Lord on the head of them²." The result of that glorious victory will be, that "out of Zion will go forth the law, and the Word of God from Jerusalem." The Gospel of Christ will be preached by His Apostles, sent forth by Him from Jerusalem to teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost³. Jerusalem will be the Mother Church of Christendom. "The mountain of the Lord's house" (*that* house which will have been laid desolate like a ploughed field for its sins⁴) "shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills, and all people shall flow unto it, and many nations shall come and say, Come and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord and to the house of the God of Jacob, and He will teach us of His ways and we will walk in His paths."

The Temple of Jerusalem will be destroyed; but out of its ruins will arise a nobler fabric, the Christian Church. The Law will be fulfilled in the Gospel. The Temple will be spiritualized, and Jerusalem will expand and develope herself with living energy and comprehensive universality, and will enfold all nations in the Catholic Church of Christ; and the Jews, once rebels against God⁵, will at length be brought by the agency of Gentile Christians into the fold of the One Shepherd.

Therefore well might the Prophet exclaim, with this glorious vision of the future before his eyes, "Who is a God like unto Thee, that pardoneth iniquity? He retaineth not His anger for ever; because He delighteth in mercy. He will turn again, He will have compassion, He will subdue our iniquities, and Thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea⁶."

The prophet ZEPHANIAH is the ninth of the Minor Prophets, and is the last of that order who prophesied before the Captivity at Babylon.

Zephaniah does for the Two Tribes the same prophetic work which had been done for the Ten Tribes of Israel by Hosea, who stands at the head of the Minor Prophets. He utters a warning voice of coming judgments to Jerusalem, as Hosea had done to Israel: he foretells that Jerusalem will fall, and that Judah will be carried away captive for her sins, as Israel had already been⁷.

He declares also that the God of Israel and Judah is supreme Governor of the World, and that the triumphs of Assyria and Babylon over Israel and Judah were not due to their own power, but that the God of Israel and Judah used those mighty nations as His own instruments for vindicating His own majesty, and for manifesting His own glory, and for executing His judgments on His unthankful people.

But Zephaniah also assures Judah, as Hosea had assured Israel, that God's love to His people had never failed, and that it never would fail.

Both these prophets minister spiritual consolation to all God's people in every age, and cheer them with the promise, that all who remain faithful to God will be sheltered in all tempests⁸, civil and ecclesiastical, and will be saved in time and eternity.

They also proclaimed God's love to the Gentile Nations of the world.

They foretold that the mighty Empires of the earth will fall, and that their proud Dynasties will be humbled. They declared that God would thus wean the Nations from trusting in their false deities, and prepare them for the reception of a purer faith in the Gospel of Christ; that He would give them "a clean lip," and He would cleanse them from idolatry; and that with those lips, with which they had once worshipped false gods, they would "call upon the Name of the Lord, and serve Him with one consent⁹."

They predicted that the Gentiles, having been converted to Christ by the faithful remnant of Israel (namely by the Apostles and first preachers of the Gospel, going forth from Jerusalem), would in their turn supply Christian Missionaries for the conversion of Israel and Judah, scattered abroad and humbled by captivity and dispersion, and liberated even by that captivity from their besetting sin of idolatry, and healed by that wholesome discipline; and so, in God's due time, Jerusalem, the

¹ Micah v. 5.

² Micah ii. 13.

³ Matt. xxviii. 19.

⁴ Micah iii. 12.

⁵ Micah vii. 12—19.

⁶ Micah vii. 18—20.

⁷ Zeph. i. 4—18; iii. 1—4.

⁸ The name *Zephaniah* signifies, *Whom the Lord hides*; *Hosea* signifies, *Saviour*. See on Zeph. i. 1. Hos. i. 1.

⁹ Zeph. iii. 9.

mother of Christendom, would be a praise in all the earth. The Lord her God would be in the midst of her¹; He would dwell with her for ever in the Christian Church, which had her origin in Sion. The world itself would be a spiritual Jerusalem. Jew and Gentile will dwell together as fellow-citizens and fellow-members of Christ; and God's words by Zephaniah will then be fulfilled, "I will make you a name and a praise among all the people of the earth²."

More than a century passed between the age of Zephaniah and the next following prophet, HAGGAI.

In that interval Jerusalem had been taken, and its king, princes, and people had been carried captive to Babylon³.

But Babylon also in her turn had felt the power of God. Cyrus, His servant, had done His work, and had punished Babylon for her sins; and having executed His judgments on Babylon, Cyrus performed God's purpose of love towards His chosen people, by issuing a royal decree for their liberation from Babylon, and for their return to Jerusalem, and for rebuilding the Temple at Jerusalem, and for the restoration of the sacred vessels which had been taken from the Temple by Nebuchadnezzar, and had been placed in his idol's temple, and had been sacrilegiously profaned by Belshazzar at that festal anniversary when Babylon was taken.

These events had been foretold by foregoing Hebrew Prophets, by Isaiah, Micah, Habakkuk, Jeremiah, Zephaniah, and Daniel. Thus the faith of God's People in the inspiration of their own prophets had been confirmed; and their reverence and love for Him Who had spoken by the prophets, and had humbled their powerful enemies, Assyria and Babylon, and had raised up Cyrus, the great conqueror of Babylon, to be His instrument for their good, had been quickened and invigorated; and a pledge and earnest had been given them that the other predictions which God had uttered, or might hereafter utter by His servants the prophets, would in due time be fulfilled also.

This is what imparts a special interest and value to the writings of the three prophets who now follow, HAGGAI, ZECHARIAH, and MALACHI.

The prophetic vista had now been cleared. Israel had been dispersed; Nineveh had fallen; Judah had been scattered; Babylon had fallen; Judah had been restored. No great events like these now remained, to arrest the eye and to intercept the view of the faithful in looking at the prospect lying before them, between their own age and the Coming of Christ.

Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi are in a special manner the prophets of Christ's first Advent, and of its consequences, even till His Second Coming to judge the world.

The mission of Haggai was to stimulate the flagging energies of the exiles who had returned from Babylon. The ancient men among them, who remembered the magnificence of the first Temple, wept when they saw the foundations of the second Temple⁴. But the Prophet cheered them⁵, not, indeed, with any promise of material splendour (for the latter house was "as nothing in comparison⁶" with the former), but with the joyful assurance that the glory of the second Temple, which they themselves were building, would be far greater than that of the former, because the Lord of the Temple Himself, "the Desire of all Nations"⁷ would come to that Temple, and by coming to it would fill that house with glory; and that in that place He would give peace⁸. This prophecy was fulfilled when Christ, "God manifest in the flesh," came to that latter house. He was presented there; He taught and healed there; He filled it with the Divine Glory by His Coming, and gave peace and salvation, and promise of eternal bliss by His Presence. Therefore, when this prophecy was accomplished, the devout Simeon was enabled to say in the Spirit, as he took up the infant Saviour in his arms, "Lord, now lettest Thou Thy servant depart in peace, for mine eyes have seen Thy salvation⁹."

The prophet ZECHARIAH was a contemporary of Haggai; and his prophecies are a sequel to those of Haggai, and are continued in a series of prophetic visions from his own days to those of Christ's first Advent, when He came to save, and even to those of His Second Advent, when He will come again to judge.

Zechariah's prophecies are obscure to the Jews; and no wonder; because they read them with a veil on their hearts. But "that veil is taken away in Christ¹⁰." The darkness of these predictions is dispelled by the light of the Gospel.

Here is a striking proof of the inspiration of the prophet Zechariah, and of the truth of the Gospel. Each is fitted to the other. His prophecies are fulfilled in the Gospel, and are made clear by it.

¹ Zeph. iii. 17.

² Zeph. iii. 20.

³ Compare below, *Introductory Note* to Haggai, p. 113.

⁴ Ezra iii. 12.

⁵ Hag. ii. 2—4.

⁶ Hag. ii. 3.

⁷ See on Hag. ii. 6—9.

⁸ The Hebrew word for *peace* (*shālôm*) has a far wider sense than our English word (*peace*), by which it is rendered. It means salvation from enemies, and peace after it, and happiness.

⁹ Luke ii. 29.

¹⁰ 2 Cor. iii. 4, 15, 16.

The first vision of Zechariah reveals the Divine Presence and Power protecting the Hebrew Nation, at that time in a poor estate, like a lowly grove of myrtles in a valley¹. But God was with them there, as He was at Horeb, in the burning bush, which represented the Hebrew Nation in Egypt, then like a lowly bush, a bush burning with fire, but not consumed².

The Divine Presence is symbolized by a red horse—an emblem of power and battle; and behind him are red horses, His ministers, showing that the Powers of the world are servants of the God of Israel, Who will use them for the defence of His own people³.

The next vision represents four horns⁴, the symbols of aggressive power. These four horns (as the prophecies of Daniel had prepared the readers of Zechariah to understand⁵) are emblems of the four great earthly Monarchies, opposed to the people of God. And as the number *four* is a scriptural symbol of universality in space, these four horns, in a secondary sense, represent all earthly powers antagonistic to the Church of God.

The future overthrow of all such worldly Powers is pre-announced in the next vision of the four *Carpenters*, or *Smiths*, who are shown to the Prophet by the Lord⁶.

These four Carpenters, or Smiths, are the spiritual adversaries of the four horns which represent the worldly and irreligious power. As their name intimates, they have not only a destructive commission, but also a constructive office; they not only overthrow what is evil, but they also build up what is good. They “fray and cast out the horns” which had scattered God’s people⁷.

Their fourfold character displays them as opposed to the four great worldly Monarchies; and also, in a spiritual and secondary sense, as the instruments in God’s hands, in all the four corners of the earth. And thus they symbolize the power of the fourfold Gospel preached to all Nations, even to the four winds of heaven, by the Apostles and their successors in every age; and overthrowing the powers of the world, and building up the Church of God⁸.

Fifthly, therefore, is this vision followed by another which reveals an angel from heaven with a measuring-line in his hand for the building up of Jerusalem⁹. This vision also has both a literal and a spiritual significance. It displays the building up of the literal Jerusalem, notwithstanding the opposition of her enemies; and it foreshadows the building up of the spiritual Jerusalem, the Church of Christ, by divine power in spite of all human antagonism¹⁰, and the perpetual dwelling of the Lord in the midst of her, and the flowing in of all Nations to find a home there.

The next vision reveals another form of conflict between the powers of good and evil.

Satan himself is displayed as opposing Joshua the High Priest¹¹, the spiritual representative of God’s ancient people, the Jews, on their return from the Babylonish Captivity to Jerusalem.

In former prophecies it had been revealed, that the Temple at Jerusalem and the walls of the City would be rebuilt, in spite of all worldly hostility. And now it is declared, that, notwithstanding the antagonism of Satan himself, the Priesthood would be preserved, as a brand plucked from the fire by God’s hand; and that it would be purified from taint of sin, represented by the filthy garments in which Joshua was clothed; and be invested with dignity and glory¹².

This vision was partly fulfilled in the restoration of the Ritual of the literal Temple at Jerusalem; but its adequate fulfilment is in Christ.

Christ is the Divine Joshua, or Saviour; He is the One Great and Everlasting High Priest; He is ever ministering in the true Holy of Holies. He has exchanged the garments of humility and the robe of “the likeness of sinful flesh¹³,” in which for our sakes He vouchsafed to be clothed on earth, for the glorious apparel and splendid mitre of an everlasting Priesthood in the heavenly Jerusalem. Therefore Joshua and his companions are described in the vision as “men to be wondered at¹⁴.” That is, they are types of another and mysterious Priesthood, the Priesthood of Christ, to be contemplated with awe and amazement.

This interpretation throws light on what follows.

The vision of Joshua, the type of Christ’s Priesthood, prepares us for the view which is next presented to us, of Christ Himself in His threefold office, as Prophet, Priest, and King; and of Christ’s Church, which derives all her light from Him in His two Natures, Very God and Very Man, suffering for the sins of the world, and glorified by suffering.

The beautiful harmonies of Zechariah’s prophecies are awakened by the breath of the Holy Spirit in the Gospel, as by a heavenly breeze stirring and attuning the golden strings of a divine harp. The one is adjusted to the other. The one proves the divine origin of the other.

The manifold functions of Christ are displayed in the many names by which He is designated

¹ Zech. i. 8.

² Exod. iii. 2.

³ See Zech. i. 8.

⁴ Zech. ii. 1.

⁵ See on Zech. i. 18.

⁶ Zech. iii. 1—3.

⁷ Zech. i. 18.

⁸ Zech. i. 21.

⁹ See below, p. 124.

¹⁰ Zech. ii. 5—13.

¹¹ Zech. iii. 1—3.

¹² Zech. iii. 4, 5.

¹³ Rom. viii. 3.

¹⁴ See on Zech. iii. 8.

¹⁵ See on Zech. iii. 8.

by Zechariah. He is Joshua, because He is our High Priest : He is Zerubbabel, because He is our Prince, of the regal race of Judah. He is also called "the Branch;" "Behold, I will bring forth My Servant the Branch¹," says the Lord. Christ is the Branch from the root of Jesse and stem of David.

In His Human Nature He is the Lord's "Servant," coming in the flesh in order to do His will. He is also the Stone², "the elect Corner Stone," which joins together the two walls of the Jew and Gentile in one; and the "Stone cut out without hands³," which becomes a mountain and fills the earth; and He is the Stone "engraven with seven eyes," because He is illumined with the sevenfold gifts of the Spirit. And the blessings of redemption and peace which flow from these attributes and offices are described by the Lord Himself: "I will remove the iniquity of the land" (or of the earth) "in one day" (the day of the Messiah). "In that day shall ye call every man his neighbour under the vine and under the fig-tree⁴."

This Vision of Christ is succeeded by a Vision of His Universal Church, symbolized by the seven-branched Candlestick, of pure gold, whose pipes are fed with oil flowing into them from two Olive-trees, standing on the right and left side of it⁵. These two Olive-trees, representing the continuity of that supply by their vitality and verdure, are called "the two anointed ones," or literally, "the two sons of oil," which stand by the Lord of the whole earth⁶.

The Candlestick represents the Church of Christ⁷. This explains the circumstance that, together with the candlestick, there is conjoined a mention of the Temple, and of its foundation and completion by the Spirit of God⁸. The reason is, that the Temple and the Candlestick are figures of the Church. The Temple typifies its solidity and symmetry, due to the Spirit of God; the seven-branched Candlestick of pure gold prefigures the Universal Church of God in the purity of its doctrine, and as diffusing throughout the whole world the light which it receives from the oil of the Spirit. The two Olive-trees, or "Sons of oil," which stand before the God of the whole earth, represent the kingly and priestly offices of Christ. These offices He discharges as Very Man, anointed by the Holy Ghost at His Conception and at His Baptism. Therefore He has the Name Messiah, Christ, or Anointed One⁹. "He is anointed with the oil of gladness above His fellows¹⁰," and all the unction of Christians flows on them from Christ their Head. "Ye have an unction from the Holy One," says the Apostle¹¹. He, the Everlasting King and Priest, "hath made us to become kings and priests to God¹²" by virtue of His Incarnation, Kingdom, and Priesthood, and of our mystical incorporation in Him; and He "stands before the Lord of the whole earth." He is ever standing at God's right hand, as our King, ruling the world and defending His People; and as our Priest, making intercession for us; and "of His fulness have all we received, and grace for grace¹³."

The next vision represents Christ's judicial office. He is merciful and loving to all who believe and obey Him; but for those who do not believe and obey, there is a sweeping malediction, represented by the flying roll which goeth forth over the face of the whole earth. None can escape it¹⁴. This is directed against moral delinquencies; and there is also a special punishment for false doctrine.

The true Church is represented by a woman; she is the Bride of Christ. The false Church is also represented by a woman, the harlot. Zechariah is explained by St. John in the Apocalypse, This woman, the corrupt Church, is punished by being placed in an ephah¹⁵; and she is carried for her sins from Jerusalem to the Land of Shinar, that is, to Babylon¹⁶. Here, also, Zechariah is again illustrated by St. John in the Apocalypse. The woman carried away from Sion to Babylon, is the corrupt Church of the Apocalypse, who is there called "the woman, the harlot," and "Babylon¹⁷." Her doom, pronounced by Zechariah, is more fully described by St. John.

The following vision displays the Universal Sovereignty of the Lord God, ruling in all kingdoms of the world, and using them as His instruments for the accomplishment of His purposes, and for the execution of His judgments.

This truth is declared by the four chariots¹⁸, which represent primarily the four great earthly Empires of ancient history; and secondarily, since the number *four* is the Scriptural symbol of all space¹⁹, these four chariots²⁰ typify all earthly dynasties. The chariots go forth from the brasen

¹ Zech. iii. 8.

² Dan. ii. 34.

³ Zech. iv. 2—11.

⁴ See on Zech. iv. 2.

⁵ See verses 6—11 of this chapter.

⁶ Zech. iii. 9.

⁷ Zech. iii. 10.

⁸ Zech. iv. 14.

⁹ Cp. Acts iv. 27; x. 38. God anointed Jesus of Nazareth

¹⁰ Heb. i. 9. Ps. xlv. 7.

¹¹ 1 John ii. 20.

¹² Rev. i. 6; v. 10.

¹³ John i. 16.

¹⁴ See on Zech. v. 8. And she is called "wickedness" in the *Sept.*, ἀνομία, a remarkable word, especially when taken in connexion with the δ ἄνομος of St. Paul, describing the "lawless one" who sits in the Temple of God, i.e. in the Church of Christ, claiming for himself the divine attributes of infallibility and universal supremacy. See below, on 2 Thess. ii. 3.

¹⁵ The *Sept.* here has "the land of *Babylon*."

¹⁶ See Rev. xvii. 1. 3. 5—7. 15. 16. ¹⁷ Zech. vi. 1.

¹⁸ See on Matt. x. 2; xxiv. 31. Rev. vii. 1, and Rev. p. 215.

¹⁹ Zech. vi. 5.

with the Holy Ghost.

mountains of God's might and power: they are compared to winds issuing forth from the Lord of the whole earth¹. They go forth from His presence like winds let loose from a cave, to sweep over the earth with irresistible power, and to do the work of Him Whose emissaries and servants they are.

This universal kingdom is next represented as given to Christ. He is "the Man Whose Name is the Branch²." He is both Priest and King³. He was typified by Joshua the Priest, and by Zerubbabel the temporal Ruler and builder of the Temple at Jerusalem. The crowns brought by the people of the Captivity are given to Joshua the Priest⁴, in order to signify that the time would come when the Royalty would be united with the Priesthood. This has been fulfilled in Christ. He is the Builder of the True Temple; He is the Eternal Priest and Universal King of the Spiritual Jerusalem, the Christian Church. What Zechariah foretold is accomplished in Him, "He shall build the Temple of the Lord, and He shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon His throne; and He shall be a Priest upon His throne⁵."

These visions, which unfold great truths of the Christian Faith, are followed by precepts concerning godly practice. The utter hollowness of all religious professions, and of all ceremonial observances, without the exercise of the moral virtues of truth, justice, mercy, and charity, is declared in strong language⁶;" and thus a prophetic protest is delivered against that hypocritical Pharisaism which corroded the vitals of the religion of the Hebrew Nation in later days, especially in our Lord's age, and which also has been one of the most pestilent cankers of the Christian Church.

Almighty God proffers an abundance of blessings to His people; but the fulfilment of these gracious promises, it is distinctly declared, is contingent on their own acts⁷. If they cleave to Him by faith and obedience, then, it is affirmed, they will be a blessing to themselves and others. The Heathen Nations of the world will be brought into communion with God by their means. "Ten men will take hold out of all nations of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you, for we have heard that God is with you⁸." This has been fulfilled by Christ and by the faithful remnant of Israel, especially the Apostles, all of whom were Jews, and by other first preachers of Christianity, who were enabled by their commission from Christ, and by the power of the Holy Ghost given to the Church at Pentecost, to be instruments in God's hands for bringing the Heathen Nations to Him; and the eagerness with which the Heathen embraced the Gospel preached by them is described in the vivid language of the prophet, "Ten men will take hold out of all nations of the skirt of him that is a Jew."

Such is God's purpose of love to the Heathen, if they believe and obey Him. But, as it is in His dealings with the Jews, so it is in His overtures to the Gentiles. There is mercy, on the one hand, to the penitent, but there is retribution to the ungodly. God is ready to be the Saviour of all who believe, both Jew and Gentile; and He is also the righteous Judge of all.

This truth is declared in what follows. God there reveals His judgments against Heathen Nations relying on their own power, wealth, and wisdom, such as Persia, Syria, Tyre, and Philistia⁹. But even in these chastisements there was compassion. The humiliation of these Nations by the arms of Alexander the Great (who, like Nebuchadnezzar and Cyrus before Alexander, and like the Roman Power after him, was an instrument in God's hands preparing the way for Christianity) broke down their faith in the power of their local and national deities, who, as they found by experience, were not able to help and defend them in their danger; and thus, by a salutary discipline of affliction, predisposed them to receive the Gospel of Christ¹⁰. Hence, therefore, the Prophet passes from a view of Alexander's conquests to describe the victories of a greater Conqueror, Jesus Christ: just as Zechariah's predecessor, the Evangelical Prophet Isaiah, having described the successes of Cyrus, the conqueror of Babylon and the liberator of the captive Jews, proceeds to hail the victorious career of Christ, subduing all His enemies and redeeming a captive world¹¹.

How striking is the contrast! Christ, the Son of God, is seen riding in His triumphal entry into His capital city, Jerusalem, not in a magnificent chariot drawn by snow-white horses, not mounted on a martial charger champing a golden bit, like the Emathian conqueror, Alexander the son of Philip, on his famed war-horse Bucephalus, but "lowly and meek, riding on an ass, even on the foal of an ass¹²."

This vision is to be the signal of rapturous ecstacy to Jerusalem. "Rejoice greatly, O daughter

¹ Zech. vi. 5.

² Cp. Zech. iv. 14.

³ Zech. vi. 1. 13.

⁴ Zech. viii. 1.

⁵ Zech. vi. 12.

⁶ Zech. vi. 11.

⁷ Zech. vii. 3—14.

⁸ Zech. viii. 23.

⁹ Zech. ix. 1—6.

¹⁰ See on Zech. ix. 7.

¹¹ See above, *Prelim. Note* to Isaiah.

¹² Zech. ix. 9.

of Zion; shout, O daughter of Jerusalem: behold, thy King cometh unto thee: He is just and having salvation; lowly and riding upon an ass, even upon the foal of an ass¹."

The might of Christ, the King of the Spiritual Zion, is declared to be her sufficient safeguard and support. She is secure under the rule of Him, Who does not need the help of chariots and horses, but rides on in meekness to victory.

The day (it is foretold) is coming, when the Church will be deprived of all earthly helps, supports, and defences. "The chariot will be cut off from Ephraim and the horse from Jerusalem, and the battle-bow shall be cut off²;" but still, though the World is no longer for her, but against her, Christ's kingdom will be extended to the heathen, who will look on Him as their Saviour. It will be universal in extent and everlasting in duration³.

This glorious deliverance from the bondage of Sin and Death is to be purchased by blood, "the blood of the covenant," the blood of Christ. This is the price to be paid for the redemption of Zion and of the World from the prison-house in which they lie like captives in a pit. They are freed from it by that redemption; and instead of being prisoners of death, they become "prisoners of hope⁴;" and they exchange the dark dungeon of their captivity for the strong fortress of salvation. The battle-bow of earthly power is cut off; but Christ is a victorious Conqueror: He triumphs by His own death; and He is a warlike Archer, riding with a bent bow in His hand, and discharging His arrows against His enemies. Zechariah adopts the imagery of the Psalmist, which is reproduced by St. John in the Apocalypse, where Christ is displayed as riding with a bow in His hand, on His glorious career, "conquering and to conquer⁵."

The arrows of Christ were the Apostles and first preachers of the Gospel. He took these arrows from His quiver and discharged them from His bow, like missiles to subdue His enemies, and to overcome the heathen World, and to make it subject to His peaceful sway. Christ is ever riding as an Archer in Christian Missions; and, in the ordination of Christian Ministers to their apostolical and Evangelical office, He is ever sending forth His arrows, winged with feathers from the plumage of the Divine Dove.

Zechariah's words are ever being fulfilled, "The Lord shall be seen over them" (like a mighty Archer bending His bow and scattering His enemies, who fall backward before Him⁶); "and His arrows shall go forth like lightning; and the Lord God shall blow the trumpet" (the trumpet of the Gospel), "and shall go with whirlwinds of the south" (with irresistible power); "and the Lord God shall defend them; and they shall be like jewels in His crown." And the consequence of this victory will not be carnage and desolation; but salvation and joy, and a feast of spiritual delight in the Word and Sacraments of Christ. "How great is His goodness, and how great is His beauty! corn shall make the young men cheerful, and new wine the maids⁷."

The Prophet returns to contrast this blessed consummation with the evil results of disobedience and idolatry. Evil shepherds—bad rulers, civil and ecclesiastical, will be punished for their sins; and God will take away from them their office and give it to others, namely to faithful Teachers raised up by Christ from the people of God. "Out of him" (that is, from Judah) "Christ will come forth;" He Who is the "corner stone" which supports the fabric of the Church, and in which the two walls of the Jewish and Gentile world meet in one; and "the nail" (or peg) to which the cords of the tent of the Church are braced, and by which it is kept firm in the ground, so as not to be torn up or shaken by storms; and "the battle-bow," by which she overcomes her enemies⁸. By means of the preaching of those whom Christ sends forth, the Heathen will be evangelized; and not only so, but the Jews themselves, scattered abroad in all countries hostile to Israel—which are represented by Egypt in the south and Assyria in the north—will be brought into the True Zion, the Church of Christ⁹.

Having thus foretold the future gathering together of Israel, the Prophet goes back, in order to specify the cause of their dispersion, and to account for it.

It might have been supposed, that in Zechariah's days, when the Temple and Walls of Jerusalem had just been rebuilt, and the great Empire of Persia, in the reigns of Cyrus and Artaxerxes, had favoured their restoration, there would be no more scattering of Israel. But the prophet Zechariah, being inspired by the Holy Ghost, reveals the marvellous and almost incredible fact, that Jerusalem would again be destroyed; and that her inhabitants would again be scattered abroad, on account of a sin far greater than any committed by their forefathers, namely the rejection and murder of their True Shepherd, the Messiah, Who is co-equal with Jehovah

¹ See on Zech. ix. 9.

² See on Zech. ix. 10.

³ Zech. ix. 10.

⁴ Zech. ix. 12.

⁵ See below, on Zech. ix. 13, and Rev. vi. 2.

⁶ As seen in some of the sculptured monuments of Nineveh.
See Zech. ix. 13, 14.

⁷ Zech. ix. 17.

⁸ See on Zech. x. 4.

⁹ Zech. x. 7—12.

Himself¹. He foresees the destruction of Jerusalem; he foretells the desolation of all the noble mansions of that city, which had just been rebuilt. "Howl, fir-tree²; for the cedar is fallen." He explains the reason of this catastrophe. Her shepherds have been faithless; they have not been true to their commission to feed His flock, but have slaughtered it for the gratification of their own carnal appetites. It has become "a flock of slaughter;" and they glory in their shame³. Therefore their commission is revoked. God sends to Jerusalem a faithful Shepherd, "the Good Shepherd," which is Christ. But they will reject Him with scorn; they will appraise His faithful service at the pitiful price of thirty pieces of silver⁴. This is cast to the potter. The Lord rejects them because they reject Him; and He, the True Shepherd, breaks asunder His pastoral staves, "Beauty and Bands⁵," the symbols of the blessed effects of His pastoral work, which would have invested His people with spiritual grace and glory, and would have bound them to one another and to God⁶. Zechariah reveals the mystery, which has now been cleared up in the eyes of the world, that the Jews would destroy themselves, and be outcasts from God, and be scattered abroad, because they rejected and crucified Christ.

After describing the pastoral work of Christ in the Church, the Prophet proceeds, by a bold contrast, to describe that of an opposite power and person in Christendom, who claims to be a *shepherd*, and yet makes himself to be an "*idol*" in the Church⁷. "Woe to the *idol shepherd*," exclaims Zechariah. The woe which awaits him is described, "Woe to the *idol shepherd* that leaveth the flock! the sword shall be upon his arm" (in which he trusts, and by which he claims to guide the world), "and upon his right eye" (for he thinks that he alone can see): "his arm shall be clean dried up, and his right eye shall be utterly darkened⁸."

This prophecy of Zechariah concerning "the *idol shepherd*," seems to be even now in course of fulfilment in Christendom⁹. And here we may recognize another example of the mode in which the words of the prophets adjust themselves to events as they arise, and possess a continuous and increasing power and value for the Christian. And it may be anticipated, that additional evidences of the truth of divine Revelation will be supplied in the latter days, as years pass on, by the fulfilment of utterances in them which are now veiled in obscurity; and that, if we may so speak, the hand of Time will raise new trophies to Holy Scripture, and place fresh crowns on the heads of its writers, in proportion as we approach nearer to Eternity; and that thus, in an age of doubt, the reverent reader of Holy Scripture will have new confirmations of his faith in its Inspiration, and in the Gospel of Jesus Christ the Son of God, which is the end of all Hebrew Prophecy.

Zechariah has next a vision of the last days. He sees a gathering of hostile powers against God and against His Church, which, having been founded at Jerusalem by Christ, will expand itself to enfold the world. The Church, the true Jerusalem, will be assaulted by enemies on all sides, before the End comes. But she will be "a cup of trembling¹⁰" to all who attack her; she will be "a burdensome stone" to her adversaries. In other words, their own acts in persecuting and oppressing her will recoil upon themselves to their own utter confusion and ruin. God will make her foes to reel like drunken men, and will crush them and grind them to powder beneath the heavy weight of His wrath, and they will be consumed by the fire of His indignation, which will burst forth from her to consume them. The Prophet delivers the gracious assurance that Almighty God will defend His Church, and will strengthen all her faithful members, and will finally crown them with victory and glory. "The feeble among them shall be as David¹¹," for they will be strong through the grace of the Divine David, Jesus Christ.

Still further, Zechariah reveals, that not only Heathen Nations, but the Jewish People also, will be converted to Christ. God will pour upon them "the Spirit of grace and supplications;" and God says, that "they will look on *Me* Whom they pierced¹²"—a clear testimony (as explained in the Gospel¹³) to the Godhead as well as the Manhood of Christ. They will mourn for Him, the true "King of the Jews," as they mourned for the good King of Jerusalem, Josiah¹⁴. Each family and person will be touched with penitential sorrow, and will confess Him, Whom they crucified, to be Christ and God¹⁵. Then He will be their Saviour. The fountain opened at Calvary in the wounded side of Christ, to the house of David and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, will flow freely to them, and they will be cleansed by it. There will be no more idolatry among the Jews, as there was before the Babylonish Captivity. Nor will there be false teaching then, as there was in the days of the Scribes and Pharisees¹⁶.

¹ See on Zech. xi. 1. 13; xiii. 7.

² Zech. xi. 1, 2.

¹⁰ Zech. xii. 2.

¹¹ Zech. xii. 8.

³ Zech. xi. 4, 5.

⁴ Zech. xi. 13.

¹² Zech. xii. 10.

¹³ John xix. 37. Cp. Rev. i. 7.

⁵ Zech. xi. 7, 10, 14.

⁶ xi. 7—15.

⁷ See on xi. 15—17

¹⁴ See on 2 Kings xxiii. 29, 30.

¹⁵ 2 Chron. xxxv. 24.

⁸ See on xi. 17, a further exposition of this prophecy.

¹⁶ Zech. xii. 11—14.

¹⁶ Zech. xiii. 2—4.

⁹ See below, on Zech. xi. 17.

It is the ordinary practice of Divine Prophecy, in Holy Scripture, to *recapitulate*¹. That is, after it has descended to a distant point in the future, it comes back again to its former starting-place, and delivers another prediction which reaches down to still more distant objects than those which it had before attained. So it is here. The Prophet once more returns to describe more particularly the Death of Christ. He speaks of the wounds in His hands—wounds which He received in the house of His friends, even at Jerusalem itself². The Death of Christ, which is foretold by Zechariah (as Christ Himself has assured us³), and is described by the Prophet as the death of Him Who is the Shepherd of His People, and also the “fellow,” or equal, of Jehovah⁴, is represented as due to the sins of His People, but as permitted and effected by God⁵. But God will have a remnant among them; He will bring His “hand upon the little ones,” the meek and gentle of Israel. He will defend them and purify them by trial⁶.

Thus the Prophet is brought again to the times of the End. He describes the last fierce struggle of infidel Antichristianism against the Lord and His Church. The Church will suffer great distress, as Jerusalem did in the days of its siege by the Romans. But at last the Lord will arise and scatter her enemies⁷. Then shall the End come. Christ will descend from heaven in glory, as He went up from Olivet in His Ascension into heaven. Whether He will literally appear on the Mount of Ascension, the Mount of Olives⁸, time will show. His enemies will all be confounded; but His faithful servants will be marvellously preserved⁹. In the latter days, the living waters of the Spirit will be universally diffused over all the earth. There will be no more strifes and parties in religion; there will be “One Lord, and His Name One¹⁰.” The Church will be exalted, extended, and glorified like a lofty plain above the hills of the earth¹¹, and will be safely inhabited¹²; all her adversaries will be consumed, and she will celebrate an universal and everlasting Feast of Tabernacles¹³.

The typical foreshadowings of that great and crowning Festival of the Hebrew year, which spake of God dwelling with His people in the Tabernacle in the Wilderness, and which prefigured the glory that would follow when God Himself would vouchsafe to pitch His Tabernacle in human flesh, and be our Everlasting Emmanuel, will then be realized and consummated.

The Church will celebrate a spiritual Feast of Tabernacles for evermore; for God Himself will ever tabernacle amidst her¹⁴. Every thing will then be consecrated. The “bells of the horses¹⁵,” the emblems of warfare, will be hallowed; common things will be sanctified¹⁶. The Church will shine in pure light, and in a bright atmosphere of holiness, and be transfigured and glorified for ever in the heavenly Jerusalem.

The glorious visions of Zechariah are succeeded by the moral homilies of MALACHI; and by this juxtaposition they supply a striking comment on the indispensable necessity of religious practice, and personal holiness, if there is to be a fruition of heavenly glory¹⁷.

In the age of Malachi, Jerusalem rejoiced in her newly-built Temple and its restored Ritual; and she looked with self-complacency and hope for the Coming of the Messiah. But the Holy Spirit, speaking by Malachi, tempers her joy with sober reproofs and solemn warnings. He utters a prophetic protest against that hard, proud, covetous spirit of formalism, which afterwards displayed itself in the blindness of the Priests and in the vainglorious hypocrisy of the Pharisees in our Lord's age. He declares to the Jews—who gloried in their national privileges, but were not alive to the responsibilities, and did not discharge the duties, which those privileges involved—that unless they repented of their sins, their pride, their oppression, their perjury, their adultery, God would loathe all the ritual observances and sacrifices of the Temple at Jerusalem; and that their privileges would be taken from them, on account of their unthankfulness, insensibility, and presumption, and wilful disobedience and moral profligacy, and would be transferred to the Gentiles. The Advent of the Messiah would be a day of sorrow and shame to them, and not of joy and glory.

Thus Malachi, “the Seal of the Prophets,” prepared the way for the stern preaching of the second Elias, John the Baptist¹⁸, coming forth in the wilderness in his raiment of camel's hair, with a leathern girdle about his loins, to denounce God's judgments against Priests, Pharisees, and Sadducees, and the People of Jerusalem; and to prepare the way for the Judge¹⁹, Whose Coming is heralded by Malachi: “The Lord Whom ye seek shall suddenly come to His Temple, even the

See below, *Introduction* to the Book of Revelation, pp. 151, 152, and *Prelim. Note* to Rev. xx.

² This seems to be the true exposition of xiii. 6.

³ See our Lord's words, Matt. xxvi. 31, verifying this assertion.

⁴ Zech. xiii. 7.

⁵ Cp. the note on Acts ii. 23. Isa. liii. 10.

⁶ Zech. xiii. 9.

⁷ Zech. xiv. 1—3.

⁸ Zech. xiv. 4. Acts 11

⁹ Zech. xiv. 4, 5.

¹⁰ Zech. xiv. 9.

¹¹ Zech. xiv. 10. Cp. on Isa. ii. 2, 3. Ezek. xl. 2.

¹² Zech. xiv. 11.

¹³ See on Zech. xiv. 16—19.

¹⁴ The Apocalypse, as usual, takes up Zechariah's words and explains them. See on Rev. vii. 15, and xxi. 3.

¹⁵ Zech. xiv. 20.

¹⁶ Zech. xiv. 20, 21.

¹⁷ See further below, as to this point, in the *Prelim. Note* to Malachi.

¹⁸ Mal. iii. 1; iv. 5.

¹⁹ In the words of St. John the Baptist, Matt. iii. 12, and note.

Messenger of the Covenant Whom ye delight in," and for Whose Coming ye look with desire, but do not prepare yourselves for it by holiness of life. "Behold, He shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts. But who may abide the day of His Coming, and who shall stand when He appeareth?"

Like John the Baptist, whom he announces, Malachi, even while he is describing Christ's First Advent, sees the bright glory and awful majesty of His Second Coming; and he darts backward a rapid glance to Mount Sinai, and to the promulgation of the Law of Moses², and commands the Hebrew Nation to remember and observe the statutes and judgments which the Lord then delivered to Israel; and he then looks forward to the great and dreadful Day of the Lord³. Thus in his vast prophetic panorama he blends the earthly Sinai with the heavenly Sion. And while he assures the faithful and obedient of every age and nation that "the Sun of Righteousness will arise to them with healing in His wings," he ends his prophecy with a solemn call of sinners to repentance, lest God should reveal Himself to them in wrath and indignation, "and smite the earth with a curse"⁴.

We have thus been brought by God's help to the close of the prophetical books of the Old Testament. Here we may pause awhile, and take a retrospective view of the ground traversed from the beginning of the Sacred Volume, and consider what reflections are suggested by it with regard to what still lies before us in our passage from time to Eternity.

Holy Scripture, from its first page to the last, reveals a succession of conflicts between good and evil; and of triumphs of good over evil, after severe struggles.

The Creation of the earth itself, in its present form, was a work of restoration by God, after a time of desolation and ruin due to the agency of evil⁵. The Fall of Man was a work of ruin wrought by the Evil One; but it was succeeded by God's promise of Christ, the Seed of the Woman, Who would bruise the serpent's head⁶, and would raise men to a loftier condition than that in which they had existed in Adam. The rise in Christ is higher than the fall in Adam was deep.

The Deluge was like another fall, consequent on man's sin; but God graciously enabled him to emerge from it to a higher altitude, with nobler promises.

The building of Babel was like another fall, due to human pride and rebellion against God. Men sought for strength by combination in Babel, which was designed by them to be a centre of unity⁷; but they were punished by dispersion and confusion. God overruled evil for good; their dispersion prepared the way for the colonization and civilization of the World, and for the eventual diffusion of the Gospel of Christ, flowing in the language of all nations; and for the building up the universal Church of Christ, the true Sion, the city of peace—the antithesis of Babel, the city of confusion⁸.

The declension of Mankind into idolatry was like another fall, produced by the evil agency of Satan, the author of idolatry⁹. But God called Abraham, the father of the faithful, out of the darkness of heathenism and idolatry¹⁰, and promised that of him Christ should come, in Whom all nations should be blessed; and He made his family to be a depository and witness of truth, and to be the seminary of Christianity.

The selling of Joseph, one of that family, into Egypt by his brethren, and his imprisonment on false accusations, and his subsequent elevation to bear rule in the palace and realm of Egypt, and to become the preserver of life in the seven years' famine, is like a miniature specimen of the declensions and elevations which have their consummation in the Divine Antitype of Joseph, Jesus Christ¹¹.

The going down of that family into Egypt, the land of idolatry and the house of bondage, was like another fall; but God made it to be the occasion for a great and glorious conflict with the gods of the heathen, whom He visited with plagues¹², and for manifesting the glory of the Lord God of Israel, by the overthrow of their power, and by covering with the waves of the Red Sea the hosts of Egypt, when pursuing after His own people, whom He saved by two miraculous deliverances (both of which were typical and prophetic of mankind's deliverances by Christ, and of our Exodus in Him¹³), first at the Passover, when the firstborn of Egypt were destroyed, and next by the way which He made for them on dry land through the waters of the Red Sea, in which their enemies were overwhelmed.

The rebellion of Israel in the wilderness was like another fall; but it was followed by another

¹ Mal. iii. 1, 2.

² Mal. iv. 5.

³ Mal. iv. 1.

⁴ Mal. iv. 6.

⁵ See the notes above, on Gen. i. 1, 2.

⁶ See Gen. iii. 15.

⁷ See the notes above, on Gen. xi. 1—6.

⁸ See below, on Acts ii. 3, 6. ⁹ See on Matt. iv. 9, 10.

¹⁰ See Gen. xii. 1; and on Josh. xxiv. 2.

¹¹ See the notes on Genesis xxxvii. 28, and xli. 40, 57, where the points of resemblance are specified.

¹² See on Exodus xii. 12. The first of the ten plagues was executed on the river, which they revered as a deity. See the notes on Exodus vii. 17; viii. 1.

¹³ See on Exodus xii., *Prelim. Note*, and Exodus xiv., *Prelim. Note*, and the notes on these two chapters throughout.

rise to a higher elevation, in the passage of the river Jordan, and in the conquests of Joshua, the type of Jesus¹, and in his settlement of Israel in Canaan, the figure of heaven.

The days of the Judges were evil; they were days of degeneracy and apostasy, but were followed by those of Samuel the Prophet, and David the King, the anointed of the Lord, "the man after God's own heart," "the sweet Psalmist of Israel," the conqueror of his enemies, the first Hebrew King of Jerusalem, the progenitor and type² of Christ; and by the glorious times of Solomon "the Peacemaker," the builder of the Temple of Jerusalem, and in these respects the type of Christ the Prince of Peace, the Builder of the true Temple in the everlasting Sion, the universal Church³.

The dispersion of the Ten Tribes of Israel, and the destruction of Jerusalem, and the captivity of Judah at Babylon (which had been foretold by Isaiah, Micah and Habakkuk, Zephaniah and Jeremiah) for their sins of idolatry, were like another fall. But this was overruled for the gracious purposes of manifesting the majesty and glory of the Lord God of Israel throughout the East, by the deliverance of the three children, who refused to fall down and worship the golden image set up by the King of Babylon⁴; and by the preservation of His faithful prophet Daniel in the lions' den, into which he was cast because he refused to omit his prayers to God, notwithstanding the decree of Darius the king⁵; and by the fulfilment of the prophecies of Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Habakkuk, in the capture of Babylon by Cyrus the Persian, "the shepherd" and "the anointed" of God⁶; and in the deliverance of God's People by him, and in his decree for their return to their own land, and for the restoration of the sacred vessels of the Lord's house, and for the rebuilding of the Temple at Jerusalem—all which events were figurative of still greater mercies in Christ⁷, the mighty Deliverer of all faithful Israelites from their captivity, and the Restorer of our nature, which was like a city in ruins.

The destruction of the Temple, and the dispersion of the Hebrew People in distant lands, had the effect of weaning their minds from what was local, material, and transitory in religious worship⁸, and of raising their hearts to commune with what is unseen, heavenly, and eternal; and it prepared them by a holy discipline for a purer faith. It rescued them from idolatry, and spiritualized them⁹. It also put an end to the unhappy rivalry and schism between Israel and Judah, and trained them for union in Christ.

The Temple built at Jerusalem after the return from Babylon, was far less glorious in external splendour and grandeur than the Temple of Solomon¹⁰. But the promise was, that "the glory of the latter house would be greater than that of the former"¹¹. And why? Because Christ, the Lord of the Temple, would come to it, and fill it with glory. Thus, even the inferiority of the latter house in material respects taught the great truth, that the essence of divine worship, and the glory of the Church, do not consist in external things, however magnificent, but in the presence and in-dwelling of Christ. Here was another progressive step toward that vital and spiritual religion which is taught by Christ in the Gospel¹².

The accomplishment of numerous prophecies which had foretold the sufferings of the Hebrew Nation for sin, and their deliverance and restoration after the fall of Babylon, strengthened their faith in the inspiration of Hebrew Prophecy, and in the power and love of the God of Israel, and stimulated them to look forward to the accomplishment of the other prophecies which were contained in their Scriptures, and especially those prophecies which foretold the Coming of the Messiah to that Temple which was built after the Captivity. The fulfilment of the former prophecies was an earnest and pledge that the latter prophecies would be fulfilled also.

The age of their return from Babylon was succeeded by a debasement and corruption of morals consequent on their vainglorious self-confidence in their own spiritual privileges, and on their disdainful contempt of heathen nations. These were the besetting sins of Judaism after the return from Babylon, even till the days of our Blessed Lord, when they reached their climax, and were punished with spiritual blindness as their inevitable retribution. But when every thing seemed most dark, then "the Sun of Righteousness"¹³ arose upon the world. The Son of God Himself appeared in human flesh. The great majority of the Hebrew Nation were unable to recognize the beauty of the promised Messiah in the "Man of Sorrows"¹⁴. "He came unto His own, and His own received Him

¹ See above, *Introd.* to Joshua ix.—xix., and notes on Joshua i. 1; v. 1, and throughout the book.

² See the notes above, on 2 Sam. vii., and *Prelim. Note* to 1 Chron. xxviii.

³ See on Psalms lxxi. and lxxii.

⁴ Dan. iii.

⁵ Dan. vi. 10.

⁶ See above, on Isaiah xlv. 28; xlv. 1.

⁷ See the notes on 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22, and *Prelim. Note* to Isaiah xl.

⁸ See *Introd.* to Ezra, pp. 298, 299.

⁹ See *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 299.

¹⁰ Haggai ii. 3. Ezra iii. 12. Zechar. iv. 10.

¹¹ Haggai ii. 7—9. Cp. Malachi iii. 1.

¹² John iv. 23.

¹³ Malachi. iv. 2.

¹⁴ Isaiah liii. 3.

not¹." They rejected and crucified the Holy One of Israel². Thus they fulfilled the prophecies of the Psalms, of Isaiah, and Zechariah; as St. Paul declares, they did not understand the words of the prophets which were read in their own synagogues, and "they fulfilled them by condemning Him³."

Thus greater strength accrued to Divine prophecy, even from the unbelief of those who killed the King of Glory. The true remnant of Israel—namely, the Apostles and primitive believers among the Jews—were confirmed in their own faith by the infidelity of the Nation. That infidelity had long before been foretold: "Lord," exclaimed Isaiah⁴ in the name of the Hebrew Prophets, "who hath believed our report?"

The apostasy of the Jews was punished by the utter destruction of the Temple and City of Jerusalem by the arms of Rome, and by the dispersion of the people into all lands even to this hour. But even this terrible visitation was fraught with mercy. No longer are the eyes of the faithful directed toward any local centre, such as the Temple at Jerusalem. No longer do they sit beneath the shadow of the Levitical Law. The material City and Temple have been levelled to the dust; but Jerusalem still lives and grows, and has been catholicized in the Church of Christ. The Church Universal has risen on the ruins of the Temple on Mount Moriah. The Church is the true Moriah, or, Vision of the Lord, where the abiding presence of the Lord is ever seen by the eye of the faithful⁵. The dim, visionary twilight of the Ceremonial Law has passed away for ever, and has melted away and been absorbed into the glorious sunshine of the Gospel.

The Jews, as a nation, have been rejected for a time, because they rejected Christ; but even by this rejection the evidence of Christianity has been strengthened; for all these things were foretold by their own Prophets who prophesied of Christ. And there ever has been a faithful remnant in Israel, as those Prophets predicted, amid God's Ancient People. They have been the seminary of Christendom. All the Apostles and first preachers of Christianity were Jews, and were sent forth from Jerusalem by Christ, Who was the personification and consummation of faithful Israel⁶. They went forth, sent by Him, and empowered by the Holy Ghost, given to them at Jerusalem⁷, to execute His commission, and to preach to all nations the Gospel, which is the fulfilment of the Law, and to make all men to be citizens of the true and everlasting Zion, which is His Church⁸.

The dispersion of the Jews in all lands is a standing and ever-speaking witness, in all places, to the truth of Holy Scripture, which foretold it; and it is also a testimony to the truth of Christ, because the Prophets, and Christ Himself and His Apostles, predicted that such would be the punishment of the Jews for that rejection, and declared that their only escape from that punishment, which has now lain heavy upon them for eighteen hundred years, is by repentance and faith in Christ. The heinousness of the sin of Unbelief, rejecting Christ, may be seen in the history of the Jews since the fall of Jerusalem even to this day.

But the Prophets also foretold that another triumph still awaits Christianity through this dispersion of the Jews. They foretold that the faithful remnant of the Jews, namely the Apostles and earliest disciples, would first convert the Heathen to Christianity; and that afterwards Preachers and Missionaries of the Gospel would be raised up in heathen nations, and would evangelize the Jews, and bring them also to the fold of Christ⁹. God's love to His Ancient People will be manifested, and they will unite with the Gentiles in adoring Him in the Christian Church¹⁰.

Thus we see, that ever since the Creation, to the Coming of Christ, there has been a succession of conflicts with Evil and of conquests of the Truth, a series of moral falls and moral resurrections, a succession of decompositions and of redintegrations; and that the tendency has ever been one of progress from what is material, local, and temporal, to what is spiritual, universal, and eternal.

The climax of this gradual ascent is reserved for the latter days. The crisis will be seen on the eve of Christ's Coming to judgment.

All Hebrew Prophecy in the Old Testament, and all Christian Prophecy in the New, concur with the evidence derived from the analogies of history, in testifying to a great coming struggle of Error with Truth, and of a great and final victory of Truth over Error.

The conflict and triumph described in the last chapter of Isaiah¹¹; the great battle of Anti-christian powers, symbolized by Gog and Magog in Ezekiel¹², and their utter rout and discomfiture;

¹ John i. 11.

² See on Acts xiii. 27.

³ On the meaning of the name *Moriah*, see on Genesis xxii.

⁴ Isaiah liii. 1.

⁵ 2. 14, and the notes on 2 Sam. xxiv. 24. 2 Chron. iii. 1.

⁶ See on Hosea xi. 1.

⁷ Luke xxiv. 47, 49. Acts i. 1. 8.

⁸ Acts iii. 14; iv. 10.

⁹ See on Psalm lxxxvii. Heb. xii. 22.

¹⁰ See on Hosea i. 10, 11; ii. 14—23. Amos ix. 9—15.

¹¹ Rom. xi. 25, 26.

¹² See Rom. xv. 8—12.

¹³ Isaiah lxvi. 15—24.

¹⁴ Ezek. xxxviii. and xxxix.

the gathering of the Nations, and the crushing of their pride in the valley of Jehoshaphat, in the magnificent description of Joel¹; the combination of hostile forces against the spiritual Jerusalem, the Church of God; and the grinding to powder of rebel Nations by the Stone cut out without hands, and their scattering like the dust of the summer threshing-floor, predicted by Daniel² in his vision of the Son of Man coming to judgment, and the future Resurrection; and the confederacy of worldly and godless forces against the Church of God, and their final overthrow, foretold by Zechariah³; all these and other similar prophecies, together with those which are ever recurring in the Psalms—from the first and second Psalms even to the end of the Book—which speak of the raging⁴ of Nations against Christ, and the final subjection of all things beneath His feet; are like parts of one great prophetic drama, which is consummated in the Apocalypse of St. John, in the description of the marshalling of Antichristian forces for a great struggle in the latter days⁵, and for the final shout of victory—"Hallelujah, for the LORD God Omnipotent reigneth;" "the kingdoms of this world are become the Kingdom of our LORD and of His CHRIST⁶."

Therefore the social and political phenomena of the present times will not disturb the mind of the Christian. In our own age (as has been truly said) we "live amid falling institutions; the foundations of fabrics have long been giving way, and a visible tottering has begun; and the sounds of great downfalls, and great disruptions come from different quarters; and great crashes are heard, as if some vast masses had just broken off from the rock, and gone down to the chasm below."

But the believer in Christ, with the Bible in his hand, remains unshaken. He knows that "heaven and earth will pass away, but Christ's Word will not pass away⁷." "Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, to-day and for ever⁸." States and Empires will fall; but Christ remains for ever⁹. The Holy Ghost will abide for ever with His Church¹⁰. The Holy Scriptures will remain; the holy Sacraments will remain; the Creeds of the Universal Church will remain; the Church herself¹¹ will remain for ever, to preach the Word of God, and to minister the Sacraments, and to fight against error and sin, and to lead men to a blessed immortality.

The faithful Christian will, indeed, mourn over the infatuation of States, abdicating their noblest functions, and forfeiting their most glorious prerogatives by apostasy from Christ¹², as if the everlasting Gospel were a thing which could now be flung aside, as superannuated and obsolete; and as if they could prosper without God's blessing; and as if they could have any blessing from Him unless they maintain His truth and promote His glory. He will deplore the presumption which vaunts that it can educate a nation (as if Education were not a discipline for eternity) without the doctrines and sanctions of religion, and the grace of the Holy Ghost; and by the mere beggarly elements of Secularism, which will have its sure retribution in national anarchy and confusion. He will weep, as Jeremiah wept amid the ruins of Sion, over the fall of national Churches. He will mourn over the breaking up and crumbling away of ancient Monarchies, and over the sweeping away of fallen and ruined Thrones by the fierce hurricane of popular revolutions. But in all these perturbations he will retain a spiritual calm. They will even strengthen, stablish, and settle him in the truth. And why? Because all these things have been foretold by Prophecy, Hebrew and Christian; and because they betoken the approaching consummation of a long series of events, which will culminate in the overthrow of all Error, Unbelief, and Ungodliness, and in the full and final triumph of the Christian Faith, at the Coming of the Lord to judgment. They are signs of the nearness of that Coming, and of its blessed results, which Hebrew and Christian Prophecy have foretold—the Resurrection of the dead, the re-appearing of the bodies of the faithful who have fallen asleep in Him; and the fruition of eternal peace, and the joys of His Church triumphant, glorified for ever in heaven.

Thus the retrospect of the past, from the present time even to the Creation, is full of comfort to the Christian. He knows that "not one good thing has failed" of God's promises, from the first prophecy in Scripture to Adam after the Fall¹³, to the present time. It was prophesied that Christ should be born of a woman, that He should come of the seed¹⁴ of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Judah¹⁵, and of David¹⁶, that He should be born of a Virgin¹⁷, and at Bethlehem¹⁸, that He should be a Man of

¹ Joel iii. 19—21.

² Daniel ii. 35. 44; vii. 9—14. 26, 27; xii. 1—3.

³ Zech. xiv. 1—21.

⁴ Ps. ii. 4—12; xlv. 5, 6; ex. 1—7.

⁵ See Rev. xvi. 10; xx. 9, 10.

⁷ Matt. xxiv. 35.

⁶ Rev. xix. 6; xi. 15.

⁸ Heb. xiii. 8.

⁹ Matt. xxviii. 19, 20. 1 Cor. xi. 26.

¹⁰ John xiv. 6.

¹² Rev. xiv. 16.

¹⁴ Gen. xii. 3; xviii. 18; xxi. 12; xxii. 18; xxvi. 4; xxviii.

¹⁴ Gen. xii. 3; xviii. 18; xxi. 12; xxii. 18;

¹⁴ Exod. ii. 24.

¹⁶ See 2 Sam. vii. 12. ¹⁷ Isa. vii. 14.

¹¹ Matt. xvi. 18.

¹³ Gen. iii. 15.

¹⁵ Gen. xlix. 10.

¹⁸ Micah i. 2.

Sorrows¹, be meek and lowly, and ride on the foal of an ass², that His price should be thirty pieces of silver³, that He should be pierced in His hands and His feet⁴, that His raiment should be parted, and lots be cast for His vesture⁵, that He should die as a transgressor⁶ and be buried by the rich; and yet that He should be no other than the MIGHTY GOD⁷, the Prince of Peace, the LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS⁸; that He should come as the Lord to that Temple⁹ which was built by Zerubbabel; that He should rise from the dead¹⁰, ascend in glory to the heavens¹¹, and send down the gift of the Holy Ghost; and that His Word should go forth from Zion¹² into all parts of the world, and that He should enfold the Gentile Nations in His Church.

All these prophecies have been fulfilled. What then shall we say? Since these predictions, so numerous, so circumstantial, so various, have been accomplished, can it be imagined that the other prophecies of the Hebrew and Christian Scriptures shall not be accomplished also? Shall ninety-nine prophecies in the Sacred Volume be fulfilled, and shall the hundredth fail? Assuredly not. The past fulfilment of the many is a pledge of the future fulfilment of the few; especially since these few prophecies which remain to be fulfilled, are not only delivered to us by Hebrew Prophets, but by Christ Himself also, Who is the subject and end of all Prophecy, and the Lord of all the prophets. And what is the great prophecy that remains to be fulfilled, and which Christ Himself has reiterated by Himself and by His Apostles, especially by St. Paul in the Epistles to the Thessalonians¹³ and the Corinthians¹⁴ and by St. John in the Apocalypse¹⁵? The final overthrow of all that is opposed to Christ and the complete victory of the True Faith. This is what lies before us. It will be fulfilled at Christ's Second Advent. "Therefore will we not fear¹⁶, though the Earth be moved, and the hills be carried into the midst of the sea." In all the trials and troubles of private and public life, amid all the winds and waves of popular commotions and tumults, in the distress of nations with perplexity¹⁷, in the fainting of men's hearts through fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth, in the dissolution of Empires, in the disintegration of national Churches, and in the distraction and strife of parties in religion and polity, in the wild frenzy of fanaticism, in the overflowings of a self-idolizing superstition in the Church itself, in the rebuke and blasphemy of unbelief, the true Christian will cling to this anchor of the soul, sure and steadfast, and will see in the storm itself a sign of eternal calm. When all things seem to be most dark, then, as the Apostles, toiling in the ship on the Sea of Galilee, saw Christ in the fourth watch of the night, walking on the sea amid the storm, and coming to them into the ship, and then the wind ceased, and the ship was at the land whither they went; so at length the faithful will see Him coming to those who are labouring in the Apostolic vessel of His Church, tossed by waves, and buffeted by winds; they will behold His refulgent Form, made more bright by the contrast of the gloom around it, and treading beneath His feet all the foaming billows of human pride and presumption, and speaking to His disciples with a voice of power and love, "Be of good cheer, it is I¹⁸." And then the ship will be "at the haven where they would be¹⁹,"—the heavenly haven of everlasting peace.

C. LINCOLN.

RISEHOLME, LINCOLN,

Ascension-tide, 1870.

¹ Isaiah liii. 3.

² Zech. ix.

³ Zech. xi. 12.

⁴ Psalm xxii. 16.

⁵ Psalm xxii. 18.

⁶ Isaiah liii. 12.

⁷ Isaiah ix. 6.

⁸ Jeremiah xxiii. 6.

⁹ Haggai ii. 6—9. Malachi iii. 1.

¹⁰ Psalm ii. 2—6; xvi. 11. Cp. Acts ii. 29—35.

¹¹ Psalm lxxviii. 18. Micah ii. 13.

¹² Isaiah ii. 2—4. Micah iv. 1, 2.

¹³ 1 Thess. iv. 13—18. 2 Thess. ii. 1—8.

¹⁴ 1 Cor. xv. 24—28; 51—58.

¹⁵ Rev. xix. 11—21; xx. 8—15.

¹⁶ Psalm xlii. 2.

¹⁷ Luke xxi. 25, 26.

¹⁸ See Matt. xiv. 23—27. Mark vi. 47—50. John vi. 16—21.

¹⁹ Psalm cvii. 30.

CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER OF THE PROPHETS.

Some of the Prophets, e.g. HOSEA and ISAIAH, prophesied during a much longer time than others; and therefore some of their prophecies may be later in date than some of the prophecies of Prophets who began to prophesy after them. Their dates for the most part cannot be precisely determined. It is probable that the books of most of the Prophets contain the substance and pith of prophecies delivered by them at intervals on several occasions. In the following Table, some modifications have been adopted of that order which is exhibited in the Table prefixed to ISAIAH.

HOSEA	In the days of Jeroboam II., King of Israel, and Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, Kings of Judah	} These Prophets prophesied in the time between B.C. 810—710.
ISAIAH	In the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, Kings of Judah	
JOEL	Probably in the days of Uzziah, King of Judah	
AMOS	In the days of Jeroboam II., King of Israel, and Uzziah, King of Judah	
OBADIAH	Probably in the days of Uzziah	
JONAH	Probably in the days of Uzziah	
MICAH	In the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, Kings of Judah. Cp. Jer. xxvi. 18	} 710—625.
NAHUM	Probably in the reign of Hezekiah, King of Judah	
HABAKKUK	Probably in the reign of Manasseh or Josiah, Kings of Judah	
ZEPHANIAH	In the days of Josiah, King of Judah	} 629—580.
JEREMIAH	From the thirteenth year of Josiah, and in the reigns of Jehoahaz (Shallum), Jehoiakim, Jehoiachin (Jeconiah, or Coniah), and Zedekiah, Kings of Judah, and after the destruction of Jerusalem	
EZEKIEL	From the fifth year of Jehoiachin's captivity, and in the reign of Zedekiah, and after the destruction of Jerusalem	} 595—573.
DANIEL	In the days of Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar, Darius, and Cyrus	
HAGGAI	In the second year of Darius Hystaspes	603—534.
ZECHARIAH	Associated with Haggai	519.
MALACHI	"The Seal of the Prophets"	519—487.
		430—400.

For a synoptical view of the historical events of the above period, the reader is requested to refer to the Chronological Table prefixed to the Books of Kings, pp. xx—xxii, and the *Introduction* to Ezra, p. 295.

The principal Commentaries on the Minor Prophets are those of *S. Jerome*, *S. Cyril* of Alexandria (published in an emended edition by P. E. Pusey, Oxf., 1868), *Theodoret*, *S. Augustine* (*De Civitate Dei*, lib. xviii.), *Haymo*, *Remigius*, *Theophylact*, *Rupertus Tuitiensis*, *Hugo de S. Caro*, *Albertus Magnus*, *Nicolaus de Lyra*, *Ribera*, *Cornelius a Lapide*.

Among the Rabbis, *R. Salomon ben Isaac*, *Abenezra*, *Kimchi*.

Among the Reformers, *Æcolampadius*, *Luther*, *Calvin*, *Mereer*, *Osiander*.

After the Reformation, *Drusius*, *Sanctius*, *Piscator*, *Tarnovius*, *Calovius*, *Grotius*, *Schmid*, *Marckius*, *Lyserus*, *W. Lowth*, *M. Henry*.

In the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, *J. H. Michaelis*, *Stark*, *Petersen*, *Dathe*, *Newcome*, *Rosenmüller*, *Umbreit*, *Eichhorn*, *Ackermann*, *Maurer*, *Henderson*, *Hesselberg*, *Hitzig*, *Ewald*, *Schegg*, *Reinke*, *Hengstenberg* (in his *Christology*), *Dr. Robinson*, *Drake*, *Bassett*, and especially *Dr. Pusey* (a very learned and inestimable Commentary), and *Dr. C. F. Keil* (one of the best works of that erudite Expositor), and *Kleinert*. The expositions of *Dr. Pocock* on Hosea, Joel, Micah, and Malachi are of great value, as are those on Micah and Obadiah by *C. P. Caspari*; and that of *Kliefoth* on Zechariah is written in an excellent spirit of Christian Criticism.

HOSEA.

Before
CHRIST
about
785.

a so ch. 3. 1.
b Deut. 31. 16.
Ps. 73. 27.
Jer. 2. 13.
Ezek. 23. 3, &c.

I. ¹ THE word of the LORD that came unto Hosea, the son of Beeri, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam the son of Joash, king of Israel.

² The beginning of the word of the LORD by Hosea. And the LORD said to Hosea, ^a Go, take unto thee a wife of whoredoms and children of whoredoms: for ^b the land hath committed great whoredom, departing from the LORD.

CH. I.] On the history and prophecies of HOSEA, see above, INTRODUCTION to the Minor Prophets generally.

The first three chapters of this Book are a prologue to the whole (like the first five chapters of Isaiah; see on Isa. ch. i.), and reach from the age of the Prophet to the last days. It is a uniform principle of divine prophecy,—"semper ad eventum festinat." It passes at once with a rapid flight to the consummation of all things. So at the very beginning of the Apocalypse the writer announces the Second Advent of Christ: "Behold, He cometh with clouds" (Rev. i. 7).

1. *Hosea, the son of Beeri*] HOSEA, who stands at the head of the Minor Prophets in the Canon of Scripture, is to them what *Isaiah*, whose name signifies *Salvation of Jehovah*, is to the Major Prophets. Both Hosea and Isaiah prophesied in the days of *Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah*. See above, Isa. i. 1. The word HOSEA signifies *salvation*; and *Beeri* means *my well* (*S. Jerome*). The words of the Minor Prophets flow down from the well of God's saving power and love, in a continuous stream, parallel to those of the Major Prophets. They rise from a higher point than the words of the Major Prophets, and descend to a lower one, till they bring us down in Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi, to the days of the Second Temple, in which the Saviour Himself taught, from Whom, as from an exhaustless well-spring, flowed forth the living waters of the Gospel, and the gift of the Holy Spirit of God; and they reveal to us the glories of the heavenly city, and the crystal sea, and the waters of life flowing from the throne of God.

— in the days of *Uzziah*—*Jeroboam the son of Joash, king of Israel*] Jeroboam the second, King of Israel, in whose reign the kingdom of the Ten Tribes rose to the highest pitch of prosperity; by which God graciously proved them whether they would be thankful and obedient to Him, Who gave them their wealth and power (see 2 Kings xiv. 25—27). He reigned contemporaneously with *Uzziah*, king of Judah, for twenty-six years, and died in the twenty-seventh year of *Uzziah*, who outlived *Jeroboam* by twenty-five years.

Since, therefore, Hosea began to prophesy before the twenty-seventh year of *Uzziah*, and continued to prophesy in the times of *Hezekiah*, the son and successor of *Ahaz*, who succeeded *Jotham*, the son and successor of *Uzziah*, he must have prophesied for a period of more than sixty years (i.e. from about B.C. 790 to B.C. 725). In the Chronological Table, prefixed to *Isaiah*, above, p. xxii, the reader is requested to correct 780 into 790. Hosea does not mention any other kings of *Israel* under whom he prophesied besides *Jeroboam II.*, because the successors of *Jeroboam* (*Zechariah, Shallum, Menahem, Pekahiah, Pekah*, the son of *Remaliah*, *Hosea* the son of *Elah*) had no permanent position as kings on the throne of *Israel*, and several of them were murderers and usurpers, and by their sins brought the kingdom to ruin and desolation, till at last their capital, *Samaria*, was taken, and the Ten Tribes were carried captive to *Assyria*.

ISRAEL'S SPIRITUAL FORNICATION.

2. *Go, take unto thee a wife of whoredoms*] God speaks from the lofty eminence of His foreknowledge, *Go, take te*
VOL. VI. PART II.—1

thee a wife, who, I foresee, will be *a wife of whoredoms*; that is, one who will be faithless to thee, and who will thus cease to be worthy to be called thy wife. See ii. 2.

That this is the true interpretation of this much-controverted passage seems to be evident,—

(1) From the fact that the Prophet's wife is designed to symbolize the Israelitish Nation and its relation to God. Now God did not espouse that Nation to Himself *when* it was unfaithful; but it *became* unfaithful *after* it had been espoused to Him. Cp. Ezek. xxiii. 3.

It is observable that the *Targum* here, and the ancient Versions (*Sept., Vulg., Syriac*) render the words in the *future* tense (as indeed they are in the original), the land *will* commit great whoredom from the Lord; and this confirms that exposition.

(2) From the circumstance that this wife of Hosea is afterwards spoken of as *a woman beloved of her friend* (i.e. by her husband), *yet an adulteress* (iii. 1), and, as such, is a figure of *Israel*, faithless, and yet not wholly cast off by God.

(3) From the great embarrassments which beset the other conflicting interpretations, viz.—

(1) The interpretation which regards the woman whom God's Prophet is commanded to take to himself in marriage, as no other than a common harlot.

(2) The interpretation, which, recoiling from such a supposition, resorts to the theory that the whole transaction had no outward visible reality, but was done only in the Prophet's inner consciousness, and that the names of his wife (*Gomer*) and of his three children, are mere ideal fictions and visionary phantoms.

Each of these two interpretations has great names to plead in its favour. The former is supported by *S. Irenæus, S. Basil, S. Cyril of Alexandria, Theodoret, S. Augustine*; by *Aquinas, Lyranus, A Lapide, Calovius, Glassius, Pocock, Ewald, Kurtz*, and by *Dr. Pusey*.

The latter interpretation is maintained by *S. Jerome, Maimonides, Junius, Drusius, Witsius, Hengstenberg, Keil*. For the history of these interpretations, see *Marck, Diatribe de Muliere Fornicationum*, Lug. Bat. 1696; *Pfeiffer*, *Dubia*, p. 433; *Dr. Pocock* here; *Dr. Waterland*, *Scripture Vindicated*, p. 264, who, as well as *Wm. Lowth* and *Dr. Wells*, gives the preference to the opinion which, on the whole, seems the most reasonable, and says, "I understand here a wife which, *after* marriage, however chaste before, should prove false to her marriage vow; and so the case of *Hosea* and *Gomer* might be the apter parallel to represent the case of God and His people *Israel*."

— the land hath committed great whoredom, departing from the LORD] In the Hebrew Canon of Scripture the Prophet *Hosea* follows next, in order of time, after the BOOK OF *CANTICLES*, or *Song of Solomon*, which is a prophetic and mystical representation of the love and marriage of CHRIST and His Church. See above, *Introd.* to the *Song of Solomon*, pp. 121—124.

The relation of *Marriage*, as a symbol of God's union with His people, serves to connect the prophecies of *Hosea* with the *Song of Solomon*; and the unfaithfulness of *Israel* to God is

Before
CHRIST
about
785.

³ So he went and took Gomer the daughter of Diblaim; which conceived, and bare him a son.

c 2 Kings 10. 11.
d Heb. visit.
f 2 Kings 15. 10,
12.
e 2 Kings 15. 29.

⁴ And the LORD said unto him, Call his name Jezreel; for yet a little while, and I will †avenge the blood of Jezreel upon the house of Jehu, ^d and will cause to cease the kingdom of the house of Israel. ⁵ ^e And it shall come to pass at that day, that I will break the bow of Israel in the valley of Jezreel.

|| That is, Not
having obtained
mercy.
f 2 Kings 17. 6,
23.
|| Heb. I will not
add any more to.
|| Or, that I
should altogether
pardon them.
g 2 Kings 19. 35.
h Zech. 1. 6. &
9. 10.
|| That is, Not
my people.

⁶ And she conceived again, and bare a daughter. And God said unto him, Call her name || Lo-ruhamah: †for †I will no more have mercy upon the house of Israel; || but I will utterly take them away. ⁷ ^e But I will have mercy upon the house of Judah, and will save them by the LORD their God, and ^h will not save them by bow, nor by sword, nor by battle, by horses, nor by horsemen.

⁸ Now when she had weaned Lo-ruhamah, she conceived, and bare a son.

⁹ Then said God, Call his name || Lo-ammi: for ye are not my people, and I will not be your God.

i Gen. 32. 12.
Rom. 9. 27, 28.

¹⁰ Yet ⁱ the number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea,

displayed in striking contrast to the love of the Bride in that Divine Book. Cp. *Hengst.*, Proleg. to Canticles, pp. 304, 305; on Cant. iii. 4; and *Thrupp*, on the Song of Solomon, p. 15. See also below, on ii. 2, for another instance of this connexion.

Thus also we recognize another example of the beautiful and harmonious unity of purpose with which the Books of Holy Scripture are joined on successively (like links in a golden chain) to one another.

These are evidences of the *continuity of Scripture*, and are silent proofs of its *Inspiration*. All the Books of Scripture (written at intervals extending over 1500 years) may rightly be regarded as making *one book*; they are all parts of one plan, and are from the mind and hand of Him, with Whom “a thousand years are as one day.”

³ *he went and took Gomer the daughter of Diblaim*] The word *Gomer* signifies *completion* (*Pocock*), and also *exhaustion* and *failure* (*Gesen.* 175; *Fuerst*); and it may signify the condition of destitution and helplessness to which the Israelitish Nation had been reduced, especially by the bondage in Egypt, when it was received into covenant with God, and was espoused to Him at Mount Sinai. The name *Gomer* may also have been adopted as connected with heathenism itself (*Gen.* x. 2. *Ezek.* xxxviii. 6), as *Ezekiel* says (xvi. 3): “Thy father was an Amorite, and thy mother a Hittite;” and this is symbolized also by “the daughter of *Diblaim*,” or of *two pressed cakes of figs* (*Gesen.* 185), a figure of mere sensual pleasure (*S. Jerome, Keil*); and it may signify heathen extraction, as connected with *Diblath*, or *Diblathaim*, in the wilderness (*Num.* xxxiii. 47. *Jer.* xlviii. 22). See the note above, on *Ezek.* vi. 14, where *Diblath* is a symbol of what is heathen; and this illustrates the use of the word here.

Such was originally the condition of the Hebrew Nation. It was in a heathen and destitute state, and was mercifully taken up by God, in the wilderness, when it thought of little more than the gratification of its sensual appetites. Even after the Exodus it hankered after “the onions, and leeks, and garlick, and flesh-pots of Egypt” (*Exod.* xvi. 3. *Num.* xi. 5).

⁴ *Call his name Jezreel*] Call his name in memory of Jezreel, situated in the fruitful plain on the north of Kishon (*Josh.* xvii. 16), but polluted with blood, especially that of Naboth the Jezreelite, for the shedding of which, and other sins, the house of Ahab was threatened with extermination (1 Kings xxi. 14—23); and also because Jezreel was the scene of cruel and sanguinary acts committed by Jehu (2 Kings ix. and x.).

The name *Jezreel* was also prophetic, both of judgment and mercy; of *judgment*, because it means, *God will scatter*, and thus presignified the *dispersion* of Israel; and of *mercy*, because it also means, *God will sow*, and pre-announced that the *dispersion* of Israel would be a *dissemination*, and a sowing of themselves in mercy (see ii. 23), and be also a *sowing of the seed* of God’s truth in all lands (see above, *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 299; and below, *Introd.* to the Acts of the Apostles, p. 9), and would prepare the way for the diffusion of the Church of Christ in every land.

It was like the scattering of the tribe of Levi throughout the length and breadth of the Holy Land—a scattering which was threatened in judgment for sin, but was overruled by God’s mercy into love. See above, on *Gen.* xlix. 7. Such (as *Hosea* shows in these prophecies) is the true character of the dispersion of Israel.

⁵ *I will break*] By some signal victory gained over Israel by Assyria. Cp. below, x. 14.

— *Israel—Jezreel*] Observe the contrast. By God’s grace the Hebrew Nation became *Israel*, a *prince of God*; but by its own sin Israel was changed into *Jezreel*, and was *scattered* by Him.

⁶ *Lo-ruhamah*] *Not pitied, not favoured*. It is rendered *not-loved* by St. Paul (*Rom.* ix. 25), and *not having obtained mercy*, by St. Peter (1 Pet. ii. 10). Israel forfeited God’s love and pity by unfaithfulness to Him.

— *but I will utterly take them away*] Literally, *for in taking away, I will take away to them, i.e. all that belongs to them* (*Hengst. Pusey*).

⁷ *Judah*] Judah is contrasted with Israel, which revolted under Jeroboam the first, from the house of David, and set up a rival worship in opposition to that in the Temple at Jerusalem. Judah, therefore, will obtain mercy, but Israel will be deprived of spiritual blessings.

— *will not save them by bow*] *Hosea*, whose name signifies *salvation*, declares here the only source from which *salvation* comes (cp. *Isa.* ix. 6), and thus prepares the way for the prophecy which follows concerning Jesus Christ, the Saviour of the world. Cp. *Matt.* i. 21. *Acts* iv. 12.

⁸ *when she had weaned Lo-ruhamah, she conceived*] The long-suffering of God to Israel is thus symbolized. There was a long interval, like that between childbirth and weaning (see on *Gen.* xxi. 8. 1 *Sam.* i. 24), between its forfeiture of mercy and its utter rejection; but at length the birth of *Lo-ruhamah* is succeeded by that of *Lo-ammi*. One sin and punishment was followed by another in a deliberate succession and miserable sequence of births. Cp. *James* i. 15: “When lust hath conceived, it bringeth forth sin: and sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death.”

¹⁰ *the number of the children of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea*] By the reception of all nations into the Church, through faith in Christ, the true *Jezreel*, the Seed of God, and the Seed of Abraham, through Whom the promise was fulfilled, that Abraham’s seed should be as the sand on the sea-shore (*Gen.* xxii. 17; xxxii. 12), and in Whom all families of the earth are blessed (*Gen.* xii. 3; xxviii. 4), and are joined together in one body under one Head, which is Christ.

That this interpretation of this passage is the true one is evident from the testimony of St. Paul (*Rom.* ix. 25, 26), and of St. Peter (1 Pet. ii. 10).

Here is an answer to all objections that might be raised against God’s dealings with the Jewish Nation. God chose them to be His people: they rebelled against Him; but His purpose in choosing them was not, therefore, frustrate. He scattered them; but their punishment had a salutary effect in weaning many of them from idolatry, and in bringing them back

which cannot be measured nor numbered; *and it shall come to pass, that || in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people, there it shall be said unto them, Ye are ^m the sons of the living God. ¹¹ ⁿ Then shall the children of Judah and the children of Israel be gathered together, and appoint themselves one head, and they shall come up out of the land: for great shall be the day of Jezreel.

Before CHRIST about 785.
k Rom. 9. 25, 26.
l 1 Pet. 2. 10.
|| Or, instead of that.
1 ch. 2. 23.
in John 1. 12.
1 John 3. 1.
n Isa. 11. 12, 13.
Jer. 3. 18.
Ezek. 34. 23, & 37. 16—24.
|| That is, My people.
|| That is, Having obtained mercy.
a Isa. 50. 1.
b Ezek. 16. 25.

II. ¹ Say ye unto your brethren, || Ammi; And to your sisters, || Ru-hamah.
² Plead with your mother, plead: For ^a she is not my wife, neither am I her husband: Let her therefore put away her ^b whoredoms out of her sight, And her adulteries from between her breasts;

to Him. See ii. 7. He raised up the Gentiles to be His people by means of the Gospel of Christ, and His Apostles, who were Jews; and the Law went forth from Sion, and the Word of God from Jerusalem, and thus Jerusalem itself was universalized and became co-extensive with the world. And now the duty and privilege of the Gentiles (who have received the Gospel from the Jews, and whose spiritual Mother is Jerusalem) is to bring back Israel in their turn to the Church of God (ii. 1). This is beautifully expressed in the Book of Canticles or Song of Solomon (see above, on Cant. viii. 1—9), the connexion of which book with the prophecies of Hosea has been already noticed on v. 2.

11. Then shall—the children of Israel be gathered together] Christ Himself, “the One Head” of whom the Prophet here speaks, adopts these words, when He says to Jerusalem, “How often would I have gathered thy children together” (Matt. xxiii. 37). Cp. John xi. 51, 52, “He should gather together in one the children of God that are scattered abroad;” and again, these words are applicable to Christ: “Where the body is, there will the eagles be gathered together.” See the notes on Matt. xxiv. 28, Luke xvii. 37, and Eph. i. 10.

S. Augustine (De Civ. Dei, vii. 28) thus writes concerning this passage:—“The Prophet Hosea speaks of deep mysteries, and is therefore more difficult to follow; but as to the passage, where he says, ‘It shall come to pass that in the place where it was said unto them, Ye are not my people, there it shall be said, Ye are the sons of the living God, we know that the Apostles themselves understood this prophecy as foretelling the calling of the Gentiles, and that the Prophet says, ‘The children of Judah and the children of Israel shall be gathered together, and shall appoint themselves one head, and come up out of the land;’ therefore let us think of the Corner-Stone, Jesus Christ, in Whom the two walls are joined together, and lean upon Him, Who is the common support of them both” (Augustine).

— one head] Christ. See above, on Ezek. xxxiv. 23; xxxvii. 22; and below, iii. 5.

— shall come up out of the land] All nations shall be gathered together from out of the land; that is, as all the tribes of Israel were commanded to come up to worship together at Jerusalem at stated annual festivals, so all the tribes of the spiritual Israel will come up in heart and spirit from all parts of the whole Earth, to the Mountain of the Lord, the Zion of the Church of God; that is, they will be joined together in one faith and worship in the Christian Church. See above, Isa. ii. 2, 3; and below, Micah iv. 1, 2, which are the best comments on this passage; and see Ps. lxxxvii. Isa. lx. 6; lxvi. 23. Jer. iii. 18; i. 4; and Zech. xiv. 16, 17. This prophecy (says M. Henry) denotes, not a local remove (for they are said to be in the same place, v. 10), but a spiritual ascent to Christ.

GREAT SHALL BE THE DAY OF JEZREEL.

— great shall be the day of Jezreel] Great shall be the day of Jezreel, the seed of God. The first blood that was shed at Jezreel was that of Naboth, which was shed for his Vineyard, and which blood brought with it Divine retribution on those that shed it. See on v. 4. Naboth, as is observed by S. Jerome here, was a signal type of CHRIST, shedding His blood for His Vineyard the Church (the resemblances are specified above in the note on 1 Kings xv. 43).

Naboth's blood brought retribution on those who shed it; so did the blood of Christ on those who said, “His blood be

upon us and on our children” (Matt. xxvii. 25). But Christ's blood speaks better things than that of Naboth; His blood is the seed of the Church; He is the true Jezreel, the seed of God (see on v. 4), and great is the day of Jezreel in Him. Great was the day of Jezreel, when, after His Passion, Burial, Resurrection, Ascension, and sending of the Holy Ghost from heaven, the Lord added to the Church daily such as should be saved (Acts ii. 47), then God did great things for it. “Magnus est dies seminis Dei, qui interpretatur CHRISTUS; ex quo perspicuum est ideo in typo Naboth Jezraelitis sanguinem præcessisse, ut veritas compleretur in Christo” (S. Jerome).

The seed sown in the earth was Christ, as He Himself says, “Except a corn of wheat fall into the earth and die, it abideth alone; but if it die it bringeth forth much fruit” (John xii. 24). Christ is the true Jezreel. His Blood is the Seed from which the Harvest of the Universal Church has sprung up in the field of the whole world.

Great will be the day of Jezreel at the General Resurrection. Christ's Death, Burial, and Resurrection are the seed-plot of our Resurrection. He is the First Fruits, we the Harvest (1 Cor. xv. 20—23). Then all the glorified bodies of the Saints will rise up like seed in an instantaneous harvest from the furrows of the Grave in all parts of the earth; then great indeed will be the day of Jezreel.

CII. II. Say ye—Ru-hamah] Ye Gentiles, who have become the Israel of God in Christ, endeavour to win the Jews to God by assuring them of God's favour. Ye Gentle Christians, do not despise the Jews, they are your brethren and sisters; do not irritate them by disdainful words, but provoke them to godly jealousy (see Rom. x. 19; xi. 11) by accents of love, and tell them, that though they are scattered abroad, yet God is waiting to be gracious to them and to restore them to Him. Cast aside the Hebrew negative prefix, lo, and in His Name call them by titles of endearment, Ammi (My People) and Ruhamah (having obtained Mercy). Compare Rom. xi. 30, 31, where St. Paul thus speaks to the Gentile Christians in regard to the Jews: “As ye in times past have not believed in God, yet have now obtained mercy through their unbelief, even so have these also now not believed, that through your mercy they also may obtain mercy,” where St. Paul refers to these words of Hosea.

2. Plead with your mother, plead] Thou, O Gentile Church (says God here by the Prophet), remember that the Hebrew Nation, though scattered and banished, is thy mother; plead with her and convert her to God. Cp. Ezek. xx. 35, 36.

Hosea takes up here, as in other places (see on i. 2), the language of the Song of Solomon, where the Bride of Christ (i.e. the Gentile Church) desires to bring the Bridegroom to her mother's house (i.e. to the house of the Hebrew Nation). See above, the notes on Canticles iii. 4, and especially the notes on the eighth, the last chapter of that book, which forms an appropriate and harmonious prelude to this prophecy of Hosea.

As a proof of this harmony between Hosea and the Canticles, and as an evidence that the true interpretation of both is spiritual, it may be added that the Jewish Church is called both a mother and a sister (see Cant. viii. 8) of the Gentile Church. She is a mother in priority, and a sister in parity, of God's love. Cp. Rom. ix. 7; xv. 5—9.

— she is not my wife] The nation of Israel has divorced herself from me by her spiritual adultery. As the Targum expresses it, “The mother has played the harlot, the congregation has gone a whoring after false prophets.”

— her breasts] Compare Ezek. xxiii. 3.

Before
CHRIST
about
785.

c Jer. 13. 22, 26.
Ezek. 16. 37, 39.
d Ezek. 16. 4.
e Ezek. 19. 13.
f Amos 8. 11, 13.
g John 8. 41.

h Isa. 1. 21.
Jer. 3. 1, 6, 8, 9.
Ezek. 16. 13,
16, &c.

i Jer. 44. 17.
ver. 8, 12.

† Heb. *drinks*.

k Job 3. 23. &
19. 8.
l am. 3. 7, 9.
† Heb. *wall a
wall*.

l ch. 5. 15.
Luke 15. 18.
m Ezek. 16. 8.

n Isa. 1. 3.
o Ezek. 16. 17,
18, 19.
† Heb. *new wine*.
¶ Or, *where with
they made Baal*,
ch. 8. 4.
p ver. 3.
l Or, *take away*.

q Ezek. 16. 37. &
23. 29.
† Heb. *folly*, or,
villany.

r Amos 8. 10.
s 1 Kings 12. 32.
Amos 8. 5.

† Heb. *make
de-votee*.
t ver. 5.

u Ps. 80. 12, 13.
Isa. 5. 5.

x Ezek. 23. 40,
42.

y Ezek. 20. 35.
¶ Or, *friendly*.
† Heb. *to her
heart*.

³ Lest ^c I strip her naked, and set her as in the day that she was ^a born,
And make her ^e as a wilderness, and set her like a dry land,
And slay her with ^f thirst.

⁴ And I will not have mercy upon her children ;
For they *be* the ^g children of whoredoms.

⁵ ^h For their mother hath played the harlot :

She that conceived them hath done shamefully :

For she said, I will go after my lovers, ⁱ that give *me* my bread and my
water, my wool and my flax, mine oil and my [†] drink.

⁶ Therefore, behold, ^k I will hedge up thy way with thorns,
And [†] make a wall, that she shall not find her paths.

⁷ And she shall follow after her lovers, but she shall not overtake them ;
And she shall seek them, but shall not find *them* :

Then shall she say, ^l I will go and return to my ^m first husband ;

For then *was it* better with me than now.

⁸ For she did not ⁿ know that ^o I gave her corn, and [†] wine, and oil, and
multiplied her silver and gold, *¶ which* they prepared for Baal.

⁹ Therefore will I return, and ^p take away my corn in the time thereof, and
my wine in the season thereof, and will *¶* recover my wool and my flax *given*
to cover her nakedness.

¹⁰ And now ^q will I discover her [†] lewdness in the sight of her lovers,
And none shall deliver her out of mine hand.

¹¹ ^r I will also cause all her mirth to cease, her ^s feast days, her new moons,
and her sabbaths, and all her solemn feasts.

¹² And I will [†] destroy her vines and her fig trees, ^t whereof she hath said,
These *are* my rewards that my lovers have given me :

And ^u I will make them a forest, and the beasts of the field shall eat them.

¹³ And I will visit upon her the days of Baalim, wherein she burned incense
to them, and she ^x decked herself with her earrings and her jewels, and she
went after her lovers, and forgot me, saith the LORD.

¹⁴ Therefore, behold, I will allure her, and ^y bring her into the wilderness,
and speak *¶* [†] comfortably unto her.

3. *as in the day that she was born*] See Ezek. xvi. 4. 16—25. 39, which supplies the best exposition of this passage. Ezekiel there describes the miserable state of the Israelitish nation by nature, and displays God's love to her in the wilderness of Arabia (cp. Dent. xxxii. 10), and her unfaithfulness and consequent punishment and misery.

5. *my lovers*] The false gods whom Israel worshipped instead of the Lord, and to whom she ascribed the benefits received from Him. Cp. r. 13, and Jer. ii. 25; xlv. 17, 18.

6. *I will hedge up thy way*] I will obstruct thy roving vagrancy after thy idols; I will stop it up by afflictions and banishment into a far-off land; and thus I will show thee the vanity of thy idols, who cannot save thee in thy distress. As to the metaphor here used, cp. Job xix. 8, and Lam. iii. 7, 9, "He hath hedged me about—He hath enclosed my ways," which seems to be grounded on this passage.

7. *Then shall she say, I will go and return*] The prophet predicts the salutary effects of Israel's dispersion, which would bring them to repentance and make them turn to God—like the penitent prodigal in the Gospel (Luke xv. 18); and thus he justifies God's severity as a discipline of love.

8. *she did not know*] Israel did not consider that I am the Giver of all her blessings (Dent. vii. 13; xi. 14).

— *which they prepared for Baal*] Or, as some render it (e.g. Targum, Vulg., Syriac, Engl. Margin, Ewald), *which they made Baal*. God gave them silver and gold, which they made into idols, whom they worshipped in the place of the God Who gave them, and Who is their Maker and Judge. Cp. viii. 4,

"Of their silver and their gold have they made them idols, that they may be cut off." The other interpretation, also, "which they made for, or dedicated to Baal," has strong authority in its favour. See *Hengst., Keil*.

9. *will I return*] They turned My gifts into idols, and therefore I will turn away Myself from them, and take away My gifts.

11. *her feast days, her new moons, and her sabbaths*] Her festal days, which she has appointed to be kept at Bethel, in opposition to Mine at Jerusalem. See 1 Kings xii. 32.

This may be applied, also, to such festivals of the Levitical Law as were still observed among the tribes of Israel, see 2 Kings iv. 23. Cp. Amos viii. 8, 10, and Tobit ii. 6, and the lamentation of Jeremiah on their cessation (Lam. ii. 6), which seems to refer to the words of Hosea.

14. *I will—bring her into the wilderness*] i.e. into far-off lands in which they will be scattered. These various regions of their future exile and dispersion are called by Ezekiel, "the wilderness of Nations," and "the wilderness of the people." See Ezek. xx. 35, 36, which are the best comments on this passage.

God threatens here that He will bring Israel into the wilderness of captivity and dispersion in Assyria, which was designed to have the same merciful effect in chastening and purifying the Ten Tribes, as the wilderness of Arabia after the Exodus (cp. v. 15) was intended to produce on their forefathers in their wanderings there. He brought them into that wilderness (as Moses says), that "He might humble them and prove

¹⁵ And I will give her her vineyards from thence, and ² the valley of Achor for a door of hope : and she shall sing there, as in ^a the days of her youth, and ^b as in the day when she came up out of the land of Egypt.

¹⁶ And it shall be at that day, saith the LORD, that thou shalt call me || Ishi ; and shalt call me no more || Baali. ¹⁷ For ^c I will take away the names of Baalim out of her mouth, and they shall no more be remembered by their name.

¹⁸ And in that day will I make a ^d covenant for them with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven, and with the creeping things of the ground : and ^e I will break the bow and the sword and the battle out of the earth, and will make them to ^f lie down safely. ¹⁹ And I will betroth thee unto me for ever ; yea, I will betroth thee unto me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies.

²⁰ I will even betroth thee unto me in faithfulness : and ^g thou shalt know the LORD.

²¹ And it shall come to pass in that day, ^h I will hear, saith the LORD, I will hear the heavens, and they shall hear the earth ; ²² And the earth shall hear

Before
CHRIST
about
785.

z Josh. 7. 26.
Isa. 65. 10.
a Jer. 2. 2.
Ezek. 16. 8, 22
60.

b Exod. 15. 1.
|| That is, My
husband.
|| That is, My
lord.

c Exod. 23. 13.
Josh. 23. 7.
Ps. 16. 4.
Zech. 13. 2.
d Job 5. 23.
Isa. 11. 6—9.
Ezek. 34. 25.
e Ps. 46. 9.
Isa. 2. 4.
Ezek. 39. 9, 10.
Zech. 9. 10.
f Lev. 26. 5.
Jer. 23. 6.

g Jer. 31. 33, 34.
John 17. 3.

h Zech. 8. 12.

them, and to do them good at their latter end" (Deut. viii. 2—6) so as to qualify them for Canaan and for its heavenly antitype of everlasting rest.

— *Speak comfortably unto her*] Literally, *to her heart*, in love. Cp. Gen. xxxiv. 3; 1. 21, and see Isa. xl. 1, 2, "Speak ye comfortably to Jerusalem," give to her a message of comfort from Christ, and from the Holy Ghost the Comforter.

Here the Prophet displays the love of God to His Ancient People in their dispersion and distress. They are represented as wanderers and outcasts, but it is that they may feel their misery, and yearn for the home of their reconciled Father in Christ. Cp. Deut. viii. 2—6.

¹⁵ *I will give her her vineyards from thence, and the valley of Achor for a door of hope*] Here is a reversal of the threat in *vs.* 9. 12. He continues the comparison of the foregoing verse:—As I prepared their forefathers by the probationary discipline of the Sinaitic Wilderness to enter Canaan, and to inherit its vineyards, so will I deal with their posterity the Ten Tribes. I will make their dispersion in Assyria to be a school for reception into a spiritual inheritance *from thence*, i. e. succeeding after it, and produced by it. I will bring them into the Vineyard of Christ's Church. Cp. on Isa. v. 1; lxi. 5. Ezek. xxviii. 26. Canticles i. 14; viii. 11.

And I will do more than this. As the valley of Achor (near Jericho, the first great city of Canaan which their fathers conquered) was, as its name indicates, a place of trouble (see on Josh. vii. 24, 26), but became a door of hope to them, on account even of the severe but salutary discipline there exercised, and thence they marched to victory ("ibique aperta spes, ubi fuerat desperatio," *S. Jerome*; so all the Achors of trouble, through which the Ten Tribes will pass, will be changed into doors of hope to them, by their penitential sorrow and God's gracious pardon and love. Hosea here chimes in with his contemporary, Isaiah, who says, "*The Valley of Achor* shall be a place for herds to lie down in" (Isa. lxi. 10). Even the destruction of Jerusalem and the Temple—the bitterest Achors of sorrow and humiliation to the Hebrew Nation—have become doors of hope to the true Israel of God, by weaning their affections from the material City and Temple, and by drawing them to the Spiritual Sion, the Church of Christ Universal (which has risen upon the ruins of the literal Jerusalem), and to the glories of the heavenly "Jerusalem, which is the mother of us all" (Gal. iv. 26).

This promise may be extended to all penitent believers. God gives to them in Christ such comforts as will be a foretaste of the sweet fruits of the heavenly Canaan of His eternal rest and bliss. The Achor of penitential sorrow becomes to them a door of hope to the heavenly kingdom of everlasting glory.

— *the days of her youth*] At the Exodus; when Moses and Miriam sang their songs of joy (Exod. xv. 1. 20).

¹⁶ *Ishi*] *My husband*, lit. *my man*. Cp. on Isa. liv. 5, "Thy Maker is thine husband."

— *Baali*] *My baal*, or *lord*. The word *baal*, whence *beulah*, married, in Isa. lxiii. 4, though often used in a good sense (as Isa. liv. 5), yet shall be avoided by Israel, as being tainted with

idolaterous associations, "*ne virum nominans, idolum cogitet*" (*S. Jerome*). Israel, once idolatrous, will so loathe idolatry, that even good and innocent words will be shunned by her, if they have been connected with idolatrous uses, and when there is any danger of a scandal arising from them.

Here is an important lesson for the Christian Church. Even innocent things, nay, even good things, if identified with idolatry, and scarcely separable from it, are to be avoided. See above, the notes on the case of Hezekiah and the brazen serpent, 2 Kings xviii. 4; Ps. xvi. 4; Zech. xiii. 2, "I will cut off the names of the idols out of the land, and they shall be no more remembered;" words which are grounded on the divine precept, Exod. xxiii. 13, "Ye shall make no mention of the names of other gods, neither let it be heard out of thy mouth."

¹⁸ *will I make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field*] As Noah was at peace with the wild beasts in the Ark, and Daniel with the lions in the den, and our Lord with the wild beasts in the wilderness, so My people will walk unharmed amid dangers. Cp. Job v. 22, 23, and Isa. xi. 6, 7, describing, in poetical language, the happiness of the Christian Church. The union of all animals, savage as well as tame, in the sheet let down from heaven to St. Peter, symbolized the spiritual peace of the Gospel, and the union of nations formerly barbarous, in the Church of Christ. See on Acts x. 15; cp. on Mark xvi. 18.

— *I will break the bow*] Compare the description of Evangelical victory and peace in Isaiah, in Isa. ii. 4; xxxv. 9. Ezek. xxxiv. 25. Zech. ix. 10.

¹⁹ *I will betroth thee unto me for ever—in righteousness*] The Hebrew Nation, once betrothed to God at Mount Sinai, and loved by Him with the tenderest affection, and yet guilty of spiritual fornication and adultery, will be cleansed from its sins and washed pure by the blood of Christ, and be espoused to God as a chaste virgin (2 Cor. xi. 2), never to be divorced from Him. Her sins will not only be forgiven, but forgotten. Cp. John iii. 29. Eph. v. 25. Rev. xxi. 9. These blessed nuptials will be celebrated, on her repentance and conversion, through faith in Christ's righteousness, and in justification through Him alone, and in the free loving-kindness and mercy of God. Cp. Isa. lxii. 5 and *Theodore* here. Here is a promise of perpetuity to the Church of God in Christ. Cp. Matt. xvi. 18.

"Ista meretrix" (says *S. Jerome*) "fornicata est, prophetis Sponsi sodalibus interfectis; novissimè autem venit Dei Filius Dominus Jesus, quo crucifixo et a mortuis resurgente desponsatur, nequaquam in legis justitiâ, sed in fide et gratiâ Evangelii."

This promise to Israel may be applied to every penitent soul which is espoused to Christ by repentance and faith.

THEY SHALL HEAR JEZREEL.

^{21, 22} *I will hear the heavens, and they shall hear the earth; and the earth shall hear the corn, and the wine, and the oil; and they shall hear Jezreel*] All Creation is here represented as hanging by a continuous chain of dependency on the Throne of God; and when its due subordination is preserved, then a stream of prayer and intercession mounts upward from earth to heaven by that chain, and a stream of grace flows downward by it from

Before
CHRIST
about
785.

1 ch. 1. 4.
k Jer. 31. 27.
Zech. 10. 9.
1 ch. 1. 6.

m ch. 1. 10.
Zech. 13. 9.
Rom 9. 26.
1 Pet. 2. 10.
a ch. 1. 2.
b Jer. 3. 20.
† Heb. of grapes.

† Heb. *lethech*.

c Deut. 21. 13.

d ch. 10. 3.

the corn, and the wine, and the oil; ¹ and they shall hear Jezreel. ²³ And ^a I will sow her unto me in the earth; ¹ and I will have mercy upon her that had not obtained mercy; and I ^m will say to *them which were* not my people, Thou art my people; and they shall say, *Thou art my God*.

III. ¹ Then said the LORD unto me, ^a Go yet, love a woman beloved of her ^b friend, yet an adulteress, according to the love of the LORD toward the children of Israel, who look to other gods, and love flagons [†] of wine.

² So I bought her to me for fifteen *pieces* of silver, and for an homer of barley, and an [†] half homer of barley: ³ And I said unto her, Thou shalt ^a abide for me many days; thou shalt not play the harlot, and thou shalt not be for *another* man: so *will* I also be for thee.

⁴ For the children of Israel shall abide many days ^d without a king, and

heaven to earth; and thus all Creation, when harmonized by love and obedience to God, ministers to the comfort of man, who is *God's seed*, as well as to the glory of God.

All creatures are eager to serve man, when man serves God, and when he is a faithful *Jezreel*, or *seed of God*. The corn cries to the earth, the earth cries to the heaven, the heavens cry to God, that they may be enabled by Him to supply man's need, and minister to his comfort. *Jezreel*, the true *seed of God*, owns its dependence on Him for all that it receives. The heavens pray to God, for they have no power of themselves to give rain (see on Jer. xiv. 22, and cp. Zech. x. 1, 2), in order that they may be empowered to hear the prayers of the Earth for rain; and God hears them, and allows them to pour forth genial showers upon the thirsty ground. The Earth hears the prayers of the corn and the wine and the oil for rain, and sends up their prayers heavenward; and they all listen to the prayers of *Jezreel*, and become its intercessors with God, Who hearkens to this chorus of prayer, and answers it in love.

How much more is this realized in the world of grace! There the Divine *Jezreel*, Who is Christ, and Who vouchsafed to become the *Seed of the Woman* (Gen. iii. 15), and to be the Seed of Abraham and David, and has thus joined God to Man in His own Person, and is our *Emmanuel* as well as our *Jezreel*, is ever praying for His People; and a shower of blessings descends from heaven to earth in answer to His prayers, and brings forth fruit an hundredfold. Cp. *S. Cyril* and *S. Jerome* here.

In this beautiful imagery we recognize a repeal of the divine threat, which was denounced on Israel for disobedience and represented heaven and earth as deaf to all human appeals; "Thy heaven that is over thy head shall be brass, and the earth that is under thee as iron" (Deut. xxviii. 23). The ears of the Elements are unsealed by human obedience. If Man hearkens to God, all God's Creation will hearken to him.

23. *I will sow her unto me in the earth*] Not in her own land only, but every where. The seed of Abraham is sown in all lands where Christ is preached. The whole Earth, under the Gospel, has become a seed-plot for heaven, now that it has received seed from the Divine Sower, which is Christ, and has been sown by His Blood and by His Word, and is watered by the dews and rains of the Holy Ghost. Compare the prophetic imagery in Jeremiah xxxi. 27: "Behold the days come, saith the Lord, that I will sow the house of Israel and the house of Judah with the seed of men and with the seed of beasts;" and Isaiah lxi. 9—11. God is the Husbandman (John xv. 1), Jezreel is His husbandry (1 Cor. iii. 9); the field is the world (Matt. xiii. 24). The Apostles and their successors in all ages are the Sowers of the Seed; and the Harvest is the End of the World (Matt. xiii. 39); the reapers are the Angels, and the Barn is Heaven. Cp. Rev. xiv. 15.

CH. III. 1. *Go yet, love a woman beloved of her friend, yet an adulteress*] Though Israel has been faithless to God, yet she is not utterly cast off; she is still beloved of her friend (cp. the use of the word *friend* in Cant. v. 16. Jer. iii. 1. 20), her companion, her lover, her husband, who is God (ii. 16). This is what is now represented by the Prophet, who is commanded to take again to himself his wife Gomer (i. 3), notwithstanding her unfaithfulness to him.

— and *love flagons of wine*] Rather, *raisin-cakes*. See *Sept.*, *Fulg.*, *Syriac*, *Arabic*, and 2 Sam. vi. 19. Such cakes were offered to idols (Jer. vii. 18; xlv. 19). They who love such dainties are they who care not for the spiritual delights of

God's love, but only for that which gratifies their own sensual appetites. See above on *Diblain*, i. 3.

2. *So I bought her to me for fifteen pieces of silver*] I did not espouse her to me for a wife, but I bought, or acquired (lit. by *digging*, cp. Deut. ii. 6. Job vi. 27; xlii. 11) her for me as a slave, at a mean price—fifteen shekels of silver (thirty shekels was the price of a slave—Exod. xxi. 32) and fifteen ephahs of barley (not wheat, cp. note on Rev. vi. 6), showing to how low a state of degradation and distress she was now reduced. This represents the condition of the Jewish People, no longer a loved or loving spouse, but in bondage (see Gal. iv. 25); and yet she is reserved for a happy time, when she will be delivered into the glorious liberty of the children of God (Rom. viii. 21).

3. *Thou shalt abide*] Lit. *thou shalt sit* (and so in v. 4) not as a harlot sitting by the way-side (Gen. xxxviii. 14), but waiting in patience till thy former Husband vouchsafes to take notice of thee, and restore thee to Himself. Cp. Deut. xxi. 13, which describes the preparatory discipline and purification of a captive woman before she is received into wedlock.

— *thou shalt not play the harlot*] Thou shalt not worship false gods: idolatry is spiritual fornication.

One of the happy consequences of the Jewish Captivity has been, that Israel has thus been weaned from idolatry. Cp. *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 299; and see v. 4 here.

THE DISPERSION OF ISRAEL, AND ITS FUTURE RESTORATION IN CHRIST.

4. *without a king—teraphim*] Here is a remarkable prophecy, which has been literally fulfilled, as even the Jewish Rabbis confess. "These" (says *Kimchi*, ap. *Pocock*, 122) "are the days of the banishment in which we now are, wherein we have neither king nor prince of Israel, but are under the power of Gentile nations, and without a sacrifice: so are we at this time in this captivity, even all the children of Israel." "Who" (says *S. Augustine*, de Civ. Dei. vii. 28) "does not here recognize a prophetic representation of what the Jews are now? But let us hear what the prophet adds: 'Afterwards they shall return, and seek the Lord their God, and David their king.' Nothing can be more clear than this prophecy, inasmuch as Christ was made of David's seed (Rom. i. 3)."

Though God had promised to David perpetuity to his seed and throne, yet He here declares that Israel should remain many days *without a king, and without a prince*. Both prophecies have come true. David's monarchy ceased to be *visible* at the Captivity, and yet it is everlasting in CHRIST. See above, on Gen. xlix. 10, and on 2 Sam. vii.

Yet further. Although Israel has been many days without an *ephod* (Exod. xxviii. 4, 5. 1 Sam. xxii. 18; xxiii. 9), that is, without a visible *priesthood*, as the *Sept.* and *Arabic* rightly interpret it, yet it has never fallen into idolatry, as a nation, since the Babylonish Captivity. It has remained for more than 2000 years without an *image* (Exod. xxiii. 24; xxiv. 13. Deut. vii. 5; xii. 3; xvi. 22. 2 Kings iii. 2; below, x. 1. Micah v. 13, where the same word is used as here), and without *teraphim*—i. e. without idols (as the Prophet says before in v. 3, they shall "not play the harlot"). See Gen. xxxi. 19. 1 Sam. xv. 23; xix. 13. 2 Kings xxiii. 24. Ezek. xxi. 21. Zech. x. 2.

And yet, though Israel has not been *guilty* of idolatry for 2000 years, it has been and is *punished* more severely than when it committed idolatry. What can be the cause of this? The reason is, because it is guilty of the sin of not believing in Christ.

without a prince, and without a sacrifice, and without † an image, and without an *ephod, and without † teraphim:

⁵ Afterward shall the children of Israel return, and *seek the LORD their God, and ^h David their king; and shall fear the LORD and his goodness in the † latter days.

IV. ¹ Hear the word of the LORD, ye children of Israel: for the LORD hath a ^a controversy with the inhabitants of the land, because *there is* no truth, nor mercy, nor ^b knowledge of God in the land. ² By swearing, and lying, and killing, and stealing, and committing adultery, they break out, and † blood toucheth blood.

³ Therefore ^c shall the land mourn, and ^d every one that dwelleth therein shall languish, with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven; yea, the fishes of the sea also shall be taken away.

⁴ Yet let no man strive, nor reprove another: for thy people *are* as they ^e that strive with the priest.

Before
CHRIST
about
755.

† Heb. *standing*,
or, *statue*, or,
pillar, Isa. 19. 19.
e Exod. 25. 6.
f Judg. 17. 5.

g Jer. 50. 4, 5.
ch. 5. 6.

h Jer. 30. 9.
Ezek. 34. 23, 24.
& 37. 22, 24.

i Isa. 2. 2.

Jer. 30. 24.

Ezek. 34. 8, 16.

Dan. 2. 25.

Michah 4. 1.

about
750.

a Isa. 1. 18. &

3. 13, 14.

Jer. 25. 31.

ch. 12. 2.

Michah 6. 2.

b Jer. 4. 22. &

5. 4.

† Heb. *bloods*.

c Jer. 4. 25. &

12. 4.

Amos 5. 16. &

8. 8.

d Zeph. 1. 3.

e Deut. 17. 12.

In the captivity and dispersion of Israel, we recognize the hand of God's fatherly mercy and love. The destruction of the material fabric of the Temple, and of the Levitical Priesthood, prepared the Jews to look to Christ, the Eternal High Priest, and to the Spiritual Temple of His Universal Church; the abandonment of their images and their teraphim—that is, of all idolatrous usages, has qualified them to be worshippers in that holy Temple. Alas! that some Christian Churches should now be obstructing the approach of the Jews to Christ by acts of creature-worship—such as the adoration of saints and angels, and by setting up idols in the house of God! It has been supposed, with good reason, that some severe judgments of God must overtake idolatrous Churches, before the Jews can be converted to Christianity.

⁵ *Afterward shall the children of Israel return, and seek the LORD their God, and David their king*] The Hebrew Nation, which said at the crucifixion of Christ, "We have no king but Cæsar" (John xix. 15).—thus rejecting her true King,—will remain many days without a visible Monarchy and Priesthood; yet, in the latter days, they shall return and find the LORD their God, and David their king in CHRIST, Who is the Everlasting King and Priest (S. Jerome).

The Hebrew Rabbis themselves confess that this prophecy refers to the Messiah. See the *Chaldee Paraphrase* here and R. Tanchum, *Aben Ezra*, and *Kimchi*, in *Pocock*, 138, 139; and see above, note on v. 4. May God hasten the time!

It may be remarked here, in passing, that these words afford one refutation, among innumerable others, of the *literal* system of interpretation of Divine prophecy. If the promises of God to Jerusalem and Zion in Hebrew prophecy are to be localized, and to be limited to the literal City and Temple of the material Jerusalem (instead of being extended to the Spiritual Zion of Christ's Church Universal), then we ought, in reading the present prophecy, to say, that it predicts a personal resurrection of David the King, to sit on a throne in that earthly Jerusalem. But no; Jerusalem is Christ's Church; and David lives and reigns there for ever in CHRIST. See above, on Jer. xxx. 9. Ezek. xxxiv. 23, 24.

— *and shall fear the LORD*] Literally, *they shall go trembling to the Lord*. This must be the attitude and gesture of the Jews, if they are to be received again into the favour of God. See xi. 11, "They shall tremble as a bird out of Egypt, and as a dove out of the land of Assyria." Zech. xii. 10, and cp. Ps. ii. 11.

As was before observed, God's favoured people, the Jews (formerly addicted to idolatry, and therefore rejected by God), have now continued free from idolatry for many years (as the Prophet here foretells), and yet have remained outcasts from His favour; and therefore it is certain that they must have been guilty, and still are guilty, of some more heinous sin than idolatry. What sin is that? It is the rejection of God's own Son, crucified by them a short time before the destruction of Jerusalem and their own dispersion, which He Himself foretold would be the consequence of that act (Matt. xxiii. 38. S. Chrysostom; S. Jerome). Let the Jews only repent of that sin, and come trembling and mourning for it, and they will again be received with open arms by their heavenly Father. See below, on Zech. xii. 10—14; xiii. 1.

— *in the latter days*] It is a rule given by the Hebrew expositors, that, by the *latter days*, we are to understand the days

of the Messiah; and we must conclude, that what is said to be done in the latter days, is to be fulfilled in the days of Christ—that is, in the times of the Gospel (*Pocock*, 143).

CH. IV.] Having anticipated the end in these introductory chapters, which are a PROLOGUE to the whole (see on i. 1), Hosea (as is usual with the goodly company of the Prophets) returns to his own age, and addresses his own people, "*Hear the word . . . ye children of Israel*." Observe, he takes up the words *children of Israel* from the foregoing chapter, and in a stirring apostrophe remonstrates with the people and their rulers, spiritual and temporal, for the sins which would be the cause of the misery which he has foretold, and thus he links on this portion of the prophecy to the preceding. See below, on v. 1, where another link of connexion, "*Hear ye*," is noticed.

² *By swearing, and lying*] These are infinitive absolutes in the original. The preposition, *by*, should be omitted; and thus there would be more vehemence in this prophetic outburst.

— *they break out*] Rather, *they break in*. The word describes violent aggression and irruption, like that of a house-breaker (*Gesen*. 691).

— *blood toucheth blood*] Literally, *bloods touch bloods*. The plural describes the frequency of the crime; waves of blood follow one another, like the billows of the sea in a ceaseless tide. . . . Alas! that this description should be realized in some Christian countries in these latter days. What will the end be?

It is not unworthy of consideration, that many Hebrew Expositors interpret these words *blood toucheth blood*, as applying to incestuous marriages, contracted within the forbidden limits of consanguinity. See the *Targum* here; and *Pocock*, 149. If the words are received in that sense, here too is a warning to Christian nations.

³ *Therefore shall the land mourn—with the beasts of the field*] Cattle plagues are described by the Prophet here as punishments of the sins of men, who are sustained by the animal creation, and who suffer in its destruction by pestilence. See below, on Joel i. 18.

⁴ *let no man strive*] Impunity in sin is the greatest punishment. Cp. v. 17; and *Pocock*, 156.

— *thy people*] They are no longer God's people. Compare God's words to Moses after the idolatry at Horeb, "*Thy people have corrupted themselves*" (Exod. xxxii. 7. Deut. ix. 12).

— *as they that strive with the priest*] He repeats the word *strive*. Let no man strive by remonstrance with those who strive with God, by rebellion against His lawful representatives invested with His authority (Deut. xxxiii. 10. Mal. ii. 7). Their case is desperate; they are given over to a reprobate mind. Cp. Deut. xvii. 8—13, where God says, that whoso wilfully and presumptuously rejected the lawful sentence of God, speaking by His priests, was to be put to death.

The Jews, to express great impiety, have a proverb which says, they are like those who "judge their judges" (*Pocock*, 158); and our Lord says of His Apostles, "He that despiseth you, despiseth Me" (Luke x. 16); and the Apostles specify this sin as an imitation of "the gainsaying of Korah," and as one of the characteristics of the latter days (2 Pet. ii. 10. Jude 8). The prevalence of this sin in our own age and country may

Before
CHRIST
about
780.
f See Jer. 6. 4, 5.
& 15. 8.
† Heb. cut off.
g Isa. 5. 13.
† Heb. cut off.

h ch. 13. 6.
i 1 Sam. 2. 30.
Mal. 2. 9.
Phil. 3. 19.

† Heb. lift up
their soul to their
iniquity.
k Isa. 24. 2.
Jer. 5. 31.
† Heb. visit upon.
† Heb. cause to
return.
l Lev. 26. 26.
Micah 6. 14.
Hag. 1. 6.

m Isa. 28. 7.
See Eccles. 7. 7.
n Jer. 2. 27.
Hab. 2. 19.

o Isa. 44. 20.
ch. 5. 4

p Isa. 1. 29. &
57. 5, 7.
Ezek. 6. 13. &
20. 28.

q Amos 7. 17.
Rom. 1. 23.

|| Or, Shall I
not, &c.

⁵ Therefore shalt thou fall ^r in the day, and the prophet also shall fall with thee in the night, and I will [†] destroy thy mother.

⁶ ^s My people are [†] destroyed for lack of knowledge: because thou hast rejected knowledge, I will also reject thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children.

⁷ ^h As they were increased, so they sinned against me: ⁱ therefore will I change their glory into shame.

⁸ They eat up the sin of my people,

And they [†] set their heart on their iniquity.

⁹ And there shall be, ^k like people, like priest:

And I will [†] punish them for their ways, and [†] reward them their doings.

¹⁰ For ^l they shall eat and not have enough:

They shall commit whoredom, and shall not increase:

Because they have left off to take heed to the LORD.

¹¹ Whoredom and wine and new wine ^m take away the heart.

¹² My people ask counsel at their ⁿ stocks,

And their staff declareth unto them:

For ^o the spirit of whoredoms hath caused *them* to err,

And they have gone a whoring from under their God.

¹³ ^p They sacrifice upon the tops of the mountains,

And burn incense upon the hills,

Under oaks and poplars and elms, because the shadow thereof *is* good:

^q Therefore your daughters shall commit whoredom,

And your spouses shall commit adultery.

¹⁴ || I will not punish your daughters when they commit whoredom,

Nor your spouses when they commit adultery:

For themselves are separated with whores,

well suggest serious and sorrowful forebodings for what is coming.

⁵. in the day—in the night] Neither in day-time nor in night-time shalt thou be free from calamity.

— thy mother] The Hebrew Nation. Cp. ii. 2.

⁶. of knowledge] Literally, of the knowledge, the only true wisdom—the knowledge of God (Job xxviii. 12—20. Prov. i. 7).

— no priest] Thou, who wert a nation of priests (Exod. xix. 6), shalt be degraded from thy estate.

⁷. As they were increased, so they sinned against me] The more they prospered, the more they sinned against Me, the Author of their prosperity. Cp. Deut. xxxii. 15, “Jeshurun waxed fat, and kicked.”

— will I change their glory into shame] Because they changed Me—their glory—for an idol, their shame (see ix. 10, and ep. Ps. cvi. 20), therefore will I change their glory into shame.

⁸. my people] They (the priests who ought to reprove sin) fatten themselves on the sins of the people. This was fulfilled specially in the fact that the priests encouraged the people to sin, in order that they themselves might feed upon the sacrifices which they commanded the people to bring in order to expiate their sins. See Lev. vi. 26; x. 17; and *Pocock*, 168.

— they set their heart] Or, lifted up their soul (literally, in the singular number, every one lifted up his soul) on the iniquity of the people; they encouraged them in it, in order that they might profit by it; like those in later days who connive at and abet sin, in order that they may enrich themselves with wealth gotten by absolution from it, and by commutation of penance.

The Prophet has been asserting the legitimate authority of the priesthood in the strongest terms (“thy people are as they that strive with the priest”); and therefore there is greater force in this censure and condemnation of the Priests who were treacherous to their solemn engagements.

⁹. like people, like priest] In sin and punishment. Cp. Isa. xxiv. 2.

Here is a warning to the Clergy. If the Priests of a

Church are untrue to their solemn vows and engagements, what will become of the people? How beautiful is the portrait of the “Good Parson,” drawn by our great English poet of the fourteenth century, Geoffrey Chaucer:—

“Wide was his parish, and houses far asunder,
But he ne left nought for no rain nor thunder,
In sickness and in mischief, to visit
The farthest in his parish much and lite,
Upon his feet, and in his hand a staff:
This noble ^{nsample} to his sheep he yaf (gave),
That first he wrought, and afterward he taught;
Out of the Gospel he the wordes caught,
And this figure he added yet thereto,
That if gold rusted, what should iron do?
For if a priest be foul, on whom we trust,
No wonder is a lewéd man (lay man) to rust;
And shame it is, if that a priest take keep
To see a fouldéd shepherd, and clean sheep:
Well ought a priest ensample for to give
By his cleanness, how his sheep should live.”

(Chaucer, Prologue to “Canterbury Tales.”)

¹². My people ask counsel at their stocks] “Saying to a stock, Thou art my father” (Jer. ii. 27; x. 3). “Woe unto him that saith unto the wood, Awake” (Hab. ii. 19, and ep. Isa. xl. 20; xlv. 13—20).

— their staff declareth unto them] Their staff, or stick (see Ezek. xxi. 21), to which they resort (instead of to God and His Prophets, and Urim and Thummim), is prophesying unto them. They make the dumb wood their God. May not this also be applied to some in later days, who resort to forbidden arts for searching into futurity?

¹³. They sacrifice upon the tops of the mountains] Cp. Deut. xii. 2—5. 2 Kings xvii. 10, 11. Ezek. xx. 28.

— elms] Rather, the *terebinths*.

— the shadow thereof is good] Good for hiding their idolatrous and lustful purposes and practices.

¹⁴. themselves] The fathers and husbands are separated, or go aside, with whores.

And they sacrifice with harlots :

Therefore the people *that* doth not understand shall || fall.

¹⁵ Though thou, Israel, play the harlot,

Yet let not Judah offend ;

* And come not ye unto Gilgal,

Neither go ye up to 'Beth-aven,

ⁱ Nor swear, The LORD liveth.

¹⁶ For Israel *slideth back as a backsliding heifer :

Now the LORD will feed them as a lamb in a large place.

¹⁷ Ephraim *is* joined to idols :

ⁱ Let him alone.

¹⁸ Their drink † is sour :

They have committed whoredom continually :

² Her † rulers *with* shame do love, Give ye.

¹⁹ ⁱ The wind hath bound her up in her wings,

And ⁱ they shall be ashamed because of their sacrifices.

V. ¹ Hear ye this, O priests ;

And hearken, ye house of Israel ;

Before
CHRIST
about
780.

r ver. 1, 6.
|| Or, be punished.

s ch. 9. 15. &
12. 11.
Amos 4. 4. &
5. 5.
1 Kings 12. 29.
ch. 10. 5.
u Amos 8. 14.
Zeph. 1. 5.
x Jer. 3. 6. &
7. 21. & 8. 5.
Zech. 7. 11.

y Matt. 15. 14.

† Heb. *is gone*.

z Micah 3. 11. &
7. 3.
† Heb. *shields*,
Ps. 47. 9.
a Jer. 4. 11. 12.
& 51. 1.
b Isa. 1. 29.
Jer. 2. 26.

— *harlots*] Consecrated as such to their false gods. See the note on Gen. xxxviii. 21, where the same word is used as here.

GILGAL AND BETHEL.

¹⁵ *Gilgal—Beth-aven*] *Gilgal* and *Bethel*, two places once famous for God's mercies to their fathers; the former celebrated in the history of Joshua, who initiated the people anew into covenant with God by circumcision there—whence it had its name *Gilgal*, or *rolling away* (Josh. v. 9); and it was "holy ground" (Josh. v. 15), and made glorious by his victories (see on Josh. iv. 19; ix. 6; x. 6); and famous also in the days of the Judges (ii. 1), and Samuel (1 Sam. vii. 16; x. 8; xi. 14; xv. 33).

The sin of Israel was aggravated by their desecration of such a place as Gilgal. Cp. below, ix. 15; xii. 11. Amos iv. 4; v. 5. Cp. *A Lapid* here.

So *Bethel* (*house of God*) was once a holy place, but afterwards it was profaned. It was made famous in the history of Abraham and the other patriarchs by God's gracious revelation to them (Gen. xii. 8; xxviii. 19; xxxi. 13; xxxv. 15), but was now perverted by idolatry into a *Beth-aven*, a *house of vanity* (1 Kings xii. 29. 32; xiii. 1. 2 Kings x. 29). Cp. v. 8; x. 5; and see below, on Amos v. 5.

There is no reason for supposing, with some modern Expositors, that the Prophets are speaking of *another* Gilgal than that which was near Jericho; indeed, such a supposition much weakens the force of their remonstrances with Israel for desecrating, by their idolatry and other sins, such places as Bethel and Gilgal, which had been hallowed by the piety of their forefathers, and by God's gracious dispensations to them. Cp. on v. 1, and on vi. 9.

As Hosea himself says (ix. 15), "All their wickedness is in *Gilgal*"—even in Gilgal, where, when their fathers had been brought by Joshua out of the wilderness, they pitched their first camp in Canaan, and where they were consecrated to God by a second circumcision, even there they now set up their idols, and worship them instead of God (*S. Jerome*).

Observe here a specimen of that policy which has ever characterized the operations of the Evil One in the Church of God. He is ever attempting to pervert her holiest objects—her Bethels and her Gilgals—into scenes of idolatry, and to make them his own instruments for the destruction of souls. He is always endeavouring to change our Bethels into Beth-avens. Holy places, holy persons (even the Blessed Virgin herself), holy things (even the Word of God and Sacraments of Christ) are desecrated by him, and enlisted in his own service.

— *Nor swear, The LORD liveth*] Since ye worship *dead idols*, even at Gilgal and Bethel, instead of the *living God*, Who revealed Himself to your fathers in the wilderness, what monstrous inconsistency and absurdity is it for you to swear, "The LORD liveth!" you perjure yourselves by your acts.

¹⁶ *Israel slideth back as a backsliding heifer*] This image is suggested by the mention of Bethel. Israel worshipped a

calf there; and by so doing became like "a calf that eateth hay," and like a refractory one, kicking against its owner.

— *a lamb in a large place*] Observe the irony here. Israel kicks, like a restive and refractory heifer, against its Master's yoke, and desires freedom. Cp. Jer. v. 5. Israel shall have liberty—the liberty of wandering far and wide from its home in the wilderness of Assyria, to which it will be carried captive and be scattered there. The refractory heifer will become like a stray lamb, one not sheltered and fed in the fold, but feeble and exposed to wild beasts in the solitude of the desert. The service of God is the only perfect freedom. What the World calls liberty, is too often the slavery of Satan, hurrying the miserable soul from the city of God into a howling wilderness.

¹⁷ *Ephraim is joined to idols*] Literally, *to sorrows*. Idols will be the cause of misery to their votaries. The metaphor is kept up; Ephraim has kicked against God's yoke, like a refractory heifer, and has joined or yoked itself to idols; as it were, yoked itself to an idolatrous car; and its punishment will be that God will let it alone (cp. Jer. vii. 16. Ezek. xx. 39), and leave it to itself to wander at large in a strange land.

¹⁸ *Their drink is sour*] Israel has degenerated, like milk turned sour, or like wine that has lost its flavour. Cp. Isa. i. 22, and our Lord's words, "if the salt has lost its savour" (Matt. v. 13).

— *rulers*] Literally, *shields*. Rulers, who ought to be "defenders of the faith" and protectors of the people, are called *shields* here, as in Ps. xlvii. 9.

— *Her rulers with shame do love, Give ye*] Rather, *her rulers love, yea they love, shame* (*Ewald, Pusey, Keil*); or it may mean, *they love to say, Give ye shame*, which offers the same sense. By serving idols they seek their own shame, and they woo their own woe.

¹⁹ *The wind—wings*] The wind has wrapped up Israel in its wings, in order to sweep it away captive into a distant land. Wind is personified as a winged creature, a powerful Bird of prey, which carries off its victims in its wings. Cp. the imagery in Zech. v. 1. 9, and Ps. xviii. 10; civ. 3. Isa. lvii. 13, and the representations of the Winds on "the Temple of the Winds" at Athens.

The metaphor is kept up. Ephraim has broken away from God's yoke, and bound itself to idols; therefore, it will be tied up in the wings of a whirlwind, and swept away into the wilderness, as sand carried up and whirled about in the eddying vortex of a tornado in the desert.

— *ashamed*] Because they have *loved shame* (i. e. idols), they themselves will be reduced to shame. Cp. Isa. i. 29.

Chr. V. 1. *Hear ye this, O priests*] Observe the connexion; he had said that if they turned to God, God would *hear* the voice of creation pleading for them (ii. 21, 22). But if not, he has a message of woe to Princes, Priests, and People. *Hear ye the word of the Lord*, iv. 1, and, *Hear ye this, O priests*. Cp. Joel i. 2. Amos iii. 1. 13; iv. 1; v. 1; vii. 16; viii. 4. Micah i. 2; iii. 1. 9; vi. 1. 2. 9.

Before
CHRIST
about
780.

a ch. 6. 9.

b Isa. 29. 15.

|| Or, and, &c.
† Heb. a correc-
tion.

c Amos 3. 2.

d Ezek. 23. 5, &c.
ch. 4. 17.

† Heb. They will
not give.

|| Or, Their
doings will not
suffer them.
e ch. 4. 12.

f ch. 7. 10.

g Prov. 1. 28.

Isa. 1. 15.

Jer. 11. 11.

Ezek. 8. 18.

Micah 3. 4.

John 7. 34.

h Isa. 48. 8.

Jer. 3. 20. & 5. 11.

ch. 6. 7.

Mal. 2. 11.

i Zech. 11. 8.

k ch. 8. 1.

Joel 2. 1.

And give ye ear, O house of the king ;

For judgment is toward you,

Because ^a ye have been a snare on Mizpah,

And a net spread upon Tabor.

² And the revolvers are ^b profound to make slaughter,

|| Though I have been [†] a rebuker of them all.

³ ^c I know Ephraim, and Israel is not hid from me :

For now, O Ephraim, ^d thou committest whoredom, and Israel is defiled.

⁴ [†] || They will not frame their doings to turn unto their God :

For ^e the spirit of whoredoms is in the midst of them,

And they have not known the LORD.

⁵ And ^f the pride of Israel doth testify to his face :

Therefore shall Israel and Ephraim fall in their iniquity ;

Judah also shall fall with them.

⁶ ^g They shall go with their flocks and with their herds to seek the LORD ;

But they shall not find him ; he hath withdrawn himself from them.

⁷ They have ^h dealt treacherously against the LORD :

For they have begotten strange children :

Now shall ⁱ a month devour them with their portions.

⁸ ^k Blow ye the cornet in Gibeah,

And the trumpet in Ramah :

— *house of the king*] The royal family generally. He is not addressing the house of any one king of Israel specially (whether Jeroboam II., Zechariah, Shallum, Menahem, Pekahiah, or Pekah), but is speaking to them generally. The prophecies of Hosea are a summary of his exhortations and denunciations, uttered during his long ministry of more than sixty years.

— *on Mizpah*] Even Mizpah, the scene of God's revelations of favour to your great ancestor (Gen. xxxi. 49), and of other acts famous in your national history (Judges x. 17 ; xi. 11 ; xx. 1), and that other Mizpah, celebrated in the later days of Samuel (1 Sam. vii. 5, 6 ; x. 17), have been desecrated by you like Bethel and Gilgal (see iv. 15). Even there, on those high places, ye spread snares for souls, by waylaying them there in their journey to Jerusalem to worship in the place appointed by God (*Eben Ezra, Kimchi*), and by decoying them by the allurements of your idol worship,—as fowlers spread nets for birds on those mountains, and catch their prey there (*S. Jerome*).

Observe the paronomasia (or play upon the words) here. "Ye have been a snare on Mizpah (your strong watch-tower), therefore there is judgment—Heb. *Mishpat*—against you." If we pervert our *Bethels* into *Bethavens*, God will change our *Mizpahs* into *Mishpats*.

— *Tabor*] Even there, where God showed His marvellous power, might, and mercy to Israel in the days of Deborah (Judg. iv. 6, 12).

² *are profound to make slaughter*] Or rather, *made slaughter deep* : dug a deep pit and filled it with carnage—like the pit of Mizpah in the days of Jeremiah. See Jer. xli. 7—9.

— *Though—all*] Or literally, "but I am rebuke (or chastisement) to them all (cp. v. 9) for their sins." I, who am love, have become wrath to them. Cp. above, on Ps. cix. 4. "I am prayer." Cp. *Pocock*, 218.

³ *Israel is defiled*] Has defiled itself.

⁴ *They will not frame their doings*] Or rather (see margin), their doings do not allow them to turn to God.

⁵ *the pride of Israel doth testify to his face*] The pride of Israel will witness against him. As the rebel angels fell by pride (1 Tim. iii. 6), so did Ephraim. Ephraim, the descendant of Jacob, of the tribe of Joseph, and one of the most powerful and prosperous of the tribes, was impatient of the rule of Judah ; it envied Judah (Isa. xi. 13), and rebelled against the house of David in the days of Jeroboam (1 Kings xi. 26), and set up idols, in opposition to the Temple at Jerusalem. These were the fruits of its pride. These were the consequences of its haughtiness ; these its miserable results, in provoking God's wrath against Israel (till at length it was taken captive and

scattered), testified against Ephraim to his face openly, as Isaiah says (iii. 9). "The show of their countenance doth witness against them, they declare their sin as Sodom, they hide it not." This exposition seems preferable to the interpretation of some (e.g. *Keil*), that the "pride of Israel" (here and in vii. 10) is equivalent to "the glory of Israel" (in Amos viii. 7 ; cp. below, vii. 10), and is a title of Jehovah Himself.

— *Judah also shall fall with them*] Being tempted by Israel (as in the days of Athaliah, daughter of Ahab and Jezebel, and wife of Jehoram, the son of Jehoshaphat), to set up idols in Jerusalem (2 Kings, viii. 26, 27 ; xi. 18. 2 Chron. xxii. 2—4).

⁶ *They shall go with their flocks and with their herds to seek the LORD*] With sacrifices : but though they drive all their flocks and herds to God's altar, and offer them there, they will not find Him, because they rebelled against Him. Cp. Isa. i. 11. Mic. vi. 6, 7, and below, vi. 6. All the holocausts and hecatombs in the world are profitless without obedience to God's Will and Word.

⁷ *They have dealt treacherously*] They have acted perfidiously, like a faithless wife ; such is the meaning of the word used here (*bāgad*) and Jer. iii. 20. Mal. ii. 14. Hence we may explain what follows : "they have begotten strange children."

— *Now shall a month devour them with their portions*] Rather, "Now shall the new moon devour them with their portions, or inheritance." Israel was God's lot, or portion (Hebr. *chelek*), and God divided to them their portions or lots in Canaan. See *Gesen*. 284. But, because they are faithless to Him, their sacrifices will not profit them ; nay, those sacrifices have become an abomination to Him, and will increase their condemnation. Instead of His accepting those sacrifices, and feeding upon them as well-pleasing to Him, those sacrifices will devour them. *The month, the new moon*—even their very feast-day—will be loathsome to God, and will be their day of doom (cp. Isa. i. 13, 14) ; it will devour them with their inheritance. See *Gesen*. 263, and *Keil*.

This prophecy was consummated in the crucifixion of Christ. The Paschal full moon brought hundreds of thousands of worshippers to Jerusalem, but it was the season in which the Jews killed Him who was the True Passover ; and that sin was the cause of their own destruction at the anniversary of the same Paschal Season, about forty years after, by the arms of Rome. See below, on Matt. xxiv. 1.

THE FUTURE INVASION OF ISRAEL.

⁸ *Blow ye—the trumpet*] In order to summon the tribes of Israel together (cp. viii. 1. Jer. iv. 5 ; vi. 1. Joel ii. 1), to repel the invasion of their enemies the Assyrians. The Prophet foresees that invasion, and describes it. Compare the sublime

- ¹ Cry aloud at ^m Beth-aven,
ⁿ After thee, O Benjamin.
⁹ Ephraim shall be desolate in the day of rebuke :
 Among the tribes of Israel have I made known that which shall surely be.
¹⁰ The princes of Judah were like them that ^o remove the bound :
 Therefore I will pour out my wrath upon them like water.
¹¹ Ephraim is ^p oppressed and broken in judgment,
 Because he willingly walked after ^q the commandment.
¹² Therefore will I be unto Ephraim as a moth,
 And to the house of Judah ^r as || rottenness.
¹³ When Ephraim saw his sickness,
 And Judah saw his ^s wound,
 Then went Ephraim ^t to the Assyrian, ^u and sent || to king Jareb :
 Yet could he not heal you, nor cure you of your wound.
¹⁴ For ^x I will be unto Ephraim as a lion,
 And as a young lion to the house of Judah :
^y I, even I, will tear and go away ;
 I will take away, and none shall rescue him.
¹⁵ I will go and return to my place,
 † Till ^z they acknowledge their offence, and seek my face :
^a In their affliction they will seek me early.
- VI. ¹ Come, and let us return unto the LORD :
 For ^a he hath torn, and ^b he will heal us ;
 He hath smitten, and he will bind us up.
² ^c After two days will he revive us :
 In the third day he will raise us up,

Before
CHRIST
about
780.

1 Isa. 10. 30.
m Josh. 7. 2.
ch. 4. 15.
n Judg. 5. 14.

o Deut. 19. 14.
& 27. 17.

p Deut. 28. 33.
q 1 Kings 12. 28.
Micah 6. 16.

r Prov. 12. 4.
|| Or, a worm.

s Jer. 30. 12.
t 2 Kings 15. 19.
ch. 7. 11. & 12. 1.
u ch. 10. 6.
|| Or, to the king
of Jareb : or, to
the king that
should plead.
x Lam. 3. 10.
ch. 13. 7, 8.
y Ps. 50. 22.

† Heb. till they
be guilty.
z Lev. 26. 40, 41.
Jer. 29. 12, 13.
Ezek. 6. 9. &
20. 43. & 36. 31.
a Ps. 78. 34.
a Deut. 32. 39.
1 Sam. 2. 6.
Job 5. 18.
b Jer. 30. 17.
c 1 Cor. 15. 4.

prophetical picture in Isaiah (x. 28—31) pre-announcing the irruption of Sennacherib and his rapid march of destruction. We may also refer to the words of Ezekiel, declaring the duties of the watchman on beholding the approach of an enemy (Ezek. xxxiii. 2—6).

— *Gibeah—Ramah*] Two lofty eminences on the northern frontier of Benjamin. The mention of these places shows that in Hosea's prophetic eye the enemy was already in possession of the greatest part of northern and central Palestine.

— *Cry aloud*] Sound an alarm, as the word is rendered in Joel ii. 1.

— *Beth-aven*] Bethel. See iv. 15.

— *After thee, O Benjamin*] The enemy is already on thy rear.

10. *remove the bound*] Or landmark. Cp. Deut. xix. 14; xxvii. 17. Because they are guilty of this sin, I will remove them.

11. *in judgment*] Rather, *by the judgment*, of God.

— *the commandment*] Of Jeroboam. Israel obeyed, or followed after, the commandment (Hebr. *tsav*) of Jeroboam, ordering them to disobey God, and therefore God will break them by judgment. Compare Mic. vi. 16, "The statutes of Omri are kept—that I should make thee a desolation;" and Matt. xv. 9. Mark vii. 7, "Teaching for doctrines the commandments of men."

12. *moth—rottenness*] Rather, *moth*, and *a worm*. That is, though Israel may seem to flourish (as it did in the days of Jeroboam II.), yet, because it is not sound at heart, God's anger is secretly corroding it, as a moth frets a beautiful garment, or as a canker preys on a fair shrub or flower; and, after much patient long-suffering, God's wrath will consume His people (*S. Jerome*). Cp. Isa. i. 9; li. 8. Ps. xxxix. 11. Job xiii. 28.

KING JAREB.

13. *king Jareb*] Literally, *King adversary*. This title is given here to the king of Assyria, on whom Israel and Judah relied for help in trouble (2 Kings xvi. 8. 2 Chron. xxviii. 16—20), and to whom they resorted with gifts and fair speeches, as to a friend or lover, *ahab* (cp. ii. 5. 7. 10. 13); but who became a *yareb*, or adversary to them, and who strove and fought against

them. Cp. x. 6. 2 Chron. xxviii. 16. 28; and see *Gesen.* 365. 368. 767; *Delitzsch* on Isa. xlix. 25.

For similar symbolical names (such as *Sheshach*, *Pekod*, *Merathaim*), formed by the Prophets to describe the characters of kings and cities with which Israel and Judah had to do, see the notes above, on Jer. xxv. 26; li. 41. Ezek. xxiii. 23.

14. *I will be*] Do not suppose that Assyria will be strong against you by its own power. No; all its might is from God, Who uses it as His instrument. Cp. Isa. x. 5.

— *as a lion*] God, Who had been in His long-suffering like a moth (v. 12), and had seemed weak and powerless, will at length roar as a lion, and devour them suddenly.

15. *I will go and return to my place*] I will withdraw My presence from them, and will retire from their earthly Temple into My heavenly Sanctuary; and by making them feel their need of My help in their distress, I will bring them to repentance (*Turgum*).

PROPHECY OF THE REPENTANCE AND CONVERSION OF ISRAEL.

CH. VI. 1. *Come, and let us return*] God had just said that *He would return to His place*, and hide His Face from His People, and by the merciful discipline of affliction would bring them to repentance, and would draw them by affliction to seek Him (v. 15); and now the Prophet seems to behold the conversion of the Jews, and to hear their words of penitential prayer to God: "Come," they say, "let us return unto the Lord. He hath torn, and He will heal us; He hath smitten, and He will bind us up." Cp. 1 Kings viii. 46—51. Jer. xxix. 12—14; and note above, on Isa. lix. 7—10, and the language in Deut. xxxii. 39, which is adopted here.

2. *After two days will he revive us in the third day he will raise us up*] The fall of Babylon, and the consequent restoration of the Jews by Cyrus, came suddenly and unexpectedly. "Then were we like unto them that dream. Then said they among the heathen, the Lord hath done great things for them" (Ps. cxxvi. 1, 2).

After speaking of the marvellous deliverance of the Jews by Cyrus, the conqueror of Babylon, the Hebrew Prophets pass

Before
CHRIST
about
780.
d Isa. 54. 13.
e 2 Sam. 23. 4.
f Ps. 72. 6.
g Job 29. 23.

h ch. 11. 8.

|| Or, mercy, or,
kindness.
i ch. 13. 3.

k Jer. 1. 10. &
5. 14.
l Jer. 23. 29.
Heb. 4. 12.
|| Or, that thy
judgments might
be, &c.
m 1 Sam. 15. 22.
Eccles. 5. 1.
Micah 6. 8.
Matt. 9. 13. &
12. 7.
n Ps. 50. 8, 9.
Prov. 21. 3.
Isa. 1. 11.
o Jer. 22. 16.
John 17. 3.
|| Or, like Adam,
Job 31. 33.
p ch. 8. 1.
q ch. 5. 7.
r ch. 12. 11.
|| Or, cunning for
blood.
s Jer. 11. 9.
Ezek. 22. 25. ch 5. 1, 2. † Heb. with one shoulder, or, to Shechem.

And we shall live in his sight.

3^d Then shall we know, *if* we follow on to know the LORD :

His going forth is prepared ^e as the morning ;

And ^f he shall come unto us ^g as the rain,

As the latter *and* former rain unto the earth.

4^h O Ephraim, what shall I do unto thee ?

O Judah, what shall I do unto thee ?

For your || goodness *is* ⁱ as a morning cloud,

And as the early dew it goeth away.

5 Therefore have I hewed *them* ^k by the prophets ;

I have slain them by ^l the words of my mouth :

|| And thy judgments *are* as the light *that* goeth forth.

6 For I desired ^m mercy, and ⁿ not sacrifice ;

And the ^o knowledge of God more than burnt offerings.

7 But they || like men ^p have transgressed the covenant :

There ^q have they dealt treacherously against me.

8^r Gilead *is* a city of them that work iniquity,

And is || polluted with blood.

9 And as troops of robbers wait for a man,

So ^s the company of priests murder in the way † by consent :

on to speak of Christ, the divine Antitype of Cyrus (see above, on 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22), and of the sudden liberation effected by Him. The fall of Babylon and the deliverance of the Jews were wonderful. Much more will be the destruction of the spiritual enemies of the Church. Her recovery from the bondage of sin, Satan, and death, and her hope of resurrection from the grave to life eternal, came suddenly and unexpectedly by the Death, Burial, and Resurrection of Christ. It came on the *third day*. As *S. Jerome* says, "God in Christ not only healed us when sick, but He raised us from death to life *after two days*, by Christ's Resurrection on the *third day* from the dead; and we shall live in *His sight*; we shall live for ever in the sight of Him Whose Resurrection from the dead is the pledge and earnest of our Resurrection (*S. Jerome*; see also *Tertullian*, c. Marciou, iv. 43, adv. Jud. c. 13; *Origen*, Hom. 5 in Exod.; *S. Cyprian*, c. Judæos ii. 5; *S. Cyril*, Catech. 11; *S. Aug.* de Civ. Dei, xviii. 28; and so this passage of Hosea is interpreted by *Mercer*, *Hammond*, *Pocock*, *Lyranus*, *Calovius*, *A. Lapide*, *M. Henry*, and *Pusey*).

The Jewish Rabbis themselves allow that the Prophet is here speaking of the Messiah. See *Pocock*, 257; and ep. Job xix. 25—27. Isa. xxvi. 19—21. Ezek. xxxvii. 1—14.

Whether Hosea himself had a foresight of Christ's Resurrection on the third day, we cannot say; but the Christian Church, looking at the event, has ever believed that the Holy Spirit, Who spake by Hosea, here points to the Resurrection of Christ on the third day, as the source of all deliverance to the Israel of God. Cp. *Pocock*, 257, 258; and below, on xi. 1.

3. *Then shall we know, if we follow*] Rather, Then shall we know, and we shall *pursue*—like eager huntsmen—after the knowledge of the Lord.

— *His going forth is prepared as the morning*] Many are the goings forth of Christ, and all were bright and glorious, like the Day-spring. Christ's going forth from the bosom of the Father in eternity; His going forth by His Incarnation in time; His going forth as the Messiah to preach the Gospel after His Baptism; His going forth by His Resurrection from the grave—all these goings-forth were *prepared* or decreed by God, like the orient beams of the *morning*, to give life and light to a world lying in darkness (Mal. iv. 2. Luke i. 68). The same word for *going forth* is used by Micah (v. 2). His great *going forth* will be on the dawn of the Day of Universal Resurrection and Judgment.

— *as the rain*] As the Psalmist says of Christ, "He shall come down as the rain on the mown grass" (Ps. lxxii. 6. Cp. 2 Sam. xxiii. 4).

5. *Therefore have I hewed them by the prophets*] I have hewed them by prophets, as blocks from the quarry of rough stone or marble are hewn, in order that they may be polished

and fitted to be lively stones (1 Pet. ii. 5) in the spiritual Temple of God's Church. As is sung by the Church in the Trochaic hymn, "In Dedicatione Ecclesiae." See *Chliclovii* Elucidarium, p. 41.

"Urbs beata Jersâlem
Dieta pacis visio,
Quæ construitur in cælis
Vivis ex lapidibus
* * * * *
Tusionibus, pressuris,
Expoliti lapides
Suis coaptantur locis
Per manus artificis,
Disponuntur permansuri
Sacris ædificiis."

— *I have slain them by the words of my mouth*] Which are like the hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces (Jer. xxiii. 29). Cp. on Jer. i. 10.

MERCY, AND NOT SACRIFICE.

6. *For I desired mercy, and not sacrifice*] Although I require sacrifice, and have given minute and imperative directions for it in the Levitical Law, yet, *in comparison* with mercy, I do not desire it; and I reject all sacrifices, however costly, unless they are offered in faith and love. See above, the note on Jer. vii. 22, which affords the best illustration of these words.

Observe the connexion with what has been said before: "They shall go with their flocks and with their herds to seek the Lord, but they shall not find Him" (v. 6). And why? Because they did not practise mercy, which is the sacrifice of the heart that God requires, and without which all sacrifices are vain. Therefore all the sacrifices of all the flocks and herds on all their mountains and in all their pastures are of no avail. Cp. Ps. i. 8—13; ii. 16, 17. Isa. i. 2—17. Mic. vi. 8. Matt. ix. 13; xii. 7; and *Davidson* on Prophecy, 207.

7. *like men*] Or rather, like *Adam*; so margin, and *Fulg.* — *There have they dealt treacherously*] Even in the Holy Land, even in holy places—such as the Temple itself—have they transgressed, as Adam in Paradise. See what follows.

8. *Gilead is a city of them that work iniquity—blood*] Even Gilead (an earthly Eden), where God showed His mercy to Jacob (Gen. xxxi. 21—25), and which God blessed with fertility and wealth—even that whole prosperous country or region (Num. xxxii. 1. Deut. iii. 12—15) has been desecrated by Israel, so as to become a *city of carnage*. It is *polluted*, or, rather, *tracked* or *trod*den with blood. Cp. above, on iv. 15.

9. *the company of priests murder in the way by consent*] Or,

For they commit || lewdness.

¹⁰ I have seen 'an horrible thing in the house of Israel:

There is "the whoredom of Ephraim, Israel is defiled.

¹¹ Also, O Judah, * he hath set an harvest for thee,

' When I returned the captivity of my people.

VII. ¹ When I would have healed Israel,

Then the iniquity of Ephraim was discovered,

And the † wickedness of Samaria :

For * they commit falsehood, and the thief cometh in,

And the troop of robbers † spoileth without.

² And they † consider not in their hearts that I ^b remember all their wickedness:

Now ' their own doings have beset them about ; they are ^d before my face.

³ They make the king glad with their wickedness,

And the princes * with their lies.

⁴ ' They are all adulterers,

As an oven heated by the baker, || who ceaseth || from raising after he hath kneaded the dough, until it be leavened.

⁵ In the day of our king the princes have made him sick || with bottles of wine ;

He stretched out his hand with scorners ;

⁶ For they have || made ready their heart like an oven, whiles they lie in wait : || Or, applied.

Their baker sleepeth all the night ;

In the morning it burneth as a flaming fire ;

⁷ They are all hot as an oven,

And have devoured their judges ;

Before
CHRIST
about
786.

|| Or, enormity.
t Jer. 5. 36.
u ch. 4. 12, 13, 17.
x Jer. 51. 33.
Joel 3. 13.
Rev. 14. 15.
y Ps. 126. 1.

† Heb. evils.

a ch. 5. 1. & 6. 10.

† Heb. strippeth.

† Heb. say not to.
b Jer. 17. 1.

c Ps. 9. 16.
Prov. 5. 22.
d Ps. 90. 8.

e Rom. 1. 32.

f Jer. 9. 2.

|| Or, the raiser
will cease.
|| Or, from
waking.

|| Or, with heat
through wine.

Fulfilled
about 773.

rather, *the company of priests murder in the way to Shechem* (see margin), the sanctuary of God (*Shechem* means *shoulder*; hence the confusion in the translation). Shechem, the scene of God's mercies to the Patriarchs, is polluted by the sins of the priests, who ought to teach the people to obey His law. On the holiness of Sichem, or Shechem, as a national sanctuary, see above on Gen. xii. 6; xxxiii. 18. Josh. xxiv. 1. Judges ix. 1. 1 Kings xii. 1. 25; and below, John iv. 5. Acts vii. 16; and cp. note above on iv. 15, as to what is said on the desecration of such sacred places as *Bethel* and *Gilgal*, and also of *Mizpeh* and *Tabor*. See also the note on v. 1.

The consummation of these acts of wickedness of Israel, polluting holy places with bloodshed, was seen in the Crucifixion of Christ Himself in the Holy City, and in the dreadful carnage committed by the Jewish assassins in the Holy Place, when God's House of Prayer became a "den of thieves." See on Matt. xxiv. 15. All this bloodshed was visited upon them in the slaughter of thousands of the Jews, and in the captivity of many tens of thousands by the Roman armies, at the taking of Jerusalem. See on Luke xxi. 25.

¹¹ *he hath set an harvest for thee*] God hath appointed a day of judgment—compared to a harvest—(Jer. li. 33. Joel iii. 13. Matt. xiii. 39. Rev. xiv. 15) for thee, Judah, as well as for Israel. God first used the sword of Assyria against Israel, and then used that of Babylon to execute this judgment on Judah.

— *When I returned the captivity of my people*] Or, rather, *in my turning of the captivity of my people*. Observe the words, *My people*—that is, All My visitations upon the nation are dispensed in love to the faithful remnant of My people. All national afflictions are occasions and means of salutary discipline and spiritual joy to them. All national *captivities* are *liberations* to God's saints. The captivity of an Ezekiel and a Daniel was a deliverance to them from the miserable thralldom and bondage of the sins which then enslaved Jerusalem; and it was a season of deliverance to them from the trammels of earthly sorrow, and of admission to the glorious visions of heavenly joy.

The climax of this divine saying will be seen at the great Harvest-Day of the World's Judgment. Then, when the harvest is reaped, and the tares are cast into the fire, then will be the time for the Saints of God to "look up, for their redemption" (*the turning of their captivity from the bondage of this world*) "draweth nigh" (Luke xxi. 28). And see Rom. viii. 21, and *S. Jerome* here.

CH. VII. 3. *They make the king glad*] The king and princes, who, as God's vicegerents and ministers, ought to restrain and punish national wickedness, connive at it; they even take pleasure in it and encourage it. Cp. Rom. i. 32.

4. *heated by the baker*] Literally, *burning from the baker*,—who has kindled it by fire from himself. So the sinner has an oven which is kindled from the lusts in his own heart (Matt. xv. 18).

— *raising*] *Stirring* the fire. The baker kindles the oven, and when he knows that it is well heated, he ceases from stirring it till the dough is leavened. Cp. v. 6; and see Rom. i. 27, they burn in lust; and James iii. 6, where he calls the tongue "a fire which setteth on fire the course of nature; and it is set on fire of hell." Satan kindles for himself the fire of literal and spiritual adultery in the heart of men, and leaves it there to burn till the dough be leavened, and (so to speak) the sin is made ready to be kneaded, and to be made into bread.

5. *In the day of our king*] The day of our king (not the King of Judah, appointed by God, but the king whom we have set up), the royal birthdays, the annual feast-days, instituted by Jeroboam, instead of being days of spiritual joy and religious praise and thankfulness to God, are perverted into days of revelry and ribaldry.

— *have made him sick with bottles of wine*] Or, *are made sick with heat of wine* (*Gesen.* 786). The king himself promotes their debauchery, buffoonery, and scoffing against holy things.

6. *whiles they lie in wait*] When they cease from actual sin, it is not because they are desisting from sinful desires, but because they are lying in ambush with deliberate purpose to commit it.

— *Their baker*] Satan, sure of his prey, rests for a time from his work, in order that he may return with greater force, and make the embers of their passion to burst forth in a raging flame of actual sin. Their lusts are like fire in an oven. But the Day is coming, when that fire will kindle God's wrath, which will burn *like an oven* to consume them (Ps. xxi. 9); "that Day will burn as an oven." See Mal. iv. 1.

7. *They—have devoured their judges; all their kings are fallen*] The heated oven of national sins, encouraged by kings and princes, will consume those rulers who, instead of extinguishing it, have added fuel to it. This was fulfilled in the political anarchy and confusion of the kingdom in the rapid succession, and in the miserable end, of the kings of Israel after Jeroboam the second, namely, Zachariah, Shallum, Menahem

- Before
CHRIST
about
780.
- g ch. 8. 4.
h 2 Kings 15. 10,
14, 25, 30.
i Isa. 64. 7.
k Ps. 106. 35.
l ch. 8. 7.
- † Heb. *sprinkled*.
- m ch. 5. 5.
- n Isa. 9. 13.
- o ch. 11. 11.
- p See 2 Kings
15. 19. & 17. 4.
ch. 5. 13. & 9. 3.
& 12. 1.
q Ezek. 12. 13.
- r Lev. 26. 14, &c.
Deut. 28. 15, &c.
2 Kings 17. 13, 18.
- † Heb. *spoil*.
- s Micah 6. 4.
- t Job 35. 9, 10.
Ps. 78. 36.
Jer. 3. 10.
Zech. 7. 5.
- || Or, *chastened*.
- u ch. 11. 7.
- ^a All their kings ^b are fallen :
ⁱ There is none among them that calleth unto me.
³ Ephraim, he ^k hath mixed himself among the people ;
Ephraim is a cake not turned.
⁹ ^l Strangers have devoured his strength, and he knoweth it not :
Yea, gray hairs are [†] here and there upon him, yet he knoweth not.
¹⁰ And the ^m pride of Israel testifieth to his face :
And ⁿ they do not return to the Lord their God, nor seek him for all this.
¹¹ ^o Ephraim also is like a silly dove without heart :
^p They call to Egypt, they go to Assyria.
¹² When they shall go, ^q I will spread my net upon them ;
I will bring them down as the fowls of the heaven ;
I will chastise them, ^r as their congregation hath heard.
¹³ Woe unto them ! for they have fled from me :
[†] Destruction unto them ! because they have transgressed against me :
Though ^s I have redeemed them, yet they have spoken lies against me.
¹⁴ ^t And they have not cried unto me with their heart,
When they howled upon their beds :
They assemble themselves for corn and wine,
And they rebel against me.
¹⁵ Though I || have bound and strengthened their arms,
Yet do they imagine mischief against me.
¹⁶ ^u They return, but not to the most High :

(see 2 Kings xv. 8—25), and finally in the captivity of the people and the ruin of the monarchy. Compare above, *Introd.* to Kings, p ix, and Prov. xxviii. 2, “For the transgression of a land many are the princes thereof.”

This prophetic denunciation may be addressed to all Rulers and States which seek to enrich themselves by national sins, instead of restraining them. In some cities, even in Rome itself, a large annual revenue is received from lotteries, and (not long since, if not still) from brothels. How much of the wealth of our Indian Government was received from the deadly trade in opium! How much of our own Excise Revenue arises from drunkenness, which is the root of most of the evil in our towns and villages, and which is encouraged by our multitude of haunts of intemperance! These are the fires which will burst forth upon those who kindle them, and will devour their kings and judges.

8. *Ephraim, he hath mixed himself among the people*] Literally, *among the peoples*. Israel, who was designed to be *separate* from the nations, and to be “a peculiar people” to God, has mingled “himself with the heathen, and has learned their works” (Ps. cvi. 35). Therefore he will be carried captive, and be scattered among the heathen in exile.

— *Ephraim is a cake not turned*] The metaphor of the oven in *vr.* 4—6 is kept up. Ephraim hath mixed himself with the heathen, but their mixing is of no profit; he is like a thin round cake which is laid on the red-hot stones of the oven, and which, if not soon turned, is not fit to eat, but is scorched on one side with the fire, and burnt up, while the other side remains raw dough, and thus neither side is palatable. See below, “factus est subcinericius panis, ex omni parte immundo cinere et ignium ardore circumdatus” (*S. Jerome*).

Ephraim ought to be *turned*; he ought to *turn himself* by repentance to God (*r.* 10), and then he would be preserved and be acceptable to God as an offering to Him.

9. *gray hairs are here and there upon him*] Literally, *grayness of hair sprinkled itself upon him, and he knoweth it not*—“obrepit non intellecta senectus” (*Jerusal.* ix. 129). Israel has the seeds of decay and death in him, and he knows it not; he imagines himself to be young, healthful, and prosperous, while he is approaching the verge of the grave. This was specially applicable to the times of Jeroboam II., when Israel wore the specious semblance of health and prosperity, but there was a deadly disease festering and rankling within.

10. *the pride of Israel*] Cp. v. 5.

11. *Ephraim also is like a silly dove*] Israel also is become

like a deluded dove without heart, i. e. without understanding, which does not perceive the net spread for it by the fowler: “She hastes to the snare, and knows not that it is for her life” (Prov. vii. 23). See above, on v. 1.

— *They call to Egypt, they go to Assyria*] Instead of fleeing for refuge to God, “like doves to their windows” (Isa. lx. 8), Ephraim, like a silly dove, flutters away for shelter to Egypt or Assyria, which are like “the snare of the fowler,” and make it their prey. See on Isa. xxx. 3; xxxi. 1; xxxvi. 6. Jer. ii. 18. 36; and below, xii. 1; xiv. 3, “Asshur shall not save us.”

12. *I will spread my net*] For this “silly dove.” They who will not listen to God’s invitations of mercy, must expect to feel His visitations of judgment.

— *I will bring them down*] However high they may soar, like a dove, into the air, God will bring them down into the net. He will use Egypt and Assyria as His nets to take them captive, for their sins against Him.

— *as their congregation hath heard*] In the solemn warnings of God’s law, delivered to their forefathers at Mount Sinai, and on Mount Ebal, Lev. xxvi. 14. Dent. xxvii. 13—26; xxviii. 15—68. Josh. viii. 33. Cp. Jer. xvii. 5.

13. *Though I have redeemed them*] Literally, *And I have redeemed them; and I would still redeem them*, if they would hearken to Me. The imperfect has an optative sense (*Keil*).

14. *When they howled upon their beds*] Rather, *But they howled upon their beds*. They cried indeed, but their cry was not a devout ejaculation produced by faith, repentance, and love; it was a howl of anguish, despondency, and despair, like that of condemned spirits, which bite their tongues and gnash their teeth in torment and defiance. They did not call on God with a sincere heart, and therefore they were not heard. The cry of impenitent sinners in distress is not prayer, but howling; it is like Cain’s and Esau’s bitter cry; it comes not from sorrow for sin, but from pain for punishment. Compare notes above, on Job xxiv. 12, “Men groan from out of the city;” and on Job xxxv. 9—12, which passage is the best comment on the present text.

— *they assemble themselves for corn and wine*] They clamour for temporal blessings, for corn and wine (as Esau did); they murmur if they are suffering from dearth or drought, and yet they rebel against God, in Whose hand the seasons are, and from Whom harvests come.

15. *I have bound—their arms*] I have instructed them, I have taught their fingers to fight (Ps. cxliv. 1). Cp. Ps. xviii. 34, “He teacheth my hands to war.”

* They are like a deceitful bow :

Their princes shall fall by the sword for the ^y rage of their tongue :

This *shall be* their derision ^z in the land of Egypt.

VIII. ¹ Set ^a the trumpet to [†] thy mouth,

He shall come ^b as an eagle against the house of the LORD,

Because ^c they have transgressed my covenant,

And trespassed against my law.

² ^d Israel shall cry unto me, My God, ^e we know thee.

³ Israel hath cast off *the thing that is good* : the enemy shall pursue him.

⁴ ^f They have set up kings, but not by me :

They have made princes, and I knew *it* not :

^g Of their silver and their gold have they made them idols,

That they may be cut off.

⁵ Thy calf, O Samaria, hath cast *thee* off ;

Mine anger is kindled against them :

^h How long *will it be* ere they attain to innocency ?

⁶ For from Israel *was* it also :

The workman made it ; therefore it *is* not God :

But the calf of Samaria shall be broken in pieces.

⁷ For ⁱ they have sown the wind, and they shall reap the whirlwind :

It hath no || stalk : the bud shall yield no meal :

If so be it yield, ^k the strangers shall swallow it up.

⁸ ^l Israel is swallowed up :

Now shall they be among the Gentiles ^m as a vessel wherein *is* no pleasure.

⁹ For ⁿ they are gone up to Assyria, ^o a wild ass alone by himself :

Ephraim ^p hath hired [†] lovers.

¹⁰ Yea, though they have hired among the nations, now ^q will I gather them,

Before
CHRIST

about
780.

x Ps. 78. 57.

y Ps. 73. 9.

z ch. 9. 3, 6.

about
760.

a ch. 5. 8.

† Heb. *the roof*

of thy mouth.

b Deut. 28. 49

Jer. 4. 13.

Hab. 1. 8.

c ch. 6. 7.

d Ps. 78. 34.

ch. 5. 15.

e Tit. 1. 16.

f 2 Kings 15. 13,

17, 25,

Shallum, Mena

hem, Pekahiah

g ch. 2. 8. &

13. 2.

h Jer. 13. 27.

i Prov. 22. 8.

ch. 10. 12, 13.

|| Or, *standing*

corn

k ch. 7. 9.

l 2 Kings 17. 6.

m Jer. 22. 28. &

48. 38.

n 2 Kings 15. 19.

o Jer. 2. 24.

about
771.

p Isa. 30. 6.

Ezek. 16. 33, 34.

† Heb. *loves.*

q Ezek. 16. 37.

ch. 10. 10.

16. *a deceitful bow*] Ps. lxxviii. 57. Ephraim is a deceitful bow, when it relies on itself; but it will become a bow of power in the hand of Christ. See the noble contrast to this passage in Zech. ix. 13.

— *in the land of Egypt*] Egypt itself, the broken reed—on which they trust—will pierce their hands, and they shall be an object of scorn and derision to it. Cp. Isa. xxx. 3. 5.

CH. VIII. 1. *Set the trumpet to thy mouth—as an eagle*] Upon “the silly dove” (vii. 11), yea, rather even upon the house of Jehovah. The omission of the two verbs gives greater strength and suddenness to the exclamation, and shows the near approach of the danger. The foe is pouncing down as an eagle (cp. Ezek. xvii. 3. 7. Lam. iv. 19); therefore give immediate warning.

— *against the house of the LORD*] God’s house would have been a defence to them if they had served Him faithfully there. But now God turns from them, and brings the eagle against His own people, which has become a feeble and timid dove (vii. 11).

This was fulfilled in the destruction of the Temple by the Babylonish Eagle, and afterward by the Roman Eagle. See our Lord’s prophecy, Matt. xxiv. 1—26.

2. *Israel—thee*] Literally, and more emphatically, *To me will they cry, My God, we know thee—Israel*. Israel is reserved for the last place in the sentence, as the strongest plea for God’s favour. Behold, O God, we turn to thee, we cry to thee, we know thee, we Israel, Thy people! The word *Israel* is re-echoed by the prophet in the next verse. If ye are Israel, God’s people, why are ye casting off the good law and despising the grace which has been given you by the God of Israel.

4. *They have set up kings, but not by me*] First Saul (1 Sam. viii. 7), and then Jeroboam (1 Kings xi. 40; xii. 3), and many of his successors; who were not set up by God, or according to His law (Deut. xvii. 15).

5. *Thy calf, O Samaria, hath cast thee off*] It is not God that is the cause of thy rejection and captivity, but thou thyself, by the idol which thou hast set up instead of God. Thy calf hath cast thee off as a loathsome thing. God repeats here the

word (*zánach*) from the third verse. Thou hast cast off what is good, and hast chosen what is evil, and the object of thy choice has cast thee off. See *Gesen*. 249.

— *against them*] Observe, *them*. God turns His face from them, and speaks of them in the third person, and not to them, in the second person.

7. *It hath no stalk*] Lit. *stalk* (or grain growing on the stalk—*Gesen*. 734. Cp. Ex. xxii. 5) is *not* to it.

— *the bud shall yield no meal*] There is a play upon the words in the original, which have the form of a proverb. “*There is no stalk (kamah) to it; the tsemach will yield no kemach, i. e. the shoot will yield no fruit (Keil)*.”

9. *they are gone up to Assyria, a wild ass alone by himself: Ephraim hath hired lovers*] Israel is faithless to the Lord; and has gone to Assyria for help. Cp. v. 13; xiv. 3. Jer. ii. 18. 36. She has been faithless to her true Husband, and has hired lovers; such is her shamelessness; whereas lewd women receive hire, she hath given hire to those with whom she plays the harlot in the spiritual fornication of idolatry. The comparison of Israel to the wild ass, alone by himself (or rather, alone for himself, i. e. roving for his own pleasure), is best explained by Job xi. 12; xxxix. 5; and Jer. ii. 24; and the circumstance that here the reference is to a male wild ass, is explained by what has been said before, that Israel throws off all female modesty in her spiritual harlotry, and goes and seeks for paramours whom she hires. See what follows.

10. *though they have hired*] Though they have separated themselves from Me, and roved far and wide for the indulgence of their own lustful appetites in spiritual fornication (i. e. idolatry), yet I will bring them together into one herd—not, however, to their own land, but as captives to that very land (Assyria) to which they have looked for help, and for which they have forsaken Me.

The strong language which God uses in Hebrew prophecy, especially by Hosea, concerning idolatry, which he likens to adultery and harlotry, may well suggest a feeling of alarm and apprehension to Christian Churches in the present age. If they

Before
CHRIST
about
771.

Or, begin.
Or, in a little
while, as Hag.
2. 6.
r Isa. 10. 8.
Ezek. 26. 7.
Dan. 2. 37.
s ch. 12. 11.
t Deut. 4. 6, 8.
Ps. 119. 18. &
147. 19, 20.
u Jer. 7. 21.
Zech. 7. 6.
Or, In the
sacrifices of mine
offerings they, &c.
x Jer. 14. 10, 12.
ch. 5. 6. & 9. 4.
Amos 5. 22.
y ch. 9. 9.
Amos 8. 7.
z Deut. 28. 68.
ch. 9. 3, 6. &
11. 5.
a Deut. 32. 18.
b Isa. 29. 23.
Eph. 2. 10.
c 1 Kings 12. 31.
d Jer. 17. 27.
Amos 2. 5.
a ch. 4. 12. &
5. 4, 7.
b Jer. 44. 17.
ch. 2. 12.
Or, in, &c.
c ch. 2. 9, 12.
Or, winefat.
d Lev. 25. 23.
Jer. 2. 7. &
16. 18.
e ch. 8. 13. &
11. 5.
Not into Egypt
itself, but into
another bondage
as bad as that.
f Ezek. 4. 13.
Dan. 1. 8.
g 2 Kings 17. 6.
ch. 11. 11.
h ch. 3. 4.
i Jer. 6. 20.
ch. 8. 13.
k Deut. 26. 11.
l Lev. 17. 11.
m ch. 2. 11.

- And they shall || sorrow || a little for the burden of ' the king of princes.
 11 Because Ephraim hath made * many altars to sin, altars shall be unto him
 to sin.
 12 I have written to him ' the great things of my law,
 But they were counted as a strange thing.
 13 ^a || They sacrifice flesh for the sacrifices of mine offerings, and eat it ;
 * But the LORD accepteth them not ;
^y Now will he remember their iniquity, and visit their sins :
^z They shall return to Egypt.
 14 ^a For Israel hath forgotten ^b his Maker, and ^c buildeth temples ;
 And Judah hath multiplied fenced cities :
 But ^d I will send a fire upon his cities,
 And it shall devour the palaces thereof.
 IX. ¹ Rejoice not, O Israel, for joy, as *other* people :
 For thou ^a hast gone a whoring from thy God,
 Thou hast loved a ^b reward || upon every cornfloor.
 2 ^c The floor and the || winepress shall not feed them,
 And the new wine shall fail in her.
 3 They shall not dwell in ^d the LORD's land ;
^e But Ephraim shall return to Egypt,
 And ^f they shall eat unclean things ^g in Assyria.
 4 ^h They shall not offer wine offerings to the LORD,
ⁱ Neither shall they be pleasing unto him :
^k Their sacrifices shall be unto them as the bread of mourners ;
 All that eat thereof shall be polluted :
 For their bread ^l for their soul shall not come into the house of the LORD.
 5 What will ye do in ^m the solemn day,
 And in the day of the feast of the LORD ?

decline from the pure service of God to creature-worship, or to any thing that favours it, they must expect even a worse punishment than that which fell on Israel of old.

— And they shall sorrow a little for the burden of the king of princes] Or, literally, they shall soon sorrow (if the word in the original is from *chil*, to grieve), or they shall begin quickly to suffer from the burden of the king of the princes (i. e. the Assyrian king—Isa. x. 8). Israel now goes after Assyria, and hires it to help her; but Assyria will punish and oppress her (cp. Isa. vii. 20, where Assyria is compared to a razor hired by God against His faithless people), and the hire which Israel paid to Assyria will be changed into a burden with which Assyria will oppress.

The word rendered *sorrow* is supposed by many to be the *hiphil* of *chatal*, which is used above fifty times, and always (except Num. xxx. 2. Ezek. xxxix. 7) in the sense of *begin* (cp. *Poole*, 365), especially in the sense of a plague beginning to break out, as Num. xvi. 46; or, to begin to commit any sin (Gen. xi. 6. Num. xxv. 1); or to punish (2 Kings x. 32. 1 Sam. iii. 2. Ezek. ix. 6. Jer. xxv. 21). The sense of *beginning*, ought, it seems, to be recognized here; and the meaning is, they have begun to sin, and shortly they will begin to suffer.

11. altars shall be unto him to sin] Israel has loved idols, therefore God will give them up to their sin, which will bring its proper punishment with it, and Israel will be carried away to a land of idols (cp. ix. 3); they shall eat unclean things in Assyria; cp. Ezek. iv. 13, they shall eat defiled bread among the Gentiles.

12. I have written—strange thing] I wrote to Israel the great and manifold things of My Law at Horeb. I wrote the Two Tables with My Own hand; I wrote statutes and ordinances by the hand of My servant Moses. Thus Israel has been distinguished by Me, as a peculiar people, from all Nations (Deut. iv. 6); but Israel has counted them a *strange thing*, and has turned away from them to worship *strange gods*.

13. They sacrifice flesh] Their sacrifices are not sacrifices,

they are *mere flesh*, without any spiritual virtue. Cp. on Jer. vii. 21; xi. 15. I will not accept them; because they have rejected Me.

— They shall return to Egypt] i. e. to captivity. Egypt is the synonym for “a land of bondage.” Cp. ix. 3. 6; and note below, xi. 5. They shall be carried captive for their sins. Cp. Deut. xxviii. 68. Some suppose that this is to be understood literally, and that it was fulfilled after the destruction of Jerusalem by the Chaldeans. See Jer. xlv. 12. *A Lapid*. But that migration into Egypt was not effected by God, but was contrary to His express command. The former sense is preferable (cp. margin here and *Keil*); though, in a subordinate sense, the miseries endured by Jews in Egypt, after the fall of Jerusalem, may be within the scope of the prophecy. See on ix. 6.

14. temples] Especially for the golden calves at Bethel and Dan; and for Bael.

CH. IX. 1. Thou hast loved a reward upon every cornfloor] Thou hast prostituted thyself in the spiritual harlotry of idolatry upon every corn-floor, by praising thy false gods there for the fruits of the Earth, which are gifts of God. Cp. ii. 7, 8.

2. The floor and the winepress shall not feed them] Because they forget God, and worship and praise idols on their threshing-floors for His gifts; therefore, the threshing-floor and wine-press (or, rather, the oil-press) shall bring no blessing to them. Observe the change of the pronoun from *thou* to *them*, *her*, marking God's aversion from His people on account of their sins.

3. Egypt] See on viii. 13.

4. Their sacrifices shall be unto them as the bread of mourners] That is, as unclean things, which have been polluted by contact with death. Cp. Num. xix. 14. Hag. ii. 13.

— their bread for their soul] Rather, *their bread is for their own soul*—i. e. for their own self-indulgence, not for God's glory; therefore, it shall not come into the house of the LORD.

5. What will ye do in the solemn day] In your captivity, how will ye be able to celebrate the periodic festivals of the

⁶ For, lo, they are gone because of † destruction :

^a Egypt shall gather them up, Memphis shall bury them :

|| † The pleasant *places* for their silver, ° nettles shall possess them :

Thorns *shall be* in their tabernacles ;

⁷ The days of visitation are come, the days of recompence are come ;

Israel shall know *it* :

The prophet *is* a fool, ^p the † spiritual man *is* mad,

For the multitude of thine iniquity, and the great hatred ;

⁸ The ^a watchman of Ephraim *was* with my God :

But the prophet *is* a snare of a fowler in all his ways,

And hatred || in the house of his God.

⁹ ^r They have deeply corrupted *themselves*, as in the days of ^s Gibeah :

^t Therefore he will remember their iniquity, he will visit their sins.

¹⁰ I found Israel like grapes in the wilderness ;

I saw your fathers as ^u the firstripe in the fig tree ^x at her first time :

But they went to ^y Baal-peor, and ^z separated themselves ^a unto *that* shame ;

^b And *their* abominations were according as they loved.

¹¹ As for Ephraim, their glory shall fly away like a bird,

From the birth, and from the womb, and from the conception.

¹² ^c Though they bring up their children, yet ^d will I bereave them,

That *there shall not be* a man left :

Yea, ^e woe also to them when I ^f depart from them !

¹³ Ephraim, ^g as I saw Tyrus, *is* planted in a pleasant place :

^h But Ephraim shall bring forth his children to the murderer.

¹⁴ Give them, O LORD : what wilt thou give ?

Give them ⁱ a † miscarrying womb and dry breasts.

Before
CHRIST
about
760.

† Heb. *spoil*.
n ch. 7. 16.

ver. 3.

|| Or, *their silver
shall be desired,
the nettle, &c.*

† Heb. *the desire*.
o Isa. 5. 6. &
32. 13. & 34. 13.

ch. 10. 8.

p Ezek. 13. 3. &c.
Micah 2. 11.

Zeph. 3. 4.

† Heb. *man of
the spirit*.

q Jer. 6. 17. &
31. 6.

Ezek. 3. 17. &
33. 7.

|| Or, *against*.
r Isa. 31. 6.

ch. 10. 9.
s Judg. 19. 22.

t ch. 8. 13.

u Isa. 28. 4.

Micah 7. 1.

x See ch. 2. 15.

y Num. 25. 3.

Ps. 106. 28.

z ch. 4. 14.

a Jer. 11. 13.

See Judg. 6. 32.

b Ps. 81. 12.

Ezek. 20. 8.

Amos 4. 5.

c Job 27. 14.

d Deut. 28. 41, 62.

e Deut. 31. 17.

2 Kings 17. 18.

ch. 5. 6.

f See 1 Sam. 28.

15. 16.

g See Ezek. 26.

& 27. & 28.

h ver. 16.

ch. 13. 16.

i Luke 23. 29.

† Heb. *that
casteth the fruit*.

Lord? You will not be able to do this, because the Temple, at which the greatest of those festivals are to be celebrated, will be in ruins, and you yourselves far off from it in exile. See above, on ii. 11.

6. *Egypt shall gather them up*] They ought to have been gathered together as one man, to serve the Lord in His temple; but they have scattered themselves from Him to go after idols and serve them; therefore, they shall indeed be gathered together, but it will be a forced and miserable gathering, viz. in a land of bondage and exile—another Egypt, in which they will be restrained as captives, separated from Canaan, and prevented from going up to Jerusalem to be gathered to the solemn festivals there.

— *Memphis*] The capital of Lower Egypt (Isa. xix. 13. Jer. ii. 16; xlv. 1; xlv. 14. Ezek. xxx. 13. 16).

— *shall bury them*] This seems to be a prophecy of the events recorded in Jeremiah xlv. 11—27.

— *nettles*] Or, thistles (*Gesen.* 734). Cp. Isa. xxxiv. 13.

7. *the great hatred*] Against God and His laws, and His Prophets; as Ahab said of Micaiah, “I hate him” (1 Kings xxii. 8). Cp. Ps. 1. 17.

8. *The watchman of Ephraim was with my God*] Or, rather, *Ephraim was a watchman with my God* (*Sept., Vulg.*). Israel was set by God to be a watchman *with God*, even by the side of Him, their King and Commander, in His Holy City. Cp. Jer. vi. 17. Ezek. iii. 17; xxxiii. 7. But they have fallen away and departed from God, and have become a snare of a fowler to catch birds.

There is a comparison between the watchman on his lofty tower (whence he looks forth in order to give notice of danger to his friends, and to defend the city), and the fowler who speculates from his position in order to catch birds. Cp. what is said of *Mizpah*, or watch-tower, above, v. 1.

They have also become *hated* (cp. the use of the abstract in Ps. exx. 7), even pure, intense enmity, instead of doing the work of God in love.

9. *as in the days of Gibeah*] When the men of Gibeah wrought that dreadful deed of cruel lewdness described in Judges xix., and the whole tribe of Benjamin abetted the crime, and was almost exterminated for its sin. This was an epitome of the history of Israel in crime and punishment. Israel's idola-

try is compared to the savage and lustful impurity of those men of Gibeah.

10. *I found Israel like grapes in the wilderness*] I loved Israel in the desert, as a thirsty traveller is delighted with the grapes which he finds in a barren wilderness; or as one who is refreshed by the first ripe fruit on the fig-tree in its prime. Cp. above, i. 2, where God's espousal of Israel is described.

— *they went to Baal-peor*] Lit. *they went away from Me to Baal-peor*, even they, My own People; and *they consecrated themselves* (as Nazarites, not to Me their glory, but) *to shame*.

— *And their abominations*] Rather, *and they became abominations* (see above, v. 8, they became *hated*) *according to their loves* (i. e. the objects of their love) they became cruel, brutish, and lustful, like the false gods which they worship. All idolaters become like the idols which they worship: as the Psalmist says, “They that make them are like unto them” (Ps. cxv. 8).

11. *From the birth—conception*] They will perish from every stage, even the earliest, of their being, so as to be utterly destroyed. This rendering (authorized by the ancient Versions; cp. v. 16) is preferable to that of some modern interpreters, “no birth, no womb, no conception.”

13. *Ephraim, as I saw Tyrus, is planted in a pleasant place*] Rather, *Ephraim, when I looked upon it* (with favour), *was like Tyre*, a noble and strong city, *planted in a fair place* (cp. Ezek. xxvii., xxviii.); but *I have departed from Ephraim* (see the foregoing verse), and they are wasted. Cp. *Targum* here. “Ephraim, ut vidi, Tyrus erat,” is the rendering of the *Fulgate* here. Cp. *S. Jerome*.

14. *Give them a miscarrying womb and dry breasts*] The common consequences of harlotry. Here again the prophecies of Hosea are joined on to the Song of Solomon, and adopt its imagery and language; and they mutually illustrate one another. See Cant. viii. 8, where the Hebrew nation, in its state of rejection, is described by the true Bride, the Christian Church, as a “little sister, and she hath no breasts.” See the note on that passage. On the other hand, the faithful Church of Christ is represented as a beloved wife and a fruitful mother of children. See Isa. xlix. 18—20; liv. 1—8; lxi. 9. Such will also the Hebrew Nation be, when it returns to God in Christ.

Before
CHRIST
about
760.
k ch. 4. 15. &
12. 11.
l ch. 1. 6.

m Isa. 1. 23.

n ver. 13.

† Heb. *the
desires*,
Ezek. 24. 21.

o Deut. 28. 64, 65.
about
740.

a Nahum 2. 2.
|| Or, *a vine
emptying the
fruit which it
girth*.
b ch. 8. 11. &
12. 11.
c ch. 8. 4.
† Heb. *statues*,
or, *standing
images*.
|| Or, *He hath
divided their
heart*.
d 1 Kings 18. 21.
Matt. 6. 24.
† Heb. *behead*.
e ch. 3. 4. & 11. 5.
Micah 4. 9.
ver. 7.
f See Deut. 29. 18.
Amos 5. 7. &
6. 12.
Acts 8. 23.
Heb. 12. 15.
g 1 Kings 12.
28, 29.
h ch. 5. 6.
i ch. 4. 15.
|| Or, *Cemariam*,
2 Kings 23. 5.
Zeph. 1. 4.
j 1 Sam. 1. 4. 21, 22.
ch. 9. 11.
k ch. 5. 13.
l ch. 11. 6.
m ver. 3. 15.
† Heb. *the face
of the water*.
n ch. 4. 15.
o Deut. 9. 21.
1 Kings 12. 30.
p ch. 9. 6.
q Isa. 2. 19.
Luke 21. 30.
Rev. 6. 16. & 9. 6.

15 All their wickedness ^k is in Gilgal:

For there I hated them:

¹ For the wickedness of their doings I will drive them out of mine house,
I will love them no more:

^m All their princes *are* revolvers.

16 Ephraim is smitten, their root is dried up, they shall bear no fruit:

Yea, ⁿ though they bring forth,

Yet will I slay *even* † the beloved *fruit* of their womb.

17 My God will cast them away, because they did not hearken unto him:

And they shall be ^o wanderers among the nations.

X. ¹ Israel is ^a || an empty vine, he bringeth forth fruit unto himself:

According to the multitude of his fruit ^b he hath increased the altars;

According to the goodness of his land ^c they have made goodly † images.

² || Their heart is ^d divided; now shall they be found faulty:

He shall † break down their altars, he shall spoil their images.

³ ^e For now they shall say, We have no king, because we feared not the Lord;
What then should a king do to us?

⁴ They have spoken words, swearing falsely in making a covenant:

Thus judgment springeth up ^f as hemlock in the furrows of the field.

⁵ The inhabitants of Samaria shall fear because of ^g the calves of ^h Beth-aven:

For the people thereof shall mourn over it,

And || the priests thereof *that* rejoiced on it, ⁱ for the glory thereof,

Because it is departed from it.

⁶ It shall be also carried unto Assyria *for* a present to ^k king Jareb:

Ephraim shall receive shame,

And Israel shall be ashamed ^l of his own counsel.

⁷ ^m *As for* Samaria, her king is cut off,

As the foam upon † the water.

⁸ ⁿ The high places also of Aven, ^o the sin of Israel, shall be destroyed:

^p The thorn and the thistle shall come up on their altars;

^q And they shall say to the mountains, Cover us;

— *He shall break down*] God shall punish them with an outbreak of His fury, and will destroy their altars.

3. *they shall say, We have no king*] When scattered abroad and captive in Assyria and other lands, Israel will be forced to make this confession: "We have no king"—we, who have forsaken the Lord our King, and have set up kings for ourselves, have no king; and even if we had, what *should a king do to us*? Would he be able to help us in our present captivity and distress?

4. *words*] Words—mere words, and nothing else.

— *judgment springeth up as hemlock*] *Judgment*, which ought to be a good and salutary plant to human society, is perverted, and so becomes no better than a noxious weed which chokes the corn; and it *springs up* in pestiferous abundance every where, as hemlock (cp. Deut. xxix. 18, where the word (*rôsh*) is rendered *gall*, as usually in our Version; this is the only place where it is translated *hemlock*), which chokes the corn in the furrows of the field, and destroys the harvest. Cp. Amos v. 7, adopting Hosea's metaphor, they "turn judgment into wormwood," which explains this passage, and vi. 12, "ye have turned judgment into *gall* (*rôsh*)."

5. *Beth-aven*] Beth-el, *the house of God*, which has become Beth-aven, *the house of vanity* (iv. 15; v. 8).

— *the priests*] Heb. *Cemariam*. See 2 Kings xxiii. 5. Zeph. i. 4.

6. *to king Jareb*] The adversary king, the king of Assyria, to whom Israel looked for help, but who has become their enemy, and who fights against them. On the meaning of the word *Jareb*, see on v. 13.

7. *As the foam*] Or, as a splinter, or straw (*Gesen.* 738).

8. *they shall say to the mountains—and to the hills*] They

15. *All their wickedness is in Gilgal: for there I hated them*] All their wickedness, their idolatry and licentiousness, is at *Gilgal*, even at the very place where, in the days of Joshua and their fathers, they worshipped Me, and where I was gracious unto them (see above, iv. 15; below, xii. 11); and at *Gilgal*, where *I once loved them*, and received them again into covenant with Myself, by the renewal of circumcision there, I now have cast them off, and *hate them* for their sin. Cp. *S. Jerome* here. *Gilgal* was a type of *Golgotha*. See above on Joshua v. 9, p. 15.

17. *they shall be wanderers among the nations*] The Jews are a national Cain of nearly twenty centuries, for the murder of their Brother, the Good Shepherd, the Divine Abel. See above on Gen. iv. 11—15.

CHR. X. 1. *Israel is an empty vine*] Rather, *Israel is a gadding vine*, stretching forth its branches far and wide (*Sept., Vulg., Arabic; Pocock*, 437; *Gesen.* 136), luxuriant, and pouring itself forth into foreign lands (Ps. lxxx. 9—12). There is a reference to Israel's tendencies to foreign alliances and idolatry (see vii. 11, and what follows); and though God gave her power to bring forth fruit, she *brought it forth unto herself*, for her own self-indulgence and not for Him. Cp. Deut. xxxii. 15. Prov. xiii. 7. Luke xii. 21. The more prosperity He gave her, the more unthankful and rebellious she was against Him. See iv. 7.

2. *Their heart is divided*] The literal meaning is, Ephraim has divided their heart, i. e. the whole Nation, by one simultaneous act of separation from God, has alienated the hearts of all her people from Him. The word rendered *divided*, is *chalah*, which, in *kal* (as here), has always a transitive sense; and so *Sept.* and *Arabic* here.

And to the hills, Fall on us.

⁹ O Israel, thou hast sinned from the days of Gibeah :

There they stood :

* The battle in Gibeah against the children of iniquity did not overtake them. Before
CHRIST
about
740.
r ch. 9. 9.

¹⁰ * It is in my desire that I should chastise them ;

And " the people shall be gathered against them,

|| When they shall bind themselves in their two furrows.

¹¹ And Ephraim is as * an heifer that is taught,

And loveth to tread out the corn ;

But I passed over upon † her fair neck :

I will make Ephraim to ride ;

Judah shall plow, and Jacob shall break his clods.

¹² ^y Sow to yourselves in righteousness, reap in mercy ;

^z Break up your fallow ground : for it is time to seek the LORD,

Till he come and rain righteousness upon you.

¹³ ^a Ye have plowed wickedness, ye have reaped iniquity ;

Ye have eaten the fruit of lies :

Because thou didst trust in thy way,

In the multitude of thy mighty men,

¹⁴ ^b Therefore shall a tumult arise among thy people,

And all thy fortresses shall be spoiled,

t Deut. 28. 63.

u Jer. 16. 16.
Ezek. 23. 46, 47.
ch. 8. 10.

|| Or, when I shall
bind them for
their two trans-
gressions, or, in
their two habi-
tations.

x Jer. 50. 11.
Micah 4. 13.
† Heb. the beauty
of her neck.

y Prov. 11. 18.

z Jer. 4. 3.

a Job 4. 8.
Prov. 22. 8.
ch. 8. 7.
Gal. 6. 7, 8.

b ch. 13. 16.

shall cry to those mountains and hills, where they once worshipped their false gods on their high places with fanatical cries of adoration (cp. 1 Kings xviii. 27), and shall say to them, "Cover us," "Fall on us." Cp. Isa. ii. 10.

Our Blessed Lord has generalized these words, and has applied them to the terrors of the Great Day, when men will cry out, and cry out in vain, to the mountains and hills of their own self-idolizing imaginations—such as worldly Policy, earthly Wealth and Power, and proud, unsanctified Philosophy—to hide them from the wrath of the Lamb. See Luke xxiii. 30. Rev. vi. 16.

Formerly Israel went up with festal joy to their high places to worship their idols there with music, dance, and jollity; but the time will come, says the Prophet, when they will flee before the foe in panic and dismay, and wish themselves buried there beneath them, as in their graves. So it will be with the World at the Last Day, and with all its Gilgals and Bethels, which it has set up in opposition to God.

9. from the days of Gibeah] Thou hast continued those evil days of Gibeah, so that they form thy history. See above, on ix. 9.

— There they stood: the battle in Gibeah against the children of iniquity did not overtake them] They stood; i.e. Israel continued obstinate in the sin of Gibeah. As the men of Gibeah, instead of punishing their own wicked citizens who violated the Levite's concubine, identified themselves with them; and as the whole tribe of Benjamin made their cause their own, and pertinaciously stood and fought for it; so do the ten tribes of Israel. Instead of punishing sin, they patronize it: Israel is one Gibeah. The battle in Gibeah against its cruel and lustful inhabitants shall not overtake them; but a battle far worse—a battle (not of friends who are near, but) of heathen adversaries who will carry Israel away captive.

10. the people] Rather, nations—foreign, heathen nations, shall be gathered against them in battle.

— When they shall bind themselves in their two furrows] Or, in binding them in their two furrows (so Targum); and there seems to be some propriety in this old Jewish rendering, on account of the metaphor of the heifer, which follows. But the other ancient Versions render it, in their two sins. The difference of translation arises from the different pointing in the original (Gesen. 614. Cp. Gesen. 496; Fuerst, 1026). The sense is, "Heathen nations shall be gathered together against Israel, in binding them (or taking them prisoners and leading them away captives) in their two sins," i.e. in the two calves, at Dan and Bethel; or in their twofold apostasy, from God, and

from the throne of David. The sins of Israel were the cause of their punishment: sin is the chain by which the sinner is led away captive.

11. Ephraim is as an heifer that is taught] Israel is like a heifer which is taught; but all her learning consists in this, that she loves to tread out the corn because she can feed at pleasure, as the heifer was permitted to do when treading out the corn on the threshing-floor (Deut. xxv. 4). On this ironical use of the word "taught," compare 1 Tim. v. 13. "They learn to be idle, wandering about from house to house." All their learning consists in this. See the note there.

This describes the condition of Israel, serving God only for the sake of its own appetite; but I pass over her fair neck, and make the yoke to ride on Ephraim; I will bring her into subjection to the enemy, and reduce Judah and Jacob to hard service for their sins.

EXHORTATION TO REPENTANCE, AND PROMISE OF GRACE.

12. Sow to yourselves in righteousness] Or rather, for righteousness, as your harvest. The agricultural metaphor is continued.

— reap in mercy] According to (God's) mercy; that is, in gracious abundance from Him. They who sow the seed of good works, will receive a bountiful harvest from His love (2 Cor. ix. 6. Gal. vi. 7—9). Let us sow here in alms and prayers, that we may reap in blessing hereafter.

— Break up your fallow ground] Plough for yourselves fresh soil. Be not content with what ye have cultivated, but bring new ground into cultivation. Grow in grace; forget what is behind; reach forward to what is before; add to your faith virtue, and every Christian grace; and do you, who have been brought to God, bring others to Him.

On this text see Bp. Bull's Sermons, Sermon i.

— rain righteousness] Compare Psalm lxxii. 6. Isa. xlv. 8. The word rendered to rain, is translated by teach, in Vulg. and some other ancient Versions; and this is the usual sense of the *hiphil* of the verb *yārâh*, used here; and this is the only place where it is rendered rain, in our Version; cp. vi. 3, where the participle *poel* is used. Especially compare below, the words of the next succeeding Prophet (Joel ii. 23). He will send you "a Teacher of righteousness." See the note there. These two passages of Hosea and Joel illustrate one another. Both of them speak of CHRIST, and foretell the blessings of Justification and Sanctification which would be given by Him. See Pocock, pp. 484, 485.

Before
CHRIST
about
740.

c 2 Kings 15. 34.

& 19. 13.

d ch. 13. 16.

† Heb. the evil

of your evil.

e ver. 7.

a ch. 2. 15.

b Matt. 2. 15.

c Exod. 4. 22, 23.

As Shalman spoiled ^c Beth-arbel in the day of battle :

^d The mother was dashed in pieces upon *her* children.

15 So shall Beth-el do unto you because of [†] your great wickedness :

In a morning ^e shall the king of Israel utterly be cut off.

XI. ¹ When ^a Israel *was* a child, then I loved him,

And ^b called my ^c son out of Egypt.

14. *As Shalman spoiled Beth-arbel*] As Shalmaneser, king of Assyria (2 Kings xvii. 3), spoiled Beth-arbel; probably the place called Arbela in 1 Mace. ix. 2, between Sephoris and Tiberias, and now perhaps called *Irbid* (Robinson).

15. *So shall Beth-el do unto you*] Your sin shall be the cause of your punishment. Your Beth-el (or house of God) shall become your *Beth-arbel*, i.e. *the house of the ambush of God*, from which He will spring up to punish you. Such is the meaning of *Beth-arbel* (*Gesen.* 117; cp. *Pusey*, 70). All men's Beth-els (houses of God), if they are made Beth-avens (houses of vanity), become *Beth-arbels* (houses of ambush of God).

— *in a morning*] In the morning dawn; quickly, before the dawn becomes day.

Chr. XI. 1. *When Israel was a child, then I loved him*] At the Exodus, God loved Israel then, and in the wilderness; but Israel has been faithless to God: and therefore is punished.

ISRAEL A TYPE OF CHRIST.

— *And called my son out of Egypt*] See Exod. iv. 22, 23. "Israel is My first-born; let My son go, that he may serve Me."

The Holy Spirit, speaking by St. Matthew (ii. 15), teaches us that when He Himself uttered these words by Hosea, His divine glance reached from the Exodus of Israel, God's son, to the Incarnation of Christ, and to His flight into Egypt, and to the return from it of the Son of God manifest in the flesh. And thus He has instructed us to see in Israel going forth as God's favoured child from Egypt—the land of the enemy of God—to diffuse His truth throughout the Earth, a type of Christ, proceeding forth from the darkness of heathen Egypt, to evangelize and illuminate the World. The love of God to Israel was a foreshadowing of God's love to Man in Christ, Who came of Israel, and Who has joined Man's nature to His own, and in His own person to God, and reconciles Man to God. Israel, God's beloved Son, was a prophecy of Christ, and Christ is the personal Antitype of a perfect Israel. See below, on Matt. ii. 15, and *S. Chrys.* and *Theophylact* on Matt. ii. 15, and *Theodore* there, and *S. Jerome* here; *Pocock*, 502–506; and *Matt. Henry* here; and *Hengst.* on Micah, chap. v.; and *Pfeiffer*, *Dubia*, p. 439; *Bp. Pearson*, On the Creed, Art. ii. p. 89; *Fairbairn*, *Typology*, p. 446.

Christ is the Antitype of Israel in God's love; and is also the Antithesis of Israel in obedience to God.

S. Jerome tells us that the Emperor Julian, in the fourth century, made the following objections to St. Matthew (ii. 15) applying this prophecy to Christ. "The prophet Hosea is speaking of the Israelites, but Matthew the Evangelist has applied that prophecy to Christ, in order to deceive those simple people among the heathen who believe in Him." See *S. Jerome* here.

This objection of Julian the apostate has been repeated in later days by the author of the Scheme of Literal Prophecy; *Lond.*, 1727, p. 313, and by *Strauss*. It has been recently said by some among ourselves (*Creed of Christendom*, p. 100, *Lond.*, 1851; *De Wette*, *Erklärung des Evangeliums Matthäi*, 3rd ed., Leipzig, 1815, p. 27), that the passage in question, which is in the eleventh chapter of Hosea, has "not the slightest reference to Christ." And it has lately been affirmed by another in high place among us (*Essays and Reviews*, p. 418; see also *ibid.*, p. 406), that "the time will come, when educated men will be no more able to believe that the words, *Out of Egypt have I called my Son*, were intended by the Prophet (Hosea) to refer to the return of Joseph and Mary from Egypt, than they are now able to believe the Roman Catholic explanation of Gen. iii. 15, 'Ipsa conteret caput tuum,' i.e. applying that prophecy to the Blessed Virgin Mary."

What shall we say here?

If we imagined the Bible to be *not inspired*, we should be perplexed by these allegations. We should be embarrassed by them, if we supposed that the Prophets themselves were the original *Authors* of their own Prophecies. We should be staggered and confounded, if we supposed that the Prophets were like *sources* and *fountains*, from which the living water of divine prophecy *sprung*, and not rather like *channels*, through which it *flows* and is *conveyed* to us.

But we believe and profess in the Creed, that "the HOLY GHOST spake by (through) the Prophets." We believe and profess

with St. Peter that the *Spirit of Christ* was in them (1 Pet. i. 11), and prophesied by them, and that Prophecy came not in old time by the will of man, but holy men of God spake, being moved (or borne along) by the Holy Ghost (2 Pet. i. 21).

We readily allow, that the *Prophets* themselves, when they uttered their Prophecies, did not fully understand what was in the mind of the Holy Spirit Who spake by them. As *Bp. Sherlock* says (*Discourse on Prophecy*, ii., p. 21), "The Prophets did not clearly understand the things which they foretold, but employed themselves in searching the meaning of the prophetic testimonies of the Spirit which was in them" (1 Pet. i. 11). And *Bp. Marsh* (On the Interpretation of the Bible, Lecture x., p. 413) says; "Most writers who treat of secondary senses (of Prophecies) contend that those secondary senses were unknown to the *Prophets themselves*; and that Divine Providence so ordered it, that the very persons who committed to writing the words which were dictated by the Holy Spirit, did not perceive the whole extent of their meaning." The old Prophets did not clearly discern the extent and range of their own prophecies; they did not fully understand their meaning. This the Prophet Daniel himself avows; see Dan. viii. 26, 27; xii. 8. They were inspired to *prophecy*, but not to *interpret* their own Prophecies. Therefore the Apostle Peter says, that Prophecy was like a *light shining in a dark place, till the dayspring should dawn in Christ*, and dispel the darkness (2 Pet. i. 19). And he says, that the Prophets employed themselves in *inquiring diligently concerning the salvation* pre-announced in their own Prophecies; and in *searching what, or what manner of time, the Spirit of Christ, which was in them did signify, when it testified beforehand the sufferings of Christ and the glory that should follow* (1 Pet. i. 11).

Indeed, here is the proof of the divine origin of Prophecy. Almost every prophecy was "an enigma (as *S. Irenæus* says, iv. 26. 1; cp. *Archdeacon Lee* on Inspiration, pp. 198, 199) before its fulfilment;" it was an enigma to the Prophets themselves. Time only could solve it. And wisely was this ordered; because, otherwise, Divine Foreknowledge might seem to control Human Will. But God's Foreknowledge foresees every thing, and forces nothing. It does not touch Man's Free will. Whatever is foretold by God, will be done by Man; but nothing will be done by Man, *because* it has been foretold by God. If the meaning of Ancient Prophecy had been clear before its fulfilment, it never could have had that probatory character, and have served those purposes of moral discipline, which God intended it should. God so ordered it, that it might be fulfilled by persons who were wholly unconscious that they were fulfilling it. And the fulfilment of Prophecies in a manner *unforeseen* by men, even by the Prophets themselves, is an evidence of their divine origin. The fulfilment of Prophecies by persons who were not aware that they were fulfilling them, as was the case with the Jews rejecting Christ, and so fulfilling the prophecies by condemning Him (Acts xiii. 27), and thus proving Him to be Christ while they rejected and condemned Him, and even by rejecting and condemning Him, is a proof that men were not *Authors* of the Prophecies—no, not the Prophets themselves—but that the true Author of Prophecy is God.

Let, therefore, the allegation just cited be true, that the Prophet Hosea did "not intend to refer to the return of Joseph and Mary," when he said *Out of Egypt have I called My Son*. But what is this to the purpose? How is it relevant to the question at issue concerning the *Interpretation of Scripture*? If indeed it is alleged, that *because* the Prophet Hosea did not intend to refer to that Return, *therefore* that Return is not foretold by the Prophecy, then our answer is, that they who make such an allegation prove themselves thereby to be utterly incompetent to interpret Prophecy; because they do not comprehend its nature—they do not understand *what* Prophecy is, nor *whence* Prophecy comes. They erroneously assume that Prophecy is a human thing proceeding from the mind of man, whereas Prophecy is a divine oracle issuing from the mouth of God.

The true question is, not what was intended by Hosea himself when he uttered this prophecy, but what was intended by the Holy Ghost Who spake by Hosea. That is the question; and a very important one it is.

² As they called them, so they went from them :

^d They sacrificed unto Baalim, and burned incense to graven images.

³ ^c I taught Ephraim also to go, taking them by their arms ;

But they knew not that 'I healed them.

⁴ I drew them with cords of a man, with bands of love :

Before
CHRIST
about
740.

d 2 Kings 17. 16.
ch. 2. 13. & 13. 2.
e Deut. 1. 31. &
32. 10, 11, 12.
f Isa. 46. 3.
Exod. 15. 26.

And how is it to be decided ?

Surely by the Holy Spirit Himself. For "*no man knoweth the things of God but the Spirit of God*" (1 Cor. ii. 11). And the Son of God has vouchsafed to decide that question. The Prophets of old were God's Messengers and Ambassadors, who brought sealed letters from Him ; and the Son of God has come from heaven, and has broken the seals of those letters, and has read them to us. The Holy Spirit has been pleased to inform us, by the Evangelist St. Matthew, what was in His own divine mind, when He spake, many hundred years before, by the Prophet Hosea. Hear His own words in the Gospel. "*Joseph arose and took the young child and his mother by night, and departed into Egypt, and was there until the death of Herod, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the Prophet, Out of Egypt have I called my Son*" (Matt. ii. 15).

S. Augustine makes this excellent observation in his treatise *De Doctrinâ Christianâ*, iii. 39 : "Whenever two or more senses are deducible from the same words of Holy Scripture, there is no harm in our not knowing which of those senses was intended by the writer himself ; provided it can be shown that those senses are authorized by other places of Holy Scripture. The writer himself may not have intended those senses, but we are sure that the *Holy Ghost*, Who used the agency of the writer, and worked through him, foresaw those senses and provided that those senses should be received by us. And herein we may admire the exuberant bounty of God towards us in Holy Scripture, in that the same words of Holy Scripture may have several meanings, which may be attested by His authority speaking to us in other places of Scripture."

And so Bishop Butler, *Analogy*, Part II., ch. vii.—

"To say that the Scriptures and the things contained in them can have no other or further meaning than those persons thought or had, who first recited or wrote them, is evidently saying that those persons were the original, proper, and sole Authors of those books, i.e. that they are *not inspired*" (this is the saying of the writer in *Essays and Reviews* just quoted) ; "which is absurd, whilst the authority of these books is under examination, i.e. till you have determined that they are of no divine authority at all. Till this be determined, it must in all reason be supposed, not indeed that they have, for this is taking for granted that they are inspired, but that they *may have*, some further meaning than what the compilers saw or understood. And upon this supposition it is supposable also that this further meaning may be fulfilled.

"Now, events corresponding to prophecies, interpreted in a different meaning from that in which the prophets are supposed to have understood them ; this affords, in a manner, the same proof that this different sense was originally intended, as it would have afforded if the prophets had not understood their predictions in the sense it is supposed they did ; because there is no presumption of *their sense* of them being the whole sense of them. And it has been already shown, that the apparent completions of prophecy must be allowed to be explanatory of its meaning. So that the question is, whether a series of prophecy has been fulfilled in a natural or proper—i.e. in any real sense of the words of it. For such completion is equally a proof of foresight more than human, whether the prophets are, or are not, supposed to have understood it in a different sense. I say supposed ; for though I think it clear, that the prophets did not understand the full meaning of their predictions, it is another question how far they thought they did, and in what sense they understood them."

Here, therefore, a new light is shed by the Holy Spirit upon the prophecy of Hosea, and on the history of Israel in Egypt. We are taught that Israel was a type of Christ. The name *Israel*, a *Prince of God* (Gen. xxxii. 28), suggests this. In Israel, when a child, beloved of God, and called out of Egypt, we, who believe in St. Matthew's inspiration, have learnt to see a figure of Christ. The beloved Son of God, the Infant Jesus, was to be in Egypt till the Angel should bring Joseph word ; for Herod would seek the young child to destroy Him. He was there till the death of Herod. The death of the Persecutor was the signal for His deliverance and return. All this had been prefigured by the literal Israel who had gone down from Canaan into Egypt. The Enemy of God worked by Pharaoh against Israel, as he did afterwards by Herod against Christ. God loved and protected

Israel in his childhood. In the infancy of the Nation, He shielded the young children from the rage of the King. He saved Israel *in* Egypt, and He saved Israel *from* Egypt, and sent him forth to be a Witness and Preacher of His Truth to the World. All this was done for the sake of Christ, the Well-beloved Son of the Father, the Light of the World. God loved Christ in Israel, from whom Christ came according to the flesh. The first-born of Egypt were destroyed, and Pharaoh and his hosts were overthrown in the sea, and then Israel was delivered and went forth toward Canaan. So, the destruction of Christ's Enemies was the signal of His Exodus from Egypt, and of His return to Canaan. "When Herod was dead, behold, an Angel of the Lord appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt, saying, Arise, take the young child and His mother, and go into the land of Israel, for they are dead which sought the Young Child's life. And he arose, and took the Young Child and His mother, and came into the Land of Israel."

Therefore, also, since the Enemies of the literal Israel are figures of the enemies of Christ, even of Death and the Grave, there is a peculiar propriety in the union of Hosea's prophecy concerning the call of Israel out of Egypt, with another prophecy uttered by the same Prophet concerning the deliverance of the Spiritual Israel, the Israel of God, united in the whole mystical Body of Christ, and redeemed and ransomed by Him from their ghostly enemies, and concerning their glorious Exodus from the Egypt of Death, and the Grave, and their leading-forth from a land of bondage to the glorious inheritance of their heavenly Canaan in Christ. "*I will ransom them*" (says Christ Himself by Hosea) "*from the power of the Grave, I will redeem them from Death. O Death, I will be thy plagues. O Grave, I will be thy destruction*" (Hos. xiii. 14). And we may now take up the comment of the Holy Apostle St. Paul, "*O Death, where is thy sting? O Grave, where is thy victory? Thanks be to God Who giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ*" (1 Cor. xv. 55—57).

Shall we complain of these things? Shall we "*grieve the Holy Spirit*," Who spake by the Prophets? Shall we murmur at our Adorable Redeemer, because, in His tender love and mercy to us, He has given to us a clearer insight into a prophecy uttered by Hosea, than even Hosea himself had, when he uttered it? Shall we be impatient because Christ's gracious words are thus fulfilled in us : "*Blessed are your eyes, for they see, and your ears, for they hear ; for verily I say unto you, that many prophets and righteous men have desired to see those things which ye see, and have not seen them, and to hear those things which ye hear, and have not heard them*"? (Matt. xiii. 16, 17. Luke x. 24. Heb. xi. 13.)

Shall we not rather be thankful to Him because He has revealed to us the meaning of Prophecies which we could never have explained for ourselves, and which therefore must ever have remained dark, without a revelation from Him? Shall we not rejoice in the light shed from Christ's glorious countenance, on the dark prophecies of the Old Testament? Shall we not exult in our Christian privileges, because He has opened our eyes, and has opened the Scriptures to us?

2. As they called them] They (Moses and the Prophets) called to them (to Israel), but the more they called to Israel, the more rebellious Israel was ; they sacrificed unto Baalim (many forms of idolatry) instead of worshipping the one true God. Cp. Jer. ii. 23 ; vii. 25 ; xxv. 4. Zech. i. 4.

3. I taught] I, even I, taught Ephraim to walk, as a Father teaches a child (Deut. i. 31).

— taking them by their arms] Or, He took them by His arms. All the ancient versions render the arms here as referring to God. Cp. Pusey, *Keil*.

4. I drew them with cords of a man] Not of a beast, a heifer (see x. 11), but of a rational and spiritual being. Compare Cant. i. 11, where the Bride says to the Bridegroom, "Draw me, and I will run after thee ;" and our Lord's words, "If I be lifted up, I will draw all men unto Me" (John xii. 32).

The Vulgate has here "*traham eos funiculis Adam*," and this prophecy was specially fulfilled in Christ : He took our Nature, and became the Second Adam, and draws us by the cords of His love in His Incarnation, which has made us to be one with Himself, and by which He espoused to Himself our Nature, sanctified to become His Bride in mystical wedlock, and joined the Church to Himself as His Eve.

Before
CHRIST
about
740.
g Lev. 26. 13.
† Heb. *lift up*.
h Ps. 78. 25.
ch. 2. 8.
i See ch. 8. 13. &
9. 3
k 2 Kings 17.
13, 14.
about
728.
They became
tributaries to
Salmannasser.
l ch. 10. 6.
m Jer. 3. 6, &c.
& 8. 5.
ch. 4. 16.
n ch. 7. 16.
† Heb. *together*
they exalted not.
o Jer. 9. 7.
ch. 6. 4.
p Gen. 14. 8. &
Isa. 21. 25.
Deut. 29. 23.
Amos 4. 11.
q Deut. 32. 26.
Isa. 63. 15.
Jer. 31. 20.

r Num. 23. 19.
Isa. 55. 8, 9.
Mal. 3. 6.

s Isa. 31. 4.
Joel 3. 16.
Amos 1. 2.
t Zech. 8. 7.

u Isa. 60. 8.
ch. 7. 11.

And ^e I was to them as they that † take off the yoke on their jaws,
And ^h I laid meat unto them.

5 ⁱ He shall not return into the land of Egypt,

But the Assyrian shall be his king,

^k Because they refused to return.

6 And the sword shall abide on his cities,

And shall consume his branches, and devour *them*,

^l Because of their own counsels.

7 And my people are bent to ^m backsliding from me :

ⁿ Though they called them to the most High,

† None at all would exalt *him*.

8 ^o How shall I give thee up, Ephraim ? *how* shall I deliver thee, Israel ?

How shall I make thee as ^p Admah ? *how* shall I set thee as Zeboim ?

^q Mine heart is turned within me, my repentings are kindled together.

9 I will not execute the fierceness of mine anger,

I will not return to destroy Ephraim :

^r For I *am* God, and not man ;

The Holy One in the midst of thee :

And I will not enter into the city.

10 They shall walk after the LORD :

^s He shall roar like a lion :

When he shall roar, then the children shall tremble ^t from the west.

11 They shall tremble as a bird out of Egypt,

^u And as a dove out of the land of Assyria :

— *they that take off the yoke*] God, in His love to Israel, was as one who unyokes oxen and gives them fodder. In Christ, God takes off from our necks the yoke of sin, and the yoke of the Law, and puts His own easy yoke on us, and feeds us with the divine nourishment of His holy Word and Sacraments.

5. *He shall not return into the land of Egypt, but the Assyrian shall be his king*] The Prophet had said before (viii. 13 ; ix. 3), that Israel would be carried back into Egypt, and he now explains the meaning of that phrase, viz. that *Egypt* is a typical name for a land of bondage, and *that* land will be Assyria. Or the sense may be, Israel will not look any more to Egypt for help against Assyria (*S. Jerome*).

6. *his branches*] Or, *his bars and bolts* (Hebr. *baddim*). Cp. Exod. xxv. 13. Job xviii. 16, viz. his strong men and fortresses, to which he looks for defence.

7. *are bent to backsliding*] Literally, are hung and fastened to apostasy from Me, instead of allegiance to Me.

This Section of Hosea, which is a prophetic commentary on the history of Jacob, from v. 7 to xii. 12, is the Haphtarah to Gen. xxviii. 10—xxxii. 3, which relates that history.

— *Though they called them*] Though God's prophets called Israel to Him, yet they were so obstinately riveted to apostasy, *together they exalted not*—i.e. Israel as one man refused to exalt or extol God. On this use of the word rendered to *exalt* (the *poel* of *rûm*), cp. Exod. xv. 2. Ps. xxx. 1 ; cxviii. 28 ; cxlv. 1. Isa. xxv. 1.

GOD'S LOVE TO ISRAEL ; THEIR CONVERSION.

8. *How shall I give thee up, Ephraim ?*] We see here, as it were, an inward struggle between Justice and Mercy in the Divine Mind. Israel deserved utter rejection, but God, like a merciful Father, yet spares it ; He remembers His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and yearns over His undutiful son in tenderness and love.

— *Admah—Zeboim*] Cities destroyed with Sodom and Gomorrah. See Deut. xix. 22, 23, to which Hosea refers here. How can I bear to make thee like them ? No ; it must not be.

9. *The Holy One in the midst of thee*] Cp. Isa. xii. 6.

— *I will not enter into the city*] Rather, *I will not enter a city ;* I am in the midst of thee, and will not leave thee for *another city* (*Targum*). God had said (v. 5) that Israel would be carried captive from their own land to Assyria ; but He here says, I will not forsake thee, I will not exchange Zion (though

thou wilt be for a time an outcast and a wanderer in the wilderness of Assyria) for any noble fenced city, such as Nineveh and Babylon, of the heathen world.

The Hebrew word (*ir*) in the original is rightly rendered *city* here, as in several hundred other places. The sense of *rage* which is assigned to it here by some recent critics (and in Ps. lxxiii. 20 and Jer. xv. 8) is precarious and unsatisfactory.

Here is comfort to Israel in its present dispersion. The presence of the God of Israel is not, like that of the deities of the heathen, confined to one particular city ; it is not localized. No, “God is a Spirit,” and the time is coming (as our Lord says) “when neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, shall men worship the Father” (John iv. 21), “but in every place incense will be offered unto His Name and a pure offering” (Mal. i. 11). When the Jews receive the Gospel of Christ and turn to God, then, wherever they may be, throughout the whole world, they will find *the Holy One in the midst of them*, in the Universal Church of Christ. Zion will be every where.

10. *They shall walk after the LORD*] They will turn to Christ ; as has been already prophesied, “They shall abide many days without a king and without a sacrifice ; *afterward shall the Children of Israel return and seek the Lord their God, and David their king.*” See also on iii. 4, 5.

— *He shall roar like a lion*] The Lord shall roar out of Zion (Joel iii. 16. Amos i. 2). Christ, the Lion of the Tribe of Judah (Rev. v. 5) shall roar with His voice (see on Rev. x. 3) in His Gospel, preached by Apostles sent forth from Zion, two of whom were called “sons of thunder” (Mark iii. 17). And by the terrors of His judgment—such as the destruction of Jerusalem—He will exhort them to repent and to flee from the wrath to come.

— *children shall tremble from the west*] Sons shall *come trembling* to God, not only from Egypt and Assyria (v. 11), but even from the isles of the sea (Isa. xi. 11). This was specially fulfilled in the conversion of vast multitudes by the preaching of St. Peter on the day of Pentecost to Jews “from every nation under heaven” (Acts ii. 5—10, 41). Cp. Zech. viii. 7.

11. *as a dove*] As Isaiah says, speaking of nations flocking to the Church of Christ, “Who are these that fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows ?” See above, on Isa. lx. 8. Israel, without God, is described by the Prophet as a “silly dove without a heart” (vii. 11), and as falling into the snare of the fowler (ix. 8) ; but when the Holy Spirit came from heaven, then they

* And I will place them in their houses, saith the LORD.

¹² Ephraim compasseth me about with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit :

But Judah yet ruleth with God, and is faithful || with the saints.

XII. ¹ Ephraim ^a feedeth on wind, and followeth after the east wind :

He daily increaseth lies and desolation ;

^b And they do make a covenant with the Assyrians,

And ^c oil is carried into Egypt.

² ^d The LORD hath also a controversy with Judah,

And will [†] punish Jacob according to his ways ;

According to his doings will he recompense him.

³ He took his brother ^e by the heel in the womb,

And by his strength he [†] had power with God :

⁴ Yea, he had power over the angel, and prevailed :

He wept, and made supplication unto him :

He found him ⁱⁿ ^g Beth-el, and there he spake with us ;

⁵ Even the LORD God of hosts ; the LORD ^{is} his ^h memorial.

⁶ ⁱ Therefore turn thou to thy God :

Keep mercy and judgment, and ^k wait on thy God continually.

⁷ *He is* || a merchant, ^l the balances of deceit *are* in his hand :

He loveth to || oppress.

⁸ And Ephraim said, ^m Yet I am become rich, I have found me out substance :

|| *In* all my labours they shall find none iniquity in me [†] that *were* sin.

Before
CHRIST
about
740.

x Ezek. 28. 25.
26. & 37. 21, 25.
y ch. 12. 1.
|| Or, *with the
most holy.*
about
725.
a ch. 8. 7.

b 2 Kings 17. 4.
ch. 5. 13. & 7. 11.
c Isa. 30. 6. &
57. 9.
d ch. 4. 1.
Micah 6. 2.

† Heb. *visit upon.*

e Gen. 25. 26.
† Heb. *was a
prince, or,
behave himself
princely.*
f Gen. 32. 24, &c.

g Gen. 28. 12, 19.
& 35. 9, 10, 15.

h Exod. 3. 15.

i ch. 14. 1.
Micah 6. 8.

k Ps. 37. 7.

|| Or, *Canaan*;
See Ezek. 16. 3.
l Prov. 11. 1.
Amos 8. 5.

|| Or, *decieve.*
m Zech. 11. 5.
Rev. 3. 17.
|| Or, *all my
labours suffice me
not*; he shall

have punishment of iniquity in whom is sin. † Heb. *which.*

partook of the glory and beauty of the Divine Dove, and were at peace in the Ark of the Church.

— *I will place them in their houses*] Wherever Christ is preached, there Jerusalem is; and there the true Israelites find their home in His Church. See above, on Ps. lxxxvii., and on Isa. ii. 1—4; lix. 20; lx.—lxii.; lxxv. 18; lxxvi. 7—10. Jer. xxxi. 5—12. Ezek. xx. 34—41; xxxiv. 13; xxxvi. 6—22; xxxvii. 16—19.

12. *But Judah yet ruleth with God*] Rather, *and even Judah is unruly toward God, and toward the Holy One, Who is faithful.* See above, on Jer. ii. 31, where the same word is used, and Gen. xxvii. 40, and *Gesen.* 759, and *Keil* here. Judah was not loyal to God, but was faithless as well as Israel, and therefore to be punished. See what follows immediately here concerning Judah's unfaithfulness (xii. 2). "The Lord hath a controversy with Judah, and will punish Jacob according to his ways;" and cp. v. 5. 13, 14; vi. 4.

CH. XII. 1. *oil is carried into Egypt*] As a present; to obtain its favour and help. Cp. above, v. 13. Isa. xxx. 2—7; and as to the history, see 2 Kings xvii. 4.

JACOB'S EXAMPLE TO ISRAEL.

3, 4. *He took his brother by the heel—he wept, and made supplication unto him*] The Prophet, having mentioned Jacob in v. 2 as a name of the Israelitish nation, now proceeds to show how degenerate they are from their father Jacob, in faith and obedience; and how deservedly, therefore, they are punished by God. Jacob, even in his mother's womb, strove for the birth-right (Gen. xxv. 22. 26): he coveted earnestly the best gifts (1 Cor. xii. 31). Jacob is represented as an example to the Israel of God, by that early act of bravery, and by that pious ambition for precedence, and by that eager zeal for the birth-right which Esau despised, and for despising which Esau is condemned as "a profane person" (Heb. xii. 16).

By his strength he had power with God, for *he wept and made supplication.* Prayers and tears were his weapons, and they must be the weapons also of penitent and returning Israel, if Israel is to prevail with God. They are the weapons of all true Israelites. Jacob prevailed, and became *Israel*, i. e. a *Prince of God*, when he wrestled with Him in faith and prayer for His blessing at Peniel. See above, the notes on Gen. xxxii. 24—32, where is a comment on this passage of Hosea, and

where it is shown that Jacob in his faith, his agony, his prayers and his tears, was a signal type of Christ, "Who, in the days of His flesh, offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto Him that was able to save Him from death, and was heard in that He feared" (Heb. v. 7; and see *S. Jerome* here).

4. *He found him in Beth-el*] Jacob was rewarded for his faith by *finding* God at Bethel, the *house of God*, so called because of God's appearing to him there twice (Gen. xxviii. 11; xxxv. 9); and there God confirmed to him the name of *Israel*, or *prince of God*. But ye Israelites, his descendants, have polluted *Bethel* by your idolatrous calf, and there you have forfeited God's favour and your own name. Jacob *found* God at Bethel by his faith, but ye have *lost* Him at Bethel—which you have made a Beth-aven (iv. 15).

— *there he spake with us*] God, in speaking to Jacob our father, spake to us his children (cp. on Deut. i. 6; v. 3; below, Heb. vii. 9, 10); what God promised to Jacob, God said to us, i. e. to all Jacob's children by faith, to all true Israelites, even to the end of the world.

5. *Even the LORD God of hosts; the LORD is his memorial*] Jehovah, the Lord God of the *hosts* of angels who appeared to Jacob at *Mahanaim* (the two camps or hosts); the Lord God of the starry hosts of heaven (whom ye worship as if they were God). See note on 1 Sam. i. 3. The Lord, Who revealed Himself by the Name JEHOVAH to Moses (Exod. iii. 13—15), the Everlasting, Self-existing One; the One great Cause of all Causes, is *His Memorial*; as He said to Moses (Exod. iii. 14), "I AM that I AM—the Lord God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob;" this is *My Name* for ever, and this is *My Memorial* unto all generations.

7. *He is a merchant*] Rather, in Hosea's bold, abrupt style, *Canaan*. That is, Israel, is no longer worthy to be called *Israel*, the Son of Isaac, the Son of Abraham, but has become *Canaan*—the Son of Ham. Cp. Ezek. xvi. 3, "Thy father was an Amorite, and thy mother a Hittite." At the same time there is a reference to the mercantile character of Canaan, a name given to merchants generally (Job xli. 36. Isa. xxiii. 8. Prov. xxxi. 24. *Gesen.* 405); and therefore it is added, "the balances of deceit are in his hands." Cp. below, on Rev. vi. 5.

8. *In all my labours—sin*] *All my labours bring with them no iniquity that were sin* (*Fulg.*, *Keil*).

Before
CHRIST
about
725.
n ch. 13. 4.
o Lev. 23. 42, 43.
Neh. 8. 17.
Zech. 14. 16.
p 2 Kings 17. 12.
† Heb. *by the hand*.

q ch. 5. 1. & 6. 8.

r ch. 4. 15. &
9. 15.
Amos 4. 4. & 5. 5.
s ch. 8. 11. &
10. 1.
t Gen. 28. 5.
Deut. 26. 5.
u Gen. 29. 20, 28.
x Exod. 12. 50, 51.
& 13. 3.
Ps. 77. 20.
Isa. 63. 11.
Micah 6. 4.
y 2 Kings 17.
11—18.
† Heb. *with bitternesses*.
† Heb. *bloods*:
see Ezek. 18. 13.
& 24. 7, 8.
z Dan. 11. 18.
a Deut. 28. 37.
a 2 Kings 17.
16, 18.
ch. 11. 2.
† Heb. *they add to sin*.
b ch. 2. 8. & s. 4.

|| Or, *the sacrificers of men*.
c 1 Kings 19. 18.

⁹ And ⁿ I *that am* the LORD thy God from the land of Egypt ^o will yet make thee to dwell in tabernacles,
As in the days of the solemn feast.

¹⁰ ^p I have also spoken by the prophets, and I have multiplied visions,
And used similitudes, [†] by the ministry of the prophets.

¹¹ ^q Is there iniquity in Gilead?

Surely they are vanity:

They sacrifice bullocks in ^r Gilgal;

Yea, ^s their altars *are* as heaps in the furrows of the fields.

¹² And Jacob ^t fled into the country of Syria,

And Israel ^u served for a wife, and for a wife he kept *sheep*.

¹³ ^x And by a prophet the LORD brought Israel out of Egypt,

And by a prophet was he preserved.

¹⁴ ^y Ephraim provoked *him* to anger [†] most bitterly:

Therefore shall he leave his [†] blood upon him,

^z And his ^a reproach shall his Lord return unto him.

XIII. ¹ When Ephraim spake trembling, he exalted himself in Israel;

But ^a when he offended in Baal, he died.

² And now [†] they sin more and more,

And ^b have made them molten images of their silver,

And idols according to their own understanding,

All of it the work of the craftsmen:

They say of them, Let || the men that sacrifice ^c kiss the calves.

9. And] But. The conjunction here has an adversative sense. Although Ephraim says this, yet God will have pity on him.

— will yet make thee to dwell in tabernacles] I will restore thee to the condition in which thou wast in the wilderness, when thou wast My people. Thou shalt dwell in tabernacles, and shalt also celebrate the great and joyous Feast of Tabernacles—the crowning festival of the Hebrew year. The solemnity connected with the most glorious events of Hebrew history, and the typical foreshadowing of the Incarnation of the Son of God, *tabernacling* with men in their nature; and of their dwelling with Him, and of His dwelling with them for ever hereafter in heaven. See the notes on Lev. xxiii. 34. 42. Deut. xvi. 13. 16. 2 Chron. viii. 13. Ezra iii. 4; and below, Zech. xiv. 16—19; and on John i. 14; vii. 2. Rev. vii. 15; xxi. 3.

10. I have also spoken by the prophets] Or rather, I have spoken upon the prophets; I have come down upon them by My Spirit, and have spoken by their mouths. Cp. 2 Pet. i. 21. — visions] Compare Num. xii. 6—8. Joel ii. 28.

— similitudes] Or parables, as when God compares Himself to a Husband (Isa. liv. 5) or to a Vinedresser (Isa. v. 1).

11. Gilead] Literally, *If Gilead is iniquity* (Vulg., Arabic). If even Gilead on the east of Jordan, as well as Gilgal on the west—the scenes of God's love to Israel—have become iniquity in the abstract (cp. on vi. 8), then Israel is come to nought.

Jacob prayed to God in Gilead, and was protected by Him. But in Gilead, ye who boast yourselves to be Jacob's posterity, rebel against God and worship idols; therefore ye shall perish, ye shall come to nought.

— Gilgal] Even in Gilgal, the scene of God's love to Israel. See above, on iv. 15; ix. 15.

— their altars are as heaps] Their altars, which are not God's altars, are no better than *heaps* of rude stones that are gathered together in the furrows of the field, and are to be carried away, because they mar the fertility of the soil.

12. And Jacob] Or, *yet Jacob*, your father, was an example of faith and obedience to God, Who mercifully preserved and blessed him in his exile and wanderings, as He blessed your fathers in the wilderness. Jacob served even Laban faithfully, for many years, when he was a wanderer in exile in Syria, a heathen and idolatrous land; and I greatly blessed him there, and brought him back from Padan Aram to Canaan.

But you, his posterity, who glory in his name, do not imitate Jacob: you will not serve God, even in the good land which He

has given you; therefore, ye shall not enjoy Jacob's blessings, but be carried away captive from Canaan to a foreign and heathen country beyond Padan Aram.

Therefore, O Israel, do thou emulate thy father Jacob: weep and turn to God, wrestle with Him in prayer, and thou shalt prevail also, and recover thy name of *Israel* (S. Jerome).

13. by a prophet] By Moses, sent to your fathers to deliver them from Egypt, and to write the Law at Mount Sinai for them and for you. But ye have forgotten all these mercies.

— was he preserved] Literally, *was he kept*. Israel was kept (like a flock) by Moses, whom God appointed to be His shepherd. As the Psalmist says, "He led His people like sheep by the hand of Moses and Aaron" (Ps. lxxvii. 20). Hosea repeats the word from v. 12. Israel kept sheep for a wife; and Israel (his posterity) were kept like sheep by God. The Vulgate has, rightly, "*servavit*" in v. 12, and *servatus est* in v. 13.

14. Therefore shall he leave his blood upon him] God shall not wipe away Israel's blood-guiltiness from him, but leave it upon him. Cp. Josh. ii. 9. 2 Sam. i. 10.

How wonderfully has this been fulfilled in the execution of the imprecations which the Jews pronounced upon themselves when shedding the blood of Christ. "His blood be upon us and on our children!" (Matt. xxvii. 25).

CH. XIII. 1. When Ephraim spake trembling—died] Rather, when Ephraim spake, there was trembling (see Targum and Aben Ezra, Kimchi); that is, as long as Ephraim feared God, God made the nations to fear Ephraim (Deut. ii. 25; xi. 25, 1 Chron. xiv. 17. Cp. Esth. viii. 17; ix. 3. Job xxix. 21); he exalted himself in Israel, he became strong and prosperous, but when he offended in Baal, by idolatry and rebellion against God, then Ephraim, who was once so prosperous, perished. Cp. Amos ii. 2.

2. They say of them, Let the men that sacrifice kiss the calves] The grammatical rendering of this passage seems rather to be, *They say to them, Let sacrificers of men kiss calves*. And this is favoured by the greater number of ancient versions. See Sept., Vulg., Syriac, Arabic; and see the margin.

The sense is as follows:—The votaries of the golden calves at Bethel and Dan alleged that their form of religion was a reformation of heathen worship. Many of the Israelites (in the wilderness, and in the days of Solomon) had fallen away to the worship of Moloch, and had become *sacrificers of men* (1 Kings xi. 5. Amos v. 26. Cp. on Lev. xviii. 21. Deut. xviii. 10.

- ³ Therefore they shall be ^d as the morning cloud,
And as the early dew that passeth away,
^e As the chaff *that* is driven with the whirlwind out of the floor,
And as the smoke out of the chimney.
- ⁴ Yet ^f I *am* the LORD thy God from the land of Egypt,
And thou shalt know no god but me :
For ^g *there is* no saviour beside me.
- ⁵ ^h I did know thee in the wilderness, ⁱ in the land of [†] great drought ;
- ⁶ ^k According to their pasture, so were they filled ;
They were filled, and their heart was exalted ;
Therefore ^l have they forgotten me.
- ⁷ Therefore ^m I will be unto them as a lion :
As ⁿ a leopard by the way will I observe *them* :
^o I will meet them [°] as a bear *that is* bereaved of *her* whelps,
And will rend the caul of their heart,
And there will I devour them like a lion :
[†] The wild beast shall tear them.
- ⁹ O Israel, ^p thou hast destroyed thyself,
^q But in me [†] is thine help.
- ¹⁰ || I will be thy king : ^r *where is any other* that may save thee in all thy cities ?
And thy judges of whom ^s thou saidst, Give me a king and princes ?
- ¹¹ 'I gave thee a king in mine anger,
And took *him* away in my wrath.
- ¹² ^t The iniquity of Ephraim *is* bound up ; his sin *is* hid.
- ¹³ ^x The sorrows of a travailing woman shall come upon him :
He is ^y an unwise son ;
For he should not ^z stay [†] long in *the place* of the breaking forth of children ;

Before
CHRIST
about
725.

d ch. 6. 4.
e Dan. 2. 35.

f Isa. 43. 11.
ch. 12. 9.

g Isa. 43. 11. &
45. 21.

h Deut. 2. 7. &
32. 10.

i Deut. 8. 15. &
32. 10.

† Heb. *droughts*.
k Deut. 8. 12, 14.
& 32. 15.

l ch. 8. 14.

m Lam. 3. 10.
ch. 5. 14.

n Jer. 5. 6.

o 2 Sam. 17. 8.
Prov. 17. 12.

† Heb. *the beast
of the field*.

p Prov. 6. 32.
ch. 14. 1.

Mal. 1. 9.

q ver. 4.

† Heb. *in thy
help*.

|| Rather, *Where
is thy king ?*

King Hoshea
being then in
prison, 2 Kings

17. 4.

r Deut. 32. 38.
ch. 10. 3.

ver. 4.

s 1 Sam. 8. 5, 19.

t 1 Sam. 8. 7. &
10. 19. & 15. 22,

23. & 16. 1.

ch. 10. 3.

u Deut. 32. 34.
Job 14. 17.

x Isa. 13. 8.

† Heb. *a time*.

2 Kings xvi. 3; xvii. 17; xxi. 6; xxxiii. 10. 2 Chron. xxviii. 3; xxxiii. 6. Ps. cvi. 36. Jer. vii. 31; xix. 5; xxxii. 35. Ezek. xvi. 21; xx. 36. 31. Amos v. 26. Jeroboam (it was pleaded by his adherents) wrought a change for the better among them. How could they scruple at, or be offended by, the milder worship of Jehovah under the form of calves set up by him? Let sacrificers of human victims turn away from their sanguinary orgies, and let them kiss the calves at Bethel and at Dan. On *kissing*, as an act of adoration, see on 1 Kings xix. 18. Job xxxi. 26, 27.

3. *smoke out of the chimney*] Or, out of the window—the lattice; the houses had no chimney.

5. *I did know thee*] I loved thee.

6. *According to their pasture*] The more abundantly I fed them, the more they kicked against Me. There is a reference here to Deut. viii. 11; xxxi. 20; xxxii. 15. The warnings which God gave them by Moses have been despised, and they have committed those very sins, against which the warnings were given.

7. *will I observe them*] I will lie in wait against them. Cp. Jer. v. 6.

9. *O Israel, thou hast destroyed thyself*] Rather, *O Israel, thy destruction is from this, that thou art against Me who am thy help*. Thou hast destroyed thyself by rebelling against thy Saviour. Here is a clear statement that men are authors of their own destruction, and not God, Who willeth that none should perish, but that all men should be saved: Jer. xxvii. 13. Ezek. xviii. 31, 32; xxxiii. 11. Cp. Isa. xlv. 22; and below, on 1 Tim. ii. 4. 2 Pet. iii. 9. Bp. Sanderson, iii. 150. Bp. Andrews, v. 308.

10. *I will be thy king*] Rather, *Where is thy king, that he may help thee in all thy cities?* Cp. Deut. xxxii. 37—39. The word (*ehi*), rendered *where*, occurs also in v. 14. Cp. Ewald, § 104; Gesen. 16; and see the margin here.

11. *I gave thee a king in mine anger*] God, Who was the King of Israel, and Who was virtually rejected by them when they asked for an earthly king (1 Sam. viii. 7), gave to Israel,

first Saul, and then to the Ten Tribes he gave Jeroboam, chosen by themselves; and He punished them by their own choice. So He had done to the men of Shechem who chose Abimelech. See Judges ix. 1—57. So God ever deals with those who sin against Him. He punishes them by means of their own sins. Cp. Isa. lxvi. 4. Jer. ii. 19.

12. *bound up*] As in a purse. See on Job xiv. 17. "My transgression is sealed up in a bag, and Thou sewest up mine iniquity." Cp. Deut. xxxii. 34, 35. "Is not this laid up in store with Me, and laid up among my treasures?" God notes men's sins, and keeps them in remembrance; and so men, by presuming on God's forbearance, and by obstinate continuance in sin, "treasure up for themselves wrath against the day of wrath" (Rom. ii. 5).

ISRAEL'S CONVERSION A SPIRITUAL CHILDBIRTH.

13. *The sorrows of a travailing woman*] Israel, enduring in exile the punishment of the sin which it has conceived, is compared to a woman suffering the pangs of parturition. But this chastisement of its banishment and captivity is a merciful one; it is designed to bring it to the blessedness of the new birth in Christ, and to a glorious resurrection from the womb of the grave, through Him Who is the first-born of every creature (Col. i. 15), the first-begotten of the dead (Col. i. 18. Rev. i. 5). We may compare the imagery in Micah iv. 10. Isa. xiii. 8; xxvi. 17; and especially our Blessed Lord's words, "A woman when she is in travail hath sorrow because her hour is come, but as soon as she is delivered of the child, she remembereth no more the anguish, for joy that a man is born into the world" (John xvi. 21). What a joyful day will that be, when (with reverence be it said) Christ shall have been conceived in the womb of the Jewish Nation (cp. St. Paul's words, Gal. iv. 19), and have been brought forth by its faith into the world!

— *He is an unwise son; for he should not stay long in the place of the breaking forth of children*] The metaphor derived from childbirth is continued. Israel is an *unwise child*; in that he lingers in the womb (in loco disruptionis vulvae; see 2 Kings xix. 3. Isa. xxxvii. 3), instead of being born into the light of day.

Before
CHRIST
about
725.
a Isa. 25. 8.
Ezek. 37. 12.
† Heb. *the hand*.
b 1 Cor. 15. 54, 55.

c Jer. 15. 6.
Rom. 11. 29.
d See Gen. 41. 52. 15
& 48. 19.
e Jer. 41. 11.
Ezek. 17. 10. &
19. 12.
ch. 4. 19.

† Heb. *vessels of
desire*.
Nahum 2. 9.
|| Fulfilled
about 721.
2 Kings 17. 6.
f 2 Kings 18. 12.
g 2 Kings 8. 12.
& 15. 16.
Isa. 13. 16.
ch. 10. 14. 15.
Amos 1. 13.
Nahum 3. 10.

a ch. 12. 6.
Joel 2. 13.

b ch. 13. 9.

¹⁴ ^a I will ransom them from † the power of the Grave;

I will redeem them from Death:

^b O Death, I will be thy plagues;

O Grave, I will be thy destruction:

^c Repentance shall be hid from mine eyes,

¹⁵ Though ^d he be fruitful among *his* brethren.

^e An east wind shall come,

The wind of the LORD shall come up from the wilderness,

And his spring shall become dry, and his fountain shall be dried up:

He shall spoil the treasure of all † pleasant vessels.

¹⁶ || Samaria shall become desolate;

^f For she hath rebelled against her God:

^g They shall fall by the sword:

Their infants shall be dashed in pieces,

And their women with child shall be ripped up.

XIV. ¹ O Israel, ^a return unto the LORD thy God;

^b For thou hast fallen by thine iniquity.

Israel is compared to a woman in childbirth, and to a babe to be born, because the characteristics of mother and infant are united in it. Israel, stubbornly lingering in the obstinacy and blindness of unbelief and impenitence, instead of hastening to be converted to the true faith, and to be spiritually born to light and life in Christ, is compared to a babe lingering in the darkness of the womb (on this use of the Hebrew verb *amid*, see 2 Sam. i. 10. 2 Kings iv. 6; xiii. 18), instead of hastening to be brought forth into the world.

Isaiah adopts the same metaphor: "Before she travailed she brought forth, before her pain came she was delivered of a man child. Who hath heard such things? Who hath seen such things? Shall the earth be made to bring forth in one day? or shall a nation be born at once? for as soon as Zion travailed she brought forth her children" (Isa. lxi. 8).

There is a special propriety in the adoption of this figure here, in connexion with the Patriarch Jacob, whose example has just been propounded for the imitation of Israel, and who showed *his eager haste to be born* by laying hold of his brother's heel in the womb. See above, xii. 3. So ought Israel to feel a holy yearning, and to show an impatient alacrity, to be born into the pure and bright daylight of the Gospel of Christ. Observe, also, the beautiful connexion with what follows.

THE BIRTH FROM THE GRAVE.

14. *I will ransom them from the power (or hand) of the Grave*] Christ here speaks. He Who has given Himself a ransom for all (1 Tim. ii. 6), He Who has destroyed Death by dying on the cross (Heb. ii. 9. 14), He, the First-born of the Dead, delivers us by the glorious Childbirth of His Resurrection from the dark womb of Sin and the Grave, into the light and life of Immortality; see below, on John xvi. 21. Col. i. 18. Rev. i. 5; and the noble words of *St. Ignatius* at the prospect of death, as quoted below on Phil. i. 21. "My birth is now at hand; do not hinder me from being born; allow me to see the pure light; when I arrive there I shall be a man of God."

There is a happy harmony in the imagery here blended with what has gone before. Well may the Prophet now speak of the glory of the Resurrection, after speaking of Israel's conversion. For what will Israel's conversion be? It will be like the resurrection of the dead bones, in the valley of which Ezekiel speaks, and to which he compares it. See Ezek. xxxvii. "What," says the Apostle, "shall the receiving of them" (the Jews) "be, but life from the dead?" (Rom. xi. 15.)

The Christian Fathers apply these words to Christ (see *S. Jerome* here, and *S. Gregory*, Hom. xxii., in *Evangelia*; and *Eusebius*, Demons. Evang. iv. 12); and it is remarkable that the Hebrew Rabbis also understood these words as referring to the Messiah. See *A Lapid* here, who says, "The Hebrew Prophets are accustomed to subjoin joyful things to what is sorrowful, and to cheer the desponding nation by bright anticipations of the future; and to pass, by a rapid flight, from the miseries of their own times, to the glad some days of Christ."

— *O Death, I will be thy plagues; O Grave, I will be thy*

destruction] So the passage is rendered by the *Vulgate*, and hence the Latin Fathers accept the sense as being, "O Mors, ero mors tua, ero morsus tuus, O Inferne" (*S. Jerome, S. Gregory, S. Aug. See A Lapid*); and this gives a very good sense. Cp. Heb. ii. 14.

But sound and sober criticism cannot assent to the assertion of the learned Roman Catholic expositor, *Cornelius A Lapid*, who does not hesitate to say, "Ex definitione Ecclesiæ (Romanæ) et Concilii Tridentini, sess. 4, sancientis Vulgatam Versionem esse genuinam Sanctam Scripturam, de fide certum est, hanc hujus loci esse sententiam, *Ero mors tua, O Mors, ero morsus tuus, O Inferne*, sic enim habet Vulgata Versio." Here is one proof, among many, of the fallibility of the Council of Trent, and of the Roman Church, and of the injury inflicted by them on Biblical Criticism. The right rendering of Hosea's words is, "*O Death, where are thy plagues*" (see above, xiii. 10, and *Dr. Pusey and Keil* here; and so they are translated by *Sept., Syriac, Arabic*, and by *St. Paul* (1 Cor. xv. 55), *O Grave, where is thy destruction?* (i. e. thy power to destroy.)

Christ here sounds the psalm of His victory over Death and the Grave, and enables and encourages every Christian believer to do the same. This chapter, therefore, and the following one, are fitly appointed by the Church to be read as proper Lessons on the Wednesday before the Festival of Christ's Resurrection (cp. *Bp. Pearson*, Art. xi., p. 387. *Bp. Andrewes*, ii. 256; iii. 229. *Varison* on Prophecy, Disc. vi., part ii., pp. 196, 197); and *St. Paul's* noble Sermon—the most glorious homily on the Resurrection that ever was preached—in which he adopts these words of Hosea, is fitly appointed to be read at the Burial of the Dead, for the purpose of ministering comfort to mourners, by the hope of Resurrection.

— *Repentance shall be hid from mine eyes*] Although thou hast been faithless to Me, I will never repent of My love to thee, and of My victory, by which thou art delivered. Compare the similar use of the word *repentance*, in Rom. xi. 29, "The gifts of God are without repentance;" He never revokes what He has once given to His Church. Cp. 1 Sam. xv. 29. Ps. lxxxix. 31. Ps. cx. 4.

15. *Though he be fruitful*] Rather, *Because* (so *Sept., Vulg.*) *he (Ephraim) will bear fruit* (as his name *Ephraim* signifies, see Gen. xli. 52) *among his brethren*, therefore the promise in the foregoing verse will stand firm. *Because* (or *when*) *Ephraim is fruitful among his brethren*, i. e. as soon as Israel begins to bring forth fruits of repentance and faith in Christ, then all these glorious promises will be fulfilled to him. A new paragraph begins with what follows; I have therefore altered the punctuation.

— *An east wind shall come*] God shall deprive Ephraim of his external prosperity, and prepare him for conversion by salutary discipline inflicted by the arms of Assyria, which will despoil Israel, and take Samaria, and carry the people captive. Cp. above, x. 14. 2 Kings xviii. 9—12. *But this chastisement will eventually lead to the conversion of Israel.* See what follows: "O Israel, return unto the Lord thy God" (xiv. 1).

- ² Take with you words, and turn to the LORD :
 Say unto him, Take away all iniquity, and || receive *us* graciously :
 So will we render the ^c calves of our lips.
- ³ ^d Asshur shall not save us ; ^e we will not ride upon horses :
^f Neither will we say any more to the work of our hands, *Ye are our gods* :
^g For in thee the fatherless findeth mercy.
- ⁴ I will heal ^h their backsliding, I will love them ⁱ freely :
 For mine anger is turned away from him ;
- ⁵ I will be as ^k the dew unto Israel :
 He shall || grow as the lily,
 And † cast forth his roots as Lebanon ;
- ⁶ His branches † shall spread,
 And ^l his beauty shall be as the olive tree,
 And ^m his smell as Lebanon.
- ⁷ ⁿ They that dwell under his shadow shall return ;
 They shall revive *as* the corn, and || grow as the vine :
 The || scent thereof *shall be* as the wine of Lebanon.
- ⁸ Ephraim *shall say*, ^o What have I to do any more with idols ?
^p I have heard *him*, and observed him :
 I *am* like a green fir tree.
- ^q From me is thy fruit found.
- ⁹ ^r Who *is* wise, and he shall understand these *things* ?

Before
CHRIST
about
725.

|| Or, *give good*.
c Heb. 13. 15.
d Jer. 31. 18, &c.
ch. 5. 13. & 12. 1.
e Deut. 17. 16.
Ps. 33. 17.
Isa. 30. 2, 16. &
31. 1.
f ch. 2. 17.
ver. 8.
g Ps. 10. 14. &
68. 5.
h Jer. 5. 6. &
14. 7.
ch. 11. 7.
i Eph. 1. 6.
k Job 29. 19.
Prov. 19. 12.
|| Or, *blossom*.
† Heb. *strike*.
† Heb. *shall go*.
l Ps. 52. 8. &
128. 3.
m Gen. 27. 27.
Cant. 4. 11.

n Ps. 91. 1.

|| Or, *blossom*.

|| Or, *memorial*.

o ver. 3.

p Jer. 31. 18.

q James 1. 17.

r Ps. 107. 43.

Jer. 9. 12.

Dan. 12. 10. John 8. 47. & 18. 37.

ISRAEL'S REPENTANCE; GOD'S GRACIOUS PROMISES TO THE JEWS ON THEIR CONVERSION.

CH. XIV. 2. *Take with you words*] God does not require costly sacrifices from the Jews ; but He asks for heart-felt confession of sin and earnest prayer.

— *receive us graciously*] Literally, *receive good*. Israel, when it repents and believes in Christ, will no longer trust, as it has done, in its own merits ; but will ascribe all to God's free grace, and say, Since Thou, O God, hast taken away our iniquity, receive as Thine own due whatever good is left in us. Receive Thy own gift, especially the merits of Christ imputed to us, Who is the perfect good, and the Giver of all good to men. "Whensoever," says *S. Augustine*, "we do any good, God works in us and by us ; and whenever He rewards our acts, He crowns His own gifts."

Observe the affecting and pathetic dialogue which now follows between God and penitent and returning Israel. Their reconciliation to Christ, as here displayed by the Prophet, is like the embrace of Joseph and his brethren who had sold him, which was typical of that blessed event (see above, on Gen. xlv. 3—12) ; and like the scene in our Lord's Parable, where the father runs and falls on the returning prodigal's neck, and kisses him. See Luke xv. 20.

— *will we render the calves of our lips*] We will not any more worship the calves of Bethel, nor rely on the calves of burnt sacrifices ; but we will offer the calves of our lips in confession of our sins to Thee, and in penitential prayer and joyful thanksgiving. As the Psalmist says (Ps. li. 15—19 ; lxix. 30, 31), "I will praise the name of God with a song, and will magnify Him with thanksgiving. This also shall please the Lord better than a bullock that hath horns and hoofs." Cp. Heb. xiii. 15, where the Apostle softens the metaphor into "the fruit of our lips : " the original would not have been so generally intelligible to his readers.

This Section, xiv. 2—10, with Joel ii. 15—27, is the Haphtarah, or Proper Prophetic Lesson, in some Synagogues, to Dent. xxxii. 1—52, the "Song of Moses," where he recounts God's mercies to Israel.

ISRAEL WILL BELIEVE AND REPENT, AND TRUST ONLY IN GOD.

3. *Asshur shall not save us*] Here follows Israel's confession to God : We will no longer look to Assyria for help (cp. v. 13 ; vii. 11 ; viii. 9), nor will we put our trust in horses from Egypt (Isa. xxxi. 1. Ps. xx. 7), but we will flee to Thee for succour, and rely on Thee, O God.

4. *I will heal*] God gives an immediate and gracious answer

to the confession and prayer of Israel. Let the Hebrew Nation mark this and be encouraged by it.

GOD WILL HEAL ISRAEL IN CHRIST.

5. *He shall grow*] He shall blossom. Contrast this beautiful imagery of God's love and grace to Israel, with the description of Israel's desolation consequent on their sins (xiii. 15).

7. *They that dwell under his shadow shall return*] Rather, *They shall return ; dwelling under his shadow they shall revive (as) corn, or, by corn* (Sept., Vulg., Syriac, Arabic). The Targum has the remarkable words, "They shall dwell under the shadow of the Messiah." Christ shall give them corn—the bread of life, in Himself ; and they shall blossom as the Vine, being engrafted as living branches in Him Who is the True Vine (John xv. 1—4).

8. Ephraim shall say, *What have I to do any more with idols ?* God's merciful dispensation in the captivity and dispersion of the Jews, may already be recognized in their abandonment of idolatry. Cp. above, *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 299. The rest will one day follow. May He hasten the time !

— *I have heard him, and observed him*] Israel, having forsaken idolatry, will have a vision of the True God. The veil will be taken from their eyes, and they will see Him in Christ (2 Cor. iii. 14—16).

— *fir tree*] Cypress.

— *From me is thy fruit found*] This is God's answer in Christ to Israel, when penitent and restored. A fir-tree, or cypress, is *unfruitful* in itself, but God enables it to bear fruit. Such is man : a dark, funereal, isolated, and barren Cypress by nature, but fruitful as a Vine, in luxuriant and joyful exuberance, by grace. As our Lord says (John xv. 4), "The branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the Vine ; no more can ye, except ye abide in Me."

This chapter is therefore appropriately appointed by the Church to be read, as on the Wednesday before Easter, when we thank God for the benefits derived from the Death, Burial, and Resurrection of Christ, Who, speaking of His future passion and of its fruitfulness, said, "Except a corn of wheat fall into the ground and die, it abideth alone, but if it die it bringeth forth much fruit" (John xii. 24). Ephraim (whose name signifies *fruitful*) derives its fruit from Christ. The conversion of the world—both of Jew and Gentile—is a Harvest which springs up in Christ, Who is the seed sown in the grave, and Who rose as the first-fruits from it (1 Cor. xv. 20).

GOD IS JUSTIFIED IN ALL HIS WAYS TO ISRAEL.

9. *Who is wise, and he shall understand these things ?*] This

Before
CHRIST
about
725.

8 Prov. 10, 29.
Luke 2, 31.
2 Cor. 2, 16.
1 Pet. 2, 7, 8.

Prudent, and he shall know them ?
For * the ways of the Lord are right,
And the just shall walk in them :
But the transgressors shall fall therein.

is the sum of the whole book. Hosea (whose name signifies *Saviour*) justifies God's ways to Israel, ever since His choice of Israel to be a favoured nation, even to the end of time.

To those who are *not wise*, but who cavil at God's doings and carp at His Word, the history of God's Ancient People, the Jews, is a hard problem, an unintelligible riddle, an insoluble enigma. They may even take occasion from it to charge God with weakness and caprice. But *he that is wise will understand these things*; he that is *prudent shall know them; for the ways of the Lord are right*. Hosea proves this. He shows that all the dispensations of God to Israel have ever been, and ever will be, dispensations of Love; and that in all of them *He is their Saviour* (Ps. cvi. 21. Isa. lxiii. 8), and that the Angel of His Presence is even now saving them if they will be saved, even in their affliction and by their chastisement; and that in His love and in His pity He redeems them (Isa. lxiii. 9). Even in their punishment there is mercy to Israel. Their captivity and dispersion, first by the arms of Assyria, and afterwards by those of Rome, were designed by God to wean them from their sins, and to bring them by faith and repentance to Himself. Already in great measure they have had that effect. The Jews have cast away their idols (v. 8). They no longer look to the Assyrians and Egyptians of this world for help. Many of them have been already brought to God in Christ. All the Apostles and Evangelists of Christ were Jews; Christ Himself was a Jew, and He said that "Salvation is of the Jews" (John iv. 22). The Gospel has gone forth from Zion; and the Christian Church, first planted at Jerusalem, and watered by the dews of the Holy Ghost descending there, as the dew fell at first on Gideon's fleece, is extending itself over the threshing-floor of the world; (see above, on Judges vi. 36—40). And in due time the dispersed

of Israel will believe in Christ, and will be united with their Gentile brethren in the Church, which is the true Zion, and is "the Jerusalem which is above, the mother of us all" (Gal. iv. 26), and will join with them in praising Him, and will acknowledge that "all the ways of the Lord are right; and the just shall walk in them."

This last verse, which is the Epiphonema of Hosea's prophecies, is an echo of that at the close of the 107th Psalm, which celebrates God's mercies vouchsafed to Israel, in redeeming them and gathering them from all countries of the world (Ps. cvii. 1—8), and to all mankind in His wonderful works of Creation and Redemption; and which ends with the words, "The righteous shall see it and rejoice, and all iniquity shall stop her mouth. Whoso is wise and will observe these things, even they shall understand the loving-kindness of the Lord" (Ps. cvii. 43).

The Prophet Jeremiah also, weeping over the ruin of Zion, declares that the judgment is just, and takes up Hosea's words and says, "*Who is the wise man, that may understand this, and who is he to whom the mouth of the Lord hath spoken?*" (see what follows there, Jer. ix. 12—16); and the Apostle St. Paul, in commenting on the history and prospects of Israel in his Epistle to the Romans (Rom. ix., x., xi.), where he grounds himself on the prophecies of Hosea (Rom. ix. 25, 26. Cp. Hos. ii. 23; i. 10), sums up his argument with an exclamation even of a more fervent character, "O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are His judgments, and His ways past finding out. For of Him, and through Him, and to Him, are all things: to Whom be glory for ever. AMEN" (Rom. xi. 33. 36).

JOEL.

I. ¹ THE word of the LORD that came to Joel the son of Pethuel.

² Hear this, ye old men,
And give ear, all ye inhabitants of the land.

^a Hath this been in your days,
Or even in the days of your fathers ?

³ ^b Tell ye your children of it,
And let your children tell their children,
And their children another generation.

⁴ ^c † That which the palmerworm hath left hath the locust eaten ;
And that which the locust hath left hath the cankerworm eaten ;
And that which the cankerworm hath left hath the caterpillar eaten.

Before
CHRIST
about
810.

a ch. 2. 2.

b Ps. 78. 4.

c Deut. 28. 38.
ch. 2. 25.
† Heb. *The residue of the palmerworm.*

CH. I.] The name JOEL signifies that JEHOVAH (the covenant God of Israel) is the GOD of all the world. *Joel*, in his name and in his prophecies, is, as we shall see, the precursor of *Ezekiel*.

The main design of his prophecy is, to show that Jehovah declares His judicial omnipotence in various ways, by which He punishes the ungodly, and maintains and vindicates His own glory and truth, and eventually rewards His own people. God does this by physical judgments, such as plagues of Locusts, Earthquakes, Pestilences, Famines, which are God's Prophets and Preachers to the World, and are like Heralds of Christ's Coming, and Apparitors of the great Assize. They call men to repentance, and prepare them for Resurrection, Judgment, and Eternity. Cp. Ezek. xiv. 21. Hos. ii. 11—13. Amos vii. 1—8. Nah. i. 5.

Joel also shows that God proclaims His judicial omnipotence by National Visitations—such as the invasion and captivity of Israel by the armies of Assyria, and such as the destruction of Jerusalem by the armies of Babylon and of Rome.

And lest it should be imagined that the God of Israel and Judah had been overcome by those heathen Nations who have been used by Him for the chastisement of the sins of His people, Joel reveals the future overthrow of *heathen* nations, and of all enemies of Christ and His Church. He describes the grand consummation of the Last Day and Universal Judgment, when it will be proved by the supremacy of Christ, the King and Judge of all, that Jehovah, the Lord God of Israel, is indeed the God of the Universe, and the Saviour of His faithful people.

Joel, the Prophet of Judgment, follows *Hosea* (Saviour), the Prophet of Salvation. In this combination God's attributes of Mercy and Judgment are displayed. Thus Joel prepares the way for our Lord's prophecy on the Mount of Olives, when, looking down upon Jerusalem, He spake of judgments in the natural world, "famines, pestilences, and earthquakes" (Matt. xxiv. 7), and of national judgments, especially the destruction of Jerusalem, as preparatory warnings of His own future Coming to judge the World (Matt. xxiv. 7—31; xxv. 31).

Indeed, by a sublime and magnificent process of prophetic foreshortening, Joel teaches us to see the majestic form of CHRIST standing in the background above all the Judgments, physical and political, from the Prophet's own age to the Day of Doom; and he enables us to desecrate the Great White Throne (Rev. xx. 11) towering in awful perspective above them all; and he combines them all as hours in one grand diurnal generalization, which he calls "the Day of the Lord," which will have its Sunset in the Universal Doom of Quick and Dead.

Joel is quoted by Amos i. 2, who there takes up the warnings of Joel iii. 16, and who also closes his prophecy with gracious predictions similar to those of Joel (cp. Amos ix. 13. Joel iii. 18). Joel

is also cited by Isaiah (xiii. 6. See Joel i. 18). We may accept the opinion that he prophesied before Amos, i. e. before the twenty-seven years of the contemporaneous reigns of Uzziah and Jeroboam II., i. e. before B.C. 810 (*Ussher, Pusey, Keil*).

Joel is placed in the Hebrew Canon between Hosea and Amos, who, according to the inscriptions and contents of their prophecies, prophesied under Jeroboam II. and Uzziah; his position in the Canon is tantamount to a testimony from the Hebrew Church, that he lived and prophesied at that time.

For further remarks on the prophecies of Joel, see the INTRODUCTION prefixed to this Volume.

1. *Joel* i. e. *Jehovah* is *God*.

— *Pethuel* i. e. *persuaded of God*.

4. *That which the palmerworm hath left hath the locust eaten*] Literally, *That which the gnawing (locust) hath left, the multiplying (locust) hath eaten*. These words (in Hebrew, *gázam, arbeh*) represent different kinds of locusts, distinguished by the characteristics which their names indicate (*Pocock, Pusey, Keil*).

Some interpreters have supposed them to mean the locust in its various phases of development; but this opinion is not probable. The Prophet is describing successive swarms of locusts (see Lev. xi. 22), rapidly succeeding one another, and not gradual transformations of one genus of locusts after long intervals. The marvel (as *S. Jerome* observes) is, that they all come in one year.

— *that which the cankerworm hath left hath the caterpillar eaten*] Literally, *that which the licking (locust) hath left, the devouring (locust) hath eaten* (*Pocock* 215).

It has been supposed by some, that these locusts are symbolical of invading armies, and that these four different and successive swarms represent the four great nations hostile to God's people, viz. the Babylonians, Medo-Persians, Greeks, and Romans (*Ephraem Syrus, S. Cyril, S. Jerome, Haymo, Hugo, Lyranus, Hengstenberg, Hävernick*).

But though, doubtless, something more is meant by these locusts than what their name literally implies, and though it can hardly be doubted that the Prophet passes on from these physical locusts to hostile armies, especially from the North (ii. 20. Cp. on i. 9 and ii. 17, and *Pusey*, pp. 99—102), yet we must not discard the natural sense.

Indeed, the great lesson which the Prophet Joel teaches us is this, that God executes His judgments by His agents in the natural world, such as locusts, and thus displays His Justice and Omnipotence as the great Moral Governor of the Universe; and speaks to men and nations by the voice of nature, and warns them by means of physical phenomena, which are instruments of His primitive retribution for sin, to prepare for a Judgment to come. The literal sense, with such a moral as this, has been

- Before
CHRIST
about
810.
- d Isa. 32. 10.
e So Prov. 30. 25,
26, 27.
ch. 2. 2, 11, 25.
- f Rev. 9. 8.
- g Isa. 5. 6.
† Heb. laid my
fig tree for a
barking.
- h Isa. 22. 12.
i Prov. 2. 17.
Jer. 3. 4.
k ver. 13.
ch. 2. 14.
- l Jer. 12. 11. &
14. 2.
m Isa. 24. 7.
ver. 12.
|| Or, ashamed.
n Jer. 14. 3, 4.
- o ver. 10.
- p Isa. 24. 11.
Jer. 48. 33.
See Ps. 4. 7.
Isa. 9. 3.
q Jer. 4. 8.
ver. 8.
- r ver. 9.
- s 2 Chron. 20.
3, 4.
ch. 2. 15, 16.
t Lev. 23. 36.
|| Or, day of
restraint.
u 2 Chron. 20. 13.
- x Jer. 30. 7.
y Isa. 13. 6, 9.
ch. 2. 1.
- 5 Awake, ye drunkards, and weep ;
And howl, all ye drinkers of wine,
Because of the new wine ; ^d for it is cut off from your mouth.
- 6 For ^e a nation is come up upon my land,
Strong, and without number,
^f Whose teeth *are* the teeth of a lion,
And he hath the cheek teeth of a great lion.
- 7 He hath ^g laid my vine waste, and [†] barked my fig tree :
He hath made it clean bare, and cast *it* away ;
The branches thereof are made white.
- 8 ^h Lament like a virgin girded with sackcloth for ⁱ the husband of her youth.
- 9 ^k The meat offering and the drink offering is cut off from the house of the
LORD ;
The priests, the LORD's ministers, mourn.
- 10 The field is wasted, ^l the land mourneth ; for the corn is wasted :
^m The new wine is || dried up, the oil languisheth.
- 11 ⁿ Be ye ashamed, O ye husbandmen ;
Howl, O ye vinedressers,
For the wheat and for the barley ;
Because the harvest of the field is perished.
- 12 ^o The vine is dried up, and the fig tree languisheth ;
The pomegranate tree, the palm tree also, and the apple tree,
Even all the trees of the field, are withered :
Because ^p joy is withered away from the sons of men.
- 13 ^q Gird yourselves, and lament, ye priests :
Howl, ye ministers of the altar :
Come, lie all night in sackcloth, ye ministers of my God :
For ^r the meat offering and the drink offering is withholden from the house
of your God.
- 14 ^s Sanctify ye a fast, call ^t a || solemn assembly,
Gather the elders *and* ^u all the inhabitants of the land *into* the house of the
LORD your God,
And cry unto the LORD,
- 15 ^x Alas for the day ! for ^y the day of the LORD *is* at hand,
And as a destruction from the Almighty shall it come.
- 16 Is not the meat cut off before our eyes,

maintained by *Theodoret* and many of the Rabbis, and by *Bochart*, *Pocock*, *Delitzsch*, *Pusey*, *Keil*.

We shall, however, see abundant reason for believing that the judgments of God, inflicted on His sinful people by means of locusts, real as they are, are symbolical of and introductory to, other judicial visitations, even to the Day of Doom. St. John, in the Apocalypse, adopts the imagery of Joel, and describes one of God's severest visitations under the figure of a swarm of locusts (see Rev. ix. 3), which the Prophet calls "God's great army" (ii. 25), spreading desolation every where.

6. *a nation is come*] The devastations caused by the locusts, as described in these passages, are well illustrated from his own experience by *Dr. Thomson*, *Land and Book*, pp. 416—418, and by *Dr. Pusey*, pp. 985. 101. 106.

9. *The meat offering and the drink offering is cut off from the house of the LORD*] Here is an intimation that the Prophet, when speaking of the plague of locusts, sees something beyond them, namely, a hostile army of invaders profaning the Temple of God ; and that his prophetic vision glances as it were with a lightning flash, to the times of the Chaldean Invasion, and to the cessation of the *daily sacrifice* in the time of Antiochus Epiphanes (cp. *Dan.* viii. 11, 12. 2 *Macc.* v. 15 ; vi. 1, 2—6 ; x.

1—5), and to a similar calamity in the Roman siege (*Josephus*, B. J., vi. 2. 1) ; and the destruction of Jerusalem by the Romans, and even to the Antichristian persecution of the Christian Church in the last days. Events which, in the course of history, follow one another in a long train at wide intervals, are here brought together into a single scene. This is a characteristic of Joel's style. He, the divinely-inspired Prophet of the Lord, speaks with the attributes of Him Who inspired him, and with Whom "a thousand years are as one day." See below, ii. 18—20. With marvellous celerity the prophet passes from his own age to the Day of Doom — "Alas for the day ! for the day of the Lord is at hand." Cp. a similar transition in Isa. ii. 1—21, and *S. Jerome* here.

13. *Gird yourselves*] With sackcloth. See Jer. iv. 8, who adopts the language of Joel.

15. *Alas for the day ! for the day of the LORD is at hand*] Cp. Isa. xiii. 6. 9.

— *a destruction from the Almighty*] Words adopted by Isaiah, xiii. 6. God is called Almighty (*Shaddai*) four times by the Prophets ; here, and in that passage of Isaiah, and twice in Ezekiel, i. 24 ; x. 5. Joel's special mission was, to declare the Omnipotence of Jehovah the Lord God of Israel, the Judge of all the men and nations of the world.

Yea, ^zjoy and gladness from the house of our God ?

¹⁷ The † seed is rotten under their clods,

The garners are laid desolate,

The barns are broken down ;

For the corn is withered.

¹⁸ How do ^a the beasts groan ! the herds of cattle are perplexed,

Because they have no pasture ;

Yea, the flocks of sheep are made desolate.

¹⁹ O LORD, ^b to thee will I cry :

For ^c the fire hath devoured the || pastures of the wilderness,

And the flame hath burned all the trees of the field ;

²⁰ The beasts of the field ^d cry also unto thee :

For ^e the rivers of waters are dried up,

And the fire hath devoured the pastures of the wilderness.

II. ¹ ^a Blow ye the || trumpet in Zion,

And ^b sound an alarm in my holy mountain :

Let all the inhabitants of the land tremble :

For ^c the day of the LORD cometh, for *it is nigh at hand* ;

² ^d A day of darkness and of gloominess,

A day of clouds and of thick darkness,

As the morning spread upon the mountains :

^e A great people and a strong ;

^f There hath not been ever the like,

Neither shall be any more after it, *even* to the years † of many generations.

³ ^g A fire devoureth before them ;

And behind them a flame burneth :

The land *is* as ^h the garden of Eden before them,

Before
CHRIST
about
810.

^z See Deut. 12
6, 7, & 16. 11 ;
14, 15.
† Heb. *grains*.

^a Hos. 4. 3.

^b Ps. 50. 15.

^c Jer. 9. 10.

ch. 2. 3.

|| Or, *habitations*.

^d Job 38. 41.

Ps. 104. 21. &

145. 15.

^e 1 Kings 17. 7.

& 18. 5.

^a Jer. 4. 5.

ver. 15.

|| Or, *cornet*.

^b Num. 10. 5, 9.

^c ch. 1. 15.

Obad. 15.

Zeph. 1. 14, 15.

^d Amos 5. 18, 20.

^e ch. 1. 6.

ver. 5, 11, 25.

^f Exod. 10. 14.

† Heb. of *gene-
ration and gene-
ration*.

^g ch. 1. 19, 20.

^h Gen. 2. 8. &

13. 10.

Isa. 51. 3.

18. *How do the beasts groan!*] The sympathy of cattle with man in suffering, and even their punishment for his sin, as in the Flood, is a great mystery ; but the Hebrew Prophets, as Isa. xvi. 10 ; xxiv. 7. 11. Jer. xii. 4. Hos. iv. 3, and Joel here, the Prophet of Judgment, include the animal and the vegetable world in man's destiny, both for good and evil.

It is surely a solemn thought, that the sins of men and of nations are represented by Joel as adding to the groans of the brute creation, and as withering the fields, and blighting the shrubs and trees in the sylvan glades and noble forests of the natural world ; and it is also a cheering thought, that he also displays man's repentance as having a beneficent and exhilarating effect on the herds and flocks of the pasture, and as imparting fruitfulness to the earth, and adding freshness to the landscape, and brighter colours to the flowers of the field. See below, ii. 21—24.

Why this is so, we do not yet know, but we shall know hereafter. That it is so, no devout reader of the prophetic Books of Holy Scripture can doubt.

We have also the comfort of believing, that though the Earth suffers now from man's sin, yet it will afterwards rejoice with our redeemed and glorified humanity, and be restored in new beauty, through the merits of Christ, and through the faith and obedience of His saints. See below, ii. 21, and Rom. viii. 22, 23.

19. *O LORD, to thee will I cry*] This is the only remedy in our distress, to cry unto Thee, O JEHOVAH, the Lord God of Israel. On the Name JEHOVAH, or JAHVE, see *Pocock* here, p. 252, and *Pusey*, on Hosea xii. 5, and above, on Exod. vi. 3.

CH. II. 1. *Blow ye the trumpet in Zion, and sound an alarm in my holy mountain*] Here is another proof that the Prophet passes, from God's judicial visitation inflicted by an army of locusts on His people for their sins, to another and severer divine Judgment, executed by a hostile force of terrible invaders, who are His instruments in the work of divine retribution. A trumpet is not blown, and an alarm is not sounded, to

muster the people to ward off a swarm of locusts ; but these warnings are uttered to gather together the people to repel the force of the invader. See Num. x. 9. Jer. iv. 5. Hos. v. 8 ; viii. 1 ; and Amos iii. 6, where the same language is used, and where the word rendered *cry aloud*, is the same as here translated *sound an alarm*. There is good reason, therefore, in *S. Jerome's* remark here, While we read of locusts, let us think of invading armies—"Dum locustas legimus, Babylonios cogitemus ;" and so *S. Cyril* and *Theodoret*.

— *the day of the LORD cometh*] The judicial visitation of this army of locusts reveals in the background other judgments of God on Jerusalem and on the world. The Prophet sees behind it the armies of Babylon and Rome, and the legions of Angels, with Christ coming at the Great Day to judge all Nations. The imagery of those several successive judgments, is blended together in a grand prophetic picture, as is done in our Lord's prophecy on the Mount of Olives, concerning His Coming to judge the world with legions of Angels (see below, on Matt. xxiv. 3, p. 85) : so that it is not easy to discern which phenomena in the prophetic scenery belong to the one event, and which appertain to the other.

— *nigh at hand*] The Day of the Lord is ever at hand ; it is present already in the eye of Him to Whom a thousand years are as one day ; it comes to every man virtually at his death, which cannot be far distant ; and it is foreshadowed in every physical and national visitation. See Phil. iv. 5. 1 Pet. iv. 7 ; and on 2 Pet. iii. 3—8.

2. *There hath not been ever the like*] Words repeated from the sacred history of Joshua commanding the sunlight to stand still—a prophetic figure of the act of the Divine Joshua at the Day of Doom. See above, the notes on Joshua x. 12—14.

3. *before them*] Rather, *before it*, before the Day. The Day of the Lord, by a magnificent abstraction, is revealed to the eye of the Prophet as a terrible Army. He sees it in the locusts ; he sees it in the invading forces of Babylon ; he sees it in the legions of Rome coming against Jerusalem—as in some sublime Alpine scenery, one ridge and range of mountains rises above

Before
CHRIST
about
800.
i Zech. 7. 14.
k Rev. 9. 7.

l Rev. 9. 9.

m ver. 2.

n Jer. 8. 21.
Lam. 4. 8.
Nahum 2. 10.
† Heb. pot.

|| Or, dart.

o Jer. 9. 21.
p John 10. 1.

q Ps. 18. 7.

r Isa. 13. 10.
Ezek. 32. 7.
ver. 31.
ch. 3. 15.
Matt. 24. 29.
s Jer. 25. 30.
ch. 3. 16.
Amos 1. 2.
t ver. 25.
u Jer. 50. 34.
Rev. 18. 8.
x Jer. 50. 7.
Amos 5. 18.
Zeph. 1. 15.
y Num. 24. 23.
Mal. 3. 2.

- ⁱ And behind them a desolate wilderness;
Yea, and nothing shall escape them.
- ^{4 k} The appearance of them is as the appearance of horses;
And as horsemen, so shall they run.
- ^{5 l} Like the noise of chariots on the tops of mountains shall they leap,
Like the noise of a flame of fire that devoureth the stubble,
^m As a strong people set in battle array.
- ⁶ Before their face the people shall be much pained :
ⁿ All faces shall gather † blackness.
- ⁷ They shall run like mighty men ;
They shall climb the wall like men of war ;
And they shall march every one on his ways,
And they shall not break their ranks :
- ⁸ Neither shall one thrust another ;
They shall walk every one in his path :
And *when* they fall upon the || sword, they shall not be wounded.
- ⁹ They shall run to and fro in the city ;
They shall run upon the wall,
They shall climb up upon the houses ;
They shall ° enter in at the windows ^p like a thief.
- ^{10 q} The earth shall quake before them ;
The heavens shall tremble :
^r The sun and the moon shall be dark,
And the stars shall withdraw their shining :
- ^{11 s} And the LORD shall utter his voice before ^t his army :
For his camp is very great :
^u For *he* is strong that executeth his word :
For the * day of the LORD is great and very terrible ;
And ^y who can abide it ?
- ¹² Therefore also now, saith the LORD,

another, and some grand gigantic peak towers above them all—so, the figure of Christ, the universal King, Conqueror, and Judge, and His judicial Throne, rise behind and above all these successive stages of judicial visitations.

— *escape them*] Escape it.

4. *The appearance of them*] Its appearance. It is to be regretted that our Translation has these words in the plural number: in the original they are in the singular, and refer to the Day of the Lord. The grandeur of the prophetic picture consists mainly in the concentration of various phenomena of Nature and History, past and future, into one great whole, “the Day of the Lord.” Cp. r. 11.

— *of horses*] Locusts are often compared to horses by the Arabians (*Bochart*; *Pocock*, 261); and cp. Rev. ix. 7. “The shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle.”

5. *Like the noise of chariots*] A prophetic image anticipated from the Assyrian invasion of Judah. See Isa. xxxvii. 24, “By the multitude of my chariots am I come up to the height of the mountains, to the sides of Lebanon.”

6. *Before their face*] *Before its face*: the singular number. See on v. 4.

— *the people*] Rather, *peoples*, generally. All nations shall tremble at Christ’s Coming to Judgment.

— *All faces shall gather blackness*] Some render it, *all faces shall withdraw their beauty* (*Gesen.*, *Keil*); but the verb *kabāts*, here used, occurs more than 120 times in the Bible, and by Joel himself three times besides in this passage, e. g. ii. 16; iii. 2. 11, and always in the sense of *to gather, to collect*. Cp. Lam. iv. 8. Nah. ii. 10.

— *blackness*] The ancient Versions connect the word here used (*pārur*) with *pārur*, a pot, so called from a root signify-

ing *to boil* (*Gesen.* 665, 689), and regard it as meaning “*olla nigredinem*,” or “*fuliginem*.” Modern Lexicographers render it *brightness* (*Gesen.* 665; *Fuerst*, iii. 2), and translate the phrase, *all faces draw in their brightness*, and become pale.

But, as was before observed, the sense of the word rendered *gather* (*kabāts*), is not to withdraw so that a thing may be absent, but to collect so that it may be present. Cp. *Pocock*, 261; *Pusey*, p. 117.

8. *fall upon the sword*] Here is another proof that the Prophet is not speaking merely of locusts. Men do not go forth against locusts with sword and spear, any more than they sound a trumpet to muster an army to repel them (v. 1). But this prophetic imagery declares that the executioners of God’s judgments are irresistible.

9. *like a thief*] As our Lord Himself says, “Behold, I come as a thief” (Rev. iii. 3; xvi. 15); “The Day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night” (1 Thess. v. 2. 2 Pet. iii. 10). Cp. Matt. xxiv. 43. Luke xii. 39.

10. *before them*] Before it (in the singular number); i. e. the Day of the Lord.

11. *And the LORD shall utter his voice*] Rather, *And the LORD utters* (or, literally, *uttered*, in the perfect tense) *His voice*. The Prophet, in divine ecstasy, sees the judgment already present; he beholds the Day of the Lord; he hears the voice of the Archangel and the trump of God (1 Thess. iv. 16); the sun and the moon are dark, and the stars withdraw their shining. Compare our Lord’s words concerning His Second Advent (Matt. xxiv. 29. Mark xiii. 24, 25).

— *his camp*] His *machanēh*, the word used by Jacob to describe the host of Angels at Mahanaim (Gen. xxxii. 2).

12. *Therefore also now*] Rather, *yet even now*: it is not yet too late, but it soon will be.

- ² Turn ye *even* to me with all your heart,
And with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning :
¹³ And ^a rend your heart, and not ^b your garments,
And turn unto the LORD your God :
For he is ^c gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness,
And repenteth him of the evil.
¹⁴ ^d Who knoweth *if* he will return and repent,
And leave ^e a blessing behind him ;
Even ^f a meat offering and a drink offering unto the LORD your God ?
¹⁵ ^g Blow the trumpet in Zion,
^h Sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly :
¹⁶ Gather the people, ⁱ sanctify the congregation,
^k Assemble the elders, ^l gather the children, and those that suck the breasts :
^m Let the bridegroom go forth of his chamber,
And the bride out of her closet.
¹⁷ Let the priests, the ministers of the LORD, weep ⁿ between the porch and the altar,
And let them say, ^o Spare thy people, O LORD,
And give not thine heritage to reproach,
That the heathen should || rule over them :
^p Wherefore should they say among the people, Where *is* their God ?
¹⁸ Then will the LORD ^q be jealous for his land, ^r and pity his people.
¹⁹ Yea, the LORD will answer and say unto his people,
Behold, I will send you ^s corn, and wine, and oil,
And ye shall be satisfied therewith :
And I will no more make you a reproach among the heathen :
²⁰ But ^t I will remove far off from you ^u the northern army,
And will drive him into a land barren and desolate,
With his face ^x toward the east sea,
And his hinder part ^y toward the utmost sea,
And his stink shall come up, and his ill savour shall come up,

Before
CHRIST
about
800.

z Jer. 4. 1.
Hos. 12. 6. &
14. 1.
a Ps. 34. 18. &
51. 17.
b Gen. 37. 34.
2 Sam. 1. 11.
Job 1. 20.
c Exod. 34. 6.
Ps. 86. 5, 15.
Jonah 4. 2.
d Josh. 14. 12.
2 Sam. 12. 22.
2 Kings 19. 4.
Amos 5. 15.
Jonah 3. 9.
Zeph. 2. 3.
e Isa. 65. 8.
Hag. 2. 19.
f ch. 1. 9, 13.
g Num. 10. 3.
ver. 1.
h ch. 1. 14.
i Exod. 19. 10, 22.
k ch. 1. 14.
l 2 Chron. 20. 13.
m 1 Cor. 7. 5.

n Ezek. 8. 16.
Matt. 23. 35.

o Exod. 32. 11, 12.
Deut. 9. 26—29.

|| Or, use a byword
against them.

p Ps. 42. 10. &
79. 10. & 115. 2.
Micah 7. 10.
q Zech. 1. 14. &
8. 2.
r Deut. 32. 36.
Isa. 60. 10.
s See ch. 1. 10.
Mal. 3. 10, 11, 12.

t See Exod. 10. 19.
u Jer. 1. 14.

x Ezek. 47. 18.
Zech. 14. 8.
y Deut. 11. 24.

— *Turn ye even to me with all your heart*] This section, to r. 18, is appropriately appointed by the Church for the Epistle on the first of the Forty Days of Lent.

On this text see *Bp. Andrewes, Sermons, i. 356.*

13. *rend your heart*] Ps. li. 17. Ezek. xxxvi. 26, not only your garments. Cp. Hos. vi. 6.

14. *a meat offering*] Which had been taken away (i. 9. 13). Means of grace, the ministrations of the Word and Sacraments, are gifts of God, and proofs of His love, and will be vouchsafed in richer abundance as a reward to a penitent people.

15. *Blow the trumpet in Zion, sanctify a fast*] A remarkable expression. The true way of repelling our enemies, and averting the judgments which God sends by them, is by repentance. It is vain to blow the trumpet and sound an alarm to muster our armies (see v. 1), unless we obtain God's favour by repentance. The most effective trumpet is that which calls a Nation and a Church to wield its spiritual weapons of fasting and prayer in the Zion of the Church. The spiritual army of Christian congregations is the most powerful national defence.

16. *elders—children—bridegroom—bride*] Even they who were unfit to take part in a literal battle, or were exempt from going to war (Deut. xxiv. 5), must all form part of the spiritual army; and a very important work they perform in it. Even the people of Nineveh recognized this truth. See Jonah iii. 5—10; cp. Judith iv. 9—13. The prayers of aged men and women, and of babes and sucklings, though disparaged by this world, are very powerful with God. As *Tertullian* says (Apol. 39), "*Hæc vis Deo grata est.*" The Omnipotent allows Himself to be overcome by faith, and heaven itself is stormed by a siege of prayers.

17. *between the porch and the altar*] The brazen altar of

burnt-sacrifice. See above, 1 Kings vi. 3. 2 Chron. iii. 4; iv. 1; vii. 7; viii. 12.

— *That the heathen should rule over them*] Or, *scoff at them* (see margin), *saying what follows.* Here is another proof that the locusts mean a great deal more than a physical visitation. See the next verses.

19. *corn—wine—oil*] Here also Joel adopts the words of Hosea (ii. 22).

20. *I will remove far off from you the northern army*] The word "army" is not in the original, and would be better omitted. The promise is, "I will remove from you *the northern one*, or northman." Locusts did not come from the north to Palestine; and this word is doubtless used to show that the judgment here described is not a mere physical plague. Cp. *Pusey*, 99. 123. The word *north* (*tsáphón*) has an ominous sound. The north is, in Scripture, the quarter from which judicial visitations come (Jer. vi. 1; cp. above, on Lev. i. 11. Ps. xlviii. 2). This was realized to Israel and Judah in the invasions of Assyrians and Babylonians, and afterwards of the Romans from the north. Cp. Isa. xiv. 31; xli. 25. Jer. i. 13—15; vi. 22; xv. 12; xxv. 9; *vi.* 6. 10; l. 3. Ezek. xvi. 7.

— *cast sea*] The Dead Sea.

— *the utmost sea*] The hinder or western sea—the Mediterranean.

— *his stink shall come up*] The stench of the carcases of his army. This was signally verified in the destruction of the vast Assyrian army of Sennacherib before the walls of Jerusalem, in the Valley of Hinnom, or Tophet, the type of Hell, and in the deliverance of Jerusalem, in answer to the prayer of Hezekiah. See above, on Isa. xxx. 33; xxxiii. 14; xxxiv. 3; xxxvii. 36.

Before
CHRIST
about
800.
† Heb. *he hath
magnified to do*.

z ch. 1. 18, 20.
a Zech. 8. 12.
See ch. 1. 19.

b Isa. 41. 16.
& 61. 10.
Hab. 3. 18.
Zech. 10. 7.
|| Or, *a teacher of
righteousness*.
† Heb. *according
to righteousness*.
c Lev. 26. 4.
Deut. 11. 14. &
28. 12.
d James 5. 7.

e ch. 1. 4.

f ver. 11.

g Lev. 26. 5.
Ps. 22. 26.
See Lev. 26. 26.
Micah 6. 11.

h ch. 3. 17.
i Lev. 26. 11, 12.
Ezek. 37. 26,
27, 28.
k Isa. 45. 5, 21,
22.
Ezek. 39. 22, 28.
l Isa. 44. 3.
Ezek. 39. 29.
Acts 2. 17.
m Zech. 12. 10.
John 7. 39.
n Isa. 51. 13.

- Because † he hath done great things.
- 21 Fear not, O land; be glad and rejoice :
For the LORD will do great things.
- 22 Be not afraid, ² ye beasts of the field :
For ^a the pastures of the wilderness do spring,
For the tree beareth her fruit, the fig tree and the vine do yield their strength.
- 23 Be glad then, ye children of Zion, and ^b rejoice in the LORD your God :
For he hath given you || the former rain † moderately, and he ^c will cause to
come down for you ^d the rain, the former rain, and the latter rain in the
first month.
- 24 And the floors shall be full of wheat,
And the fats shall overflow with wine and oil.
- 25 And I will restore to you the years ^e that the locust hath eaten, the canker-
worm, and the caterpillar, and the palmerworm, ^f my great army which
I sent among you.
- 26 And ye shall ^g eat in plenty, and be satisfied, and praise the name of the
LORD your God, that hath dealt wondrously with you :
And my people shall never be ashamed.
- 27 ^h And ye shall know that I *am* ⁱ in the midst of Israel,
And *that* ^k I *am* the LORD your God, and none else :
And my people shall never be ashamed.
- 28 ^l And it shall come to pass afterward, *that* I ^m will pour out my spirit
upon *all* flesh ; ⁿ and your sons and ^o your daughters shall prophesy, your

That destruction was a prophetic figure of the destruction of all the enemies of Christ and of His Church in the latter days. See above, on Isa. lxvii. 21.

— *Because he hath done great things*] Rather, as in the margin, *he hath magnified to do great things*. Such is the pride and presumption of the Sennacheribs of this world. They magnify themselves against God Himself. Cp. Jer. xlviii. 26. 42. Lam. i. 9. Dan. viii. 8—11. 25; xi. 36. Obad. 12. Zeph. ii. 8, 10, in all which passages the same word is used. But their haughtiness will be laid low: and the Lord will do great things and be magnified upon them.

21. *Fear not, O land*] Rather, *Fear not, O earth*. The Prophet had declared that the Earth and the animal and vegetable kingdoms are involved in suffering for man's sin; and he now reveals the joyful truth, that they will be renewed by God's mercy, on man's repentance and faith, which are made available by the Incarnation, Death, and Resurrection of Christ. Cp. Isa. lxx. 16, and the notes there. Amos ix. 13; and see the Apostolic development of this gracious assurance in Rom. viii. 19—22. 2 Pet. iii. 12, 13. Rev. xxi. 1.

THE TEACHER WHO WILL LEAD UNTO RIGHTEOUSNESS.

23. *he hath given you the former rain moderately*] Or rather, *he hath given you the Teacher for righteousness*. See margin and *Vulg.* and *Targum*. The word here rendered *former rain*, is, *moreh* (the *hiphil* participle of *yārāh*, to cast, to shoot, to lay foundations, to direct, to prescribe, whence *thōrah*, the Law); it is very rare in the sense of *early rain*, the word for which is *yōreh*. Hengstenberg denies that it is ever correctly rendered *rain*. See, however, the last clause of this verse. Ps. lxxxiv. 6, is disputable. But this word is often found in the sense of *teacher*, as 2 Kings xvii. 28. 2 Chron. xv. 3. Prov. v. 13. Isa. ix. 15; xxx. 10. Hab. ii. 18; and so *Pagnini*, *Munster*, *Castalio*, *Vatablus*; and so *Rabbi Saphet*, cited by *Aben Ezra*, and other Jewish Expositors; and *Abarincl* says, "This is King Messiah;" and so most Jewish Expositors (*Pocock*, 293).

Joel seems to refer here to the words of Moses (Deut. xxxii. 2), "My doctrine shall drop as the rain."

S. Jerome here says, "Vos quoque, quos justè post penitentiam voco filios Sion et Ecclesiæ, latamini et gaudete, quia dedit vobis Deus Pater *Doctorem justitiæ*, et descendere fecit pluvias temporaneas atque serotinas; potest pluvia temporanea et serotina Vetus et Novum accipi Testamentum." Compare

Hengstenberg and *Keil*, who adopt the rendering, *Teacher*; and *Dr. Pusey* says, "It seems most probable that the Prophet prefixes to all the other promises that first, all-containing promise, of the Coming of Christ."

The promise is, that the Lord will send *the Teacher*, who will bring them *unto righteousness*, that is, not only guide them to it by His precepts and example, but make them partakers of righteousness, and give them justification by faith and mystical incorporation in Himself, Who is "the LORD our RIGHTEOUSNESS" (Jer. xxiii. 6). This has been declared by Hosea (x. 12), "Sow to yourselves in *righteousness*, reap in mercy, break up your fallow ground, for it is time to seek the Lord till He come and *rain righteousness* upon you." And thus the Hebrew Prophets prepare the way for the teaching of St. Paul (Rom. iii. 21—26), and this is confirmed by what follows, namely, by the promise of the sending of the Holy Ghost (v. 28). Justification by Christ must precede, in order that Sanctification by the Holy Spirit may follow. The sprinkling of Christ's Blood at the Passover must precede the sprinkling of the dews of the Spirit at Pentecost.

— *in the first month*] Or, *at the beginning*; or, *first of all*.

25. *cankerworm—caterpillar—palmerworm*] See i. 4.

27. *in the midst of Israel*] Though Israel is dispersed throughout the world, yet wherever they may be, the Lord will be "in the midst" of them, when they turn to Christ and become members of His Universal Church. They will find Zion there. Here, also, Joel adopts the words of his predecessor Hosea. See Hos. xi. 9.

28. *it shall come to pass afterward*] After the sending of the Teacher of righteousness. See v. 23.

THE PROMISE OF THE HOLY GHOST.

28—32. *I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh—shall call*] After the promise of the gift of the TEACHER Who will lead Israel unto righteousness, and Whose Coming will be to Israel an indwelling of the Lord JEROMEAN in the midst of them, the Prophet proceeds to speak of the Coming of the Holy Ghost, consequent on the Incarnation, Death, Resurrection, and Ascension of Christ. That this prophecy began to be fulfilled on the Day of Pentecost by the outpouring of the Holy Ghost at Jerusalem, we know from the Holy Spirit, speaking by St. Peter in Acts ii. 16—18, where the sacred writer adopts the words of the *Septuagint* here. The Spirit was poured upon *all flesh*, because "the Word was made flesh" (John i. 14), and of Him the

old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: ²⁹ And also upon ^p the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit. ³⁰ And ^q I will shew wonders in the heavens and in the earth, blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke.

³¹ ^r The sun shall be turned into darkness,

And the moon into blood,

^s Before the great and the terrible day of the LORD come.

³² And it shall come to pass, *that* ^t whosoever shall call on the name of the LORD shall be delivered:

For ^u in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance,

As the LORD hath said,

And in ^x the remnant whom the LORD shall call.

III. ¹ For, behold, ^a in those days, and in that time, when I shall bring again the captivity of Judah and Jerusalem, ² ^b I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into ^c the valley of Jehoshaphat, and ^d will plead with

Before
CHRIST
about
800.

p 1 Cor. 12. 13.
Gal. 3. 28.
Col. 3. 11.
q Matt. 24. 29.
Mark 13. 24.
Luke 21. 11, 25.
r Isa. 13. 9, 10.
ch. 3. 1, 15.
ver. 10.
Matt. 24. 29.
Mark 13. 24.
Luke 21. 27.
Rev. 6. 12.
s Mal. 4. 5.
t Rom. 10. 13.

u Isa. 46. 13. &
59. 20.
Obad. 17.
Rom. 11. 26.
x Isa. 11. 11, 16.
Jer. 31. 7.
Micah 4. 7. &
5. 3, 7, 8.
Rom. 9. 27. &
11. 5, 7.
a Jer. 30. 3.
Ezek. 38. 14.
b Zech. 14. 2.
3, 4.

c 2 Chron. 20. 26. ver. 12. d Isa. 66. 16. Ezek. 33. 22.

Baptist said, "He shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire" (Matt. iii. 11). Cp. Acts i. 5.

The original, in v. 29, has, upon the *menservants* and the *maidervants*. This is paraphrased by the *Septuagint* into, upon my *manservants* and upon *maidervants*; and by St. Peter into, on my *servants* and on my *handmaidens*, implying that not only will the Spirit be poured out upon all flesh (i. e. Gentiles as well as Jews; see Isa. xi. 15. Acts ii. 39, "and all that are afar off;" cp. *Pocock*, 303), but that the humblest members of society, male and female slaves (cp. 1 Cor. vii. 21), will become God's servants in Christ by the unction of the Holy Ghost. St. Peter adds (Acts ii. 18), and they shall prophesy, which is not in the original—a cheering assurance, that even from the once-enslaved tribes of Africa, and from among the children of Ham, will be raised up Preachers of Christ.

The word *pillars* (like palm-trees, *Pocock*, 308) of smoke—probably referring to the pillar of cloud in the wilderness,—is paraphrased by the *Septuagint* and St. Peter into "vapour of smoke;" the allusion in the original (and in Cant. iii. 6, where see note) not being intelligible to non-Hebrew readers.

31. *The sun shall be turned into darkness*] In a certain sense, these prodigies were fulfilled in the Coming of Christ to punish Jerusalem, at the siege and capture of that city by the Romans. See *Joseph. B. J.* iv. 4. 5, and vi. 5. 3; and below, on Acts ii. 19. Cp. on Matt. xxiv. 6, 7, 29.

The Hebrew Rabbis suppose that these phenomena will be visible in the great battle of God's Church with the Powers of Gog and Magog (see *Pocock*, 310), that is, in the great conflict of the latter days. See above, on Ezek. xxxviii., xxxix.

But their full accomplishment is reserved for His Personal Advent at the Great Day. Cp. Matt. xxiv. 29. Luke xxi. 25. *Tertullian*, *Chrysostom*, *Theodoret*. Joel, as is usual with him, passes with a rapid flight from the one event to the other. There is a similar comprehensiveness in the Apocalypse (xiv. 14—20).

After the promise of Christ's Coming, and of the gift of the Holy Ghost, the Prophet proceeds to describe the awful phenomena of the Universal Judgment; for whoever despises the Gospel of Christ, and grieves the Holy Ghost, will feel the terrors of that dreadful Day (*A Lapid*).

— *terrible day*] *The Sept.*, and thence St. Peter (Acts ii. 20), call it "notable day." It is probable that the *Sept.* substituted *nireah* (from *raah*, to see) for *norah* (from *yara*, to fear).

32. *whosoever shall call on the name of the LORD shall be delivered*] In the midst of this vision of Judgment there is Love. There is an universal Judgment to come; and there is an universal offer of Mercy to all who flee to Christ for Salvation; and this Salvation, which first began to be preached by the Apostles at Jerusalem, is freely offered to all in the spiritual Sion of His Church.

— *deliverance*] Rather, a remnant delivered, or escaping (Heb. *peleytakh*). See *Sept.*, and cp. Isa. iv. 2; x. 20; xxxvii. 31, 32. Jer. i. 29. Ezek. xiv. 22; above, v. 3, and Obad. 14.

This word is exactly represented by the *ωσθμενοι* in the Acts of the Apostles. The words in Acts ii. 47, "those who should be saved," or, rather, "those who were escaping," refer to this passage of Joel.

— *as the LORD hath said*] Some suppose, said by Obadiah,

17. 21; but the opinion is more probable, that Joel here claims divine inspiration for himself, and characterizes his own words as words of God. Obadiah followed Joel. See on Obad. 10.

RESTORATION IN CHRIST.

CH. III. 1. *in those days—I shall bring again the captivity*] After the preaching of CHRIST, the Teacher for righteousness (ii. 23), and after the mission of the HOLY SPIRIT poured out upon all nations (ii. 25), I will turn the captivity (like a stream thrown back in its course; see Ps. cxxvi. 4; cp. Hos. vi. 11) of Judah and Jerusalem, and will bring them back to their home in Christ and His Church. Cp. above, on Ezek. xxxv.; note at the end of the chapter, pp. 238, 239.

Yet further, in a larger sense, *Judah* and *Jerusalem* comprehend and include Israel also. Those words not only denote that Nation according to the flesh, but include all the True Israel of God; all who are of the faith of Abraham, though not of his seed; all true believers, of what nation soever; all members of that heavenly new Jerusalem (Heb. xii. 22. Rev. iii. 12; xxi. 2), the Church of Christ, of which Judah and Jerusalem of old were an image and a type. Many of these may now be said to be strangers, pilgrims, and captives; but the promise is also to them. Cp. *Pocock*, 319.

THE VALLEY OF JEHOSEPHAT.

2. *I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat*] The restoration of Israel to God in Christ and His Church, will be followed by a judicial visitation of God on all hostile powers, and on all forms of Anti-Christianism.

This is described here in prophetic language as the bringing them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat. They will be brought down from the lofty mountains of their arrogance, pride, and presumption, into a lowly valley, the valley of Jehoshaphat, which means, judgment of the Lord. Cp. v. 12, "Let the heathen come up" (or, let them rise up in insurrection against God, and come) "to the valley of Jehoshaphat, for there will I sit to judge the heathen round about."

It has been supposed by some (since the days of *Eusebius* and *Jerome*) that the Valley of Jehoshaphat had a local existence on the east side of Jerusalem, in the deep ravine more commonly called Kidron or Kedron, between the city and the Mount of Olives; and this name, since the fourth century of the Christian era, has been applied to that valley. *Mr. Grove* (Bib. Diet. i. 951) well observes, that "at what period the name was first applied to that spot is not known: there is no trace of it in the Bible or Josephus." And there is no reason to believe that the appellation Valley of Jehoshaphat was known to the ancient inhabitants of Jerusalem as a proper name, designating the Valley of Kedron, or any other in the neighbourhood of their city.

It is probable that the Valley of Kedron, as well as of Hinnom, was the scene of the great destruction of the immense Assyrian host of Sennacherib—a destruction which, as we have seen (on Isa. lvi. 24. Jer. xxxi. 39; i. 21), was regarded by the Prophets as figurative of the future overthrow and extinction of God's enemies; and perhaps this circumstance

Before
CHRIST
about
800.
e Obad. 11.
Nahum 3. 10.

f Amos 1. 6, 9.
g Ezek. 25. 15, 16, 17.

† Heb. *desirable*,
Dan. 11. 38.
† Heb. *the sons*
of the Grecians.

h Isa. 43. 5, 6, &
49. 12.
Jer. 23. 8.

i Ezek. 23. 42.
k Jer. 6. 20.
l See Isa. 8, 9, 10.
Jer. 46. 3, 4.
Ezek. 38. 7.
† Heb. *Sanctify*.

m See Isa. 2. 4.
Micah 4. 3.

|| Or, *scythes*.

n Zech. 12. 8.

o ver. 2.

them there for my people and for my heritage Israel, whom they have scattered among the nations, and parted my land. ³ And they have 'cast lots for my people; and have given a boy for an harlot, and sold a girl for wine, that they might drink.

⁴ Yea, and what have ye to do with me, 'O Tyre, and Zidon, and all the coasts of Palestine? ⁵ will ye render me a recompence? and if ye recompense me, swiftly and speedily will I return your recompence upon your own head;

⁵ Because ye have taken my silver and my gold, and have carried into your temples my goodly † pleasant things: ⁶ The children also of Judah and the children of Jerusalem have ye sold unto † the Grecians, that ye might remove them far from their border.

⁷ Behold, ^b I will raise them out of the place whither ye have sold them, and will return your recompence upon your own head: ⁸ And I will sell your sons and your daughters into the hand of the children of Judah, and they shall sell them to the ⁱ Sabeans, to a people ^k far off: for the Lord hath spoken it.

⁹ ¹ Proclaim ye this among the Gentiles;

† Prepare war, wake up the mighty men,
Let all the men of war draw near; let them come up:

¹⁰ ^m Beat your plowshares into swords,

And your || pruninghooks into spears:

ⁿ Let the weak say, I am strong.

¹¹ ^o Assemble yourselves, and come, all ye heathen,

may have connected the name *Valley of Jehoshaphat* with them. There may have been this historical basis for the appellation. Joel may be foretelling here the destruction of Sennacherib's army, as a typical foreshadowing of the future overthrow of all the enemies of God and His spiritual Sion.

This name, *Valley of Jehoshaphat* (which does not occur anywhere else in the Holy Scriptures), seems to be formed by Joel, by a grand process of abstraction and generalization familiar to Hebrew poetry (like the name *Valley of decision*, or of *cutting to pieces*, in v. 14), as a symbolical representative of Divine Judgment wherever executed, and may be compared to the word *Armageddon* (i. e. *Mount of cutting to pieces*) in the Apocalypse. See below, on Rev. xvi. 13—16. We have seen many similar examples of this process, in the Song of Solomon, and in Jeremiah and Ezekiel. See above, *Introd.* to Canticles, p. 135; and on Jer. xxxi. 39; i. 21. Ezek. xxiii. 23. This has been already observed by the Hebrew Rabbis, as *David Kimchi* here, "Nominatur *vallis Josaphat* de nomine *judicii Dei*," and *S. Jerome*, "Omnis, qui judicatur propter peccata sua, in *valle positus est*, quæ vocatur *Josaphat*, i. e. *Dei judicium*." *Munster* (on v. 19) says, "Joel here clearly shows that the *Valley of Jehoshaphat* is not limited to any one place; but wheresoever God executes judgment on the persecutors of His Church, there is a *Valley of Jehoshaphat*." Compare *Pocock*, 337.

In this view, this prophecy of Joel may be compared with the larger prophecy of Ezekiel, concerning the gathering together of infidel Powers in the latter days, against Christ and His Church, and their full and final discomfiture. See above, on Ezek. xxxviii., xxxix. "Nos" (says *S. Jerome*) "hæc juxta tropologiam eos qui contra Ecclesiam dimicant, et qui sub Anti-Christo adversus sanctos Domini pugnaturi sunt, accipere possumus; qui idcirco congregantur, ut pereant."

Joel's prophecies are like cartoons, which were afterwards enlarged and filled up in the grand pictures of Ezekiel. Cp. Ezek. xxiv. to the end, with Joel. They close with the same cheering assurance of God's perpetual presence with His Church; and what has been said in the notes on those prophecies above, may serve as a commentary here.

— *they have scattered among the nations*] As the Assyrians did, and afterwards the Chaldeans and Romans. Joel foresees the dispersion of Israel and Judah.

3. *they have cast lots*] As the Assyrians did (Nah. iii. 10). Cp. Obad. 11.

— *have given a boy for an harlot*] They have sold a Hebrew boy to a harlot for her hire, and a Hebrew girl for a night's

revelry. This was done by Assyrians, Chaldees, and still more by the Romans. *Josephus* describes (B. J. vi. 2. 9) how Titus, the conqueror of Jerusalem, disposed of 97,000 Jewish captives. Some were executed; some sold as slaves; some reserved to fight in the arena with wild beasts; others to be led in the triumphal procession to the Capitol. In the times of the Jewish wars with Antiochus Epiphanes, a thousand slave-dealers followed the Syrian army, and carried chains with them for Jewish prisoners (1 Macc. iii. 41. 2 Macc. viii. 11. 25. *Joseph. Ant.* xii. 7. 3).

4. *what have ye to do with me*] How have I wronged you, O ye Philistines, Tyrians, Sidonians, that ye should inflict such injuries on My People? *Will ye render Me a recompence?* Have I done you any harm, that ye should seek to retaliate? Woe to you, if ye thus strive with Me. I have not injured you, but ye have spoiled Me.

The Philistines, Tyrians, and Sidonians are symbolical representatives of all those classes of persons who sacrilegiously rob the Church of God, and who make merchandise of her people, for their own aggrandizement or gratification. See *A Lapidæ* here.

5. *ye have taken my silver and my gold*] In the time of Jehoram, son of Jehoshaphat, about B.C. 887. See 2 Chron. xxi. 16, 17.

6. *Grecians*] Heb. *Yevânim* (Gen. x. 2. 4. 1 Chron. i. 5. 7. Isa. lxvi. 19. Ezek. xxvii. 13. Dan. viii. 21; x. 20; xi. 2. Zech. ix. 13).

8. *I will sell your sons—into the hand of the children of Judah*] Probably on the defeat of the Philistines by Uzziah (2 Chron. xxvi. 6, 7), and by Hezekiah (2 Kings xviii. 8). See on Isa. xiv. 28, 29. 31. Perhaps there may be also a prophetic reference to the victories of the Maccabees.

This prophecy (says *S. Jerome*) is to be understood not only in a literal sense, but in a spiritual. The Prophet is foretelling the triumphs of the Israel of God—the Christian Church—which will overcome the heathen Nations, by the weapons of the Gospel, and will deliver them into the hands of the *children of Judah*, that is, of true believers, in order to be taught and guided by them in the faith of Christ. Compare note above, on Ps. cxlix. 7—9.

— *Sabeans*] See Job i. 15. Ezek. xxvii. 22.

9. *Prepare war*] Literally, *Sanctify a war*; by God's command, for the vindication of His glory. See above, on Jer. vi. 4.

10. *Beat your plowshares into swords*] The reverse of what is done in times of peace (Isa. ii. 4. Mic. iv. 3).

11. *Assemble yourselves*] Or, *Hasten* (*Gesen*, 616; *Keil*).

- And gather yourselves together round about :
 Thither || cause ^p thy mighty ones to come down, O LORD.
- 12 Let the heathen be wakened, ^q and come up to the valley of Jehoshaphat :
 For there will I sit to ^r judge, all the heathen round about.
- 13 ^s Put ye in the sickle, for ^t the harvest is ripe :
 Come, get you down ; for the ^u press is full, the fats overflow ;
 For their wickedness is great ;
- 14 Multitudes, multitudes in ^x the valley of || decision :
 For ^y the day of the LORD is near in the valley of decision ;
- 15 The ^z sun and the moon shall be darkened,
 And the stars shall withdraw their shining ;
- 16 The LORD also shall ^a roar out of Zion,
 And utter his voice from Jerusalem ;
 And ^b the heavens and the earth shall shake :
^c But the LORD *will be* the ^d hope of his people,
 And the strength of the children of Israel.
- 17 So ^e shall ye know that I *am* the LORD your God
 Dwelling in Zion, ^f my holy mountain :
 Then shall Jerusalem be ^g holy,
 And there shall no ^h strangers pass through her any more.
- 18 And it shall come to pass in that day,
 That the mountains shall ⁱ drop down new wine,

Before
CHRIST
about
800.

|| Or, the LORD
shall bring down,
p Ps. 103. 20.
Isa. 13. 3.
q ver. 2.
r Ps. 96. 13. &
98. 9. & 110. 6.
Isa. 2. 4. & 3. 13.
Micah 4. 3.
s Matt. 13. 39.
Rev. 14. 15, 18.
t Jer. 51. 53.
Hos. 6. 11.
u Isa. 63. 3.
Lam. 1. 15.
Rev. 14. 19, 20.
x ver. 2.
|| Or, concision,
or, threshing.
y ch. 2. 1.
z ch. 2. 10, 31.
a Jer. 25. 30.
ch. 2. 11.
Amos 1. 2.

b Hag. 2. 6.
c Isa. 51. 5. 6.
† Heb. place of
repair, or,
harbour.

d ch. 2. 27.
e Dan. 11. 45.
Obad. 16.
Zech. 8. 3.
† Heb. holiness.

f Isa. 35. 8. &
52. 1.
Nahum 1. 15.
Zech. 14. 21.
Rev. 21. 27.
g Amos 9. 13.

THE WORLD'S HARVEST AND VINTAGE.

13. *Put ye in the sickle—the press is full!* These are the words of Christ, the Lord and Judge of all, to “the reapers,” “the Angels.” See Matt. xiii. 30—39 (*S. Jerome*).

THE FUTURE UNIVERSAL JUDGMENT.

Here are two metaphors, both of them symbolical of Judgment—the Harvest and the Wine-press. See below, on Rev. xiv. 14—20, where the same imagery is used. Christ is revealed as the principal Agent in these judicial visitations of the whole world. See Matt. xiii. 30. 39, and Rev. xix. 15, “He treadeth the wine-press of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.”

In this prophetic description, God's judgments against the Nations, especially against the enemies of His People, which in the world's history may occupy a long period of time, are brought together and concentrated in one focus. They are comprehended in one great Harvest, in one great Vintage, the Harvest and Vintage of the GREAT DAY, to which they were preparatory, and of which they form a part, in the Eye of God, Who sees all things at one view, and in the eye of the Prophet, who is inspired by Him.

—*get you down!* Rather, *Tread ye*, trample under your feet, the ripe grapes of the nations in the wine-press of judgment.

14. *Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision!* Or, *in the valley of cutting to pieces*, like sheaves crushed on the threshing-floor by the sharp-toothed instrument which was formed with revolving cylinders, and by which they were threshed.

The *Valley of Jehoshaphat*, or Judgment of God (see v. 2), is the World's threshing-floor; and rebellious men and nations are compared to sheaves that have been reaped in the World's harvest, and are cast on the floor to be threshed. As *Mercer* well says, “*Vallis decisionis est ubicumque Dominus impios Ecclesie persecutores concidit.*” However numerous they may be in multitude, however furious the uproar they may make in their bold and blasphemous insurrection, raging against God (Ps. ii. 1, 2), yet He will gather them all together into the threshing-floor of His judgment, and cast them down prostrate there. Both ideas, namely of number and noise, are joined in the word *hambûim* used here, and rendered *multitudes*. See *Gesen.* 227. Cp. Judges iv. 7. 1 Sam. iv. 14; xiv. 19. Isa. xiii. 4; xvii. 12. Ezek. xxxi. 18; xxxix. 11, 15, “Gog and all his multitude,” and the word *Hamon-Gog* used there, which connects that passage with the present, referring to the same great event. The vast aggregate of surging and tumultuous

multitudes will be mown down in the day of the World's harvest, and will be thrown into the Divine threshing-floor, with the same ease as that with which the reaper reaps a field, and flings the sheaves down on the floor (Mic. iv. 12) to be crushed by the sharp-toothed instrument (Hebr. *chârûts*). Cp. Isa. xxviii. 27; xli. 15, and below, on Amos i. 3; and note above, on Prov. xx. 26, “A wise king,” especially the Wise King, Which is Christ the Judge of all, “scattereth the wicked, and bringeth the wheel over them,” by which they are threshed. See also Isa. xxi. 10. Jer. li. 33. Mic. iv. 13, where the same metaphor is used; and *Jahn*, *Archæol. Bibl.* § 64; and *Pocock*, 342, 343.

In the Apocalypse (as before observed) the word *Armageddon* (lit. *mountain of cutting*; see below, on Rev. xvi. 16) expresses the same truth. That prophecy speaks of a time when the enemies of Christ and His Church will be gathered together in a great conflict; the issue of which will be that they will be routed and cut to pieces.

16. *The LORD also shall roar out of Zion!* As a lion from his lair. Here, also, Joel again takes up the language of Hosea (Hos. v. 14). Cp. Amos iii. 4. Zion and Jerusalem here are not the city of the earthly Palestine, but the sanctified City of the Living God, which, taking its origin from Calvary, and from the place where the Holy Spirit came down at Pentecost, has become the Universal Church, and enfolds the World. See above, on Isa. ii. 2, 3, and on Ezek. xxxv; the note at the end of the chapter.

Christ, the Lion of the Tribe of Judah, now roars from Zion. He preaches aloud with a voice of power in His Church; and the Day is coming, when He will roar with a louder voice to destroy His enemies. He will deliver a fearful sentence of judgment, like the roaring of a lion, upon the ungodly, out of the Zion of the Church glorified “Depart from Me: ye cursed, into everlasting fire” (Matt. xxv. 41). *Bp. Hall*, *Pocock*, *Diodati*.

THE GLORY OF THE CHURCH.

17. *Then shall Jerusalem be holy, and there shall no strangers pass through her any more!* Such will be the condition of the Church glorified and triumphant. She will then be the pure, holy Bride, arrayed in fair linen clean and white (Rev. xix. 8. 14; xxi. 2), and without spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing (Eph. v. 25—27). All things that offend will have been rooted out of her field (Matt. xiii. 41).

18. *The mountains shall drop down new wine!* Compare Amos ix. 13; Zech. xiv. 6; and especially Ezek. xlvii. 1—12, describing the happy condition of the Church of Christ, under the gracious

Before
CHRIST
about
800.

h Isa. 30. 25.
† Heb. go.
i Ps. 46. 4.
Ezek. 47. 1.
Zech. 14. 8.
Rev. 22. 1.
k Num. 25. 1.
l Isa. 19. 1. &c.
m Jer. 49. 17.
Ezek. 25. 12. 13.
Amos 1. 11.
Ovad. 10.

|| Or, abide.
n Amos 9. 15.

o Isa. 4. 4.
p Ezek. 43. 35.
q Jer. 17.
Rev. 21. 3.
|| Or, even I the LORD that dwelleth in Zion.

And the hills shall flow with milk,

^b And all the rivers of Judah shall [†] flow with waters,

And ⁱ a fountain shall come forth of the house of the LORD,

And shall water ^k the valley of Shittim.

¹⁹ ^l Egypt shall be a desolation,

And ^m Edom shall be a desolate wilderness,

For the violence *against* the children of Judah,

Because they have shed innocent blood in their land.

²⁰ But Judah shall || dwell ⁿ for ever,

And Jerusalem from generation to generation ;

²¹ For I will ^o cleanse their blood *that* I have not cleansed :

^p || For the LORD dwelleth in Zion.

influence of the Holy Spirit, and of the Gospel of Christ, in similar imagery derived from the natural world.

THE FOUNTAIN FROM THE LORD'S HOUSE.

— *a fountain shall come forth of the house of the LORD, and shall water the valley of Shittim*] The fountain from the house of the Lord in Zion will flow down even to the land of Moab, and the barren valley of *Shittim*, far off from Jerusalem, once the scene of the sin of Israel's lust and idolatry (see Num. xxv.), but now to become the garden of the Lord. These words are not to be understood in a literal and carnal sense. No fountain ever did spring or could spring from the temple, such as to flow down into the plain of Moab (*A Lapid*). But the Prophet takes occasion from the existence of a real spring of water under the temple, to spiritualize that circumstance, and to apply it in a figurative sense.

This image is expanded by Zechariah (xiv. 8), and much more by Ezekiel, who describes the living waters of the Gospel, issuing forth from the Lord's house, and making beautiful trees to flourish on its bank, and flowing down even into the Dead Sea of human corruption, and cleansing and making it teem with life. See above, Ezek. xlvii. 1—12, and the RETROSPECT to it, pp. 286, 287, which may serve for a comment here.

In the words of *S. Jerome*, slightly modified and paraphrased, "a fountain will flow forth from the house of the Lord, which is the Church of Christ. It is described by Zechariah and Ezekiel at the close of their prophecies. Its beneficent purpose will be, to change our barren land of *Shittim* (or *acacias*), which yields only thorns and briars, into fallow land of the Lord; and to refresh our dry places with copious streams; so that, instead of brambles, we may yield flowers; and in order that in the same Moab, where Israel was guilty of harlotry, and was initiated into the foul orgies of *Baal-peor*, the lilies of chastity and roses of virgin modesty may flourish, and diffuse a sweet perfume."

Christ Himself, Who pours forth the living waters of the Spirit in His Word and Sacraments ministered in His Church, is ever irrigating the dry and barren *Shittims* of this world's wilderness, once defiled by Moabitish lusts and idolatries, and is changing them into a holy Eden, a spiritual Paradise.

¹⁹ *Egypt—and Edom*] Types of God's Enemies: Egypt, the foreign, open foe; Edom, connected with Israel by origin, the

treacherous friend of the Church of God. See *Prelim. Note* to Isa. xlii., xxxiv., lxiii., and to Jer. xlv. i.; xlix. 7. Ezek. xxv. 14; xxix. 2.

²⁰ *Judah shall dwell for ever*] From these words it is evident that the Prophet is *not* speaking of the *earthly Jerusalem* (as the Jews and Judaizers imagine), but of the *Spiritual Zion*, the Church of God, which will never be destroyed on earth (Matt. xvi. 18), and with which Christ will ever be present (Matt. xxviii. 20), and which will exist for ever in heaven (*A Lapid*). See also on v. 17.

²¹ *I will cleanse their blood that I have not cleansed*] I will wipe off the score of bloodguiltiness that I have not wiped off. In this world God seems for a time to leave sinners to themselves, and to let them escape with impunity. But the time is coming, when all unrepented sins of persons and nations, however they may seem to have escaped His notice, will be visited with full retribution. Cp. Ps. lviii. 10, 11, and Rev. vi. 10.

Or the sense may be (as *S. Jerome* suggests), In the Church of God I will cleanse the blood that I have not cleansed under the Levitical Law by the sacrifices offered in the Tabernacle and the Temple. Cp. Isa. iv. 4, "When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the Spirit of judgment and by the Spirit of burning." By means of "*the fountain opened for sin and uncleanness in Zion*," that is, by the Blood of Jesus Christ the Son of God, *which cleanseth from all sin* (1 John i. 7. Cp. Rev. i. 5; vii. 14), I will wash those clean who could not be washed by the ceremonial washings or bloodsheddings of the Levitical Law, or by any other means. This shall be done in the Church of God; for *the Lord dwelleth in Zion*.

— *the Lord dwelleth in Zion*] The Prophet had promised that *Judah should dwell* (literally *sit, abide, or remain*) *for ever* (v. 20). That is, the elect of God shall dwell for ever in His holy habitation (*Bp. Hall*); and the reason is, because the Lord dwelleth, literally *tabernacleth, in Zion* (*Sept.*). Cp. Rev. vii. 15; xxi. 3 where the same image is used.

The prophecies of Ezekiel are summed up with the same assurance (given in their final words, *Jehovah-shammah*) of the Lord's perpetual presence with His Church. "Lo! I am with you alway," says the Lord of all, "even unto the end of the world" (Matt. xxviii. 20).

A M O S.

I. ¹ THE words of Amos, who was among the herdmen of ^b Tekoa, which he saw concerning Israel ^c in the days of Uzziah king of Judah, and in the days of ^d Jeroboam the son of Joash king of Israel, two years before the ^e earthquake.

Before
CHRIST
787.
a ch. 7. 14.
b 2 Sam. 14. 2.
2 Chron. 20. 20.
c Hos. 1. 1.
d ch. 7. 10.
e Zech. 14. 5.
f Jer. 25. 30.
Joel 3. 16.

² And he said, The LORD will ^f roar from Zion,

And utter his voice from Jerusalem ;

And the habitations of the shepherds shall mourn,

And the top of ^g Carmel shall wither.

g 1 Sam. 25. 2.
Isa. 33. 9.

CH. I.] The prophecies of AMOS are a sequel to those of Joel. Joel, whose name signifies "the Lord (Jehovah) is God," had displayed in one comprehensive view the judgments of God brought together and concentrated in a grand climax, "the Day of the Lord." He had foreshown the destruction of all the Lord's enemies; he had also displayed His Divine Supremacy, and His everlasting love for the spiritual Zion of His Church; He had closed his prophecies with an assurance of the Lord's perpetual abiding in her.

Amos, whose name signifies *bearer*, takes up the message and delivers it in several prophetic *burdens* of judgment (or *masses*; see on Isa. xxii., *Prelim. Note*) to the several Nations of the Earth.

He marks also his own connexion with Joel by adopting, at the beginning of his prophecy, the closing words of Joel, significant of God's judicial Majesty in His Church, "The Lord will roar out of Zion and utter His voice from Jerusalem" (i. 2). See Joel iii. 6. 16.

For further remarks on this subject, see above, the INTRODUCTION to the Minor Prophets generally.

1. *herdmen*] As he himself says (vii. 14), "I am no Prophet nor a Prophet's son, but a herdman and a gatherer of sycamore fruit."

Amos, the shepherd of Tekoa, in the wilderness of Judah, loves to introduce pastoral imagery in his prophecies. The lions roar (i. 2; iii. 4), the conflict of the shepherd with the lion (iii. 12), the kine of Bashan (iv. 3) driven through a gap in a hedge, the earl full of sheaves (ii. 13), the bird in the gin of the fowler (iii. 5), and other rural objects, were associated with his own life, and give a natural freshness to his writings.

— *Tekoa*] About six miles to the south of Bethlehem, according to *S. Jerome*, who says (on Jer. vi. 1) that he himself, residing at Bethlehem, had Tekoa daily before his eyes. In his preface to his Commentary on Amos, he repeats the same statement. "This Prophet" (he says) "was of the town of Tekoa," six miles south of the holy Bethlehem, which gave birth to the Saviour of the World. Beyond it is no village, nor even any cottages or huts; such is the desolation of that wilderness, which extends even to the Red Sea. But it affords a free range for shepherds, of whom was Amos the Prophet, "rude in speech, but not in knowledge" (2 Cor. xi. 6), for "One and the same Spirit spake by all the Prophets" (2 Pet. i. 21). Cp. *Hackett's* description in B. D. ii. 1446, and *Robinson*, i. 486, and *Dr. Thomson*, 606.

As to the position and history of Tekoa, see also above, on Josh. xv. 59. 2 Sam. xiv. 2; xxiii. 26. 1 Chron. ii. 24; iv. 5. 2 Chron. xi. 6; xx. 20. Neh. iii. 5. 27. Jer. vi. 1. It is now called *Tekua*.

It is observable that Amos, the shepherd of Tekoa, south of Bethlehem in Judah, directs his prophecies specially to the ten tribes of Israel. He thus presents an example of Divine kindness and tender sympathy for aliens and rebels; and in this respect is like the Good Shepherd, Who was born at Bethlehem

and laid down His life for His sheep when they had gone astray.

Amos tells us that he prophesied in the time during which Uzziah king of Judah and Jeroboam II. king of Israel were contemporary, viz. twenty-seven years, between B.C. 810 and B.C. 783. He, therefore, began his prophetic labours about the same time as Hosea (see Hosea i. 1), and he prophesied to Israel as Hosea did, and at Bethel, the seat of Israel's idolatry (vii. 10).

— *two years before the earthquake*] In the days of Uzziah (Zech. xiv. 5). *Josephus* (Ant. ix. 10. 4) connects this earthquake with the sin of Uzziah in invading the High Priest's office, and offering incense in the Temple. And this statement has been adopted by *S. Jerome*, *S. Cyril*, and most ancient interpreters, Christian and Hebrew. See *A Lapidé* here.

It has been alleged that this is an error, because the earthquake took place, according to Amos, two years after he himself began to prophesy; and he prophesied while Jeroboam II. and Uzziah were contemporaries, that is, in some part of the twenty-seven years before Jeroboam's death; and Uzziah survived Jeroboam twenty-five years; therefore the earthquake must have been more than twenty-two years before Uzziah's death. But it is said that (as a consequence of his father's incapacity) Jotham his son was over the king's house judging the people of the land (2 Chron. xxvi. 21), and Jotham was only twenty-five years old at his father's death (2 Chron. xxvii. 1); and therefore it is alleged, that if the earthquake occurred when Uzziah was stricken with leprosy, it must have taken place *long after* Jeroboam's death, i. e. *long after* any of the time in which Uzziah and Jeroboam were contemporary, and much more than two years after the time in which Amos prophesied.

But this reasoning is grounded on the assumption, that Jotham *began* to be regent *immediately* after his father was stricken with leprosy, which is nowhere asserted in Scripture.

It is a noteworthy coincidence, that Isaiah's vision of the Seraphim in the Temple, and his message of mercy through Christ, is connected with the death of the leprous King Uzziah. See above, on Isa. vi. 1.

Amos mentions the *earthquake* as God's voice in nature (cp. Rev. vi. 12), echoing His voice in Prophecy; similarly Joel represents armies of locusts as harbingers of judgment.

2. *The LORD will roar from Zion, and utter his voice from Jerusalem*] Thus Amos joins on his own prophecy of judgment to that of Joel (iii. 16). God roared out of Zion by the voice of Joel, and of Amos himself, denouncing His judgments. And God roared by the voice of the Earthquake, confirming that denunciation by a solemn peal of subterranean thunder. The Earthquake was, as it were, an *Amen* to the prophecy.

— *the habitations of the shepherds shall mourn*] Amos, like Joel, notes the sympathy of the natural world with man in his punishment. See above, on Joel i. 18.

— *Carmel*] The fair and fruitful region, literally *garden of God*. See above, Cant. vii. 5. Isa. xxxiii. 9; xxxv. 2.

Before
CHRIST
787.
h Isa. 8. 4. &
17. 1.
Jer. 49. 23.
Zech. 9. 1.
|| Or, *yea, for*
four.
|| Or, *convert it,*
or, let it be quiet:
and so ver 6, &c.
12 Kings 10. 33.
& 13. 7.
k Jer. 17. 27. &
49. 27.
ver. 7, 10, 12.
ch. 2. 2, 5.
l Jer. 51. 30.
Lam. 2. 9.
|| Or, *Hikath-*
aven.
|| Or, *Beth eden.*
m Fulfilled,
2 Kings 16. 9.
n ch. 9. 7.
o 2 Chron. 28. 18.
Isa. 14. 29.
Jer. 47. 4, 5.
Ezek. 25. 15.
Zeph. 2. 4.
|| Or, *carried them*
away with an entire captivity, 2 Chron. 21. 16, 17. Joel 3. 6.

3 Thus saith the LORD;

For three transgressions of ^h Damascus, || and for four, I will not || turn away
the punishment thereof;

¹ Because they have threshed Gilead with threshing instruments of iron:

⁴ ^k But I will send a fire into the house of Hazael,
Which shall devour the palaces of Ben-hadad.

⁵ I will break also the ¹ bar of Damascus,

And cut off the inhabitant from || the plain of Aven,

And him that holdeth the sceptre from || the house of Eden:

And ^m the people of Syria shall go into captivity ⁿ unto Kir, saith the
LORD.

6 Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of ^o Gaza, and for four, I
will not turn away the punishment thereof;

Because they || carried away captive the whole captivity,

THE PROPHETIC BURDENS.

3. For three transgressions of Damascus, and for four]

This is a prophetic formula which may be compared with the similar phrase in Proverbs xxx. 15, 18, 21, 29, where the numbers three and four are combined in a like manner. We may also compare the "terque quaterque beati" of Virgil, and the French use of *très*, in *très bon*, *très sage*, &c.

This prophetic formula is repeated eight times by Amos. It notes two things; first, God's long-suffering for a time, in order that men may repent and escape punishment; secondly, the certainty of that punishment.

It is remarkable that none of these *Burdens* of Amos are addressed to the greatest Powers of the heathen World, opposed to Israel and Judah—Assyria and Babylon. The Holy Spirit, Who spake by him, reserved the declaration of the destinies of these two great kingdoms for two other of the Twelve Minor Prophets. Assyria was reserved for Nahum; Babylon for Habakkuk. There seems, therefore, to have been Divine forethought in this omission. The desolation of Egypt (not mentioned by Amos), had been declared already by Joel iii. 19.

The Lord God of Israel, in delivering these *burdens* by Amos (the *bearer*), concerning the destiny of heathen lands, proved that He is not a local Deity (as the heathen thought their own gods to be), but is the Supreme Ruler of all Nations; and that their gods, who cannot help them, are mere vanities. By revealing also the judgments impending on His Own People Israel and Judah, He shows that those heathen nations which punished them for their idolatry (i.e. Assyria and Babylon), did not do it by their own power, but were executioners of His Divine Will, and were instruments in His hands for vindicating His own power, majesty, and truth.

Thus these prophecies of Amos are fraught with moral instruction not only to Israel and Judah (for if God punished the heathen who did not know Him, how much more would He chastise Israel and Judah for their sins), but also to the heathen world. Compare the notes above, on Isaiah's *burdens* (Isa. xiii. Prelim. Note, pp. 36—38), and the prophecies of Jeremiah and Ezekiel concerning the Heathen Nations of the World (Jer. xlv. — li. Ezek. xxv. — xxxii).

On the spiritual interpretation of these prophecies, and their relation to the Christian Church, see above, on Isa. xiii. and the passages of Jeremiah (xlv.) and Ezekiel (xxv.) just cited. Inasmuch as these prophecies of Amos are enlarged by the books of Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Ezekiel, it will not be necessary to repeat what has been already said concerning them in commenting on those books.

The prophecies of Amos are expanded by succeeding Prophets. Amos himself takes up the prophecy of Joel, whom he succeeds; Joel, by a magnificent generalization, had displayed all God's judgments in nature and history as concentrated in one Great Day of the Lord. Amos disintegrates this great whole, and particularizes those judgments. Joel declares that God will judge *all collectively*. Amos proclaims that He will judge *each singly*. And by saying that *for three transgressions and for four*, God will not reverse the judgment of each nation taken singly, he implies that each transgression is registered in God's book of reckoning.

— *Damascus*] The capital of Syria, which prospered under

Hazael, and invaded and subdued the eastern region of Israel (2 Kings x. 32, 33; xiii. 7; ep. 2 Kings viii. 12).

— *I will not turn away*] I will not reverse.

— *they have threshed Gilead with threshing instruments of iron*] Here again Amos adopts the imagery of Joel (see Joel iii. 14). The machine here mentioned is described by S. Jerome "as a kind of waggon which rolls on iron-toothed wheels, so that, the corn being shaken out of it, it may crush the straw on the threshing-floor." The word here used (*chârûts*) is the same as that employed by Joel iii. 14, "Multitudes, multitudes, in the valley of decision" (*chârûts*). Gesen. 308.

Amos is referring here to the cruelties practised on Israel by Hazael, King of Syria, as foretold by Elisha:—"I know the evil thou wilt do to the children of Israel; their strongholds thou wilt set on fire, and their young men wilt thou slay with the sword, and wilt dash their children, and rip up their women with child" (2 Kings viii. 12). The Syrians cast the women of Israel like sheaves on the threshing-floor, and threshed them with sharp instruments of iron (*Theodore*). Therefore God says, "I will send a fire on to the house of Hazael."

4. *Ben-hadad*] An official name of Syrian Kings, and signifying *Son of Hadad*, the sun-god worshipped by Syria (1 Kings xv. 18; xx. 2. 2 Kings vi. 24; xiii. 25).

These words, "*shall devour the palaces*," are adopted by Jeremiah from Hosea viii. 14, and Amos here. See Jer. xxvii. 17.

The words "*shall devour the palaces*" (Hebr. *armônôth*) "*of Benhadad*," are adopted from Amos by Jeremiah (xlix. 27).

The word *armôn* (a palace) is a favourite one with Amos, who uses it four times in this chapter (vv. 4, 7, 10, 12, 14), and twice in the next chapter (vv. 2, 5), and in all these cases in connexion with the verb *deat*, to eat, to devour. It also occurs three times in the third chapter (vv. 9, 10, 11), and once in the sixth (v. 8), and only twice in any other of the Minor Prophets (Hos. viii. 14. Micah v. 5).

5. *plain of Aven*] Literally, *plain of vanity*; perhaps of Heliopolis, or Baalbek (*Ewald, Hitzig*). Its site has not been accurately defined; it seems to have been called *Aven* by the Prophet on account of the idolatry practised there. Cp. Hos. v. 8. It is contrasted with the *Eden* which follows. *Edens* become *Avens*, as *Bethels* become *Betharems*, by idolatry.

— *Eden*] Literally, *pleasure*; one of the Paradises or Parks of the Syrian King. Its site is not known. Cp. B. D. i. 487.

— *Kir*] To the north of Armenia. This prophecy was fulfilled by Tiglath Pileser, king of Assyria, who carried the Syrians captive to Kir. See above, on 2 Kings xvi. 9.

6—8. *Gaza—Ashdod—Ashkelon—Ekron*] The great cities of Philistia (Josh. xv. 47. Judges i. 18; xiv. 19; xvi. 1. 1 Sam. v. 1. 6; vi. 17. Jer. xxv. 20. Zeph. ii. 4).

6. *they carried away—the whole captivity*] A captivity (of Israelites) in full number, so that none were spared (*S. Jerome*). This was done in the days of Jehoiachin (2 Chron. xxxvi. 10).

Here also Amos takes up Joel, who had threatened the Philistines with divine wrath for their cruelty in this capture and sale of Israelites (Joel iii. 6).

The judgments denounced in this chapter onwards to the end, and in the next chapter (ii. 1—3), were executed by Nebuchadnezzar and the Chaldeans. Cp. Jer. xlvii. 45. Ezek. xxv. 15.

^r To deliver *them* up to Edom :

⁷ ^a But I will send a fire on the wall of Gaza,
Which shall devour the palaces thereof :

⁸ And I will cut off the inhabitant ^r from Ashdod,
And him that holdeth the sceptre from Ashkelon,
And I will ^s turn mine hand against Ekron :

And ^t the remnant of the Philistines shall perish, saith the Lord God.

⁹ Thus saith the Lord ; For three transgressions of ^u Tyrus, and for four,

I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof ;

^x Because they delivered up the whole captivity to Edom,
And remembered not [†] the brotherly covenant :

¹⁰ ^y But I will send a fire on the wall of Tyrus,
Which shall devour the palaces thereof.

¹¹ Thus saith the Lord ; For three transgressions of ^z Edom, and for four,

I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof ;

Because he did pursue ^a his brother ^b with the sword,
And [†] did cast off all pity,

^c And his anger did tear perpetually, and he kept his wrath for ever :

¹² But ^a I will send a fire upon Teman,
Which shall devour the palaces of Bozrah.

¹³ Thus saith the Lord ; For three transgressions of ^c the children of Ammon,
and for four, I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof ;

Because they have ^{||} ^ripped up the women with child of Gilead,

^s That they might enlarge their border :

¹⁴ But I will kindle a fire in the wall of ^b Rabbah,
And it shall devour the palaces thereof,

ⁱ With shouting in the day of battle,
With a tempest in the day of the whirlwind :

¹⁵ And ^k their king shall go into captivity,
He and his princes together, saith the Lord.

II. ¹ Thus saith the Lord ; For three transgressions of ^a Moab, and for four,

I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof ;

Because he ^b burned the bones of the king of Edom into lime :

Before
CHRIST
787.
p ver 9.
q Jer. 47. 1.

r Zeph. 2. 4.
Zeck. 9. 5, 6.

s Ps. 81. 11.

t Jer. 47. 4.

u Isa. 23. 1.

Jer. 47. 4.

Zeck. 26; & 27,

& 28.

Joel 3. 4, 5.

x ver. 6.

† Heb. *the cove-*

nant of brethren,

2 Sam. 5. 11.

1 Kings 5. 1. &

9. 11—14.

y ver. 4, 7, &c.

z Isa. 21. 11. &

34. 5.

Jer. 49. 8, &c.

Zeck. 25. 12, 13,

14. & 35. 2, &c.

Joel 3. 19.

Obad. 1, &c.

Mal. 1. 4.

a Gen. 27. 41.

Deut. 23. 7.

Mal. 1. 2.

b 2 Chron. 28. 17

† Heb. *corrupted*

his compassions.

c Ezek. 35. 5.

d Obad. 9, 10.

e Jer. 49. 1, 2.

Zeck. 25. 2.

Zeph. 2. 9.

|| Or, *divided the*

mountains.

f Hos. 13. 16.

g Jer. 49. 1.

h Deut. 3. 11.

2 Sam. 12. 26.

Jer. 49. 2.

Zeck. 25. 5.

i ch. 2. 2.

k Jer. 49. 3.

a Isa. 15, & 16.

Jer. 48.

Ezek. 25. 8.

Zeph. 2. 8.

b 2 Kings 3. 27.

— to Edom] The cruel and treacherous foe of their brethren of Israel. See on v. 11. Ps. cxxxvii. 7. Isa. xxxiv. 6; lxiii. 1. Jer. xxvii. 3. Ezek. xxv. 12; and Obadiah throughout.

9. Tyros] See above, Isa. xxiii. 1—17. Jer. xxv. 22; xlvii. 4; and especially Ezek. xxvi. xxvii. xxviii., where this prophecy against Tyre is enlarged.

11. Edom] See on v. 6.

— did cast off all pity] Lit. *destroyed its own compassions* — as if pity were an evil thing, and to be extinguished.

12. Teman] The southern region of Edom (*S. Jerome*), the country of Eliphaz (Job ii. 11).

— Bozrah] The capital of Edom. See on Isa. xxxiv. 6; lxiii. 1.

14. Rabbah] The capital of Ammon. See above, 2 Sam. xii. 26, 27, 29. Jer. xlix. 2. Ezek. xxi. 20; xxv. 5, where this prophecy is enlarged.

CH. II. 1. Moab] This prophecy of judgment is also enlarged in Isa. xv., xvi.; and in Jer. xlviii.; and in Ezek. xxv. 9.

— he burned the bones of the king of Edom into lime] This act of the king of Moab, burning the bones of the king of Edom into lime, was probably a sequel to what he is said to have done when harassed and distressed by the invasion of the three confederate kings of Judah, Israel, and Edom. He, the king of Moab, at that time in a fit of desperation, took his own eldest son (this is the true meaning of the passage; cp. *Josephus*, Ant. ix. 3. 2. and so *S. Jerome*, *Rufinus*, *Eusebius*, and most ancient

expositors) and offered him up as a burnt offering upon the wall. See on 2 Kings iii. 27.

Then the kings of Israel and Judah retired from Moab; and then it was, as it seems probable, that the king and people of Moab, who before had attempted to attack Edom, but were prevented from executing their purpose by the two kings leagued with Edom, wreaked their vengeance on the king of Edom, being left isolated, and burnt his bones into lime as a holocaust to the spirit of the dead son of the king of Moab, whom, in a fit of desperate anguish, his father had offered as a burnt offering to win the favour of the cruel gods whom he worshipped.

This opinion is corroborated by the Hebrew tradition mentioned by *S. Jerome* here, “that the bones of the king of Edom, who had come up together with Joram king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat king of Judah, to attack Moab, were torn up from their grave by the Moabites, in a spirit of revenge, and were burnt.”

Amos says, that the Moabites burnt the bones of the king of Edom into lime; and the *Chaldee Targum*, and other expositors, explain this by saying, that in order to proclaim and perpetuate their act of vindictive cruelty, the Moabites daubed the walls of their houses with the lime made of the bones of the king.

This denunciation of the Prophet Amos against the king and people of Moab is designed to show that the Lord God of Israel is the God of the whole world, and takes judicial cognizance not only of things happening to Israel, but of the conduct of one heathen power, Moab, to another heathen power, Edom.

Before
CHRIST
787.
c Jer. 48. 41.

d ch. 1. 14.
e Num. 21. 17.
Jer. 48. 7.

f Lev. 26. 14, 15.
Neh. 1. 7.
Dan. 9. 11.

g Isa. 28. 15.
Jer. 16. 19, 20.
Rom. 1. 25.
h Ezek. 20. 13,
16, 18, 24, 30.
i Jer. 17. 27.
Hos. 8. 14.

k Isa. 29. 21.
ch. 8. 6.

l Isa. 10. 2.
ch. 5. 12.
m Ezek. 22. 11.
|| Or, *young*
woman.

n Lev. 20. 3.
Ezek. 36. 20.
Rom. 2. 24.

o Exod. 22. 26.
p Ezek. 23. 41.
i Cor. 8. 10, &
10. 21.

|| Or, *such as*
have fined, or,
misled.

q Num. 21. 24.
Deut. 2. 31.

r Josh. 24. 8.
r Num. 13. 23,
32, 33.

s Isa. 5. 24.
Mal. 4. 1.

t Exod. 12. 51.
Micah 6. 4.
u Deut. 2. 7. &
8. 2.

- ² But I will send a fire upon Moab,
And it shall devour the palaces of ^c Kiriath:
And Moab shall die with tumult,
^d With shouting, *and* with the sound of the trumpet:
³ And I will cut off ^e the judge from the midst thereof,
And will slay all the princes thereof with him, saith the LORD.
⁴ Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of Judah, and for four,
I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof;
^f Because they have despised the law of the LORD,
And have not kept his commandments,
And ^g their lies caused them to err,
^h After the which their fathers have walked:
⁵ ⁱ But I will send a fire upon Judah,
And it shall devour the palaces of Jerusalem.
⁶ Thus saith the LORD; For three transgressions of Israel, and for four,
I will not turn away *the punishment* thereof;
Because ^k they sold the righteous for silver,
And the poor for a pair of shoes;
⁷ That pant after the dust of the earth on the head of the poor,
And ^l turn aside the way of the meek:
^m And a man and his father will go in unto the *same* || maid,
ⁿ To profane my holy name:
⁸ And they lay *themselves* down upon clothes ^o laid to pledge ^p by every altar,
And they drink the wine of || the condemned *in* the house of their god.
⁹ Yet destroyed I the ^q Amorite before them,
^r Whose height *was* like the height of the cedars,
And he *was* strong as the oaks;
Yet I ^s destroyed his fruit from above, and his roots from beneath.
¹⁰ Also ^t I brought you up from the land of Egypt,
And ^u led you forty years through the wilderness,
To possess the land of the Amorite.
¹¹ And I raised up of your sons for prophets,

2. *I will send a fire upon Moab*] For burning his own son with fire, and for burning the bones of the king of Edom.

— *Kiriath*] In Moab, now *Kereyat*. Cp. Jer. xlviii. 24. 41.

4. *Judah*] From judgments on heathen Nations he passes to Judah and Israel, the principal subject of his prophecies.

— *their lies*] Their idols.

5. *I will send a fire upon Judah—Jerusalem*] Observe, that though God by Amos denounces judgment both on Judah and Israel, yet it is only on Jerusalem that He threatens to send fire as the instrument of its destruction. Here is prophetic discrimination. And so it came to pass, Jerusalem was burnt with fire by the Chaldeans (2 Kings xxv. 9. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 19), and afterwards by the Romans. Samaria, the capital of Israel, was also taken, but it was not burnt with fire. There is a *speciality* (which proves their divine origin) in the prophecies concerning Jerusalem. Jerusalem was taken *seventeen* different times, but only *once* was it compassed by a trench cast around it by the invaders, viz. in the siege predicted by Christ (Luke xix. 43).

6. *they sold the righteous for silver*] They take bribes in judgment, and betray the innocent man, whom they ought to have defended from his enemy.

This portion, from ii. 6 to iii. 8, is the *Haphtarah* to Genesis xxxvii. 1 to xl. 23, which relates the history of the sale of Joseph, the type of Christ, for money, by his brethren, and the sin of Judah. "They sell the righteous for money," words certainly applicable in the deepest and fullest sense to the selling of the righteous One for thirty pieces of silver. It is one of the silent proofs of the inspiration of Hebrew Prophecy, that while it has literal subordinate fulfilments in historical acts of earlier days, it finds its full accomplishment in the person of CHRIST.

"Christo hæc verba competunt, et ad Christum, quasi ad scopum et amorem suum, datâ vel levi occasione et similitudine, avolare solent Prophetæ" (*A Lapidè*); a very true remark, which deserves the attention of the devout student of prophecy.

— *the poor for a pair of shoes*] They sell the precious souls of the poor for the meanest thing, with which they trample on the dust or in the mire (*S. Jerome*).

7. *And a man and his father*] This had been Reuben's sin (Gen. xxxv. 22), for which he lost his birthright (Gen. xlix. 3, 4). It was a sin to be punished by death (Lev. xviii. 7—15; xx. 11).

— *To profane my holy name*] So that it is blasphemed among the Gentiles (2 Pet. ii. 2), who abhor such a crime (1 Cor. v. 1, 2).

8. *they lay themselves down upon clothes laid to pledge*] This was another sin committed against another express law of God (Exod. xxii. 26. Deut. xxiv. 12, 13). Their consciences are so seared by sin, that they lay themselves down at ease to sleep on the garments of the poor debtor which he has pawned to them; and they do this *in the house of their god* by the side of *every altar* of their idol deities, and there they drink of the *wine of the condemned*—that is, wine bought by fines extorted from those whom they have amerced in judgment. Thus, with bold impiety, they sin against God and man at the same time.

9. *Yet destroyed I the Amorite before them*] This was Israel's ungrateful requital of all My mercies to them in destroying the Nations of Canaan for their idolatry and uncleanness; they were not thankful for My favour, nor did they profit by the warning, but they imitated the sins of the nations which I commanded them to exterminate for those sins.

— *Whose height was like the height of the cedars*] So that the spies quailed at the sight of them (Num. xiii. 28. 32, 33; xxi. 34).

And of your young men for *Nazarites.

Is it not even thus, O ye children of Israel? saith the LORD.

¹² But ye gave the Nazarites wine to drink;

And commanded the prophets, ^y saying, Prophecy not.

¹³ ^z Behold, || I am pressed under you, as a cart is pressed *that is full of sheaves.*

¹⁴ ^a Therefore the flight shall perish from the swift,

And the strong shall not strengthen his force,

^b Neither shall the mighty deliver † himself:

¹⁵ Neither shall he stand that handleth the bow;

And *he that is swift of foot shall not deliver himself:*

^c Neither shall he that rideth the horse deliver himself.

¹⁶ And *he that is* † courageous among the mighty shall flee away naked in that day, saith the LORD.

III. ¹ Hear this word that the LORD hath spoken against you, O children of Israel,

Against the whole family which I brought up from the land of Egypt, saying,

² ^a You only have I known of all the families of the earth:

^b Therefore I will † punish you for all your iniquities.

³ Can two walk together, except they be agreed?

⁴ Will a lion roar in the forest, when he hath no prey?

Will a young lion † cry out of his den, if he have taken nothing?

⁵ Can a bird fall in a snare upon the earth, where no gin is for him?

Shall *one* take up a snare from the earth, and have taken nothing at all?

Before
CHRIST
787.
x Num. 6. 2.
Judg. 13. 5.

y Isa. 30. 10.
Jer. 11. 21.
ch. 7. 12, 13.
Micah 2. 6.
z Isa. 1. 14.
|| Or, *I will press your place, as a cart full of sheaves presseth.*
a Jer. 9. 23.
ch. 9. 1, &c.
b Ps. 33. 16.
† Heb. *his soul*, or, *life*.

c Ps. 33. 17.
† Heb. *strong of his heart*.

a Deut. 7. 6. & 10. 15.
Ps. 147. 19, 20.
b See Dan. 9. 12.
Matt. 11. 22.
Luke 12. 47.
Rom. 2. 9.
† Pet. 4. 17.
† Heb. *visit upon*,
† Heb. *give forth his voice*.

11. *Nazarites*] Separated and dedicated to God. See above, on Num. vi. 2—21. Judges xiii. 5. Lam. iv. 7.

12. *ye gave the Nazarites wine to drink*] Ye not only broke My law in your own persons, but ye tempted your children, who were dedicated to My service, to violate their vows to Me (Num. vi. 3).

This condemnation may be applied in Christian times to parents and others who deter children that have been baptized and confirmed (and are Christian Nazarites dedicated to God) from coming to the Holy Communion.

— *Prophecy not*] Because God's word was burdensome to them. Cp. vii. 10. Micah ii. 6; and above, Isa. xxx. 10, "Which say to the seers, See not," and Jer. xi. 21. The climax of Israel's sin is represented in our Lord's words: "O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the Prophets" (Matt. xxiii. 37), and in His own Crucifixion (Acts vii. 52).

13. *Behold, I am pressed under you*] Behold I, even I your God, strain myself under you and groan with the burden, being no longer able to bear your sins (as *S. Jerome* expounds it, and so *Sept.*, *Vulg.*, *Arabic*), as a cart that is full of sheaves. As God says by Isaiah, "Thou hast made Me to serve with thy sins, thou hast wearied Me with thine iniquities" (Isa. xliii. 24). Cp. Mal. ii. 17.

The propriety of the simile of the Cart, pressed down and groaning with its load of ripe sheaves, consists further in this, that the Cart bears them to the threshing-floor and shoots them down there to be threshed. In like manner, Israel, wearying God with the weight of their sins, will be cast down by Him on the threshing-floor, to be crushed like sheaves by the sharp threshing instruments of divine judgment. "As a cart" (says *S. Jerome*), "loaded heavily with corn or hay, creaks and groans with the weight, so I, overburdened by your sins, utter my voice and say, 'The flight shall perish from the swift.'"

Amos here takes up the metaphor of the preceding Prophet, Joel (Joel iii. 14. See the note there).

CH. III. 1. *Hear this word*] This address is repeated thrice (iii. 1; iv. 1; v. 1). See also vii. 16; viii. 4. It is like our Lord's emphatic saying, "He that hath ears to hear, let him hear," and the similar appeal seven times repeated in the Apocalypse. See Rev. ii. 7. It is taken up by Amos from his predecessors, Hosea v. 1, and Joel i. 2; and is continued by Micah i. 2; iii. 1. 9; vi. 1, 2. 9.

2. *You only have I known*] I have specially loved you. Cp. Hos. xiii. 5, and note below on Acts xv. 18, where it is said that

all God's works are *known*, i. e. *loved* by Him. Israel was loved by Him with a special love.

— *Therefore I will punish you*] Compare our Lord's words to Chorazin and Capernaum, and concerning those to whom His Apostles would preach (Matt. x. 15; xi. 21, 22. Mark vi. 11. Luke x. 13. Judgment begins with the house of God (Ezek. ix. 6. 1 Pet. iv. 17).

THE FIVE PARABLES.

In the following verses (vv. 3—6) are five Parables, all showing God's moral Government in the affairs of the World and of His Church; and that nothing in the history of either happens by chance, but is ordered by Him, using the natural Elements and the greatest Nations of the World as His instruments for the punishment of sins committed after deliberate warning, and for the manifestation of His Power and Glory.

3. *Can two walk together*] How can you expect God to walk with you and bless you, unless you conform to His will? Cp. "Agree with thine adversary quickly, whiles thou art in the way with him;" see Matt. v. 25, where "the adversary" is understood by many ancient expositors to mean, in a spiritual sense, the Word of God. Be of one mind with it, or be reconciled to it speedily, if you desire to be at peace.

4. *Will a lion roar*] Or, *Does a lion roar—and he has no prey?* The roar of a lion is a certain assurance that he has, or soon will have, the prey in his grasp. So the warning voice of the Lord by His Prophets (see i. 2) is a sure sign that He is coming to judge you.

5. *Can a bird fall in a snare—where no gin is for him?*] Or, as the *Sept.* paraphrases it, *Will a bird fall upon the earth without a fowler?*—literally, without a springe.

The fall of the bird is a sure sign of the fowler's presence. So, your punishment is not a mere matter of chance, but it is divinely designed. As our Lord says, "Not a sparrow falls to the ground without your Father" (Matt. x. 29). Much more, when Israel falls, let him recognize God's hand in his own fall, and repent of the sins which caused it.

— *Shall one take up a snare*] Or, *shall the snare*, or trap, *rise up from the earth without having taken any thing.*

The springing up of the trap is a sign that it has caught something. It will not rise up without having done its work. So My instruments of judgment (such as the armies of Assyria and Babylon, whom I send against you, and set before you only as traps to take you) will not rise up and depart before they have executed upon you the judgment which I have set them to

B. fore
CARRIST
787.
Or, not run
tether?
c Isa. 45. 7.
Or, and shall
not the LORD do
somewhat?
d Gen. 6. 13. &
18. 17.
Ps. 25. 14
John 15. 15.
e ch 1. 2.
f Acts 4. 20. &
5. 20, 29.
1 Cor. 9. 16.

Or, oppressions.

g Jer. 4. 22.

Or, spoil.

h 2 Kings 17. 3, 6.
& 18. 9, 10, 11.

† Hebr. delivereth.

Or, on the bed's
feet.

Or, punish
Israel for.

i Jer. 36. 22.

k Judg. 3. 20.
l 1 Kings 22. 39.

- ⁶ Shall a trumpet be blown in the city, and the people || not be afraid?
^c Shall there be evil in a city, || and the LORD hath not done it?
⁷ Surely the Lord God will do nothing, but ^d he revealeth his secret unto his
servants the prophets.
⁸ ^e The lion hath roared, who will not fear?
The Lord God hath spoken, ^f who can but prophesy?
⁹ Publish in the palaces at Ashdod,
And in the palaces in the land of Egypt, and say,
Assemble yourselves upon the mountains of Samaria,
And behold the great tumults in the midst thereof,
And the || oppressed in the midst thereof.
¹⁰ For they ^g know not to do right, saith the LORD,
Who store up violence and || robbery in their palaces.
¹¹ Therefore thus saith the Lord God;
^h An adversary *there shall be* even round about the land;
And he shall bring down thy strength from thee, and thy palaces shall be
spoiled.
¹² Thus saith the LORD;
As the shepherd [†] taketh out of the mouth of the lion two legs, or a piece
of an ear; so shall the children of Israel be taken out that dwell in
Samaria in the corner of a bed, and || in Damascus *in* a couch.
¹³ Hear ye, and testify in the house of Jacob, saith the Lord God, the God
of hosts, ¹⁴ that in the day that I shall || visit the transgressions of Israel upon
him I will also visit the altars of Beth-el: and the horns of the altar shall be
cut off, and fall to the ground. ¹⁵ And I will smite ⁱ the winter house with
^k the summer house; and ^l the houses of ivory shall perish, and the great
houses shall have an end, saith the LORD.

perform. Compare the metaphor in Ezekiel xii. 13, where God says, concerning Zedekiah king of Jerusalem, "My net also will I spread upon him, and he shall be taken in my snare"—i. e. by the Chaldean army.

6. *Shall a trumpet be blown in the city*] Ye are alarmed at the sound of the trumpet announcing the approach of an earthly enemy (see on Hos. v. 8; viii. 1), and will you not much more fear when the prophetic trumpet of God's voice (Isa. lviii. 1. Ezek. xxxiii. 3. 5) is sounding an alarm in your ears and calling you to repentance (Joel ii. 1. 15), and preparing you for the sound of the trumpet of the Great Day, which will awaken you from your graves to Judgment?

— *Shall there be evil in a city*] Shall there be *physical* evil (not moral evil, though even this cannot exist without God's permission, and is overruled by Him to good), such as Plague, Pestilence, Famine, Earthquake, or War, and will ye attribute this to mere blind chance, and not to the deliberate will, sovereign power, and chastening hand of Him Who sends these things as His own sore judgments on guilty cities and nations (Ezek. xiv. 21), and who says to the World, "I form the light and create darkness, I make peace and create evil, I the Lord do all these things"? See on Isa. xlv. 7. Bp. Sanderson, iii. 77. 150; and Pfeiffer, p. 430.

7. *Surely the Lord God will do nothing—prophets*] Therefore ye ought to listen to the voice of the Prophets as the voice of God, declaring the secret counsel (Hebr. *sod*. See Job xv. 8; xxxiv. 4, where the same word is used) of His will, and forewarning you of His dealings with you.

God has ever warned the World of coming judgments, in order that it may not incur them. As S. Chrysostom says, He has revealed to us hell, in order that we may escape hell. He warned Noah of the coming Deluge. He told Abraham and Lot of the future judgment on Sodom and the cities of the plain. He revealed to Joseph the seven years' famine, and to Moses, and to Pharaoh by Moses, the ten plagues; and to Moses, and Joshua, and the Prophets, all the chastisements of His People; and to

Jonah the destruction of Nineveh; and by Christ and His Apostles He foretold the fall of Jerusalem; and Christ has warned all of His own future Coming to judge the World. God does this in order that men may repent; and that, if they obstinately continue in sin, He may be justified in executing punishment upon them (S. Jerome; Corn. a Lapide).

9. *Publish in the palaces at Ashdod*] Even heathen nations are summoned to assent to the justice of God's judgment on His people. The Divine Judge appeals to them as His Jury, and asks for their verdict on Israel.

— *tumults*] Lawless anarchy, confusion, and violence.

12. *As the shepherd*] Only a small remnant of Israel will be saved from the general destruction. Only a pair of shin bones, or a hippet of an ear of the whole sheep, will be rescued from the mouth of the destroying lion of Assyria, "decem tribuum parvas reliquias de Assyriorum manibus narrat eruendas" (S. Jerome).

— *that dwell in Samaria in the corner of a bed, and in Damascus in a couch*] Only a small remnant shall be rescued of those voluptuous crowds of grantees who *dwell in Samaria*—i. e. (as he expresses it in vi. 1), who "trust in the mountain of Samaria"—relying on its earthly wealth and strength, and indulging in its comforts, like men who recline and loll at ease and prop themselves by pillows in *the corner of a bed* (i. e. in the corner of the divan—at the angle where two sides of the sofa meet—the most luxurious place), and *who recline on Damascus*, as *on a couch*—that is, who lean on Syria for help (as Pekah king of Israel did; Isa. vii. 2—8), instead of relying on God. "As a man who is weary" (says S. Jerome) "reposes on a couch, so Israel, when harassed by war, supported itself on Damascus." This seems to be the preferable interpretation of the passage, and is authorized by *Sept., Vulg., Syriac, Arabic, Targum*; and see *Pusey*, 181.

15. *the winter house with the summer house*] That is, both compartments of the palace. See on Jer. xxxvi. 22.

— *houses of ivory*] The palace which had rooms inlaid with ivory, like that of Ahab (1 Kings xxii. 39). Cp. 1's. xlv. 8.

IV. ¹ Hear this word, ye ^a kine of Bashan, that are in the mountain of Samaria, which oppress the poor, which crush the needy, which say to their masters, Bring, and let us drink.

² ^b The Lord God hath sworn by his holiness, that, lo, the days shall come upon you, that he will take you away ^c with hooks, and your posterity with fishhooks. ³ And ^d ye shall go out at the breaches, every cow at that which is before her; and ^e ye shall cast them into the palace, saith the Lord.

⁴ ^e Come to Beth-el, and transgress; at ^f Gilgal multiply transgression; and ^g bring your sacrifices every morning, ^h and your tithes after ⁱ three years: ⁵ ^j and ^k offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving with leaven, and proclaim and publish ^l the free offerings: ^m for ⁿ this liketh you, O ye children of Israel, saith the Lord God.

⁶ And I also have given you cleanness of teeth in all your cities, and want of bread in all your places:

^o Yet have ye not returned unto me, saith the Lord.

⁷ And also I have withholden the rain from you, when there were yet three months to the harvest: and I caused it to rain upon one city, and caused it

Before
CHRIST787.
a Ps. 22. 12.
Ezek. 39. 18.

b Ps. 89. 25.

c Jer. 16. 16.
Hab. 1. 15.

d Ezek. 12. 5, 12.

|| Or, ye shall cast away the things of the palace.

e Ezek. 20. 39.

f Hos. 4. 15. &

12. 11.

g Num. 28. 3. 4.

h Deut. 14. 28.

i Heb. three years of days.

j Lev. 7. 13. &

23. 17.

k Heb. offer by turning.

l Lev. 22. 18, 21.

m Deut. 12. 6.

n Ps. 81. 12.

o Heb. so ye love.

p Isa. 26. 11.

q Jer. 5. 3.

r ver. 8, 9.

s Hag. 2. 17.

CH. IV. 1. *ye kine of Bashan*] Ye voluptuous, effeminate rulers, who do not deserve to be called men, but animals; and not oxen, but cows (cp. 2 Pet. ii. 14), cows of the fat pastures of Bashan (cp. Ps. xxii. 12. Ezek. xxxix. 18); or he may be speaking here of the haughty and luxurious women of Samaria.

— *their masters*] Their princes; or (if he is speaking of women) their husbands. Cp. Isa. iii. 16.

2. *he will take you away with hooks*] These words are adopted by Jeremiah: "Behold, I will send for many fishers, saith the Lord, and they shall fish them." Cp. Hab. i. 15. The execution of judgment will be personal and painful; not like the catching of fish in a net, so as they may be saved, but by a hook, which is followed by death.

3. *ye shall go out at the breaches*] Ye shall go through the breaches made in the walls of the captured city; the prisoners will be so many that it would take too much time to drive them through the gates; the ruin and captivity will be total.

— *every cow at that which is before her*] Every (woman, see v. 1) will be forced by the enemy to march straight onwards on the way which lies before her, without looking to the right or left (Josh. vi. 5. 20), like cows driven one after another through a gap in a hedge.

— *and ye shall cast them into the palace*] Rather, *ye shall be cast towards the Harmon*. The Hebrew letters are *ha-harmôn-ah*; the final *-ah* signifies motion to a place like our final English *ward*, as heavenward (see Gesen. Gram. § 90, p. 148) e.g. *Babel-ah*, to Babylon; *Assur-ah*, to Assyria; *ha-harah*, to the mountain; *midbarah-ah* *Dammeseek*, toward the wilderness of Damascus.

What the meaning is of the Hebrew word here used, *harmôn*, is disputable. One thing seems certain; that it is designed to contrast with *armôn*, or *palace* (see above, on i. 4), and that it is used to announce that they who rioted in their *armôn*, or palace (iii. 10), will be spoiled in their *armôn*, or palace (iii. 11), and that they will be flung out of their *armôn* to a *harmôn*.

The ancient renderings of *harmôn* are very various. Some think that the phrase, they will be cast out to *Armenia* (so *Synnachus*, *Targum*, *Syriac*, *Jerome*, *Bochart*); others, to *Mount Roman*, or *Remman* (*Sept.*); others, to *Hermion*.

The sense is, ye will be hurled from a high estate to a low one; ye, who were brought up in palaces, will hereafter "embrace dunghills" (Lam. iv. 5). And it is probable that the Prophet is here forming a word to mark the contrast between their present condition of pride and splendour, and their future state of abasement and shame. You, who now are revelling at ease in your *Armôn*, will be cast out to the *har*, or *hill*, of *Rimmon*, the god of Syria and Damascus (see 2 Kings v. 18), in whom ye trust (see iii. 12); and this is confirmed by what is said below (v. 27), "I will cause you to go into captivity beyond Damascus." This may have given rise to the rendering in the Septuagint here.

4. *Come to Beth-el and transgress—Gilgal*] Words uttered in a tone of bitter irony and indignation, as Ezekiel says (xx. 39), "Go ye, serve ye every one his idols;" and our Lord to the Jews, "Fill ye up then the measure of your fathers" (Matt. xxiii. 32).

Amos, in thus speaking of Bethel and Gilgal, seats of Israelitish idolatry, is taking up the language of his predecessor Hosea. See Hos. iv. 15, "Come not ye unto Gilgal, neither go ye up to Beth-aven." Cp. ix. 15; xii. 11; and below, v. 5.

— *bring your sacrifices every morning, and your tithes after three years*] The strain of irony is continued. Go to, and imitate at Bethel the worship of the Temple; bring your sacrifices every morning, your tithes after three years, or, rather, after every three days (literally, after a treble of days); so *Sept.*, *Fulg.*, *Syriac*, *Arabic*, *Targum*, and see *Keil*. That is, Not only imitate, but go beyond, the requirements of the Levitical Law, which prescribed this payment after three years (Deut. xiv. 28; xxvi. 12).

This is a characteristic of idolatry and schism, to profess extraordinary zeal for God's worship, and go beyond the letter and spirit of His Law by arbitrary will-worship and self-idolizing fanaticism.

5. *offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving with leaven*] Contrary to the Levitical Law (Lev. ii. 11). You copy the Law in some things, and you innovate upon it in others, as seems best to your own private conceits. This was a characteristic of the worship set up by Jeroboam. See above, 1 Kings xii. 27—29. In some respects it was an imitation of the ceremonies of the Levitical Law, in others it was a deviation from it. Jeroboam chose what he liked, and left out what he liked. This is the essence of schism. It culls what pleases its fancy from God's Law and from the usages of God's Church. "This liketh you, O ye children of Israel, saith the Lord God."

— *proclaim and publish the free offerings*] Commit your sins of schism and idolatry with a bold face. Make no secret of them. Proclaim them by public announcements, so that all may know them. This is another characteristic of schism. It has no sense of shame in rending the seamless coat of Christ. It publishes itself to the world by demonstrations of disunion, and it even claims admiration for its zeal in breaking that Christian Unity for which Christ prayed (John xvii. 11. 21, 22).

6. *And I also have given you cleanness of teeth*] Your gifts to Me were such as I have described; and what was My gift to you in return? Ye defiled your teeth by feeding on idol-sacrifices, and I sent you cleanness of teeth, i.e. chastisement by famine. But this was done in love. It was the only remedy left. God pleads with Israel in mercy while He announces this. He chastened them that they might return to Him (vv. 6. 9, 10, 11), and He says, "Seek ye Me, and ye shall live" (v. 4. 6).

— *Yet have ye not returned unto me*] God emphatically declares the loving design of His chastisement of Israel, by repeating this sorrowful ejaculation four times (vv. 6. 9, 10, 11).

7. *one city—one piece*] In order to call their attention to the fact that this visitation was not a thing of chance or necessity, but of design, God made it partial and extraordinary. For a like reason He made the light local in Goshen (Exod. x. 23), and afterwards at Beth-horon (see on Josh. x. 12); and sent a storm of thunder and rain in the time of wheat harvest, in the days of Samuel (1 Sam. xii. 17, 18).

Before
CHRIST
757.

n ver. 6, 10, 11.

o Deut. 28. 22.

¶ Hag. 2. 17.

¶ Or, the multi-

tude of your

gardens, &c. did

the palmer-

worm, &c.

p Joel 1. 4. &

2. 25.

¶ Or, in the way.

q Exod. 9. 3, 6. &

12. 29.

Deut. 28. 27, 60.

Ps. 78. 50.

† Heb. with the

captivity of your

horses,

2 Kings 13. 7.

r ver. 6.

s Gen. 19. 24, 25.

Isa. 13. 19.

Jer. 49. 18.

t Zech. 3. 2.

Jude 23.

u ver. 6.

x See Ezek. 13. 5.

& 22. 30.

Luke 14. 31, 32.

¶ Or, spirit.

y Ps. 139. 2.

z ch. 5. 8. & 8. 9.

a Deut. 32. 13. &

33. 29.

Micah 1. 3.

b Isa. 47. 4.

Jer. 10. 16.

ch. 5. 8. & 9. 6.

a Jer. 7. 29.

Ezek. 19. 1. &

27. 2.

b 2 Chron. 15. 2.

Jer. 12. 13.

ver. 6.

c Isa. 55. 3.

d ch. 4. 4.

e ch. 8. 14.

not to rain upon another city: one piece was rained upon, and the piece whereupon it rained not withered. ⁸ So two or three cities wandered unto one city, to drink water; but they were not satisfied:

ⁿ Yet have ye not returned unto me, saith the LORD.

⁹ ° I have smitten you with blasting and mildew: ¶ when your gardens and your vineyards and your fig trees and your olive trees increased, ^p the palmer-worm devoured them:

Yet have ye not returned unto me, saith the LORD.

¹⁰ I have sent among you the pestilence ¶ ^q after the manner of Egypt: your young men have I slain with the sword, † and have taken away your horses; and I have made the stink of your camps to come up unto your nostrils:

^r Yet have ye not returned unto me, saith the LORD.

¹¹ I have overthrown *some* of you, as God overthrew ^s Sodom and Gomorrah, ^t and ye were as a firebrand plucked out of the burning:

^u Yet have ye not returned unto me, saith the LORD.

¹² Therefore thus will I do unto thee, O Israel: *and* because I will do this unto thee, ^x prepare to meet thy God, O Israel.

¹³ For, lo, he that formeth the mountains, and createth the ¶ wind, ^y and declareth unto man what *is* his thought, ^z that maketh the morning darkness, ^a and treadeth upon the high places of the earth, ^b The LORD, The God of hosts, *is* his name.

V. ¹ Hear ye this word which I ^a take up against you,

Even a lamentation, O house of Israel.

² The virgin of Israel is fallen; she shall no more rise:

She is forsaken upon her land; *there is* none to raise her up.

³ For thus saith the Lord God;

The city that went out *by* a thousand shall leave an hundred,

And that which went forth *by* an hundred shall leave ten,

To the house of Israel.

⁴ For thus saith the LORD unto the house of Israel,

^b Seek ye me, ^c and ye shall live:

⁵ But seek not ^d Beth-el, nor enter into Gilgal, and pass not to ^e Beersheba:

9. *When your gardens—increased*] Or rather, a *multitude of your gardens* (see *Vulg.*, *Targum*, *Syriac*, and the English margin) *the locust devoured*.

10. *taken away your horses*] By the sword of Hazael, king of Syria. Cp. 2 Kings viii. 12, with xiii. 3. 7.

13. *he—declareth unto man—his thought*] God knows what man thinks, and reveals man's thoughts to him (Ps. vii. 9; cxxxix. 2). The heart of man is deceitful (Jer. xvii. 9, 10), but God strips off the disguise and reveals man to himself. God did this by Nathan to David, by Elisha to Gehazi, by St. Peter to Ananias and Sapphira. How much more will He do it at the Great Day by Christ, Who “knows what is in man”! Therefore, O man, whoever thou art, “Prepare to meet thy God.”

PROPHECY OF JUDGMENT ON THE WICKED.

CH. V. 1. *Hear ye this—a lamentation*] The Prophet Amos now proceeds a step farther. He had warned Israel of coming judgment. He had declared the merciful calls they have received from God, in successive chastisements, exhorting them to repentance. He now sees judgment present, and describes it in a pathetic dirge over Israel.

Hear this word, this heavy burden, which I, Amos, the bearer (see above, on i. 1), *take up*, lift up, as a weight, to let it fall upon you from the hand of God. The consequence of this burden is, that the *Virgin of Israel* (cp. Isa. xlvii. 1) *is fallen*: she lies prostrate under it (v. 2).

2. *She is forsaken upon her land*] Rather, *she is cast down upon her soil* (*Vulg.*, *Targum*, *Arabio*).

3. *shall leave*] Rather, *shall retain* as a remnant. He takes up the words of Deuteronomy (xxviii. 62), “Ye shall be left few in number, whereas ye were as the stars of heaven for multitude;” and he shows that God's blessings for obedience are turned into curses for disobedience. “One thousand shall flee at the rebuke of one; at the rebuke of five shall ye flee: till ye be left as a beacon upon the top of a mountain, and as an ensign on a hill” (Isa. xxx. 17); whereas, if they were obedient, “How should one of them chase a thousand!” (Deut. xxxii. 30. Josh. xxiii. 10). As the ancient Christian Poet says, “If the Lord is against us, our walls become cobwebs; but if the Lord is with us, even cobwebs become walls.”

PROMISE OF MERCY TO THE PENITENT.

4. *Seek ye me, and ye shall live*] Therefore this prophecy of judgment is designed to declare in mercy, that if Israel repents, the judgment will not be inflicted. He had before repeated four times His sorrowful complaint, “*Ye have not returned unto Me*” (iv. 6. 9. 10, 11); and now He repeats four times His gracious promise, *Seek ye Me, and ye shall live* (vv. 4. 6. 8. 14). Such was His long-suffering to Israel.

5. *pass not to Beersheba*] Bethel and Gilgal, on account of their ancient sacred reminiscences and associations, derived from patriarchal history, had been seized upon by Jeroboam (as Mahometans seize upon churches and change them into mosques), in order that he might destroy the connexion of Judah with them, and might avail himself of their sanctity as a lure for attracting votaries to his own form of religious worship. See on

- For Gilgal shall surely go into captivity, and 'Beth-el shall come to nought.
- ⁶ * Seek the LORD, and ye shall live;
Lest he break out like fire in the house of Joseph, and devour it,
And *there be none to quench it* in Beth-el.
- ⁷ Ye who ^h turn judgment to wormwood,
And leave off righteousness in the earth,
- ⁸ Seek him that maketh the ⁱ seven stars and Orion,
And turneth the shadow of death into the morning,
^k And maketh the day dark with night:
That ^l calleth for the waters of the sea,
And poureth them out upon the face of the earth:
^m The LORD is his name:
- ⁹ That strengtheneth the [†] spoiled against the strong,
So that the spoiled shall come against the fortress.
- ¹⁰ ⁿ They hate him that rebuketh in the gate,
And they ^o abhor him that speaketh uprightly.
- ¹¹ Forasmuch therefore as your treading is upon the poor,
And ye take from him burdens of wheat:
^p Ye have built houses of hewn stone, but ye shall not dwell in them;
Ye have planted [†] pleasant vineyards, but ye shall not drink wine of them.
- ¹² For I know your manifold transgressions and your mighty sins:
^q They afflict the just, they take ^{||} a bribe,
And they ^r turn aside the poor in the gate *from their right*.
- ¹³ Therefore ^s the prudent shall keep silence in that time;
For it is an evil time.
- ¹⁴ Seek good, and not evil, that ye may live:
And so the LORD, the God of hosts, shall be with you, ^t as ye have spoken.
- ¹⁵ ^u Hate the evil, and love the good, and establish judgment in the gate:
^x It may be that the LORD God of hosts will be gracious unto the remnant of Joseph.
- ¹⁶ Therefore the LORD, the God of hosts, the Lord, saith thus;

Before
CHRIST
787.f Hos. 4. 15. &
10. 8.
g ver. 4.

h ch. 6. 12.

i Job 9. 9. &
38. 31.

k Ps. 104. 20.

l Job 38. 34.
ch. 9. 6.

m ch. 4. 13.

† Heb. *spoil*.

n Isa. 29. 21.

o 1 Kings 22. 8.

p Deut. 28. 30,
38, 39.

Micah 6. 15.

Zeph. 1. 13.

Hag. 1. 6.

† Heb. *vineyards
of desire*.

q ch. 2. 6.

|| Or, *a ransom*.

r Isa. 29. 21.

ch. 2. 7.

s ch. 6. 10.

t Micah 3. 11.

u Ps. 34. 14. &
97. 10.

Rom. 12. 9.

x Exod. 32. 30.

2 Kings 19. 4.

Joel 2. 14.

Hosea iv. 15. But Jeroboam was not content with appropriating Bethel and Gilgal in his own domain, for this purpose, but he also laid his hands on Beersheba (celebrated in the history of Abraham, and where God appeared to him (Gen. xxi. 33; xxvi. 33, 34), and to Isaac and Jacob (Gen. xxvi. 24; xli. 1, 2), and beyond the limits of Jeroboam's Kingdom of Israel, and even to the south of the kingdom of Judah, and he made it to be a place of religious pilgrimage for his people. That Beersheba was defiled with idolatry, is evident from 2 Kings xxiii. 8. Cp. below, viii. 14.

But all these arts of state-policy were of no avail, as the Prophet here declares. Bethel and Gilgal, notwithstanding their former sanctity, will be given up by God to destruction.

— *Gilgal shall surely go into captivity*] There is a paronomasia, or play upon words in the original, which renders it more expressive, "*Gilgal galah yigleh*"—the place of *rolling away* (such was the origin of the name *Gilgal*, because there God *rolled away* the reproach of Egypt from Israel; see on Josh. v. 9) shall be clean *rolled away*. Cp. Isa. xxii. 18, "He will toss thee like a *ball* into a large country," as a "*rota rotando rotabitur*" (*A Lapide*).

This is the law of God's dealings with man; He "curses our blessings," if we do not use them aright (Mal. ii. 2). Christ, the Corner Stone, will break to pieces those who fall upon it; and it will grind to powder those on whom it falls (Matt. xxi. 44). Our holiest Gilgals—our Sacraments, our Scriptures, our Sermons, our Sundays—which were designed by God to roll away from us the reproach of Egypt, will be rolled away from us, if we do not use them aright; and will roll us downward into our destruction.

— *Beth-el shall come to nought*] Beth-el shall become *aven*, or vanity. See Hos. iv. 15, where it is called *Beth-aven*, or house of vanity.

7. *Ye who turn judgment to wormwood*] A metaphor adopted from Hos. x. 4. See the note there, and cp. vi. 12.

— *And leave off righteousness in the earth*] Rather, *cast righteousness down to the ground*; as the Jews did when they killed "the Lord our righteousness" (Jer. xxiii. 6).

8. *that maketh the seven stars*] Ye who worship the stars are rebelling against Him Who made them. The *seven stars* (Heb. *cimah*, cluster or group) are the Pleiades. See above, on Job ix. 9; xxxviii. 31.

— *Orion*] Heb. *cesil*. See above, on Job ix. 9; xxxviii. 31. The "Seven Stars" and Orion are mentioned, as including the rest by a poetic *synecdoche*.

9. *That strengtheneth the spoiled*] Rather, *that maketh spoil* (see margin), or *desolation, to flash upon the strong*. Cp. *Sept.* and *Arabic*, and *Keil*.

— *So that the spoiled*] Or rather, *so that spoil*, or desolation, *cometh on the fortress* (*Sept.*, *Vulg.*, *Arabic*).

10. *They hate him that rebuketh in the gate*] In the place of public concourse, whether for deliberation or administration of justice. See on Job v. 4; xxxi. 21; and below, v. 15; and Isaiah's imitation of these words, they "lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate." These words were fully accomplished in Christ (John vii. 7; viii. 45; xv. 25).

11. *ye take from him burdens of wheat*] Ye exact presents of wheat from the poor man, as bribes, to the administration of what you call justice.

On these verses see *Bp. Sanderson's Sermons*, ii. 353—356.

12. *They afflict—they turn*] Or rather, *afflicting, taking*. The words are participles.

13. *the prudent shall keep silence*] See above, on Prov. xxviii. 12, 28, "When the wicked rise, men hide themselves."

Before
CHRIST
757.

y Jer. 9. 17.

z Exod. 12. 12.
Nahum 1. 12.
a Isa. 5. 19.
Jer. 17. 15.
Ezek. 12. 22, 27.
2 Pet. 3. 4.
b Jer. 30. 7.
Joel 2. 2.
Zeph. 1. 15.
c Jer. 48. 44.

d Prov. 21. 27.
Isa. 1. 11—16.
Jer. 6. 20.
Hos. 8. 13.
e Lev. 26. 31.
|| Or, *smell your holy days*.
f Isa. 66. 3.
Micah 6. 6, 7.
|| Or, *thank offerings*.

g Hos. 6. 6.
Micah 6. 8.
† Heb. *roll*.

h Deut. 32. 17.
Josh. 24. 14.
Ezek. 20. 8, 16, 24.
Acts 7. 42, 43.
See Isa. 43. 23.
|| Or, *Sicuth your king*.
i 1 Kings 11. 33.

Wailing shall be in all streets ;
And they shall say in all the highways, Alas ! alas !
And they shall call the husbandman to mourning,
And ^y such as are skilful of lamentation to wailing.

¹⁷ And in all vineyards shall be wailing :

For ^z I will pass through thee, saith the LORD.

¹⁸ ^a Woe unto you that desire the day of the LORD !

To what end is it for you ?

^b The day of the LORD is darkness, and not light.

¹⁹ ^c As if a man did flee from a lion, and a bear met him ;

Or went into the house, and leaned his hand on the wall, and a serpent bit him.

²⁰ Shall not the day of the LORD be darkness, and not light ?

Even very dark, and no brightness in it ?

²¹ ^d I hate, I despise your feast days,

And ^e I will not || smell in your solemn assemblies.

²² ^f Though ye offer me burnt offerings and your meat offerings, I will not accept them :

Neither will I regard the || peace offerings of your fat beasts.

²³ Take thou away from me the noise of thy songs ;

For I will not hear the melody of thy viols.

²⁴ ^g But let judgment † run down as waters,

And righteousness as a mighty stream.

²⁵ ^h Have ye offered unto me sacrifices and offerings in the wilderness forty years, O house of Israel ?

²⁶ But ye have borne || the tabernacle ⁱ of your Moloch and Chiun your images, the star of your god, which ye made to yourselves.

16. *such as are skilful of lamentation*] Professional mourners (2 Chron. xxxv. 25. Jer. ix. 17. Matt. ix. 23).

17. *I will pass through thee*] To destroy thee; as I passed through Egypt on that night when a great cry was made, "for there was not a house where there was not one dead" (Exod. xii. 12, 30);

18. *Woe unto you that desire the day of the LORD!*] This is to be explained from the foregoing prophecies of Joel. That Prophet had foretold the Coming of the *Day of the Lord*, when Jehovah, the God of Israel, would judge all the heathen, and deliver and exalt His people Israel and Judah. See Joel ii. 1, 2, 11, 31; iii. 2, 14. The words *day of the Lord* occur four times in the prophecies of Joel, but not in any earlier Prophet.

The Hebrew Nation had flattered itself that Joel's prophecy announced blessings to itself, because they were children of Abraham; but Joel had warned them that only they who *call on the Name of the Lord*, i.e. who serve the Lord, and not any other god, would be saved (ii. 32), and that the Day of the Lord would be a terrible day to sinners.

A similar spirit manifested itself in those who said, in Jeremiah's days, "The Temple of the Lord, the Temple of the Lord, the Temple of the Lord are these" (Jer. vii. 4); and who prided themselves on their national religious privileges, but did not obey the Lord of the Temple, and were therefore condemned by the Prophet. A like temper was manifested after the Captivity. The Hebrew Nation was eager for the Messiah's Coming to the new-built temple; but the Prophets reminded them that His Coming would be a day of fear and woe to the ungodly. See Mal. iii. 2.

19. *leaned his hand on the wall, and a serpent bit him*] Serpents often lurk concealed in the walls of Eastern houses (Lane's Egyptians, pp. 342, 343).

21. *I hate, I despise your feast days*] Language repeated by Isaiah (i. 11, 13, 14), and Jeremiah (vi. 20).

— *I will not smell*] Words derived from Leviticus xxvi. 31, "I will not smell the savour of your sweet odours." See the note there, and on Gen. viii. 21, "The Lord smelled a sweet savour," describing God's acceptance of Noah's sacrifice, typical of the one true and perfect Sacrifice well pleasing to God. See

Eph. v. 2, "Christ hath given Himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a *sweet-smelling savour*."

23. *Take thou away from me the noise of thy songs; for I will not hear the melody of thy viols*] Or *harps*. They thought to please God by vocal and instrumental music; but it was an abomination to Him, because it came from hypocrites whose heart was far from Him. See below, on vi. 5. Compare the account given of the inventors of musical instruments in the history of the family of Cain (to be destroyed by the flood), Gen. iv. 21, and the note there; and Job xxi. 12, 13; and Isa. v. 12, "The harp and the viol, the tabret and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of His hands." Here is a warning to all who think to please God by elaborate musical services in His house; while they do not take heed to worship Him with their hearts, and to obey Him in their daily life.

24. *But let judgment run down as waters, and righteousness as a mighty stream*] The tide of music rolled down in a full stream of sound from many voices and harps, like the sound of many waters. Cp. Ezek. xliii. 2. Rev. i. 15; xiv. 2. But what did it profit when there was a drought of justice and righteousness? Cp. Eccles. xv. 9. Ps. l. 16.

25. *Have ye offered unto me*] Rather, *Did ye offer unto Me sacrifices in the wilderness, forty years, O ye house of Israel?* No; ye did not offer sacrifice to *Me*, but ye worshipped *idols*.

This is an important text, in answer to some recent allegations against the veracity of the Pentateuch (see note above, on Num. xv. 2), on the ground that the Israelites would not find a sufficient number of cattle in the wilderness for compliance with the sacrificial requirements of the Levitical Law. The fact is (as has been shown in that note), that the Levitical Law was given at Sinai under the supposition that Israel would obey God and would enter Canaan *within a few days after* the giving of the Law, and would observe it *there*. But it was not given with a view to their observance of it in the wilderness. And by their disobedience, they were excommunicated for thirty-eight years from God's favour, and condemned to wander in the wilderness, and were deprived of the privilege of observing it.

26. *But ye have borne*] Ye did not offer sacrifices to *Me*, ye

27 Therefore will I cause you to go into captivity ^k beyond Damascus,

Saith the LORD, ^l whose name is The God of hosts.

VI. ¹ Woe ^a to them *that* ^{||} are at ease in Zion,

And trust in the mountain of Samaria,

Which are named ^b ^{||} chief of the nations.

To whom the house of Israel came !

2 ^c Pass ye unto ^d Calneh, and see ;

And from thence go ye to ^e Hamath the great :

Then go down to ^f Gath of the Philistines :

^g Be they better than these kingdoms ?

Or their border greater than your border ?

3 Ye that ^h put far away the ⁱ evil day,

^k And cause ^l the ^{||} seat of violence to come near ;

4 That lie upon beds of ivory, and ^{||} stretch themselves upon their couches,

And eat the lambs out of the flock,

And the calves out of the midst of the stall ;

5 ^m That ^{||} chant to the sound of the viol,

And invent to themselves instruments of music, ⁿ like David ;

6 That drink ^{||} wine in bowls,

And anoint themselves with the chief ointments :

^o But they are not grieved for the [†] affliction of Joseph.

7 Therefore now shall they go captive with the first that go captive,

Before
CHRIST

77.
k 2 Kings 17. c.
l ch. 4. 13.
a Luke 6. 21.
|| Or, are secure.

b Ex. 19. 5.
|| Or, first fruits.

c Jer. 2. 10.
d Isa. 10. 9.

Taken
about
791.

e 2 Kings 18. 14.
f 2 Chr. 26. 6.
g Nahum 3. 8.

h Ezek. 12. 27.
i ch. 5. 18. & 9. 10.
k ch. 5. 12.
ver. 12.
l Ps. 94. 20.
|| Or, habitation.
|| Or, abound with
superfluities.

m Isa. 5. 12.
|| Or, quaver.

n 1 Chr. 23. 5.
|| Or, in bowls of
wine.

o Gen. 37. 25.
† Heb. breach.

did not adore *Me*, Whose glory dwelt in the moving tabernacle; but ye took up, and bore along with you, the tabernacle of your king (not the true King, Jehovah, the Lord of heaven and earth, and the Divine Protector of Israel, but your own chosen king, *Moloch*—which signifies king). Cp. 1 Kings xi. 7; and Sept. here; and the quotation by St. Stephen, Acts vii. 43, where the word *Moloch* is expressed.

— and *Chim* your images, the star of your god] Rather, and the stand (pedestal, or basis; the word seems to be derived from the Hebrew *cân*, to stand upright, Gesen. 386) of your images (so Ribera, Junius, Hengst., Keil, and, doubtingly, Dr. Pusey); others render it the statue of your images (so Vulg., Gesen. in Thes.). Others suppose that *Chim* is the same as *Saturnus*, and as *Remphan* among the Egyptians, and that the Sept., therefore, adopted the word *Remphan* for it. See Fuerst, 653; Pfeiffer, 439; Surenhusius, 415; and note below, on Acts vii. 43, and Dr. Pusey, 200; and Gesen. Lex. 395. Cp. Turpie, 181, who thinks that *Chim* was a sun-god.

27. Therefore will I cause you to go into captivity beyond Damascus] Beyond the capital of Syria, in which you trust for help (see above, iii. 12), instead of relying on Me, the Lord God of Israel.

It was very appropriate, therefore, in Amos to use the word *Damascus* here; and it was no less proper for St. Stephen, in his speech at Jerusalem to the Jewish Sanhedrim, where he refers to this prophecy, to use the word *Babylon*, “I will carry you away beyond Babylon,” for such a carrying away had been foretold by Isaiah, and Jeremiah, xx. 4, 5. St. Stephen is quoting from “the Book of the Prophets,” and nothing is more common among writers and speakers in the New Testament, than to combine into one several passages from various Prophetical Scriptures. See the note below, on Acts vii. p. 69, and the numerous instances of this practice collected in the excellent work of Surenhusius (Catallage, Amst. 1713), there cited.

CH. VI. 1. Woe to them that are at ease] Cp. Isa. xxxii. 9. — named chief of the nations] Rather, the named (i.e. the renowned princes; see Num. i. 16; xvi. 2) among the chief of the nations, i.e., Woe to the principal men of the princely nation of the Earth! Woe to the princes of Israel, the first among the nations in God’s favour (Exod. xix. 5).

— To whom the house of Israel came] To which (princes) the house of Israel resorts for help and guidance in affairs of state.

2. Pass ye unto Calneh—Hamath—Gath] Look to East, North, and West, and see whether any of the great kingdoms there are better (i.e. more favoured by God) than these kingdoms

of Israel. On Calneh in Babylonia, see Gen. x. 10. Isa. x. 10. Ezek. xxvii. 23. On Hamath in Syria, see Gen. x. 18. Num. xiii. 21; xxxiv. 8. Isa. x. 9. On Gath, see 1 Sam. v. 8.

These passages (vi. 1—6, and vii. 14, 15) are quoted by St. Augustine (de doct. Christ. iv. 16) as specimens of divine eloquence and inspiration in one who, like the prophet Amos, was “a herdman” (i. 1).

5. That chant] That trill (Heb. *parat*), light ballads.

— And invent to themselves instruments of music, like David] Who flatter themselves that they will be blessed of God as David was, because they are like him in one particular—inventing musical instruments; but they invent them to themselves, not to God’s glory—as David did.

On the flattering self-delusion of persons who imagine that, because they imitate good men in some particulars, they will therefore be favoured by God, see the excellent remarks of Bp. Sanderson, commenting on this text in his Lectures on Conscience (Lect. iii. § 13, vol. iv. p. 52).

6. That drink wine in bowls] Even in sacrificial bowls (Exod. xxxviii. 3. Num. iv. 14. 2 Chron. iv. 8); which they profane by sacrilegious revelry—as Belshazzar did at Babylon.

— anoint themselves with the chief ointments] Although in time of mourning all anointing was omitted (2 Sam. xiv. 2), yet they, in this crisis, when the divine wrath was about to break out upon the nation, and they ought to be sitting in sackcloth and ashes, are curious to procure the best ointment for their own use. Roman Patricians, in Cicero’s days, cared only for their own fish-ponds, that their tables might be well supplied with mullets and other fish from them, when their country was in danger of being overwhelmed with a flood; they thought “only of the cock-boat of their own fortunes when the vessel of the State was being wrecked.” The Emperor Nero was fiddling, when Rome was in flames. . . . Here is another prophetic warning for our days of selfish luxury and lack of zeal for God.

— are not grieved for the affliction of Joseph] That is, they grieve not themselves for the ruin (literally, breach) of their Church and country. Joseph, the ancestor of Ephraim, the head of the ten tribes, was afflicted by his own brethren, who saw the anguish of his soul, and were not moved by his tears (Gen. xlii. 21); and when they had sold him to the Ishmaelites, sat down, in heartless indifference, “to eat bread.” See Gen. xxxvii. 25.

So their descendants, the Jews, feasted at the Passover after they had killed the true Joseph (John xviii. 28). How many dwell in ceiled houses, and sing to the sound of the harp, and feast on the richest dainties, and care nothing for the sorrows of Christ and His Church! nay, rather rejoice in them! (Rev. xi. 10.)

Before
CHRIST

Jer. 51. 14.
Ileb. 6. 13, 17.
q Ps. 47. 4.
Ezek. 24. 21.
ch. 8. 7.
† Ileb. the fulness
thereof.

And the banquet of them that stretched themselves shall be removed.

8^p The Lord God hath sworn by himself, saith the LORD the God of hosts,
I abhor^a the excellency of Jacob, and hate his palaces:
Therefore will I deliver up the city with all[†] that is therein.

9 And it shall come to pass, if there remain ten men in one house, that they shall die.

10 And a man's uncle shall take him up, and he that burneth him, to bring out the bones out of the house, and shall say unto him that is by the sides of the house, *Is there yet any with thee?* and he shall say, No. Then shall he say,
Hold thy tongue: ^sfor || we may not make mention of the name of the LORD.

r ch. 5. 13.
s ch. 8. 2.
|| Or, they will not,
or, have not.
† Isa. 55. 11.
n ch. 3. 15.
|| Or, droppings.

11 For, behold, the LORD commandeth,
And he will smite the great house with || breaches,
And the little house with clefts.

12 Shall horses run upon the rock?
Will one plow *there* with oxen?

x Hos. 10. 4.
ch. 5. 7.

For ^xye have turned judgment into gall,
And the fruit of righteousness into hemlock:

13 Ye which rejoice in a thing of nought,
Which say, Have we not taken to us horns by our own strength?

y Jer. 5. 15.

14 But, behold, ^yI will raise up against you a nation, O house of Israel, saith the LORD the God of hosts;

z Num. 34. 8.
1 Kings 8. 65.
|| Or, valley.

And they shall afflict you from the ^zentering in of Hemath unto the || river of the wilderness.

|| Or, green worms.

VII. ¹ Thus hath the Lord God shewed unto me; and, behold, he formed || grasshoppers in the beginning of the shooting up of the latter growth; and,

7. *the banquet*] Rather, the cry of revelry (*Gesen.* 509).

9. *ten men*] A large number—they shall all die.

10. *a man's uncle*] Or, next of kin (*Gesen.* 191), whose duty it was to bury his deceased relative.

— *he that burneth him*] The Israelites did not burn corpses, but bury them; except in times of great mortality, which is implied here by this mention of *burning*.

— *by the sides of the house*] Or rather, at the back of the house, in its extreme corner.

— *No*] They are all dead except one—myself.

— *Then shall he say*] Then shall the kinsman answer, *Hush!* for *there must be no mention of the name of the Lord*. This last man was expected by the kinsman to cry out in a piteous appeal for mercy to the Lord. But he, in an obstinate and godless fit of proud and sullen despair, checks and stifles the appeal, saying, "*Hush*." Cp. viii. 3, where the same word is used.

— *for we may not make mention of the name of the LORD*] This represents the wretched, reprobate condition to which Israel would be reduced. As *S. Jerome* says, "*Hoc commemorat ut ostendat, nec malorum quidem pondere et necessitate compulso velle nomen Dei confiteri*."

We see here a portraiture of the death-bed of the hardened infidel. He who has obstinately abused the intellectual powers given him by God, to evil against God's truth, will be forsaken by Him at the last, and will not be able to utter His Name.

11. *with breaches—with clefts*] Or, *into breaches and shivers*.

12. *Shall horses run upon the rock?*] No; but *ye* do what is quite as preposterous. And, as horses stumble and wound themselves by running on sharp rocks; and as no harvest is to be expected from the ploughing of oxen there; so, in the self-chosen way of your own evil passions (which is preferred by you to the plain and even road of the law of God), you only lacerate yourselves, and reap no fruit from your labours.

— *ye have turned judgment into gall*] See v. 7.

13. *Have we not taken to us horns*] Horns are symbols of power (*Dent.* xxxiii. 17. 1 Kings xxii. 11). And these sinners ask, "Have we not acquired to ourselves help by our own might?" They speak like him who deified his own right hand and his own weapon, "*Dextra mihi Deus, et telum, quod missile libro*."

14. *a nation*] Assyria.

— *entering in of Hemath*] The northern boundary of Israel. See r. 2. Num. xxiv. 8. 2 Kings xiv. 25. 28.

— *the river of the wilderness*] The southern boundary; the *Wady el Ahsy*, which separated Moab from Edom at the southern extremity of the Dead Sea (2 Kings xiv. 25).

FIVE VISIONS. ISRAEL'S PUNISHMENT AND RESTORATION.

CH. VII. The last portion of the prophecies of Amos (ch. vii.—ix.) contains five Visions, which confirm what has been foretold in the foregoing portion.

Amos has five Parables (iii. 3—8) and five Visions.

The first four visions are distinguished from the fifth or last vision (ch. ix.) in this respect, that the first four begin with the same formula, "Thus hath the Lord God showed me;" the last begins with the words, "I saw the Lord."

They differ also in their contents. The first four symbolize the judgments which have already fallen in part on the Kingdom of Israel, and in part are still to fall; the last Vision, while it proclaims the overthrow of the ancient constitution of the Kingdom of Israel, reveals its *restoration* in a far more glorious and everlasting monarchy—that of CHRIST (ix. 11—15).

Of these four Visions the first two (vii. 1—6) contain a promise of divine *mercy* in reply to the Prophet's prayer; and thus they represent the memorable fact, that God was very patient with Israel, and that His judgments were not inflicted upon Israel at once, but after frequent admonitions and calls to repentance, and after many acts of divine love, sparing Israel when they deserved punishment. The second two Visions contain no assurance of mercy, because the divine long-suffering has been exhausted by Israel's sin, and is to be followed by *judgment*.

But Amos foretells, that eventually, in consequence of the infliction of salutary chastisement, Israel will be brought to repentance, and be reconciled to God in Christ, the beloved Son of God.

Thus we see that the Prophet Amos takes up and continues the strain of his predecessor Hosea, who has shown that all God's chastisements of Israel were due to Israel's sin, and were tempered with love, and will lead to the restoration of Israel to God in the Church of Christ. See Hosea xiii., xiv.

The Visions, like the Parables (iii. 3—8), begin with a *prosaic recitative*, which bursts forth into an impassioned, poetical, and antistropheal prophecy.

1. *he formed grasshoppers*] Rather, *he was forming locusts*. Cp. Nah. iii. 17, where the same word is used (*Gesen.* 161).

lo, it was the latter growth after the king's mowings. ² And it came to pass, that when they had made an end of eating the grass of the land, then I said, O Lord God, forgive, I beseech thee: ^a || by whom shall Jacob arise? for he is small.

Before
CHRIST
787.

a Isa. 51. 19.
ver. 5.
|| Or, who of (or,
for) Jacob shall
stand?
b Deut. 32. 36.
ver. 6.
Jonah 3. 10.
James 5. 16.

³ ^b The LORD repented for this: It shall not be, saith the LORD.

⁴ Thus hath the Lord God shewed unto me: and, behold, the Lord God called to contend by fire, and it devoured the great deep, and did eat up a part.

⁵ Then said I, O Lord God, cease, I beseech thee: ^c by whom shall Jacob arise? for he is small.

c ver. 2, 3.

⁶ The LORD repented for this: This also shall not be, saith the Lord God.

⁷ Thus he shewed me: and, behold, the Lord stood upon a wall made by a plumbline, with a plumbline in his hand. ⁸ And the Lord said unto me, Amos, what seest thou? And I said, A plumbline. Then said the Lord, Behold, ^d I will set a plumbline in the midst of my people Israel:

d See 2 Kings
21. 13.
Isa. 28. 17. &
34. 11.
Jam. 2. 8.
e ch. 8. 2.
Micah 7. 18.
f Beer-sheba,
Gen. 26. 23. &
41. 1.
ch. 5. 5. & 8. 11.
g Fulfilled,
2 Kings 15. 10.
h 1 Kings 12. 32.
i 2 Kings 11. 23.

^e I will not again pass by them any more:

⁹ ^f And the high places of Isaac shall be desolate,

And the sanctuaries of Israel shall be laid waste;

And ^g I will rise against the house of Jeroboam with the sword.

¹⁰ Then Amaziah ^h the priest of Beth-el sent to ⁱ Jeroboam king of Israel, saying, Amos hath conspired against thee in the midst of the house of Israel: the land is not able to bear all his words. ¹¹ For thus Amos saith, Jeroboam shall die by the sword, and Israel shall surely be led away captive out of their own land.

¹² Also Amaziah said unto Amos, O thou seer, go, flee thee away into the land of Judah, and there eat bread, and prophesy there: ¹³ but ^k prophesy not again any more at Beth-el: ^l for it is the king's || chapel, and it is the † king's court.

k ch. 2. 12.

l 1 Kings 12. 32.
& 13. 1.
|| Or, sanctuary.
† Heb. house of
the kingdom.

Thus God showed to Amos that the vast army of locusts described by Joel (i. 4) were creatures formed by Him to execute His purposes.

— *the latter growth*] The second crop; so that this would be consumed by the locusts.

— *after the king's mowings*] Therefore this first visitation was a merciful one. God might have formed the locusts so as to destroy the first crop; but He allowed the king to mow and to gather-in that. Thus He had dealt with Israel: He had given great successes to various Kings of Israel, especially to Jeroboam I. and to Jeroboam II. (see 2 Kings xiv. 27); but they were not drawn to God by these acts of kindness; therefore, after these “*King's mowings*,” He sends locusts to consume the *aftergrowth*. And even now He relents at the Prophet's penitential intercession (asking, *by whom shall Jacob arise?* or, *who is Jacob, that he should stand?* (Gesen. 469) and confessing his weakness, *for he is small*); and thus he shows that if Israel will repent, Israel will still be spared.

4. *by fire*] A severer judgment, sent because of Israel's impenitence under the former judgment. These successive judgments are like the successive plagues of Egypt, sent to bring Pharaoh to repentance.

— *it devoured the great deep*] The fire was devouring the ocean (cp. Gen. i. 2; vii. 11. Isa. li. 10), especially the Mediterranean sea, bordering Palestine. See the next note. The power of this fire showed it to be a fire of God; it was a precursor of the great conflagration which will consume the World—even the Sea itself—at the Great Day (2 Pet. iii. 10). Compare note on Jer. li. 32, where the fire of God, burning Babylon, is described as burning even its lakes and moats.

— *did eat up a part*] Rather, *it devoured the portion*—God's favoured portion and inheritance, Israel. See Deut. xxxii. 9, where the same word, *chilek*, is used. Cp. Micah ii. 4.

7. *with a plumbline*] The wall of Israel had been built by God with a plumb-line, and now it would be destroyed with a plumb-line (cp. 2 Kings xxi. 13. Isa. xxxv. 2. Lam. ii. 8); that is, there was, so to speak, an architectural design and plan in God's work of destroying Israel, no less than in His former favour to

Israel in building him up. God does every thing according to measure, number, and weight (Wisdom xi. 20). As one said of old, “The Deity is a perfect Geometrician.” And the plumb-line of destruction was to be coextensive with the plumb-line of construction—it was to be total. This was fulfilled in the captivity and dispersion of Israel, which was so ordered as to be preparatory to the building up again and restoration of Israel, in Christ, and in His Universal Church, on the ruins of the literal Jerusalem. See below, ix. 11—15; and above, *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 299.

9. *the house of Jeroboam*] The house of Jeroboam II. (2 Kings xiv. 23—28). He does not say Jeroboam himself (as Amaziah, the priest of Bethel, falsely alleged, v. 11), who died in peace, but the house of Jeroboam, which came to a miserable end (2 Kings xv. 10).

10. *the priest of Beth-el*] The High Priest of the sanctuary of the golden calf there charges Amos, the Prophet of the Lord, with high treason against the King, and says that the land, i. e. the people, cannot bear his words; that his prophecies are intolerable (cp. Wisdom ii. 12. 15); although the King's house, his dynasty, and his nation, would have been saved, if they had listened to his words; they were eventually destroyed because they rejected his warnings.

12. *Judah*] Thy own country. See i. 1.

— *eat bread*] As if the design of Amos in prophesying was to gain a livelihood, like those false Prophets who prophesied, and those false priests who taught, for hire! (Micah iii. 11.) Go thou to Judah, and eat bread there, and do not interfere with me, but let me eat bread in Bethel. Do thou live by thy trade there, and let me live by my trade here (S. Jerome).

13. *it is the king's chapel, and it is the king's court*] Bethel is the king's sanctuary and house of the kingdom—i. e. it is a chief shrine of the national worship. Observe, This priest of Bethel claims honour for it, not because it is the Lord's Sanctuary, but because it is the King's Sanctuary; and not because it is the house of God, but the house of Jeroboam. All claims of reverence for a Church simply and merely as a national establishment, independently of Divine institution, are no better than these assertions of Amaziah. The first royal propounder of

Before
CHRIST
787.
m 1 Kings 20. 35.
2 Kings 2. 5. &
4. 38. & 6. 1.
n ch. 1. 1.
Zech. 13. 5.
|| Or, wild figs.
† Heb. from
behind.

o Ezek. 21. 2.
Micah 2. 6.
p See Jer. 28. 12.
& 29. 21, 25, 31, 32.
q Isa. 13. 16.
Lam. 5. 11.
Hos. 4. 13.
Zech. 14. 2.

a Ezek. 7. 2.
b ch. 7. 8.
c ch. 5. 23.
† Heb. shālī howl.

d ch. 6. 9, 10.
† Heb. be silent.
e Ps. 14. 4.
Prov. 20. 14.

|| Or, month.

f Neh. 13. 15, 16.
† Heb. open.
g Micah 6. 10, 11.
† Heb. perverting
the balances of
deceit, Hos. 12. 7.
h ch. 2. 6.

¹⁴ Then answered Amos, and said to Amaziah, I *was* no prophet, neither *was* I ^m a prophet's son; ⁿ but I *was* an herdsman, and a gatherer of || sycomore fruit: ¹⁵ and the LORD took me † as I followed the flock, and the LORD said unto me, Go, prophesy unto my people Israel.

¹⁶ Now therefore hear thou the word of the LORD:

Thou sayest, Prophecy not against Israel,
And ° drop not *thy word* against the house of Isaac.

¹⁷ ^p Therefore thus saith the LORD;

^q Thy wife shall be an harlot in the city,
And thy sons and thy daughters shall fall by the sword,
And thy land shall be divided by line;
And thou shalt die in a polluted land:
And Israel shall surely go into captivity forth of his land.

VIII. ¹ Thus hath the Lord God shewed unto me: and behold a basket of summer fruit. ² And he said, Amos, what seest thou?

And I said, A basket of summer fruit.

Then said the LORD unto me, ^a The end is come upon my people of Israel;

^b I will not again pass by them any more.

³ And ^c the songs of the temple † shall be howlings in that day, saith the Lord God:

There shall be many dead bodies in every place;

^d They shall cast *them* forth † with silence.

⁴ Hear this, O ye that ^e swallow up the needy,

Even to make the poor of the land to fail, ⁵ saying,

When will the || new moon be gone, that we may sell corn?

And ^f the sabbath, that we may † set forth wheat,

^g Making the ephah small, and the shekel great,

And † falsifying the balances by deceit?

⁶ That we may buy the poor for ^h silver,

And the needy for a pair of shoes;

Yea, and sell the refuse of the wheat?

what is now called Erastianism, as far as we know, was Jeroboam I.; the first priestly advocate of it, as far as we know, was Amaziah. *S. Jerome*, in his note here, applies these words to the Arians, who appealed to Arian Emperors, supporting their dogmas and persecuting the orthodox teachers by the secular arm. When, in the fourth century, Catholic Bishops of Spain invoked the power of the Emperor Maximus, and would have put the Priscillianists to death, they were sternly rebuked and vigorously opposed by the saintly and apostolic Bishop, S. Martin of Tours (*Sulp. Sever.*, Hist. Eccl. ii. 50).

Observe, also, that it is often the lot of God's Prophets—indeed, it was the condition of Christ Himself (Luke xxiii. 2) and of His Apostles (Acts xvii. 7) to be taxed with disloyalty to the Crown, when they are discharging a duty of patriotism by upholding religious truth (which is the only safeguard of Thrones) in opposition to unbelief, heresy, schism, sacrilege, idolatry, and profaneness.

¹⁴. *I was no prophet, neither was I a prophet's son*] Literally, “No prophet, I; no prophet's son (or disciple, 1 Kings xx. 35. Matt. xii. 27), I.” Thou chargest me with making myself a Prophet in order that I may eat bread, i.e. for the sake of a livelihood (see v. 12); but I have not sought that profession, I do not claim it. I am a mere herdsman; and, so far from gratifying my appetite by prophesying, I am content with the simplest fare, the fruit of the mulberry-fig. See 1 Kings x. 27. Ps. lxxviii. 47. “In Palestine, at the present day, none but the very poor consent to be herdmen, and only such gather sycomore fruit or use it” (*Dr. Thomson*, The Land and the Book, 23).

¹⁶. *drop not thy word*] Cp. Deut. xxxii. 2. Ezek. xx. 46; xxi. 2. Micah ii. 6. 11. Probably Amaziah had used this word (*netaph*) in ridicule of the prophetic utterances of Amos.

¹⁷. *Thy wife shall be an harlot*] Thou teachest idolatry, which

is spiritual harlotry; and thou shalt be punished by harlotry in thy own house for thy sin.

— *thy land shall be divided by line*] According to my Vision (v. 7).

CH. VIII. 1. *a basket of summer fruit*] A basket of ripe fruit, signifying that Israel was ripe for judgment. Cp. Rev. xiv. 18. “Gather the clusters of the Earth, for her grapes are fully ripe.”

2. *The end is come*] The end, Hebr. *kets*, with allusion to the Hebrew word *kails*, summer fruit, used in the foregoing verse.

3. *the temple*] Or palace; the idol temple of Bethel.

— *they shall cast them forth with silence*] Literally, “*he* (i.e. every one) casts *them* (the corpses) forth, saying, *hush!*” See vi. 10, and Judges iii. 19. Neh. viii. 11. Zeph. i. 7. Zech. ii. 13.

4. *that swallow up the needy*] Rather, that paut after them to devour them, like a dog or wild beast panting and yelping after its prey. Cp. Job v. 5. Ps. lvi. 1, 2; lvii. 3; above, ii. 7. Eccles. i. 5, where the same word (*shāaph*) is used.

5. *the new moon*] The holy day when, according to the law, trade was suspended. Cp. Num. xxviii. 11.

— *the sabbath*] Cp. Neh. xiii. 15, 16.

— *set forth wheat*] Literally, open out wheat—i.e. throw open our granaries, closed on the holy day, and display the samples of our corn in our sacks, and sell their contents.

— *making the ephah small, and the shekel great*] Cheating by giving scant measure for the ephah by which ye sell ($\frac{1}{16}$ of a bushel), and demanding greater weight than the right standard of the shekel, which ye charge as price for the goods sold.

6. *That we may buy the poor for silver*] To buy the poor by reducing him to the necessity of selling himself as a bondman (Lev. xxv. 39).

— *the needy for a pair of shoes*] Ch. ii. 6.

- 7 The LORD hath sworn by ⁱ the excellency of Jacob,
Surely ^k I will never forget any of their works.
- 8 ^l Shall not the land tremble for this,
And every one mourn that dwelleth therein?
And it shall rise up wholly as a flood;
And it shall be cast out and drowned, ^m as *by* the flood of Egypt.
- 9 And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Lord God,
ⁿ That I will cause the sun to go down at noon,
And I will darken the earth in the clear day:
- 10 And I will turn your feasts into mourning,
And all your songs into lamentation;
^o And I will bring up sackcloth upon all loins,
And baldness upon every head;
^p And I will make it as the mourning of an only son,
And the end thereof as a bitter day.
- 11 Behold, the days come, saith the Lord God,
That I will send a famine in the land,
Not a famine of bread, nor a thirst for water,
But ^q of hearing the words of the LORD:
- 12 And they shall wander from sea to sea,
And from the north even to the east,
They shall run to and fro to seek the word of the LORD,
And shall not find it.
- 13 In that day shall the fair virgins and young men faint for thirst.
- 14 They that ^r swear by ^s the sin of Samaria,
And say, Thy god, O Dan, liveth;
And, The ^t manner ^u of Beer-sheba liveth;
Even they shall fall, and never rise up again.
- IX. ¹ I saw the Lord standing upon the altar: and he said,
Smite the || lintel of the door, that the posts may shake:
- Before
CHRIST
787.
i ch. 6. 8.
k Hos. 8. 13. &
9. 9.
l Hos. 4. 3.
m ch. 9. 5.
n 791.
n Job 5. 14.
Isa. 13. 10. &
59. 9, 10.
Jer. 15. 9.
Micah 3. 6.
o Isa. 15. 2, 3.
Jer. 48. 37.
Ezek. 7. 18. &
27. 31.
p Jer. 6. 26.
Zech. 12. 10.
q 1 Sam. 3. 1.
Ps. 74. 9.
Ezek. 7. 26.
r Hos. 4. 15.
s Deut. 9. 21.
t Heb. way:
See Acts 9. 2. &
18. 25. & 19. 9, 23.
& 24. 14.
u ch. 5. 5.
|| Or, chapter, or,
knop.

7. *by the excellency of Jacob*] God Himself (1 Sam. xv. 29).

8. *it shall rise up wholly as a flood—drowned*] The whole land of Israel shall heave upward as a flood; it shall rise up and then sink downward, even as the flood of Egypt—the Nile. The land shall lose its stability, and become fluid, like the swollen flood of the river Nile in its inundations. Cp. below, ix. 5. Jer. xlv. 7, 8. The word *by*, which is not in the original, would be better omitted.

9. *I will cause the sun to go down at noon*] This prophecy has been supposed by some (*Hitzig*) to have been fulfilled by an eclipse of the sun, B.C. 784, the year of the death of Jeroboam II. (but this is very questionable, see *Pusey*, 217); or by one of the eclipses in B.C. 791; or in B.C. 771; or in B.C. 770 (*Ussher*, *Annales*, A.M. 3213).

However this may be, the climax of the fulfilment was in the miraculous darkness at the Crucifixion of Christ; to which the words in the following verse may be applied (quoted as words of Amos in Tobit ii. 6). *I will turn your feasts into mourning*. Your great festival of the Passover (at which Christ was crucified) shall be turned into a day of lamentation (*S. Jerome* here, and *S. Irenæus*, iv. 66).

10. *the mourning of an only son*] Another reference to Christ. Cp. *Zech.* xii. 10.

11. *I will send a famine in the land*] On the earth. They in the land of Israel, who now despise God's Word, will, when dispersed, and wandering from sea to sea, and from north to east (v. 12), hunger after it. This will be one of the good effects of their banishment. They will be like the prodigal in the far-off land, feeding on husks, and yearning for the food once plentifully enjoyed and despised by him in his father's house.

Such is the present condition of the Jews. They roam in restless vagrancy about the world, and seek the word of God; but they find it not, because they have killed the Incarnate

Word, revealed in the written word (*S. Jerome*). But they will feed upon the living bread of the written Word, when they are willing to see Christ there. See 2 Cor. iii. 14—16.

14. *the sin of Samaria*] The golden calf (iv. 4; v. 5) at Bethel.

— *The manner of Beer-sheba liveth*] Literally, *the way of Beersheba*—i.e. the religion there practised; so the word *way* is used in Acts ix. 2 (see the note there); or it may be, the way to Beersheba, the pilgrimage of unhappy votaries to the idolatrous shrine there. See above, v. 5.

CH. IX. 1. *I saw the LORD*] This is the fifth and last Vision. Before this Amos had seen the instruments employed by the Lord to execute His judgments (the locusts, the fire, the plumb-line, in the Lord's hands, and the basket of ripe fruit representing the ripeness of Israel for judgment), and to prepare the way for His Coming; but now the Lord Himself appears in all His Majesty.

— *standing upon the altar*] The altar which Jeroboam had set up at Bethel (*S. Cyril*, and so *Ruffinus*, *Clarius*, *A. Castro*, *A. Lapide*, *Ewald*, *Hitzig*, *Hoffmann*, *Pusey*), and against which the man of God from Judah prophesied, "O altar, altar,—behold this altar shall be rent" (1 Kings xiii. 1—3). Others (*S. Jerome*, *Theodoret*, *Hengst*, *Keil*) suppose the altar to be the brazen altar at Jerusalem.

— *Smite the lintel of the door*] Rather, *the knop*, or chapter of the colonnade. Cp. the use of the same word (*caplór*) in Exod. xxv. 31. 33; xxxvii. 17. In those two chapters of Exodus it occurs sixteen times, and is always rendered *knop*. See *margin* here, and in *Zeph.* ii. 14.

The command "Smite" is given by the Lord to the destroying Angel. Cp. Exod. xii. 12. 2 Sam. xxiv. 1. 15, 16 2 Kings xix. 35; and *Ezekiel's* Vision (chap. ix. and x. 2, 7).

— *the posts*] Or *thresholds*. The idolatrous temple was to be shaken from top to bottom.

Before
CHRIST
787.
|| Or, wound them.
a Ps. 68. 21.
Hab. 3. 13.
b ch. 2. 14.

And ||^a cut them in the head, all of them ;
And I will slay the last of them with the sword :

^b He that fleeth of them shall not flee away,
And he that escapeth of them shall not be delivered.

^{2 c} Though they dig into hell, thence shall mine hand take them ;

^d Though they climb up to heaven, thence will I bring them down :

³ And though they hide themselves in the top of Carmel,
I will search and take them out thence ;

And though they be hid from my sight in the bottom of the sea,
Thence will I command the serpent, and he shall bite them :

⁴ And though they go into captivity before their enemies,

^e Thence will I command the sword, and it shall slay them :

And ^f I will set mine eyes upon them for evil, and not for good.

⁵ And the Lord God of hosts is he that toucheth the land, and it shall ^g melt,

^h And all that dwell therein shall mourn :

And it shall rise up wholly like a flood ;

And shall be drowned, as *by* the flood of Egypt.

⁶ It is he that buildeth his || ⁱ stories in the heaven,

And hath founded his || troop in the earth ;

He that ^k calleth for the waters of the sea,

And poureth them out upon the face of the earth :

^l The LORD is his name.

⁷ Are ye not as children of the Ethiopians unto me, O children of Israel ?
saith the LORD.

Have not I brought up Israel out of the land of Egypt ?

And the ^m Philistines from ⁿ Caphtor,

And the Syrians from ^o Kir ?

⁸ Behold, ^p the eyes of the Lord God *are* upon the sinful kingdom, and I
^q will destroy it from off the face of the earth ; saving that I will not utterly
destroy the house of Jacob, saith the LORD.

⁹ For, lo, I will command, and I will ^r sift the house of Israel among all

in Jer. 47. 4.
n Deut. 2. 23.
Jer. 47. 4.
o ch. 1. 5.

p ver. 4.
q Jer. 30. 11. &
31. 35, 36.
Obad. 16, 17.

^r Heb. cause to
moue.

— *cut them in the head, all of them*] This is usually referred to the idolatrous fabric and its parts ; but it may be applied to the worshippers ; and this is confirmed by what follows ; and the sense then would be—cut them in the head, and I will slay the last, or remnant, of them with the sword : the worshippers from the head to the tail of them would be cut off, as well as the temple, from its summit to its threshold, be destroyed. See Isa. ix. 14, “The Lord will cut off from Israel head and tail.”

^{2. Though they dig into hell}] Cp. Ps. cxxxix. 8. Job xxvi. 6. Obad. 4. Jer. li. 53.

^{3. top of Carmel}] Carmel, both from its height and numerous caverns (*Raumer, Richter, Schulz, Hengst., Pusey*), was used as a hiding-place ; as appears in the history of Elijah (1 Kings xviii. 19. 2 Kings ii. 23 ; iv. 25).

— *will I command the serpent*] God will command the venomous sea-serpent to bite His enemies. The whale was commanded by God to swallow Jonah ; the fish to pay tribute for Christ ; the viper to spare St. Paul ; all these were under Divine control. The “Old Serpent,” Satan, is God’s servant, and is used by Him to do His will in punishing the ungodly (Isa. xxx. 33. Ps. vii. 13).

^{5. shall be drowned}] *Shall sink*, like the Nile (*Sept.*). See viii. 8.

^{6. stories}] Or *steps*. Scripture speaks of the third heaven (2 Cor. xii. 2), the heaven of heavens (1 Kings viii. 27).

— *his troop*] Rather, *his vault or arch*. Literally, a *band* (*Gesen.* 10) ; the visible firmament (Gen. i. 7) which divides the water above the heavens from the water beneath the heavens. Cp. Gen. vii. 11.

^{7. Are ye not as children of the Ethiopians}] Ye people of Israel boast your elves to be My special favourites, because I

chose your father Abraham, and brought him out of Mesopotamia into Canaan. And ye will be blessed by Me as My peculiar people, if ye walk in the steps of your father Abraham. But the fact of his call from Mesopotamia to Canaan was not, when considered irrespectively of the spiritual character of him who migrated at My call, any proof of My favour. I order and change the bounds of habitation of all nations. The Ethiopians are children of Ham, who came forth from the ark as well as Shem and Japhet ; and if ye do not obey Me, ye are no better than they are. I did bring you out of Egypt. Yes ; but I brought the Philistines also (whom ye despise as uncircumcised) out of Caphtor (probably Cappadocia—*Targum, Sept., Vulg.* : see Gen. x. 14) ; and I brought the Syrians from Kir (see i. 5). Ye cease to be Israelites ; ye become no better than Cushites, Philistines, and Syrians, if ye forsake Me ; indeed, ye become worse than them, in proportion as ye enjoy more spiritual light than they did. Compare St. Paul’s statement, Rom. ii. 25—29 ; ix. 6, 7.

^{8. the sinful kingdom}] Any and every kingdom that sins against Me. Cp. Isa. x. 6.

^{9. I will sift the house of Israel}] A beautiful image, representing clearly God’s beneficent design in the captivity and dispersion of Israel. It seemed as if He, when He had given them into the hand of Assyria, had scattered them abroad and had utterly cast them to the winds. But no, they were safe in the divine sieve (cp. Jer. xv. 7 ; li. 1. Matt. iii. 12. Luke xxii. 31) ; and they were there for the purpose of being proved and tested. Those among them who were impenitent and godless, and did not profit by the chastisement, would be dispersed like chaff by the wind ; but the penitent and faithful would be preserved, and be made manifest by the sifting : they would be

nations, like as corn is sifted in a sieve, yet shall not the least † grain fall upon the earth.

Before
CHRIST
787.

† Heb. stone.

rch. ch. 3.

¹⁰ All the sinners of my people shall die by the sword, † which say, The evil shall not overtake nor prevent us.

¹¹ * In that day will I raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen,

s Acts 15. 16, 17.

And † close up the breaches thereof;

† Heb. hedge, or, wall.

And I will raise up his ruins,

And I will build it as in the days of old :

¹² † That they may possess the remnant of * Edom,

t Obad. 12.

u Num. 24. 13.

And of all the heathen, † which are called by my name,

† Heb. upon whom my name is called.

Saith the Lord that doeth this.

¹³ Behold, * the days come, saith the Lord, that the plowman shall overtake

x Lev. 23. 5.

the reaper,

And the treader of grapes him that † soweth seed :

† Heb. draweth forth.

† And the mountains shall drop || sweet wine,

y Joel 3. 18.

|| Or, new wine.

And all the hills shall melt.

separated by that process from the chaff; and not a single grain (Hebr. *tsror*; literally, a thing bound together; any thing solid, as a pebble; a grain of corn, as opposed to the loose, dusty chaff; *Gesen.* 720)—would fall to the earth.

This image is adopted by the Evangelical Prophet Isaiah in that noble passage where Babylon is compared to a threshing-floor of God for the winnowing of Judah. See above, on Isa. xxi. 10, and compare xxviii. 23—29. Such is the whole World now. It is God's floor, in which Israel is being winnowed, in order that the remnant of good grain may be gathered into the garner of Christ's Church universal.

10. *prevent us*] Come before us, to meet us; confront us.

RESTORATION OF ISRAEL IN CHRIST; and CONVERSION OF ISRAEL'S ENEMIES (symbolized by EDOM) and OF THE GENTILES.

11. *In that day*] The glorious day which is now revealed to the Prophet, the Day of Christ. Cp. *Bp. Chandler* on Prophecy, i. 139.

Having spoken of the Divine purpose in sifting Israel in its Captivity (v. 9), he now proceeds to speak of their Restoration to God in Christ, and in His Church. Amos foresees and foretells clearly that, before salvation comes to Israel, all that is dearest to Israel, all on which Israel dotes most fondly and relies most confidently, and of which they boast most proudly, will be destroyed, and Israel will be carried captive and dispersed; the House of David itself, to which God's promises of continuity were announced, will be in ruins. But the battle would be succeeded by peace. Calm would follow the storm. Building-up would grow out of destruction. Israel's Midnight would be changed by Christ into a glorious Noon.

— *will I raise up the tabernacle of David that is fallen*] Literally, the (pastoral) *hut* (or *booth*) of David, the fallen (hut) of the shepherd of Bethlehem; near which Amos himself kept cattle (i. 1).

He does not call it a royal palace, but a *hut* or *booth* (*succah*), and a *fallen* one, to show the low estate to which it would be reduced, and from which it would be raised in Christ; and thus he prepared the way for the prophecy of Micah concerning Bethlehem (see Micah v. 2), and for the prophecy of Isaiah concerning the rod springing forth from the roots of the hewn-down tree of Jesse. See on Isa. xi. 1; liii. 2. Ezek. xvii. 22—24.

The Hebrew Rabbis recognized in these words a prophecy concerning the Messiah (see the authorities in *Hengstenberg* here), and they call Him “the son of the fallen one,” a title derived from this passage. See the Rabbinical Authorities in *Bp. Chandler* on Prophecy, i. 144.

Observe, the Prophet here tells the Ten Tribes of Israel that their own Restoration depends on the building-up of the house of David, from which they had severed themselves by the schism of Jeroboam (cp. Ezek. xxxvii. 15—25); and thus, while he cheers them with promises of recovery by Christ, the Seed of David, he does not suffer them to forget their own sin of schism and separation from David's House.

12. *That they may possess the remnant of Edom, and of all the heathen, which are called by my name, saith the LORD that doeth this*] These words, and those in the foregoing verse, are referred to by St. James, in the first Council of the Church, the Council

of Jerusalem, when it was debated whether the Ceremonial Law of Moses was to be imposed as obligatory on the Gentile Converts, and whether they were to be admitted on any other terms, as of necessity, except faith in Christ, and by Baptism in His Name. See below, on Acts xv. 16, 17.

St. James, in dealing with this question, which concerned the Gentiles as well as the Jews, quoted the words of Amos here as they stand in the *Septuagint* Version, made by Jews at Alexandria, in the Greek language, the principal language of the Heathen World.

That Version was not designed to be a literal one, but a Paraphrase. Cp. below, on Micah v. 2. The Septuagint Version is a Hellenistic Targum. And when the Translators met with a passage, in the Original Hebrew, which, if literally rendered, would be unintelligible to Hellenistic ears, they did not hesitate to modify it, so as to preserve the spirit by deviating from the letter.

This they have done here. They did *not confound* the word *Edom* with *Adam* (man, or mankind) as some have imagined; but they deliberately substituted *Adam* for *Edom*, which contains the same consonants as *Adam*, mankind (with the exception of *vau*), and suggested *Adam* to them. And thus they gave, virtually, the true sense in a much clearer way to Greek readers than if they had preserved the *ipsissimam vocem*, *Edom*. To the *Hebrew* mind, *Edom* was a representative of the Nations of Mankind opposed to Israel; but this idea was *not* familiar to the *Greek* mind.

The substitution of *Adam* in the mind of the Translator, and its correlative Greek word, ἀνθρώπων, gave the true sense of Amos, for which he was cited by St. James, namely, that *all mankind* would be admitted into Covenant with God in Christ, Who is the Son of David, and Who builds up the tabernacle (or pastoral hut) of David, that had fallen down.

The same reason weighed with the Septuagint Translators for the modification of the other words of Amos, “that they may possess the *remnant*.” These words were intelligible enough to the Hebrew reader, who looked at *Edom* as symbolizing their enemies, and to whom it was promised that they themselves should possess Edom (see Num. xxiv. 18. Obad. 19)—a promise never accomplished literally by any of Zerubbabel's descendants, but fulfilled in Christ overthrowing the enemies of all true Israelites. See above, on Isa. lxiii. 1, “Who is this that cometh from *Edom*?” But these words, *They shall possess the remnant*, would be unintelligible to Greek ears; but *Edom* having suggested *Adam*, the word *yireshu* (they shall possess) suggested *yidreshu* (they shall seek), and thus the modification was completed, which imparted to Greek minds the true sense of the original by means of a *paraphrase* of the words. Cp. *Surenhusius*, pp. 430—431.

13. *the days come*] The days of the Messiah. See above, on Jer. ix. 25; xxiii. 5; xxx. 3.

— *the plowman shall overtake the reaper*] An image of evangelical joy and prosperity, derived from the Levitical Law.

— *the mountains shall drop sweet wine*] Words caught up from Joel iii. 18.

— *the hills shall melt*] Shall dissolve themselves into rivers of plenty and delight. There is a spiritual reference to the Mosaic

Before
CHRIST

757.
z Jer. 20, 3.
a Isa. 61, 4. &
65, 21.
Ezek. 36, 33—36.

¹⁴ ^z And I will bring again the captivity of my people of Israel,
And ^a they shall build the waste cities, and inhabit them;
And they shall plant vineyards, and drink the wine thereof;
They shall also make gardens, and eat the fruit of them.

¹⁵ And I will plant them upon their land,
And ^b they shall no more be pulled up out of their land which I have given
them,
Saith the LORD thy God.

b Isa. 60, 21.
Jer. 32, 41.
Ezek. 34, 28.
Joel 3, 20.

description of Canaan flowing with milk and honey (Exod. iii. 8, 17. Lev. xxvi. 5).

¹⁴. *I will bring again the captivity*] Rather, *I will turn the captivity*. The Captivity is regarded as a stream which is to be turned. Compare Ps. cxxvi. 4.

^{14, 15}. *They shall build the waste cities—and they shall plant vineyards—and I will plant them upon their land, and they shall no more be pulled up out of their land which I have given them, saith the LORD thy God*] These prophecies received a subordinate and preparatory fulfilment when some of the Jews returned under Zerubbabel to Jerusalem; but this was only a foretaste of their full accomplishment in Christ. The opinion that they were fully accomplished in Zerubbabel, was broached by *Theodore of Mopsuestia*, but was condemned as heretical in the Second Council of Constantinople.

The Prophets speak of *conversion* to Christianity under the terms of *restoration*. Thus, a restoration is promised to *Moab* (Jer. xliiii. 47), to *Ammon* (Jer. xlix. 6), and even to *Sodom and her daughters*. Those prophecies *cannot be understood literally*, but they foretell the reception of heathen nations into the Church. See *A Lapidé*, here. Similarly all these prophecies of Amos are fulfilled in all places wherever Israel is planted in the true spiritual Holy Land, the Church of Christ. Zion now enfolds the World, and will never be destroyed. Palestine extends to all places where Christ is preached and adored. 'The World has become a Holy Land in Him. See above, on Jer. xxx. 3; xxxi. 5; on Isa. lxxv. 21, and chap. lxxvi. 7—12. Ezek. xxxiv. 13; xxxvi. 33; xxxvii. 12; and on Joel iii. 20, 21.

An Ancient Father of the Church at the close of the Fourth Century, *S. Jerome*, who dwelt at Bethlehem in the immediate neighbourhood of Tekoa, the native place of Amos the Prophet, thus writes: "The Tabernacle of David had fallen down to those who said, 'Evil shall not overtake us' (v. 10), whom the Lord sifted and proved in His sieve, and whose threshing-floor He had purged by the fan of His Majesty, and the transgressors among whom He had slain by the sword.

"But now, according to the custom of Scripture, after a prophecy of chastisement, He adds promises of love and prosperity. He says, that He will *raise up this Tabernacle of David* that had *fallen down*, that He will build it all up again in the Resurrection of Christ the Son of David; so that what had fallen down in the Jewish Synagogue might rise up in the Christian Church; and that they who believe in Christ might *possess the remnant of Edom* and *of all the heathen*; so that whatever remains of the earthly and sanguinary kingdom of Edom, the enemy of Israel, might be changed into a kingdom of heaven; and that the heathen might be converted and return to the Lord; and so, when the fulness of the Gentiles had come in, all Israel should be saved (Rom. xi. 12).

"The prophecy of Amos which now succeeds, is understood by us who do not follow the letter that killeth (as some of the Jews now do), but the spirit that giveth life (2 Cor. iii. 6), to have been in part fulfilled, and to be in course of fulfilment, in the Christian Church. It is fulfilled in all who have fallen into ruin by sin, and who are built up by repentance. And when the Tabernacle of David, which had fallen down, is built up again in Christ, then, as the Prophet says, a time succeeds of universal abundance. They who before went forth weeping, bearing their good seed, now return again with joy, and bring their sheaves with them (Ps. cxxvi. 6). The ploughman overtakes the reaper, and the treader of grapes him that soweth seed. The vintage and seed-time will coincide. In that day the wine-press will be filled, the grapes will be trodden, and red wine will be poured forth from the blood of Christ and the Holy Martyrs, and this their blood will be the seed of the Church.

"*The mountains shall drop sweet wine, and the hills shall melt*, when every one, who ascends in a holy and virtuous life to the hills of spiritual contemplation, will taste the honey and the sweet wine which flow there; as the Psalmist says, 'Taste and see how gracious the Lord is.' 'Thy words are sweet to my mouth, sweeter than honey and the honeycomb' (Ps. xxxiv. 8;

Ps. xix. 10; cxix. 103). And they who dwell beneath the mountains, on which the Bridegroom comes leaping in the Canticles (Song of Solomon ii. 8), will be planted like a Paradise of God; and all fruits of holy learning and knowledge will hang upon their boughs. Then he who once wandered in captivity, and did not then believe in the Name of the Lord, but is of the remnant of Israel, will *return to God and to his own land*, by faith in Christ, and he will recognize in the Gospels Him of Whom he once read in the Prophets; and after the Lord has thus turned back the Captivity of His people Israel, they will build up cities which before were desolate on lofty mountains, and dwell in them, according to our Lord's words, 'a city set upon a hill cannot be hid' (Matt. v. 14). They will also plant vineyards and drink wine of them, according to the invitation given by Christ in the Canticles (v. 1), 'Drink, ye drink abundantly, O beloved.' This is the grape of Soree which we drink daily in the holy mysteries of the Lord's banquet. And they will plant gardens and water them, and no kinds of Christian graces and virtues will be lacking there; and they will eat the fruit of them. And thus the promise of Christ will be fulfilled, 'Blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth' (Mat. v. 5). And the final promise of the prophecy here is, 'I will plant them upon their land, and they shall no more be pulled up out of their land which I have given them, saith the Lord of hosts;' whence we learn that, though the Church of God will be persecuted in the last days, it will never be destroyed; it will be assaulted, but it will never be conquered. And the reason of this is, because the Lord God Almighty, the Lord God of the Church, has promised this; and God's promise is Nature's law" (*S. Jerome*). Compare *S. Augustine*, De Civ. Dei, xviii. 28.

"We are not authorized to seek for a realization of this prophecy of Amos in the return of Israel from its Babylonish Captivity to Palestine, under Zerubbabel and Ezra; for this was no planting of Israel *to dwell for ever in the land*, nor was it a setting up of the fallen hut of David. Nor have we to transfer the fulfilment to the future, and think of a time when the Jews, who have been converted to their God and Saviour Jesus Christ, *will one day be led back to Palestine*. Canaan and Israel are types of the kingdom of God, and of the Lord's Church. Cp. Joel iii. 8. The raising up of the fallen hut of David began with the Coming of Christ, and the founding of the Christian Church; and the taking possession of Edom and all the other nations upon whom the Lord reveals His Name, took its rise in the reception of the Gentiles into the Kingdom of Heaven set up by Christ. The Land which will flow with streams of Divine blessing is not Palestine, but the domain of the Christian Church; it is the Earth, as far as it receives the benefits of Christianity. The people which cultivate this land are the members of the Christian Church, so far as it is grounded in living faith, and brings forth the fruits of the Holy Spirit" (*Keil*). See also *M. Henry* here, who says:—"This must certainly be understood of the abundance of spiritual blessings in heavenly things, which all those are and shall be blessed with, who are in sincerity added to Christ and His Church; they shall be abundantly replenished with the goodness of God's House, with the graces and comforts of His Spirit; they shall have bread—the bread of life—to *strengthen their hearts*, and the wine of divine consolations to *make them glad—meat, indeed, and drink, indeed*—all the benefit that comes to the souls of men from the Word and Spirit of God. In Gospel-times the mountains of the Gentile world shall be enriched with these privileges by the Gospel of Christ preached, and professed, and received in the power of it. When great multitudes were converted to the faith of Christ, and nations were born at once; when the preachers of the Gospel were *always caused to triumph* in the success of their preaching, then the *ploughman overtook the reaper*; and when the Gentile Churches were *enriched in all utterance, and in all knowledge*, and all manner of *spiritual gifts* (1 Cor. i. 5), then *the mountains dropped sweet wine*" (*M. Henry*).

OBADIAH.

THE vision of Obadiah.

Thus saith the Lord God^a concerning Edom;

Before
CHRIST
about
587.

a Isa. 21. 11. & 34. 5. Ezek. 25. 12, 13, 14. Joel 3. 19. Mal. 1. 3.

PRELIMINARY NOTE.

The prophecy of OBADIAH is linked on to the foregoing predictions of Amos by a particular word.

That word is EDOM.

In the last chapter of his prophecies, Amos had said that the Lord would "raise up the tabernacle of David that was fallen," and he had expressed its future glory and universal sovereignty under the sway of the Messiah, by saying that it would "possess the remnant of Edom" (ix. 11, 12).

The name *Edom*, as was there observed, represents not merely the literal Edomites, but all those persons and classes of society, which, being allied by nearness of birth or place to the Israel of God—that is, to the Christian Church (as Edom, or Esau, was to Jacob), have yet behaved to it in an unbrotherly, heartless, and treacherous manner.

That prophecy of Amos is now taken up and expanded by Obadiah, who follows next to Amos in the Hebrew Canon, and in the order of time.

That this is the proper place for Obadiah in the chronological sequence of the Prophets, and that he prophesied during, or soon after, the twenty-seven years in which Uzziah, King of Judah, and Jeroboam II., King of Israel, were contemporaries—i.e. between B.C. 810, and B.C. 783—was suggested 1400 years ago by *S. Jerome*, who says, "a great portion of Obadiah is contained in the Book of Jeremiah;" and this has been successfully proved, and is now generally admitted, by the best expositors, as *Hengstenberg*, *Pusey*, *Keil*; see also *Kueper*, *Jeremias*, p. 100; *Delitzsch* on Isaiah lxiii. 1—6; and the remarks of *Graf* (*Der Prophet Jeremias*, Leipz. 1863, pp. 559—570); and especially *Carl Paul Caspari* (*Der Prophet Obadja*, Leipz., 1842, pp. 6—42), who, however, thinks that Obadiah is speaking of the cruelty of Edom to Judah at the time of the Chaldean invasion. They have shown that Jeremiah in his prophecy concerning Edom (Jer. xlix. 7—22), has adopted the language of Obadiah.

The uncertainty of that modern Criticism which sets aside the authority of the Hebrew Canon, and has exhibited itself in the disquisitions on Obadiah of *Hitzig*, *Hofmann*, and others, is strikingly displayed in the fact that the former makes him to be the *latest* of the Prophets, and the other regards him as the *earliest*.

It is observed by *Caspari* (pp. 5—12), in examining the prophecies of Jeremiah concerning Edom, that we discover a great number of expressions which are peculiar to Jeremiah and often occur in his writings; but not a single one of these is found in Obadiah; which would be unaccountable, if Obadiah had followed and used the prophecies of Jeremiah, instead of *vice versâ*. On the other hand, nothing which Jeremiah has in common with Obadiah, in the prophecies concerning Edom, is found in any other part of Jeremiah. Obadiah's prophecies concerning Edom form one connected whole; Jeremiah intersperses his prophecy with phrases culled here and there from Obadiah.

From this demonstration we may derive the following inferences:—

1. It confirms our confidence in the arrangement of the Minor Prophets in the Hebrew Bible—an arrangement which, happily, has been adopted in our own Authorized English Version of the Old Testament.

2. The chronological position of Obadiah illustrates an important truth concerning God's dealings with mankind.

It may be laid down as a rule, that God never executes a judgment, or inflicts a punishment on a nation or an individual,

without having given some previous warnings, either special or general, as to the hateful character and dangerous consequences of the sins for which the judgments are inflicted. God warns men of hell, in order that they may escape hell, and attain heaven. He speaks of punishment, that He may not inflict it.

This was the law of His working with regard to even heathen nations. He did not denounce His judgments on Nineveh by Nahum before He had given a warning to Nineveh by Jonah; and He did not denounce His judgment on Edom by Jeremiah, before He had given warning of the approaching visitation by Obadiah.

3. It is to be regretted that in our English Version of Obadiah, the sin and punishment of Edom are represented as *already past*; whereas, the truth is, that they *are future*. Obadiah does not exult over Edom as *having been punished* for their sins against their brother Israel, by the Lord God of Israel, but he is sent by God, in His mercy, to warn Edom *against committing the sin*, in order that *they may escape the punishment*; see below, on v. 12.

4. The name *Obadiah* means *servant of the Lord* (Jehovah), the God of the Covenant of Israel. Obadiah performs his work as *servant of Jehovah*, by showing that the Lord God of Israel is Supreme Ruler of the Universe, and the destinies of all heathen Nations are in His hands; and that it is the duty and happiness of nations to acknowledge His supremacy; and that though heathen nations, like Edom, may for wise purposes be allowed to chastise Israel—the Church of God—yet, eventually, the Lord God of Israel (that is, of the true Church) will overrule all things to the good of His Church, which will endure for ever; and to the glory of the Great Name of the Lord God of Abraham, shedding blessings on all His faithful people of every nation, through the Seed of Abraham, in Whom "all families of the earth are to be blessed"—our Lord and Saviour JESUS CHRIST.

5. It may be observed, that, in order to bring out more clearly the supremacy of JEHOVAH, the Lord of Israel, Obadiah never uses the word ELOHIM.

6. In the series of *special* denunciations of warning against heathen nations, which form the *entire subject* of the writings of Three among the Minor Prophets, the denunciation of Obadiah against Edom holds the first place;

It is followed by the special denunciations of Jonah and of Nahum against the great Assyrian capital, Nineveh.

These special denunciations by Obadiah against Edom, and by Jonah and Nahum against Nineveh, are again succeeded by Habakkuk's message of woe to Babylon. It has been shown above, concerning Edom, Nineveh, and Babylon, that each of them represents a particular type respectively of sin against God, and of enmity against His Church. See on Isa. xiii. *prelim. note*. Jer. xlix. 7; l. 1. 21. Ezek. xxv. p. 213; xxxi. p. 226.

Edom is the type of unfraternal and treacherous churchmanship.

Nineveh is the type of open blasphemy and infidelity.

Babylon is the type of proud and dominant idolatry.

The priority of Obadiah to Jonah, Nahum, and Habakkuk may suggest the solemn truth, that Edomitish hatred against God's Church (that is, the malignant enmity of those who are connected with the spiritual Israel of God by ties of consanguinity or neighbourhood) calls for God's primitive retribution even before the sins of such distant foes as Nineveh and Babylon, who had not the same advantages as Edom enjoyed.

1. *Obadiah*] Servant of Jehovah. See the *Prelim. Note*, and *Caspari*, pp. 1, 2.

— the Lord God] Hebr. ADONAI JEHOVAH, declaring that

Before
CHRIST
about
587.

b Jer. 49, 14, &c.

^b We have heard a rumour from the LORD,
And an ambassador is sent among the heathen,
Arise ye, and let us rise up against her in battle.

² Behold, I have made thee small among the heathen :
Thou art greatly despised.

³ The pride of thine heart hath deceived thee,
Thou that dwellest in the clefts ^c of the rock, whose habitation is high ;
^d That saith in his heart, Who shall bring me down to the ground ?

⁴ ^e Though thou exalt *thyself* as the eagle,
And though thou ^f set thy nest among the stars,
Thence will I bring thee down, saith the LORD.

⁵ If ^g thieves came to thee, if robbers by night, (how art thou cut off!) would
they not have stolen till they had enough ?

If the grapegatherers came to thee, ^h would they not leave || *some* grapes ?

⁶ How are *the things* of Esau searched out !
How are his hidden things sought up !

⁷ All the men of thy confederacy have brought thee *even* to the border :

† ⁱ The men that were at peace with thee have deceived thee, *and* prevailed
against thee ;

† *They that eat thy bread* have laid a wound under thee :

^k *There is none* understanding || in him.

⁸ ^l Shall I not in that day, saith the LORD, even destroy the wise *men* out of
Edom,

c 2 Kings 14, 7.

d Isa. 14, 13,
14, 15.

Rev. 18, 7.

e Job 20, 6.

f Jer. 49, 16, &
51, 53.

g Amos 9, 2.

h Hab. 2, 9.

g Jer. 49, 9.

h Deut. 24, 21.

Isa. 17, 6, &
24, 13.

|| Or, *gleanings?*

† Heb. *the men of
thy peace.*
i Jer. 38, 22.

† Heb. *the men of
thy bread.*

k Isa. 19, 11, 12.

|| Or, *of it.*

l Job 5, 12, 13.

Isa. 29, 11.

Jer. 49, 7.

JEHOVAH (the God of Israel) is the ADONAI, or Lord, the Creator, Ruler, and Judge of all Nations; as *S. Jerome* says here, "Visio Abdiæ est servi Domini, quem mittit gentibus. Destructio Idumæe visio nationum est."

— *Thus saith the Lord God—We have heard a rumour (or report) from the LORD*] Some ancient writers regarded this passage as implying a plurality of Persons in the One Godhead. Compare on Gen. i. 26, "Let us make," and xix. 24, "The Lord rained fire from the Lord;" and see *S. Jerome* on Micah iv. and *Euseb.* Dem. Evang. v. 24; and this opinion is approved by some later Expositors (*Cocceius, Calovius, Pfeiffer*, p. 412). It is certainly worthy of notice, that the Lord God (ADONAI JEHOVAH) is introduced as saying, *We* (which supposes at least two persons) have heard a rumour from another Person, called the Lord (JEHOVAH). This coincides at least with the doctrine of Three Persons, each Divine, in the Unity of the Godhead.

— *Edom*] Connected with Israel by origin and neighbourhood, and therefore bound in duty to protect and help them; but perfidious and cruel in its conduct to Israel; and therefore a type of all who are allied to the Church of God, and who ought to defend her, but betray and persecute her. See above, on Isa. xxiii. 1, and *Prelim. Note* on Isa. xiii. Cp. Jer. xlix. 7. Ezek. xxv. 12—14.

². *Behold, I have made thee small*] Edom was great, but God will make it small. Cp. Jer. xlix. 15. The contrast to this is in the following prophecy of Micah concerning Bethlehem of Judah. Bethlehem was small, but God would make it great, by the birth of Christ there (Mic. v. 2, 3).

The fulfilment of this prophecy began to take place in the overthrow of the Edomites by Nebuchadnezzar; and was more completely executed under the Maccabees (*Josephus*, Ant. xii. 18, 1; *Caspari*, 142—5).

³. *in the clefts of the rock*] In places of refuge in the rock (*Gesen.* 260). On the rocky fastnesses of Edom in Petra and other cities of its domain, see *Stanley*, Palest. pp. 87—89; *Burckhardt*, Syria, 421—427; *Robinson*, ii. 134—137; and *Keil* here, who says, "The Edomites inhabited the mountains of Scir, which are in the eastern side of the Ghor, or Arabah, stretching from the deep rocky valley of the river *Ahsy*, which extends northward, to the southern extremity of the Dead Sea, and stretches southward to the Eilatitic gulf of the Red Sea. These mountains are formed of huge rocks of granite and porphyry, which terminate on the west in steep, wall-like precipices of sandstone. Eastward they slope downward to the sandy desert of Arabia. They abound in clefts and caves, some

natural, some artificial. Hence its earliest inhabitants were called Horites, or dwellers in caves. The capital, Sela, or Petra, is proved to have been a place of great magnificence and strength by its numerous remains of temples, tombs, and other edifices. It was defended on the east and west by rocks like walls, which present an endless variety of bright colouring, from the deepest crimson, melting into the softest pale red, and sometimes shadowing off into orange and yellow. On the north and south it was guarded by mountains."

Jeremiah has adopted these words of Obadiah. See Jer. xlix. 16. Cp. Ps. lx. 9.

⁴. *Though thou exalt thyself as the eagle*] Cp. Job xxxix. 27—30, and Balaam's words concerning the Kenites (Num. xxiv. 21), "Strong is thy dwelling-place, and thou puttest thy nest in a rock. Nevertheless, the Kenite shall be wasted."

⁵. *If thieves came to thee*] The plundering of thieves would leave some remnant, and the gathering of grapes would leave some gleanings, "but thou wilt be utterly spoiled and wasted."

⁶. *How are the things of Esau searched out?*] Literally, *How are Esau out-searched*; how are Esau rifled and ransacked. He uses the word *Esau* to remind Edom of its brotherly relation to Jacob or Israel. And so Jeremiah, in the parallel prophecy, says, "I have made *Esau* bare, I have uncovered his secret places" (Jer. xlix. 10).

— *hidden things*] Secret treasures.

⁷. *The men of thy confederacy*] Thine allies have spoiled thee, O Edom! Thou hast dealt treacherously with thy brother Israel, and thy confederates have dealt treacherously with thee; they have sent thee to the border; they have chased thee out of thy own land, as thou hast chased Israel.

— *They that eat thy bread have laid a wound under thee*] Literally, *thy bread have laid a snare* (see *Gesen.* 461) *under thee*. The abstract word *thy bread* represents the friends who lived upon the Edomites, and who had no other means of subsistence but from the nourishment which the Edomites gave them. Cp. Ps. xli. 9, "He who did eat of my bread hath lifted up his heel against me."

— *There is none understanding in him*] In Edom. They have lost all their wisdom, for which they were famous, and are infatuated and demented by sudden calamity. See what follows.

Edom is a type of worldly wisdom and secular policy, as well as of unbrotherly enmity to God's people. In both respects the punishment of Edom is a warning to all Machiavellian politicians in these latter days.

And understanding out of the mount of Esau ?

⁹ And thy ^m mighty men, O ⁿ Teman, shall be dismayed,

To the end that every one of the mount of Esau may be cut off by slaughter.

¹⁰ For thy ^o violence against thy brother Jacob shame shall cover thee,

And ^p thou shalt be cut off for ever.

¹¹ In the day that thou stoodest on the other side,

In the day that the strangers || carried away captive his forces,

And foreigners entered into his gates, and ^a cast lots upon Jerusalem,

Even thou wast as one of them.

¹² But || thou shouldst not have ^r looked on ^s the day of thy brother in the day that he became a stranger ;

Neither shouldst thou have ^r rejoiced over the children of Judah in the day of their destruction ;

Neither shouldst thou have † spoken proudly in the day of distress ;

¹³ Thou shouldst not have entered into the gate of my people in the day of their calamity ;

Yea, thou shouldst not have looked on their affliction in the day of their calamity,

Nor have laid hands on their || substance in the day of their calamity ;

¹⁴ Neither shouldst thou have stood in the crossway, to cut off those of his that did escape ;

Before
CHRIST
about
587.

in Ps. 76. 5.
Amos 2. 16.
n Jer. 49. 7.
o Gen. 27. 41.
Ps. 137. 7.
Ezek. 25. 12. &
35. 5.
Amos 1. 11.
p Ezek. 35. 9.
Mal. 1. 4.
|| Or, carried
away his sub-
stance.
q Joel 3. 3.
Nahum 3. 10.
|| Or, do not be-
hold, &c.
r Ps. 22. 17. &
54. 7. & 59. 10.
Micah 4. 11. &
7. 10.
s Ps. 37. 13. &
137. 7.
t Job 31. 29.
Prov. 17. 5. &
21. 17. 18.
Micah 7. 8.
† Heb. magnified
thy mouth.

|| Or, forces.

9. *Teman*] See Amos i. 12. Jeremiah also adopts these thoughts and language in his prophecy concerning Edom (xlix. 7).

10. *For thy violence against thy brother Jacob*] Words adopted from Joel iii. 19, and from Amos i. 11. Obadiah had used the word *Esau* in v. 6; he now uses the word *Jacob* in order to mark as strongly as possible the unbrotherly cruelty and treachery of the Edomites to their brethren.

11. *In the day that thou stoodest on the other side*] Rather, in the day of thy standing against (Israel) in the day of strangers carrying away captive his strength. Doubtless, Edom had been already guilty of many acts of wickedness to his brethren of Israel, ever since the days of their wandering in the wilderness (Num. xx. 14, 21, 22), and it persisted in this temper of hostility even to the time of the taking of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar (Ps. cxxxvii. 7).

Obadiah foresaw the latter event (as has been rightly supposed by Theodoret, Michaelis, Caspari, Hengstenberg, Pusey); and he takes occasion from Edom's known disposition towards Israel, to warn Edom of the bitter consequences that will ensue to Edom itself, if it indulges in that virulent spirit of hatred and treachery to Israel at a crisis when the misfortunes of its brethren ought to excite its sympathy and to obtain its succour.

— *In the day*] Observe the pathetic repetition of these words, “in the day,” seven times, with every variety of sorrow to Israel, to be avenged by the day of the LORD (v. 15).

— *Even thou wast as one of them*] The word “wast” is not in the original, and ought to be expunged. The Prophet is not speaking of a past event, but of the future, and he is warning Edom against what he will be tempted to do, but ought not to do, and what the Prophet forbids him to do. This, therefore, is a proof of God's mercy to Edom. He endeavours to deter him from sin, so that he may not incur punishment. See above, Prelim. Note.

NOTE ON THE ENGLISH AUTHORIZED VERSION.

12. *But thou shouldst not have looked*] Rather, *And look thou not*. See the margin, Do not behold. It is a strong prohibition (so Sept., Vulg., Syriac, Arabic, Junius, Tremellius, Piscator, Keil, and cp. Pusey, p. 229).

This is important to observe. The translation given in the text of our AUTHORIZED VERSION is happily neutralized in the margin; but it has tempted many readers to imagine that Obadiah is referring to a past event, especially to the unbrotherly conduct which was displayed by Edom towards Judah, when Jerusalem was taken by the Babylonian army under Nebuchadnezzar.

Thus many English readers have been led into an altogether inaccurate notion with regard to the prophetic character and

office of Obadiah, and also with regard to the time in which he lived; and a prejudice has been raised against the Hebrew arrangement of the Books of the Minor Prophets.

These errors will be avoided by adopting the translation in the margin of our Authorized Version, instead of that in the text.

This may serve as an occasion for again expressing a desire, that the wish of our Translators, as uttered in their Preface to the Authorized Version (and why is that Preface so little known and so rarely printed with our Bibles?) were complied with; and that the renderings placed by them in the margin, should be consulted habitually by the reader of the Translation. Would it not be well that editions of our Authorized Translation were usually accompanied with the marginal renderings? Indeed, it may be doubted whether any edition should be published without them. It may also be suggested for consideration, whether the ministers of the Church, who officiate publicly in reading the appointed Lessons of Holy Scripture, might not be at liberty to substitute, in such public reading, the rendering in the margin, in lieu of the rendering in the text. Such a substitution seems to be authorized by the *Keri* and *Chetib* of the Hebrew Synagogues; and the advantage of it is obvious from such an example as that which is now before us in the Prophet Obadiah. If we are to have a new revision of our Authorized Version (which is a holy bond of union among all members and Churches of the Anglican Communion in all parts of the world, and also a sacred link of Christian connexion of our dissenting brethren with the whole Anglican Communion, and is of inestimable value in this respect), it deserves serious consideration whether this work of revision ought not, at least in the first instance, to be applied, not to the Text, but to the Margin. Considerable additions might be made to the Margin; and if these additions, after careful examination and a sufficient time of probation, were generally approved, then (but not till then) they might be allowed to pass from the Margin into the Text. The remarks of Dr. Pusey, in his Introduction to the Minor Prophets, deserve the careful consideration of all who have a due regard for Church-Unity and Scriptural Truth.

— *Neither shouldst thou have rejoiced—neither shouldst thou have spoken*] Rather, *Rejoice thou not—speak thou not*. See the foregoing note. A similar correction is to be made in the two following verses, which are to be rendered, *Do not look—do not lay hands; do not stand in the crossway. Do not deliver up the remnant*. The Prophet is here warning the Edomites against cruelty to their brethren of Judah in the day of the fall of Jerusalem, which he foresees.

This warning may be extended to all spiritual Edomites.

Heretical and schismatical teachers, and treacherous friends, exult in the afflictions and distresses of God's Church. “Nos-

Before
CHRIST
about
587.

¶ Or, *shut up*,
Ps. 31. 8.
u Ezek. 30. 3.
Joel 3. 14.
x Ezek. 33. 15.
Hab. 2. 8.

y Jer. 23. 28, 29.
z 49. 12.
Joel 3. 17.
1 Pet. 4. 17.

¶ Or, *sup up*.

z Joel 2. 32.
a Amos 9. 8.
¶ Or, *they that
escape*.
¶ Or, *it shall be
holy*, Joel 3. 17.

b Isa. 10. 17.
Zecl. 12. 6.

c Amos 9. 12.

d Zeph. 2. 7.

Neither shouldest thou have || delivered up those of his that did remain in the day of distress.

15 "For the day of the LORD is near upon all the heathen :

* As thou hast done, it shall be done unto thee :

Thy reward shall return upon thine own head.

16 y For as ye have drunk upon my holy mountain,

So shall all the heathen drink continually,

Yea, they shall drink, and they shall || swallow down,

And they shall be as though they had not been.

17 z But upon mount Zion a shall be || deliverance,

And || there shall be holiness ;

And the house of Jacob shall possess their possessions.

18 And the house of Jacob b shall be a fire,

And the house of Joseph a flame,

And the house of Esau for stubble,

And they shall kindle in them, and devour them ;

And there shall not be any remaining of the house of Esau ;

For the LORD hath spoken it.

19 And they of the south c shall possess the mount of Esau ;

d And they of the plain the Philistines :

train ruinam suam putant esse victoriam" (S. Jerome). See on Rev. xi. 10.

But let them see their own punishment foretold here by Obadiah. All Edomites, who rejoice in the miseries of Zion, will bring worse woes on their own heads. The Day of the Lord is at hand ; as thou hast done, it shall be done unto thee : thy reward shall return upon thine own head (v. 15).

It is observable that this language is adopted in the Apocalypse, and is applied to the mystical Babylon—the Roman Church—as a judicial sentence upon her for her Edomitish hatred and persecution of her brethren in the Christian Zion, and for indulging a malignant pleasure in their sorrows. See Rev. xviii. 5, 6 ; and see above, on Jer. chap. li. 14. 21. 29. 49 ; and Baruch iv. 12.

JUDGMENT ON EDMO, AND ON ALL ENEMIES OF ZION.

15. *the day of the LORD is near*] A phrase adopted from Joel. See Joel ii. 1 ; iii. 14.

— *Thy reward*] *Thy recompense* ; compare Joel iii. 4. 7, where the same word (*gemil*) is used ; it is also adopted by Isa. lix. 18 ; lvi. 6. Jer. li. 6. Lam. iii. 64, who (using the same word) calls God "the Lord God of recompenses (li. 56).

16. *as ye have drunk upon my holy mountain*] As ye have profaned the Temple of God by your drunken revels and carousals.

— *So shall all the heathen drink*] Ye and all Zion's heathen enemies (of which Edom is a type) shall drink of the cup of God's wrath. See Lamentations iv. 21, "Rejoice and be glad, O daughter of Edom—the cup also shall pass through unto thee." Cp. Jer. xxv. 15, "Take the wine-cup of this fury at my hand, and cause all the nations to whom I send thee, to drink it." This, also, is applied in the Apocalypse to the mystical Babylon, the enemy of the Christian Zion. "In the cup which she hath filled, till to her double" (Rev. xviii. 6). Cp. Rev. xiv. 10.

RESTORATION OF ZION IN CHRIST.

17. *But upon mount Zion shall be deliverance*] Words adopted from Joel ii. 32 ; iii. 17. As was observed in the former of those two passages, the word rendered *deliverance* (Heb. *peleytah*) would be better translated an *escaping*, i. e. the remnant who escape from God's wrath poured out upon the nations. This word is represented by the phrase of σωζόμενοι in the Acts of the Apostles (Acts ii. 47 ; cp. Acts ii. 21. 40) ; and Joel and Obadiah are foretelling what the sacred historian of the Acts describes as fulfilled in Zion, the mother of Christendom, which stretches out her arms to enfold all who escape from God's wrath by repentance, and flee to her bosom with faith. Obadiah (says S. Augustine) is the briefest of all the Prophets ; but he, too, prophesies of Christ and of His conquests over the Gentiles, symbolized by Edom. He says that *in Zion will be salvation*, and that those who are saved, will "go forth from mount Zion" to

judge (Augustine has, "to defend") the "mount of Esau," and the Kingdom will be the Lord's. This was fulfilled in part, when they who believed in Christ, especially the Apostles, went forth from mount Zion to save by their preaching those who were converted to Him, that they might be delivered from the power of darkness, and be translated to the Kingdom of God (S. Augustine, De Civ. Dei, xviii. 31).

— *there shall be holiness*] Or, a *sanctuary*. The Christian Zion is the *sanctuary*, not only of the Jews, but of all Nations See Isa. ii. 2 ; lvi. 7. Joel iii. 17.

— *the house of Jacob shall possess their possessions*] Words taken up from Amos ix. 12. Cp. on Num. xxiv. 18. God promised to Christ to give Him the heathen for an inheritance, and the utmost parts of the earth for a possession (Ps. ii. 8) ; and Christ, after His Resurrection, gave a commission to His Apostles to go into all the world and baptize all Nations, and to make them a possession for Himself (Matt. xxviii. 18, 19. Mark xvi. 15).

18. *the house of Jacob shall be a fire*] The living flame of God's Word, kindled by the fire that came down from heaven at Pentecost, when Christ baptized His disciples "with the Holy Ghost and with fire" (Luke iii. 16), will run with a holy conflagration of zeal and love, and consume all that is hostile to God, and will purify and refine the heart of the world. Cp. Isa. v. 24, and x. 17, "The light of Israel shall be for a fire, and His Holy One for a flame." And Jer. v. 14, "I will make my Words in thy mouth fire, and this people wood ;" and (xx. 9), "His Word was in mine heart, as a burning fire ;" and Mal. iii. 2, "He is like a refiner's fire ;" and ibid. iv. 1, "The day cometh that shall burn as an oven" to all who will not be purified by that refining fire of the loving discipline of the Gospel.

19. *they of the south shall possess the mount of Esau*] The Prophet refers to the territorial divisions of the literal Israel, and spiritualizes them. The *south* (Hebr. *négéb*) was the southern region of Judah. See Josh. x. 40 ; xv. 21 ; xviii. 5. Judges i. 9. The *plain* (Hebr. *shephélah*), the lowland on the coast of the Mediterranean, west of Palestine. See Josh. x. 40 ; xv. 33.

The sense is, the Church of God will break forth in all directions from Zion, and subdue all the countries in its neighbourhood, till it has absorbed the World, and made it to become a Holy Land, a spiritual Jerusalem.

This prophecy began to be fulfilled when the Apostles and other disciples of Christ went forth from Zion to Idumea, and Philistia (Acts viii. 26 ; ix. 3. 32—43), and Samaria (viii. 1—7), and to the East of Jordan, and planted Christian Colonies there, according to our Lord's command, "Ye shall be witnesses unto Me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost parts of the earth (Acts i. 8). "This prophecy" (says S. Jerome) "is daily being fulfilled in us, and has its accomplishment in the extension of the Church, which is the Kingdom of God."

And they shall possess the fields of Ephraim, and the fields of Samaria :
And Benjamin shall possess Gilead ;

Before
CHRIST
about
587.

²⁰ And the captivity of this host of the children of Israel shall possess that of
the Canaanites, even ^e unto Zarephath ;

e 1 Kings 17.9, 10.

And the captivity of Jerusalem, || which is in Sepharad, ^f shall possess the
cities of the south.

|| Or, shall possess that which is in Sepharad, f Jer. 32. 44.

²¹ And ^g saviours shall come up on mount Zion to judge the mount of Esau ;
And the ^h kingdom shall be the LORD's.

g 1 Tim. 4. 15. James 5. 20.

h Ps. 22. 28.

Dan. 2. 41. & 7.

14, 27. Zech. 14. 9. Luke 1. 33. Rev. 11. 15. & 19. 6.

20. the captivity of this host—Zarephath] Israel, once captive, shall take the World captive in the chains of the Gospel. Cp. above, the notes on Ps. cxlix. 8, 9.

Obadiah here enlarges on the prophecy of Joel. Joel had closed his prophecies with a promise that the Lord would bring again the captivity of His people Israel (Joel iii. 17) ; but Obadiah adds, that the captivity of Israel, i.e. they who once were carried captive to Assyria and Babylon, will liberate others and deliver them from the bondage of Sin and Satan, "into the glorious liberty of the children of God" (Rom. viii. 21).

This act of liberation, and this conquest of love, is described as being extended to Zarephath, the heathen city of Sidon, once the realm of Jezebel, who introduced the worship of Baal into Israel (see above, 1 Kings xvii. 9, 10, and below, Luke iv. 26) ; and thus the complete triumph of the Gospel going forth from Zion into heathen and idolatrous lands, is represented.

— the captivity of Jerusalem, which is in Sepharad] The sense is, The Jews of the Dispersion, both in the East and West, who were formerly carried away captive, but now Christianized, will extend themselves southward, and evangelize Egypt, Ethiopia, and the rest of Africa. Sepharad is a generic term, like India, applied both to East and West Indies, and represents Iberia in its twofold sense, viz. the Iberia on the Cimmerian Bosphorus in the East (Vulg., S. Jerome), and also the other or Western Iberia (colonized from the Eastern on the Cimmerian Bosphorus), and now called Spain (Targum, Syriac, Arabic, Kimchi, and other Hebrew expositors. See Caspari, 136 ; Fuerst, 994 ; and so Lyranus, Vatablus, A Castro, A Lapide, and others. It is not unworthy of remark, that the great Apostle of the Gentiles speaks of his own intention to go and evangelize Spain (Rom. xv. 24. 28). Obadiah (says A Lapide) is here speaking of Chris-

tian missions, of Apostles and apostolic men, many of whom were Jews, into the far West, and also to the East. Cp. S. Augustine, De Civ. Dei, xviii. 31.

21. saviours] Or deliverers. These were the Apostles and other preachers of the Gospel, who carried the glad tidings of salvation, which went forth originally from Zion, where Christ suffered, and where the Holy Ghost was given. See Isa. ii. 3. Christ is the Good Shepherd, and in like manner Jeremiah describes the Preachers of the Gospel as shepherds (Jer. xxiii. 4), "I will set up shepherds over them which shall feed them." Christ, Who is the light of the world (John viii. 12), and Who lighteth every one that cometh into the world (John i. 9), vouchsafed to say to His disciples, "Ye are the Light of the World" (Matt. v. 14). So the Saviour Himself enables His ministers to save others. "Sic Ipse Salvator Apostolos suos mundi voluit esse salvatores" (S. Jerome). Cp. 1 Tim. iv. 16, "Thou shalt both save thyself, and them that hear thee."

— to judge the mount of Esau] St. John, in the Apocalypse, beholds the saints of God standing on Mount Sion (Rev. xiv. 1) ; and here the Prophet says, that they who come up on Mount Zion—that is, in the Christian Church—will judge the Mount of Esau—that is, will overcome and condemn the Kingdoms of this World and the enemies of the Israel of God. So St. Paul says, that "the saints shall judge the world" (1 Cor. vi. 2). Cp. Matt. xix. 28.

— the kingdom shall be the LORD's] As the voices in heaven will proclaim, at the sounding of the last trump in the Apocalypse, "The Kingdoms of this World are become the Kingdom of the Lord and of His Christ" (Rev. xi. 15). Cp. Rev. xix. 6. 16.

JONAH.

a 2 Kings 14. 25. I. ¹ NOW the word of the LORD came unto ^a || Jonah the son of Amittai, saying, ² Arise, go to Nineveh, that ^b great city, and cry against it; for ^c their wickedness is come up before me.
 b Calced.
 Matt. 12. 39,
 Jonas.
 b Gen. 10. 11, 12.
 ch. 3. 2, 3. &
 4. 11.
 c Gen. 18. 20, 21. Ezra 2. 6. James 5. 4. Rev. 18. 5.

What is the design of the Book of JONAH?

In the previous prophetic books Almighty God, had pre-announced His judicial retribution on heathen Nations, whom He used, or would use, as His instruments to punish His people Israel and Judah for their sins. He had then revealed Himself as the Supreme Ruler and Moral Governor of the World. He had also declared His special love to Israel and Judah, and had foretold, that though they would be scattered for their sins, yet, on their repentance and faith, they would hereafter be restored in Christ.

Nest, however, it should be supposed that God's relation to the *Heathen Nations* was one only of power, terror, and judgment, and not also of love and mercy. He had announced by the prophet Amos that *all Nations of the World* would be brought into covenant with Him, on equal terms with the Jews, in Christ. See Amos ix. 11, 12, quoted by St. James at the Council of Jerusalem, Acts xv. 15—17, in proof of that statement.

He had also declared by the Prophet Obadiah, that He Himself, having used the *Heathen Nations* to punish and carry captive Israel and Judah for their sins against Him, would afterwards use Israel and Judah (who, after their captivity, and by their captivity, would be brought nearer to God in the Gospel) as His instruments for releasing the *Heathen Nations* from the bondage of Sin and Satan, and for bringing them back to Him in Christ. See Obad. 19—21.

He had also shown His kindness even to Edom itself, first by a salutary warning against the sin of malice and hatred toward Israel (Obad. 12—14), and next, He had cheered Edom with a promise of restoration, on condition of its faith and repentance, by means of Israel, converting it to Christ (Obad. 21).

Such Divine declarations as these must have seemed strange to some zealous Israelites. They would have been, in their days, what Saul of Tarsus afterwards was. They would have been fired with fervent enthusiasm for the Levitical Law, and for the privileges and prerogatives of Israel. They would almost have felt angry with God for such an extension of His favours to the *Heathen*. They would have thought that the gain of the *Heathen* was their own loss. And this narrow and exclusive spirit of Judaism towards the *Heathen Nations* of the world would be aggravated, exasperated, and intensified by the growing hostility, pride, and cruelty of *Heathen Nations*, especially of *ASSYRIA*, towards themselves, the favoured people of God.

But God would show the Jews that He had mercy for all. He would display this by His conduct to NINEVEH, the capital city of that very Assyrian Nation which was the most powerful and bitter enemy of Israel. He would thus teach Israel, that, if they were indeed His people, they must imitate His merciful spirit, and love their enemies, and embrace the Assyrians as brethren. We may compare the prophecy in Isa. xix. 24, "In that day shall Israel be the third with Egypt and with Assyria."

We have then a portraiture of the Jewish character (such as was afterwards displayed in the strongest colours in Saul of Tarsus) presented to us in the Prophet Jonah. He grudges God's mercy to the *Heathen*. He is angry with God's love to them. He shrinks from the commission of preaching repentance to Nineveh, the capital of Assyria. Perhaps he had heard that Assyria would be used by God to chastise Israel and carry it captive. He does not wish that Nineveh should repent. He is quite content, nay, he is almost eager, that it should

perish. He sits down outside its walls, watching, to see them fall.

Almighty God graciously vouchsafed to correct this jealous temper. He would teach the Prophet Jonah to be merciful, like Himself; He would use him, although reluctant and shrinking back, in preaching repentance, and in delivering a message of pardon to Nineveh on its repentance; and in saving Nineveh from destruction.

Thus He anticipated the lesson inculcated in our Lord's parable, which exhibits the narrow-minded and sullen spirit of the Jew, in the elder brother murmuring at his father's love in receiving the penitent prodigal (Luke xv. 25—32). Thus He taught Jonah that while he was a *Hebrew Prophet* (i. 9), and therefore was justly full of love for the *Hebrew Nation*, and of zeal for the God of the *Hebrews*, he must also be like the God of the *Hebrews*—the God of Abraham, in whose Seed all the families of the Earth are blessed; and must feel sympathy for all Nations, even for Assyria, the greatest and most formidable foe of Israel; and must desire to promote the salvation of all, as children of the same heavenly Father. He taught Jonah a lesson which was learnt in perfection by St. Paul, "the *Hebrew of the Hebrews*," the Apostle of the *Gentiles*, who would have sacrificed every thing for his brethren after the flesh, the Jews, and their salvation (Rom. ix. 1—5), and yet cheerfully incurred their wrath, and exposed himself to death at their hands (1 Thess. ii. 15, 16. Acts xiv. 5, 19), in order that he might preach among the *Gentiles* the unsearchable riches of Christ (Eph. iii. 8).

But Jonah (as we know from Christ Himself (Matt. xii. 39, 40; xvi. 4. Luke xi. 30) was also a type of a greater than St. Paul. Jonah, after *his* three days' burial and resurrection, preached Repentance to Nineveh, the great *Heathen City*. Christ, the Divine Antitype (in Whom we see in perfection the *virtues*, *opposite* to all the *failings* of all His human types), went forth after His Resurrection and Ascension into Heaven, to preach by His Apostles; and He is ever going forth to preach by His Ministers, repentance and remission of sins to all Nations of the World.

The Book of Jonah is a prophecy of this great Missionary Work of Divine Mercy and Love, which has now been going on for 1800 years, and will go on to the Day of Doom.

Thus we see that, though the Book of Jonah may at first appear to be only a history, yet it is a prophecy. Jonah himself is not only a prophet, but is a prophecy as well. By his self-sacrifice for the sailors in the storm, he is a prophecy of the Propitiation and Atonement made by the Great Prophet, the Divine Jonah, Jesus Christ. The sudden cessation of the storm, the calm that followed Jonah's self-sacrifice, and the safe arrival at land of the weather-beaten ship of Joppa, are beautiful foreshadowings of the World's Peace with God after the self-devotion on Calvary, and of its consequent safe anchorage in the haven of eternity.

Jonah was a prophet of Christ's Burial and of His Resurrection, and of the great Christian Doctrine of Universal Redemption by Him. He was a prophet of the gracious and blessed truth that God's mercy is over all His works. God desireth not the death of a sinner, and willeth not that any should perish, but that all (even the Ninevites) should be saved and come to the knowledge of His truth (1 Tim. ii. 4. 2 Pet. iii. 9); and that He offers salvation freely to all through Christ, Who "tasted death for every man," and gave Himself a ransom for all (Heb. ii. 9. 1 Tim. ii. 6).

³ But Jonah ^d rose up to flee unto Tarshish from the presence of the LORD, ^{d ch. 1. 2.} and went down to ^e Joppa; and he found a ship going to Tarshish: so he paid ^{e Josh. 19. 46.} the fare thereof, and went down into it, to go with them unto Tarshish ^{2 Chron. 2. 16.} from the presence of the LORD. ^{Acts 9. 36.} ^{f Gen. 4. 16.} ^{Job 1. 12. & 2. 7.}

⁴ But ^g the LORD ^{g Ps. 107. 25.} ^{† Heb. east forth} sent out a great wind into the sea, and there was a ^{† Heb. thought to be broken.} mighty tempest in the sea, so that the ship was ^{h So Acts 27. 18,} ^{19, 38.} like to be broken. ⁵ Then the mariners were afraid, and cried every man unto his god, and ^h cast forth the wares that *were* in the ship into the sea, to lighten *it* of them.

Such considerations as these, show that the Book of Jonah, though it may seem at first sight to be only a history, is rightly admitted among the Prophetical Books of the Old Testament. The history of Jonah is a prophecy. It prophesies of Christ—of His three days' Burial and Resurrection, and of the conversion of the Heathen and their reception into God's favour through faith in Christ. As is well said by *S. Augustine* (*De Civ. Dei*, xviii. 30), "Jonas non tam sermone quam suâ quâdam passione prophetavit; profectò apertius quam si Christi mortem et resurrectionem voce clamaret."

That the author of the Book of Jonah was Jonah himself, and that it was designed by him to be a representation of his own weaknesses and prejudices, and to be a penitential confession from his own lips; and to display God's love to the heathen, and to foreshadow their conversion, and thus to be a prophetical lesson to the world, will probably be evident to all who examine it with attention. See, for example, on i. 4, and his prayer in chapter ii.

CH. I. 1. Now] Or *And*. Thus this Book is linked on to the foregoing. See on Josh. i. 1. This copula shows that this Book is not an independent work, but belongs to the Hebrew Canon of Scripture.

— the word of the LORD came] There is a phrase used in the Old Testament not unfrequently, viz. "It was said unto" such and such a prophet "*by the word of the LORD*" (1 Sam. iii. 21; especially 1 Kings xiii. *passim*). The rendering should be "*in the word of the LORD*." This phrase seems to represent the "word of the LORD" as an atmosphere of kindling holy thought, a sphere of spiritual truth encompassing the Prophet, illuminating and moving his whole soul, and finally taking shape in language of exhortation, or prediction, or teaching, or resolve, as the case might be (*Canon Liddon*).

— Jonah] The name, like that of the other Prophets, is significant. Jonah means a *dove*, which, in Scripture, is said to *mourn* (Isa. xxxviii. 14; lxx. 11). The name may serve to remind us of the mournful and plaintive spirit of the Prophet who bore it. In this book, Jonah relates that he had murmured against God's mercy to Nineveh; and that he mourned for the seeming failure of his own prophecy (iv. 1, 2); and that he craved death; and that he mourned for the destruction of the gourd, and again wished to die (iv. 8). But, being brought to a better mind, he afterwards wrote this book, in which he mourns over his own backwardness and murmurings against God. He mourns for his own mourning, and utters a plaintive prophetic elegy for his own jealous and envious temper and sullen murmuring against God's love to the Gentiles; and thus he becomes at last like the dove who brought an olive branch of peace to Noah in the Ark, and a message of the ceasing of the Flood; he became even, like the Divine Dove, a figure of the love of the Holy Spirit Himself, coming down at Pentecost to enable the Apostles to preach the Gospel of Christ to the Ninevehs of the Heathen World. As *S. Jerome* says (*ad Paulinum*), "Jonas, columna pulcherrima, naufragio suo" (quo pacem conciliat navigantibus, et finem procellæ imponit) "passionem Domini præfigurans mundum ad penitentiam revocat, et sub nomine Nineve gentibus salutem nuntiât."

— son of Amittai] Of Gath-hepher, in the tribe of Zebulun, in the times of Jeroboam II. See 2 Kings xiv. 25.

2. go to Nineveh] God uses the Hebrew Prophet to convert the Heathen City. He is one of the numerous specimens of Israel's mission fulfilled in Christ to the World. "God always blessed those of the heathen who were brought into contact with His chosen people by a certain knowledge of Himself. The Egyptian kings and people learnt much of Him from Joseph in one generation, and from Moses in another. The Canaanites heard of Him from the Spies; the Philistines by the capture of the Sacred Ark; the Phœnicians on the Mediterranean coast through Hiram of Tyre; the Syrians of Damascus through captives like Naaman's Servant, and the Miracles of Elisha; the Babylonian and Persian kings through Daniel;

and the Persians, later, through Esther. The truth, which was already 'the glory of God's People Israel,' was, in a measure, 'a light to lighten the Gentiles'" (*Liddon*).

— Nineveh, that great city] See on Gen. x. 11. It formed a trapezium, or irregular parallelogram, the average length from west to east being about twenty miles, and the average breadth from north to south being about twelve miles, Nineveh proper (*Kouyunjik*) being at the north-west corner; another city (*Nimrud*) being at the south-west corner; there was a third large city on the Tigris, about five miles north of *Nimrud*; fourthly, the Citadel and Temple (*now Khorsabad*), near the north-east corner. See the Plan in *M. F. Niebuhr*, *Geschichte Assurs*, p. 284; and in *Dr. Pusey*, p. 254; *Rawlinson*, *Anc. Mon.* i. p. 316; *Dr. Smith*, *Bib. Dict.* ii. 550.

God, speaking to Jonah, says, "Their wickedness is come up before Me." God is brought before us in these words, as He sits above this waterflood of crime, as He remaineth in the moral world, a King for ever. He is the Great Judge, unseen by man, but witnessing all human acts, and words, and motives, seated even now upon His Throne of Judgment; and each crime of each member of that vast community mounts upwards, and is registered in His heavenly Court. The same phrase had already been used in the murder of Abel, and of the iniquity of Sodom and Gomorrah; it marks that special notice of sin which precedes judgment. God had waited long in His Patience and His Mercy, but the cup at length was full to overflowing (*Liddon*).

3. Jonah rose up to flee unto Tarshish from the presence of the LORD] Literally, *from the face of Jehovah*; that is, from doing this work, as a servant standing before his master and waiting for his orders, and as a prophet ministering before God (see *Pusey*, 217. 251); and from Palestine and the Temple at Jerusalem, where God specially vouchsafed His Presence visibly. See below, ii. 4, "I will look again toward thy holy temple."

— Tarshish] Tartessus, in Spain (1 Kings x. 22. Ps. lxxii. 10); the contrary direction to Nineveh.

— Joppa] On the Mediterranean, north-west of Jerusalem (2 Chron. ii. 16). He grieves at being chosen to go as a prophet to the Assyrians, the enemies of Israel, and to their capital city; and he fears lest, by the conversion of the Heathen, Israel should suffer loss. Therefore he becomes like Cain, and flees from the presence of the Lord (Gen. iv. 16. *S. Jerome*).

4. the LORD sent out a great wind] Literally, *the Lord cast forth*. The wind obeyed God, and preached a lesson to the Prophet, who was disobeying Him.

This is a penitential confession from Jonah's own lips. The whole history in this book is so composed as to exhibit God's power, and the obedience of His creatures to Him.

— the ship was like to be broken] *The ship thought to be broken*—to be wrecked. The living consciousness and apprehension of the ship, fearing to be wrecked in the tempestuous sea, is set in striking contrast to the lethargic stupor of the prophet, whose conscience was, as it were, entranced in a swoon; and though he was at that time guilty of the sin of disobedience against God, yet he thought nothing of his own danger of an eternal shipwreck, but lay fast asleep in the dark hold of the ship. Such is often the condition of the human soul. See on v. 5.

5. the mariners—cried every man unto his god] Jonah, the author of this book, makes his penitential reflections on his own history; he here contrasts the pious devotion of these heathens towards their false gods, with his own thankless and faithless resistance to his own God—the only true God.

— cast forth the wares] Cp. Acts xxvii. 18, 19, 38. **— Jonah was gone down into the sides of the ship]** The lowest part of the ship, "interiora navis" (*S. Jerome*). The word for *ship* (*sephinah*); from *sâphan*, to board, or floor over) which occurs only here, is the usual word for *ship* in Arabic and Aramaic (*Gesen.* 593).

Before
CHRIST
about
862.
1 Sam. 21. 3.

k Ps. 167. 23.
1 Joel 2. 14.

m Josh. 7. 11, 16.
1 Sam. 10. 20, 21.
k 14. 41, 42.
Prov. 16. 33.
Acts 1. 26.

n Josh. 7. 19.
1 Sam. 14. 43.

|| Or, JE-
HOVAH.
o Ps. 116. 6.
Acts 17. 24.
† Heb. with great
fear.

† Heb. may be
silent from us.
|| Or, grew more
and more tem-
pestuous.
† Heb. w-nt.
p John 11. 53.

† Heb. digged.
q Prov. 21. 30.

But Jonah was gone down 'into the sides of the ship; and he lay, and was fast asleep.

⁶ So the shipmaster came to him, and said unto him, What meanest thou, O sleeper? arise, ^k call upon thy God, ^l if so be that God will think upon us, that we perish not.

⁷ And they said every one to his fellow, Come, and let us ^m cast lots, that we may know for whose cause this evil *is* upon us.

So they cast lots, and the lot fell upon Jonah.

⁸ Then said they unto him, ⁿ Tell us, we pray thee, for whose cause this evil *is* upon us; What *is* thine occupation? and whence comest thou? what *is* thy country? and of what people *art* thou?

⁹ And he said unto them, I *am* an Hebrew; and I fear || the LORD, the God of heaven, ^o which hath made the sea and the dry *land*.

¹⁰ Then were the men † exceedingly afraid, and said unto him, Why hast thou done this? For the men knew that he fled from the presence of the LORD, because he had told them.

¹¹ Then said they unto him, What shall we do unto thee, that the sea † may be calm unto us? for the sea || † wrought, and was tempestuous.

¹² And he said unto them, ^p Take me up, and cast me forth into the sea; so shall the sea be calm unto you: for I know that for my sake this great tempest *is* upon you.

¹³ Nevertheless the men † rowed hard to bring *it* to the land; ^q but they could not: for the sea wrought, and was tempestuous against them.

¹⁴ Wherefore they cried unto the LORD, and said, We beseech thee, O LORD,

— *was fast asleep*] Literally, was cast into a deep sleep. The word here used (the niphal of *râdam*, to sleep heavily — *Gesen.* 758) is the same as that used to describe Sisera's deep sleep (Judg. iv. 21); and that of the Assyrians, in death (Is. lxxvi. 6); and the trance of Daniel (viii. 18; x. 9).

Jonah, lying like one stupefied, in a heavy sleep, in the dark hold of the ship, ready to founder in the deep, is a type of the desperate sinner who has fled away from God, and is in peril of eternal perdition, and yet unconscious of his danger.

Jonah slept in the ship in the storm; Christ slept in the ship in the storm (Mark iv. 38). Jonah was flying from God; Christ was doing God's will. Jonah was awakened by the mariners; Christ by His disciples. Jonah is cast into the sea, and the storm ceases; Christ, by His Divine Power, rebukes the storm, and there is a great calm.

⁶. *What meanest thou, O sleeper? arise, call upon thy God*] The prophet of God here relates that he himself was in such a state of physical and spiritual stupor, that he needed a powerful voice of alarm to awaken him; and that God merely rebuked him for his sin by sending a heathen shipmaster to be his prophet, and to awaken him from his slumber (*What meanest thou, O sleeper?*) and to excite him to watchfulness and prayer. The Apostle St. Paul speaks of this spiritual lethargy when he exclaims, "Awake, thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead" (the death of sin), "and Christ shall give thee light" (Eph. v. 14).

— *if so be that God will think upon us*] Rather, "if so be that the God" (Hebr. *ha-Elohim*), the only true God, "will think upon us." Polytheism is put to flight by that inner sense of truth which often flashes on the mind in the hour of extreme danger, and gives vent to what *Tertullian* calls the "testimonium anime naturaliter Christianæ."

⁷. *They cast lots, and the lot fell upon Jonah*] As the arrow, shot from the bow "drawn at a venture," but directed by God's hand, hit Ahab (though disguised) "between the joints of his harness" (1 Kings xxii. 34), so this lot fell on Jonah the Prophet, flying from the presence of the Lord; not "by any virtue in the lot itself, but by the Will of God, Who rules uncertain lots" even in the hands of heathens, when He thinks fit (*S. Jerome*. Cp. Josh. vii. 14, 18. 1 Sam. x. 20, 21; xiv. 41. Acts i. 26); as He sent the milch kine of the Philistines on the way to Bethshemesh, and thus declared His Will concerning the Ark, and proclaimed that their sufferings were

plagues inflicted upon them by Himself for their sin (1 Sam. vi. 1—12).

⁹. *I am an Hebrew; and I fear the LORD*] Jonah is brought by means of the storm, and by the appeal of the heathen mariners, and by the falling of the lot upon himself, to a sense of his sin, and now makes his confession of faith, and owns that he had fled from the presence of the Lord, and that the storm was on account of himself, and pronounces his own sentence, and therefore asks to be taken up and cast into the sea, in order that they may escape.

It cannot be doubted that the Prophet Jonah, in doing this, was under divine direction. "Against me the storm thunders; it is seeking me; it catches me; in order that you may live, the waves themselves command you to cast me into the sea" (*S. Jerome*).

Jonah was a type of Christ. None of the imperfections of the human types of Christ are ever seen in the Divine Antitype; but where the human types are blemished by sins, there the Divine Antitype shines by the opposite virtues. So it is here. Jonah had fled from the presence of God in faithless disobedience. Christ came forth from the bosom of the Father in filial love. Jonah, in a sense of personal sin, gave himself up to death, that the waves of God's wrath, raging against the mariners and the ship, might abate and the storm cease. Christ, the Holy One, without the least taint of sin, gave Himself up to die for the sins of the World—"the Just for the unjust" (1 Pet. iii. 18); and the waves of God's wrath, raging against the ship of the World, tossed by that furious tempest on account of the sins of the mariners who sailed in it, were lulled; and there is a great calm, and the ship will arrive safely at the harbour—the harbour of Eternal Life. Cp. *S. Jerome* and *A. Lapide*, here.

¹¹. *the sea wrought, and was tempestuous*] Literally, *the sea was going on and raging*, "ibat et intume scelat" (*Fulg.*)

¹³. *the men rowed hard*] Literally, *they dug*.

¹⁴. *they cried unto the LORD*] The heathen mariners abandon their own gods, and cry to the LORD (JEHOVAH), the God of Israel, the only true God, Whom Jonah worshipped (v. 9), and Whom he had preached to them as the Creator, Lord of all. It is remarkable that the name JEHOVAH occurs three times in this verse. And in v. 16, it is added, that "they feared JEHOVAH exceedingly, and offered a sacrifice unto JEHOVAH, and made vows."

Here we see a prophetic glimpse of the conversion of the Heathen to the true faith, by means of Hebrew prophets and preachers.

we beseech thee, let us not perish for this man's life, and 'lay not upon us innocent blood: for thou, O LORD, ' hast done as it pleased thee. r Deut. 21. 8.
s Ps. 115. 3.

¹⁵ So they took up Jonah, and cast him forth into the sea: 'and the sea † ceased from her raging. t Ps. 89. 9.
Luke 8. 24.
† Heb. stood.

¹⁶ Then the men "feared the LORD exceedingly, and † offered a sacrifice unto the LORD, and made vows. u Mark 4. 41.
Acts 5. 11.
† Heb. sacrificed
a sacrifice unto
the LORD, and
poured voices,
x Matt. 12. 40. &
16. 4.
Luke 11. 30.
† Heb. howels.

¹⁷ Now the LORD had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah. And *Jonah was in the † belly of the fish three days and three nights.

— lay not upon us innocent blood] What a striking contrast is presented by this prayer of these heathens to the imprecation of the Jews crucifying the Divine Jonah, "His blood be on us and on our children"! (Matt. xxvii. 25.) The Jews rejected Christ; but the Gentiles gladly received Him.

^{15. the sea ceased from her raging]} When we consider the state of the world as it was before Christ's Passion, that it was like a Sea agitated by contrary winds and swelling waves of error and unbelief; and when we reflect how the vessel of Human Nature, sailing upon that boisterous sea, was in danger of being wrecked and of foundering in the deep, and how, after the Passion of Christ, there was a great calm of faith, peace, and safety, we shall recognize there a fulfilment of these prophetic words, *The sea ceased from her raging.*

^{17. the LORD had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah]} *The Lord had prepared.* Literally, *The Lord numbered, or appointed.* The Hebrew verb *mānāh* (whence the Greek and Latin *mina*), to divide, to number, to allot, to appoint, is used four times in this book, in a remarkable manner. "The Lord prepared a great fish;" "the Lord God prepared a gourd" (iv. 6); "God prepared a worm" (iv. 7); "God prepared a vehement east wind" (iv. 8)—showing that God is ever working in the government of the World—is always preparing things for their appointed season and work,—and ordereth all things "by number, measure, and weight."

In the obedience of the fish whom God appointed to do His work, and who kept the Prophet in safe custody (as Daniel was kept in the lions' den, and as our Lord was safe "among the wild beasts" in the wilderness), and who, when "the Lord spake unto him, vomited out Jonah upon the dry land" (and not into the watery ocean), we see a contrast to Jonah himself, who had disobeyed God. The fish, like Balaam's ass, is a prophet to the Prophet himself, and teaches him obedience to God.

Let us bear in mind that Jonah himself (as is most probable) is the narrator of all this. This book was written by him; and therefore we see here a frank confession of his own failings, and a proof of his own repentance.

"The great fish" (called *κῆτος* herein *Sept.* and in Matt. xii. 40) "was probably a large shark, or sea-dog, 'canis carcharias,' which is common in the Mediterranean, and has so large a throat that it can swallow a man whole." See *Oken* and *Müller* (quoted by *Keil* here) who state that in the year 1758 a sailor fell overboard from a frigate in the Mediterranean, and was swallowed by a sea-dog; and that the captain of the vessel ordered a cannon on the deck to be fired at the fish, and, that the fish, being struck by the ball, vomited up the sailor, who was taken up by a boat let down into the sea, and was received again alive and not much hurt. The fish, which was twenty feet long and nine feet broad, was harpooned; it was drawn up on the frigate, and dried; and was exhibited by the sailor in Erlangen, and at Nuremberg and other places.

S. Augustine mentions (Epist. 102), that in his time a fish was exhibited at Carthage which would have contained many men in its belly.

The fable of Arion and the Dolphin (*Herod. i. 23*) seems to have been derived from the history of Jonah.

The reasons for this miracle were many: (1) That the Ninevites, having heard of it from Jonah's own narration, and perhaps from some of the sailors who had cast him into the sea, might listen to his preaching, and repent. As Our Lord Himself said, "Jonah was a sign to the Ninevites," and they repented at his preaching (Matt. xii. 39; xvi. 4. Luke xi. 29—32. (2) That Jonah might be a type and prophecy of Christ's Death, Burial, and Resurrection. (3) That God's dealings with the Jewish Nation might be justified. The heathen city Nineveh repented in consequence of this miracle, and of Jonah's preaching, and was saved. Jerusalem did not repent after the greater miracle of Christ's Resurrection, and at the preaching of His Apostles, and was destroyed.

— three days and three nights] On the meaning of this Hebrew expression, see *S. Jerome* here, and the note below on Matt. xii. 40, where it is shown that it is equivalent to an assertion that Jonah rose from out of the whale's belly "on the third day."

JONAH IN THE WHALE'S BELLY THREE DAYS AND THREE NIGHTS.

Much has been written concerning this history. To the Christian reader it will be sufficient to remember, that its historical truth has been avouched and authenticated, and that its prophetic significance has been expounded, by Jesus Christ, Whom we can prove by incontrovertible arguments to be what He Himself affirmed—the Son of the Living God; and therefore infinite in knowledge and truth. The proofs of this are given in the Editor's Four Lectures on the Inspiration of the Bible, Lecture ii., and need not be repeated here.

Well, therefore, might *S. Jerome* say, "Hujus loci mysterium in Evangelio Dominus exponit; et superfluum est, vel id ipsum, vel aliud dicere, quàm exposuit Ipse Qui passus est."

The Christian reader will recollect that the Son of God has asserted the truth of this history, and has also applied it to Himself; and has shown that there was an adequate reason for the miracle here wrought by God, inasmuch as it was a prophetic representation of the greatest events that have ever occurred in this world's history, namely, the Burial and Resurrection of Christ Himself. Jonah's grave in the belly of the fish for three days and three nights was a strange event, such as was never heard of before. But even in that respect he was a figure of Christ, Who was buried in a new tomb wherein no man before was laid (Luke xliii. 53), and Who raised Himself from the dead, as He had declared that He would do—John ii. 19. Cp. Matt. xx. 19.

In Jonah's Burial and Resurrection, we may also see a foreshadowing of the great event still future, that concerns all mankind—namely, the Resurrection of all at the Great Day. Jonah's Resurrection was a type of Christ's Resurrection; which is a pledge of our Resurrection. "As in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive" (1 Cor. xv. 22).

The Burial of Jonah, unhurt in the whale's belly, affords to us a cheering illustration of what Jonah's predecessor, the prophet Hosea, said, as explained by the Apostle St. Paul—"O Death, where is thy sting? O Grave, where is thy victory?" (Hos. xiii. 14.) God can keep us safe in the jaws of the great Whale, and in the abysses of the great Deep; namely, in the jaws of Death, and in the depths of the Grave. Cp. *S. Ireneus*, iii. 22; and v. 5; and *Tertullian*, De Resur. Carnis, c. 58.

Our Blessed Lord has distinctly affirmed that "Jonah was three days and three nights in the whale's belly;" and He coupled that assertion as to the past, with a prophecy concerning the future—namely, "so shall the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth." That prophecy was fulfilled. Its fulfilment proved Christ's truth. It confirms our belief in His assertion, that the history of Jonah is true. All our difficulties with regard to this and other histories in the Old Testament are dissolved in the crucible of faith in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, Who received the Old Testament as true and divine, and commanded us to receive it as such. We accept the Written Word from the hands of the Incarnate Word. The Word of God is vouched to us as true, by the witness of the Son of God; and we learn here to recognize a proof of the reality of our own future Resurrection, which Christ Himself has proclaimed to us as certain; "The hour is coming, when all that are in the graves shall hear His Voice, and shall come forth; they that have done good unto the resurrection of life, and they that have done evil unto the resurrection of damnation" (John v. 28, 29); and thus we too are stimulated to repent by the preaching of Jonah, and to rise from the death of sin now, that we may rise to glory hereafter.

II. ¹ Then Jonah prayed unto the LORD his God out of the fish's belly,
² and said,

a Ps. 120. 1, &
 130. 1, & 142. 1.
 Lam. 3. 55, 56.
 Or, out of mine
 affliction.
 b Ps. 63. 2.
 Or, the grave.
 c Ps. 14. 9.
 d Ps. 88. 6.
 e Heb. heart.
 f Ps. 42. 7.

I ^a cried || by reason of mine affliction unto the LORD, ^b and he heard me ;
 Out of the belly of || hell cried I, and thou heardest my voice.

³ ^c For thou hadst cast me into the deep, in the † midst of the seas ;
 And the floods compassed me about :

^d All thy billows and thy waves passed over me.

e Ps. 31. 22.

⁴ ^e Then I said, I am cast out of thy sight ;

f 1 Kings 8. 33.

Yet I will look again ^f toward thy holy temple.

g Ps. 69. 1.
 Lam. 3. 54.

⁵ The ^g waters compassed me about, even to the soul :

The depth closed me round about, the weeds were wrapped about my head.

† Heb. cuttings
 of.

⁶ I went down to the † bottoms of the mountains ;

The earth with her bars was about me for ever :

h Ps. 16. 10.
 i Or, the pit.

Yet hast thou brought up my life ^h from || corruption, O LORD my God.

⁷ When my soul fainted within me I remembered the LORD :

i Ps. 18. 6.

ⁱ And my prayer came in unto thee, into thine holy temple.

k 2 Kings 17. 15.
 Ps. 31. 6.

^k They that observe ^k lying vanities forsake their own mercy.

Jer. 14. 8, &
 16. 10.

⁹ But I will ^l sacrifice unto thee with the voice of thanksgiving ;

l Ps. 70. 14, 23, &
 116. 17, 18.
 Hos. 14. 2.
 Heb. 13. 15.
 m Ps. 3. 8.

I will pay *that* that I have vowed.

^m Salvation is of the LORD.

¹⁰ And the LORD spake unto the fish, and it vomited out Jonah upon the dry land.

III. ¹ And the word of the LORD came unto Jonah the second time, saying,
² Arise, go unto Nineveh, that great city, and preach unto it the preaching that I bid thee.

³ So Jonah arose, and went unto Nineveh, according to the word of the LORD.

The remarks of *S. Augustine* on Jonah's history (Epist. 102, Sex Quæst. contra Paganos, vol. ii. p. 426; and De Symbolo ad Catechum., c. 6) are well worthy of attention. Their substance is as follows:—The heathen (he says) scoff and sneer at the history of Jonah. How could he have been swallowed by a fish (they ask), and remain alive three days in its belly, and then be cast forth from it on dry land? To which we reply, Either we must reject all miracles as incredible, or we must admit that there is no reason for not believing this miracle. If we are to abandon our faith because heathens and unbelievers scoff, we must cease to believe that Christ died, and was buried, and rose again the third day. We must cease to believe that Lazarus was brought forth out of his grave by Christ on the fourth day. We must cease to believe that those three men, who were cast into the fiery furnace at Babylon, walked in the fire, and came forth from it unburnt; and that the people of Israel—more than two millions in number—passed through the Red Sea, the waters of which stood as a wall on their right hand and on their left. Cp. *S. Irenæus*, v. 5, and *S. Jerome*, here. The history of Jonah is a type and prophecy of Christ. Christ Himself has assured us of this (Matt. xii. 39, 40). As Jonah went from the wood of the ship into the depth of the sea, so Christ went from the wood of the cross into the depth of the earth. As Jonah gave himself to death for those who were tossed by the storm in the Mediterranean Sea, so Christ Himself gave Himself to death for those who are tossed by the storm in the sea of this world. As Jonah rose from the whale's belly and from the depth of the sea, so Christ rose from the dead. As Jonah after his resurrection preached to the heathen of Nineveh, and they repented; so Christ after His resurrection preached by His Apostles to the Heathen World, and it repented at their preaching. The reality of the Anti-type confirms the historical truth of the type. Jonah is proved by Christ.

CH. II. 1. *Then Jonah prayed unto the LORD his God*] Jonah prayed from the whale's belly in the depths of the sea;

and his prayer was heard. "Undique ad cœlos tantundem est via." Heaven is equi-distant from all places of the earth. He prayed not only to Jehovah, but he prayed to Him as *his God*. Jonah, who probably wrote this book, thus declares his own repentance and conversion to God. He was sent to the Ninevites to call them to repentance, and to show that Jehovah his God was willing to be their God also.

The prayer here set down, which could be known to none but to God and Jonah, is a proof that we have here a communication from Jonah himself. As will be seen by reference to the margin, this prayer is derived mainly from the Psalms. Here also Jonah in his burial was a figure of Christ, Who, on the eve of His death (see Matt. xxvi. 30), and upon the cross, found utterance for His own feelings in the words of the Psalm (Matt. xxvii. 46).

Jonah, the type of Christ, was praying in his mystic grave of three days and three nights. This throws some light on the still more mysterious question concerning our Blessed Lord's employment in His Human Soul during the three days' Burial of His Human Body. See the note below, on 1 Pet. iii. 19—"He went, and preached to the Spirits in prison."

3. *thou hadst cast me*] Rather, *Thou didst cast me*.

8. *They that observe lying vanities*] Literally, *They that keep*—They who keep what is false, lose what is true. All who hug a lie, lose God, Who is Truth and Love.

CH. III. 3. *Jonah arose, and went unto Nineveh*] Observe the mysterious and inscrutable workings of God's Providence, by which His purposes are brought to pass. God had formerly sent Jonah to Nineveh. Jonah fled in the opposite direction, toward Tarshish. He fled the land, and betook himself to the sea. God follows him, and raises a storm against the ship in which he is, and it is in danger of being wrecked. Jonah is cast into the sea, and is in peril of perishing. Jonah is swallowed by the whale, and is in danger of being destroyed. Jonah is cast forth out of the whale's belly—not into the sea, where the whale was, but on to the dry land. God did not bring him by a

Now Nineveh was an † exceeding great city of three days' journey.

⁴ And Jonah began to enter into the city a day's journey, and ^a he cried, and said, Yet forty days, and Nineveh shall be overthrown.

⁵ So the people of Nineveh ^b believed God, and proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them. ⁶ For word came unto the king of Nineveh, and he arose from his throne, and he laid his robe from him, and covered *him* with sackcloth, ^c and sat in ashes.

⁷ ^d And he caused *it* to be proclaimed and † published through Nineveh by the decree of the king and his † nobles, saying, Let neither man nor beast, herd nor flock, taste any thing: let them not feed, nor drink water: ^e but let man and beast be covered with sackcloth, and cry mightily unto God: yea, ^e let them turn every one from his evil way, and from ^f the violence that is in their

† Heb. *of God*;
So Gen. 30. 8.
Ps. 36. 6. &
80. 10.
a See Deut. 18. 22.
b Matt. 12. 41.
c Job 2. 8.
d 2 Chr. 20. 3.
Joel 2. 15.
† Heb. *said*.
† Heb. *great men*.

c Isa. 58. 6.
f Isa. 59. 6.

straight course to Nineveh. As *S. Chrysostom* says (Hom. 5, in Jonam). The sailors cast him into the sea, the sea gave him to the whale, the whale gave him to the land, the land gave him to God; and God gave him to the Ninevites; and God gave them pardon and peace. God's hand was in it all.

— *Nineveh was an exceeding great city*] Literally, a great city to God; that is, God regarded Nineveh, and God cared for it, though it was a heathen city, the enemy of Jerusalem; and therefore God sent Jonah to preach to it, and spared it on its repentance. Not only Jerusalem, but all cities of the World are cities to God. His eye is on them all.

Here is a tacit reproof from Jonah, reviewing his own history, and writing this book for the purpose of correcting the narrow spirit (by which he himself had once been influenced) which imagined that *no* city, except Jerusalem, was a great city to God.

Thus Jonah anticipates St. Stephen's speech to the Jewish Sanhedrim (see on Acts vii.), and St. Paul's language to the Jews, in his Epistle to the Romans (iii. 29), where he says, "Is He the God of the Jews only? is He not also of the Gentiles? Yes, of the Gentiles also."

— *three days' journey*] In circumference. *Diodorus Siculus* (ii. 3) says that the city was 150 stadia in length, and *Herodotus* (v. 53) reckons 150 stadia as a day's journey. Cp. *Pfeiffer*, p. 448. The city, or rather tetropolis (for Nineveh consisted of four cities; see above on i. 2), was about ninety English miles in circumference. See *Marcus v. Niebuhr*, p. 277.

⁴ *Jonah began to enter into the city a day's journey*] He preached during one day in different parts of the city; beginning at the entrance of it from the west.

— *forty days*] This period of *forty days* (and also of *forty years*) often occurs in Holy Scripture as a time of probation. See *S. Jerome* here, and the note above, on Gen. vii. 4. Deut. ix. 9. 1 Kings xix. 8, and on Matt. iv. 2, and on Acts, p. 29.

This was the period of Nineveh's repentance, followed by escape from destruction; it was the period of the fast of Moses, followed by the reception of the Tables of the Law from the hand of God; it was the period of the pilgrimage of Elias, after which he had a vision of God in Horeb; it was the period of our Lord's fasting in the Wilderness, followed by Victory over Satan; it is therefore fitly appointed by the Church as the duration of the Lent fast, ending in the joy and victory of Easter.

Jonah, after his resurrection (from the whale's belly and the depth of the sea), preaching to Nineveh, was a type of Christ preaching after His Resurrection, by His Apostles, to Jerusalem.

Our Lord teaches us this; He says that Jonah was a sign to the Jews, and He adds that "the men of Nineveh will rise up in the Day of Judgment against that generation of Jews and condemn it; for they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and a greater than Jonah is here" (Matt. xii. 41).

Observe that other point of contrast. God gave Nineveh *forty days*, and they repented; He allowed Jerusalem *forty years* after Christ's resurrection, and they did *not* repent, and perished.

— *be overthrown*] As Sodom and Gomorrah were. The same word is used here to describe the threatened *overthrow* as is applied to them. See above, note at Gen. xix. 25 on this word, which is of great importance for determining the manner in which the cities of the plain were destroyed.

⁵ *the people—proclaimed a fast*] Such was the readiness of

the people to listen to his preaching, that before the Prophet had begun his second day's work, the Ninevites believed, and *proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them*.

This alacrity of this great heathen city is mentioned to their honour by Christ Himself, and is contrasted with the obstinacy and unbelief of the Jews (Matt. xii. 41. Luke xi. 32).

— *the people—believed God*] Doubtless they had heard of Jonah's miraculous deliverance, and had been convinced thereby that he was a messenger sent from God. See above, on i. 16. *They believed God, and proclaimed a fast*. Here is a foreshadowing of the faith and repentance of the Heathen World after the Resurrection of Christ, and after the Preaching of the Gospel by the Apostles sent by Him to the Gentiles.

⁶ *word came unto the king—and he caused it to be proclaimed*] Such was the effect produced by the preaching of Jonah; such was the alarm of the people; and such was their alacrity, that they would not defer their repentance till they could receive a command from the king; but, without waiting for a royal mandate, they proclaimed a fast. See v. 5. And such was the earnestness of the king, that when *word came*, or rather *the matter came*, to his ears, he was not offended by this act of his people, but he confirmed it by his own authority.

Nineveh was a vast city, and some time would therefore elapse before the king had tidings of what was done.

It is said by *Aristotle* (Polit. iii. 2), that such was the size of Babylon, and such were the intervals between its dwellings, that when the city had been taken by Cyrus, two days elapsed before tidings of its capture reached to the extremities of the city.

The name of the King of Nineveh at this time is uncertain. Some place him at as early a period as B.C. 860. *Rawlinson* supposes Jonah's preaching at Nineveh to have been at about B.C. 760 (*Rawlinson*, ii. 390—392). He seems to have resided in the royal palace at *Khorsabad*, in the north-east corner of the Tetropolis of Nineveh.

The conquests of Sardanapalus II. had probably tended to increase the luxury and pride of Nineveh, which provoked God's anger against it.

⁷ *Let neither man nor beast, herd nor flock, taste any thing—let man and beast be covered with sackcloth*] The King of Nineveh declared his consciousness of a great truth, that by the Providence of God the destinies of the animal creation, whether for joy or sorrow, whether for action or suffering, are linked in a mysterious chain of sympathy with those of man. See on Joel i. 18—20, and below iv. 11, where God declares His regard for *cattle*; and Ps. xxxiv. 7, "Thou, Lord, shalt save both man and beast."

We are informed by *Herodotus* (ix. 24), that when the Persian General Masistius was killed at Platææ, the whole Persian army, with Mardonius at their head, made a lamentation, shaving themselves and their horses, and the beasts of burden. Alexander the Great imitated this Persian custom in his mourning for Hephaestion (*Plutarch*, Alex. c. 72). The natural creation "was made subject to vanity" on account of man's sin at the Fall; and it yearns for deliverance, from the bondage of corruption, into a higher state of ease, joy, and felicity. See on Gen. iii. 17. Rom. viii. 19—23. 2 Pet. iii. 13.

⁸ *violence*] The besetting sin of the proud and warlike monarchy and nation of Assyria. Cp. Isa. xxxvii. 24—28, and the notes on 2 Kings xix. 37; xx. 12.

g 2 Sam. 12. 22.
Joel 2. 14.

hands. ⁹ Who can tell if God will turn and repent, and turn away from his fierce anger, that we perish not?

h Jer. 18. 8.
Amos 7. 3, 6.

¹⁰ And God saw their works, that they turned from their evil way; and God repented of the evil, that he had said that he would do unto them; and he did it not.

a ch. 1. 3.

b Ex. 34. 6.
Ps. 86. 5.
Joel 2. 13.
c 1 Kings 19. 4.

d ver. 8.

IV. ¹ But it displeased Jonah exceedingly, and he was very angry. ² And he prayed unto the LORD, and said, I pray thee, O LORD, *was* not this my saying, when I was yet in my country? Therefore I ^a fled before unto Tarshish: for I knew that thou art a ^b gracious God, and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repentest thee of the evil. ³ ^c Therefore now, O LORD, take, I beseech thee, my life from me; for ^d it is better for me to die than to live.

|| Or, *Art thou greatly angry?*

⁴ Then said the LORD, || Doest thou well to be angry?

⁵ So Jonah went out of the city, and sat on the east side of the city, and there made him a booth, and sat under it in the shadow, till he might see what would become of the city.

|| Or, *palmerist*.
† Heb. *Kikajon*.

⁶ And the LORD God prepared a || † gourd, and made it to come up over Jonah, that it might be a shadow over his head, to deliver him from his grief.

† Heb. *rejoiced with great joy*.

So Jonah † was exceeding glad of the gourd.

⁷ But God prepared a worm when the morning rose the next day, and it smote the gourd that it withered.

10. *God repented of the evil*] See Jer. xviii. 7, 8: "At what instant I shall speak concerning a nation and a kingdom, to pluck up, and to pull down, and to destroy it; if that nation, against whom I had pronounced, turn from their evil, I will repent of the evil that I thought to do unto them." God's unchangeable will to spare the penitent, is shown in changing His actions toward sinners on their repentance.

Crit. iV. 1. *it displeased Jonah*] Jonah was displeased for two reasons: (1) because his prophecy seemed to have failed of accomplishment, and he was liable to the charge of being called a false prophet (*Theodoret*). He preferred his own personal credit to the preservation of the city. (2) He was angry because God was merciful to the great heathen city, the enemy of God's people; and because Nineveh was spared. Cp. v. 11. How different is the conduct of the holy Angels, who rejoice when one sinner turns to God (Luke xv. 7). How different was the temper of the Lord of Angels, Who wept over Jerusalem because it would not repent (Luke xix. 41). But Jonah relates here his own infirmity; and doubtless he was inspired to record it as a sign that he repented of it, and to warn others against a similar sin.

2. *I knew that thou art a gracious God*] Jonah, in an exclusive, jealous, envious, Jewish temper, murmurs at God's kindness to the heathen city; as the Elder Brother—the Jew—in the Parable, is angry, because his Father—Almighty God—was merciful to the returning and penitent prodigal, his younger brother—the Gentile—"which had devoured his living with harlots" (Luke xv. 28—31).

5. *Jonah went out of the city, and sat on the east side of the city*] He had come from the west, and had passed through it. The forty days had now expired.

— *a booth*] With interlaced twigs and leaves of trees. He would not enter into a house in Nineveh, for fear it might be overthrown, and fall on his own head; but he made a booth for himself outside the city wall.

— *till he might see what would become of the city*] Though the forty days had expired, yet he would not abandon all hope that the city might yet receive some punishment from God, in answer to his own remonstrance, and perhaps on account of a relapse of Nineveh into sin.

6. *the LORD God prepared*] Hebr. *Jehovah Elohim*. See Gen. ii. 4.

— *a gourd*] Hebr. *Kikajon*; the Palma Christi, or ricinus; the Coptic and Arabic *Kiki*; a tall biennial plant, cultivated in Eastern gardens; very rapid in growth; beautiful, succulent, and luxuriant; but a slight injury will cause it to fade and die (*Gesen.* 731; cp. *Pfeiffer*, 450).

It grows to the size of a small fig-tree; its leaves are like those of a plane-tree, but larger, smoother, and darker. See *Pusey*, 259, 260.

S. Augustine, writing to S. Jerome (Epist. 71 and Epist. 82; cp. *S. Jerome* here), mentions that when this chapter was read according to S. Jerome's Latin translation, in a church in Africa, the congregation was much disturbed, because in that translation the word "hedera" had been substituted for the former Latin rendering, with which they were familiar, and which was derived from the Septuagint, "cucurbita;" and he takes occasion to offer some remarks concerning vernacular translations of Holy Scripture, which are well worthy of consideration at the present time.

7. *God prepared*] Hebr. *ha-Elohim*; the God; the only true God.

— *God prepared a worm—and it smote the gourd*] Which overshadowed Jonah's head.

Some of the Ancient Fathers (as *S. Jerome* and *S. Augustine*, Epist. 102) saw a typical representation in this incident also, as follows:—

Jonah was a figure of the Jews clinging to the ceremonial shadows of Judaism, and envying the Gentiles their privileges, and grieving at their repentance and at their reception into God's favour. When the doctrine of Repentance was preached by the Apostles, then the noonday Sun of the Gospel of Christ withered up the leaves of the Ceremonial Law, which was only a shadow of the Evangelical good things to come (Col. ii. 17. Heb. x. 1). Under its shadow many Jewish Jonahs sat at that time, placing themselves outside the Gentile World, and jealous of God's mercy to it, and even desirous to see its destruction. And those Jewish Jonahs were angry with God for withering the umbraculal gourd of the Ceremonial Law, and were exasperated against the Apostles of Christ, especially against St. Paul (who himself had once been a Hebrew Jonah, rejoicing in that shadow), for accepting as a gracious dispensation of God's providence, the fact that the Jewish Gourd had faded beneath the rays of the Gospel of Christ, and that God had mercifully spared the Gentile Ninevehs, and had received them into covenant with Himself. They despised the Gospel as a worm; indeed, Christ Himself is called a Worm (Ps. xxii. 6), because He was rejected and trodden under foot as such by the Jews; but the Worm "smote the gourd that it withered."

As long as the Jews are like what Jonah was then—mur-murers against God's dispensations—so long will they be like Jonah in Assyria, roaming there without a home, feeling the scorching heat of God's displeasure. But let them come to the Shadow of the Cross; let them sit down beneath the Tree of Life, whose leaves never wither, which are "for the healing of

⁸ And it came to pass, when the sun did arise, that God prepared a || vehement east wind; and the sun beat upon the head of Jonah, that he fainted, and wished in himself to die, and said, ^e *It is better for me to die than to live.* || Or, *silent.*

⁹ And God said to Jonah, || Doest thou well to be angry for the gourd? e ver. 3.
And he said, || I do well to be angry, *even* unto death. || Or, *Art thou greatly angry?*
|| Or, *I am greatly angry.*

¹⁰ Then said the LORD, Thou hast || had pity on the gourd, for the which thou hast not laboured, neither madest it grow; which † came up in a night, and perished in a night: ¹¹ and should not I spare Nineveh, ^f that great city, wherein are more than sixscore thousand persons ^g that cannot discern between their right hand and their left hand; and *also* much ^h cattle? || Or, *spared.*
† Heb. *was the son of the night.*
f ch. 1. 2. & 3. 2, 3.
g Deut. 1. 39.
h Ps. 35. 6. & 145. 9.

the nations" (Rev. xxii. 2); then they will be refreshed with health and joy, and will dwell in love and peace with their Gentile brethren, under that hospitable shade in the Paradise of God.

8. *God prepared*] Hebr. *Elohim*. These various titles of God are designed to show that JEHOVAH, the Lord God of the Hebrews, is also *Elohim*, the God of Creation and of Nature; and that He is *the* God—that is, there is no other God besides Him. And thus Jonah, while he encourages the heathen to look to the Lord God of Israel as waiting to be gracious to them, warns them against their own polytheism, which represents various deities as exercising dominion in divers countries respectively, and as having several powers over the different elements of the natural world.

— *a vehement*] Sultry and silent.

10. *the LORD*] JEHOVAH, the Lord God of Israel, sums up the whole history, and teaches the lesson to be drawn from it.

— *which came up in a night*] Literally, *the son of a night*.

11. *sixscore thousand persons that cannot discern between their right hand and their left*] These 120,000 were children; and therefore we may estimate the whole population of Nineveh at about 650,000 souls (*M. v. Niebuhr*, p. 278).

Though Nineveh was a tetrapolis of about ninety miles in

circumference, we are not to be surprised that the population was not greater than this; because, like Babylon and other great Eastern Cities, it contained within its walls much pasture-land and arable; as is implied by what follows, where it is said that in it *was much cattle*. Cp. above, on iii. 6, 7.

— *and also much cattle*] This is a happy and appropriate conclusion to the book. God cares even for *cattle*. How much more, therefore, for *men*, for whose service cattle were created. Therefore, let Jonah learn, and let him teach the world, that God willeth all men to repent and to be saved, even the heathen Ninevehs of this world, and to be united with the Jews in one and the same faith, hope, and love, and in worshipping the same Lord and Father of all, in the same Heavenly City, the Jerusalem that is above, which is the mother of us all (Gal. iv. 26). This is the lesson which the Prophet Jonah learnt, and which he is ever teaching in this Divine Book, read as divinely inspired Scripture in the Church of every age; and which has its perfect fulfilment in CHRIST (the divine Jonah, i. 17), in Whom there is neither Greek, nor Jew, barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free, but He is all in all (Col. iii. 11. Gal. iii. 28); to Whom, with the Father, and the Holy Ghost, be all honour and glory now and for evermore. AMEN.

MICAH.

Before
CHRIST
about
750.
a Jer. 26, 18.
b Amos 1, 1.

I. ¹ THE word of the LORD that came to ^a Micah the Morasthite in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, ^b which he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem.

The name MICAH signifies "*Who is as JAH, or JEHOVAH*" (*Caspari*, über Michä, p. 14; cp. Exod. xv. 11. Deut. iii. 24. Ps. lxxxvi. 8; below, vii. 18).

His prophecies are united to those of Jonah; and follow them in a logical sequence and harmonious order. As we have already seen, Jonah was not only a prophet, but a prophecy; a prophecy of Christ's Death, Burial, and Resurrection, and of the propitiation effected by His Sacrifice of Himself. His history foreshadowed the calm produced thereby in the Sea of this world, and it prefigured the preaching of Repentance after Christ's Resurrection to the Ninevites of Heathendom; and it exhibited God's desire that they should all be admitted into His Church, on their faith and repentance, upon equal terms with the Jews.

The Prophet Jonah, who had formerly been swayed by Hebrew prejudices, and had grudged the extension of God's mercy to the Heathen, especially to the Assyrians, the formidable foes of Israel and Judah, was brought by God to a better mind, and was chastened, and softened, and spiritualized by the holy discipline of Divine Love.

Jonah has written his own recantation in his prophetic book, and has preached to the world for 2500 years this holy lesson of universal charity, which he himself had been slow to learn: he has also delivered a gracious message of universal redemption by Christ, in that prophetic book, when expounded by the light of the Gospel.

The Prophet Micah learnt this lesson, perhaps from Jonah's prophecy; and, so far from grudging the glad tidings of salvation to the Gentiles, he rejoices in the prospect of the reception of all Heathen Nations into the Church of God; spreading forth from Zion in the days of the Messiah, and enfolding them all in its arms. See iv. 1—5. He declares that the promised Shepherd, Who would be born at Bethlehem-Judah, the City of David, and "Whose goings forth are from everlasting," will "stand and feed in the strength of the Lord, and will be great unto the ends of the earth" (v. 4).

Thus, while Jonah declares the salvability of the Heathen, Micah proclaims the great truth afterwards expressed by Christ Himself in the words "salvation is of the Jews" (John iv. 22).

Zion is the mother of all Christendom. "It shall come to pass" (says the Prophet, rejoicing in the glorious vision of the Church Universal, elevated aloft so as to be visible to all Nations, and expanding itself with a living and growing power and energy) "that the mountain of the house of the Lord shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and people shall flow unto it. And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and He will teach us of His ways, and we will walk in His paths. For the Law shall go forth of Zion, and the Word of God from Jerusalem" (Micah iv. 1, 2).

Micah thus reconciles the Jews to the admission of the Heathen within the pale of the Church of God. The Heathen are the spiritual offspring of Zion; and the Hebrew Mother is glorified in the multitude of her Gentile children.

Jonah had declared that God was willing and eager to be merciful even to Assyria and its great capital, Nineveh; and thus he comforted the Gentiles with a hope of being admitted into God's favour on a par with the Jews; and Micah, and Nahum after him, assure the Jews, that if the Ninevites of this world are obstinate in their hostility to God's Church, then the Messiah, the Son of David, will protect Israel and Judah (if they are faithful to God), and will deliver them from "the

Assyrian invader"—the proud and godless Sennacherib—and from all the enemies of the Church who are represented and typified by him. See below, v. 5, 6, 9.

Jonah declares the salvability of all Assyrian enemies of God's Church, if they repent; Micah proclaims the destruction of all Assyrian enemies of God's Church if they persist in their resistance and rebellion against Him.

The prophecies of Micah are divided into three parts, all beginning with *Hear ye*:—

- 1st. Chapters I., II.
- 2nd. Chapters III., IV., V.
- 3rd. Chapters VI., VII.

In the first part, the Prophet foretells the destruction of Samaria for its sins (i. 1—7), and the spoliation of Judah and the carrying away of its people (8—16); and grounds this threat on the iniquities of the Princes, Nobles, and false Prophets (ii. 1—11); and promises to Israel and Judah restoration on their repentance.

The second portion is a recapitulation of the former, with an enlargement containing a further declaration of their sins, in more minute and precise detail (iii.); and also a larger and fuller promise of recovery and restitution through the MESSIAH (whose birth-place he specifies, with a declaration of His Divine Nature and office), on their faith and repentance (iv. 1—7; v. 1—5), and a glorious display of His power and victories, and of the peace to be established by Him (v. 6—14).

The third portion declares God's gracious dispensation of love and mercy to Israel from the beginning; and Israel's ingratitude; and it contains a prophecy that Israel will hereafter be touched with remorse, consequent on their misery in their banishment and dispersion; and that they will confess their sins, and turn to God by repentance and faith; and that God will be gracious unto them, and deliver them from their enemies.

The prophecies of Micah may be regarded as standing in the same relation to those of Isaiah, as St. Mark's Gospel does to St. Matthew; or as the Epistle to the Galatians does to the Epistle to the Romans.

CH. I. 1. *Micah the Morasthite*] From Moresheth Gath, in the lowland of Judah (see v. 14), south-west of Jerusalem, near Eleutheropolis (*S. Jerome*), which was about twenty miles south-west of Jerusalem, and eighteen miles west of Hebron. Cp. *Caspari*, 35.

— *in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah*] After the death of *Uzziah*. Micah, therefore, was younger than Hosea, who prophesied under *Uzziah* (Hos. i. 1); and than Amos (Amos i. 1); and than Isaiah (see on Isa. i. 1; vi. 1); but, in other respects, the contemporary of that Prophet, who prophesied "in the days of *Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.*"

The salutary influence of Micah's prophetic warnings on the mind and conduct of the good King Hezekiah, is described in Jer. xxvi. 17—19.

On the genuineness and authenticity of this superscription, see *Caspari*, pp. 59—100, refuting the objections of *De Wette, Knobel, Maurer, Ewald, Meier, and Umbreit*.

We shall see that the invasion of Judah by the proud Assyrian conqueror Sennacherib, in the days of the good King Hezekiah, and the miraculous destruction of his army before the gates of Jerusalem, are treated by Micah in the same spirit as by Isaiah; that is, not only as instructive and cheering signs of God's protection to Hezekiah and Jerusalem, remaining firm in their allegiance to God, but as prophetic encouragements to

2 † Hear, all ye people ;

° Hearken, O earth, and † all that therein is :

And let the Lord God ^d be witness against you,
The Lord from ^e his holy temple.

3 For, behold, ^f the LORD cometh forth out of his ^g place,
And will come down, and tread upon the ^h high places of the earth.

4 And ⁱ the mountains shall be molten under him,
And the valleys shall be cleft, as wax before the fire,
And as the waters that are poured down † a steep place.

5 For the transgression of Jacob *is* all this,
And for the sins of the house of Israel.
What *is* the transgression of Jacob ? *is it* not Samaria ?
And what *are* the high places of Judah ? *are they* not Jerusalem ?

6 Therefore I will make Samaria ^k as an heap of the field,
And as plantings of a vineyard :
And I will pour down the stones thereof into the valley,
And I will ^l discover the foundations thereof.

7 And all the graven images thereof shall be beaten to pieces,
And all the ^m hires thereof shall be burned with the fire,
And all the idols thereof will I lay desolate :
For she gathered *it* of the hire of an harlot,
And they shall return to the hire of an harlot.

8 Therefore ⁿ I will wail and howl,
° I will go stripped and naked :
° I will make a wailing like the dragons,
And mourning as the † owls.

Before
CHRIST
about
750.

† Heb. *Hear, ye*
people, all of
them.

c Deut. 32. 1.

Isa. 1. 2.

† Heb. *the fulness*

thereof.

d Ps. 50. 7.

Mal. 3. 5.

e Ps. 11. 4.

Jonah 2. 7.

Hab. 2. 20.

f Isa. 26. 21.

g Ps. 115. 3.

h Deut. 32. 13. &

33. 29.

Amos 4. 13.

i Judg. 5. 5.

Ps. 97. 5.

Isa. 44. 1, 2, 3.

Amos 9. 5.

Hab. 3. 6, 10.

† Heb. *a descent.*

k 2 Kings 19. 25.
ch. 3. 12.

l Ezek. 13. 14.

m Hos. 2. 5, 12.

n Isa. 21. 3. &
22. 4.
Jer. 4. 19.
o Isa. 20. 2, 3, 4.
p Job 30. 29.
Ps. 102. 6.
† Heb. *daughters*
of the owl.

the Church of God in every age, especially in the latter days. If she acts in the spirit of Hezekiah, all her Sennacheribs will be destroyed, and she will be delivered by God.

2. *Hear, all ye people*] Or, *Hear, nations all*. Micah takes up the appeal of his namesake *Micaiah*, speaking in the presence of Ahab and Jehoshaphat about 150 years before (1 Kings xxii. 28), *Hear, ye nations all*. The words are the same, and in the same order in both.

This appeal is not only to the people of Israel and Judah, but to *all nations*. See what follows—*Hearken, O Earth, and the fulness thereof*. The God of Micah, the God of Israel and Judah, is the God of the Universe; all things are His creatures, and His witnesses. See Deut. xxxii. 1. Cp. Isa. i. 2, and *Pocock* here.

Micah follows Micaiah in rebuking the false prophets by which the king and people of Israel were seduced; and in reproving the rulers of Israel for their sins; and in showing to them the bitter fruits which those sins would produce.

He frequently adopts the imagery and language of Micaiah. Cp. the *lying spirit* (ii. 11) with the *lying spirit* in 1 Kings xxii. 22, 23; the *horn of iron* (iv. 13) with those in 1 Kings xxii. 11; the *smiling on the cheek* in v. 1 with 1 Kings xxii. 14.

Micah also often adopts the language of the Pentateuch. Here, in v. 2, *Hearken, O Earth*, he refers to Deut. xxxii. 1; and in v. 3 he refers to Deut. xxii. 13; xxxiii. 29. In ii. 12; iv. 7, he refers to Exod. i. 7, 12; in vi. 4 he has his eye on Deut. v. 6; vi. 12; vii. 8; xiii. 5. See the important and interesting collection of passages in *Caspari*, pp. 420—427, in which it is shown that the prophecies of Micah are grounded on the Books of Moses, and supply a strong argument for their genuineness and inspiration. The same may be said of his testimony to the Book of Joshua and the Psalms and Proverbs (*ibid.* 427—432). In his turn Micah is referred to by Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Jeremiah, and Ezekiel, and by the Evangelists, *ibid.* 450—458.

3. *For, behold, the LORD cometh forth out of his place*] Words used also by Micah's contemporary, Isaiah (xxvi. 21).

4. *the mountains shall be molten*] As when the Lord came down in His glorious Majesty on Sinai (Judges v. 5. Psalm xlvii. 5).

5. *For the transgression of Jacob is all this*] All this is done to punish the falling away of Jacob; “judgment must begin at the house of God” (1 Pet. iv. 17).

— *high places of Judah—Jerusalem*] Even the Holy City and Temple are polluted by idolatry, and have become like the high places of heathen deities.

This was true specially in the days of King Ahaz, who made his children to pass through the fire to Moloch, and made him altars in every corner of Jerusalem (2 Chron. xxviii. 3, 24, 25). Cp. xxxiii. 6; and 2 Kings xvi. 10—16. Ezekiel xvi. 31.

7. *the hires*] Gifts given to her for her spiritual harlotry; offerings for idolatrous worship. Micah here adopts the imagery and language of his predecessor Hosea (Hos. ii. 5. 8. 12; ix. 1).

— *they shall return to the hire of an harlot*] That is, her religious ornaments shall be carried away by her enemies and spoilers, to adorn the idolatrous temples of Assyria and other Heathen Nations. See the note on 2 Kings xvii. 5, where Sargon, King of Assyria, is cited as taking away 27,280 prisoners from Samaria. Doubtless he took away treasures also and religious vessels, and votive offerings to adorn the temples of Nineveh, his own harlot city (Nahum iii. 4—6). As Hosea prophesies, “It shall be also carried unto Assyria, for a present to King Jareb” (Hos. x. 6).

So Nebuchadnezzar took away the sacred vessels of the Temple at Jerusalem, to adorn the temple of his god at Babylon (Dan. i. 2; v. 1—4. Ezra i. 7).

The sense is, Because Samaria, the capital of Israel, fell away from her faithfulness to God, and lapsed into idolatry, which is spiritual harlotry—because she worshipped false gods, and attributed all her wealth and prosperity to them, instead of to the God of Israel—therefore her idolatrous images, and other precious ornaments, shall be carried away to other harlots—that is, to other idolatrous nations—viz. the Assyrians, who will give them as gifts to their false deities (*Targum*).

8. *dragons*] Jackals. See above, Job xxx. 29.

— *owls*] Ostriches. Literally, *daughters of the she-ostrich*. See on Job xxx. 29. Micah appears to be referring to that passage where Job describes himself “as a brother of dragons”

Before
CHRIST
about
750

Or, she is
grievously sick of
her wounds

q 2 Kings 18. 13.

Isa. 57. 8.

r 2 Sam. 1. 20.

That is, *Dust*.

s Jer. 6. 26.

Or, *thou that*

dweltst fairly.

f Heb. *inhabitant*.

t Isa. 20. 4. &

47. 2. 3.

Jer. 13. 22.

Nahum 3. 5.

Or, *The country*

of flocks.

Or, *A place*

near.

Or, *was grieved.*

u Amos 3. 6.

x 2 Kings 18.

14. 17.

y 2 Sam. 8. 2.

2 Kings 18. 14.

15. 16.

Or, *f. r.*

That is, *A lie.*

z Josh. 15. 44.

a Josh. 15. 41.

Or, *the glory of*

Israel shall come,

&c.

b 2 Chr. 11. 7.

c Job 1. 20.

Isa. 15. 2. & 22. 12.

Jer. 7. 29. & 16. 6. & 47. 5. & 48. 37.

d Lam. 4. 5.

⁹ For || her wound is incurable ; for ^a it is come unto Judah ;
He is come unto the gate of my people, *even* to Jerusalem.

¹⁰ ^r Declare ye *it* not at Gath, weep ye not at all :
In the house of || Aphrah ^s roll thyself in the dust.

¹¹ Pass ye away, || thou † inhabitant of Saphir, having thy ^t shame naked :
The inhabitant of || Zaanan came not forth in the mourning of || Beth-ezel ;
He shall receive of you his standing.

¹² For the inhabitant of Maroth || waited carefully for good :
But ^u evil came down from the Lord unto the gate of Jerusalem.
O thou inhabitant of ^x Lachish, bind the chariot to the swift beast :
She is the beginning of the sin to the daughter of Zion :
For the transgressions of Israel were found in thee.

¹⁴ Therefore shalt thou ^y give presents || to Moresheth-gath :
The houses of || ^z Achzib *shall be* a lie to the kings of Israel.

¹⁵ Yet will I bring an heir unto thee, O inhabitant of ^a Mareshah :
|| He shall come unto ^b Adullam the glory of Israel.

¹⁶ Make thee ^c bald, and poll thee for thy ^d delicate children ;

(jackals), "a companion of owls." Literally, "daughters of the ostrich."

⁹ *it is come unto Judah*] The judgment will not stop at Samaria ; but will come to Judah. This was fulfilled, first by the destruction of the Kingdom of Israel by the Assyrians, and by the subsequent ravages of Judah by the same power (see Isa. x. 28—32 ; xxxvi. 1) ; and by the destruction of Jerusalem by the Chaldeans (*Cyril and Theodoret*).

¹⁰ *Declare ye it not at Gath*] Micah adopts the words of David, mourning over Saul and Jonathan (2 Sam. i. 20).

— *weep ye not at all*] Literally, *weeping, weep not*. Hide your tears ; lest the Philistines should rejoice when they see them.

— *in the house of Aphrah roll thyself in the dust*] Or, as it is in the *Cetib* ; *I roll myself in the dust*.

There is a play on the words here, as in the other names of the ten towns here specified, which were near Jerusalem. The name *Aphrah*, or *Ophrah*, means *dust*. The Prophet says that the names of this and other towns will be verified in *deed*, and are prophetic and symbolical of their unhappy fate ; or else are a striking contrast to it.

This passage of Micah (rr. 10—16) is to be compared with that noble one in Isaiah (x. 28—32), where the Prophet describes the panic which spread from one town to another near Jerusalem, when the Assyrian army under Sennacherib invaded Judah, and took all its fenced cities (xxxvi. 1).

Micah continues the prophetic description of Isaiah. Isaiah represents the panic, alarm, and havoc produced in the days of Hezekiah, by the Assyrian army under Sennacherib invading Jerusalem from the north-east. Micah represents his career to the south-west, even to Lachish, mentioned by both the Prophets. See r. 13.

We know from Jeremiah (xxv. 18) that the prophetic warnings and reproofs of Micah wrought powerfully on the mind of the good King Hezekiah ; and that for a time the judgments impending over Jerusalem were averted by his repentance. Similar results appear to have been produced on him by the cheering voice of Isaiah, who completed the work of Micah, by inspiring the King with faith and hope ; and God blessed the work of the two Prophets, and the prayers of the penitent King (who at first had faltered—see 2 Kings xviii. 14—16), by delivering him and his people, and by destroying the army of Sennacherib, when it returned from Egypt in triumph, beneath the walls of Jerusalem. See above, on Isa. xxxvii. 36.

¹¹ *Saphir*] A word which signifies *beautiful*. Thy beauty is changed into shame.

— *the inhabitant of Zaanan came not forth*] Literally, the inhabitant of *going forth* has not gone forth to the battle, for fear of the enemy. "Non est egressa quæ habitat in exitu" (*Vulg., Rosen., Caspari, and Keil*).

— *in the mourning of Beth-ezel ; he shall receive of you his standing*] Or rather, *The mourning of Beth-ezel* (or house of

nearness—literally of the *side* of (*Gesen.* 74)—*will receive its station from you*—that is, the wail of the distress will pass on from Zaanan to the town at its side, *Beth-ezel*.

The sound of mourning is represented as passing (as it were, in a telegraphic series of signals) from one town of Judah to another.

¹² *Maroth*] *Bitternesses*.

— *waited carefully for good*] Rather, *withes in anguish for good* (i. e. for succour), like a travelling woman, pained and anxious for delivery (Rev. xii. 2).

¹³ *O thou inhabitant of Lachish*] About thirty miles south-west of Jerusalem, now *Um-lakhis*, and about ten south-west of Moreshah. It is probable that Micah is describing the havoc made by the army of Sennacherib when he besieged Lachish (2 Kings xviii. 14. Isaiah xxxvi. 2. 2 Chron. xxxii. 9).

— *bind the chariot to the swift beast*] Harness the courser to the chariot, that thou mayest escape from the invader.

— *She is the beginning of the sin to the daughter of Zion*] Lachish, in the lowland of Judah, was the first to import the idolatry of Israel into Judah. Lachish was an Amorite city, bordering on Philistia, and on Dan (famed for idolatry—see Judges xviii. 30) ; and therefore it was very likely that Lachish should be infested with the contagion, and should pollute Judah with idolatry.

¹⁴ *Therefore shalt thou give presents to Moresheth-gath*] Thou, O Zion, on account of thy sin (received from Lachish) wilt be obliged to give a *dismissal* (literally *dismissals*), that is, wilt be obliged to abandon, *Moresheth-gath*, which was once dependent on thee, but will now fall into the hand of the enemy. In the word *Moresheth* there may be an allusion to *meorásah*, *betrothed* (cp. Deut. xxii. 23). Thou, O Zion, wilt be obliged to give a dismissal (see Exod. xviii. 2. 1 Kings ix. 16) to the city once betrothed to thee. Or, if we take the word *Moresheth* (as is more probable) to signify *inheritance* (*Poole*, 9 ; *Gesen.* 460 ; *Fuerst*, 788), then the sense will be, Instead of *receiving* any thing from thy inheritance, thou wilt be obliged to send messages and presents to it. Perhaps there may be a reference to the presents which Hezekiah sent to propitiate the Assyrian invader (2 Kings xviii. 15, 16).

— *Achzib*] Literally *a lie*. Achzib well realizes its name ; it will become like a dry brook, which deceives the traveller who expects to find water there (Job vi. 15. Jer. xv. 18).

¹⁵ *Mareshah*] Literally, *inheritance*. I will make a stranger inherit thee. An heir, or the heir, means Sennacherib.

— *Adullam*] The celebrated cave where David found refuge from his enemy (1 Sam. xxii. 1, 5. 2 Sam. xxi. 13), and was preserved to become king of Judah ; there, in David's stronghold, whence he went forth to conquest and to sovereignty, the victorious enemies of Judah, the tribe of David, will rejoice. Let them there see the bitter fruits of apostasy from the God of David.

¹⁶ *Make thee bald*] Shave thyself as a mourner (Job i. 20. Isa. xv. 2 ; xxii. 12. Jer. vii. 29).

- Enlarge thy baldness as the eagle ;
 For they are gone into captivity from thee.
- II. ¹ Woe to them ^a that devise iniquity, and ^b work evil upon their beds !
 When the morning is light, they practise it,
 Because ^c it is in the power of their hand ;
- ² And they covet ^d fields, and take *them* by violence ;
 And houses, and take *them* away :
 So they || oppress a man and his house, even a man and his heritage.
- ³ Therefore thus saith the LORD ;
 Behold, against ^e this family do I devise an evil,
 From which ye shall not remove your necks ;
 Neither shall ye go haughtily : ' for this time *is* evil.
- ⁴ In that day shall *one* ^f take up a parable against you,
 And ^h lament † with a doleful lamentation,
 And say, We be utterly spoiled :
ⁱ He hath changed the portion of my people :
 How hath he removed *it* from me !
 || Turning away he hath divided our fields.
- ⁵ Therefore thou shalt have none that shall ^k cast a cord by lot in the congregation of the LORD.
- ⁶ || † ^l Prophecy ye not, *say they to them that* prophesy :
 They shall not prophesy to them, *that they shall not take shame.*
- ⁷ O *thou that art* named the house of Jacob,
 Is the spirit of the LORD || straitened ?
 Are these his doings ?
 Do not my words do good to him that walketh † uprightly ?
- ⁸ Even † of late my people is risen up as an enemy :
 Ye pull off the robe † with the garment from them that pass by securely as
 men averse from war.
- ⁹ The || women of my people have ye cast out from their pleasant houses ;

Before
CHRIST
about
730.a Hos. 7. 6.
b Ps. 36. 1.

c Gen. 31. 29.

d Isa. 5. 8.

|| Or, *defraud*.

e Jer. 8. 3.

f Amos 5. 13.
Eph. 5. 16.

g Hab. 2. 6.

h 2 Sam. 1. 17.

† Heb. *with a lamentation of lamentations*.

i ch. 1. 15.

|| Or, *instead of restoring*.

k Deut. 32. 8, 9.

|| Or, *Prophecy not as they prophesy*.† Heb. *Drop, &c.*

Ezek. 21. 2.

l Isa. 50. 10.

Amos 2. 12. & 7. 16.

|| Or, *shortened?*† Heb. *upright?*† Heb. *yesterday*.† Heb. *over against a garment*.|| Or, *wives*.

— *Enlarge thy baldness as the eagle*] Or rather, the vulture — vultur barbatus ; or perhaps, vultur perenopterus, which has the front part of the head bald (*Gesen.* 572 ; *Kamus* ; *Hasselquist* ; *Keil*).

CH. II. 1. *Because it is in the power of their hand*] Rather, *because their hand is their God*. As Mezentius said,

"Dextra mihi Deus, et telum quod missile libro."

(*Virg. Æn.* x. 21.)

4. *lament with a doleful lamentation, and say*] *Utter a lament* (so *Gesen.* 536) ; but as the feminine form, *niheyah*, does not occur in this sense of *lamentation*, others suppose it to be *niphal* of *hayah*, *to be*, and to signify *actum est* ! *it is done ! it is all over !* (*Fuerst*, 910, and so *De Dieu*, *Ewald*, *Kleinert*, *Keil*) ; and the sense is, *they lament a lamentation*. "It is done," say they ; "we are utterly spoiled." There is a remarkable alliteration in the original, expressive of repeated lamentations (*nahab nehi, niheyah*).

— *Turning away he hath divided our fields*] Rather, *he hath divided our fields* (the fields of God's own people) *to one who turns away*, i. e. a *perverse and rebellious one*—to an infidel apostate—Assyria (*Kimchi*, *Pocock*, *Keil*). It is the same complaint as in Habakkuk, "the wicked (Chaldean) devoureth the man that is more righteous than he" (*Hab.* i. 13).

5. *thou shalt have none that shall cast a cord by lot*] Or, *a measure for a lot*. Thou, godless generation, shalt have none to partake in an inheritance. The reference is to the original assignment of the inheritances of the tribes in the Promised Land by lot under Joshua (*Josh.* xiv. 2).

6. *Prophecy ye not*] Literally, *drop not*. Micah adopts the word (*nāṭaph*, *to drop*, a word, a prophecy) used by Amos (vii. 16), and which is thence to be explained.

The false priests and prophets said to the true prophets, *Prophecy not* against Israel and her worship. See Amos ii. 12 ; vii. 13.

The sense is, *Prophecy ye not* (say the false prophets to Amos and to Micah, and to other true prophets), but they (the true prophets) shall *prophesy* ; but *they shall not prophesy to these* ; that is, they shall not be prophets to this godless people : it will not listen to their words, but will reject them, and will choose other prophets (viz. false prophets) for itself ; and *it will not remove shame*, literally *shames* (plural) ; it will not put away its false gods, which are the cause of all its shame and misery. The word rendered *take* in our version is *nāṣag*, which properly means *to remove*—to remove a landmark (*Deut.* xix. 14. *Prov.* xxii. 28. *Hos.* v. 10. Cp. *Gesen.* 552. Cp. below, vi. 14).

7. *Is the spirit of the Lord straitened?*] Here is another reference to the words of Micah the true prophet in the time of Alab, as contrasted with the false prophets of Israel ; and to the words of the false prophets saying to him, "Which way went the *Spirit of the Lord* from me to speak unto thee?" (*1 Kings* xxii. 24.)

Do ye, O ye false prophets, imagine that ye can constrain the *Spirit of the Lord*, by forbidding His prophets to prophesy ? *are these His doings?* are your miseries appointed by God ? are they not brought upon you by yourselves ? O Israel, *thou hast destroyed thyself* (*Hos.* xiii. 9). *Do not my words*—the words which I utter, as God's prophet—*do good*, and bring comfort to *him that walketh uprightly?* e.g. to the good King Hezekiah, as contrasted with you, on whom I denounce judgment ?

8. *Even of late*] Even yesterday. Your wickedness is fresh, like a thing of yesterday. Cp. *2 Kings* ix. 26, "Surely I have seen *yesterday* the blood of Naboth;" and *Ps.* xc. 4, "A thousand years in Thy sight are but as yesterday."

Before
CHRIST
about
730.
m Deut. 12. 9.
n Lev. 18. 23, 25.
Jer. 3. 2.
|| Or, *walk with
the wind, and tie
falsely.*
o Ezek. 13. 3.

p ch. 4. 6, 7.

q Jer. 31. 10.

r Ezek. 36. 37.

s Hos. 3. 5.

t Isa. 52. 12.

From their children have ye taken away my glory for ever.

10 Arise ye, and depart; for this is not *your* ^m rest:

Because it is "polluted, it shall destroy *you*, even with a sore destruction.

11 If a man || ^o walking in the spirit and falsehood do lie, *saying*,

I will prophesy unto thee of wine and of strong drink;

He shall even be the prophet of this people.

12 ^p I will surely assemble, O Jacob, all of thee;

I will surely gather the remnant of Israel;

I will put them together ^q as the sheep of Bozrah,

As the flock in the midst of their fold:

^r They shall make great noise by reason of *the multitude* of men.

13 The breaker is come up before them:

They have broken up, and have passed through the gate,

And are gone out by it:

And ^s their king shall pass before them,

^t And the LORD on the head of them.

9. *have ye taken away my glory for ever*] Ye have robbed them for ever of the ornament which I gave them; whereas the Law prescribes that thou shalt restore at night the garment thou hast taken in pledge from a poor debtor (Exod. xxii. 26). So *Keil*. But there seems to be something more in this prophetic declaration. Ye have not only despoiled the poor, but ye have robbed Me; ye have divested Me, as far as ye are able, of My glory and excellency (Hebr. *hádár*, see Ps. viii. 5; xxix. 4. Isa. ii. 10. 19. 21; xxxv. 2, and usually applied to God).

He had said before (c. 6) that they would not remove *their own shame*, i.e. their own idols; and now God says that they have taken away *His* glory.

10. *Arise ye, and depart*] A noble appeal to Israel and Judah; representing to them that their future captivity will even be a blessing. *Arise ye, and depart*—quit your own home, for it is defiled by idolatry, which is the cause of your misery; go ye into Assyria, depart ye to Babylon, there ye will be chastened for your sins, and purified by repentance.

11. *If a man walking in the spirit*] Rather, *walking in wind* as his element; mere vanity. The sentence may be thus rendered, *If there be a man, walking in wind, forging lies and saying, I will prophesy unto thee of wine and strong drink—he shall be a prophet of this people*. Such an one, who is a prophet of lies, is the only person fit to be their prophet, and the only one to whom they would listen. Cp. Ezek. xiii. 3, 4.

PROMISE OF RESTORATION TO ISRAEL IN CHRIST.

12. *I will surely assemble, O Jacob, all of thee*] Observe the sudden transition from sorrow to joy. There is a similar change at the beginning of chapter iv.

The false prophets prophesied carnal delights, and deceived the people with lies. Micah, the true Prophet of the Lord, has nobler joys and purer pleasures to announce: "I foresee and foretell that thou, O Jacob, shalt be taken captive, and be scattered for thy sins; but I, saith the Lord, *will surely gather thee, I will gather together the remnant of Israel*," as Micah himself explains the words below (iv. 6), and as God says by Jeremiah (xxx. 10), "He that scattered Israel will gather him, and keep him, as a shepherd doth his flock."

This prophecy is fulfilled in Christ, the Good Shepherd, who gathers all His sheep together into one fold. See *Pocock* here; and cp. John x. 1—13; xvi. 23; and *Pusey*, p. 309.

The Prophet Micah, like Isaiah his contemporary, looks beyond the captivity of Israel by Assyria (i. 11. 16; ii. 4), which he foretells, as Isaiah did; and he looks also beyond the captivity of Judah at Babylon, which both these prophets pre-announced; and he looks also beyond the liberation of Judah by the decree of Cyrus; and his prophetic view extends to the time of that glorious spiritual restoration which is effected by Christ, of Whom Cyrus was a type. See above on Isa. xl. 1—12, which is the best comment on this prophecy.

— *the sheep of Bozrah*] In Edom; famous for cattle (Isa. xxxiv. 6).

— *of men*] He says *men*, in order that the comparison of Israel to a flock may be better understood.

THE VICTORY OF CHRIST AND OF HIS PEOPLE, IN HIS TRIUMPHANT RESURRECTION FROM THE DEAD.

13. *The breaker is come up before them*] A magnificent transition from Cyrus to Christ; as in Isa. xl. 1—5. The Prophet sees the conqueror Cyrus breaking into Babylon, smiting asunder the bars which kept Israel captive as in a prison; and how they went forth, after the issuing of his decree, in joy and triumph to their own land. And from this prophetic view of Cyrus and his victory, and its blessed consequences, he passes on, by a rapid prophetic flight, to speak of the Divine Cyrus, Jesus Christ, and of His triumph over Death and the Grave.

The *Breaker-up* is, by the confession of the Jews themselves, a title of the Messiah. See the Rabbinical authorities in *Bp. Pearson* on the Creed, Art. vi. p. 270, Note.

Christ has broken into the camp of our ghostly Enemy, and has spoiled the strong man, and has rescued us from his grasp. He has broken the gates of brass, and bars of iron in sunder (Ps. cvii. 16. Acts ii. 24), and has *gone forth* before us, as a triumphant king and captain at the head of a victorious army; and He is no other than *the Lord Jehovah at our head*; as the Lord went before His People, when He led them out of Egypt, at the Exodus (Exod. xiii. 21).

"There is no passing on nor going forth" (says *S. Jerome* here) "without Christ our King, Who is both King and Lord." "Christ" (says *Corn. a Lapide* here) "has delivered us from the bondage and prison-house of sin and Satan, and ye also will be able to break its bands, being strengthened by His grace, and ye will go forth with songs of joy to Zion—the Jerusalem above—which is free, and the mother of us all" (Gal. iv. 26). Christ, the Breaker, has gone up into heaven, and has sent His Spirit to lead all the faithful thither. All the saints of God, by virtue of the Death and Resurrection of this Divine Breaker, will burst through the prison-doors of the grave at the Day of Judgment, and be carried up, with Christ going before them, into His Heavenly Kingdom. He will pass on as a king at their head; and the Lord God (for such He is) will lead them thither, that where He is they may be also.

For further proofs and illustrations of this interpretation, see *Pfeiffer*, 451; *Hengstenberg*, and *Keil*. We may add the substance of the words of an English Expositor, who is often very happy in eliciting and in expressing the spiritual sense of Holy Scripture—*Matthew Henry*;

"*Their breaker has come up before them* to break down all opposition, and to clear the road before them, and under His guidance they have *broken up* and have *passed through the gate*, and have *gone out by it*, having Omnipotence for their Vanguard. *Their King shall pass before them*, to lead them in the way—even *Jehovah* (He is their King), at the head of them, as He was at the head of the armies of Israel when they came out of Egypt and followed the pillar of cloud and fire through the wilderness. Christ is the Church's King. He is *Jehovah*. He heads them; passes before them; brings them out of the land of their captivity (like Moses), and brings them (like Joshua) into the land of their rest. He is the *breaker*. He broke upon the powers of darkness, and broke through them, and rent the veil, and opened the Kingdom of Heaven to

III. ¹ And I said, Hear, I pray you, O heads of Jacob,

And ye princes of the house of Israel ;

^a *Is it not for you to know judgment ?*

² Who hate the good, and love the evil ;

Who pluck off their skin from off them,

And their flesh from off their bones ;

³ Who also ^b eat the flesh of my people,

And flay their skin from off them ;

And they break their bones, and chop them in pieces,

As for the pot, and ^c as flesh within the caldron.

⁴ Then ^d shall they cry unto the LORD, but he will not hear them :

He will even hide his face from them at that time,

As they have behaved themselves ill in their doings.

⁵ Thus saith the LORD ^e concerning the prophets that make my people err,

That ^f bite with their teeth, and cry, Peace ;

And ^g he that putteth not into their mouths,

They even prepare war against him.

⁶ ^h Therefore night *shall be* unto you, † that ye shall not have a vision ;

And it shall be dark unto you, † that ye shall not divine ;

ⁱ And the sun shall go down over the prophets,

And the day shall be dark over them.

⁷ Then shall the seers be ashamed, and the diviners confounded :

Yea, they shall all cover their † lips ; ^k for *there is* no answer of God.

⁸ But truly I am full of power by the spirit of the LORD,

And of judgment, and of might,

^l To declare unto Jacob his transgression, and to Israel his sin.

⁹ Hear this, I pray you, ye heads of the house of Jacob,

And princes of the house of Israel,

That abhor judgment, and pervert all equity.

¹⁰ ^m They build up Zion with ⁿ † blood,

And Jerusalem with iniquity.

¹¹ ^o The heads thereof judge for reward,

And ^p the priests thereof teach for hire,

And the prophets thereof divine for money :

^q Yet will they lean upon the LORD, † and say,

Is not the LORD among us ? none evil can come upon us.

Before
C H R I S T
710.

a Jer. 5. 4. 5.

b Ps. 14. 4.

c Ezek. 11. 3, 7.

d Ps. 18. 41.

Prov. 1. 28.

Isa. 1. 15.

Ezek. 8. 18.

Zech. 7. 13.

e Isa. 56. 10, 11.

Ezek. 13. 10. &

22. 25.

f ch. 2. 11.

Matt. 7. 15.

g Ezek. 13. 18, 19.

h Isa. 8. 20, 22

Ezek. 13. 23.

Zech. 13. 4.

† Heb. *from a*

vision.

† Heb. *from*

divining.

i Amos 8. 9.

† Heb. *upper lip.*

k Ps. 74. 9.

Amos 8. 11.

l Isa. 58. 1.

m Jer. 22. 13.

n Ezek. 22. 27.

Hab. 2. 12.

Zeph. 3. 3.

† Heb. *bloods.*

o Isa. 1. 23.

Ezek. 22. 12.

Hos. 4. 18.

cb. 7. 3.

p Jer. 6. 13.

q Isa. 48. 2.

Jer. 7. 4.

Rom. 2. 17.

† Heb. *saying.*

all believers. *The breaker has gone before us* out of the grave, and has carried away its gates as Samson did Gaza's—bars and all—and by that break we go out and arise to glory."

CH. III. 1. *And I said, Hear, I pray you*] Here begins the second portion of Micah's prophecies. The following address to the Rulers of Israel and Judah is a recapitulation and enlargement of the former; and as in that Address, so here also, denunciations of judgment are followed by promises of mercy in Christ. He contrasts evil shepherds with the Good Shepherd.

3. *Who also eat the flesh of my people*] Cp. Ps. xiv. 4, "They eat up My people as they eat bread;" and Ezek. xxii. 27, "Her princes in the midst thereof are like wolves ravening the prey, to shed blood, and to destroy souls, to get dishonest gain." Cp. Ezek. xxxiv. 2—10.

5. *the prophets—that bite with their teeth, and cry, Peace*] The false prophets, as long as they receive any thing to put into their mouths, prophesy peace; they prophesy for hire, and divine for money and for bread. See v. 11; and cp. above, on Amos vii. 12, where the idolatrous priest insinuates that the true Prophet Amos is like one of these false prophets, who, as

long as they are fed by their masters, are ready to promise peace to those who feed them; like dogs, who fawn on those who give them meat; and this is further explained by what follows: *he that putteth not into their mouths*, at him they snarl and growl, and *prepare war* (literally, *sanctify war* against him; cp. on Joel iii. 9), as if the cause of their own appetite were the cause of heaven!

Such are false teachers in the Christian Church, who make a traffic of godliness (1 Tim. vi. 5), and corrupt the Word of God for their own benefit (see on 2 Cor. ii. 17), and whose "god is their belly" (Phil. iii. 19), and whose "gospel is their maw."

6. *the sun shall go down*] Words taken from Amos viii. 9.

7. *they shall all cover their lips*] As in mourning (Levit. xiii. 45), and in shame (Ezek. xxiv. 17). Those lips with which they spoke lies; those mouths with which they devoured greedily what was given them, that they might prophesy (v. 5), shall be covered with sorrow and shame.

10. *They build up Zion with blood*] They build it up with blood as with cement. Cp. Jer. xxii. 13. Hab. ii. 12, "Woe to him that buildeth a town with blood."

Before
CHRIST
710.
r Jer. 26. 18.
ch. 1. 6.
s Ps. 79. 1.
t ch. 4. 2.
a Isa. 2. 2, &c.
Ezek. 17. 22, 23.

¹² Therefore shall Zion for your sake be ^r plowed as a field,

^a And Jerusalem shall become heaps,

And ^t the mountain of the house as the high places of the forest.

IV. ¹ But ^a in the last days it shall come to pass,

That the mountain of the house of the LORD shall be established in the top
of the mountains,

And it shall be exalted above the hills;

And people shall flow unto it.

² And many nations shall come, and say,

Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD,

And to the house of the God of Jacob;

And he will teach us of his ways,

And we will walk in his paths:

For the law shall go forth of Zion,

And the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

³ And he shall judge among many people,

And rebuke strong nations afar off;

12. Therefore shall Zion for your sake be plowed as a field]

This solemn warning of Micah was blessed by God with a salutary effect, and was remembered afterwards as having produced a reformation in Jerusalem, when, in the beginning of the reign of Jehoiakim (about B.C. 609), Jeremiah the Prophet was arrested by the priests and prophets of Jerusalem because he had stood forth in the Temple and had denounced, that woe would fall on Jerusalem for its sins unless it repented. But the princes (who were more just and temperate than the priests and prophets) interceded for him, and spake to all the assembly of the people—"Micah the Morasthite" (see above, i. 1) "prophesied in the days of Hezekiah, King of Judah" (Hezekiah's accession was about 120 years before that of Jehoiakim), "and spake to all the people of Judah saying, Thus saith the Lord of hosts, 'Zion shall be plowed as a field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps, and the mountain of the house' (the Temple) 'as the high places of a forest.' Did Hezekiah, King of Judah, put him at all to death? Did he not fear the Lord, and besought the Lord? and the Lord repented Him of the evil which He had pronounced against them."

Micah's prophecy produced a reformation in his own age; and it exercised a salutary influence a century afterwards, and induced the princes to protect Jeremiah, who was delivered out of the hands of his enemies (Jer. xxvi. 24), and continued to prophesy till after the fall of Jerusalem, which Micah and he himself had foretold.

Such is the energy of God's Word. It may seem to be dead for a time, like seed buried in the ground; but it springs up and brings forth fruit many years after it has been sown.

In a figurative sense, this prophecy of Micah extended even to the days of Christ. Then the heads of the house of Jacob and the princes of the house of Israel abhorred judgment, and perverted all equity. They condemned the Just One and built up Zion with blood, even with the Blood of Christ. Therefore Zion was ploughed as a field, and Jerusalem became heaps, and the mountain of the Lord's house—the Temple itself—became as the high places of the forest. Not one stone was left upon another by the Roman armies, but all was cast down, according to Christ's prophecy (Matt. xxiv. 2. Mark xiii. 2. Luke xix. 41; xxi. 6).

RESTORATION AND EXALTATION OF JERUSALEM IN CHRIST AND THE CHURCH.

CH. IV. 1. But in the last days] Literally, at the end of the days of prophets; the beginning of the day of Christ.

— it shall come to pass] Here is a sudden transition from sorrow to joy, from humiliation to exaltation, like that in ii. 12. The transition in both cases is produced by the gleam which the Prophet catches of the glory of Christ. See v. 3.

He had described the abasement and desolation of the mountain of the Lord's house (iii. 12); he now foretells its exaltation in the Church of Christ (*Justin Martyr* c. Tryphon, § 103). Cp. above Isa. ii. 2, and *Pusey* here.

— And people shall flow unto it] A marvellous prediction, which is fulfilled only in the world of grace. There rivers flow upward to hills, the powerful nations of the world flow to Zion which they had despised. The Church of Christ, which went forth from Jerusalem where Christ taught, worked miracles, and suffered, and rose from the dead; and to which He sent the Holy Ghost from Heaven, to enable His Apostles to go forth from Jerusalem to evangelize the World, was at first persecuted by the mighty Kingdoms of this world; but at length they were converted to Christianity, and bowed their necks meekly beneath the Cross. See above, on Isa. ii. 2, where the same prophecy is uttered, in order that in the mouth of two witnesses (Micah and Isaiah) this great truth might be established. Compare also the Vision of Ezekiel (xl.—xlvi.), describing the Catholic Church of Christ growing upward and stretching outward from Jerusalem to enfold all nations; which is the full expansion and development of the prophecy.

The Law of the New Dispensation, and the Word of God, which is the Gospel, are here represented as going forth from Zion, and from Jerusalem, the metropolis of the Old Dispensation, where the Temple stood, and sacrifices were offered, and to which, at stated periods, the Jews were obliged to go up to worship from all parts of the land.

The Gospel took its rise in Zion, in order to show that the Gospel was not set up in opposition to the Law, but grew out of the Law, and is the fulfilment of it.

In the Temple of Jerusalem Christ was presented; at Jerusalem He preached, worked miracles, died, and rose again; there the Spirit was poured out by Him when He had ascended into the Heavenly Jerusalem; there the Apostles were commissioned and enabled to begin to "preach repentance and remission of sins" to all Nations (Luke xxiv. 47); and thence they went forth with that gracious message into "Judea, Samaria, and the uttermost parts of the earth" (Acts i. 8). The living waters of the Gospel, which has gushed forth from the well-spring in Zion, flow in ever-widening streams, to irrigate and fertilize the wilderness of heathenism, and to make it blossom as the rose. See *Bp. Pearson*, Art. ii. pp. 82. 89; and *M. Henry* here; and *Hengstenberg*.

It has been supposed by some (*Caspari*, 444; *Delitzsch* on Isaiah, ii. 2; *Hengstenberg*, and *Keil*) that Micah's prophecy was delivered before that of Isaiah; but see above, on Isa. i. 1, and vi. 1. However (as *Pocock* observes, p. 27), the matter is of little moment. The true Prophets were not like the false Prophets, who stole the word from others (Jer. xxiii. 30), but they were all full of power by the Spirit of the Lord (iii. 8. 2 Pet. i. 21); and what the Holy Spirit had spoken by the mouth of one Prophet, He often repeated by the mouth of another.

3. He shall judge among many people] Or peoples. Christ shall rule over all nations: "All kings shall bow down before Him, all nations shall do Him service" (Ps. ii. 8; lxxii. 8. 11; ex. 6); "At the Name of Jesus every knee shall bow" (Phil. ii. 10); "The Kingdoms of this World are become the Kingdoms of our Lord and of His Christ" (Rev. xi. 15).

- And they shall beat their swords into ^b plowshares,
 And their spears into || pruninghooks :
 Nation shall not lift up a sword against nation,
^c Neither shall they learn war any more.
⁴ ^d But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree ;
 And none shall make *them* afraid :
 For the mouth of the LORD of hosts hath spoken *it*.
⁵ For ^e all people will walk every one in the name of his god,
 And ^f we will walk in the name of the LORD our God for ever and ever.
⁶ In that day, saith the LORD, ^g will I assemble her that halteth,
^h And I will gather her that is driven out,
 And her that I have afflicted ;
⁷ And I will make her that halted ⁱ a remnant,
 And her that was cast far off a strong nation :
 And the LORD ^k shall reign over them in mount Zion
 From henceforth, even for ever.
⁸ And thou, O tower of || the flock,
 The strong hold of the daughter of Zion,
 Unto thee shall it come, even the first dominion ;
 The kingdom shall come to the daughter of Jerusalem.
⁹ Now why dost thou cry out aloud ?
^l *Is there no king in thee ?*
 Is thy counsellor perished ?
 For ^m pangs have taken thee as a woman in travail.
¹⁰ Be in pain, and labour to bring forth, O daughter of Zion,
 Like a woman in travail :
 For now shalt thou go forth out of the city,

Before
CHRIST
710.
b Isa. 2. 4.
Joel 3. 10.
|| Or, *scythes*.

c Ps. 72. 7.
d 1 Kings 4. 25.
Zech. 3. 10.

e Jer. 2. 11.

f Zech. 10. 12.

g Ezek. 34. 16.

Zeph. 3. 19.

h Ps. 147. 2.

Ezek. 34. 13. &

37. 21.

i ch. 2. 12. &
5. 3, 7, 8. & 7. 18.

k Isa. 9. 6. &

24. 23.

Dan. 7. 14, 27.

Luke 1. 33.

Rev. 11. 15.

|| Or, *Edar* :

Gen. 35. 21.

l Jer. 8. 19.

m Isa. 13. 8. &

21. 3.

Jer. 30. 6. &

50. 43.

— *they shall beat their swords into plowshares*] An image derived by inversion from Joel, speaking of times of war (Joel iii. 10).

This prophecy began to be fulfilled in the peaceful days of the first appearance of the Gospel. The World was in a quiet condition when Christ came to visit it. That universal peace was an earnest of the peace in earth and heaven which is the fruit of the Gospel of Christ (*S. Cyril; Milton, Ode on the Nativity, stanzas 3, 4, 5*).

4. *sit every man under his vine*] As in the days of Solomon, the *peaceable*—the type of Christ, the Son of David, the Builder of the true Temple, and the Prince of Peace (1 Kings iv. 25).

5. *For all people will walk*] *All nations walk every one in the name of his god*; i. e. though all nations should strengthen themselves in the name, and by the might, of their several gods, and combine against us, we will not fear, but will walk with our one true God, and shall prevail against them by His Name.

6. *In that day, saith the LORD, will I assemble*] Here is a promise of restoration similar to that in ii. 12.

— *her that halteth*] Cp. v. 7. I will make *her that halted* a remnant, and *her that was cast off* a strong nation; and Zeph. iii. 19, I will save *her that halteth*. She that *halteth* is the dispersed Israel, lame and worn out, like a flock by wandering, but gathered in Christ.

It is suggested that the history of Mephibosheth, the halting son of Jonathan, the son of Saul, is inserted in the Sacred History as being prophetic and typical of the Jewish Nation. See the note above, on 2 Sam. ix. 6.

Mephibosheth, who *halted*, was brought to David, and made to sit at his table (2 Sam. ix. 10). So the Mephibosheth of the Hebrew Nation, which now *halteth*, will be brought to sit at the table of the Divine Son of David, Jesus Christ.

7. *the LORD shall reign—in mount Zion—for ever*] These words are repeated from Joel iii. 20, 21. Obadiah 21.

Observe the contrast. On account of the rebellion of her people, Zion becomes a *ploughed field* (iii. 12), but through the obedience of Christ, the Lord will *reign in it for ever*. Cp. Ps. ii. 6, "Yet have I set my king upon my holy hill of Sion."

Isa. xxiv. 23, "The Lord of Hosts shall reign in Mount Zion." The Church of Christ is the Mount Zion which stands for ever. The Church is called *Mount Zion* by the Holy Spirit. Heb. xii. 22, "Ye are come unto *Mount Zion*;" and Rev. xiv. 1, "Lo, a Lamb stood on the *Mount Zion*, and with him an hundred forty and four thousand, having His Father's name written in their foreheads."

8. *And thou, O tower of the flock, the strong hold of the daughter of Zion, unto thee shall it (or he) come, even the first dominion*] This is fulfilled in the Messiah (*Targum*). The strong hold or fortress of Zion, the royal palace and castle of David, the Shepherd and King (cp. Cant. iv. 4. 2 Sam. v. 9. 1 Kings ix. 15. 1 Chron. xii. 1. *Hengst., Keil*), shall become a sheepfold for the flock of Him Who is, like David, a King, a Conqueror, and a Shepherd. See below, v. 4, "He shall stand and feed in the strength of the Lord." Cp. vii. 14, "Feed thy people with thy rod, the flock of thine heritage."

To this pastoral fortress *the first dominion shall come*; all the primitive glory and majesty of the reign of Solomon and David shall come back to the Throne of David in Christ and His Church (Luke i. 32. Matt. xxi. 4, 5. John xii. 17).

Some of the Hebrew Rabbis supposed that this *tower of the flock* is the same as that *tower of the flock* which was near Bethlehem, and so *Pusey, 327*, and this deserves notice. See Gen. xxxv. 20. But the scenery of the prophetic description is at Jerusalem (see *Pocock, 33*; and *Keil* here; and so some Hebrew Rabbis; cp. *S. Jerome, Tradit. Hebr. in Gen. xxxv.*).

In a spiritual sense, this prophecy is accomplished in the true Zion, the Church of Christ. The Tower of the Flock (says *A. Lapide*) is the Church of Christ, which had its origin in Jerusalem, and to which all nations are gathered, so as to make one flock and one Shepherd (John x. 16).

9. *Now why dost thou cry out aloud?*] He returns to the nearer vision of sorrow for the approaching misery of Zion. He sees the captivity of her kings (Jehoiachin and Zedekiah), and the confusion of her counsellors. She is represented as in anguish, like a woman in travail. See Hos. xiii. 13. Isa. xli. 14.

Before
CHRIST
710.

And thou shalt dwell in the field,
And thou shalt go *even* to Babylon;
There shalt thou be delivered;
There the LORD shall redeem thee from the hand of thine enemies.

n Lam. 2. 16.

¹¹ "Now also many nations are gathered against thee,
That say, Let her be defiled,
And let our eye ^o look upon Zion.

o Obad. 12.
ch. 7. 10.
p Isa. 55. 8.
Rom. 11. 33.

¹² But they know not ^p the thoughts of the LORD,
Neither understand they his counsel:

For he shall gather them ^a as the sheaves into the floor.

q Isa. 21. 10.

¹³ ^r Arise and thresh, O daughter of Zion:

r Isa. 41. 15, 16.
Jer. 51. 33.

For I will make thine horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass:

And thou shalt ^s beat in pieces many people:

s Dan. 2. 41.

^t And I will consecrate their gain unto the LORD,

t Isa. 18. 7. &
23. 18. & 60. 6, 9.
u Zech. 4. 14. &
6. 5.

And their substance unto ^u the Lord of the whole earth.

V. ¹ Now gather thyself in troops, O daughter of troops:

He hath laid siege against us:

v Lam. 3. 30.
Matt. 5. 39. &
27. 30.

They shall ^a smite the judge of Israel with a rod upon the cheek.

10. *thou shalt go even to Babylon*] As Isaiah also, Micah's contemporary, was enabled to foresee and foretell, in the days of Hezekiah, at a time when *Assyria* was the dominant power, and hostile to Judah, and *Babylon* was of little consideration. See above, the notes on Isa. xxxix. 3—8.

Here Micah also supplies a refutation of that modern sceptical Criticism, which ascribes the latter portion of Isaiah's prophecies to a later author than Isaiah, because they presuppose this captivity at Babylon. See above, on Isa. chap. xl. *Prelim. Note*.

— *There shalt thou be delivered; there the LORD shall redeem thee*] Micah also, as well as Isaiah, foretells the return of Judah from Babylon. Compare Isa. xl. 1—4; xlv. 26. Like Isaiah also, Micah was enabled by the Holy Spirit to look far beyond the captivity of Judah at Babylon, and beyond Judah's deliverance from it. He was empowered to see that glorious event, of which that deliverance was a type—namely, the deliverance of Judah and the World from the exile and bondage of sin and Satan by the mighty arm of Christ—the divine Cyrus. See above, ii. 12, 13; below, v. 3.

11. *let our eye look upon Zion*] Cp. Ps. liv. 7.

RESTORATION OF ISRAEL IN CHRIST.

12, 13. *he shall gather them as the sheaves into the floor. Arise and thresh, O daughter of Zion*] The Heathen Nations shall be like ripe sheaves cast together on the threshing-floor, to be trodden under the hoofs of some powerful horned oxen, drawing the threshing-machine over them, and trampling them under their feet (Deut. xxv. 4—horns are emblems of strength—Deut. xxxiii. 17. 1 Kings xxii. 11. Isa. xxi. 10; xli. 15. Amos vi. 13). See above, on Isa. xli. 15, 16, where similar imagery is used; and compare the note on Joel iii. 13, 14.

This prophecy received a primary and partial fulfilment in the victories of the Maccabees (1 Macc. v. 1, 2). But (as *S. Jerome* observes) its adequate accomplishment is in Christ. It is to be applied to the work of Apostles and Apostolic men, Missionaries of Christ, who are compared by St. Paul to oxen treading out the corn (1 Cor. ix. 9. 1 Tim. v. 18. Cp. Isa. xxxii. 20). Their work is indeed one of bringing the nations into subjection (2 Cor. ii. 14; also x. 5. Eph. vi. 12); but it is in subjection to the Law of Love, in order that the good grain, winnowed from the sheaves on the floor, may be gathered into the garner of heaven. Cp. note above, on Ps. cxlix. 8.

— *thou shalt beat in pieces many people*] Rather, *thou wilt crush many nations* by threshing. Many Nations of the World will rise up against Christ and His Church, but He will enable her to overcome them all. The chaff and stubble will be burnt, but not a grain of good corn will be lost; cp. Ezekiel's prophecy concerning the gathering together of the Anti-Christian Powers in the latter days, and their final overthrow. See above, on Ezekiel, chap. xxxviii. and xxxix. 9.

— *I will consecrate their gain unto the LORD*] Cp. Isa. xxxiii. 18. Zech. xiv. 20.

CH. V. 1. *Now gather thyself in troops*] Rather, *Now shalt thou be cut in pieces, thou daughter of troops*; thou, O invading army (not Judah, as some expound the words), shalt in thy turn be cut off, or spoiled, *Vulg., Targum, R. Tanchum, Abarbinel, A. Lapide, Grotius, and Pocock*, pp. 39—43.

The word here used is from *gâlad*, to cut in pieces; *Gesen.* 157; *Fuerst*, 263; whence *Armageddon*, the mount of cutting in pieces (see on Rev. xvi. 16; and Joel iii. 13); and occurs in Deut. xiv. 1. 1 Kings xviii. 28. Cp. Jer. xvi. 6; xli. 5; xlvii. 5.

The sense is the same as in Isaiah (xxxiii. 1), "Woe to thee that spoilest—thou shalt be spoiled." This will be the fate of all the enemies of God and His Church. Cp. Rev. xiii. 10.

There is a play on the words between the verb here used and the noun *gad*, a troop. Thou, who boastest of thy multitude of troops, wilt be assailed and conquered by an invader in thy turn, and be cut in pieces, for thy violence against us.

Observe also that this translation serves to show the connexion of what has gone before with what follows.

At the end of the last chapter, Zion, victorious over her enemies, is compared to one who threshes sheaves on a threshing-floor, with a sharp threshing instrument, and cuts them in pieces by it. And now it is said that the daughter of troops—that is, first, *Assyria*, the spoiler of Israel and the invader of Judah, and next, *Babylon*, the conqueror of Jerusalem, and the carrier-away of her people captive—will be cut in pieces by this threshing. Compare Joel's expression, "Multitudes, multitudes in the valley of decision," or of cutting in pieces (Joel iii. 14).

Next the Prophet Micah passes on to declare *Who* it is that gives to Zion this power and victory—namely, CHRIST.

— *he hath laid siege against us: they shall smite*] The Chaldean has besieged us, and has smitten our King, Zedekiah (2 Kings xxv. 21. Lam. iv. 20); but will be smitten also.

Observe the noble contrast which now follows between the mighty Ninevehs and Babylons of this world, and the lowly Bethlehem. That which is great in the world's sight, is small in God's eye; and what is weak in man's sight, is strong by His power. The first shall be last, and the last first. All the proud Ninevehs and Babylons of this world will be put under the feet of Him Who came forth from obscure Bethlehem.

THE DELIVERANCE OF ZION BY CHRIST, BORN AT BETHLEHEM: THE RULER, THE SHEPHERD, THE EVERLASTING GOD.

The ensuing prophecy of Micah (v. 1—5), combined with what goes before and what follows, consummates the witness of the Old Testament concerning Christ, and is the groundwork of His history in the New. It completes the chain of predictions (as *Dr. Hales* has observed) which appropriate the promised Seed of the Woman to the family of Shem, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and to the Tribe of Judah, and to the Royal House of David at Bethlehem, where, as here foretold, He is to be

² But thou, ^b Beth-lehem Ephratah, *though* thou be little ^c among the
^d thousands of Judah,
 Yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me *that is to be* ^e ruler in Israel ;
^f Whose goings forth *have been* from of old, from † everlasting.

Before
CHRIST
710.

b Matt. 2, 6.
 John 7, 42.
 c 1 Sam. 23, 23.
 d Exod. 18, 25.
 e Gen. 49, 10.
 f Isa. 9, 6.
 f Ps. 90, 2.

Prov. 8, 22, 23. John 1, 1. † Heb. the days of eternity.

born. It carefully distinguishes that Human Nativity from His Divine Generation before the beginning of the World—even from Eternity. Thus it prepares the way for the Gospels of St. Matthew and St. Luke, which begin with a narrative of the wonderful events connected with His Birth at Bethlehem; and it is also like a prologue to the Gospel of the beloved Disciple St. John, declaring the mystery of His Godhead, and of His Eternal Generation from the Father. It foretells the dispersion and temporary rejection of the literal Israel, and the gathering in of the Gentiles into the Church by the instrumentality of the faithful remnant of Israel (the Apostles, and first preachers of the Gospel, who were Jews), and the final restoration of Israel to God in Christ and His Church. And thus it prepares the way for the preaching of St. Paul and the other Apostles in their Epistles; and it foretells and describes the full and final victory of Christ and His Church, over all the hostile powers of this world; and thus it anticipates the Apocalypse.

2. But thou, Beth-lehem Ephratah] Or, And thou. On Bethlehem Ephratah, see Gen. xxxv. 19; xlviii. 7. Ruth iv. 11. Bethlehem signifies house of bread; Ephratah means fruitful. Both were appropriate names for the birthplace of Him Who is the True, the Living, Bread that came down from Heaven (John vi. 32—35); and Whose Birth, and Death, and Resurrection, are the germinant seed, and also the gracious nourishment, of all the spiritual fruitfulness of the Saints in this world, and of all their glory, beauty, and felicity in the world to come.

— though thou be little among the thousands of Judah] Or, too small to be reckoned among the thousands of Judah. See Keil and Pusey. The word thousands means families under a leader or head. See Exod. xviii. 21, 25. Num. i. 16; x. 36. Deut. i. 15. Judges vi. 15, where the word is rendered family.

In the Gospel of St. Matthew, when the wise men came to Jerusalem, saying, "Where is He that is born King of the Jews?" and when Herod asked the Chief Priests and Scribes where Christ should be born, we read that they answered that question by referring to this passage of the Prophet Micah, which is quoted in that Gospel in the following form:—"And thou, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, art not the least among the princes of Judah."

From this quotation we may first gather the important inference, that the Jews in our Lord's age applied this prophecy of Micah to the Messiah; as the Targum here does. See also John vii. 42, where they say, "Hath not the Scripture said that Christ cometh of the seed of David, and out of the town of Bethlehem, where David was?" And the Holy Spirit, recording the quotation thus interpreted, has set His Divine Seal upon that interpretation as true.

This leads us on to the conclusion, that, not only in this passage, but in many other prophecies, Micah is speaking of Christ. Cp. Bp. Andrewes' Sermon on this text, vol. i. 153.

It has been objected that the form of this quotation does not agree exactly with the original, nor with the Septuagint.

But, as was before observed with regard to the Septuagint (see on Amos ix. 12), it is rather to be regarded as a Paraphrase than a literal Version; and it imparts the sense and spirit more clearly to its Greek readers, because it is not a literal version of the Hebrew. So we may say here—the Council of Chief Priests and Scribes (if St. Matthew is giving their exact words), or St. Matthew himself, who was inspired by the Holy Spirit, is doing what the Septuagint had done, and what was familiar to all Hebrew expounders of Scripture; he is giving the sense of the Prophet Micah, and is giving it more clearly to his readers, even by deviating in some particulars from the letter, which would have been less intelligible to them. Thus, for example, he calls Bethlehem by the title of Bethlehem in Judah, and not Ephratah; and this for a good reason; because the name Ephratah was then obsolete. It was a fact that Bethlehem was in Judah, and the Evangelist thus reminds us of Jacob's prophecy that Shiloh should come from Judah (see on Gen. xlix. 10), and that the prophecy was now fulfilled in Jesus.

Next, he substitutes princes for thousands. This also was a reasonable and judicious paraphrase. He found the word aláphim (thousands) in the original of Micah. But this word,

however clear to the Hebrew mind, would not be so to those readers of the Gospel who were not familiar with Hebrew customs and history, and it suggested to the Evangelist the similar word allúphim (leaders or rulers), which would convey it to them; for the Hebrew thousand represented a certain organization, with a leader or ruler at its head. See the beginning of this note.

Further, whereas Micah says that Bethlehem is little to be among the thousands of Judah, St. Matthew says that Bethlehem is not the least among the princes of Judah. This also is a paraphrase, and it takes up the latter part of Micah's prophecy here, and makes it act upon the former. As much as to say, that since "out of thee shall He come forth unto Me, that is to be the ruler in Israel, Whose goings forth have been from of old, even from everlasting," therefore, though thou, O Bethlehem, art now fallen away from thy pristine grandeur and glory, which thou didst possess in the days of David, and thy very title, "City of David," has passed away from thee to Jerusalem, and thou hast dwindled down into a small and obscure village, and art therefore little (as Micah says) to be reckoned among the thousands of Judah; yet, by reason of what Micah also says concerning thee, thou (though thus fallen in the eyes of men, and in the esteem of the world) art not little in the eyes of God, Who will surely keep His promise to David, and Who loves to choose the weak and despised things of this world, to confound the mighty and the proud. No; thou art by no means the least; but, rather, thou art chief among the thousands and the rulers of the thousands of Judah; for out of thee shall come forth to Me (says God) the Ruler of all Israel—Whose goings forth, or birth, are from thee, in time, but are from Me in Eternity. Cp. the note of A Lapide here, and Pusey on Daniel, p. 486; and for an excellent dissertation on this passage, in which its Christian character is triumphantly vindicated against the modern Jews and Unbelievers, see, especially, Hengstenberg, Christology, i. pp. 479—513, English Translation.

In thus dealing with the prophecy of Micah, the Evangelist acted in a manner familiar to Hebrew interpreters and expositors of Scripture, and consistently with the rules of sound reason, which does not scrutinize syllables, but endeavours to understand the sense, and to communicate the spirit, of God's Holy Word. On this subject see further below, the note on Matt. ii. 5, 6, and the excellent remarks of Surenhusius, Catalagé, pp. 170—188.

Lastly, observe how Micah agrees with his contemporary prophet Isaiah. Isaiah, speaking to the despairing King of Judah, Ahaz (when his throne and kingdom were menaced by the confederacy of Israel and Syria), guaranteed to him the stability of both (and the safety of all true believers in every age) by the promise of the birth of the Everlasting King Emmanuel, from the Virgin of the house of David. See on Isa. vii. 1—16. So Micah pledges God's word for the protection of Judah and Jerusalem, and of all faithful sons of Zion, from the Assyrian and Babylonian (and from all worldly enemies), by the promise of His Birth at Bethlehem. Isaiah's prophecy designates the person from whom He is to be born. Micah names the place of His Birth. Beth declare His Manhood and Godhead.

— shall he come forth unto Me] God Himself speaks. The Father is declaring the Incarnation and Birth at Bethlehem, and also the Eternal Generation of the Son.

— ruler] Heb. Múshel. A word applied to Joseph as Governor over Egypt (Gen. xlv. 8, 26); to Solomon (1 Kings iv. 21); and to the Ruler (the Messiah) promised by God to David (2 Sam. xxiii. 3. 2 Chron. vii. 18). Compare Jer. xxx. 21, "Their Governor" (Múshel) "shall proceed out of them." Cp. Zech. x. 4.

— from everlasting] This is an illustrious testimony to the Divine Generation before all time, of Christ the Eternal Son of God, "God, of the substance of His Father, begotten before all worlds;" and also in time (according to what is said that He should come forth of Bethlehem), "made Man of the substance of His mother, and born in the world." Manifestly this prophecy belongs only to Him (Pocock, 44; and Hengstenberg here). Cp. note on Proverbs viii. 22, 23, where it is said, "I was set up from everlasting," the same word as here; and cp. John i. 1, 2; viii. 58.

Before
CHRIST
710.
g ch. 4. 10.

h ch. 4. 7.

|| Or, rule.
i Isa. 40. 11. &
49. 10.
Ezek. 34. 23.
ch. 7. 14.

k Ps. 72. 7.
l a. 52. 13.
Zech. 9. 10.
Luke 1. 32.
1 Ps. 72. 7.
Isa. 9. 6.
Zech. 9. 10.
Luke 2. 14.
Eph. 2. 14.

† Heb. *princes of men*.

- ³ Therefore will he give them up,
Until the time *that* ^s she which travaileth hath brought forth :
Then ^h the remnant of his brethren shall return unto the children of Israel ;
⁴ And he shall stand and || ⁱ feed in the strength of the LORD,
In the majesty of the name of the LORD his God ;
And they shall abide :
For now ^k shall he be great unto the ends of the earth.
⁵ And this *man* ^l shall be the peace,
When the Assyrian shall come into our land :
And when he shall tread in our palaces,
Then shall we raise against him seven shepherds,
And eight † principal men.

The Prophet Micah announces the Birth of the Messiah in human flesh, and His Coming forth from Eternity. This ought not to seem strange to us, when we remember that the Messiah is represented by Micah's contemporary prophet Isaiah, not only as a Child born to us, and as a Son given to us, but also as the Mighty God, the Everlasting Father, or, rather, the Father of Eternity; i. e. the Father of the new, regenerate race of man—the Father of the new Creation; of Whom Eternity is one essential attribute. See Isa. ix. 6.

³. *Therefore will he give them up, until the time that she which travaileth hath brought forth*] Because the Messiah will come forth from Bethlehem, the City of David, reduced to low estate, therefore it is appointed by Him Who is God as well as Man, that Israel and Judah should be *given up* to captivity and to humiliation, till the time of His Incarnation and Birth from His Mother at Bethlehem, in order that His Divine Power and Love may be shown by raising them from the depths of misery to a glorious elevation in Himself (*Cyril, Jerome, Pocock, Ewald, Hitzig, Keil*).

Here also Micah harmonizes with his brother prophet Isaiah, declaring the Godhead and Manhood of Christ; and the one Prophet illustrates the other. "Behold, a Virgin" (or rather the Virgin; the Virgin of the house of David; the Virgin who is foreseen by the Divine Eye of the Holy Spirit, speaking by Isaiah) "shall conceive, and bear a Son, and shall call His name Immanuel" (God with us) (Isa. vii. 14); and this was the proof to Ahaz, that though Judah would be brought low, it would never be destroyed. Cp. *Pocock*, p. 48.

— *the remnant of his brethren shall return*] The remnant shall stand, as the name *Shear-jashub* (Isaiah's son) declared (see Isa. vii. 3; x. 21), and they are called His *brethren*; for since He is Man, and of the Seed of Abraham, He "is not ashamed to call them brethren" (Heb. ii. 11, 12); and they shall return unto Israel, because all will be united in that common name, and be the "Israel of God" (Gal. vi. 16).

⁴. *he shall stand and feed in the strength of the LORD*] He shall stand—that is, remain—firm and immovable, in stately dignity, and royal and judicial majesty; and having a constant care for His people, He shall feed His flock like a Shepherd, in the strength of the Lord Jehovah; for He is Son of God as well as Son of David; and is called *David* by the Prophets; see on Ezek. xxxiv. 23, "I will set *one Shepherd* over them, even My Servant *David*;" He shall feed them, and He shall be their Shepherd."

So speaks Micah's contemporary, Isaiah: "Behold, the Lord God will come with strong hand, and His arm shall rule for Him. He shall feed His flock like a shepherd; He shall gather the lambs with His arm, and carry them in His bosom, and shall gently lead those that are with young" (Isa. xl. 10, 11). Compare our Lord's words (John x. 1—12). His flock ranges over all lands, *even unto the ends of the earth*. Cp. Isa. liii. 10. Ps. ii. 8. All Men are His flock; all the Earth is His fold. Cp. *Caspari* here, pp. 232—236.

⁵. *this man shall be the peace, when the Assyrian shall come into our land*] We have seen in the prophecies of Isaiah, that Sennacherib, the proud King of Assyria, blaspheming God, and invading Judah, and threatening Hezekiah and Jerusalem in the days of Micah and Isaiah, was a type and figure of the godless Powers of this world raging against Christ and the spiritual Sion of His Church; and that the sudden destruction of the army of Sennacherib beneath the walls of Jerusalem, is a type and prophecy of the future discomfiture and overthrow of all the enemies of the Church of God. See

above, on Isa. lvi. 24. This view is further displayed by Ezekiel in his prophetic description of the Anti-Christian conflict of the latter days. See above, on Ezek. xxxviii. 4. 17; xxxix. 2. 11. "*The Assyrian* is a type of Antichrist" (*Pusey*).

Christ is called *the Peace*, or *Our Peace*. The Hebrew word for *peace* means *safety* and all its attributes. Christ Himself explains it. "In Me ye shall have *peace*; in the world ye shall have tribulation; but be of good cheer, I have overcome the world" (John xvi. 33; xiv. 27). "He is our Peace," says St. Paul (Eph. ii. 14). Cp. Col. iii. 15.

"When the Assyrian shall come into our land." The words "*the Assyrian*" primarily represent Sennacherib coming against Judah; and this prophecy of Micah suggests the conjecture that the "Angel of the Lord" (a title often given to Christ in the Old Testament; see Gen. xvi. 7; xxii. 11. Exod. iii. 2. Judges vi. 12), who went out and smote the Assyrians at the walls of Jerusalem with that terrible stroke of destruction, in the days of Hezekiah, and brought *peace* to Jerusalem, was no other than He of Whom Micah is now speaking—namely, CHRIST.

In a second sense the name "*the Assyrian*" is a generic term for all the enemies of Christ and His Church. Cp. *S. Jerome* here, who applies this term to our ghostly enemy, the Evil One—the Adversary of Christ and of His People; and so *Corn. a Lapide* and *Matthew Henry* here: "These words refer to the deliverance of Hezekiah and his kingdom from the power of Sennacherib in the type; but under the shadow of that, it is a promise of safety to the Church from the designs and attempts of all the Powers of darkness" (cp. *Pusey* here).

— *Then shall we raise against him seven shepherds, and eight principal men*] *We will raise*. Here, says *S. Jerome*, we may recognize a plurality of Persons in the Godhead.—We—the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost—will do this. Cp. Gen. i. 26.

In the numbers *seven* and *eight* used here, and applied to Christian Shepherds, who derive a royal power from Christ, there may perhaps be a reference to the *seven* and *eight* princes in Eastern Courts, "who saw the King's face" (see Esther i. 14, and Jer. xxxix. 3); and the contrast and antagonism of Christ and His Church to the secular Powers of the World, may perhaps be thus marked. But it must also be remembered that *seven* is the number of rest and completion, and *eight* is the number of resurrection, victory, and glory. See on Gen. ii. 2; xvii. 12. Exod. xii. 15; xxix. 30. 2 Chron. vii. 9, and the notes on Matt. v. 2; xxiii. 13; xxvii. 52. Luke xxiv. 1. Rev. i. 11; xi. 19, p. 229; xvii. 10, 11, and above, on Ezekiel, p. 280. Compare Eccles. xi. 2: "Give a portion to *seven*, and also to *eight*;" that is, give largely—let thy work of bounty be complete and overflow. And in Isaiah the *seven* women who take hold of the skirt of one Man who is a Jew (Isa. iv. 1), represent the sevenfold fulness of the Universal Church (symbolized by the seven golden Candlesticks in the Apocalypse, Rev. i. 12. 20) laying hold of the One Man, Christ Jesus, by the hand of Faith.

This prophecy of Micah, therefore, foretells the raising up of a complete and victorious army of Christ's faithful soldiers, the Apostles and their successors, the *principal men* in His Church, who will overcome the enemies of the Church by their holiness of living, their courage in preaching, and by their patience in suffering and dying.

Observe the word rendered *principal men*. It means *anointed*, and is so rendered by *Symmachus* and *Gesenius* (553). All the grace and power and royalty of Christians is from Christ, the Anointed One. "They have an unction from the Holy One" (1 John ii. 20). "Of His fulness have all we received, and grace for grace" (John i. 16).

⁶ And they shall † waste the land of Assyria with the sword,
And the land of ^m Nimrod ‖ in the entrances thereof:
Thus shall he ⁿ deliver us from the Assyrian,
When he cometh into our land,
And when he treadeth within our borders.

Before
CH E R I S T
710.
† Heb. *cut up*.
^m Gen. 10. 8, 10,
11.
‖ Or, *with her
own naked words*.
n Luke 1. 71.

⁷ And ^o the remnant of Jacob shall be in the midst of many people

^p As a dew from the LORD;
As the showers upon the grass,
That tarrieth not for man,
Nor waiteth for the sons of men.

o ver. 3.
p Deut. 32. 2.
Ps. 72. 6. & 110. 3.

⁸ And the remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles in the midst of many people,

As a lion among the beasts of the forest,
As a young lion among the flocks of ‖ sheep:
Who, if he go through, both treadeth down, and teareth in pieces,
And none can deliver.

‖ Or, *goats*

⁹ Thine hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries,
And all thine enemies shall be cut off.

¹⁰ ^q And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the LORD,
That I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee,

q Zech. 9. 10.

6. *they shall waste the land of Assyria*] Or it may mean, *they shall feed* (according as the word is derived from *râdh*, to feed, or *râa*, to break) *the land of Assyria with the sword*. Cp. Ps. ii. 9. Rev. ii. 7; and so *Sept.*, *Vulg.*, and *Keil*.

In the Church of God the work of pastoral teaching is always a work of warfare against error. In the escutcheon of the Church the sword is joined with the crook. Cp. above, on Psalm cxlix. 6—9.

The more widely the Gospel of Christ spreads itself among the nations of the world, the more bitter will be the spirit of Unbelief and Ungodliness (*Keil*). The conflict will wax hotter and hotter, till it is decided by the Coming of the Lord to Judgment. The more fierce the rage of Antichrist, the nearer will be the presence of Christ.

— *the land of Nimrod*] Babylon, the other great enemy of Judah. See Gen. x. 8—11.

— *in the entrances thereof*] Or, *gates*. The margin has *with her own naked swords*. The word in the original, *pethacheyah*, is from the same root (*pathach*, to open, to unsheath) with *pethichoth* (Ps. lv. 21), rendered *drawn swords*, and with *pethachim*, which signifies *entrances*; “and our Translators” (says *Pocock*) “being loth to determine, put one into the Text, and the other into the Margin. The Ancient Versions are in favour of the former; but many Hebrew Rabbis prefer the latter rendering;” and in that sense it may be said spiritually, with *Pocock*, 55, that “by the might and power of Christ, and of such as shall by Him be qualified and commissioned to spread and maintain His Truth, all that oppose it shall be beaten back with their own weapons”—as Goliath’s head was cut off by David with Goliath’s own drawn sword.

This sentence, *they shall waste the land of Assyria with the sword, and the land of Nimrod*, or Babylon, is the clue to the two next succeeding prophetic books—viz. of Nahum and Habbakuk, which foretell the overthrow respectively of the two great worldly powers hostile to God’s ancient Church—viz. Assyria and Babylon; and under the type and figure of them, predict the destruction of the two forms of Antichristianism symbolized by them—viz. Infidelity and Idolatry. See above, on Isa. xliii., *Prelim. Note*, p. 38; xxi. 11.

— *Thus shall he deliver us*] Christ’s ministers, his *principal men*, will fight valiantly; but the deliverance will be due to Him.

7. *the remnant of Jacob shall be in the midst of many people* (or *nations*) *as a dew from the LORD—men*] The faithful remnant of Israel are the Apostles and all those among the Jews who believe in Christ, and preach Christ, God and Man, as revealed by the Prophet Micah, who loves to repeat this word remnant (ii. 12; iv. 7; v. 7, 8; vii. 18). Cp. Isa. i. 9. Rom. ix. 29; xi. 14.

This declaration is naturally subjoined to the prophecy that the God of Israel will raise up *seven shepherds* and eight *principal*

men (i.e. a victorious army of believers and preachers) against the enemy (v. 5).

The Apostolic Church of Christ, which derives its origin from Zion, is *in the midst of the Gentiles* among many nations, being diffused every where, and is like *a dew from the Lord upon the Nations, and like the shower upon the grass*, for the Church receives and diffuses the dews and showers of the Holy Spirit in the Word and Sacraments of Christ.

— *That tarrieth not for man, nor waiteth for the sons of men*] The Church is not like a cistern supplied with water pumped up by the force of some hydraulic mechanism of human device; it is not like the irrigation of Egypt, “watered by the foot” (Deut. xi. 10); but it is moistened like Gideon’s fleece—the type of the Church (see Judges vi. 39, 40); it is saturated with silvery sparkling dew-drops, which distil graciously in abundance from heaven. Cp. above, the beautiful imagery in Ps. ex. 3, “Thou hast the dew of thy youth from the womb of the morning;” and in Ps. exxxiii. 3, “Like as the dew of Hermon, that falls on the hill of Zion.” In both those passages the congregations of Christian believers are compared to dew. See the notes above, on Ps. ex. 3, and on Ps. exxxiii. 3, which illustrate this passage, and are illustrated by it.

8. *As a lion*] The Israel of God being strong in Christ, “the lion of the tribe of Judah” (Rev. v. 5), will be enabled to overcome its spiritual enemies. Cp. 1 Macc. iii. 4. It will be like Dew in gracious benediction, and like a Lion in invincible strength. See *S. Jerome* here; and *Caspari*, 254.

9. *Thine hand shall be lifted up*] The following prophecy (9—14) is fulfilled by Christ, enabling all His faithful soldiers to do valiantly, to fight the good fight, and to overcome their enemies by His might. It reaches to the world’s End (*Pusey*).

10—14. *I will cut off thy horses—cities*] These five verses may best be considered together. Israel had been accustomed to rely on Egypt and Assyria (see on Isa. xxxi. 1. 3; and Hos. xiv. 3); but the time will come, when the Church of God will not lean on an arm of flesh for support. The present prophecy declares that God will teach the Church in the latter days to rely solely on His Divine power and love, and not to look to the *horses and war-chariots* of secular allies (cp. Ps. xx. 7; and Isa. ii. 7; and Zech. ix. 10, “I will cut off the chariot from Ephraim, and the horse from Jerusalem”), and not to seek for refuge in the *strongholds* of temporal support; and will make her to “dwell safely without walls, and having neither bars nor gates” (Ezek. xxxviii. 11); and that He will root out of her that which caused her weakness and her misery; her witchcraft, sorcery, and idolatry; and will pluck up her *groves*, or rather her idolatrous *wooden pillars, stems of trees* (Heb. *asherim*; see on Exod. xxxiv. 13. Deut. vii. 5. Judges iii. 7; vi. 25. 2 Kings xviii. 4; xxi. 3. 7, &c. Isa. xvii. 8; xxvii. 9. Jer. xvii. 2; and *will destroy her cities*—so most Ancient Versions. The

Before
CHRIST
710.

And I will destroy thy chariots :

¹¹ And I will cut off the cities of thy land,

And throw down all thy strong holds :

¹² And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thine hand ;

And thou shalt have no *more* ^r soothsayers :

¹³ ^s Thy graven images also will I cut off,

And thy ^{||} standing images out of the midst of thee ;

And thou shalt ¹ no more worship the work of thine hands.

¹⁴ And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee :

So will I destroy thy ^{||} cities.

¹⁵ And I will ^u execute vengeance in anger and fury upon the heathen,

Such as they have not heard.

VI. ¹ Hear ye now what the LORD saith ;

Arise, contend thou ^{||} before the mountains,

And let the hills hear thy voice.

² ^a Hear ye, O mountains, ^b the LORD's controversy,

And ye strong foundations of the earth :

For ^c the LORD hath a controversy with his people,

And he will plead with Israel.

³ O my people, ^d what have I done unto thee ?

And wherein have I wearied thee ?

Testify against me.

⁴ ^e For I brought thee up out of the land of Egypt,

And redeemed thee out of the house of servants ;

And I sent before thee Moses, Aaron, and Miriam.

⁵ O my people, remember now what ^f Balak king of Moab consulted,

And what Balaam the son of Beor answered him ;

From ^g Shittim unto Gilgal ;

^r Isa. 2. 6

^s Zech. 13. 2

^{||} Or, statues.

^t Isa. 2. 8.

^{||} Or, enemies.

^u Ps. 149. 7.

ver. 8.

² Thess. 1. 8.

^{||} Or, with.

^a Deut. 32. 1.

Ps. 50. 1, 4.

Isa. 1. 2.

^b Hos. 12. 2.

^c Isa. 1. 18. &

5. 3, 4. & 43. 26.

Hos. 4. 1.

^d Jer. 2. 5, 31.

^e Exod. 12. 51. &

14. 30. & 20. 2.

Deut. 4. 20.

Amos 2. 10.

^f Num. 22. 5. &

23. 7. & 24. 10, 11.

Deut. 23. 4, 5.

Josh. 24. 9, 10.

Rev. 2. 14.

^g Num. 25. 1. &

33. 49.

Josh. 4. 19. & 5. 10.

Targum and our Margin has *thy enemies* (the word *areyea* may mean either; *Poole*, 60; *Gesen.* 650). The former rendering (*cities*—i. e. fenced cities) is confirmed by the context and v. 11, and *S. Jerome* here. It intimates that, when the Church has reached her consummation, she will have no need of fortifications; God will be her defence. She will say, "We have a strong city; salvation will God appoint for walls and bulwarks" (Isa. xxvi. 1). "The Lord is our King. He will save us" (Isa. xxxiii. 22). "He will be like a wall of fire round her." Cp. Zech. ii. 4. The extermination of idolatry by the good King Hezekiah, putting his faith and trust in God, and not in any arm of flesh, and his consequent deliverance from the invading army of Sennacherib, and the sudden destruction of that army by the Angel of the Lord—these things were figures and shadows of the last days of the Church. Cp. *Caspari*, 255. The Church is strong by holiness (cp. *Pusey*, 337).

Cir. VI.] Here begins the third and last portion of Micah's prophecies. It is a hortatory application of what has gone before. God summons His people to hear His Voice, in the presence of all Creation, and He declares in the presence of that great public auditory, that all the miseries of the Hebrew Nation (and of Mankind) are due to their own sins; and that He is ready to heal them. This passage (v. 6—vi. 8) is the *Haph-tzrah* to *Balaam's* history. Num. xxii. 2—xxv. 9.

1. *contend thou*] Stand thou, O Zion, plead with the mountains, which thou hast profaned with idols.

2. *Hear ye, O mountains*] For similar appeals to the Earth and Heaven, cp. Deut. xxxii. 1. Isa. i. 2. Jer. xxii. 29.

— *the LORD hath a controversy*] Jehovah condescends to become a litigant with His people; and appeals to the Elements of the Universe, which had witnessed His dealings with them since the Exodus from Egypt, to decide the cause. Cp. Isa. i. 18, "Come, let us reason together;" and Hos. iv. 1, "The Lord hath a controversy with the inhabitants of the land;"

and Hos. xii. 2, "The Lord hath also a controversy with Judah."

3. *wherein have I wearied thee?*] I have not wearied thee. No; as He said by Isa. xliii. 23, "*I have not caused thee to serve with an offering, nor wearied thee with incense.*" But, on the other hand, *thou hast wearied Me by thy sins*, as the same Prophet adds (xliii. 21). Cp. Amos ii. 13.

— *Moses, Aaron, Miriam*] The Lawgiver to command; the Priest to atone; the Prophetess to teach, and praise God.

5. *remember now what Balak king of Moab consulted*] Remember how Balak the King of Moab united with the elders of Midian in a desire and design to destroy thee (see the references in the Margin); and how he sent for Balaam, the Seer, from the East, and hired him to curse thee; and how Balaam desired to curse thee; but thy God turned that curse into a blessing (Deut. xxxiii. 4, 5. Josh. xiv. 10), and thus showed His love toward thee; and how, even by the salutary discipline of love, chastising thee for harlotry and idolatry, into which thou wast allured by Balaam's arts; and also by the destruction of Balaam (Num. xxxi. 8), and by the punishment of the Midianites, He taught thee the wretched consequences of disobedience; and how, by the example of zeal and courage in Phineas, the son of Eleazar, and the benediction pronounced upon him, God showed thee the blessedness of obedience (Num. xxv).

— *From Shittim unto Gilgal*] That is, from the last station in the wanderings of Israel in the wilderness to the first station in Canaan, *Gilgal* (Num. xxii. 1; xxv. 1. Josh. iv. 19), where Israel's reproach was rolled away.

These words introduce a new consideration, and I have therefore inserted a stop after *him*; the former sentences refer to mercies conferred under Moses, Aaron, and Miriam; but the Prophet now appeals to the miracles of mercy vouchsafed by God to Israel under *Joshua*, in the passage over Jordan and in the overthrow of Jericho, and the new reception of Israel into covenant with God by circumcision at *Gilgal*.

- That ye may know ^h the righteousness of the LORD.
- 6 Wherewith shall I come before the LORD,
And bow myself before the high God?
Shall I come before him with burnt offerings
With calves † of a year old?
- 7 ⁱ Will the LORD be pleased with thousands of rams,
Or with ten thousands of ^k rivers of oil?
^l Shall I give my firstborn for my transgression,
The fruit of my † body for the sin of my soul?
- 8 He hath ^m shewed thee, O man, what is good;
And what doth the LORD require of thee,
But ⁿ to do justly, and to love mercy, and to † walk humbly with thy God?
- 9 The LORD's voice crieth unto the city,
And ‖ *the man of wisdom* shall see thy name:
Hear ye the rod, and who hath appointed it.
- 10 ‖ Are there yet the treasures of wickedness in the house of the wicked,
And the † scant measure ^o *that is* abominable?
- 11 ‖ Shall I count *them* pure with ^p the wicked balances,
And with the bag of deceitful weights?
- 12 For the rich men thereof are full of violence,
And the inhabitants thereof have spoken lies,
And ^q their tongue is deceitful in their mouth.
- 13 Therefore also will I ^r make *thee* sick in smiting thee,
In making *thee* desolate because of thy sins.
- 14 ^s Thou shalt eat, but not be satisfied;
And thy casting down *shall be* in the midst of thee;

Before
CHRIST
710.
h Judg. 5. 11.

† Heb. *sons of a year?*

i Ps. 50. 9. & 51. 16.
Isa. 1. 11.
k Job 29. 6.

l 2 Kings 16. 3. & 21. 6. & 23. 10.
Jer. 7. 31. & 19. 5.
Ezek. 23. 37.
† Heb. *belly*.
m Deut. 10. 12.
1 Sam. 15. 22.
Hos. 6. 6. & 12. 6.

n Gen. 18. 19.
Isa. 1. 17.
† Heb. *humble thyself to walk*.

‖ Or, *thy name shall see that which is*.

o Or, *Is there yet unto every man an house of the wicked, &c.*

† Heb. *measure of leanness*,
Amos 8. 5.

p Deut. 25. 13—16.
Prov. 11. 1. & 20. 10, 23.

q Or, *Shall I be pure with, &c.*
p Hos. 12. 7.
q Jer. 9. 3, 5, 6, 8.

r Lev. 26. 16.
Ps. 107. 17, 18.

s Lev. 26. 26.
Hos. 4. 10.

— *That ye may know the righteousness of the LORD*] All your history, from your deliverance out of Egypt under Moses, to your entrance into the Promised Land under Joshua, attests *the righteousnesses of the LORD*, His faithfulness to you, and His love of what is just and holy, and His hatred of sin.

6. *Wherewith shall I come before the LORD*] The Prophet takes up the word the LORD (JEHOVAH) from the foregoing clause, and supposes this question to be put by some persons who have heard of *the righteousness of the LORD* (the righteous acts of the Lord, in power, justice, and mercy. Cp. Judges v. 11. 1 Sam. xii. 7), and who profess, hypocritically, to be eager to offer any ritual sacrifices to Him.

On this passage, see *S. Augustine's* two Sermons, Sermon 48, 49.

It has been thought by some that Micah is supposing this question to be put by Balak when he consulted Balaam, and that the words in reply are what Balaam answered. So *Bp. Butler*, in his Sermon on the character of Balaam (Sermon. vii. p. 104), who grounds some interesting and instructive inferences on that hypothesis; which is, however, questionable.

7. *rivers of oil*] Cp. Job xx. 17. Oil formed a part of the daily *minchah*, or meat offering, and was added to burnt offerings (Num. xv. 1—16; xxviii., xxix).

— *Shall I give my firstborn*] As a later King of Moab did (2 Kings iii. 27). Cp. Jer. vii. 31.

For a reply to *Tindal's* objection, that by this mention of human sacrifices together with legal rites, Micah appears to sanction them, see *Dr. Waterland*, *Scripture Vindicated*, p. 269.

8. *He hath showed thee—what is good*] As in Deut. x. 12. 1 Sam. xv. 22. Ps. l. 16, 17. Hos. vi. 6; and see Isa. i. 11; lxvi. 3. Jer. vi. 20; vii. 22. Amos v. 22—where God declares that He loathes all sacrifices where faith and obedience are not found in those who offer them.

It is observable that the inculcation of moral virtues by the prophets, as of superior and paramount importance, in comparison with ritual and ceremonial observances, though prescribed by the Levitical Law given by God Himself, is generally to be found, as here, in connexion with prophecies which predict

the Fall of Jerusalem and the Temple, and the Captivity and dispersion of the Jews into foreign lands, where the observance of the ritual law would be impossible.

This was a merciful provision, in order that the Jews might not despond and despair because their City and Temple were in ruins, and they could not come before the Lord with burnt offerings, and bow themselves before the High God in His Temple. They could still hold spiritual communion with God; and He comforts them with the assurance that this spiritual communion would be exercised and its power intensified by the withdrawal and destruction of what was material and external; and that they would be able to serve and please God with what was good, and to render what the Lord required of them—namely, to do justly and love mercy, and walk humbly with their God. Cp. *Davidson* on Prophecy (Disc. v. p. 208).

9. *The LORD's voice crieth unto the city*] The Lord's voice cries by His Prophets, and also by His penal visitations (such as plague, famine, and war—which are His “sore judgments”); and *Wisdom shall behold Thy Name*; Wisdom will recognize God's glorious attributes in all these manifestations, and will say, *Hear ye the Rod*, listen to God speaking by these visitations, and consider *Who hath appointed it*. Cp. Isa. xxvi. 11, “Lord, when Thy hand is lifted up, they will not see; but they shall see;” and Jer. ii. 31, “See ye the Word of the Lord.” His voice cries in the ears of all (Prov. viii. 1—4), but only Wisdom sees His Name. The word here used for *Wisdom* literally means *what is* (see above on Job v. 12), i.e. *is real*; all mere worldly knowledge and policy is a vain phantom.

See the Sermon on this text, by *Dr. Pierce*, President of Magdalen College, before the King at Whitehall, A.D. 1665.

— *who hath appointed it*] Assyria was called “the rod of God's anger,” and “His grounded staff” against Israel (Isa. x. 5; xxx. 32).

11. *Shall I count them pure with the wicked balances*] Rather, *Can I be pure with the wicked balance?* That is, if I have it in my hand, can I be guiltless?

14. *thy casting down*] “Thy destruction will be in the midst of thee” to stay thee, instead of thy God who was “in the midst of thee” to save thee (Isa. xii. 6. Hos. xii. 6).

Before
CHRIST
710.

t Deut. 28. 38,
39, 40.
Amos 5. 11.
Zeph. 1. 13.
Hag. 1. 6.

|| Or, *he doth
much keep the,* &c.
u 1 Kings 16.
25, 26.

x Hos. 5. 11.
y 1 Kings 16.
30, &c. &c.
21. 25, 26.
2 Kings 21. 3.
z 1 Kings 9. 8.
Jer. 19. 8.

|| Or, *astonish-
ment.*

a Isa. 25. 8.
Jer. 51. 51.
Lam. 5. 1.

† Heb. *the
gatherings of
summer.*

a Isa. 17. 6. &
24. 13.

b Isa. 28. 4.

Hos. 9. 10.

c Ps. 12. 1. &
14. 1, 3.

Isa. 57. 1.
|| Or, *godly, or,
merciful.*

d Hab. 1. 15.

e Hos. 4. 18.

f Isa. 1. 23.
ch. 3. 11.

† Heb. *the
mischief of his
soul.*

g 2 Sam. 23. 6. 7.

Ezek. 2. 6.

See Isa. 55. 13.

h Jer. 9. 4.

i Ezek. 22. 7.

Matt. 10. 21,
35, 36.

Luke 12. 53. &
21. 16.

2 Tim. 3. 2, 3.

And thou shalt take hold, but shalt not deliver ;

And *that* which thou deliverest will I give up to the sword ;

15 Thou shalt ^t sow, but thou shalt not reap ;

Thou shalt tread the olives, but thou shalt not anoint thee with oil ;

And sweet wine, but shalt not drink wine.

16 For || the statutes of ^u Omri are ^{*} kept,

And all the works of the house of ^y Ahab,

And ye walk in their counsels ;

That I should make thee ^z a || desolation,

And the inhabitants thereof an hissing :

Therefore ye shall bear the ^a reproach of my people.

VII. ¹ Woe is me ! for I am as † when they have gathered the summer fruits,

As ^a the grape gleanings of the vintage :

There is no cluster to eat :

My soul desired the firstripe fruit.

2 The ^c || good *man* is perished out of the earth :

And *there is* none upright among men :

They all lie in wait for blood ;

^d They hunt every man his brother with a net ;

3 That they may do evil with both hands earnestly,

^e The prince asketh, ^f and the judge *asketh* for a reward ;

And the great *man*, he uttereth † his mischievous desire :

So they wrap it up.

4 The best of them ^g *is* a brier :

The most upright *is sharper* than a thorn hedge :

The day of thy watchmen *and* thy visitation cometh ;

Now shall be their perplexity.

5 ^h Trust ye not in a friend,

Put ye not confidence in a guide :

Keep the doors of thy mouth from her that lieth in thy bosom.

6 For ⁱ the son dishonoureth the father,

The daughter riseth up against her mother,

The daughter in law against her mother in law ;

A man's enemies *are* the men of his own house.

— *thou shalt take hold*] Rather, *thou shalt remove, but not save* (see Gesen. 552 ; and *Keil*) ; *thou shalt remove* thy goods in thy flight from the enemy, but shalt not rescue them, or save thyself by flight.

15. *Thou shalt sow, but thou shalt not reap*] From Levit. xxvi. 25, 26. Deut. xxviii. 39, 40.

16. *the statutes of Omri are kept—works of the house of Ahab*] Ye rebel against the Lord God, and break His Law, and forget His mercies, to keep the statutes and follow the doings of the worst kings of Israel (1 Kings xvi. 25, 31, 32. 2 Chron. xxii. 2). Cp. Hos. v. 11, Ye “willingly walked after the commandment” of Jeroboam.

— *ye shall bear the reproach of my people*] Because ye have oppressed My People, therefore ye, their rulers, shall bear at the hands of the Heathen among whom you will be dispersed, the reproach which they heap on My People. Cp. Ezek. xxxvi. 20.

This was fulfilled in King Zedekiah and his sons, and in the princes and nobles of Jerusalem, upon whom the chief weight of suffering and ignominy fell, in the Chaldean invasion.

THE PROPHET FORETELLS THE PENITENTIAL PRAYER OF THE JEWISH NATION ; AND GOD'S PROMISES OF MERCY, AND FAVOUR, AND GLORY TO HER IN CHRIST.

CH. VII. 1. *Woe is me !*] The Prophet speaks in the name

of the ancient Church of Israel, and deplores her low estate consequent on her sins.

1. *My soul desired the firstripe fruit*] I desired the early fruit. I longed for the graces and virtues of primitive times, but I did not find them. Cp. Hos. ix. 10, where Israel in its youthful prime is compared to early fruit ; but none is now found in her.

God here speaks by the Prophet, and declares His disappointment at the unfruitfulness of Israel. So Christ came to the barren fig-tree,—the symbol of the Jewish Nation. He hungered for fruit, but found nothing there but leaves. See on Matt. xxi. 18, 19.

3. *That they may do evil*] Rather, *For evil both hands are ready to do it well* (i. e. as if evil were their good) ; but *to do good the prince asketh* for a bribe.

— *a reward*] A bribe.

— *they wrap it up*] Or twist it together, to make it strong, as a cart-rope (Isa. v. 18).

4. *The day of thy watchmen*] The day of visitation, foretold by thy prophets, who warned thee, as thy watchmen (Ezek. iii. 17 ; xxxiii. 7), of the coming doom.

5, 6. *Trust ye not in a friend*] Such is the wickedness of the times, that the nearest friends and relatives cannot repose any confidence in each other. Our Lord adopts these words in His description of the latter days of the World (Matt. x. 21. 35, 36 ; xxiv. 12. Cp. Luke xii. 53 ; xxi. 16 ; and 2 Tim. iii. 2).

⁷ Therefore ^k I will look unto the LORD ;
I will wait for the God of my salvation :
My God will hear me.

k Isa. 8. 17.

⁸ ^l Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy :

l Prov. 24. 17.
Lam. 4. 21.
m Ps. 37. 24.
Prov. 24. 16.

^m When I fall, I shall arise ;

When I sit in darkness, ⁿ the LORD *shall be* a light unto me.

n Ps. 27. 1.

⁹ ^o I will bear the indignation of the LORD, because I have sinned against him,
Until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me :

o Lam. 3. 39.

^p He will bring me forth to the light, *and* I shall behold his righteousness.

p Ps. 37. 6.

¹⁰ *¶* Then *she that is* mine enemy shall see it,
And ^q shame shall cover her which said unto me,

¶ Or, *And thou wilt see her that is mine enemy, and cover her with shame.*
q Ps. 35. 26.
r Ps. 42. 3, 10, & 79. 10. & 115. 2.
Joel 2. 17.

^r Where is the LORD thy God ?

s ch. 4. 11.

^s Mine eyes shall behold her :

† Heb. *she shall be for a treading down.*

Now † shall she be trodden down ^t as the mire of the streets.

t 2 Sam. 22. 43.

¹¹ *In* the day that thy ^u walls are to be built,

Zech. 10. 5.

In that day shall the decree be far removed ;

u Amos 9. 11, &c.

¹² *In* that day *also* ^x he shall come even to thee from Assyria,

x Isa. 11. 16. & 19. 23, &c. & 27. 13.
Hos. 11. 11.
¶ Or, *even to.*

¶ And *from* the fortified cities,

And from the fortress even to the river,

And from sea to sea,

And *from* mountain to mountain.

¹³ *¶* Notwithstanding the land shall be desolate because of them that dwell therein,

¶ Or, *After that it hath been.*

^y For the fruit of their doings.

y Jer. 21. 14.

¹⁴ *¶* Feed thy people with thy rod,

ch. 3. 12.

The flock of thine heritage,

¶ Or, *Rute,*

Which dwell solitarily *in* ^z the wood, in the midst of Carmel :

Ps. 23. 9.

Let them feed *in* Bashan and Gilead,

ch. 5. 4.

z Isa. 37. 24.

8. *Rejoice not against me, O mine enemy*] Zion warns Babylon not to exult over her; for Babylon will fall, and Zion will rise again (S. Jerome, R. Solomon). Cp. Jer. l. 11; and Isa. xlvii. 6.

The Church of Christ may apply these words to the mystical Babylon,—the corrupt and proud Church of Rome,—which exults in her distresses in these last times. The Jews themselves apply this text to Rome; and they say that some great blessing will be vouchsafed to Israel, when Rome is humbled and destroyed. See *Pocock*, 86. 88; and compare *Vtringa* on the Apocalypse, 792; *Mede's* Works, 902. And when we consider what hindrances the Roman Church places in the way of the conversion of the Jews to Christianity by her creature-worship and idolatry, and especially Mariolatry and adoration of the Roman Pontiff, to say nothing of her canonization of the Apoerypha, as if it were equal in authority and inspiration to the Hebrew Scriptures of Moses and the Prophets, we cannot doubt that the humiliation of the Roman Papacy is almost a necessary pre-requisite to the conversion of the Jews, and to their reception into the Christian Sion.

11. *In the day—built*] Or, *The day (is coming) for the building of Thy walls.* The day here spoken of cannot be the day in which the walls of the literal Jerusalem were rebuilt by Nehemiah, with a commission from Artaxerxes; for what follows was not fulfilled then. But this prophecy foretells the building up of Zion by the hand of Christ, Who came to Jerusalem, and laid the foundation of His Church there, and sent the Holy Spirit from heaven on the Day of Pentecost to the Apostles, the Master-builders under Him, to build up the walls of the spiritual city, so that it might enfold all Nations. See above, on iv. 1, 2.

— *In that day shall the decree be far removed*] Or rather, be extended and promulgated far and wide. God makes *the decree* (see Ps. ii. 7, 8, “I will declare the decree,”—where the same Hebrew word, *chök*, for *decree*, is used): “I have set My King upon My holy hill of Sion. I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for

thy possession.” Cp. Amos x. 11. Acts xv. 16; and *Pocock* here. Some suppose *the decree* to be the law of the enemy.

12. *In that day also he (i.e. many persons) shall come even to thee from Assyria, and from the fortified cities*] Or rather, *from the cities of Egypt* (Hebr. *Matsôr*). See Isa. xix. 6; xxxvii. 25. *Gesen.* 501; and *Keil*. This began to be fulfilled on the Day of Pentecost, when multitudes from Assyria and Egypt were received by the Apostles into the Church of Christ. See Acts ii. 9, 10.

Here again Micah comes into contact with Isaiah, who, in foretelling the spread of the primitive Christian Church from Jerusalem by the ministry of the Apostles, who were Jews, says, “In that day shall *Israel* be the third with *Egypt* and with *Assyria*.” Cp. Isa. xix. 24; xxvii. 13.

Thus the Prophet Micah, although he has warned the Assyrians, and all other heathen Nations and worldly princes, that if they resist Christ, and persecute His Church, they will be broken in pieces, yet assures them (as God had done by Isaiah) that if they repent, and turn to Him, they will be graciously received by Him.

— *from the fortress*] Rather, *from Egypt* (Hebr. *Matsôr*). See the foregoing note.

13. *Notwithstanding the land shall be desolate*] Rather, *And the earth* (as opposed to the kingdom of heaven, the Church of God) *shall be desolate, because of its inhabitants, for the fruit of their doings.* Cp. Rev. viii. 13; xii. 12, “Woe to the inhabitants of the earth,” which may have been derived from this passage of Micah.

14. *Feed thy people*] Zion, that is, the Church, prays to Christ to feed His people in all regions of the spiritual Israel, represented by Carmel, the fruitful mountain-range on the western sea-coast (Isa. x. 18; xxxvii. 24), and by Bashan and Gilead, the rich pasture-land on the east of Jordan (Num. xxxii. 1. Deut. xxxii. 14). Cp. note on Jer. l. 19, “I will bring Israel again to his habitation, and he shall feed on Carmel and Bashan, and his soul shall on Mount Ephraim and Gilead.” Micah resigns his pastoral office to “the Good Shepherd.”

As in the days of old.

- ^a Ps. 68. 22. & 78. 12. ¹⁵ ^a According to the days of thy coming out of the land of Egypt will I shew unto him marvellous *things*.
- ^b Isa. 26. 11. ¹⁶ The nations ^b shall see and be confounded at all their might :
^c Job 21. 5. & 29. 9. ^c They shall lay *their* hand upon *their* mouth,
 Their ears shall be deaf.
- ^d Ps. 72. 9. Isa. 49. 23. ¹⁷ They shall lick the ^d dust like a serpent,
^e Ps. 18. 45. ^e They shall move out of their holes like || worms of the earth :
^f Jer. 23. 9. ^f They shall be afraid of the LORD our God,
 And shall fear because of thee.
- ^g Exod. 15. 11. ¹⁸ ^g Who is a God like unto thee, that ^h pardoneth iniquity,
^h Exod. 34. 6, 7. And passeth by the transgression of ⁱ the remnant of his heritage ?
ⁱ ch. 4. 7. & 5. 3, 7, 8. ^k He retaineth not his anger for ever,
^k Ps. 103. 9. Because he delighteth *in* mercy.
^l Isa. 57. 16. ¹⁹ He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us ;
^m Jer. 3. 5. He will subdue our iniquities ;
 And thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.
- ¹ Luke 1. 72, 73. ²⁰ ¹ Thou wilt perform the truth to Jacob,
 And the mercy to Abraham,
^m Ps. 105. 9, 10. ^m Which thou hast sworn unto our fathers from the days of old.

16. *They shall lay their hand upon their mouth*] In awe and dread. Cp. Job v. 16; xxi. 5; xl. 4.

— *Their ears shall be deaf*] With obstinate obduracy.

17. *They shall lick the dust*] Cp. the prophecy concerning Christ. "They that dwell in the wilderness shall bow before Him; His enemies shall lick the dust" (Ps. lxxii. 9), here extended to His Church. Cp. Isa. xlix. 23. It is grounded on God's malediction of the Old Serpent for tempting our first parents: "Upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life" (Gen. iii. 14).

— *They shall move out of their holes like worms of the earth*] They who were once so proud, shall be like worms; and they who thought themselves impregnable, shall come trembling out of their strongholds. Cp. 2 Sam. xxii. 46.

18. *Who is a God like unto thee*] Micah, the Prophet, whose name signifies *Who is like unto Jehovah?* here alludes to his own name, as Isaiah alludes to his own name (see on Isa. viii. 1—4. 18), and Malachi to his own (iii. 1. *Caspari*, 20—28); and he asks, in the name of God's favoured nation, "*Who is a God like unto Thee?*" (Exod. xv. 11.) in that He has pardoned her iniquities, and has passed by the transgressions of the remnant according to grace (Rom. ix. 27; xi. 5), that is, of those among His ancient people Israel who have accepted His offers of salvation in Christ, and have become the preachers of His Gospel to the World.

19. *thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea*] He has washed away her sins by the blood of Christ, and will remember them no more (Ps. ciii. 12. Isa. xxxviii. 17. Jer. l. 20; xxxi. 34. 1 John i. 7. Rev. i. 5).

There is a special propriety in these words, "*Thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea*," because they are grounded on those words of Moses at the Exodus, and after the passage of the Red Sea (the mercies of which have just been commemorated by Micah, v. 15). In his song of victory, after that glorious deliverance, Moses said, "Pharaoh's chariots and his host *hath He cast into the sea*." And Miriam said, "Sing ye to the Lord; for He hath triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider *hath He thrown into the sea*" (Exod. xv. 4. 21).

The miraculous mercies of the Exodus, and of the deliverance of Israel by the blood of the Paschal Lamb, and by the way opened to them through the waves of the Red Sea, in which they themselves passed through a wall of waters on their right hand and on their left hand, from out of the land of bondage into the wilderness, on their way to Canaan, being baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea (1 Cor. x. 2), were figurative of the far greater and more miraculous mercies which God bestows on all true Israelites in Christ, Who is the true Passover (1 Cor. v. 7. John xix. 36); and of their deliverance from the land of spiritual bondage, Sin, Satan, and Death, and of the overwhelming of their spiritual enemies in the Red Sea

of the Blood of Christ, through which they pass in their Baptism (as *Theodore* here observes), out of the bondage of their ghostly Egypt, and enter on the way of salvation, which leads them on their earthly pilgrimage through the wilderness of this world to the heavenly Canaan of their everlasting rest. See the notes above, on Exod. xii. 7—15; and chap. xiv., *Prelim. Note*; and the words of the Church in her Baptismal Office (and how much is suggested by those few words!), "Almighty and everlasting God, Who of Thy great mercy didst save Noah and his family in the Ark from perishing by water, and also didst safely lead the children of Israel Thy people through the Red Sea, *figuring thereby Thy Holy Baptism*."

Well, therefore, may Micah use these words, when he is foretelling the redemption of Israel by CHRIST, and the forgiveness of their sins, and the blessings received by them, and communicated by them to all Nations, received into covenant with God by the Sacrament of Baptism, in which the Blood of Christ is applied to the washing away of sins, and to the purchase of His Universal Church (Acts xx. 28).

20. *Thou wilt perform the truth to Jacob, and the mercy to Abraham, which thou hast sworn unto our fathers from the days of old*] This is fulfilled in Christ, the Promised Seed of Abraham and Jacob, in Whom all Nations are blessed. And, therefore, we may sum up all, in the words of Zacharias the Priest of God, when, filled with the Holy Ghost, he prophesied, and said, "Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for He hath visited and redeemed His people, and hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of His servant David; as He spake by the mouth of His holy Prophets, which have been since the world began: that we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us; to perform the mercy promised to our forefathers, and to remember His holy covenant; the oath which He swore to our father Abraham, that He would grant unto us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies, might serve Him without fear, in holiness and righteousness before Him, all the days of our life" (Luke i. 68—75).

"There is no prophetic denunciation of judgment against Israel," says *Abarbanel*, "which is not concluded with promises of mercy." This he has shown from Hosea, Joel, Amos, Jeremiah; and Micah's last words declare how greatly God delights in mercy; because they not only give assurances of mercy to the literal Israel, on their repentance, but to all that shall in Christ, the Promised Seed, lay hold on His promise, made to Abraham, and in him to all the kindreds of the earth; so that the Gentiles, also, reading this prophecy, cannot but glorify God, and rejoice with His people, and sing unto Him that hymn which the Apostle puts into their mouth: "Praise the Lord, all ye Gentiles; and laud Him, all ye people" (Rom. xv. 11. *Dr. Pococky*).

NAHUM.

I. ¹ THE burden ^a of Nineveh. The book of the vision of Nahum the Elkoshite. a Zeph. 2. 13.

² || God is ^b jealous, and ^c the LORD revengeth ;

|| Or, *The LORD*
is a jealous God,
and a revenger, &c.

b Exod. 20. 5. & 34. 14. Deut. 4. 24. Josh. 24. 19. c Deut. 32. 35. Ps. 94. 1. Isa. 59. 18.

The connecting link between the prophecies of MICAH, which have preceded, and those of NAHUM and HABAKKUK, which now follow, is to be found in Micah v. 6.

There that Prophet described the victory of Christ and His Church in these words:—"They shall waste the land of Assyria with the sword, and the land of Nimrod (or Babylon) in the entrance thereof. Then shall he deliver us from the Assyrian." See also Micah v. 5, "This man shall be the Peace when the Assyrian shall come into our land, and when he shall tread in our palaces; then shall we raise against him seven shepherds, and eight principal men."

Those prophecies, as the context shows, and all the best Expositors agree, have not only a literal sense, which relates to the deliverance of Judah from Assyria in the days of Hezekiah, and also to the liberation of the People of God from Babylon by the arms of Cyrus; but they look far beyond those national mercies, and foreshadow the triumph of Christ and of His faithful people, and the overthrow of their enemies.

It is a legitimate inference from these prophecies, considered together with those of Isaiah, that the deliverance of the faithful Hezekiah and of the literal Jerusalem from the haughty and impious power of Sennacherib, the great Assyrian conqueror, and the destruction of his immense host before the walls of Jerusalem, by "the Angel of the Lord," was due to the might of Christ, Who is often called by that title in the Old Testament. See above, on Exod. iii. 2. Judges xiii. 18.

Indeed, the words of Micah—which clearly point to Christ as the destroyer of the Assyrian invaders, whose conquests over Ethiopia and Egypt Micah himself saw, and whose overthrow he, as well as his contemporary prophet, Isaiah, foretold—bring us irresistibly to this conclusion. Cp. above, on Micah v. 5.

They also lead us to regard the Assyrian King in his pride and blasphemy against the Lord, as a type of infidel and godless Powers which rise up against Christ, and which will be routed and crushed by Him in the last days.

This exposition, as we have seen, was accepted by ancient Interpreters, especially *S. Jerome*.

It prepares us for what follows.

There are three specific prophecies, which fill up the entire books of three of the Minor Prophets, and are directed against three different worldly powers, hostile to God and His people;

The first is that of OBADIAH, directed against EDM— the faithless, treacherous, and cruel foe of Israel their brother. EDM is the type of powers which have some connexion with God's Church by neighbourhood or consanguinity, and who, in spite of this relationship, behave in a heartless manner to her in her distresses—as EDM did to Israel and Judah in the days of their calamity.

EDM is the type of faithless, insidious, and unbrotherly members of the Church.

The second prophecy is that of NAHUM, against NINEVEH, the capital of Assyria—the haughty and savage enemy of Judah.

NINEVEH is the type of the openly infidel and impious form of Antichristianism.

It is well said by a recent German Expositor, that the Prophet Nahum saw in Nineveh the representative of the Worldly Power opposed to God; and the destruction of Nineveh was a prophetic figure of the future overthrow of all such powers, even to the end of the world (*Keil*, p. 400).

The next is that of HABAKKUK, directed against BABYLON. Babylon is represented by the Prophets as professing herself very wise, and yet a votary of idols, a victim of gross and debasing superstition (Isa. xlvii. 10). Babylon is the figure of

the idolatrous form of Antichristianism, which makes presumptuous claims to superior intelligence and insight into the mysteries of the unseen world. Cp. what has been said on Isa. xiii., *Prelim. Note*.

We see these qualities brought to a climax in the Babylon of the Apocalypse, Papal Rome. The proofs of this identity are given by the Editor in another place, in his Notes on the Book of Revelation, and in a separate work, "On Union with Rome; or, Is the Church of Rome the Babylon of the Apocalypse?"

We have now arrived at the prophecy of Nahum. It has been said by some that there is no reference to Christ in this book. But the Holy Spirit, Who spake by the prophets (2 Pet. i. 20, 21), declares by the Apostles, that "to Him give all the Prophets witness" (Acts iii. 24; x. 43); and that the Spirit of Christ was in the Prophets, and that they inquired and searched diligently what that Spirit witnessed when it spake of His sufferings and of the glory that should follow (1 Pet. i. 10).

If we accept the interpretation now given, that the Assyrian was overthrown by Christ's power, and that the Assyrian is a type of godless Antichristian powers in these latter days, we shall see Christ in the prophecies of Nahum, as well as in all other; and we may adopt, with some modifications, the language of *S. Jerome*: "Micah is followed by Nahum, whose name signifies the *Consoler*. He consoles those of Israel who had been taken captive and dispersed by the Assyrian; he foretells the future downfall of Nineveh, the capital of Assyria; and, in a spiritual sense, he predicts the destruction of all godless Ninevehs in the latter days." And again (in his Epistle to Paulinus), *S. Jerome* says, "Nahum—the consoler of the world—rebukes the bloody city (iii. 1), and foretells its destruction, and after that event he exclaims, "Behold upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace" (i. 15)—the Christian significance of which prophecy had already been declared by Isaiah (lii. 7. Rom. x. 15).

The prophecy of Nahum (says *S. Jerome* in prolog.) is to be understood, not only historically, but figuratively; and in reading it we must rise from the level of the literal sense to the higher altitude of the moral and spiritual. The prophet speaks to us concerning the consummation of all things, and affords consolation to the faithful in the last days, in order that they may despise the pomp and power of this world as mere transitory phantoms and fleeting shadows, and may prepare themselves for the Day of Judgment, when the Lord will appear as the Avenger of His People against all Antichristian Assyrians.

So far, then, from its being true that Christ is not to be found in the prophecy of Nahum, rather we may say that He is the principal agent in it.

The date of Nahum's prophecy falls soon after those of Isaiah and Micah; namely, after the carrying away of the ten tribes of Israel by Assyria (B.C. 721), and after the destruction of the army of Sennacherib at the walls of Jerusalem (about B.C. 712—*Vitrina*, *Keil*), and before the fall of Nineveh, as to the date of which see on 2 Kings xxiii. 29.

CH. I. 1. *The burden*] Both the prophecies of Nahum and Habakkuk (which form a pair) are called *burdens*, or heavy messages from God, taken up by the two Prophets, and delivered to Nineveh and Babylon respectively. By this word (*burden*) these prophecies are connected with the similar predictions of Isaiah, which are also called *burdens* (Isa. xiii.).

— *Elkoshite*] A native of Elkosh in Galilee (*S. Jerome*).

† Heb. *that hath*
fury.

The LORD revengeth, and † *is* furious ;
The LORD will take vengeance on his adversaries,
And he reserveth *wrath* for his enemies.

d Exod. 34. 6, 7.
Neh. 9. 17.
Ps. 103. 8.
Jonah 4. 2.
e Job 9. 4.
f Ps. 18. 7, &c. &
97. 2.
Hab. 3. 5, 11, 12.

³ The LORD *is* ^d slow to anger, and ^e great in power,
And will not at all acquit *the wicked* :

g Ps. 106. 9.
Isa. 50. 2.
Matt. 8. 26.

^f The LORD *hath* his way in the whirlwind and in the storm,
And the clouds *are* the dust of his feet ;

h Isa. 33. 9.

⁴ ^g He rebuketh the sea, and maketh it dry,
And drieth up all the rivers :

^h Bashan languisheth, and Carmel,
And the flower of Lebanon languisheth.

i Ps. 68. 8.
k Judg. 5. 5.
Ps. 97. 5.
Micah 1. 4.
l 2 Pet. 3. 10.

⁵ ⁱ The mountains quake at him, and ^k the hills melt,
And ^l the earth is burned at his presence,
Yea, the world, and all that dwell therein.

m Mal. 3. 2.
† Heb. *stand up*.

⁶ Who can stand before his indignation ?
And ^m who can † abide in the fierceness of his anger ?

n Rev. 16. 1.

ⁿ His fury is poured out like fire,
And the rocks are thrown down by him.

o 1 Chr. 16. 34.
Ps. 100. 5.
Jer. 33. 11.
Lam. 3. 25.
† Or, *strength*.
p Ps. 1. 6.
2 Tim. 2. 19.
q Dan. 9. 26. &
11. 10, 22, 40.

⁷ ^o The LORD *is* good, a || strong hold in the day of trouble ;
And ^p he knoweth them that trust in him,

⁸ ^q But with an overrunning flood he will make an utter end of the place
thereof,
And darkness shall pursue his enemies.

r Ps. 2. 1.

⁹ ^r What do ye imagine against the LORD ?

s 1 Sam. 3. 12.

^s He will make an utter end :
Affliction shall not rise up the second time.

t 2 Sam. 23. 6, 7.

¹⁰ For while *they be* folden together ^t as thorns,

u ch. 3. 11.

^u And while they are drunken *as* drunkards,

x Mal. 4. 1.

^x They shall be devoured as stubble fully dry.

y 2 Kings 19.
22. 23.
† Heb. *a*
counsellor of
Belial.

¹¹ There is *one* come out of thee, ^y that imagineth evil against the LORD,
† A wicked counsellor.

3. *The LORD is slow to anger, and great in power*] God's mercy even toward Nineveh had been shown in the previous book of Jonah, who had even murmured at God's long-suffering. But Nineveh had now relapsed into sin ; and therefore God, Who had shown His mercy by Jonah, declares His justice by Nahum. Nahum, in the opening of his prophecy against Nineveh, manifestly refers to Jonah's appeal to God in regard to it (Jonah iv. 2).

It was for Nahum to exhibit the stricter side of God's dealings with that same city. God had shown by Jonah how He forgives on men's repentance. Nahum begins his book by declaring in the same form of words as that used by Jonah, that God is long-suffering, but will not spare the guilty. Cp. Pusey on Daniel, p. 309.

4. *Bashan—Carmel—Lebanon*] *Bashan* rich in pastures, *Carmel* in flowers, *Lebanon* in cedars, emblems of worldly wealth, glory, and power, languish and fade before God.

— *Bashan languisheth, and Carmel*] With these words, taken up from the last chapter of the foregoing Prophet, Micah (vii. 14), and from Isaiah (xxxiii. 9), Nahum links on his own prophecy to that of his predecessor. See also i. 3, compared with Micah vii. 18. And while the enemies of God and His People are described by Micah at the conclusion of his prophecy, as so humbled by Him, that they will *lick the dust* (vii. 17), Nahum declares, at the beginning of his prophecy, that such is God's Glory and Majesty, that the "*clouds are the dust of His feet*" (v. 3).

Nahum reminds his readers, in the beginning of his prophecy, that though the Assyrians were allowed to overcome the land of Israel, and to come up "to the sides of *Lebanon*, and into the forest of his *Carmel*" (Isa. xxxvii. 24), yet this was

done by permission and commission of the God of Israel, to punish His People by "the Assyrian—the rod of His anger" (Isa. x. 5. 12), for their sins. God Himself said, "Hast thou not heard long ago how *I* have done it ?" (Isa. xxxvii. 26.)

5. *the mountains quake*] Repeated from Amos ix. 13, *the earth is burned*, or heaved up by an earthquake.

6. *who can abide*] Or *rise up*. See Margin.

8. *the place thereof*] That is, of Nineveh ; which occupies the whole scene in the Prophet's eye. See v. 1.

9. *Affliction shall not rise up the second time*] It will despatch Nineveh at one blow ; it had been warned by Jonah.

10. *while they be folden together as thorns*] Or, *though they be twisted* and matted together *as thorns* ; so as to appear impenetrable, and present to the enemy a front bristling with briars. Compare 2 Sam. xxiii. 6, 7, "The sons of Belial shall be all of them as thorns ; the man that shall touch them must be fenced with iron ;" and Isa. ix. 18. Micah vii. 4, "The best of them is as a briar, the most upright is sharper than a thorn hedge ;" yet God will consume them.

— *while they are drunken*] The kings and nobles of Assyria, such as Sardanapalus (or Sarcenus) and his courtiers, were proverbial for their habits of intemperance and revelry. *Diodorus Siculus* (ii. 26) says that Nineveh was taken (under Sardanapalus) when the king and nobles were carousing in a drunken revel. The official name of *Rabshakeh*, the principal emissary of the King of Assyria, signifies *chief cup-bearer* (2 Kings xviii. 17).

11. *There is one come out of thee, that imagineth evil against the LORD*] Here is a reference to Sennacherib and his blasphemous message, delivered by Rabshakeh (2 Kings xviii. 22, 23. Isa. xxxvi. 14—20. *Theodoret*).

¹² Thus saith the Lord ;

|| Though *they be quiet*, and likewise many,
Yet thus ² shall they be † cut down, when he shall ^a pass through.

Though I have afflicted thee, I will afflict thee no more.

¹³ For now will I ^b break his yoke from off thee,
And will burst thy bonds in sunder.

¹⁴ And the Lord hath given a commandment concerning thee,
That no more of thy name be sown :
Out of the house of thy gods will I cut off the graven image
And the molten image :

^c I will make thy grave ; for thou art vile.

¹⁵ Behold ^d upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings,
That publisheth peace !

O Judah, † keep thy solemn feasts, perform thy vows :

For † ^e the wicked shall no more pass through thee ;

^f He is utterly cut off.

II. ¹ || He ^a that dasheth in pieces is come up before thy face :

Before
CHRIST
about
713.

|| Or, If they
would have been
at peace, so
should they have
been many, and
so should they
have been shown,
and he should
have passed away.
2 Kings 19.
35, 37.

† Heb. *shara*.
2 Isa. 8, 8.
Dan. 11, 10.
b Jer. 2, 20. &
30, 8.

c 2 Kings 19, 37.
d Isa. 52, 7.
Rom. 10, 15.

† Heb. *feast*.
† Heb. *Belial*.
e ver. 11, 12.

f ver. 14.
|| Or, The
dispenser, or,
hammer.
a Jer. 50, 23.

12. *Though they be quiet*] Though they be uninjured and unimpaired in strength, yet they shall be *cut down* when they *pass through* ; that is, when they imagine that they *will pass through* the land of Judah, in an easy march and resistless career of victory.

Such was the imagination of Sennacherib, marching in triumph from the conquest of Egypt and Ethiopia, and coming back from his southern campaign of victory to Jerusalem.

But his vast host was to be swept away there in a single night. See above, the notes on Isa. xx. 3; and xxxvii. 36; and compare the magnificent description of the sudden mowing down of Assyria's glory and power, in Isa. xvii. 12—14.

— *Though I have afflicted thee*] God afflicted Judah by the Assyrians—the rod of His anger—for their sins (Isa. x. 5—12), when Sennacherib took all their fenced cities and caused a terrible panic there. See Isa. x. 28—32, and the notes there; and Isa. xxxvi. 1. Hezekiah's heart failed him, he cut off the gold from the Lord's house, as a bribe to the Assyrian; and he said to him "That which thou putttest on me I will bear" (2 Kings xviii. 14). But this was of no avail. The threats of Sennacherib were repeated. God called Hezekiah to repentance by the Prophet Micah (Jer. xxvi. 18, 19), and then He encouraged him by Isaiah. Hezekiah sought the help of God by repentance and prayer, and he was saved, and his foes slain.

14. *thee*] O Assyrian: the gender is changed in the Hebrew. — *I will make thy grave*] This was fulfilled in the murder of Sennacherib, in the house of Nisroch his god, by the hand of his own sons (2 Kings xix. 37). See also Isa. xxxvii. 38. The Targum and Syriac Version render this, *I will make thee thy grave*, or, *I will make thy idol thy grave*; and so the Masoretic punctuation would lead us to understand the words. This interpretation has been accepted by *S. Jerome, Montanus, A Lapide, Junius, Tremellius, Drusius*, and others. "I will pollute thy idols by a dead body" (see 2 Kings xxiii. 20; cp. Ezek. vi. 5), "and that body will be thine own."

THE DELIVERANCE AND JOY OF JUDAH, FOR THE OVERTHROW OF SENNACHERIB AND NINEVEH; THE DELIVERANCE AND JOY OF THE CHURCH FOR THE VICTORY OF CHRIST.

15. *Behold upon the mountains the feet*] Like beacon-fires on the hills, telling glad tidings. These words, taken up from Isaiah proclaiming the Advent of Christ (Isa. lii. 7; cp. xl. 9; cp. St. Paul's exposition of them, Rom. x. 15) are used by Nahum in a double sense; first, to describe the joy produced in Judah by the tidings of the destruction of Sennacherib, and afterwards of Nineveh, and Judah's consequent deliverance from its Assyrian enemies.

But beyond the horizon of this first sense, the Prophet sees into the far-off future, when he utters these words. The Holy Spirit, Who speaks in Nahum, and illumines his mind with divine light, reveals here the glad tidings which were brought to the Church of God by the news of Christ's Resurrection and

Victory over her ghostly enemies, Satan, Sin, and the Grave; and foretells her future joy at her deliverance from the hostile Powers which will rise up against her in the latter days.

— *O Judah, keep thy solemn feasts*] Keep the feasts which were interrupted for three years by the occupation of Judah by the Assyrian invader, and by the alarm of his approach preventing the inhabitants from going up to Jerusalem. Keep them now that thine enemy is no more; keep them with praise and thanksgiving to the Lord thy Redeemer.

Now that Christ has conquered our enemies, Satan, Sin, Death, and the Grave, the solemn feasts of Judah are kept under the Gospel, not in the shadow, but in the substance. We keep the feast of Passover at Easter. As the Apostle says, "*Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us* : therefore let us *keep the feast*" (1 Cor. v. 7).

We keep the *solemn feast* of Pentecost when we celebrate the Coming of the Holy Ghost at Whitsuntide. We keep the *solemn feast* of Tabernacles when we commemorate, in the season of Advent and at Christmas, the tabernacling of the Son of God in our flesh.

Well, therefore, might *S. Augustine* observe (*De Civ. Dei*, vii. 31), referring to this passage of Nahum, that "these words are said to the faithful of Judah, who belong to the New Testament, whose *solemn feasts* can never be superannuated and pass away, but are ever fresh as long as the world lasts."

In Holy Baptism we have a Spiritual Circumcision; in the Holy Communion we feed on the true Paschal Lamb—"the Lamb of God which taketh away the sin of the World."

— *the wicked shall no more pass through thee*] *The wicked* (Hebr. *belial*) shall no more *pass through thee*. Nahum uses the word by which Isaiah describes the Assyrian army *passing through Judah* (Isa. viii. 8; xxviii. 15).

St. Paul adopts the word *Belial*, here used, and asks, "What concord has Christ with *Belial*?" (2 Cor. vi. 15) and leads us to recognize here a figure of Christ's enemies. "These words of rejoicing" (says *S. Jerome*) "may be addressed to the Church of Christ. Thine enemy is utterly cut off, Christ has come to thee. He Who formed thee from the dust, He Who, after His Resurrection, breathed into the face of His Apostles, and said to them, 'Receive ye the Holy Ghost' (John xx. 22), He it is, Who delivers thee from thine enemy, who will no more pass through thee. Nineveh is destroyed. The World will pass away. Trouble and sorrow will pass away." These words may be applied also to every faithful soul which is delivered from the yoke of the Evil One. Cp. v. 13; and so *S. Cyril* and *Theodoret*.

CH. II. 1. *He that dasheth in pieces*] Rather, *the scatterer*. The prophet now turns to Nineveh, and announces her destruction. This was fulfilled by the combined forces of the Medes under Cyaxares, and of the Babylonians, probably under Nabopolassar, father of Nebuchadnezzar (*Herod.* i. 106). In the Book of Tobit (xiv. 15) that action is ascribed to Nabuchodonosor and Assuerus (Cyaxares). Cp. *Diod. Sic.* ii. 24—28,

Before
CHRIST
about
713.
b Jer. 51. 11, 12.
ch. 3. 14.
c Isa. 10. 12.
Jer. 25. 29.
Or, the pride of
Jacob as the pride
of Israel.
d Ps. 60. 12.
Hos. 10. 1.
e Isa. 63. 2, 3.

Or, dyed scarlet.

Or, scry torches.

Heb. the's show.

Or, gillants.

Heb. covering,
or, coverer.

Or, molten.

Or, that which
was established,
or, there was a
stand made.

Or, discovered.
f Isa. 33. 14. &
59. 11.

- ^b Keep the munition, watch the way,
Make *thy* loins strong, fortify *thy* power mightily.
- ^c For the LORD hath turned away || the excellency of Jacob,
As the excellency of Israel:
For ^d the emptiers have emptied them out,
And marred their vine branches.
- ³ The shield of his mighty men is made ^e red,
The valiant men *are* || in scarlet:
The chariots *shall be* with || flaming torches in the day of his preparation,
And the fir trees shall be terribly shaken.
- ⁴ The chariots shall rage in the streets,
They shall jostle one against another in the broad ways:
† They shall seem like torches,
They shall run like the lightnings.
- ⁵ He shall recount his || worthies:
They shall stumble in their walk;
They shall make haste to the wall thereof,
And the † defence shall be prepared.
- ⁶ The gates of the rivers shall be opened,
And the palace shall be || dissolved.
- ⁷ And || Huzzab shall be || led away captive,
She shall be brought up,
And her maids shall lead *her* as with the voice of ^f doves, tabering upon their
breasts.

whose narrative is derived from the Assyrian history of *Ctesias*. (see *Ctesias Reliquie*, pp. 426—440, ed. Baehr. Frankf. 1824) *Josephus*, Ant. x. 22; and x. 5. 1. Cp. *Bp. Newton* on the Prophecies, Dissertation IX.; *Marcus v. Niebuhr*, pp. 39. 200, 466, who assigns the date B.C. 605 to that event. *Ideler*, Handbuch, i. 206, places it in B.C. 610. See also *Dunker*, Geschichte, i. 316; *Keil* on the Lesser Prophets, pp. 396—400; and *Rawlinson*, Anc. Monarchies, ii. 520; iii. 188—195. The prophecy expands from Nineveh's fall to that of ANTICHRIST.

2. For the LORD hath turned away the excellency of Jacob] Rather, the LORD restoreth the excellency of Jacob (*Targum, Vulg., Syriac, Kleinert*).

— the emptiers] Spoilers; i.e. the Assyrians.

— marred] Destroyed.

— their vine branches] The branches of the Vineyard of the Lord. Cp. Isa. v. 1. Therefore the Lord interferes to restore them.

3. The shield of his mighty men is made red] The shield of the Lord's mighty men (those sent by Him against Nineveh, the Medes and Babylonians) is made red with vermilion, to inspire terrors (*Drusus*).

— scarlet] The Oriental military cloak (*sagum*). The Prophet is describing the dress of the Median and Babylonian captains coming against Nineveh (*Grotius, Kleinert*).

— flaming torches] Or flashings, as of steel (*Fuerst*, 1191).

— his preparation] Or, his equipment, that is, of the Lord's army.

— fir trees] Cypresses; i.e. the spears, made of cypress wood, shall be brandished terribly by thy foes.

4. They shall seem like torches] The chariots of the Assyrians, as seen in the monuments of Nineveh, blaze with shining weapons, and the horses are caparisoned with red, and the poles are bright with metallic suns and moons; the charioteers riding in them would also be bright in splendid armour, so that in their rapid motion they would have the appearance of flames and flashes of lightning (*Strauss, Kleinert, Layard*). See the engravings in *Rawlinson*, i. 291. 368. 429; ii. 2. 8. 11. 13, who observes (iii. 438) that the Babylonian chariots resembled the Assyrian. Cp. Hab. i. 7, 8. Jer. iv. 13.

5. He shall recount his worthies: they shall stumble in their walk] The King of Assyria will muster his mighty men; but they will be panic-stricken, and will totter and stumble

in their march, perhaps also reeling through intemperance. See on i. 10.

— the defence shall be prepared] The moveable tower, covered over for the protection of the soldiers working the catapult, for the projection of the missiles against the besieger. Cp. *Rawlinson*, ii. 78—83, where is a description of the covered towers, and battering-rams, and balistæ, used by the Assyrians in offensive warfare. Doubtless they had similar engines for defence.

6. The gates of the rivers shall be opened] The gates or sluices of the canals shall be opened by the enemy to let in a flood of water, in order to inundate the city (*Diod. Sic.* ii. 25—58; *Vatablus*. Cp. *Rawlinson*, iii. 191—193). On the fortifications of Nineveh, by means of its walls; and also by its water, canals, and moats, from the Khosruj, which flows into the Tigris from the north-east, see *Layard*, Nineveh, p. 660; *Rawlinson*, i. 325; and the plan there, p. 316.

“There was an ancient prophecy,” says *Diodorus* (ii. 26), “that Nineveh should never be taken till its river became an enemy to the city.” It is a singular fact, that the rivers Tigris and Euphrates, which were the causes of the wealth and power of Nineveh and Babylon, and in which they trusted and exulted as their strength and glory, were turned into means for their destruction. So it will be with all worldly Ninevehs and Babylons, which rely on themselves, and resist God. The rivers of strength and wealth in which they trust, and of which they boast, will become the instruments of their destruction.

— the palace shall be dissolved] By the inundation. Compare *Diod. Sic.* ii. 27, who says that the city was overwhelmed by the bursting-in of the Tigris.

7. Huzzab shall be led away captive] *Huzzab* is a symbolical name for Nineveh, as *Sheshach*, *Pekod*, and *Merathaim* were for Babylon (see above, on Jer. xxv. 26; i. 21; ii. 41. Ezek. xxiii. 23), and was formed or adopted by Nahum for the purpose of describing its character. *Huzzab* means established, set firm (Gen. xxviii. 12), and confident in its strength; from *nalsab*, to set, to fix (*Fuerst*, 913; *Gesen*. 560; *A Lapide* here). The sense is, that Nineveh, which seemed to be strongly rooted as a fortress on a rock, will be shaken, dismantled, and laid bare, and be stripped of its strength, and be brought up, or be torn up, and carried away captive.

— her maids shall lead her] Rather, her maids shall be

- ⁸ But Nineveh is || of old like a pool of water :
Yet they shall flee away.
Stand, stand, *shall they cry* ; but none shall || look back.
- ⁹ Take ye the spoil of silver, take the spoil of gold :
|| For *there is none end of the store and glory out of all the † pleasant*
furniture.
- ¹⁰ She is empty, and void, and waste :
And the ^g heart melteth, and ^h the knees smite together,
ⁱ And much pain is in all loins,
And ^k the faces of them all gather blackness.
- ¹¹ Where is the dwelling of ^l the lions,
And the feeding place of the young lions,
Where the lion, *even* the old lion, walked,
And the lion's whelp, and none made *them* afraid ?
- ¹² The lion did tear in pieces enough for his whelps,
And strangled for his lionesses,
And filled his holes with prey,
And his dens with ravin.
- ¹³ ^m Behold, I *am* against thee, saith the LORD of hosts,
And I will burn her chariots in the smoke,
And the sword shall devour thy young lions :
And I will cut off thy prey from the earth,
And the voice of ⁿ thy messengers shall no more be heard.
- III. ¹ Woe to the † ^a bloody city ! it is all full of lies *and* robbery ;
The prey departeth not ;
- ² The noise of a whip, and ^b the noise of the rattling of the wheels,
And of the prancing horses, and of the jumping chariots.
- ³ The horseman lifteth up both † the bright sword and the glittering
spear :

Before
CHRIST
about
713.

|| Or, *from the days that she hath been.*

|| Or, *cause them to turn.*

|| Or, *and their infinite store, &c.*
† Heb. *vessels of desire.*

g Isa. 13. 7, 8.
h Dan. 5. 6.

i Jer. 30. 6.

k Joel 2. 6.

l Job 4. 10, 11.
Ezek. 19. 2—7.

m Ezek. 29. 3. &
38. 3. & 39. 1.
ch. 3. 5.

n 2 Kings 18.
17, 19. & 19. 9, 23.

† Heb. *city of bloods.*

a Ezek. 22. 2, 3.
& 24. 6, 9.

b Jer. 47. 3.

† Heb. *the flame of the sword, and the lightning of the spear.*

sighing or sobbing (Gesén. 536; Fuerst, 909), cooing sadly, like doves (ep. Isa. xxxviii. 14; lix. 11), *tabering*, i. e. smiting with their beaks on *their breasts* as upon timbrels (Ps. lxxviii. 25), and thence producing a dirge-like sound. Cp. Luke xviii. 13; xxiii. 27, on the action of beating the breast in lamentation. Nineveh is compared to a Queen: her people and allies are like her handmaidens, who mourn with her and for her.

8. *But Nineveh is of old like a pool of water*] Rather, *And Nineveh has been like a pool* (Heb. *beréah*, whence Spanish *Alberca*, through the Arabic) or reservoir of water all her days. The words *pool of water* are not here used in a bad sense, but in a good. The word *beréah* is applied to the pool of Siloam, and of Gihon, and other royal pools at Jerusalem. See Neh. ii. 14; iii. 15. Eccl. ii. 6. Isa. vii. 3; xxii. 9, 11; xxxvi. 2, which, especially in hot and dry countries, were of great beauty and value.

The sense is, that Nineveh has been all her days a fair and richly-adorned reservoir, to which streams of many nations have flowed in commercial relations with her, and in tributary subjection to her (as S. Jerome well says: "Ninive tantos nutrierat populos, ut piscinarum aquis compararetur." Cp. Rawlinson, ii. 179—183, on the extensive commerce of Nineveh); but now they *shall flee* (like water flowing away), and shall not listen to her cry for succour, "*Stand ye*;" and she shall be left like a dry and broken cistern.

In a somewhat similar manner the mystical Babylon is said in the Apocalypse to sit on many waters, which are peoples, multitudes, and nations (Rev. xvii. 1. 15); but they will all fail her in the hour of her distress (Rev. xviii. 10).

9. *Take ye the spoil*] This is said to the Babylonian invaders of Nineveh (S. Jerome).

10. *the faces of them all gather blackness*] Words adopted from Joel ii. 6. Cp. Jer. xxx. 6.

12. *The lion*] An Assyrian emblem of strength, and even of divinity, as seen in the Assyrian monuments. See Rawlinson, i. 173. The Man-Lion (there figured from Layard) was the emblem of Nergal, the Assyrian war-god.

The Lion was, in the language of prophecy, the fittest amongst animals to symbolize Assyria. The favourite national emblem—the Lion—was a true type of the people; blood and ravin are their characteristics in the mind of the Hebrew prophet (Rawlinson, i. 308).

S. Jerome interprets this in a figurative, as well as a literal sense, and says that "Leo Diabolus est" (1 Pet. v. 8), "et catulus Leonis, Antichristus."

13. *Behold, I am against thee*] Words repeated in iii. 5, and adopted by Ezekiel, and applied to Egypt (xxix. 3) and to Gog (xxxix. 1).

CH. III. 1. *Woe to the bloody city*] Literally, *the city of bloods*. The savage temper, and sanguinary acts of Nineveh are recorded in her own history, written by herself, and still preserved in the cuneiform inscriptions recently discovered there. See some extracts from them above, in the notes on 2 Kings xvii. 4, 24; xix. 37, where Sargon, King of Assyria, father of Sennacherib, says, "I have ground to powder the nations, and have displayed the signs of my dominion to the four elements;" and see, especially, the notes on 2 Chron. xxi. 1; and on Isa. x. 28—32; and xviii. 1.

2. *The noise of a whip*] The Prophet passes on to foretell the attack upon Nineveh by the confederate forces of the Medes and Babylonians; he hears the cracking of the whips of their charioteers, and the rattling of the wheels) and the horses rushing to battle, and the chariots bounding over the plain; and describes them with the vivid energy of poetic imagination.

3. *The horseman lifteth up both the bright sword*] *The rider*

Before
CHRIST
about
713.

e Isa. 47, 9, 12.
Rev. 18, 2, 3.

d ch. 2, 13.

e Isa. 47, 2, 3.
Jer. 13, 22, 26.
Ezek. 16, 37.
Micah 1, 11.
f Hab. 2, 16.

g Mal. 2, 9.

h Heb. 10, 33.
i Rev. 18, 10.

l Jer. 15, 5.

1 Amos 6, 2.
Or, nourishing.
† Heb. No Amon.
m Jer. 46, 25, 26.
Ezek. 30, 14—16.

4 Heb. in thy
ho p.

- And there is a multitude of slain, and a great number of carcases;
And there is none end of *their* corpses; they stumble upon their corpses:
4 Because of the multitude of the whoredoms of the wellfavoured harlot,
c The mistress of witchcrafts,
That selleth nations through her whoredoms,
And families through her witchcrafts;
5 d Behold, I am against thee, saith the LORD of hosts;
And e I will discover thy skirts upon thy face,
f And I will shew the nations thy nakedness,
And the kingdoms thy shame.
6 And I will cast abominable filth upon thee,
And g make thee vile, and will set thee as h a gazingstock.
7 And it shall come to pass, that all they that look upon thee i shall flee from thee, and say,
Nineveh is laid waste: k who will bemoan her?
Whence shall I seek comforters for thee?
8 l Art thou better than || † populous m No,
That was situate among the rivers, that had the waters round about it,
Whose rampart was the sea, and her wall was from the sea?
9 Ethiopia and Egypt were her strength, and it was infinite;
Put and Lubim were † thy helpers.
10 Yet was she carried away, she went into captivity:

making his horses to mount upwards (to the wall of the city), and the flame of the sword and the flashing of the spear.

4. Because of the multitude of the whoredoms of the well-favoured harlot] Nineveh professed love for other nations, and suggested to them that what she was doing was for their benefit, and was done in affection for them; and she allured and inveigled them by her crafty blandishments, as by magical arts, for her own benefit. Cp. Isa. xxiii. 17, where the same language is applied to the great commercial city, Tyre (*Abarbinel, Michaelis, M. Henry, Hengst., Keil*).

We have a specimen of this wily craftiness in Rabshakeh's speech to the Jews, in which he attempted to cajole and seduce them from their allegiance to Hezekiah, by promises of temporal advantage to themselves (Isa. xxxvi. 16, 17).

The whoredoms of Nineveh (as *Keil* justly remarks) are represented in this prophecy in that character, and not in the form of seduction to idolatrous worship; she is the emblem of godless, impious, and cruel worldly policy and power—in a word, of infidel Antichristianism. And in this respect she is distinguished from Babylon, the idolatrous form of seduction, and of rebellion against God. See *Habak. ii. 18—20*.

One of the worst features in the character of the Assyrians was their treachery. See *v. 1*; and *Isa. xxxiii. 1*. They were notorious as covenant-breakers (*Rawlinson, i. 305*).

— *selleth nations*] Enslaves them. It was the policy of Assyria, after the capture of cities, to sell their inhabitants into slavery. See the Assyrian inscriptions specified above, on *v. 1*. In one of these (quoted in the notes on 2 Chron. xxxii. 1), Sennacherib boasts that he carried away more than 200,000 captives, old and young, male and female, from cities of Judah in the days of Hezekiah.

Upon the Assyrian bas-reliefs still preserved, are long files of men bearing their booty out of the captured towns; and carts laden with spoil, succeeded by long trains of captives; their hands manacled before, or behind their backs, and fetters attached to their feet, and even rings passed through their lips. And in this abject guise they are brought into the presence of the Assyrian King. On some he proudly places his feet; some he pardons; a few he orders for execution; many he sentences to be carried into slavery. See *Rawlinson, ii. 86, 87*. On the cruel modes of execution practised by the Assyrians, see *ibid.* pp. 87, 88.

7. Whence shall I seek comforters for thee] *Nahum* the Prophet, whose name signifies *consoler*, was raised up by God to comfort Israel and Judah with this prophecy concerning the overthrow of Nineveh, and the destruction of their Assyrian

enemy, and their own deliverance from him; but there was no comfort for Assyria herself.

In a spiritual sense this may be applied to the Church and the World. The Church has the divine promise of the perpetual presence of the *Comforter* (see *John xiv. 16*); but where will hereafter be any comfort to the worldly Ninevehs and their mighty men, who rebel against God and persecute His Church? They will cry, and cry in vain, to the hills to cover them.

8. Art thou better than populous No?] Rather, *Art thou better than No-Amon?* that is, than the Egyptian Thebes, the great city of Upper Egypt, which was called *No-Amon*—i. e. the dwelling-place or portion of the Egyptian god *Amon*; and called by the Egyptians *P-amun*, the house or temple of *Amun*, who was worshipped there (*Herod., i. 182; ii. 42. Diod. Sic., i. 45*). It is mentioned by Jeremiah *xlvi. 25*; and *Ezek. xxx. 14—16*. See the notes there.

— *situate among the rivers*] Thebes was built on both sides of the Nile (*Strabo, xvii. p. 816; Poole, in Smith, B. D. ii. 576*).

— *Whose rampart was the sea*] The Nile. See *Isa. xviii. 2; xix. 5*. The Nile is still called a sea (*bahr*) by the Arabs; and when it overflows it is very like a sea.

9. Ethiopia and Egypt were her strength] See above, on *Isa. xviii.—xx.*, where these two countries are represented as combined against Assyria, and conquered by it.

— *Put*] In Northern Africa, stretching to Mauritania. See on *Gen. x. 6*; and *Ezek. xxvii. 10*.

— *Lubim*] Libyans. See on *Gen. x. 13*.

— *thy helpers*] He addresses No-Amon, or Thebes.

10. Yet was she carried away] Egypt and Ethiopia also were overrun by Assyria herself; and many of the inhabitants of their cities were carried captive by the Assyrian conqueror Sennacherib; and he returned in triumph from his victorious campaign in those countries, and expected to take Jerusalem as an easy prey; but his career was checked there, and his army was destroyed in one night by the Angel of the Lord.

These facts may be gathered from the eighteenth, twentieth, and twenty-seventh chapters of Isaiah, and from the Assyrian inscriptions recently discovered, and quoted in the notes on those chapters. Cp. *Rawlinson, Anc. Mon., ii. 416; Oppert, Inser. des Sargonides, p. 27*.

Isaiah himself was commanded to symbolize prophetically in his own person this captivity of Egyptians and Ethiopians, whose King Tirhakah came forth to resist Sennacherib (*Isa. xxxvii. 9*). See *Isa. xx. 3*, "The Lord said, Like as my servant Isaiah hath walked naked and barefoot three years, for a sign

- "Her young children also were dashed in pieces "at the top of all the streets :
- And they "cast lots for her honourable men,
And all her great men were bound in chains.
- 11 Thou also shalt be "drunken :
- Thou shalt be hid,
Thou also shalt seek strength because of the enemy.
- 12 All thy strong holds *shall be like* "fig trees with the firstripe figs :
If they be shaken, they shall even fall into the mouth of the eater.
- 13 Behold, "thy people in the midst of thee *are* women :
The gates of thy land shall be set wide open unto thine enemies :
The fire shall devour thy "bars.
- 14 Draw thee waters for the siege,
"Fortify thy strong holds :
Go into clay, and tread the mortar, make strong the brickkiln.
- 15 There shall the fire devour thee ;
The sword shall cut thee off,
It shall eat thee up like "the cankerworm :
Make thyself many as the cankerworm,
Make thyself many as the locusts.
- 16 Thou hast multiplied thy merchants above the stars of heaven :
The cankerworm || spoileth, and fleeth away.
- 17 "Thy crowned *are* as the locusts,
And thy captains as the great grasshoppers,
Which camp in the hedges in the cold day,
But when the sun ariseth they flee away,
And their place is not known where they *are*.
- 18 "Thy shepherds slumber, O "a king of Assyria :
Thy || nobles shall dwell *in the dust* :

Before
CHRIST
about
713.

n Ps. 137. 9.
Isa. 13. 16.
Hos. 13. 16.
o Lam. 2. 19.
p Joel 3. 3.
Obad. 11.
q Jer. 25. 17, 27
ch. 1. 10.

r Rev. 6. 13.

s Jer. 50. 37. &
51. 30.

t Ps. 147. 13.
Jer. 51. 30.

u ch. 2. 1.

x Joel 1. 4.

|| Or, *spreadeth*
himself.

y Rev. 9. 7.

z Ex. 15. 16.
Ps. 76. 6.
a Jer. 50. 18.
Ezek. 31. 3, &c.
|| Or, *valiant*
ones.

and wonder upon Egypt and upon Ethiopia, so shall the king of Assyria lead away the Egyptians prisoners, and the Ethiopians captives, young and old, naked and barefoot, even with their buttocks uncovered, to the shame of Egypt" (Isa. xx. 3, 4).

Nahum here foretells the wonderful result, that the great Empire of Assyria, which a short time before the delivery of this prophecy had sent forth from Nineveh her mighty armies to overrun Egypt and conquer Thebes, will herself be spoiled by the invaders, and that Nineveh, her capital, be levelled with the dust. And so it came to pass.

11. *Thou also shalt be drunken*] From the cup of God's wrath (Jer. xxv. 17. 27. Obad. 16). As thou hast cruelly treated the Egyptians and Ethiopians, so wilt thou be treated by the Babylonians and Medes in return.

— *Thou shalt be hid*] Thou, who wast once so glorious, shalt be plunged in gloom. What a contrast between this description of Nineveh's fall and shame, and the vain-glorious boasting of Sennacherib, who marched forth from her gates to overrun Judah, Ethiopia, and Egypt, and conquered the two latter great nations, and then sent his messengers and his letters to vaunt his own invincibility and to blaspheme the living God! (Isa. xxxvi., xxxvii.).

So will it be hereafter with all Ninevehs—that is, with all the proud and infidel Powers of this World, which now glory in their might, and boast their own prowess, and vent words of defiance against the Most High, and oppress His Church.

14. *Draw thee waters for the siege*] O Nineveh, make preparations for filling thy cisterns, to provide thyself with water to drink during the siege; as Hezekiah did when thou didst besiege Jerusalem. Cp. on Isa. xxxvi. 2. 2 Chron. xxxii. 3, 4. 30. Eccles. xlviii. 17.

— *Go into clay—brickkiln*] Make bricks for thy fortification.

15. *The fire*] Traces of fire may still be seen there (*Bonomi*).
93

15. *cankerworm*] Literally, the *licker*. Hebr. *yélék*. Translated *caterpillar* Ps. cv. 34; and Jer. li. 14. 27; and *cankerworm* in Joel i. 4; ii. 25; and here v. 16.

17. *Thy crowned*] *Thy princes*. So Kimchi, Gesenius, Kleinert, and others; but *Vulg.* has, *thy mixed troops*, and so *Arabic*; and this seems to be the true sense, *thy crowd of mercenaries* (*Fuerst*, S32; and *Keil*), who are compared to a swarm of locusts.

In a spiritual sense, this may be applied, with *S. Jerome*, to the strange, heterogeneous medley, the "mixtus populus" of forces (which Ezekiel has represented under the name of the *army of Gog*; see on Ezek. xxxviii., xxxix.), who are combined together under the banner of Antichristianism.

18. *Thy shepherds slumber*] (Hebr. *nāmu*) *have fallen asleep* in death. See on Isa. xxxvii. 36; and Ps. lxxvi. 1—12, where the same word (*nāmu*) occurs, v. 6. The destruction of the army of Sennacherib before Jerusalem, was like a prelude to the general destruction of the mighty men and of the countless hosts of Nineveh.

— *shall dwell*] *Or, are lying*. When all hope was lost, the King of Assyria, in a fit of desperation, committed suicide. Ctesias says (in *Diod. Sic.* ii. 25—28) that he burnt himself, with his concubines and eunuchs, and all his chief wealth, in his palace. Cp. *Rawlinson*, iii. 190—192.

Nahum's prophecy of the future destruction of Nineveh was fulfilled by the Medes and Babylonians (see above, on ii. 1); and, according to his prediction, the vast power of Nineveh completely vanished, and its glory was utterly eclipsed, so that in the year B.C. 401, Xenophon passed by the site without learning its name (*Xenophon*, *Anab.* iii. 4. 7). Four hundred years afterwards a small fortress was standing on the site, to guard the passage of the river Tigris (*Tacitus*, *Ann.* xii. 13), and opposite to it, on the west bank of the Tigris, has arisen

Before
CHRIST
about
713.

Thy people is ^b scattered upon the mountains,
And no man gathereth *them*.

^b 1 Kings 22. 17. ¹⁹ *There is no* † healing of thy bruise ; ^c thy wound is grievous :

† Heb. *verinkling*. ^c Micah 1. 9.
^d All that hear the bruit of thee shall clap the hands over thee :

^d Lam. 2. 15.
Zeph. 2. 15.
See Isa. 14. 8, &c. For upon whom hath not thy wickedness passed continually ?

the city of Mosul. In the year 1776, Niebuhr visited the spot, and supposed that what were the heaps of ruins of Nineveh, were natural undulations in the soil (see the view in *Rawlinson*, i. 326). In more modern times it has been explored by Botta, the French Consul (in 1812), and more recently by Layard and others, who have brought to light those gigantic remains of palaces, statues, and other monuments which testify

to the ancient grandeur of Nineveh, and those annalistic inscriptions which confirm the veracity of the prophecies of Nahum and of Isaiah, and of the historical narrative of Holy Scripture ; and bear witness to the divine foreknowledge of the HOLY GHOST, Who speaks in it ; to Whom with the FATHER and the SON, Three Persons and ONE GOD, be all honour and glory now and for evermore. AMEN.

H A B A K K U K.

I. ¹ THE burden which Habakkuk the prophet did see.

² O LORD, how long shall I cry, ^a and thou wilt not hear?

Even cry out unto thee of violence, and thou wilt not save!

³ Why dost thou shew me iniquity, and cause me to behold grievance?

Before
CHRIST
about
626.
a Lam. 3. 8.

The prophecy of HABAKKUK makes a pair with that of NAHUM. Both prophecies are called *burdens*; both are *visions* of the future. Nahum, the *comforter* (as his name signifies), consoles Israel, led captive by Assyria, with the assurance that the capital of that proud and cruel Empire would be overthrown by the Lord God of Israel, Whose universal sovereignty over the dynasties of this World, and Whose righteous attributes and tender regard for His exiled people, would then be declared; and that they would be delivered from the heavy yoke which pressed upon them.

Such is the literal sense of that prophecy; and in a spiritual sense it belongs to all time, especially to the last days of the World, and foretells that all haughty, infidel, and godless forms of Antichristianism will be eventually overthrown, and that the Church of God will be comforted by the Love of her Divine Lord and Saviour, to Whom all power in heaven and earth is given (Matt. xxviii. 18), and Who will make all His enemies His footstool (Ps. ex. 1. Matt. xxii. 44).

The Ten Tribes of Israel were carried captive by Assyria for their sins; but there was another proud and cruel Power, which was permitted, and indeed commissioned, by God, to chastise the other kingdom—that of Judah—which did not profit by the warnings of His wrath against idolatry, that had been displayed by the punishment of Israel, carried captive and dispersed by Assyria.

This was Babylon.

Babylon is displayed in Holy Scripture as the essence and type of all creature-worship, idolatry, and superstition, combined with a profession of much spiritual wisdom, and of a supernatural gift and ability to penetrate unseen mysteries, and to read the future; as evinced by its magical arts, its astrology, sorcery, and divination; and these characteristics were allied with vain-glorious vaunting of itself, its strong and magnificent city and vast extent of empire, consequent on the conquests of Assyria by Nabopolassar, and the successful campaigns of his son and successor, Nebuchadnezzar, in Asia and Palestine, where Jerusalem and Tyre had fallen before him; and in all the regions to the east and south-west of the Jordan, and in the land of the Pharaohs, who had been crushed by his victorious arms.

Habakkuk, the Levite (see iii. 19), who had ministered in the Temple of Jerusalem, was raised up by God to do the same work for Judah, with regard to Babylon, which Nahum the Elkoshite, of Galilee (Nah. i. 1), had done for Israel, with respect to the elder Empire of Asia—that of Assyria, which had fallen before the power of Babylon, and whose splendours had been eclipsed by its glory.

The name Habakkuk signifies a *loving embrace* (see *Gesen.* 258; *Fuerst*, 413, 414; *Caspari* on Micah, 31); and as Nahum was a *comforter* sent by God to console Israel, in captivity and affliction, so in *Habakkuk* (as *Luther* has suggested), we have a vision of God's love, embracing His people of Judah, whose captivity by the Chaldeans he foresees and foretells (i. 6). As *S. Jerome* says, "Prophecia" (Abacuc) "est contra Babylonem et regem Chaldeorum, ut quomodo prior Propheta Naum, quem Abacuc sequitur, vaticinium habuit contra Niniven et Assyrios, qui vastaverunt decem tribus quæ vocabantur Israel, ita Abacuc prophetiam habet adversus Babylonem et Nabuchodonosor a quibus Juda et Jerusalem Templumque subversæ sunt."

"Both prophecies" (as *S. Jerome* also observes) "have a spiritual sense, and extend themselves to the last times." Both

are messages of consolation to the Church in her conflicts with Antichristianism, in two different aspects. Nahum comforts her with the assurance of the triumph of Christ over the Infidel form of Antichristianism. In Habakkuk God clasps His faithful people together to His own bosom, in a fatherly embrace of love, and assures them that the time is coming when they will have nothing to fear from the haughty pride, the vain-glorious boastings, the ambitious assumptions of universal Supremacy, and arrogant claims to Infallibility, and to divine knowledge in spiritual things; and that He will utterly destroy the fascinating superstitions and seductive idolatries which are now the distinctive characteristics of the mystical Babylon, as displayed in the Apocalypse.

It may be observed that Nahum (the *comforter*) stands *seventh* in the order of the Minor Prophets; and *Habakkuk*, (the *embracer*) is *eighth*. *Seven* is the number of Rest after toil and distress. *Eight* is the number of Resurrection to glory. See above, on Ezek., p. 280. Nahum comforts us with a vision of rest; Habakkuk assures the faithful of a joyful embrace in the Kingdom of Glory, when their bodies will be raised and re-united to their souls, and they will embrace their friends and fellow-worshippers, and be embraced by God's love in Christ, in the Kingdom of Heaven. As *S. Jerome* says, we have "manifestissimam de Christo prophetiam in octavo Prophetâ, id est in *Resurrectionis dominicæ numero*" (*S. Jerome*, in cap. iii. prolog.).

Habakkuk prophesied in the reign of Josiah, probably near its close. He precedes Zephaniah, who foretold the fall of Nineveh (Zeph. ii. 13; for Zephaniah repeats thoughts and words of Habakkuk; see i. 7; cp. Hab. ii. 20), which took place a little before Josiah's death. See on 2 Kings xxiii. 29.

CH. I. 1. *burden*] See on Nahum i. 1.

— *did see*] So Nahum's prophecy is called a *vision*. As to the time of the vision, see *vv.* 5 and 6.

THE SINS OF JERUSALEM. ITS PUNISHMENT FORETOLD.

2. O LORD, how long shall I cry] Or, how long have I cried, and thou hearest not? O Lord God of Judah, how long have I cried to Thee concerning the wickedness of the people of Jerusalem, among whom I live? Dost Thou not observe these things? Wilt Thou not punish the proud and prosperous sinners, and deliver the righteous who are oppressed by them?

Yes (is the Lord's reply), I will bring the army of Babylon against the guilty princes of Jerusalem, and will punish them by the arms of the Chaldeans (v. 8).

Thus, at the beginning of his prophecy, Habakkuk protects the faithful people of Jerusalem against the notion that its future captivity would be due to the power of Babylon and her false gods; and teaches them to regard it as an act of God Himself, using the mighty empire of Babylon as His own vassal for doing His own work, in vindicating His own Majesty, and punishing offenders against His Law. Judgement must begin at the house of God; that is, at Jerusalem. But in order also to show that the punishment of Jerusalem would not be inflicted by the power of Babylon independently of God, the Prophet further reveals that God's chastisements would extend to Babylon herself, because she would not take the warning which was given by the judgment executed by God on Jerusalem, for its idolatry and other sins, by her instrumentality.

3. *iniquity—grievance—strife and contention*] These are, as it were, personified by the Prophet, as they are by the Psalmist

Before
CHRIST
about
626.

For spoiling and violence *are* before me :

And there are *that* raise up strife and contention.

⁴ Therefore the law is slacked, and judgment doth never go forth :

For the ^b wicked doth compass about the righteous ;

Therefore || wrong judgment proceedeth.

b Job 21. 7.
Ps. 91. 3, &c.
Jer. 12. 1.
|| Or, *wrested*.

c Isa. 29. 14.
Acts 13. 41

⁵ ^c Behold ye among the heathen, and regard, and wonder marvellously :

For *I* will work a work in your days,

Which ye will not believe, though it be told *you*.

d Deut. 29. 49, 50.
Jer. 5. 15.
|| Fulfilled,
2 Chron. 36. 6.
† Heb. *breadths*.

⁶ For, lo, ^d || I raise up the Chaldeans, *that* bitter and hasty nation,

Which shall march through the † breadth of the land,

To possess the dwelling places *that are* not theirs.

⁷ They *are* terrible and dreadful :

|| Their judgment and their dignity shall proceed of themselves ;

† Or, *from them*
shall proceed the
judgment of these,
and the captivity
of these.

⁸ Their horses also are swifter than the leopards,

And are more † fierce than the ^e evening wolves :

† Heb. *sharp*.
e Jer. 5. 6.
Zeph. 3. 3.

And their horsemen shall spread themselves,

And their horsemen shall come from far ;

‘ They shall fly as the eagle *that* hasteth to eat.

f Jer. 4. 13.

⁹ They shall come all for violence :

|| † Their faces shall sup up *as* the east wind,

And they shall gather the captivity as the sand.

|| Or, *the supping*
up of their faces,
‡ c. or, *their faces*
shall look toward
the east.
† Heb. *the oppo-*
sition of their
faces toward the
east.

¹⁰ And they shall scoff at the kings,

And the princes shall be a scorn unto them :

They shall deride every strong hold ;

For they shall heap dust, and take it.

(Ps. lv. 9, 10), “ I have seen Violence and Strife in the city : Day and night they go about upon the walls thereof. Mischief also and Sorrow are in the midst of it. Deceit and Guile depart not out of her streets.” The Prophet uses four words which the Psalmist had employed—*āren, āmāl, chāmas, rīb*—and in the same strain of complaint, for the sins of Jerusalem.

4. *the law is slacked*] Or benumbed, and paralyzed.

GOD ANSWERS THE PROPHET.

5. *Behold ye among the heathen, and regard*] Look forth, says Jehovah, *among the heathen*; for I will make use of a heathen nation (that of Babylon, the most powerful of all heathen nations) as My instrument for asserting My own righteous Majesty and vindicating My own holy Law, and punishing the sins of My People, who defy the one and break the other.

These words are quoted by St. Paul, in his Sermon in the Jewish Synagogue, at Antioch in Pisidia; “ Behold, *ye despisers*, and wonder, and perish ” (Acts xiii. 41). St. Paul’s quotation is derived from the *Septuagint* (which is in harmony here with the *Syriac* and *Arabic*), and is, as has been before observed, a Paraphrase rather than a literal Version. See above, on Amos ix. 12. The *Septuagint* keeps the sense, but modifies the letter, of the Original. Instead of translating *ba-goyim* by, *among the Gentiles*, it adopts another rendering of it—*O despisers* (a rendering justified by the form of the word, as *Dr. Pocock* has shown, *Not. Mis. in Port. Mos., Works*, i. pp. 141—143); and instead of *be amazed*, the *Septuagint* has *vanish away* (or *perish*); that is, be stupified by astonishment, and be confounded and faint away; which is a justifiable rendering, and is authorized by *Targum, Syriac, and Vulg.* See *Pocock*, *ibid.*, and *Surenhusius*, *Catallagē*, p. 427.

This passage of Habakkuk was very suitable to St. Paul’s purpose. The Prophet is warning the Jews that they must expect a terrible retribution for faithlessness and disobedience to God. Precisely the same warning is addressed to them by the Apostle. The Prophet tells them that God will punish them with captivity and dispersion, by the instrumentality of Heathen Babylon. Doubtless St. Paul, when he uttered those words, was looking forward to the similar punishments which

God would execute upon them by the hands of Rome (the Western Babylon), for like sins, and even more heinous, especially the sin of rejecting Christ and His Gospel.

6. *lo, I raise up the Chaldeans*] Behold, it is I, the God of Judah, Who do it. It is not done by the will and power of Babylon herself. Babylon is the servant of Jehovah. See Jer. xxv. 9, “ I will send Nebuchadnezzar *My servant* ; ” and so in Jeremiah xxvii. 6; xliii. 10, God calls Nebuchadnezzar *My servant* for punishing Israel and Judah; and He calls Cyrus *My shepherd*, for restoring them (Isa. xlv. 28). The punishment and the mercy both came from God.

— *Chaldeans*] A Semitic race, which dwelt from time immemorial in Babylonia, where they exercised the principal sway. (See Gen. xxii. 22. Isa. xxiii. 13; xliii. 14; xlvii. 1; xlviii. 14. 20. Jer. v. 15; xxi. 9; xxiv. 5; xxv. 12; xxxii. 4. 24. Ezek. xii. 13; xvi. 29; xxiii. 16. 23.)

7. *They are terrible and dreadful*] Rather, *terrible and dreadful is he*. The adjectives here, and pronoun, are in the singular number, and masculine gender. The nation is united and summed up in its Head.

— *Their judgment and their dignity shall proceed of themselves*] Or rather, *do proceed*. This verb, and the following verbs, would be better rendered in the *present* tense than in the future tense. The prophet says that the King of Babylon does not ascribe his power to God, as he ought to do, but arrogantly claims to be the source of his own pre-eminence.

This arrogance and vain-glorious impiety are exhibited in the speech of Nebuchadnezzar their King, for which he was smitten of God; “ Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for the house of the Kingdom by the might of my power, and for the honour of my majesty ? ” (Dan. iv. 30.)

8. *shall spread themselves*] Or rush forward.

9. *Their faces shall sup up as the east wind*] Or, more literally, *the panting of their faces is toward an east wind*; i. e. for destruction (*Ewald*; cp. *Fuerst*, 760; cp. *Gesen.* 448).

— *the captivity*] a captivity; that is, hordes of captives.

10. *they shall heap dust, and take it*] Such is the ease with which they storm and take a city. The raising an embankment against it is only like casting up a heap of dust, and the city falls before it.

¹¹ Then shall his mind change, and he shall pass over, and offend,

^g *Imputing* this his power unto his god.

¹² ^h *Art* thou not from everlasting, O LORD my God, mine Holy One ?

We shall not die.

O LORD, ⁱ thou hast ordained them for judgment ;

And, O † mighty God, thou hast † established them for correction.

¹³ ^k *Thou art* of purer eyes than to behold evil, and canst not look on || iniquity : †

^l Wherefore lookest thou upon them that deal treacherously,

And holdest thy tongue

When the wicked devoureth *the man that is* more righteous than he ?

¹⁴ And makest men as the fishes of the sea,

As the || creeping things, *that have* no ruler over them ?

¹⁵ They ^m take up all of them with the angle,

They catch them in their net, and gather them in their || drag :

Therefore they rejoice and are glad ;

¹⁶ Therefore ⁿ they sacrifice unto their net, and burn incense unto their drag ;

Because by them their portion *is* fat, and their meat || † plenteous.

¹⁷ Shall they therefore empty their net,

And not spare continually to slay the nations ?

II. ¹ I will ^a stand upon my watch,

And set me upon the † tower,

^b And will watch to see what he will say || unto me,

And what I shall answer || † when I am reproved.

² And the LORD answered me, and said,

^c Write the vision, and make *it* plain upon tables,

Before
CHRIST

about
626,
g Dan. 5. 4.
h Ps. 90. 2. &
93. 2.
Iam. 5. 19.

i 2 Kings 19. 25.
Ps. 17. 13.
Isa. 10. 5, 6, 7.
Ezek. 30. 25.
† Heb. rock.
Deut. 32. 4.
† Heb. founded.
k Ps. 5. 5.
|| Or, grievance.
l Jer. 12. 1.

|| Or, moving.
m Jer. 16. 16.
Amos 4. 2.

|| Or, flue net.

n Deut. 8. 17.
Isa. 10. 13. &
37. 24, 25.
|| Or, dainty.
† Heb. fat.

a Isa. 21. 8, 11.

† Heb. fenced
place.

b Ps. 85. 8.
|| Or, in me.

|| Or, when I am
argued with.

† Heb. upon my
reproof, or,
arguing.
c Isa. 8. 1. & 30. 5.

11. *Then shall his mind change*] Rather, *the wind passes by*; that is, the storm of his violence, compared to a wind, sweeps by, and passes over (the land), and offends; *this, its power, is its god*. It defies God, and defies itself. See above, v. 6, and Micah ii. 1, and the description of the Antichristian power in Daniel xi. 36—38.

THE PROPHET'S QUESTION.

12—17. *Art thou not from everlasting, O LORD my God—the nations*] These verses may best be considered together. O Jehovah, my God, the Holy One, the God of Israel, let me derive comfort from the reflection that Thou art from everlasting; and that whatever the Chaldeans do, is done by the permission of Thee, the Mighty God, or ROCK, for our sins, and for our correction; and therefore *we shall not die*. We shall be chastened, but not killed. But why, O Lord, dost thou use such a power as that of Babylon, which idolizes itself, and imputes all its victories to its own arm, and defies Thee? Since Thou art of purer eyes than to behold evil with complacency, Why dost Thou look on the Chaldeans, and keep silence while they devour Thy People—which, sinful as many of them are, is more righteous than the Chaldeans; for many holy men are among them, and they have Thy Temple, and worship Thee? Why dost Thou make men to be no better than fish and reptiles, where the more powerful and the more venomous hurt and destroy the rest?

The Chaldeans are allowed by Thee to catch Thy People like fish, with hook and with net. And when they have done it they exult and do outrage to Thee, and, in their brutish idolatry, worship the instruments by which Thou hast permitted them to gain their booty—their net and their drag!

These prophecies concerning the literal Babylon reach onward to our own days, and to the mystical Babylon,—which is Rome.

The King of the literal Babylon is compared here to a fisherman, catching men and nations in his net. And it may be observed, that the Head of the mystical Babylon claims to be the successor of an Apostolic fisherman, and is a spiritual “fisher of men;” and that his decrees, in which he imitates the Chaldean King, and claims universal Supremacy, spiritual and temporal, are issued with this formula—“Datum Romæ apud Sanctum Petrum sub annulo Piscatoris.” And

he worships his own drag, and makes others worship it; they must all bow down before his assumed Infallibility, and adore that universal Supremacy in which he encloses the Nations, as in a net. See below, on Rev. xiii., pp. 233, 234; and *Dr. Robinson* here, p. 150.

CH. II. 1. *I will stand upon my watch*] The Prophet, likened to a watchman (as the Prophets often are; see Ezek. iii. 17; xxxiii. 2. 6. 7. Micah vii. 4. Cant. iii. 3; v. 7), stands on his tower, and listens for the reply which God makes to the question which he has just put.

The Prophet raises himself from earthly things, and ascends to the height of spiritual meditation (as Moses did, on the height of Horeb or of Pisgah, and St. Peter on the house-top, and the Saviour Himself, when He went up to the mountain alone to pray); and there, with attentive ear, after devout supplication, he hearkens to the Voice of God speaking within him. Cp. *S. Cyril* and *Theodoret* here.

—*what he will say unto me*] Rather, *what He* (God) *will say in me*. He prays that he may hear God's voice speaking within himself.

—*And what I shall answer—reproved*] Rather, *and what* (when I have heard God's voice in me) *I shall answer to my own complaint*. See *Sept.* here, *Targum*, and *Arabic*.

THE LORD'S ANSWER—WRITE THE VISION.

2. *Write the vision, and make it plain upon tables*] In large letters, to be seen by all, even by those who run, and do not attentively look at it; even as the Decalogue was written on Tables by God Himself; and as the Law was written by Joshua on the stones at Sichem (see Josh. viii. 31); and as the names of Isaiah's two sons were written by the Prophet.

The Vision (of the future destruction of Babylon) was to be *written* now, in order that, when it came to pass, the people might be witnesses of its fulfilment, and believe in the Prophet's inspiration. If it had not been *written* and *published* then, but had been reserved for some years in the Prophet's own bosom, and not divulged till it was accomplished, some might say that the Vision had never been seen, and that the prophecy was no prophecy, but had been uttered after the event.

St. Paul appears to allude to these words of Habakkuk in

Before
CHRIST
about
(26),
d Dan. 10, 14, &
11, 27, 35.

e Heb. 10, 37.

f John 3, 36,
Rom. 1, 17,
Gal. 3, 11,
Heb. 10, 38,
|| Or. *H* as much
more.

That he may run that readeth it.

³ For ^a the vision is yet for an appointed time,

But at the end it shall speak, and not lie:

Though it tarry, wait for it;

Because it will ^e surely come, it will not tarry.

⁴ Behold, his soul *which* is lifted up is not upright in him:

But the ^f just shall live by his faith.

⁵ || Yea also, because he transgresseth by wine,

He is a proud man, neither keepeth at home,

his Epistle to the Galatians, where he is referring to the large letters in which that Epistle was written by his own hand; which teaches the lesson inculcated by the Prophet here—*the just shall live by his faith*. See below, the note on Gal. vi. 11.

Habakkuk receives a command from God, "*Write the Vision*." The Vision to be written by the Prophet, related to the literal Babylon, its pride, its idolatry, its fall. St. John, in the isle of Patmos, received a similar command from Christ. "What thou seest, write in a book." See Rev. i. 11.

Habakkuk's Vision concerning the literal Babylon has been fulfilled; so, in due time, St. John's Vision in the Apocalypse, concerning the mystical Babylon (the City and Church of Rome) will be.

³. *the vision is yet for an appointed time*] Rather, *the vision is for the appointed end, and strives (or yearns, pants, and longs; see Fuerst, 590; Gesen. 358; Hitzig, Keil) for the end, Hebr. kets, or moed kets, the time of the end; i.e. the time of the Messiah. See Dan. viii. 17, 19; xi. 35; xii. 4, 13, where the word kets is used; and compare the note of Keil here.*

The sense is, that this prophecy of Habakkuk, concerning the destruction of Babylon, will not only have a literal fulfilment in the overthrow of the Babylon on the Euphrates, but that it reaches onward to the times of the Christian Dispensation, even to the latter days, and will have its perfect accomplishment in the destruction of the mystical Babylon. The Vision of Habakkuk is the preamble to the Apocalypse.

In order that the prophecy of Habakkuk may be duly understood, it must be read throughout with an eye, not only to the literal Jerusalem and the literal Babylon, but with a view also to the spiritual Sion, namely, the Christian Church, and the Antichristian, mysterious, and idolatrous City and Church of Rome, of which (as is shown below, in the notes on the Apocalypse, Rev. xvii.) the literal Babylon was a type.

— *Because it will surely come*] The Author of the Epistle to the Hebrews, grounding his quotation on the *Septuagint* here, paraphrases these words thus—"*He that shall come will come*" (i.e. the Messiah); and by this paraphrase he confirms the interpretation given in the preceding note, that this prophecy will have its full accomplishment in the last days. The Prophet is foretelling the Divine Judgment on the spiritual Antichristian Power, which will be finally destroyed by the Second Advent of Christ. See below, on 2 Thess. ii. 8.

— *it will not tarry*] *It will not fail*; literally, it will not lag behind when the proper time comes for its fulfilment. Cp. Judges v. 28. 2 Sam. xx. 5, where the same word occurs.

⁴. *Behold, his soul which is lifted up*] *Behold (it is) lifted up, (and) not right (is) his soul in him; but the just by his faith shall live*. These words are quoted in the Epistle to the Hebrews (x. 38); and the last clause is cited also in Rom. i. 17. Gal. iii. 11, "*The just shall live by faith*." In the Epistle to the Hebrews (x. 38) the words are represented thus—"*Now the just shall live by faith*; but if any man draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure" (or rather, *my soul is not pleased*) "*in him*." This form of quotation of the second member of the sentence, "*if he draw back, my soul is not pleased in him*," is derived from the *Septuagint* Version; which, as has been already observed more than once (see on Amos ix. 12), was not designed to be a literal Translation, but a Paraphrase. The Author of the Epistle to the Hebrews, for reasons stated below (Introd. to Hebrews, pp. 373, 374), used the *Septuagint* Version in his quotations from the Old Testament; and in this passage of Habakkuk, that Version gives the sense and spirit of Habakkuk, but does not attempt to represent literally the exact words. The words "*if he draw back*," are a paraphrastic rendering of the original, "*Behold, his soul is lifted up*." The word translated "*lifted up*"—*uphalah*—(the perfect *pual* of *aphal*, connected with *ophel*, a hill, an activity; whence the hill *Ophel* at Jerusalem, on the east of Zion) signifies, in *hiphil*, to act presumptuously (see Num. xiv. 44, in which it is so

rendered, and which is the only place where it occurs; and ep. *Gesen.*, 645), is used by the Prophet, meaning to raise himself up from a lower level to a lofty elevation; and might fitly be represented, as it is in the *Septuagint*, by a word which the Apostle to the Hebrews adopts as signifying the drawing back of the soul from the proper level of humility and faith in God, and the entrencing itself in an independent spirit of self-reliant presumption, in the lofty fortress of human pride, such as was the characteristic of Babylon and its King. See here i. 11. 16.

That this is the true sense of the word, is shown by *Pocock* (Not. Mis., vol. i. p. 144), who says that the meaning is, the wicked man withdraws himself into the lofty citadel of his own human self-confidence; but the righteous man has no need of such a citadel; his castle is faith in God, and he will live and be preserved thereby. See also *Bishop Pearson's* remarks on this passage (Præf. Par. in LXX., vol. i. p. 263, ed. Churton), where he says that the word *aphal* means to withdraw oneself into a lofty tower or dark fortress for safety. Cp. 2 Kings v. 24. With regard to the other portion of the sentence, "*his soul is not upright in him*," this may mean, as the *Septuagint* paraphrases, "*his soul is not pleasing in him*"—that is, is not pleasing to God; as *Gesenius* says (p. 375, under the verb *yāshar*, here used), "*to be straight or right in my eyes, signifies it is pleasing to me, I approve*;" and so *Dr. Pocock*, p. 145, and *Bp. Pearson*, p. 264, explain the phrase here; and this is paraphrastically represented by "*my soul is not pleased in him*."

— *But the just shall live by his faith*] Literally, *but the just, by his faith shall live*. The word rendered *faith*, is *emūnah*, from *aman*, to be firmly rooted and established, supported, and stayed up—as a building on its foundations, or a tree in its roots (see *Gesen.* 58); and so may be compared with the Greek and Latin *moris* and *fides* (faith), from *μείβομαι* and its derivative Latin *fido*, to rely upon. Hence the heart of Abraham, the "father of the faithful," is called *neemān* (Neh. ix. 8), in reference to the fact that he believed (Hebr. *heemān*) in the Lord, and this was counted to him for righteousness (Gen. xv. 6).

The great truth, therefore, that we derive from this whole passage, is, that there is a characteristic and essential difference between the good and evil man. The evil man, in a proud, presumptuous Chaldean spirit, withdraws and elevates himself in the great and lofty Babylon that he has built for his own glory (Dan. iv. 30), and vaunts his own strength, and imagines himself impregnable there; but he will be hurled down to destruction in the zenith of his glory, and be made to herd with the beasts of the field (Dan. iv. 32). But the righteous man will not rely on any thing in himself, but will build himself by faith on the solid rock (i. 12) and sure foundation of God's Word, and be rooted, like a firm-set tree, on the soil of His gracious promises; and, as long as he does this, *he will never fall*; but he *will live*—be preserved eternally, by faith in God's mighty power and love.

⁵. *Yea also, because he transgresseth by wine*] The Prophet thus applies to the Babylonians what has been said. The better translation is, "*Yea also, because the wine*" (which he drinks, and gives to others to drink) "*is treacherous*" (*Vulg.*)—i.e. betrays and inflames him and them, and excites them to commit sins of insolence, licence, and impiety. Cp. Prov. xxiii. 31, 32.

The Babylonians were notorious for their intemperance: "*Babylonii maxime in vinum et quæ ebrietatem sequuntur effusi sunt*" (*Curtius*, v. 1).

This prophecy was accomplished in its fullest sense in Belshazzar's feast, when the King and his courtiers were flushed with the wine that they drank profanely from the vessels of the Temple of Jerusalem, and praised their gods of gold and silver, and were destroyed in that night of impious revelry (Dan. v. 1-5; 28-30).

— *neither keepeth at home*] Rather, *and he abideth not*; i.e. is soon swept away by destruction; whereas the faithful man endureth for ever. Contrast Belshazzar and Daniel here—

Who enlargeth his desire ^g as hell,
And is as death, and cannot be satisfied,
But gathereth unto him all nations,
And heapeth unto him all people.

Before
CHRIST
about
626.
g Prov. 27. 20. &
30. 16.

⁶ Shall not all these ^h take up a parable against him,
And a taunting proverb against him, and say,
|| Woe to him that increaseth *that which* is not his! how long?
And to him that ladeth himself with thick clay!

h Micah 2. 4.

|| Or, *Ho, he.*

⁷ Shall they not rise up suddenly that shall bite thee,
And awake that shall vex thee,
And thou shalt be for booties unto them?

⁸ ⁱ Because thou hast spoiled many nations,
All the remnant of the people shall spoil thee;

i Isa. 33. 1.

^k Because of men's [†] blood,
And for the violence of the land, of the city, and of all that dwell therein.

k ver. 17.
† Heb. *bloods.*

⁹ Woe to him that ^l || coveteth an evil covetousness to his house
That he may ^m set his nest on high,
That he may be delivered from the [†] power of evil!

l Jer. 22. 13.
|| Or, *gaineth an evil gain.*
m Jer. 49. 16.
Obad. 4.
† Heb. *palm of the hand.*

¹⁰ Thou hast consulted shame to thy house by cutting off many people,
And hast sinned *against* thy soul.

¹¹ For the stone shall cry out of the wall,
And the || beam out of the timber shall || answer it.

|| Or, *piece, or, fastening.*
|| Or, *witness against it.*

¹² Woe to him that buildeth a town with ⁿ [†] blood,
And stablisheth a city by iniquity!

n Jer. 22. 13.
Ezek. 24. 9.
Micah 3. 10.
Nahum 3. 1.
† Heb. *bloods.*
o Jer. 51. 58.

¹³ Behold, *is it* not of the LORD of hosts
[°] That the people shall labour in the very fire,

the former destroyed suddenly, the latter preserved to a good old age (Dan. i. 21; vi. 28).

— *enlargeth his desire—gathereth unto him all nations, and heapeth unto him all people*] Or, *peoples*. This was signally exemplified in the literal Babylon. See Dan. ii. 37, 38; iii. 4; iv. 1; Jer. xxvii. 7, 8; i. 23; li. 25.

May not this also be applied to the mystical Babylon, which sitteth as a Queen on many waters, “which are peoples and multitudes, and nations, and tongues,” and requires that all should acknowledge her Supremacy? See below, on Rev. xvii. 1. 15. She too is intoxicated with pride, as was the literal Babylon. Her Sovereign King and Priest is now setting up a golden image (the idol of his own Supremacy and Infallibility) as Nebuchadnezzar did, who, like other Chaldean monarchs, united sacerdotal functions with royalty. She also has her Belshazzar's feast: her sins are like those of Babylon; and Babylon's doom will ere long be hers.

⁶. *Shall not all these take up a parable—a taunting proverb*] Habakkuk here adopts the words of Isaiah concerning Babylon (Isa. xiv. 4—“*Thou shalt take up this proverb against the King of Babylon, and say, How hath the oppressor ceased!*”), and connects his own prophecy of her fall with that of Isaiah.

— *ladeth himself with thick clay*] Or, *mass of dirt* (Hebr. *ablit*). So *Syriac* and *Vulg.*; but *Sept.* and *Arabic* render it *maketh his collar*, or yoke, to *press heavily*. The Hebrew word here used, *ablit*, occurs nowhere else, but seems to be connected with *ablat*, to *knot together*, to *fasten*; and thence to lend, or borrow on a pledge (Deut. xv. 6. 8. *Fuerst*, 1006; *Gesen.* 601.)

If we suppose the rendering in our Version to be correct, then the mention of *thick clay* (literally, *a cloud of clay*) derives additional interest from the fact that the city of Babylon was surrounded by enormous walls of clay (“*coctilibus muris*”). She deemed them to be impregnable (as Nebuchadnezzar boasts in his inscription still extant; cp. above, notes on Isa. xlii. 19; xiv. 21); yet they would be only like a grave for the burial of her glory.

On the whole, the rendering of *Sept.* and *Arabic* seems preferable. Babylon draws all nations to herself, and puts a

galling yoke and heavy burden on their necks. This is also true of the mystical Babylon. How different is her yoke and burden from the easy yoke and light burden of Christ! (Matt. xi. 29, 30.)

⁷. *Shall they not rise up suddenly that shall bite thee*] The Persian army, under Cyrus, *rose up suddenly* from the bed of the river of Babylon, the Euphrates, in which she gloried as the cause of her strength and wealth, and they rushed into the palace, and Babylon was taken in her hour of festal revelry, and Belshazzar was slain (*S. Jerome, Theophylact, Remigius*).

So will it be with the mystical Babylon, “In one hour shall her judgment come; in one hour shall her riches come to nought” (Rev. xviii. 10. 17). See above, the notes on Isa. xiii. 15—19; xiv. 1; xxi. 5. 8. 9. Jer. l. 1; and li. 30. 46, which may serve as a comment on this prophecy of Habakkuk concerning Babylon.

⁹. *That he may set his nest on high*] Cp. the language of Jeremiah, xlix. 16. Obad. 4; and the words of the King of Babylon himself, in Isaiah xiv. 14, where he says, “I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High;” and the words of the inscription written by Nebuchadnezzar himself, and quoted above on Isaiah xiv. 21, where he describes Babylon as impregnable: see also the note there on v. 14.

¹¹. *the stone shall cry out of the wall*] This was literally fulfilled when the fingers of a man's hand came forth and wrote the doom of Babylon on the wall of the palace in which the kings of Babylon so much gloried (see the inscription referred to in the foregoing note), and in which one of them was feasting, on the anniversary of the festival of his god (Dan. v. 5—30).

¹². *buildeth a town with blood*] Words adopted from Micah iii. 10.

¹³. *is it not of the LORD—the people shall labour in the very fire*] Rather, *Is it not the Lord's doing that the people—i.e. nations like Babylon—shall labour for the fire?*—i.e. to supply food for fire. Cp. Neh. ii. 13. Jer. li. 58, where the same words are applied to Babylon; see the note there.

This was literally fulfilled. The Babylonians baked bricks for immense walls which they thought would never be stormed,

Before
CHRIST
about
626.
¶ Or, *in rain?*
¶ Or, *by knowing
the glory of the
LORD.*
p Isa. 11. 9.
q Hos. 7. 5.
r Gen. 9. 22.
¶ Or, *more with
shame than with
glory.*
s Jer. 25, 26, 27,
& 51. 57.

t ver. 8.

u Isa. 44. 9, 10,
& 46. 2.
x Jer. 10. 8, 14.
Zech. 10. 2.
† Heb. *the
fashioner of his
fashion.*
y Ps. 115. 5.
1 Cor. 12. 2.

z Ps. 135. 17.

a Ps. 11. 4.

† Heb. *be silent
all the earth
before him.*
b Zeph. 1. 7. Zech. 2. 13.

- And the people shall weary themselves || for very vanity ?
 14 For the earth shall be filled || with the ^a knowledge of the glory of the LORD,
 As the waters cover the sea.
 15 Woe unto him that giveth his neighbour drink,
 That putteth thy ^a bottle to *him*, and makest *him* drunken also,
 That thou mayest ^r look on their nakedness !
 16 Thou art filled || with shame for glory :
^s Drink thou also, and let thy foreskin be uncovered :
 The cup of the LORD's right hand shall be turned unto thee,
 And shameful spewing *shall be* on thy glory.
 17 For the violence of Lebanon shall cover thee,
 And the spoil of beasts, *which* made them afraid,
^t Because of men's blood, and for the violence of the land,
 Of the city, and of all that dwell therein.
 18 ^u What profiteth the graven image that the maker thereof hath graven it ;
 The molten image, and a ^x teacher of lies,
 That † the maker of his work trusteth therein, to make ^y dumb idols ?
 19 Woe unto him that saith to the wood, Awake ;
 To the dumb stone, Arise,
 It shall teach !
 Behold, it is laid over with gold and silver,
^z And *there is* no breath at all in the midst of it.
 20 But ^a the LORD *is* in his holy temple :
 † ^b Let all the earth keep silence before him.

and for lofty palaces in which they hoped to reign gloriously ; but all the labour of Babylon was only like fuel for the fire which was kindled by the Persian invaders and by which her glory was consumed. See the notes on Isa. xlvii. 14. Jer. li. 30. 32.

So it will also be with the mystical Babylon, the City and Church of Rome. See below, on Rev. xvii. 16 ; xviii. 18.

14. *the earth shall be filled—sea*] Words adopted from Isa. xi. 9. The Earth will not only be filled with *the glory of the Lord* (as it is in Isaiah), but with the *knowledge of it*. Men will *recognize* it. It will be filled with that knowledge, as the sea is covered with waters, which lie deep, spread far, and will never be dried up. Such is the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ revealed in the Gospel (2 Cor. iv. 6). Such was the knowledge of His glory, manifested by the sudden destruction of Babylon, and the miraenous deliverance of His people (Ps. cxxvi. 1, 2). They who will not see God's glory in His mercy, will be compelled to own it in His judgments.

Habakkuk here describes the result of the overthrow of Babylon, and of all Powers that resemble it. Isaiah represents it as a consequence of the preaching of the Gospel of Christ. Destruction of error, and diffusion of the Truth—both are requisite for filling the Earth with the glory of the Lord.

Such will also be the result of the destruction of the mystical Babylon. It will give a great impulse to the spread of the Gospel.

15, 16. *Woe unto him that giveth his neighbour drink*] The Babylonians were notorious for their intemperance (Curtius, v. 1). Their religious festivals were celebrated with dissolute intemperance, even in the temples themselves (see Rawlinson, iii. pp. 464, 465) ; and, as a fit punishment for these sins, Babylon was taken at a religious festival and a revel (Dan. v. 1. 30). Then God gave to her the cup of His wrath (v. 16). Cp. Jer. xxv. 27 ; and li. 57. Lam. iv. 21, concerning Babylon.

The mystical Babylon allures the nations, and intoxicates them with wine from the golden chalice of her false doctrines and alluring idolatries (Rev. xvii. 14) ; and she will be made to drink, in her turn, of the cup of the wrath of God (Rev. xvi. 19 ; xviii. 6).

17. *the violence of Lebanon shall cover thee*] The violence done by thee to Lebanon, the mountain of Israel, and the type of Israel's glory (see Jer. xxii. 6. 23. Isa. xxxv. 2), will be made to cover thee with shame. Isaiah says that at the fall of

Babylon the cypresses and cedars of *Lebanon* rejoiced. See Isa. xiv. 8, and the note there on v. 14, where it is shown from the King of Babylon's own words, that he made havock with the cedars and cypresses of *Lebanon*, to adorn the buildings of his own city. So the violence done by Rome to the true Church of Christ will recoil upon herself.

— *the spoil of beasts*] Hunted by thee. Cp. Rawlinson, iii. 438.

— *Because of men's blood, and for the violence*] On account of the blood shed by thee, and on account of the violence done by thee to land and city, and all that dwell therein.

18. *What profiteth the graven image—the molten image*] This is the climax of Babylon's sins—idolatry. Here also the prophet Habakkuk follows Isaiah, speaking of Babylon (xlv. 9, 10. 20), "Who hath formed a molten image that is *profitable for nothing*—*Is there not a lie in my right hand?*" Cp. xlv. 1. 2. 6—8 ; and note there.

So the mystical Babylon will find in the day of her trial, that all her objects of will-worship will be of no avail to save her from the anger of a jealous God, Who will not give His honour to another ; and Who said to the Evil One, the author of idolatry, "Get thee behind Me, Satan ; for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and Him only shalt thou serve" (Matt. iv. 10).

— *a teacher of lies*] The *teacher of lies* is here contrasted with the *Teacher of righteousness*, Joel ii. 23, which is Christ.

19. *Arise, it shall teach!*] Rather, *Arise, Shall it teach?* The antithesis is to be marked thus :—

Woe unto him that saith to the wood, Awake!

To the dumb stone, Arise!

Shall it teach?

So *Tulg.* Cp. Isa. xlv. 9—20.

20. *the LORD is in his holy temple: let all the earth keep silence before him*] The Lord revealed Himself in His holy temple to Isaiah, who heard the Seraphim cry one to another, saying, "Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts ; the whole Earth is full of His glory" (Isa. vi. 3). Cp. Zeph. i. 7, "Hold thy peace at the presence of the Lord." Zech. ii. 13, "Be silent, O all flesh, before the Lord. He is raised up out of His holy habitation."

In a spiritual sense, this is to be applied to the City and

III. ¹ A prayer of Habakkuk the prophet * || upon Shigionoth.

² O LORD, I have heard † thy speech, *and* was afraid :

O LORD, ||^b revive thy work in the midst of the years,

In the midst of the years make known ;

In wrath remember mercy.

³ God came from || Teman,

^c And the Holy One from mount Paran. Selah.

His glory covered the heavens,

And the earth was full of his praise.

⁴ And *his* brightness was as the light ;

He had || horns *coming out* of his hand :

And there *was* the hiding of his power.

Before
CHRIST
about
626.

a Ps. 7, title.
|| Or, according to
variable songs,
or, tunes,
called in Hebrew,
Shigionoth.

† Heb. thy report,
or, thy hearing.

|| Or, preserve

alive.

b Ps. 85, 6.

|| Or, the south

c Deut. 33, 2.

Judg. 5, 4.

Ps. 68, 7.

|| Or, bright beams
out of his side.

Temple of the Spiritual Zion, Christ's Holy Catholic Church, to which He has promised His presence, "even unto the end of the world" (Matt. xxviii. 20), and Who has this name, *Jehovah Shammah*—i. e. "The Lord is there." See Ezek. xlviii. 35.

CIT. III. 1. *A prayer of Habakkuk the prophet upon Shigionoth*]. This is a *prayer* (Hebr. *tephilláh*), like Ps. xvii.; lxxxvi.; xc.; cii.; cxlii., which are the only places where this word (*tephilláh*) occurs in the titles of the Psalms.

It is a prayer, and it is also upon *Shigionoth*—that is, it is a prayer of an impassioned, literally, of an *erratic* strain; from *shagah*, to err; like the Psalm called *shiggaion* (Ps. vii.), characterized by vehement emotions and sudden transitions; as a magnificent lyrical ode, and a sublime and sacred dithyramb.

In this Prayer, which is also a Psalm, the Prophet reverts to the miraculous mercies of the Exodus, and of the wanderings in the wilderness, and of the triumphant march of Israel, under Joshua, into Canaan; and thence he derives a consolatory and cheering assurance, that, however God's people may for a time be tried by affliction, in the ruin of Jerusalem and the Temple, and in the captivity and exile at Babylon, and in the triumph of God's enemies over them; yet, if they turn to Him by repentance, wait patiently, and rely on Him with faith, the *vision will not fail*; but that God's love will manifest itself towards them, and His promises to Abraham will be fulfilled, and His might and majesty will be displayed in the overthrow of His enemies—especially such enemies as Babylon—and in the deliverance and restoration of His people from their captivity there; and much more in the deliverance of all true Israelites, by Christ, from the power of all their spiritual enemies, in the first coming of Christ in the flesh; and next, in the latter days; and, lastly, at His Coming in glory.

Therefore, whatever may happen, the Prophet declares his resolve thus—"I will rejoice in the Lord, I will joy in the God of my salvation" (v. 18).

Many ancient Expositors regarded the whole of this chapter as a triumphal Hymn, celebrating the victories of Christ. So *S. Augustine*, De Civ. Dei, xviii. 3, 4; *S. Jerome*, *Theodoret*, *Theophylact*, and others. There is a profound truth in that Exposition.

The Son of God was present with the people of God before His Incarnation, in the miracles of Egypt and of the Exodus, and in the mercies vouchsafed to Israel in the wilderness, as St. Paul has taught us (1 Cor. x. 4, 9. Heb. xi. 26). And this exposition opens to us a magnificent view of Christ, working in and for His Church in successive ages, even from the beginning to the end, when He will renew at once all the miracles of the Exodus and the deliverance from Babylon, and of the overthrow of the power of Egypt and Chaldea, and will sum up, as it were, all His might and majesty in that manifestation of His Presence and His Coming, when He will put all His enemies under His feet and receive His Church into glory.

2. O LORD, *revive thy work in the midst of the years*] So *Symmachus*, *Fulg.*, and *Theodotion*; *within the years*; literally, in the inner parts of years (see ii. 19, where the same word, *kêrêb*—derived from *kârab*, to draw near—is used), *within years*. So *Sept.*, and *Aquila*; "as years draw nigh."

As years pass on, do not delay, O Lord, to show Thy might and to revive Thy work of love and power, which Thou showdest to Thy People in the Exodus and in the wilderness. Do not defer it beyond the appointed time. See above, on ii. 3; *Lowth*, De Poes. Heb., p. 290.

There is a remarkable rendering here in the *Septuagint*,

Syriac, and *Arabic*: "In the midst of the two animals thou wilt be known; when the years draw near thou wilt be recognized."

These words have been made the ground-work of the pictorial representations of the Infant Saviour in the stable at Bethlehem, lying between two animals, the Ox and the Ass. This translation, probably, arose from the interchange of *shenaim*, two, with *shânim*, years; and of *chayyoth*, animals, with *chayyehû*, revive it. This interpretation has been helped on by a mystical exposition of another prophetic passage (Isa. i. 3). "The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib;" which have been applied in a figurative sense to Christ, the Lord of Creation, supposed to be recognized, even in His crib at Bethlehem, by irrational animals, while men slighted and despised Him; and this sense has been adopted in the Latin office for the Festivals of the Nativity and Circumcision, and is found as early as in writings of the fourth century; as in *S. Cyril Hierosol.* Cateches. 12; *S. Jerome*, ad Eustoeh., Epist. 27; and *S. Ambrose*, in Luc. ii. 7, from *Origen*, Rom. 13, in Luc.; and *S. Gregory of Nyssa*, and *S. Gregory Nazianzen*. Orat. in Nativit. See *Corn. a Lapide* here.

This interpretation, which has been so powerful in its influence on Christian Art, and so fruitful in its results, may be compared with that other interpretation in the *Vulgate*, of Exodus xxxiv. 29: "Moses ignorabat quod cornuta esset facies sua." See the note there.

—remember mercy] He does not say, Remember our merits; but, Remember thy own mercy (*M. Henry*).

3. *God (Eloah) came from Teman*] God came like a mighty warrior, in triumph and glory, from the land of Edom—the land of the enemies of Israel. Compare Obad. 9. Amos i. 12; and Deborah's Song, Judges v. 4, 5, "Lord, when Thou wentest out of Seir, when Thou marchedst out of the field of Edom;" and the description of the Messiah coming from Edom, in Isa. lxi. 1, "Who is this that cometh from Edom, with dyed garments from Bozrah?" which displays Christ's victory over our spiritual enemies. (See the note.)

In this splendid Epinicion, or song of victory, Habakkuk takes, as it were, the harp from the hand of Moses, who had sung a noble prelude to it in Deut. xxxiii.; and he also interweaves some notes from several of the historical Psalms, which describe God's victories in Egypt and in the Exodus, and in the passage through the Red Sea, and the crossing of the Jordan; and such as Ps. xviii. and lxviii.; and also from the Book of Joshua, and the Song of Deborah (Josh. x. 12, 13. Judges v.: see the references in the Margin); and he makes them to culminate and burst forth at last in a grand Hallelujah to CHRIST.

—from mount Paran] At the north of Sinai. See Deut. xxxiii. 2. The glory of the Divine Presence coming to Sinai, filled the northern horizon from Edom to Paran. Num. x. 12.

—Selah] See on Ps. iii. 2.

—his praise] His brightness and glory.

4. *horns*] See the note on Exod. xxxiv. 29, 30, and Deut. xxxiii. 2, "From His right hand went a fiery Law for them;" the Law of the Two Tables, perhaps resplendent with glory. Rays of glory beamed forth, like antlers of light, not only from His face, but His hands. His works are glorious, and shine in radiant emanations and brilliant coruscations of love to Israel. The power was *within*; it was dark with excess of light, and could not be seen and gazed upon by human eye (cp. Exod. xx. 21. 1 Kings viii. 12); but it gleamed forth in splendour on the world in the Incarnation of Christ. See John i. 18.

Before
CHRIST
about
626.

d Nahum 1. 3.
|| Or, *burning*
diseases,
Deut. 32. 24.
e Ps. 18. 8.
f Nahum 1. 5.
g Gen. 49. 26.

|| Or, *Ethiopia*.
h Or, *under*
affliction, or,
vanity.

h Deut. 33. 26, 27.
Ps. 68. 4. &
104. 3.
ver. 15.
|| Or, *thy chariots*
were salvation?

|| Or, *Thou didst*
cleave the rivers
of the earth.
i Ps. 78. 15, 16.
& 105. 41.
k Exod. 19. 16,
18.
Judg. 5. 4, 5.
Ps. 68. 8. &
77. 18. & 114. 4.
l Exod. 14. 22.
Josh. 3. 16.
m Josh. 10. 12, 13.

|| Or, *thine*
arrows walked in
the light, &c.
n Josh. 10. 11.
Ps. 18. 14. &
77. 17, 18.

o Jer. 51. 33.
Amos 1. 3.
Micah 4. 13.

5 ^d Before him went the pestilence,
And || ^e burning coals went forth at his feet.

6 He stood, and measured the earth :
He beheld, and drove asunder the nations ;

^f And ^g the everlasting mountains were scattered,
The perpetual hills did bow :
His ways *are* everlasting.

7 I saw the tents of || Cushan || in affliction :
And the curtains of the land of Midian did tremble.

^h Was the LORD displeased against the rivers ?

Was thine anger against the rivers ?

Was thy wrath against the sea,

^h That thou didst ride upon thine horses *and* || thy chariots of salvation ?

9 Thy bow was made quite naked,
According to the oaths of the tribes, *even thy word*. Selah.

|| ⁱ Thou didst cleave the earth with rivers ;

10 ^k The mountains saw thee, *and they trembled* :

The overflowing of the water passed by :

The deep uttered his voice,

And ^l lifted up his hands on high.

11 ^m The sun *and* moon stood still in their habitation :

|| At the light of thine ⁿ arrows they went,

And at the shining of thy glittering spear.

12 Thou didst march through the land in indignation,

^o Thou didst thresh the heathen in anger.

13 Thou wentest forth for the salvation of thy people,

5. *pestilence*] In Egypt ; and on His own People, when disobedient (Num. xi. 33 ; xiv. 37 ; xvi. 46 ; xxxi. 16).

6. *He stood, and measured the earth*] Rather, *He stood, and shook the earth* (*Targum*, and so in substance, *Sept.* and *Arabic*, and *Gesenius*, *Delitz.*, *Keil*). If the rendering *measured* is retained, then the reference is to the portioning out of Canaan by Joshua to the Tribes.

— *and drove asunder*] He agitated. He *made to tremble*. Cp. Nahum i. 5.

7. *Cushan*—*Midian*] Enemies of God and Israel. Ethiopians and Midianites, who trembled with fear when they heard of God's acts at the Exodus. Cp. Exod. xv. 14—16.

8. *Was the LORD displeased against the rivers ?*] Was Thy wrath against the floods of the Red Sea and the Jordan, which Thou madest to flee before Thee ? See Ps. cxiv. 5, "What ailed thee, O thou Sea, that thou fleddest, and thou Jordan, that thou wast driven back ?" No ; Thy anger was not against the billows of the Red Sea and the waves of Jordan ; but against the proud surges of haughty enemies, raging and foaming against Thee and against Thy People.

— *thine horses and thy chariots of salvation*] Opposed to the horses and chariots of destruction, of Pharaoh and of all Egyptian-like enemies of the Israel of God. Cp. v. 15.

9. *Thy bow was made quite naked*] Being drawn forth out of its cover, and revealed in all its terrible grandeur. Compare the description of Christ as a mighty Archer, in Ps. xlv. 5, and in the Apocalypse (vi. 2). The Prophet is referring to Dent. xxxii. 40—42.

— *According to the oaths of the tribes, even thy word*] This, on the whole, appears to be the true sense of the passage. In a lyrical composition like this, we ought not to be surprised by conciseness and abruptness of style. It is thus paraphrased in the *Targum*, "Thou didst reveal Thyself in Thy Power on account of the Covenant which Thy Word made with the Tribes" (of Israel) "for many generations." Cp. *Vulg.* here. *The oaths of the tribes* are the oaths sworn by God to the Tribes, even from the time of Abraham (in whose loins they were, Heb. vii. 10), to the days of Jacob, and afterwards of David. Cp. Num. xxvi. 5 ; xxx. 1 ; xxxii. 28 ; xxxvi. 9. Josh. xix. 51. 1

Kings viii. 1. 2 Chron. v. 2, where the same word is used for *tribes* ; and compare also the reference to the oath sworn by God to Israel, and fulfilled in Christ (Luke i. 73, and Acts ii. 30) ; and the mention of the *tribes* in the New Testament (Acts xxvi. 7. James i. 1).

— *Thou didst cleave the earth with rivers*] He is proceeding to recount God's miracles of mercy to His People at Rephidim. Cp. Ps. lxxiv. 15, "Thou didst cleave the fountain and the flood ;" Ps. lxxviii. 15, 16, "He clave the rocks in the wilderness, and gave them drink as out of the great depths. He brought streams also out of the rock, and caused waters to run down like rivers ;" Ps. cv. 41, "He opened the rock, and the waters gushed out. They ran in the dry places like a river."

10. *The mountains saw thee, and they trembled*] At Sinai (Exod. xix. 18. Ps. cxiv. 4).

— *The overflowing of the water passed by*] This was true, when the Jordan, which then overflowed its banks, was parted asunder, and part of it passed on to the Dead Sea, and the other part of it flowed very far back, to Adam, near Zaretan. See the description (which has often been misunderstood) in Josh. iii. 15, 16, and the note there on that passage.

11. *The sun and moon stood still*] He refers to the staying of the sunlight at the prayer of Joshua (the type of Jesus), at Gibeon (*Targum*), in order that Israel might be enabled to rout their enemies. See the note above, at Joshua x. 12, 13, on the true character of that miracle, and its typical significance.

— *At the light of thine arrows they went*] Thy People went unhurt and marched safely to victory, while their enemies,—the armies of Canaan,—were overthrown and destroyed.

He refers to the terrible storm of hailstones by which the kings of Canaan were discomfited at Beth-horon (Josh. x. 11). The Israelites were not injured by it, but *went on* in their career amid the storm.

12. *Thou didst march through the land*] With Joshua and the victorious army of Israel. The defeat of the Canaanites, their extermination, and the planting of the Tribes of Israel in their land, were Thy doings, O Lord.

— *Thou didst thresh the heathen*] See Micah iv. 13.

13. *for the salvation of thy people, even for salvation*

Even for salvation with thine anointed ;

^p Thou woundedst the head out of the house of the wicked,

† By discovering the foundation unto the neck. Selah.

¹⁴ Thou didst strike through with his staves the head of his villages :

They † came out as a whirlwind to scatter me :

Their rejoicing *was* as to devour the poor secretly.

¹⁵ ^a Thou didst walk through the sea with thine horses,

Through the || heap of great waters.

¹⁶ When I heard, ' my belly trembled ;

My lips quivered at the voice :

Rottenness entered into my bones, and I trembled in myself,

That I might rest in the day of trouble :

When he cometh up unto the people, he will || invade them with his troops.

Before
CHRIST
about
626.

p Josh. 10. 21. &
11. 8, 12.
Ps. 63. 21.
† Heb. *making
naked*.
† Heb. *were
tempestuous*.

q Ps. 77. 19.
ver. 8.

|| Or, *mid*.

r Ps. 119. 120.
Jer. 23. 9.

|| Or, *cut them in
pieces*.

with thine anointed] Rather, even for the salvation of thine anointed. So Sept., Syriac, Arabic, Targum. Israel is called God's son, His firstborn (Exod. iv. 22); and so was a type of Christ, as the Holy Spirit declares, quoting Hosea xi. 1, "Out of Egypt have I called *My Son*;" and applying it to Christ (Matt. ii. 15). "And Israel was a holy nation, a nation of kings and priests" (Exod. xix. 6); and so a type of the MESSIAH in His Eternal Kingdom and Priesthood. Compare Ps. cv. 15, and 1 Chron. xvi. 19, "When ye were but few, even a few, and strangers in the land; and when they went from nation to nation, and from one kingdom to another people, He suffered no man to do them wrong, yea, He reproved kings for their sakes"—a saying which may be referred not only to the Patriarchs, but to the Nation of Israel, for whose sake God chastened Pharaoh (Exod. vii. 15—18), saying "Touch not Mine anointed."

This, therefore, is a declaration that Israel, the type of Christ, was protected by God's mighty arm from the days of the Patriarchs to the time of the Prophet, and its enemies overthrown. Much more will God exert His power for the exaltation of Christ, and the overthrow of His enemies in the latter days.

— *Thou woundedst the head—neck*] Thou smotest the head of the house of the wicked, so as to destroy it; and thou layest bare the foundation of the house, even to the neck, in which its strength lay. The neck is the emblem of dignity and power (see Cant. iv. 4, "Thy neck is like the tower of David?"), and sometimes of stubbornness and pride (Deut. xxxi. 27. Ps. lxxv. 5. Isa. xlviii. 4).

This was done, when God smote the firstborn of the enemies of His People in Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh on the throne, to the firstborn of the maidservant behind the mill (Exod. xi. 5; xii. 12. 29; xiii. 15); and God's People were delivered, and went free from the land of bondage.

It was done afterwards at Babylon, when the city was taken and the royal family exterminated, and another dynasty planted in its place. As God said by Isaiah (xiv. 22), "I will cut off from Babylon the name and remnant, and son and nephew" (grandson), "saith the Lord."

So will it be in the latter days. The pride and power of the mystical Babylon will be overthrown, as a millstone plunged in the deep, and she will be destroyed (Rev. xviii. 2); and the Israel of God, the faithful people of Christ, will then be delivered from her yoke.

There is a remarkable sentence in the Targum (or Paraphrase) of Jonathan: "The kingdom of Babylon will not remain, nor exercise dominion over Israel, the Romans will be destroyed, and not take tribute from Jerusalem. And, therefore, on account of the marvellous deliverance which Thou wilt accomplish for Thine Anointed, and the remnant of Thy People, they will praise the Lord."

¹⁴ *Thou didst strike through with his staves the head of his villages*] Rather, of his rulers (Sept., Syriac, Arabic, Gesen., Fuerst, Kleinert). The Prophet uses a word here (*matteh*) which has the threefold sense of *staff*, *sceptre*, and *tribe* (Gesen. 466: see Exod. iv. 4. Ps. cx. 2. Isa. ix. 4; x. 5. 24), and which is rendered *tribe* in v. 9, where see the note. It was a fortunate circumstance that it had this threefold sense; for he is here describing the royal dignity and the victorious power of the tribes of Israel, who have a princely and judicial character (see v. 13), and were enabled by God to overcome the inhabitants of Canaan.

The Holy Spirit, Who is here delivering a prophecy which reaches to "the time of the end" (ii. 3), is foretelling the triumph which will be achieved by Christ, the King and Leader of all the tribes of the spiritual Israel (cp. Rev. vii. 4), who partake in His royalty, being made kings by Him; see Rev. i. 6; v. 10. The sense is, "*Thou smotest with the sceptred and judicial tribes of Thine Anointed One the heads of his rulers*." The word here used is from *pāraz*, or *parats*, to divide, to judge, to rule (Gesen. 689; Fuerst, 1151). They professed to rule—literally, to decide, to divide; but they themselves will be divided and cut asunder. Cp. on Daniel v. 28, speaking (as Habakkuk here does) of Babylon, "Thy kingdom is divided."

— *They came out—secretly*] That is, the rulers of Babylon (mentioned in the foregoing clause) *come out like a whirlwind to scatter me* (to divide me, and cut me asunder), who am Thy people; and *their rejoicing was as to devour the poor secretly*.

Such also is the character also of the mystical Babylon. It glories in the *Head of its rulers*,—the "Episcopus Episcoporum," the "Rex Regum et Pater Principum," as the Bishop of Rome is publicly addressed at his Coronation in St. Peter's Church. He comes forth like a whirlwind, to scatter all before him, and to devour the humble and meek; but his destiny is, to be smitten by Christ (2 Thess. ii. 2—4).

¹⁵ *Thou didst walk through the sea*] The Exodus is ever present to the Prophet's eye, as the type of all victories of the Israel of God, past, present, and future; and it will be consummated at the great and glorious day, when the victorious tribes of the spiritual Israel, the redeemed of God, who have stood firm against the mystical Babylon, and triumphed over the *thynior*, will stand on the margin of the calm crystal sea, with harps of God in their hands, and will sing the Song of Victory of Moses, and of the Lamb. See below, on Rev. xv. 2, 3.

¹⁶ *When I heard, my belly trembled—I trembled in myself*] God's voice sounded in the Prophet. See above, ii. 1, I will stand and watch to see what He will say *in me*.

See the use of *belly* in John vii. 38, where the carnal man is represented as changed and spiritualized; and in the Apocalypse, the voice, which God had been uttering within him, makes the animal man (Rev. x. 9. 11: cp. Ezek. iii. 3) to tremble; and the very lips, by which he had uttered God's voice from within him, quivered; his limbs tottered under him, and he fainted with awe. Compare Daniel's condition in his ecstasy (vii. 28; viii. 27; x. 8. 9. 15; xii. 8).

THE PROPHET'S FAITH, HOPE, AND JOY IN THE PROSPECT OF FUTURE TRIALS, AND FINAL TRIUMPHS OF THE CHURCH.

— *That I might rest in the day of trouble—troops*] Literally, *I who shall rest*. I trembled with awe and alarm at the prospect before me. It was revealed to me that *he cometh* (that is, the Babylonian invader will come) against my own country, city, and people,—against Jerusalem, her king, and nation, and *will cut and break in upon them* (Gesen. 157. Gen. xlix. 19. Ps. xciv. 21). I trembled at the thought of this; even I, who was assured that *I shall find rest in that day of affliction*.

But the Prophet corrects himself; he recovers his confidence and courage, and at length bursts forth into that noble ejaculation of faith which follows. He utters a clear profession of unswerving and unwavering faith, even in times of darkest gloom and of agonizing distress. "*Although the fig-tree shall*

Before
CHRIST
about
626.

† Heb. *lie*.

s Job 13. 15.
† Isa. 41. 16. &
61. 10.

u Ps. 27. 1.

x 2 Sam. 22. 34.
Ps. 18. 33.
y Deut. 32. 13. &
33. 29.

† Heb. *Neginoth*,
Ps. 4. title.

- 17 Although the fig tree shall not blossom,
Neither shall fruit be in the vines;
The labour of the olive shall † fail,
And the fields shall yield no meat;
The flock shall be cut off from the fold,
And there shall be no herd in the stalls:
18 ^s Yet I will [†] rejoice in the LORD,
I will joy in the God of my salvation.
19 The LORD God is ^u my strength,
And he will make my feet like ^x hinds' feet,
And he will make me to ^y walk upon mine high places.
To the chief singer on my † stringed instruments.

not blossom, and there be no fruit in the vines, although the labour spent in the olive fails, and the corn-field yield no fruit; although the flock is cut off from the fold, and no ox be in the stall, yet I will rejoice in the Lord; I will joy in the God of my salvation.

The last words of this sentence in the *Vulgate* Version here are remarkable, "Exultabo in Deo Jesu meo."

In a spiritual sense, this prophecy may be applied, with *S. Jerome*, to evil days in the Church, when the fig-tree of the Visible Church, which ought to be fruitful, seems to be stricken with barrenness, and to bear only leaves, as was the case with Jerusalem in the days when our Lord visited her (Matt. xxi. 19, 20), and although the Vine, planted by God's own hand, may be unfruitful, as it was then. Cp. Isa. v. 1—4, and the similar imagery in Prov. xxvii. 23—27, and the note there. Cp. the beautiful application by *S. Cyprian* (ad Demetrian. 20).

This is our comfort in these latter days.

Although the Visible Church of God may seem to be like that leafy fig-tree, barren and unfruitful; and though iniquity may abound, and charity wax cold (Matt. xxiv. 12), and though the Faith may be hard to find (Luke xviii. 8); and though the fields of Christ's husbandry may seem to yield little fruit; though the oxen of the Christian ministry (1 Cor. ix. 9. 1 Tim. v. 18) may flag in their work; and though the sheep of His pasture may be faint with hunger and thirst—in a word, however unpromising may be the condition and the prospects of the Visible Church on Earth, yet the true Prophet of God, the devout and faithful Habakkuk, clasps God's Word to his bosom in a loving embrace (see *Prelim. Note*), and he clasps it more firmly, the more fiercely the winds of the tempest of the dark night rages and howls about him. The true believer will never despair nor despond. His heart will never lose its confidence and courage; nay, rather, the worse the state of things in the Church and the World may be, and the more all earthly succours fail, the more firmly will he trust in the Lord, the more fervently will he rejoice in the God of his salvation. He will be like Habakkuk looking forward to the temporary triumph of Babylon, and even to the overthrow of Jerusalem, and to the captivity of her king and her people, and looking beyond it to the overthrow of Babylon, and to the restoration of Judah by Cyrus; and looking far beyond that typical overthrow, and that figurative deliverance, to the destruction of all Babylonish pride, all Babylonish presumption, all Babylonish usurpation, and all Babylonish idolatry by the divine power of CHRIST, and to the everlasting victory and glory of all faithful Israelites in the heavenly city, "the Jerusalem which is above, which is free, and which is the mother of us all" (Gal. iv. 26).

19. The LORD God is my strength—places] The Prophet

takes up again the language of the song of Moses (Deut. xxxii. 13; xxxiii. 29), and also of David, the true King of Israel, when persecuted by Saul (Ps. xviii. 33). So the Church in her persecution flies to Him Who is her Rock (Matt. xvi. 18), and finds refuge and strength in Christ.

— To the chief singer on my stringed instruments] That is, the Precentor, who is accompanied by the instrumental music of the harp. He adopts the title of Ps. iv. (see the note there),— a Psalm of trust and joy, written in a time of affliction.

He says, "my stringed instruments," whence it has been justly inferred that Habakkuk was one of the Levitical tribe, whose office it was to take part in the choral services of the Temple of Jerusalem.

In this respect Habakkuk, the Levite and Prophet, takes his place by the side of the priest and prophet Jeremiah, and the priest and prophet Ezekiel. They all once ministered in the Temple at Jerusalem (see above, on Jer. i. 1. Ezek. ii. 1; and *Introd.* to Ezek., pp. 152—156); they foresaw and foretold its destruction by Babylon; and they are ever ministering comfort to all faithful people of the true Sion, by assurances of God's presence and help in time of affliction, and by visions of her future glory. See on Ezek. xl.—xlviii., pp. 274—289.

Though the harps of Israel were for a time to be hung on the willows by the side of the waters of Babylon, and though the sacred courts of the Temple, in which Habakkuk had chanted the hymns and psalms of its daily service were ruined, and the desolate site itself would no longer resound with the songs of Sion (Ps. cxxxvii. 1), and perhaps the Prophet himself may have been among the captives who wept in that far-off land; yet the prophecy would cheer him and all faithful Israelites in their exile; and they would wait with patience and faith for its fulfilment. This prophecy was a prayer on *Shigionoth* (see v. 1), and also a psalm of *Neginoth*. Such are the songs which are ever in the mouth of God's Church, "in the house of her pilgrimage." They are prayers of faith and hope, and also hymns of praise. And the day may not be far distant when "the appointed time" will arrive (ii. 3), and God will revive His work—His work of the Exodus, and His work of the overthrow of Babylon, and the deliverance of His People, in the midst of the years; and the harps of all true Israelites will then be taken down from the willows, and the songs of the stringed instruments will be heard in the courts of the heavenly Sion, and they themselves will stand on the margin of a "sea of glass,"—a sea once of trouble and storm, but now crystallized into an everlasting heavenly calm; and "they will be there harping with their harps," and singing "the song of Moses, the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb" (Rev. xiv. 2; xv. 2, 3), to Whom, with the Father and the Holy Ghost, be all honour and glory now and for ever.

ZEPHANIAH.

I. ¹ THE word of the LORD which came unto Zephaniah the son of Cushi, the son of Gedaliah, the son of Amariah, the son of Hizkiah, in the days of Josiah the son of Amon, king of Judah.

² † I will utterly consume all *things* from off † the land, saith the LORD.

Before
CHRIST
about
630

† Heb. *By taking
away I will
make an end.*
† Heb. *the face
of the land.*

ZEPHANIAH—whose name signifies, Whom *the Lord covers*, or shelters, in times of storm and distress (*Gesen.* 716)—holds a remarkable place in the Hebrew Canon. He is the last of the Minor Prophets before the Captivity: he follows Nahum and Habakkuk; and his prophecy is linked on to that of the latter. It opens with repeating Habakkuk's exhortation to the whole Earth to stand in silent reverential awe before Jehovah (see Zeph. i. 7: cp. Hab. ii. 20), and to the faithful *to wait in patience* till the prophecy is fulfilled. Cp. Zeph. iii. 8; and Hab. ii. 3.

The contents of his prophecy correspond to his position.

It has a retrospective, and also a prospective character.

The two preceding prophets, Nahum and Habakkuk, had foretold respectively the overthrow of the two great Powers of the ancient World, hostile to God and His People—Assyria and Babylon; and had cheered Israel and Judah with hopes of deliverance from them. And they minister consolation to the Church in every age, and animate all true Israelites with the spirit of patient trust in Christ, that He will protect the Christian Zion in all her dangers (whether from Infidelity or Superstition), and rescue her from all her enemies.

Zephaniah takes a more comprehensive view. He sums up and recapitulates the predictions of all preceding prophecy, and concentrates them in the bright focus of one great and concise prophetic denunciation against the World, whether outside the visible Church, or within it, as far as it is opposed to Jehovah, the Lord God of Israel, and is hostile to His faithful People.

Zephaniah prophesied when the tempest which was driven down from the northern regions of Chaldæa, and which had been long hovering over Jerusalem, was about to burst with terrible fury upon the City, the Monarchy, the Priesthood, the Princes, and the People. He had a mission of mercy in that time of trouble. As his name suggests, he comforted the faithful of Jerusalem and of every age with the cheering assurance that *Jehovah will hide and shelter them in all storms, political or ecclesiastical, however black and boisterous.* "Though an host should encamp against me, my heart shall not fear; though war should rise up against me, in this will I be confident." "In the time of trouble He shall *hide* me in His pavilion; in the secret of His tabernacle shall He *hide* me" (Ps. xxvii. 3, 5). "Oh, how great is Thy goodness, which Thou hast laid up for them that fear Thee. Thou shalt *hide* them in the secret of Thy presence from the pride of man. Thou shalt *keep* them *secretly* in a pavilion from the strife of tongues" (Ps. xxxi. 19, 20). In both these passages the Psalmist uses the word *tsaphan* (*to hide, to keep secretly*), which is the root of the name *Zephaniah* (*Tsephan-yah*, whom *Jah*, or *Jehovah*, *hides*). The Prophet himself explains the sense of his name, when he says to the meek and righteous, "Ye shall be *hid* in the day of the Lord's anger" (ii. 3).

In another respect Zephaniah's prophecy corresponds to his position. He is the last of the Minor Prophets before the Captivity. And he takes up and renews the work of the first of that goodly fellowship—HOSEA.

Hosea had comforted Israel with the assurance that their own *captivity and dispersion* would be overruled by God to promote His glory and their own future happiness. He had consoled them by saying that they would be weaned by it from their besetting sin idolatry, and from dependence on heathen nations,

such as Assyria, which caused their rejection. And he had cheered them with the reflection that God's truth would be communicated to the Heathen Nations of the World by their dispersion among them. He had foretold that the faithful remnant of Israel (the Apostles and first believers in Christ) would convert the Gentiles to Christianity; and that eventually the Gentiles, being received into Christ's Church would convert the rest of the Jews, and so "all Israel shall be saved" (Rom. xi. 26).

Hosea, the first of the Minor Prophets, was the Prophet of Israel; that is, of the Ten Tribes, who were to be carried captive and dispersed by Assyria.

Zephaniah, who was the descendant of King Hezekiah (i. 1), and who prophesied at Jerusalem in the reign of Josiah, was the Prophet to the two tribes, Judah and Benjamin; he does for them what Hosea had done for the ten. He predicts their *Captivity and dispersion*; but he foretells also that this also (as well as that of Israel) would be converted by God into a blessing to them and to the Heathen.

The great Heathen Nations of the World would all be humbled in their turn; the mighty powers of Ethiopia and Egypt would be subdued by Assyria; Assyria would be humbled by Babylon; Babylon would be used by God to overthrow Tyre and to overrun Moab, Edom, and Ammon, but would herself be captured by Persia and Media; Persia and Media would be subdued by Greece, and Greece by the arms of Rome. Thus the pride of all the Nations of the World would be broken, and they would lose their faith in the power of their own national deities, and would be prepared to receive Christianity, and would eventually become preachers of the Gospel; and having been themselves converted by Christian Jews, would at length convert the great body of the Jews, whom God would restore to Himself for ever in the true Zion,—the spiritual Jerusalem,—the Church of Christ. See on iii. 8—20.

By foretelling these last conquests, the prophecies of Zephaniah are also joined on to those three prophets which follow, namely, Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi, the prophetic trio which stand nearest to the threshold of the Church. Zephaniah ends his prophecy with the cheering words, "I will make you a name and a praise among all people of the earth, when *I turn back your captivity* before your eyes, saith the Lord." He prepares the way for those three prophets, who prophesied when the Lord had *turned back the captivity* of Judah from Babylon, and who taught the Jews to see in it a foreshadowing of a far more glorious deliverance—the emancipation of all true Israelites from their own bondage and exile, under the powers of Sin, Satan, and the Grave, and their restoration to life, and hope of everlasting glory in the heavenly Jerusalem, by the might and love of CHRIST.

THE COMING JUDGMENT.

CH. I. 1. *The word of the LORD which came unto Zephaniah—the son of Hizkiah, in the days of Josiah—king of Judah*] Zephaniah, the Prophet, was a descendant of the good King Hezekiah, and prophesied under another good king, Josiah; and he shows God's love to Judah in raising up to her such good kings. He prophesies woe to Jerusalem, whose guilt was greater because she did not profit aright by the reformation attempted by them.

2. *the land*] Rather, *the earth*. He prophesies woe to the world, as far as it is opposed to God.

Before
CHRIST
about
630.

a Hos. 4. 3.
b Ezek. 7. 19. &
14. 3, 4, 7.
Matt. 13. 41.
c Or, idols.

c Fulfilled
about 624,
2 Kings 23. 4, 5.
d Hos. 10. 5.

e 2 Kings 23. 12.
Jer. 19. 13.
f 1 Kings 18. 21.
2 Kings 17. 33, 41.
g Isa. 48. 1.
Hos. 4. 15.

h Or, to the
LORD.
i Josh. 23. 7.
1 Kings 11. 33.
j Isa. 1. 4.
Jer. 2. 13, 17. &
15. 6.

k Hos. 7. 7.
l Hab. 2. 20.
Zech. 2. 13.
m Isa. 13. 6.
n Isa. 34. 6.
Jer. 46. 10.
Ezek. 39. 17.
Rev. 19. 17.

† Heb. sanctified,
or, prepared.
‡ Heb. visit
upon.
§ Jer. 39. 6.

³ ^a I will consume man and beast; I will consume the fowls of the heaven, and the fishes of the sea, and ^b the || stumblingblocks with the wicked; and I will cut off man from off the land, saith the LORD.

⁴ I will also stretch out mine hand upon Judah,

And upon all the inhabitants of Jerusalem;

And ^c I will cut off the remnant of Baal from this place,

And the name of ^d the Chemarims with the priests;

⁵ And them ^e that worship the host of heaven upon the housetops;

† And them that worship *and* ^g that swear || by the LORD,

And that swear ^h by Maleham;

⁶ And ⁱ them that are turned back from the LORD;

And *those* that ^k have not sought the LORD, nor inquired for him.

⁷ ^l Hold thy peace at the presence of the Lord God:

^m For the day of the LORD is at hand:

For ⁿ the LORD hath prepared a sacrifice,

He hath † bid his guests.

⁸ And it shall come to pass in the day of the LORD's sacrifice, that I will † punish ^o the princes, and the king's children, and all such as are clothed with strange apparel.

3. *fishes of the sea*] Words taken up from the foregoing Prophet, Habakkuk (i. 14).

4. *upon Judah*] He prophesies woes also to the visible Church, as far as it is apostate from God. It has been imagined by some, that the invasion of Judah and the woes of Jerusalem, here foretold by Zephaniah, were accomplished by an army of Scythians, mentioned by *Herodotus* (i. 15. 103—106; iv. 1). So *Ewald*, *Hitzig*, and *Bertheau*; and after them *Stanley*, *Lectures*, pp. 502, 503. But neither *Herodotus* nor the historical Books of the Old Testament mention any conquest of Jerusalem by the Scythians; and *Jeremiah*, who is very full and explicit in his details of Jewish history at this period, knows nothing of Scythians, but ascribes all God's judgments on Jerusalem at this time to Babylon. Cp. *Keil*, and *Kleinert*, p. 163.

— *the remnant of Baal*] The idolatry which still lurked in Judah, after Hezekiah's and Judah's reformation, and which thus aggravated the sin of those who still clung to it.

So the Reformation of the sixteenth century in Europe, when new light was shed upon the world by the diffusion of the Holy Scriptures, has greatly added to the guilt of those who still cling to the sins of idolatry and creature-worship, which are condemned in those Scriptures by God Himself, speaking not only by His Prophets in the Old Testament, but by Christ and His Apostles in the New.

The remnant of Baal is contrasted with the *remnant of the house of Judah*, or the residue of God's People, i.e. the believers in Christ. See ii. 7. 9; iii. 13. Zech. viii. 12; and note below, on ii. 7.

— *the name of the Chemarims*] Priests of the high places, who were put down by Josiah. See on 2 Kings xxiii. 5.

Even the *names* of such persons and things are hateful to God (see above, Exod. xxiii. 13; and Hos. ii. 17; and below, Zech. xiii. 2), and will be rooted out by Him. How much more the persons and things themselves!

— *with the priests*] Those who, being of the family of Aaron, and therefore Levitical Priests, have apostatized to idolatry (*Tarnovius*, *Grotius*).

S. Jerome applies this to Christian Bishops and Priests, "qui frustra sibi applaudunt in Episcopali nomine, et in Presbyterii dignitate, et non in opere."

5. *that worship the host of heaven upon the housetops*] Where they might better contemplate and adore the stars (*Theodoret*). See Deut. iv. 19. 2 Kings xxiii. 12. Jer. xix. 13; xxxii. 29.

— *that swear by the LORD, and that swear by Maleham*] Or, who swear *by their king* (i.e. Baal),—the king whom they have made for themselves—as well as by Jehovah.

The Prophet pronounces a severe censure against those who "halt between two opinions" (1 Kings xviii. 21), and eudeavour, by ingenious shifts, to blend falsehood with truth; as is done by religious syncretism, which is one of the characteristics of these latter days. On the sin of religious compromise and indifference (what *Richard Hooker* calls "a mingle

mangle of religion and superstition, light and darkness"), see the note above, at 2 Kings xvii. 29; and on the history of the judgment of Solomon (1 Kings iii. 22—25).

They that divide their affection and their adoration between God and idols, between the Creator and the creature, will, the Prophet warns us here, be punished in company with the worst idolaters. If Satan have half, he will have all. If God have only half, He will have none. "Ye cannot serve God and Mammon" (Matt. vi. 24). "What concord hath Christ with Belial?" (2 Cor. vi. 15.)

6. *that have not sought the LORD*] It is a sin not to seek and diligently to inquire after Him. Diligent and persevering search after truth is necessary to salvation. The Evangelical merchantman *seeks* for goodly pearls (Matt. xiii. 45). The Bereans were more noble than they of Thessalonica, because they *sought* the Scriptures daily, whether those things were so (Acts xvii. 11). God is a rewarder of them that *diligently seek Him* (Heb. xi. 6).

7. *Hold thy peace at the presence of the Lord God*] Zephaniah takes up the words of the preceding prophet, Habakkuk, (ii. 20), and thus links on his prophecy to his predecessor's. "The LORD is in his holy temple; let the whole earth *keep silence before Him*," where the original words are the same as here.

— *the day of the LORD*] The Prophet here adopts the words of Joel i. 15; ii. 1. 11; iii. 14; and Amos v. 18. 20. Obad. 15. Isa. ii. 12; xiii. 6. See below, *vs.* 14, 15.

— *the LORD hath prepared a sacrifice*] Words repeated from Isa. xxxiv. 6. See the note there. Cp. Jer. xvi. 10. Ezek. xxxix. 17. 19. These are the only passages in the prophetic books where the word *sacrifice* occurs in this sense.

The *sacrifice* which God hath prepared is the Jewish Nation; and He hath *bid His guests*, literally, *He hath sanctified His called ones to offer it*. Cp. Isa. xiii. 2, "I have commanded my *sanctified ones*." Jer. xxii. 7, "*Sanctify destroyers*;" and see Micah iii. 5. Joel iii. 9, where the words "*sanctify war*" occur. All men, either willingly or unwillingly, are *sacrifices* to God. They will be blessed for evermore, if they freely offer and present themselves, their souls and bodies, as living sacrifices to God, which is their reasonable service or worship (Rom. xii. 1). If not, they will be made to be sacrifices to His righteous indignation, against their own will. See above, on Isa. xxxiv. 6. Jer. xvi. 10; and below, on Mark ix. 49, "Every sacrifice will be salted with salt." Cp. Rev. xix. 7.

The contrast to this terrible picture is presented by the Prophet in the gracious revelation at the close of the prophecy, where God declares that the Gentiles, when converted to Christianity, will exercise a holy Priesthood, and will bring the Jewish Nation as an acceptable *offering* to Himself. See below, iii. 10.

8. *such as are clothed with strange apparel*] Such as mimic the manners of heathens, and adopt their costume. Cp. Lev. xix. 27, 28; xxi. 5. The Babylonian grandees wore splendid

⁹ In the same day also will I punish all those that leap on the threshold, which fill their masters' houses with violence and deceit.

Before
CHRIST
about
650.

¹⁰ And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the LORD, *that there shall be* the noise of a cry from ^p the fish gate, and an howling from the second, and a ^p 2 Chron. 33. 14. great crashing from the hills.

¹¹ ^a Howl, ye inhabitants of Maktesh,

q James 5. 1.

For all the merchant people are cut down;

All they that bear silver are cut off.

¹² And it shall come to pass at that time, *that* I will search Jerusalem with candles, and punish the men that are [†] settled on their lees: ^{*} that say in their heart, The LORD will not do good, neither will he do evil.

† Heb. *cured*,
or, *thickened*.
r Jer. 48. 11.
Amos 6. 1.
s Ps. 94. 7.

¹³ Therefore their goods shall become a booty, and their houses a desolation:

They shall also build houses, but ['] not inhabit them;

t Deut. 28. 30, 39.

And they shall plant vineyards, but ["] not drink the wine thereof.

u Micah 6. 15.

¹⁴ ^{*} The great day of the LORD is near, *it is near*, and hasteth greatly,

x Joel 2. 1, 11.

Even the voice of the day of the LORD:

The mighty man shall cry there bitterly.

¹⁵ ^y That day is a day of wrath, a day of trouble and distress, a day of waste-ness and desolation, a day of darkness and gloominess, a day of clouds and thick darkness, ¹⁶ a day of ^z the trumpet and alarm against the fenced cities, and against the high towers.

y Isa. 22. 5.
Jer. 30. 7.
Joel 2. 2, 11.
Amos 5. 18.
ver. 18.
z Jer. 4. 19.

¹⁷ And I will bring distress upon men, that they shall ^a walk like blind men, because they have sinned against the LORD: and ^b their blood shall be poured out as dust, and their flesh ^c as the dung.

a Deut. 28. 29.
Isa. 59. 10.

b Ps. 79. 3.

c Ps. 83. 10.
Jer. 9. 22. &
16. 4

d Prov. 11. 4.
Ezek. 7. 19.
e ch. 3. 8.

¹⁸ ^d Neither their silver nor their gold shall be able to deliver them in the day of the LORD's wrath; but the whole land shall be ^e devoured by the fire

scarlet and vermilion robes (Ezek. xxiii. 14. Dan. v. 7. 16. 29: cp. Nahum ii. 3), and the Assyrians blue (Ezek. xxiii. 12); and the nobles of Jerusalem seem to have been dazzled with the splendour of their attire, and to have imitated it; as the Macedonians, under Alexander the Great, adopted the gorgeous apparel of the Persian court of Darius.

^{9. that leap on the threshold} *That leap over the threshold*, violently rush into the houses of others to despoil them, and fill the houses of their masters with the rapine they have torn from them.

Many expositors explain this by what is recorded in 1 Sam. v. 4, 5, concerning the priests of Dagon, who would not tread on the threshold of his temple; and so the *Targum* here. If this interpretation is correct, then the Prophet is to be understood as censuring the adoption of idolatrous practices from Philistia—practices which were the more blamable, because they were records of the humiliation of Dagon bowing down, and mutilated in his own temple before the Lord God of Israel (1 Sam. v. 3, 4)—as well as the *strange attire* of the Babylonians (v. 8).

^{10. a cry from the fish gate} A cry of distress, when, to punish the violence of those Jews who break into the houses of weaker citizens, the Chaldean invaders will come and rush into the fish-gate, on the north side of the lower city. Cp. 2 Chron. xxxiii. 14. Neh. iii. 3; xii. 39; and Jer. xxxii. 2.

— *the second* Rather, the lower city (Acra), on the north of Zion. See above, on 2 Kings xxii. 14. Cp. Neh. xi. 9. *Josephus*, xv. 11. 5.

— *from the hills* Of Jerusalem—Zion and Moriah. Cp. Isa. lvi. 6; and *S. Jerome* here.

^{11. Howl, ye inhabitants of Maktesh} Literally, *of a mortar*. See *Gesen.* 421. 473. Prov. xxvii. 22. Judg. xv. 19, where the word denotes a hollow place in a rock.

The name *Maktesh*, or *mortar*, is here given to *Jerusalem*, because in her cruelty she pounded the poor and needy, as in a mortar; and because she in her turn for her sins would be pounded, as in a mortar, by the Chaldeans. Babylon itself is called a *hammer* by Jeremiah (l. 23). Similarly, Jerusalem is called a *pot*, or *cauldron*, by Jeremiah and Ezekiel. See on Jer. i. 13. Ezek. xi. 3; xxiv. 3. 6.

Such appellatives as these are frequent in the prophetic writings, and give much life and vigour to them. Jerusalem is called *Maktesh*; so *Merathaim* and *Pekod* are names given to Babylon (Jer. l. 21. Ezek. xxiii. 23); *Gareb*, given to the King of Assyria (Jer. xxxi. 39); and *Huzzab*, given to Nineveh (Nahum ii. 7); and see the *Introd.* to the Song of Solomon, p. 125.

^{12. I will search Jerusalem with candles} I will search every corner and secret recess of the city, so that none may escape. (Cp. Prov. xx. 27. Luke xv. 8). This prophecy extends not only to the siege of Jerusalem by the Chaldeans, but also to her subsequent capture by the Romans, who searched all parts of Jerusalem, the drains, sewers, sepulchres, and caves, in order to drag forth to death those who lurked there (*Josephus*, B. J. vii. 17. 26—30).

So in the last day, the Judge will search every part of the Visible Church with candles. He searcheth every remote corner, and dark cranny, and chink of every heart. He will “bring forth to light the hidden things of darkness, and will make manifest the counsels of the hearts” (1 Cor. iv. 5). “Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in His sight; but all things are naked and open to the eyes of Him with Whom we have to do” (Heb. iv. 13). Cp. *Bp. Sanderson*, ii. 327.

— *settled on their lees* Men living in carnal security, and rooted in inveterate habits of sin and sensuality, are like wine that is not disturbed in order to be racked off; and which, if it be bad wine, retains all its austere harshness and turbid thickness. See note above, on Jer. xlviii. 11; and Isa. xxv. 6.

True religion is diffusive. It is racked off, as it were, from the cask, and put into vessels for the refreshment of many. Selfishness is sin. It settles itself on the lees; it stagnates and curdles, and thickens, till it becomes useless and noisome to the scent and to the taste.

— *The LORD will not do good* This is the creed of the Deist and the Libertine. Cp. Ps. x. 11; xciv. 7. They deny God's providential government of the world. Things happen, they say, by chance or necessity. God will not reward piety and virtue, nor punish ungodliness and vice.

^{17. their blood shall be poured out as dust} Of as little value, and in as great quantity, as the dust in the streets of the city, or as in the sandy plain.

Before
CHRIST
about
630.

f ver. 2, 3.
a Joel 2. 16.
Or, *not desired*.
b Job 21. 15.
Ps. 1. 4.
Isa. 17. 13.
Hos. 13. 3.
c 2 Kings 23. 26.

d Ps. 105. 4.
Amos 5. 6.
e Ps. 76. 9.
f Joel 2. 14.
Amos 5. 15.
Jonah 3. 9.

g Jer. 47. 4, 5.
Ezek. 25. 13.
Amos 1. 6, 7, 8.
Zech. 9. 5, 6.
h Jer. 6. 4 &
15. 8.
i Ezek. 25. 16.

k Josh. 13. 3.

l See Isa. 17. 2.
ver. 11.

m Isa. 11. 11.
Micah 4. 7, &
5. 7, 8.
Nag. 1. 12. &
2. 2.
ver. 9.

n Or, *when*, &c.
o Exod. 4. 31.
Luke 1. 68.
p Ps. 126. 1.
Jer. 29. 14.
ch. 3. 20.
q Jer. 48. 27.
Ezek. 25. 8.
r Ezek. 25. 3, 6.
s Jer. 49. 1.
t Isa. 15.
Jer. 48.
Ezek. 25. 9.
Amos 2. 1.
u Gen. 1. 13.
v Gen. 19. 25.
Deut. 29. 23.
Isa. 13. 19. & 34. 13. Jer. 49. 18. & 50. 40. x ver. 7.

of his jealousy: for ^fhe shall make even a speedy riddance of all them that dwell in the land.

II. ^{1 a} Gather yourselves together, yea, gather together, O nation || not desired;

² Before the decree bring forth, *before* the day pass ^b as the chaff, before ^c the fierce anger of the LORD come upon you, before the day of the LORD's anger come upon you.

^{3 d} Seek ye the LORD, ^e all ye meek of the earth, which have wrought his judgment; seek righteousness, seek meekness: ^f it may be ye shall be hid in the day of the LORD's anger.

⁴ For ^g Gaza shall be forsaken, and Ashkelon a desolation: They shall drive out Ashdod ^h at the noon day, and Ekron shall be rooted up.

⁵ Woe unto the inhabitants of ⁱ the sea coast, the nation of the Cherethites! the word of the LORD is against you;

O ^k Canaan, the land of the Philistines, I will even destroy thee, that there shall be no inhabitant.

⁶ And the sea coast shall be dwellings *and* cottages for shepherds, ^l and folds for flocks.

⁷ And the coast shall be for ^m the remnant of the house of Judah; they shall feed thereupon: in the houses of Ashkelon shall they lie down in the evening: || for the LORD their God shall ⁿ visit them, and ^o turn away their captivity.

^{8 p} I have heard the reproach of Moab, and ^q the revilings of the children of Ammon, whereby they have reproached my people, and ^r magnified *themselves* against their border. ⁹ Therefore *as* I live, saith the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel, Surely ^s Moab shall be as Sodom, and ^t the children of Ammon as Gomorrah, *even* the breeding of nettles, and saltpits, and a perpetual desolation: ^x the residue of my people shall spoil them, and the remnant of my people shall possess them.

JUDGMENTS ON THE NATIONS.—CALL TO REPENTANCE.

CH. II. 1. O nation not desired] Rather, O nation not *ashamed*; lost to all sense of shame, and therefore unwilling to receive correction, and incapable of amendment (*Sept.*, *Targum*, *Arabic*, *Syriac*). The radical idea of the word *cāsaph*, here used (connected with *cāseph*, *silver*), in the passive voice, is to become white, pale, or blank, as something which loses its colour and is eclipsed. Thence it is applied to a person who is put to confusion with shame. See *Gesen.* 409.

2. before the day pass as the chaff] Or, *day passes away like chaff*. The day of your life flies away like chaff. Cp. Isa. xxix. 5. "What is your life?" says St. James (iv. 14), "it is even a vapour, that appeareth for a little time, and then vanisheth away." Therefore repent, while ye have time. "Utendum est atate, cito pede praeterit aetas." The day of man is contrasted with the Day of the Lord. The sentence is parenthetical; the word *before* (which is not in the original) ought to be omitted.

3. ye shall be hid in the day of the LORD's anger] Ye too shall be Zephaniahs. See above, *Prelim. Note* to chap. i. on the meaning of the Prophet's name.

4. Gaza shall be forsaken] The Prophet declares the judgments of the Lord God of Israel on the Nations of the Heathen World, and begins with that which is nearest to the judicial Throne of His Majesty at Jerusalem; namely, Philistia; thence he proceeds to Moab and Ammon; and so southward to Ethiopia.

These prophecies have not only a judicial and punitive significance, but also a merciful and gracious meaning. The *heathenism* of the Gentile World will be destroyed, and they will be converted to God in Christ. See *vv.* 7. 11; iii. 10.

Gaza will be forsaken. There is a play on the meaning of these words. Cp. above, on Micah i. 10—14, "*Azzah*" (i.e. Gaza) "will be *azūbah*" (forsaken); "*Ekron* will be *teāker*" (will be rooted out).

5. Cherethites] Perhaps a colony from Crete. See 1 Sam. 108

xxx. 14. 2 Sam. viii. 18. 1 Chron. xviii. 17. Ezek. xxv. 16. There is another play on the words here. The word *Cherethites* signifies *cutters off* (they were used as executioners in the royal army of Judah); and the sense is, I will cut off (from the verb *cārath*, to cut off, *Gesen.* 416) the cutters off.

6, 7. the sea coast shall be dwellings—for shepherds, and folds for flocks—the coast shall be for the remnant of the house of Judah] That is, the sea-coast shall become a sacred colony for those Jews who will believe in Christ and preach the Gospel. This is the true prophetic meaning of the words the remnant of the house of Judah. See *v.* 9, and Isa. x. 21; xi. 11; xxxvii. 32. Amos v. 15. Zech. viii. 11, and St. Paul's use of the word (Rom. ix. 27; xi. 5). This prophecy was fulfilled in the preaching of the Gospel in Philistia by St. Peter and by St. Philip, and by the erection of Christian Churches there. Cp. above on Ps. lxxvii. 4, and below, on Acts viii. 26. 40; ix. 32—35. These were "the dwellings and cottages for shepherds"—namely, Christian pastors—and "folds for flocks," Christ's sheep and kubs. Compare the similar imagery in the Evangelical prophecies of Isaiah (lxi. 5; lxx. 10), "Sharon shall be a fold of flocks;" Jer. xxxi. 5—14, and xxxiii. 12. Ezek. xxxvi. 38; and see *S. Jerome* and *A. Lajide* here.

8. I have heard the reproach of Moab] Cp. Isa. xvi. 6. "We have heard of the pride of Moab." Cp. Jeremiah (xlviii. 29), and *v.* 10 here, "This shall they have for their pride." We, who have heard of its pride, will hear of its shame.

9. the remnant of my people] The faithful remnant. It is the same word as in *v.* 7. Here is a prophecy of the Christianization of those countries which were occupied by Moab. Cp. Jer. xlviii. 47, "I will bring again the captivity of Moab."

The prophecy declares that the heathenism of the nations here mentioned will be abolished, and that a faithful remnant of God's People will be gathered from them, by believing Jews—namely, by Apostles and primitive Disciples of the Christian Church, who went forth from Jerusalem—and will be incorporated in God's family in Christ.

¹⁰ This shall they have ^y for their pride,
Because they have reproached and magnified *themselves* against the people
of the LORD of hosts.

¹¹ The LORD *will be* terrible unto them :
For he will [†] famish all the gods of the earth ;
^z And *men* shall worship him, every one from his place,
Even all ^a the isles of the heathen.

¹² ^b Ye Ethiopians also, ye *shall be* slain by ^c my sword.

¹³ And he will stretch out his hand against the north, and ^d destroy Assyria ;
And will make Nineveh a desolation, *and* dry like a wilderness.

¹⁴ And ^e flocks shall lie down in the midst of her,
All ^f the beasts of the nations :
Both the [‖] ^g cormorant and the bittern shall lodge in the [‖] upper lintels of it ;
Their voice shall sing in the windows ;
Desolation *shall be* in the thresholds :
[‖] For he shall uncover the ^h cedar work.

¹⁵ This *is* the rejoicing city ⁱ that dwelt carelessly,
^k That said in her heart, *I am*, and *there is* none beside me :
How is she become a desolation, a place for beasts to lie down in !
Every one that passeth by her ^l shall hiss, *and* ^m wag his hand.

III. ¹ Woe to [‖] [†] her that is filthy and polluted, to the oppressing city !

² She ^a obeyed not the voice ; she ^b received not [‖] correction ;
She trusted not in the LORD ; she drew not near to her God.

³ ^c Her princes within her *are* roaring lions ; her judges *are* ^d evening wolves ;
They gnaw not the bones till the morrow.

⁴ Her ^e prophets *are* light and treacherous persons :

Before
CHRIST
about
630.
y Isa. 16. 6.
Jer. 18. 29.

† Heb. *make lean*.

z Mal. 1. 11.
John 4. 21.

a Gen. 10. 3.

b Isa. 18. 1. &
20. 4.

Jer. 46. 9.
Ezek. 30. 9.

c Ps. 17. 13.
d Isa. 10. 12.

Ezek. 31. 3.
Nahum 1. 1. &
2. 10. & 3. 15, 18.

e ver. 6.
f Isa. 13. 21, 22.

‖ Or, *pelican*.

g Isa. 34. 11, 14.
‖ Or, *knops*, or,
chapters.

‖ Or, *when he hath uncovered*.

h Jer. 22. 14.
i Isa. 47. 8.

k Rev. 18. 7.

l Job 27. 23.
Lam. 2. 15.

Ezek. 27. 36.
m Nahum 3. 19.

‖ Or, *gluttonous*.
† Heb. *crave*.

a Jer. 22. 21.
b Jer. 5. 3.

‖ Or, *instruction*.
c Ezek. 22. 27.

Micah 3. 9, 10, 11.
d Hab. 1. 8.

e Jer. 23. 11, 32.
Lam. 2. 14.

Hos. 9. 7.

11. *he will famish all the gods of the earth*] By depriving them of their worshippers and sacrifices, and by converting the heathen nations to Himself.

This was the result of the chastisement of those nations by such conquerors as Sennacherib and Nebuchadnezzar, who were employed by the Lord God of Israel to punish them for their sins, and to break the neck of their pride, and to destroy their confidence in their own false national deities, which were not able to help them, and were carried away into captivity, never to be restored; and thus to prepare them for the reception of a purer faith, and, eventually, for the incorporation of the meek and humble among them into the Church of Christ. See *S. Jerome* and *Theodoret* here. Cp. iii. 10. *S. Augustine* (*De Civ. Dei*, xviii. 33) applies these words to the conversion of the heathen to Christ; and *Euseb.* also (*Demonst. Evang.* ii. 16) interprets this prophecy in that sense.

12. *Ye Ethiopians also, ye shall be slain by my sword*] Literally, "*Ye Ethiopians also*" (in the farthest south), "*shall be slain by my sword—even they.*" Ye shall be slain by *My* sword, wielded by the hand of the King of Babylon, Nebuchadnezzar, "*My Servant*" (Jer. xxv. 9; xxvii. 6; xliii. 10). Cp. Ezek. xxix. 19; xxx. 4, 9, 10. Jer. xli. 13.

13. *he will stretch out his hand against the north, and destroy Assyria*] Even Assyria, which carried away Israel captive, and had overrun Egypt and Ethiopia (Isa. xx.), shall be destroyed by the hand of the Babylonians. See above, on Nahum i. 1; ii. 1—7.

14. *cormorant and the bittern*] Or, *the pelican and the porcupine*. See on Isa. xxxiv. 11, whence the words are adopted here.

— *upper lintels*] Or knops of the pillars. See on Amos ix. 1.
— *Their voice shall sing*] There shall be the voice of the songster in the windows; birds shall perch and sing in the ruined windows of its palaces.

— *cedar work*] Cedars hewn in Lebanon, by Assyrian kings, for the construction of their palaces of Nineveh. See the note above, on Isa. xxxvii. 24.

15. *I am, and there is none beside me*] Such was the language of self-idolizing Nineveh, the type of the infidel and

impious powers of this World; see above, *Introd.* to Nahum. In this respect, as in some others, that form of Antichristianism resembled the Babylonish or idolatrous form, to which these words are ascribed by Isa. xlvii. 8. Both these forms deify themselves, and defy God; and both will be destroyed by Him, as He declares by His holy Prophets.

— *shall hiss, and wag his hand*] Cp. Jer. xix. 8. Micah vi. 16. The movement of the hand is an action of dismissal—"Away with thee! begone out of my sight!"—and thus it intimates that the mighty Powers of this World, which once claimed homage from men bowing in silent awe before them, and kissing the hand in lowly adoration (1 Kings xix. 18), will be hissed and hooted off the stage of this world, and be motioned to be gone and to disappear, by those who once trembled in their presence.

The most terrible climax of this rejection and dismissal, will be in those awful words of the Judge of all at the Great Day, "Depart from Me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire."

WOE TO THE FAITHLESS AND UNRIGHTEOUS IN THE CHURCH OF GOD.

GOD'S TEMPORARY REJECTION OF THE JEWS, AND CHOICE OF THE GENTILES IN THEIR PLACE.

CH. III. 1. *Woe to her*] To Jerusalem.

— *that is filthy*] Rather, that is *obstinate or perverse* (*Gesen.* 505; *Fuerst*, 861; *Kleinert*, 177). See what follows. "She obeyed not the voice; she received not correction."

3. *evening wolves*] Habak. i. 8.

— *They gnaw not the bones till the morrow*] Rather, *they lay not up the bones for the morrow*. They are wolves who prowl about in the evening, and are so ravenous when they seize their prey, that they leave not a single bone till morning light. See *Sept.*, *Vulg.*, *Syriac*, *Targum*, and *Gesen.* 180; *Fuerst*, 300.

4. *Her prophets are light*] Rather, are boastful; properly, *overflowing*—like a vessel which boils over—with profuse foam and seam of empty, vain-glorious, and wanton words. See Gen. xlix. 4. Judges ix. 4. *Gesen.* 672.

Before
CHRIST
about
630.
f Ezek. 22. 26.
g Deut. 32. 1.
h ver. 15, 17.
See Micah 3. 11.

† Heb. *morning*
by morning.
i Jer. 3. 3. & 6. 15.
& S. 12.

|| Or, *corners.*

k So Jer. S. 6.

l Gen. 6. 12.

m Ps. 27. 14. &
57. 34.
Prov. 20. 22.

n Joel 3. 2.

o ch. I. 18.

p Isa. 19. 18.
† Heb. *lip.*

† Heb. *shoulder.*

Her priests have polluted the sanctuary,
They have done 'violence to the law.
5 ^s The just LORD ^h is in the midst thereof;
He will not do iniquity:
† Every morning doth he bring his judgment to light, he faileth not;
But ⁱ the unjust knoweth no shame.
6 I have cut off the nations:
Their || towers are desolate;
I made their streets waste, that none passeth by:
Their cities are destroyed, so that there is no man,
That there is none inhabitant.
7 ^k I said, Surely thou wilt fear me,
Thou wilt receive instruction;
So their dwelling should not be cut off, howsoever I punished them:
But they rose early, and ^l corrupted all their doings.
8 Therefore ^m wait ye upon me, saith the LORD,
Until the day that I rise up to the prey:
For my determination is to ⁿ gather the nations,
That I may assemble the kingdoms,
To pour upon them mine indignation, *even* all my fierce anger:
For all the earth ^o shall be devoured with the fire of my jealousy.
9 For then will I turn to the people ^p a pure † language,
That they may all call upon the name of the LORD,
To serve him with one † consent.

7. *I said, Surely thou wilt fear me*] I said to Judah, *Only fear thou me.* If thou wilt fulfil this one condition, then thou wilt be saved.

-- *howsoever I punished them*] Or, in all my visitations of her. -- *they—corrupted all their doings*] The Jews rejected God's offers of mercy under the Old Dispensation and under the Gospel; therefore, as a Nation, they are cast off, and the Heathen are taken into His favour in their place. See what follows, and *S. Augustine*, De Civ. Dei, vii. 33, who cites these verses as a prophecy concerning the conversion of the Heathen to Christianity.

8. *Therefore*] Since salvation cannot come forth from the people, even of favoured Israel and Judah (for they have corrupted themselves and become abominable), wait ye for *Me*, says God, the only Saviour.

This is a prophecy of Christ, coming to visit and redeem His People (*S. Jerome*).

"Wait ye upon Me, saith the Lord." He repeats the exhortation of Habakkuk (ii. 3; the same word is used there), *to wait* in patience, and trust for the fulfilment of God's prophecies and promises; intimating that to many, in evil days of sore distress for the Church, the time will appear to be very long, and they will almost despair of the Lord's Coming to deliver them.

— *Until the day that I rise up*] The *Sept.* and *Vulgate* here has, "*In the day of My resurrection*;" and ancient Christian Expositors have recognized here, a prophecy of Christ's *rising up* (as He is described by Jacob, in Gen. xlix. 9) from the dead to divide the spoil. When He rose from the dead, He triumphed over Sin, Satan, and the Grave; and He gave a commission to His Apostles, to bring all Nations into subjection to the Gospel. See *Eusebius*, Dem. Evang. ii. 17, and *S. Jerome*, here; and *S. Augustine*, De Civ. Dei, xviii. 33.

— *For my determination is*] Rather, *it is my right judgment*; my judicial right and office (Hebr. *mish-pat*; the word in v. 5, and Malachi iii. 5). I will come near to you *to judgment*.

God will inflict punishments on the Heathen Nations of the World, in order to bring them to Himself in Christ. God will judge the Nations; and in consequence of those judgments their conversion will take place. "O Lord, when Thy judgments are in the earth, the inhabitants of the world will learn *righteousness*" (Isa. xxvi. 9). See above, *Prelim. Note* to chap. i., and above, on ii. 11.

— *my determination (or judgment) is to gather the nations*] This is specially true of Christ, to Whom "the Father hath committed all judgment" (John v. 22), and Who, when He comes to judgment, will *gather before Him all nations* (Matt. xxv. 32).

THE CONVERSION OF THE HEATHEN BY ISRAEL'S FAITHFUL REMNANT; AND THE SUBSEQUENT CONVERSION OF THE JEWS BY BELIEVERS AND PREACHERS FROM THE HEATHEN.

9. *will I turn to the people a pure language*] Rather, *a clean lip* (the contrast to *unclean lips*; Isa. vi. 5). When I have chastened the Heathen, and weakened their faith in their own idols, I will *give back* to the Heathen Nations *a clean lip*; I will convert them to holiness. Their lips, which were created by Me, for My service and glory, have been polluted by worship of idols (Ps. xvi. 4); but I will cleanse and sanctify them by dedication to Myself; and they will render to Me the *calves of their lips*, as Hosea says xiv. 2.

Before the building of Babel, the *whole Earth was of one lip* (see on Gen. xi. 1); but pride, and defiance of God, produced confusion and a jargon of tongues. But when the Holy Ghost came down from Heaven, the Gospel sounded forth in the languages of all nations, and in the Christian Sion all nations meet together, in order that they may "with one mind and one mouth glorify God" (Rom. xv. 6).

This union, begun on earth, will be perfected in heaven. *There* will be one language; and that language will be Love.

— *with one consent*] Literally, and very forcibly, *with one shoulder*. Cp. Isa. xix. 23, 24, "Egypt will serve with Assyria, and Israel shall be a third with Egypt and Assyria, a blessing in the midst of the land."

What a noble picture is here! In ancient triumphal processions the victorious soldiers marched side by side, bearing the trophies of their conquest. Here all the great Nations of the World are personified, marching in order, side by side, and giving their shoulders and their necks, with one mind, to bear the one Gospel of Christ throughout the world, in a grand triumphal procession (cp. 2 Cor. ii. 14); and thus we see an anticipation of the glorious time when the voice will be heard in heaven, "The Kingdoms of this world are become the Kingdom of the Lord, and of His Christ" (Rev. xi. 15).

- ¹⁰ ^a From beyond the rivers of Ethiopia my suppliants,
Even the daughter of my dispersed,
Shall bring mine offering.
- ¹¹ In that day shalt thou not be ashamed for all thy doings,
Wherein thou hast transgressed against me :
For then I will take away out of the midst of thee them that ^rrejoice in thy
pride,
And thou shalt no more be haughty † because of my holy mountain.
- ¹² I will also leave in the midst of thee ^s an afflicted and poor people,
And they shall trust in the name of the LORD.
- ¹³ ^t The remnant of Israel ^u shall not do iniquity, ^x nor speak lies ;
Neither shall a deceitful tongue be found in their mouth :
For ^y they shall feed and lie down,
And none shall make *them* afraid.
- ¹⁴ ^z Sing, O daughter of Zion ; shout, O Israel ;
Be glad and rejoice with all the heart, O daughter of Jerusalem.
- ¹⁵ The LORD hath taken away thy judgments, he hath cast out thine enemy :
^a The king of Israel, *even* the LORD, ^b is in the midst of thee :

Before
CHRIST
about
630.

q Ps. 68. 31.
Isa. 18. 1, 7. &
60. 4. &c.
Mal. 1. 11.
Acts 8. 27.

r Jer. 7. 4.
Micah 3. 11.
Matt. 3. 9.

† Heb. *in my
holy.*

s Isa. 14. 32.
Zech. 11. 11.
Matt. 5. 3.
1 Cor. 1. 27, 28.
James 2. 5.
t Micah 4. 7.
ch. 2. 7.
u Isa. 60. 21.
x Isa. 63. 8.
Rev. 14. 5.
y Ezek. 34. 28.
Micah 4. 4. &
7. 14.

z Isa. 12. 6. &
54. 1.
Zech. 2. 10. &
9. 9.

a John 1. 49.
b Ezek. 48. 35.
ver. 5. 17.

Rev. 7. 15. & 21. 3. 4.

10. *From beyond the rivers—mine offering*] Rather, *From beyond the rivers of Ethiopia they* (i. e. the Gentiles) *will bring my worshippers, the daughter of my dispersed ones* (i. e. the Jews scattered abroad), *as a meat offering to me*. Israel and Judah will be *dispersed* throughout the world for their sins, as God had foretold by Moses, "The Lord shall scatter" (or *disperse*) "you among the Nations" (Deut. iv. 27); and again "The Lord shall scatter" (or *disperse*) "thee among all people, from one end of the earth even unto the other" (Deut. xxviii. 64).

Already, in Zephaniah's time, this had been fulfilled with respect to the Ten Tribes captured and dispersed by Assyria. The dispersion of Judah also was near; and, in course of time, the very name of the twelve tribes was "the *Diasporà*, or *Dispersion*." See below, John xi. 51, and on Acts ii. 2—6. James i. 1.

But Zephaniah has a message of comfort for them here. When Heathens have been converted to Christianity by the faithful remnant of Israel (i. e. by Apostles and other primitive Preachers of the Gospel, who went forth from Jerusalem), then they will convert the Jews of the different dispersions; even in the far off region of Ethiopia, bordering on central Africa; and they will present them as an offering (literally, a meat offering; Hebr. *minchah*) to Me.

The best exposition of this passage will be found in the similar prophecies concerning the work of the Heathen in converting the Jews, in Isaiah lxi. 5, 6; lxx. 18—21 (where see the note); and in the Song of Solomon, iii. 4, and viii. 8, 9. St. Paul adopts this imagery (Rom. xv. 16), "That the *offering up* of the Gentiles might be acceptable, being sanctified by the Holy Ghost;" and Phil. ii. 17, "I am *poured forth*" (my blood will be poured out as a drink offering) "upon the sacrifice and service of your faith."

On the *minchah*, the meat offering (an emblem of human labour mingled with divine grace) joined with the drink offering, and ever adjunct to the *whole burnt offering*, see on Levit. ii. *Prelim. Note*, and xxii. 13, which will explain the imagery here.

The Prophet had declared that the wicked would be a *sacrifice* to God's anger (Zeph. i. 7); He here declares that the Jewish Nation will be brought to Himself as an acceptable *sacrifice* by the Gentile Nations.

11. *In that day—mountain*] In that day, O Judah, when thou art converted to God, thou wilt no longer have cause to feel shame for thine iniquities; for thou wilt repent and believe, and God will blot them out,—as Hosea says at the close of his prophecy (xiii. 12), "The iniquity of Ephraim is bound up, his sin is hid,"—and thou wilt no longer be proud of thy spiritual privileges, and feel a vain-glorious confidence in Jerusalem and its Temple (see on Jer. vii. 4); for the Gentiles will be admitted to equal privileges with thee; and thou wilt embrace them as thy brethren in the spiritual Temple of Zion, the Universal Church of Christ.

12. *an afflicted and poor people*] A people bowed down and humbled with a penitential sorrow for sin; such hath God chosen, says St. James, the first Bishop of Jerusalem (ii. 5). They will be left in thee; they will be a precious remnant; they will be comforted, and rest in peace and joy; they will be fed by Me as a flock (Micah vii. 14); and none shall make them afraid (v. 13).

Perhaps there is something of a typical and prophetic significance in the words of the sacred historian and the Prophet (2 Kings xxv. 12. Jer. lii. 16), where they say that the Chaldeans, when they took Jerusalem, left "of the *poor of the land* to be *vinedressers and husbandmen*," while the kings, princes, and nobles were taken prisoners. Certainly, in the first ages of the Gospel, and when Jerusalem was destroyed by Rome, God chose the poor, the meek, the humble and simple of this world; not the mighty, and the noble, and the proud, to be *vinedressers* in His vineyard, and to be *husbandmen* in the field of His Church.

13. *The remnant of Israel*] The Israel of God, the children of faithful Abraham, the true believers in Christ. "This remnant" (says *S. Augustine*, *De Civ. Dei*, vii. 33) "are those of whom St. Paul" (quoting Isaiah x. 22) "speaks:—'Though the number of the Children of Israel be as the sand of the sea, a remnant (only) shall be saved' (Rom. ix. 27). This remnant are those of the Jewish Nation who believed in Christ." Cp. *S. Jerome* here.

SING, O DAUGHTER OF ZION.

Zephaniah closes his prophecy, as Hosea does, with a triumphant announcement of the restoration of God's ancient People to His favour in Christ. Hosea, the Prophet of the Ten Tribes, proclaims this blessed consummation to Israel; Zephaniah, the Prophet of Jerusalem, completes the prophecy, and brings a joyful message of grace and glory both to Judah and Israel. He unites both together in praising God, "Sing, O daughter of Zion; shout, O Israel; be glad and rejoice with all thy heart, O daughter of Jerusalem." *Both the two sticks* are to be joined together in one stick, in the hand of Christ (see Ezek. xxxvii. 17); and the Gentiles are to be like almond blossoms on Aaron's rod, and to flourish upon it (Num. xvii. 8), in the hand of Christ, the Everlasting High Priest; and to be laid up before God in the Holy of Holies of His Everlasting Temple, the heavenly Jerusalem. See the notes above on Ezek. xxxvii. 16—28, which afford the best exposition of this passage.

15. *The king of Israel, even the LORD, is in the midst of thee*] This joyful promise of God's presence and perpetual indwelling, is here repeated twice for greater assurance. See v. 17. It is taken up from Isaiah (see Isa. xii. 6, and the note on Isa. lxvi. 17, on the phrase "*in the midst*"), and from Hosea (xi. 9), who is the first of the Minor Prophets, and with whom Zephaniah, the last of the Minor Prophets before the Babylonish Captivity, loves to associate himself.

Before
CHRIST
about
630.

c Isa. 35. 3. 4.
d Heb. 12. 12.
e Or, faint.
e ver. 15.

f Deut. 30. 9.
Isa. 62. 5. &
65. 19.

Jer. 32. 41.
† Heb. *he will be silent.*

g Lam. 2. 6.
† Heb. *the burden upon it was reproach.*

h Ezek. 34. 16.
Micah 4. 6, 7.

† Heb. *I will set them for a praise.*
† Heb. *of their shame.*

i Isa. 11. 12. &
27. 12. & 56. 8.
Ezek. 28. 23. &
34. 13. & 47. 21.
Amos 9. 14.

Thou shalt not see evil any more.

16 In that day ^c it shall be said to Jerusalem, Fear thou not :

And to Zion, ^d Let not thine hands be ^{||} slack.

17 The LORD thy God ^e in the midst of thee *is* mighty ;

He will save, ^f he will rejoice over thee with joy ;

† He will rest in his love, he will joy over thee with singing.

18 I will gather *them that* ^g *are* sorrowful for the solemn assembly,

Who are of thee, to whom † the reproach of it *was* a burden.

19 Behold, at that time I will undo all that afflict thee :

And I will save her that ^h halteth,

And gather her that was driven out ;

And † I will get them praise and fame in every land †

Where they have been put to shame.

20 At that time ⁱ will I bring you *again*, even in the time that I gather you :

For I will make you a name and a praise among all people of the earth,

When I turn back your captivity before your eyes, saith the LORD.

This prophecy of the perpetual Divine Presence is fulfilled in God the Son, Emmanuel, "God with us" (Matt. i. 23); in God manifested in the flesh" (1 Tim. iii. 16), promising His perpetual presence to His Church (Matt. xxviii. 20); and in God the Holy Ghost, the Comforter, sent to abide with her for ever (John xiv. 16).

17. *he will rejoice over thee with joy*] As the Bridegroom with the Bride. The imagery is from Isa. lxii. 5, and ep. Jer. xxxii. 41.

— *He will rest in his love*] Literally, "*he will be silent in his love*" (Iulg.). He will acquiesce in thee, with full confidence in thy faithfulness and love. So the Psalmist compares himself to an infant, composed to sleep in tender trust and silent love on its mother's breast. He says that he lulled his soul to sleep (literally, *has made it silent*) like a weaned child, lying on the bosom of its mother; and he adds, "Let Israel trust in the Lord, from henceforth for evermore!" See the note on Ps. cxxxi. 2.

So the love of God reposes, as it were, in silent quietness and peace, on the devout soul of the believer, in full trust, that the soul, like a faithful spouse (ep. Isa. lxii. 5), will render love for love.

St. John, the beloved disciple, rested in silence on the bosom of Christ at the paschal supper; and when at death, after long tarrying (John xxi. 22), the Saviour came to him, St. John fell asleep in Christ.

18. *I will gather them that are sorrowful for the solemn assembly*] I will gather those who mourn for the cessation of the sacred feasts of Jerusalem (Lam. i. 7; ii. 6. Hos. ii. 11. Amos viii. 3), which were only shadows of the good things to come under the Gospel (Heb. xi. 1), and will comfort them by the restoration of those festivals in all their fulness, in the Sacraments of the Christian Church.

May we not apply these words to our own age and country? Many among us mourn and are sorrowful for churches closed during the week, from Sunday to Sunday; and for infrequent Communion; and for non-observance of the Fasts and Festivals of the Christian Church; and for the cold neglect of that spiritual edification which the Church provides in the Book of Common Prayer, in the examples of God's gracious working in holy men, Apostles, Evangelists, and Martyrs, whom He has

given to the Church; and for the loss of that Scriptural teaching provided by her in the Lessons, Epistles, and Gospels on those days. God sees the tears of the sorrowful; these things "are noted in His book" (Ps. lvi. 8). He will hereafter gather those who sorrow with this sorrow, and will make them rejoice for ever in an eternal festival in the Courts of His heavenly Sion.

— *Who are of thee*] They (that is, these faithful worshippers) *are of thee*; they proceed forth from thee. Zion was the Mother of Christendom. (See above, on Ezek. xxxv. 14, p. 239.)

— *to whom the reproach of it was a burden*] A burden to these holy mourners was the reproach which the Heathen uttered against Jerusalem, for her desolation and the cessation of her feasts (Lam. i. 7). They sympathized with her in her sorrows (ep. Ps. cxxxvii. 5); they were "grieved for the affliction of Joseph" (Amos vi. 6). The taunt of the Heathen against Zion wounded them to the quick.

Here is a promise of comfort to all who feel sadness of heart for the distresses and sufferings of the Church, which are inflicted upon her by the tyranny of evil men.

19. *I will save her that halteth, and gather her that was driven out*] A prophecy repeated from Isaiah (xxxiii. 23), "The lame take the prey;" and from Micah (iv. 7), where he is describing the blessed consequences of the birth of Christ, and the going forth of His Church from Jerusalem to enfold all Nations of the World. See Micah iv. 1—7, and v. 1—7, and the notes there.

20. *When I turn back your captivity before your eyes, saith the LORD*] Literally, *when I turn your captivities* (plural). Your various *captivities* (whether in Assyria, or Babylon, or Rome, or in other parts of the world) will all be turned back like a stream. As the Psalmist says, "Turn our captivity, O Lord, as the rivers of the south" (Ps. cxvii. 5); they will all flow into the Church of Christ. See Isa. ii. 2, Micah iv. 1. "All nations shall flow into it."

The prophet here recapitulates the divine promises of restoration to the dispersed Israel and Judah (cp. Deut. xxx. 3. Ps. cxxxvi. 4. Jer. xxix. 14; xxxi. 23; xxxiii. 44; xxxiii. 7, 11. Lam. ii. 14. Ezek. xxxix. 25. Hos. vi. 11. Joel iii. 1. Amos ix. 14), which are fulfilled in Christ; to Whom, with the Father and Holy Ghost, be all honour and glory now and for ever, AMEN.

At this point, in order of time, follow the prophecies of JEREMIAH, EZEKIEL, and DANIEL. Then succeed HAGGAI, ZECHARIAH, and MALACHI; the last of whom is called by the Jews, the "SEAL OF THE PROPHETS."

The reader is requested to refer here to the *Introductions* prefixed to the Prophets JEREMIAH and EZEKIEL; and also to the *Introductions* to the Books of EZRA and NEHEMIAH, as preparatory to what now follows in the prophetic writings.

H A G G A I.

I. ¹ IN ^a the second year of Darius the king, in the sixth month, in the first day of the month, came the word of the Lord † by Haggai the prophet unto

Before
CHRIST
about
529.

a Ezra 4. 24. & 5. 1. Zech. 1. 1. † Heb. by the hand of Haggai.

MORE than a hundred years elapsed between the prophecies of ZEPHANIAH and those of HAGGAI.

In that interval many predictions of foregoing prophets, namely, of Isaiah, Micah, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Jeremiah, and Ezekiel, foretelling the capture and destruction of Jerusalem by the Babylonians, had been fulfilled.

In B.C. 605, the fourth year of Jehoiakim, Nebuchadnezzar took Jerusalem for the first time; but the city was still allowed to stand, and a time was granted to it for repentance. But it refused to listen to God's warnings of judgment from the prophets Jeremiah and Ezekiel; and it was again taken by Nebuchadnezzar, B.C. 597, and its king, Jehoiachin, was carried captive to Babylon. Still some further respite was granted it, but in vain. In the year B.C. 586, Jerusalem was taken; the Temple and the City were burnt with fire; its king, Zedekiah, and many of the princes, and nobles, and people were carried to Babylon; and the kingdom of Judah was destroyed.

Years passed on, and the time approached for the fulfilment of other prophecies—those which foretold the sudden capture of the great Chaldean City, Babylon, and the destruction of its dominion by Cyrus, "God's shepherd, and anointed one," leading the army of Medes and Persians to victory; and, as a result of that conquest, the restoration of the captives of Judah to their own land, and the decree for the rebuilding of the Temple of the Lord.

This fulfilment was in the year B.C. 536.

God had performed His work of wholesome discipline and loving chastisement to His People in their Captivity, by teaching them humility, and weaning them from idolatry, and healing the schism between Israel and Judah, and by sifting the faithful wheat from the careless and godless chaff, and had prepared the true Israelites, by the fulfilment of prophecies concerning themselves, for the reception of Christ, Who is the subject of all prophecy. See above, *Introd.* to Ezra, pp. 296—299.

The Temple began to be rebuilt in the year B.C. 535. But the work was thwarted by Samaritans (Ezra iv. 1—7. 23), and the builders themselves were disheartened, and began to doubt whether the time had arrived for the accomplishment of the prophecies which had foretold that the Temple would be restored, and whether the Temple which they were building, so inferior in grandeur to the Temple of Solomon, could be indeed the fabric of which such glorious things had been spoken by Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Ezekiel. "Many of the Priests and Levites, and chief of the fathers, who were ancient men that had seen the first house" (which had been destroyed fifty years before), "when the foundation of this house was laid before their eyes, wept with a loud voice" (Ezra iii. 12). "Who is left among you" (says Haggai, ii. 3) "that saw this house in her first glory? and how do ye see it now? Is it not in your eyes in comparison of it as nothing?"

In consequence of this opposition from without, and of this failure of faith and courage within, the work of building the Temple was intermitted for fifteen years, "unto the second year of Darius, King of Persia" (Ezra iv. 24). The foundations of the second Temple might have long continued to lie in this miserable condition; but God had ordered it otherwise. He would show that the work was not of man: "Not by might, nor by power, but by My Spirit, saith the Lord of hosts" (Zech. iv. 6). "Then the prophets, Haggai the prophet, and Zechariah, the son of Iddo, prophesied unto the Jews that were in Judah and Jerusalem, in the name of the God of Israel, even unto them. Then rose up Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua the son of Jozadak, and began to build the house of God which is at

Jerusalem; and with them were the prophets of God helping them" (Ezra v. 1, 2).

The first of these prophets was HAGGAI. His name signifies the *festal one* (*S. Jerome* here. *Gesen.* 260; *Fuerst*, 416; *Hengstl., Keil*). One of the sources of the deepest sorrow to the mourners over Zion was this, that by reason of the destruction of her Temple, her solemn festivals could no longer be kept. "They wept, because the solemn feasts and sabbaths were forgotten" (Lam. ii. 6); and "all her mirth ceased, her feast days, her new moons, and her sabbaths, and all her solemn feasts" (Hos. ii. 11). But the promise of comfort to Zion was, that she should again "keep her solemn feasts" (Nahum i. 15); and the last Prophet before the Captivity, Zephaniah, in his final utterance before that event, had cheered the mourners with the assurance that God would gather those who were sorrowful for the cessation of the solemn assemblies (Zeph. iii. 18).

Very appropriate, therefore, is the name of the first Prophet after the Captivity, HAGGAI, properly *Chaggai*, from *Chag*, a *festal* (*Gesen., Fuerst*). He it was who was specially raised up by God to stimulate the flagging energies of the feeble company which had returned from Babylon to Jerusalem, and were dispirited and disheartened by opposition from without, and by lukewarmness and faithlessness from within, to resume the suspended work, and to complete the rebuilding of the Temple.

The significance of this name, Haggai, the festal one, will still further appear, if we remember that the Feast of Tabernacles was called specially by the Jews, the *chag*, or *feast*. See above, on Lev. xxiii. 34. 1 Kings viii. 65. Ezra iii. 4; and below, ii. 2; and (as is shown in those notes) it was typical of the Incarnation of the Son of God, Who pitched His *tabernacle* in our flesh (John i. 14), and Who will *tabernacle* with His saints for ever. See Rev. vii. 15; xxi. 3.

The powerful motive, by which Haggai excited the Jews to prosecute and complete the work of building the Temple—which was begun at the Feast of Tabernacles (Ezra iii. 4)—was this, that, however insignificant this latter house might be in their eyes (from which tears flowed when they saw its foundation)—however in material respects, and in splendour of decoration, it was inferior to the former house, the Temple of Solomon—though no visible cloud of glory rested upon it (such as took possession of the Temple of Solomon at its dedication: see on 1 Kings viii. 10, 11)—though it had not the Ark of the Covenant, and the Two Tables of the Testimony in the Holy of Holies, nor the Urim and Thummim, nor the Fire from heaven on the Altar, nor the holy oil (cp. *Bp. Pearson*, Art. ii. p. 83)—yet, in fact, it would be far more glorious than Solomon's Temple. And why? Because the Lord God Himself, tabernacling in human flesh, would visibly appear there, and would "fill the house with the glory" of His presence, and "in that place would give peace, saith the Lord of hosts" (ii. 7—9).

When we consider that all the Hebrew festivals were fulfilled in Christ; that He is our Passover (1 Cor. v. 7); that by His Ascension, and sending of the Holy Ghost, all the shadowy glories of the Hebrew Pentecost are consummated (Acts ii. 1); that by His Incarnation we celebrate a perpetual Feast of Tabernacles in the spiritual Jerusalem of the Universal Church of Christ; and that all the Festivals of the Christian Church,—the weekly Festival of the Lord's Day, and the Sacrament of Regeneration, and the Festival of the Holy Eucharist, and all the Holy Days of the Christian Year,—derive all their virtue, beauty, and grace from the Incarnation, Death, Resur-

Before
CHRIST
about
520.

b 1 Chron. 3.
17, 19.
Ezra 3. 2.
Matt. 1. 12.
Luke 3. 27.
¶ Or, captain.
c Ezra 3. 2. &
5. 2.
d 1 Chr. 6. 15.
e Ezra 5. 1.
f 2 Sam. 7. 2.
Ps. 132. 3, &c.
† Heb. *Set your
heart on your
ways.*
g Lam. 3. 40.
ver. 7.
h Deut. 28. 33.
Hos. 4. 10.
Micah 6. 14, 15.
ch. 2. 16.

i Zech. 8. 10.
† Heb. *pierced
through.*

k ch. 2. 16.
l ch. 2. 17.
¶ Or, *blow it
away.*

m Lev. 26. 19.
Deut. 28. 23.
i Kings 8. 35.

n 1 Kings 17. 1.
2 Kings 8. 1.

o ch. 2. 17.

p Ezra 5. 2.

^b Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, ¶ governor of Judah, and to ^c Joshua the son of ^d Josedech, the high priest, saying, ² Thus speaketh the LORD of hosts, saying, This people say, The time is not come, the time that the LORD's house should be built.

³ Then came the word of the LORD ^e by Haggai the prophet, saying,

⁴ *Is it time for you, O ye, to dwell in your cieled houses,
And this house lie waste?*

⁵ Now therefore thus saith the LORD of hosts; † ^g Consider your ways.

⁶ Ye have ^h sown much, and bring in little;

Ye eat, but ye have not enough;

Ye drink, but ye are not filled with drink;

Ye clothe you, but there is none warm;

And ⁱ he that earneth wages earneth wages *to put it into a bag † with holes.*

⁷ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; Consider your ways.

⁸ Go up to the mountain, and bring wood, and build the house;

And I will take pleasure in it, and I will be glorified, saith the LORD.

⁹ ^k Ye looked for much, and, lo, *it came to little;*

And when ye brought *it* home, ^l I did ¶ blow upon it.

Why? saith the LORD of hosts.

Because of mine house that *is* waste,

And ye run every man unto his own house.

¹⁰ Therefore ^m the heaven over you is stayed from dew,

And the earth is stayed *from* her fruit.

¹¹ And I ⁿ called for a drought upon the land, and upon the mountains, and upon the corn, and upon the new wine, and upon the oil, and upon *that* which the ground bringeth forth, and upon men, and upon cattle, and ^o upon all the labour of the hands.

¹² ^p Then Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, with all the remnant of the people, obeyed the voice of the LORD their God, and the words of Haggai the prophet, as the LORD their God had sent him, and the people did fear before the LORD.

rection, and Ascension of "God manifest in the flesh," we may recognize here a fitness in the name of the Prophet Haggai, whose mission it was to urge the Jews to rebuild the Temple, on the ground that the Lord Himself would glorify it with His Presence, and thus the "glory of the latter house would be greater than that of the former, saith the Lord of hosts." See the remarks above, on Ezra and Nehemiah, *Introd.*, pp. 296—299, which may afford some appropriate illustration here.

CH. I. 1. *second year* See Ezra iv. 21.

— *Darius*] Hystaspes, who reigned from B.C. 521 to 486. On the meaning of the name, see above, at Ezra iv. 5.

— *first day of the month*] On the festival of the full moon. The prophecies of *Haggai* (the *feast*): see *Prelim. Note* begin on the first festival of the sixth month.

— *Zerubbabel*] Of the royal seed sown at Babel, or Babylon. See 1 Chron. iii. 19; and Ezra i. 8—11; ii. 2; iii. 2; v. 14—16, as to the question how he is called the son of Shealtiel (*asked of God*), or Salathiel, as he is called also in Luke iii. 27.

— *Josedech*] That is, *righteousness of Jehovah*. See Ezra ii. 2. 1 Chron. v. 14, as to the typical character of Zerubbabel, the representative of the royal seed of David; and of Joshua (*Saviour*), the son of Josedech (*righteousness of Jehovah*), the High Priest, both joined together in building the Temple, and thus together foreshadowing the work of Christ, Who was the True King of the seed of David, and is also our Great and Everlasting High Priest. "Historically" (*S. Jerome* says), "Zerubbabel, of the royal tribe, is one person, and Joshua, of the priestly dignity, is another person; but spiritually they are joined together in Him Who is our Lord and Saviour (Joshua), and our great High Priest, and also the King of all faithful Israelites." See above, *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 297. *S.*

Jerome says again here: "Hic Zorobabel de Tribu Juda, hoc est, de David stirpe descendens, typus est Salvatoris, qui vult destructum ædificavit Templum et reduxit populum de captivitate; et tam de veteris Templi lapidibus quam de novis, qui prius fuerant impoliti, ædificavit Ecclesiam, id est de reliquiis populi Judei et de Gentium multitudine."

². *The time is not come*] For the reason of this saying, see the *Prelim. Note*. The literal meaning is, [it is] *not time* [for us] *to come* [up to the site of the Temple]; [it is] *not time* for building the house.

⁴. *for you, O ye*] Rather, *for you yourselves*.

— *in your cieled houses*] *In your houses wainscoted with cedar*, and all costly woodwork (*Targum*). Cp. 1 Kings vii. 7. Jer. xxi; 14.

⁵. *Consider your ways*] *Set your heart upon your ways*,—an exhortation repeated v. 7; ii. 15. 18.

⁶. *Ye have sown much*] Cp. Deut. xxviii. 38. Hos. iv. 10. Mic. vi. 14, 15. God chastens you by dearth and drought, in order to make you consider your ways and amend them, and to become fruitful in a spiritual harvest of good works.

⁸. *Go up to the mountain*] To the mountainous region; not to any particular mountain. See below, on Matt. v. 1.

⁹. *I did blow upon it*] And made it fly away, like chaff before the wind.

— *Because of mine house that is waste*] Observe the alliteration in the original: "Because my house is *chôreb*" (waste, or desolate),—the same word as is used by Nehemiah ii. 3, "the city of my father's sepulchres lieth *waste*;" and again ii. 17, "Now Jerusalem lieth *waste*;" and Jer. xxxiii. 10, 12,—*"Therefore I have called upon you, chôreb, a drought"* (v. 11).

¹³ Then spake Haggai the LORD's messenger in the LORD's message unto the people, saying, ¹ *I am with you, saith the LORD.*

Before
CHRIST
about
520.

q Matt. 28. 20.
Rom. 8. 31.
r 2 Chr. 36. 22.
Ezra 1. 1.
s ch. 2. 21.
t Ezra 5. 2, 8.

¹⁴ And ¹ the LORD stirred up the spirit of Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, ¹ governor of Judah, and the spirit of Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, and the spirit of all the remnant of the people; ¹ and they came and did work in the house of the LORD of hosts, their God, ¹⁵ in the four and twentieth day of the sixth month, in the second year of Darius the king.

II. ¹ In the seventh month, in the one and twentieth day of the month, came the word of the LORD [†] by the prophet Haggai, saying, ² Speak now to Zerub- [†] *Heb. by the hand of.*
babel the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and to Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest, and to the residue of the people, saying, ³ ^a Who is ^a left among you that saw this house in her first glory? and how do ye see it now? ^b *is it* not in your eyes in comparison of it as nothing?

b Zech. 4. 10.

c Zech. 8. 9.

⁴ Yet now ^c be strong, O Zerubbabel, saith the LORD; and be strong, O Joshua, son of Josedech, the high priest; and be strong, all ye people of the land, saith the LORD, and work: for *I am with you, saith the LORD of hosts:* ⁵ ^d According ^d Ex. 29. 45, 46.
to the word that I covenanted with you when ye came out of Egypt, so ^e my ^e Neh. 9. 20.
spirit remaineth among you: fear ye not. ^f Isa. 63. 11.

⁶ For thus saith the LORD of hosts; [†] Yet once, it is a little while, and ^g I will ^g ver. 21.
shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry land; ⁷ and I will ^h Heb. 12. 26.
shake all nations, ^h and the desire of all nations shall come: and I will fill this ⁱ Joel 3. 16.
land. ^h Gen. 49. 10.
ⁱ Mal. 3. 1.

¹⁵ In the four and twentieth day] That is, the four-and-twentieth day of the month in which the Prophet had begun to exhort them, which he did on the first day of it (v. 1; and see ii. 18).

For the chronology of this period, see *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 295; and on Ezra v. 1; vi. 22.

THE GLORY OF THE SECOND TEMPLE.

CH. II. 1. In the seventh month, in the one and twentieth day of the month] Of the second year of Darius; twenty-four days after the foregoing appeal (in the former chapter), which had induced them to resume the work of rebuilding the Temple. It is observable that this prophecy was delivered on the seventh day, or the great day, of the great Feast of Tabernacles (see Lev. xxiii. 34), which was typical of the Incarnation of Christ, Who was presented in our flesh in this Temple, and filled this house with His glory. Cp. above, *Prelim. Note*.

The building was now prosecuted under great difficulties (Ezra v. 3—10) till it was finally completed and dedicated, in the sixth year of Darius—the twenty-first after the publication of the Edict of Cyrus, which, having been lost for a time, was providentially discovered at Ecbatana. See Ezra vi. 1. 15. 22. Ezra, the Priest and Scribe, did not come from Babylon to Jerusalem till fifty-three years afterwards, B.C. 458 (Ezra vii. 1). Nehemiah, the cup-bearer of Artaxerxes, the builder of the Walls of Jerusalem, came from Susa to Jerusalem fourteen years after Ezra's journey to Jerusalem. See *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 295.

Observe, therefore, how long the patience of God's people was tried. They only, who stood steadfast in patience, faith, and hope, were rewarded. Here is a lesson to our own age, when men's hearts fail, because they are sorely distressed by present trials, and do not firmly believe in the final triumph of Truth.

3. Who is left among you that saw this house in her first glory?] See Ezra iii. 12, and above, *Prelim. Note*. It was now about sixty-six years since the destruction of the first Temple by the Chaldeans.

4. be strong, O Zerubbabel] Compare the words of Zechariah the Prophet (iv. 6—9): "This is the word of the Lord unto Zerubbabel, saying, Not by might, nor by power, but by my Spirit, saith the Lord of hosts. Who art thou, O great mountain? before Zerubbabel thou shalt become a plain; and he shall bring forth the head-stone thereof with shoutings, crying, Grace, grace unto it. The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house, his hands shall also finish it, and thou shalt know that the Lord of hosts hath sent me unto you." See also Zech. viii. 9. 13. "Let your hands be strong. . . . Fear not, let your hands be strong."

5. According to the word] Rather, the word. The Word of God and the Spirit of God are with you. See the next note.

— so My Spirit remaineth among you] *Tulg., Syriac,* and see *Targum*. A remarkable expression, especially when explained by later events. Christ was in the ancient Church in the wilderness (see 1 Cor. x. 9. Heb. xi. 26); and now, when the Eternal Word became Incarnate, and when the Holy Spirit was sent to be in the midst of God's faithful people, then this prophecy was fulfilled.

6. Yet once] That is, once more. The first shaking was at Mount Sinai, to which the reference is in the foregoing verse. See Heb. xii. 26, and S. Jerome here.

6, 7. I will shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry land; and I will shake all nations] The prophecy of shaking, as the Apostle to the Hebrews teaches us (Heb. xii. 26), was fulfilled in the Coming of Christ from heaven.

The shaking of all Nations took place in a little while after the Prophet's own days; it was like the shock of an earthquake. It was felt in the breaking up of the Persian monarchy by Alexander the Great, and by the splitting up of his Empire, and by the crushing of the powers of the Nations of the World by Rome, which subjugated and humbled them, and destroyed their faith in their national deities, which were unable to save them, and thus prepared the way for the reception of a holier faith, that of the Gospel of Christ. See the excellent remarks of Bp. Pearson on this mission of the Roman Empire (in his 3rd Concio, Minor Works, ii. 35). Just before the Coming of Christ, "the Roman arms (says he) had broken the preconceived superstitions of the heathen concerning their false deities. Wherever Rome's victorious eagles flew, there the majesty of the ancient gods fell, and their authority was destroyed. As many conquests as Rome achieved over Nations, so many triumphs did she celebrate over their national deities. It was a very ancient notion, that the gods forsook the cities which were taken and occupied by enemies. Thus the armies of Rome had put to flight all their deities; and the Romans had so learned to exult over the deities of other nations, that they scarcely worshipped their own, except with lukewarmness and indifference." Thus the Nations of the Earth were prepared for Christianity. Cp. *Hengstenberg* and *Keil* here.

THE DESIRE OF ALL NATIONS.

7. The desire of all nations shall come] So this passage was rendered by the ancient Jewish Expositors, as R. Akiba (Talm. Sanh. C. x. Sect. 30, *Maimon.* in *Sanhed.*; and this is acknowledged by *Jarchi*). And the Chaldee *Targum* here translates it thus, "The desire of all nations shall come;" and so the *Vulgate*, which understands it as applied to a Person, "Veniet desideratus

Before
CHRIST
about
520.

i John 1. 14.

house with glory, saith the LORD of hosts. ⁸ The silver is mine, and the gold is mine, saith the LORD of hosts. ⁹ The glory of this latter house shall be

cunctis gentibus," i.e. "He who is desired by all Nations shall come." And so the Latin Fathers, as *S. Jerome* here, who (having mentioned the other interpretation of the *Sept.*, which will be noticed presently) says, "According to the Hebrew original, this signifies that He Who was desired by all Nations—the Lord and Saviour—will come; and then I will fill this house with greater glory than the former, saith the Lord of hosts. And because I know that nothing is so conducive to the edification of My glorious house as Peace, therefore, in this house I will give Peace—even the Peace that passeth all understanding. Therefore, O Zerubbabel, thou son of Josedech, and thou Joshua, the High Priest, be strong, take courage, and build this house."

The *Septuagint* (he observes) renders these words "the elect things, or choice things, of all Nations shall come." And, truly, to the Church of Christ have come the elect things of Corinth, Macedonia, and the elect of Babylon (1 Pet. v. 13), for the Apostles of Christ had a commission from Him to go and teach all Nations and bring them into the Church. So the *Septuagint*. "But" (adds *S. Jerome*) "it is better to understand it as it is in the Hebrew, which signifies that He Who was desired by all Nations would come to that Temple, and by His Coming it would fill it with glory; so that its glory would be greater than that of the Temple of Solomon; inasmuch as the Lord of the Temple is greater than His servant who does His will." So *S. Augustine*, De Civ. Dei, xvii. 18, and *Remigius*, *Haymo*, *Hugo*, *Lyranus*, *Luther*, *A. Lapide*, *Drusius*, *Grotius*, *Tarnovius*, *Munster*, *Vatablus*, *Calovius*, *Glassius*, *Bp. Andrewes*, 240, *Bp. Pearson* on the Creed, Art. ii., *Bp. Chandler*, i. 77, *W. Lowth*, *Davidson* on Prophecy, Disc. vi. p. 238. Hence *S. Bernard*,

"Desidero Te millies,
Mi JESU, quando venies?
Me laetum quando facies,
Dulcedo ineffabilis,
Totus desiderabilis?"

and in the Hymn at the festival of the Ascension:

"Jesu, nostra redemptio,
Amor et desiderium,
Tu esto nostrum gaudium.
Et nostra in Te gloria
Per cuncta semper sæcula."

These words of Haggai, applied to the Messiah, seem to be grounded on Jacob's prophecy, "The sceptre shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until *Shiloh* come; and to Him shall the gathering of the people" (or peoples) "be." See on Gen. xlix. 10. And this interpretation, which applies Haggai's words to Christ, is confirmed by the language of his successor Malachi, who, speaking of the latter house, or second temple, says, "The Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to His temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in, behold He shall come, saith the Lord of hosts" (Mal. iii. 1). And the aged Simeon, when he took the Infant Jesus into his arms, at His presentation in that Temple, declared the fulfilment of the prophecy, when he said, "Lord, now lettest Thou Thy servant depart in peace: for mine eyes have seen Thy salvation, which Thou hast prepared before the face of all people, a light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of Thy people Israel" (Luke ii. 29).

Let us now consider the objections to this interpretation.

The Hebrew words here, *u-bau chemdath col-hag-goyim*, i.e. *et venient* (plural) *desiderium* (singular) *omnium gentium*.

(1) First it is said that *chemdath* cannot be applied to a person, and cannot signify an object of desire.

But this allegation does not seem of much force.

The substantive *chemdah* is derived from the verb *chamad*, to desire, to long for, to delight in (*Gesenius*, 286; *Fuerst*, 456). As *Keil* says, "*chem-dah* signifies desire (2 Chron. xxi. 20); then, the object of desire," as costly things, valuables. We may compare "*desiderium*" in Latin; as *Cicero* addresses his wife, "*Valete, desideria mea.*" Ep. xiv.

The cognate word *machmad* is often used in this sense of object of desire, as in 1 Kings xx. 6. Cant. v. 16. Lam. i. 10. Ezek. xxiv. 16, where Ezekiel's wife is called "the desire of his eyes." Cp. *ibid.* rv. 21. 25. Hos. ix. 16. Joel iii. 5.

Another objection is, that the singular noun *chemdah* is joined to a plural verb, *bau*, and this is irreconcilable with the opinion that *chemdah* represents a Person.

Doubtless, if the Person were any common Person, this objection would have much force.

But first let it be observed that in the original the verb

precedes the noun. It is *bau chemdah*, i.e. "There shall come" (plural) "the desire." The mind is kept for a time in suspense by *bau* (there shall come), and asks, *what* will come? The answer is *chemdath col-hag-goyim* (the desire of all nations).

Now, let it be supposed, for argument's sake, that the version of the Targum and the Vulgate is correct, and that this is a prophecy of the Coming of the MESSIAH to the Temple, is it wonderful that the singular substantive here should be combined with a plural verb, when we consider that the Messiah contains in His own single Person the two distinct Natures of God and Man, and the three offices of Prophet, Priest, and King? Might He not be justly regarded as a collective Being? And collective nouns are often followed by a plural verb in Hebrew. See *Glass*, Philol. Sacr. Lib. iii., Tract iii., Canon 53; and *Gesen.* Gram. § 146; *Ewald*, Gram. § 307. 6. See Gen. xxxiii. 13; xli. 17. Num. x. 3. 1 Kings i. 40. 1 Chron. x. 6. Ezra x. 12. Ps. lxxviii. 11.

The objection to our authorized translation (that in the original the verb is plural and the noun is singular), lies with still greater force against the other translation, which renders the noun as if it were plural, and explains it as "*desirable things*" so *Hengst.*, *Keil*, and others. *Ewald* renders it "the most longed-for of all nations." *Rückert* translates it "the choicest nations," and so *Hitzig*. They regard this as a prophecy of the offering of the treasures of the Gentiles to the Second Temple.

There is also another insuperable objection to the exposition which regards this prophecy as foretelling that the Gentiles would bring offerings to the Second Temple, and that therefore it would be more glorious than the Temple of Solomon. The fact is, the Gentiles brought offerings to Solomon's Temple. The Tyrians and Phœnicians hewed the cedars of Lebanon for it at its first erection; and in the days of Hezekiah many brought gifts unto the Lord to Jerusalem (2 Chron. xxxii. 23). But, on the other hand, the Heathen did not bring their desirable things to the second Temple. All the prophecies, such as those of Isaiah and others (Isa. lx. 5. 11. Micah iv. 13. Zech. xiv. 14), which are quoted in this sense, are distorted from their true meaning. They are all to be applied to the offerings which the Nations will bring of themselves and of their wealth to the spiritual Temple of Zion, the Christian Church (see below, on Rev. xxi. 21); and it is observable that some interpreters, who apply them here as predictive of oblations to the material Temple raised by Zerubbabel, have, in other places, rightly explained them, as pointing to contributions of the heathen, not to any material Temple at all, but to the Church of Christ. Nor, even if all the Nations of the Earth had united together in bringing their "desirable things" to the Second Temple—which they never did—could it ever be said, as a consequence of this, that God filled this house with glory; and in this house will I give peace (v. 9).

Observe that the coming of what is desirable to the Temple is put first by the Prophet, and then the filling of the house with the glory is represented as a result of the Coming; whereas the offerings of the Gentiles were consequent on the Coming of Christ. The filling the house with glory, with the glory of the Lord of Hosts, cannot be regarded as a result of the bringing of mere perishable gold and silver (which cannot be shown to have been brought at all) to the Temple of Zerubbabel; but can only be regarded as a consequence of the Divine Presence, seen in the Coming of Christ, the Lord God Himself, to the Temple.

Let any one examine the passages of Holy Scripture where this word glory (Hebr. *cabôd*) occurs, and where a place is said to be filled with the glory of the Lord, and he will be satisfied of this. See Exod. xl. 34, 35, concerning the filling of the Tabernacle with the glory of the Lord; and 1 Kings viii. 11. 2 Chron. v. 14; vii. 1, 2, 3, where the glory of the Lord is said to have filled the Temple; and compare the passages in Ezek. iii. 23; xliii. 4, 5; xlv. 4. This interpretation is further confirmed by the words of Haggai's brother-prophet, Malachi (iii. 1. 4), already quoted, "The Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to His Temple; behold, He shall come, saith the Lord of hosts; then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord." The Coming of the Lord Himself to the latter house, and the benefits attendant on the Presence of Him "in Whom all the families of the Earth are blessed," filled the minds of both these Prophets with a vision of glory.

On the whole, we may adopt the words of *Bp. Pearson* (Art. ii. p. 83) on this text; and with them this note shall conclude.

"In the same manner the Prophet Malachi hath given an express signification of the Coming of the Messiah while the

greater than of the former, saith the LORD of hosts : and in this place will I give ^k peace, saith the LORD of hosts.

¹⁰ In the four and twentieth day of the ninth month, in the second year of Darius, came the word of the LORD by Haggai the prophet, saying, ¹¹ Thus saith the LORD of hosts ;

¹ Ask now the priests concerning the law, saying, ¹² If one bear holy flesh in

Before
CHRIST
about
520.
k Ps. 85, 8, 9
Luke 2. 14.
Eph. 2. 14.

¹ Lev. 10, 10, 11.
Deut. 33, 10.
Mal. 2. 7.

Temple stood (Mal. iii. 1), 'Behold, I will send My messenger, and he shall prepare the way before Me; and the Lord whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to His Temple, even the Messenger of the Covenant whom ye delight in.' And Haggai yet more clearly (Hag. ii. 6, 7, 9), 'Thus saith the Lord of hosts; Yet once, it is a little while, and I will shake the heavens, and the earth, and the sea, and the dry land, and I will shake all nations, and the desire of all nations shall come; and I will fill this house with glory, saith the Lord of hosts. The glory of this latter house shall be greater than the glory of the former, saith the Lord of hosts.'

"It is, then, most evident from these predictions, that the *Messias* was to come while the second Temple stood. It is as certain that the second Temple is not now standing. Therefore, except we contradict the veracity of God, it cannot be denied but the *Messias* is already come.

"Nothing can be objected to enervate this argument, but that these prophecies concern not the *Messias*; and yet the ancient Jews confessed they did; and that they do so cannot be denied.

"For, first, those titles, '*the Angel of the Covenant*,' '*the Delight of the Israelites*,' '*the Desire of all Nations*,' are certain and known characters of the Christ to come.

"And, secondly, it cannot be conceived how the glory of the second Temple should be greater than the glory of the first, without the coming of the *Messias* to it. For the Jews themselves have observed that five signs of the divine glory were in the first Temple, which were wanting to the second—as the Urim and Thummim, by which the High-priest was miraculously instructed of the Will of God; the Ark of the Covenant, from whence God gave His answers by a clear and audible voice; the fire upon the altar, which came down from heaven, and immediately consumed the sacrifice; the divine Presence, or habitation with them, represented by a visible appearance, or given, as it were, to the King and High-priest, by anointing with the oil of unction; and, lastly, the spirit of prophecy, with which those especially who were called to the prophetic office were endued.

"And there was no comparison between the beauty and glory of the structure or building of it, as appeared by the tears dropped from those eyes which had beheld the former (Ezra iii. 12); for 'many of the priests and Levites, and chief of the fathers, who were ancient men, that had seen the first house, when the foundation of this house was laid before their eyes, wept with a loud voice;' and by those words which God commanded Haggai to speak to the people for the introducing of this prophecy (Hag. ii. 3):—'Who is left among you that saw this house in her first glory? And how do ye see it now? Is it not in your eyes in comparison of it as nothing?'

"Being, then, the structure of the second Temple was so far inferior to the first, being all those signs of the divine glory were wanting in it with which the former was adorned; the glory of it can no other way be imagined greater, than by the coming of Him into it, in Whom all those signs of the divine glory were far more eminently contained; and this person alone is the *Messias*. For He was to be the glory of the people Israel, yea, even of the God of Israel; He, the Urim and Thummim, by whom the Will of God, as by a greater oracle, was revealed; He, the true Ark of the Covenant, the only propitiatory by His blood; He which was to baptize with the Holy Ghost and with fire—the true fire which came down from heaven; He which was to take up His habitation in our flesh, and to dwell among us that we might behold His glory; He who received the Spirit without measure, and from whose fulness we do all receive. In Him were all those signs of the Divine glory united, which were thus divided in the first Temple; in Him they were all more eminently contained than in those; therefore, His Coming to the second Temple was, as the sufficient, so the only means by which the glory of it could be greater than the glory of the first.

"If, then, the *Messias* was to come while the second Temple stood, as appeareth by God's prediction and promise, if that Temple many ages hath ceased to be, there being not one stone left upon a stone; if it certainly were, before the destruction

of it, in greater glory than ever the former was; if no such glory could accrue unto it but by the Coming of the *Messias*, then is that *Messias* already come" (Bp. Pearson).

8. *The silver is mine, and the gold is mine, saith the LORD of hosts*] Therefore, do not be distressed because this latter house is not adorned with so much splendour of silver and gold as was the former house, the Temple of Solomon. All the Earth is My Temple. Every beast of the forest which is brought to Me for sacrifice is already Mine (Ps. l. 10). All the silver and gold in it are Mine by creation, and adorn that Universal Temple; as David, the father of Solomon, declared, when he offered to God what he had prepared for the Temple which was to be built by his son: "Thine, O Lord, is the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all that is in the heaven and in the earth is Thine. . . . Both riches and honour come of Thee; . . . and of Thine own have we given Thee" (1 Chron. xxix. 11—14).

These words may be rightly applied, with an ancient African Bishop, to stimulate the grace of Christian almsgiving: "When you hear the precepts of giving alms, take heed and remember that God is commanding thee to give, not of what belongs to thee, but of what belongs to Himself; lest when thou art bestowing thine alms on the poor, thou shouldst be pulled up with vain-glorious imaginations. 'Mine is the silver, Mine is the gold' (saith the Lord). It is not yours. O ye rich men of the earth, why therefore do ye hesitate to give of Mine to the poor? Or why are ye so proud when ye give it?" (S. Augustine, Sermon. 50).

9. *The glory of this latter house shall be greater than of the former*] Because it will be filled with glory by the Coming to it of the *Lord of Glory*, as Christ is called, 1 Cor. ii. 8. Cp. James ii. 1. See above, on v. 7. In all other respects *this latter house* was as nothing in comparison with the former (v. 3). But having the *Lord of Glory* visibly presented in it, and teaching in it, it was filled with glory, and it had all the substance consummated in its splendour and majesty, of which all the ornaments, and all the sacrifices of the former house were only faint types and dim foreshadowings.

From this passage, and from that of Malachi (iii. 1), "The Lord shall suddenly come to His Temple," we may conclude, against the Jews, that the *Messiah* is come, and that His coming is not future; for He was to come to His Temple, to that latter house, which was in course of being built when Haggai prophesied, to which Jesus of Nazareth did indeed come, and of which, as the same Jesus prophesied, not a single stone now remains upon another (Matt. xxiv. 2. Mark xiii. 2. Luke xix. 44), so that no *Messiah* can now come to it.

The registers of imperial Rome, the great heathen mistress of the world, by enrolling the names of Joseph, and Mary the mother of Jesus, in the census of Bethlehem, proved that He was born there; the armies of Rome, by destroying the Temple of Jerusalem, proved that the *Messiah* is come. And when the Roman Emperor Julian attempted to rebuild the Temple, in order to invalidate that argument, God intervened in a wonderful manner to frustrate the work (*Chrysost. Orat. 3, in Judæos; Ammian. xliii. 1; Socrates. iii. 17; Theodoret, iii. 15; Sozomen. v. 21; Bp. Warburton's Julian; Gibbon, ch. xxii.; De Broglie, iv. 333*). Thus Rome preaches Christ. — *in this place will I give peace*] I will there give Him Who is the Prince of Peace (Isa. ix. 6), and through Whom we have peace with God; and Who has given us His peace (John xiv. 27; xvi. 33); and Who is Peace (Eph. ii. 14).

10. *In the four and twentieth day of the ninth month, in the second year of Darius*] A little more than two months after the delivery of the former prophecy (ii. 1). So soon was the prospect of things changed from sadness to joy, by the obedience of the people to the divine appeal, that now, near the end of the ninth month *Chisleu* (corresponding nearly to the latter part of our November and to the first part of December), when the sowing of the winter crops was finished, God gave them a respite from the drought, and a grateful supply of former rain, with a promise of an abundant harvest.

11. *Ask now the priests*] The Prophet of the Lord may

Before
CHRIST
about
520.

the skirt of his garment, and with his skirt do touch bread, or pottage, or wine, or oil, or any meat, shall it be holy?

And the priests answered and said, No.

m Num. 19. 11.

¹³ Then said Haggai, If *one that is* ^munclean by a dead body touch any of these, shall it be unclean?

And the priests answered and said, It shall be unclean.

n Tit. 1. 15.

¹⁴ Then answered Haggai, and said, ⁿSo is this people, and so is this nation before me, saith the LORD; and so is every work of their hands; and that which they offer there is unclean.

o ch. 1. 5.

¹⁵ And now, I pray you, ^oconsider from this day and upward, from before a stone was laid upon a stone in the temple of the LORD: ¹⁶ since those *days* were, ^pwhen *one* came to an heap of twenty *measures*, there were *but* ten: when *one* came to the pressfat for to draw out fifty *vessels* out of the press, there were *but* twenty. ¹⁷ ^qI smote you with blasting and with mildew and with hail ^rin all the labours of your hands; ^syet ye *turned* not to me, saith the LORD.

p ch. 1. 6, 9.
Zech. 8. 10.

q Deut. 28. 22.
1 Kings 8. 37.
Amos 4. 9.
ch. 1. 9.
r ch. 1. 11.
s Jer. 5. 3.
Amos 4. 6, 8, 9,
10, 11.
t Zech. 8. 9.

¹⁸ Consider now from this day and upward, from the four and twentieth day of the ninth *month*, *even* from ^tthe day that the foundation of the LORD's temple was laid, consider it.

u Zech. 8. 12.

¹⁹ "Is the seed yet in the barn? yea, as yet the vine, and the fig tree, and the pomegranate, and the olive tree, hath not brought forth: from this day will I bless you.

x ch. 1. 14.

²⁰ And again the word of the LORD came unto Haggai in the four and twentieth *day* of the month, saying, ²¹ Speak to Zerubbabel, ^xgovernor of

not intrude into priestly functions, but must pay respect to the priesthood, as Christ did (Matt. viii. 4).

12. If] Literally, *Behold*.

— *holy flesh*] Sanctified and offered to the Lord in sacrifice.

— *pottage*] Literally, what is *boiled*.

— *No*] The offering is holy; but the thing touched by it does not become holy by the contact. The offering could not communicate holiness to what it touched. For the moral application of this, see what follows (v. 14).

13. *unclean by a dead body*] Literally, *unclean by a soul*—a phrase derived from the Levitical Law. See on Lev. xxii. 4. Cp. Num. v. 2; vi. 6; ix. 6. 10.

— *It shall be unclean*] For so it is declared in the Levitical Law (Lev. vii. 19. Num. xix. 11. 22).

14. *So is this people—and so is every work of their hands*] This people lives, it is true, in a holy Land, which is, as it were, an offering dedicated to the Lord; but the Land does not communicate any holiness to the People by any intrinsic virtue of its own, but it entails upon them all an obligation to personal holiness. They who live in the Holy Land, and draw near to the Presence of the Holy One in His holy house, ought themselves to be holy; just as they who feed on the holy flesh of the sacrifices are to be holy persons. See the note above, on Lev. vi. 18.

Yet further; if they themselves are morally dead in trespasses and sins, then the holiness of the Land will do them no good; nay, rather, since what is evil communicates its virulent poison by contact, they will pollute every thing that they touch with the foul taint of that moral and spiritual death.

We may here refer to the notes above (Lev. x. 6. 19), on the inner meaning of the Levitical Law concerning the contaminating influence of Death in the natural World, and on the blessed contrast produced in this respect by Christ's Incarnation, Death, Burial, and Resurrection, under the Gospel.

THE WINGS OR SKIRTS OF THE GARMENT.

In further illustration of those remarks, we may observe the words here used by the Prophet Haggai. He says that no *holy flesh* of a sacrifice carried in the *skirt* can communicate holiness.

The word used by him twice for *skirt* is *cánaph*, literally, *a wing*. Let us refer to his two brother prophets, Zechariah and Malachi. Zechariah predicts, that in the days of the Gospel, "Ten men shall take hold out of all languages, even shall take hold of the *skirt* (*cánaph*) of him that is a Jew, saying, We

will go with you; for we have heard that God is with you" (Zech. viii. 23). That is, all nations will take hold of the *skirt*, or hem, of the garment of Christ, Who is "the Word made *flesh*," "God manifest in the *flesh*"—of Him Who is born King of the Jews. They will take hold of it by faith in His *Incarnation*, as the faithful woman laid hold of the hem of His garment; and virtue will go out from Him—from His holy flesh—to heal them, as it healed her. See Matt. ix. 20—23. Mark v. 30. Luke vi. 19.

Remark also, further, this contrast:—that whereas the flesh of a dead man, under the Levitical Law (as Haggai here reminds us), communicated defilement; and as Death under the Law was a source of pollution, now under the Gospel our only well-spring of Life and Purity is through the Death of Christ. It is from His flesh; it is from His blessed body, pierced for us, and hanging in death on the Cross, that the sanctifying, sacramental streams of blood and water flowed, which cleanse the heart of the believer. His Death is our Source of Life. By Death He overcame Death, and destroyed him who had the power of it (Heb. ii. 14), and has made us to be heirs of eternal life. But in order that this may be so, there must be faith on our part; there must be personal holiness in them that touch Him; and therefore Malachi, adopting the same word, *cánaph*, completes the statement of his brother prophets Haggai and Zechariah, by saying, "Unto you that *fear My Name*, the Sun of Righteousness" (Christ, "the Lord our Righteousness," as Jeremiah calls Him) "shall arise with *healing* in His *wings*," or *skirts* (*cenaphim*, Mal. iv. 2).

15. *before a stone was laid*] Literally, *from the not yet of laying stone to stone* (*Keil, Fuerst*, 526), or *before the beginning of laying* (*Gesen*. 325), when you were faithless and disobedient, then ye were chastened by God; but if ye return to Him, and build His house, He will hasten to be gracious to you.

The Prophet desires them first to look *backward* on their punishments for disobeying God, and then look *forwards* to their blessings for obeying Him.

18, 19. *Consider now from this day and upward*] Or, *from this day and forward, or onward*. Here is the contrast. It is still winter (see v. 10); the seed has only just been committed to the earth: it is not yet in the barn. There are no fresh leaves as yet on your fruit-trees—your vine, fig-tree, pomegranate, and olive-tree—but ye have begun again to build the house of the Lord; and even from this day forward I will hasten to bless you.

20. *in the four and twentieth day of the month*] Even on the

Judah, saying, ^yI will shake the heavens and the earth; ²² and ^zI will overthrow the throne of kingdoms, and I will destroy the strength of the kingdoms of the heathen; and ^aI will overthrow the chariots, and those that ride in them; and the horses and their riders shall come down, every one by the sword of his brother.

Before
CHRIST
about
520.
y ver. 6, 7.
Ileb. 12. 26.
z Dan. 2. 44.
Matt. 24. 7.
a Micah 5. 10.
Zech. 4. 6. &
9. 10.
b Cant. 8. 6.
Jer. 22. 24.
c Isa. 42. 1. &
43. 10.

²³ In that day, saith the LORD of hosts, will I take thee, O Zerubbabel, my servant, the son of Shealtiel, saith the LORD, ^b and will make thee as a signet: for ^cI have chosen thee, saith the LORD of hosts.

same day as the prophecy (v. 10). So eager was God to be gracious to His penitent and obedient people.

THE LORD'S SIGNET. CHRIST'S KINGDOM.

21—23. *I will shake the heavens and the earth*—In that day, saith the LORD of hosts, will I take thee, O Zerubbabel, my servant, the son of Shealtiel, saith the LORD, and will make thee as a signet: for I have chosen thee, saith the LORD of hosts] All other kingdoms shall be moved (see v. 7); but the kingdom of the seed of David, which was represented by Zerubbabel, the descendant of David, and ancestor of Christ (see Matt. i. 12. Luke iii. 27. Cp. on 1 Chron. iii. 19. Ezra ii. 2. Neh. vii. 7. Hag. i. 1), shall never be destroyed. It will indeed be assailed; but it will break in pieces all kingdoms that resist it, and will scatter them like chaff of the summer threshing-floor, but will never be removed (Dan. ii. 35. 44; vii. 14. 27. 1 Cor. xv. 24. Heb. xii. 28. Rev. xi. 15).

God promised by Jacob that the sceptre should never depart from Judah. See the note on Gen. xlix. 10. God gave greater clearness and force to that promise by assuring David, of the tribe of Judah, that his Seed and Kingdom would continue for ever (see the notes on 2 Sam. vii. pp. 85—87); and He declared, by the Angel Gabriel, to the Blessed Virgin, that this promise would be fulfilled in Jesus Christ. See Luke i. 31, "Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a Son, and shalt call His Name JESUS. He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest; and the Lord God shall give unto Him the throne of His father David: and He shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever and ever; and of His kingdom there shall be no end."

This promise is here made to Zerubbabel, as the representative of the house of David, in a time of great humiliation and distress. Just as it was with the Temple of Jerusalem, so it was with her monarchy. The Temple seemed, in all external respects, to be far inferior to the Temple of Solomon; but it was to be made much more glorious than that Temple, by the coming of the Lord of the Temple to it.

The family of David was now reduced to a low estate. Zerubbabel, the representative of the house and monarchy of David, was not called by the title of King; he appeared to owe his position to the will of Persia, and to derive his dignity from his office as Persian Governor (i. 1), or Sheshbazzar (Ezra i. 11; ii. 2; v. 14. 16). But the promise was, that when they

seemed to be reduced to the lowest estate, then the seed and kingdom of David would rise most gloriously. The diminution of their earthly grandeur prepared the way for the increase of their heavenly splendour. Isaiah had foretold this. He had said that a rod should come forth out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch should grow out of his roots—that is, when the tree was hewn down to the very ground; and that the Messiah should grow up as a tender plant, and as a root out of a dry ground. See Isa. xi. 1; liii. 2.

From the time of the Captivity, the house of David never recovered its royal title and insignia. But the monarchy was safe in God's keeping. King Jeconiah, the faithless monarch of Judah before the Captivity, was like a signet plucked from God's right hand, and cast away (Jer. xxii. 24). But Zerubbabel, the faithful governor, the leader of Judah from Babylonish captivity to Jerusalem, the city of God, was made like a signet on God's right hand. He was the builder of the Temple; and by him God set a seal on His promises to Judah. He was the descendant and representative of David, and the ancestor and type of Christ. He was a signet (*chôthâm*) on God's hand (cp. the use of the word *chôthâm*, repeated in Cant. viii. 6), and this signet would ever remain on God's right hand. It would be there for ever in CHRIST, the Divine Son of David, the true King of Israel. By Him the royal charter of the Blessed Gospel is sealed. He seals us as His own in Baptism, in Confirmation, in the Holy Eucharist. He has sealed us with His own image and likeness, and has made us to become sons of God (Rom. viii. 29). He gives us an earnest and pledge of immortal glory to our souls and bodies, that, as we have borne the image of the earthly, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly (1 Cor. xv. 49); and that our vile bodies will be changed, so as to be fashioned like unto His glorious body (Phil. iii. 21). In Him all the promises of God are Yea and Amen. He, the Everlasting Word, came down from heaven, and became the Incarnate Word; and by the Witness which He gave to the Old Testament, He set His Divine Seal on it; and by sealing the Apostles and Evangelists with the seal of the Holy Spirit, He avouched their writings to be divine. He has set His seal on the whole Written Word, and has delivered the Holy Scriptures to us as the lively oracles of God.

To HIM, therefore, with the FATHER and the HOLY GHOST, be all honour and glory, in all the churches of the saints, now and for ever. AMEN.

Z E C H A R I A H.

Before
CHRIST
about
520.

a Ezra 4. 24.
Hagg. 1. 1.
b Ezra 5. 1.
Matt. 23. 35.

I. ¹ IN the eighth month, ^a in the second year of Darius, came the word of the LORD ^b unto Zechariah, the son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo the prophet, saying, ² The LORD hath been † sore displeased with your fathers.

† Heb. with displeasure.

INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

The Book of ZECARIAH is a sequel to that of Haggai; and it reveals the future from his own age even to the Second Coming of Christ. Zechariah was raised up by God, together with Haggai, to stimulate the flagging energies of the Jews who had returned from Babylon, and to excite them to resume the work of rebuilding the Temple, which had been suspended from the first year of Cyrus (B.C. 536) to the second year of Darius Hystaspes (B.C. 520), a period of about sixteen years. See Ezra iv. 24; v. 1; vi. 14; and *Introd.* to Ezra, p. 295.

Haggai had cheered the builders with the assurance, that however inferior the latter house would be to the former in material grandeur and external splendour, it would be made much more glorious than that by the Coming to it of Christ, Who would "fill it with the Glory of the Lord;" and He had encouraged them with the gracious promise, that in that house "He would give peace" (Hagg. ii. 6-9).

The Prophet Haggai had also declared, that all the nations of the world which resisted the power of God and oppressed His Church, would be placed beneath the feet of Christ,—the Divine Zerubbabel,—and that He would reign in everlasting glory at the right hand of God. See on Hagg. ii. 20-23.

Thus ended the prophecy of Haggai.

His prophecy is followed up and continued by Zechariah, and is carried on in a series of glorious visions to the Second Advent of Christ.

After a brief prologue (i. 1-6),—spoken in the interval between the penultimate and final prophecies of Haggai, and connecting Zechariah's predictions with them, and declaring that all God's promises of favour to His people depend for their fulfilment on their repentance and obedience to Him, and on their exercise of moral duties, and that if His people resist Him, they must look for chastisement at His hands, and that they will be cast off, as their fathers were,—the prophet proceeds to comfort them in the first vision, by saying that God is present with them in their low estate; and that though their enemies may seem to be enjoying prosperity, yet that their own present humiliation and the temporary exaltation of the heathen are not to be interpreted as signs of any indifference on God's part, or of any inability to protect them and to chastise His enemies; but that in His own good time, He will arise and punish the proud Powers of this world, and reward all His faithful servants who stand firm in the day of trial; and that the Lord is sore displeased with the heathen who afflict His people, and that He will yet comfort Zion, and will yet choose Jerusalem (i. 7-17).

The second Vision follows naturally after this gracious assurance. It reveals the four great Empires (designated as horns) which had oppressed God's people, and displays the four counteracting powers (called *carpenters*, or rather, *smiths*) employed by God to humble those Empires, and make them subservient to His own gracious purposes, for the advancement of His own glory, and for the trial and purification of His people, and for the building up of His Church. See i. 19-21.

An enlargement of this revelation succeeds. The next Vision displays the Coming of the Lord, and the redemption of His People by Christ (Who is the Divine Antitype of Cyrus the great conqueror of Babylon and the deliverer of God's people from its thralldom; see on 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22, and *Prelim. Note* to Isa. xl.); and reveals the building up of the Spiritual

Temple of His Church Universal, and the flowing in of the heathen to it (ii. 11).

These glorious evangelical events were foreshadowed by those things which Zechariah's countrymen had seen, namely, their own liberation by Cyrus, who had captured Babylon; and their restoration to their own country, the Holy Land, and the re-erection of the Temple by virtue of his royal decree. Therefore this Vision, which opens by taking up the words of the first Vision ("a line shall be stretched forth upon Jerusalem;" see i. 16, compared with ii. 1, 2) closes with a repetition of the promise there given, "The Lord shall inherit Judah his portion in the holy land, and shall choose Jerusalem again" (ii. 12). Cp. i. 17.

This has now been fulfilled in CHRIST.

The fourth Vision explains more fully the means by which this glorious restoration and exaltation of Israel into a Holy Nation and an Universal Church is to be achieved.

It is to be accomplished by Christ,—the Angel of the Lord, Who is sent by Jehovah. It is done by Christ overcoming Satan, and delivering His people from Satan's grasp, and taking away the sins of the people, personified by Joshua their High Priest, and clothing them with the white robe of His own righteousness (see on iii. 1-5), and promising everlasting glory to His justified people, on condition of their obedience to His Will and Word.

The Angel of the Lord, Who is Christ, assures Joshua and the Priesthood of Israel, that they themselves are types of this blessed work of Justification. The Priesthood of Aaron was a thing "to be wondered at" (see iii. 8), that is, not to be looked at merely with the outward eye, but to be gazed at with the eye of faith, discerning, under the type of that Priesthood and of all its sacrifices, a marvellous prophetic adumbration of the Everlasting Priesthood of Christ—the Divine "Joshua the son of Josedech" (namely, Saviour, Son of Jehovah's righteousness; such is the meaning of those words)—and of His one Sacrifice, offered once for all, to take away the sins of the world.

Therefore, Christ is here introduced by Jehovah, saying, "Behold, I will bring forth My servant the BRANCH" (see on iii. 8); and He also is called the STONE, engraven with seven eyes (see iii. 9). And by Him the iniquity of the land is taken away, and peace and joy are given to all the Israel of God.

The enjoyment of all these blessings is represented as contingent on repentance, faith, and obedience; and therefore a solemn warning is here introduced against stubbornness and hardness of heart, and against hatred, malice, and uncharitableness; in order that the grace of God in Christ may not be received in vain.

This Vision of Christ justifying His People is followed by a Vision of His Church Universal. The Church is represented by a seven-branched lamp, and it is displayed to our eyes as illumined by the Holy Ghost the Sanctifier, filling it with the oil of His grace. Zerubbabel, the representative of the royal house of David, and the rebuilder of the Temple (as we have seen, on Hagg. ii. 20-23), is a typical personage, symbolizing the person and office of Christ, the True Seed of David, the Divine King of Judah, the Builder of the Spiritual Temple—the Universal Church,—from small beginnings, in troublous times. As Zerubbabel began and finished the building, so did Christ: He finished it by the gift of the Holy Ghost on the Day of Pentecost. "Not by might, nor by power, but by My Spirit, saith the Lord of Hosts" (iv. 5-10).

³ Therefore say thou unto them, Thus saith the LORD of hosts;

Turn 'ye unto me, saith the LORD of hosts,

Before
CHRIST
about
520.

c Jer. 25. 5. &

35. 15. Micah 7. 19. Mal. 3. 7. Luke 15. 20. James 4. 8.

Hence we recognize the reason of the combination of the seven-branched Candlestick or Lamp-stand (the figure of the Church), and of the Olive-trees, with the plummet-line, and the foundation Stone. We have here distinct figures of Christ's work as King, in the founding of the Church, and also in sending the Holy Ghost to finish the work, by His gracious agency, in sanctification and illumination. The Holy Ghost works upon the Church by the twofold office of Christ, namely, His Universal Monarchy and His Everlasting Priesthood. Christ's Kingly and Priestly offices are the two ever-verdant Olive-trees, through which the Oil of the Spirit is always flowing to fill the seven-branched Candlestick of the Universal Church with oil, and enabling it to diffuse the light of Divine Truth and heavenly grace throughout the world. See iv. 11—14.

But lest it should be imagined that the gracious work of Christ and the Holy Spirit in the Church can be effectual without the co-operation of the human Will, and lest these dispensations of God's love should be abused into occasions either of spiritual indolence, or of reckless licentiousness, a solemn warning is again interposed against the neglect of the moral virtues and practical duties of justice, mercy, and holiness, enjoined by the commandments of God. This is declared in the Vision of the Flying-Roll, proclaiming God's curses against all sin and unrighteousness; and in the sweeping-away of all wickedness (symbolized by the woman in the Ephah, pressed down by a weight of lead), from Zion the Church of God, the City of Truth and Peace, to the land of Shinar and Babylon, the land of confusion, and the city of exile and captivity. This judicial announcement is followed by a gracious declaration consequent on the former Visions of Christ and the Church. Observe the contrast which follows. Wickedness is to be carried to Babylon, the land of captivity; but Faith is to come from the land of captivity, and to do homage to Christ. (See v. 5—11).

This is symbolized in the seventh and last Vision. It reveals the Lord's universal sovereignty and His retributive justice exercised over all Nations of the earth (vi. 1—8). It pre-announces the time when the Jews, who are now dispersed, will bring tribute to Christ and acknowledge Him, Who is the Branch from the root of David, to be the true Builder of the Spiritual Temple; and their offerings and their homage will be like silver and gold made into a royal crown formed of many diadems, and set upon the head of Him Who is the true High Priest, and therefore a recognition from them, that He is both King and Priest, and that He is the Messiah promised to their Fathers (vi. 9—15).

God's promises are again followed by warnings, lest anyone should presume upon His love, and pervert His grace into an occasion for sin. He tells them that all religious observances, such as fasting and weeping and self-mortification, are of no avail without holiness (vii. 1—7). The enjoyment of all divine blessings is contingent on faith and obedience; and, therefore, another solemn warning is here introduced. The history of ancient Israel, chastened for its sin by God, in successive judicial visitations since the time of the Exodus even to the day of the captivity at Babylon, is propounded as a lesson to all their posterity, and to all future generations (vii. 8—14). If they listen to this warning, they will prosper; and the Church of God, going forth from Jerusalem to enfold the world, will be the source and well-spring of holy festivity and joy to all Nations of the world (viii. 1—23). This promise is followed by a prophecy foretelling the overthrow of all great worldly Powers opposed to the City of God; and the subjection of all Nations to Christ her King, and their incorporation in His Church (ix. 1—8).

The triumphal Entry of Christ into Jerusalem in lowliness and meekness is displayed as a prelude to that Victory; and the precious blood-shedding of Christ, which followed in a few days after that triumphal Entry, is revealed as the cause of the deliverance of His people from the prison-house of Sin and the Grave (ix. 9. 11).

The sending forth of the Apostles and first Missionaries, like arrows winged with feathers of the plumage of the Divine Dove, on the Day of Pentecost, discharged from the bow of the Divine Archer Jesus Christ, and shot forth from Jerusalem into all parts of the world, is represented as a consequence of Christ's Death, and Resurrection, and Ascension into Glory (ix. 13—17). Their warfare against His enemies will be a message of peace to His friends. "He shall speak peace unto the Heathen; His dominion shall be from sea to sea, and from the river to the ends of the earth." His Preachers shall be jewels in His Crown; and many shall rejoice in the beauty of Christ, preached by

them; and shall be strengthened and refreshed with spiritual food (ix. 13—17). Israel shall be gathered again (x. 8—12). This has been already fulfilled in part. All the Apostles were Jews. Many devout Jews from every country under heaven were united to Christ and His Church on the Day of Pentecost, and in the primitive ages of Christianity; and in His own due time God will restore the residue to Himself.

In the next prophecy, the destruction of Jerusalem by the armies of Rome is foretold (xi. 1, 2). The announcement of this sad catastrophe might well stagger and perplex the readers of this prophecy. Was it possible that the Hebrew people, who had been scattered by Assyria and Babylon, should derive so little benefit from those terrible calamities? Would they require another captivity? Yes, it would be so. And what would be the cause of this divine chastisement? Their own sin—even a sin far more heinous than any committed by their forefathers. This must have seemed almost incredible when Zechariah wrote his prophecies. But the words of the Holy Ghost speaking by him have been fulfilled. They were accomplished in the rejection of Christ, the Good Shepherd, valued at the miserable price of thirty pieces of silver (xi. 12). They were fulfilled in the Crucifixion of Him, Who is displayed by the prophet as no other than the LORD GOD (xi. 13). Therefore, the Hebrew nation would again be cast off; but still a remnant would be saved (xi. 11), and —oh! most merciful dispensation—in due time the heart of the Nation itself would be touched by the Spirit of God, and it would bleed with sorrow and remorse, and the Nation itself would turn with weeping eyes to Him Whom they had pierced, and would acknowledge Jesus Christ to be their Saviour, King, and God. A fountain would be opened to the house of David and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem—the fountain of His Blood—for sin and for uncleanness (xiii. 1). Israel would wash itself and be cleansed by the waters of that pool of Bethesda, would bathe in that Pool of Siloam, and be healed of its blindness (xiii. 1). The prophet foretells that Christ would be smitten (xiii. 7. Cp. Matt. xxvi. 31), and many would live by His death. The Kingdoms of the World will rise up in the last days against Him and against His Church, in a fierce Anti-Christian conflict, but they will all be scattered before Him. Then all Nations will be gathered before Him as their Judge. His Victory will be complete: "The Lord shall be King over all the earth: in that day shall there be One Lord, and His Name one" (xiv. 9). All the Israel of God, chastened by trial, and cleansed by those living waters which will flow forth from Jerusalem, shall be united for ever and ever in holy worship in the glorified Church of Christ (xiv. 8—21).

Zechariah is regarded by the Jewish Commentators as one of the most obscure of Hebrew Prophets. This is the opinion of *Abarbinel*, *Jarchi*, and other Hebrew Rabbis, concerning him. And no wonder, because they read his prophecies with a veil on their hearts (2 Cor. iii. 14). They cannot bring themselves to acknowledge that their own prophets have foretold that the Messiah would appear in a lowly guise and poor estate, and be rejected and put to death by His own People, as Zechariah foretells (ix. 9; xi. 12, 13; xiii. 13). But the veil is taken away in Christ. When they turn to the Lord, the veil will be taken away (2 Cor. iii. 14, 16); and this is what Zechariah himself predicts: "They will look on Him Whom they have pierced, and will mourn in bitterness for Him as one that mourneth for his firstborn" (xii. 9, 10). May God hasten the time!

On the erroneous theory of a "*double Zechariah*," see below, *Preliminary Note* to chap. ix.

CH. I. 1. *In the eighth month, in the second year of Darius*] About two months after Haggai's first prophecy (Hag. i. 1), and a few weeks after Haggai's second prophecy, foretelling the greater glory of the new Temple, by reason of the Coming of Christ to it (ii. 7—9).

— *Zechariah*] Namely, *whom the Lord remembers*; i. e. whom He cares for in times of trial. Compare the name of the Prophet *Zephaniah*, i. e. *whom the Lord hides* from a storm of trouble; and see the reference to the name of *Zechariah*, the father of the Baptist, in Luke i. 72.

— *Berechiah*] That is, *blessed of the Lord*. See below, on Matt. xxiii. 35.

— *the son of Iddo*] Cp. Ezra v. 1; vi. 14, where Zechariah himself is called "the son of Iddo," chief of one of the priestly families who returned from Babylon to Jerusalem with Joshua

Before
CHRIST
about
520.
d 2 Chron. 36.
15, 16.
e Isa. 31. 6.
Jer. 3. 12. &
18, 11.
Ezek. 18. 30.
Hos. 14. 1.

And I will turn unto you, saith the LORD of hosts.

^d Be ye not as your fathers, ^d unto whom the former prophets have cried, saying, Thus saith the LORD of hosts; ^e Turn ye now from your evil ways, and ^f from your evil doings: but they did not hear, nor hearken unto me, saith the LORD.

⁵ Your fathers, where *are* they? and the prophets, do they live for ever?

⁶ But 'my words and my statutes, which I commanded my servants the prophets, did they not || take hold of your fathers? and they returned and said, ^g Like as the LORD of hosts thought to do unto us, according to our ways, and according to our doings, so hath he dealt with us.

⁷ Upon the four and twentieth day of the eleventh month, which *is* the month Sebat, in the second year of Darius, came the word of the LORD unto Zechariah, the son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo the prophet, saying, ^h I saw by night, and behold ^h a man riding upon a red horse, and he stood among the myrtle trees that *were* in the bottom; and behind him *were there* ⁱ red horses, || speckled, and white.

f Isa. 55. 1.
|| Or, overtake.
g Lam. 1. 18. &
2. 17.

about
519.

h Josh. 5. 13.
Rev. 6. 4.
i ch. 6. 2—7
|| Or, bay.

and Zerubbabel (Neh. xii. 4). Zechariah, like Jeremiah and Ezekiel, combined in his own person the offices of Priest and Prophet. Like them, he pre-announces Christ's everlasting Priesthood; like them, he displays Him as the great Prophet Who should come into the world; and also as the Universal King; and like them he proclaims His Divinity (xi. 13).

CALL TO REPENTANCE.

3. *Turn ye unto me—and I will turn unto you*] Zechariah comes forth, like John the Baptist, and begins his preaching with a call to repentance, and warns the people, by the history of their fathers, that no spiritual privileges will profit them without holiness, but rather will aggravate their guilt, and increase their condemnation, if they disobey God. He declares to them that no outward profession of religion will avail; that all notions of self-righteousness are offensive to God; and that what He looks for is personal holiness, and a practical discharge of the duties of piety and mercy.

5, 6. *Your fathers, where are they?—dealt with us*] Your fathers have passed away. Yes; and you may reply that the Prophets have passed away likewise. True; but the Word of God, which was spoken by His "servants the prophets," has not passed away. It took hold of your fathers; it was like an arrow, shot out of the divine bow, and it hit the mark; it has been fully accomplished in the punishment of your fathers for their sins. Therefore, do not imitate your fathers, who despised the warnings of former prophets, but listen to my prophecy.

THE RIDER AMONG THE MYRTLES.—THE ANGEL OF THE LORD.

7. *Upon the four and twentieth day of the eleventh month*] Just five months after the resumption of the building of the Temple, in obedience to God's word by Haggai, which was followed by a promise of a blessing, even by a promise of Christ's coming to it (Hag. i. 12—15; ii. 7—9). The promise of a distant blessing had been followed, at an interval of exactly three months from the utterance of God's word by Haggai, exhorting the people to rebuild the house, by the assurance of an immediate temporal blessing, as a pledge and earnest of that future spiritual blessing (Hag. ii. 10, 18, 19); and now precisely two months afterwards Zechariah sees a series of Visions in a single night, which speak comfort to him, and through him to the people.

8—17. *I saw by night, and behold a man riding upon a red horse, and he stood among the myrtle trees that were in the bottom—the LORD shall yet comfort Zion, and shall yet choose Jerusalem*] These ten verses will best be considered consecutively in one note.

The Prophet sees a man, who appears to be also a divine personage, "the Angel of the Lord," the Son of God. See above, on Exod. iii. 2—8. Judg. vi. 12—22; xiii. 3—20; and see Ezek. i. 26; ix. 2; xl. 3. Dan. vii. 13; and so *Tarnorius* and other interpreters explain it here. He is revealed as a Rider. Such is Christ. See above, Ps. xlv. 1—3; and below, on

Rev. vi. 2; xix. 11—16. He is on a red horse,—the colour of blood. Some Expositors (as *A Lapide*) expound this as symbolizing His Incarnation. His human nature, by means of which He was enabled to die, and shed His blood, is, as it were, *that* on which He rides, as on a horse, to victory. Behind Him are other riders on horses, as in the Apocalypse (xix. 11—14). These, His followers and servants, are on horses of red (the colour of blood); *speckled*, grisly pale, or ghastly grey (see *Kliefoth*, 19; and compare the pale horse, in the Apocalypse, vi. 8); and *white*, the colour of victory (see on Rev. vi. 2), specially of Christ's victory.

This principal rider, followed by those three other riders, stood *amid the myrtles in the bottom*; "*in profundo*" (*Fulg.*), that is, in a low place, among lowly shrubs, myrtles, fragrant in smell, and beautiful in leaf. Esther was called *Hadassah*, or Myrtle, on account of her beauty. See Esther ii. 7. Cp. Isa. xli. 19; lv. 13, where the myrtle is mentioned among beautiful trees; and Neh. viii. 15, where it is specified with palms, olives, and pines, as furnishing branches for the joyful procession of the Feast of Tabernacles.

This Vision represents Christ's presence with Israel. Christ had been with them in the wilderness of Arabia (1 Cor. x. 4. 9. Cp. Heb. xi. 26); and He was with them in the days of Zechariah. Israel was no longer like a noble forest of stately cedars on a lofty Lebanon, but was like a lowly plantation of modest myrtles, in a hollow place, weak, surrounded by enemies. Such was the condition of the little band of exiles who had now returned to Jerusalem from Babylon.

But they had now been stirred by the Spirit of God; they were doing a work of holy faith and obedience in rebuilding the Temple. Therefore, though in a low place, they were like a beautiful, evergreen, fair-flowering, odoriferous grove of myrtles in God's sight; and the Angel of the Lord was among them.

The best commentary on the present vision of the Angel of the Lord among the myrtles in a low place, may be found in that other Vision of "the Angel of the Lord in the bush,"—the bush which was burning, but not consumed,—which Moses saw at Horeb, and which was also a type of God's people Israel, humble and afflicted in Egypt, but not destroyed, because God was with them. See the notes above, on Exod. iii. 2—4. "The Angel of the Lord," it is there said, was "in the midst of the bush;" and it is also said that "God spake to Moses out of the bush." The Angel was a divine Person, and He assured Israel by Moses of God's presence and protection.

So it is here.

Though Israel is like a myrtle-grove in a low place, yet God is in the midst of them. And the three riders on their red, speckled, and white horses, are perhaps symbolic of His Angel ministers of War, Pestilence, and Victory, whom He sends forth to do His will in all parts of the world, and who return to Him and give to Him an account of their doings (ev. 10, 11); or, as some suppose (*S. Jerome, Kliefoth*), they represent the great worldly Powers,—Babylonian, Medo-Persian (a speckled or mixed power: cp. Dan. ii. 32; vii. 5; viii. 3), and Greek, symbolized as *white*, or blank, as not yet dominant. These (and all Earthly Dynasties) are God's servants, and do His will on the

⁹ Then said I, O my lord, what *are* these?

And the angel that talked with me said unto me, I will shew thee what these *be*.

¹⁰ And the man that stood among the myrtle trees answered and said, ^k These ^k Heb. 1. 14. *are they* whom the LORD hath sent to walk to and fro through the earth.

¹¹ ¹ And they answered the angel of the LORD that stood among the myrtle ¹ Ps. 103. 20, 21. trees, and said, We have walked to and fro through the earth, and, behold, all the earth sitteth still, and is at rest.

¹² Then the angel of the LORD answered and said, ^m O LORD of hosts, how ^m Ps. 102. 13. long wilt thou not have mercy on Jerusalem and on the cities of Judah, against ^{Rev. 6. 10.} which thou hast had indignation ⁿ these threescore and ten years?

¹³ And the LORD answered the angel that talked with me *with* ^a good words ^a Jer. 25. 11, 12. and comfortable words. ^{Dan. 9. 2.}

¹⁴ So the angel that communed with me said unto me, Cry thou, saying, Thus saith the LORD of hosts; I am ^p jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion with a ^p Joel 2. 18 great jealousy. ^{ch. 8. 2.} ¹⁵ And I am very sore displeased with the heathen *that are* at ease: for ^a I was but a little displeased, and they helped forward the affliction. ^q Isa. 47. 6.

¹⁶ Therefore thus saith the LORD; ^r I am returned to Jerusalem with mercies: ^r Isa. 12. 1. & 51. 8. my house shall be built in it, saith the LORD of hosts, and ^s a line shall be ^{ch. 2. 10. & 8. 3.} stretched forth upon Jerusalem. ^s ch. 2. 1, 2.

¹⁷ Cry yet, saying, Thus saith the LORD of hosts; My cities through ^t prosperity shall yet be spread abroad; ^t Heb. good. 'and the LORD shall yet comfort ^t Isa. 51. 3. Zion, and ^u shall yet choose Jerusalem. ^u Isa. 14. 1. ch. 2. 12. & 3. 2.

¹⁸ Then lifted I up mine eyes, and saw, and behold four horns. ¹⁹ And

earth. They report to Him that the heathen nations are at ease, i.e. secure, proud, and licentious, as if there were no God in heaven. See the use of the word *shaanân*, rendered *at ease*, in Isa. xxxii. 9. 11, "Tremble ye women that are at ease;" and Amos vi. 1, "Woe to them that are *at ease*," while His own people are in distress.

Such was the condition of the heathen in the second year of Darius Hystaspes. The contrast was great between their condition and that of God's chosen inheritance. The heathens were strong and joyous. Israel was weak and sorrowful. The walls of Jerusalem were as yet unbuilt, the city was still in a ruinous condition. The inhabitants were few. See Neh. i. 3, where he says, "The remnant in the province are in great affliction and reproach, the wall of Jerusalem is broken down, the gates are burned with fire;" and cp. Neh. ii. 3. 13—17, where the desolate condition of Jerusalem, as seen by him in his solitary ride by night round its ruined walls, is described. And see also Neh. xi. 2, with regard to the scantiness and weakness of its population at this time.

God's own favoured nation was indeed like a myrtle-grove in a low place. Therefore the Angel of the Lord, Whom we may reverently suppose to be the Son of God Himself, intercedes for Israel, and exclaims, "O Lord, how long wilt Thou not visit Thy people in mercy, with whom Thou hast been angry these seventy years?" (v. 12.)

The seventy years, here mentioned, date from the destruction of the Temple (B.C. 586). There are two periods of "*seventy years*" in the desolations of Jerusalem (Jer. xxv. 11, 12; xxix. 10. Dan. ix. 2; below, vii. 5), one period dating from the first Captivity in the fifth year of Jehoiakim, B.C. 605, and ending with the decree of Cyrus for the return of the Jews from Babylon, B.C. 535. See above, on 2 Chron. xxxvi. 22, 23. Ezra i. 1. The other period is that specified here.

This intercessory appeal calls forth a gracious reply from God (vv. 14—17): "I am jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion with a great jealousy. And I am very sore displeased with the heathen that are at ease: for I was but a little displeased" (with Israel), "and they helped forward the affliction. Therefore I am returned to Jerusalem with mercies: My house shall be built in it, saith the Lord of hosts: My cities through prosperity shall yet be spread abroad;" or rather, "they shall

overflow with blessings" (*Sept., Vulg., Targum*). Cp. Prov. v. 16. And the Lord shall yet choose Jerusalem.

— *The angel that talked with me*] Lit. *in me*.

18. The reason why the Vision of the Four Horns is introduced with seeming abruptness, and is so slightly delineated, seems to be this, that the Prophet Zechariah presumes in his readers a familiar acquaintance with the prophecies of Daniel, where this imagery is displayed in greater fulness. Indeed, this prophetic rapidity and conciseness of Zechariah afford a strong argument for the genuineness of Daniel. Zechariah writes *from* Daniel, as being well known to himself and his readers. The Holy Spirit, Who had delivered prophecies by Daniel, *continues* those prophecies by Zechariah, and *completes* them in the Apocalypse by St. John.

The fulfilment of the foregoing promise is revealed in the next two Visions. They also are Visions of comfort.

First, the Prophet sees four *horns*, emblems of power (see Deut. xxxiii. 17. 2 Chron. xviii. 10. Ps. lxxv. 4, 5. 10; cxxxii. 17. Jer. xlviii. 25, and especially Dan. viii. 3. 9. 21), hostile to the people of God. See vv. 19. 21. These four horns are called "four kingdoms" in the *Targum* here, and the imagery is repeated from Daniel's Visions, and to be explained from them (cp. *Pusey* on Daniel, 357, 358), and doubtless they represent those worldly dynasties called horns of the Gentiles in v. 21, which afflicted and scattered God's people; especially the Assyrian and Babylonian, and afterwards the Persian and Roman Power (S. Jerome, S. Cyril, *Abarbanel*, *Hengst*, *Kliefoth*, *Keil*).

But we must extend our view.

The horns, *four* in number (which in Holy Scripture is a symbol of universal space; see above, on Ezek. p. 276, and below, on Matt. xxviii. 19), may be regarded also in a wider sense, as representing, generally, all Earthly Powers which are hostile to the Church of God.

This explanation is suggested by the phrase "*the four winds*," in the next chapter, v. 6; and there is a promise here that these four horns will be broken,—as the Psalmist expresses it, "I said unto the fools, Deal not foolishly; and to the wicked, Lift not up the horn: Lift not up your horn on high, and speak not with a stiff neck. All the horns of the wicked also

Before
CHRIST
about
519.
x Ezra 4. 1, 4, 7.
a 5. 3.

I said unto the angel that talked with me, What *be* these? And he answered me, * These *are* the horns which have scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem.

20 And the LORD shewed me four carpenters.

21 Then said I, What come these to do?

And he spake, saying, These *are* the horns which have scattered Judah, so that no man did lift up his head: but these are come to fray them, to cast out the horns of the Gentiles, which ^y lifted up *their* horn over the land of Judah to scatter it.

y Ps. 75. 4, 5.

519.
a Ezek. 40. 3.

II. ¹ I lifted up mine eyes again, and looked, and behold ^a a man with a measuring line in his hand.

² Then said I, Whither goest thou?

And he said unto me, ^b To measure Jerusalem, to see what *is* the breadth thereof, and what *is* the length thereof.

³ And, behold, the angel that talked with me went forth, and another angel went out to meet him, ⁴ and said unto him, Run, speak to this young man, saying,

b Rev. 11. 1. &
21. 15, 16.

will I cut off, but the horns of the righteous shall be exalted" (1's. lxxv. 4, 5. 10).

Observe the phraseology in v. 19, "These are the horns which have scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem;" where, in the original, the Hebrew note of the accusative (*eth*) is prefixed to Judah and also to Israel, but not to Jerusalem, which is put in apposition with them, combined by the copula *vau* with Israel, showing that all schism and separation between Judah and Jerusalem had now happily been healed by their dispersion, and that Judah and Israel are blended together in Jerusalem, as the common centre of all the people of God.

THE FOUR CARPENTERS, OR SMITHS.

The next Vision represents the *breaking* of these *horns*, and the full and final victory of God's people. The number *four* is a symbol of completeness, especially as to space. See ii. 6, and above, on Ezekiel, p. 276.

This Vision represents the agency by which this double work—first, of *destruction*, and, secondly, of *construction*—is to be accomplished.

The Prophet sees *four carpenters, or smiths*; Hebr. *chârâ-shim*, literally, *cutters, hewers, gravers*, and therefore, generally, *artificers and craftsmen* in wood, stone, or iron; *carpenters, masons, or smiths, or engravers*; and this word is rendered by all these seven words in our Authorized Version. See Exod. xxviii. 11. Deut. xxvii. 15. 1 Sam. xiii. 19. 2 Sam. v. 11. 2 Kings xxii. 6; xxiv. 14. 1 Chron. xiv. 1. 2 Chron. xxiv. 11. Isa. xl. 19. Hos. viii. 6; xiii. 2; cp. *Gesenius*, 309.

These artificers, *four* in number, signifying completeness in space (as was before observed), declare that *all* worldly powers which are hostile to God's Church in all the *four corners* of the earth, will be hewn in pieces, like stone, wood, or metal, by His Omnipresence, working by His artificers; and that out of their materials, He will construct the Temple and City of Jerusalem.

We may compare God's words by Zechariah's contemporary Prophet Haggai, "I will overthrow the throne of kingdoms, and I will destroy the strength of the kingdoms of the heathen, and I will overthrow the chariots and those that ride in them, and the horses and their riders shall come down, every one by the sword of his brother" (Hagg. ii. 22). God uses one kingdom as His instrument against another, in order to prepare the way for His own kingdom, that will never be destroyed.

This prophecy of Zechariah was fulfilled in a subordinate sense by the building of the Temple and walls of Jerusalem by God's power, destroying Babylon as He had destroyed Assyria, and making the conqueror of Babylon, Cyrus, and his successors, Darius and Artaxerxes, and the materials supplied by them, to be like God's smiths and carpenters, building-up and adorning the literal Temple and City of Jerusalem.

But Zechariah's prophecies reach far beyond his own age. They stretch onward to Christ and His Church. Christ Himself is the great Artificer. Not without a mystery is He called "the Carpenter" (see Mark vi. 3), and He works by His

ministers. The fulfilment of this Vision is seen (as *S. Jerome* observes) in the work of the Preachers of the fourfold Gospel of Christ, spread forth to the four winds of heaven, and breaking the *horns* of all opposing powers. See the noble language of St. Paul, that great Christian conqueror and master-builder (1 Cor. iii. 10; 2 Cor. ii. 14; x. 5), "Thanks be to God, which always causeth us to triumph in Christ; casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, according to the grace of God which is given unto me as a wise master-builder, I have laid the foundations—which is Jesus Christ."

May we not say that the greatest heathen Conquerors, such as Cyrus, Alexander the Great, and others, have been artificers in God's hands for the building-up of His Church? The diffusion of the Greek Language by the conquests of the latter prepared the way for the spread of the Gospel of Christ, written in that universal language. The great military Roads made by Imperial Rome for her own legions marching to victory, became highways for the Prince of Peace. See below, *Introd.* to Acts of the Apostles, pp. 9, 10, and on Acts xxviii. 14, 15. So, in God's own due time, it will be seen that not only Christian Kings and Emperors—the Constantines, Justinians, Charlemagnes, and Alfreds, and others in later times, who, with pious purpose and intention, have advanced the Gospel, will be seen to have done service to it, and to have been instrumental in building the walls of Jerusalem; but even the powers of those who have opposed it, will be overruled to the future glory of God and the edification of His Church,—"The kingdoms of this world will become the kingdom of our Lord and of His Christ" (Rev. xi. 15).

THE MAN WITH THE MEASURING-LINE.—VISION OF THE EXTENT AND GLORY OF THE SPIRITUAL JERUSALEM, OR UNIVERSAL CHURCH.

CH. II. 1, 2. *behold a man with a measuring line—To measure Jerusalem*] The promised work is here revealed as done. Jerusalem is seen as already rebuilt.

The work done by Nehemiah in building up the ruined walls in troublous times, and in spite of great opposition (see above, Neh. iii., iv., v., vi., xii.), was completed about seventy years after the delivery of this prophecy, and was doubtless stimulated by it.

This work was also figurative of another still greater and more durable one,—the building up of the spiritual Jerusalem by Christ Himself. See notes on Neh. xii. 27. 43. No one can read Zechariah's Vision, and compare it with the prophecies in Isa. xxxiii. 20—24; liv. 1—17 (as *S. Cyril* does), and the similar Vision of Ezekiel, which is the best illustration of it (see Ezek. xl. p. 252; and the notes at the end of Ezekiel, pp. 274—278), without recognizing that this vision reveals the erection and extension of the Universal Church of Christ. So *S. Jerome*, *S. Cyril*, *Theodoret*, *Haymo*, *Lyranus*, *Fatablus*, *A Lapide*, and others.

- ‘ Jerusalem shall be inhabited *as towns without walls*,
For the multitude of men and cattle therein :
5 For I, saith the LORD, will be unto her ^d a wall of fire round about,
‘ And will be the glory in the midst of her.
6 Ho, ho, *come forth*, and flee ^f from the land of the north, saith the LORD :
For I have ^e spread you abroad as the four winds of the heaven, saith the LORD.
7 ^h Deliver thyself, O Zion,
That dwellest *with* the daughter of Babylon
8 For thus saith the LORD of hosts ;
After the glory hath he sent me unto the nations which spoiled you :
For he that ⁱ toucheth you toucheth the apple of his eye.
9 For, behold, I will ^k shake mine hand upon them,
And they shall be a spoil to their servants :
And ^j ye shall know that the LORD of hosts hath sent me.
10 ^m Sing and rejoice, O daughter of Zion :
For, lo, I come, and I ⁿ will dwell in the midst of thee, saith the LORD.
11 ^o And many nations shall be joined to the LORD ^p in that day,
And shall be ^q my people :
And I will dwell in the midst of thee,
And ^r thou shalt know that the LORD of hosts hath sent me unto thee.
12 And the LORD shall ^s inherit Judah his portion in the holy land,
And ^t shall choose Jerusalem again.
13 ^u Be silent, O all flesh, before the LORD :
For he is raised up ^v out of ^w his holy habitation.
- III. ¹ And he shewed me ^a Joshua the high priest standing before the angel

Before
CHRIST
519.
e Jer. 31. 27.
Ezek. 36. 10, 11.
d Isa. 26. 1.
ch. 9. 8.
e Isa. 60. 19.
f Isa. 21. 23.
Rev. 19. 20. &
52. 11.
g Jer. 1. 14. &
50. 8. & 51. 6, 4
h Deut. 28. 61.
Ezek. 17. 21.
h Rev. 18. 4.

i Deut. 32. 10.
Ps. 17. 8.
2 Thess. 1. 6.
k Isa. 11. 15. &
19. 16.

l ch. 4. 9.
m Isa. 12. 6. & 51. 1.
Zeph. 3. 14.
n Lev. 26. 12.
Ezek. 37. 27.
ch. 8. 3.
John 1. 14.
2 Cor. 6. 16.
o Isa. 2. 2, 3. &
49. 22. & 60. 3. &c
ch. 5. 22, 23.
p ch. 3. 10.
q Ex. 12. 49.
r Ezek. 33. 33.
ver. 9.
s Deut. 32. 9.
t ch. 1. 17.
u Hab. 2. 20.
Zeph. 1. 7.
x Ps. 68. 5.
Isa. 57. 15.
† Heb. the
habitation of his
holiness.
Deut. 26. 15.
Isa. 63. 15.
a Hag. 1. 1.

4. *Jerusalem shall be inhabited as towns without walls*] Rather, *Jerusalem shall dwell as country villages*; namely, as unwall'd towns in an open region (Esther ix. 19. Ezek. xxxviii. 11. *Gesen.* 689).

This imagery represents *extent* and *peace* (“apertis otia portis”). The prophecy was not accomplished in the literal Jerusalem, but is fulfilled in the spiritual Jerusalem, the City of Peace, the Universal Church of Christ, diffused throughout the world, and defended by the Divine protection as with a wall of fire (v. 5). See what follows here, and compare Ezekiel’s sublime description of the spiritual Jerusalem as represented to him in a vision (Ezek. xl.—xlviii.).

6. *I have spread you abroad*] *I have scattered you* (Hebr. *perasti*) like the four winds, in storm and tempest. There is a reference to the preceding word, *perázoth*, v. 4. Ye have been spread abroad by dispersion (see Ezek. xvii. 21); but I will unite you again. This is fulfilled in the true Zion, the Christian Church, diffused throughout the world.

7. *Deliver thyself, O Zion*] In Zechariah’s age, Zion had been in Babylon; part of it was still in Chaldaea; but let it flee thence, and it will be free, and become Zion indeed. Cp. Isa. xlviii. 2; lii. 11. Jer. li. 6. 45.

In a spiritual sense this may be applied to those Christians who are captives in the mystical Babylon—the Church of Rome. See below, on Rev. xviii. 4, “Come out of her, my people.” See also notes on Isa. xlviii. 20; lii. 11. Jer. li. 6. 7. 45.

8. *After the glory hath he sent me*] Jehovah sent the Angel of the Lord, Who is Christ; and He sent Him *after glory* in a double sense; i. e., from the glory which He had with the Father before the world was (John xvii. 5), and to promote His Father’s glory by doing His will (John viii. 50).

— *toucheth the apple of his eye*] Compare Deut. xxxii. 10, “He kept him as the apple of His eye;” Ps. xvii. 8, “Keep me as the apple of an eye.”

8, 9. *the nations which spoiled you—they shall be a spoil*] As the army of Sennacherib was. See Isa. xxxiii. 1. Christ, by the preaching of His Apostles, who were Jews, spoiled the nations which had spoiled Jerusalem. He brought them into the blessed captivity of His Gospel (*S. Augustine*, De Civ. Dei, viii. 30).

9. *I will shake mine hand upon them*] In anger, to terrify and to destroy. Cp. Isa. xix. 16. Or, as a General lifts up his hand or spear as a sign for attack (see Josh. viii. 18), and also as a signal that his foes will fall prostrate under it. Cp. Ps. cvi. 26, “He lifted up His hand against them, to overthrow them in the wilderness;” and Isa. xlix. 22.

10. *I will dwell in the midst of thee*] Compare Isa. xii. 6; below, viii. 3. This is fulfilled in the Christian Zion, by the perpetual presence of Christ, and by the indwelling of the Holy Ghost.

11. *many nations shall be joined to the LORD*] In the Church of Christ. See Isa. ii. 2, 3; liv. 2, 3; lx. 3—5. 11. Micah iv. 2. The prophet declares that God will receive the Gentiles into covenant with Him on equal terms with the Jews, in Christ; and that, through the preaching of the Gospel by the ministry of Jews, the Apostles and first teachers of Christianity, going forth from restored Jerusalem, He will establish an Œcumenical Zion. See *Kliefoth*, 34.

12. *the LORD shall inherit Judah—and shall choose Jerusalem*] God has now taken possession of Judah, and has chosen Jerusalem by setting up Christ as King in the spiritual Zion of the Church, the City of the Living God. See Ps. ii. 6; lxxxvii. 2, 5. Heb. xii. 22. Rev. xiv. 1. And so *S. Jerome* and *S. Cyril* here.

13. *Be silent, O all flesh, before the LORD*] Thus Zechariah’s prophecy connects itself with that of Zephaniah (i. 7), “Hold thy peace at the presence of the Lord God;” and of Habakkuk (ii. 20), “The Lord is in His holy temple, let all the earth keep silence before Him.”

Cnr. III.] The following section (iii. 1—iv. 7) is the haphtarah to Numbers viii. 1—xii. 16, which describes the consecration of the Levites and their service, and other sacred ministrations of the Tabernacle.

JOSHUA THE HIGH PRIEST IS JUSTIFIED.

The following Vision continues what has gone before. It reveals the work of God in building up and cleansing His Church. Joshua, the High Priest, is the Representative of the

Before
CHRIST
519.
b Ps. 109. 6.
Rev. 12. 10.
|| That is, an
adversary.
† Heb. to be his
adversary.
c Jude 9.
d ch. 1. 17.
Rom. 8. 23.
e Amos 4. 11.
Rom. 11. 5.
Jude 23.
f Isa. 64. 6.
g Isa. 61. 10.
Luke 15. 22.
Rev. 19. 8.
h Exod. 29. 6.
ch. 6. 11.

of the LORD, and ^b Satan standing at his right hand † to resist him. ² And the LORD said unto Satan, ^c The LORD rebuke thee, O Satan; even the LORD that ^d hath chosen Jerusalem rebuke thee: ^e is not this a brand plucked out of the fire?

³ Now Joshua was clothed with ^f filthy garments, and stood before the angel.

⁴ And he answered and spake unto those that stood before him, saying, Take away the filthy garments from him. And unto him he said, Behold, I have caused thine iniquity to pass from thee, ^g and I will clothe thee with change of raiment.

⁵ And I said, Let them set a fair ^h mitre upon his head.

So they set a fair mitre upon his head, and clothed him with garments. And the angel of the LORD stood by.

⁶ And the angel of the LORD protested unto Joshua, saying, ⁷ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; if thou wilt walk in my ways, and if thou wilt ⁱ keep my charge, then thou shalt also ^k judge my house, and shalt also keep my courts, and I will give thee [†] places to walk among these that ^l stand by.

i Lev. 8. 33.
1 Kings 2. 3.
Ezek. 41. 16.
|| Or, ordinance.
k Deut. 17. 9.
Mal. 2. 7.
† Heb. walks.
l ch. 4. 14. & 6. 5.

Hebrew Nation in spiritual things. Cp. Lev. iv. 3; xvi. 21. Heb. ix. 7. The Hebrew nation, in God's sight, was as yet defiled by sin. This is signified by Joshua's sullied attire. But he is to be cleansed from his sin. The Nation is to be justified; and how? There is one way, and one only. And what is that? The Incarnation and Death of Christ. All the blessings of justification and sanctification, and all the hopes of glory flow from His Incarnation, Death, Resurrection, and Ascension into Heaven; and from the indwelling of the Holy Spirit sent by Him (rr. 8—10).

We may cite here the words of an eminent Christian Father who lived in the second century. Speaking to the Jews, he says, "In the prophecies of Zechariah ye may see, as in a figure, the mystery of Christ. Joshua, the High Priest of the Hebrew People at Babylon, foreshadowed those things which were to be done by our Priest and God, Christ Jesus, the Son of the Father of the Universe. In Him we are brands plucked from the fire. He appears clothed with foul garments, because He bare our sins. Satan stands at His right hand, because Satan desires to destroy us. But He is stripped of those foul garments, and is attired with beautiful raiment, because in Him our sins are taken away and we are clothed in His righteousness" (*S. Justin Martyr*, Tryp. §§ 115—117).

1. *Satan—at his right hand*] Cp. Ps. cix. 6, "Set thou a wicked man over him, and let Satan stand at his right hand." Cp. Job xxx. 12.

In this Vision, Satan, the Adversary (cp. Job i. 6; ii. 1—6), "the accuser of our brethren" (Rev. xii. 10), who desires to have us as his own (Luke xxii. 31), is revealed as endeavouring to prevent and intercept the working of God's love to His people, by representing them as defiled by sin, and as utterly unworthy of His favour. Satan stood at Joshua's right hand, and endeavoured to work his ruin. So Satan stood at the right hand of our Joshua, on the pinnacle of the Temple at Jerusalem, and tempted Him to cast Himself down and fall (Matt. iv. 5, 6. *S. Jerome*). Satan stood at Christ's right hand when He was betrayed by Judas, into whom Satan entered (Luke xxii. 3): he tempted Him in His Agony, and in His Passion; and Satan is even still standing at Christ's right hand by his opposition to the preaching of the Gospel, and by sowing tares of heresy in His Church.

2. *The LORD rebuke thee*] Compare Jude 9, "Michael the Archangel, when, contending with the Devil, he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The LORD rebuke thee." Here is a solemn warning against that sarcastic, bitter, and virulent spirit which, in these last days, shows itself so often in speaking and writing against others, even against rulers temporal and spiritual. The holy angels, even in contending against Satan, use mild words. But these rash and reckless speakers and writers imitate Satan, who is called in Scripture Diabolus, or Calumniator, and Adversary, and "Accuser of the brethren" (Rev. xii. 10). How can they hope to be with good Angels hereafter? Must they not rather look to be with those wretched fiends whom they imitate?

— is not this a brand plucked out of the fire?] Is not the Hebrew Nation, which (as *S. Cyril* observes, and so *Hengst.*), is represented by Joshua, its High Priest, like a brand plucked out of the fire? Compare Amos iv. 11. Have I not shown my love to them by their marvellous deliverance from Babylon? Shall I now desert them? No; they are indeed defiled by sin, but I

will cleanse them. God bestows justification upon the High Priest, and in him upon the Nation at large, which is represented and personified by him. Cp. Ps. cxxx. 7, 8.

3. *Joshua was clothed with filthy garments*] He, the High Priest of the Hebrew Nation, was himself compassed with sin; and he represented the People, who were defiled with iniquity. Thus Joshua was also a type of Christ, Who, though Himself without sin, yet appeared in the likeness of sinful flesh (Rom. viii. 3), and was made sin for us (2 Cor. v. 21), and bare our sins in His own body on the tree (Isa. liii. 4, 11. Heb. ix. 28. 1 Pet. ii. 24). See *S. Ambrose*, in Ps. exix.; *S. Jerome* here; *Eusebius*, Dem. Evang. iv. 17; *S. Gregory*, Moral. xx. 18; *A Lapide*.

4. *Take away the filthy garments*] Thus the acceptance of God's people, on their faith and repentance, is signified.

In a spiritual sense Joshua, the High Priest, is a type of Christ; and being divested of his filthy garments and clothed with fair attire, he represents Christ, Who at His Passion was clothed with a scarlet robe in mockery, and was smitten and buffeted; and Who was put to death as a malefactor, and bare our iniquities; but at His Resurrection and Ascension was clothed in heavenly glory, and had a royal crown of victory set upon His head; *Origen*, in Lucan, Hom. 14, and *Eusebius*, Dem. Evang. iv. 17, whose words may deserve to be cited here: "This Joshua, the High Priest, appears to me to display a vivid image of our Saviour Jesus Christ. He bears the same name, Jesus; and he led the people of Judah from the Captivity at Babylon; and our Jesus came and preached deliverance to the captives (Luke iv. 18). Joshua brought the people to Jerusalem; our Jesus carries us up even to the heavenly Zion. Joshua is clothed in filthy garments; our Jesus condescended to wear our garb of slavery, and to bear our sins. He it is, of whom the Baptist says, Behold the Lamb of God who bears and takes away the sins of the world. Joshua is stripped of his filthy garments, and receives a fair robe and a goodly mitre. So our Jesus, having died for us, and having conquered Death, is now attired in heavenly glory, and wears the brilliant mitre of an everlasting Priesthood at God's right hand." Cp. *Tertullian* c. Jud. 14.

— *I have caused thine iniquity to pass from thee*] God, Who is our merciful Father, offered to the Hebrew Nation the means of justification by faith in Christ. He has taken away the filthy dress of our original guilt, and has clothed us with a white robe at our Baptism—the robe of Christ's righteousness; for, as the Apostle says, "As many of you as have been baptized into Christ, have put on Christ" (Gal. iii. 27). Therefore let us walk with Him in white (Rev. iii. 4; xvi. 15). In the Parable of the Prodigal Son, God's mercy to him on his repentance is represented by the words, "Bring forth the best robe" (literally, the first robe, of original righteousness) "and put it on him" (Luke xv. 22).

5. *a fair mitre*] Hebrew, *tsāniph*, the head-dress of priests and kings. Cp. Job xxix. 14. Isa. lxii. 3, in which passages it is rendered *diadem*. Joshua the High Priest is the representative of the Hebrew People, which was a kingdom of priests,—a royal priesthood (Exod. xix. 6), as all Christians are (1 Pet. ii. 5—9). They, and we, were tainted with sin; but there is pardon, grace, and glory for all true believers in Christ. Christ is crowned with glory and honour. We are crowned anew in Him; let us hold fast what we have received, and let no man take our crown (Rev. iii. 11). This is what is enforced in v. 7.

7. *I will give thee places to walk*] The High Priest alone

³ Hear now, O Joshua the high priest,
Thou, and thy fellows that sit before thee :
For they are ^m† men wondered at :
For, behold, I will bring forth ⁿ my servant the ^o BRANCH.

⁹ For behold the stone that I have laid before Joshua ;

^p Upon one stone *shall be* ^q seven eyes :

Behold, I will engrave the graving thereof, saith the LORD of hosts,

And ^r I will remove the iniquity of that land in one day.

¹⁰ ^s In that day, saith the LORD of hosts, shall ye call every man his neighbour
^t 'under the vine and under the fig tree.

Micah 7. 18, 19. ch. 13. 1. s ch.2. 11. t 1 Kings 4. 25. Isa. 36. 16. Micah 4. 4.

Before
CHRIST
519.

m Ps. 71. 7.
Isa. 8. 18. & 20. 3.
† Heb. *m'n* of
wonder, or, *sign*, as
Ezek. 12. 11. &
24. 24.
n Isa 42.1. & 49. 3.
5. & 52.13. & 53.11.
Ezek. 31. 23. 24.
o Isa. 4. 2. & 11. 1.
Jer. 23. 5. & 33. 15.
ch 6.12. Luke 1.78.
p Ps. 118. 22.
Isa. 28. 16.
q ch. 4. 10.
Rev. 5. 6.
r Jer. 31.31. & 50.20.

could go, and only once a year, and that with blood, into the Holy of Holies, the figure of the true (Heb. ix. 24). But the vision declares that whole Nations, whom he represents, will have free access to God. The promise is, I will give thee a free approach to God in Christ, "through Whom we have access by One Spirit unto the Father" (Eph. ii. 18). Christ is the Way (John xiv. 6); and if we enter in and walk by Him, by the new and living Way, which He hath consecrated for us (Heb. x. 20), we shall come through the true Veil to the Holy of Holies, our heavenly home.

8. *Hear now, O Joshua the high priest—they are men to be wondered at*] Literally, *they are men of wonder*, that is, they are signs, mysterious portents, of something else; as Isaiah and his two sons were *signs* of Christ (Isa. viii. 18); and Ezekiel was a sign (Ezek. xii. 6). They are men who are to be gazed at with wonder, because they typify a great Mystery, which was no other than the Incarnation and everlasting Priesthood of Jesus the Son of God. Joshua the High Priest, and his associates with him, who constituted the Hebrew Hierarchy, and who were appointed to offer sacrifice, and to bless the people and to pray for them, were "typical men" (as *Bp. Chandler* renders it; and see *Ensebius*, Dem. Evang. iv. 17, and *S. Jerome*, *S. Cyril*, and *Hengst*, here): they prefigured the sacerdotal office of Christ. See *Introd.* to Leviticus, pp. ii—iv, and Lev. xvi., and Heb. ix. x. Even as early as in Ps. cx. Christ is represented as a Priest as well as a King; and in Isaiah (lii. 15) He sprinkles many nations, and presents an offering for sin, and bears the sins of the people (Isa. liii. 10—12). Observe, therefore, what follows.

MY SERVANT, THE BRANCH.

— *For, behold, I will bring forth my servant the BRANCH*] Here is the clue to the Vision. The cause of the justification of the Hebrew Priesthood, and of the Hebrew Nation represented by it, and of all the faithful Israel of God, the children of Abraham, in whose seed (which is Christ) all nations of the earth are blessed is this, that God brings forth *His Servant* (as the Messiah is named in Isa. xlii. 1, 19; xlix. 6; lii. 13; liii. 11) the *BRANCH* (Heb. *Tsemach*), as the Messiah is called by Jeremiah xxxiii. 5; xxxiii. 15, and below, "the Man whose Name is the *BRANCH*;" for He sprouted forth from the root of the stem of Jesse and of David, when it was in a dry ground (Isa. xi. 1, 2; liii. 2). The Jewish Targum has here the remarkable words, "I bring forth My Servant the *Christ*."

THE STONE.

9. *For behold the stone—seven eyes: behold, I will engrave the graving thereof*] The Messiah, Who has just been called the *Branch*, is now called the *Stone* (as He had been already named by Isaiah (xxviii. 16), and in Ps. cxviii. 22), lest any one should interpret this prophecy literally, and lest any one should imagine Him to be weak as a Branch. A Branch is *inoculated* with buds (called *eyes*, "Nec modus inserere atque oculos imponere simplex," *Virg. Georg.* ii. 73); and seven eyes are engraven on this Stone, which represents the Messiah. The Stone is not a dark, lifeless Stone, like other stones, but a *living, seeing Stone*. It has *seven eyes*, representing the sevenfold gifts of the Spirit with which, according to Isaiah (xi. 2), the Messiah is anointed, animated, strengthened, and enlightened (cp. *Kliefoth*, 49); or (as *S. Cyril* says), "Since the number *seven* denotes multitude and completeness, as in the phrase, "the barren bath borne *seven*" (1 Sam. ii. 5), the seven eyes denote the divine and ineffable nature of the Son, by which He beholds all things."

The ancient Expositors rightly affirm that Jesus Christ in His various attributes is typified by the High Priest, the Branch, and the Stone (*S. Jerome*). God declares that He lays, or rather, as the original signifies, that He *gives*, a stone

before Joshua: lit. *before his face*, to defend him, and in order that he may place it as the foundation and corner-stone of his building, which symbolized the Church, of which the corner-stone is Christ (Isa. xxviii. 16. Eph. ii. 20. 1 Pet. ii. 6).

This Stone is graven, like the precious stones in the breast-plate of the High Priest with the names of the Tribes upon them (Exod. xxviii. 21). Cp. below, 2 Tim. ii. 19, "The foundation stone (see the original) of God standeth sure, having this seal," or *gravure*; and Rev. xxi. 14, where the twelve foundation-stones (see again the original) of the heavenly city have twelve names graven upon them.

The gravure here is of eyes, emblems of light. Cp. Matt. vi. 22, and the wheel full of eyes in Ezekiel (i. 18), and the description of the Living Creatures full of eyes in the Apocalypse (Rev. iv. 4—6), and of the Lamb with seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent forth into all the earth (Rev. v. 6), and below here (iv. 10), where these words are repeated.

These eyes are *seven*, signifying completeness (see below, on iv. 2, and above, on Ezekiel, p. 280), and representing the perfection of the spiritual illumination and perpetual watchfulness of Christ, the Messiah, anointed with the sevenfold gifts (Isa. xi. 2) and unction of the Holy Ghost (Ps. lxxxix. 20. Acts iv. 27; x. 38. Heb. i. 9). God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto Him, but in infinite abundance (John iii. 34); and in Him all fulness of grace and light dwells (Col. i. 9; ii. 9); and from Him it flows as from a fountain, through all the spiritual life of the Church; for of His fulness we all receive, and grace for grace (John i. 16).

This exposition is confirmed by ancient Interpreters, as *S. Jerome Remigius*; and *A. Lapide* says, "Septem oculi sunt dona Spiritus Sancti, quæ plenissime fuerunt in animâ Christi, quia hæc animam Ejus oculatam, illuminatam, et vigilantem fecerunt;" and *S. Gregory*, Moral. xxix. 16, says, These seven eyes signify the spiritual plenitude of Christ, and that He has for ever the sevenfold gifts of the Spirit. One man has one gift, one another, which they *receive*, but Christ has always all spiritual gifts in Himself. In Him the spiritual Pleiad shines with eternal splendour.

— *of that land*] Rather, *of the earth*, the whole world, Christ is the Saviour of all.

— *in one day*] The day of Calvary; the one day of Christ's Passion. See what follows, and below xiii. 1. "In that day there shall be a fountain opened for sin and for uncleanness."

Observe the poetical beauty and harmonious connexion of this prophetic vision. Christ is called the *servant* of God, the *Branch*; this bespeaks His Condescension, His true Manhood; from the root of David; but He is also the *Stone*, the Corner Stone, of the Church Universal; and that *Stone is graven* with *seven eyes*, because He is filled with the Spirit, and by virtue of these attributes He became *in one Day*, the Day of His Death on the Cross, the True Sacrifice, atonement and propitiation for the sins of the whole world.

10. *In that day shall ye call every man his neighbour under the vine and under the fig-tree*] In the day of Christ's Passion. All true Israelites were reconciled to God by the One Sacrifice offered once for all on Calvary by Him Who is our true and everlasting High Priest (Heb. vii. 27; ix. 12; x. 10), and thenceforth they enjoy peace through Him Who is our Peace (Eph. ii. 14), and they sit under their own vine and fig-tree, as in the days of Solomon. See 1 Kings iv. 25; and cp. on Micah iv. 4.

From speaking of the Passion of Christ, the Prophet next proceeds to speak of the CHURCH UNIVERSAL, purchased and cleansed by His most precious blood, shed at Calvary. From the Bridegroom he passes to the Bride; and from the King to the Queen at His right hand (Ps. xlv. 9). As the Bride says to the Bridegroom in the Canticles, "Come, my beloved, let us

Before
CHRIST
519.
a ch. 2, 3.
b Dan. 8, 18.
c Exod. 25, 31.
Rev. 1, 12.
† Heb. *with her bowl*.
d Exod. 25, 37.
Rev. 4, 5.
† Or, *seven several pipes to the lamps*, &c.
e ver. 11, 12.
Rev. 11, 4.

IV. ¹ And ^a the angel that talked with me came again, and waked me, ^b as a man that is wakened out of his sleep, ² and said unto me, What seest thou?

And I said, I have looked, and behold ^c a candlestick all of gold, [†] with a bowl upon the top of it, ^d and his seven lamps thereon, and ^{||} seven pipes to the seven lamps, which *are* upon the top thereof: ^{3e} And two olive trees by it, one upon the right *side* of the bowl, and the other upon the left *side* thereof.

⁴ So I answered and spake to the angel that talked with me, saying, What *are* these, my lord? ⁵ Then the angel that talked with me answered and said unto me, Knowest thou not what these be?

And I said, No, my lord.

⁶ Then he answered and spake unto me, saying, This *is* the word of the LORD unto Zerubbabel, saying, 'Not by ^{||} might, nor by power, but by my spirit, saith the LORD of hosts. ⁷ Who *art* thou, ⁸ O great mountain? before Zerubbabel *thou shalt become* a plain: and he shall bring forth ^b the headstone *thereof* ⁱ with shoutings, *crying*, Grace, grace unto it.

⁸ Moreover the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, ⁹ The hands of Zerubbabel ^k have laid the foundation of this house; his hands ^l shall also finish it; and ^m thou shalt know that the ⁿ LORD of hosts hath sent me unto you.

f Hos. 1, 7.
g Or, *army*.
h Jer. 51, 25.
Matt. 21, 21.
h Ps. 118, 22.

i Ezra 3, 11 13.

k Ezra 3, 10.
l Ezra 6, 15.
m ch. 2, 9, 11. &
6, 15.
n Isa. 48, 16. ch.
2, 8.

get up early to the vineyards, and see if the vine flourish" (Cant. vii. 12), so now that Christ is come, and the Gospel is preached everywhere, the vineyards of the Lord, which are Christ's Churches, flourish, and the fig-tree blossoms, and they bear fruit to the Lord. Cp. Isa. v. 1—7. Hab. iii. 17. *S. Cyril*.

CH. IV.] THE SEVEN BRANCHED GOLDEN CANDLESTICK, or rather, LAMPSTAND; the TWO OLIVE-TREES.

1. *wakened out of his sleep*] I had sunk down into sleep from exhaustion consequent on the wonderful and glorious revelations of the four preceding visions, and the angel waked me out of it. Compare Daniel's sleep after his vision, viii. 18; x. 8, 9; and St. Peter's sleep at the transfiguration (Luke ix. 32).

2. *a candlestick all of gold*] This imagery is derived from the Tabernacle and the Temple. Even to this day the seven-branched candlestick is seen in the sculptured bas-reliefs of the Arch of Titus at Rome, among the spoils of the Temple at Jerusalem, which were taken by him and carried in his triumphal procession along the Via Sacra to the Roman Capitol.

This Seven-branched Candlestick is a figure of the Universal Church of Christ. It is golden, as representing the preciousness, holiness, and glory of the Church. It is filled with oil, signifying the gift of the Holy Spirit flowing into it and through it; and it has seven branches, signifying its Universality, by which it diffuses the pure light of Divine Truth, derived from the oil of the Holy Spirit, throughout the world. See above, on Exod. xxv. 31—37; below, on Rev. i. 12, 13, 20, and on Rev. xi. 4, which is the best commentary on the present passage.

— *a bowl*] In the Candlestick of the Jewish Tabernacle and Temple there was no such bowl, because the lamps were trimmed and fed daily by the Priests (Exod. xxvii. 20, 21). But here the oil is supplied by God Himself through the Olive-trees, which represent the functions of Christ, Who is the great High Priest and King. The oil which flows in the candlestick of the Church is not from man, but from God. The light of the written Word is from Christ the Eternal Word (*S. Cyril*).

In this prophetic type and figure of the Church we see a warning against the error and sin of those who adulterate the divine oil with human admixtures, and "teach for doctrines the commandments of men" (Matt. xv. 9).

3. *two olive trees*] See below, on r. 11.

6. *by my spirit*] Not by human power, but by the might of the Holy Ghost, stirring up him and the people by the prophets was the Temple builded by Zerubbabel, the figure of Christ. See Ezra vi. 14. Hag. ii. 21, 23. The spiritual Temple of the Church of Christ was built by Him, sending the Holy Ghost on the Day of Pentecost to animate the builders, and to abide for ever with the Church (John xiv. 16).

It must be remembered in reading these prophecies, that, as David is the type of Christ, and not only so, but Christ Himself is also called *David* by the Prophets (see on Ezek. xxxiv.

23, 24; xxxvii. 24), so Zerubbabel (the seed of David, and leader of the people from captivity, and builder of the Temple) is not only a *type* of Christ, but Christ is *called* Zerubbabel. The author of Breshith Rabba says, "The Messiah is called Zerubbabel and also David; because He was represented in both;" and so *Abarinel*. Cp. *Bp. Chandler*, p. 206.

In the preceding verses, Joshua the High Priest is introduced in his priestly character, as the representative of the Nation in its consecration to God, and as a type of Christ, the Eternal Priest. So here Zerubbabel, the Civil Governor of the Hebrew Nation, and the seed of David, is also displayed in his princely functions as a representative of the Nation in its royal dignity, and as a figure of Christ, the Everlasting King. Hence we see the propriety of the transition to the imagery of the Candlestick, the symbol of the universal Church, set up by Christ, and filled by Him with the Oil of the Spirit, to enlighten the World.

THE MOUNTAIN SHALL BECOME A PLAIN.

7. *O great mountain—thou shalt become a plain*] The lofty mountains of worldly opposition were subdued unto level plains by the Spirit of God, when Zerubbabel went forth from Babylon to build the Temple of the Lord. The great mountain of the worldly power of Babylon, which had carried Judah captive, was overthrown by Persia, and became a plain. The Jews, being freed by Cyrus, marched back to Jerusalem. The mountain of opposition from the Samaritans disappeared before their face. It became a plain. The Temple of God was built; Zerubbabel laid the foundation of it; and he finished it amid prayers and acclamations of the people, "*Grace, grace unto it!*"

Christ, Who was the Antitype of Zerubbabel, and the Giver of all grace (John i. 16, 17), came in person to that self-same Temple, and filled it with His glory (Hag. ii. 7). Therefore it may be truly said that this prophecy was accomplished by the Founder and Finisher of the Christian Church, Jesus Christ (*S. Cyril*). Mountains have become plains before Him; He has overcome Death by dying; He has conquered Sin and Satan by the Cross; He ascended in triumph into heaven, as in a chariot of victory, and was hailed by the acclamations of Angels, "Lift up your heads, O ye gates; and be ye lift up, ye everlasting doors; and the King of Glory shall come in" (1's. xxiv. 7). And when He had ascended up on high and had led captivity captive, He gave gifts to men (Ephes. iv. 8). By the outpouring of His Spirit He made Jews to become Preachers of His Gospel; He changed St. Peter, who had thrice denied Him through fear, into a courageous Champion of the Faith. He changed the persecuting Pharisee Saul into the fervent Preacher St. Paul. He made the heathen nations to be builders of the Church. He has changed Temples and Basilicas into Churches. The Coliseum, where Christians were cast to the wild beasts and martyred, has been Christianized; the Cross stands there, and Christ has been preached there. He has made heathendom itself to become a spiritual Sion, on which the Church is built.

¹⁰ For who hath despised the day of "small things? || for they shall rejoice, and shall see the †plummet in the hand of Zerubbabel *with* those seven; ^p they are the eyes of the LORD, which run to and fro through the whole earth.

¹¹ Then answered I, and said unto him, What *are* these "two olive trees upon the right *side* of the candlestick and upon the left *side* thereof?

¹² And I answered again, and said unto him, What *be* these two olive branches which †through the two golden pipes || empty †the golden oil out of themselves?

¹³ And he answered me and said, Knowest thou not what these *be*?

And I said, No, my lord.

¹⁴ Then said he, "These *are* the two †anointed ones, "that stand by "the LORD of the whole earth.

Before
CHRIST
519.

o Hag. 2. 3.
† Or, since the
seven eyes of the
LORD shall
rejoice.

† Heb. stone
of tin.

p 2 Chr. 16. 9.

Prov. 15. 3.

ch. 3. 9.

q ver. 3.

† Heb. by the hand.

|| Or, empty out
of themselves oil
into the gold.

† Heb. the gold.

r Rev. 11. 4.

† Heb. sons of
oil.

s ch. 3. 7.

Luke 1. 19. t See Josh. 3. 11. 13. ch. 6. 5.

10. *who hath despised the day of small things?*] Who, that desires to achieve great things, despises the day of small things? The work of building the "latter house" at Jerusalem was begun in days of weakness and amid tears, by a scanty band of labourers, and was encountered by much opposition; but finally was completed; and the house was dedicated with shouts of joy and singing, and was "filled with the glory of the Lord" by the Coming of Christ.

The Church of Christ was at first a little leaven, but it will leaven the world. It was a grain of mustard seed, but it will become a great tree, and all nations will sit beneath its shade.

Christ, the Stone cut out without hands, was despised at first, but He has become a Mountain, and fills the Earth (Dan. ii. 35. 45), and will grind to powder all that resist Him (Matt. xxi. 44).

— *Zerubbabel with those seven; they are the eyes of the LORD*] Rather, a stop should be placed after the word *Zerubbabel*; the word *with*, which is not in the original, should be expunged. A new sentence begins after Zerubbabel. *Those seven, the eyes of the Lord are they, running over the whole world.* The "seven eyes" in the foundation-stone (see above, iii. 9) are "eyes of the Lord;" they are the fulness of spiritual illumination and perpetual vigilance in Christ, the True Foundation of the Church; and they run over the whole world in His fourfold Gospel preached to all Nations, even to all points of the four winds of heaven, by the Church Universal. He sees all; He is ever walking among the Churches, and watching them (see Rev. ii. 1); His eye is ever on them, and He illumines them.

The best illustration of the imagery in Zechariah is to be found in the Book of Revelation: indeed, the Apocalypse is the best commentary on Zechariah. There, as was before observed, the Lamb is displayed as having *seven eyes*, which are the seven spirits of God, sent forth into all the earth (Rev. v. 6). There the "four living creatures," representing the fourfold Gospel, are described as "*full of eyes*," full of the light of the Holy Spirit, radiating by them throughout the world. See on Rev. iv. 4—6, p. 182, and above on Ezek. i. 15—20.

11—14. *What are these two olive trees—What be these two olive branches* (lit. ears)—*These are the two anointed ones*] Literally, *they are the two sons of oil*.

It has been supposed that they represent the anointed Priesthood and Royalty; and that this was verified in a subordinate sense in the Hebrew nation, where the Monarchy and the Priesthood—both of which were consecrated with holy oil, the symbol of the outpouring of the Holy Spirit—were the appointed means and channels by which the favour and grace of God were conveyed and bestowed on the Hebrew People.

Some ancient and modern Expositors suppose the two olive trees to symbolize the two Churches, that is, the Hebrew and Gentile Church; and this interpretation derives confirmation from the fact that St. Paul describes the Jews and Gentiles as two olive trees (Rom. xi. 17. 24). But to this opinion it may reasonably be objected, first, that the Candlestick represents the Church; and next, that the Hebrew and Gentile Churches did not minister oil to the Candlestick, but were recipients of oil from Christ.

Rather, the two Olive Trees symbolize Christ's Priesthood and Monarchy. This is confirmed by what follows, vi. 13. By His Incarnation and Union from the Holy Ghost, He has become the *Messiah*, the *Christ*, the *Anointed One*, the Everlasting King and Priest of the Universal Church. Olives produce oil; and oil supplies light to the Candlestick, and all the oil of the Holy Spirit flows, by the medium of His Messiahship in its twofold functions

of King and Priest, into the Candlestick of the Universal Church. We are Christians because we believe Jesus to be the Christ, and because we are incorporated in His Body. He which hath anointed us is God (2 Cor. i. 21). By faith in Him Who is anointed by God with the oil of gladness (Heb. i. 9), and by mystical union with Him, "we have an unction from the Holy One; and the anointing which we have received of Him abideth in us, and the same anointing" (being an anointing of illumination) "teacheth us all things, and is truth, and is no lie; and even as it hath taught us, we shall abide in Him" (1 John ii. 20. 27); and by virtue of His Incarnation, and Union from the Holy Ghost, and of our mystical union with Him, He has "made us to be kings and priests to God" (Rev. i. 6; v. 10).

This Vision, interpreted in this sense, is fraught with doctrinal and practical instruction to all.

It teaches, that as all the light of the Moon is derived from God through the Sun, so all the splendour and glory of the Church are received from the Father through Christ, "the Sun of Righteousness" (Mal. iv. 2). They flow from His Incarnation. He is the Eternal Son of God. "In Him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily" (Col. ii. 9). And He is Very Man; and He communicates of that fulness to us all, whose nature He has taken (John i. 16). He has made us to be partakers of the Divine Nature (2 Pet. i. 4), by our mystical union with Himself, Very God and Very Man. And this communication of grace and glory is effectually accomplished by means of His twofold office of Priest and King. As our Priest, He has offered Himself for us, and has reconciled us to the Father; and the regenerating and refreshing, strengthening and sanctifying virtue of His Blood once shed, and of His Body once offered in the sacrifice of Calvary, is applied to each of us severally on the condition of our Faith and Obedience, in the Holy Sacraments of Baptism and the Lord's Supper.

By reason of His everlasting Royalty, the grace received by us through His Priesthood will be consummated in glory at that great Day when all earthly Powers will be put under His feet, and "the kingdoms of this world will become the kingdoms of the Lord, and of His Christ" (Rev. xi. 15), and He will "reign for ever and ever, KING of kings, and LORD of lords" (Rev. xvii. 14), and will say to all His faithful servants on His right hand, "Receive the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world" (Matt. xxv. 34).

It is also a probable opinion, that the two Olive Trees symbolize the Old and New Testament; through which the Oil of the Holy Spirit is conveyed to the Candlestick of the Church which illuminates the world by the light thence received; and this interpretation is confirmed by the language of the Apocalypse, where are Two Olive Trees and Two Candlesticks, which are called God's Two Witnesses, and they are said to *stand before the Lord of all the earth*. See below on Rev. xi. 3, 4, pp. 216, 217.

On the whole, we may conclude that the two Olive Trees represent either the Incarnate Word or the Written Word.

12. *What be these two olive branches which through the two golden pipes empty the golden oil*] Literally, *empty the gold*. Observe, the Candlestick is golden, and the oil is called gold; it is like liquid gold. The Church must be pure and holy; and what she teaches and ministers to the People must be pure and holy also; not adulterated with the admixture of any novel doctrines, such as those which have been added by some to "the faith once for all delivered to the saints" (Jude 3), and imposed as necessary to salvation. "How is the gold become dim, and the fine gold changed!" (Lam. iv. 1.)

Before
CHRIST
519.
a Ezek. 2. 9.

V. ¹ Then I turned, and lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a flying ^a roll.

² And he said unto me, What seest thou ?

And I answered, I see a flying roll ; the length thereof is twenty cubits, and the breadth thereof ten cubits.

b Mal. 4. 6.

|| Or, every one of
these people that
stealeth holdeth
himself guiltless,
as it doth.

c Lev. 19. 12.

ch. 8. 17.

Mal. 3. 5.

d See Lev. 14. 45.

³ Then said he unto me, This is the ^b curse that goeth forth over the face of the whole earth : for || every one that stealeth shall be cut off as on this side according to it ; and every one that sweareth shall be cut off as on that side according to it. ⁴ I will bring it forth, saith the LORD of hosts, and it shall enter into the house of the thief, and into the house of 'him that sweareth falsely by my name : and it shall remain in the midst of his house, and ^d shall consume it with the timber thereof and the stones thereof.

⁵ Then the angel that talked with me went forth, and said unto me, Lift up now thine eyes, and see what is this that goeth forth.

⁶ And I said, What is it ?

And he said, This is an ephah that goeth forth.

He said moreover, This is their resemblance through all the earth.

|| Or, weighty
piece.

⁷ And, behold, there was lifted up a || talent of lead : and this is a woman that sitteth in the midst of the ephah.

⁸ And he said, This is wickedness. And he cast it into the midst of the ephah ; and he cast the weight of lead upon the mouth thereof.

⁹ Then lifted I up mine eyes, and looked, and, behold, there came out two women, and the wind was in their wings ; for they had wings like the wings of a stork : and they lifted up the ephah between the earth and the heaven.

¹⁰ Then said I to the angel that talked with me, Whither do these bear the ephah ?

e Jer. 29. 5, 28.
f Gen. 10. 10.

¹¹ And he said unto me, To ^e build it an house in 'the land of Shinar : and it shall be established, and set there upon her own base.

THE FLYING ROLL. THE WOMAN IN THE EPDAH.

CH. V.] This Vision follows as a natural sequel to the preceding one. The announcement of God's gracious favour to the faithful in the former Vision is succeeded here by a solemn warning to the ungodly.

The description of the faithful Church, the spiritual *Sion*, in the foregoing chapter, is now followed by a representation of its opposite, the faithless Church, whose place is a spiritual *Babylon* (v. 11).

This Vision had in the first instance a message of warning for the godless men at Jerusalem in Zechariah's own day, the false swearers, extortioners, and adulterers, and others with whom Nehemiah had to contend (cp. Mal. iii. 5) ; but it is extended to the spiritual Jerusalem, the Church (*S. Cyril*).

2. a flying roll (or volume unrolled and spread out) ; the length thereof is twenty cubits, and the breadth thereof ten cubits] That is, its length was exactly equal to the dimensions of the Holy Place of the Tabernacle ; and to the Porch of the Holy Place in Solomon's Temple, and of the House itself in breadth, which was twenty cubits (see 1 Kings vi. 3), and it was equal in its other dimension, ten cubits, to the depth of the Porch, so that if it had been laid down (as a carpet) in the Porch, it would have covered the whole area.

This signifies that the warning here pronounced is universal in its extent and application. None who enter the Porch of the Visible Church may flatter themselves that they can escape God's wrath and malediction, if they commit any of the sins condemned by the comprehensive commination of this flying Roll, which may be compared to a net, co-extensive with the world, and drawn throughout the whole, from side to side.

3. that sweareth] Namely, falsely. See v. 4.

6. This is an ephah] Literally, the ephah, the full measure of iniquity (*S. Jerome, Theodoret*).

The Ephah was the measure by which corn was meted out and dispensed. The Ephah or bushel is chosen here, because it

was the principal measure of capacity among the Hebrews ; it contained about eight gallons. See on Exod. xvi. 36.

What does it symbolize ?

The members and ministers of God's Church ought to dispense nourishment to others. They ought to measure out their gifts, and to feed those around them with the wholesome food of divine truth and holy example. If they do not do this, their privileges will become the occasion and instrument of their punishment. They will be like the woman (which represents wickedness) cast into the ephah, and sealed up in it hermetically with lead, and swept away by the winds of God's wrath, from the Sion of His Church to the Babel of Confusion. Here is a warning to all who adulterate God's truth, or refuse to impart it in purity and simplicity.

9. there came out two women, and the wind was in their wings ; for they had wings like the wings of a stork] The Woman in the Ephah is a corrupt Church : the other two women, who carry her away, with wings like those of a stork, a bird proverbial for its filial love, and therefore called *chasilah*, or *pious* (see on Job xxxix. 13), perhaps represent faithful Churches ; and the meaning seems to be, that they will punish Error, because they love the Truth. The stork is a migratory bird (*Jer. viii. 7*), soaring aloft with sail-like, flapping wings, and frequents ruinous and marshy places, like Babylon.

11. To build it an house in the land of Shinar] The place where the tower of Babel, or Confusion, was built by rebels against God (see on Gen. x. 10 ; xi. 9), and the scene also of Israel's exile and punishment for sin (*Isa. xi. 11. Dan. i. 2*) where Babylon was ; the City of Confusion, opposed to Sion, the City of Peace. See on Acts ii. 6.

The Prophet intimates to the Jews of his own age, that if they sin against God by the sins here mentioned, their restoration to Jerusalem is frustrate and abortive ; they are not, in heart, in Sion the City of Peace, but in Babel the City of Confusion ; and though they may pride themselves in building a city and temple at Jerusalem, yet their own proper place, where their own house is built, is the land of Shinar.

VI. ¹ And I turned, and lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and, behold, there came four chariots out from between two mountains; and the mountains *were* mountains of brass. ² In the first chariot *were* ^a red horses; and in the second chariot ^b black horses; ³ and in the third chariot ^c white horses; and in the fourth chariot grised and || bay horses.

Before CHRIST 519.
a ch. 1. 8.
Rev. 6. 4.
b Rev. 6. 5.
c Rev. 6. 2.
|| Or, strong.

⁴ Then I answered ^d and said unto the angel that talked with me, What *are* these, my lord?

d ch. 5. 10.

⁵ And the angel answered and said unto me, ^e These *are* the four || spirits of the heavens, which go forth from ^f standing before the Lord of all the earth.

e Ps. 104. 4.
Heb. 1. 7. 14.
|| Or, winds.
f 1 Kings 22. 19.
Dan. 7. 10.
ch. 4. 14.
Luke 1. 19.
g Jer. 1. 14.

⁶ The black horses which *are* therein go forth into ^g the north country; and the white go forth after them; and the grised go forth toward the south country. ⁷ And the bay went forth, and sought to go that they might ^h walk to and fro through the earth: and he said, Get you hence, walk to and fro through the earth. So they walked to and fro through the earth.

h Gen. 13. 17.
ch. 1. 10.

⁸ Then cried he upon me, and spake unto me, saying, Behold these that go toward the north country have quieted my ⁱ spirit in the north country.

i Judg. 8. 3.
Eccles. 10. 4.

⁹ And the word of the Lord came unto me, saying, ¹⁰ Take of *them* of the captivity, *even* of Heldai, of Tobijah, and of Jedaiah, which are come from Babylon, and come thou the same day, and go into the house of Josiah the son of Zephaniah; ¹¹ then take silver and gold, and make ^k crowns, and set *them* upon the head of Joshua the son of Josedech, the high priest; ¹² and speak unto him, saying, Thus speaketh the Lord of hosts, saying,

k Exod. 28. 36. & 29. 6.
Lev. 8. 9. ch. 3. 5.

Behold ^l the man whose name *is* The ^m BRANCH;

l See Luke 1. 78.
John 1. 45.
m ch. 3. 8.
|| Or, branch up from under him.
n ch. 4. 9.
Matt. 16. 18.
Eph. 2. 20, 21, 22.
Heb. 3. 8.

And he shall || grow up out of his place,

ⁿ And he shall build the temple of the Lord:

¹³ Even he shall build the temple of the Lord;

Wickedness, or Lawlessness (see *Sept.* here, which has *ἀνομία*, and *cp.* 2 Thess. ii. 8, *ὁ ἀνομος*), is carried to Babylon and is settled there, because at Babylon is its proper place (*S. Jerome*).

This Vision, like the other Visions of Zechariah, extends to Christian times. In the Christian Church Universal, corruptions have arisen which may find a solemn warning here. The Church of Rome boasts herself to be Sion: but she is the mystical Babylon of the Apocalypse (as is shown below, Revelation xvii., xviii., pp. 249—260). Her Sovereign Pontiff is “the Lawless one” of St. Paul. See below, on 2 Thess ii. 3—12, pp. 29—32. This prophecy may be applied, and ought to be applied, as a warning to those who are tempted to communicate with her in her errors and corruptions. Her doom will be, to be removed from her place, and to be swept away by the whirlwind of God’s wrath, because she rebels against His Will and Word.

THE FOUR CHARIOTS.

CH. VI. 1—8, *behold, there came four chariots out from between two mountains—of brass—these—have quieted my spirit in the north country*] These eight verses will best be considered together. The four chariots from between two mountains of brass represent God’s instruments of retributive justice going forth from the fortress of His Power. Brass is a symbol of might (Job xl. 18. Ps. cvii. 16. Dan. xlv. 2. 32. 39). Chariots are emblems of rapid march and victorious career.

The four chariots symbolize the four great Empires, already described by Daniel (ii. 31—43; vii. 3—7. See *S. Cyril* here); and the colours of the horses represent their various attributes (*cp.* above, i. 8—10) and their going forth from between two mountains of brass—not real mountains, but symbolical—shows that they have one common starting-place, which can be no other than the Will of God, Who is the Governor of the world. *Cp. v. 5.*

The words *grised and bay* would be better rendered *gristed and strong*. See the *Margin and Dr. Pusey* on Daniel, p. 358, who rightly remarks that “the imagery here, like that above in i. 18, 19, presupposes the existence of Daniel’s prophecies, and is an argument for their authenticity, and is to be explained from those prophecies.” Of the black horses, the symbol of the Second Empire (the Medo-Persian), it is said, that they have made

mine anger to rest in the north country (i.e. on Babylon), because of God’s judgments executed on Babylon by Cyrus, who is represented here as God’s minister. The third is here said to *go forth after them*, for the Greeks occupied the region before held by the Persians. The fourth, the Roman, which is characterized by grised and strong horses, corresponds in these features of mixture and strength with the fourth, or Roman, Empire, as described by Daniel (ii. 41).

THE CROWNS—FROM THE PEOPLE OF THE CAPTIVITY—PLACED ON THE HEAD OF JOSHUA THE HIGH PRIEST.

10—14. *Take of them of the captivity—high priest—for a memorial in the temple of the Lord*] God commands that the silver and gold, brought as an offering from some of the captives of Babylon to the Temple at Jerusalem, should be made into crowns (or rather into *diadems*), encircling one crown (*cp.* Rev. xix. 12, and *Kliefoth*, 98), and placed, not on the head of Zerubbabel, the civil Ruler, but on the head of Joshua the High Priest. Christ’s glory eclipses that of both. Zerubbabel was a civil Ruler, but not a King; Joshua was a Priest, not a Ruler; Christ is the universal King and everlasting Priest.

This was a typical and prophetic act. The *crowns* are for the *Priest*. This prefigures the future glory of Christ the Messiah (*Targum*), the *Branch* (v. 12). He grows up out of *His place*, literally, *from under Him* (*cp.* Exod. x. 23); the Branch shall grow up *from under Himself*, that is, by reason of His own innate virtue. He, as Man, shall grow up from His eternal Godhead; and shall put forth divine vigour, and grow up and flourish, and overshadow the earth, like a great tree: as He Himself says, comparing Himself to a corn of wheat which dies and brings forth much fruit (John xii. 24), the grain dies, and the Harvest of the Gentiles springs up from it. By reason of the union of His Manhood with His Godhead (*cp. A Lapid* here), He springs up and puts forth His divine power and diffuses His divine Grace in the Universal Church, and therefore it is added, *He shall build the temple of the Lord*, that is, the Church in all place and time.

13. *he shall—rule upon his throne—and—be a priest upon*

Before
CHRIST
519.
o Isa. 22. 24.
p Ps. 110. 4.
Heb. 3. 1.

And he ° shall bear the glory,
And shall sit and rule upon his throne ;
And ° he shall be a priest upon his throne :
And the counsel of peace shall be between them both.

14 And the crowns shall be to Helem, and to Tobijah, and to Jedaiah, and to

q Exod. 12. 14. Hen the son of Zephaniah, ° for a memorial in the temple of the Lord.
Mark 14. 9.

his throne: and the counsel of peace shall be between them both] That is, the Priesthood and the Monarchy shall be united in a holy alliance, and shall produce eternal peace by their union in Him. This is fulfilled in Christ, and in Christ alone, "In unius gloriâ Domini Jesu utrumque consentit" (S. Jerome). This union had already been symbolized by the two Olive Trees in iv. 11—14.

It is an expansion of the divine words of Psalm ex., where Christ is revealed as a King, seated at God's right hand, till He makes his foes His footstool: and also, "as a Priest for ever."

The offering of silver and gold from the people of the captivity, and the formation of these precious metals so offered, into diadems for the crown of Joshua the High Priest, the leader of the captivity from Babylon, and the builder of the Temple with Zerubbabel, was typical of the homage to be paid to Christ by the Jewish dispersion and by all nations of the world who were once in the Babylonish bondage, and exile of Sin and Death, but have received liberty from Christ. *They that are far off* (it is added, v. 15) *shall come, and shall build in the Temple of the Lord*, namely, the Universal Church of Christ (S. Cyril), and do homage to Him. "All kings shall bow down before Him, all nations shall do Him service" (Ps. lxxii. 11). "The Kings of Tarshish and of the isles shall give presents, the Kings of Arabia and Saba shall bring gifts" (Ps. lxxii. 10). They shall cast their crowns down before Him. Therefore, the crowns or diadems here mentioned are described as a *memorial in the Temple of the Lord*, they were typical of what would take place hereafter, and they are inscribed with certain significant names, i. e. *Helem*, or *Chelem* (strength); and *Tobijah* (pleasing to the Lord); and *Jedaiah* (whom the Lord knows); and *Chen* (grace); the son of *Zephaniah* (whom the Lord hides and protects). These names indicate the moral qualifications of those whose offerings will be accepted by Christ, "Per singulas virtutes nostras Dominus coronatur" (S. Jerome). Christ is crowned with gold and silver diadems of our faith and good works, and with the glory of our salvation (S. Cyril).

The following excellent remarks on these prophecies of Zechariah may here be submitted to the reader:—

"The first return of the Jewish people from Babylon was not to security and peace. Their establishment was opposed by the jealousy of the Samaritans, and the hatred of other surrounding enemies; the rebuilding of their Temple and their Walls was forcibly interrupted and delayed. The struggle affected their promised restoration as a Church and People; and the exercise of their religion was at stake in it.

"But Prophecy was instructed to supply the encouragement which the conflict of their misfortunes required. It did so by assurances of the repression of their enemies, and the complete re-establishment of their City, Temple, and public peace. 'Thus saith the Lord, I am returned to Jerusalem with mercies; My house shall be built in it, saith the Lord of Hosts, and a line shall be stretched forth upon Jerusalem. My cities through prosperity shall yet be spread abroad, and the Lord shall yet comfort Zion, and shall yet choose Jerusalem' (Zech. i. 16, 17). 'For thus saith the Lord of Hosts; As I thought to punish you, when your fathers provoked Me to wrath, saith the Lord of Hosts, and I repented not; so again have I thought in these days to do well unto Jerusalem and to the house of Judah: fear ye not' (viii. 14, 15).

"Such is the general scope of Haggai and Zechariah's predictions, as they relate to the affairs of the Jewish people.

"But these prophets introduce also the Gospel-subject; Zechariah especially, in mystic vision and by typical representation, which yet are sufficiently clear, as expressive of the Kingdom of the Christian Church, and the concourse of Nations resorting to that future Temple. For here, in this era, we have a second application of the same systematic form of prophecy which was employed in the establishment of the Temporal Kingdom. The nearer subject, in each instance, supplies the prophetic ground, and the prophetic images, for the future Christian subject.

"In the first instance, the Kingdom of Christ is delineated in connexion with, and by analogy to, the actual kingdom which was seen before men's eyes rising to view. In the second instance, His personal Priesthood, and His Church, are delineated

in connexion with, and by an equal analogy to, the Priesthood and Temple of the Hebrew Church, at the time when the Priesthood was reinstated in its functions, and that Temple was rebuilt.

"As an example of this symbolical prediction, founded upon the present scene of things, consider the following oracle of Zechariah:—

"The prophet had been commanded to take silver and gold, and make crowns, and set them, or set one of them, upon the head of Joshua, the son of Josedech, the high priest, and then to deliver this prophecy: 'Thus speaketh the Lord of hosts, saying, Behold the Man whose name is the BRANCH and He shall grow up out of this place (or, there shall be a growth out of His place), and He shall build the Temple of the Lord: Even He shall build the Temple of the Lord, and He shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon His throne, and the counsel of peace shall be between them both;' and 'the crown shall be for a memorial in the Temple of the Lord. And they that are afar off shall come and build in the Temple of the Lord, and ye shall know that the Lord of Hosts hath sent me unto you. And this shall come to pass if ye will diligently obey the voice of the Lord your God' (Zech. vi. 10—15).

"This oracle, I think, will justify and sustain the character I have assigned to it. Its mystic form, its sublime and emphatic spirit, its promise of glory, its union of the Priesthood and the Throne, its appointed memorial of the crown to be laid up in the Temple of the Lord, its assemblage of builders from afar, absolutely refuse to be confined to the literal idea of the present work of the Jewish restoration, in their national increase, their Priesthood, and their Temple. The whole principle of the prophecy meets us in the face, first in its ground of analogy, and next in its proper extent, an extent wherein it leaves the inferior subject, from which it springs, far behind.

"In truth, there is both reason and sublimity in Prophecy; and we shall scarcely understand it, unless we are prepared to follow it in both. Its sublimity is, that it often soars, as here, far above the scene from which it takes its rise. Its reason is, that it still hovers over the scene of things from which it rose. It takes the visible, or the temporal, subject as its point of departure (if I may borrow the phrase) for its enlarged revelation; and yet by that subject it governs its course.

"In this method of it, I believe that men of plain unsophisticated reason find it perfectly intelligible; and that it is only the false fastidiousness of an artificial learning which puts the scruple into our perceptions either of its consistency, or its sense. But when we consider that this structure of Prophecy, founded on a proximate visible subject, had the advantage, both in the aptitude of the representation, and in the immediate pledge of the future truth; a sounder learning may dispose us to admit it, and that with confidence, whenever the prophetic text, or mystic vision, is impatient for the larger scope, and the conspicuous characters of the Symbol and the Fact concur in identifying the relation" (Davison on Prophecy, pp. 230—232).

Again, the same writer thus speaks:—

"The predictions joined with the building of Solomon's Temple are of a simpler kind; perhaps they relate purely and solely to the Temple itself. But the second Temple rises with a different structure of prophecy upon it. Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi have each delivered some symbolical predictions connected with it, or with its Priesthood and Worship.

"Why this difference in the two cases? I think the answer is clear; it is a difference obviously related to the nearer connexion which the second Temple has with the Gospel.

"When God gave them their First Temple it was doomed to fall, and rise again, under and during their first economy. The older prophecy, therefore, was directed to the proper history of the First Temple.

"But when He gave them their Second Temple, Christianity was then nearer in view; through that second edifice lay the Gospel prospect. Its restoration, therefore, was marked by a kind of prophecy which had its vision towards the Gospel. And a great confirmation is derived to all this view of the structure of prophecy from the following fact, when it is deliberately weighed and examined. In the days of David and Solomon, when the temporal Kingdom was set up, the Christian Kingdom was copiously and eminently foretold at the same time; but it

¹⁵ And ^r they that are far off shall come
And build in the temple of the LORD,
And ^e ye shall know that the LORD of hosts hath sent me unto you.
And this shall come to pass,
If ye will diligently obey the voice of the LORD your God.

Before
CHRIST
519.
r Isa. 57. 19.
& 60. 10.
Eph. 2. 13. 19.
s ch. 2. 9. & 4. 9.

VII. ¹ And it came to pass in the fourth year of king Darius, that the word of the LORD came unto Zechariah in the fourth day of the ninth month, even in Chisleu; ² when they had sent unto the house of God Sherezzer and Regemmelech, and their men, † to pray before the LORD, ³ and to ^a speak unto the priests which were in the house of the LORD of hosts, and to the prophets, saying, Should I weep in ^b the fifth month, separating myself, as I have done these so many years?

518.

⁴ Then came the word of the LORD of hosts unto me, saying, ⁵ Speak unto all the people of the land, and to the priests, saying, When ye ^c fasted and mourned in the fifth ^d and seventh month, ^e even those seventy years, did ye at all fast ^f unto me, even to me? ⁶ And when ye did eat, and when ye did drink, || did not ye eat for yourselves, and drink for yourselves? ⁷ || Should ye not hear the words which the LORD hath cried † by the former prophets, when Jerusalem was inhabited and in prosperity, and the cities thereof round about her, when men inhabited ^g the south and the plain?

† Heb. to intreat the face of the LORD;
1 Sam. 13. 12. ch. 8. 21.
a Deut. 17. 9, 10, 11. & 33. 10.
Mal. 2. 7.
b Jer. 52. 12. ch. 8. 19.
c Isa. 58. 5.
d Jer. 41. 1. ch. 9. 19.
e ch. 1. 12.
f See Rom. 14. 6.
|| Or, be not ye they that, &c.
|| Or, Are not these the words.
† Heb. by the hand of, &c.
g Jer. 17. 26.

⁸ And the word of the LORD came unto Zechariah, saying, ⁹ Thus speaketh the LORD of hosts, saying, ^h † Execute true judgment, and shew mercy and compassions every man to his brother: ¹⁰ and ⁱ oppress not the widow, nor the

Matt. 23. 23. † Heb. Judge judgment of truth. i Exod. 22. 21, 22. Deut. 24. 17. Isa. 1. 17. Jer. 5. 28.

cannot be said that the Temple set up in those same days had an equal illustration of Christian prophecy cast upon it. The temporal kingdom, which was then beginning its course, was not to be restored, after it should once be taken away. But the Temple was destined to fall, and be restored. Hence it should appear that the first institution of the kingdom, and the second building of the Temple, were equally the seasons wherein the Christian prophecy, connected with each of those ordinances, might be found with the most clear and significant adaptation. And such is the actual case: such the date of the respective predictions joined with and grounded upon the Jewish Kingdom and Temple. Proceeding from these two distant points in the first Economy, Prophecy, in each, directs our view to that era which unites together the Temple and the Kingdom, and completes the divine promises and predictions, engrafted upon both, in the Church and Kingdom of Christ" (Davison on Prophecy, p. 237).

^{15. they that are far off}] Distant nations, symbolized by these emissaries from Babylon, shall come and build in the Temple of the Lord, the Church of Christ universal. See Isa. lx. 10.
— this shall come to pass, if ye will diligently obey] It shall surely come to pass; but it shall be fulfilled only to those who believe and obey the Gospel preached to them.

PROPHETIC REBUKES FOR SIN, ESPECIALLY HYPOCRISY.
THE MORAL VIRTUES ARE WHAT GOD REQUIRES. FASTING IS PROFITLESS WITHOUT OBEDIENCE.

CH. VII.] Zechariah's seven typical and prophetic visions are succeeded by practical instructions. All theological mysteries are consummated in holiness and love.

1. In the fourth year of king Darius—in Chisleu] Two years after the resumption of the building of the Temple, and two years before it was finished. This prophecy is separated from the foregoing by an interval of nearly two years.

The month Chisleu, the ninth month, coincided nearly with our December. See above, on Ezra x. 9. Neh. i. 1.

2. When they had sent unto the house of God] Hebr. Beth-el. There are four different renderings of this passage.

- (1) They sent to Bethel.
- (2) They sent to the house of God.
- (3) Bethel (i.e. the inhabitants of it) sent.
- (4) The House (or congregation of God) sent.

On the whole, the second interpretation, that in the text, seems preferable. The sense is: "They sent" (literally, one sent) "to the house of God," which was thus far advanced to completion. So Vulg., R. Salomon, Valabius, Pagninus, A. Lapide.

Compare Judges xx. 26, where there is the same difference of rendering; and Judges xxi. 2.

3. Should I weep in the fifth month, separating myself] From food and other enjoyments. Shall I continue to weep and fast in the fifth month, on the tenth day, when the Temple was destroyed by the Babylonians? See above, on Jer. lii. 12, 13. Shall I do this now, when the Temple is rising from its ruins?

— as I have done these so many years] They did well to fast, but not to boast of their fasting and self-mortification. Here is a symptom of that Pharisaical reliance on outward works of religion, which reached its height in our Lord's age (Matt. vi. 16. Luke xiii. 13) and became almost as detrimental to vital religion as idolatry had been in the age before the Captivity. The Jews suffered for each of these sins, in different times: Idolatry was the cause of their captivity at Babylon, Pharisaism led to their destruction by the arms of Rome. Surely it is a miserable condition for a Church, when both these sins (idolatry and Pharisaism) are combined in her. What then will the end be?

5. ye fasted—in the fifth and seventh month] In the fifth month for the destruction of Jerusalem, in the seventh month for the murder of Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, the Governor who was set over the Jews by Nebuchadnezzar. See above, on Jer. xli. 1.
— did ye—fast unto me] No; ye fasted to yourselves. Your fasting was not produced by a deep sense of shame and remorse for sin, as hateful to Me and as the cause of your punishment from Me; it was not a fast of sorrow for My offended Majesty, but for your own punishment. It was not a God-ward sorrow, but a world-ward sorrow (see on 2 Cor. vii. 10). And ye fasted in order that ye might appear unto men to fast (Matt. vi. 16), and in a vain-glorious self-conceit of your own righteousness. Cp. Amos v. 25, "Have ye offered unto Me sacrifices and offerings in the wilderness forty years?" No, ye offered them not to Me, but to the idols which ye made for yourselves to worship.

6. And when ye did eat] Ye did eat for yourselves, for your own self-indulgence; not praising Me for your food, and not setting apart thank-offerings from your abundance, to Me, and to the poor.

7. the south] Hebr. negeb. The region to the south of Judah (Josh. xv. 21. 47).

— the plain] Hebr. Shephêlah. The lowland, on the Mediterranean Sea (Josh. xv. 33).

9, 10. Execute true judgment] This is the fast which God requires, and without which all fasting is useless, nay, is even an hypocritical abomination in His sight. Fast from sin, and do what is right in His eyes. Cp. Isa. lviii. 6, 7.

Before
CHRIST
518.
P s. 26, 4.
Micah 2. 1.
ch. 8. 17.
1 Nch. 9. 29.
Jer. 7. 21.
Hos. 4. 16.
† Heb. *th u gave a*
including
shon der.
+ Heb. *made*
holy.
in Acts 7. 57.
n Ezek. 11. 19. &
26. 26.
o Nch. 9. 29. 30.
† Heb. *by the*
hand of.
p 2 Chron. 36. 15.
Dan. 9. 11.
q Prov. 1. 21—23.
Isa. 1. 13.
Jer. 11. 11. & 11.
12.
Micah 2. 4.
r Deut. 1. 27 &
28. 44.
Ezek. 36. 19.
ch. 2. 6.
s Deut. 28. 33.
t Lev. 26. 22.
u Dan. 8. 9.
† Heb. *land of*
desire.
a Nahum 1. 2.
ch. 1. 14.
b ch. 1. 15.
c ch. 2. 10.
d Isa. 1. 21. 26.
e Isa. 2. 2. 3.
f Jer. 21. 23.
g See 1 Sam. 2. 31.
Isa. 65. 20. 22.
h Lam. 2. 20. 26.
i S. 5. 11—14.
† Heb. *f r multi-*
tude of days.

† Or, *hard, or*
difficult.
h Gen. 18. 11.
Luke 1. 37. & 18.
27.
Rom. 4. 21.

fatherless, the stranger, nor the poor; ^k and let none of you imagine evil against his brother in your heart.

¹¹ But they refused to hearken, and ^{1†} pulled away the shoulder, and ^{†m} stopped their ears, that they should not hear. ¹² Yea, they made their hearts as an adamant stone, ^o lest they should hear the law, and the words which the LORD of hosts hath sent in his spirit [†] by the former prophets: ^p therefore came a great wrath from the LORD of hosts.

¹³ Therefore it is come to pass, *that* as he cried, and they would not hear; so ^q they cried, and I would not hear, saith the LORD of hosts: ¹⁴ but ^r I scattered them with a whirlwind among all the nations ^s whom they knew not. Thus ^t the land was desolate after them, that no man passed through nor returned: for they laid ^u the [†] pleasant land desolate.

VIII. ¹ Again the word of the LORD of hosts came *to me*, saying,

² Thus saith the LORD of hosts;

^a I was jealous for Zion with great jealousy,
And I was jealous for her with great fury.

³ Thus saith the LORD; ^b I am returned unto Zion,
And ^c will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem:

And Jerusalem ^d shall be called a city of truth;

And ^e the mountain of the LORD of hosts ^f the holy mountain.

⁴ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; ^g There shall yet old men and old women dwell in the streets of Jerusalem, and every man with his staff in his hand [†] for very age. ⁵ And the streets of the city shall be full of boys and girls playing in the streets thereof.

⁶ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; If it be ^{||} marvellous in the eyes of the remnant of this people in these days, ^h should it also be marvellous in mine eyes? saith the LORD of hosts.

Here is a preparation for Our Lord's teaching in the Gospel; and for the woes pronounced by Him on that proud, self-righteous, pharisaical spirit, which brought down God's wrath upon Jerusalem. "Woe unto you, Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites, for ye pay tithes of mint and anise and cummin, and have omitted the weightier matters of the law, judgment, mercy, and faith; these ought ye to have done, and not to leave the other undone" (Matt. xxiii. 23).

14. *they laid the pleasant land* (literally *the land of desire*) *desolate*. They themselves, the Jews, by their sins (rather than the Assyrians and Chaldeans by their arms), made their own land to be a wilderness. "O Israel, thou hast destroyed thyself" (Hos. xiii. 9).

THE BLESSINGS OF OBEDIENCE.

CH. VIII.] In the foregoing address the Prophet has declared the bitter consequences of disobedience to God's moral law: he now proclaims the blessings of obedience.

The rebuilding of the material Temple itself might prove a snare to them. They might be tempted to rely too much on the external forms of religion connected with that sacred fabric. He insists therefore on the need of personal holiness and of vital religion, and he promises to all true believers and faithful worshippers, those eternal blessings and heavenly glories which are bestowed by God on all devout worshippers in the spiritual Zion of the Church of Christ.

2. *I was jealous for Zion*] I glowed with love and zeal for Zion, whom I have espoused to Me, and with indignation against her enemies, who have treated her cruelly. He repeats the words from i. 14, "I am jealous for Jerusalem." Cp. Joel ii. 18, "The Lord will be jealous for His land, and pity His people."

3. *the mountain of the LORD*] The Church of God, "which shall be established in the top of the mountains, and exalted above the hills," in the Gospel Dispensation. See Isa. ii. 2. Micah iv. 1. Ezek. xl. 2.

This prophecy stretches onwards from the Prophet's age to the last days of the world. It received some faint gleams and dim glimpses of fulfilment in his own age, in the restoration of the Temple, and in the rebuilding of the Walls of Jerusalem;

but what was then effected fell very far short of the glorious revelations in this prophecy (see *ex. 6—8. 20—23*). It received a great accession towards its accomplishment after the Death, Resurrection, and Ascension of Christ, and in the Descent of the Holy Ghost on the Day of Pentecost, enabling the Apostles to go forth from Jerusalem and to preach the Gospel to all Nations, and to bring them into the spiritual Zion of Christ's Church, which will be extended to all the world, and be glorified for ever in heaven.

We assert (says an ancient Father) that these prophecies received a partial, preparatory and typical accomplishment under Zerubbabel and Nehemiah, when the people had returned from Babylon, and the Temple and City were rebuilt; but their complete fulfilment is in Christ, and in His Church, which is the true Jerusalem, to which all nations flow from the East and the West, to sit down in the kingdom of God (Matt. viii. 11). In *that* Jerusalem all the blessings that are promised here will be fully realized and enjoyed (*S. Jerome*).

4. *5. old men—boys and girls playing*] This imagery, which represents a time when there is no alarm of war, or plague, or famine, but every thing is peaceful and joyous, describes, in a spiritual sense, the condition of the Church defended by Christ, and enriched with blessings by Him (*S. Jerome*).

4. *every man with his staff*] Men will live long, and will not die by any violent death, but of old age.

6. *If it be marvellous*] *S. Jerome* applies this prophecy to the times of the Church which succeeded the persecutions under the Roman Emperors, specially Diocletian, and says, "Who would have supposed that the same Imperial Power which destroyed our Churches and burnt our Bibles, should now rebuild the former at public expense, in splendour and magnificence of gold and various marbles, and restore the latter in golden, purple, and jewelled bindings (deauratos et purpuratos, et gemmarum varietate distinctos)?" But so it is. No doubt this was one of the marvels comprehended in the prophecy. But the greatest marvel of all is future. It will be in the deliverance of heathen nations from idolatry, and in the conversion of the Jews; and in the union of both in Christ. See what follows, and compare the Evangelical Prophecies of Isa. xi. 11, 12; xliii. 5, 6. Ezek. xxxvii. 21. Hosea ii. 19. Amos ix. 14. Mal. i. 11.

⁷ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; Behold, ¹ I will save my people from the east country, and from † the west country; ⁸ and I will bring them, and they shall dwell in the midst of Jerusalem: ⁹ and they shall be my people, and I will be their God, ¹ in truth and in righteousness.

⁹ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; ^m Let your hands be strong, ye that hear in these days these words by the mouth of ⁿ the prophets, which *were* in ^o the day *that* the foundation of the house of the LORD of hosts was laid, that the temple might be built. ¹⁰ For before these days || there was no ^p hire for man, nor any hire for beast; ^q neither *was there any peace* to him that went out or came in because of the affliction: for I set all men every one against his neighbour. ¹¹ But now I *will not be* unto the residue of this people as in the former days, saith the LORD of hosts. ¹² ^r For the seed *shall be* † prosperous; the vine shall give her fruit, and ^s the ground shall give her increase, and ^t the heavens shall give their dew; and I will cause the remnant of this people to possess all these *things*. ¹³ And it shall come to pass, *that* as ye were ^u a curse among the heathen, O house of Judah, and house of Israel; so will I save you, and ^v ye shall be a blessing: fear not, *but* ^w let your hands be strong. ¹⁴ For thus saith the LORD of hosts; ^x As I thought to punish you, when your fathers provoked me to wrath, saith the LORD of hosts, ^y and I repented not: ¹⁵ so again have I thought in these days to do well unto Jerusalem and to the house of Judah: fear ye not.

¹⁶ These *are* the things that ye shall do; ^b Speak ye every man the truth to his neighbour; † execute the judgment of truth and peace in your gates: ¹⁷ ^c and let none of you imagine evil in your hearts against his neighbour; and ^d love no false oath: for all these *are things* that I hate, saith the LORD.

¹⁸ And the word of the LORD of hosts came unto me, saying, ¹⁹ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; ^e The fast of the fourth *month*, ^f and the fast of the fifth, ^g and the fast of the seventh, ^h and the fast of the tenth, shall be to the house of Judah ⁱ joy and gladness, and cheerful || feasts; ^k therefore love the truth and peace.

²⁰ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; *It shall yet come to pass*, that there shall come people, and the inhabitants of many cities: ²¹ and the inhabitants of one city shall go to another, saying, ¹ Let us go || † speedily † to pray before the LORD, and to seek the LORD of hosts: I will go also. ²² Yea, ^m many people and strong nations shall come to seek the LORD of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the LORD.

²³ Thus saith the LORD of hosts; In those days *it shall come to pass*, that ten

Before
CHRIST
518.
i Isa. 11 11, 12.
& 43. 5, 6.
Ezek. 37. 21.
Amos 9. 14, 15.
† Heb. the country
of the going down
of the sun: See
Ps. 50. 1. & 113. 3.
Mal. 1. 11.
k Jer. 30. 22. &
31. 1, 33.
ch. 13. 9.
l Jer. 4. 2.
m Hag. 2. 4.
ver. 18.
n Ezra 5. 1. 2.
o Hag. 2. 18.
|| Or, the hire of
man became
nothing, &c.
p Hag. 1. 6, 9, 10.
& 2. 15.
q 2 Chron. 15. 5.
r Hos. 2. 21, 22.
Jed. 2. 22.
Hag. 2. 19.
† Heb. of peace.
s Ps. 67. 6.
t See Hag. 1. 10.

u Jer. 42. 18.
x Gen. 12. 2.
Ruth 4. 11, 12.
Isa. 19. 24, 25.
Zeph. 3. 20.
Hag. 2. 19.
y ver. 9.
z Jer. 31. 28.
a 2 Chron. 36. 16.
ch. 1. 6.

b ch. 7. 9.
ver. 19.
Eph. 4. 25.
† Heb. judge truth,
and the judgment
of peace.
c Prov. 3. 29.
ch. 7. 10.
& ch. 5. 3, 4.

e Jer. 52. 6, 7.
f Jer. 52. 12, 13.
ch. 7. 3, 5.
g 2 Kings 25. 25.
Jer. 41. 1, 2.
h Jer. 52. 4.
i Esth. 8. 17.
Isa. 35. 10.
|| Or, solemn, or,
set times.
k ver. 16.

l Isa. 2. 3.
Micah 4. 1, 2.
|| Or, continually.
† Heb. going.
† Heb. to intreat
the face of the
LORD.
ch. 7. 2.
m Isa. 60. 3, &c.
& 66. 23.

7. *from the east—and—west*] As our Lord says, "Many shall come from the east and from the west, and shall sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in the Kingdom of God" (Matt. viii. 11). Cp. Isa. xlix. 12.

10. *before these days*] The prosperity of Judah dates from the time of the resumption of its work of rebuilding the Temple of the Lord. See Haggai ii. 18. This temporal prosperity was a pledge and earnest of those greater spiritual blessings which will be the unfailing and eternal reward of faith and obedience. — *no hire*] No wages; all labour was fruitless. Cp. Hag. i. 6. 9—11; ii. 16. 19.

12. *the seed shall be prosperous*] If such are the blessings pronounced by God to the builders of the typical and material fabric of the Temple of Jerusalem, which was to be destroyed (cp. Hag. ii. 19), how much greater are the rewards assured by Him to those who edify and enlarge the spiritual antitype—the Christian Church—which will last for ever!

19. *The fast of the fourth month*] On the ninth day of it, in the eleventh year of Zedekiah, when Nebuchadnezzar took Jerusalem. See Jer. xxxix. 2; lli. 6, 7.

— *fifth—seventh*] See above, on vii. 5.

— *tenth*] When the siege of Jerusalem was begun, in the ninth year of Zedekiah (Jer. xxxix. 1).

— *shall be—cheerful feasts*] Ye will no longer have occasion to mourn over the destruction of Jerusalem: rather, ye will rejoice that the transitory splendours of the material temple and city have passed away, being transfigured into the everlasting glory of the universal Church of Christ, which has risen up from the ruins of the literal Jerusalem, and extends itself far and wide so as to embrace the world. Cp. Isa. xxxv. 10.

The Jews cannot consistently assert that these prophecies were fulfilled in Zerubbabel, and in the rebuilding of the material Temple by him. If so, why do they still mourn over the destruction of the Temple? All the four days mentioned by Zechariah are still days of fasting and mourning to them. They have *not* been changed to *them* into "cheerful feasts." But they are so changed to *us* who dwell in the spiritual Sion of Christ's Church; and they will be so changed to the Jews when they turn to Christ.

20—22.] These prophecies, which foretell the flowing in of all Nations to Jerusalem, to offer sacrifices there, are fulfilled in the conversion of the Jews to Christianity, and in their reception into the spiritual Sion of the Church of Christ (S. Cyril, Theodoret, Rupertus, Hugo, S. Jerome).

23. *ten men—out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew*] The prophet hastens

Before
CHRIST
518.
n Isa. 8. 6. & 4. 1.
o 1 Cor. 14. 25.
about
517.
a Jer. 23. 33.

men shall "take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard ° that God is with you.

IX¹ The ^aburden of the word of the Lord in the land of Hadrach,

from the type to the antitype ("Propheta avolat a typo ad antitypum") from Jerusalem to the Church of Christ (*A Lapide*).

Some (as *S. Cyril*) interpret this as a prophecy of the time when many will join themselves to Christian believers, who are the genuine Jews and the true Israelites of God (Gal. vi. 15); as St. Paul says, "He is not a Jew, which is one outwardly; neither is that circumcision, which is outward in the flesh: but he is a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter" (Rom. ii. 28, 29. Phil. iii. 3); and the eagerness with which a large number of converts will flock from all parts to the Church of Christ, is represented by the statement that ten men out of all nations will take hold of the skirt of one believer in Christ, and say, "We will go with you." Cp. *Kliefoth*, 107.

But we must rise higher. This is a prophecy that all Nations will lay hold, by faith, on the hem of the garment of CHRIST, the Lord and Saviour of all (*S. Jerome*). Christ came of the Tribe of Judah, and was made "under the Law" (Gal. iv. 4). "Salvation is of the Jews" (John iv. 22). Ten is a number of completeness (*S. Cyril*). The words of the prophet may best be explained from the similar language of Isaiah, "In that day, seven women shall take hold of one man (Isa. iv. 1, where see the note). To take hold of the skirt, literally, wing (Hebr. *cânaph*) is an expression full of meaning, and runs through both Testaments, with special reference, of a typical and prophetic character, to Christ. To Him devout and faithful souls come, and lay hold of the hem of His garment, and virtue goes ever from Him to lead them. See Matt. ix. 20; xiv. 36. Here is a beautiful picture of the act of faith, in all ages and countries, which lays hold of Christ in prayer, in Scriptures, and in Sacraments; and receives spiritual comfort, pardon and grace, and life eternal from Him Who is the one Fountain and Well-spring of all our health and joy.

It is Christ, Who, by His Godhead joined indissolubly to the Manhood in His Person, protects the faithful soul which lays hold of the skirt, literally, the wing, of His garment: as Ruth the Moabitess, the future bride, the type of the Church coming from the Gentile world, was covered with the skirt of Boaz, the type of Christ. See above, on Ruth iii. 9. It is He Who, by His incarnation, cleanses all who lay hold of His skirt, or wing. See above, on Hag. ii. 12. It is Christ Who, by virtue of His perfect purity, arises as the *Sun of righteousness with healing in His wings* (Mal. iv. 2, where see the note).

In all these places the same word (wing) *cânaph* is used.

PRELIMINARY NOTE TO CHAPTERS IX.—XIV. OF ZECHARIAH.

There is a difference between the portion of this Book which has preceded, and that which follows.

In the former portion, a series of sublime visions has been presented to the view; henceforward not a single vision occurs. In the former part, we have seen the ministry of angels; no angel appears in this latter part.

It has been alleged by some, that this second portion of this Book was composed by a different person from the author of the former part; and by a writer who lived at an earlier period.

This theory was propounded by the learned *Joseph Mede* (Epist. xxxi.), grounding an argument on the fact that a prophecy which is found in chapter xi. 12, is ascribed by St. Matthew (xxvii. 9) to Jeremiah. Mede was followed in this opinion by *Hunmound*, *Kidder*, *Newcome* (see the note in his edition of the Minor Prophets, p. 303, ed. 1809), and others.

It is not to be forgotten, that though those critics assigned this second portion to an earlier writer than Zechariah, they all recognized its inspiration and canonicity. The arguments adduced by most of them were considered and refuted by *Blayney*, in his edition of Zechariah, Oxford, 1797. But since that time the genuineness of this latter portion has been impugned in Germany by *Bertholdt*, *De Wette*, and others, who ascribe it to the Zechariah mentioned in Isaiah viii. 2.

Other critics, as *Eichhorn*, *Corrodi*, and *Gramberg*, have gone into the opposite extreme, and have assigned this second portion to a writer later than Zechariah, i. e. to a time posterior to the return from the Captivity.

These two opposite parties might well be left to answer one another; and if the reader is desirous to see the evidence fairly and fully stated for the genuineness and integrity of Zechariah,

and to see an answer to the objections raised against it, he may consult the work of *Hengstenberg* on the subject ("Dissertations on the Genuineness of Daniel, and Integrity of Zechariah," Engl. Trans., Edin. 1848); *Hävernick*, Einleit. p. 408, and even *De Wette*, in the last edition of his Einleit.; also the remarks of *Kliefoth*, 286, and of *Keil* (Introd. to Zechariah, p. 519, German edition).

In refutation of those theories it may be observed, that Zechariah lived at the time when the Canon of Holy Scripture was just on the point of completion by Ezra and others, and it is not at all probable, that his contemporaries, who collected the Canon, would make a large addition to his known writings, and call that addition by his name: the fact, that they, who lived in his age, called the whole Book by the name Zechariah, is a strong argument for its genuineness and integrity. To this consideration may be added, that, whereas in the writings of the more ancient prophets, as Isaiah and Micah, the spiritual deliverance to be wrought by the Messiah is connected with the temporal deliverance of Judah from Assyria and Babylon (because those nations were the enemies of Judah in those earlier days), this is not the case in Zechariah; he grounds his prophecies of redemption by Christ on predictions of the deliverance of Israel and Judah, by the valour of the Maccabees, from the arms of Syria or of Greece. See ix. 13.

Every thing in the latter portion harmonizes with the former portion. The seven prophecies in the one grow out of the seven visions in the other; and every thing in the latter, as well as in the former portion of this book of Zechariah, bespeaks an author who lived after the dissolution of the kingdom of the Ten Tribes of Israel, and also after the humiliation of the monarchy of Judah, and when the schism between Israel and Judah was healed, and all the Tribes looked to Jerusalem as their centre and their home; and at a time also when the glories of Egypt, Assyria, and Babylon had waned and faded away; and when the people of Judah had returned from captivity to Jerusalem, and were looking forward to the Advent of the Messiah, with no external obstacles and impediments between themselves and the kingdom of Christ, except those which were produced by those enemies whose rise and dominion were either contemporary with, or subsequent to, the days of Zechariah.

WOE TO ALL THE WORLDLY POWERS WHICH ARE OPPOSED TO GOD.—THE LAND OF HADRACH.

CH. IX. 1. *The burden*] The prophetic message of woe. See above, on Isaiah xiii. 1. The burden signifies a denunciation of suffering, "verbum grave, et ponderis et laboris plenum" (*S. Jerome*, *Kliefoth*).

— *the land of Hadrach*] Hadrach is not a literal appellative of any specific region, as has been supposed by some (*Gesenius*, *Bleek*, *Maurer*, *Ebrard*, *Michaelis*, *Rosenmüller*, and others), but is a symbolical name (as *S. Jerome* has observed, and so *Hengst.*, *Kliefoth*, and *Keil*) which designates the worldly Power at that time dominant, namely, Persia, which was then *powerful*, but was to be *weakened* by God using the arms of Greece, first at Marathon (B.C. 490), then at Salamis (B.C. 480), and at Plataea (B.C. 479), and Mycale (B.C. 478); and afterwards at Granicus (B.C. 331), at Issus (B.C. 333), and at Arbela (B.C. 331), in the conquests of Alexander the Great, who captured Persepolis and Ecbatana (B.C. 330), and finally died at Babylon (B.C. 323.)

The Prophet had good reason to veil the hostile power of Persia under a symbolic name, as, in later days, St. Paul concealed the Roman Empire under the phrase, "He that now letteth." See below, on 2 Thess. ii. 7.

The word *Hadrach* is formed from two Hebrew words, viz. *had*, or *chad*, sharp, active, strong; and *rach*, soft, weak. "*Ad-rach*" (says *S. Jerome*) "ex duobus integris nomen compositum; Ad, acutum, RACH, molle tenerumque significans." It designates the worldly Power once *strong*, but to be made *weak*. It may be compared to the Greek word *oxy-moron*.

This name, *Hadrach*, may also be compared with other symbolical names in the prophetic Books of the Old Testament, and applied by the Prophets to persons, nations, and cities, and expressive of their character or their destiny; such as *Jareb*, a name for the king of Assyria (see Nah. v. 13; x. 6); *Huzzab*, a name for Nineveh (see Nah. ii. 7); *Sheshach*, a name

- And ^b *Damascus shall be the rest thereof* :
 When ^c the eyes of man, as of all the tribes of Israel, *shall be toward the LORD*.
² And ^d *Hamath also shall border thereby* ;
 "Tyrus, and ^f *Zidon, though it be very* ^g *wise*.
³ And Tyrus did build herself a strong hold,
 And ^h *heaped up silver as the dust,*
 And fine gold as the mire of the streets.
⁴ Behold, ⁱ the LORD will cast her out,
 And he will smite ^k her power in the sea ;
 And she shall be devoured with fire.
⁵ ^l *Ashkelon shall see it, and fear* ;
 Gaza also *shall see it*, and be very sorrowful,
 And Ekron ; for her expectation shall be ashamed ;
 And the king shall perish from Gaza,

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

b Amos 1. 3.
c Chron. 20. 12.
Ps. 145. 15.
d Jer. 49. 23.
e Isa. 23.
Ezek. 26, & 27,
& 28.
Amos 1. 9.
f 1 Kings 17. 9.
Ezek. 28. 21.
Obad. 20.
g Ezek. 28. 3, &c.
h Job 27. 16.
Ezek. 28. 4, 5.
i Isa. 23. 1.
k Ezek. 26. 17.

l Jer. 47. 1, 5.
Zeph. 2. 4.

for Babylon (see Jer. xxv. 26) ; *Pekod* and *Merathaim*, also names for Babylon (see Jer. i. 21. Ezek. xxiii. 23) ; *Dumah*, a name for Edom (Isa. xxi. 11) ; *Maktesh*, a name for Jerusalem (see Zeph. i. 11). See also the notes above, on the words *Gareb* and *Goth* (Jer. xxxi. 39), and *Shua* and *Koa* (Ezek. xxiii. 23), and the Valley of *Jehoshaphat* (Joel iii. 2), and *Azal* (below, xiv. 5), and the remarks above on symbolical names in the Song of Solomon ; see *Introd.* to Canticles, pp. 125, 126.

Hadrach is the designation of the Powers of this world generally (of which Persia was a specimen), strong for a while and proudly exulting in their strength, and opposing God, and persecuting His Church, and in His due time to be laid low and to be broken in pieces by Him. How many Hadrachs are now vaunting themselves as if they were all-powerful ! how many are raging against Him, and how terrible will be their downfall !

— *Damascus shall be the rest thereof*] The woe from God shall fall, and rest not only on Persia, but on Damascus, the capital of Syria. This was fulfilled primarily in the conquests of Alexander's General, Parmenio, in that country, B.C. 333. See *re*. 2, 3.

For a learned commentary on the first eight verses of this chapter, see *Dean Jackson* on the Creed, book viii., chap. xvii., who shows that those prophecies were accomplished by Alexander the Great, and in the victories of the Maccabees in Philistia (1 Macc. x. 88 ; xi. 60, 61 ; xiii. 33—52). A recent writer thus comments on this passage :—

" In this chapter is a distinct prediction of the conflict of the Jews (i.e. under the Maccabees) with the Greeks, (i.e. Antiochus Epiphanes), and of their victories over them. And, before this war, there is a prophecy of a heavy calamity, which falls in succession upon Damascus, Hamath, Tyre, Zidon, and the maritime cities of Philistia, Ashkelon, Gaza, Ekron, Ashdod ; in which calamity the temple of God was to be guarded, not by human power, but by His unseen Presence. *I will encamp about mine house, because of the army, because of him that passeth by, and because of him that returneth* (Zech. ix. 8). And this, while God should smite the power of Tyre in the sea. The selection of the places and of the whole line of country corresponds very exactly to the march of Alexander after the battle of Issus, when the capture of Damascus, which Darius had chosen as the strong depository of his wealth, of Persian women of rank, confidential officers and envoys (*Grote*, Greece, xii. 173), opened Coele-Syria ; Zidon surrendered ; Tyre, specially marked out by Zechariah (ix. 3), was taken with great effort, after a seven months' siege (*Diod. Sic.* xvii. 40—45. *Arrian*, ii. 16—24. *Q. Curt.* iv. 2) ; Gaza too resisted for five months, was taken, and, it is said, plucked up (*Strabo*, xvi. 2—30) ; but Alexander passed by with his victorious army and returned, and Jerusalem remained uninjured. History gives no other explanation of Zechariah's prophecy than this conquest by Alexander : that conquest agrees minutely with the prophecy. No other event in history does. But, apart from this, the victory of the Jews over the Greeks was, of all events of history, then the most improbable. There was not the most distant likelihood of collision between them ; they had no point of contact. The name of Greece was known to the Jews only as that of one of the many countries which traded with Tyre ; a distant nation, to whom Tyre and Zidon had, in their slave-trade, sold Jewish youths, *that they might remove them far from their border* ; but the guilt and the punishment belonged to Tyre and Zidon, not to them.

Joel had, for this sin, prophesied the punishment of Tyre (iii. 4—6), not of Greece. Eichhorn, whose form of unbelief exempted him from any necessity to explain prophecy of any other than its true object, avowed that this prophecy of Zechariah *did* relate to the march of Alexander and the victories of Jews over Greeks at the later critical period of their history. He said plainly, "The conquests of Alexander are described so clearly that they cannot be mistaken." "In what is said of Tyre, who can mistake Alexander's wonderful conquests ?" "All the chief places, which Alexander, after the battle of Issus, either took possession of or conquered, are named one by one, the land of Hadrach, Damascus and Hamath, Tyre and Zidon, Ashkelon, Gaza, Ekron and Ashdod." Greece was, until Alexander, a colonizing, not a conquering nation ; the Hebrews had no human knowledge of the site of Greece. There was not a little cloud, like a man's hand, when Zechariah thus absolutely foretold the conflict and its issue. Yet here we have a definite prophecy, given later than Daniel, fitting in with his temporal prophecy, expanding a part of it, reaching beyond the time of Antiochus, and fore-announcing the help of God in two definite ways of protection ; (1) *without war*, against the army of Alexander ; (2) *in the war* of the Maccabees ; and those, two of the most critical periods in their history, after the Captivity. Yet, being expansions of part of the prophecy of Daniel, the period to which they belong became clearer in the event by aid of the more comprehensive prophecies. They were two points in the larger prediction of the third empire" (*Dr. Pusey's Lectures* on Daniel, pp. 277—281).

In a spiritual sense, Damascus, the capital of Syria, is another form of worldly power opposed to God ; and so are the other heathen cities here mentioned. See above, on Isaiah xlii., *Prelim. Note*, and Jeremiah xlii. 1.

— *When the eyes of man—toward the LORD*] Some render this, *for the Lord has an eye to man* (that is, to all mankind), and *to all the tribes of Israel* (*Sept.*, *Arab.*, *Targum*, *Syriac*) ; that is, Jehovah, the Lord God of Jerusalem, sees and cares for all Mankind, and especially the tribes of Israel, and controls and disposes all the conquests of armies, and all the destinies of nations, to the advancement of His glory and to the spiritual welfare of His people.

Or the sense may be, *for the eyes of man and of all the tribes of Israel* ought to look to the Lord as their Saviour. Jehovah in Christ is the Redeemer of the World (*Kliefoth*).

2. *Hamath also shall border thereby*] Rather, *Hamath also which borders thereby*. Hamath, the great city of Syria, called "Hamath the great" (Amos vi. 2 ; see Numbers xiii. 21. 2 Kings xviii. 34. Ezek. xlvii. 16), shall suffer with Damascus.

— *Tyrus, and Zidon*] They also shall be humbled. This was fulfilled literally by the conquest of Alexander the Great, B.C. 332, after a seven months' siege. Tyre is a symbol of a particular form of earthly power, opposed to God. See above, on Ezek. xxvii., xxviii., and *Hengst.* here.

— *though it be very wise*] Rather, *because it is very wise* (*Sept.*). Because of its worldly wisdom, it shall be abased. Cp. Isa. xlvii. 10, "Thy wisdom and thy knowledge, it hath perverted thee." Cp. *Kliefoth*, 117.

4. *the LORD will cast her out*] Alexander's victories are due to the Lord, Who beholds and controls all things. See *v.* 1.

5. *Ashkelon shall see it, and fear*] Ashkelon, and the other great cities of Philistia, shall see the fall of Tyre and shall fear for a like fate to themselves. Philistia is another form of hostility

Before
CHRIST

about
517.
m Amos 1. 8.

† Heb. *bloods*.

n Ps. 31. 7.
ch. 2. 5.

o Isa. 60. 18.
Ezek. 28. 24.
p Exod. 3. 7.

q Isa. 62. 11.
ch. 2. 10.
Matt. 21. 5.
John 12. 15.

r Jer. 23. 5. & 30. 9.
Luke 19. 38.
John 1. 49

And Ashkelon shall not be inhabited.

⁶ And a bastard shall dwell ^m in Ashdod,

And I will cut off the pride of the Philistines.

⁷ And I will take away his [†] blood out of his mouth,

And his abominations from between his teeth :

But he that remaineth, even he, *shall be* for our God,

And he shall be as a governor in Judah,

And Ekron as a Jebusite.

⁸ And ⁿ I will encamp about mine house because of the army,

Because of him that passeth by, and because of him that returneth :

And ^o no oppressor shall pass through them any more :

For now ^p have I seen with mine eyes.

⁹ ^q Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion ;

Shout, O daughter of Jerusalem :

Behold, ^r thy King cometh unto thee :

to God. Cp. Amos i. 6—8. Zeph. ii. 4, and Jer. xlvii., which is the groundwork of this prophecy.

⁶. *A bastard shall dwell in Ashdod*] A *bastard*, literally, one whose birth has some blemish in it. In Deut. xxiii. 2, the only other passage where it is found, it may mean a *stranger* (*Gesen.* 480). The sense is, Gaza will be humbled, and her citizens will be superseded and supplanted by a promiscuous immigration of a strange rabble of foreigners.

All these things (*says A. Lapide*) have a mystical fulfilment in Christ and His Church. Christ and His Apostles have subdued the spiritual Philistines to the sway of the Gospel, and have made them to coalesce with the faithful Hebrew remnant in one People of God.

It has been supposed by some, that the words, *a bastard shall dwell*, point to a time when even they who were excommunicated by the Hebrew Law will be admitted, on their faith and repentance, to equal privileges with the Jews in the Church of Christ. See *Kliefoth*, 121.

This prophecy had a literal fulfilment in the victories of Alexander. In a spiritual sense it foretells the overthrow of worldly powers, which imitate Philistia in its sins, especially in its enmity to the Israel of God.

⁷. *I will take away his blood*] I will abolish the idolatrous sacrifices of the Philistines, who feasted on meats offered to their gods in their temples.

BENEFICIAL RESULTS OF ALEXANDER'S VICTORIES. CONVERSION OF THE GENTILES TO CHRIST.

— *he that remaineth—shall be for our God*] Rather, *and even he shall be left*, as a chosen and elect remnant to our God, *and shall be as a ruler in Judah*. That is, even from heathen nations men shall be saved, and be raised to a high place, as brethren, and as governors in the Church of Christ.

— *Ekron as a Jebusite*] The happy effect of this humiliation of the great worldly Powers of Persia, Syria, and Philistia was this, that they lost their confidence in their own false deities, and were prepared to receive a purer faith. The Prophet foretells this, and predicts also, that there will be a faithful remnant among those nations which will turn to the True God; and many among the heathens will become *governors* in Judah; many who were once Gentiles will become Preachers and Missionaries in Christ's Church. Even Ekron itself will become a *Jebusite*, a dweller in Jerusalem, the Church of God. Cp. *S. Cyril* here, and *Kliefoth*, 120.

What has already been observed with regard to the effects of the victories of Assyria, of Nebuchadnezzar, of Persia, and afterwards of Rome (see above, on Isa. xiv. 32; xvi. 1; xix. 23—25; xxiii. 18. Jer. xlviii. 6, 47; xlix. 39. Zeph. iii. 8—10) may also be applied to the conquests of Alexander the Great. They were all made ministerial to the conversion of the heathen from idolatry, and to their reception into the Church of God. See the *Introd.* to the Acts of the Apostles, pp. 7—14.

It would be well if History were written and read with an eye to this great truth, which is continually inculcated by the Holy Spirit in the writings of the Hebrew Prophets. We speak of the “connexion of sacred and profane history;” but *what* history can rightly be called *profane*? What history is there, rightly studied, which is not sacred? What history is there, in

which we may not trace the footsteps of Christ? Alexander the Great was a fore-runner of Christ.

⁸. *I will encamp about mine house*] God here promises to encamp about the Church, says *S. Jerome*, who thus writes here, “These prophecies declare what God says to Christ by the Psalmist, ‘Ask of Me, and I shall give Thee the heathen for Thine inheritance’ (Ps. ii. 8); and again, ‘The daughter of Tyre shall be there with a gift’ (Ps. xlv. 12). This was typified by the faithful woman in the Gospel coming from Tyre and Sidon to Christ, and worshipping Him, and receiving a blessing from Him (Mark vii. 26). In the Acts of the Apostles St. Peter and St. Philip preach in Philistia, and there are Christian Churches there (Acts viii.; ix.; xxi. 3). Philistines will become Preachers of the Gospel, Ekron will become a Jebusite, that is, a citizen, of the spiritual Jerusalem, the Christian Church.” See, therefore, what follows here. We have a vision of the triumphal entry of Christ, the mighty Conqueror—how different from Alexander the Great! and yet reaping the fruit of Alexander's victories, and making them ministerial to His own glory.

CHRIST'S TRIUMPHAL ENTRY INTO JERUSALEM.

⁹. *Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion*] The application of the foregoing prophecies, in a spiritual sense, to Christ and His Church, is corroborated by the fact that we have here a prophecy of Christ's triumphal entry into Jerusalem; we have an assurance to that effect from the Holy Spirit Himself in the Gospels (Matt. xxi. 5. John xii. 15).

Let us consider therefore the connexion of that triumphal entry with what the Prophet has been foretelling in the preceding part of this chapter.

Christ's victories are compared and contrasted with those of Alexander the Great. The conquests of Alexander were effected by fire and sword, and with the physical force of horses and chariots; and their effects were of short duration, except so far as they prepared the way for the Gospel. The victories of Christ are by peaceful and quiet agencies, and their results are universal and everlasting (cp. *Dean Jackson* on the Creed, book viii., chap. xvii., and chap. xviii., where is a commentary on this prophecy).

Observe how this is displayed by Zechariah.

Christ's riding on the young colt, the foal of an ass, in that triumphal procession into Jerusalem, was a figure of His peaceful victory over the heathen world,—typified by the foal of an ass, on which no man had ever ridden, and which was loosed by the Apostles, and brought to Him, and on which they laid their garments, and on which He rode to Jerusalem, the City and Church of God. This had been already foretold by the Patriarch Jacob, predicting the future victories of the Messiah, binding the foal (the figure of the Gentile Church) to the vine (the type of the Hebrew Church). Cp. here, Ps. lxxx. 8; Isa. v. 2; Jer. ii., 21; and see the notes above, on Gen. xlix. 10—12. The circumstances of the fulfilment of that prophecy, which is here repeated in greater fulness by Zechariah, are more specifically detailed in the notes below on the passages in the Gospel describing that fulfilment; to which the reader is requested to refer. See on Matt. xxi. 5—9; Mark xi. 2—10; John xii. 13—15, and *S. Cyril* here. Cp. *S. Justin Martyr*, contra Tryphon. § 53. It is remarkable that St. John's narrative of that triumphal

- He is just, and || having salvation;
 Lowly, and riding upon an ass,
 And upon a colt the foal of an ass.
¹⁰ And I * will cut off the chariot from Ephraim,
 And the horse from Jerusalem,
 And the battle bow shall be cut off:
 And he shall speak 'peace unto the heathen:
 And his dominion *shall be* " from sea *even* to sea,
 And from the river *even* to the ends of the earth.
¹¹ As for thee also, || by the blood of thy covenant
 I have sent forth thy * prisoners out of the pit wherein is no water.
¹² Turn you to the strong hold, ^y ye prisoners of hope:
 Even to day do I declare *that* ^z I will render double unto thee;
¹³ When I have bent Judah for me,

Before
CHRIST
about
517.
|| Or, *saving him-
self.*

s Hos. 1. 7. & 2. 18.
Micah 5. 10.
Hag. 2. 22.

t Eph. 2. 14, 17.

u Ps. 72. 8.

|| Or, *whose cove-
nant is by blood.*
Exod. 24. 8.
Heb. 10. 29.
& 13. 20.
x Isa. 42. 7.
51. 14. & 61. 1.
y Isa. 49. 9.
z Isa. 61. 7.

Entry of Christ, riding into Jerusalem on the foal of an ass (the type of the Gentile world guided by Him into the Jerusalem of the Church), is immediately followed by the mention of an incident in the history: "Certain *Greeks* wished to see Jesus" (v. 20). The Entry itself was like a vision of the coming of the Greeks (i. e. of the Gentile world) to Jesus: these Greeks were its first fruits.

The foal on which Christ rode is followed by the mother; both were brought to Jesus; but Christ rode only on the colt. The Hebrew mother will follow the Gentile colt into the Spiritual Sion of the Christian Church. Cp. Rom. xi. 25, 26, and *S. Cyril* here. — *having salvation*] The Messiah, though lowly and now going to His Passion, is yet endowed with help and power to save both Himself and the whole World from Death; and to destroy all His enemies, and those of His People, by His Death.

— *riding upon an ass, and upon a colt*] Riding, not on a war-horse of victory (like the Bucephalus of Alexander the Great), but upon an ass, yea even (such is His humility) upon a young ass. See on Matt. xxi. 5; John xii. 13.

¹⁰. *I will cut off the chariot from Ephraim*] Although Christ is meek, and rides on the foal of an ass, in the days of His humiliation, into Jerusalem, yet He is a mighty King, and brings salvation with Him; and *will cut off the chariot from Ephraim, and the horse from Jerusalem*. This prophecy declares that the Israel of God (His Church and People) shall dwell safely, and will not need earthly helps and supports (*S. Cyril*); and will no more trust in an arm of flesh, nor rely on chariots and horses, bows and spears, but on the power of Christ their Saviour: as the Psalmist says, "I will not trust in my bow, it is not my sword that shall help me, but it is Thou that savest us from our enemies, and putteth them to confusion that hate us" (Ps. xlv. 7, 8). "Some put their trust in chariots, and some in horses, but we will remember the name of the Lord our God" (Ps. xx. 7). Cp. Hos. i. 7; ii. 18; Micah v. 9, 10, "I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and will destroy thy chariots."

— *he shall speak peace unto the heathen*] A clear prophecy concerning Christ, of whom the Apostle says, "He is our peace, Who hath made both to be one" (i. e. united the heathen and the Jew), "and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us; and came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh" (Eph. ii. 14, 17).

— *his dominion shall be from sea even to sea, and from the river even to the ends of the earth*] The Prophet takes up the words of the Psalm, probably written by Solomon, the *peaceable king*—describing the work of his great Antitype, Christ, the Prince of Peace; see above on Psalm lxvii. 1. 8.

¹¹. *As for thee also, by the blood of thy covenant—no water*] Thou also, O daughter of Zion, for the sake, or by means, of the blood of thy covenant (that is, of the covenant made with thee), *I have delivered thy captives out of the pit wherein is no water*.

This is the true rendering of the passage, and not (*Fulg.* and *Sept.*) *thou hast delivered*, which is repugnant to the Hebrew original.

The Messiah here speaks to Sion, and declares the deliverance which He works for her by His own blood, shed on the Cross. God admitted the Israel of old into covenant with Him by blood at Sinai, when He delivered them from Egypt (see above, on Exod. xxiv. 5—8); and, as the Apostle teaches, this transitory covenant by blood, at the Exodus from a literal bondage, was a figure of the blood of Christ—the blood of the

Everlasting Covenant (Heb. xiii. 20), by which His People are delivered from the bondage of sin (Heb. x. 14—23).

By appointing this chapter to be read on *Easter Even*, the Church has happily led us to recognize the true meaning of these words; namely, that Mankind was like Joseph in the pit where no water was (Gen. xxxvii. 24), and was like the prophet Jeremiah in the pit where was no water, but mire (see on Jer. xxxviii. 6); and that Christ, by His Death and Burial, descended into that pit (as He Himself says by the Psalmist in the Paschal Psalm, lxix. 2, "I sink in the deep mire where no ground is"), and raised Himself from it; and by His Resurrection, He, Who is "the first-begotten of the dead," "the firstfruits of them that slept" (1 Cor. xv. 20), has raised us up also; for "in Adam we all die," and sink into the pit, but "in Christ we all are made alive" (1 Cor. xv. 22), and rise up out of it; and we, who once were *prisoners*, sullied in the mire of sin, being redeemed from our prison, and cleansed by the blood which He shed for us (1 Pet. i. 2. 19. 1 John i. 7), rise up to liberty, life, and glory through Him. "O Christe," exclaims *S. Jerome*, "in sanguine Passionis Tuæ eos qui in carcere vinceti tenebantur Inferni, in quo non est ulla misericordia, Tuâ clementiâ liberasti." See also *S. Cyril* here.

The Church of Rome has endeavoured to build on this text the dogma of Purgatory; and has used it also as a groundwork for teaching that Christ after His Passion descended into what is called by her the "Limbus Patrum," and delivered some from it who were then confined there. See *Bellarmino*, vol. i. p. 175, *De Animâ Christi*, iv. 11.

But as to the action of Christ's human soul after His Death, see below on 1 Pet. iii. 19; and on Purgatory, see *Luke* xvi. 23; *xxiii.* 43. 1 Cor. iii. 13. What the Prophet is here announcing, is not the deliverance of a few persons at a particular time from the so-called "Limbus Patrum," nor the deliverance of some from an ideal Purgatory, but something far more blessed and glorious, namely, the redemption of a lost world by the Blood of Christ. This is the sense which is clearly presented to us by the context, and this is the sense in which the prophecy was understood by the ancient Catholic Fathers, as *S. Cyril*, and *S. Jerome* already quoted, who says, "After the Lord arose from the dead, they who were held bound in the chains of Adam and of Death, arose with Him and appeared in the Holy City. And ye, who now lie bound in the deep pit, turn to Him, by Whose mercy ye are to be freed." And *S. Augustine* says, "The pit where is no water is the depth of human misery, where is the mire of sin." And *Theodoret* says, "When men were prisoners in this pit of sin and death, Christ the Lord loosed them, and brought them out of it, by His precious Blood, and led them forth into the path of life."

¹². *Turn you to the strong hold, ye prisoners of hope*] Ye who once lay chained in a prison of despair, in a miry pit of sin and death, and were without hope (Eph. ii. 12), have now become prisoners of hope: ye have been begotten again to "a lively hope" (1 Pet. i. 3), "full of immortality," in Christ (Titus iii. 7), and have been brought forth from that dungeon of despair into a fortress of safety by Him. Cp. Isa. xlii. 7; xlix. 9; lxi. 1.

— *double*] Double measure of glory, instead of your former misery (Isa. lxi. 7).

CHRIST THE VICTORIOUS RIDER WITH BOW AND ARROWS.

¹³. *When I have bent Judah for me*] Literally, *For I have*

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

Filled the bow with Ephraim,
And raised up thy sons, O Zion, against thy sons, O Greece,
And made thee as the sword of a mighty man.

¹⁴ And the LORD shall be seen over them,
And ^a his arrow shall go forth as the lightning :
And the Lord God shall blow the trumpet,
And shall go ^b with whirlwinds of the south.

¹⁵ The LORD of hosts shall defend them ;
And they shall devour, and || subdue with sling stones ;
And they shall drink, and make a noise as through wine ;
And they || shall be filled like bowls,
And as ^c the corners of the altar.

a Ps. 18. 14.
& 77. 17.
& 144. 6.

b Isa. 21. 1.

¶ Or, subdue the
stones of the
sling.

¶ Or, shall fill both
the bowls, &c.
c Lev. 4. 18. 25.
Deut. 12. 27.

Lent Judah for me as a bow, and have filled it with Ephraim
(as with arrows).

What is the connexion here ?

Christ has been represented by the Prophet as a King riding in triumph to Jerusalem (r. 9). That triumph was won by humility. His heavenly Glory was a fruit of His earthly Passion, to which He was going at that time.

After the vision of that triumphal Entry into Jerusalem, the Prophet proceeds to speak, in proper order, of Christ's Death, Burial, and Resurrection, and their blessed consequences to mankind.

He now reveals Him to us as no longer weak and lowly, but as a mighty Warrior, riding on a war-horse, with bow and quiver, to victory, and as the LORD and GOD.

He adopts the imagery of the Psalmist, addressing Messiah the King, "Gird Thee with Thy sword upon Thy thigh, O Thou most mighty : according to Thy worship and renown. Good luck have Thou with Thine honour : *Ride on*, because of the word of truth, of meekness, and righteousness ; and Thy right hand shall teach Thee terrible things. Thy arrows are very sharp, and the people shall be subdued unto Thee : even in the midst" (or, rather, *in the heart*) "of the King's enemies. Thy seat, O God, endureth for ever" (Ps. xlv. 4-7). Cp. note on Ps. cxvii. 4.

Zechariah anticipates the words of St. John, revealing Christ's victories over all earthly powers, in the Apocalypse :—

"I saw, and behold a *white horse* : and He that sat on him had a *Bow*, and a crown was given unto Him : and He went forth conquering and to conquer" (Rev. vi. 2). And again, cp. Rev. xix. 11, "I saw heaven opened, and behold a *white horse* ; and He that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness He doth judge and make war. His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on His head many crowns" (diadems on one crown) ; "and He was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood : and His Name is called the WORD of GOD ; and out of His mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it He should smite the nations : and He shall rule them with a rod of iron : and He treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God. And He hath on His vesture and on His thigh a Name written, KING of Kings, and LORD of Lords."

But what are Christ's Arrows ?

They are the *Apostles* (whose name means *sent forth*), whom, after He had risen from the dead and ascended into heaven (Ps. lxxiii. 18 ; Eph. iv. 8-11), He sent forth from His Bow, like Arrows winged with feathers from the plumage of the Holy Ghost—the Divine Dove Whose wings are silver wings and His feathers like gold (Ps. lxxiii. 13). They are the Missionaries whom Christ is ever sending forth from the Bow of His Divine Commission, to subdue the world to Himself. These are His Arrows, His Quiver is full of them, and they will never fail of victory, "His sagittis totius orbis vulneratus et captus est," says *S. Jerome*. By these arrows all the world has been wounded, but these wounds (says *S. Cyril*) are not wounds unto death, but unto life ; they are wounds of love, like those with which the Spouse in the Canticles is wounded by the Bridegroom (Cant. v. 8). For further illustrations of this exposition, see above on Psalm xlv. 5, cxvii. 4, and below on Rev. vi. 1, 2.

The image is from Isaiah, where CHRIST Himself, who is *sent forth* from the Father, is compared to an arrow discharged from a Bow. "He hath made Me a polished shaft, in His quiver hath He hid Me" (Isa. xlix. 2). And, "As My Father hath sent Me" (says Christ to His Apostles), "so send I you" (John xx. 21). And *S. Cyril* here thus writes : "Zechariah here calls Israel the *Sons of Ephraim*, of whom were the Apostles, equipped with the

word of God, and made to be like a Bow and Arrows, which smote the nations with divine doctrines, and wounded them, not to death, but in love ; as the Bride says in the Canticles that she is wounded with love (Cant. ii. 5). Cp. *A Lapide* here. Judah and Ephraim are represented here as the Bow and Arrows of Christ, because the first Preachers of the Gospel were *Jews* and *Israelites* ; they were *sons of Zion* and children of Ephraim. And these apostolic sons of Ephraim are presented to us in noble contrast to those other *children of Ephraim*, of whom the Psalmist says that they, being *harnessed and carrying bows*, turned themselves back in the day of battle. These Evangelical sons of Ephraim are described as *mighty men* (see x. 7), and they never turn back from the enemy, but meet them boldly and put them to flight. And they are like Arrows discharged from Jerusalem against the *Sons of Greece*, or Javan (Dan. viii. 21), because they were sent forth from Zion against the Greek or Heathen World, to bring it into subjection to Christ.

— *And made thee as the sword of a mighty man*] Here is another reference to Isaiah. Christ Himself was like an arrow from the hand of God (Isa. xlix. 2), and Zechariah represents Christ's Apostles as arrows shot forth from Christ's bow. Of Christ it is said that God has made His mouth to be like a sharp sword (Isa. xlix. 2), and here Christ speaks of His Apostles as made to be "as the sword of a mighty man."

¹⁴. *The LORD shall be seen over them*] Christ is here called the LORD, and GOD ; and His majestic form is seen like that of a mighty Conqueror standing over the bow which he draws, and over the arrows which he places on the string in order to discharge them. A vivid illustration of this imagery may be seen in the engravings of Assyrian kings riding in their war-chariots, and drawing their bows, and discharging their arrows, from sculptures in Nineveh (in *Rawlinson*, Anc. Mon. ii. 8. 11. 13 ; cp. 32. 33). So the glorious form of Christ is ever visible to the eye of faith, standing over His ministers, whom He sends forth as arrows against His enemies, to subdue the world.

— *his arrow shall go forth as the lightning*] Such is the power and splendour of the preaching of the Gospel, flashing forth like lightning on the gloom of the world, and dazzling all eyes with its brightness.

Compare the act of Gideon and his men (figurative of the preaching of the Gospel), making the torches to flash forth from their pitchers, to dazzle and confound their enemies the Midianites. See above on Judges vii. 16-20. Two of the Apostles were called Boanerges, *sons of Thunder* (Mark iii. 17).

— *shall blow the trumpet*] Like the trumpets before which the walls of Jericho (the type of the city of this world, as opposed to Zion the city of God) fell down prostrate to the ground. See above, on Joshua, chapter vi., *Prelim. Note*.

— *with whirlwinds*] Like the mighty rushing wind, betokening the power of the Holy Spirit given to the Apostles on the Day of Pentecost (Acts ii. 1, 2).

¹⁵. *And subdue with sling stones*] So *Sept., Vulg., Arabic, Targum*. Such as the Prophet here foretells was the power of the preachers of the Gospel, after the Resurrection and Ascension of Christ, and after the giving of the Holy Ghost by Him. The threatenings of Holy Scripture discharged by the preachers of the Gospel are like stones from a sling (*S. Jerome*).

— *they shall drink, and make a noise as through wine*] Being filled with the *new wine* of the Holy Spirit of God. See on Acts ii. 13 ; and cp. Cant. v. 1.

— *filled like bowls—corners of the altar*] Their power will be derived from the Blood of Christ. They will be filled with

- ¹⁶ And the LORD their God shall save them in that day
As the flock of his people :
For ^d *they shall be as the stones of a crown,*
^e Lifted up as an ensign upon his land.
- ¹⁷ For ^f *how great is his goodness,*
And how great is his beauty !
^g Corn shall make the young men || cheerful,
And new wine the maids.
- X. ¹ Ask ye ^a of the LORD ^b rain ^c in the time of the latter rain ;
So the LORD shall make || bright clouds,
And give them showers of rain,
To every one grass in the field.
- ² For the ^d † idols have spoken vanity,
And the diviners have seen a lie, and have told false dreams ;
They ^e comfort in vain :
Therefore they went their way as a flock,
They || were troubled, ^f *because there was no shepherd.*
- ³ Mine anger was kindled against the shepherds,
^g And I † punished the goats :
For the LORD of hosts ^h hath visited his flock the house of Judah,
And ⁱ hath made them as his goodly horse in the battle.
- ⁴ Out of him came forth ^k the corner,
Out of him ^l the nail,
Out of him the battle bow,

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

d Isa. 62. 3.
Mal. 3. 17.
e Isa. 11. 12.

f Ps. 31. 19.

g Joel 3. 18.
Amos 9. 14.
|| Or, grow, or,
speak.

a Jer. 14. 22.
b Deut. 11. 14.
c Job 29. 23.
Joel 2. 23.
|| Or, lightnings,
Jer. 10. 13.

d Jer. 10. 8.
Hab. 2. 18.
† Heb. *teraphims*,
Judg. 17. 5.
e Job 13. 4.

|| Or, answered
that, &c.
f Ezek. 34. 5.

g Ezek. 34. 17.
† Heb. *visited upon*.
h Luke 1. 68.

i Cant. 1. 9.

k Num. 24. 17.
l Sam. 14. 33.
Isa. 19. 13.
l Isa. 22. 23.

love of Him, and know nothing but Christ, and Him crucified (1 Cor. ii. 2). Thus they will be like sacrificial *bowls*, filled with the blood of a victim, and like *horns* of the altar, tinged with that blood.

16. *stones of a crown*] The faithful Preachers of the Gospel are jewels in the crown of Christ.

— *Lifted up as an ensign*] Their preaching will be clear and bold, like a standard lifted up on high. Cp. Ps. lx. 6. The banner of the Cross, unfurled in the eyes of the world, is leading them on to victory.

17. *how great is his goodness—beauty*] As the Psalmist says to Christ, “Thou art fairer than the children of men, full of grace are Thy lips, because God hath blessed Thee for ever” (Ps. xlv. 3). Cp. Song of Solomon ii. 3, 4; v. 10—16, and Isa. xxxiii. 17, “Thine eyes shall see the King in His beauty.”

— *Corn—and new wine*] The spiritual blessings of the Gospel, especially in God’s Holy Word and Sacraments, are the corn and new wine which strengthen and refresh chaste and holy souls, who are here compared to young men and maidens (*S. Cyril*). Cp. Joel ii. 19, and note on Jer. xxxi. 12.

RESTORATION OF ISRAEL IN CHRIST.

CH. X.] The Prophet, having foretold the victories of Christ over the *sons of Greece*, i. e., over the *heathen* Nations, by the Apostolic preaching of the Gospel, which is to go forth from Zion by the instrumentality of Jews, who are missiles discharged from the Bow of Christ, now proceeds to speak of the conversion of the Jews by means of the Gentiles; as the Apostle says, after the fulness of the Gentiles is come in, all Israel will be saved (Rom. xi. 25).

1. *Ask ye of the LORD*] Ask not of idols; for none of the vanities of the Gentiles can cause rain (Jer. xiv. 22).

— *rain—latter rain*] Types of spiritual graces, shed in successive abundance on the field of Christ’s Church in the Gospel. The former rain may represent the Old Dispensation, the latter the New.

2. *They were troubled*] Israel was troubled and perplexed, and scattered abroad among the Nations, because it forsook the Lord and worshipped idols. It was dispersed, and roamed in “the wilderness of the people” (see Ezek. xx. 25. Hosea ii. 14), like sheep without a shepherd.

3. *the shepherds*] The rulers of Israel, civil and ecclesiastical (Ezek. xxxiv. 2).

— *goats*] The chief and the evil among the people. See Jer. 1. 8; li. 40. Ezek. xxxiv. 17.

— *the LORD of hosts hath visited his flock*] He has visited Israel with chastisement. He has scattered them in captivity and exile in Assyria and Babylonia; but it is with a loving design and merciful desire that they may be humbled and purified, and repent, and may turn to Him, and that He may gather them again. See Amos ix. 8, 9.

— *as his goodly horse in the battle*] Such will Israel be when they are converted to Christ. See the Bridegroom’s words to the Bride, the Church: “I have compared thee, O my love, to a company of horses in Pharaoh’s chariots” (Cant. i. 9). In the Apocalypse Christ is described as riding on the white horse, and His Saints follow Him on white horses (Rev. vi. 1, 2; xix. 14).

4. *Out of him came forth the corner*] Out of Judah came forth Christ the Lord, Who, as He Himself declares, is the Head Stone of the Corner (Matt. xxi. 42), and is called by the Apostles the *Corner Stone*, in Whom the two walls of the Gentile and Jewish People meet and are united, and on Which all the fabric of the Church rests (Eph. ii. 20, and so Isa. xxviii. 16, and 1 Pet. ii. 6).

This corner-stone is here described by Zechariah as from Judah; and “it is evident,” says the Apostle, “that our Lord sprang out of Judah” (Heb. vii. 14). The promise that Christ should come from Judah, was a pledge, that, however Judah might be chastened, it would never be destroyed, but would flourish anew in Him (see on Isa. vii. 14).

— *the nail*] The *peg* (Hebr. *yâthed*), by which a shepherd’s tent was fastened to the ground. Christ is the Nail by which the pastoral Tent of the Church, in this world’s wilderness, in its missionary-nomad life, is fixed; and established in Him, it stands firm against all the winds and storms of Unbelief and Ungodliness. See on Matt. xvi. 18.

On this imagery of the *nail*, namely the wooden peg and pin, typical of Christ and His Cross, by which the Tent of the Universal Church is held fast, and immovable, see the notes above, on Judges iv. 21, 22, and on Isaiah xxii. 23, where the same word, *yâthed*, is used.

— *the battle bow*] See above, on ix. 13.

Out of him every oppressor together.

⁵ And they shall be as mighty men,

Which ^m tread down *their enemies* in the mire of the streets in the battle :

And they shall fight, because the LORD *is* with them,

And || the riders on horses shall be confounded.

⁶ And I will strengthen the house of Judah,

And I will save the house of Joseph,

And ⁿ I will bring them again to place them ;

For I ^o have mercy upon them :

And they shall be as though I had not cast them off :

For I *am* the LORD their God, and ^p will hear them.

⁷ And *they* of Ephraim shall be like a mighty man,

And their ^q heart shall rejoice as through wine :

Yea, their children shall see *it*, and be glad ;

Their heart shall rejoice in the LORD.

⁸ I will ^r hiss for them, and gather them ;

For I have redeemed them :

^s And they shall increase as they have increased.

⁹ And ^t I will sow them among the people :

And they shall ^u remember me in far countries ;

And they shall live with their children, and turn again.

¹⁰ ^x I will bring them again also out of the land of Egypt,

And gather them out of Assyria ;

And I will bring them into the land of Gilead and Lebanon ;

And ^y *place* shall not be found for them.

¹¹ ^z And he shall pass through the sea with affliction,

And shall smite the waves in the sea,

And all the deeps of the river shall dry up :

And ^a the pride of Assyria shall be brought down,

— *every oppressor*] Every victorious ruler. Cp. Isa. iii. 12 ; lx. 17 ; and see above, on ix. 3, 4.

5. *they shall be as mighty men*] As the Apostle says, God always makes us to triumph in Christ (2 Cor. ii. 14).

6. *I will strengthen the house of Judah, and I will save the house of Joseph*] Joseph, the father of Ephraim, the chief of the Ten Tribes, will be united with Judah in Christ. He makes the *two sticks* of Ephraim and Judah to coalesce in one, so that there shall no longer be any rivalry between them, and they shall be gathered together in the spiritual Zion of His Church. See on Ezek. xxxvii. 19—22. Hosea i. 10, 11. They who were severed by Jeroboam's schism, will dwell together in Christ ; and there will be "One Flock and One Shepherd" (S. Jerome).

8. *I will hiss for them, and gather them*] As bees are gathered, by hissing or whistling, into a swarm and into a hive (Isa. v. 26 ; vii. 18. *Gesen.* 851). So easy will the conversion of the Jews be, by the power of God.

9. *I will sow them among the people*] The Jews, who are now scattered and bear no fruit, will be *sown* among all Nations as good seed in the field of the Church of Christ, which is diffused throughout the world (Matt. xiii. 23, 29) and will be gathered together in the great day of harvest into the garner of heaven. Cp. Jer. xxxi. 17. Hos. ii. 22, 23. They will be *Jezreel* indeed, i. e., the *seed of God*.

Zechariah takes up the imagery of Hosea, the first of the prophets, and repeats the gracious promises delivered by him. See above, on Hosea i. 10, 11. "Then shall the children of Judah and the children of Israel be gathered together, and appoint themselves one head" (Christ), "for they shall come up out of the land ; for great shall be the day of *Jezreel*."

10. *I will bring them again also out of—Egypt, and gather them out of Assyria*] Egypt, the house of bondage, and Assyria, the scene of Israel's captivity and dispersion, represent all lands where they are now scattered ; and the promise that God will

bring them thence is an assurance of their future liberation, and of their gathering together in Christ's Church. Compare *Kliefoth*, 145 ; above, Hos. xi. 11, "They shall tremble as a bird out of Egypt, and as a dove out of the land of Assyria ;" and above, on Isa. xi. 11, 16, and on xix. 23, 24, "There shall be a highway out of Egypt to Assyria. In that day shall Israel be the third with Egypt and with Assyria."

— *Gilead and Lebanon*] The rich pasture-land on the east, and the great mountain range on the west of Palestine. These Christian Churches will arise.

These names are not to be confined to the literal signification, any more than Sion and Jerusalem are. They represent the rich spiritual pastures and lofty strongholds and mountains of religious contemplation, in the Holy Land of Christ's Universal Church, as is evident from a comparison of other prophetic passages of Scripture foretelling the conversion of the Jews. See *Kliefoth*, 145 ; and above, on Isa. lxx. 10, "Sharon shall be a fold of flocks," Jer. xxxi. 4—8. Ezek. xxxiv. 11—14, 23—31, with the *Retrospect* at the end of Ezekiel xxxv., which affords the best comment on this prophecy of Zechariah.

11. *he shall pass through the sea with affliction*] Or rather, "the sea, the affliction," a phrase which shows that the Prophet is not speaking here of a *physical* sea, but the sea of troubles, like the Red Sea through which Israel passed from Egypt, the house of bondage, on their way to Canaan, the type of heaven.

— *And shall smite the waves in the sea*] As He smote the Red Sea for Israel to pass out of Egypt. This is equivalent to an assurance that all obstacles will be surmounted that now restrain the Jews in spiritual bondage, and that they will be delivered by a glorious Exodus from their present spiritual Egypt of darkness and thralldom into the glorious light and liberty of the Gospel in the Church of Christ. Cp. Isa. xi. 15, 16. See S. Jerome here, and S. Cyril, and Keil, who well says, "The principal fulfilment of this prophecy is of a spiritual kind, and was accom-

- And ^b the sceptre of Egypt shall depart away.
¹² And I will strengthen them in the LORD ;
 And ^c they shall walk up and down in his name, saith the LORD.
 XI. ¹ Open ^a thy doors, O Lebanon, that the fire may devour thy cedars.
² Howl, fir tree ; for the cedar is fallen ; because the || mighty are spoiled :
 Howl, O ye oaks of Bashan ; ^b for || the forest of the vintage is come down.
³ There is a voice of the howling of the shepherds ; for their glory is spoiled :
 A voice of the roaring of young lions ; for the pride of Jordan is spoiled.
⁴ Thus saith the LORD my God ; ^c Feed the flock of the slaughter ;
⁵ Whose possessors slay them, and ^d hold themselves not guilty :
 And they that sell them ^e say, Blessed be the LORD ; for I am rich :
 And their own shepherds pity them not.
⁶ For I will no more pity the inhabitants of the land, saith the LORD :
 But, lo, I will ^f deliver the men every one into his neighbour's hand,
 And into the hand of his king :
 And they shall smite the land, and out of their hand I will not deliver them.
⁷ And I will ^f feed the flock of slaughter, || even you, ^g O poor of the flock.

Before
CHRIST
about
517.
b Ezek. 30, 13.
c Micah 4. 5.
a ch. 10, 10.
|| Or, gallants.
b Isa. 32, 19.
|| Or, the defenced
forest.
c ver. 7.
d Jer. 2. 3.
e 50. 7.
f Deut. 29, 19.
Hos. 12. 8.
† Heb. make to
be found.
f ver. 4.
|| Or, verily the
poor, g Zeph. 3. 12. Matt. 11. 5.

plished in part through the gathering of the Jews into Christ's kingdom, which began in the days of the Apostles, and will continue on till the remnant of Israel is converted to Christ."

12. *they shall walk up and down in his name*] As Enoch walked with God, and pleased Him, and was translated (S. Jerome).

THE DESTRUCTION OF JERUSALEM BY THE ROMANS, ITS PUNISHMENT FOR THE REJECTION OF CHRIST.

CH. XI. 1, 2. *Open thy doors, O Lebanon*] Open thy gates to the enemy, that fire may devour thy cedars. These and the following words are prophetic of the devastation of the Holy Land by the Roman armies under Vespasian (A.D. 69) ; and the capture of Jerusalem by his son Titus (A.D. 70). See S. Cyril and S. Jerome here. The stately cedars of Lebanon, and the sturdy oaks of Bashan, are figurative symbols of the great men and glorious ornaments of the Holy Land. Cp. Isa. ii. 12, 13 ; x. 8, 19 ; xiv. 8. As is well said by these Christian expositors, the Prophet is here speaking of the Temple of Jerusalem, which was rebuilt by Zerubbabel, but afterwards destroyed by Titus. Lebanon opens its gates, that the armies of Rome may enter, and that the fire may devour the cedars, and that all the land may be laid waste and its rulers destroyed. It is said by Josephus (B. J. vii. 12), that seven years before the destruction of the Temple and the City, the great bronze eastern gate of the Temple, which required twenty men to shut it, flew open of its own accord in the sixth hour of the night, at the Passover ; and when a similar event happened, forty years before that destruction, some of the Hebrew doctors applied to that event the prophecy of Zechariah, "*Open thy gates, O Lebanon*" (Galatinus, *A Lapide*).

2. *the forest of the vintage*] Rather, "*the forest that is fenced like a fortress.*"

3. *the shepherds—young lions*] The shepherds are emblems of rulers, and the lions are symbols of such rulers as tyrannically oppress and devour the people. Cp. Jer. xxv. 34—36. Ezek. xix. 2, 3. Job iv. 10. These evil rulers roared like lions against Christ, even when hanging on the cross (S. Cyril).

4. *Thus saith the LORD—Feed the flock of the slaughter*] God had given a commission to the Priests and Rulers of Judea to feed His Flock ; but they had made it a *flock of slaughtering* : they did not feed, but they slaughtered it, to fatten themselves. Therefore they themselves will be slain. See Ezek. xxxiv. 2, 3, "Woe to the shepherds of Israel that do feed themselves ! Should not the shepherds feed the flocks ? Ye eat the fat, and ye clothe you with the wool, ye kill them that are fed : but ye feed not the flock." Therefore God revokes the commission and transfers it to the *Good Shepherd* (John x. 11), who is Christ (see S. Cyril, Theodoret), and who, instead of slaying the flock, as those evil shepherds did, to feed themselves, gave His life for the sheep, that they might live for ever, and is ever giving to them heavenly food (John x. 11 ; xxi. 16). Cp. Ezek. xxxiv. 23—31, where is the same line of thought. The thirty-fourth chapter of Ezekiel is the best exposition of the present prophecy.

5. *they that sell them say, Blessed be the LORD ; for I am*

rich] Here is a prophecy concerning false teachers ; and it was fulfilled in our Lord's age. The language here described was that of the Pharisees, who corrupted the word of God (Matt. xv. 6) and sold the people, for gain to themselves (M. Henry). They were covetous and wealthy, and inferred, from their own worldly prosperity, that they were special favourites of Jehovah, and that all their doings were approved and blessed by Him. They insulted God by ascribing the gains of their own oppression and fraud to His favour. Compare Luke xvi. 14, and our Lord's teaching in that chapter, which is a protest against that Pharisaical notion.

6. *I will deliver—every one—into the hand of his king*] I will deliver the Jews into the hands of the Roman Power, of which they said, when they rejected and crucified their own true King, "We have no king but Caesar" (John xix 15). Cp. M. Henry and Hengstenberg here.

THE LORD JEHOVAH WILL FEED THE FLOCK. HIS LOVE FOR ISRAEL.

7. *I will feed the flock*] I (Jehovah says in Christ) will be the Shepherd of the flock, which is not fed, but slaughtered by its own shepherds (see v. 4) : I will feed even you, *O poor of the flock* (cp. v. 11) : I will not feed the wealthy and proud, but the poor and meek. "Blessed are the poor," He says ; and "Come unto Me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. Learn of Me, for I am meek and lowly in heart : and ye shall find rest unto your souls" (Matt. xi. 28, 29).

— *I took unto me two staves*] Two pastoral staves. Other shepherds have one pastoral crook : Christ has two. Cp. Ps. xxiii. 4. Christ the Good Shepherd left His heavenly fold to seek the lost sheep (Luke xv. 4). He came to the lost sheep of the house of Israel (Matt. x. 6 ; xv. 24) : He gave all His pastoral care to them. He took into His hand two pastoral staves ; one of which He called "*Beauty*" or *favour* (Hebr. *noam*, translated *beauty* in Psalm xxvii. 4 ; xc. 17—"*the beauty of the Lord,*" and *pleasantness* in Proverbs iii. 17—"ways of pleasantness." Cp. xv. 26 ; xvi. 24, where the same idea is expressed ; and this is the most usual meaning of the adjective *nâem*).

The staff of *beauty, loveliness, favour, delight, pleasantness*, was indicative of God's love to Israel, of His delight in them, and of the pleasure He took in seeing their spiritual and temporal welfare and in promoting it. The Vineyard of the Lord of Hosts was the house of Israel, and the men of Judah His *pleasant plant*. What could have been done more to His vineyard, that He did not do in it ? See Isa. v. 4—7. Consequently the destruction of Jerusalem, which Zechariah here foretells, could not come from any design of God, but was caused by its own sins. Therefore our Lord wept over Jerusalem, and uttered those plaintive words in Matt. xxiii. 37 ; Luke xiii. 34.

The other Staff is called *Bands* ; for God's will was to join together Israel and Judah in one ; and to join them also to the Gentile world in Christ ; and to join them together in Christ to Himself. But they rejected God's counsel of love towards themselves. Cp. Luke vii. 30. They killed the Good Shepherd, and therefore God brake asunder those two staves. He

Before
CHRIST
about
517.
|| Or, *Binders*.
h Hos. 5. 7.
† Heb. *was
strained for
them*.
i Jer. 15. 2, & 43.
11.
† Heb. *of his
fellow, or,
neighbour*.

And I took unto me two staves; the one I called Beauty, and the other I called || Bands; and I fed the flock.

⁸ Three shepherds also I cut off ^h in one month; and my soul † lothed them, and their soul also abhorred me.

⁹ Then said I, I will not feed you: ⁱ that that dieth, let it die; and that that is to be cut off, let it be cut off; and let the rest eat every one the flesh † of another.

¹⁰ And I took my staff, *even* Beauty, and cut it asunder, that I might break my covenant which I had made with all the people. ¹¹ And it was broken in that day: and || so ^k the poor of the flock that waited upon me knew that it was the word of the Lord.

¹² And I said unto them, † If ye think good, give me my price; and if not, forbear. So they ^l weighed for my price thirty *pieces* of silver.

¹³ And the Lord said unto me, Cast it unto the ^m potter: a goodly price that I was prised at of them.

|| Or, *the poor of
the flock, &c.,
certainly knew*.
k Zeph. 3. 12.
ver. 7.
† Heb. *If it be
good in your
eyes*.
l Matt. 26. 15.
See Exod. 21. 32.
m Matt. 27. 9, 10.

rejected His own people, and gave up their city to destruction, and received the Gentiles in their place.

— *Bands*] Or *binders*. The staff of God's covenant with the Jewish Nation; that staff by which Israel and Judah were bound together in one. See v. 14. God joined all the tribes in one by a common worship, and especially by commanding them all to appear before Him at stated times in one place—Jerusalem.

— *I fed the flock*] Jehovah in Christ did the work of a Good Shepherd to the Jewish Nation during the whole of His earthly ministry. Cp. John x. 11. 14; xiv. 6. Heb. xiii. 20. 1 Pet. ii. 25; v. 4.

⁸. *Three shepherds also I cut off in one month*] The ancient Hebrew Nation was spiritually fed by Moses, Aaron, and Miriam. See Micah vi. 4. "I sent before thee Moses, Aaron, and Miriam," the representation of the Civil Government, the Priesthood, and the Prophecy. The Rulers, the Priests, and the Prophets were its three shepherds. And when the Jews rejected Christ, Who is the True King, Priest, and Prophet, then God cut off their *three shepherds*, took away from them their "place and nation" (John xi. 48), i. e. the *civil Power* and also the *Priesthood* and *Prophecy*. See S. Cyril, S. Jerome, and Theodoret. They have no longer any Ruler, no longer any Priest, no longer any Prophet or Preacher of Divine Truth. This was done in *one month*, even in the *first* month of the Hebrew year, "the beginning of months" (Exod. xii. 2), the month Nisan or Abib, the month of the Feast of the Passover, when they crucified their own Prophet, Priest, and King.

⁹. *that that dieth, let it die*] That which is spiritually dead, let it die and be buried. Cp. Matt. viii. 22. "The dry tree" of the Jewish Church and State was only fit for the fire. See Luke xxiii. 31.

— *let the rest eat—the flesh*] This was fulfilled in the terrible intestine feuds and civil bloodshed at Jerusalem, even in the Temple itself, when it was besieged by the Romans. See on Matt. xxiv. 15. And it was literally true, that some then ate the flesh of their neighbours; even mothers ate the flesh of their children. See above, on Deut. xxviii. 54. 56, 57.

¹⁰. *that I might break my covenant which I had made with all the people*] Literally, *with all the peoples*. "When the Most High divided to the Nations their inheritance, when He separated the Sons of Adam, He set the bounds of the people according to the number of the children of Israel, for the Lord's portion is His people, Jacob is the lot of His inheritance" (Deut. xxxii. 8, 9). This was God's compact with all Nations, and with Israel. He assigned a special inheritance to Judah; and no people could deprive them of it, as long as they were true to Him. But now that they have rejected Christ, He has broken that compact; Jerusalem is trodden down by the Gentiles (Luke xxi. 24), and the Jews are wanderers and outcasts in all lands.

¹¹. *the poor of the flock—LORD*] God rejected the wise and learned—the proud Priest and Pharisee; but He accepted the lowly Galileans—the fishermen and publicans. The meek, humble, and docile disciples of Christ, who waited in patient trust on Him, Who is the Good Shepherd, recognized in His Crucifixion a proof of His Messiahship, because the Passion of Christ had been foretold by the Word of the Lord, namely here,

and by Isaiah (chap. liii.), and elsewhere. But the Cross of Christ was a stumbling-block to those who were proud and wise in their own conceits (Matt. xi. 25. Luke x. 21. 1 Cor. i. 23); and they fulfilled the words of the Prophets, as St. Paul declares, by condemning Him (Acts xiii. 27). The unbelief of the proud strengthens the faith of the lowly. That unbelief is foretold in Holy Scripture, and is therefore a proof of its truth.

¹². *I said unto them*] Christ, the Shepherd of Israel, here speaks, and asks for His hire or the wages for His pastoral work.

THE SHEPHERD'S PRICE.

— *So they weighed for my price thirty pieces of silver*] This miserable pittance, the price of a bondsman (see Exod. xxi. 32. Hos. iii. 2), is described here in bitter irony as the price of Him "that was valued, Whom they of the children of Israel did value" (Matt. xxvii. 9, 10). They weighed to Him thirty pieces of silver. Instead of wages, they offered to Him an insult. Thirty pieces of silver are so contemptible a sum, that the very offer of them from them, His own people, for such services as His, was more insulting than a positive refusal (*Hengst.*). This prophecy was fulfilled in the payment of this sum to Judas the Traitor, by the Chief Priests for the blood of Christ (Matt. xxvi. 14, 15; xxvii. 3—10).

THE SHEPHERD IS JEHOVAH.

¹³. *And the LORD said unto me, Cast it unto the potter: a goodly price that I was prised at of them*] Jehovah speaks to Christ, the Good Shepherd, Who came from His Father to feed the flock; and since He fed it in the Lord's Name, since the Father was in Him and He in the Father, and since He and the Father are One in substance, therefore His work was the work of Jehovah Himself. The rejection of Christ was the rejection of Jehovah. Christ is Jehovah. He is so called here by Zechariah, "The LORD said—a goodly price that I was prised at of them." The price at which Christ was estimated was the price at which Jehovah Himself was valued by His own people.

Christ, the Lord of all, says "Cast it to the Potter." What was done by Judas and the Jews in the betrayal of Christ, and in the purchase of the Potter's field with the price of His blood, was done with His permission.

No one could take away His life from Him. He laid it down of His own accord, and took it again (John x. 18). "Destroy this temple," He said, speaking of His own body, "and in three days I will raise it up" (John ii. 19). All this was done with the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, according to His inscrutable will (see on Acts ii. 23); and the proofs of His Messiahship were displayed by the fulfilment of such prophecies as these, even by those who rejected Him.

The similarity of language in which the Servant or Messenger of Jehovah is spoken of in both portions of Zechariah (see on chap. ix., *Prelim. Note*) is a strong argument for identity of authorship. The Messiah, the Servant of Jehovah, is distinguished from Jehovah, and yet is identified with Him as His equal in dignity and glory. See xii. 9, 10; ep. xi. 13. In no prophetic book is the doctrine of the distinct Divine Personality, as well as the Humanity of the Messiah, more clearly and uniformly displayed than in this of Zechariah.

On the site of the Potter's field (probably the Valley of

And I took the thirty *pieces* of silver,

And cast them to the potter in the house of the Lord.

¹⁴ Then I cut asunder mine other staff, *even* || Bands,

That I might break the brotherhood between Judah and Israel.

¹⁵ And the Lord said unto me,

ⁿ Take unto thee yet the instruments of a foolish shepherd.

¹⁶ For, lo, I will raise up a shepherd in the land, *which* shall not visit those that be || cut off, neither shall seek the young one, nor heal that that is || Or, *hidden*.

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

|| Or, *Binders*.

n Ezek. 34. 2, 3, 4.

Hinnom) and on other incidents of a solemn and mysterious interest connected with that place, see above, on Jer. xviii. 2; xix. 2, and note after Jer. xix. 11, p. 44; and cp. *Hengst.* here.

From the words, "*Cast it to the Potter*," it is probable that the potter may have been present in the Temple when the Chief Priests transferred the money (which Judas had cast into the Treasury) to the purchase of the field.

This prophecy, or rather a prophecy very like it, is ascribed to Jeremiah by St. Matthew (xxvii. 9).

When we bear in mind the fact that nothing is more usual in Hebrew Prophecy, than for the Holy Spirit to *repeat* by succeeding Prophets what He had said before by their predecessors; and that He does this in very many instances in Zechariah (who, as the Jews said, prophesied with the spirit of Jeremiah, *Surenhusius*, 282), it cannot seem surprising that what is here said by *Zechariah* should have been said before with some slight additions by *Jeremiah*; and that the Holy Spirit, speaking by St. Matthew, should have referred to that prophecy, which is no longer extant in his writings. The Holy Ghost, speaking by St. Jude, cites a prophecy from Enoch which is nowhere found in the Bible (Jude 14).

Further, it has been supposed by some (*Grotius*, *Hengstenberg*, *Kliefoth*) that the present prophecy of Zechariah is connected with, and grounded on, those events in Jeremiah concerning the Potter (xviii. 2; xix. 2), and that it is a renewal of those prophecies of Jeremiah which portend the destruction of Jerusalem, as a potter's vessel in the valley of Hinnom. If this is so, then St. Matthew, referring to the Prophets, specifies *Jeremiah* as the *elder*. It is usual for writers of the New Testament to *blend* several prophecies of the Old together, and to mention the name of one Prophet only. See below, on Matt. xxvii. 9, and *Surenhusius*, p. 288. There is a remarkable instance of this in Mark i. 2, "As it is written in *Isaiah* the Prophet" (such is the true reading), "Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before thee. The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight;" where St. Mark combines two prophecies, the first from Malachi iii. 1; and second from Isaiah xl. 3, and he mentions only the name of *Isaiah* as being the older prophet, although he places first the prophecy from Malachi.

There is a learned dissertation on this passage in *Dean Jackson's* work on the Creed, book VIII. ch. xxvii. and ch. xxviii.

¹⁴ *I cut asunder mine other staff—that I might break the brotherhood*] The Twelve Tribes, which were joined together at Jerusalem in the solemn annual Festivals, have now been scattered abroad by God. This is a consequence of the destruction of Jerusalem; the punishment inflicted upon them for the rejection of Christ (Matt. xxiii. 38. Luke xiii. 35).

THE FOOLISH, OR WICKED SHEPHERD.

¹⁵ *Take unto thee yet the instruments of a foolish shepherd*] This is said to the Prophet, who is commanded to personate the foolish or wicked shepherd (*folly*, in Scripture, is *impiety*, Ps. xiv. 1. Matt. v. 22; cp. note on Job ix. 9) by taking such accountments as he would appear in. The Jews, by their rejection of Christ, Who is the Light, have subjected themselves to the divine malediction. They rejected the True Shepherd, and they were given over into the hands of false and wicked shepherds. They were deceived by many false prophets and many false Christs (Matt. xxiv. 5); and they are under the dominion of false shepherds, who do not heal the sick and feeble, but commit ravages on the flock, by false doctrines, such as those which constitute the greater part of the later Rabbinical and Talmudical teaching. They have incurred the fearful retribution of judicial blindness and misery pronounced by the Messiah Himself, speaking prophetically by the Psalmist (see on Ps. lxxix. 22—28, and St. Paul's explanation of those words in Rom. xi. 7—10) and by Christ, in His own Person, in those Eight Woes in Matt. xxiii. 13—39.

. VOL. VI. PART II.—145

Good Shepherds (says *S. Cyril*) have a light pastoral staff, by which they guide the sheep; but the evil shepherd maltreats and belabours the sheep with rude handling. So, in spiritual things, the good Christian Pastor deals gently, tenderly, and lovingly with his flock; but the bad Pastor is impatient, and rules them with roughness and violence; and does not bring back the sheep when astray, nor guard them against the wolf and the robber, nor heal those which are sick; and does not feed them with the wholesome food of sound doctrine, but with poisonous heresies. See above, on Ezek. xxxiv. 2—4. 10. Such are the instruments of *an evil shepherd*.

THE IDOL SHEPHERD.

The Prophet, having spoken of foolish or godless shepherds in the Jewish Church and Nation, and having declared the miseries brought by them on that Church and Nation, and also on themselves, proceeds now to speak of pastoral folly or impiety in the Christian Church, and of its future destiny.

The characteristic feature of this form of folly and impiety is, that it claims *divine honour* for itself. The *Shepherd* makes himself to be an *idol*. The Prophet's words are, "Woe to the *idol* shepherd!" Literally, "Woe to the shepherd, the *idol*" (Hebr. *ha-elil*); the word is the same as in Leviticus xxvi. 1, "Ye shall make unto you no *idols*."

This is a mysterious prophecy, which reaches to the latter days. *S. Cyril* compares these words to those of St. Paul concerning "the Man of Sin," or "Lawless one," in 2 Thess. ii. 2—12; and *S. Jerome* says here, "O thou *shepherd* and *idol*!" This shepherd is so ungodly that he is not called a worshipper of idols, but is himself named an *idol*, inasmuch as he calls himself God, and desires to be *adored* by all men. This shepherd is described under another figure by Daniel the prophet (see on Dan. vii. 8. 11. 20, 21), and by St. Paul, writing to the Thessalonians, where he foretells the rise of a Power that would "sit in the temple of God" (or Christian Church), "and show itself as God." See the note below, on 2 Thess. ii. 3—12. *Theodoret* also applies this prophecy to the Antichristian Power that would arise in the Church of Christ in the latter days. And so *Remigius*, *Lyranus*, *Talabius*, and others.

The question here offers itself for consideration—

Has any Person or Power, corresponding to this description, arisen in the Church of God?

It cannot be denied that the Bishop of Rome claims to be a Shepherd, and even to be the Chief Shepherd of the Church of Christ; he does not allow any Bishop or Priest to exercise any pastoral office in feeding the sheep and lambs of Christ, except by his own authority. All ordinations of Bishops, Priests, and Deacons are null and void (he says) without his sanction. And even a Bishop who is nominated to an Archbishopric, ceases for a time to be a Bishop, and (as may be seen in the Roman Pontifical p. 87, ed. Rom., 1818), he cannot exercise any episcopal function till he has received the pallium from the Roman Pontiff.

It would not be easy to point out any other Shepherd who makes himself to be an *idol*, except the Bishop of Rome. That the Bishop of Rome does make himself into an *idol*, is certain. The first act that he performs after his election to the papacy, is to go into the Church of St. Peter, and to take his *seat upon the High Altar there*; and while he is there sitting he claims and receives *adoration* from the Cardinals, who kiss his feet, which trample upon the Altar of God. He, as God, sitteth there in the Temple of God, showing himself as God. The present Pope, Pius IX., did this on Wednesday, June 17, 1846. This ceremony is called by Roman writers, "*Adoratio Pontificis*," "the *Adoration* of the Pope." The authorities for these assertions may be seen below, in the note on Revelation xiii. 13, 14, pp. 233, 234. Among the medals struck in the Roman Mint, there is one which represents the Cardinals kneeling before the Pope whom they have elected, with this inscription, "*Quem creant, adorant*," "Whom they create they *adore*" (*Numismata Pontificum*, p. 3, ed. Lutet., 1679); in

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

Or, bear.
o Jer. 23. 1.
Ezek. 34. 2.
John 10. 12, 13.

broken, nor || feed that that standeth still: but he shall eat the flesh of the fat, and tear their claws in pieces.

17 ° Woe to the idol shepherd that leaveth the flock!

The sword *shall be* upon his arm, and upon his right eye:

His arm shall be clean dried up,

And his right eye shall be utterly darkened.

XII. ¹ The burden of the word of the LORD for Israel, saith the LORD, which stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundation of the earth, and ^b formeth the spirit of man within him. ² Behold, I will make Jerusalem ^c a cup of || trembling unto all the people round about, || when they shall be in the siege both against Judah *and* against Jerusalem.

³ ^d And in that day will I make Jerusalem ^e a burdensome stone for all

a Isa. 42. 5 & 44. a
21. & 43. 12, 15.
& 48. 13.
b Num. 16. 22.
Eccles. 12. 7.
Isa. 57. 16.
Heb. 12. 9.
c Isa. 51. 17, 22,
23.

Or, slumber, or,
poison.

Or, and also against Judah shall he be which shall be in siege against Jerusalem.

d ver. 4, 6, 8, 9, 11. & ch. 13. 1. & 14. 4, 6, 8, 9, 13. e Matt. 21. 44.

other words, "They worship the idol which they have made with their own hands."

One of the most eloquent French writers of the present day, himself a zealous Roman Catholic, Count Montalembert, in a letter written from his death-bed, dated Paris, Feb. 28, 1870, uttered an indignant protest against those votaries of the Papacy who, to quote his words, "trample under foot all our liberties and principles, in order to immolate justice and truth, reason and history, as a sacrifice to the idol which they have set up for themselves in the Vatican." The words of Count Montalembert are, "pour venir ensuite immoler la justice et la vérité, la raison et l'histoire, à l'idole qu'ils se sont érigée au Vatican." And he adds, "if this word *idol* seems too strong a one, let me refer you to the words used by Monseigneur Sibour, Archbishop of Paris, in writing to me, on Sept. 10, 1853. 'The new Ultramontane school is leading us to a double idolatry, idolatry of the temporal power of the Papacy, and idolatry of the spiritual. The Ultramontane Bishops have driven every thing to extremes, and have outraged all liberties both of the State and of the Church.'"

At the very time when the present note is passing through the press, the Roman Catholic Bishops, summoned by the Roman Pontiff to meet in Council at Rome, in St. Peter's Church, under his authority and influence, are debating whether they shall not ascribe to him an attribute of God,—Infallibility. If they promulgate this dogma, they will have supplied another argument to prove that the Bishop of Rome is the "*Idol Shepherd*" of Zechariah.

The doom of the "Idol Shepherd" is foretold in what follows:—

17. *that leaveth the flock*] Literally, *deserter of the flock*. Instead of defending the flock from grievous wolves who tear the flock, he exposes it to their attack. This is true of the "idol shepherd" described in the foregoing note. The Bishop of Rome does not feed the flock of Christ with the healthful food of the Holy Scriptures—he denies the use of God's Word to the People, and he exposes them to heretical teachers: he himself becomes a wolf and tears them.

— *The sword shall be upon his arm, and upon his right eye*] He claims to have the arm of Omnipotence for ruling the Universe,—the words addressed to every Pope, at his coronation by the person who crowns him, are, "*Scias te esse Rectorem Orbis*,"—and to have the eye of Omniscience for searching all mysteries of the faith. He has recently put forth a claim to this attribute by promulgating a new dogma (Dec. 8, 1854), which he enforces as an article of faith necessary to salvation, viz. that the Blessed Virgin Mary was exempt from original sin; a dogma which exalts her to a participation in that original sinlessness which belongs only to Christ; and by which therefore he endeavours to make the Blessed Virgin to be an instrument for outraging the honour of her Divine Son.

But the arm of the Idol Shepherd will be withered, and his eye be darkened. The sword of the Lord (says *S. Jerome*) will be upon his arm and upon his right eye; and all his might and boasting will be blighted, blasted, and dried up; and the knowledge which he falsely arrogates to himself will be eclipsed in everlasting gloom. Cp. 2 Thess. ii. 8.

When will this be? Thou, O Lord, knowest.

THE PERSECUTIONS OF THE CHURCH OF GOD WILL RECOIL UPON HER ENEMIES.

Preliminary Note.

CH. XII.] In these Prophecies which follow, to the end of

the Book, there is the same foreshortening as that which has already been observed in the Book of Joel.

It is the property of Omniscience to see all things at one glance; and Divine Prophecy imitates this property by representing the future in one view.

In the following prophecies, the penitential act of contrite sinners, especially of Jews, looking at Him Whom they pierced (xii. 10), dates from the Day of Pentecost, and continues to the latter days, when it will be greatly intensified, and will produce blessed results, and is here concentrated into one focus.

The rising up of enemies of God against Christ's Church, which commenced at the same time, and has been continued in successive persecutions from Jews, Gentiles, and other unbelievers in every age, and which will reach its climax in the great Antichristian outbreak of the last times, and be confounded by the Coming of Christ to Judgment, is here summed up in one panoramic picture displayed at once to the eye.

2. *Behold, I will make Jerusalem a cup of trembling*] The cruelties which had been practised upon Jerusalem by Babylon had already, in Zechariah's age, brought God's wrath and indignation upon Babylon, which had afflicted her; according to Isaiah's prophecy, "Behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling" (the cup which causes reeling), "even the dregs of the cup of my fury, thou shalt no more drink it again. But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee." See on Isa. li. 17—23.

Zechariah proceeds from that retributive act of God's justice, and enlarges it, and applies it to His dealings with the enemies of the *spiritual* Jerusalem, the universal Church of God, which is the subject of his prophecies in the latter part of the book. See xiv. 1, 2. And therefore he speaks here, not of one nation, such as the Chaldeans, or Romans, but of *all* people (or *peoples*) and *all* nations; i.e., all those who rise up against God and persecute His Church. Thus Zechariah's prophecy here comes in contact with that of Ezekiel concerning the gathering together of Infidel Powers against Christianity in the latter days. See above, on Ezek. xxxviii., xxxix., and Joel iii. 1—16, which supply the best interpretations of this prophecy, revealing the confederacy of Worldly, Infidel, and Impious Powers against the Church of God in the latter days, and their future final doom and utter discomfiture.

It is impossible to apply these prophecies (as some have endeavoured to do) in all their breadth and fulness, to the *literal* Jerusalem. Doubtless they may have a partial reference to the days of the Maccabees and to Antiochus Epiphanes, the type of Antichrist. But no one who examines them carefully can say that they were exhausted by the events of that age. And therefore, with *S. Jerome*, *Theodoret*, and other ancient Expositors, and with *Ribera*, *Arias*, *Vatablus*, in more recent times, we must understand them as prophetic of the final triumph of Christ and the Christian Church.

The Christian Church from the commencement is the only legitimate continuation of "the Israel of God." The root is in Zion, but the branches overshadow the earth. Cp. Rom. xi. 18. Eph. ii. 12, 19. Gal. vi. 16. See the note above, on Ezek. xxxv. 14, pp. 238, 239, which may serve to illustrate the present prophecies.

IN THAT DAY.

3. *in that day*] These words, *in that day*, occur sixteen times in this and the two following chapters (xii. 3, 4. 6. 8. 9. 11; xiii. 1, 2, 4; xiv. 4. 6. 8. 9. 13. 20, 21). It is not to be supposed that all the events here described are to occur *in one day*, or at one time. The words, *that day*, designate the Day present to

people: all that burden themselves with it shall be cut in pieces, though all the people of the earth be gathered together against it.

⁴ In that day, saith the LORD, 'I will smite every horse with astonishment, and his rider with madness: and I will open mine eyes upon the house of Judah, and will smite every horse of the people with blindness.

⁵ And the governors of Judah shall say in their heart, || The inhabitants of Jerusalem shall be my strength in the LORD of hosts their God.

⁶ In that day will I make the governors of Judah ^a like an hearth of fire among the wood, and like a torch of fire in a sheaf; and they shall devour all the people round about, on the right hand and on the left: and Jerusalem shall be inhabited again in her own place, *even* in Jerusalem. ⁷ The LORD also shall save the tents of Judah first, that the glory of the house of David and the glory of the inhabitants of Jerusalem do not magnify *themselves* against Judah.

⁸ In that day shall the LORD defend the inhabitants of Jerusalem; and ^h he that is || † feeble among them at that day shall be as David; and the house of David shall be as God, as the angel of the LORD before them.

⁹ And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* I will seek to ⁱ destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem.

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

f Ps. 76. 6.
Ezek. 38. 4.

|| Or, There is
strength to me and
to the inhabitants,
&c.
Joel 3. 16.
g Obad. 18.

h Joel 3. 10.

|| Or, *abject*.
† Heb. *fallen*.

i Hag. 2. 22.
ver. 3.

the Divine Eye of the Holy Ghost, Who inspired the Prophet, and to Whom "a thousand years are as one day" (2 Pet. iii. 8). He sees all things at one glance; and to Him they are all concentrated in *that day*.

— *will I make Jerusalem a burdensome stone*] Literally, a stone of burdening. Jerusalem—the Holy City—was a burdensome stone to those who waged war against, and profaned the Temple of God; such as Antiochus Epiphanes, Pompey, and Crassus, who came to a miserable end. See *A Lapid* here and Dean Jackson on the Creed, book I., chap. xix. It was not till Jerusalem had rejected and crucified the Lord of Glory that she ceased to be a burdensome stone to those who attacked her; but when that sin was committed, then she was given up to destruction by the armies of Rome. Christ became a burdensome stone to her. As He Himself says, "Whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder" (Matt. xxi. 44). This stone will become a mountain, and break in pieces all powers that resist it, as Daniel foretells (Dan. ii. 44). And such is Christ's Church—a burdensome stone. Many have risen, and many more will rise up against it, but they will not prevail (Matt. xvi. 18); and if they resist it, and they dash themselves against it, they will be broken and crushed by it. See Ezek. xxxix. 1—28.

⁴. *I will smite every horse—of the people*] Rather, of the peoples. The Infidel and Worldly Powers which rise up against the Church of Christ, are described as a mighty army of chariots and horses, rushing on to the charge; but they are smitten and routed by God. Compare the words of the mighty host destroyed at Jerusalem and the representative of infidel powers assailing the Church. See above, on Isaiah lxvi. 24.

⁵. *the governors of Judah*] These are the holy Apostles, and all faithful rulers of Churches and Apostolic Pastors and teachers (S. Cyril).

— *my strength in the LORD of hosts*] In the last days of the governors of Judah—that is, the rulers of Christ's Church—shall not trust in secular powers (which will be hostile to her) but in the *Lord of hosts* alone, and will say, "Some put their trust in chariots, and some in horses: but we will remember the Name of the Lord our God" (Ps. xx. 7). See on Micah v. 10, and above, ix. 10.

⁶. *will I make the governors of Judah like a hearth (or a pan) of fire among the wood*] The Apostles and Apostolic teachers of the Christian Church (on which the Holy Ghost descended in tongues of fire at Pentecost) will glow with flames of holy zeal and love, and consume every thing in a sacred conflagration (S. Cyril). Cp. Jer. v. 14.

— *they shall devour all the people*] Or *all nations*. No nations, however mighty, will be able to resist the power of Christ and His Church in the last days: as it is said in the Apocalypse, "The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdom of our Lord and of His Christ" (Rev. xi. 15). That Mountain (as described by Daniel) will fill all things, and destroy all that oppose it. God's Word will be like a fire, which will consume every thing as stubble that resists it.

— *Jerusalem shall be inhabited again in her own place*] Rather, literally, *Jerusalem shall dwell still under herself*; that is, the Church will not rely on earthly powers, which will be opposed to her, but she will dwell in continual stability, dependent upon herself (see the use of the word in vi. 12, *out of His place*, lit. *from under Himself*) and on her own spiritual strength, derived from her Divine Head, Christ.

⁷. *The LORD also shall save the tents of Judah first*] There shall be no local or personal supremacy in the Church of God. "The Church will recover her primitive glory" (S. Jerome says here), "and the tents of Judah will be saved;" that is, there will be in the whole world Christian assemblies of faithful worshippers who belong to the "Jerusalem that is above, which is the mother of us all" (Gal. iv. 26). And the *house of David and the glory of the inhabitants of Jerusalem* will not magnify themselves, as if their power, honour, and victory were due to their own arm; that is, "no rulers of the Church will imagine that any thing that they do is done by their own learning and wisdom, but will ascribe it to the help of the Lord." And none will domineer over the rest: according to the words of St. Peter, they will not be "lords over God's heritage; but will be ensamples to the flock" (1 Pet. v. 2, 3).

⁸. *In that day—he that is feeble among them—shall be as David; and the house of David shall be as God*] This has been fulfilled in the Incarnation of Christ, Who is the True David. See above, on Ezekiel xxiv. 23, 24, and xxxvii. 24, 25. "Of His fulness all we have received, and grace for grace" (John i. 16); and even the poorest and feeblest among us are made "kings and priests" to God (Rev. i. 6; v. 10; xx. 6. 1 Pet. ii. 59) by union with Him, the Everlasting King and Priest, and become "partakers of the Divine nature" (2 Pet. i. 4) by virtue of baptismal incorporation in Him, and spiritual indwelling in Him, Who is "Emmanuel, God with us" (Isa. vii. 14. Matt. i. 23), "God was manifest in the flesh" (1 Tim. iii. 16. John i. 14), especially by means of the Holy Communion received into the heart by faith.

By *Jerusalem* (says S. Cyril) the Prophet here, without doubt, means the Christian Church; and he describes the strength, security, and quietness which she receives from Christ, the true David.

— *as the angel of the LORD*] The name of Christ. See above, on i. 11.

THE ENEMIES OF THE CHURCH WILL BE OVERTHROWN.
CONVERSION TO CHRIST, ESPECIALLY OF THE JEWS.

⁹. *in that day—I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem*] This cannot be applied in all its fulness to the literal Jerusalem; no such combination of *all nations* against Jerusalem ever has been formed.

This prophecy foretells a great insurrection and confederacy of Worldly Powers against the true Spiritual Jerusalem, the Church of Christ, and it predicts their destruction. "The Lord will protect those who dwell in the Church" (says S. Jerome), "and will seek to destroy her enemies." See on xiv. 2, and the

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

k Jer. 31. 9. &
50. 4.
Ezek. 39. 29.
Joel 2. 28.
1 John 19. 34, 37.
Rev. 1. 7.
m Jer. 6. 26.
Amos 8. 10.
n Acts 2. 37.
o 2 Kings 23. 29.
2 Chron. 35. 24.
p Matt. 24. 30.
Rev. 1. 7.
† Heb. families,
families.
q 2 Sam. 5. 14.
Luke 3. 31.

¹⁰ ^k And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, ^m as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

¹¹ In that day shall there be a great ⁿ mourning in Jerusalem, ^o as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon. ¹² ^p And the land shall mourn, [†] every family apart; the family of the house of David apart, and their wives apart; the family of the house of ^q Nathan apart, and their wives apart; ¹³ the family of the house of Levi apart, and their wives apart;

prophecy in Ezekiel xxxviii., xxxix.; and in Revelation xvi. 16; xix. 11—21; and xx. 8, 9; and the notes there.

10. *I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications* [The Prophet takes up the words of Joel (ii. 28), "*I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh*;" and Ezekiel xxxix. 29, "*I have poured out my spirit upon the house of Israel*." God will pour out His spirit of grace; and this grace from Him will excite in men a spirit of supplication.

This prophecy has been fulfilled in part, by the outpouring of the Holy Spirit on the Apostles, and on large multitudes of devout men from all countries, on the day of Pentecost; and upon Cornelius and his companions at Caesarea, and on innumerable others after him; and will be completely accomplished in the Church of Christ. See what follows.

— *they shall look upon me whom they have pierced* [Observe that the Lord JEHOVAH here speaks, and says, "They shall look upon Me;" and we know from the Holy Spirit in the New Testament (John xix. 34, 37. Rev. i. 7) that these words are to be fulfilled in CHRIST. Therefore Christ is JEHOVAH. Compare Bp. Pearson on the Creed, Art. iv., p. 201, and Dr. Waterland, ii. p. 19; Dr. Pusey on Daniel, p. 486, who says here, "*I will pour out My Spirit*. To pour out the Spirit is plainly a Divine Act. When Zechariah prophesied, the Jews were familiar with that great prophecy of Joel in which God speaks, *I will pour out My Spirit* (Joel ii. 28). Here He foretells some outpouring, and that, as a fruit of it, they should gaze earnestly on Himself, Whom they had pierced."

These words of Zechariah predict the piercing of Christ; as the Holy Ghost Himself, speaking by the Evangelist St. John, has assured us (John xix. 33); and they foretell the turning of the eyes of the Jews to Him (*S. Cyril*; *Theodore*); and, in a more general sense, they pre-announce the turning of the eyes of all penitent sinners—whether Jew or Gentile (see Rev. i. 7, where they are extended to "all kindreds of the earth")—who have pierced Him with their sins, crucifying afresh the Son of God (Heb. vi. 6). They shall turn to the Cross of Christ with contrite hearts and weeping eyes, and shall look to Him with faith and repentance, and be saved from the ends of the earth (cp. Isa. xlv. 22), as the Israelites, when stung by the serpents, looked to the brazen serpent and were healed (John iii. 14). See an excellent sermon (a Good Friday sermon) in this general sense, by Bp. Andrewes, ii. 119—138.

This prophecy began to be verified on the Day of Pentecost, when many Jews at Jerusalem were "pricked in their heart" by St. Peter's sermon, and said, "What shall we do?" and were baptized (Acts ii. 37—41; cp. v. 14); and it will be fulfilled in a more signal manner—as *S. Augustine* observes in his *De Civ. Dei*, vii. 30) when the Jews come to Christ in the true Jerusalem of His Church, and weep for the sin they committed in rejecting Him. See on Isa. lxiv. 9—12. Jer. iii. 21; xxxi. 9; l. 4. Ezek. xxxix. 23—29.

On the rendering of the *Sept.* here, see *S. Jerome* and the note below, on John xix. 37. The framers of that Version, or rather Paraphrase, taking the word *dakaru* (they pierced) as figurative, and as equivalent to, "they pierced with pungent sarcasms of scorn," render it, "they danced against, or insulted;" being moved to this rendering by the similarity of the words (as written in Hebrew) *rakadu* (they danced) and *dakaru* (they pierced); on which principle of allusive analogy many of the renderings of the *Septuagint* may be accounted for. See above, on Amos ix. 11, 12.

The Jews themselves acknowledge these words to be spoken of the Messiah; but to escape the Christian inferences from this admission, they have invented the fiction of a double Messiah—a conquering and a suffering Messiah. See *Buxtorf*, *Lexicon* (in Arnimillan), and Bp. Chandler, p. 90.

— *they shall mourn for him*] Observe the change of persons here, "they shall look on Me," and "*they shall mourn for Him*."

Christ, being God, is one in substance with Jehovah, as He Himself says, "I and My Father are One" [substance] (John x. 30. Cp. John xvii. 21, 22.) But since He is Man as well as God, and distinct in Person from the Father, the Father speaks of Him in the third person.

— *as one mourneth for his only son*] Only, Hebr. *yáchild*, a word used with special typical reference to Christ, e.g., in the history of Isaac. See on Gen. xxii. 2, 12; and Judges xi. 34, with reference to Jephthah's daughter, whose history was a mysterious foreshadowing of Christ's sacrifice (see the note at the end of Judges xi., p. 129). Compare the use of this word in the great Paschal Psalm, xxii. 20, and xxxv. 17, which foretells the Crucifixion of Christ. Cp. Jer. vi. 26; Amos viii. 10.

11. *as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon*] This prophecy implies the Death of the Messiah. It declares that the mourning of the Jews for Christ, and for their own sin in crucifying Him, will be like the bitter mourning for the death of Josiah the good King of Judah, who was slain at Megiddon (near to which, as *S. Jerome* says, was Hadadrimmon, now *Rammaneh*, or *Ramâne*); and for whom "all Judah and Jerusalem mourned, and Jeremiah lamented for him, and the singing women spake of him in their lamentations, for many generations" (2 Chron. xxxv. 23—25). Josiah was a signal type of Christ. See the notes above, on 2 Kings xxiii. 30, pp. 159, 160, which may serve for a comment here.

12. *every family apart*] Our mourning for Christ must be a personal mourning; a general one will not suffice; each one individually must have a separate consciousness of his own sin. See above, on Ezekiel, *Introd.*, pp. 155, 156, and Ezek. xxiv. 23, "Ye shall pine away for your iniquities, and mourn one toward another."

12, 13. *the family of the house of David apart—of Nathan—of the house of Levi—of Shimei*] Four families are here mentioned—two of the royal line, under the names of David and Nathan (the son of David, from whom Zerubbabel descended, Luke iii. 27. 31); and two from the priestly line, Levi and Shimei. See Numbers iii. 17, 18; where Shimei is mentioned as a son of Gershon and grandson of Levi. Cp. *Hengst.* and *Keil* here.

The prophet mentions one leading family (David) and one subordinate (Nathan) in the royal race; and one leading family (*Levi*), and one subordinate one (*Shimei*), in the priestly line (cp. Dr. Mill on the Genealogies, pp. 166—169).

This prophecy cannot be understood literally; first, because the genealogies of the families of David, Nathan, Levi, and Shimei are now lost; and next, because it cannot be imagined that other tribes than those of Judah and Levi will be excluded from this penitential confession and reconciliation. But these four names are representative names (as are the names of the tribes of Israel in the Apocalypse; see on Rev. vii. 4—8, p. 196). And these four names are used to intimate that all orders, high and low, of both classes, the civil and ecclesiastical, must confess their sins against Christ. The Rulers and Priests of Jerusalem joined together in rejecting and crucifying Him. They must both unite in mourning for Him. This prophecy, therefore, may be applied to describe the acts of penitence which are required of all orders of men, whether temporal or spiritual, for their manifold sins against Christ. It is only on this condition of repentance, and of conformity to the likeness of His death, by being crucified to the world, that they can obtain pardon of Him, and be saved. Every one must bear in his heart the marks—the stigmata—of the Lord Jesus (cp. Gal. vi. 17).

13. *their wives apart*] "Hoc significat, quod tempore tribula-

the family || of Shimei apart, and their wives apart; ¹⁴ all the families that remain, every family apart, and their wives apart.

XIII. ¹ In ^a that day there shall be ^b a fountain opened to the house of David and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem for sin and for † uncleanness.

² And it shall come to pass in that day, saith the LORD of hosts, *that* I will cut off the names of the idols out of the land, and they shall no more be remembered: and also I will cause ^d the prophets and the unclean spirit to pass out of the land. ³ And it shall come to pass, *that* when any shall yet prophesy, then his father and his mother that begat him shall say unto him, Thou shalt not live; for thou speakest lies in the name of the LORD: and his father and his mother that begat him ^e shall thrust him through when he prophesieth. ⁴ And it shall come to pass in that day, *that* ^f the prophets shall be ashamed every one of his vision, when he hath prophesied; neither shall they wear ^g † a rough garment † to deceive: ⁵ ^h but he shall say, I *am* no prophet, I *am* an husbandman; for man taught me to keep cattle from my youth.

⁶ And *one* shall say unto him, What *are* these wounds in thine hands?

Then he shall answer, *Those* with which I was wounded *in* the house of my friends.

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

|| Or, of *Simcon*.
as LXX.
a ch. 12. 3.
b Heb. 9. 14.
1 Pet. 1. 19.
Rev. 1. 5.
† Heb. *separation*
for uncleanness.
c Ex. 23. 13.
Josh. 23. 7.
Ps. 16. 4.
Ezek. 30. 13.
Hos. 2. 17.
Micah 5. 12, 13.
d 2 Pet. 2. 1.

e Deut. 13. 6, 8.
& 18. 20.

f Micah 3. 6, 7.

g 2 Kings 1. 8.
Isa. 20. 2.

h Matt. 3. 4.

† Heb. *a garment*

of hair.

† Heb. *to lie*.

h Amos 7. 14.

tionis et luctûs non debeamus servire conjugii et operi nuptiarum. Unde et in Joel dicitur ad Judæos, *Egrediatur sponsus de cubiculo suo et sponsa de thalamo suo*” (S. Jerome, Joel ii. 16). Cp. 1 Cor. vii. 5.

THE BLESSED CONSEQUENCES OF REPENTANCE AND OF TURNING TO CHRIST. ABOLITION OF IDOLATRY AND HERESY.

CH. XIII. 1. *In that day there shall be a fountain opened*] The Prophet, having spoken of the piercing of Christ crucified, and of the looking of penitent souls to Him Whom they have pierced with their sins, now speaks of the flowing forth of that Blood from His side which cleanseth from all sin (1 John i. 7. 1 Pet. i. 2. Rev. i. 5). The gushing forth of this stream, and its cleansing virtue, had been described in glowing imagery by Ezekiel (xlvi. 1—12) and by Joel (iii. 18). “*Hic fons de domo Dei egrediens refertur ad Ecclesiam, et ad scientiam Scripturarum, ut omnes renascamur in Christo, et in aquâ baptismatis (in which the cleansing virtue of Christ’s blood is first applied to us) nostra nobis peccata condonentur*” (S. Jerome).

This fountain was opened at Calvary, and it flowed on the Day of Pentecost, and many were then cleansed by it (Acts iii. 19; v. 31), and it has ever been flowing to all the faithful, in the Word and Sacraments ministered in Christ’s Church. In our pilgrimage through this world’s wilderness to the Canaan of our heavenly rest, we drink of the smitten Rock—the spiritual Rock which followeth us, and that Rock is Christ. Cp. 1 Cor. x. 4, and John vii. 37, “If any man thirst, let him come unto Me, and drink.” To those who dwelt in Jerusalem, a fountain was opened at Calvary; and the cleansing waters of that fountain are ever being applied to the soul in the holy Sacrament of Baptism (S. Cyril).

2. *I will cut off the names of the idols*] Not only all idolatrous worship will be abolished, but the very name of its objects will be cut off under the Gospel of Christ. See on Hos. ii. 16, 17. Here is a solemn warning to all who dally with idolatry in any shape.

— *the prophets and the unclean spirit*] The teaching of false doctrine is due to Satan himself, who is the *unclean spirit*, and is the author of what the Apostle calls “doctrines of devils” (1 Tim. iv. 1); and so St. John, Rev. xvi. 14.

3. *when any shall yet prophesy*] Having spoken of Satan, the *unclean spirit*, as the author of false doctrines, he now proceeds to speak of his emissaries, false teachers; they also shall be cut off (S. Jerome).

— *his father and his mother that begat him shall thrust him through*] Such will be their zeal for God, that they will execute in spirit the Law of Moses against teachers of false doctrines. See Deut. xiii. 6—9; xviii. 20. The letter of that law is now abrogated under the Gospel. See below, on Luke ix. 55. Some Roman Catholic divines, indeed, as *A Lapide* here, make this text to be a divine command to kill heretics.

S. Martin of Tours was of a very different mind (see *Sulpicius Severus*, Hist. Eccl. ii. 50); and so *Tertullian*, ad Scap. 2., ‘Religionis non est, religionem cogere;’ and *Lactant*. Divin. Inst. v. 20, ‘Defendenda religio non est occidendo, sed moriendo; religio cogi non potest.’

But this prophecy declares that no sound believer will give any quarter to heresy in his nearest and dearest relatives. It is the triumph of Christian faith and charity, to love the erring without loving their errors; and to hate their errors without hating the erring. Indeed, because the true Christian loves the erring, therefore he hates their error, and endeavours to deliver them from it, in order that they may be saved in the day of the Lord. Whereas the false teacher and treacherous brother abets the erring in their errors, and flatters heretics in their heresy.

4. *neither shall they wear a rough garment to deceive*] They shall not imitate Elias (2 Kings i. 8), or John the Baptist (Matt. iii. 4), or any other teacher, by their rough hairy garment and ascetic life; which some adopt in order to deceive others by specious semblances of sanctity. Cp. Micah iii. 5.

5. *But he shall say, I am no prophet—an husbandman*] He will no longer imitate the arrogance of false teachers, but will emulate the modesty of the true, like Amos (vii. 14).

6. *And one shall say unto him, What are these wounds in thine hands? Then he shall answer, Those with which I was wounded in the house of my friends*]

To whom do these words refer?

Some reply—To the false prophet, wounded by his parents and friends for prophesying, whom he, being now penitent, calls his friends, because they punished him.

But this seems a doubtful interpretation. According to the Levitical Law, the false prophet was to be stoned (Deut. xiii. 10), not to be wounded in the hands.

Some think that by these wounds he means the gashes which he inflicted on himself in the worship of his false gods (1 Kings xviii. 28). But this notion seems still less tenable.

On the whole, it appears most reasonable to acquiesce in the opinion of those interpreters (*Rupertus, Aquinas, Galatinus, Ribera, Menochius, Tirinus, A Lapide, Bp. Chandler*, and others), who say that Zechariah, having spoken of the piercing of the Messiah (xii. 10), and of the fountain for uncleanness which gushed forth from His wounded side on the cross (xiii. 1), and of the blessed consequences of His passion to all penitents, here reverts to Him, and puts this question to Him, “*What are these wounds in Thine hands?*” The Holy Spirit had already revealed that the Messiah would be so wounded; “*They pierced my hands and my feet*,” Messiah had said by the Psalmist (Ps. xxii. 16). And that these wounds would be received in the *house of His friends*, even among His own people the Jews, had been foretold by Isaiah (liii. 3—5).

This exposition is found even in so early a Christian writer as *S. Barnabas* (Epist. c. 6: see *Dressel’s* note, p. 9); and it is

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

i Isa. 40. 11.
Ezek. 34. 23.
k John 10. 30.
& 14. 10, 11.
Phil. 2. 6.
l Matt. 26. 31.
Mark 14. 27.
m Matt. 18. 10, 14.
Luke 12. 32.

n Rom. 11. 5.

o Isa. 48. 10.

p 1 Pet. 1. 6, 7.

q Ps. 50. 15.
& 91. 15.

ch. 10. 6.

r Ps. 144. 15.

Jer. 50. 22.

Ezek. 31. 20.

Hos. 2. 23.

ch. 8. 8.

a Isa. 13. 9.

Joel 2. 31.

Acts 2. 20.

b Joel 3. 2.

- 7 Awake, O sword, against ⁱ my shepherd,
And against the man ^k that is my fellow, saith the LORD of hosts :
^l Smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered :
And I will turn mine hand upon ^m the little ones.
ⁿ And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the LORD,
Two parts therein shall be cut off and die ;
^o But the third shall be left therein.
^p And I will bring the third part ^o through the fire,
And will ^p refine them as silver is refined,
And will try them as gold is tried :
^q They shall call on my name, and I will hear them :
^r I will say, It is my people :
And they shall say, The LORD is my God.
XIV. ¹ Behold, ^a the day of the LORD cometh,
And thy spoil shall be divided in the midst of thee.
² For ^b I will gather all nations against Jerusalem to battle ;

confirmed by what follows, "Smite the Shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered," which refers to the Passion of Christ, as we know from Christ Himself. See Matt. xxvi. 31. Mark xiv. 27.

THE PASSION OF CHRIST.

7. *Awake, O sword, against my shepherd*] Observe the connexion. In the foregoing verses, the earthly father and mother of the false prophet, or shepherd, are represented as smiting him and thrusting him through (v. 3). Here the Heavenly Father, Jehovah Himself, speaks concerning the true shepherd, "*Awake, O sword, against My Shepherd*," the shepherd appointed by Me.

The salvation of the world by the sacrifice of Christ was by "the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God," though that counsel was executed "by wicked hands." See on Acts ii. 23; and cp. note on 2 Sam. xxiv. 1, p. 131.

Christ Himself said to Pilate, "Thou couldest have no power at all against Me, except it were given thee from above," i.e. from heaven (John xix. 11).

— *Awake, O sword!*] This sword is that of which our Lord speaks to the Father in the Paschal Psalm, "Deliver my soul from the sword" (Hebr. *chereb*, the same word as here), "my darling from the power of the dog." And again in that other Paschal Psalm, "They persecute Him whom Thou hast smitten; and they talk to the grief of those whom Thou hast wounded" (Ps. lxi. 26). He, Who is the Good Shepherd, was smitten, as if He had been a false shepherd. That this prophecy points to Christ we know from His own words in Gethsemane, "All ye shall be offended because of Me this night; for it is written, I will smite the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock shall be scattered abroad" (Matt. xxvi. 31. Mark xiv. 27).

THE GODHEAD OF CHRIST, THE TRUE SHEPHERD.

— *against the man that is my fellow*] Hebr. *ômith*, a word only used in Leviticus, where it occurs eleven times, and is translated always (either in the text or margin) by *neighbour*, i.e. comrade and equal—one of the same nature and rank with another. See Lev. vi. 2; xviii. 20; xix. 11. 15. 17; xxiv. 19; xxv. 14, twice, 15. 17. This, then, is the sense in which the word is here used; and it is clear that the Shepherd, Who is here smitten, is equal to Jehovah, and a distinct Person from Him. Cp. *Hengst.* here, and *Keil*, and *Dr. Pusey* on Daniel, p. 488.

Christ Himself has assured us in the Gospel that Jehovah is here speaking of Him and of His Passion; and it is a wonderful mystery, that while Jehovah is thus foretelling the Death of Christ, to be slain by the hand of His own people, He proclaims Him to be not only a *Man* ("the *Man* that is My fellow"), but also declares Him of the same nature with Himself. *The Fellow* of Jehovah is no other than the equal of Jehovah. It is He Who said, "I and My Father are One" (John x. 30); "I am in the Father, and the Father in Me" (John xiv. 10).

He Who is smitten is Man, and so was able to die for us, He is also equal with Jehovah, and therefore is able to deliver us from death. He is the good Shepherd, Who gave Himself freely for us (John x. 11. 14—18), that we might live by His death.

— *Smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered*]

Words which were applied by Christ to Himself, as already noted (Matt. xxvi. 31. Mark xiv. 27).

— *I will turn mine hand upon the little ones*] Of whom the good Shepherd says, "Fear not, *little flock*" (Luke xii. 32; cp. Matt. xviii. 10—14). Immediately after our Lord had quoted these words of Zechariah, in the garden of Gethsemane, He added to the disciples who then forsook Him, "After I am risen, I will go before you" (He uses a pastoral word there; cp. John x. 4) "into Galilee."

That special fulfilment was like an earnest and pledge of the more general fulfilment still awaiting this prophecy; which is accomplished, whenever the *little ones*,—they who were once proud and great in their own conceit,—become meek and teachable, and go with faith and repentance to meet Christ. And it will be realized when the fulness of the Gentiles shall have come in, and the Jews turn to Christ with weeping eyes and contrite hearts, and look on Him Whom they have pierced (xii. 10).

8, 9. *Two parts therein shall be cut off—die; but the third shall be left therein. And I will bring the third part through the fire*] The division into three parts represents the time of trial for Jerusalem; and the falling away and reprobation of many, are represented by two-thirds, and the purifying and refining of a smaller number, are symbolized by one-third, in the salutary discipline of the fire of persecution. Cp. Rev. xvi. 19; and see Ezek. v. 2. 12; Rev. viii. 7—12; ix. 15; xii. 4, where the *third* part represents what is smitten. With regard to the imagery of trial by fire, cp. Isa. xlvi. 10. Jer. ix. 16. Mal. iii. 3. 1 Pet. i. 7.

This purifying and refining work began immediately after the Crucifixion, in the last days of Jerusalem; and it will have its climax and consummation in the time immediately preceding Christ's Second Advent. The Prophet Daniel describes the purifying discipline of the persecutions in the latter days of the Church in xi. 35, "Some of them of understanding shall fall, to try them and to purge;" and Dan. xii. 10, "Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried."

THE PERSECUTIONS OF THE LAST DAYS—THE FULL AND FINAL VICTORY AND GLORY OF CHRIST AND OF HIS CHURCH.

CH. XIV. 1. *thy spoil shall be divided in the midst of thee*] This prophecy was fulfilled, in a preparatory manner, when the Romans spoiled Jerusalem, under Titus; but it was not exhausted then, as is evident from v. 2. It will have its complete accomplishment in the last days, when the Church of God will be despoiled by her enemies.

2. *I will gather all nations against Jerusalem*] This was true, only in a very subordinate sense, when God brought the armies of Rome, under Titus, against the literal Jerusalem (cp. xii. 9); but it will be fulfilled by a general insurrection of Antichristianism against the spiritual Jerusalem, the Church of God, in the latter days. Compare Ezekiel's prophecy concerning that insurrection, xxxviii. 14—17, and the predictions in the Apocalypse, Rev. xvi. 12—14; xvii. 14; xx. 8. God is here said to gather the nations against Jerusalem, the Visible Church, as in Ezekiel xxxviii. 17, because what is done by them is done by

And the city shall be taken, and the houses rifled, and the women ravished ;
And half of the city shall go forth into captivity, and the residue of the
people shall not be cut off from the city.

Before
CHRIST
about
517.
c Isa. 13, 16.

³ Then shall the LORD go forth, and fight against those nations,
As when he fought in the day of battle.

⁴ And his feet shall stand in that day ^d upon the mount of Olives, which is ^{d See Ezek.}
before Jerusalem on the east, 11. 23.

And the mount of Olives shall cleave in the midst thereof toward the east
and toward the west,

^e And there shall be a very great valley ;

e Joel 3, 12, 14.

And half of the mountain shall remove toward the north, and half of it
toward the south.

⁵ And ye shall flee to the valley of || the mountains ;

|| Or, my moun-
tains.

|| For the valley of the mountains shall reach unto Azal :

|| Or, when he
shall touch the
valley of the mountains to the place he separated.

His permission (as in the campaigns of Nebuchadnezzar and the Romans against the literal Jerusalem), and for the trial and purification of His people, and for the punishment of their sins, and because the enemies of the Church will be gathered together in order to be destroyed by Him. Cp. on Joel iii. 2, "I will gather together all nations, and bring them down into the Valley of Jehoshaphat" (i.e. of Judgment of the Lord). "Assemble yourselves and come, all ye heathen, and gather together round about."

— the residue of the people shall not be cut off] In the literal Jerusalem almost a total depopulation of Jerusalem was made by war, pestilence, famine, or captivity. "It is clear from this" (says Keil) "that the words do not refer to the destruction of Jerusalem by the Romans." The prophecy was not exhausted then, but it extends to the last days, and it is explained by Christ's promise of perpetual presence and protection to His Church, "On this Rock I will build My Church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it" (Matt. xvi. 18).

3. Then shall the LORD go forth—as when he fought in the day of battle] In the day of slaughter. This is not applicable to the last days of the literal Jerusalem. The Lord forsook that guilty city which had rejected Christ, and gave it up to be trodden under foot by the Gentiles; but it will be fulfilled in the Christian Church, for which the Lord will fight in the great antichristian struggle, which even now seems near at hand; and He will destroy all her enemies. See the foregoing note, and on Ezekiel xxxviii. 18—23; xxxix. 1—8; and Rev. xix. 13—21, and xx. 8, 9, 10.

THE DAY OF DOOM.

4. his feet shall stand in that day upon the mount of Olives] Christ ascended from the Mount of Olives in triumph to heaven, like a mighty conqueror and king, having overcome Satan, Death, and the Grave, and sat down in heavenly Glory, at the right hand of God; and the angels announced His ascension in these words to the Apostles, who were standing on the Mount of Olives and were gazing up into heaven, "This same Jesus, Who is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen Him go into heaven" (Acts i. 10).

The Mount of Olives was the last spot on earth on which those Blessed Feet rested before His Ascension; and some have ventured to say that they left an impression there. See *A Lapid* here, and *Dean Jackson* on the Creed, book IX. chap. lxiii. Perhaps, when He comes in glory, it may please Him to stand there. Doubtless the Mount of Olives is mentioned here, and is referred to by Ezekiel (xi. 23, see the note there) with reference to His glorious Ascension from that place, and in order to connect His triumphant Ascension to Heaven with His future glorious Advent to judge the world. There was a subordinate and preparatory fulfilment of this prophecy when the literal Jerusalem was besieged and taken by the Roman armies. The judgment of God on Jerusalem is represented by Christ Himself (in Matt. xxiv.) as a type and rehearsal of the Universal Judgment of the world. See the notes below on that chapter. Christ delivered that prophecy on the Mount of Olives. He ascended from the Mount of Olives. The siege of Jerusalem began at the Mount of Olives. See below, on Matt. xxiv. 3. Christ's feet stood then, in a figure, on the Mount of Olives; for it was He Who led the armies of Rome; it was He Who sent Titus against

Jerusalem. The legions of Cæsar were armies of Christ, Who executed judgment by them on that guilty and rebellious city. Cp. *Dean Jackson*, vol. viii., p. 501.

— a very great valley] This is the name given to the scene of the future Universal Judgment, which is called the Valley of Jehoshaphat (or of the Judgment of Jehovah) by Joel. See on Joel iii. 12—14.

There will be a great Earthquake (see Amos i. 1) which will shake all nations, and will raise the dead from their graves. All the pride, and pomp, and power of this World will then be depressed, as it were, into a lowly valley, and will be placed beneath the feet of Christ, the Almighty Judge (1 Cor. xv. 25).

5. And ye shall flee to the valley of the mountains] Zechariah derives his prophetic scenery from the literal Jerusalem. As in the day of its destruction the true believers listened to Christ's warning, "Let them which be in Judea flee to the mountains" (see on Matt. xxiv. 16), and thus escaped the doom of the city; and as Lot of old fled from Sodom to the mountains, and found a refuge there (Gen. xix. 17, 30), so the true believers will take warning at the approach of the Great Day, and escape the wrath to come. Ye, who are my faithful people, shall flee to the valley of the mountains, or rather, of My mountains; ye shall flee from the great earthquake, and ye shall find shelter there: "When these things come to pass, lift up your heads, for your redemption draweth nigh" (Luke xxi. 28).

The wicked shall flee, and flee in vain, to their mountains in panic and alarm, and shall cry to the mountains, "Fall on us, and to the hills, Cover us, and hide us from the wrath of the Lamb" (Luke xxiii. 30. Rev. vi. 16). But ye shall look up to My hills from whence cometh your strength, and find safety there, as Lot fled from Sodom to the mountains, and was saved from the doom of the city.

He describes the Mount of Olives as cleaving asunder, so as to open a way for those who escape from the besieged city. The Mount of Olives would have hindered the flight of those who fled forth from Jerusalem; but by the earthquake a free passage is given to them, on account of their faith, according to our Lord's words, "If ye have faith as a grain of mustard seed, ye shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place, and it shall remove" (Matt. xvii. 20).

— unto Azal] Azal is a symbolical word, like many others in the prophetic writings (see above on *Hadrach*, ix. 1; cp. *Kliefoth* here, p. 265), signifying nearness, or union, from the Hebrew word *âtsal*, to join together (*Gesen.* 74). Hence the *Vulgate* has "ad proximum."

The word Azal (says *S. Jerome*) signifies here union—the union of Jew and Gentile, the union of the Law and the Gospel—in one Church.

As Jeremiah describes the spiritual Jerusalem, i.e. the Christian Church, as extending to *Gareb* and *Goath* (two symbolical names), because the Church provides a spiritual remedy in Christ, for sin and death (see on Jer. xxxi. 39), so Zechariah describes the valley made by the division of the mountain of Christ's ascension, as extending to Azal, or union, because it unites all in Him.

In other words, the Valley of God's mountain, which is represented as near Jerusalem (the Mount of Olives), the site of Christ's Ascension, is here said to extend to Azal, that is to union, to enfold all the faithful, both Jews and Gentiles (who once were separated), in one Church; and this extension is to be

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

f Amos i. 1.
about 787.
g Matt. 16. 27.
& 21. 30, 31.
& 25. 31.
Jude 11.
h Joel 3. 11.
|| i. e. it shall not
be clear in some
places, and dark
in other places of
the world.
† Heb. *precious*
† Heb. *thickens*.
|| Or, *the day shall*
be one.
i Rev. 22. 5.
k Matt. 21. 36.
l Isa. 30. 26.
& 60. 19, 20.
Rev. 21. 23.
m Ezek. 17. 1.
Joel 3. 18.
Rev. 22. 1.
|| Or, *eastern*,
Joel 2. 20.
n Dan. 2. 11.
Rev. 11. 15.
o Eph. 4. 5, 6.
|| Or, *compassed*.
p Isa. 40. 4.

Yea, ye shall flee, like as ye fled from before the 'earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah :

8 And the LORD my God shall come,

And ^h all the saints with thee.

6 And it shall come to pass in that day,

|| That the light shall not be † clear, nor † dark :

7 But || it shall be ⁱ one day ^k which shall be known to the LORD,

Not day, nor night :

But it shall come to pass, that at ^l evening time it shall be light.

8 And it shall be in that day, that living ^m waters shall go out from Jerusalem ;

Half of them toward the || former sea,

And half of them toward the hinder sea :

In summer and in winter shall it be.

9 And the LORD shall be ⁿ king over all the earth :

In that day shall there be ^o one LORD, and his name one.

10 All the land shall be || turned ^p as a plain from Geba to Rimmon south of Jerusalem :

both northward and southward, because all the faithful in both directions will be included in it. " *Duorum populorum* (olim separatorum sed) rursus in una fide societas inter duos montes placabili sede requiescet, quoniam et Vetus et Novum Testamentum sibi utrumque jungetur" (S. Jerome).

This union is a consequence of Christ's Ascension from the Mount of Olives. He sent the Holy Ghost from heaven, and enabled the Apostles to go forth from Jerusalem into all the world, to unite all nations in His Church, which holds both Testaments in her hands, and is the shelter appointed by God for all His people in all the world.

— *earthquake in the days of Uzziah*] See on Amos i. 1.

— *the LORD my God shall come, and all the saints with thee*] With Thee, O Christ, coming to judgment, the holy angels shall come also. S. Cyril here. Daniel vii. 13—27. Matt. xxv. 31. 1 Thess. iv. 16. 2 Thess. i. 7. Jude 14. He, to Whom all judgment is committed, is Christ (John v. 22); and He will come in the clouds with all His holy angels to judgment; and it is expressly said here that the LORD God will come; therefore Christ is Jehovah. Compare on xiii. 7.

6. *it shall come to pass in that day, that the light shall not be clear, nor dark*] Rather (according to the *Chetib*) in that day there will not be light, the brightest things will be wrapped up (that is, "the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven"—Matt. xxiv. 29. Mark xiii. 25. Cp. Joel ii. 31). The heavenly firmament, formerly expanded in its bright pages bespangled with constellations, will be wrapped together like a scroll, and be shrivelled up in the fire of the world's conflagration. Cp. Isaiah xxiv. 4, "All the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll;" and 2 Pet. iii. 7. 10, "The heavens and the earth are kept in store, reserved unto fire against the day of judgment and perdition of ungodly men. The day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and all the works that are therein shall be burned up." And compare Rev. vi. 12—17, describing the last day, "There was a great earthquake; and the sun became black as sackcloth, and the moon became as blood; and the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig-tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind. And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places. And the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, . . . hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains; and said to the mountains and rocks, Fall on us, and hide us from the face of Him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb. For the great day of His wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand?"

The verb here used is *káphá*, which in *niphal* (as here) signifies, to be drawn together. See *Gesen.* 736; *Fuerst*, 1737; and so *Lud. de Dieu*, *Kliefoth*, *Hengstl.*, *Hofmann*, *Kochler*, and *Keil* here.

7. *it shall be one day—known to the LORD*] For, as our Lord

says, "Of that day knoweth no man—but My Father only" (Matt. xxiv. 36).

— *not day, nor night*] It will not be day, for the sun will be darkened; nor will it be night, for moon and stars will disappear; but there will be light from the countenance of Christ, and from the flaming stream of fire which will issue forth from the throne of the Judge, when He comes to judgment (Dan. vii. 9, 10. 2 Thess. i. 8).

THE LIVING WATERS OF SALVATION.

8. *living waters shall go out from Jerusalem*] The Prophet, having described the terrors of the great Day, goes back to a higher point in the series of events, to justify God's judgments on the world, by declaring that in order to qualify and prepare men for that awful Assize, he will give them *living waters* of divine truth.

A remarkable instance of a similar process of *prophetic recapitulation* may be seen in the Apocalypse of St. John, who is continually reminding us of Zechariah. See the notes below, on Rev. xx. 1.

The Prophet takes advantage of the physical fact, that the literal Jerusalem was abundantly supplied with water, flowing in subterranean streams beneath the City and the Temple; and the spiritual waters here described by Zechariah are represented as flowing forth from Jerusalem, where Christ suffered on the cross, and where the Holy Ghost was given to the Apostles, who went forth to preach the Gospel of salvation through the blood of Christ, to all nations, and to enfold the World in the spiritual Jerusalem of the Universal Church. See S. Cyril, S. Jerome, Eusebius, Dem. Evang. vi. 18, and Theodoret here.

These spiritual waters are described as going forth, half to the former, or eastern sea, i. e. the Dead Sea; and half to the hinder Sea, i. e. to the Mediterranean; because the Gospel is diffused into all nations. And they are represented as flowing both in winter and summer (very different therefore from the literal brooks of Palestine), because the Gospel is not dried up in summer, and frozen in winter, but is perennial.

This imagery has been already displayed to us in the vision of Ezekiel, which exhibits these living waters as gushing from beneath the altar in the spiritual Temple, and flowing forth with salubrious streams to fertilize the world, and make it bring forth fruit, and to purify the Dead Sea of Human Corruption, and to make it teem with life. See above, on Ezek. xlvii. 1—12; and the *Retrospect* of Chapter xlvii., pp. 286, 287; and on Joel iii. 18, which may supply a comment on the present passage.

9. *one LORD, and his name one*] One Lord, One faith (Eph. iv. 5.); and all will be baptized unto that One Name, the Name of the Ever-Blessed Trinity, according to Christ's command given to His Apostles, "Go and teach all nations, baptizing them into the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: and Lo! I am with you always (literally, *all days*), even unto the end of the world" (Matt. xxviii. 19, 20).

10. *All the land shall be turned as a plain from Geba*] Rather, *all the land shall be changed* (so as to become exalted)

- And it shall be lifted up, and ^a || inhabited in her place,
 From Benjamin's gate unto the place of the first gate, unto the corner gate,
^r And from the tower of Hananeel unto the king's winepresses.
¹¹ And men shall dwell in it, and there shall be ^s no more utter destruction ;
^r But Jerusalem || shall be safely inhabited.
¹² And this shall be the plague wherewith the LORD will smite all the people
 that have fought against Jerusalem ;
 Their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet,
 And their eyes shall consume away in their holes,
 And their tongue shall consume away in their mouth.
¹³ And it shall come to pass in that day, that ^a a great tumult from the LORD ⁿ 1 Sam. 14. 15,
 shall be among them ;
 And they shall lay hold every one on the hand of his neighbour,
 And ^s his hand shall rise up against the hand of his neighbour.
¹⁴ And || Judah also shall fight || at Jerusalem ;
^r And the wealth of all the heathen round about shall be gathered together,
 gold, and silver, and apparel, in great abundance.
¹⁵ And ^s so shall be the plague of the horse, of the mule, of the camel, and of ^z ver. 12.
 the ass, and of all the beasts that shall be in these tents, as this plague.
¹⁶ And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left of all the nations

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

q ch. 12. 6.
|| Or, shall abide.
r Neh. 3. 1. & 12.
39.
Jer. 31. 38.
s Jer. 31. 40.
t Jer. 23. 6.
|| Or, shall abide.

x Judg. 7. 22.
2 Chron. 20. 23.
Ezek. 38. 21.
|| Or, thou also,
O Judah, shalt.
|| Or, against.
y Ezek. 39. 10,
17. &c.

as the plain, or high table-land, from Geba, about ten miles north of Jerusalem (Josh. xviii. 24) to Rimmon, on the south of Jerusalem, and on the borders of Edom, about fourteen miles north of Beersheba (Josh. xv. 32).

The meaning is, that all the land of Christ's Church will be elevated; according to the prophet's words, "It shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house" (the spiritual Temple), "shall be established on the top of the mountains" (Isa. ii. 2. Mic. iv. 1; and see above, on Ezek. xl. 1, p. 278, *Retrospect*). The Church of Christ is like a city set on a hill, which cannot be hid (Matt. v. 14).

Physically, the literal Jerusalem is lower than the hills that stand about it; the prophecy of its elevation *above* the hills, will be fulfilled in the glorification of Christ's Church, which will hereafter be exalted on earth above all worldly and temporal Powers, and will mount up in glory to heaven.

Zechariah does not foretell that the literal Jerusalem and Canaan will be glorified, but that the earth itself, the Universal Church, will be like a glorified Canaan, and a beatified Jerusalem (*Kliefoth*).

THE CITY SHALL BE SAFELY INHABITED.

— *it shall be lifted up, and inhabited in her place*] Literally, *be inhabited under herself*, by her own inherent spiritual strength.

The Church of Christ will no longer rely on secular powers, and be subject to them, which will fail her and be arrayed against her; but she will be lifted up and dwell securely in her place, by virtue of Christ's presence and power always in her (Matt. xxviii. 20), and by reason of the indwelling of the Holy Ghost, given to her by Him to abide with her for ever (John xiv. 16).

On the use of the Hebrew word *tachath* (*under*) see above, vi. 12, where it is said of Christ, that "He shall grow up out of His place," literally, from *under Himself*.

The following prophecy of Zechariah is best explained by a comparison of it with that of Jeremiah, where he describes the building up of the Church of Christ, and the safety of its inhabitants in all parts of it, by imagery similar to the present, derived from the topography of the literal Jerusalem. See the notes above, on Jer. xxxi. 38, 39, pp. 77, 78.

Probably (as the ancient fathers suggest), the following names may have been chosen as symbolical, as is certainly the case in Jeremiah. See on Jer. xxxi. 38. *The corner gate* may be mentioned with reference to Christ, the *Corner Stone*; *Hananeel*, with reference to *God's grace*; *the King's wine-presses*, with allusion to the sufferings of Christ our King, Who in His passion was trodden like grapes in a *wine-press*; but Who rose and conquered by suffering, and Who will become like one who treadeth the *wine-press*, when He puts all His enemies under His feet. See on Isa. lxxiii. 1—3.

— *From Benjamin's gate*] The gate on the north wall, toward Benjamin and Ephraim (2 Kings xiv. 13. Neh. viii. 16).

— *the first gate, unto the corner gate*] On the north-west. See on Jer. xxxi. 38, 39. The first gate may perhaps be the same as the *old gate* in Neh. iii. 6.

— *from the tower of Hananeel unto the king's winepresses*] Lit. from the north-east (Neh. iii. 1) to south (Neh. iii. 15); figuratively, from *God's grace* to Christ's act of Judgment. (See above.)

In order to mark the security of the universal Church, the gates on opposite sides of Jerusalem are specified. She is safe on all sides, even in the terrible day of doom.

11. *there shall be no more utter destruction*] Literally, there shall be no more any accursed thing, and no ban of extermination, Hebr. *cherem*. See Josh. vi. 17, 18, where it signifies a *devoted or accursed thing*; Mal. iv. 6, where it means a curse; and compare Rev. xxii. 3, where it is said of the heavenly city, "there shall be no more curse."

The literal Jerusalem was devoted to destruction by a curse for its idolatry, and was destroyed by the Babylonians; and it was again devoted to destruction for the rejection of Christ, and was destroyed by the Romans. But the Spiritual Jerusalem, the Church of Christ, will never be destroyed.

12. *the LORD will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem*] "Omnes persecutores, qui allixerunt Ecclesiam Domini, ne taceamus de futuris cruciatibus, etiam in presentem receperunt quæ fecerunt," says *S. Jerome*, who exemplifies this in the history of Valerian, Decius, Diocletian, Maximianus, Maximinus, and Julian, and other persecutors of the Church.

13. *a great tumult (or confusion) from the LORD shall be among them*] The enemies of the Church, which have been confederate against her, and have raged against her with furious violence, will suddenly be checked in their mad career, and will be distracted and confounded, like the enemies of Jerusalem in Jechoshaphat's time (2 Chron. xx. 23).

14. *Judah also shall fight at Jerusalem*] All believers will be united in defending the Church of God.

— *the wealth of all the heathen—shall be gathered*] Compare Ezekiel xxxix. 10, describing the victory of the Church of God.

15. *so shall be the plague of the horse*] So complete will be the destruction of the enemy, that not merely they themselves, but all their instruments of warfare, here represented as horses, mules, and camels of a besieging army, will be consumed. Compare the similar description in Ezekiel xxxix. 9, 10, 20.

JOYFUL ANNOUNCEMENT OF THE CONVERSION OF THE HEATHEN. THE PURITY AND GLORY OF THE CHURCH.

16. *every one that is left of all the nations—tabernacles*] The manifestation of God's power and love in defending His

Before
CHRIST
about
517.

a Isa. 60. 6, 7, 9.

b Lev. 23. 34, 43.

Neh. 8. 14.

Hos. 12. 9.

John 7. 2.

c Isa. 60. 12.

+ Heb. upon whom

there is not.

d Deut. 11. 10.

|| Or, sin.

|| Or, brides.

e Isa. 23. 18.

which came against Jerusalem shall even ^a go up from year to year to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, and to keep ^b the feast of tabernacles. ¹⁷ ^c And it shall be, *that* whoso will not come up of *all* the families of the earth unto Jerusalem to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, even upon them shall be no rain.

¹⁸ And if the family of Egypt go not up, and come not, [†] ^d *that have no rain*; there shall be the plague, wherewith the LORD will smite the heathen that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles. ¹⁹ This shall be the || punishment of Egypt, and the punishment of all nations that come not up to keep the feast of tabernacles.

²⁰ In that day shall there be upon the || bells of the horses, ^e HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD; and the pots in the LORD's house shall be like the bowls before the altar.

²¹ Yea, every pot in Jerusalem and in Judah shall be holiness unto the LORD of hosts:

And all they that sacrifice shall come and take of them, and seethe therein:

Church, and in defeating her enemies, shall have the blessed effect of turning many of the Heathen Nations (i.e. of unbelievers generally), to the true faith and worship of God.

The imagery is here also borrowed, as usual, from Hebrew customs, and from the literal Jerusalem. The conversion of the Nations to Christianity is described as a going up to Jerusalem to worship the *Lord at the Feast of Tabernacles*, because that Feast was the great and crowning festival of the Hebrew year, and was specially typical of Christ's Incarnation (by which He, Who is God from eternity, came down from heaven, and pitched His tent in our nature,—John i. 14,—and dwells for ever among us), and of all the blessed fruits of the Incarnation in time and eternity. Compare the notes above, on Isaiah lxvi. 23; Hos. xii. 9; and Lev. xxiii. 34. Deut. xvi. 13; xxxi. 10. 2 Chron. viii. 12, 13. Ezra iii. 4. John vii. 2.

^{17.} *whoso will not come up of all the families of the earth unto Jerusalem to worship the King—even upon them shall be no rain*] No rain of God's grace will fall on those who despise the call to come to Christ and His Church. "There is none other Name under heaven, but that of Jesus, given unto men whereby we must be saved; neither is there salvation in any other" (Acts iv. 12); and "such as are being saved" are described in Holy Scripture as "added to the Church" (Acts ii. 47). The Church, says *S. Jerome* here, is the Jerusalem which is above, which is free, which is the mother of us all (Gal. iv. 26); and they who desire to partake of the grace and salvation provided by Christ, must "come to mount Zion, the city of the living God" (Heb. xii. 22). They must partake faithfully, joyfully, and reverently of the Word and Sacraments, and other means of grace which are ministered in His Church; and so the refreshing rain and dews of the Holy Spirit will fall upon them. But if they will not comply with these conditions, their souls will be parched and will wither away with spiritual drought.

^{18.} *if the family of Egypt go not up*] Egypt is the representative of the enemies of the Israel of God (*S. Cyril*), and especially of such as rely on worldly wisdom and secular philosophy, science, and art, for which Egypt was famous. But she is not excluded from hope of salvation if she will turn to God and join the communion of His Church. But if God's adversaries will not repent, they cannot hope for His favour; they will have no rain of divine grace, but will be smitten with plagues, like those of Egypt. Egypt was not refreshed by rain from heaven, but was watered by artificial channels cut in the earth (Deut. xi. 10. *Pin. N. II. v. 9*). Such is the soul of man without divine grace; but the Egyptians of this world will receive rain from God if they believe in Christ.

^{19.} *This shall be the punishment*] Literally, *this will be the sin of Egypt* (Hebr. *chattath*), and so *Sept., Vulg.* God does not punish willingly. His enemies bring down His wrath upon themselves by their sins.

^{20.} *In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses, HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD*] Here is another proof, if proof were needed, that this prophecy does not concern the literal Jerusalem and the Hebrew Nation, otherwise than as united with the Church of Christ. For it was contrary to the Hebrew law to "multiply horses" (Deut. xvii. 16). But here

horses are mentioned as consecrated to God. The very words, *HOLINESS TO THE LORD*, which were engraven upon the golden plate of the mitre of the High Priest himself (Exod. xxviii. 36), are to be attached to the bells upon them.

The meaning is this—Horses are emblems of strength, war, and victory. See Ps. cxlvii. 10. Prov. xxi. 31. Jer. viii. 6. Hos. i. 7. Hab. iii. 15; above, x. 3. Rev. vi. 2; xix. 11—14, where Christ is described as a mighty Conqueror riding on the white horse, and followed by a train of riders on white horses. The consecration of horses (so that the horsings, with which they are caparisoned, are to be like the mitre of the High Priest, inscribed with "Holiness unto the Lord") is an intimation that there will no longer be any need of horses for battle and destruction—"men shall not learn war any more" (Isa. ii. 4. Micah iv. 3), but that the instruments of War itself will be christianized, and that all power, and dignity, and victory, will be hallowed and dedicated to the honour and glory of God.

—*the pots in the LORD's house shall be like the bowls before the altar*] The meaning is, that there can be no future glory without holiness in this life. "Without holiness no man shall see the Lord" (Heb. xii. 14), "Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection" (Rev. xx. 6).

This truth is expressed by means of imagery from the literal Temple at Jerusalem. In the Levitical Ritual, the pots in which the flesh of the sacrifices was boiled, were regarded as much less holy than the sacrificial bowls in which the blood "wherein is the life" was received, and out of which it was sprinkled or poured on the altar.

But in the Church, the spiritual Jerusalem, namely, the Church Universal when glorified, every vessel,—that is, every person, however humble in position he may be,—will be holy; and nothing that is unholy will find a place there, and therefore it follows, "*yea, every pot in Jerusalem and in Judah shall be holiness unto the Lord of Hosts.*" The words, "*every pot shall be holiness,*" may be illustrated by the word *vessel* in the New Testament: Acts ix. 15, "Go thy way, he is a chosen *vessel* unto me;" 1 Thess. iv. 4, "Let every one know how to possess his *vessel* in sanctification and honour;" 2 Tim. ii. 21, "If a man purge himself from these (sins), he shall be a *vessel* unto honour, sanctified and meet for the master's use." The "*earthen vessels*" (see 2 Cor. iv. 7) of the Church of God shall be glorified, and become like precious vessels of pure gold.

See here the blessings of repentance and of faith in Christ; whereby thy soul, which was once a vessel of shame, becomes a vessel of glory in the heavenly temple. As the ancient Hymn says—

"Fit ex lebetē phiala,
In vas translata gloriā
Ex vase contumeliæ."

"Let all who are members of Christ's Church" (says *S. Jerome*) "consecrate all their strength and all their victories to Him. Let the bells of our horses be holy to the Lord. Let us endeavour to sanctify every thing, and dedicate it to Him. Let us hallow the vessels of Judaism, and convert them into vials of sweet odours before the altar of God."

And in that day there shall be no more the ^f Canaanite in ^g the house of the ^{Before}
 LORD of hosts. ^{CHRIST}
^{about}
^{517.}

^f Isa. 35. 8. Joel 3. 17. Rev. 21. 27. & 22. 15.

^g Eph. 2. 19, 20, 21, 22

21. *there shall be no more the Canaanite in the house of the LORD of hosts* The Church will then be purified, and all vestiges of idolatry and all sins of impurity by which the Canaanites were defiled will be rooted out (Gen. ix. 25. Lev. xviii. 28; xx. 23. Deut. vii. 2; ix. 4; xxix. 17). Cp. Isa. xxxv. 8; Obad. 17; Joel iii. 17; and Rev. xxi. 27, "There shall in no wise enter into the heavenly city any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie." Compare Rev. xxii. 15, and the last words of St. John's first Epistle, "Little children, keep yourselves from idols."

May the Lord of Hosts grant (says *Theodore* here) that no Canaanite may be seen among us; but that we may all live according to the laws of the Gospel of Christ, and may look for the blessed hope and glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ (Titus ii. 13.); to Whom, with the giving and praise in all the Churches of the Saints upon earth, and in the heavenly and eternal city of the Church glorified, the Jerusalem which is above, for ever and ever. AMEN.

MALACHI.

Before
CHRIST
about
400.

I. ¹ THE burden of the word of the LORD to Israel † by Malachm.

^{2 a} I have loved you, saith the LORD.

† Heb. by the hand of Malachi.

a Deut. 7. 8. & 15. 1.

PRELIMINARY NOTE.

The prophecies of MALACHI derive a special interest, not only from their contents, but from their position.

Malachi follows Zechariah; and he is called by the Hebrews "The Seal of the Prophets," as closing the prophetic Canon of the Ancient Dispensation. He completes the Old Testament, and prepares the way for the New. In this view his name *Malachi*, which means *Angel*, or MESSENGER, is very appropriate. He is the Angel of the Old Covenant, flying with joyful alacrity, to bring the glad tidings of the Gospel.

Malachi, in his immediate succession to Zechariah, discharges an office peculiar to himself. Zechariah is one of the most sublime and impassioned among "the goodly fellowship of the Prophets." It seems as if the Holy Spirit designed to teach the world by him, the last but one in the prophetic line, that if Prophecy was to become mute (as it became for an interval of about four centuries soon after Zechariah), its silence was not due to any failure or exhaustion of power in the Divine Author of Prophecy. No; the light of the sunset of Prophecy in Zechariah is as brilliant and glorious as its noonday splendours in Isaiah. The Visions of Zechariah, their rich colouring and varied imagery, their prophetic utterances reaching from his own age to the Day of Doom, display this truth. This has been shown already in the Introductory Note to Zechariah. Zechariah reveals to us the Birth of Christ, "the Man Whose Name is the Branch"¹ springing up from a lowly place; He sets Christ before us in a fair picture, riding in triumph "on the foal of an ass" to Jerusalem; he also unfolds the scenes of Gethsemane and Calvary²; he declares to us His Royalty and His Priesthood, typified respectively by Zerubbabel and Jeshua the son of Josedech, the leaders of the returning exiles from Babylon to Jerusalem³; and he proclaims in clear tones His Godhead⁴; and finally, as with lightning's speed, he passes on to the future evangelization of the Heathen, the conversion of the Jews⁵, and to the last struggle and overthrow of all Antichristian powers⁶ and to the full and final victory of Christ, and the everlasting glory and felicity of His Church⁷.

Let us now turn to Malachi.

What a striking contrast is here! All is quiet and sedate. We seem to have passed from the sight of some impetuous torrent, sweeping along in a violent stream, dashing over rugged rocks and hurling itself down in headlong cataracts, and carrying every thing with it in its foaming flood, to the contemplation of the clear mirror of a peaceful lake. The stream of Prophecy ceased to rush vehemently after Zechariah, and it tempers its vehemence "in the clear haven of a translucent pool" in Malachi: there it rested in peace for 400 years, till it flowed forth again in the Gospel.

Why was this?

The reason will be evident, if we examine the prophecies of Malachi.

They are all of an ethical character. They inculcate in clear, vigorous, stern, and severe language, made more expressive by sharp authoritative questionings, as if the Prophet were summoning the Nation in God's Name to a strict examination at His judicial bar⁸, the great moral and religious duties of

piety to God, of justice and mercy to man, and of personal purity, holiness, temperance, and sobriety. They speak of, Christ's Coming. Like the Baptist, the Preacher of righteousness, the Prophet Malachi sees, even in Christ's First Coming to save, a vision of His future Advent to judge⁹. He calls back the minds of the people to a remembrance of the thunders and lightnings of Mount Sinai, and to the requirements of the Moral Law delivered by God to them by "Moses His servant"¹⁰; and he concludes with carrying them onward to the terrors of the Great Day, and to the curse that will then be pronounced on all impenitent sinners. He speaks indeed of the rising of the "Sun of Righteousness with healing on his wings," but that genial and salutary Dayspring will beam only on those "who fear His Name"¹¹.

In the days of Malachi, the Temple of Jerusalem had been rebuilt; its ritual had been restored; a fragrant cloud of incense again arose in a silver steam from the golden altar before the veil in the Holy Place; sacrifices were offered again to God on the brazen altar before the porch of the Temple. The schism between the ten tribes of Israel and the two tribes of Judah and Benjamin had been healed in the Babylonish Captivity. The affections of all the tribes were now concentrated in Jerusalem. Idolatry had ceased. But in its place had arisen a cold, hard, rigid, self-complacent spirit of ceremonial formalism, such as afterwards came to a head in the proud, vainglorious Pharisaism of our Lord's age. It had none of that penitential sorrow gushing forth from the contrite heart in a flood of tears, none of that living faith and ardent love showing itself in the daily self-devotion of a holy and religious life, which alone can make acts of worship to be pleasing and acceptable to God.

These considerations will explain the tone and tenour of Malachi's prophecies.

What are the practical inferences to be hence derived? What are the lessons to be deduced from the succession of the ethical teaching, commonitory precepts, and commonitory warnings of Malachi to the glowing imagery, and prophetic visions, and mysterious revelations of Zechariah? What are the lessons to be deduced from Malachi's position, not only as the last of the prophets, but also as the herald of the Gospel? They may be briefly stated as follows:—

The fruit of all spiritual teaching, even of the highest and transcendental kind, like the prophecies of Zechariah, is not in ecstatic emotions and enthusiastic raptures, but in the quiet discharge of moral duties; it is to be seen in holiness of life and in personal preparation for Death, Judgment, and Eternity. "Love is the fulfilling of the Law"¹². "On these two commandments" (love to God and our neighbour) "hang all the Law and the Prophets"¹³. "He hath showed thee, O man, what is good; and now what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and walk humbly with thy God"¹⁴? "Prepare to meet thy God"¹⁵.

Malachi is the Messenger of the Lord. He is like the Baptist, the great forerunner of Christ; Whose coming he announces, "Behold, I will send My Messenger, and he shall prepare the way before Me"¹⁶. He is like the Baptist, a stern teacher of moral duties, and in boldly rebuking sin. The Temple had been rebuilt: sacrifices were again offered

¹ vi. 12.

² xiii. 7.

³ iii. 1—10; iv. 6—14; vi. 10—15.

⁴ xi. 13.

⁵ xii. 10—14; xi. 7—16.

⁶ xiv. 1—7.

⁷ xiv. 8—21.

⁸ See i. 1, 2. 6. 10; ii. 10. 14, 15. 17; iii. 7, 8.

⁹ iii. 1—6.

¹¹ iv. 2.

¹³ Matt. xxii. 40.

¹⁵ Amos iv. 12.

¹⁰ iv. 4.

¹² Rom. xiii. 10.

¹⁴ Micah vi. 8.

¹⁶ iii. 1.

Yet ye say, Wherein hast thou loved us? Was not Esau Jacob's brother? saith the LORD: yet ^b I loved Jacob, ³ and I hated Esau, and ^c laid his mountains and his heritage waste for the dragons of the wilderness.

⁴ Whereas Edom saith, We are impoverished, but we will return and build the desolate places; thus saith the LORD of hosts,

They shall build, but I will throw down;

And they shall call them, The border of wickedness,

And, The people against whom the LORD hath indignation for ever.

⁵ And your eyes shall see, and ye shall say,

^d The LORD will be magnified || ^e from the border of Israel.

⁶ A son ^e honoureth his father,

And a servant his master:

^f If then I be a father, where is mine honour?

And if I be a master, where is my fear?

Saith the LORD of hosts unto you, O priests, that despise my name.

^g And ye say, Wherein have we despised thy name? ⁷ || Ye offer ^h polluted

^g ch. 2. 14, 17, & 3.

^h Or, Bring unto, &c.

^h Deut. 15. 21.

Before
CHRIST
about
307.

^b Rom. 9. 13.
^c Jer. 49. 18.
^d Ezek. 35. 3, 4, 7,
9, 14, 15.
^e Obad. 10, &c.

^d Ps. 35. 27.

^e Or, upon.

^f Heb. from upon.

^c Exod. 20. 12.

^f Luke 6. 46.

But in the priests and in the worshippers he saw a worldly, formal, hypocritical spirit; and he denounced it with intrepid sternness and unflinching severity. "Ye offer polluted bread upon Mine altar¹." "And now, O ye priests, this commandment is for you—the priest's lips should keep knowledge—but ye are departed out of the way². Ye have wearied the Lord with your words³." And he threatens both people and priests with God's judgments⁴; and, what is more, he foretells this rejection for their sins, and the reception of the heathen in their place⁵. The sight of the concourse of the worshippers to the restored Temple at Jerusalem leads him to foretell the gathering together of all Nations into the Church of Christ, Who would visit that Temple, and Who would send forth the Priests of the Gospel from Jerusalem to receive the whole world into His Church. And the formality, and hypocrisy, and profaneness of the Jewish Priests and People are contrasted with that holier faith and service which God would accept from those who worship Him in spirit and in truth in every nation in the world. "From the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same, My name shall be great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense shall be offered unto Me, and a pure offering, for My name shall be great among the heathen, saith the Lord of hosts⁶."

The reception of the prophecy of Malachi into the Hebrew Canon is a strong proof of its inspiration. It cannot be imagined that the Hebrew Church and Nation would ever have consented to receive a book containing such unpalatable announcements as these—pronouncing such unmitigated censures on the Priesthood and People—predicting their future rejection, and foretelling the adoption by God of the heathen (whom they detested) into His favour, in their own stead—unless they had been convinced, by incontestable proofs, that Malachi spoke by inspiration of God.

There are many valuable expository works on the prophecies of Malachi, such as the Commentary of *S. Jerome*, and of *Dr. Pocock* in our own country; and in our own age, of *Hengstenberg* and *Keil*. But the best commentary is to be found in the book of Malachi's contemporary, *Nehemiah*. The reader is invited to refer to that book, with the *Introduction* to it ⁷, and notes upon it, in a former volume⁸. Compare especially Malachi ii. 11—17 with *Nehemiah* xiii. 23—30, and Malachi iii. 8—10 with *Nehemiah* xiii. 10—14.

CH. I. 1. *The burden*] Or prophetic message—usually of woe. See on Nahum i. 1. Zech. ix. 1; xii 1. The present passage, to ii. 7, is the *Haphtarah* to Gen. xxv. 19—xxviii. 9, the history of Isaac, Jacob, and Esau. The reason of this juxtaposition is obvious.

THE SINS OF THE JEWS.

2. *I have loved you, saith the LORD. Yet ye say, Wherein*

¹ i. 7.

² ii. 1—8.

³ ii. 17.

⁴ iii. 18; iv. 1.

⁵ i. 11.

⁶ i. 11.

⁷ pp. 295—300.

⁸ Vol. iii. pp. 325—357.

hast thou loved us?] These words must be explained (as *S. Cyril* observes) by reference to the condition of the Jews at this time. Malachi begins his prophecies with animadverting on the ungrateful temper of the Hebrew Nation. They repined and murmured against God. They were under heathen rule. They were feeble and poor (*Neh. ix. 36, 37*). The former prophets had foretold their return to Jerusalem and the rebuilding of the Temple; and those prophets had also preannounced the coming of the Messiah. The Jews *had* returned; the Temple *had been rebuilt*; but Messiah had not come. They were disappointed and impatient, and murmured against God, and charged Him with unfaithfulness, fickleness, and inconstancy. The prophet replies to these allegations. He assures them of God's love; and teaches them that all their miseries were due to themselves. Cp. *Neh. ix. 31—33*.

2, 3. *I loved Jacob, and I hated Esau*] See below, on *Rom. ix. 13*. The doctrine there taught by *St. Paul*, which has been much misrepresented and distorted by some Calvinistic teachers, may be illustrated by the divine words here. The love of God toward Jacob (as *S. Cyril* remarks) was not without foresight of Jacob's faithfulness and piety as compared with Esau. The hatred of God toward Esau, "a profane person who despised his birthright" (*Heb. xii. 16*), was certainly no arbitrary or capricious passion. And if we extend these words to the nation which derived its descent from him—Edom, we find it represented in the historical and prophetic books as bringing God's judgments on itself by its proud impiety, and by its unmerciful and revengeful spirit towards Israel, its own flesh and blood. See above, on *Ps. cxxxvii. 7*. *Isaiah lxiii. 1*. *Obadiah 8*.

3. *dragons*] *Jacksals*. Cp. *Pocock* here, p. 107.

4. *We are impoverished*] Rather, *we are broken in pieces*. Observe Edom's pride and self-confidence. He says, We have been broken in pieces, but we will mend ourselves. A vain boast, for God had dashed them into fragments, and no man could make them coalesce.

On the other hand, Judah, whom Edom has hated and persecuted, has indeed been scattered by God; but He will gather them again. Observe the repetition of the word *border* in the contrast between them. Edom is the *border* (*gebúl*) of wickedness; but the Lord will show His power and love over the *border* (*gebúl*) of Israel (*v. 5*).

6. *If then I be a father, where is mine honour?*] This is God's question to Israel, His "firstborn" (*Exod. iv. 22*). Israel has received special favour from God's fatherly love. Observe the characteristics of the Lord's words to Israel by Malachi. They are distinguished by a series of *interrogations* (see *Prelim. Note*). The nation is arraigned at God's judgment-seat, and God puts questions to it, as He did to Adam. We have here a rehearsal of the questionings of the great day of reckoning, to which Malachi appeals (*iv. 1—6*).

7. *polluted bread*] *Bread* (*Hebr. lechem*) is the Levitical word for sacrificial offerings. See *Lev. iii. 11. 16*; *xxi. 6. 8. 17. 21, 22*. *Pocock*, *iii.* Hence the term *table* here for *altar*; polluted *bread* is equivalent to what is described as "blind, lame, and sick," in *v. 8*.

Before
CHRIST
about
397.
i Ezek. 41. 22.
ver. 12.
k Lev. 22. 22.
Deut. 15. 21.
ver. 14.
† Heb. *to sacrifice*.
l Job 42. 8.
† Heb. *the face of*
God.
m Hos. 13. 9.
† Heb. *from your*
hand.

bread upon mine altar; and ye say, Wherein have we polluted thee? In that ye say, ¹The table of the Lord *is* contemptible. ²And ³if ye offer the blind † for sacrifice, *is it* not evil? and if ye offer the lame and sick, *is it* not evil? offer it now unto thy governor; will he be pleased with thee, or ¹accept thy person? saith the Lord of hosts.

⁹ And now, I pray you, beseech † God that he will be gracious unto us: ^mthis hath been † by your means: will he regard your persons? saith the Lord of hosts.

¹⁰ Who *is there* even among you that would shut the doors *for nought*? ⁿneither do ye kindle fire on mine altar for nought. I have no pleasure in you, saith the Lord of hosts, ^oneither will I accept an offering at your hand.

¹¹ For ^pfrom the rising of the sun even unto the going down of the same my name *shall be great* ^aamong the Gentiles; ^rand in every place ^sincense *shall be* offered unto my name, and a pure offering: ^tfor my name *shall be great* among the heathen, saith the Lord of hosts.

n 1 Cor. 9. 13.

o Isa. 1. 11.
Jer. 6. 20.
Amos 5. 21.
p Ps. 113. 3.
Isa. 59. 19.
q Isa. 60. 3, 5.
r John 4. 21, 23.
l Tim. 2. 8.
s Rev. 8. 3.
t Isa. 66. 19, 20.

8. *offer it now unto thy governor*] Thy governor (Hebr. *peeháh*), the ruler set over thee by the Persian king. Such were those who are called "governors beyond the river" in Nehemiah ii. 7, such was Nehemiah himself, who was appointed to that office by Artaxerxes (Neh. v. 14), and who says of himself, "I did not eat nor required I the bread of the governor" (Neh. v. 14—18). Cp. xii. 26. Such had been Zerubbabel before him (Hagg. i. 1. 14; ii. 2. 21).

The sense is, Ye treat your God in a worse manner than the deity of a heathen power. Ye put polluted bread on His table; ye would not dare to present such bread at your governor's table, Hebr. *shulchan*, a word also used by Nehemiah, the governor, to describe the abundant supply of food prepared for his own table (Neh. v. 17, 18). What a contrast between that provision and the miserable supply (the lame, the blind, the sick) for the Lord's table, as here described by the prophet!

9. *this hath been by your means*] Such sins have ye committed; will God then accept you? No; not except ye repent. It is useless for you to pray and offer sacrifice, except ye amend your own practice.

10. *Who is there even among you—nought*] The sense is rather as follows: *Who is there among you, or, Oh! that there were even some among you, who would not open My sanctuary to such profane intruders, but would close the doors (of My house, the Temple at Jerusalem) against such worshippers and such sacrifices as these! and would not kindle the fire on Mine altar to no purpose!* "Away with your vain oblations! What purpose is the multitude of your sacrifices to Me!" Would that some one would drive them from My house! Cp. Isa. i. 11. Jer. vi. 20. Amos v. 21.

The interrogative *Who would*, often expresses a wish, and is equivalent to *Oh that!* See 2 Sam. xv. 4. Ps. iv. 6. Jer. ix. 12. Hagg. ii. 3. Cp. Theodoret, *Tatublus*, *A Lapide*, Pocock, 113, and Keil here.

THE RECEPTION OF THE GENTILES.

11. *For from the rising of the sun—Gentiles*] Ye will be cast off from My presence for your sins. Yes; and ye think that God cannot exist without the Temple and without your worship; and that, if I cast you off, I shall be left without votaries. No; this will not be so, for I have resolved to receive the Heathen in your place. Compare Isa. lxiv. 10—12; lxx. 1—9, where the Lord meets the allegations of the Jews by a similar reply.

Here is an anticipation of our Lord's declaration to the Jews, "The kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof" (Matt. xxi. 43).

All earthly calamities are represented by the prophets as preparing the way for the preaching of the Gospel throughout the world. Cp. Habakkuk ii. 13, 14.

— *in every place*] Not only in the Temple at Jerusalem, but every where; as our Lord declared to the Samaritan woman (John iv. 21—23), and St. Paul (1 Tim. ii. 8).

Here was a bold leap into futurity. And here is a striking proof of Malachi's inspiration. God had declared in the Levitical Law that sacrifices were to be offered only in *one place*, and not "*in every place*" (Deut. xii. 13). The Hebrew Nation was

jealous of any extension of God's favour to the Heathen (see this feeling exemplified above in the Prophet Jonah); but Malachi has overcome this prejudice (cp. Micah iv. 1), and even revokes the Divine command to offer sacrifice in one place. Who could do this but God Himself?

— *incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering*] This passage is grounded on Leviticus ii. 1, where the offering (*minchah*, the word used here) is combined with incense: "When any will offer a meat offering (*minchah*) unto the Lord, his offering shall be of fine flour, and he shall pour oil upon it, and put frankincense thereon." The *minchah*, being made of flour (produced by a concurrence of human labour and divine goodness) and being joined with oil and frankincense, the one (oil) the symbol of the unction of the Holy Spirit, the other (frankincense) the emblem of prayer (Rev. v. 8; viii. 3—11; and see *Irenæus*, iv. 33, referring to this passage of Malachi) represents two things:—

(1) In relation to Christ, the *minchah* symbolizes His offering of Himself, the heavenly corn of wheat (see John xii. 24) given by God's goodness and bruised by suffering and obedience, the act of His own will and work; and sanctified by the unction of the Holy Ghost, and consummated in His mediatorial office in the heavenly Temple by the incense of prayer offered by Him as our Great High Priest in the golden censer of His merits.

(2) In respect to man, the *minchah*, with its accompaniments of oil and incense, represents God's goodness working with our will, sanctified by the Holy Ghost, and offering up prayer and thanksgiving, going up to God, as it were, in a fragrant silver cloud of incense from the altar of our hearts.

The prophecy of Malachi, therefore, foretells that Christ's sacrificial offering and mediatorial office would be universal and everlasting, as *S. Augustine* says (*De Civ. Dei*, xviii. 37), "We see this sacrifice offered by the Priesthood of Christ after the order of Melchizedek in all the world; but the Jewish sacrifices have ceased, as the Prophet here predicts; and that men in all places would respond to it by a correlative offering of themselves." The ancient Christian Fathers have applied this prophecy to the Holy Eucharist, and have regarded it as a prediction that this commemorative sacrifice, representing the Sacrifice once offered at Calvary, and pleading its efficacy and applying it to the faithful receiver, and being sanctified by the invocation and illapse of the Holy Spirit, and by the prayers of the faithful, would be offered in all the world. See *S. Justin Martyr*, C. Tryphon. § 41, where he says that this is a "figure of the bread and the cup of the Eucharist;" and *S. Irenæus* (iv. 32, Grabe) says that Christ taught us "the new oblation of the New Testament, which (oblation) the Church, having received it from the Apostles, offers up in all the world to God, Who gives to us nourishment; and presents to Him the first fruits of His own gifts, according to the words of Malachi" (i. 10, 11). In the words of *Joseph Mede* (*Works*, 355), "This place of Scripture was once, in the eldest and purest times, a text of eminent note, and familiarly known to every Christian, being alleged by their Pastors and Teachers as an express and undoubted prophecy of the Christian Sacrifice, or solemn worship of the Eucharist, taught by our Blessed Saviour unto His

¹² But ye have profaned it, in that ye say, "The table of the LORD is polluted; and the fruit thereof, *even* his meat, is contemptible. ¹³ Ye said also, Behold, what a weariness is it! || and ye have snuffed at it, saith the LORD of hosts; and ye brought *that which was torn*, and the lame, and the sick; thus ye brought an offering: *should I accept this of your hand? saith the LORD.

Before
CHRIST
about
397.

u ver. 7.
|| Or, whereas ye
might have blown
it away.

x Lev. 22. 20, &c.

Disciples, to be observed of all that should believe on His Name. It is quoted in this sense by Fathers of the second and third centuries, and is inserted in this sense in ancient Liturgies, as in that of S. Mark."

Tertullian (C. Judæis, c. 5; C. Marcion, iii. 22, iv. 1) generalizes the words into a prophecy of spiritual offerings of prayer, and praise, and thanksgiving; and so *Cyprian*. *Euseb.* (Dem. Evangelic. i. 6) applies them to the pure offering of prayer and good works to God; and *S. Cyril* says here, "God thus declares that the sweet perfume of spiritual incense will be offered to Him every where in reverence and holiness, namely, the oblation of faith, hope, and charity, and good works."

The sacrifice is called *pure* by the Prophet, as being offered by a pure conscience (*Iren.* iv. 34. *Tertullian*, C. Scap. c. 2), or else in respect to Christ, Who offered the only pure sacrifice, contrasted with the sacrifices of the Jews. Compare *Mede*, pp. 358, 359, in his essay on this text, where he shows in what sense the Eucharist is called a sacrifice (a commemorative one) by the Ancient Fathers, pp. 360—379; and see *Waterland* on the Service of the Eucharist considered in a Sacrificial View, vol. vii., pp. 341—391, or chap. xii. of his Review on the Doctrine of the Eucharist.

THE CHRISTIAN SACRIFICE.

As a very imposing superstructure has been built on this text by the Divines of the Roman Church, both in doctrine and practice, with regard to the sacrificial character of the Holy Eucharist (see *A Lapid* here), it may not be amiss to dwell a little longer on this subject.

Undoubtedly the Fathers, especially *S. Chrysostom* and *S. Augustine*, and others in the fourth and fifth centuries, speak of the Eucharist as a *Sacrifice*.

But what is their definition of the word *Sacrifice*? "A true Sacrifice," says *S. Augustine* (De Civ. Dei, x. 6), "is every act which is performed in order that we may cleave unto God in holy communion; such act being referred to Him as our Sovereign Good, by which alone we can enjoy true felicity."

Undoubtedly also they say that "Christ is daily offered in the Sacrifice of the altar."

But the sense in which they use these words is explained by other expressions in their writings. Thus *S. Chrysostom* says, in expounding our Lord's words, "Do this in remembrance of Me," in his commentary on Hebrews x. 9, "We do not offer another Sacrifice, as the High Priest did formerly, but always the same;" and then, explaining himself, he adds, "or rather we make a *commemoration* of a Sacrifice" (μᾶλλον δὲ ἀνάμνησιν ἑργαζόμεθα θυσίας).

And *S. Augustine* (C. Faust. xx. c. 18) thus speaks: "Christians, in the holy oblation and participation of the body and blood of Christ, celebrate a *memory* of the same Sacrifice that has been accomplished. 'Peracti ejusdem Sacrificii memoriam celebrant.'" And again he says (Epist. ad Bonifac. xxiii. p. 267, ed. Bened.), "Was not Christ offered once in Himself? And yet He is offered in the Sacrament at Easter and every day; nor does any one say what is false when he affirms Him to be offered. For if Sacraments had not a *resemblance* to the things of which they are Sacraments, they would not be Sacraments at all. But from this *resemblance* they derive the names of the things themselves" (which they represent).

Let not the words of the Fathers be cited partially, but as a whole. When this is done, it will be granted by candid reasoners that those expressions in which the Fathers speak of the Eucharist as a Sacrifice are to be qualified by those other phrases in which they speak of it as a memory or similitude of a Sacrifice; and *not vice versâ*. A writer, especially when speaking rhetorically, may call a picture by the name of the person or thing of which it is a picture, but the living person or thing would never be called a picture of itself. The statue of Homer may be called Homer; a view of Athens may be called Athens; but Homer could never be called a statue of Homer, nor Athens be called a view of itself. A map of Greece may be called Greece, but Greece could never be called a map of Greece. The Fathers, believing the Eucharist to be, by Christ's appointment, a perpetual representation and memory of the Sacrifice of the Cross, which is ever represented by our Great High Priest to His Father in Heaven, and to be

the means by which the virtue of that Sacrifice is communicated to us, and we are united to Christ and receive His body and blood in our hearts by faith, might well speak of the Eucharist as a Sacrifice; but if they had thought the Eucharist to be no other than the very Sacrifice of the Cross itself continued or renewed, they never could have called it, as they do, a *memory* or *resemblance* of a Sacrifice that is past.

Hence *Bishop Andrewes* (Ad Card. Bellarmin. Apolog. Responso, p. 181) thus writes, "Credunt nostri homines institutam a Domino Eucharistiam in Sui Commemorationem, etiam Sacrificii Sui, vel si ita loqui liceat, in *Sacrificium commemorative*. . . . *Memoriam* ibi fieri Sacrificii damus non inviti, sacrificari ibi Christum de pane factum nunquam daturi." And in his sermon on Acts ii. 42, vol. v., p. 66: "The Church of Rome many times celebrateth this mystery without any breaking (of bread) at all. Whereas it is of the nature of an Eucharist or peace-offering which was never offered but it was eaten, that there might be a *representation* of the *memory* of that Sacrifice, and together an application to each person by partaking of it."

Similarly *Archbishop Laud* (Conference with Fisher, ed. Oxon. 1839, p. 256): "And since here is mention happened of Sacrifice, my third instance shall be in the sacrifice which is offered up to God in that great and high mystery of our redemption by the death of Christ. For as Christ offered up Himself once for all, a full and all-sufficient sacrifice for the sins of the whole world, so did He institute and command a memory of this sacrifice in a sacrament, even till His coming again. For at and in the Eucharist we offer up to God three sacrifices: one by the priest only; that is, the commemorative sacrifice of Christ's death, represented in bread broken and wine poured out; another by the priest and people jointly, and that is the sacrifice of praise and thanksgiving for all the benefits and graces we receive by the precious death of Christ; the third by every particular man for himself only; and that is the sacrifice of every man's body and soul, to serve Him in both all the rest of his life, for this blessing thus bestowed on him. Now thus far these dissenting Churches agree, that in the Eucharist there is a sacrifice of duty, and a sacrifice of praise, and a sacrifice of commemoration of Christ. Therefore, according to the former rule (and here in truth too), it is safest for a man to believe the commemorative, the praising, and the performing sacrifice; and to offer them duly to God, and leave the Church of Rome in this particular to her superstitions—that I may say no more."

And in like manner *Bishop Bull* (Works, vol. ii. p. 250, ed. Oxon. 1827): "The first article (of the Roman Creed) I shall take notice of is this: 'I profess, that in the Mass is offered to God a true, proper, and propitiatory sacrifice for the living and the dead; and that in the most holy sacrifice of the Eucharist there is truly, and really, substantially the body and blood, together with the soul and divinity of our Lord Jesus Christ; and that there is wrought a conversion of the whole substance of the bread into the body, and of the whole substance of the wine into the blood, which conversion the Catholic Church calls transubstantiation.' Where this proposition ('that in the Mass there is offered to God a true, proper, and propitiatory sacrifice for the living and the dead,') having that other of the 'substantial presence of the body and blood of Christ in the Eucharist' immediately annexed to it, the meaning of it must necessarily be this, that in the Eucharist the very body and blood of Christ are again offered up to God as a propitiatory sacrifice for the sins of men. Which is an impious proposition, derogatory to the One full satisfaction of Christ made by His death on the cross, and contrary to express Scripture, Heb. vii. 27; and ix. 12. 25, 26 28; and x. 12. 14. It is true the Eucharist is frequently called by the ancient Fathers προσφορά, θυσία, an oblation, a sacrifice. But it is to be remembered that they say also it is θυσία λογική καὶ ἀναίμακτος, a reasonable sacrifice, a sacrifice without blood; which how can it be said to be, if therein the very blood of Christ were offered up to God?

"They held the Eucharist to be a commemorative sacrifice, and so do we. This is the constant language of the ancient Liturgies, 'We offer by way of commemoration;' according to our Saviour's words when He ordained this holy rite, *Do this in*

Before
CHRIST
about
397.
y ver. 8.
|| Or, in whose
flock is.
z Ps. 47. 2.
1 Tim. 6. 15.

¹⁴ But cursed be the deceiver, || which hath in his flock a male, and voweth, and sacrificeth unto the Lord a corrupt thing: for ² I am a great King, saith the LORD of hosts, and my name is dreadful among the heathen.
II. ¹ And now, O ye priests, this commandment is for you.

commemoration of Me. In the Eucharist, then, Christ is offered, not hypostatically, as the Trent Fathers have determined (for so He was but once offered), but commemoratively only: and this commemoration is made to God the Father, and is not a bare remembering, or putting ourselves in mind of Him. For every sacrifice is directed to God, and the oblation therein made, whatsoever it be, hath Him for its object, and not man. In the holy Eucharist, therefore, we set before God the bread and wine, as 'figures or images of the precious blood of Christ shed for us, and of His precious body' (they are the very words of the Clementine Liturgy), and plead to God the merit of His Son's sacrifice once offered on the cross for us sinners, and in this Sacrament represented, beseeching Him for the sake thereof to bestow His heavenly blessings on us.

"To conclude this matter: the ancients held the oblation of the Eucharist to be answerable in some respects to the legal sacrifices; that is, they believed that our Blessed Saviour ordained the Sacrament of the Eucharist as a rite of prayer and praise to God, instead of the manifold and bloody sacrifices of the Law. That the legal sacrifices were rites to invoke God by, is evident from many texts in Scripture. See especially 1 Sam. vii. 9, and xiii. 12. Ezra vi. 10. Prov. xv. 8. And that they were also rites for praising and blessing God for His mercies, appears from 2 Chron. xxix. 27. Instead therefore of slaying of beasts, and burning of incense, whereby they praised God, and called upon His Name under the Old Testament, the Fathers, I say, believed our Saviour appointed this Sacrament of bread and wine, as a rite whereby to give thanks and make supplication to His Father in His name. This you may see fully cleared and proved by the learned Mr. Mede, in his Treatise, *The Christian Sacrifice*. The Eucharistical Sacrifice, thus explained, is indeed λογική θυσία, a reasonable sacrifice, widely different from that monstrous sacrifice of the Mass taught in the Church of Rome."

And so Robert Nelson (Life of Bishop Bull; Works, Life, p. 414, ed. Oxon. 1827): "This learned divine" (Bishop Bull) "had in his answer to the Bishop of Meaux's inquiries, asserted the doctrine of the *Eucharistical Sacrifice*; that it was an oblation of bread and wine, instituted by Jesus Christ, to represent and commemorate His sacrifice upon the cross; and that its being representative and commemorative no more hindered it from being a proper sacrifice, than the typical and figurative sacrifices of the old law hindered them from being proper sacrifices; for as to be a type doth not destroy the nature and notion of a legal sacrifice, so to be representative and commemorative doth not destroy the nature of an evangelical sacrifice. He thought this doctrine plain from Scripture, and from the unanimous and universal tradition of the primitive Church; nay, that it was not only her language, but her avowed and general practice, to offer up the bread and wine to God the Father in the Eucharist, as an oblation appointed by our Saviour Christ, to commemorate the oblation of Himself upon the cross, and as representative of that full, perfect, and sufficient sacrifice for the sins of the whole world."

"Now in his sermon concerning the antiquity and usefulness, &c., of common prayers (Sermon xiii.), he observeth the wonderful consent of all the Christian Churches in the world, however distant from each other, in the prayer of oblation in the Christian Sacrifice of the holy Eucharist. He assesteth us, all the ancient Liturgies agree in this form of prayer, almost in the same words, but fully and exactly in the same sense, order, and method. 'Which,' saith he, 'whoever attentively considereth, must be convinced, that this order of prayer was delivered to the several Churches in the very first plantation and settlement of them. Nay, it is observable, that this form of prayer is still retained in the very Canon of the Mass at this day used in the Church of Rome, though the form doth manifestly contradict and overthrow some of the principal articles of their new faith. For from this very form, still extant in their Canon, a man may effectually refute those two main doctrines of their Church, that of Purgatory, and that of Transubstantiation.' [All they who have departed this life in the faith and fear of God are there said to sleep in peace, and the Eucharistic bread after consecration is called bread.] The antiquity of this prayer shows that the doctrine of the oblation was a part of the faith once delivered to the Saints. Now, as this notion of the Eucharist

is founded upon Scripture, and runneth through all the great writers of the first three ages; as it is highly honourable to God, and no less comfortable to all devout Christians; so it hath this advantage, that it secureth us a bulwark against those innovations of the Church of Rome which relate to this primitive doctrine. The popish sacrifice of the Mass supposeth the oblation of the same body of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ which suffered upon the cross, and consequently, that it propitieth by its own virtue and merit; whereas according to the primitive doctrine, though the Eucharist be a proper sacrifice, yet it is only representative and commemorative of that sacrifice upon the cross; and it renders God Almighty propitious to us, only as it represents and communicateth the benefits of the great sacrifice; and consequently, as long as it is believed to be but representative, it is impossible it should be the thing itself."

It has been supposed by some that this passage authorizes and prescribes the use of incense in the Christian Church; but this seems to be a strained interpretation. If the word incense is to be taken literally, so ought the word minchah, or offering, in the same sentence, to be taken literally; in other words, if we are obliged to burn incense in our churches, we ought also to offer fine flour; but, as has been already observed, the Ancient Fathers understood incense to be here a symbol of prayer, and so the word is interpreted in the Apocalypse, viii. 4.

Terms relating to Hebrew sacrifices are often used in a spiritual sense (says Hengst.) on account of the spiritual meaning of the sacrifices of the Old Testament. Compare Ps. l. 23; li. 19. Hos. xiv. 2; and especially Isaiah lxvi. 20, where the presentation of a spiritual minchah or meat offering by the heathen is foretold, as in the present passage. In the New Testament the spiritual use of such terms may be seen in Rom. xii. 1. Heb. xiii. 15. 1 Pet. ii. 5.

Observe, lastly, there was something very appropriate in this prophecy concerning the acceptance of the spiritual worship of the Gentiles. At this time the High Priest had surrendered, for profane use by a heathen Ammonite, Tobiah, the very Chamber of the Temple at Jerusalem where the incense and meat-offering were kept. See above, on Nehemiah xiii. 9; "I commanded, and they cleansed the chambers: and thither brought I again the meat-offering (minchah) and the frankincense."

— my name shall be great among the heathen] Ye despise My Name (v. 6), but it will be magnified by all Nations. Cp. Isaiah ii. 2; lvi. 7: "Them will I bring to My holy mountain, and make them joyful in My house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon Mine altar; for Mine house shall be called an house of prayer for all people" (or nations). Cp. Mark xi. 17.

In Malachi's age the Jews longed to see God's judicial chastisement of the heathen, who oppressed them, as they did in our Lord's time; but God tells them plainly, that they themselves will be ejected for their hypocrisy and self-righteousness, and that the Heathen will be accepted in their place.

There is a learned essay on this text by Joseph Mede (On the Christian Sacrifice, Works, p. 355).

13. ye have snuffed at it] To blow it away, as a thing contemptible and offensive (Gesen. 556).

— torn] Stolen. Ye would not give of your own; but rob others, in order to sacrifice the fruit of your rapine to God, by way of propitiation for your crime.

— lame, and the sick] Strictly forbidden by the Levitical Law (Lev. xxii. 19–24).

14. a mate] Which the Law required in certain cases, especially at the passover (Exod. xii. 5), and in some other sacrifices (Lev. i. 3–10; iv. 23; xxii. 19–23).

— a corrupt thing] Rather, a thing blemished. Cp. note below, on the sacrificial office of our Blessed Lord as our Great High Priest and Judge, minutely scrutinizing all the sacrifices offered to God; Heb. iv. 13: "All things are naked and opened" (literally, anatomized even to the back-bone), by the searching examination "of Him with Whom we have to do," i. e. to Whom we have to render our account at the Great Day.

WARNING TO THE PRIESTS.

Cp. II. 1. And now, O ye Priests] He proceeds to announce the punishment due for their sin just specified.

² ^a If ye will not hear, and if ye will not lay *it* to heart,
To give glory unto my name, saith the LORD of hosts,
I will even send a curse upon you,
And I will curse your blessings :
Yea, I have cursed them already, because ye do not lay *it* to heart.

Before
CHRIST
about
397.
a Lev. 26. 14, &c.
Deut. 28. 15, &c.

³ Behold, I will || corrupt your seed,
And † spread dung upon your faces,
Even the dung of your solemn feasts ;
And || *one* shall ^b take you away with it.

|| Or, *reprove*.

† Heb. *scatter*.

⁴ And ye shall know that I have sent this commandment unto you,
That my covenant might be with Levi, saith the LORD of hosts.

|| Or, *it shall take
you away to it.*
b 1 Kings 14. 10.

⁵ ^c My covenant was with him of life and peace ;
And I gave them to him ^d for the fear wherewith he feared me,
And was afraid before my name.

c Num. 25. 12.
Ezek. 34. 25. &
37. 26.
d Deut. 33. 8, 9.

⁶ ^e The law of truth was in his mouth,
And iniquity was not found in his lips :
He walked with me in peace and equity,
And did 'turn many away from iniquity.

e Deut. 33. 10.

⁷ ^f For the priest's lips should keep knowledge,
And they should seek the law at his mouth :

f Jer. 23. 22.
James 5. 20.
g Lev. 10. 11.
Deut. 17. 9, 10.
& 24. 8.
Ezra 7. 10.
Jer. 18. 18.
Hag. 2. 11, 12.

2. *I will curse your blessings*] Even the blessings received by you from Me shall be turned into a curse. So in Ps. lxi. 22, the Messiah, speaking by David, foretells the doom of the Jews for rejecting Him; "Let their table be made a snare before them, and that which should have been for their welfare, let it become a trap."

On the other hand, God says to them, "If ye will repent, I will pour out upon you a *blessing*." See below, iii. 10. Cp. Ezek. xxxiv. 26. Joel ii. 14.

The very blessings which men receive become a bane to them unless they use them aright. Scriptures, Sacraments, Sermons, Sundays, all have a double edge; if used well, they lead men on to heaven; but if despised or misused, they aggravate men's sin, and increase their condemnation. See below, on Luke ii. 34, 2 Cor. ii. 15, 16, and on Rev. xi. 5.

3. *Behold, I will corrupt your seed*] Literally, *I will rebuke or reprove your seed*. The word rendered *corrupt* (*gâar*) occurs twelve times, and the cognate substantive fourteen times; and they are always translated by *rebuke* or *reprove*, except here.

The meaning may be illustrated by the use of the word, "He *rebuked* the Red Sea, and it dried up" (Ps. cvi. 9). Cp. Nahum i. 4. Isa. i. 2. As at God's *rebuke* the Sea itself was dried up, so your seed will be withered. Cp. *Gesen*. 177. Drought and dearth are significant symbols of God's wrath and of man's misery. Cp. Joel i. 17, "The seed is rotten under the clods;" and Hagg. i. 11, "I called for a drought upon the corn and upon the oil, and upon that which the ground bringeth forth;" and Hagg. ii. 17; and Jer. xiv. 3.

The Levites had neglected the service of the Temple, and had betaken themselves to farming; therefore this threat was very appropriate. See above, on Nehemiah xiii. 10. Here is a warning to ecclesiastical persons who follow secular pursuits, to the neglect of their spiritual duties.

— *spread dung upon your faces—the dung of your solemn feasts*] According to the requirements of the Levitical Law, the dung (Hebr. *peresh*, excrements, &c.) of the victims offered in sacrifices was to be carried away by the Priests out of the Tabernacle to an unclean place outside the camp, and burned there (Exod. xxix. 14. Lev. iv. 12; viii. 17; xvi. 27. Num. xix. 5).

But, in order to show the condition of contempt and ignominy to which the Priests degraded themselves, by despising God's commands, and by not offering such sacrifices, and in such a manner, as He required of them, He says, that the dung of their sacrifices, which, on account of its uncleanness, ought to be burnt, would be spread by God upon their faces, which showed no sense of shame for their sin. A solemn lesson to Christian Priests who do not discharge aright their holy duties.

— *and one shall take you away with it*] That is, ye will be

swept away, together with the dung spread on your faces; as God says of Jeroboam, "I will take away the remnant of the house of Jeroboam, as a man taketh away dung, till it be all gone" (1 Kings xiv. 10; and cp. *Pocock*, 124).

4. *That my covenant might be with Levi*] Rather, *that this may be my covenant with Levi*; that is, that this judicial sentence, pronounced upon you for your sins, may take the place of "My covenant of peace." I gave to Levi (that is, to you, the priestly tribe) a pledge of favour; but ye have forfeited it (see v. 8), and it is now therefore turned into a threat of reprobation for your sins. This is now "My covenant with Levi." No longer a covenant of peace, but of woe.

5. *My covenant was with him of life and peace*] Such was originally My covenant with the Levitical Priesthood, a covenant of life and peace; but ye have made it, by your sins, to become a covenant of death and destruction. The continuance of God's covenant with men depends on their faith and obedience. As long as the Levitical Priesthood feared Him, and as long as the law of truth was in their mouths, and as long as—in duty bound (for "the Priest's lips should keep knowledge")—they turned many to righteousness, so long it went well with them; but now all this had been rescinded and annulled by their iniquities.

7. *the priest's lips should keep knowledge, and they should seek the law at his mouth*] A memorable statement. The offering of sacrifice was indeed an essential part of the priestly office; but Malachi declares that all sacerdotal sacrifices are of no avail without religious knowledge, sound learning, and wholesome teaching. The first duty of the Levitical Priests—and how much more of the Christian!—was to *keep, or preserve, knowledge*; the knowledge of God, as revealed in His Holy Word; and so to discharge their sacred office, that, according to the Word of God (Deut. xvii. 9—11; xxiv. 8; xxxiii. 10. Lev. x. 11), the people should resort to them for instruction in holy things, and not resort in vain; and unless this was done by them, all their offerings and sacrifices were nugatory, and God would "spread dung on their faces" (v. 3) in token of His displeasure.

Here is a solemn warning to the Christian Clergy. If such was the duty of the Levitical Priesthood, and such the penalty for not performing it aright, how much more imperative is the obligation of the Christian Priest to "keep knowledge," and to instruct the people in sound doctrine; or, as St. Paul expresses it, "to give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine, to meditate on these things, and give himself wholly to them" (1 Tim. iv. 13, 15); "to speak the things which become sound doctrine" (Titus ii. 1); "to hold fast the faithful word, so that he may be able by sound doctrine to convince the gain-sayers" (Titus i. 9). And how much sorer will be his punish-

Before
CHRIST
about
397.

^b Gal. 4. 14.
ⁱ 1 Sam. 2. 17.
Jer. 18. 15.
^{||} Or, *fall in the law*.
^k Neh. 13. 29.
^{||} 1 Sam. 2. 30.
^{||} Or, *lifted up the face against*.
[†] Heb. *accepted faces*.
^m 1 Cor. 8. 6.
Eph. 4. 6.
ⁿ Job 31. 15.

^{||} Or, *ought to love*.

^o Ezra 9. 1.
& 10. 2.
Neh. 13. 23.

^{||} Or, *him that waketh and him that answereth*.

^p Neh. 13. 28, 29.

^q Prov. 5. 18.

^r Prov. 2. 17.

^h For he is the messenger of the LORD of hosts.

⁸ But ye are departed out of the way;

Ye ⁱ have caused many to || stumble at the law;

^k Ye have corrupted the covenant of Levi, saith the LORD of hosts.

⁹ Therefore ⁱ have I also made you contemptible and base before all the people,
According as ye have not kept my ways, but || [†] have been partial in the law.

¹⁰ ^m Have we not all one father?

ⁿ Hath not one God created us?

Why do we deal treacherously every man against his brother,
By profaning the covenant of our fathers?

¹¹ Judah hath dealt treacherously,

And an abomination is committed in Israel and in Jerusalem;

For Judah hath profaned the holiness of the LORD which he || loved,

^o And hath married the daughter of a strange god.

¹² The LORD will cut off the man that doeth this,

|| The master and the scholar,

Out of the tabernacles of Jacob,

^p And him that offereth an offering unto the LORD of hosts.

¹³ And this have ye done again,

Covering the altar of the LORD with tears, with weeping, and with crying out,
Insomuch that he regardeth not the offering any more,

Or receiveth *it* with good will at your hand.

¹⁴ Yet ye say, Wherefore? Because the LORD hath been witness between
thee and ^q the wife of thy youth, against whom thou hast dealt treacherously:
^r yet is she thy companion, and the wife of thy covenant.

ment, if he fails to discharge it! Compare Titus i. 7—9. 2 Tim. ii. 2. It is to be feared that this warning is greatly needed in the present day. The Clergy of the Eastern Church, especially in Asia and Greece, have been degraded to a low condition with regard to religious and secular knowledge. Celebrated Roman Catholic writers deplore the ignorance of a great part of their Clergy, consisting of mere illiterate Mass-Priests (see *Rosmini*, *Cinque Piaghe*, pp. 20—45, and *Dr. Dollinger*, "The Church and the Churches," p. 401). In Protestant Germany the Theological Chairs of the Universities are filled by laymen, who are not united by any common profession of the Christian Faith; and have no pastoral experience in the cure of souls, and have none of that wisdom which is found at the side of sick-beds, and death-beds, and in churchyards at the grave; and have no mission from Christ, and no unction from the Holy Ghost; and many among them treat the Holy Scriptures as if they were a mere common book. The science of Divinity has been divorced from the Christian Priesthood; scarcely any great theological works in Germany have been produced in recent times by clergymen. Hence the theological teaching of the Schools has contracted a dry, hard, unspiritual and unpractical character; and the result has been disastrous to Christianity, to Literature, and to Society.

The importance of these considerations to the Church of England, and to English Universities, and the great issues which depend on the observance of Malachi's declaration, "the Priest's lips should keep knowledge, and they should seek the law at his mouth," may, it is hoped, serve as an apology for these observations in this place.

— *he is the messenger of the LORD of hosts*] The Priest is the messenger (Hebr. *maleac*), the Angel of God. Such he is by his office, and such he ought to be in his practice; the herald of God's Word to men. Cp. Hag. i. 13. Malachi refers to his own name. Compare a similar reference in Micah vii. 18; below, iii. 1.

⁹. *have been partial*] Have had respect to persons, which St. Paul forbids; see 1 Tim. v. 21, "Doing nothing by partiality;" and St. James, ii. 1—4.

STRANGE MARRIAGES.

The connecting link between what has gone before, concerning the sins of the priests, and what follows, is supplied by

the book of Nehemiah (xiii. 28), whence it appears that Eliashib the High Priest himself countenanced a strange marriage in his own family. Nehemiah's words are, "One of the sons of Joiada, the son of Eliashib the High Priest, was son-in-law to Sanballat the *Horonite*; therefore I chased him from me. Remember them, O my God, because they have defiled the Priesthood, and the covenant of the priesthood, and of the Levites." Nehemiah uses the same words as Malachi (v. 8), "Ye have corrupted the covenant of Levi." See above, on Neh. xiii. 29. Cp. Ezra ix. 1, 2, where the Priests and Levites are mentioned as guilty of this sin.

Thus the historical book of Nehemiah explains and illustrates the prophecies of Malachi. Cp. below, iii. 8.

¹⁰. *Have we not all one father?*] The Lord God of Israel.

— *Why do we deal treacherously—by profaning the covenant of our fathers?*] Why do we deal treacherously with our brethren, by marrying a heathen wife and putting away a Hebrew wife, and thereby profane the covenant which God made with our fathers as a holy nation and peculiar people? (Exod. xix. 6; xxiv. 8. Dent. xiv. 2).

¹². *The LORD will cut off the man that doeth this, the master and the scholar*] Literally, the *watcher and the answerer*. Probably a metaphor derived from the practice of the Levites keeping watch and ward in the Temple; one of whom, who watched in turn, was to call out, and the others to answer when challenged by him. Cp. Ps. cxxxiv. 1. *Lightfoot*, Temple Service, chap. vii. lect. 1. *Gesenius*, 615. Hence its use here, where the Prophet is addressing the Priests and Levites. This phrase was employed as a proverbial expression, to signify what Isaiah has expressed more in detail (xxiv. 2), "As with the people, so with the priest; as with the buyer, so with the seller," &c.

— *him that offereth an offering*] Any Priest or Levite of this class; and any one who offers a sacrifice for others.

DIVORCE CONDEMNED.

¹³. *And this have ye done again, covering the altar of the LORD with tears*] The tears of your wives, whom ye have put away, and who mourn and supplicate to the Lord of Hosts for comfort and protection against their own husbands (*S. Jerome*).

¹⁵ And ^a did not he make one? Yet had he the || residue of the spirit. And wherefore one? That he might seek † a godly seed. Therefore take heed to your spirit, and let none deal || treacherously against the wife of his youth. ¹⁶ For ^a the LORD, the God of Israel, saith || that he hateth † putting away: for one covereth violence with his garment, saith the LORD of hosts: therefore take heed to your spirit, that ye deal not treacherously.

¹⁷ * Ye have wearied the LORD with your words. Yet ye say, Wherein have we wearied him? When ye say, Every one that doeth evil is good in the sight of the LORD, and he delighteth in them; or, Where is the God of judgment?

III. ¹ Behold, ^a I will send my messenger,

And he shall ^b prepare the way before me:

And the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple,

^c Even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in:

Behold, ^d he shall come, saith the LORD of hosts.

² But who may abide ^e the day of his coming?

And ^f who shall stand when he appeareth?

For ^g he is like a refiner's fire,

Before CHRIST about 397.
s Matt. 19. 4, 5.
|| Or, excellency.
† Heb. a seed of God.
t Ezra 9. 2.
l Cor. 7. 14.
|| Or, unfaithfully.
u Deut. 24. 1.
Matt. 5. 32.
& 19. 8.
|| Or, if he hate her, put her away.
† Heb. to put away.
x Isa. 43. 24.
Amos 2. 13.
ch. 3. 13, 14, 15.
a Matt. 11. 10.
Mark 1. 2.
Luke 1. 76.
& 7. 27.
b Isa. 40. 3.
c Isa. 63. 9.
d Hag. 2. 7.
e ch. 4. 1.
f Rev. 6. 17.
g See Isa. 4. 4.
Matt. 3. 10, 11, 12.

¹⁵. And did not he make one?—godly seed] Rather, “And no one did it” (i. e. divorced his wife), “and a remnant of the spirit was in him” (R. Tanchum, Keil). That is, no one who has the least remnant of that Spirit which God breathed into man, from whom He formed woman, will put away his wife, as ye do, on frivolous pretences, or in order to contract a marriage with some fairer or wealthier heathen woman. Or the sense may be, interrogatively, And did not one (viz. Abraham) do it (i. e., put away his wife, Agar), and yet he had a remnant of the Spirit? —And wherefore one? The Hebrew has the definitive article here—“the one.” Some (R. Kimchi, Calvin, Drusius, Keil) suppose that by “the one” the prophet means Abraham; and the sense then is as follows:—And (ye may therefore ask by way of objection) why did the one (that is, Abraham, the one father of all the family of Israel—the Hebrew has the definitive article here—the one) do it? Why did he put away Hagar? The answer is, He was justified in doing so, because God commanded him to “cast away the bondwoman and her son,” and because he sought a godly seed—literally, a seed of God—the seed promised to him in Isaac, the son of Sarah (Gen. xxi. 12). —take heed to your spirit] Which ye have from God, for no one retains even the least portion of that Spirit who puts away his wife. See the foregoing note.

¹⁶. one covereth violence with his garment] So Targum, R. Tanchum, Junius, Tremellius, Piscator. The literal sense is, One covereth violence under his garment, so as to wrap his garment over it. The phrase seems to be from the Hebrew custom of espousals. The bridegroom cast the skirt of his garment over her whom he betrothed to himself, and covered her with his garment, as is seen in the history of Boaz and Ruth. See Ruth iii. 9, where Ruth says, “I am Ruth thine handmaid; spread, therefore, thy skirt over thine handmaid, for thou art a near kinsman.” Cp. the note there. Ezek. xvi. 8.

Ye, who put away your wives, reverse this order; ye cast your skirt over iniquity, and betroth violence to yourselves for a bride; ye espouse to yourselves rapine and covetousness. This figure was more appropriate, because money and other possessions were often carried in the fold or lap of the garment.

THE DAY OF THE LORD.

¹⁷. Ye have wearied the LORD] This verse belongs to what follows; and it is to be regretted that the chapter ends with it. God answers the murmurs of the godless sceptics by an announcement of judgment to come. Cp. 2 Pet. iii. 4—10.

JOHN THE BAPTIST.

CH. III. 1. Behold, I will send my messenger] Declared to be John the Baptist in Matt. xi. 10; Mark i. 2; Luke vii. 27. In the words of the Evangelist (John i. 6), “There was a man sent from God whose name was John,” there may be a reference to this prophecy, “Behold, I send My Messenger.” The Church declares her judgment in this matter by appointing this chapter to be read on the Festival of St. John the Baptist.

Observe how, throughout his prophecy, Malachi (the

messenger), the last of the goodly company of Hebrew Prophets, prepares the way for Christ. Hebrew Prophecy in Malachi resigns its charge to the personal forerunner and immediate messenger of Christ, and expires with the Gospel on its lips. See S. Cyril here; and cp. Davison, 253.

—he shall prepare the way before me] Words adopted from Isaiah xl. 3, speaking of John the Baptist.

—the Lord] Malachi gives to Christ the Name (the Lord) which belongs to God only (Pusey on Daniel, 489).

—shall suddenly come to his temple] Since the Temple is said to be the Temple of Him Whose coming is prepared by the Messenger, therefore He Who cometh is God.

Since, also, the Temple has now been destroyed to which the Messiah was to come (see above, on Haggai ii. 7—9; Pocock here, 150; and Bp. Chandler on the Prophecies, p. 81), therefore the Messiah is now come. His Coming is past, not future, as the Jews imagine. Jesus of Nazareth was presented in the Temple forty days after His birth. He came suddenly to His Temple, when few (only an aged man and woman) knew of His Coming. See Luke ii. 21—38.

The Church has therefore appointed this passage (vv. 1—8) to be read as the Epistle on the Festival of our Lord's Presentation in the Temple.

—whom ye seek—whom ye delight in] Ye are impatient and disappointed because the promised Messiah is not come (see above, Prelim. Note); ye earnestly seek Him; ye delight in Him; ye eagerly desire Him. But are ye prepared for His Coming? Will ye receive Him gladly when He comes? Are not your actions such as He, Who is the Holy One, must condemn and punish when He comes? The answer to this question is found in St. John's Gospel (i. 11), “He came unto His own, and His own received Him not.”

On this text see Dr. Mill's Lent Sermons, p. 193.

². who may abide the day of his coming?] Malachi, like John the Baptist, sees the future Judge in the present Saviour. The White Throne and the opened Books are in the background of the Baptism at Jordan. “His fan is in His hand” (said the Baptist, who proclaimed Him as the Bridegroom and also as the Lamb of God), “and He shall thoroughly purge His floor” (the world); “and shall gather the wheat into His garner, and burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire” (Matt. iii. 12).

Our Lord Himself said, that He had come into the world for judgment (John ix. 39); and “This is the condemnation, that Light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil” (John iii. 19); and “The Prince of this World is judged” (John xvi. 11).

The Word of God is ever revealing what men's tempers and moral dispositions are; and thus a judicial process is for ever going on. The Day of the Lord began, in a certain sense, with our Lord's first appearance upon earth; and it will have its climax and consummation in His Second Advent.

Therefore S. Augustine (De Civ. Dei, xviii. 35) says of this prophecy of Malachi, “Primum et secundum Christi denuntiatio Adventum.”

—refiner's fire] Jer. vi. 29. Zech. xiii. 9.

Before
CHRIST
about
397.
h Isa. 1. 25.
Zech. 13. 9.

And like fullers' soap :

³ And ^h he shall sit *as* a refiner and purifier of silver :

And he shall purify the sons of Levi,

And purge them as gold and silver,

That they may ⁱ offer unto the LORD an offering in righteousness.

i 1 Pet. 2. 5.

k ch. 1. 11.

⁴ Then ^k shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the LORD,

As in the days of old, and as in ^{||} former years.

|| Or, ancient.

⁵ And I will come near to you to judgment ;

And I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers,

Zech. 5. 4.
James 5. 4, 12.
|| Or, defraud.

¹ and against false swearers, and against those that ^{||} oppress the hireling in *his* wages, the widow, and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger *from his right*, and fear not me, saith the LORD of hosts.

m Num. 23. 19.
Rom. 11. 29.
James 1. 17.
n Lam. 3. 22.

⁶ For I *am* the LORD, ^m I change not ;

ⁿ Therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

o Acts 7. 51.

⁷ Even from the days of ^o your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept *them*.

p Zech. 1. 3.

^p Return unto me, and I will return unto you, saith the LORD of hosts.

q ch. 1. 6.

^q But ye said, Wherein shall we return ?

⁸ Will a man rob God ? Yet ye have robbed me.

But ye say, Wherein have we robbed thee ?

r Neh. 13. 10, 12.

^r In tithes and offerings.

⁹ Ye *are* cursed with a curse : for ye have robbed me,

Even this whole nation.

s Prov. 3. 9, 10.
t 1 Chron. 26. 20.
2 Chron. 31. 11.
Neh. 10. 38. & 13. 12.

¹⁰ ^s Bring ye all the tithes into ^t the storehouse,

That there may be meat in mine house,

And prove me now herewith, saith the LORD of hosts,

u Gen. 7. 11.
v Kings 7. 2.
† Heb. empty out.
x 2 Chron. 31. 10.

If I will not open you the ^u windows of heaven,

And [†] ^x pour you out a blessing, that *there shall not be room enough to receive it*.

y Amos 4. 9.

¹¹ And I will rebuke ^y the devourer for your sakes,

— *fullers' soap*] Lye, or alkali. Jer. ii. 22.

3. *he shall sit*] He shall come and sit as a Judge. He shall sit down on His judgment-seat, to execute justice. Christ is ever judging the World, and will continue doing so till He has finished it at the Great Day.

— *he shall purify the sons of Levi*] This prophecy began to be fulfilled when Christ purged the Temple at Jerusalem (Matt. xxi. 12. John ii. 13—23).

This purifying process is ever going on in the Church, by the moral probation of its ministers. Her Priests and Levites are purified by the Messiah; He applies to them the smelting process of severe trial for the faith; such as the Levite of Cyprus had to endure (Acts iv. 36); and such as those of the Priests had to endure who were obedient to the Faith; and such as all Christian Priests must expect to endure, if they are true to their profession as guardians and champions of the Faith.

4. *Then shall the offering of Judah—be pleasant—as in former years*] Literally, *the minchah* (or *meal-offering*) shall be pleasant. He uses the same words as in i. 11, "a pure offering." The essence of all sacrifice is the same in every age. No sacrifice is pleasing to God, if not accompanied with the sacrifice of the heart and will, and of all the faculties, intellectual, spiritual, and bodily, of the offerer; and no sacrifice is pleasing to God, except by virtue of its reference to the One Sacrifice of the dearly-beloved Son in Whom He is well pleased (Matt. iii. 17. 1 Pet. ii. 5).

The Prophet foretells that the offerings made by faithful Christian Priests and Christian Levites (see on Isa. lvi. 21) in the Spiritual Sion, the Church of Christ, will be acceptable to God, like the sacrifices offered by Abel, Noah, Abraham, and Aaron. Cp. Zech. xiv. 16—21, and above, i. 11.

This great predictive revelation of the Gospel, is at once a

prophecy and a moral parable. It puts to shame the corrupt Priesthood of the days of Malachi, by exhibiting in reverse the holiness and spirituality of the New Covenant and its purified ministers. See *Darison* on Prophecy, p. 252.

5. *sorcerers*] Cp. Acts viii. 9; xiii. 6.

— *adulterers*] John viii. 9.

— *false swearers*] Cp. on Matt. v. 33—35. James v. 12.

— *oppress the hireling*] James v. 4.

6. *Therefore ye—are not consumed*] Ye shall be purified by the fire of trial, but not consumed. Cp. Amos ix. 9.

8. *In tithes and offerings*] Literally, *in the tithe and the heaven-offering*. Another passage illustrated by Malachi's contemporary, Nehemiah. See above, Neh. xiii. 10—12, and the notes there. On the various kinds of *tithes* among the Hebrews, see notes on Lev. xxvii., Num. xxviii. 21. On the heaven-offering, see Exod. xxix. 27.

9. *Ye are cursed with a curse*] Compare Nehemiah xiii. 25. Perhaps Malachi is referring to the solemn act described by Nehemiah. See the note there, and below, iv. 6.

10. *Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse*] Here again Nehemiah illustrates Malachi. He says, "All Judah brought a tithe into the treasuries." See on Neh. xiii. 12, where the word for *treasury* is the same as that for *storehouse* here. Probably the stirring words of Malachi produced the act which is recorded by Nehemiah. The coincidences between Malachi and Nehemiah are full of interest and importance.

— *that there shall not be room enough*] Rather, *till there be not enough*, i. e. *no more supply*; till all My abundance is exhausted. And since this can never be, therefore it means, "for ever" (*Kimchi*; *Gesen.* 195). I will give you all that I have, Who have infinity at My command.

11. *the devourer*] The locust. Cp. Joel i. 4.

And he shall not † destroy the fruits of your ground ;

Neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field, saith the LORD of hosts.

Before
CHRIST
about
397.
† Heb. *corrupt*.

¹² And all nations shall call you blessed :

For ye shall be ^a a delightful land, saith the LORD of hosts.

z Dan. 8. 9.

¹³ ^a Your words have been stout against me, saith the LORD.

a ch. 2. 17.

Yet ye say, What have we spoken *so much* against thee ?

¹⁴ ^b Ye have said, It is vain to serve God :

b Job 21. 14, 15.

And what profit is it that we have kept † his ordinance,

& 22. 17.
Ps. 73. 13.

And that we have walked † mournfully before the LORD of hosts ?

Zeph. 1. 12.

¹⁵ And now ^c we call the proud happy ;

† Heb. *his observation*.

Yea, they that work wickedness † are set up ;

† Heb. *in black*.

Yea, *they that* ^d tempt God are even delivered.

c Ps. 73. 12.

ch. 2. 17.

† Heb. *are built*.

d Ps. 95. 9.

¹⁶ Then they ^e that feared the LORD ^f spake often one to another : and the LORD hearkened, and heard it, and ^g a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the LORD, and that thought upon his name. ¹⁷ And

e Ps. 66. 16.

ch. 4. 2.

f Heb. 3. 13.

g Ps. 56. 8.

Isa. 65. 6.

Rev. 20. 12.

^h they shall be mine, saith the LORD of hosts, in that day when I make up my || ⁱ jewels ; and ^k I will spare them, as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

h Exod. 19. 5.

Deut. 7. 6.

Ps. 135. 4.

Tit. 2. 14.

1 Pet. 2. 9.

|| Or, *special treasure*.

i Isa. 62. 3.

k Ps. 103. 13.

1 Ps. 58. 11.

¹⁸ ^l Then shall ye return, and discern between the righteous and the wicked,

Between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

a Joel 2. 31.

ch. 3. 2.

2 Pet. 3. 7.

b ch. 3. 18.

c Obad. 18.

IV. ¹ For, behold, ^a the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven ;

And all ^b the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be ^c stubble :

And the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the LORD of hosts,

d Amos 2. 9.

That it shall ^d leave them neither root nor branch.

² But unto you that ^e fear my name shall the ^f Sun of righteousness arise

e ch. 3. 16.

f Luke 1. 78. Eph. 5. 14. 2 Pet. 1. 19. Rev. 2. 23.

14. *Ye have said, It is vain to serve God*] This sceptical and murmuring spirit had been rebuked by Zephaniah (i. 12).

— *we have kept his ordinance*] Literally, that *we keep his keeping, or observe his observance*. It seems here specially to refer to the ceremonial ordinances prescribed by the Levitical Law. Cp. Num. iii. 6—8. Ezek. xlv. 8.

— *walked mournfully*] Literally, *walked in black, squalid, and sordid—in sackcloth, and with ashes on the head* (Ps. xxxv. 13, 14; xxxviii. 6).

15. *And now we call the proud happy*] We call. The Prophet condescends to identify himself with those whom he reproves. “*We call the proud happy; yea, we say*” (he is adopting the words of the murmurers), “*they that work wickedness are set up.*” Therefore it is vain to serve God. But he suddenly quits the seat of the scornors. He retires aside from the crowd, who proudly rely on their own popular verdicts, vaunting their own intelligence, and setting at nought the decrees of God; and, standing aloof from them, he joins the smaller company of the faithful few who wait and fear the Lord, and think upon His Name, and look up to heaven, and with the eye of faith behold the Almighty Judge holding a book of remembrance in His hand, and noting down the acts, speeches, and thoughts of the dwellers upon earth; and he listens, with the ear of faith, to the promises of God, assuring His righteous servants of a future eternal reward.

17. *they shall be mine—jewels*] Rather, *they shall be to Me for a peculiar treasure*, Hebr. *segullâh*, the word used in Exod. xix. 5, whence it is derived here: “*Ye shall be to Me a peculiar treasure;*” and in Dent. vii. 6; xiv. 2; xxvi. 18. Ps. cxxxv. 4. *On that day which I am making* (Sept., *R. Tanchum, Vatablus, Hengstl., Keil*), that is, in the Last Day, the Day of the Lord, the Day which the Lord is always *making*, when He calls men by death to Himself; and for which He is preparing in all His visitations on Men and Nations.

In God’s divine eyesight that Day of Doom is now present; and, by a grand process of foreshortening, the holy Prophets, especially Joel, represent all God’s judgments in the world as hours (if we may so speak) marked on the dial-plate, and struck by the alarum, of that Great Day. Men vainly imagine that

they can determine questions of morals and religion—that they can set aside the Bible, or recast the Creed of the Church, according to what they call “the needs of the age.” They would even be making the Day of Judgment, if they could, to be an Assize Day of their own judicial supremacy; but that Day is the Day which God knows, and which God *makes*—and He only.

CH. IV. 1. *the day cometh, that shall burn as an oven* (or furnace); and *all the proud—shall be stubble*] The Baptist (to whom Malachi has referred) adopts this imagery (Matt. iii. 1) when he sees Christ coming to his baptism, and foresees His coming to Judgment. “*He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire*” (Matt. iii. 12).

— *the proud*] The proud, whom “ye call happy” (see iii. 15), and who think themselves to be happy. He uses the same word here as there.

— *leave them neither root nor branch*] Another phrase adopted by the Baptist, speaking of Christ’s Coming. “*Behold now the axe is laid to the root of the tree. Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire*” (Matt. iii. 10. Luke iii. 9).

Our Lord says, “*The Law and the Prophets* (i. e. the Old Testament) *were until John*” (Luke xvi. 16). Malachi twice foretells the coming of the Baptist as the forerunner of Christ (iii. 1; iv. 5); and it is interesting to observe how the Baptist, at the beginning of the Gospel, takes up and repeats the language of Malachi, the last of the Prophets.

St. John the Baptist, standing at the threshold of the New Testament, echoes the voice of Malachi, standing at the exit of the Old; and he reaches forth his hand, and takes from the hand of Malachi the torch of divinely-revealed truth, which had been delivered down in an unbroken series through successive generations of inspired men for a thousand years, from the hand of Moses.

2. *But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings*] Observe the word *wings*. The Hebrew word for *wing* (*câdâph*) signifies the *skirt* or *hem* of a garment. The skirt of a garment was

Before
CHRIST
about
397.

2 Sam. 22. 43.
Micah 7. 10.
Zech. 10. 5.

With healing in his wings;
And ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.
3 And ye shall tread down the wicked;
For they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet
In the day that I shall do *this*, saith the LORD of hosts.

h Exod. 20. 3, &c.

i Deut. 4. 10.

k Ps. 147. 19.

l Matt. 11. 14.

& 17. 11.

Mark 9. 11. Luke 1. 17.

4 Remember ye the ^h law of Moses my servant,
Which I commanded unto him ⁱ in Horeb for all Israel,
With ^k the statutes and judgments.

5 Behold, I will send you ^l Elijah the Prophet

cast by a Bridegroom over a Bride in espousals (see on Ruth iii. 9); and persons laid hold on the skirt of a garment in order to receive the guidance and protection of those who wore it. See above, Zech. viii. 23, "Ten men shall take hold of the *skirt* of him that is a Jew;" and compare Isa. iv. 1, "In that day" (the day of the Messiah) "seven women" (representing the Universal Church) "shall lay hold of one man" (Christ).

Malachi, foretelling Christ's Advent, takes up this imagery, and in a glorious picture describes Him as the *Sun of Righteousness*. Compare Ps. xix. 5, where is a reference to Christ as the Sun, and as a Bridegroom, and Jer. xxiii. 6, "The LORD our *RIGHTEOUSNESS*." This "Day-Spring from on High" (Luke i. 78) is invested in glorious apparel, clothed with light as with a garment (Ps. civ. 2); and from the wings—the very hem and skirt of His raiment—healing is shed upon *all who fear His Name*.

How signally was this exemplified when the faithful woman came trembling, and knelt behind Christ, and took hold of the hem of His garment; and immediately virtue went forth from Him, to heal her in body and soul (Matt. ix. 20—22. Mark v. 30). What a beaming forth of healing light was there from the solar orb of His Righteousness, what a flood of luminous glory streamed forth from Him, when they who feared His Name "besought Him that they might only touch the hem of His garment, and as many as touched it were made perfectly whole" i. e. whole, not only in body, but in soul (Matt. xiv. 36); or, as St. Luke expresses it, "virtue went out of Him, and healed them all" (Luke vi. 19).

The Baptist saluted Christ as the Bridegroom, and the Church as His Bride (John iii. 29). Christ, the Divine Bridegroom, the Sun of Righteousness, casts the skirt of His pure spotless robe over His Spouse, as Boaz did over Ruth (see on Ruth iii. 19). He, dying on the cross, cleansed her with His own blood (Eph. v. 25, 26. Acts x. 28. Rev. i. 5. 2 Cor. xi. 2); and hath clothed her with His own righteousness; and therefore she is represented in the Apocalypse as the "woman clothed with the Sun" (Rev. xii. 1). The Church is clothed with Christ. And every baptized person has put on Christ (Gal. iii. 27), the new man (Rom. xiii. 14. Eph. iv. 24. Col. iii. 10), and wears Christ, and walks in white (Rev. iii. 4). All who fear His Name, and come to Him with humility, and take hold of the skirts of His clothing, in His holy Word and blessed Sacraments, with the hand of faith—to them virtue goes forth from Him, and they are healed; to them "the Sun of Righteousness arises," in genial radiance illuminating the dark places of their souls, "with healing on His wings."

— ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall] Rather, ye will go forth and leap, skip, or vault (*Sept., Vulg.*), like calves well-fed in the stall; which exult with joy when let loose out of their stalls to go forth to pasture.

Such is the joy of the Saints of God even now, being delivered by Christ from the bands of sin and Satan, and exulting with spiritual joy in their Evangelical liberty, purchased for them by the death and resurrection of Christ (*S. Cyril*); and such and much more will be their joy hereafter. At the sound of His Divine Voice, they will spring forth from their graves, and renew their strength, and mount up with wings like eagles (Isa. xl. 31), and be caught up in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so be ever with the Lord (1 Thess. iv. 17).

3. ye shall tread down the wicked] The metaphor is kept up. As oxen tread the sheaves under foot on the threshing-floor at the harvest; so, at the Great Day which is the world's harvest, shall the Saints (who are now trodden under foot by the proud oppressor) trample on all ungodliness. See Rom. xvi. 20. This metaphor is taken up from Micah iv. 12; vii. 10. Isa. xli. 15, 16. Cp. Joel iii. 14. Zech. x. 5.

REMEMBER THE LAW OF MOSES.

4. Remember ye the law of Moses my servant] Malachi, who

is called by the Hebrews "The Seal of the Prophets," concludes the Old Testament with a solemn admonition to the Hebrew Nation and to all ages, that they should remember what is contained in the earliest portions of that Book—the Pentateuch.

The Holy Spirit, speaking by Malachi, here sets His divine seal on the Pentateuch, as it was received by the Jews in his days. And the Old Testament in our days is precisely the same as it was in the days of Malachi.

Whosoever, therefore, despises or disparages the Pentateuch, is chargeable with sin against the Holy Ghost, Who commands us here to remember, that is, to revere and observe it.

It is remarkable, that at the conclusion of the Gospel (John xx. 31; xxi. 24, 25), and at the end of St. Paul's Epistles (2 Tim. iii. 15—17, the last Epistle written by St. Paul), and at the close of St. Peter's Epistles (2 Pet. iii. 15, 16), and in the last words of the Revelation of St. John (xxii. 18, 19), we have similar retrospective references to the preceding portions of Holy Scripture. The Holy Spirit has taken care, in all His farewell utterances, to inculcate on our minds the paramount importance of the careful study of God's written Word, and of devout veneration for it. Malachi, the last of the prophets, preaches of Christ, and exhorts us to remember Moses. He thus teaches us that the Gospel is no new thing, but was foreshadowed in the Law, and dates from the earliest times. The fulness of the Law and the Prophets is Christ.

ELIJAH THE PROPHET.

5. Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet] Our Lord expressly tells us that "Elias is come already, and they knew him not;" and the Evangelist adds, "then the disciples understood that He spake to them of *John the Baptist*" (Matt. xvii. 9—13. Mark ix. 11—13). Cp. Matt. xi. 13. Cp. *Pocock*, 148—192.

The Jews, interpreting these words of Malachi literally, suppose that Elijah, who is still alive, will appear in person before the Second Advent of the Messiah, and "restore the tribes of Jacob." (Ecclus. xlviii. 10); and many ancient Christian Expositors, as *Justin Martyr*, *Hippolytus*, *Origen*, *S. Cyril*, *Gregory Nyssen*, *S. Chrysostom*, *Tertullian*, *S. Hilary*, *S. Ambrose*, *S. Jerome*, *S. Augustine*, *S. Gregory*, using the *Septuagint* Version, which has here "Elijah the *Tishbite*" (and so *Arabic*), imagined that Elijah will come in person before the Second Advent of Christ. See the authorities quoted below, in the note on Matt. xvii. 10, and on Rev. xi. 3, 4; the passages cited in *Suicer*, Thes. v. Elias; and in the *Catéchisme de Montpellier*, i. 375, and by *Hengst*, here, *Christol.* iv. 219—224, English translation.

In the face of such strong catholic evidence in favour of a belief in a personal coming of Elias before the Second Advent of Christ, it would seem to be presumptuous to deny the possibility, or even the probability, of such an event. But the words of the Prophet Malachi, especially as interpreted by the Gospel, do not seem to require, perhaps not to admit, such a belief; and the opinion of these early Greek Fathers may, perhaps, be ascribed to the fact that they used the *Septuagint* Version, rather than the Hebrew Original; and perhaps the Latin derived their opinion from them. The *Vulgate* has "Eliam prophetam," and so the Syriac—not "Thebiten;" but the early Latin Version has "Thesbiten."

As Christ Himself is called *David* by the Prophets, because He is the true King and Shepherd of Israel, and because all the promises which were made to David are fulfilled in Him Who is David's Seed (see on Jer. xxx. 9. Ezek. xxxiv. 23; xxxvii. 24. Hosea iii. 5), so John the Baptist is called *Elias*, who was the representative of the Law; and therefore Moses and Elias were illumined in Christ's glory at the Transfiguration (Matt. xvii. 3. Mark ix. 4. Luke ix. 30). "Dominus atque Salvator trans-

^m Before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord :
⁶ And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children,
And the heart of the children to their fathers,
Lest I come and ⁿ smite the earth with ^o a curse.

Before
CHRIST
about
397.
in Joel 2. 31.

n Zech. 14. 12.
o Zech. 5. 3.

figuratus in monte loquentes secum habebat Moysen et Eliam in candidis vestibus, qui et dicebant ei quæ passurus esset in Jerusalem : Lex enim et omnis prophetarum chorus Christi prædicat passionem ” (S. Jerome).
All the Law and the Prophets testified of Christ, and are lighted up by Him, Who is the Sun of Righteousness, and by His Gospel. John the Baptist was not only the antitype of Elias in his dress, his office, his character, and his courageous acts, especially in his reproving kings (see on Matt. iii. 4; xiv. 2. Mark ix. 12, 13), but he also consummated the prophetic work of which Elias was the exponent and representative. “The Law and the Prophets prophesied until John, since that time the kingdom of God is preached, and every man presseth into it” (Matt. xi. 12. Luke xvi. 16).

The Church declares her judgment on this matter by appointing this chapter, as well as the third, to be read on the festival of St. John the Baptist.

— Before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord] Words adopted from Joel ii. 31. See the note there.

6. he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children] The angel Gabriel, when he appeared to Zacharias, the father of John the Baptist, quoted these words and applied them to the Baptist, whose birth he foretold. “He shall go before Him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just” (Luke i. 17); whence we may observe that the angels themselves read the Scriptures. Cp. Eph. iii. 10. 1 Pet. i. 12.

The sense is, He shall unite the Jews, who are our fathers, to us Christians, who are their children (S. Jerome, Theodoret, and S. Chrysostom, in Matt. xvii.).

This blessed work will be done by him who preaches the kingdom of heaven; many will come from the East and the West, and sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom of God (Matt. viii. 11. Luke xiii. 28). This is fulfilled even now in the Church; for we are children of Abraham by faith in Christ, Who is Abraham’s Seed (Gal. iii. 7—9).

St. John the Baptist also adopted these words of Malachi when he said, “God is able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham” (Matt. xiii. 19); the Father of the faithful. Abraham is our father, and we are his children, and his heart is turned to our heart, and our hearts are turned to his heart, by faith in Christ.

Yet further, it is not to be denied or forgotten, that according to the Christian Fathers who supposed that Elias will appear again in person before the Second Advent of Christ (see above on vv. 5, 6.), one of the principal purposes assigned for that appearance is, that he may convert the Jews to Christianity. So Theodoret here, and S. Chrysostom and Theophyl. in Matt. xvii.; S. Gregory, Hom. 12 in Ezechiel.

It may suffice to quote the words of S. Augustine in this sense. In his book De Civ. Dei, xx. 29, he thus writes, “It is a very prevalent opinion in the discourses and hearts of the faithful, that by the instrumentality of Elias, the great and wonderful prophet, expounding to them the true meaning of the Law of Moses, in the latter days before the final Judgment, the Jews will be brought to believe in the true Christ. With good reason the appearance of Elias is hoped for, before the Advent of our Saviour and Judge; because with good reason he is believed to be still alive, inasmuch as he was carried up from this world in a chariot of fire. When, therefore, Elias comes, he will expound the Law spiritually, which the Jews now understand carnally, and will turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the children to the fathers; that is, the Jews, who are the children, will understand the Law in the same sense as their fathers the Prophets understood it.”

— lest I come and smite the earth with a curse] Rather,

with the ban (Hebr. *cherem*) of extermination. The word here used (*cherem*) has a double sense, like *sacer* or *devotus* in Latin, dedicated for a blessing, or doomed for a curse. It is not the same as that used in iii. 9, but as that rendered *utter destruction* in 1 Kings xx. 42, and in Zech. xiv. 11, “There shall be no more *utter destruction*, but Jerusalem shall be safely inhabited.”

The sense is, that the earth (as opposed to the kingdom of heaven) will be like another Canaan—under a curse—as the seven nations of Canaan were) unless it listens to the preaching of the Gospel of Christ, Whose herald the Baptist was.

This was fulfilled in the utter destruction of Jerusalem—which was symbolized by the act of Christ smiting the barren leafy fig-tree with a curse, which withered it (Mark xi. 21), and in the ban of extermination executed on Judea for the rejection of Christ at His first coming. Jerusalem and Judah became as Canaan for their sins against God.

But this prophecy extends also to the time of Christ’s Second Coming.

Malachi ends his prophecy as his predecessor Zechariah had done, “The Lord will smite with a plague all the people that have fought against Jerusalem,” that is, who war against Christ and His Church (Zech. xiv. 12); “and there shall be no more the Canaanite in the house of the Lord of Hosts” (Zech. xiv. 21). Whoever is a Canaanite in heart, will become like Canaan in fate (Lev. xxvi. 14. Deut. xii. 29; and xxviii.). If we do not offer ourselves as a holy *cherem* (Lev. xxvii. 28), by self dedication to God, we shall be doomed as a *cherem* for extermination by Him. Cp. on Mark ix. 29. If we do not devote ourselves a willing *ἀνάθημα* to God, we shall be an unwilling *ἀνάθημα*.

This concluding sentence of Malachi—this final utterance of the Holy Spirit—is a solemn warning to these latter days.

Some of the Jews wished to shift this verse from its proper place, in order that the Old Testament might have a joyful termination. The *Septuagint* ends with the fourth verse of this chapter; and the fifth and sixth are made to precede it. The Masorites prescribed that in the synagogues the *penultimate* verse should be read again at the end of Isaiah, Lamentations, and Ecclesiastes, in order to escape the dirge-like tones of the last verses of these books. The same was to be done here, at the end of what the Jews call “the Twelve,” i.e. Minor Prophets, in order that the Old Testament might not conclude with words of terrible denunciation. Cp. Pocock, 201.

But the Holy Spirit knows what is best for us. He warns us of future punishment, in order that we may escape it, and that we may inherit everlasting glory. “Knowing the terror of the Lord,” He would “persuade men” (2 Cor. v. 11). And the character of these latter days, when the Evil One is endeavouring to lure men into his own grasp, and to make them his victims for ever, by dissolving God’s attributes into one universal fulness of indiscriminating love; and by endeavouring to persuade them that His Justice and Holiness are mere ideal theories and visionary phantoms, and that there is no Judgment to come, and that the terrors of Hell are but a dream—in defiance of the clear words of Him Who is the Truth (see on Mark ix. 44—48. Matt. xxv. 46. Cp. on Isa. lxvi. 24)—shows that there is divine foresight in this warning by Malachi. Let it not be forgotten, that the Apostle of love, St. John, ends his Epistle with a warning against idolatry, and that at the close of the Apocalypse there is a solemn declaration against all who tamper with any words of that book, which speaks in the clearest tones concerning Judgment, Heaven, Hell, and Eternity (Rev. xx. 11—15; xxi. 27; xxii. 18, 19). May we have grace so to profit by this solemn warning, that we may escape the malediction of those on the left hand at the Great Day, and inherit the blessing which will be pronounced to them on the right hand, by the Almighty and Everlasting Judge!

NOW UNTO THE KING ETERNAL, IMMORTAL, INVISIBLE, THE ONLY WISE GOD, BE HONOUR
AND GLORY FOR EVER AND EVER. AMEN (1 Tim. i. 17).

LONDON :
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

AN

INDEX

TO THE

BISHOP OF LINCOLN'S COMMENTARY

ON

The Old Testament.

BY

FREDERICK HENRY SCRIVENER, M.A.

RECTOR OF ST. GERRANS;

AUTHOR OF "A PLAIN INTRODUCTION TO THE CRITICISM OF THE NEW TESTAMENT,"

EDITOR OF "CODEX AUGIENSIS," "CODEX BEZÆ," ETC.

London,

RIVINGTONS, WATERLOO PLACE;

HIGH STREET, | TRINITY STREET,

Oxford.

Cambridge.

1872.

INDEX.

- A CASTRO, cited Amos ix. 1. Obad. 20.
- A Kempis, Th., cited Eccles. i. 2.
- A Lapide, Cornelius, characterized Isa. lviii. 14. Cited Gen. i. 1; iv. 4, 5; xxi. 7. 14; xxii. 2; xxiv. 2, 3; xxxvi. 33; xxxviii. 7; xli. 1; xlvii. 22. 28. Vol. ii. Part I, p. 83, note 3. Judg. ix. 23. 1 Sam. i. 28; ii. 10. 17; vii. 9; x. 27; xii. 3; xxiii. 5—8; xxvii. 8; xxviii. 13. 2 Sam. ii. 23; iii. 8; vi. 14; vii. 14; xxi. 1; xxiv. 1. 24. 1 Kings vi. 7; xiii. 9; xv. 10. 2 Kings viii. 4; xxiii. 30. 1 Chr. iv. 22. 2 Chr. xxvi. 16. Ezra ii. 63. Neh. xiii. 25. Esther iv. 11. Prov. v. 15; vi. 5; xxx. 1. 19; xxxi. p. 70; v. 13. Eccles. xii. 4. 5. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 126, note 5. Cant. v. p. 144. Ism. ii. 22; xi. 6—9; xxii. 1; xxiii. 18; xxvi. 19; xxix. 5. 24; xliii. 3; xlv. 28; xlviii. 16; lii. 15; lviii. 12. 14; lxiii. 1; lxx. 20. Vol. v. Part 2, p. x, note 4. Jer. ii. 13; iii. 16. 18; iv. 2; vii. 18; xvii. 11; xxii. 29; xxiii. 4; xxv. 15; xxxi. 4. 5. 22. Vol. v. Part 2, p. 139. Lam. i. 12; iii. p. 145. Ezek. iv. p. 165. *vv.* 5. 8; viii. 14; xi. 18; xx. 40; xxviii. p. 221; xxxii. 27; xxxviii. p. 246. Retrospect pp. 275, note 4; 284, note 3; 286, notes 4. 12; 288, note 2; 289, note 1. Vol. vi. Part I, p. xix, note 8. Dan. ii. 44; iii. 1. 25; iv. 13. 27; vii. 6. 17; viii. 5. 14; xi. 36; xii. 2. Hos. i. 2; iv. 15; v. 2; viii. 13; xiii. 14. Joel ii. 31; iii. 4. 18. 20. Amos i. 1; ii. 6; iii. 7; v. 5; ix. 1. 14, 15. Obad. 20. Jon. i. 9. Mic. ii. 13; iv. 6. 8; v. 1. 2. 5. Nah. i. 14. Hab. iii. 2. Zeph. ii. 6, 7. Hagg. ii. 7. 9. Zech. i. 8; ii. 1, 2; iii. 3. 9; vi. 10—14; vii. 2; viii. 23; ix. 6. 13; xi. 1, 2; xii. 3. 9; xiii. 3. 6; xiv. 4. Mal. i. 10, 11.
- Aaron, more specious than Moses, but less worthy, Ex. iv. 16; xxxii. 20. Why sometimes joined with Moses in bringing the plagues on Egypt, sometimes alone, Ex. ix. 8. He and his sons required to be present when the precepts concerning the Tabernacle were given, Ex. xxiv. 1. His call to the priesthood, Ex. xxviii. 1. His High Priest's garments described; their typical import, *vv.* 4—11. His breastplate, v. 15; and frontlet, v. 36. A type of our Great High Priest, v. 38. To be consecrated with oil, Ex. xxix. 7. Worthy persons must be duly called to the ministry, v. 9. Three-fold sacrifices, of what typical, v. 10. His sin about the golden calf, Ex. xxxii. 1. His presumed penitence, *vv.* 21. 35. Inferences from Moses' intercession for him, Deut. ix. 20. His consecration, Lev. viii. 1. His family, Num. iii. 1—4. Murmurs against Moses, Num. xii. 12. Why only put to shame, not punished with Miriam, v. 10. When a type of Christ our Intercessor, Num. xvi. 47, 48. His budding rod how typical, Num. xvii. 8. Why he died before Moses, Num. xx. 1. Stripped of his garments, a typical act, Num. xx. 26. Place of his death, Num. xx. 22. 29; xxxiii. 38; discussed, Deut. x. 6.
- Aaronites, not priests but warriors, 1 Chr. xii. 27; xxvii. 5.
- Abana, river described 2 Kings v. 12.
- Abarbanel, cited 1 Sam. xvi. 14. 2 Sam. xxiii. 8. 1 Kings xi. *init.* 2 Kings ii. 23; xi. 12; xxiii. 30. 1 Chr. iii. 17. 2 Chr. xiv. 5; xxiv. 7. Isa. xlii. p. 123. Jer. vi. 2; xxx. 9. Joel ii. 23. Mic. v. 1; vii. 20. Nah. iii. 4. Zech. p. 121; ch. i. 18; iv. 6.
- Abarim, mount of, how scene of Moses' Pisgah view, Num. xxvii. 12. Jer. xxii. 20.
- Abel (i. e. vanity, Ps. xxxix. 5), an eminent type of Christ, Gen. iv. 8. His sacrifice why more acceptable than Cain's, *vv.* 3—5. His innocent death preached of a resurrection, Job iv. 7.
- Abel, stone of, 1 Sam. vi. 18. Town of, 2 Sam. xx. 14. Its reputation for wisdom, v. 18.
- Abel-meholah, town of, Judg. vii. 22. 1 Kings iv. 12; xix. 16.
- Aben-Ezra, cited Gen. xlix. 10. Lev. xxvii. 2. Num. xxvi. 59. Ruth i. 4. 2 Chr. xxi. 12. Neh. xiii. 25. Esther i. 22; vi. 8; viii. 10. Job xi. 11; xxxiv. 36. Ps. xxxvii. 25; xlv. p. 68. Prov. xxx. 1. Isa. xvii. 11; xxxv. 1. Jer. xxx. 9. Dan. vi. 18. Hos. v. 1; xiii. 1. Joel ii. 23.
- Abgar, king of Edessa, his mission to Christ paralleled, 2 Kings viii. 8.
- Abiathar, the High Priest, faithful to David, 1 Sam. xxii. 23; xxiii. 6. 1 Chr. xv. 11. Possibly in disgrace, or lukewarm, 2 Sam. viii. 17 (so 1 Chr. xvi. 39). Jealous of Zadok, 1 Kings i. 7; ii. 26. Deposed from his priestly office, not from his sacerdotal character, v. 27.
- Abijah, why called Abijam, 1 Kings xiv. 31. His great victories the fruit of faith, 2 Chr. xiii. 3. Hence not incredible, v. 17. His appeal to Jeroboam, v. 12.
- Abimelech (1), the king of Gerar's official title, Gen. xx. 2. 1 Sam. xxi. 10. Ps. xxxiv. p. 47. His behaviour towards Abraham, Gen. xx. 16. 17. (2) A son of Gideon, who first usurped the name of king in the sacred place of Shechem, emblem of the Lawless One, Judg. ix. 6. His cowardice with men, foolhardiness towards God, *v.* 54. A precursor of Antichrist, Vol. ii. Part I, p. 123. (3) Or Aebish, 1 Sam. xxi. 10. (4) A form of Ahimelech, 1 Chr. xviii. 16.
- Abner, 2 Sam. ii. 8, a sacrifice to his own wanton cruelty, *vv.* 14. 26. 27. His dirge explained, 2 Sam. iii. 33—37. His son promoted by David, *ib.*
- Abomination, a Scripture name for idol, Ex. viii. 26. Lawfulness of using things devoted to them, Deut. vii. 26. "Abomination that maketh desolate" explained, Dan. ix. 27. Shall be seen in the Christian Church in the last days through cowardice of some in high place, Dan. xii. 11.
- Abraham, apparently the youngest son of Terah, Gen. xi. 26. 29; xix. 31. His migration an act of faith, Gen. xi. 31. His two several calls, Gen. xii. 1. Lawfulness of his conduct in Egypt and Gerar considered, Gen. xii. 13; xx. 2. His love of peace, Gen. xiii. 8, 9. Nature of his faith before circumcision, Gen. xv. 6. His constant monogamy, Gen. xvi. 25. His dismissal of Agar how justified, Mal. ii. 15. Meaning of his name: spiritual father of many nations, Gen. vii. 5. Though but a solitary unit, Isa. li. 2. His laughter joyful, Gen. xvii. 17; xxi. 3. His love and humility, Gen. xviii. 23. 27. How tried by God, Gen. xxii. 1. Moral character of his conduct then, v. 2. His courtesy, Gen. xxiii. 8. Bought two separate burial places at Machpelah and at Sichem (Acts vii. 16), *v.* 9. Privacy of his later years how typical, Gen. xxv. 7. Vain reliance of Jews on their descent from him, Isa. lxiii. 16.
- Abrech, meaning of, discussed, Gen. xli. 43.
- Abssalom, belied his name, 2 Sam. xv. 1. David harder to him than God had been to himself, 2 Sam. xiv. 24. Representation of self-conceit, *vv.* 25, 26; xvii. 11. 13. His love of popularity, Prov. xviii. 24. A supposed Nazarite, 2 Sam. xiv. 26. Date of his rebellion, v. 27. A type of the Jews persecuting Christ, even in details, Vol. ii. Part 2, p. 104. Ps. iii. pp. 4, 5; lv. p. 83. *vv.* 15. 23; lxi; lxiii. Died through what he gloried in, 2 Sam. xviii. 9. His pillar, v. 18.
- Abstract, for concrete, Jer. iii. 24; v. 30.
- Abulensis, cited 1 Kings xix. 20.
- Abulfeda, cited Jer. xliii. 13.
- Abydenus, cited Isa. xxxvii. 37. Dan. iv. p. 14; *vv.* 29. 30.

- Acead, located, Gen. x. 10.
 Aecho, its site and history, Judg. i. 31.
 Achan, his sin that of sacrilege, Josh. vi. 17. Fourth in descent from Judah, Josh. vii. 1. Compared with Ananias, *re*. 1; 21. 25. Gently exhorted to repentance, *re*. 19. Hope for condemned malefactors, *re*. 19. 24. His family and goods why destroyed, *re*. 25.
 Achish, perhaps official title of kings of Gath, 1 Sam. xxi. 10; xxvii. 2.
 Achmetha (or Eebatana), its meaning and site, Ezra vi. 2. Cyrus's decree how it came there, *ib*.
 Achor, its literal and spiritual meaning, Isa. lxx. 10. A door of hope, Hos. ii. 15.
 Achsah, her reverence for her father, Josh. xv. 18; procures more than she asks, *re*. 19. Encouragement to earnestness in prayer, *ib*.
 Achshaph, its site, Josh. xix. 25.
 Achzib, in Judah, Josh. xv. 44. How answering to its name, Mic. i. 14. In Asher, Josh. xix. 29.
 Adam, his giving names to the living creatures, Gen. ii. 19. He, not Eve, the chief offender, Gen. iii. 6. Not he, but the earth for his sake, cursed, *re*. 17. "Law of Adam," i. e. mortality, 2 Sam. vii. 19. Yet a figure of Christ, from Whom the Church sprang while He slept, Isa. liv. p. 157. Jer. xxxi. 26, in mystical wedlock, Hos. xi. 4.
 Adam, city of, up the Jordan, its site unknown, Josh. iii. 16. Its name significant of Jesus checking the flood of sin coming down from our first father, *ib*.
 Adamant, i. e. diamond, Ezek. iii. 9.
 Adami Nakeb, explained, Josh. xix. 33.
 Adder or basilisk, its piercing glance, Prov. xxiii. 32.
 Adding drunkenness to thirst explained, Deut. xxix. 19.
 Admah, Hos. xi. 8.
 Adoni-bezek (i. e. lord of lightning), his cruelty and punishment illustrated by examples; compared with Satan, Judg. i. 7.
 Adonijah, David's eldest surviving and spoiled son, 1 Kings i. 5, 6. His career parallel with his full brother Absalom's, *re*. 5, 6, 9. His rebellion against God's own appointment, *re*. 5. His sacrificial feast referred to, Ps. lxxix. 22. His insidious request aimed at the crown, 1 Kings ii. 17.
 Adonikam, a mysterious name, Ezra viii. 13.
 Adonis, derivation of, Ezek. viii. 14.
 Adoram, 2 Chr. xi. 9.
 Adrammelech (2 Kings xix. 37) and Anammelech, 2 Kings xvii. 31.
 Adullam, site and history of, Gen. xxxviii. 1. Josh. xii. 15. 1 Sam. xxii. 1. 2 Sam. xxiii. 13. 2 Chr. xi. 7. Mic. i. 15.
 Adultery, ordeal for, must have been a divine appointment, Num. v. 29. Why it did not extirpate adultery among the Jews, *re*. 31. The crime punished by death, Deut. xxii. 29. Ezek. xvi. 38. When punished with burning and with what typical meaning, Ezek. vi. 43. Worse than theft, Prov. vi. 30. Its spiritual sense, Num. v. 31.
 Adummim, Josh. xv. 7.
 Aelian cited, Judg. i. 6. Esther ii. 21; viii. 10. Isa. xix. 2—4.
 Aeschylus cited, Judg. xiv. 12. 2 Sam. viii. 1; xv. 19. 1 Kings xv. 13. Ezra iv. 7. Esther i. 1. 2. 3. 6. 7. 9. 11; ii. 1. 23; iii. 2; iv. 11. Job vii. 4; xxx. 22; xxxix. 24. Eccles. xii. 11. Dan. vi. 7; vii. 9; xi. 2. 38.
 Aetius cited, Dan. iv. 16.
 Agag, official title of the kings of Amalek, Num. xxiv. 7. 1 Sam. xv. 8.
 Agagite, one of his family, Esther iii. 1.
 Ahab, (1) king of Israel, his reign a new era in its history, 1 Kings xvi. 30—33. His weak faith and obedience rewarded, 1 Kings xx. 27. His profession to worship God as well as Baal, 1 Kings xxii. 40. 2 Kings xi. 1. His false mercy to Benhadad contrasted with his injustice to Naboth, 1 Kings xx. 42. His childish weakness, 1 Kings xxi. 4. His superficial repentance modifies his punishment, *re*. 19. 27—29. At length falls a victim to the lies he prefers to the truth, 1 Kings xxii. 20. 22. (2) A false prophet, Jer. xxix. 22.
 Ahazuerus, meaning of this official royal title, Ezra iv. 6. (1) Cambyses, *ib*. (2) Xerxes, Vol. iii. p. 360. Influence of Daniel's prophecies on his policy towards Greece, p. 365, note 3. Life of Xerxes, and proof of his identity from chronology, character, name, and fortunes, Esther i. 1. His reign of 21 years, not 11, *ib*. Dan. ix. p. 47. His second gathering of virgins after marriage with Esther, Esther ii. 19—22. His tribute (B.C. 470) why imposed, Esther x. 1.
 Ahava, river, its position discussed, Ezra viii. 15.
 Ahaz, king of Judah, his despair in the public distress, 2 Kings xvi. 3. 2 Chr. xxviii. 16. Isa. lvii. 8, 9. His idolatry, 2 Kings xvi. 4. Yet delivered as Isaiah had foretold, *re*. 5. Isa. vii. p. 17, *re*. 1. 2. 16. Defeated by the Philistines, Isa. xiv. 28. Robs God to conciliate Assyria, 2 Kings xvi. 7. 8. 9. Ezek. xvi. 28; xxiii. 12. His idolatrous altar derived from conquered Damascus, 2 Kings xvi. 10—15. 2 Chr. xxviii. 23.
 Ahaziah, (1) king of Israel, his sin, 2 Chr. xx. 35. (2) King of Judah, his partial services to God, 2 Kings xii. 18. His route in fleeing from Jehu, 2 Kings ix. 27. His brethren or near relatives, 2 Kings x. 13. Called also Jehoahaz and Azariah, 2 Chr. xxi. 17. His age on his accession, 2 Chr. xxii. 2.
 Ahiah, the High Priest, 1 Sam. xiv. 3.
 Ahijah, the faithful prophet, 1 Kings xi. 29; xiv. 2. The blind prophet not deceived by politic disguises, *re*. 6.
 Ahikam, son of Shaphan, father of Gedaliah, and friend of Jeremiah, 2 Kings xxii. 12. Jer. xxvi. 24.
 Ahimelech, (1) the High Priest, 1 Sam. xxi. 1. Ps. lii, title. (2) Son of Abiathar, 2 Sam. viii. 17.
 Ahira (i. e. evil brother), last head of a tribe, perhaps a type of Judas Iscariot, Num. i. 5.
 Ahithophel, his provocation to betray David, 2 Sam. xi. 3; xv. 12; xvi. 21. His schemes, Ps. lxxii. 3. Meaning of the name, 2 Sam. xv. 31. Type of Judas Iscariot, 2 Sam. xv. 12. 32; xvii. 3. Ps. lv. 13. 21. His death like that traitor's, 2 Sam. xvii. 23.
 Ai, (1) or Hai, its site, Josh. vii. 2. A region of ravines, Josh. viii. 2. Joshua's stratagem explained, *re*. 3. Local parallel between Abraham and Joshua, *re*. 9. Same as Aiath, Isa. x. 28. (2) In Ammon, Jer. xli. 3.
 Aijeleth Shahab, title explained, Ps. xxii. 1. Prov. v. 19.
 Ain-Rimmon (the true reading), Josh. xv. 32.
 Ainsworth, cited, Cant. i. 10. 14; iv. 2. Jer. xxxi. 5.
 Ajalon, site and history of, Josh. x. 12; xix. 42. 2 Chr. xi. 10; but Ajalon, Josh. xxi. 24. Judg. i. 35. 1 Sam. xiv. 31. Transferred from Dan to Benjamin, 1 Chr. viii. 13.
 Akiba, Rabbi, cited Hagg. ii. 7.
 Akrabim (or Maaleh-acrabim, Josh. xv. 3), ascent of, Num. xxxiv. 4. Judg. i. 36.
 Alamo, explained, 1 Chr. xv. 20. Ps. xlvii. p. 71; cxlviii. 12.
 Aldine edition of Septuagint, 2 Kings xiii. 1.
 Aldovandus cited, Jer. xvii. 11.
 Alexander the Great, the he-goat of Dan. viii. 5. A mighty king, Dan. xi. 3. His real mission, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xiv. Probably knew the Divine oracles concerning him, p. xiii. Anecdotes of him, 2 Sam. xxiii. 16. Jonah iii. 7, 8. His shaking of the nations, Hagg. ii. 6. God's mere instrument, Zech. i. 20. His history and that of all conquerors summed up, 2 Kings xvi. 25. Zech. ix. 1—8. His attempt to re-establish Babylon, Job xv. 28. Isa. xiii. 20. His fortunes and sudden death, Vol. vi. Part 1, pp. xii, xiii. Dan. viii. 8. Vol. vi. Part 2, p. xx. Fate of his sons, Dan. xi. 4. His four successors, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xiii, notes 6 and 7. Dan. xi. 14. A forerunner of Christ, contrasted with Him, Zech. ix. 7, 9. Beneficial results of his victories, *re*. 7.
 Alexander VI., Pope, his dispensation to Emanuel, king of Portugal, Lev. xviii. 18.
 Alexandrian manuscript of the Septuagint, 1 Kings ix. 8. 1 Chr. i. 36. 2 Chr. iii. 4; xv. 1. Ezra vii. 11. Ps. xxvii. 7.
 Alfred, king, his pious zeal, Zech. i. 20.
 Algum or Almug tree, red sandal wood of India, 1 Kings x. 11. 2 Chr. ii. 8. How it might be said to come from Lebanon, *ib*, 1 Kings x. 22.
 All, indicating a great number, Ex. ix. 6. Lev. viii. 3. Num. xxxi. 17. Deut. i. 1.
 Allegorical interpretation of the Old Testament, its use and abuse, Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. viii, ix. Spiritual and typical of Christ and His Church, vindicated from the practice of the writers of the New Testament in their special expositions, and of the Christian Fathers, Vol. iii. pp. xxii—xxv. Yet not so as to undermine historical truth, or to establish doctrines not otherwise revealed, p. xxii. If nothing were to be seen beyond the letter in Jewish history and ritual, rationalism would be quite rational in disparaging it. Philology without theology a cenotaph, p. xxv. See *Type*.
 Allen, R., cited, Gen. xlii. 37. Deut. xxviii. 1. Ezra vii. 8. Esther ix. 26. Job xli. 6.
 Alliteration, or play on words exemplified, Gen. ix. 27; xi. 3. xv. 2; xvii. 17; xx. 16; xlviii. 22; xlix. 19. Ex. xxxii. 18. Lev. xix. 4. Josh. vii. 24. Judg. vii. 14; x. 4; xv. 16. Ruth i. 20. 2 Sam. xxvii. 29. 1 Kings x. 1; xi. 26. Job xxii. 24. Ps. xlii. 6; xevi. 12; xevii. 7; xxiii. 6, 7. Prov. xviii. 24; xxiv. 10. 22. Eccles. i. 14; vii. 1. Cant. i. 3. 10. 14; vii. 13. Isa. v. 7; xv. 9; xix. 18; xxi. 11; xxviii. 1; xxx. 7; xxxii. 5, 7; lxi. 3; lxxv. 12. Jer. x. 11; xlvii. 17. xlviii. 2, 7. 43; xlix. 3; li. 2. Ezek. vii. 11; xvi. 16; xxiii. 42; xxv. 16; xxx. 15; xxxv. 6; xliii. 15. Hos. iv. 15; v. 1. Amos iv. 3; v. 5; viii. 2. Mic. i. 10—12. 14; ii. 4; v. 1. Zeph. ii. 3, 4, 5.

- Allon, Josh. xix. 33.
- Almighty (Heb. *Shaddai*), why God is so called, Gen. xvii. 1. Ex. vi. 2, 3. Used four times by the prophets, and why, Joel i. 15.
- Almon, Josh. xxi. 18.
- Almon-diblathaim, meaning of, Num. xxxiii. 46.
- Almond, flower white, Eccles. xii. 5. The tree, of what symbolical, Jer. i. 11, 12.
- Alms-giving, the grace of, Hag. ii. 8. Yet not to be regarded as meritorious before God, Dan. iv. 27.
- Alphabetical arrangement of certain poems, its use mainly didactic, Vol. iv. Part 2, pp. 12, 186; Part 3, p. 70. Vol. v. Part 2, pp. xv. 138. Irregularities noted. Vol. iv. Part 2, pp. 34, 47, 221. Lam. v. pp. 149, 150.
- Altar, first built by Noah, Gen. viii. 20. Then by Abraham, Gen. xii. 7; xiii. 4. Why to be of earth only, Ex. xx. 24, 25; xxvii. 8; with no steps, Ex. xx. 26. (1) The brazen altar of burnt offerings set in the open court (Joel ii. 17); its dimensions Ex. xxvii. 1; portable, v. 8. Typical of Christian mysteries, *ibid.* Plated by brass censers of Korah's company, Num. xvi. 38. Solomon's brazen altar, 1 Kings viii. 64. 2 Chr. iv. 1. Displaced by the idolatrous Altar, 2 Kings xvi. 10—15. Used by him to "inquire" by, v. 15. Set again "upon his bases," Ezra iii. 3. (2) The golden altar of incense more precious, Ex. xxx. 1. Ezek. viii. 11. Its true place, Ex. xxx. 6. Emblem of continual prayer, v. 7. Lev. iv. 7. 1 Kings vi. 20. Referred to the Holy of Holies, though itself without the veil, *ibid.* Incense used in the wilderness when sacrifice had ceased, Num. xvi. *init.*
- Al-taschith explained, Ps. lvii. p. 86; lix. 11; lxxv. p. 118. The four Psalms with this title refer to Christ through David, Ps. lvii. p. 86.
- Amalek, location and history of, Gen. xxxvi. 12. Ex. xvii. 8, 14. Judg. vi. 33. Bitter enemies of the Jews, Num. xxiv. 7. Scripture type of Satan, Esther iii. 1, 2. How called "first of the nations," Num. xxiv. 20. To be remembered by Israel as a warning, Deut. xxv. 17, 19. Remembered by God, 1 Sam. xv. 2. Mount of Judg. xii. 13; in Seir, 1 Chr. iv. 43.
- Amariah, 2 Chr. xix. 11.
- Amasa or Amasai, account of, 1 Chr. xii. 18.
- Amaziah (i.), king of Judah, his faults, 2 Chr. xxv. 2, 12, and superstition, v. 14. His victory over Edom, 2 Kings xiv. 7. His pride brings defeat from Joash, v. 13, 15, 16. (2) The idolatrous priest of Bethel, Amos vii. 10.
- Amber (*electrum*), a compound of gold and silver, or χαλκολί-*Baros*, bright brass, Ezek. i. 4.
- Ambrose, S., his rebuke of Theodosius, Ezek. iii. 17. Cited, Vol. i. Part 1, *Introd.* p. xxix. xxxiv. Gen. iv. 3, 4; xiv. 14; xvi. 1, 2; xvii. 10, 11, 17; xviii. 2; xxii. 8; xxiv. 2, 3, 16, 33, 36, 51, 60; xxvii. 15, 17; xxviii. 12, 21, 22; xxxii. 13, 24; xxxv. 3, 14, 19, 28; xxxvii. 9, 10, 20, 31; xxxviii. 14, 28; xxxix. 1, 8, 12; xli. 45; xlii. 4; xliii. 25, 31; xlv. 3, 26; xlv. 4, 5, 28; xlix. 1. Ex. iii. 5; xliii. 22; xxiv. 14; xxv. 9; xxxii. 20, 27. Vol. i. Part 2, p. 37. Lev. xiii. 58; Num. xvii. 8; xxi. 5. Deut. viii. 4; xxii. 5; xxviii. 23. Josh. x. 12, 13. Judg. iv. 23. Vol. ii. Part 2, p. 110; iii. p. 114. Judg. xi. 40; xiv. 2, 9; xv. 3, 16; xvi. 1, 4, 13, 22; p. 160, *note* 8. Ruth iv. 8. 1 Sam. xvii. 16; xxv. 42; xxvii. 3; xxviii. 11, 12. 2 Sam. vi. 14, 16. Vol. ii. Part 2, p. 94. 2 Sam. xii. 13; xiv. 24; xvi. 10, 11; xlviii. 16; xxiv. 15. 1 Kings iii. 16; xxi. 10, 27. Job i. 12; ii. 9; iii. 1, 8; xv. 19; xxviii. 28; xl. 15. Vol. iv. Part 2, p. vi, *note* 2; p. vii, *note* 2; p. ix, *note* 11; p. xv, *note* 6. Ps. i. p. 2; xxiii. p. 32; xxxiii. 6; xxxiv. 6; xxxv. 10; xxxvi. &c., p. 51; xxxviii. p. 56; xl. 12; xli. p. 61; xlii. p. 63; xlv. p. 66; xlv. 5; lxxii. 6; xevi. p. 152; (and his editor 1836), exlviii. 12. Prov. v. 15, 19; vi. 3; vii. 13, 26; viii. 22; ix. 2, 17. Eccles. iv. 10, 11. Cant. i. 2, 5, 10; ii. 15. Isa. lix. 6; lx. 1, 8; lxi. 1; lxx. 20. Jer. i. 5, 14; xvii. 11; xxxviii. 13. Ezek. iii. 17; xxviii. p. 221; xxxvii. 12. *Retrospect*, p. 280, *note* 4. Hab. iii. 2. Zech. iii. 3. Mal. iv. 5.
- Amen, its varied use in different parts of Scripture, Deut. xxvii. 16. Neh. viii. 6. Isa. lxx. 16.
- Amnianus Marcellinus, cited Gen. xvi. 12. Esther i. 8. Isa. xix. 2—4. Dan. viii. 3.
- Ammi-nadib, of a willing people, Cant. vi. 12.
- Ammonites, their origin and history, Gen. xix. 38. Deprived of their land by the Amorite, not by Israel, Judg. xi. 13, 15. Enemies of the Jews, Neh. ii. 10. Jer. xl. 14; xli. 10. Yet some called to God's service under the Law, 1 Chr. xi. 39. Their savage cruelty punished, 2 Sam. xii. 31. Though shut out from the congregation might become proselytes and intermarry with Jews, Neh. xiii. 1. Prophecies against them and their fulfillment, Jer. xlix. p. 116. Ezek. xxv. 2. As a type of the Church's enemies to be utterly destroyed, Ezek. xxi. 32. Dan. xi. 41. The name disappears, Ezek. xxv. 10.
- Amon, his name probably not connected with the god Ammon, 2 Kings xxi. 19. His dishonoured burial, v. 26.
- Amorite, the, Gen. x. 16. Judg. i. 34. A general name for Canaanite, 2 Sam. xxi. 2. His stature, Amos ii. 9.
- Amos disintegrates the view of Divine justice afforded generally by Joel (whom he quotes or imitates, Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. 29, 39. Amos i. 2, 3; ii. 13; iii. 1), and exhibits its visitation on several typical nations, Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. xiii. 39. Amos i. 3. God, as Supreme, takes cognizance of heathen, Amos ii. 1, but especially of His own people, v. 4. Special chastisement foretold on all forms of corrupt religion and evil living. Gentiles, themselves evangelized by faithful Jews, will evangelize the Jewish nation, p. xiii. Continues the strain of Hosea, p. 50. His significant name, p. 39. Amos i. 3; v. 1. Station and country, Amos i. 1. Love of pastoral imagery: chiefly addresses the ten tribes (Amos iii. 12), his date as connected with the earthquake, *ibid.* His eight burdens, v. 3, expanded by later prophets, *ibid.* When fulfilled, v. 6. His five parables, Amos iii. 3—6. His dirge, Amos v. 1. His five visions analyzed, Amos vii. p. 50. In the last sees the Lord Himself, Amos ix. 1.
- Amram, father of Moses, shown to be the son of Kohath, Num. iii. 27, 28.
- Anab, site of, Josh. xi. 21; xv. 50.
- Anaharath, Josh. xix. 19.
- Anak, or Anakim, Num. xiii. 22. Josh. xiv. 15. Read by some Jer. xlvii. 5.
- Ananim, Gen. x. 13.
- Anani, Jewish fancy respecting him, 1 Chr. iii. 24. Why a Rabbinical title of Messiah, Dan. vii. 13.
- Anathoth (the poor), Josh. xxi. 18. 1 Chr. vii. 8. Isa. x. 30. Jer. i. 1. A priestly city, 1 Kings ii. 26.
- Andrews, Bp., cited Ex. xii. 15; xxviii. 17; xxxiv. 6. Lev. iii. 1; vi. 13; xiv. 19. Num. v. 19; vi. 23; ix. 17; x. 2, 35, 36; xi. 29; xiv. 3, 40; xvii. 10; xxx. 2. Deut. v. 28; xvii. 9; xx. 2; xxiii. 9; xxvii. 15, 16; xxix. 19; xxxiii. 17. Josh. vii. 4. Judg. ix. 4; xvi. 25; xix. 30. Ruth ii. 20. 1 Sam. x. 6; xiii. 9; xiv. 19; xxiv. 6; xxvi. 8. 1 Kings i. 7; iii. 12; viii. 37; xix. 11, 12. 2 Kings i. 3. 1 Chr. xi. 38; xxiii. 2, 32. Ezra i. 1. Neh. viii. 10. Esther ii. 23; vi. 2; ix. 26. Job i. 5, 6; xv. 15; xvi. 23, 25; xxiii. 24. Ps. xvi. 9; lxxxv. 10; exviii. 22, 24; exxvi. 1, 2. Prov. viii. 15; xxiv. 21. Cant. ii. 14. Isa. vii. 14; ix. 6; xxxvii. 3; lxiii. p. 181; v. 1. Jer. xliii. 6. Ezek. xxxiii. 30. Hos. xiii. 9, 14. Joel ii. 12. Mic. v. 2. Hag. ii. 7. Zech. xii. 10. Mal. i. 11.
- Angel of the Lord, in the Old Testament identified with God the Word, Gen. xvi. 7. God the Father never said to be sent, Gen. *ibid.*; xviii. 2. The subject examined, Ex. xxiii. 20. Alluded to, Gen. xxii. 11, 16; xxviii. 12; xxxi. 11; xxxii. 24; xlviii. 16. Ex. iii. 2, 4; xiv. 19; xxxiii. 2, 14. Num. xx. 16. Judg. ii. 1; vi. 11, 23; xiii. 3, 19, 22. 2 Kings i. 3. Eccles. v. 6. Mic. v. 5. Nah. p. 87. Zech. p. 120; ch. i. 8; ii. 8. The Angel Interpreter and Mediator who hath found a ransom, Job xxxiii. 23, 24. The Angel of His presence, Isa. lxiii. 9. "That certain One," Dan. viii. 13, 15. "One man," Ezek. ix. 2. Dan. x. 5, 6; xi. 1.
- Angels, the, as subjects of God, present themselves to worship Him, Job i. 6. Good spirits, not divine, first named, Job iv. 15. Existed before the earth in its present form, Job xxxviii. 7. Called "men," Ezek. ix. 1, and "saints," Job v. 1; xv. 15. Sin of worshipping them, Job v. 2, 8. Present when the Law was given, Deut. xxxiii. 2. Attendant on the throne of Judgment, Dan. vii. 10. Zech. xiv. 5. Bring both mercy and judgments, Ps. xxxiv. 7. Evil angels, Ps. lxxviii. 49. Angels of kingdoms evil, Dan. x. 13, 20. Ministry of angels clearly spoken of in the later books of the Old Testament, Ps. civ. 4. Much about them in Zech. i.—viii., not much in his later chapters, Zech. p. 136. Spiritual conflict between God and bad angels, Job iv. 15.
- Angelomus, cited 1 Sam. ii. 1, 3, 7, 8; xvi. 12; xvii. 55. 2 Sam. v. 4, 6, 24; vi. 21. Vol. ii. Part 2, p. 94. 2 Sam. xxxiii. 3, 4, 5, 16; xxiv. 24. 1 Kings v. 1; vii. 25; xi. p. 45; xxi. p. 80. 2 Kings ii. 9, 20—22, 23; iv. 41; xiii. 17, 18, 21.
- Angelophany of book of Daniel, how very appropriate to these times, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xix.
- Anim, Josh. xv. 50.
- Animals subjected to man, Gen. i. 26. Vol. i. Part 2, p. 32. The grant renewed, and given to man for food, Gen. ix. 2, 3. Men sent to them to learn wisdom, Job xxxv. 33. God's care for them, Jonah iv. 11. Mysteriously suffer for man's sin, Num. xxii. 23. Hos. iv. 3. Joel i. 18. Some heathens conscious of the fact, Jonah iii. 7, 8.
- Anointing, a sign of joy, Dan. x. 3; omitted by mourners, Amos vi. 6. A token of divine appointment, 1 Sam. x. 1. Successive unctions of David typical, 1 Sam. xvi. 3. 2 Sam. v. 3. That of Christ at His Incarnation and Baptism, Isa. lxi. 1.

3. Zech. iv. 11—14. Perhaps used in a spiritual sense as early as 1 Kings xix. 16. 2 Kings viii. 7. Kingly unction, Eccles. vii. 1; x. 1. Even for Zedekiah, Lam. iv. 20. The Bridegroom anointed, Cant. i. 3. Cyrus God's anointed, Jer. i. 44. "Because of the anointing" explained, Isa. x. 27. "Anointed," i. e. principal, Mic. v. 5.
- Anselm, Archbp., cited Cant. i. 6.
- Answering the thoughts, when no word has been spoken, Cant. ii. 10.
- Ant (Heb. *nemalah*), popular belief respecting its habits, Prov. vi. 6; xxx. 25.
- Anti-Colenso, characterized and cited, Num. xxxi. 2.
- Antichrist, the openly infidel king of whom Antiochus Epiphanes was but a type, Dan. xi. 36—45. To be explained analogically from history, rr. 40, 41, 43, 44; xii. 7, 11, 12. Identified with him of 1 John, Dan. xi. 37. Characterized, rr. 37, 38, 39. His contest with the Pope or spiritual Antichrist, rr. 40, 43. His overthrow, Dan. xii. 1.
- Antichristianism, its varied forms of opposition to the Gospel, from passive to aggressive, prefigured in the wars of Canaan, Vol. ii. Part 1, pp. 38, 39. Josh. xi. 4. Two stages respectively typified by the waters of Merom and of Megiddo, Judg. v. 19. Its several forms discriminated, Vol. v. Part 1, p. 38. Three phases, Vol. vi. Part 2, p. xiii. That on the eve of the Second Advent, Cant. iii. 1, 3. Mic. v. 6. In the latter days, Ps. lxxviii. 14. Vol. v. Part 2, p. 156. Vol. vi. Part 1, p. ix. Typified by Assyria, Vol. v. Part 1, pp. xiv, xv. Ezek. xxxii. 22. By Egypt, Ezek. xxxii. 2. That of Antiochus, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xvi. Dan. viii. 1, 26; p. 48; ch. xi. 30. That of last times, Ezek. xxxviii. pp. 246, 247 (Gog). Joel i. 9; iii. 2, 14. Mic. iv. 12, 13. Nah. iii. 17. Zech. xii. 2, 4, 9; xiv. 2, 3. Solemnly denounced by the loving Evangelist, Isa. lxvii. 24. Jeremiah a champion against it, Vol. v. Part 2, p. vi. It despises God and defies itself, Hab. i. 11. Zeph. ii. 15. Shall be broken without hand, Dan. viii. 25. May read in prophecy its own doom, if it will, Dan. viii. 1.
- Antigonus slain, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xiii, note 6.
- Antinomian heresy, a strong protest against it, Ps. xxvi. p. 36.
- Antiochus Epiphanes an instrument of God, Dan. viii. 24. A vile person, Dan. xi. 21. Type of infidel persecutor, Dan. p. 37; of Antichrist, Zech. xii. 2. His career, Vol. vi. Part 1, pp. xvi, xxi. Dan. viii. 9, 17, 23, 25; xi. 21—32. Not described, Dan. xi. 36—45. Not the "little horn" of Dan. vii. 8, but of Dan. viii. 9; xi. 23. His tyranny lasted 3½ years, Dan. vii. 25. His impiety, Dan. xii. 11. Full chronology of his reign, Dan. p. 38. His craft and flatteries, Dan. xi. 24. His miserable end, Zech. xii. 3. May have read of his own doom, Dan. viii. 1.
- Antiphons, their use in interpreting the Psalms, Vol. iv. Part 2, p. xiv, note 2. Exemplified, Ps. i. p. 2. Ps. ii. p. 2. Ps. iii. 5. Grounded on ancient expositions, *ib.* Paschal antiphon cited, Dan. iii. 25.
- Antiquity of man prior to the Mosaic period insufficiently proved from alleged remains of his bodily frame, Gen. i. 27.
- Antonine's Itinerary, cited, Jer. xlv. 1.
- Ape, the golden, of German Jews, Lev. xxvi. 44. Apes with a Sanscrit name brought to Solomon, 1 Kings x. 22.
- Aphek (i. e. fastness), in Judah, site of, Josh. xii. 18. That near Jezreel, 1 Sam. xxix. 1. 1 Kings xx. 26. 2 Kings xiii. 17. That in Syria, Josh. xiii. 4; in Asher, Josh. xix. 30.
- Apocalypse, the, a sequel to, and completion of, Daniel's prophecies, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xvi. Dan. v. 4; vii. 2, 7, 8, 10, 11, 14. p. 48. Not arranged in chronological order of events, p. xviii. Follows Daniel's imagery, Dan. x. 5, 6, 16; xi. 41, 42; xii. 1, 5—7, and Joel's, Joel i. 4; ii. 4; iii. 13, 14. So Obad. vv. 12, 21. Mal. iv. 2. Follows Zechariah's imagery, Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. xiv, xxi, note 4. Zech. i. 8; iv. 11—14; ix. 13; x. 3; xiv. 2, 8, 11. Best commentary on Zechariah, Zech. iv. 10.
- Apocrypha, its canonical reception by Church of Rome hinders the conversion of the Jews, Mic. vii. 8. More edifying Church lessons from it suggested for the new Lctionary, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xvii, note 8. The first book of Maccabees especially interesting in these latter days, Dan. xi. 32.
- Apollinarius, cited, Dan. ii. 31.
- Aponius, cited, Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 124, note 4. Cant. viii. 2, 8.
- Apopsiopsis, examples of, 1 Sam. xx. 42. Ps. cxliii. 9. Isa. lxvi. 18. Awful silence of, Ps. xxvii. 13.
- Applan, cited, Job xxxix. 18. Dan. viii. 9; xi. 5, 6, 7, 10, 18, 20; xi. 30.
- Apple (generically including lemon and citron), described Cant. ii. 3, 5; viii. 5. Apple of the eye, tenderness of the metaphor, Ps. xvii. 8. Prov. vii. 2, 9. Lam. ii. 18. Zech. ii. 8.
- Aquila, cited, Isa. xxviii. 11. Dan. viii. 13. Hab. iii. 2.
- Aquinas, Thomas, cited, Job xix. 26; xxxii. p. 71; xl. 14; xli. 1.
- Ps. lxxix. 27. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 124, note 4. Cant. ii. 15; v. 12; viii. 9. Isa. xxix. 24; xxx. 33. Jer. iv. 2. xxxi. 22. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 278, note 7. Hos. i. 2. Zech. xiii. 6.
- Ar, its meaning and location, Num. xvi. 15. Isa. xv. 1. Arabah, 2 Sam. xxiii. 31.
- Arabian wandering clans, Neh. ii. 19. Enumerated, Isa. xxi. 13. Robbers, Jer. iii. 2.
- Arabic version of the Old Testament, its titles to certain Psalms, Ps. xli. p. 71. Also to portions of the prophecies, Isa. xviii. p. 51; xxv, xxvi. p. 70; xlii. p. 123; lii. 13; lx. 1. Lam. p. 138; v. p. 149. Ezek. xxxvii. 16. Dan. iii. 23.
- Arad, its probable position, Num. xxi. 1. Josh. xii. 14. Judg. i. 16. Canaanitish sally made there, Num. xxi. 2. Cp. Num. xxxiii. 40.
- Aram (see *Padan*), its meaning and varied use, Gen. x. 15, 22. Judg. iii. 8.
- Aramaic or Syriac (see *Hebrew*), by what nations spoken, 2 Kings xviii. 26. The written character, Ezra iv. 7. Ram connected with Aram, Job xxxii. 2.
- Ararat, a mountainous region in Armenia, Gen. viii. 4. 2 Kings xix. 37 (Heb.). Jer. li. 27.
- Araunah (*Ornan*, 1 Chr. xxi. 18), his position, 2 Sam. xxiv. 16. His zeal typical of call of Gentiles, v. 23. 1 Chr. xxi. 18. Terms of his purchase coincide in both histories, 2 Sam. xxiv. 24.
- Arbela, battle of, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xii. Dan. viii. 8; x. 4.
- Archer, Chastell, whose arrows are the ministers of His Gospel, Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. xxi, 121. Hab. iii. 9. Zech. ix. 13.
- Archite, the, Josh. xvi. 2. 2 Sam. xv. 32.
- Arcturus (Heb. *Ash*), rather the Great Bear, Job ix. 9; xxxviii. 32.
- Argob (region of Hauran or Trachonitis), described, Deut. iii. 4. 1 Kings iv. 13.
- Arias Montanus, cited, Ezek. xiii. 18. Nah. i. 14. Zech. xii. 2.
- Ariel, Jerusalem, why so called, Isa. xxix. 1. Jer. xii. 8. Ezek. xliiii. 15.
- Aringhi, cited, Dan. vi. 17.
- Arioch, explained, Gen. xiv. 1. Dan. ii. 14.
- Aristides, anecdote of, Eccles. iv. 4.
- Aristophanes, cited, Job xx'v. 16. Prov. xxii. 6.
- Aristotle, cited, 1 Kings vi. 16. Esther i. 14; ii. 21. Job xl. 15. Prov. vi. 6. Jer. li. 31. Dan. vii. 5. Jonah iii. 6, 7.
- Arithmetic, divine, or numbers having a mystical meaning, Gen. xiv. 14. Three hundred, Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 114. See *Three, Four, Four-square, Five, Six, Seven, Eight, Ten, Twelve, Forty, Forty-two, Seventy, Hundred*. The number 390 rather symbolical than historical, Ezek. iv. 5. Three, four, twelve, their products and powers, Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 275—8. So 144,000 and 153 explained, *ib.* Six and sixty, Dan. iii. 1. The 1290 days and 1335 days to be explained by historical analogy, Dan. xii. 11, 12.
- Arius, his error confuted, Deut. vi. 4; xiii. p. 234. Ps. lxxxii. 9. Cant. ii. 14; v. p. 145. With Eunomius and Apollinarius denies a reasonable soul in Christ, Ps. xvi. 9. Accepts the spiritual teaching of the book of Proverbs, Vol. iv. Part 3, p. xiii. While arguing falsely from the Septuagint rendering, Prov. viii. 22. His party fights against the Nestorians, Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 115. Appeals to the civil power, Amos vii. 13.
- Ark, Noah's, its form, dimensions, and windows. Contained only generic primitive types of living things, which might be few. A type of Christ's Church in its contents, design, and fortunes, Gen. vi. 14, 15. Prov. xxx. 19. Its miraculous surroundings a trial of our faith, Gen. vii. 8, 9.
- Ark, in the Tabernacle: "the glory," Ps. lxxviii. 61, the true, Jer. iii. 16. Its dimensions and contents, Ex. xxv. 10. Contained the manna, or living bread, and the budding rod of an everlasting priesthood, Num. xvii. 10. These not in the Ark in Solomon's Temple, 1 Kings viii. 9. Called God's footstool, 1 Chr. xxviii. 2. Lam. ii. 1. Typifies Christ's body, the Church, Ex. xxv. 10. 2 Chr. i. 4. Had no resting place, Ex. xxv. 15, till Solomon gave it rest after 500 years of wandering, 1 Kings viii. 2, 6. The Ark not remade by him, Ex. xxv. 16. 1 Chr. xxviii. 18. 2 Chr. i. 4. Its setting out a Whitsuntide, being typical of the march of the Divine Glory through the world, Num. x. 35, 36. Accounts of its place in the host consistent, *ib.* On certain solemn occasions borne by priests, not by simple Levites, Josh. iii. 3. 1 Kings viii. 3. 2 Chr. v. 4. David's error in placing it in a cart, 2 Sam. vi. 3. Why not to be approached, Josh. iii. 4. 1 Sam. vi. 19. 2 Sam. vi. 6. Abides at Shiloh, Josh. xviii. 1. Judg. xx. 27. Its bare presence unavailing without holiness, 1 Sam. iv. 3, 4. Why permitted to be taken by Philistines, v. 11. With Saul, 1 Sam. xiv. 18. Mistakes and hindrances

- in bringing it to its place typical, 2 Sam. vi. p. 82. 1 Chr. xiii. 3. Still in existence, 2 Chr. xxxv. 3. No ark in Ezekiel's Temple, Jer. iii. 16.
- Arkite, the, Gen. x. 17.
- Armageddon, derivation of, Mic. v. 1.
- ¹Apvlon, why used rather than *ἁγρός* in the Apocalypse, Jer. xxviii. p. 64.
- Arnobius, cited, Isa. ii. 4; lvii. 6. Jer. viii. 7.
- Arnon river, Num. xxi. 13, 24.
- Arcoer, two towns so called, Num. xxxii. 34. Isa. xvii. 2. Jer. xlviii. 19. That by Rabbah, Josh. xiii. 25. 2 Sam. xxiv. 5. Perhaps a third, 1 Sam. xxx. 28. Cp. Jer. xlviii. 6.
- Arpad, 2 Kings xviii. 34. Isa. x. 9. Jer. xlix. 23.
- Arphaxad, located, Gen. x. 22.
- Arrian, cited, Isa. xiii. 20; xxi. 1; xxiii. 16. Ezek. xxvi. p. 215; xxvii. 27. Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xii, notes 3 and 6; p. xiii, notes 1 and 15; p. xiv. Dan. viii. 2. 7. Zech. ix. 1.
- Art, Christian influenced by interpretation of ancient versions, Ex. xxxiv. 29. Hab. iii. 2.
- Artaxerxes, a royal title (1) of Pseudo Smerdis, Ezra iv. 7. (2) Of Longimanus: why he was so friendly to the Jews, Vol. iii. pp. 300. 315. Isa. xiv. 1. Adorned the Temple, Ezra vi. 14. How called King of Babylon, Neh. xiii. 6. His history, Ezra vii. 1. His edict (B.C. 458), v. 8. Influenced by Xerxes' misfortunes and (through Ezra) by Daniel's prophecies, v. 23. 25. Sends Nehemiah to Jerusalem (B.C. 445), Neh. i. 1; ii. 6. His affairs blest, v. 8. Reigned forty prosperous years, Vol. iii. p. 365. Length of his reign discussed, Dan. ix. p. 47. (3) Of Mucmon, Ezra vii. 12.
- Articles, the XXXIX, cited, Vol. iii. p. 295, note 1. Jer. iv. 2; vii. 31.
- Artillery, the term explained, 1 Sam. xx. 40.
- Arvadite, the, Gen. x. 18. Ezek. xxvii. 8.
- Aryan class of languages, Dan. i. 4, 5, 11; ii. 6; iii. 2. 24.
- Asa, king of Judah, his obedience procures his reign, 1 Kings xv. 10. Saw eight kings of Israel, *ib.* His holy courage, v. 13. Did not neglect human means while trusting on God, 2 Chr. xiv. 6. The accounts of his reign and character in the two histories not inconsistent, 1 Kings xv. 14. The one illustrates the other, v. 15. 17. His piety procures a triumph over Egypt, 2 Chr. xiv. 9, 11. His distrust, 2 Chr. xvi. 7. His relapse, v. 9, 10. The healer did not remember the True Healer, 1 Kings xv. 23. 2 Chr. xvi. 12. His splendid burial, v. 14.
- Asaph, (1) the Gershonite, brother in song to Heman and Ethan, 1 Chr. vi. 39. 44. Ps. l. p. 77. His twelve Psalms historical and prophetic, chiefly using "Elohim" for God's name, *ib.* Ps. lxxiii. p. 114. Characterized by sudden transitions, Ps. lxxxi. 6; p. 133. A seer, 1 Chr. xxv. 1. A prophet, Ps. lxxviii. 2. His descendants alone of the singers returned from Babylon, Ezra ii. 41. Neh. xii. 46. His name extended to the singers of his family, Ps. lxxiv. p. 116; lxxviii. p. 121; lxxxi. p. 131. (2) The Kohathite, 1 Chr. xxvi. 1.
- Ascend to the house of the Lord, suggestive of Christ's Ascension, 1 Kings x. 5. Cp. 2 Chr. ix. 4.
- Ashdod, described, Josh. xi. 22; xv. 47. Amos i. 8. Zech. ix. 6. Its speech, Neh. xiii. 24. Called also *Azotus*, 1 Sam. v. 5.
- Asher, (1) (i.e. "the blessed,") son of Jacob, follows Gad, as the crown does the cross, Gen. xlix. 20. His proper place in the list of the patriarchs, Num. i. 4. Possessed a fruitful land and mines, Deut. xxxiii. 24, 25. Boundaries of his tribe, Josh. xix. 24. His incorporation in Canaan represents the spiritual degeneracy of the Church after primitive times, Judg. i. 32. (2) A town in Manasseh, Josh. xvii. 7.
- Asheroth, plural of *Asherim* (see *Groves*), Judg. iii. 7.
- Ashima, identified, 2 Kings xvii. 30.
- Ashkenaz, delineated, Gen. x. 3: called *Ashchenaz*, Jer. li. 27.
- Ashmah, Josh. xv. 33.
- Asheroth-Karnaim, its position and meaning of the name, Gen. xiv. 5.
- Ashtoreth, the Canaanitish moon-goddess, meaning of her name, Deut. vii. 13. *Ashlaroth* (pl.), her various forms, Judg. ii. 13.
- Ashurites, who are meant, 2 Sam. ii. 9.
- Ass, wild, of desert, Gen. xvi. 12. Ps. civ. 11. Hos. viii. 9. Egyptian, Gen. xli. 26. Arabian, Job i. 3. His two names, Job xxxix. 5. A noble animal, Prov. xxvi. 3. Mystically expounded, Hab. iii. 2. Unclean to the Jews, Ex. xiii. 13. 2 Kings vi. 25. Thus typifying the Gentiles, Isa. xxxii. 20. Some reason assigned, Lev. xi. 9. Speaking of Balaam's ass, a plain miracle wrought for an adequate cause, guaranteed by St. Peter: its moral meaning, Num. xxii. 28. White asses, Judg. v. 10; x. 4; xii. 14. Emblem of peace as contrasted with the war-horse, also of Christ's meekness, Judg. x. 4. Wild ass's colt, the Gentiles untamed, Job xi.
12. The foal of the ass on which Christ sat symbolized, Ps. xxxii. 9. Cant. iii. 4. Isa. xxxii. 20. Zech. ix. 9. Followed by its mother the Hebrew Church, Zech. ix. 9.
- Asshur (or *Assurich*, Ezek. xxvii. 23), or *Assyria*, its extent, Gen. x. 22. Eastern branch of Shem's family, Num. xxiv. 24. Chaldees sprung from them, Isa. xxxiii. 13. Aramaic the popular language (Isa. xxxiii. 19, an Aryan dialect being used at court, 2 Kings xviii. 26), Dan. ii. 4. How afflicted by Chittim, Num. xxiv. 24. Its burden, Isa. xvii. 12. Assur confederate against Jehoshaphat, Ps. lxxxiii. 8. This empire first in contact with Israel, 2 Kings xv. 19. 2 Chr. xxviii. 16; xxx. 6. God's mere instrument in punishing His people, 1 Chr. v. 20. Isa. x. 5, 7; xvii. 12. Ezek. xxxiii. 9. Hos. v. 14. Nah. i. 4. A constant type of infidel Antichristianism, Vol. v. Part 1, pp. xiv, xv. Isa. xi. 11. Vol. vi. Part 2, p. xiv. Obad. p. 57. Mic. v. 5, 6. Nah. p. 87; iii. 4. Hab. p. 95, or even of Satan, Mic. v. 5. Its sovereigns, Pul (1 Chr. v. 26), Tiglath-pileser (2 Chr. xxviii. 20), Shalmaneser, Sargon (Isa. xx. 1), Sennacherib (2 Kings xv. 19. Nah. iii. 10). Fortunes of the empire told, 2 Kings xv. 25. Its decay after Sennacherib's impiety, 2 Kings xix. 37. Esarhaddon's reign, *ib.* 2 Chr. xxxiii. 11. Josiah's contemporary probably Sardanapalus, 2 Kings xxiii. 29. 2 Chr. xxxiii. 14. Nah. i. 10. His death, Nah. iii. 18. Assyrian and Chaldean regarded as one continuous empire, Isa. vii. 17. Includes Babylon, Isa. lii. 4. Contrasted with it, Ezek. xxxi. p. 226. See *Nineveh*.
- Assidai, of the Macebean age, Dan. viii. 9.
- Assir, a son of Jecooniah or Jehoiachin, who died young and childless, 1 Chr. iii. 17.
- Assyrian garments blue, Zeph. i. 8.
- Assyrian (including Babylonian) inscriptions and sculpture, Gen. x. 10, 11. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxi, note. 1 Kings xvi. 16. 2 Kings x. 32; xv. 19; xvii. 3, 4, 24; xviii. 9, 13, 21, 34; xix. 8, 24, 37; xx. 12; xxv. 14, 15. 2 Chr. xxviii. 16; xxxii. 1; xxxiii. 11. Ezra i. 2; iv. 5, 6, 7; vi. 12; vii. 12. Esther i. 1; iii. 12. Job xxviii. 14. Isa. x. 8, 9, 28—32; xiv. 8, 14. 21; xv. p. 45; xvi. 8; xviii. p. 51; xx. 1; xxi. 13; xxii. 6, 17, 18; xxiii. 13; xxx. 6; xxxiii. 9; xxxvi. 6; xxxvii. 24. Jer. li. 44, 53. Dan. iv. p. 15; v. 16; v. 1. 11; vii. 4. Vol. vi. Part 2, p. xxi. Nah. ii. 4. 12; iii. 18. Hab. ii. 6, 9. Zech. ix. 14. Clay cylinders, Job xxxviii. 14. The Assyrian bull, Isa. x. 13. Sir Th. Phillipps's cylinder, Jer. li. 13. Sir Harford Jones's block, Dan. iv. 30. Written in state language of Persian kings, Ezra vi. 22; vii. 12.
- Asterius, cited, Ps. xix. 6.
- Astrologers of Babylon, Isa. xiii. 10; xlvii. 10, 13. Dan. ii. 2. Their perplexity, Isa. xli. 28, 29.
- Astruc, his hypothesis on the origin of the Pentateuch (1753), Vol. i. Part 1, *Introd.* p. xi; p. 12.
- Asuppin, explained, 1 Chr. xxvi. 15; as *asuppoth*, Eccles. xii. 11.
- Asyndeton, examples of, Isa. lxiii. 11.
- Ataroth, where located, Num. xxxii. 34. Another, Josh. xvi. 7. 1 Chr. ii. 54.—*adar*, Josh. xvi. 2.
- Athaliah, inference from the meaning of her name, 2 Kings xi. 1. A true daughter of Jezebel, prefiguring those who attempted to murder the Divine Son of David, *ib.* Contrasted with Jehosheba, v. 3. Who are meant by her sons, 2 Chr. xxiv. 7.
- Athanasius, referred to, Ps. lxxviii. 31. Anecdote of, Ps. cxxxvi. p. 210. Characterized, Cant. v. p. 145. His Epistle to Marcellinus paraphrased, Vol. iv. Part 2, p. iii, note 2; pp. xiv, xv, note 6, xvi. Cited, Deut. xiii. 1. Job xli. 13. Ps. viii. 6, 7; xv. 5; xvi. 1, 5; xxi. 1; xxiii. p. 32; xxiv. 7; xl. 2; lv. 15, 23; lvii. 5, 8; lviii. p. 87; v. 1; lix. p. 88; v. 8; lx. 8; lxi. 2; lxiii. 2; lxx. p. 96; v. 2, 4, 9; lxxi. p. 97; lxxviii. p. 100; v. 1. 6, 9, 10, 13, 27, 30, 31; lxxix. 5, 22; lxxii. p. 112; v. 17; lxxvi. p. 119; lxxx. p. 127; v. 2, 17; lxxxii. p. 129; v. 16; lxxxiv. p. 136; lxxxv. 1. 8, 10; lxxxvii. p. 138; v. 3, 6; lxxxviii. p. 139; v. 18; xc. p. 145; xcii. p. 148; cix. p. 174; cv. 16, 25; cx. p. 177; v. 2; cxiv. p. 180; cxviii. 24, Vol. iv. Part 3, p. xi, note 11. Prov. viii. 22; ix. 1, 2. Eccles. i. 3. Cant. i. 2. Isa. ii. 2. xlvii. 2; xxxv. 1; xlviii. 16.
- Athbash, or alphabetical symbolism explained, Jer. xxv. 26; li. 1.
- Athenæus, cited, Esther i. 6, 7, 9; iv. 11. Dan. i. 5; iii. 5.
- Atonement, the great day of; how its law is "an everlasting statute," Vol. i, Part 2, p. 48. Its ceremonial, and its typical reference to the Death and Ascension of our Great High Priest, Lev. xvi. 2. Fifteen sacrifices and all other offices to be done this day by the high priest alone, v. 3. The two goats (see *Natures two* and *Scapegoat*) signify Christ's double work, v. 8. Why one goat put away in the wilderness, *ib.* Golden censer, its incense of prevailing prayer, v.

- 12, 13. St. Paul's comment on the day's ceremonial, v. 14. Holiest acts need a sacrifice for sin, v. 16. Christ alone our Mediator and Redeemer, v. 17. Several distinct acts needful to present a shadow of comprehensiveness of Christ's one act of mercy, v. 18. Our sins laid on Christ, as on the living goat. The crown of thorns, v. 21. Goat slain by later Jews, *ib.* Linen garments why left in Holy Place, v. 23. Yearly repetition indicates imperfection of law, *ib.* Being "a statute for ever" this day's ritual cannot be in abeyance, v. 29. Its fast, *ib.* Lev. xxiii. 27. The Good Friday of the Jewish Church, Lev. xxv. 9. This day and the Sabbath alone devoted to complete rest, Lev. xxiii. 3. Jubilee began on this day, Lev. xxv. 9.
- Augustine, S., characterized, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxiv. Though not always to be vindicated in detail, his principle of interpretation is the only true one, *ib.* Vol. vi. Part 2, p. viii. Anecdote of, from Possidius, Ps. v. p. 8. His Hymnus Abecedarius, Ps. ix. p. 12. Once an unprofitable hearer of sermons, Ezek. xxxiii. 30. Cited, Vol. i. Part 1, *Preface* pp. vii. xii. xxii. *Introd.* pp. xxviii. xxxi. xxxii. xxxviii. xlv. Gen. i. 2. 4. 26; ii. 3. 15. 17. 24; iii. 7. 20; iv. 2. 11. 15. 17; p. 37. Gen. vi. 14. 19. 21; ix. 22. 23. 27; x. 9; xv. 6; 16; xvii. 10. 11. 17; xviii. 8; xix. 8; xxi. 8. 9. 15; xxii. 1. 2. 6. 9. 12; xxv. 1; xxvii. 17. 29. 33. 44; xxviii. 1. 12. 18; xxxi. 30; xxxii. 24; xxxvii. 10; xlvii. 12; xlviii. 29, 30; xlix. 12. Ex. i. 21; iii. 22; iv. 11; vii. 17; viii. 16; ix. 8. 16; xii. 14. 37. 40; xv. 25; xvi. 8; xvii. 11; xviii. 24; xix. 11; xx. 1. 3. 5. 8—11; xxi. 13. 23, 24; xxvii. 18; xxxiii. 3. 28; xxiv. 14; xxv. 5; xxix. 9. 18; xxxii. 14. 19. 20; xl. 35. Vol. i. Part 2, *Introd.* p. iv, note 2, p. 1. Lev. vii. 38; xiii. 46; xvi. 26; xvii. 5. 11; xviii. 14; xx. 10. 15; xxi. 8; xxiii. 34. Num. xi. 4; xiii. 23; xvi. 37; xvii. 8; xviii. 18; xix. 2. 5; xx. 10, 11; xxii. 29; xxvii. 15. 18. Dent. v. 29; xii. 15; xvi. 2; xvii. 14; xxiii. 18; xxiv. 16; xxviii. 10; xxx. 14; xxxi. 9; xxxiii. 1; xxxiv. 6. Vol. ii. Part 1, *Introd.* p. x; p. xiv, notes 8 and 9. Josh. iii. 16; v. 2. Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 18. Josh. vii. 19; x. 12, 13; xxiv. 27. 30. Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 79, note 7; p. 80, note 7. Judg. i. 3; ii. 22; iii. 2; iv. 23; v. 26; p. 110. 111. 114. Judg. viii. 27; xi. 29. 31. 40; xiv. 6. 9; xvi. 3. 25; xix. 24. Ruth iii. 5. Vol. ii. Part 2, p. xiv, note 1; p. xv, note 1. 1 Sam. ii. 35; x. 5; xv. 11. 28; xvi. 1; xvii. 4. 16. 37. 40. 49. 51; xix. 24; xxi. 2. 5; xxiii. 5—8; xxviii. 11, 12. 2 Sam. vii. 12. 18. Vol. ii. Part 2, pp. 85. 94. 2 Sam. xii. 4. 11; xvi. 10, 11, 12; xviii. 33; xix. 30; xxiv. 1. 2. 17. Vol. iii. p. vii. 1 Kings iii. 2. 16; xi. p. 45; xiii. p. 56; xiv. 24; xvii. 6. 12. 20. 2 Kings ii. 9. 23. 24; iv. 29. 34; v. 10. 14. 19; vi. 6; x. 19. 30; xx. 17. 1 Chr. xxiii. 1. Vol. iii. pp. 299. 366. Esther vii. 9. Vol. iv. Part 1, p. iv, note 2. Job i. 6. 9. 21; ii. 9; iii. 1; ix. 33; xv. 26; xix. 26; xxii. 24; xxiii. 12; xxviii. 28; xxxi. p. 66; xxxii. p. 71, 72; xl. 15. 19; xli. 1; xlii. 12. Vol. iv. Part 2, pp. iii. iv; p. iv, note 1; p. v; p. xii, note 8; p. xiii, note 11; p. xvi. Ps. ii. p. 3; iii. p. 5; iii. 5; vii. p. 9; xviii. p. 22; xix. 5; xx. p. 26; xxi. p. 27. v. 13; xxii. p. 29; xxiii. p. 32; xxv. p. 35; xxvi. p. 36; xxix. 10; xxx. 5; xxxi. 22; xxxii. p. 44, *re.* 1. 3. 5. 10; xxxiii. 1. 6; xxxiv. 12—16; xxxv. 4; xxxvi. 8; 9; xl. 12; xli. p. 61. v. 4; xlv. p. 66. *re.* 22—26; xlv. p. 68, *re.* 5. 7; xlv. 4; xlviii. 2; xlix. 5. 7. 14; l. 2. 8; li. 5; lvi. 6; lviii. 4; lix. 11; lxi. 2. 6; lxii. 1; lxiii. 2. 8. 11; lxvi. p. 97; lxviii. 1. 4. 13. 27; lxix. 5. 22. 23. 25. 27; lxxii. p. 112. *re.* 6; lxxx. 16; lxxxiii. p. 131; lxxxiv. 10; lxxxv. p. 135, *re.* 1. 13; lxxxvi. p. 136. *re.* 2. 11; lxxxviii. p. 139. lxxxix. p. 141; xcvi. p. 152. *re.* 10; xcix. 8; cii. p. 158. *re.* 6. 19; cv. 28; cix. p. 174. *re.* 7; cx. p. 177. *re.* 7; cxv. 17; cxv. 7; cxviii. 1. 2. 5; cxxxvii. 9; cxliv. 9; cxlix. 6. 9; cl. 3—5. Prov. i. 11. 20; iii. 18; v. 15; vi. 6; viii. 22; ix. 1. 2. 17; xxv. 21. 22; xxviii. 23; xxx. 30; xxxi. 10—31; Eccles. i. 3; vii. 16. 29; xii. 12. 13. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 123. Cant. i. 5. 7; ii. 2. 15; iii. 11; iv. 12; vi. 9; viii. 5. Vol. v. Part 1, p. x; p. xii, note 10; p. xvii. Isa. xiv. 12; xxvi. 19; xlviii. 16; xlix. 16; l. 1; lii. 13—15; liii. 1; liv. 1; lviii. 4; lx. 1. 10; lxi. 1; lxiii. 1; lxx. 24; lxxi. p. 190. *re.* 14. 15. 17. 20. 21. 23. 24. Jer. ix. 23; x. 23; xviii. 8; xxii. 22; xxxv. 18; xlii. 10. Lam. i. 15; iv. 20. Ezek. iii. 17; iv. 12; xiv. 9. 14; xvi. 63; xxviii. p. 221; xxxiv. 2. 4. 12. 13. 14. 17. 18. 20. 23. 29. 31; xxxvi. 24; xxxvii. 12; xxxviii. p. 216. *Retrospect*, p. 286, note 12; p. 289, note 5. Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xviii, notes 6 and 7; p. xx, note 7; p. xxi, note 6. Dan. ii. 45; iii. 5; vii. 7. 25; viii. 9. 10; ix. 3. 4. Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. viii. x. Hos. i. 2. 11; iii. 4; vi. 2; xi. 1; xiii. 14; xiv. 2. Amos ix. 14, 15. Obad. 17. 20. Jonah p. 63; ch. i. 17; iv. 6. 7. Mic. vi. 6. Nah. i. 15. Hab. iii. 1. Zeph. ii. 11; iii. 7. 8. 13. Hagg. ii. 7. 8. Zech. ii. 8, 9; ix. 11; xii. 10. Mal. i. 11; iv. 5. 6.
- Aulus Gellius, cited, Prov. xxviii. 21.
- Authorized English version of Scripture, its merits, Vol. iv. Part 1, *Introd.* p. xx. Book of Job most unsatisfactory: elsewhere marginal changes might suffice, *ib.* Its Preface referred to. A link of union between Christian communions, not lightly to be set aside. Modified scheme for its revision, Obad. 12. Caution suggested, Jon. iv. 6. Its varied rendering of the same Hebrew word obscures the connexion in Prov. xiii. 11; xiv. 13; xvi. 16; xviii. 10; xix. 1; xx. 11; xxiii. 7. Jer. xxiii. p. 51. Ezek. xiv. 7. Adopts words from the Chaldee Paraphrase, Ps. xvi. 1. Its renderings approved, Ezek. xlv. 1. Dan. ix. 21. Needs correction, Judg. iv. 21. Ps. vii. 7; x. 2; cxxviii. 1. Prov. xxv. 11. 18, 19. 26. Eccles. iii. 21. Cant. v. 14. Isa. xiii. 22; xxxiv. 5. Jer. xxxiv. 4, 5; li. 58; Ezek. xiii. 18; xvi. 7; xxix. 10; xl. 7; xlv. 11. Dan. xi. 30. Hos. iv. 13. Joel. ii. 4.
- Ava, 2 Kings xvii. 24; xviii. 34.
- Aven, its probable site, Amos i. 5.
- Avenge, the term not necessarily one of passionate resentment, but applied to the Divine retribution, Esther viii. 13. The Jews wholly on the defensive, v. 11. Esther ix. 12. The time of God's vengeance began with the First Advent, Isa. lxiii. 4.
- Avenger of blood (Heb. *goel*), of Whom typical, Num. xxxv. 12. Ruth ii. 20. The same Hebrew word for *Next Kinsman* (Ruth ii. 20) and *Redeemer*, which see.
- Azal (i.e. union), its symbolical meaning, Zech. xiv. 5.
- Azariah (1), see *Uzziah*; (2) the courageous High Priest, 1 Chr. vi. 10. 2 Chr. xxvi. 17; xxxi. 10.
- Azekah, its site, Josh. x. 10. 1 Sam. xvii. 1. Jer. xxxiv. 7.
- Azmaveth, Neh. vii. 28; xii. 29.
- Azmon, site of, Num. xxxiv. 4.
- Aznoth-tabor, Josh. xix. 34.
- Azzah (see *Gaza*), might well be rendered uniformly, 1 Kings iv. 24.
- Baalim, the various titles of Baal, the Phœnician sun-god, Judg. ii. 11. 1 Kings xvi. 30—33. Religious abhorrence of the name, 2 Sam. ii. 8; iv. 4. "Remnant of Baal," Zeph. i. 4.
- Baalath, Josh. xix. 44. 1 Kings ix. 18. 2 Chr. viii. 6.
- Baalath-beer, Josh. xix. 8, or *Bealoth*, Josh. xv. 24.
- Baal-gad (called *Baal-hermon*, Judg. iii. 3), meaning and site of, Josh. xi. 17.
- Baal-hamon, its locality and symbolical meaning, Cant. viii. 11.
- Baal-hazor, 2 Sam. xiii. 23.
- Baal-hermon (not the same as *Baal-gad*), 1 Chr. v. 23.
- Baal-meon, supposed site of, Num. xxiii. 38. Ezek. xxv. 9. Called *Beth-baal-meon*, Josh. xiii. 17. Called *Beth-meon*, Jer. xlviii. 23.
- Baal-tamar, Judg. xx. 33.
- Baal-zephon, Ex. xiv. 2.
- Babel, or *Babylon*, or *Shinar*, described, Gen. x. 10; xi. 2. Sources of its history scanty, Dan. iv. p. 14. Its brick wall, Hab. ii. 13. Present aspect, Isa. xiii. 19; xlv. 1. Site of palace, Jer. li. 31. Dan. iv. 30. Its broad walls, Jer. li. 58. Once emporium of the east, Isa. xliv. 14; xlvii. 15. Basalt column of Hillah, Isa. xlv. 1. Dan. iv. 30. Subject to Assyria of old, Isa. xliii. 13. Of small account in Isaiah's age, Isa. xlii. 1. Its empire proper commences, 2 Kings xv. 25. First appears in Scripture, 2 Kings xx. 12. In the ascendant as Isaiah had foretold, 2 Kings xxv. 1. See *Ninereh*. Its later sovereigns, 2 Kings xxv. 27. 2 Chr. xxxv. 21. A mere instrument in God's hand. Isa. xxiii. 9; xxix. 5; xlii. 24. Jer. iv. 11, 12. Ezek. vii. 21; xxx. 12. Hab. i. 2. 5. 6. Alexander the Great vainly attempts to restore it, Job xv. 28. Isa. xlii. 20. A second Jericho or Sodom, Jer. l. 15. Jews after captivity loth to name the city, Ps. cxxxvii. 1. Her arts and sciences, Isa. xlvii. 10. Fondness for music, Dan. iii. 5; luxurious dress, v. 21. Babylonian scarlet, Zeph. i. 8. Her intolerance, Dan. iii. 12, and drunkenness, Hab. ii. 5. 15, 16. Type of idolatry and superstition, Vol. v. Part 1, p. xv. Isa. xl. 12. Spiritual Rome, Gen. xi. 9. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 17. Analogy to mystic Babylon, Isa. xiv. 1. 12. Dan. v. 4. 23. Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. xv. xix. Obad. p. 57. Mic. v. 6. Nah. p. 87; ch. iii. 4. Hab. p. 95; ch. ii. 18. Chosen vessels shall be delivered when Apocalyptic Babylon shall fall, Ezra i. 7. Isa. xlii. 2; xiv. 1. Babrius, his Fable, Prov. vi. 6.
- Back parts indicate humiliation, Ex. xxxiii. 23.
- Bacon, Lord, cited, Vol. i. Part 1, *Introd.* p. xxix. Gen. ii. 3. 9. 18; v. 24; vi. 14; xxviii. 20. Lev. xiii. 12, 13; xix. 19.

- 2 Sam. vi. 6. 1 Kings iii. 12; iv. 32. 2 Kings xvii. 29. Job xxvi. 7. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. xii. *note* 2. Prov. vi. 11; ix. 7; xiv. 6; xv. 1; xxv. 26; xxvii. 14; xxxi. 29. Eccles. vii. 8. 21. Isa. vii. 16. Vol. vi. Part 2, p. xi. *note* 4.
- Badgers' skins, what is meant, Ex. xxv. 5. Ezek. xvi. 10.
- Baalzebub, *Beelzebub*, *Beelzebel*, explained, 2 Kings i. 2.
- Bähr, cited, Esther ii. 21; x. 1.
- Bahurim, 2 Sam. xvi. 5; xxiii. 31.
- Bajith, Isa. xv. 2.
- Baker, Sir Samuel, cited, Job xl. 15.
- Balaam, the name derived, Num. xxii. 5. A mysterious person of ambiguous and composite character, *ib.* His sin, *vv.* 12. 14. 18. 19, and perseverance therein, *vv.* 21. 41. His wilful blindness, *v.* 23. Yet made a channel of Divine revelation, Num. xxiii. 5. Holy prayers of an unholly man engaged in an unholly act, *v.* 10. Three several attempts to do an evil work, *v.* 28. The Spirit's sovereign power exercised even through bad men, Num. xxiv. 2. 4. "His place," *v.* 25. His spite against Israel, Num. xxv. 1. A figure of Antichrist, *v.* 15. Contrasted with Moses in his life and death, Num. xxxi. 8. His prophecy contrasted with David's, 2 Sam. xxiii. 1. His history recited, Mic. vi. 5. Notion of a dialogue between him and Balak questionable, *v.* 6.
- Balm, described, Gen. xxxvii. 25; xliii. 11. Whence it came, Ezek. xxvii. 17.
- Bamoth, site of, Num. xxi. 20. Josh. xiii. 17.
- Bands (see *Sticks*), typical of religious union of all the tribes of Israel, Zech. xi. 7. Cut asunder, *v.* 14.
- Banquets, requests made at them to Eastern kings, Neh. i. 11. Esther iii. 11; v. 4.
- Baptism, figured to us by the crossing of the Red Sea, Mic. vii. 19, and by that of the Jordan by Israel, Josh. iii. 16. Ps. lxvi. 6. Delay of baptism reproved, Josh. iv. 10. The voice of the Lord on the waters, Ps. xxix. 3. Administered by lay persons, 1 Sam. xxi. 5. Augustine's argument for infant baptism, Ps. li. 5. Involves a renunciation of the Evil One, Prov. viii. 13, in the name of the Triune God, Prov. xviii. 10. Our spiritual circumcision, Nah. i. 15. Regarded by the Jews as a function of Messiah, Isa. lii. 15.
- Barak, meaning of the word, Judg. iv. 6. His hesitation of faith, not of fear, *v.* 8. "On his feet," Judg. v. 15. See *Deborah*.
- Barclay, Dr., cited, Neh. iii. 15.
- Barley bread, as homely, disdained by the rich, Judg. vii. 13. Of what typical, Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 114.
- Barnabas, an image of Levitical priesthood subordinated to Christian, Isa. lxi. 6, and purified, Mal. iii. 3. His Epistle cited, Gen. ii. 1. Ex. xxiv. 6. Lev. ix. 1. Isa. xxxiii. 16; xlv. 1. Jer. vii. 22; ix. 25. Ezek. p. 280, *note* 4. Zech. xiii. 6.
- Baronius, cited, Isa. lxvi. 17.
- Barrow, Isaac, cited, Gen. xxxv. 22. Vol. ii. Part 1, *Introd.* p. xi. *note* 2. Josh. viii. 29. Neh. viii. 10. Esther vii. 9. Ps. xix. 1; xxxix. 4; lxxviii. 56; xc. 12; cxxxix. 7. Prov. iii. 17. 27; iv. 23; x. 9. Eccles. iii. 17; v. 18. Isa. xxx. 33.
- Barter, spiritual, Ps. cvi. 20.
- Baruch, friend and secretary of Jeremiah, of honourable family, foregoes worldly hopes for the Lord's sake, Vol. v. Part 2, pp. xi, xii. Jer. xxxii. 12; xxxvi. pp. 88, 89; *v.* 4; xliii. 3; xlv. 1. 3. 5. As Tertius to St. Paul, Jer. xxxvi. 18. Brother of Seraiah, Jer. li. 59. Apocryphal book attributed to him, Jer. x. 5.
- Barzillai, the Simeon of the Old Testament, 2 Sam. xix. 31. His descendants noted, Ezra ii. 61.
- Bashan, or *Batanæa*, kingdom of Og, described, Num. xxi. 33. Deut. iii. 1. 4. 1 Chr. v. 16. Ps. lxxviii. 15. 22. Isa. xxxiii. 9. Jer. xxii. 20; l. 19. Micah vii. 14. Nah. i. 4. Zech. xi. 1. 2. Its fat bulls symbolical, Ps. xxii. 12. Its cows, Amos iv. 1. Less worthy of regard than lowly Sion, Ps. lxxviii. 15.
- Basil, S., cited, Gen. i. 2; ii. 9; xvii. 2; xxxvii. 20; Lev. xviii. 18. 1 Sam. ii. 8. Neh. iii. 15. Job xl. 16; xlii. 13. Vol. iv. Part 2, p. xv. Ps. xv. 5; xxiii. p. 32; xxix. 3. 5. 9. xxxiv. p. 47; xlv. 1. 2. 5. 9. 10. 16. 17; xlv. 4; lix. 11; lxxxix. p. 141; cvii. 20. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. x. *note* 8; p. xi. Prov. vii. 14. 26; viii. 22. Isa. iv. 5; vii. 12. 15; viii. 3. 6; xlviii. 16. Ezek. iv. p. 165. Hos. i. 2.
- Basnage, cited, Deut. xiii. 1.
- Bastard, why excluded from the congregation through the fault of others, Deut. xxiii. 2. May mean only "a stranger." Its symbolical sense in Zech. ix. 6. A future life adjusts all inequalities, which also have a spiritual meaning, Deut. xxiii. 2.
- Baumgarten, cited, Vol. iii. p. 360, *notes* 9 and 11; p. 366. Esther i. 1. 22; ii. 1. 6; iii. 2. 7; iv. 11; v. 4; vi. 8.
- Bedellium, what substance meant, Gen. ii. 12. Its colour, Num. xi. 7.
- Bear, for its voracity represents Medo-Persian empire, Dan. vii. 5.
- Beard, how valued by Orientals, 2 Sam. x. 4.
- Beast, in prophetic symbolism indicates vigorous and fierce energy, Dan. vii. 3.
- Beatitude of persecuted saints, the last and octave in Sermon on the Mount, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xx. Dan. xii. 1.
- Beauty of holiness, the term explained and applied, 2 Chr. xx. 21. Ps. xxix. 2; ex. 3.
- Bedan the Judge, otherwise unknown. No error in the reading, 1 Sam. xii. 11.
- Bede the Venerable, characterized, Neh. iv. 23. Prov. xxxi. p. 70. His exposition whence derived, Prov. xxxi. 19. 20. 23. 24, and in what respect so instructive, Vol. iv. Part 3, p. xii. *note* 2. Prov. xxvii. 23—27. Cited, Lev. x. 2. Num. xi. 16; xvii. 8; xix. 2. 3. 4. 6; xx. 10, 11. Deut. viii. 4. Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 18; p. 75, *note* 1. Judg. iv. 23. Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 110. Judg. xiii. 24; p. 160. 1 Sam. xviii. 27; xxi. 7. 2 Sam. iii. 2. Vol. iii. p. 20. 1 Kings vi. 23; vii. 25; xviii. 43. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. Ezra i. 1. 10; iii. 2; iv. 3. 12. 14. vi. 6. 19; viii. 17; ix. 4, 5; x. 1. Neh. i. 1. Vol. iii. p. 328. Neh. iii. 1. 10. 15; iv. 23; v. 14. 17; viii. 1; xi. 1; xii. 43; xiii. 3. 31. Job. i. 1; xxxii. p. 71. Prov. i. 13. 17. 20. 24. 27; ii. 17; v. 14. 15. 19; vi. 3. 5. 11; vii. 4. 14. 19; viii. 1. 17. 22; ix. 1. 3. 5. 17; xx. 26; xxiv. 27; xxvii. 10; xxx. pp. 64, 65; *vv.* 16. 17. 28. 30. 33; xxxi. 10—31. Cant. i. 6; iii. 10; v. 12.
- Beer, Judg. ix. 21.
- Beer-clim, Isa. xv. 8.
- Beeroth, site of, Josh. ix. 17. 2 Sam. iv. 2.
- Beersheba, its position and history, Gen. xxi. 31; xxvi. 33; xli. 1. Josh. xv. 28; xix. 2. 1 Kings xix. 3. 2 Kings xxiii. 8. Taken and desecrated by Jeroboam, Amos v. 5; viii. 14.
- Beesh-terah, Josh. xxi. 27.
- Beginning, meaning the first half, Jer. xxviii. 1.
- Behemoth, the beast generically, specially the hippopotamus of the Nile, Job xl. 15. Wallows in unclean fens, *v.* 21. Spiritualized it represents man's unregenerate nature, Satan energizing his untamed passions, *v.* 15. Yet the Evil One is a creature of God, and under His control, *v.* 19. Jewish fiction referred to, Job. xli. 6.
- Bel, an idol of Babylon, Isa. xlvi. 1. Jer. l. 2. Tutelary god of the city, Jer. li. 44.
- Bellai, its strict meaning, Deut. xiii. 13; xv. 9. 1 Sam. i. 16; xxv. 25; xxx. 22. 2 Sam. xx. 1; xxiii. 6. 1 Kings xxi. 10. Prov. vi. 12; xvi. 26. Nah. i. 15. A name of the Evil One, Deut. xiii. 13. Not really a proper name in the Old Testament, Judg. xix. 22. 2 Sam. xxii. 5.
- Bellarmino, cited, Dan. iv. 27. Zech. ix. 11.
- Bells called to prayer as the High Priest entered the Sanctuary, Ex. xxviii. 33.
- Belly, the (Heb. *beten*), seat of man's thoughts and desires, Job xv. 2; xxxii. 19. The animal man, Hab. iii. 16. The Hebrew *meim*, rather "bowels," Cant. v. 14.
- Belshazzar, joint regent with his father Nabonedus, Jer. xxvii. 7; li. 46. His identity cleared by a cylinder, Dan. v. 1. Second ruler, *v.* 7. His mother perhaps a daughter of Nebuchadnezzar, *vv.* 10. 11. Rebuked by Daniel, *v.* 17. Contrasted with him, Hab. ii. 5. His miserable end, Isa. xiv. 19. Jer. li. 39. Dan. v. 30. Hab. ii. 13. 15. 16. Its suddenness, Hab. ii. 7. God's dealings with him, Vol. vi. Part 1, p. vii.
- Ben, 1 Chr. xv. 18.
- Benaiah, David's captain, 2 Sam. xx. 23. 1 Kings i. 8; ii. 25. 1 Chr. xxvii. 5. 34. His exploits, 2 Sam. xxiii. 20. No flatterer, 1 Kings i. 37.
- Bene-berak, Josh. xix. 45.
- Bengel, cited, Ps. xcix. p. 155.
- Benhadad, a common or official name of kings of Syria, 1 Kings xv. 18; xx. 1. Jer. xlix. 27. Its meaning, 2 Kings viii. 8. Amos i. 4. The Syrian king's message to Elisha suggests an alleged fact in our Lord's history, 2 Kings viii. 8.
- Benjamin, his name, Ps. lxxx. 15. Christ the true Benjamin, *v.* 17. His birth foreshadowed the call of his descendant St. Paul: analogies traced between the two in their lives, Gen. xxxv. 18; xlii. 4; xliii. 34; xlix. 27. Josh. xviii. 11. Ps. lxxviii. 27. Moses' blessing may refer to the site of the future Temple on his border, Deut. xxxiii. 12. His place (Ps. lxxx. 2) and inheritance next to Joseph's, and containing Jerusalem, Josh. xviii. 11. The tribe's reward for faithfulness to Judah (2 Chr. xi. 12) indicated, 1 Chr. viii. p. 186, *v.* 13. Settled under the shadow of the Temple, *v.* 28. Jer. vi. 1. Its left-handed men, Judg. iii. 15; xx. 16. Its archers, 2 Sam. i. 18. 1 Chr. viii. 40; xii. 2. Nearly extirpated, Judg. xx. 47. 48. Its most flourishing time, 1 Chr. vii. 12.

- Bentley, cited, Job xiv. 4. Dan. viii. 9.
- Berachiah, valley of, 2 Chr. xx. 26. Ps. xlviii. p. 73; v. 2; lxxxiv. 6.
- Berengaudus, cited, Ezek. *Retros.* p. 278, note 7.
- Beriah, (1) an ancestor of Joshua, 1 Chr. vii. 23. (2) The Benjaminite avenger of Ephraim, 1 Chr. viii. 13.
- Bernard, S., cited, 1 Sam. ii. 1; xv. 15. 22. 2 Kings iv. 34. Ps. lvi. 8; xci. 11. Eccles. i. 2. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 126, note 5. Cant. i. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 13; ii. 2. 5. 15; iii. 4. 11; vi. 9. Isa. lxxvi. 24. Jer. vii. 4. Ezek. x. 13. Hagg. ii. 7.
- Berosus, described, Dan. iv. p. 14. Cited, Isa. xxiii. 13; xxxvii. 36; xliii. 14. Jer. xxv. 1; xlvii. 4; li. 46. Ezek. xxix. 13. Dan. i. 1; iv. p. 14, v. 30; v. 1.
- Berothah, Ezek. xlvii. 16.
- Bertheau, cited, Jer. ii. 1; xxxi. 15. Zeph. i. 4. Also 1 Chr. ii. 49; iii. 2. 17. 21. 22, and elsewhere *passim* in the books of Chronicles, Ezra, Nehemiah, Esther, and Proverbs.
- Bertholdt, referred to, 1 Chr. iii. 21. Ezra x. 3. Lam. p. 139, note 2. Dan. iii. p. 9; iv. 15. 27. Zech. ix. p. 136.
- Bertram, cited, 2 Chr. xix. 11.
- Beryl, or eye of Tarshish, topaz or chrysolite, Ezek. i. 16.
- Besor, brook of, 1 Sam. xxx. 9.
- Beth-arabah, Josh. xv. 6.
- Beth-aram, Josh. xiii. 27.
- Beth-arbel, its derivation and locality, Hos. x. 14. 15.
- Beth-aven, 1 Sam. xiv. 23.
- Beth-barah (Bethabara?), Judg. vii. 24.
- Beth-car, 1 Sam. vii. 11.
- Beth-diblathaim (see *Diblathaim*).
- Bethel (or *Luz*), described, Gen. xii. 8. Its history and sacred character, Gen. xxviii. 19. Judg. i. 22. 1 Sam. x. 3; xxx. 27. 2 Kings ii. 2. Hos. xii. 4. Amos iv. 4; v. 5. Mount Bethel, 1 Sam. xiii. 2. Site with respect to Beth-aven, Josh. vii. 2; xvi. 1. Bethel the district, Luz the town, Josh. xvi. 2. Apparently meant, Judg. xx. 18. "House of God" simply, Judg. xx. 26. Zech. vii. 2. The man of Bethel misses his spiritual opportunities by leaving it to found another Luz, Judg. i. 24—26. A religion of fear contrasted with one of faith, *ib.* Turned by Jeroboam into a Beth-aven, 1 Kings xii. 29. Hos. iv. 15. 16; x. 5; xii. 4. The altar there, 1 Kings xiii. 2. 2 Kings xxiii. 16. The calves not removed by Jeroboam, 2 Chr. xiii. 19. "The confidence of Israel," Jer. xlviii. 13.
- Bether (i.e. division), in religious strife we need Christ's truth and love, Cant. ii. 17.
- Beth-hacearem, Jer. vi. 1.
- Beth-hogla, Josh. xv. 6.
- Beth-horon, upper and lower, described, Josh. x. 10; xvi. 3. 1 Sam. xiii. 18. 1 Kings ix. 17. 1 Chr. vii. 24. 2 Chr. viii. 5; xxv. 13. Ezek. xxxviii. 22. Hab. iii. 11.
- Beth-jeshimoth, Ezek. xxv. 9.
- Beth-lehem, (1) in Judah, (see *Ephrath*): (2) in Zebulun, Josh. xix. 15.
- Beth-nimrah, Josh. xiii. 27.
- Beth-rehob, Judg. xviii. 28. *Aram-beth-rehob*, 2 Sam. x. 6.
- Beth-shean, its site and history, Josh. xvii. 11. 1 Sam. xxxi. 10. 1 Kings iv. 12. 1 Chr. vii. 29.
- Beth-shemesli, (1) Josh. xv. 10. 1 Kings iv. 9. 2 Kings xiv. 11. 2 Chr. xxv. 23. Rescued from idolatrous worship, Josh. xxi. 16. Judg. i. 33. Why the Ark was taken thither, 1 Sam. vi. 9. 15. (2) Heliopolis in Egypt, Jer. xliii. 13.
- Beth-shittah, Judg. vii. 22.
- Beth-tappuah, Josh. xv. 53.
- Beth-zur, Josh. xv. 58. 2 Chr. xi. 7. Neh. iii. 16.
- Beulah, signification of, Isa. lxii. 4.
- Bezalel, his significant name, all true artists working under God's shadow, Ex. xxxi. 2. 1 Chr. ii. 20.
- Bezek, located, Judg. i. 4. 1 Sam. xi. 8.
- Bezer, site of, Deut. iv. 43.
- Bildad the Shuite, characterized, Job iv. 1. His last speech, though true and beautiful, deprived of its effect through his uncharitableness, Job xxv. 1. 4.
- Bilson, Bp., cited, Job i. 5.
- Bingham, Jos., cited, 1 Chr. xxix. 11. Isa. lviii. 13. Dan. viii. 9.
- Birthing, wherein it consisted, Gen. xxv. 31. Its spiritual aspect, *ib.* Its double portion, Gen. xlviii. 5. 1 Chr. v. 1. Yet superseded in Jacob's family through Christ, v. 2.
- Birds, in what circumstances are men compared to them, Ps. lxxxiv. 3. Not they, but the human soul, find rest at God's altar, *ib.* Their silliness, Prov. i. 17. "The speckled bird," Jer. xii. 9.
- Bithron, a gorge, 2 Sam. ii. 29.
- Blasphemy of "the Name" punished, Lev. xxiv. 11, by stoning, v. 14. 16.
- Blavney, cited, Zech. ix. p. 136.
- Bleek, cited, Zech. ix. 1.
- Blessed (*εὐλογημένος*), its special application in the New Testament, Deut. xxviii. 3. Its six-fold repetition contrasted with twelve curses, *ib.* Deut. xxvii. 15.
- Blessing, (1) on the part of the head of a patriarchal family, a priestly act, Gen. xxvii. 4. Six blessings in Scripture, Gen. xlix. 1. That of Moses supplementary to Jacob's, *ib.* Deut. xxxiii. 1. Both lead up to Christ, *ib.* Priestly blessing (Deut. xxvii. 14) typical, Lev. ix. 22. This office assigned to the priests, the form intimating a Divine Trinity, Num. vi. 23. Those of the Old Testament not simply temporal, Deut. xxviii. 10. Their ground-work, Ps. lxxvii. p. 99. The kingly blessing, 2 Sam. vi. 18. 1 Kings viii. 14. 1 Chr. xvi. 2. Blessings misused turn to curses; thus having a double edge, Mal. ii. 2. (2) Blessing (i.e. gift), 1 Sam. xxv. 27.
- Blood, why not to be eaten, Gen. ix. 4. The prohibition renewed, Lev. xvii. 10. Still observed in the East, *ib.* Transgressed, Ezek. xxxiii. 25. Christ's blood taken in the cup of blessing the life of our souls, Lev. xvii. 11.
- Bluk, cited, Dan. iv. p. 14.
- Blunt, Professor, cited, Gen. ii. 3; xxiv. 29; xxv. 21. 22; xxxvii. 3. 25. Ex. i. 7. Deut. xiii. p. 234. 2 Sam. vi. 16. 1 Kings xviii. 33. 2 Kings xviii. 15. 18. Isa. viii. 2; xxii. 16.
- Boanerges, Zech. ix. 14.
- Boaz, a man of virtue, Ruth ii. 1. His family prayer, v. 4. His prophetic speech, v. 12. A type of Christ, *ib.* Vol. ii. Part I, p. 160. Ruth iii. 9. Isa. liv. p. 157. Ezek. xvi. 7, 8.
- Bochart, cited, Gen. ii. 12; xi. 1; xxvii. 16. Num. xxiii. 22. 1 Sam. vi. 19. Ezra ix. 3. Esther viii. 10. Job xxvii. 16; xxx. 29; xxxix. 5. 9; xl. 15; xli. 19. Prov. vi. 6; viii. 11; xxx. 31. Cant. v. 12. Isa. xxxiv. 15; xxxviii. 14; xlv. 14. Jer. xiv. 5; xvii. 11. Ezek. iv. p. 165; xxvii. 6. Joel i. 4; ii. 4. Amos iv. 3.
- Bochim (i.e. weepers), site uncertain. Emblem of a religion of mere sentiment and emotion, Judg. ii. 1. 5.
- Boeckh, cited, Jer. xxxii. 9.
- Bohan, stone of, Josh. xv. 6.
- Bolled, the word explained, Ex. ix. 31.
- Bonar, Dr., cited, Neh. iii. 15.
- Book of the Wars of the Lord, Num. xxi. 14. Of Jasher (1 Sam. ii. 1), or Jeshurun, discussed, Josh. x. 13. 2 Sam. i. 18. "This book," the term explained, Jer. xxv. 13. Jeremiah's direction so to write, Jer. xxx. 2.
- Borrowing by Israelites from Egyptians, the act vindicated, Ex. iii. 22; xi. 2; xii. 35. Figurative sense of spoiling the Egyptians, Ex. iii. 22.
- Bosanquet, J., cited, Dan. ix. 24—27.
- Bossuet, Bp., cited, Vol. iv. Part 2, p. vi, note 8. Ps. xlvii. p. 72. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 121, note 3.
- Botta, his explorations at Nineveh, Nah. iii. 18.
- Boundaries of the Holy Land in its utmost extent, Gen. xv. 18. Ex. xxiii. 31. 2 Kings xiv. 25. Ps. lxxx. 10. Almost reached by David and Solomon, 1 Kings ix. 18. Why specified by God, Num. xxxiv. 3. See *Promises*.
- Bounty of God should make men bountiful, Neh. viii. 10.
- Bow the, David's dirge of, 2 Sam. i. 18. Christ's bow the preachers of the gospel, Zech. x. p. 141; v. 4.
- Bozkath, Josh. xv. 39.
- Bozrah, site of, Isa. xxxiv. 6. Jer. xlviii. 24. Amos i. 12. Mic. ii. 12. Meaning of, Isa. lxiii. 1.
- Branch (Heb. *Isenach*), Christ so called, Ps. (lxxx. 15;) lxxxv. 11. Isa. iv. 2; liii. 2. Jer. xxiii. 5; xxxiii. 15. Vol. vi. Part 2, p. xx. Zech. iii. 8. (Heb. *netser*), Isa. xi. 2. Branch and rush, Isa. ix. 14. The tender one, Ezek. xlvii. 22. Distinguished from plant, Ezek. xxxiv. 29.
- Brass (i.e. copper) mines in Palestine, Deut. viii. 9. 1 Kings vii. 14. Isa. lx. 17. Elsewhere, Job xxviii. 2. Not steel, Job xx. 24. Valuable spoil, 2 Sam. viii. 8. An emblem of strength, Ezek. xvi. 36. Zech. vi. 1.
- Bread, of sacrificial offerings, Mal. i. 7.
- Breaker-up, the, confessed by Jews to be a title of Messiah, Mic. ii. 13.
- Brentius, cited, Isa. xix. 24, 25; lxi. 8; lxvi. 20.
- Breschith Rabba, cited, Dan. vii. 13. Zech. iv. 6.
- Braviary, the Roman, now enforced on all nations, Isa. lxvi. 17.
- Brick-kiln, of Egypt, its figurative sense, Jer. xliii. 9.
- Brigandage, practice of, Job xxxvi. 18.
- Brigandine, Jer. xli. 4.
- Brisson, cited, Dan. vi. 7.
- Brother, used for nephew or cousin, Gen. xiv. 14. Lev. x. 4, or other relatives, 2 Kings x. 13. 2 Chr. xxii. 1; xxxvi. 10. Or associates in a calling, 1 Chr. vi. 39. 44. Three pairs of brothers among the twelve Apostles, Ex. iv. 14. Num. ii. 5. 2 Sam. x. 7—10. David, like Christ, calls his subjects brethren, 1 Chr. xiii. 2.

- Brook (or wady), in the desert, its uncertain continuance, Job vi. 15. 18.
- Brown, John, of Haddington, cited, Josh. v. 10.
- Brown, W. A., cited, Lev. xviii. 18.
- Browne, E. H. Bp., referred to, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. x, *note* 8. Ps. viii. 1.
- Browne, H. (Ordo Sacerdotum), cited, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. xv, *note* 8. Ezra vii. 8.
- Bruce, cited, Lev. xvii. 10.
- Bucephalus, the war-horse, Zech. ix. 9.
- Buckler (Heb. *socherah*), described, Ps. xci. 4. Heb. *maghen*, Prov. ii. 7. Jer. xli. 3. The *testudo*, Ezek. xxvi. 8.
- Buffon, cited, Job xli. 31.
- Bull, Bp., cited, Gen. i. 26; ii. 9. 18. Ex. xxiii. 20. Deut. xxix. i. Ps. xxxix. 4. Prov. viii. 22. Eccles. vii. 14. Jer. ix. 23. Dan. x. 13. Hos. x. 12. Mal. i. 11.
- Bundle (i. e. bag or purse), 1 Sam. xxv. 29.
- Bunsen, cited, Isa. liii. p. 153. Lam. p. 138, *note* 4.
- Burckhardt, cited, Gen. xxxiv. 25; xxxvi. 33. Lev. xxiii. 34. 2 Sam. xvi. 1. 1 Kings vii. 46; x. 1. 2 Kings iii. 25. Job i. 3; xxxix. 14. Cant. vi. 11; vii. 4. Isa. xv. 1. Jer. xxxviii. 7; xlviii. 1. 2. 32. Obad. 3.
- Burden, whence the term derived, Isa. xlii. 1. Zech. ix. 1. Mal. i. 1. Nearly equivalent to prophecy, Isa. xlii. 1. Its double sense, Jer. xxiii. 33—38. Inner connexion between Isaiah's several burdens, Vol. v. Part 1. p. 37. Isa. xiv. 28; xxi. p. 58. Applied to Nahum's and Habakkuk's writings, Nah. i. 1. Hab. i. 1.
- Burgon, J. W., cited, Deut. xxix. 1. Prov. xii. 5; xv. 6. 8.
- Burial, by covering with dust, prescribed even for hunted animals, Ezek. xxiv. 7. Costly, first mentioned in Asa's case, perhaps borrowed from Egypt, 2 Chr. xvi. 14. Flutes used at funerals, Jer. xlviii. 36. Magnificent tombs, as the pyramids, Job xxi. 32, 33. Our English Burial Service referred to, Job xvi. 1; xix. 26. Ps. xxxix. p. 57; xc. p. 145.
- Burke, Edmund, cited, Job iv. 12; xxxviii. 1.
- Burnet, Bp., his most instructive Life of Lord Rochester, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 79, *note* 6. His "Own Times," cited, Eccles. xii. 13.
- Burning the dead, practised by the Hebrews only on special occasions, 1 Sam. xxxi. 12. 1 Chr. x. 12. 2 Chr. xxi. 19, such as during great mortality, Amos vi. 10. Burning, the proper punishment for harlotry, whether spiritual or carnal, 2 Kings xxv. 9.
- Burnt offering, described, Ex. xxviii. 12. Lev. i. 3. What it signifies, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 1. Lev. i. 3; ix. 16. Deut. xxvii. 6, 7. 1 Sam. x. 8. Why to be without blemish, Lev. i. 3. Mode of sacrifice emblematical of leaning on Christ, v. 4. Why the priest only might sprinkle the blood, v. 5. Why the whole must be burnt, v. 2. 9. Gen. xxii. 2. Lev. viii. 18. 2 Chr. xxxv. 12. What is typified by carrying out the ashes to a clean place, Lev. vi. 11. Fire to be ever burning, v. 13. Lev. ix. 24. Why the burnt offering should be washed, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 281.
- Burrington, G., characterized, Vol. iii. p. 167. Cited, 1 Kings iv. 31. 1 Chr. ii. 9. 52; iii. 16, 17; vi. p. 180; v. 4. 11. 2 Chr. xiii. 2; xxvi. 17.
- Butler, J. Bp., cited, Gen. iv. 3, 4; xxii. 2. Num. xxii. 19; xxv. 1. Judg. i. 7. Job xl. 15. Prov. xx. 27; xxii. 6; xxv. 2. Eccles. viii. 17. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xii, *note* 9. Jer. i. 21. Hos. xi. 1.
- Buttmann, cited, Ezek. i. 4.
- Buxtorf, cited, 1 Chr. i. 17. Ezra vii. 6. Esther ix. 7—13. 26. Job xxix. 18; xxxviii. 32. Isa. lxvi. 5. Jer. xi. 15; xxv. 26; xxxvi. 23; xli. 1; lii. 12. Zech. xii. 10.
- Buz and the Buzites, Job xxxii. 2. Jer. xxv. 23. Manner in which names, seemingly meaningless, illustrate other places, Job xxxii. 2.
- Cabbon, Josh. xv. 40.
- Cabul, Josh. xix. 27. 1 Kings ix. 11. Its meaning discussed, 1 Kings ix. 13. Spiritual significance of Hiram's refusal, *ib.*
- Caedmon's Biblical poem, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 3.
- Cæsar, J., anecdote of, Job xiii. 14. Cited, Isa. xxii. 6.
- Cæsarius, cited, 2 Kings v. 15, 27; vi. 6.
- Cain, meaning of his name, Gen. iv. 1. Type of the worldly city, v. 2. God's remembrance with him explained, v. 7. His sin perhaps partly one of ignorance, v. 8. The mark set on him considered, v. 15. His wandering for killing Abel foreshadows that of the Jews who killed Christ, *ib.* Ps. lix. 11; cix. 10. Hos. ix. 17.
- Cainan, son of Arphaxad, his name, if genuine, why omitted in Hebrew text, Gen. xi. 12.
- Calamus, the Brahmin, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiii, *note* 1.
- Caleb, (1) the son of Hezron, 1 Chr. ii. 18. 49; ancestor of (2) the son of Hur, 1 Chr. ii. 50; by some thought the same as (3) the son of Jephunneh, of whose faith, Num. xiii. 22; xiv. 25. His long life contrasted with the fate of the murmurers, Num. xiv. 29. Chronology of his life, Josh. xi. 18; xiv. 10, 11. The Kenazite, Josh. xiv. 6. His pious old age, v. 10, 11. His boldness, like St. Paul's, in claiming an inheritance where enemies were settled, v. 15. Historical parallel with patriarchal history, *ib.* The account in Judg. i. 10—15 only a recapitulation of Josh. xv. 14. 18. The name of Kenazite indicates an Edomitish extraction, 1 Chr. ii. 17; iv. 15.
- Calendar of Hebrew Lessons, how divided. Used by Christ. Its value for interpretation, Vol. i. Part 1. *Pref.* pp. xvi, xvii. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. 81. *Parashahs* from the Law, and *Haphtarahs* from the Prophets, adjusted to each other for each of the 54 Sabbaths of the year, Vol. i. Part 1. pp. xvi; 1. Table of *parashahs* begins yearly on the sabbath after the Jewish "Festival of the Law," the 23rd of Tisri, Neh. ix. 1. Benefits accruing from the arrangement, Neh. x. 31. Table of *parashahs* for Genesis, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 1. List and details of mutual interpretation, Gen. vi. 9; xii. 1; xviii. 1; xlii. 1; xxv. 19; xxviii. 10 (*seder*, or long series of narrative); xxxii. 3; xxxvii. 1; xli. 1; xlv. 18; xlvii. 23. Ex. i. 1 (and list for Ex.); vi. 2; x. 1; xiii. 17; xviii. 1; xxi. 1; xxv. 1; xxvii. 20; xxx. 11; xxxv. 1; xxxviii. 8. Lev. i. 1; vi. 8; ix. 1; xii. 1; xiv. 1; xvi. 1; xix. 1; xxi. 1; (xxii. 8); xxv. 1; xxvi. 3. Num. i. 1; iv. 21; viii. 1; xiii. 1; xvi. 1; xix. 1; xxii. 2; xxv. 10; xxx. 1; xxxiii. 1. Deut. i. 1; iii. 23; vii. 12; xi. 26; xvi. 18; xxi. 10; xxvi. 1; xxix. 10; xxxi. 1; xxxii. 1; xxxiii. 1. Privilege of reading them in the Synagogue prized by the modern Jew, who however shrinks from reading aloud, Dent. xxviii. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 263. Variation of *Haphtarah*, in some Synagogues, Deut. xxxii. 1. List of *Haphtarahs*, and details of interpretation, Josh. ii. 1. Judg. v. 1; i. 33; xiii. 2—23. 1 Sam. xii. 1. 2 Sam. vi. 1—19. 1 Kings i. 1—31; v. 12—vi. 13; vii. 9—26; vii. 40—viii. 21; xviii. 1; xix. 2. 2 Kings v. 7; vii. 3—20. Isa. i. 1—27; vi. 1; xxvii. 6—xxviii. 13; xxix. 22, 23; xl. 1—26; 27—xli. 16; xli. 1—22; xlii. 5—xliii. 10; 21—xlv. 23; xlix. 14—li. 3; li. 12; liv. 1; 6—lvi. 8; lix. 10—lxiii. 9 (read by our Lord in the Synagogue, Vol. v. Part 1. p. 176). Jer. i. 1—ii. 3; 4—iii. 4; iv. 1, 2; vii. 21—viii. 3; ix. 23, 24; xvi. 19—xvii. 14. Ezek. xx. 2—20; xxii. 1—16; xxix. 1—21; xxxvii. 19—28. Hos. xi. 7—xii. 12; xiv. 2—10. Joel ii. 15—27. Amos ii. 6—iii. 8. Mic. v. 6—vi. 8. Zech. iii. 1—iv. 7. Mal. i. 1—ii. 7. Nine proper lessons out of fourteen in Deuteronomy read with corresponding lessons from Isaiah, Deut. i. 1. Isa. i. p. 1. Ezra's attentive congregation Neh. vii. 3, heard the law standing, v. 5. Hagiographa follows its order in respect to the place of the books, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 138, *note* 1. Repetitions at end of books from liturgical use, Lam. v. 22.
- Call, the golden, made to imitate the Egyptian Apis, Ex. xxxii. 4.
- Call, divine, to the ministry, does not supersede regular ordination, Lev. viii. 3. Deut. xxi. 23. Ezra ii. 62. God the real consecrator, Lev. viii. 33. Moses intrudes not on Aaron's office when full, Lev. ix. 2. 1 Chr. xxiii. 15. Commission given to Eldad and Medad not irregular, Num. xi. 26. Joshua's outward mission as well as inward call, Num. xxvii. 18. Micah's assumed power of consecration idolatrous, Judg. xvii. 5. 12.
- Callisthenes, his speech, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiii, *note* 15.
- Calmet, cited, Num. xii. 3. 2 Chr. xx. 2. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 76, *note* 1. Isa. xlix. 12. Fragments to, Ex. i. 16.
- Calneh, or *Calno*, located, Gen. x. 10. Isa. x. 9. Amos vi. 2.
- Calovius, cited, Gen. x. 24. Deut. xxxiii. 1. Judg. ii. 1; iv. 23. 2 Sam. xxiii. 3. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 122, *note* 5; p. 124, *note* 4; p. 125, *note* 10. Cant. iv. 2. Isa. ii. 22; xiv. 12; lx. 1; lxi. 8; lxii. 12; lxxv. 17. 20; lxxvi. 20. Jer. xxiii. 5; xxxi. 2. 15—17; xxxiii. 6. 15, 16. Ezek. i. 5; ix. 2; xix. 10. *Retrospect*, p. 275, *note* 4; p. 286, *note* 12; p. 287, *note* 3. Hos. i. 2; vi. 2. Obad. 1. Hagg. ii. 7. Characterized, Judg. iv. p. 100.
- Calvin, John, cited, Gen. xiii. 14, 15; xli. 51; xlv. 24. Ex. xxxii. 27. Num. xxii. 28. 2 Sam. xii. 11. Jer. xxxiii. 15, 16. Ezek. xx. 25; p. 275, *note* 4. Dan. viii. 13. 15. Mal. ii. 15. Calvinistic error, noted, Mal. i. 3.
- Cambyases, Dan. xi. 2. See *Ahasuerus*.
- Camels, meaning of the word so rendered uncertain, Esther viii. 10. Emblem of wealth, the proverb explained, Isa. lx. 6.
- Canon, Judg. x. 5.

- Camp of Israel, a type of the heavenly city, Num. ii. 34. That of David, a sanctuary, 1 Chr. xxvii. 1. The Temple so regarded, 2 Chr. xxxi. 2. That of the Assyrians, where, 2 Kings xix. 35.
- Camphire (Heb. *copher*), rather the eypress plant, described. By a play on the words suggests a spiritual meaning, Cant. i. 14.
- Canaan, son of Ham, his curse how fulfilled, Gen. ix. 25. The land, its etymology, Gen. x. 15.
- Canaanites, their destruction by Divine command vindicated, Gen. xv. 16. Lev. xviii. 27. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xvii. Probably might have been spared on submission, Dent. xx. 17. To their infants death not an evil, since followed by life eternal, Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xvii. Spiritual lesson conveyed, *ib.* p. xviii. Josh. i. 6. 12. Their land a grant to Israel, Josh. i. 2. Israel strained its practice to the side of mercy, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 29. Used as bondsmen by Solomon, 1 Kings v. 13. 15. 16. Their hearts hardened: the inference therefrom, Josh. xi. 20. Their partial subjection no failing of God's promise: spiritual application, Josh. xiii. 1. Their dwelling with Israel a proof of that people's degeneracy, Judg. i. 27. 33. That Israel dwelt with them a further proof, *r.* 32. Judg. iii. 5. Some yet surviving, 2 Sam. xxiv. 7. "Canaanite" equivalent to "merchant," Job. xli. 6. Isa. xliii. 11? Hos. xii. 7: to "idolater," Zech. xiv. 21.
- Candlestick, the golden (Zech. iv. 12), an emblem of the Church nourished by the Holy Spirit, Ex. xxv. 31. Lev. xxiv. 2. 1 Kings vii. 49. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xix. Zech. iv. 2. 11—14. Giving light to the world, Lev. xxiv. 5. Zech. iv. 2. 6. Why of one solid piece, Num. vii. 4. To be supplied with fresh oil, Ex. xxvii. 20. 21. Perpetual and heavenward light, Lev. xxiv. 2. Went out in the morning, 1 Sam. iii. 3. Symbolical meaning of minute directions respecting it, Ex. xxvii. 21. The one in the tabernacle, why increased to ten in the Temple, 1 Kings vii. 49. Desecrated in Belshazzar's feast. On bas-relief of Titus' Arch, Dan. v. 5, to this day, Zech. iv. 2.
- Cane, used for incense, Isa. xliii. 24. Jer. vi. 20.
- Caneh, Ezek. xxvii. 23.
- Canons of 1603, cited, 2 Kings xviii. 4.
- Canticles, see *Song of Solomon*.
- Caphtorim, described, Gen. x. 14. Dent. ii. 23. Amos ix. 7. Of Crete? Jer. xlvii. 4.
- Capellus, cited, 2 Kings xxiv. 6. 1 Chr. iii. 16. Job v. 15.
- Captain of the Lord's host, the Word of God, Christ in His Divine Nature, Josh. v. 13. Shows Joshua how to conquer the city of the world, *ib.*
- Captive women to be considerably treated, Dent. xxi. 11. To be purified from Gentilism, as the heathen world and its literature was in Christ, *ib.* Sometimes brought a blessing to their heathen masters, 2 Kings v. 2. *Judea capta*, coin of, Isa. iii. 26. Fate of Jewish captives made by Syrians and Romans, Joel iii. 3.
- Captivity led captive, the term explained, Judg. v. 12. Ps. lxxviii. 18. Amos ix. 14. Obad. 20. "The removing," Ezek. xii. 3. National captivities the deliverance of God's saints, Hos. vi. 11. Amos ix. 9. "Turning the captivity" a general term, Ps. lxxxv. p. 135. Ezek. xvi. 53. God made the Jews' conquerors kind to them, Jer. xv. 11—14. "The captivity of the land" refers to nothing later than the taking of the Ark from Shiloh, Judg. xviii. 30. 31. 1 Sam. ii. 32; iv. 22. That to Babylon, spiritual benefits accruing from it, Vol. iii. p. 299. Its seventy years dated from the fourth of Jehoiakim (u.c. 605—6), 2 Kings xxiv. 1. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 21. Ezra i. 1. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xiv, *note* 2. Jer. xxv. 1. 10. Dan. i. 1; ix. 2. A second in Jehoiakim's first year, 2 Kings xxiv. 15. Ezek. i. 2. The third in the eleventh of Zedekiah (u.c. 588 or 586), 2 Kings xxv. 2. Dan. ix. 2. Hagg. p. 113. Zech. i. 12. Lists in 1 Chronicles and in Nehemiah of those who returned, compared, 1 Chr. ix. 1: under Zerubbabel (u.c. 535), *rr.* 2—22. "Captivities," explained, Zeph. iii. 20.
- Cardinal, analogy of the term, Josh. xiii. 3.
- Carey, cited, Job xiv. 7. 18; xvi. 20; xvii. 3; xxi. 32, 33; xxiii. 11; xxviii. 2. 18. 28; xxxi. 33; xxxviii. 14; xl. 13; xli. 33; xlii. 14.
- Carmel, in Judah, Josh. xv. 55. 1 Sam. xv. 12; xxv. 2. 2 Sam. xxiii. 35. 2 Chr. xxvi. 10. In Asher, Josh. xix. 26. The Mount, 1 Kings xviii. 19. 42. Isa. xxxiii. 9. Jer. xlvii. 18; l. 19. Scene of Elijah's miracle, 1 Kings xviii. 20. 2 Kings i. 9. A fit hiding-place, Amos ix. 3. For its beauty and fertility used figuratively, 2 Kings xix. 23. Cant. vii. 5. Mic. vii. 14. Nah. i. 4; especially in regard to the Jewish Church, Isa. xxix. 17; xxxii. 15. 16; xxxv. 1. Jer. ii. 7. Amos i. 2.
- Carnal presence of Christ in the Eucharist not to be sought for, 2 Kings ii. 17.
- Carpenter (Heb. *charash*), builds the Church by destroying earthly powers. Christ so called, not without a mystery, Zech. i. 20.
- Carpzov, cited, Ezra vii. 6. Vol. iii. p. 366, *note* 1. Ps. lxxxix. p. 141. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 75, *note* 1; p. 120, *note* 4; p. 122, *note* 2; p. 123, *note* 1; p. 124, *note* 5. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xii, *note* 11; p. xiv, *note* 3; p. xv, *note* 11; pp. xvii; 157. Ezek. i. 1. 5; iv. p. 165; xxxiii. p. 231.
- Carriage (i. e. baggage), Judg. xviii. 21. 1 Sam. xvii. 22. Isa. x. 28.
- Casiphia, the Levite College, its derivation and probable site, Ezra viii. 17.
- Casuhim, Gen. x. 14.
- Caspari, cited, Isa. i. 7. Vol. v. Part 2. p. viii, *note* 7; p. ix, *note* 2. Jer. xlix. 7. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. v, *note* 3; p. xxi. Dan. i. 7; ii. 4. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxix. Obad. p. 57, *vv.* 1. 2. 11. 20. Mic. i. 1. 2. 11; iv. 1; v. 4. 8. 14; vii. 18.
- Cassander, Alexander's successor, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiii, *note* 7. Dan. viii. 8; xi. 4.
- Cassian, cited, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xvi, *note* 6. Dan. x. 13.
- Cassiodorus, cited, Cant. i. 6. 7; iii. 11. Jer. xvii. 11.
- Castalio, cited, Jer. v. 8; xxxi. 22. Joel ii. 23.
- Castell, cited, Dan. iv. 13.
- Casuists, Papal, condemned, 2 Sam. vi. 6.
- Catacombs of Rome, emblems of the Resurrection found in them, Dan. vi. 17.
- Catchwords, whereby a connexion, both of language and thought, is carried from one part of Scripture to another, seemingly independent of it, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. iv. like the golden taches which coupled the curtains of the Tabernacle, *ib.* Discernible throughout the Psalter, e. g. Ps. i. and ii. *ib.*, and *notes* 5 and 6. Ps. i. p. 1; ii. p. 2; iii. iv. pp. 4, 5; v. 1. 6; vii. p. 9; ix. p. 12; xiii. p. 16; xvi. p. 19, v. 9; xvii. p. 20; xix. 7; xx. p. 26; xxiv. p. 33; xxv. 13; xxvi. p. 36; xxvii. 9; xxviii. p. 38; xxxii. 8; xxxiii. p. 46; xxxiv. p. 47, *vv.* 6. 7. 12—16; xxxvi. p. 51, v. 12; xxxviii. p. 56; xxxix. p. 57; xl. p. 58; xlv. p. 66; xlviii. 14; xlix. 14. 20; l. p. 77; v. 21; li. 16. 18; lii. p. 81; lv. p. 83; lvi. p. 85; lvii. 1. 5; lviii. p. 87; lx. p. 90; lxii. p. 92; v. 12; lxvi. p. 97; lxviii. p. 99; lxxiii. 1; lxxv. 8; lxxv. 2; lxxvi. p. 119; lxxvii. p. 120; v. 20; lxxx. p. 127; lxxxiii. p. 131; lxxxviii. p. 139; lxxxix. p. 141; xci. p. 147; v. 9; xcii. 4; xciii. 1; xciv. p. 150; cii. p. 158; cv. 2; cvi. p. 167; cvii. p. 170; exxi. 1; exxvi. p. 201; exxxvii. 2; exxxviii. 1. 3; exxxii. p. 206; exxxvi. 1; exliii. p. 218; v. 4; cxlvi. 9. So in the Proverbs (Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xv.). Prov. i. p. 1. *rr.* 10. 15; ii. 7. 8; iii. 24. 25; iv. 1; viii. 23; ix. 9; x. 12. 13. 14. 20; xi. p. 26; *vv.* 4. 10. 11. 25; xii. 5—7. 8; xiii. 11; xiv. 13; xvi. 1. 10. 18. 31; xvii. 6; xix. 22. 29; xx. 1. 11. 12. 18. 20. 25; xxi. 5. 7. 8; xxii. 14; xxiii. 6. 7. 10. 31; xxiv. 33; xxv. 2. 3; xxvi. 13; xxviii. 17; xxix. 1. 3. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 121, *note* 2. Isa. xxix. 20; xxxii. 20; xxxiii. 15; xl. 3. Dan. vii. 8. Hos. iv. 1. Nine addresses of, Isa. xl.—xlviii., so connected, Vol. v. Part 1. p. 120; xliii. 2; xlix. 5; li. 1. 2. 9. 11; lii. 1; liii. 1. Jer. xi. p. 28; xxiii. p. 50. Ezek. xiii. 18.
- Catena, a Greek, cited, Prov. xxx. 14. 19. 20. 28. 31. 33; xxxi. 10—31.
- Caterpillar, described, 1 Kings viii. 37. Isa. xxxiii. 4. Nah. iii. 15. Rather, a *locust*, Jer. li. 14. 27.
- Cathedrals, turned by some into stables, 2 Kings xxiii. 11.
- Catullus, characterized, Job vi. 22. Cited, Lev. xix. 20. Job vi. 22; xiv. 7; xxxix. 24; xli. 5. Prov. xix. 7.
- Cawnpore, well of, Jer. xlii. 9.
- Cedar, a fragrant wood, emblem of Him who saw no corruption, Lev. xiv. 4. Num. xix. 6. Cant. i. 17. Cedar of Lebanon, its noble trunk and deep-set roots, Ps. xcii. 12. Emblem of princes, Judg. ix. 15.
- Celsius, cited, 2 Kings xx. 7.
- Censoriousness of persons professing godliness, Isa. lviii. 9.
- Census of Israelite males above twenty commanded, Ex. xxx. 12. The fine a Hebrew Church-rate paid in advance, *ib.* 2 Kings xii. 4. Carried out, Num. i. 46. Levites numbered among the spiritual Israel (Rev. vii. 7), but not for war, *r.* 47. Their census separate: discrepancy of 300 between details and sum total explained, Num. iii. 39. Names taken as well as numbers, Num. xiv. 29. The second why taken, Num. xxvi. 1. Its results providential, *ib.* Prophecy fulfilled therein, *v.* 64. Numbers in the next generation, Judg. xx. 17. Variations between the numbers in the two accounts of David's census explained, 2 Sam. xxiv. 9.
- Ceremonial law, suspended during the penal wandering in the wilderness, Num. xv. 2. Even circumcision and the passover neglected, but not the sabbath, *vv.* 35. 39.

- Chagigah, a sacrificial term, explained, Deut. xvi. 2.
- Chaldaisms, real or alleged, in the Hebrew Scriptures, discussed, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 161. Ruth i. 13; ii. 8. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xi, *note* 12; p. xiii, *note* 1. Ps. cxvii. 4; cxxxix. p. 214. Prov. xii. 27. Jer. xxv. 3. Those in Ecclesiastes examined, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 75, *note* 3. Chaldee portions of the Old Testament, Ezra iv. 8. Dan. ii. 4; vii. 27. Why a solitary verse in Chaldee, Jer. x. 11. *Scriptio plena* of yod, 1 Chr. ii. 15. Alleged Chaldaisms in Isa. xl.—lxvi. considered, Vol. v. Part 1. p. xix, *note* 1. Isa. xiv. 4.
- Chaldee, origin of the name, Gen. xi. 31; xxii. 22. Their bands, 2 Kings xxiv. 2. The court language Aryan, not Aramaic: its learning and colleges, Dan. i. 4. A Semitic race, Hab. i. 6. Equivalent to Babylonian, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 17. Hab. i. 6. Comparatively a modern people, Isa. xxiii. 13. Righteous compared with Judah, Ezek. xxiii. 45. The Magi, Dan. ii. 2. Dominant and military caste in Babylon, Isa. xliii. 14; xlvii. 1. Chaldee paraphrase in public reading of the Law, possibly originated with Ezra, Neh. viii. 7, 8.
- Chalybes, their iron mines, Jer. xv. 12.
- Chambers of the Temple, their use, Jer. xxxv. 2.
- Champion, properly "Mediator," applied to Goliath as a type of Safan, 1 Sam. xvii. 4, 8. Compared with the son of the giant overcome by David's four heroes, 2 Sam. xxi. 22.
- Champollion, cited, Gen. xli. 45, 48. 1 Kings xiv. 25.
- Chandler, Bp., cited, 1 Sam. xxvi. 1. Isa. xlii. 1; lii. 15; lxxv. 25; lxxvi. 23. Jer. xxi. 14—18. Ezek. iv. p. 165. Dan. ii. 44; vii. 5, 13; ix. 24—27. Amos ix. 11. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. iii. 8; iv. 6; xii. 10; xiii. 6. Mal. iii. 1.
- Chapters of the Bible, ill-divided in Lev. vi. 8; xxvi. 3. Josh. v. 15. 1 Kings x. xi. 2 Kings vi. 33. Job xxxix. 30. Isa. ix. 21; lii. 13. Mal. ii. 17. Not so in Ezek. xx. 45. Their headings in the English version noticed, Num. xvi. 31, p. 135. Judg. xix. 12. 2 Kings iii. 27. Job xxxii. p. 72. Ps. xlv. p. 66; cxlix. 6. Recognize the spiritual sense of Solomon's Song, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 124.
- Charchemish (or Carchemish), its meaning and locality, 2 Chr. xxxv. 20. Isa. x. 9. Ezek. i. 1. Battle of, an era (B.C. 606), Jer. xxv. 11—14; xxvi. 1; xxxvi. p. 88; xlv. 1; xlvii. 2.
- Chariots, in numbers often including the men riding in them, 2 Sam. xiii. 4; x. 18. 1 Chr. xix. 7. Isa. xxi. 7: who would dismount to fight, 2 Sam. x. 18. Chariots of God, Ps. lxxviii. 17. Prophets so called, Cant. vi. 12. Emblems of strength and victory, Zech. vi. 1.
- Charity, seemingly when judging of the dead, 1 Chr. xiii. 3. Its duty to bear with the weak, Ezek. xxxiv. 20.
- Charashim, explained, 1 Chr. iv. 14.
- Charge, a general term, subdivided into commands, statutes (Lev. xix. 19), and laws. Strict definition of each, Gen. xxv. 5. Distinguished from testimonies, 1 Kings ii. 3.
- Charlemagne, his pious zeal, Zech. i. 20.
- Charles I. of England, blessed in his troubles with faithful and pious chaplains, Ps. lxxiv. p. 133. Spirit of Eikon Basilike, Ps. cxxxi. 1.
- Charles II. of England, Eccles. v. 6: despises his father's counsels, Prov. vi. 4.
- Charles IX. of France, his guilty fears, Job xv. 21—23. Compared to Jehoiachin in respect of his youth, had counsel from his mother, guilt, and punishment, Jer. xxii. 26.
- Chaucer's Good Parson, cited, Hos. iv. 9.
- Chebar or Habor river, Ezek. i. 1; xliii. 3.
- Cheerfulness, duty of, Eccles. v. 18, 20. From trust in God, Eccles. viii. 1.
- Chemosh, god of Moab, and how represented on coins, Num. xxi. 29. Judg. xi. 24. 1 Kings xi. 7. Isa. xvi. 12. Jer. xlviii. 7. Human sacrifices offered to him, 2 Kings iii. 27.
- Chephirah, Josh. ix. 17; xviii. 26.
- Cherethim, probably Cretans, Ezek. xxv. 16. Zeph. ii. 5. Prophecy respecting them, how fulfilled, Ezek. xxx. 16.
- Cherethites, David's faithful guard, 1 Sam. xxx. 14. 2 Sam. viii. 18; xv. 18. This word and the preceding derived, Ezek. xxv. 16.
- Cherubim, derivation of the word: their nature and symbolic meaning, Gen. iii. 24. Ezek. i. 3; xxviii. 14. Represent the whole glorified body of believers, Ezek. i. 5. Not Chaldee, but a Hebrew symbolism, v. 3. Covering the Mercy-seat over the Ark in the Tabernacle, Ps. lxi. 4; lxi. 7; xci. 1, they represent the angelic hierarchy, Ex. xxv. 18. Two in one beaten piece symbolize the two Testaments, Vol. i. Part 2. *Introd.* p. ii. Manifestation of the Divine presence, 2 Sam. vi. 2, in glory, power, love, and grace, Ezek. i. 3. Being four in the Temple, instead of two, they indicate a clearer revelation, 1 Kings vi. 23, and symbolize the four-fold Gospel, 1 Chr. xxviii. 18. Ezek. i. 5; x. 14. Angelic life of worshippers thus symbolized, 1 Kings vi. 36. Called "living creatures," Ezek. i. 5. Flapping of their wings, Ezek. x. 5. See *Mercy-seat*.
- Chesalon, Josh. xv. 10.
- Chesil (town), meaning and site of, Josh. xv. 30. Job ix. 9. Also a name of Nimrod, or of Orion, his heavenly representation in Canaanitish worship. A type of intellect abused, Josh. xv. 30.
- Child, used for grandchild, 1 Kings xv. 2. 13; xvi. 16. 2 Kings viii. 26; x. 1. 1 Chr. i. 17; ix. 11. 2 Chr. xi. 20; xxii. 2. Ezra v. 1; vii. 1. Dan. v. 1. 11. For heir, 1 Chr. iii. 16.
- Children, faithful, a blessing to faithful parents, Ps. cxxvii. 5.
- Childbirth, the metaphor of, how spiritually applied, Hos. xiii. 13.
- Chileab, why this name given to Daniel son of David, 2 Sam. iii. 3.
- Chilmad, Ezek. xxvii. 23.
- Chinnereth (or Chinneroth), sea of, described, Num. xxxiv. 11. Deut. iii. 17. Josh. xi. 2. 1 Kings xv. 20. Spoken of, Deut. xxxiii. 23. Scene of the Gospel's peaceful triumphs, Josh. xi. 2. Town of, Josh. xix. 35.
- Chisloth-tabor, Josh. xix. 12.
- Chittim (or Kittim), what countries so named, Gen. x. 4. Num. xxiv. 24. Isa. xxiii. 1. Ezek. xxvii. 6. Dan. xi. 30. Partial and complete fulfilment of Balaam's prophecy, Num. xxiv. 24.
- Chiuu, possibly the sun-god, Amos v. 26.
- Chictovii Elucidarium, cited, Hos. vi. 5.
- Chor-ashan, 1 Sam. xxx. 30.
- Christianity, a strong proof of its truth drawn from Isa. liii. Vol. v. Part 1. p. 153. Vain attempt to wrest the prophecy from its true meaning, *ib.*
- Christian Remembrancer, cited, Job vii. 4.
- Chronicles of Persian Kings, Esther ii. 23; vi. 2.
- Chronicles, the two Books of, an epitome of the Old Testament, Vol. iii. p. 167. Presuppose a knowledge of the earlier books (1 Chr. i. 17, 43; xi. 1—3; xii. 20; xxi. 9; xxviii. 11. 2 Chr. iii. 5, 6; iv. 6; viii. 2. 11; x. 2, 15; xvii. 3; xxi. 14; xxiii. 1; xxiv. 5; xxxii. 9—20. 24, 31; xxxvi. 8, 17), and add to them, 2 Sam. xxiv. 24. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xii. Lead us on to the books of Ezra, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22, and Nehemiah, 2 Kings xxv. 27. Synoptic rather than supplementary. Their date and titles in Hebrew and Greek, and place in Hebrew manuscripts, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xii. Case of the Gospels parallel, 2 Kings xii. 2. 2 Chr. x. 2. A summary of sacred history from the first Adam, looking onward to the second, Vol. iii. p. 167. Derived from numerous sources, Vol. iii. p. xii; and *note* 4. 1 Chr. ii. 9. 13. 18. Some genealogies it contains rather geographical, 1 Chr. ii. 42—52. Others have a special view to Christ, and are completed in the Gospels, Vol. iii. p. 167. As the Books of Kings develop the prophetic character of the Jewish dispensation, so these books the ecclesiastical, Vol. iii. p. xii. Written by Ezra, p. xiii. No grounds for assuming a later date furnished by 1 Chr. iii. 21; xxi. 1. Back references, 1 Chr. iv. 23, 43. Words peculiar to later Hebrew, 1 Chr. xxix. 1. 7. *Scriptio plena*, (see *Chaldaisms*), 1 Chr. ii. 15. Such a work appropriate after prophecy had well nigh ceased, the canon of the Old Testament was closing, and the Temple again the common centre of the nation, Vol. iii. pp. xiii, xiv. Material splendour now yielding place to spiritual privileges, in a settled state of the Church: a lesson to later times, pp. xiv, xv. The writer not unduly favourable to the priests, 1 Chr. xiii. 7. 2 Chr. xxiv. 3; xxix. 34; xxx. 15. Not prejudiced against the prophets, 1 Chr. xxix. 29. 2 Chr. xv. 1; xvi. 7; xx. 36. Synchronizing sections of these books with those of Samuel and Kings, Vol. iii. p. xv, *note* 3. List of incidents related in the one set of books, but not in the other, p. xvi, *note* 1. Rather adjustments than discrepancies, p. xix. 2 Kings xi. 4, 5. Adequate motives for this silence can often be traced, pp. xvi.—xviii. 1 Chr. xxii. 8. Gentleness of the writer of Chronicles, p. xvii, *note* 2: as in the case of David's great sin, 1 Chr. xx. p. 208. Charge of undue leaning to the Kings of Judah refuted, p. xvii. 2 Chr. ix. 28; xii. 1, 14; xx. 36; xxviii. 15. Especially in charity he is silent about Solomon's fall, 1 Chr. xx. p. 208. 2 Chr. ix. 28, and the schisms between Judah and Israel, which were well known but now healed, p. xviii. 1 Chr. xi. 1—3. The Books of Kings *Protestant*, those of the Chronicles *Catholic*, p. xviii. Tendency to omit particulars rendered obscure by lapse of time, 1 Chr. xix. 17. Chiefly records what might most edify a visible Church in a settled state, pp. xvii, xviii. 1 Chr. xii. p. 194. Narratives of the victories of Asa and Jehoshaphat, as also of the captivity and repentance of Manasseh, as given in 2 Chronicles, accounted for, p. xix. 2 Kings xxi. 17. 2 Chr. xiv. 9; xxxiii. 11. Judah's humiliation under Shishak enlarged upon, p. xix. Also Asa's sins, 1

- Kings xv. 23. Jehoash's guilt, 2 Kings xii. 2. 2 Chr. xxiv. 22, and Uzziah's sacrilege, 2 Chr. xxvi. 16. The chronology to be understood upon no supposition of alleged co-regencies and interregnums, but on the Talmud rule respecting regnal years, Vol. iii. p. xx. Table of regnal years of kings, pp. xx.—xxii. Some portions of these books ought to be read in our Churches, p. xxii. They often explain things ill-understood from the Books of Kings, and *vice versa*, 1 Kings ix. 1; xv. 14. 15. 17; xxii. 48. 2 Kings xi. 4. 5; xii. 5. 13. 17; xiv. 7. 8; xv. 5; xvi. 5; xvii. 2. 6; xviii. 15; xx. 12; xxii. 3; xxiv. 5. 1 Chr. xiv. 4. 12; xv. 26. 2 Chr. i. 11; ii. 10; iii. 6; iv. 1; v. 13; vi. 5; vii. 1. 13—16; viii. 5; ix. 13; xviii. 2; xxviii. 20. 23; xxxii. 3—8; xxxiv. 3. 8; xxxvi. 6. Hence the duty of studying both, 1 Kings xv. 23. 2 Kings xii. 2. 1 Chr. xxi. 20; xxviii. 11. 2 Chr. ix. 28. Both probably derived in part from earlier histories named, 1 Kings xiv. 19. 1 Chr. ix. 1; xxix. 29. 2 Chr. ix. 29; xii. 15; xiii. 22; xvi. 11. Their slight variations prove their mutual independence, 2 Kings xii. 21; xxii. 12. 1 Chr. vii. 2. 6; viii. 2; x. 10; xi. . . . 10; xvii. 6; xviii. 3. 6. 8; xix. 6. The rapid sketch in the Kings often filled up in the Chronicles, 2 Kings xviii. 4. Sources of history in the Chronicles often quite fresh in 1 Chr. iv. 41—43; vii. 21; viii. 6; ix. 22; xi. 3; xii. p. 194. 2 Chr. xi. 5—12. Language of the earlier books simply paraphrased, 1 Chr. xiv. 8—16.
- Chronology from Adam to the Flood, Gen. v. 21. Of the Flood, Gen. viii. 14. From Noah to Abraham, Gen. xi. 10. Of the wanderings in the wilderness, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 256. Ex. xl. 2. 17. Num. xxxiii. 15. Of the giving of the Law and gifts of the princes, Num. vii. 1; ix. 1. Of the last year in the wilderness, Deut. i. 3. That of the Book of Judges examined, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 83. Judg. xiii. 1. 1 Sam. vii. 15; xiii. 1. That of David's ancestors from Pharez, whether complete or not, Ruth iv. 20. Period of 480 years not rightly objected to, 1 Kings vi. 1. Table of regnal years of kings of Judah and Israel, Vol. iii. *Introd.* pp. xx—xxii. Chronology of the reigns of Asa and Baasha adjusted, 2 Chr. xv. 19; xvi. 1. The case of the two Jehorams examined, 2 Kings i. 17. 2 Chr. xxi. 1. Of the two kings Joash, 2 Kings xiii. 1. Of the accession of Uzziah, 2 Kings xv. 1. 8. Of Hezekiah's reign, Isa. xx. 1; xxxvi. 1. Table of order and dates of the prophetic books, Vol. v. Part 1. p. xxii. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxix. Table to illustrate the books of Jeremiah and Ezekiel, Vol. v. Part 2. pp. xviii, xix. Table of kings of Syria and Egypt, Dan. xi. 5. Chronology of the reign of Antiochus Epiphanes, Dan. viii. p. 38. Christ's birth placed four years too late, Dan. ix. p. 47.
- Chrysostom, S., his view of the Old Testament, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. viii. Cited, Gen. ii. 19; Vol. i. Part 1. p. 38. xx. 11; xxxi. 19. 30. 38; xxxv. 2; xxxviii. 1. 28; xlii. 13; xlv. 2; xlvii. 22. 31. Deut. viii. 4; xlii. 6; xxviii. 56. Josh. x. 12, 13. Judg. xi. 40. 1 Sam. i. 28; xiii. 14; xiv. 22. 2 Sam. xvi. 12; xviii. 9. 2 Chr. xxvi. 16. Ezra vii. 6. Vol. iv. Part 1. p. xvi, *note* 12. Job i. 1. 2. 5; ii. 7. 9; iii. 3; xix. 23. 25. 26; xxxi. 31; xxxii. p. 70; xxxviii. 41; xl. 15. 24; xlii. 13. Vol. iv. Part 2. pp. iv, v, ix, *note* 14. Ps. viii. 2; xxiii. p. 32; xxiv. 7; xlv. 16; xlvii. 5; lix. 3. 4. 8; lxi. 22; xevi. p. 152; cvii. 20; cix. p. 174; cx. 4; cxx. p. 196; cxxxvii. 9; cxlvii. 13. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xi. Prov. ix. 2; xxxi. 14. Jer. ii. 15. Isa. vii. 8, 9, 15; xi. 6—9; xiv. 12; xlviii. 16. Jer. x. 14—18. Ezek. iii. 26; iv. p. 165. Dan. ii. 40; viii. p. 38. Hos. iii. 5; xi. 1. Joel ii. 31. Amos iii. 7. Jonah iii. 3. Hagg. ii. 9. Mal. i. 11; iv. 6.
- Chrystal (i. e. glass), ancient Egyptians skilful in working, Job xxviii. 17.
- Chub, Ezek. xxx. 5.
- Church, the, typified by the Moon, Ex. xii. 18. Cant. vi. 10. Zech. iv. 11—14. By an army, Cant. vi. 4. By a tent, Isa. xxxiii. 20. Not built by man, Ps. cxxvii. 1. Her perpetuity typified, 1 Chr. xxviii. 18. How black, yet comely, Cant. i. 5. The Church both bridegroom and bride, hence both terms to be interpreted only spiritually, Isa. lxi. 10; lxii. 5. Her entire union with Christ, Jer. xxxiii. 15, 16. Reproached by her enemies, Ezra iv. 12. Each of us should look first to the part of her nearest home, Neh. iii. 10. Her work to be done in her own sphere and way, Cant. i. 8. Hith authority in controversies of faith, Deut. xvii. 12. Obedience due to her, Prov. xxx. 17. Doth what her ministers do rightly in their office, Josh. iv. 8. Equality of the several branches of the Church, Ezek. xvi. 61. No domineering local supremacy, Zech. xii. 7. Some branches, once flourishing, now remembered only by God, Josh. xix. 20. Eccles. iii. 2. Tried and proved by the assaults of foes, Judg. ii. 22; iii. 1. 2. Sometimes saved by the meanest instruments, 2 Kings vii. 16. Her small beginnings, Zech. iv. 10. Her gradual expansion, Ps. cv. p. 161. Why Christ left so much for His Apostles to do, Judg. ii. 23. While militant, her triumphs ever mingled with penitential sorrow, Ezra iii. 12. Comfort for those who mourn for her sorrows, Zeph. iii. 18, and build her up, Zech. viii. 12. Her victory envied by some who will not share her danger, Judg. viii. 1. 6; xii. 4. Her victory over stratagem, 2 Chr. xiii. 13. Test of a faithful Church, Jer. xxiii. 18. No other "Church of the future" to be looked for, Vol. v. Part 1. p. x. Unholy Churches of no worth, 1 Sam. iv. 4; vii. 12. When they become idolatrous their case almost desperate, 1 Sam. v. 5. Hence the rise of error must be watched, Ezek. xxxix. 14. 15. She must diffuse truth as well as refute error, 2 Kings iv. 43. Rejecting secular knowledge and superstition she must clearly utter the truth, Cant. viii. 11. 13. Her first love waxed cold, Cant. v. p. 141. Her progress often hindered by sorrows and trials, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. 82. God's chilling blasts, Ps. cxlvii. 16. Persecuted for others' sins, 2 Kings vi. 31. Her cry in distress, Ps. xiii. p. 16; xlv. 22—26. Often furthered by worldly revolutions, Jer. xxxix. 11. No violence must be done in her behalf, 2 Kings vi. 22. Men's indifference to her sufferings, Amos vi. 6; though she is used by designing persons as a political bulwark, 2 Kings xvi. 18. A burdensome stone to her foes, Zech. xii. 3. All assaults of her enemies bring her nearer home, 1 Sam. v. 10.
- Church-property secularized should bring a warning to its present possessors, Num. xviii. 32. Church building no proof of holiness, Neh. iii. 1. Easier to build a temple than to be one, 1 Kings xi. p. 45. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 85. Yet the Church helped on by rich and pious laymen, Neh. iii. 32. Destruction of Churches which have been used for corrupt worship considered, Deut. vii. 26.
- Church-rates, Ex. xxx. 12, due to God from England, 2 Chr. xvi. 7.
- Church-rules, may be modified by competent authority, 1 Chr. xxiii. 24.
- Chushan-rishathaim, meaning of, Judg. iii. 8. Cushite kings of Babylon, *ib.*
- Cicero, referred to, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. x. Cited, Gen. xlv. 5. Deut. xxxi. 9. 1 Kings xix. 18. Job xxviii. 1; xxxix. 19. Ps. ix. p. 12. Prov. iv. 23. Ezek. xxi. 21. Amos vi. 6. Hagg. ii. 7.
- Circumcision, like baptism, connected with a change of name, Gen. xvii. 5. Its spiritual import, *vs.* 10, 11. Deut. xxx. 6. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. xiv. Not derived by Abraham from Egypt or elsewhere, Gen. xvii. p. 81. True circumcision, Jer. ix. 25. 26. Question whether Egyptians, Moabites, &c., used the rite, *v.* 25. Why performed on the eighth day, Lev. ix. 1; xii. 2. Re-enacted in the Law, Lev. xii. 3. That at Gilgal after suspension in the wilderness, the reason, and its spiritual meaning, Josh. v. 2. How "the second time," *ib.* Ps. xii., used by Jews at circumcision, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. 16.
- City (Heb. *kareth*, whence Carthage, Cirta, &c.), mostly set on a hill, Job xxix. 7.
- Clarius, cited, Amos ix. 1.
- Clark, Samuel, cited, Jer. xxxix. 4.
- Claudian, cited, 2 Kings ix. 24.
- Clean and unclean animals for sacrifice, Gen. vii. 2. The ox a clean animal, Ps. lxi. 31. S. Luke symbolized by it, *ib.* Reference to food only, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 32. Deut. xii. 15. The law designed to bridle man's appetites, to restrict the privileges he had abused, to keep the people from the idolatry of Egypt, &c., and distinguish them from surrounding nations, also for health, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 32. These temporary restrictions, to be abolished in Christ, had also a moral and spiritual meaning, *ib.* General characteristics of prohibited creatures and moral significance of the laws, Lev. xi. 9. 13. The unclean were symbols to man of his own vicious propensities, Job xl. 15. Case of the locust, Lev. xi. 22. Thus by sin man having lost his dominion over the creation, his natural food becomes to him a cause of uncleanness, Lev. p. 36. Clean and unclean must not be yoked together; spiritually taken, Deut. xxii. 10. Abomination of eating swine's flesh, &c., Isa. lvi. 4; lxvi. 17. Clean and unclean confounded in the siege and famine, an emblem of the present condition of the Jews, Ezek. iv. 13.
- Cleanness of teeth, the term explained, Amos iv. 6.
- Clement, S., of Alexandria, referred to, Vol. iv. Part 1. p. xvi, *note* 12. Ps. lxxviii. 31. Cited, Isa. iii. 20; lvii. 6. Jer. i. 1.
- Clement, S., of Rome, cited, Gen. ii. 7; xviii. 27. Num. i. 47; xxi. 9. Josh. ii. 18. Esther vii. 9. Job iv. 16; v. 17—26; xv. 15; xix. 26; xxix. 18. Isa. lx. 9. 17. Jer. xxxiii. 18—22.
- Clergy, their duties apart from those of laymen, Num. i. 47. Warned, Hos. iv. 9. Bound to fight and build at once: to contend against Romanism and Rationalism, Neh. iv. 23.

- A wise and learned clergy check divisions, unbelief, and evil living, Prov. xxix. 18. Harmonious action of spirituality and temporality, Num. iii. 38. Vol. iii. p. 297. Ezra ii. 2. Neh. viii. 1; xiii. 11. Isa. xlix. 23. Not unfit for councillors of state, 1 Sam. iv. 18. To be shaved, Num. viii. 7, and so free from worldly care, *ib.* Deut. xviii. 2. Should not aim at self-display, Deut. xviii. 6, nor surrender unpopular truths, Jer. xv. 19, nor take to secular pursuits to the neglect of duty, Mal. ii. 3. Provision should be made for their leisure for meditation and study of God's word, 1 Sam. xxv. 25. Obligated to keep religious knowledge and secular so far as it helpeth to the same, Mal. ii. 7. Sad ignorance of Eastern clergy, of Roman mass priests, and of German ministers, *ib.* Their temptation in country parishes to lukewarm neutrality, Judg. v. 17. Abolition of their divinely appointed maintenance of tithes tempts them to a wandering life and superstitious devices for a livelihood, Judg. xvii. 9—11; xix. 1. A pauperized clergy brings God's service into contempt, Neh. xiii. 10. Clergy should be provided before churches, Prov. xxiv. 27.
- Clinton, Fynes, cited, Ezk. xii. 37. 2 Chr. xvi. 1; xxii. 2. Ezra iv. 7. Esther i. 1; ii. 1. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiii, *note* 1. Dan. viii. 14; ix. p. 47.
- Clouded, the term explained, Josh. ix. 5. Clouds and rags symbolical of the base things chosen of God, Jer. xxxviii. 13.
- Cocceius, cited, Isa. xxx. 7; lxvi. 17. Jer. xli. 20. Obad. 1. Codd. A., referred to, Isa. liii. p. 153.
- Colenso, J. W., a hope expressed that he may one day retract his contemptuous words against the holy oracles, Deut. i. 46. Cited, Gen. ii. 5—7; vi. 16; xxii. 2; xlix. 10. Ex. xi. 2. Vol. i. Part 2. pp. 195—198. 201. Deut. i. 1. 2. 6. 9. 22. 37. 46; ii. 5; v. 12—15; viii. 9; ix. 3; x. 6. 14. 30; xii. 5. 27; xvi. 2; xvii. 9; xviii. 15—19; xx. 6. 10; xxi. 11; xxvii. 1. 15; xxxiii. 1. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. ix, *note* 5. 2 Sam. vi. 6. 18. 1 Kings vii. 23. 2 Kings xxii. 8. Vol. v. Part 2. p. vii.
- Coliseum at Rome, Christianized, Zech. iv. 7.
- Collyridian heretics, their idolatrous worship to the Blessed Virgin, Jer. vii. 18.
- Colours, blue, purple, scarlet, of what respectively symbolical, Ex. xxv. 4. Blue the celestial and priestly colour, Num. xv. 39.
- Comforter (Heb. *Menachem*), a title of Christ, Isa. xl. 1: of the Holy Spirit, Nah. iii. 7.
- Commerce, its moral dangers, 1 Kings x. 29; xi. pp. 44, 45; xiv. 24. Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. ix; 86. Yet not necessarily injurious, Isa. xxiii. 15.
- Communion service of the Church of England vindicated from Scripture, Deut. xxvii. 16. No curse intended by David, 1 Sam. xxvi. 19.
- Common Prayer, the Book of, cited or referred to, Deut. xxvii. 16. Job iv. 1; xiv. 1; xix. 26. 27. Ps. xxv. 1; xxxix. p. 57; li. 5; lxvi. 6; lxxviii. 18; lxxix. 8; lxx. p. 109; xc. p. 145. Ps. xcv. p. 151; cx. p. 127; cxiv. p. 180; cxvi. 13; cxviii. 3. Isa. lxx. 16; lxxi. 13. Jer. iv. 4. Hos. xiii. 14; xiv. 8. Joel ii. 12. Mic. vii. 19. Zech. ix. 11. Mal. iii. 1; iv. 5. Its version of the Psalms, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xv. Ps. xxxvii. 37; xlii. 6; xlix. 8; lxxviii. 41; lxxxvii. 1; cv. 28; cxviii. 3; cxxix. 6; cxxxvi. 4. Its three Collects for Good Friday, Isa. li. 1. Its use proscribed, A.D. 1643, Dan. xii. 11.
- Conception, the Immaculate, of the Blessed Virgin falsely concluded from Gen. iii. 15. The dogma new, Ezek. xxviii. p. 221. Dan. vii. 25. Celebrated on a new festival, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xv. Dishonours Christ, Zech. xi. 17. Unknown to Jerome, Jer. i. 5. At variance with Pope Gregory the Great's teaching, Job xxxiii. 24. Date of its reception, Isa. lxvi. 17. Zech. xi. 17. See *Pius IX., Vulgate Version.*
- Concilium Carthaginiense, cited, Lev. xix. 27.
- Concubine, not endowed with the man's worldly goods, Judg. xix. 1. A state of degradation both of woman and of marriage, *ib.* In Persia her children could not inherit the throne, Esther i. 9. Symbolical of heresy and schism, Cant. vi. 8. Yet shall at last acknowledge the Bride's beauty, and many will return to the Unity of the Church, v. 9.
- Coney (Heb. *shaphan*), or jerboa, described, Ps. civ. 18. Prov. xxx. 26.
- Confession, twofold, Dan. ix. 3, 4. Without obedience useless, Num. xiv. 40. 44.
- Confiscation of an exile's property ordinary in the East, 2 Kings viii. 6.
- Confusion of tongues, how provoked, Gen. xi. 4. Counterpart to Pentecostal gift of tongues, v. 9. One language only in heaven, Zeph. iii. 9. Speech God's special gift to man, Gen. ii. 19.
- Conscience, a fallible guide (unless regulated by God's will, Prov. iii. 5; xvi. 2; xx. 27; xxi. 2. Jer. xvii. 9, 10), and no excuse for sin, Lev. iv. 2; v. 17—19. 2 Sam. xii. 5. Appeal to it, Gen. xxxviii. 26. False conscience, Jer. xlv. 19. A light kindled by God in man, taking cognizance of his acts, Prov. xx. 27. Error of Hobbes, and even of Locke, *ib.* Coercion needed by those who will not listen to it, v. 30.
- Conscience clauses in schools would have been disapproved by S. Augustine, Ezek. xxxiv. 4.
- Consecrate (Heb. *fill the hand*), the term explained of unction, Ex. xxix. 9. 1 Kings xiii. 33. Ezek. xliii. 26; and of offerings, Lev. viii. 22. 2 Chr. xiii. 9. Equivalent to "perfect," Ex. xxix. 9. Lev. viii. 14. All places considered consecrated for sacrifice at which God had appeared, Deut. xii. 5.
- Constance, Council of, (A.D. 1414—18), Ezek. xvii. 15.
- Constantine, the emperor's motto of victory, Ex. xv. 10. His basilica at Hebron, Gen. xiii. 18; xviii. 1. Builds up the Church, 1 Kings v. 1. Zech. i. 20. He and his mother Helena build up that at Jerusalem, Isa. lx. 10.
- Constantinople, great Council of, its acts cited, Isa. liv. 1. Second Council of, Amos ix. 14, 15.
- Constructio prægnaus, Jer. xli. 7.
- Continual or daily offerings of the Law enumerated, Dan. viii. 11; xii. 11.
- Cook, F. C., Canon, cited, Vol. iv. Part 1. p. xvi, *note* 12. Job xix. 26; xxxi. 26; xxxii. pp. 70. 72.
- Corderius, cited, Job xl. 17; xlii. 14. His Catena on the Psalms, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xiii, *note* 10. Ps. i. p. 2; xxxi. 22; lix. 11; lxi. 6.
- Corn parched, made of the new harvest, a delicacy in Palestine, Josh. v. 11.
- Corner, uniting two walls, Zech. x. 4.
- Corporate existence of nations regarded by God, Deut. xxiii. 8; xxix. 2. Josh. iv. 23; vii. 1. Judg. xix. 30. 1 Kings viii. 48. Neh. ix. 33. Ps. lxxxi. 5. 7. Isa. xxxvii. 1, 2, 3. Acts of rulers and people closely connected, 2 Sam. xxiv. 1. The Hebrew nation never dies, Ps. cxxii. 6. Even heathen nations degraded by sin, Prov. xiv. 34. A rod is planted by God for nations entering on a course of sin, Ezek. vii. 10. As nations have no future life, their sins never go unpunished by the Moral Governor of the world, 2 Sam. xxi. 1. Ezek. xiv. 21.
- Co-redeemer, a title blasphemously given to the Blessed Virgin, Lev. xvi. 17.
- Corrodi, cited, Zech. ix. p. 136.
- Cosin, Bp., cited, Ezra vii. 6. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 278, *note* 7.
- Cotelerius, cited, Jer. ix. 25.
- Cotton, Archd., his edition of the Macabees, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xvi, *note* 3.
- Councils, general, should be assembled by Christian princes, Num. x. 2. 1 Chr. xxiii. 2. Their use for the decision of controversies, Deut. xvii. 9. The Four, 2 Kings iv. 41. That of Trent, Vol. iii. p. 361, *note* 4.
- Couriers (*ἄγγελοι*) of eastern princes symbolize preachers of the gospel, Isa. lxvi. 20.
- Courts, Christian, the duty of resorting to them, Deut. xvii. 8. Causes divided into spiritual and civil, v. 9. Deut. xxxi. 9. 2 Chr. xix. 11. Considered as bearing on the Royal Supremacy, Deut. xvii. 9. Christian priests have judicial authority in controversies concerning Divine Truth, Ezek. xli. 24.
- Courts of the Temple, their arrangement and elevations, 1 Kings vi. 36. The new court, 2 Chr. xx. 5. The outer court, Jer. xxi. 14. The higher or inner court, Jer. xxxvi. 10. Spot where Zechariah was stoned, 2 Chr. xxiv. 21.
- Covenant, ratified by sacrifice (*ἁγία τέλει*), Gen. xv. 10, 11. Jer. xxxiv. 18. God's covenant with men depends on their faith and obedience, Mal. ii. 5. How that of Moses becomes also a Testament through Christ's death, Ex. xxiv. 6. Lev. vii. 38. A general term for Judaism, Dan. xi. 22. That made to the new generation in the wilderness contains plainer gospel promises than did the earlier one, Deut. xxix. 1. Their covenant with God the only sure bond between king and people, 2 Kings xi. 17. Legal covenant, two copies of kept, Jer. xxxii. 11. See *Salt*.
- Cowley, cited, 2 Kings ii. 11.
- Cowper, W., cited, Lev. xi. 6.
- Coxe, W. II., cited, Isa. xviii. p. 51.
- Cranmer, Archbp., his crest of three pelicans, Ps. cii. 6.
- Crassus, his miserable end, Zech. xii. 3.
- Creature-worship, its very semblance not tolerated by angels, Josh. v. 13. A denial of the Creator, Job xxxi. 28. Must be put away in the Church, 2 Sam. v. 6. 21. 2 Chr. xv. 8. Hos. viii. 10. A snare in these last days, 1 Chr. vii. 12. Ezek. xxiii. 20. That practised in some Churches a hindrance to the conversion of the Jews, Hos. iii. 4. Mic. vii. 8.
- Credner, cited, Jer. xlix. 7. Ezek. p. 278, *Retrospect*, *note* 7.
- Creed of Christendom, cited, Hos. xi. 1. Creeds of Nice and Constantinople, Cant. ii. 15; v. 9. Creeds spring from heresy, as honey from the lion's carcase, Judg. xiv. 9. Are

- warnings and mementos of God's goodness, Ezek. xxxix. 15. Hated in these times, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xviii. Yet cannot now be impaired or affected, Vol. v. Part 1. p. xiii. Though men would fain recast them to the needs of the age, Mal. iii. 17. Articulate utterances of the early Church's faith, Cant. ii. 14.
- Crimean war, its cost to England, Dan. xi. 38.
- Criticism, perverse, regards the variations between the several parts of Scripture as discrepancies, the precise resemblances as servile imitation, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xv. Its character arbitrary, Jer. xlii. 4, and uncertain, Obad. p. 57. Blind for lack of spiritual discernment, Jer. vii. 22. By self-confident contempt for all ancient authorities overshoots its mark, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 77. Sets at nought evidence both external and internal, p. 87, *note* 4.
- Cresus, king of Lydia, Dan. ii. 5.
- Crops of Egypt, accurately described, Ex. ix. 31. 32. Those of Palestine, Josh. v. 11.
- Cross, the sign of, Gen. xlviii. 14. Ex. xvii. 11. A punishment common among the Persians, Ezra vi. 11. Esther ii. 23; v. 14. Typical reference to Christ, Vol. iii. p. 364. Esther v. 14; vii. 9. His royal throne, Isa. lxiii. 3. So Lam. iii. 64—66. His chariot of wood of Lebanon, Cant. iii. 9.
- Ctesias, cited, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. Ezra iv. 7; vii. 1. Neh. ii. 6. 8. Esther i. 9. 11; ii. 1. 23; x. 1. Dan. iii. 5. Nah. ii. 1.
- Cubical form of Holy of Holies, spiritualized, Vol. iii. p. 20. Indicated moral perfection even among the heathen, 1 Kings vi. 16.
- Cubit, length of, Gen. vi. 15. That "of a man," the common one of eighteen inches, Deut. iii. 11.
- Cultivation of the intellect no safeguard against moral corruption. The golden age of intellect often the iron age of man's heart, 1 Kings xiv. 24.
- Cup of divination, Joseph's, a moral touchstone to his brethren, Gen. xlv. 2. 5. Cup of Christ's agony becomes a cup of joy, Ps. xvi. 5. Eucharistic cup of blessing derived from the peace offering, Ps. cxvi. 13. "Cup of consolation," Jer. xvi. 7.
- Cureton, Dr., referred to, 2 Kings viii. 8.
- Curtius, Q., cited, 2 Sam. x. 18; xxiii. 16. Esther i. 7; iii. 2; vi. 8. Isa. xlii. 20. Jer. i. 16. Ezek. xxvi. p. 215. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xii, *notes* 5 and 6; p. xiv. Dan. iii. 5; v. 2; vi. 7; viii. 7. Hab. ii. 5. 15. 16. Zech. ix. 1.
- Cusa, Card., cited, Dan. vii. 25.
- Cush, (1) *Ethiopia*, its wide significance, Gen. x. 6. Isa. xi. 11. (2) A person unknown, Ps. vii. p. 9.
- Cushan, Hab. iii. 7.
- Cushi, 2 Sam. xviii. 21.
- Cuthah, located, 2 Kings xvii. 24.
- Cuvier, cited, Gen. vii. 19.
- Cypress, rather pine or holm, Isa. xliv. 14.
- Cyprian, S., cited, Gen. xvii. 10, 11; xix. 24. Lev. x. 2. Josh. ii. 19. 2 Sam. xxi. 1. Prov. i. 8; viii. 22; ix. 2; xxx. 17. Isa. iii. 20; xiv. 12; lxiii. 1. Vol. v. Part 2. p. x, *note* 2. Jer. i. 5; ii. 13; xi. 19; xxxi. 22. Hos. vi. 2. Mal. i. 11.
- Cyril, S., of Alexandria, characterized, Lev. vii. 38. Deut. xxv. 4. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxiv. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. viii. P. E. Pusey's edition of his Commentary on the minor prophets, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxix. Cited, Gen. xlii. 9; xxxiii. 4; xxxvii. 3. 13; xlviii. 20; xlix. 8. 9. 20. Ex. xiv. 19; xvi. 26; xxi. 22. Lev. i. 9; iv. 6. 12. 27; vi. 26; vii. 38; xiii. 2; xiv. 6. 8; xxi. 13; xxii. 12. 27; xxiii. 11. 18. 34. Num. vi. 7. 12; xi. 26; xv. 35; xvii. 8; xxxi. 16. 23; xxxv. 25. Deut. ix. 20; xiii. 3; xx. 5; xxi. 23; xxii. 13—21; xxiii. 2. 3. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 30. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. vii. 1 Kings vi. 16. Job xxix. 18; xl. 15. Ps. xvi. 5; xxxv. p. 49; v. 5; xl. 2; lxviii. 4. 13; lxxii. 8; lxxx. 3. Prov. viii. 22. Cant. iii. 9. 11. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xvii. Isa. i. 1. 26; ii. 2; iv. 1. 5; vii. 12. 14. 15; viii. 3. 6; ix. 1; xii. 1. 21—25; xxv. 6; xxvi. 19; xxvii. 1. 13; xxviii. 14; xxix. 3. 17. 24; xxx. p. 89; v. 33; xxxii. 4. 20; xxxiii. 16; xxxv. 1. 5. 6; xli. 2. 15; xliii. 3; xlviii. 16; lii. 11; liii. 1; lvi. 10; lix. 20; lx. 1; lxii. 3. 10; lxiii. 1. 18; lxxi. 7—9. Jer. xlii. 4. Ezek. viii. 14; xxix. 18. Dan. vii. 6. Hos. i. 2; ii. 21, 22; vi. 2. Joel i. 4; ii. 1. Amos i. 1; ix. 1. Mic. i. 9; iv. 3; v. 3. Nah. i. 15. Hab. ii. 1. Zech. i. 18; ii. 1. 2. 12; iii. 2. 8. 9. 10; iv. 2. 7; v. p. 130; vi. 1—8. 13; viii. 20—22. 23; ix. 7. 9. 10. 11. 13. 17; x. 11; xi. 1. 2. 3. 4. 8. 15; xii. 5. 6. 8. 10; xiii. 1; xiv. 5. 8. 18. Mal. i. 2. 3. 11; iii. 1; iv. 2. 5.
- Cyril, S., of Jerusalem, referred to, Isa. lx. 10. Ezek. xxxvii. 12. Cited, Lev. viii. 3. Josh. iii. 7. Job xix. 26. Dan. vii. 7. Hab. iii. 2.
- Cyrus, or *Koresh* (i. e. sun, Ezra i. 8. Isa. xlii. 1. Dan. xi. 2), foretold by name 140 years before his birth, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. Isa. xlv. 28. With only three other persons, types of Christ, *ib.* This name perhaps official, *ib.* His original name, Isa. xlv. 4. His Scripture titles, Isa. xlv. 28. Probably instructed by Daniel in Isaiah's and Jeremiah's prophecies, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. Ezra i. 2. Isa. xiv. 1; xlv. 26. In what particulars a type of Christ, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. Vol. iii. p. 296. Isa. xl. p. 115; xlv. 28. Jer. i. 44—46. Mic. ii. 12. How called "righteousness," Isa. xli. 2; xlv. 13. God's instrument in doing His work, Ps. cxlvi. 3. Zech. i. 20. Hence "blessed," Ps. cxxxvii. 9. How God's Shepherd, Jer. i. 44. Hab. i. 6. God's "hammer" or maul, Jer. li. 20. His decree (n. c. 536), Dan. ix. 2. Hagg. p. 113. Contrasted with Pharaoh, Ezra i. 1, and with idolatrous Persian kings, v. 2. How called king of Babylon, Ezra v. 13. His last days, Ezra iv. 5. The deliverance of the Jews by him a pledge of their more glorious restoration in Christ, Isa. xliii. 5, 7. 16, 17. 19; xlviii. 16; li. 3—7. Mic. ii. 13; iv. 10. Nah. p. 87. Zeph. p. 105. Zech. p. 120. Disappears in prophecy to make room for the Antitype, Isa. xlviii. p. 142. Christ the world's Cyrus, Isa. liii. 12.
- Daberah, Josh. xix. 12.
- Dagon, the idol, described, Judg. xvi. 23. Zeph. i. 9. His shameful fall indicates the infatuation of idolatry, 1 Sam. v. 3—5.
- Dahler, cited, Jer. xv. 14; xxxi. 26; xl. 5; xli. 9; xlii. 12; xlv. 19; xlix. 25.
- Damascus, the oldest city in the world, Gen. xv. 2. Proposed Jewish quarter, 1 Kings xx. 34. Taken by the Assyrians, 2 Kings xvi. 9; and by Nebuchadnezzar, Jer. xlix. 22. 27. Fiercest enemy of the Jews in Solomon's age, Cant. vii. 4. Its burden, Isa. xvii. 1. Amos i. 3. Leant upon by Samaria like a couch, Amos iii. 12. Compare Amos v. 27. Conquered by Parmenio: its typical meaning, Zech. ix. 1.
- Dan, his place in the list of tribes, Num. i. 4. A standard-bearer and numerous, Num. i. 38; ii. 26. The reward of the host, Num. x. 25. How resembling the serpent, Gen. xlix. 17. A corrupt judge and idolatrous, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 81. Judg. xviii. 30. Hence omitted in the list of tribes in 1 Chr. vii. and the Apocalypse, 1 Chr. vii. 12. Moses' blessing upon him proved authentic from its great obscurity, Deut. xxxiii. 22. The tribe a by-word in Scripture, 1 Chr. vii. 12. Jer. iv. 15. Its inheritance drawn last and near Judah, how typical, Josh. xiv. 40. Its degeneracy, Judg. i. 34. Punishment for betraying Samson, Judg. vi. 5. Danite settlement in the north, Judg. xviii. 1. 7: tainted with idolatry, *vs.* 10. 30. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 288. Dan's name set last, 1 Chr. xxvii. 22. Two cities named Dan, Deut. xxxiv. 1. The question examined, Gen. xiv. 14. 1 Kings xii. 29; xv. 20.
- Dan, or *Vedan*, Ezek. xxvii. 19.
- Dan-jaan, 2 Sam. xxiv. 6.
- Daniel, known to Ezekiel, Ezek. xiv. 14; xxviii. 3. Dan. i. 21. Prophet of the latter days, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. v. His significant name and history, *ib.* Dan. i. 7; x. 1. Its change does not change the man, Dan. i. 7. His later fortunes, p. viii. A prophet, prince, and statesman, p. ix. Particulars detailed wherein he is a type of Christ, p. xix. Dan. vi. 6. 17. His last vision in the third year of Cyrus (B.C. 534), pp. xx. 47, 48. Dan. xi. 1. His end and character, *ib.* An enmich, Dan. i. 3. His pious submission, *vs.* 8. 9. His modesty, *v.* 17; ii. 36. Joseph reproduced, Dan. ii. 30. 46—49; v. 7. His loyalty, though neglected, *v.* 11; Dan. viii. 27, or persecuted, Dan. vi. 21. Public testimony to his supernatural wisdom, Dan. vi. 2. Great results, known and unknown, of his work, pp. 25, 26. His faithful boldness, Dan. vi. 10. Properties of his prayer, *ib.* Did not court persecution, *ib.* In Susa only in vision, Dan. vii. 2. Observes Jewish ritual in his inner life, Dan. ix. 21. How "greatly beloved," compared with the beloved disciple, *v.* 23; p. 48. Encouraged, Dan. x. 21.
- Daniel, book of, well known to Ezra and Nehemiah, Vol. iii. p. 320. Ezra ix. 7. Dan. ix. 3, 4: to Zechariah, Zech. i. 18; vi. 2, and to Persian kings, Vol. iii. p. 365, *note* 3. Dan. vi. p. 25. A manual of the faithful in times of trial. Its general design, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. v. Why partly written in Chaldean, Dan. ii. 4. Extends over seventy years, p. ix. Dan. i. 21. Attacks on this book have raised defenders, and strengthened our belief in its genuineness, authenticity, and inspiration, p. v. Objection arising from alleged objectless waste of miraculous powers refuted, Dan. ii. pp. 3, 4; iii. pp. 9, 10; *vs.* 28—30; *v.* p. 25. p. 47. Alleged difficulties solved, Dan. ii. 1; iv. 6. 15. 34; v. 1; viii. 2. Reveals intimate knowledge of the subject in Dan. ii. 2. 5; iii. 2. 5; vi. 8. An authentic state paper, Dan. iv. 1. 8. Seasonable variations of style, Dan. ii. 20; iv. 28. Alleged Greek words discussed, Dan. iii. 5. Argument against Daniel's statements from silence

of other testimony disowned, Dan. iv. p. 14. Reveals a Moral Governor of the world, as discerned in universal history, p. v. Especially in the preservation of God's people and the humiliation of Nebuchadnezzar, p. vi. Fuller development of this truth in Belshazzar's overthrow and transfer of his kingdom to the Medes and Persians, p. vii. And in Daniel's fortunes under Darius the Mede, p. viii. All being parts of one uniform plan, p. ix. Designed to comfort the Jews in such persecutions as that of Antiochus Epiphanes, and Christ's Church in its great conflict with Antichristianism, *ib.* Dan. iv. 37; xi. 21. 31. Miracles and prophecies of this book indissolubly linked, all tending to the manifestation of Christ as our Redeemer, Almighty Ruler, and Universal Judge, p. ix. Exemplified in vision of the four great empires, in ch. ii.; and the prophetic episode, respecting the second and third of them, in ch. viii.; p. x. Dan. vi. p. 29. Proof of Daniel's inspiration afforded by the visions in the first and third (Dan. viii. 1) years of Belshazzar (complement of Nebuchadnezzar's, Dan. vi. p. 29), in the first of Darius (Dan. xi. 1), and the third of Cyrus, considered, p. x. delivered at periods when their fulfilment seemed very improbable, especially as to the power of Persia (Dan. vii. 1; viii. 4), and a king of Greece (Dan. viii. 5), p. xi. Prophecy becomes history, *ib.* Design of these prophecies (Dan. viii. 1) in the exploits and end of Alexander the Great, pp. xii, xiii, and *note* 1. His kingdom divided into four (Dan. viii. 22) fulfils prophecy in its minutest details, p. xiii. All these successively raised up as God's mere instruments, and have their probation, *ib.* Taught by prophecy we read history aright, p. xiv. Alexander's real mission as a pioneer of Christ stated, *ib.* All lead on to the everlasting kingdom of Christ, which shall crush the nations of Europe that spring from the Roman empire, whose government is that of the sword, and will be eventually antagonistic to Christianity, p. xv. This kingdom shall endure to the end, Dan. vii. 12. How diverse from all others, v. 23. This portion of the book pre-adjusted to the Apocalypse, where it is first symbolized in its composite character, v. 7. Daniel also prophecies of the Roman Papacy, a mysterious power rising up out of the Roman empire, p. xv. The little horn proved to refer to it, Dan. vii. 8. How it changes times and laws, v. 25. Power of persecuting infidelity depicted in Antiochus Epiphanes, who hurt the Jews mainly from within, by corruption of the priesthood, e.g. Jason, Menelaus (Dan. viii. 10. 12. 23; xi. 22. 23). Alcimus, pp. xvi, 47, 48. Dan. x. 20; xi. 31. 32. Chronology of his reign expounded, Dan. viii. p. 33. Process of secularization and greizing (Dan. viii. 11) resisted by a faithful few, the Maccabees, Eleazar, &c., p. xvii. The 2300 days represent six years of desolation of Jerusalem in Antiochus' reign, Dan. viii. 14: the 1335 days, what portion of it, Dan. xii. 12. These things to be transferred in a figure to ourselves, as a warning against the unbelief, the secularization, and rationalism of these last days (Dan. viii. 17. 23; xi. 35. 36), when creeds and catechisms are proscribed, pp. xvii, xviii. But infidelity itself, as being foretold, only strengthens the Christian's faith, p. xviii. Where foretold elsewhere, *ib.* Daniel alone specifies the exact date of Christ's coming, and tells of a suffering Messiah, pp. xviii, xix. This evidence not destroyed, even if with modern Porphyries we bring the book as low as the age of the Maccabees, p. xix. Other proofs that it could not have been written thus late, Dan. i. 7. *Angelophany* of Daniel, p. xix. Purport of his last vision, unravelling the complex skein of Syrian and Egyptian politics, pp. xx, 47, 48. Most of his prophecies already written in capital letters in history, p. xxi. This shown in detail, Dan. xi. 6—32. A few named (Dan. xii. 1. 2) yet unfulfilled, p. xxii. This book authenticated by Christ, Dan. vii. 13; xii. 2. 3. 12, and St. Paul, Dan. vii. 8: also in Epistle to Hebrews, Dan. vi. 7. 22. List of commentators on this book, p. xxi.

Daric (*dracm*), the name whence derived: its value and bearing on the date of the Books of Chronicles, 1 Chr. xxix. 7. Ezra ii. 69; viii. 27. Dan. v. 31.

Darius, an official name, Dan. v. 31. (1) The Mede, colleague of Cyrus, Ezra ii. 1. His identity with Cyaxares II., as immediate successor of Belshazzar, Dan. v. 31; ix. 1. Reigned two years, commencing B.C. 538, v. 2; Dan. xi. 1. His self-dedication, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. viii. (2) Son of Hystaspes "Conservator;" reigned B.C. 521—486, Ezra iv. 5. 24; vi. 10. Dan. xi. 2. Hagg. i. 1. His provinces, Dan. vi. 1. His decree, B.C. 518, Ezra vi. 14. Why called king of Assyria, v. 22. Influence of Daniel's prophecies on his mind, Vol. iii. p. 365, *note* 3. (3) The Persian, Nothus (not Codomanus), B.C. 424—404, Neh. xii. 22. Error of Josephus respecting him, Neh. xiii. 28.

Darkness, spiritual (Ex. x. 21. 23); of the Jews, Deut. xxviii. 29.

Darling, Biblical use of the Hebrew word, Prov. iv. 3. A feminine denoting tenderness, Ps. xxii. 20; xxxv. 17.

Date cakes, still used to provision caravans, 2 Sam. xvi. 1.

Dathe, cited, Jer. iii. 1.

Daughters, in their quiet beauty compared to Caryatides, Ps. cxliv. 12. The term equivalent to dependent towns, 1 Chr. xviii. 1. Neh. xi. 25. Ps. xlviii. 11. Cant. i. 5. Jer. xlix. 2. Ezek. xxvi. 6.

David, king, prophet, and patriarch, 1 Chr. xxii. 1. How called a man after God's heart, 1 Sam. xiii. 14. The man of God, 2 Chr. viii. 11. In what respects a type of Christ, 1 Sam. xvi. 11. 12. 23; xvii. 16. 18. 25. 39. 40. 51. 54; xviii. 27; xxi. 5. 11. 14; xxii. 3; xxx. 13. 2 Sam. i. 18; iii. 33; v. 1. 11; viii. p. 88; xv. 6. 11. 13. 15; x. 7—10. 17; xii. 30; xv. p. 104; xv. 18. 20; xix. 14. 15. 16. 17. Ps. iii. p. 5. v. 8. iv. p. 6; v. 12; vii. 12; xvi. p. 19; v. 2; xviii. p. 22; xx. p. 26; v. 8; xxi. p. 27; xv. 11. 12; xxvii. 14; xxx. 3. 5; xxxi. 11. 22; xxxv. p. 49; xl. 9. 12; xli. 8. 9. 10; lv. 2. 7. 9. 21. 23; lvii. p. 86; lix. 3. 4; lxi. p. 105; xv. 3. 4. 8. 12. 36. Christ called by his name, Zech. iv. 6. His age when anointed, 1 Sam. xvi. 11. How unknown to Saul after the death of Goliath, 1 Sam. xvii. 55. Typical significance of the fact, *ib.* His false dealing why recorded, 1 Sam. xxi. 2; xxvii. 10. 11. His speech to the High Priest explained, 1 Sam. xxi. 5. His behaviour at Gath, illustrated by Ps. xxiv. p. 47. His receiving the distressed typical of the Gospel, 1 Sam. xxii. 2. Cuts Saul's robe when he had put it away, 1 Sam. xxiii. 4. Yet loyally repents even of this, *ib.* His renewed clemency to Saul, 1 Sam. xxvi. 8. His remonstrance with Saul paraphrased, v. 19. 20. His passing distrust in God, 1 Sam. xxvii. 1: and ambiguous speech, 1 Sam. xxviii. 2. Their evil consequences, 1 Sam. xxi. 2; xxx. 1. Repents in his distress, 1 Sam. xxx. 6. His royalty attested by the spirit of Samuel, 1 Sam. xxvii. 17. Gradual extension of his kingdom typical, 2 Sam. ii. 11. Gradual loss of power to Joab, perhaps caused by polygamy, v. 13. 1 Chr. xiv. 3: and led to his great sin, 2 Sam. xi. 3. "Eglah, his wife," 1 Chr. iii. 3. Yet this sin of David's typical of the increase of the Church, 2 Sam. iii. 2; v. 13. Recall of Michal typical of the Divine mercy, 2 Sam. iii. 16. His extravagant anger and deep tenderness at Abner's death, v. 29. 33. Want of courage to punish Joab, v. 39. Evil men's deeds procure his rise, 2 Sam. v. 1. The muster to him in Horeb, 1 Chr. xii. 23. 24. His tenderness to Saul's memory, 1 Chr. xiii. 3. His triumphant entry into Jerusalem, and burning the idols, typical of Christ's victory and Ascension, 2 Sam. v. 6. 9. 21; vi. 14; viii. p. 88; v. 2. His children, 2 Sam. v. 14—16. Not free from Uzzah's blame, 2 Sam. vi. 9. 1 Chr. xv. 13. Why he brought not the Tabernacle from Gibeon to join the Ark at Zion, 1 Chr. xv. 1; xxii. 1. His action typical, 1 Chr. xv. 1. His exaltation, 1 Chr. xvii. 17. Promise of a kingdom for ever (Jer. xxxiii. 17), referring in a subordinate sense to Solomon (*the Peaceable*), not fully accomplished till Christ's second coming, 2 Sam. vii. p. 85; v. 10. 11. 12. 13. Ps. lxi. 6. Hos. iii. 4. 5. Hagg. ii. 21—23. The spiritual portion of the promise unconditional, 2 Sam. vii. 14. In his spiritual and temporal elevation assailed by Satan from without in vain, from within successfully, 2 Sam. viii. p. 88; xi. p. 93. His tender regard for his oath to Jonathan, 2 Sam. ix. 1. 3. In his personal sins a contrast to Christ, not a type of him, 2 Sam. xi. p. 94. Yet exhibits in his history Christ bearing our sins, *ib.* and p. 99. Date of his great sin, 2 Sam. xi. 1. His other sins were of infirmity, not presumptuous or wilful, 1 Kings xv. 5. His hardness of heart, 2 Sam. xii. 5. His true repentance contrasted with Saul's, v. 13. His severe judgment upon his enemies a prophetic warning, v. 31. Cp. 1 Chr. xx. 3. Twenty years punishment of his forgiven sin, p. 99. Sends back the Ark in self-sacrifice, not in disregard to visible forms, 2 Sam. xv. 25. In his tears at Olivet, v. 30, and mercy to Shimei, resembles Christ, 2 Sam. xvi. 9. In his stratagem with regard to Hushai, 2 Sam. xv. 34, and hasty credence of Ziba, a contrast with Christ, 2 Sam. xvi. 4. Yet in his gracious amnesty foreshadows God's merciful pardon, Ps. lxxxv. p. 135; v. 10. Doubtless had God's special warrant for avenging the Gibeonites, and so acted as a magistrate, 2 Sam. xxi. 6, from no feeling of revenge, v. 11. 12. In his song seems to link the ancient Hebrew Church with the Church Universal, 2 Sam. xxii. 8. 11. 15. 17. 44; uniting his song with those of Moses and Hannah, v. 50, 51. Looking far beyond David to Christ's sufferings and glory, Ps. xvii. p. 22. His last words as a prophet give his profession of faith, 2 Sam. xxiii. p. 126: the kernel of the Messianic Psalms, v. 3, 4, 5. Compared with Balaam's utterances, v. 1. Their vehemence, brevity, and abruptness, paraphrased, v. 3—7. His self-control respecting the water of Bethlehem, both a moral and typical lesson, v. 16. Sin of number-

- ing the people (1 Chr. vii. 2) consisted not in the act, but in the vain-glorious spirit that prompted it, 2 Sam. xxiv. 2. 1 Chr. xxi. 1; xxvii. 23. David now a Nathan to himself, 2 Sam. xxiv. 8. 11. 1 Chr. xxi. 8. His choice how disinterested, 2 Sam. xxiv. 14. Harmony of the three or seven years of famine, 1 Chr. xxi. 12. Accepts his punishment, as Christ did ours, v. 17. Forgets the people's sins in his own, 2 Sam. xxiv. 17. Like Abraham, in his sacrifice on Moriah, typifies that of Christ, v. 21. 1 Chr. xxi. 24. 30. His prophetic utterance on Moriah, 1 Chr. xxii. 1. His relation to Abishag considered in its moral lessons, and the spiritual contrast between it and that of Christ with his Church, 1 Kings i. 2. 3. The grand scene of his last days described in the Chronicles (Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xvii), when he convoked the great National Assembly, and seemed endued for a time with almost supernatural vigour, 1 Chr. xxviii. 2. Ps. xxxviii. p. 55; xxxix. v. 13; xl. p. 58. v. 9; xli. vv. 3. 8. 13; lxix. p. 105; lxx. p. 109; lxxi. 9. 18. 23; must be regarded as the complement of the weakness depicted in 1 Kings, Vol. iii. pp. 1. 222. His elaborate preparations to build the Temple no fiction, 1 Chr. xxii. 2. David prepares, Solomon executes: how typical, *ib.* His consecrated treasures have a spiritual meaning, v. 14. His authority from God to regulate holy things, 1 Chr. xxiii. 24. 2 Chr. xxxv. 4. His hosts, 1 Chr. xxvii. 1. His military system formed early in his reign, v. 7. His last charge to Solomon, not vindictive, but given by a king to one now king, prescribing acts of justice. Yet moreover typical of the righteous judgment of Christ, 1 Kings ii. p. 5. Urges punishment upon Joab on public, not personal, grounds, v. 5. In his solemn warnings to king and people resembles Jacob and Moses when dying, 1 Chr. xxviii. 4. 8. Buried in the city, 1 Kings ii. 10, but the exact site uncertain, Neh. iii. 16. His line by virtue of God's promise never failed, 1 Chr. xxii. 10, though often hanging by a thread, 1 Kings xi. 43.
- David's house, became as God in the mystery of the Incarnation, Zech. xii. 8. So that we dwell in Christ, *ib.*
- David's worthies, the account in 2 Sam. x. 3, xxiii. belongs to a somewhat different period to that in 1 Chr. xi. xx. Why both positions appropriate, 1 Chr. xi. 10; xx. 4. Not to be forced into verbal coincidence, 2 Sam. xxiii. 8, 9. 1 Chr. xi. 10. Their independence, *ib.* A variation adjusted, 1 Chr. xi. 13. Names unknown to men recorded in God's Martyrology, 2 Sam. xxiii. 13.
- Davidson, Dr. S., cited, Gen. ii. 5—7. Num. xxiv. 14. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 201, *note* 7. Deut. vii. 14; xvii. 14; xxiv. 8. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. ix, *note* 5. 1 Chr. i. 36; ii. 6. 2 Chr. xx. 22; xxi. 12; xxiii. 1; xxviii. 20. Ezra i. 1. Vol. iii. p. 360, *note* 3. Esther ii. 6. Job xiv. 14; xxii. 16; xxix. 18; xxvii. pp. 70. 72. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. x, *note* 1. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xiv, *note* 5; p. 122, *note* 2. Vol. v. Part 2. p. 139, *note* 2.
- Davison, J., cited, Cant. viii. 8. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xii, *note* 9. Isa. i. 11; xlii. 8; xliii. 10. Jer. vii. 11; xxii. 30; xxv. 10. Ezek. xlix. 15. Dan. ii. 44. Hos. vi. 6; xiii. 11. Mic. vi. 8. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. vi. 13. Mal. iii. 1. 4.
- Day of the Lord, the term used by whom, Amos v. 18. In what sense, Joel ii. 1. 2. 11.
- Day-man, explained, Job ix. 33.
- De Dieu, L., cited, Esther i. 22. Isa. xxx. 7. Jer. xxiii. 26, 27; xli. 9. Mic. ii. 4. Zech. xiv. 6.
- De Wette, cited, Deut. xvii. 9. 1 Chr. xxviii. 11. 2 Chr. xxvii. 16. Job xxvii. p. 70. Jer. xxxi. 22. Hos. xi. 1. Mic. i. 1. Zech. ix. p. 136.
- Dead, prayers for, in what sense lawful, and in no other, Jer. vii. 31.
- Dead Sea, the, did not exist before Abraham's age, Gen. xiv. 3. Physical description of the region and traces of its formation, Gen. xiv. 24. "Salt Sea," Num. xxiv. 3. Ezek. xlvii. 11. "Sea of the plain," 2 Kings xiv. 25. Ezek. xlvii. 8. Its fetid waters, *ib.* "The former sea," Zech. xiv. 8. To be spiritually purified by living waters from the Temple, Ezek. xvi. 53; xlvii. 9. Gog's burial place, Ezek. xxxix. 11. Not typical of the Lake of fire, Ezek. p. 287, *Retrospect*, *note* 13.
- Deane, J. B., cited, Ex. xiv. 2.
- Death, an unclean thing under the Law, made blessed through Christ, Lev. x. 6, 7. 1 Kings ii. 10. 2 Kings xiii. 21. Ps. xlviii. 14. Eccles. vii. 1. Jer. xxxi. 38, 39. Hagg. ii. 13. Death the shepherd, the grave his fold, Ps. xlix. 14. Virtually to each of us "the day of the Lord," Joel ii. 1. "The Black Death," Jer. xv. 2. Idols called "the dead," Ps. cxv. 17.
- Death-bed of the hardened infidel, Amos vi. 10.
- Delir (i. e. oracle), or *Kirjath-sepher* (which see), or *Kirjath-sannah* (Josh. xv. 49), site of, Josh. x. 38; xxi. 15. Re-occupied by heathen, Josh. x. 38. Another, Josh. xiii. 26.
- Delorah, meaning of the name, Judg. iv. 4. A prophetess, hence her hymn inspired, *ib.* Judg. v. 7. Lived near the grove of her namesake (Gen. xxxv. 8), and though of South Palestine cared for her northern country-people, Judg. iv. 5. Foretells the future, v. 9. She and Barak represent the Old Testament saints, praising the spiritual conquests of Jael, the Gentile Church: analysis of her song, Judg. v. 1. Herself a type of the Hebrew Church, v. 7.
- Decalogue, the, a moral code and republication of natural law, added because men had transgressed it, Ex. xx. 1. Preparatory and imperfect, yet explained, strengthened, and fulfilled in Christ, *ib.* Its perpetuity shewn, Deut. iv. 14; v. 22. Rightly maintained in our Communion Service, Ex. xxiv. 8. How variously divided into ten commandments, Ex. xx. 1. The fifth commandment joining the two halves, *ib.* Delivered by angels, *ib.* The sense given in Deut. v, the letter in Ex. xx, *ib.* Grounds of the variation between the two recitals, Deut. v. 12—15. Omission of the verse in recent Roman catechisms, Ex. xx. 4. Must be sprinkled by Christ's blood, Ex. xxiv. 7. Its Sacramental character, v. 8. All the ten commandments make one whole, Deut. v. 18.
- Decius, the Emperor, his fate, Zech. xiv. 12.
- Dedan, its site and history, Gen. x. 7. Isa. xxi. 13. Jer. xxv. 23; xlix. 8. Ezek. xxvii. 15; xxxviii. 13. In the north of Edom, Ezek. xxv. 13.
- Dedication of things holy, Num. vii. 11. Of a house, Deut. xx. 5. As of David's on Zion, Ps. xxx. p. 41. As of Solomon's Temple, 1 Kings viii. 1. Its festival sabbatical, v. 2. Typical of Christ's Incarnation, *ib.* That of the second Temple, Ezra vi. 16. Of Nehemiah's walls, Neh. xii. 27, betokening an extension of sanctity, and thus typical, *ib.* Probably in the winter, *ib.* Ps. cxlvii. 16. That of Judas Maccabeus, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xvii. Dan. viii. 14. The Church of God built up at the Feast of Pentecost, Ps. cxlvii. p. 224. Hymn at the dedication of a Church, Hos. vi. 5.
- Δεκτικὸς, the speaker pointing to himself, Ps. xxxiv. 6; cxxvii. 2: to another, Isa. lviii. 9.
- Del Rio, cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 127, *note* 1. Vol. v. Part 2. p. x, *note* 2.
- Delilah, meaning of, Judg. xvi. 6. No wife to Samson, but a woman of Israel, who like a female Judas, sold him to her country's enemies, Judg. xvi. 4.
- Deitrich, cited, Ezra ix. 11, 12. Job i. 3. 15. 16; and *passim* throughout the books of Job, the Psalms, and Isaiah; also Cant. i. 3; iii. 3; v. 1. Vol. v. Part 2. p. viii, *note* 3. Jer. xlvii. 4. Lam. ii. 11; v. 22. Ezek. xxvi. p. 215. Dan. ii. 5. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. vii, *note* 2. Hos. v. 13. Joel i. 4. Obad. p. 57. Hab. iii. 6.
- Deliverance from peril a season of spiritual danger, Gen. xix. 32.
- Democedes, of Croton, Neh. ii. 6.
- Deposition of Christian Bishops and Priests removes them from the exercise of their functions, not from their sacerdotal character, 1 Kings ii. 27; iv. 4.
- Desire, the, of all nations, proved to refer to Christ, not to offerings made by Gentiles, Hagg. ii. 7. Desire of women referred to the Incarnate Christ, Dan. xi. 37.
- Deuteronomy, book of, not a history but a homily, written long after the other books, to the end of Num. xix., whence the difference of its style from the preceding books. What it contains, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xxxvi. Presupposes a knowledge of the three preceding books, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 194. Deut. v. 12—15. 31; xii. 6. 18. 20; xiv. 22; xvii. 18; xviii. 1. 2; xxii. 30; xxiv. 8. Its Greek name scarcely proper, Deut. i. 1. Its Hebrew name, *ib.* "Modern scientific Biblical criticism" declares it impossible that Moses wrote this book, assigning it to the age of Hezekiah, Manasseh, or Josiah, Vol. i. Part 2. *Introd.* p. 195. 2 Kings xxii. 8. 2 Chr. xxxiv. 14. Alleged work of Jeremiah, Vol. v. Part 2. p. vii. List of such critical works, p. 195, *note* 3. Since the book claims to be written by Moses, if it be not so, it must be an imposture, a forgery, p. 195. This statement grounded on its differences from the earlier books (1) in substance, (2) in style. But since all admit that the writer was familiar with the other books, to which an imitator 700 years after Moses would strive to assimilate his own, these very variations prove the authenticity of the book, not its falsehood, pp. 196. 200. Deut. i. 1. 6. 22. 27; x. 1; xxxii. 1; xxxiii. 1. Deuteronomy is included in all manuscripts and versions, even the Samaritan and Septuagint, is read in the Synagogues, and received as the work of Moses by Jews and Christians alike in all ages, Deut. xviii. 15—19, and by Christ himself, p. 196. Who cites it often and formally, Deut. vi. 4. The discrepancies produced show in the objectors a want of attention to the circumstances under which this book was written, or the special ends it had in view, Deut. x. 1; xvi. 2; xvii. 9, and a lack of capacity for dealing with moral evidence, p. 200. Exemplified (1) in inferences from

- the writer's expression "the Priests the Levites" (Jer. xxxiii. 18), which is also found in the very early book of Joshua, p. 197-8. Deut. x. 8. 9. The variation of expression designed for a wise purpose, Deut. xvii. 9: (2) in his not naming Korah the Levite as sinning with Dathan and Abiram, p. 198. Deut. xi. 6: (3) in his fixing a single place for national worship, pp. 198-200. Deut. xii. 5. 1 Sam. i. 3, and excluding the learned tribe of Simeon from Moses' blessing, neither of which a forger could have done with impunity, p. 200. That the style should differ with the subject a mark of genuineness in all composition, including the ancient classics, S. John's Gospel, and Apocalypse, p. 201. This book is not one of plain history, law, or narrative, like the others, but elevated, hortatory, Deut. i. 9. 22, "one magnificent poem," p. 201. In parts prophetic, Deut. xvii. 14 (see *King*); xviii. 15-19. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 267. Deut. xxxii. 21. Yet it retains all the peculiar archaisms of the other Mosaic books (see *Pentateuch*): detailed, p. 201, note 5. Known to Amaziab, &c., 2 Kings xiv. 6. 26. Its connexion with the prophecy of Isaiah, Isa. i. p. 1. Jeremiah's diction closely agrees with that of this book, affording a proof, not that he wrote it, p. 201, note 7, but knowing it to be Moses', adopted its words, so appropriate to his sad times, p. 201-2. Deut. xxviii. 1. The last chapter added by Joshua or by his order, Deut. xxiv. 1. The Church of England particularly regards it, reading every chapter but one; SS. Paul, Peter, and Stephen, even our Lord himself, cite it with firm belief, p. 203. The authenticity of Moses' Hymn unjustly questioned: if it contains unique words, it also exhibits many coincidences of diction with the rest of the Pentateuch, Deut. xxxii. 1. St. Paul's testimony, v. 21. The blessing vindicated from the discordant objections of critics, Deut. xxxiii. 1. Proofs of antiquity of the book, Deut. xxii. 13-21; xxxiii. 7. List of its modern advocates, p. 203, note 4. This last book of Moses inexpressibly solemn, as the dying utterance of a grand Orator, a sublime Poet, a heart-stirring Preacher, a divinely-inspired Prophet of God, p. 203. Minute variations of style noticed, Deut. ii. 5; xxxii. 2. 7, 8; xxxiii. 2. 25. Alleged inconsistencies with other books and with itself discussed, Deut. i. 9; ii. 29; iii. 4; v. 12-15; vii. 11; ix. 3. 18, 19; x. 8; xii. 6; xix. 12.
- Devils (Heb. *seirim*), rather satyrs, Isa. xlii. 21, worshipped as the Greek Pan, Lev. xvii. 7. 2 Chr. xi. 15. Cp. Judg. iii. 26. (Heb. *shedim*), objects of fear, not love, to their worshippers, Deut. xxxii. 17. Ps. cvi. 37.
- Devoted by ban (Heb. *cherem*), Zech. xiv. 11. Mal. iv. 6. Includes both dedication (*ἀρδένεια*), and extermination (*ἀρδένεια*), Mal. iv. 6. Not permitted to private persons, but only to magistrates, subject to known laws, Lev. xxvii. 29. Wealth of Jericho thus dedicated to God, as first-fruits of the spoils of the land, Josh. vi. 17; vii. 1. Achan thus devoted, Josh. vii. 15. Compare Judg. xxi. 5 (Hebrew).
- Dew, an emblem of the invisible agency of God's Spirit in refreshing His Church by a multitude of converts, Ps. ex. 3; cxxxiii. 3. Mic. v. 7.
- Deyling, cited, Lev. x. 16.
- Διά, its full meaning, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. x, note 15.
- Diadochi, the successors of Alexander, Dan. viii. 8; xi. 4.
- Diblah, or Diblaim, their literal and symbolical meaning, Ezek. vi. 14. Hos. i. 3.
- Diblathaim, Num. xxxiii. 46, or *Beth-diblathaim*, Jer. xlviii. 22. Hos. i. 3.
- Dibon, its meaning and position, Num. xxi. 30; xxxii. 34. Josh. xiii. 17. Neh. xi. 25. Isa. xv. 2. Jer. xlviii. 18.
- Didymus, teacher of S. Jerome, Job iii. 8. Cited, Job i. 2. 11; ii. 9; iii. 8. Ps. xvi. 9; xvii. 13; xxxvi. 8, 9; xl. 6; lv. 23; lvii. 9; lxxviii. 14; lxxix. 5. 6; lxxxix. 9; lxxxiv. 3; lxxxix. 52; cii. 19; cix. 21; ex. 7; cxviii. 22. Prov. i. 8; iii. 19; vii. 4; viii. 22.
- Dinarehus, characterized, Judg. vii. 13.
- Dioctetian's persecution, Zech. viii. 6. His fate, Zech. xiv. 12. Diodati, cited, Joel iii. 16.
- Diodorus Siculus, cited, Gen. xii. 13; xvii. 10, 11; xix. 24; xlv. 6; xlvii. 20; i. 2. 11. 2 Chr. viii. 18. Neh. ii. 8. Esther i. 1. 3; ii. 1. 21; x. 1. Job xxviii. 1. xl. 15; xli. 1. Isa. xix. 2-4; xlvii. 10. Jer. l. 16. Ezek. xxi. 21; xxvi. p. 215; xxix. 14; xxxii. 27. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xii, note 6. Dan. ii. 2; viii. 8; xi. 2. 4. Jonah iii. 3. Nah. i. 10; ii. 1; iii. 8. 18. Zech. ix. 1.
- Dionysius, S., of Alexandria, cited, Job xxviii. 1.
- Dionysius of Halicarnassus, cited, Dan. ii. 40.
- Dirges learnt by the people, 2 Sam. i. 18; iii. 33.
- Disobedience is Atheism in God's sight, Jer. v. 12.
- Dispersion of Jews foretold, Ps. xxxv. 5. Its final cause, Ps. lxxxiii. 16, 18. A source of blessing to the world in propagating their Scriptures; and may prove a source of blessing, not of curse, to themselves, Num. xxxv. 2. Hos. i. 4; ii. 7. 14. 15; iii. 4. Also as being witnesses of Christ's passion, Ps. lvii. p. 86; lxxx. 25. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. 26. The Pentecostal blessing will cancel the curse, Deut. xxviii. 61. The Jews' comfort under it, Ps. lxxx. 8.
- Divination (Heb. *keseem*), moral, Prov. xvi. 10.
- Divine Names, one God revealing Himself to men in divers manners, Ps. lxxviii. p. 100. *Jehovah* and *Elohim*, not used indiscriminately, or in a manner indicating diversity of authorship in the Pentateuch or elsewhere, but severally employed for special reasons, often readily discernible, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xl. *Elohim* (*El*, Ps. xix. 1. *Eloah*, Prov. xxx. 5. *Ha-elohim*, κατ' ἐξοχήν, Eccles. v. 1. 18; xii. 13. Jonah i. 6; iv. 7), the common Creator, Ezek. xvii. 13: so *El*, Ps. civ. 21; cl. 1. *Jehovah* used in special relation to His own people, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 12. Gen. iv. 26; vi. 20; vii. 1. 1 Chr. xiv. 10. Vol. iv. Part 2. pp. x, xi. Ps. xxxiii. 7. Isa. xlv. 18. Jonah iv. 8. 10. Great importance of this distinction in theology, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xi. The overlooking of it a mere disease of criticism, Neh. i. 4, 5. *Jehovah Elohim*, used together, Gen. ii. 4. Jonah iv. 6. Highest meaning of *Jehovah*, Deut. vi. 4. 1 Kings viii. 43. 2 Kings v. 16. Preparatory to the revelation of the doctrine of the Trinity, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xi. Used in the book of Job, Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introd.* p. iv. By whom and why, Job i. 21. A bright gleam of sunshine, Job iii. 9. Providential reserve in its use during patriarchal times, Gen. xvi. 11. Appropriate use of each name shows the poverty of modern theories, Gen. xx. 3. 18; xxi. 1. 17; xxii. 11; xxv. 22; xxviii. 21, 22; xxix. 31; xxx. 24; xxxi. 29. Ex. viii. 19; xiii. 17. Num. xxii. 9. 18. 22; xxxiii. 8. 1 Kings xxii. 6. 11, 12. Ps. lvi. 10; lxxviii. 7. Obad. p. 57. Jonah i. 14. The use of each name in Gen. xxxvii.—1. specially accounted for, Gen. xxxix. 2. *Argumentum ad homines*, Gen. xliiii. 11. The Divine Name given to, or claimed by Christ, Ex. iii. 14. Ps. xvi. p. 153. *Jehovah* used from earliest times; its etymology archaic; enters into compound proper names; how pronounced (*Jahve*, Joel i. 19); why specially revealed to Moses, Ex. vi. 2. 3. 20; xii. 12. *Jah*, its most emphatic and concentrated form, Ex. xv. 2. Ps. lxxviii. 4. Cant. viii. 6. Use of the names in the book of Psalms examined, Vol. iv. Part 2. pp. x-xii; 64. 77. Ps. lxxvi. 1; lxxviii. p. 99; Ps. lxx. p. 109; Ps. lxxxix. 5; xc. 13-15; civ. 35; exx. p. 197; exliv. 9. So in the books of Proverbs and Ecclesiastes, Prov. ii. 5; xv. 3; xxv. 2. Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. 77. 78. 99. Eccles. v. 1. The name *Jehovah*, at first pronounced only in the Sanctuary, has been dropped even in the solemn blessing since the death of Simon the Just, Num. vi. 23. *Jah Jehovah*, united for emphasis, Isa. xii. 2; xxvi. 4. *El Elohim Jehovah*, Josh. xxii. 22. Cp. Judg. iii. 10; vi. 13. 20; vii. 14; xv. 19; xviii. 5; xx. 23. 1 Sam. iv. 7. 1 Kings xviii. 39. Change from *Adoni* to *Adonai*, Judg. vi. 15. Use of *Adonai*, (Lam. i. 14: thrice repeated, Dan. ix. 19. *Adonai Jehovah* (applied to Christ, Isa. xl. 10). Ezek. ii. 4. Obad. i. *Jah* and *El*, discriminated in proper names, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 152. The first syllable prefixed to, or withdrawn from, a name on occasion, 2 Kings xxiv. 8.
- Divorce, facilities for, encourage adultery, Num. v. 27. Josh. vi. 26; Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 82. A proper subject for ecclesiastical cognizance, Ezra x. 4. Controlled, not approved, by the Law, Deut. xvii. 11; xxiv. 1. Restraints upon it, *ib.* Condemned, Mal. ii. 13. 15. 16. Spiritual divorce, Deut. xxiv. 4. God has not so put away the Jewish Church, Isa. i. 1, but will return to her again, Jer. iii. 1.
- Dizahab, supposed site of, Deut. i. 1.
- Dodanim, delineated, Gen. x. 4.
- Doeg, engaged on religious services, when he turned traitor. Compared to Judas, 1 Sam. xxi. 7. So Ps. lii. 4. An Idumean, Isa. lxiii. 1.
- Dogs, unclean, prowling through eastern cities, Job xxx. 1. Ps. lix. 6. Prov. xxx. 31. Isa. lxvi. 3.
- Döllinger, Dr., cited, Mal. ii. 7.
- Donatist schismatics, Cant. i. 7. Pure in their own eyes, Prov. xxx. 14.
- Doors of the Temple, described, 1 Kings vi. 33. 34. Emblems of Christ the Door, *ib.*
- Dor, site of, Josh. xi. 2; xvii. 11. 1 Kings iv. 11.
- Dorner, cited, Prov. i. 20.
- Dothan, site and history of, Gen. xxxvii. 17. 2 Kings vi. 13.
- Doubling of Hebrew words to express multitude or emphasis, Ex. viii. 14. 2 Chr. xxxi. 6. Ps. lxxviii. 12. Isa. xxvi. 3; xxvii. 5; xxxviii. 17; lvii. 19. The double rendered to Job a pattern of God's dealings, Job xlii. 12. God's double return of good for evil, Isa. xl. 2; lxi. 7. Zech. ix. 12. Double punishment for those who know God's will, Jer. xvi. 18.

Doumas, cited, Job xxxix. 13. 14.
 Dove (of Noah), an emblem of the Holy Spirit, Ps. iv. 6; lxxviii. 13. Hos. xi. 11: Who lighted on Christ at His baptism, Gen. viii. 11. 12. Doves abound in Palestine, Lev. i. 14. Their attributes, Cant. i. 15; v. 12. Title of, Ps. lvi. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. 85. Symbol of believing souls, Isa. lx. 8. The Church, a dove (Cant. iv. 1) in love and meekness, hides in the Rock, Cant. ii. 11.
 Dragon well, Neh. ii. 13.
 Drake, cited, Cant. i. 14.
 Dreams, sometimes a Divine revelation, or prophetic ecstasy, Gen. xx. 3; xxviii. 12; xl. 8. 1 Kings iii. 6; ix. 2. A message by night as a mode of revelation, Judg. vi. 25. Such dreams became rare after false prophets asserted them, Jer. xxiii. 25.
 Drink offering, whereof it consisted, and of what typical, Gen. xxy. 11. Mostly joined with meat-offering, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 5. Lev. iii. 1; xxiii. 13.
 Dromedaries, meaning of the Hebrew word uncertain in Esther viii. 10. Young camels, Isa. lx. 6; lxxi. 20. Jer. ii. 23.
 Drunkenness, no lawful source of national gain, Hos. vii. 7.
 Drusus, cited, Josh. v. 1. Hos. i. 2. Nah. i. 11; ii. 3. Mal. ii. 15.
 Dryden, J., cited, Dent. xxvii. 6.
 Dualism of Persia, Neh. ix. 6. Job i. 6; xl. 20. Isa. xiv. 7.
 Duel, the first challenge to, 1 Sam. xvii. 10.
 Dukes, Gen. xxxvi. 15. The term explained, Josh. xiii. 21.
 Dumah, explained, Isa. xxi. 11.
 Duncker, cited, Dan. viii. 2. Nah. ii. 1.
 Dung, for fuel, Ezek. iv. 12.
 Dungeon, or pit (Heb. *bor*), a dry cistern, Jer. xxxvii. 16; xxxviii. 6. That of sin, Zech. ix. 11.
 Dura, plain of, Dan. iii. 1.

Eagle, its figurative application to Christ, Dent. xxxii. 11. Prov. xxx. 19. Isa. xl. 31. Ensign of Cyrus, Isa. xli. 11. Of Babylon, Dan. vii. 4. Applied to Nebuchadnezzar, Jer. xlviii. 40; xlix. 22. To Babylon and Egypt, Ezek. xvii. 3. 7. Opposed to turtle-dove, Ps. lxxiv. 19. Aquiline features of great conquerors, Isa. xli. 11.
 Earthquake in Uzziah's days, Amos i. 1. That in the day of doom, Zech. xiv. 4. 5.
 Ear-ring, or nose-ring, described, Gen. xxiv. 22; xxxv. 4. Judg. viii. 21. Job xlii. 11. Prov. xxv. 12. Ezek. xvi. 12. "Jewel in a swine's snout," Prov. xi. 22.
 East, the, denoting Christ, Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 279. 283. Children of the East, Judg. vi. 3. 1 Kings iv. 30. Job i. 3. This quarter supposed to front us, Job xxiii. 8. East wind of Egypt, Gen. xli. 6. Ex. x. 13. Job xv. 2. Jer. xlviii. 17. Its destroying power, Hab. i. 9. Comes from Assyria, Hos. xiii. 15.
 Eastern Church, its clergy too often ignorant, Mal. ii. 7.
 Eating their children's flesh, a punishment when inflicted on the Jews, Lev. xxvi. 29.
 Elal and Gerizim, their respective sites, elevations, and historical associations, Dent. xi. 29; xxvii. 4. 12. Voices may be heard from one hill to the other, Dent. xi. 29. The scene enacted there, how typical of the last judgment, Dent. xxvii. 12. Blessing precedes cursing, *ib.*
 Elbed-melech, the pious eunuch, typical of that other Ethiopian in the Acts, Jer. xxxviii. 13. Dan. i. 3. God's kindness to him, Jer. xxxix. 16.
 Ebenezer, stone of, 1 Sam. iv. 1; vii. 12. Christ our Stone of Help, *ib.*
 Eber (see *Hebrew*), origin of the name, Gen. x. 21. Western branch of Shem's family, Num. xxiv. 21. How afflicted by Chittim, *ib.*
 Ebrard, cited, Zech. ix. 1.

Ecclesiastes, book of, its homiletic character, Vol. iv. Part 3. *Introd.* p. 71. Unrhythmical, Eccles. i. 2. Claims to be inspired, Eccles. xii. 10. Written by Solomon, as proved by internal evidence (Eccles. ii. 4. 5. 8) and the voice of the Hebrew and Christian Churches, p. 71. Those who reject Solomon's authorship cannot agree as to the age of the book, *ib.*, note 6. Objections examined. (1) The foreign words found in it are not very many, and in part met with elsewhere in the Old Testament, especially in the Canticles, p. 76. Eccles. ii. 5, in part accounted for by Solomon's habits of life in his old age, pp. 71—76. Minutely examined from Knobel and Von Essen, p. 75, note 3. (2) Melancholy picture of public affairs, well suited to the troubled close of his reign, with the prophetic knowledge of a scattering to come (Eccles. i. 1; iii. 16), pp. 76-7. 81. Rather an internal evidence of the

genuineness of Ecclesiastes, pp. 84. 86. Eccles. i. 1. (3) It could not be written after the captivity, as alien to the spirit of all the writings of that period, and never using the name Jehovah, in which they rejoiced, p. 77. Contrast between the use of the Divine Name in Proverbs and Ecclesiastes: inference therefrom, pp. 77. 78. In conscious guilt Solomon dared not use the more Holy Name, *ib.* Eccles. i. 13; v. 1. Its title Koheleth (fem.), with masc. words, like Majesté, &c., Eccles. i. 1. Wisdom the Gatherer, pp. 79. 80, note 7. Eccles. viii. 12, 13; xii. 8. As Agur, Lemuel, Eccles. i. 1. The type of Christ, himself retiring in the background for shame, p. 80. Eccles. i. 1; iv. 15; xii. 9. Yet comfort found in writing it, v. 10. Gatherer of the dispersed, v. 11. Hence the book appropriately read at the Feast of Tabernacles, which foreshadowed the Incarnation, p. 80, note 14. The book written by a penitent as a legacy to all. Analysis of its contents, p. 82. Not incoherent, but composed with systematic order, if studied with constant reference to Solomon's circumstances, p. 86. Eccles. i. 1; iii. 16; iv. p. 101; v. 1; viii. 2. The proposition: All earthly labour utter vanity (Eccles. i. 2) "under the sun," i. e. physical, without God, p. 82. Eccles. i. 3. 13; ii. 17; vi. 10—12. His own, Ps. cxxvii. p. 82. In nature no real progress: all that seems new a fresh combination of the old, p. 83. Eccles. i. 9. Like the stone of Sisyphus, Eccles. i. 4. Solomon's personal experience (emphatic personal pronouns, Eccles. ii. 1; iv. 1; viii. 2. 15) of material prosperity, of secular knowledge (which cannot regenerate mankind, Eccles. i. 15) of public works, p. 83. His gardens at Elham described by Josephus, &c., p. 84. Eccles. ii. 5. His feeble son, Eccles. ii. 12. 13. 18; iv. p. 101; v. 5. 11; v. 14; vii. 5—7. 9; x. 1. 3. 4. 12. Our Lord's comment on his (not God's) glory, p. 85. Eccles. ii. 9. Even our power of self-indulgence is from God, *re.* 24. 25. His example a warning to an age of luxury, like ours, even though we build Churches as he the Temple, pp. 85. 86. Mutability of all things created not to be ascribed to God, Eccles. iii. 1. 11. 14. A future life taught, v. 21. His own life and experience leading him to contrast Jeroboam with himself, Eccles. iv. 13. 15: pure worship with his own idolatry, p. 87. Eccles. v. 1. An inspired manual for times of public confusion, Eccles. v. 8. Anticipates the weary times of Jeroboam and his own son, p. 88. Eccles. vi. 2. Constructive argument, Eccles. vii. p. 107. Exhortations to the religious duty of loyalty, soon to be severely tried, pp. 88. 89. Eccles. viii. 2; x. 1. Like John of Gaunt's dying warnings, Eccles. vii. 1. Rebuke to modern licence of speech against rulers, p. 89. In ch. xii. his decrepit and solitary (Eccles. iv. 9) old age, his late repentance, his teaching the people through the Spirit of Divine Wisdom, his legacy of a pious conclusion respecting the whole man, pp. 90. 91. 119. A prophecy, divinely inspired, Eccles. iii. 16; x. 5. 7: as the Targum alleges, Eccles. i. 1; iv. 15; viii. 10; xii. 10. "I was king" no objection to its genuineness, Eccles. i. 12. 13. How Solomon is here a type of Christ, Eccles. i. 1; xii. 11. Copious metaphors in the description of old age, Eccles. xii. 3—6. Commentators ancient and modern, p. 92.
 Ecclesiastical, beautiful ecclesiastical book of, spiritual aftergrowth of Solomon's lost works, 1 Kings iv. 32. Testimony from the Jewish Church to the authenticity of, Isa. xl. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xvi, note 10. Cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 84, note 4. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xi. Mal. iv. 5.
 Eclipse of the sun, alleged, Amos viii. 9.
 Edar, tower of, Gen. xxxv. 21. Cant. viii. 10. Not, as Rabbis suppose, referred to, Mic. iv. 8.
 Eden, (1) garden of, or Paradise, its site uncertain, and probably swept away by the flood, Gen. ii. 8. The Church such a spiritual Paradise, Cant. iv. 12. (2) A region, 2 Kings xix. 12. Ezek. xxvii. 23. Amos i. 5.
 Edom, or *Idumaea* (see *Esau*), Isa. xxxiv. 5. 9. The people's dealings with Israel, Num. xx. 14. Judg. xi. 18. Especially at the time of the captivity, Ps. cxxxvii. 7. Isa. xxi. 11; xxxiv. 5; lxxiii. 1. Jer. xlix. 7. Ezek. xxxv. p. 237; *re.* 5. 10. 11. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xiii. Joel iii. 19. Amos i. 6; ix. 12. Obad. p. 57; *re.* 1. 6. Nah. p. 87. Type of worldly policy, Obad. 7. The treacherous Judas of the Old Testament, Isa. xxxiv. 5. A general name among the Jews for their enemies, e.g. the Romans, Num. xx. 18; xxiv. 18. Dent. xxxiii. 2. Isa. lxxiii. 1. Ezek. xxxvi. 2. Dan. xi. 41. Isaac's and Balaam's prophecies respecting Edom partially fulfilled in David (summary of his conquests, 1 Chr. xviii. 12), fully in Christ, Num. xxiv. 18. 2 Sam. viii. 14. Ps. lx. 8. Ezek. xxv. 14. No king there, 1 Kings xxii. 47. Its revolt, 2 Kings viii. 20. Amaziah's campaign, 2 Kings xiv. 7. Maccabean conquests, Ezek. xxv. 14. Obad. 2. The region described, Num. xxxiv. 3. Its rocky fastnesses, Obad. 3. Edom's self-confidence, Mal. i. 4. Its present state, Isa.

- xxxiv. 16. Cp. Ps. lx. 1; lxxxiii. 6. Israel must forget Edom's unkindness, Deut. xxiii. 7.
- Edrei, meaning of: two cities of that name, Num. xxi. 33. Deut. iii. 4. 10.
- Education, to be good, must be early, Prov. xxii. 6.
- Edward the Confessor, his dying zeal, 1 Chr. xxviii. 2.
- Egg, the white of, alternative rendering and sense, Job vi. 6.
- Eglaim, Isa. xv. 8.
- Eglon, (1) site of, Josh. x. 3; xv. 39. (2) King of Moab, meaning of his name, Judg. iii. 12. 17. Ps. lxxviii. 30. Type of carnal self-confidence, Isa. xv. 5.
- Egypt (Heb. *mizraim*, why dual in form, Gen. x. 6. Heb. *matsor*, Isa. xix. 6; xxxvii. 25. Mic. vii. 12), Israel's land of bondage, Hos. viii. 13; ix. 6; xi. 5. Zech. x. 10. Its plentiful productions, Num. xi. 5. Its flax, Josh. ii. 6. Its mode of irrigation, Deut. xi. 10. Mic. v. 7. Zech. xiv. 18: and of treading out the corn, Deut. xxv. 4. Its diseases, Deut. vii. 15; xxviii. 27. Its wisdom, 1 Kings iv. 30. Type of unsanctified knowledge, Vol. v. Part 1. p. xv, or of open infidelity, Ezek. xxxii. 2. 7. Zech. xiv. 18. The beasts of the south, Isa. xxx. 6. The dragon or crocodile, Ezek. xxxix. 3; xxxii. 2. Open foe of Israel, Joel iii. 19. Yet Jewish kings sought its protection against Assyria and Babylon, 2 Kings xvii. 4; xviii. 21. Isa. xxx. 6; xli. 1. 3; xxxvi. 6. Jer. xlii. 17. Lam. iv. 17. Ezek. xxxix. 2. 6. 7; xxx. 3. Its burden, cruel lord, and later history, Isa. xix. 2—4. Overthrown by Nebuchadnezzar, Jer. xliii. 12. 13; xlii. 20. Its restoration after forty years, discussed, Ezek. xxxix. 13. How the basest of kingdoms, v. 15. Jewish Temple of Onias there, Isa. xix. 19. Egyptians to be kindly regarded by Jews, Deut. xxiii. 7. Christianity in Egypt, Ps. lxxviii. 31. Isa. xix. 16, 17, 24, 25.
- Egyptian hieroglyphics, pictures, and sculpture, used to illustrate Scripture, Gen. xxxix. 1. 4; xl. 9; xli. 14. 41; xlii. 26; xliii. 33; xlv. 5; xlv. 31; xlvii. 20; 1. 2. 7. Ex. i. 14; xiv. 6, 7. Deut. xi. 10; xxvii. 2. Judg. xvi. 14. 1 Kings xiv. 25. Job i. 3; xli. 18.
- Elmd, like Judas Maccabreus, stirred up to zeal by idols in Gilgal, a holy place, Judg. iii. 19. 26. Slaughters Eglon, as might a magistrate, having a clear commission from God, our Moral Governor, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 77, note 6. Judg. iii. 21. 22. Elmd, spiritualized, represents S. Paul among the Apostles, v. 29.
- Eichhorn, his form of unbelief, Zech. ix. p. 136. Cited, Vol. v. Part 2. p. xvi, note 3. Jer. i. 1; ii. 1; xv. 14; xxxi. 26; xliii. 9; xlix. 7. Lam. p. 139, note 2.
- Eight, a number of blessedness, emblem of the Resurrection, Ex. xxviii. 4. Lev. ix. 1; xiv. 10; xv. 14; xxii. 27; xxiii. 36; xxv. 8. Num. xxix. 35. Ps. cxv. p. 197; cxlv. 3. Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 279, 280. Dan. iv. 16. Hab. p. 95. Dominical number, its combinations collected, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 280, note 4. See *Arithmetic*.
- Ekron, site of, Josh. xiii. 3; xv. 11. 46; xix. 43. 1 Sam. v. 10. 2 Kings i. 2. Amos i. 8.
- El, or Elohim. See *Divine Names*.
- Elam (i.e. *Persia*), Gen. x. 22; xiv. 1. Isa. xi. 11; xxi. 2; xxii. 6. Its arrows, Jer. l. 9. Its history, Jer. xlix. 34. Ezek. xxxii. 24. Dan. viii. 2. To be called in Christ, Jer. xlix. 39.
- Elath, position of Deut. ii. 8. 2 Kings xvi. 22. *Eloth* (i.e. trees), 1 Kings ix. 26. 2 Kings xvi. 6. 2 Chr. xlvii. 2.
- Elders, their several classes, Josh. xxiii. 2. Distinguished from the princes, Jer. xxvi. 8. The seventy appointed by God's command not the same as "able men" (Ex. xviii. 21) nominated by Jethro's advice, Num. xi. 17. Took of Moses' spiritual gifts, without lessening his, *ib.* This outpouring only temporary, like others in Scripture, v. 25. Eldad and Medad of the seventy, hence duly commissioned, v. 26. They may have been wrong in not going with the rest to the Tabernacle, *ib.* Proved that their spirit was not derived from Moses, *ib.* Joshua jealous for Moses, v. 28. The seventy said to be continued in Jewish Sanhedrim, v. 17. Jer. xix. 1; xxvi. 17. Elders of Apocalypse, the same as "ancients" in Isa. xxiv. 23. The seventy of Israel, Ezek. viii. 11.
- Elealeh, site of, Num. xxxii. 37. Isa. xv. 4. Jer. xlviii. 34.
- Eleazar, son of Aaron, Num. xxvi. 1. In priestly offices a type of Christ, Num. xxxi. 13. 26. 54; xxxiv. 17. Josh. xiv. 1; xxiv. 33. Succeeds Aaron, Deut. x. 6. With Joshua divides the land, Josh. xiv. 1; xix. 51. His death, of what suggestive, Josh. xiv. 33. Keeper of the Ark, 1 Sam. vii. 1.
- Eli, first High Priest of Ithamar's line, 1 Sam. i. 3. Both Judge and High Priest, 1 Sam. ii. 23. The curse, how fulfilled in his family, v. 36. 1 Sam. iii. 11; xxii. 19. 23. Yet turned into a blessing in Christ, 1 Sam. ii. 36.
- Eliakim, son of Hilkiah, meaning of both names. How a signal type of Christ, Isa. xxii. 20—25.
- Eliashib, the High Priest, zealous in building the walls of Jerusalem, Neh. iii. 1: less zealous for holiness of life, and so excluded from sealing the Covenant, Neh. x. 1. His good deeds recorded, his sin rebuked, Neh. iii. 1. His betrayal of trust, Neh. xiii. 4. 5: corrected by Nehemiah, *ev.* 8, 9. His grandson said to have become priest of a Samaritan temple, Neh. xii. 11; xiii. 28.
- Eliezer, Rabbi, cited, Gen. xxvii. 1. Ex. iii. 5.
- Elihu, meaning of his name, Job xxxii. 2. A type of God's ministers in the visible Church, Job xxxviii. 1, mediating between (p. 72) and reasoning with men, as He doth not condescend to do, Job xxxii. p. 70. Thus a type of Christ, pp. 70. 72. His modest youth, Job xxxii. 4. 6. 8. In spite of objections, his discourses form an integral part of the book of Job, contemporaneous with the rest, necessary to the work, of whose perplexity it is a partial solution (p. 72), and which otherwise would have missed its salutary lesson, p. 70. Job xxxviii. 1. Their absence would mar the completeness of the book, *ib.* Job having silenced his friends, is yet rebuked by Elihu for his self-reliance, and presumption in calling God to account, p. 70. Job xxxiii. 8—10; xxxiv. 5, 6. Claims inspiration for his speech, Job xxxii. 6. 13. 19; xxxiii. 4. Jehovah sanctions Elihu's argument, takes it up, and carries it farther, p. 71. Elihu thus absorbed in Elohim, Job xxxviii. 1. Desires to justify Job, ch. xxxiii. 32. The difference of style from the rest of the book a proof of historic reality, since its Aramaic character proceeds from his Syrian origin, p. 70. Regarded by some Hebrews as a Gentile prophet before the Law, as a Buzite (Job xxxii. 2) connected with Abraham, *ib.* Opinions of the Greek Fathers, *ib.* Censured by Latins from Pope Gregory (A.D. 590—604) downwards, p. 71. Supposed by some Rabbis to be Balaam, *ib.* If he rebuked Job, it was for his good, on points he afterwards confessed himself wrong in, *ib.* Yet might be harsh in tone, when doing his duty (v. 21) as earnest preachers sometimes are (compared to S. Stephen, Job xxxiv. 36, or John the Baptist, Job xxxviii. 1): thus bringing out the patience of Job under rebuke, p. 72. His long proemium accounted for, v. 19. The doctrine of a Mediator revealed by inspiration, Job xxxiii. 23. His four discourses unreplicated to through the consciousness of their truth, Job xxxiv. 1; xxxvi. 1. 22. God's greatness a proof of His righteousness, *ib.* Elihu not rebuked by God, Job xxxviii. 1. 2. Disappears from view, as a simple minister before God, Job xlii. 12.
- Elijah, represents the Prophets, as Moses does the Law, Mal. iv. 5. His life agreeing with his name, Vol. iii. p. 65. 1 Kings xvii. 1. Another Enoch and Moses, the John Baptist of the old dispensation, Vol. iii. p. 65. Stern, with gleams of evangelic mercy, *ib.* His abundant miracles called for by the unique character of his age, a crisis in the national history, *ib.* And as authenticating the past, rather than foretelling the future, Vol. v. Part 1. p. vi. Prophecy designed to supplement the failure of the priesthood, which was extinct in the kingdom of Israel, Vol. iii. p. 66. The forerunner of the Great Prophet, *ib.* The word Tishbite explained, 1 Kings xvii. 1. A type of Christ in his mysterious appearances, *ib.* v. 3; xviii. 12. In other respects v. 43. 2 Chr. xxi. 12. His first recorded words a rebuke of Ahab's elementary worship, 1 Kings xvii. 1. His prayer respecting rain how merciful, *ib.* His faith sharply tried by being sent to be fed by ravens, v. 3, and by a heathen woman, v. 9. His miracle of raising the dead contrasted with Christ's, v. 21. An example in days of national degeneracy, 1 Kings xviii. 21. As a restorer, he stands midway between Moses and Christ, *ev.* 30. 1 Kings xix. 8. His sacrifice an exceptional act, yet accepted, Lev. xvii. 5. His slaughter of Baal's prophets vindicated, 1 Kings xviii. 40. Pays a subject's respect to Ahab by running twelve miles before him, v. 46. Why he resorts not to Jerusalem, 1 Kings xix. 3. His passing disappointment and impatience, v. 4. Like Moses, unlike Israel, in the desert. His forty days referred retrospectively to Moses, prospectively to Christ, v. 8. His vainglorious expostulation against Israel, v. 10. His vision, like that of Moses, symbolized the terrors of the Law, followed by the Gospel's still small voice, *ev.* 11, 12. His ministry, like Christ's, continuous, v. 16. 2 Kings ii. 8. 9. His hairy garment, 2 Kings i. 8. His calling down fire from heaven not an act of private revenge, but approved by God, and not repudiated by Christ, v. 10. The fire and judgment were of God, *ev.* 11, 12. Elijah's compassion, courage, and faith, *ev.* 13. 15. His assumption, why intimated beforehand, 2 Kings ii. 1. 3. Its precise date uncertain, 2 Chr. xxi. 12. Compared in its several particulars with the Lord's Ascension, 2 Kings. ii. 1—7. 11. 12. Connecting Him with both Moses and Joshua, v. 8. Expectation of the Jews concerning him, v. 11. Whether shared by early Christians, discussed, Mal. iv.

5. 6. Rather a type of the Baptist, than actually to appear in person, *ib.* The transfiguration, 2 Kings ii. 11. His solitary mention in the book of Chronicles, 2 Chr. xxi. 12. His prophetic writing probably left behind with Elisha, as Christ left His prophetic Spirit with the Apostles after His Ascension, *ib.*
- Elisha, his appropriate name and patronymic, 1 Kings xix. 16. A man of substance, yielding his free service to God, *re.* 19. 20. The spirit of Elijah, now doubled in him, 2 Kings ii. 9, and his work continued, *v.* 14. Type of the Apostles' work after the Ascension, as continuous with Christ's, *re.* 9. 12. 14. 15. His exclamation on Elijah's ascension explained, *v.* 12. So 2 Kings xiii. 14. His miracles spread over forty years (fifty, 2 Kings viii. 4; xiii. 20), extended beyond the range of Elijah's to the surrounding heathen, 2 Kings ii. 17. Their typical character may have guided the selection of those recorded, *ib.* Elijah mostly worked miracles without means, Elisha with means; *ib.* 2 Kings iii. 15. His miracles how symbolical of the Apostolic labours, 2 Kings ii. 20—22; iii. 16; iv. 3. 27; v. 19; vi. 15—18. Those slain for their blasphemy not the little children of 2 Kings ii. 23. Their sceptical scorn punished directly by God, *v.* 24. Contrast between his miracle of raising the dead child and the like one of Elijah, 2 Kings iv. 29—37. He could not, like Christ, convey the power of working miracles to others, *ib.*; *v.* 36. His pastoral staff the Levitical Law, *re.* 29—37. Yet in one sense a type of Christ our Life, *ib.* Healing of the deadly pottage symbolized, *v.* 41. Like Christ, dispenses life-giving food, *v.* 43. The iron made to swim in Jordan by means of new wood, its typical significance, 2 Kings vi. 6. The vision of horses and chariots, *re.* 15—17. His dying lesson to Joash, 2 Kings xiii. 16—19. His body reviving the dead typical of the Apostles, by means of whom the world is even now quickened, the blood of martyrs being the seed of the Church, *v.* 21.
- Eli-hah delineated, Gen. x. 4. Ezek. xxvii. 7.
- Eliphaz, meaning of the word, Job ii. 11. Characterized by contrast with Job's other two friends: dignified and considerate, though void of sympathy, Job iv. 1; v. 17—26. By quoting one passage from his speech, St. Paul does not sanction all he said, Job v. 13.
- Eli-shama, the scribe, Jer. xxxvi. 12.
- Elizabeth, queen, her motto on the destruction of the Spanish Armada, Ex. xv. 10.
- Elizur (i. e. my God is a Rock), first named head of a tribe, perhaps typical of Cephas or Peter, the chief Apostle, Num. i. 5.
- Elkosh, Nah. i. 1.
- Ellasar, located, Gen. xiv. 1.
- Eluathai, Jer. xxxvi. 12.
- Elon, Josh. xix. 43.
- Eltolad, or Tolad, Josh. xv. 30.
- Emims, and other giant races, Gen. xiv. 5. Deut. ii. 10. How their overthrow would encourage Israel, *ib.*
- Empires the Four great (Dan. vii. p. 29), how symbolized, Dan. ii. 31; vii. 4—7. Named, Dan. ii. 39. 40. Their fragments, *v.* 41. Christ's the fifth, *v.* 44. Supposed reference to them, Joel i. 4.
- Enam, Josh. xv. 34.
- Endor, its site and history, Josh. xvii. 11. 1 Sam. xxviii. 7. 8. Ps. lxxxiii. 10.
- En-eglaim, Ezek. xlvii. 10.
- En-gannim, Josh. xix. 21. 2 Kings ix. 27.
- En-gedi, its site and history, Josh. xv. 62. 1 Sam. xxiii. 29. 2 Chr. xx. 2. Ps. lvii. p. 86. Ezek. xlvii. 10. Its spiritual significance, Cant. i. 11.
- Engelhardt, cited, Lam. v. 7.
- Engine, etymology of, Eccles. vii. 29.
- England, God's deliverances vouchsafed to her recapitulated, 2 Chr. xvi. 7.
- Ennius wrote acrostics, Ps. ix. p. 12.
- Enoch, a sabbatical person: his character, office, and the book called after him, Gen. v. 24. Zech. x. 12. Though not now extant, cited by St. Jude, Gen. v. 24. Cp. Dan. iv. 13.
- En-rogel, site of, Josh. xv. 7. 2 Sam. xvii. 17. 1 Kings i. 9.
- En-shemesh, Josh. xv. 7. Its ancient and modern names contrasted, *ib.*
- Envy of good far from divine, Dan. x. 13.
- Ephah, located, Isa. lx. 6.
- Ephah (see *Measures*), the, a full measure, eight gallons, Zech. v. 6. Its symbolical sense here, *ib.*
- Ephes-dammim, 1 Sam. xvii. 1: or Pas-dammim, 1 Chr. xi. 13.
- Ephod of the High Priest, Ex. xxviii. 6. 1 Sam. xiv. 3. Its skirt, or rather collar, Ps. cxxxiii. 2. With Urim and Thummim, 1 Sam. xxiii. 2. 6. 9; xxx. 7. "Without an ephod," Hos. iii. 4. Usually worn by priests, 1 Sam. xxii. 18. Samuel's and David's were simple garments, 1 Sam. ii. 18.
- Base or idolatrous counterfeits, Judg. xvii. 5; xviii. 14. Isa. xxx. 22.
- Ephraem Syrus, S., cited, Gen. xxxvii. 1; xlii. 13; xlv. 3. 1 Kings xviii. 33. 2 Kings ii. 9. Joel i. 4.
- Ephraim, meaning of the name, Gen. xli. 52. Hos. xiii. 15. Why preferred to his elder brother, Gen. xlviii. 14. Deut. xxxiii. 17. A passage of his life, 1 Chr. vii. 21—23. Why "my first-born," Jer. xxxi. 9. Already more numerous than Manasseh, Num. i. 33. The leading tribe, Ps. lx. 7. The pride of Israel, Hos. v. 5. General name for the ten tribes, Jer. vii. 15. How "a cake not turned," Hos. vii. 8. His emblem a bullock, Deut. xxxiii. 17. His lot accords with Jacob's prophecy, Josh. xvi. 1. His separate cities, *v.* 9. Not strictly distinguished from Manasseh's lot, Josh. xvi. 14. Selfish toleration of Canaanites, who led them into idolatry, Josh. xvi. 10. Ps. lxxviii. 9. Self-vaunting temper of the tribe rebuked, Josh. xvii. 14. (Cp. Judg. xii. 1. 4.) Permitted to occupy what its efforts might win, Judg. xvii. 17. Its envy of Judah, Ps. lxxviii. p. 121; *re.* 67, 68. Jer. xxxi. 6; the popular refrain, 1 Kings xii. 16. Internal feud with Manasseh, Isa. ix. 21.
- Ephraim, mount, Josh. xvii. 15. Judg. xvii. 1. 1 Kings iv. 8. Jer. i. 19.
- Ephraim, wood of, Josh. xvii. 15. To the east of Jordan (see *Gilead*), 2 Sam. xlviii. 6.
- Ephraim, 2 Chr. xiii. 19.
- Ephrath, or *Bethlehem*, described, Gen. xxxv. 19. Josh. xv. 59. Ruth i. 2. 2 Chr. xi. 6. Ezra ii. 21. Ps. cxxxii. 6. Mic. v. 2. Connected with the elder Caleb, 1 Chr. ii. 24. Perhaps named after a person, 1 Chr. ii. 19. 51. Water scarce there, 2 Sam. xxiii. 15. The lowly town contrasted with great empires, Mic. v. 1. 2. *Ephratah*, obsolete in Christ's time, *v.* 2.
- Ephrathite (i. e. *Ephraimite*), 1 Sam. i. 1. 1 Kings xi. 26.
- Ephron, mount, Josh. xv. 9.
- Epicureans, their tenets, Job xxii. 12.
- Epiphanus, S., cited, Gen. i. 4; xv. 16; xvii. 10, 11. Deut. xxxi. 9. 1 Kings xiii. 1. Vol. iii. p. 366, *note* 1. Job xxix. 18. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. vi, *note* 2. Ps. cii. 6. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xi, *note* 11. Prov. viii. 22. Jer. vii. 18.
- Episcopacy, the, its duties, as foreshadowed in Eleazar's, enumerated, Num. iv. 16. Bound to maintain godly discipline, *v.* 18. The priesthood must not usurp its powers, Num. xvi. 40, as does a Presbyterian parity, Jer. xxxiii. 18—22. Comfort in times of Episcopal degeneracy, Neh. x. 1. When Bishops countenance heresy, they become responsible for its mischief, Neh. xii. 5. 7. "Thy officers," Isa. lx. 17. Need for increase of English Episcopate, Deut. ix. 3. Isa. xlix. 23.
- Era of the Seleucide (B.C. 312), Dan. viii. 9.
- Erastianism, originated with Jeroboam, Amos vii. 13.
- Erech, located, Gen. x. 10.
- Esrhaddon, rather than Sargon his grandfather, colonized Samaria, 2 Kings xvii. 24. Ezra iv. 2. Isa. vii. 8. The people heathen who mingle with the remnant in the land, 2 Kings xvii. 24. Date of his accession, Isa. xxxvii. 37. His exploits, 2 Kings xix. 37. Alone of Assyrian Kings reigned personally at Babylon: his inscriptions. Precise accuracy of Scripture account, 2 Chr. xxxiii. 11. Perhaps not meant by Asnapper, Ezra iv. 10.
- Esau, origin of the name, Gen. xxv. 25. Ravenous, *v.* 30, and profane, *re.* 32. 34. His three or four wives discriminated, Gen. xxvi. 34; xxxvi. 2. 3. His blessing contrasted with Jacob's, Gen. xxvii. 39. How fulfilled historically, *v.* 40. His impotence, *v.* 41, and carnal life, Gen. xxviii. 8. 9. Reconciled with his brother beyond hope, Gen. xxxiii. 4, and so with God, Gen. xxxv. 29. His posterity numerous, Gen. xxxvi. 1. See *Edom*. God's hatred of him and them not arbitrary, but from foreknowledge of their evil character, Mal. i. 2. 3.
- Eseutheon, the Church's, Mic. v. 6.
- Esdracul, plain of, produces much grain self-sown, Lev. xxv. 6. See *Jezreel*.
- Esdras, the first Apocryphal book of, a useful comment on the history of Josiah's reign, 2 Chr. xxxv. 1, and on the book of Ezra, Ezra v. 3; viii. 1—14; x. 6. Its conclusion, Ezra x. 41. The second book, probably a work of the first century, Cant. vi. 9. Cited, Ezra vii. 6.
- Esheol, Num. xiii. 23.
- Eshkalon, or *Ascalon*, site of, Josh. xiii. 3. Amos i. 8.
- Esh-tal, Josh. xv. 23; xix. 41. 1 Chr. ii. 53.
- Eshtemoah, Judg. v. 50: *Eshtemoa*, Josh. xxi. 14. 1 Sam. xxx. 28. 1 Chr. iv. 17.
- Esquirol, cited, Dan. iv. 16.
- "Essays and Reviews," cited, Vol. i. Part I. p. xxxi, *note* 4. Gen. ii. 5—7; xxii. 2. 2 Kings xxiv. 6. Hos. xi. 1.
- Esther, however worldly-minded, certainly not Amestris, who

- was a Persian Jezebel, Esther ii. 1. Her maiden and royal names, *v.* 7. Her loyalty to the king who was faithless to her, *vv.* 19—22. A figure of Christ's Church, Esther v. 1. Her courtly speech, Esther vii. 4. Her request for a second day of self-defence not cruel, Esther ix. 13, as the great slaughter made by the Jews in pure self-defence shows the power and malignity of their enemies, *v.* 16.
- Esther, book of (Heb. *megillath*, roll), Esther ix. 26, supplementary to that of Ezra, and perhaps written by him, Vol. iii. p. 315. Giving the history of the Jews who did not return, *ib.* In date between Ezra, &c., ch. vi. and vii. pp. 315, 362: an episode to it, p. 365. Which causes its ending, as the last historical book, to seem abrupt in our Bibles, though the Jewish are otherwise arranged, Esther x. 3. No book of Scripture needs more thoughtful attention, as at first sight it resembles an Oriental Romance, Vol. iii. p. 358. Highly coloured and full of strange incidents, *ib.* Analysis of its contents, *ib.* Even the better characters, Mordecai and Esther, of a worldly type and low religious tone, ambitious and unprayerful, pp. 358, 359. God's name not once mentioned, *ib.* Yet, in spite of objectors, p. 360, *notes*, none the less inspired and profitable, *ib.* God's Providence is there, if His name be not, p. 377. Esther vi. 2. Undoubtedly a part of Canonical Scripture as received by Christ, by the Jewish and the Christian Church, p. 360. The more it is examined, the clearer its truth is seen. Simple and artless, p. 361. Its exact faithfulness (Esther i. 10. 16) triumphantly proved, pp. 360—1. Oriental customs illustrate Esther i. 3. 5. 6; iii. 1; vii. 2. Ahasuerus is the weak and passionate Xerxes, p. 360. Just the same character in Scripture as in Herodotus, p. 361. Esther iii. 11; vi. 8. The delay of four years before his marriage thus accounted for, Esther ii. 1. Apocryphal Esther and the Targum make Mordecai and Esther devout, p. 361. Esther iv. 14: not so the true word of God, p. 362. The Holy Spirit teaches the appropriate lesson by means of silence and reserve, *ib.* Contrast its characters with the holy zeal of those spoken of in the contemporaneous books of Ezra and Nehemiah, pp. 362—3. Esther iv. 14. Mordecai and Esther like Lot's wife, p. 363. Favourable specimens of such as cared not to return to Jerusalem, and so grew of the earth, earthy, *ib.* Esther iv. 1. God dealt with them as they with Him: He affords them no spiritual aid in distress, but, since in some degree they acknowledge Him, mere earthly prosperity, p. 364. God's Providence overruling all for His Church, *ib.* Esther iv. 14. His name unseen, but His work visible to the eye of faith, p. 364. The book also prophetic of Christ's victory over Satan, *ib.* Moral lessons taught in this book, p. 365. Especially the state of the world before the Incarnation, Esther ii. 3; ix. 16. Written by a contemporary, probably Ezra, p. 365. Commentators, p. 366.
- Esther, the Apocryphal additions to, only found in Greek, a heterogeneous mass in modern Bibles. Received as canonical at the Council of Trent. Vol. iii. p. 361, *note* 4. Full of the Divine Name, Esther vi. 2. Make Haman a Macedonian, Esther iii. 1. Mordecai a hero, Esther a saint, Esther iv. 14. Estius, cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 121, *note* 3. Ezek. xxviii. p. 221.
- Etam rock, Judg. xv. 8. 2 Chr. xi. 6.
- Eternal existence, silence of Levitical Law respecting it shows its own imperfect and preparatory character, Lev. xxvi. 46.
- Eternal generation of our Blessed Lord, the Divine Logos, rightly inferred by the Fathers from Prov. viii. 22. 23. 24. Mic. v. 2. In spite of the Arian argument resting on the Septuagint rendering, Prov. viii. 22. His distinct Personality, *vv.* 30. 36.
- Eternity (Heb. *olam*), set before man's eyes by God, yet so that he can see a small portion only, Eccles. iii. 11.
- Eth, Hebrew note of the accusative case, Zech. i. 18.
- Etham, description of: Solomon's gardens, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 84. Eccles. ii. 5.
- Ethan, the Ezrahite, account of, 1 Kings iv. 31: the Merarite singer, *ib.* 1 Chr. vi. 44. Ps. lxxxix. p. 141. Called also Jeduthun, 1 Chr. vi. 42; xvi. 41; xxv. 1. 2 Chr. v. 12. A quaternion of pathetic Psalms delivered through him, Ps. xxxix. p. 57; lxii. p. 92. His loyal spirit to Rehoboam, Eccles. x. 4.
- Ethbaal, meaning of his name: his history, 1 Kings xvi. 31.
- Ethiopia (Heb. *Cush*, which see), 2 Kings xix. 9. 2 Chr. xii. 3; xiv. 9. Isa. xxxvii. 9. Jer. xli. 9. Ezek. xxix. 10; xxx. 4. Amos ix. 7. Zeph. ii. 12. Its position, Isa. xlviii. 1. Nah. iii. 9. Its eunuchs, Jer. xxxviii. 7. Subject to Persia, Esther i. 1. Its empty noise, Isa. xlviii. 1. Its burden, Isa. xlviii. p. 51. Physical strength of the people, Ezek. xvi. 26. Allies of spiritual Egypt, Dan. xi. 43. The Pentecostal promise fulfilled, Ps. lxxviii. 31. Its Evangelical history, as the only large Christian state in the East, Isa. xlviii. 7.
- Eucherius, his supposed work, 1 Sam. i. 1, *note* 1. Cited, 2 Sam. xii. 25. 1 Kings xi. p. 45. 2 Kings ii. 9; iv. 3. 29; v. 19. 27; xx. 11.
- Eunuchs no longer excluded from the Church, Isa. lvi. 3. Jer. xxxviii. 7; xxxix. 16. God's blessing on their piety, Dan. i. 3.
- Euphemisms, *e.g.* play for fight, 2 Sam. ii. 14: bless for curse, 1 Kings xxi. 10. So 2 Kings xv. 5. Prov. vi. 32.
- Euphrates, Isa. xlvii. 2: dried up, Isa. xlv. 27.
- Euripides, cited, Gen. xxiv. 51. Job i. 5. Prov. xix. 2. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xv. Dan. xi. 38.
- Eusebius, cited, Gen. ii. 19; vi. 11; xxxiv. 1; xli. 8. Dent. xii. 1; xvi. 13. Josh. iv. 19. Judg. xi. 33; xvi. 4; xx. 33; xxi. 8. 1 Sam. ix. 4; xi. 1. 8; xxix. 1. 1 Kings iv. 33; ix. 28 (*Eupolemus*); xiv. 25. 2 Kings iii. 27; viii. 8. Neh. i. 1. Vol. iii. p. 360. Vol. iv. Part 1. p. xvi, *note* 12. Job ii. 11. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. iv. Ps. xv. 5; xvi. 6; xxii. 12. 26; xxxi. 22; xli. 1; lv. 9. 15. 23; lx. 6; lxxviii. 1. 10; lxii. p. 112. r. 3; lxxvi. p. 119; lxxx. 14; lxxxiv. 6; lxxxv. 8. 10; lxxxix. 52; xc. p. 151; cii. 6; cix. p. 174. *vv.* 2. 8. 11; cxviii. 22. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. x, *note* 8; p. xi, *note* 11. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xvii, *note* 7. Isa. ii. 2; xi. 6—9; xxi. 1 (*Abydenus*); xxii. 1. 6; xxiii. 18; xxv. 6. Jer. xxvi. 18; xlviii. 24. Lam. p. 138. Ezek. xxix. 13 (*Megasthenes*). Dan. ii. 31; iv. pp. 14. 15. r. 30 (*Abydenus*); v. 1; xi. 26. Hos. xiii. 14. Joel iii. 2. Amos ii. 1. Obad. 1. Zeph. ii. 11; iii. 8. Hag. ii. 9. Zech. iii. 3. 4. 8; xiv. 8. Mal. i. 11.
- Eustathius on Homer, cited, Job ix. 9.
- Euthymius, cited, Ps. lvii. p. 86; lxxviii. 13; lxxvi. p. 119; exx. p. 196.
- Eutychian heresy confuted by the ancients from Gen. xii. 3. Fights against the Nestorian heresy, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 115.
- Evans, Archd. R. W., cited, Gen. xxii. 2; xxv. 32. 1 Sam. ii. 23.
- Eve, her name a consolation after the fall, Gen. iii. 20. Her formation from man typical of the origin of the Church from the side of the second Adam, when sleeping on the cross, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 123, *note* 7. Cant. iii. 5.
- Evil-merodach, son of Nebuchadnezzar, his name and date of his reign, 2 Kings xxv. 27. Jer. xxvii. 7. His act of mercy, Dan. iv. 27. Short-lived, and succeeded by Nabonedus, Jer. li. 46.
- Ewald, H., cited, Dent. xxxii. 1; xxxiii. 1. Judg. xvii. 5. 1 Sam. ii. 1. 1 Kings iii. p. 44. 2 Kings iii. 4; xvii. 6; xxiii. 29. 1 Chr. iii. 21; iv. 39; vii. 21. 2 Chr. xi. 5. Ezra iv. 7; viii. 15. Neh. iv. 23. Esther iii. 1. Job i. 1. Also *passim*, in the poetical and prophetic books.
- Ewald, L., cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 76, *note* 1.
- Example, power of, Prov. xxvii. 19.
- Exegesis, Biblical, of modern times in some respects sinks below Arianism itself, Prov. viii. 22. Must be restored to a higher standard if Holy Scripture is to do its proper work in noble minds and loving hearts, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 122.
- Exodus, book of, summary of its contents, Vol. i. Part 1. *Intro.* p. xxxiv. Joined on to Genesis by the particle *vau*, Ex. i. 1. See *Pentateuch*.
- Exodus from Egypt, the birth of Jewish nation, Ex. xii. 2. Type of Christ's Redemption, Isa. lxxiii. 6. Contrasted with the *Eisodus* to Canaan and *Anodus* from Babylon, Ezra p. 296. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. viii. Isa. xlviii. 22. Ezek. xx. 44. Objections to Mosaic history considered: the summons not sudden, Ex. xii. 37. Cattle, how sustained in wilderness, *v.* 38: much diminished at second passover, *ib.* That God led them an answer to all real objections, Ex. xiii. 17. 21. Why they went not direct to Canaan, *vv.* 17. 18. Ex. xiv. 2. The whole history typical of Christ and His Church, Ex. xiii. 18. Vol. i. Part 1. p. 247. Num. xxxiii. 1. Ps. cxiv. p. 180. Special application of the location of the two tribes and half-tribe to Church history, Num. xxvii. 20—33. The host unarmed with carnal weapons, Ex. xiii. 18, but armed, Ex. xvii. 9. Murmurings of people, Ex. xv. 24; xvi. 2; xvii. 2. Marah and Elim spiritualized, Ex. xv. 25. 27. The tents, Ex. xvi. 16. Meribah of Rephidim, Ex. xvii. 7. Water from the rock typical, Ps. cxiv. 8. List of its "contentions," Num. xx. 3. Chronology of the wanderings in the wilderness, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 256. Ex. xl. 2. 17. Chronology of giving of Law and gifts of princes, Num. vii. 1; ix. 1. Spies at Kadesh denote the natural man without grace, Num. xiii. 2. Twelve as were the Apostles, but the ten foreshadow rejection by Jews of the true Joshua, Num. xiv. 1. Thirty-eight years' silence between the two arrivals at Kadesh, names of stations only known, Num. xx. 1. History of unfaithful Churches written in water, *ib.* Deut. i. 46. No national progress, Deut. x.

6. A new Meribah, Num. xx. 3. Eastward march from Edom, v. 21. Why the places named in the detailed history sometimes differ from those in the formal list, Num. xxi. 11—20; xxxiii. 1. Parallel table of journeyings and stations, arranged in four periods, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 185. Moses' narrative not complete, Deut. viii. 4. Inspiration in the silence of Scripture, while the elder generation disappears, Num. xxxiii. 20. See *Increase*.
- Eye, the right, why indispensable in war, 1 Sam. xi. 2. Emblem of Christ's light, Zech. iii. 9; iv. 10.
- Ezekiel and his book. The four greater prophets contrasted in the significance of their names, Ezek. i. 3; ii. 1; iii. 8. Their localities, and the subjects of their prophecies, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 152. Though all speak by the same Spirit, yet as Jeremiah authenticates Isaiah, so Ezekiel re-echoes Jeremiah, *ib.*, and *vice versa*, Ezek. iv. 3; xi. 3. 8. 16; xiii. 2, 3; xiv. 14; xvii. 3; xxiii. 11. 23; xxv. p. 213; xxxii. 19. His contemporary, both being priests, though 400 miles apart, p. 152—3. His mission began in his thirtieth year (B.C. 595), and lasted at least 22 years, *ib.*, note 7. Ezek. i. 1. Chronology of ch. viii.—xxiii. Ezek. xx. 1. Cp. Ezek. xxiv. 1. Date of vision of Temple, Ezek. xl. 1; p. 274. In exile, like St. John at Patmos, Ezek. i. 1. His call one of objective personality, v. 3. A heavenly vision for his comfort, like Isaiah's, v. 5. Ezek. iii. 12. Co-operates with Jeremiah in calling king and people to repentance, and foretelling woes to come, Ezek. i. 2. Jeremiah begins and ends in suffering, the more than Euripides of the Hebrews; Ezekiel in glory, their more than Æschylus, pp. 152—3. On the banks of Chebar displays God's omnipresence and omniscience by seeing all at that moment going on at Jerusalem, p. 153. Ezek. viii. 1. 6. How often he, and Daniel who completes his prophecy once, are appropriately addressed as "son of man," p. 153. Ezek. ii. 1; xx. 4. Ezekiel catholicizes Hebrewism, p. 153. Ezek. xi. 15. His universal sympathy, Ezek. ii. 1. Though a priest, warns, like Jeremiah, about a worship of splendid ritual without obedience, pp. 154—5. General account of the contents of his book, pp. 153—7. His teaching like Jeremiah's by symbolic acts, pp. 154—5. Ezek. iv. p. 165; v. 12. 15. Doctrine of personal communion of the isolated soul with God, p. 155. Ezek. xxiv. 22. Spiritual Temple and ideal Holy Land, refer to the Church glorified, p. 153, 156. Comfort for God's Church and people in these troubled times, against fear of overthrow of their national Church and the power of Anti-christian confederacy, p. 156. Ezekiel, how a type and sign of Christ, p. 153. Ezek. i. 1; ii. 1; xi. 15; xx. 4; xxiv. 27. Christ the scope of his whole book, like that of Isaiah, p. 157. Ezek. i. 5. The Good Shepherd, Ezek. xx. 37; xxxiv. 23. List of commentators, p. 157. Like Jonah joins his prophecy on to the rest by *vaui*, Ezek. i. 1. His mixed metaphors, Ezek. xix. 7; xxxi. 14. His imagery blended with Isaiah's in the Apocalypse, Ezek. i. 5; ii. 8. 10. His perpetual use of Adonai Jehovah why appropriate, Ezek. ii. 4; iii. 11. See *Divine Names*. Why the roll was both sweet and bitter, Ezek. iii. 3. Bound by his people as was Jeremiah, Ezek. iii. 25. Mocked by the princes, Ezek. xi. 3. His symbolic acts (Ezek. xii. 4) an assurance and a sign to those before whom they were wrought, Ezek. iv. 12. 13. 15; xii. 6; xxiv. 27. His confident and repeated appeal in set phrases to the people as his future witnesses, Ezek. vi. 4. His correctness in regard to events soon accomplished a proof of his inspiration respecting distant events, Ezek. xii. 23; xvii. 23; xxiv. 1. 24; xxxiii. 21. 22. 30. Bears witness to Daniel, Ezek. xiv. 14. Two great qualities of his preaching, Ezek. xxiv. 22. His prophecies (akin to Jeremiah's) respecting the heathen, while awaiting the pre-announced fall of Jerusalem, Ezek. xxv. p. 213. How suggested by that approaching event, *ib.* Their accomplishment both literal and spiritual. Types of so-called Christian powers, under different phases, in hostile relations to the Church, *ib.* Seven leagued powers, Ezek. xxxii. 30. Second part of his book begins with ch. xxxiii., telling Israel's deliverance yet to come, as Isa. xl.—lxvi., and comfort for God's people, p. 231. Ezek. xxxiii. 10. His prophecies become more and more spiritual as they advance, Ezek. xxxvi. p. 238. His prophecy of the conflict in the last times illustrated from the Apocalypse, pp. 246—7. Refers to Isaiah as one volume, Ezek. xxxviii. 17. See *Holy Land and Temple*.
- Ezion-geber, the nadir of Israel's wanderings. Its derivation, position, and history, Num. xxxiii. 35. 1 Kings ix. 25; xxii. 48.
- Ezra (i.e. the helper), Vol. iii. pp. 295, 296. His principal actions recorded by Nehemiah rather than by himself, Ezra x. 44. His priestly descent, Ezra vii. 1. A ready scribe: this self-praise amounts but to giving himself his right title, v. 6. The more necessary as prophecy had nearly ceased, and he had to revise and complete the Canon of Scripture, *ib.* Full civil power bestowed on him: his influence with Artaxerxes, whence derived, v. 25. God's blessing on his journey, Ezra viii. 31. His language shows familiarity with the Pentateuch, with Isaiah and Daniel, Vol. iii. p. 320. His arrival a critical period of Jewish history, and his holy courage gave the death-blow to idolatry, Ezra ix. 2. Thus far a type of Christ, *ib.*, v. 5. Compared with Daniel, v. 4. Moses and Aaron in one, Ezra x. 1. Tempers justice with mercy, v. 3. Not jealous of Nehemiah, who superseded him, but now limited himself to spiritual functions, Neh. viii. 1. Now perhaps first permitted by the civil power to assemble the people to read the Law, *ib.* Read with exposition when necessary, v. 7, 8. He sealed not the Covenant, as acting on God's behalf, as a type of the great Mediator, like another Moses, and as taking the High Priest's place, who was disaffected, Neh. x. 1. Another person meant, Neh. xii. 1. 33.
- Ezra, book of, joined on to Nehemiah, gives the history of 108 years, Vol. iii. p. 295. Analysis of the contents of both, the place of the book of Esther being noted, *ib.* Begins by adopting the concluding words of 2 Chron., thus suggesting the same authorship, p. 296. Ezra i. 1. Identified with Ezra, p. 300: notwithstanding some common and natural change of persons, Ezra v. 4; vii. 28; x. 1. First chapter wrongly assigned to Daniel, Ezra i. 1. These books unite the past with the future, finding a prophetic commentary in Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi, pp. 296. 300. Ezra v. 1. Prophetic and historical Scriptures make up one harmonious whole, Ezra i. 1. All written with spiritual reference to Christ and His Church, p. 296. In the joint work of Ezra and Nehemiah, both Confessors, the parts of Priest and Layman discriminated, p. 297. They describe restoration by means of dissolution, the victory of the spiritual over the material, of God's grace prevailing over man's sin, p. 298. List of commentators, p. 300. The second chapter no interpolation from Neh. vii. Both copied the same public documents, made B.C. 536, with designed variations from independent sources, Ezra ii. 1. 64. The Chaldee portions probably as transcribed from records, Ezra iv. 8. Which accounts for the first person used, Ezra v. 4. These portions make in favour of the genuineness of the book, Ezra vii. 28. May be compared throughout with the apocryphal 1 Esdras, Ezra v. 3; viii. 1—14; x. 6. Fifty-eight years intervene (embracing the events of Xerxes' reign and the book of Esther) between ch. vi. and vii. Vol. iii. p. 315. Ezra's history now becomes personal. Joined by the copulative to the preceding, Ezra vii. 1. He changes the person, like other Hebrew writers, but with good reason, v. 6. Ezra x. 1. Groundless objections to the book noted, v. 3. 6. Seems to end abruptly, as being carried on in the book of Nehemiah, v. 44.
- Ezrahite, the term explained, Ps. lxxxviii. p. 139.
- Fable, or apologue, the oldest, Judg. ix. 8. 2 Sam. xii. 1. 2 Kings xiv. 9. Lessons from trees, Judg. ix. 14. See *Parable*.
- Fairbairn, Dr. P., cited. Vol. i. Part 1. *Pref.* p. xvi, note 6. Gen. i. 24, 25. Isa. lxx. 21—23. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 275, note 4; 287, note 3. Hos. xi. 1. Also *passim* in Ezekiel.
- Faith to be known before God only by its works, Gen. xxii. 12. Can perform things otherwise impossible, Judg. i. 19. Its limit alone limits God's gifts, 2 Kings iv. 6. The knowledge obtained by faith distinguished from that obtainable by sight, Eccles. iii. 19. 21; iv. 1. 3. Its derivation, both in Hebrew and Greek, implies the resting on God's promises, not on self, Hab. ii. 4. Trusts most firmly when the Church's prospects are the darkest, Hab. iii. 16.
- False teaching in religion, a heinous crime prompted by the Evil Spirit, Deut. xiii. 3. 5. Those guilty of it to be reserved for the judgment of the Great Day, *ib.*
- Familiar spirits (Heb. *oboth*), derivation of the word. Their objective reality assumed, Lev. xix. 31. Deut. xviii. 11. See *Witchcraft*.
- Families, in a long succession of generations, prone to particular sins, 2 Kings viii. 27.
- Famine and such like visitations not due to secondary causes only, 2 Sam. xxi. 1. 2 Kings vi. 33; viii. 1. Why to be specially looked for in these last times, 2 Sam. xxi. 1. Not inconsistent with God's justice, and no valid objection to be drawn from delay of punishment, *ib.* Years of famine proposed to David, three or seven, explained, 2 Sam. xxiv. 13.
- Fast, the, which God requires, Lev. xvi. 29. Commanded, *ib.*; Lev. xxiii. 27. Those practised by Daniel, Dan. x. 3. A token of repentance, 1 Sam. vii. 6; Neh. ix. 1; for public

- guilt incurred, 1 Kings xxi. 9. Special fasts vain without hearty repentance, Jer. xxxvi. 6. Zech. p. 121; ch. vii. 3. 5. 9, 10. That of Nineveh, a foretaste of the repentance of the heathen world, Jonah iii. 5. "Exact all your labours" explained, Isa. lviii. 3. Fast of the fifth month for the double capture of Jerusalem: Jeremiah's writings then read in the Hebrew Church, Vol. v. Part 2. p. x. Jer. lii. 12. Zech. vii. 3. Those of the fourth and tenth month, Zech. viii. 19; not yet turned into feasts to the Jews, *ib.* That for Gedaliah's murder in the seventh month, Jer. xli. 1. Zech. vii. 5. The Christian seasons of abstinence, Lev. xvi. 29. Neglect in modern times of Church fasts, Zeph. iii. 18.
- Fat of the sacrifice wholly God's portion, as being the best, Lev. iii. 3, 17; iv. 8—10. For which cause seized by Eli's sons, 1 Sam. ii. 15.
- Fata morgana, or mirage, Isa. xxxv. 7.
- Fatalism not taught in Eccles. iii. 2.
- Father sometimes equivalent to ruler, 1 Chr. ii. 42: or to honoured master, 2 Chr. ii. 13; iv. 16. Job xxxiv. 36. Or to ancestor, Dan. v. 1. See *Child, Son*.
- Fear of Isaac, why God is so called, Gen. xxxi. 42. Fear insufficient in itself to lead to salvation: examples given, Judg. i. 21—26. Guilty fears, Job xv. 21—23. Holy fear of offending a forgiving Father, Ps. cxxx. 4.
- Feasts are stated seasons for united religious worship in fixed places, Lev. xxiii. 2. Considered as social institutions, Ex. xxiii. 14—16. Those of the Law spiritualized and Christianized in the Gospel, Deut. xvi. 1. Nah. i. 15. Hagg. p. 113. Institution of three great Jewish feasts only why renewed, Deut. xvi. 2. The new moon a season when trade was suspended, Amos viii. 5. Festivals suspended during the great Assyrian invasion, Nah. i. 15. Lawful, if only from competent human authority, Esth. ix. 26. Cessation of feasts during the Captivity a ground for godly sorrow, Zeph. iii. 18. Haggai so named as helping to restore them, Hagg. p. 113. Neglect of holy seasons and infrequent communions among ourselves, Zeph. iii. 18.
- Feelings and spiritual emotions not in themselves religion, Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. 126. 127—8.
- Feet of Orientals, why so tenacious, Job xxiii. 11.
- Fellow (Heb. *omit*) of God: the term proves Christ's proper Divinity, Zech. xiii. 7.
- Fendall, cited, 2 Kings xxiv. 6.
- Fergusson, J., cited, Vol. iii. p. 19. 2 Kings xviii. 17. Ezra vi. 4. Neh. ii. 13; iii. 16.
- Field, F. (see *Origen*), his edition of Origen's Hexapla characterized, Eccles. iv. 15. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xxi. Cited, Prov. iv. 3; xviii. 8. 24; xix. 18. 24; xxii. 6; xxv. 11; xxvi. 7. Eccles. ii. 8; iv. 15. 16. Dan. iv. 13; ix. 27; xi. 16. 45.
- Final *-ah* in Hebrew like our *-ward*, Amos iv. 3.
- Final cause of all deliverances wrought for us by God, Ps. ev. 45. Of His penal visitations, Isa. xvii. 7; xix. 1. 22. Of prophecy, Isa. xxiii. 9.
- Fifty, how a number proper for the Pentecost and Jubilee, Lev. xxv. 8. Also indicating remission, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 279. See *Arithmetic*.
- Fine linen, from what material made, and how typical, Ex. xxv. 4. A product of Egypt, Isa. xix. 9. Dress of Priests and of Christ as our High Priest, Ezek. ix. 2; x. 8; xlv. 17. Dan. x. 5; xii. 7.
- Finger, the, of cored, Isa. lviii. 9.
- Finishing off a subject before returning to a previous point in the narrative common to the style both of the Old and New Testament, Josh. x. 15.
- Fire, or rather *cypress*, its qualities, Isa. xiv. 8; xli. 19. Ezek. xxvii. 5. Typical, Hos. xiv. 8. Spears so called, Nah. ii. 3. Used in Solomon's Temple, Cant. i. 17.
- Fire from heaven a token of the Divine acceptance of sacrifice, Lev. ix. 24. Judg. vi. 21; xiii. 23. The Pentecostal fire yet living, Lev. ix. 24. Its purifying power, of what typical, Num. xxxi. 23. Zech. xiii. 8, 9. God's fire devouring the ocean, a precursor of the final conflagration, Amos vii. 4. The living flame of God's word, Obad. 18, which will destroy all that oppose, Zech. xii. 6.
- Fire-place in Oriental houses, Jer. xxxvi. 22.
- Firmament, or expanse, the term explained, Gen. i. 6. A vault or band, Amos ix. 6.
- "First, The," a proper title of God and Christ, Isa. xli. 27; xlv. 6.
- First-born of God is Israel, Ex. iv. 22: xi. 5. Vol. i. Part 1. pp. 247, 248, 249. Receiving special favour from Him, Mal. i. 6. The first-born of Israel claimed by God, Ex. xiii. 2. The Levites substituted, Num. iii. 12; viii. 18. Church of the first-born in Christ, Num. xviii. 15. Christ the First-born in the highest sense, Num. iii. 12; xviii. 15. Who may yet have been the Blessed Virgin's only child, Ex. xiii. 2. Why male first-born in Israel so few, Num. iii. 43. Unless we suppose we have only the number born since the law of Ex. xiii. 2 was made, *ib.* Num. viii. 17. Their redemption by money contrasted with ours by Christ, Num. iii. 51. "First-born of the poor" explained, Isa. xiv. 30.
- First emotions of the devout soul noticed by God, Dan. ix. 23; x. 12.
- First father, a general term, Isa. xliii. 27.
- First-fruits to be rendered unto God, the Giver of all, Num. xv. 20. Deut. xxvi. 2. 3. Their typical character, Num. xv. 20. The Apostles such, a pledge of the harvest of the world, *ib.* Several kinds of first-fruits enumerated, Ex. xxii. 29. Christian Harvest Thanksgivings, Deut. xxvi. 5. Offering of Christ our First-fruits and of ourselves in the Holy Eucharist, Isa. lxii. 8, 9.
- Firstlings of herds, alleged inconsistency between Numbers and Deuteronomy respecting them, considered, Num. xviii. 18.
- First transgressions of the Divine Law more severely punished, Ex. xxxii. 27. Num. xv. 35. Josh. vii. 25.
- Fish, why Christians are symbolized by them, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 286, and *note* 12. "The great fish" identified, Jonah i. 17.
- Fisherman, the Apostolic, and his alleged successor, the Pope, Hab. i. 12—17.
- Fitches, i. e. *spelt*, eaten during famine, Ezek. iv. 9.
- Five, apparently a favourite Egyptian number, Gen. xlvii. 2.
- Flood, the, hard to realize, yet to deny it is to disbelieve Christ (Gen. vi. 20). A miracle and a mystery, being a type of Holy Baptism. Superficial difficulties examined. Such histories designed to try our faith and lead us upward to spiritual things, Vol. i. Part 1. pp. 35—38. No inconsistencies between the so-called Elohistic and Jehovist accounts (see *Divine Names*), Gen. vi. 20. The sacred narrative confirmed by marine remains, and by the early tradition of all nations, Gen. vii. 1. 19. Not partial but universal, p. 35. Gen. vii. 19. Men's tendency to exaggerate the importance of inferences derivable from physical phenomena, v. 19. Looked back upon by the Psalmist in the single place, except in Genesis, where the word (Heb. *mabbul*) occurs, Ps. xxix. 10. Referred to in Ezek. xxvi. 20.
- Florus, cited, Jer. xxxii. 9. Dan. xi. 18.
- Fool, the three Hebrew words so translated in Proverbs discriminated, Prov. i. 7. So (*παῖς*), Prov. xiv. 24; xvii. 21; xxvi. 1. Not to be won either by austere or by mild means, Prov. xxix. 9. Heb. *cesil* in Eccles. iv. 5. Folly equivalent to impiety, Zech. xi. 15.
- Foreknowledge, the Divine, extends to contingencies, 1 Sam. xxiii. 12. Does not interfere with man's free will, Jer. xxxvi. 3. Mal. i. 2, 3.
- Forerius, cited, Isa. lxiv. 11; lxx. 20.
- Fore-shortening of prophecy, whereby Christ's two Advents are blended together, Isa. lxx. 16. The new heavens and earth began with the first, to be consummated at the second, *re*. 17. 18. Seen also in the fate of Tyre and Babylon, Ezek. xxvi. p. 215, also in Joel's and other prophecies, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. 29. Zech. xii. p. 146. Mal. iii. 17. Omniscience seeing all things in a glance, Zech. xii. 3.
- Fornication regarded as a sin before the written Law, Gen. xxiv. 7. Job xxxi. 1. Our duty of warring against the flesh, Num. xxxi. 16. Its heinousness, both fleshly and spiritual, Deut. xxii. 13—21; xxiii. 17.
- Förster, cited, Job xlii. 11. Jer. xlix. 39. Lam. i. 12.
- Forty, a Scripture period of trial up to its end, Gen. vii. 4. Ex. xxiv. 18. Num. xiii. 25. Deut. xxv. 3. Josh. v. 10. Judg. iii. 11; v. 31. 1 Sam. xvii. 16. 1 Kings ii. 11; vii. 38; xix. 8; 2 Chr. xxxvi. 21. Vol. v. Part 2. p. vii. Ezek. iv. 5. See *Arithmetic*. Forty years memorable in Moses' life, and in other cases, Ex. ii. 11; vii. 7. Jonah iii. 4. Those of wandering in the wilderness not of God's appointment, but of man's sin, Ps. cxiv. 3. A literal period in Ezek. xxix. 13. Forty days of Lent, Jonah iii. 4.
- Forty-two, a typical number for periods of trial and suffering, Ex. xii. 37. Num. xxxiii. 1; xxxv. 6. 2 Kings ii. 23. Vol. iii. p. 323. Dan. vii. 25. See *Arithmetic*.
- Fothergill, Dr. G., referred to, 2 Kings viii. 1. Jer. xii. 1.
- Four, a mystic number indicating universality of space, Josh. xxi. 41. 2 Sam. xxi. 22. 1 Kings vi. 1. 16. Prov. xxx. 10. Cant. vi. 13. Ezek. i. 5; *Retrospect*, pp. 276, and *note* 4; 288, *note* 5; 289. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xix. Zech. i. 18. 20. See *Arithmetic*. By the Jewish reckoning four days elapsed from the beginning of the Lord's Passion unto His Resurrection, Judg. xi. 40.
- Four-square indicates completeness, Ex. xxvii. 1. Ezek. xl. 47; *Retrospect*, pp. 281. 288. See *Arithmetic*.
- Frankincense, emblematical of prayer, Cant. iii. 6.
- Freeman, P. Archd., cited, Gen. i. 2. Lev. iii. cxx. p. 197.

- Free-will of man demonstrated from Deut. v. 29; xi. 26; xxx. 19. Prov. i. 22. Ezek. xviii. 31. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiv.
- Free-will and God's grace combined in Esther vii. 9. Prov. xx. 13. Cant. i. 4. Jer. xviii. 6. Zech. p. 121. Men free by God's permission to do evil, 2 Sam. xvi. 10, 11. Ps. li. 4. Yet God hardens obstinate sinners, 1 Sam. ii. 25. Isa. vi. 9, 10; lxi. 17. Jer. xvi. 13. Ezek. iii. 20; xx. 25; by withholding that grace which their sin has forfeited, Ps. lxi. 27. God uses well men's wickedness to manifest His glory, Prov. xvi. 4. Ezek. xxi. 25. This is evinced even in fulfilling prophecy, Hos. xi. 1. God's grace absolutely necessary and to be accompanied with prayer, Jer. x. 23; xiii. 23. He willeth the salvation of all men, Ezek. xxxiii. 10. Hos. xiii. 9.
- Free-will offerings, both taken collectively and in detail, are figures of Christ, Lev. i. 2. Consist of burnt-offerings, meat-offerings, and peace-offerings, *ib.*
- French words brought into English literature of Charles II's age, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 76, note 1. A French phrase illustrated, Amos i. 3. French clergy expelled at the great Revolution cared for in England, Eccles. xi. 2. Eleven French constitutions since 1793, Dan. ii. 41.
- Friend, the king's, 1 Kings iv. 5.
- Fringes designed as a memento that Israel was God's people, Num. xv. 38 (Heb. *tsitsith*), Deut. xxii. 12 (Heb. *gedilim*). Such an institution as could be kept up any where, Num. xv. 38. Dictum of the Talmud regarding them, Deut. vi. 6-9.
- Fuerst's Hebrew Lexicon (English edition of 1865, Vol. i. Part 1. *Preface*, p. xxii, note 2), cited, *passim*.
- Fulgentius, cited, Ex. vii. 13. Job xlii. 12.
- Full of days implies satiety with life, Gen. xxv. 8. 1 Chr. xxiii. 1. Job xlii. 17.
- Fulness, the, of man's iniquity, precedes God's judgments, Gen. xv. 16. Jonah i. 2.
- Gaash, 2 Sam. xxiii. 30.
- Gaba, or Geba, Josh. xviii. 21. 1 Sam. xiii. 3. 1 Kings xv. 22. 2 Kings xxiii. 8. 1 Chr. viii. 6. Neh. xi. 31. Isa. x. 29. Zech. xiv. 10.
- Gabriel, the archangel, his power and significant name, Dan. viii. 16. Connected with the Incarnation, Dan. ix. 21.
- Gad (1) son of Jacob, his tribe illustrious in Jephthah. Type of the Church Militant, Gen. xlix. 19. His proper place in the list of the tribes, Num. i. 4. Why he decreased in the second census, Num. xxvi. 15-18. See *Reuben*. Commended in Moses' blessing as warring for his inheritance, Deut. xxxiii. 20. The Babylonian god of Fortune so called, Gen. xxx. 11. Isa. lxxv. 11. (2) The seer, 1 Sam. xxii. 5. 2 Sam. xxiv. 11. 1 Chr. xxi. 9; xxix. 29.
- Galatinus, cited, Zech. xi. 1, 2; xiii. 6.
- Galen, cited, Gen. xix. 24. 1 Kings i. 2, 3. Ezek. xvi. 4.
- Galilee, the name derived, Josh. xx. 7; xxii. 10. Isa. ix. 1. Region of, 2 Kings xv. 29. Its spiritual blessings foretold, *ib.* "Of the nations," Isa. ix. 1.
- Gall (Heb. *rosh*), i.e. ciente or colocynth, explained, Deut. xxix. 18. Ps. lxxix. 21. Jer. vii. 11. Lam. iii. 5. Rendered "hemlock," Hos. x. 4.
- Gallim, 1 Sam. xxv. 41. Isa. x. 30.
- Gamma lins, explained, Ezek. xxvii. 11.
- Gar-baal, 2 Chr. xxvi. 7.
- Gardens, the scene of idolatrous worship, Isa. i. 29; lxx. 3; lxxvi. 17. The king's garden, Jer. xxxix. 4. Neh. iii. 15. His wine-press there, Zech. xiv. 10.
- Gareb, an ideal symbolism, Vol. v. Part 2. p. xv. Falsely inserted in some maps of Jerusalem, *ib.*, note 9. Its meaning, Jer. xxxi. 38.
- Garment, or coat of divers colours, explained, Gen. xxxvii. 3. 2 Sam. xiii. 18. Priestly robes of beauty, Isa. lii. 1. Those of foreign nations not to be imitated by Jews, Zeph. i. 8.
- Gate, the, of a city, the place of business, Gen. xix. 1. Ruth iv. 1. Job xxii. 7; and of judgment, Job v. 4; xxxi. 21. Ps. lxxix. 12. Jer. i. 15. Amos v. 10. Market-place situated near it, 2 Sam. xxi. 12. 2 Kings vii. 1. The king's gate a place of honour, Esther iii. 2.
- Gates of the Temple, named, 2 Kings xi. 6, 19; xv. 35. 1 Chr. ix. 18; xxvi. 15, 18. 2 Chr. xxiii. 20; xxvii. 3. Ezra vi. 2. "High gate of Benjamin," Jer. xx. 2. "New gate," Jer. xxxi. 10; xxxvi. 10. "Inner gate," Ezek. viii. 3, 7.
- Gates of Jerusalem: that of "Ephraim," 2 Kings xiv. 13. Neh. viii. 16, or of "Benjamin," Jer. xxxvii. 13; xxxviii. 7. Zech. xiv. 10. That of "the corner," 2 Kings xiv. 13. 2 Chr. xxvi. 9. Jer. xxxi. 38. Zech. xiv. 10. That of "Joshua," 2 Kings xxiii. 8. "Of the valley," 2 Chr. xxvi. 9. Neh. ii. 13; iii. 13; xii. 31. "Fish gate," 2 Chr. xxxiii. 14. Neh. iii. 3. Zeph. i. 10. "Dung port," Neh. ii. 13; iii. 13; xii. 37. "Sheep gate," Neh. iii. 1, commemorative of the Good Shepherd, v. 32. "Old gate," Neh. iii. 6 (same as "First gate," Zech. xiv. 10?). "Fountain gate," Neh. iii. 15; xii. 37. "Zion gate," Neh. iii. 15; xii. 37. "Water gate," Neh. iii. 26; viii. 1; xii. 37. "Horse gate," Neh. iii. 28. "East gate," Neh. iii. 29. "East" or rather "pottery gate," Jer. xix. 2. "Prison gate," Neh. xii. 39. "Gate Miphkad," Neh. iii. 31. "Middle gate," Jer. xxxix. 3. "Gate betwixt the two walls," v. 4.
- Gath, its supposed locality, Josh. xi. 22. 1 Sam. v. 8. Amos vi. 2. Its history, 2 Kings xii. 17. 1 Chr. xviii. 1; xx. 6. 2 Chr. xi. 8.
- Gath-rimmon, Josh. xix. 45. 2 Sam. vi. 10. Alleged textual error, Josh. xxi. 25.
- Gathered, its gracious significance in Scripture, Isa. lvii. 1. Jer. viii. 2; ix. 22.
- Gay, J., referred to, Prov. xviii. 24.
- Gaza, or *Azzah*, described, Gen. x. 19. Deut. ii. 23. Josh. xi. 22; xv. 47. Judg. xvi. 1. 1 Kings iv. 24. Amos i. 6. Taken by Judah, who afterwards lost it by his own fault, as many Christian Churches of the first ages are almost lost now, Judg. i. 18. Smitten by Pharaoh Necho, Jer. xlvii. 1.
- Gebal, the land of, Josh. xiii. 5. Ps. lxxiii. 7. Ezek. xxvii. 9. Its people called Gblites (*Gylblos*), Josh. xiii. 5. 1 Kings v. 18.
- Gedaliah, friend of Jeremia, 2 Kings xxv. 22. Jer. xxxix. 14. His generous spirit, Jer. xl. 16. His treacherous murder, Jer. xli. 1, 4. His burial, Jer. xli. 9. Jewish fast of the seventh month in memory of him, Jer. xli. 1. Zech. vii. 5.
- Geddes, Dr., cited, Isa. xviii. 7.
- Geder, site of, Josh. xii. 13. Called *Beth-gader*, 1 Chr. ii. 51.
- Gederothaim, Josh. xv. 35.
- Gedor, Josh. xv. 58. 1 Chr. iv. 18. Another (?), v. 39.
- Gehazi, meaning of, 2 Kings iv. 12. Isa. xxii. 1. For covetousness the Judas of the Old Testament, 2 Kings iv. 43; v. 27. His sin why so great, v. 20. In guilt like Ananias and Sapphira, v. 25. Chronology of his punishment, v. 27. 2 Kings viii. 4. Typifies the Jewish nation, smitten with the leprosy, which had been removed from the Gentile world, 2 Kings v. 27. Isa. xxii. 1. Gehazi, telling his master's miracles to the king, seems forgiven on repentance and released from punishment, as Israel will be hereafter, 2 Kings viii. 4. Judas becomes a Zacheus, *ib.*
- Geier, cited, Prov. viii. 22; xxvi. 2; xxvii. 23-27. Eccles. i. 1.
- Gemara, the, cited, Isa. i. 1.
- Gemariah, his family connexions and good-will to Jeremiah, Jer. xxxvi. 10.
- Genealogies of Scripture not always designed to be complete, Num. iii. 27, 28. Ruth iv. 20. Lesser names sometimes overpassed, *ib.* 1 Sam. ix. 1. 1 Chr. vi. 4, 11. Ezra vii. 1. Three of our Lord's from Zerubbabel downwards compared, 1 Chr. iii. 24. Why so carefully kept by the Jews, 2 Chr. xii. 15. Ezra ii. 59. Levitical genealogies, 2 Chr. xxxi. 16-18; priestly, Ezra ii. 62.
- Generation, as applied to the Messiah, Isa. liii. 8.
- Genesis, book of, summary of its contents, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* pp. xxxiii-iv. Its Jewish and Greek names and chief ancient expositors, p. 1. No contradiction in the narrative between ch. i. and ch. ii. 1-6, pp. 13, 14. History of Lot no invention of a later age, Gen. xix. 38. Connected with the Psalms, Gen. xlviii. 22. See *Pentateuch*.
- Gentiles, their call foretold, Isa. xl. p. 118; xliii. 9; xlv. 25; xlix. 21; lv. 3; lvi. p. 162; v. 3, 8; lx. 1; lxxvi. 20. Jer. xvi. 19; xxx. 3. Zech. xiv. 16. Mal. i. 11. No rejection of Zion to be hence inferred, Isa. xlix. 14. To precede the conversion of the Jews, Ezek. xv. 53. Zech. xiii. 7. "Bring again the captivity of Sodom," its spiritual meaning, Ezek. xv. 53.
- Geology, its teaching harmonizes with that of Scripture regarding the desolation which ensued after the world was first created, Gen. i. 2. Isa. xlv. 18. The earth formed out of ruined materials, Deut. xxxii. 10. Isa. xxiv. 10; xxxiv. 11. Jer. iv. 23. This ruin due to the powers of evil, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxiv. Thanks due to physical science for confirming the conclusions of ancient expositors. Yet these must be regarded only as probable, not the only true ones, Gen. i. 2.
- Gerar, its situation, Gen. x. 19. 2 Chr. xiv. 9. A Philistine town in Abraham's age, Gen. xx. 1, 2.
- Gerhard, cited, Dan. x. 13.
- Gerholms, his "Golden Commentary," on the Psalms, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xiv.
- Gerizim. See *Ebal*.

- German chairs of divinity usually held by laymen among Protestants: evils of such a system, Mal. ii. 7.
- Gesenius' Hebrew Lexicon (English edition of 1847, Vol. i. Part I. *Pref.* p. xxii, *note* 1), cited, *passim*.
- Geshurites, where located, Josh. xiii. 2. Of the race of Canaan, 1 Sam. xxvii. 8. Another Geshur, 2 Sam. iii. 3? 1 Chr. ii. 23.
- Gezer, site of, Josh. x. 33. 1 Kings ix. 15. 1 Chr. xiv. 16; xx. 4.
- Gezrites, 1 Sam. xxvii. 8.
- Giants, antediluvian (Heb. *nephilim*), Gen. vi. 4. Such found at Gath, but not at Jerusalem, 1 Chr. xx. 6.
- Gibbethon, a forsaken Levitical city, 1 Kings xv. 27.
- Gibeah of Benjamin, Judg. xix. 12, or of Saul, 1 Sam. ix. 4; x. 5; xi. 4; xiii. 2. 2 Sam. xxi. 6. Isa. x. 29. Hos. v. 8. Rather "the hill" in 2 Sam. vi. 3. "The days of Gibeah," Hos. ix. 9; x. 9.
- Gibeon, site of, Josh. ix. 3. 1 Chr. xxi. 29. Neh. iii. 7. God's work there, Isa. xxviii. 21. The Tabernacle abode there, 1 Sam. vii. 2. 1 Chr. xiv. 16; xvi. 39; xxi. 29: until Solomon's time, 1 Kings viii. 4. 2 Chr. i. 3. The great high place there, 1 Kings iii. 4. A priestly city, Jer. xxviii. 1. Transactions there, 2 Sam. ii. 12. 14; xx. 8. 1 Kings ii. 28. Its pool, 2 Sam. ii. 13. Jer. xli. 12. "Gibeon of Jerusalem," 2 Chr. i. 13.
- Gibeonites, the, represent those who come to God in servile fear, Josh. ix. 24, yet have faith enough to come, and are better than such as defy God, though they reach not the blessedness of such as come early, like Rahab, for love, Vol. ii. pp. 29, 30. Their reward scanty, but ameliorated, if worthily employed. Degrees of bliss and woe in the next life, as in the present, *ib.* No faint gleam of virtue will escape God's notice, *ib.* Their guile, Josh. ix. 9, 10. Appointed as Nethinims, 1 Chr. ix. 2. Saul's sin in slaying them, 2 Sam. xxi. 1. Resident Benjamites so called, 1 Chr. xii. 4.
- Giblites. See *Gebal*.
- Gideon, of the small family of Abiezer in Manasseh, his poverty and fear, Judg. vi. 11. The divine sign to him, what it meant, v. 21. Awakens his father's piety, v. 31. Clothed with the Spirit, v. 34. A double sign, like that of Thomas, specified by himself, yet given by God, *vv.* 36-40. Spiritual significance of the sign of the fleece, Vol. ii. Part I. p. 110. Ps. lxxii. 6. His acts significant of the history of the Christian Church, pp. 110, 111, 114, 115. Especially his trumpets of the preaching of the word, *ib.* His torches, Zech. ix. 14. His modesty, Judg. viii. 2. In punishing his enemies a type of Christ, *vv.* 19-21. Protests against human lordship over the Church, v. 23. In making the priestly ephod, his intention was good, his deed schismatical, and an occasion of evil, v. 27. God's saints not without blemish, *ib.* His polygamy led to idolatry, *vv.* 30, 33. Thus Jerubbaal becomes Jerubbesheth (2 Sam. xi. 21), v. 27.
- Gidom, Judg. xx. 45.
- Gifts taken by magistrates, an Oriental custom, condemned, Ex. xxiii. 8. Taken by judges who had no appointed salaries, Prov. xvii. 23. God not weary to recount our gifts to Him, Num. vii. 84. To give cheerfully a privilege calling for thankfulness, 1 Chr. xxix. 14. Those made to God should be of the best, 2 Chr. iv. 21. God's people's free-will offerings (Heb. *nedaboth*) in time past and to come, Ps. ex. 3. God gives to His beloved even while they sleep, Ps. exxvii. 2.
- Gihon, water of, 1 Kings i. 33. 2 Chr. xxxii. 3. 4. 30; xxxiii. 14. Neh. ii. 13. Isa. vii. 3; xxxvi. 2.
- Gilboa, mount of, its site, 1 Sam. xxvii. 4.
- Gilead, its fertile region described, Num. xxxii. 1. 39. Josh. xiii. 11. 2 Sam. ii. 9. 1 Chr. v. 16. Cant. iv. 1. Jer. xxii. 6; i. 19. Mic. vii. 14. Zech. x. 10. An earthly Eden, Hos. vi. 8. Its balsam, Jer. vii. 22; xvi. 11. Scene of God's love to Israel, Hos. xii. 11. The country distinguished from the person, Josh. xvii. 1. 1 Chr. ii. 21, 22. A mount Gilead west of Jordan, as a mount Ephraim (2 Sam. xviii. 6) to the east of it, Judg. vii. 3.
- Gilgal, its derivation, Hos. iv. 15. Probably two places of that name, unless the western be an appellative. No error possible on Moses' part, Deut. xi. 30. That near Jericho determined, Josh. iv. 19. Mic. vi. 5. Idolatry afterwards practised there, Judg. iii. 19. Hos. iv. 15; xii. 11. Amos iv. 4. Its signification (akin to Golgotha) spiritualized, Josh. v. 3. 9. Judg. ii. 1. Hos. ix. 15. Gilgal the camp of Israel, Josh. v. 10. 1 Sam. x. 8; xi. 15. 2 Sam. xix. 15. 2 Kings ii. 1. Some difficulty on the point, yet likely for moral reasons, Josh. ix. 6. A third Gilgal, Josh. xii. 23; xv. 7?
- Giloh, Josh. xv. 51. 2 Sam. xv. 12.
- Gimzo, 2 Chr. xxviii. 18.
- Ginsburg, cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 122, *note* 2.
- Girdle, military, equivalent to a captain's commission, 2 Sam. xviii. 11. "The linen girdle" is symbolic meaning, Jer. xiii. 1. 11.
- Girgasite, the, Gen. x. 16.
- Gittah-hepher, described, Josh. xix. 13. 2 Kings xiv. 25.
- Gittaim, 2 Sam. iv. 3.
- Gittith, a jubilant strain, Ps. viii. p. 10.
- Gizrah, explained, Ezek. xli. 12; xlii. 1. *Retrospect*, p. 282.
- Glassius, cited, Isa. xxxviii. 21, 22; xlviii. 16. Ezek. i. 3. Dan. viii. 13. Hos. i. 2. Hagg. ii. 7.
- Glory, the universal doxology, Ps. xxix. 9, 10. The Glory of the Lord, i. e. the Divine Presence, Hagg. ii. 7, 9.
- Gnostic theory of accommodation recently revived, Deut. xxvii. 18.
- Goads, their sharpness, 1 Sam. xiii. 21. Used figuratively for stimulants, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 91. Eccles. xii. 11.
- Goat, metaphorical use of, Ezek. xxxiv. 17. Zech. x. 3. He-goat of Persepolis, Dan. viii. 5.
- Goath, an ideal symbolism: its meaning, Jer. xxxi. 39.
- Gob, 2 Sam. xxi. 18.
- God (Heb. *Elohim*), a term applied to princes and magistrates, Ex. vii. 1; xxi. 6; xxii. 8. 28. 1 Sam. xxviii. 13. Ps. lxxxii. 6. Not so in 1 Sam. ii. 25. Our Lord's argument on the words *a fortiori*, Ps. lxxxii. 6. Applied to angels, Ps. cxxxviii. 1. Rather "God," in reference to Christ, than "angels" in Ps. viii. 5. "Of God," synonymous with "great," Ps. cxxxv. 6; lxxx. 10. Cant. viii. 6 (Heb. *Jah*). Jonah iii. 3. God's pardon often includes the discipline of temporal loss, Num. xiv. 20. God pleads with man (1) by conscience and nightly visions, Job xxxiii. 14: (2) by pain and sorrow, v. 19: (3) by a Messenger or Mediator, v. 23. God a perfect geometrician, Amos vii. 7. God of forces, i. e. of war, the term expounded, Dan. xi. 38. See *Divine Names*.
- Gog, or giant, symbolic emblem of Anti-Christian power of the last times, Ezek. xxxviii. 2; p. 274. Dan. xi. 40, 41. Consummation of all the prophecies against former oppressors, such as Egypt and especially Assyria, Ezek. xxxviii. 17; xxxix. 2. 3. 7. 9, 10, 11.
- Going forth of Christ, its several senses, Hos. vi. 3.
- Golan, site of, Deut. iv. 43.
- Goliath (i. e. stranger), perhaps a generic name for the giants of Gath: similar instances alleged. Applied to Lahmi, 2 Sam. xxi. 19.
- Gomer, delineated, Gen. x. 2. Ezek. xxxviii. 6. Its literal and symbolic sense, Hos. i. 3.
- Good intentions do not constitute good actions, Judg. viii. 27. 2 Sam. vi. 6; xxi. 2.
- Good works not expiatory for sin, Deut. xxxiii. 18. Christ has delivered us from the curse due for not doing them, Deut. xxvii. 26, but did not take away the obligation: yet all to be done in faith, Ezek. xx. 11. God working in and by men, Hos. xiv. 2.
- Goshen (1) in Egypt, and its cities, Gen. xlv. 10; xlvii. 32; xlvii. 1. Ex. i. 10. 11. Called Raameses, or Rameses, Ex. i. 11; xii. 37: (2) in Palestine, Josh. xi. 16.
- Gospels, the four (Zech. i. 20), each of them having its own special functions, Vol. i. Part 2. *Introd.* p. ii. Marvellously intertwined like Cherubim, they indicate the fourfold attributes of Christ the King, 1 Chr. xxviii. 18. Ezek. i. 5. Connection between S. Matthew and S. Mark, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. 70. The fourfold Gospel symbolized by the four living creatures of the Apocalypse, Zech. iv. 10.
- Gourd, the, described, Jonah iv. 6. Latin translations of the word noticed, *ib.* Its fate allegorized by the ancients, v. 7.
- Gousset, cited, Deut. xxxi. 9.
- Governor (*sagan*, and *pechah* of the Chaldee discriminated, Dan. vi. 7), the state ruler under the Persian kings, Mal. i. 8. Applied to faithful pastors, Zech. xii. 5. 6.
- Gozan, located, 2 Kings xvii. 6; xix. 12.
- Grabe, Dr. J. E., cited, 1 Sam. xxi. 5. Ezek. xx. 25.
- Grace, divine, given more abundantly since the Incarnation than to the truest saints of the older dispensation, Jer. xx. 14-18. Imparted through the Word and Sacraments by means of man's co-operation and the Church's agency, Num. xxi. 16. Man's will must work with it, Dan. ix. 3.
- Graf, cited, 2 Kings xxiv. 6. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xvi, *notes* 1. 2. 4 and 5. Obad. p. 57. *Passim* throughout Jeremiah.
- Gramberg, cited, 2 Chr. xxvi. 16. Zech. ix. p. 136.
- Grandfather has no name in Hebrew or Chaldee, Dan. v. 1.
- Granicus, the battle of, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xii. and *note* 3; p. xiv. Dan. viii. 7. 8. Zech. ix. 1.
- Grant, Dr. A., referred to, 2 Kings xvi. 6.
- Grapes, when first ripe, Num. xiii. 20. Their great size in Palestine, v. 23. Those of Esheol a type of Christ, *ib.* Their treading, Judg. v. 21.
- Grave, the, or *Hell* (Heb. *Sheol*), literal meaning and various

- renderings of the Hebrew word, Job vii. 9; xxvi. 6. Place of departed spirits, Ps. xvi. 9; xlix. 11; cxxxix. 8. Prov. xxvii. 20. Ezek. xxxi. 15, 16; xxxii. 27.
- Graves, Dean, cited, Gen. xv. 16. Ex. xxii. 17. Deut. i. 9, 22; xix. 1; xx. 17.
- Greeians (Heb. *Yevanim*), Joel iii. 6. Sons of Greece, Zech. x. p. 141.
- Greek, why made the universal language, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 280, *note 4*. Zech. i. 20.
- Gregory I., S., Pope, or the Great, cited, Gen. xxii. 20; xxiv. 2, 3; xxxii. 24. Ex. xxxii. 27. Lev. i. 15. Num. xvii. 8; xxxv. 25. Vol. ii. Part 1. pp. 114—5. Judg. xix. 24. 1 Sam. vii. 6; xii. 23; xv. 22, 30. 2 Sam. vi. 14, 22; xxxii. 16; xxiv. 1. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. x, *note 8*. Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xx, *note 7*. Job i. 1, 4, 7, 11, 12, 16, 18, 21; ii. 9; iii. 1, 8; iv. 1; ix. 33; xix. 25, 26; xxix. 1; xxxii. p. 71; xxxiii. 23, 24, 26; xl. 14, 15, 16, 17, 19; xli. 1, 5, 13, 19, 34. Ps. xlii. 7; xxxii. p. 44; lxxviii. 4. Prov. iii. 18; vi. 5; ix. 1, 2, 3; xxx. 30, 33; xxxi. 10—31. Eccles. iv. 12. Cant. iv. 2. Isa. vi. 1; xxxii. 20; lxxv. 20; lxxvi. 7—9. Ezek. i. 1; iii. 24; xxviii. p. 221. *Retrospect*, pp. 275, *note 4*; 278, *note 7*; 279, *note 3*; 280 and *note 1*; 281, *note 1*. Dan. viii. 10. Hos. xiii. 14; Zech. iii. 3, 9. Mal. iv. 5, 6.
- Gregory VII., Pope, his presumptuous declaration, Isa. lxxv. 17.
- Gregory S., Nazianzen, cited, Gen. xxii. 9. Job iii. 2; xxviii. 1; xl. 15, 18, alii. 12. Ps. ix. p. 12; xxxiii. 6. Prov. vii. 22. Cant. ii. 15. Isa. lix. 6. Vol. v. Part 2. p. ix, *note 6*. Dan. viii. 9. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. vii, *note 1*. Hab. iii. 2.
- Gregory S., Nyssen, cited, Gen. i. 14. Ex. xxxiii. 23. Deut. xxxiv. 5. Josh. iv. 10. Job iii. 8. Ps. ix. p. 12; xxiv. 7; xxxiii. 6. Prov. ix. 1. Cant. i. 2. Isa. xlviii. 16. Hab. iii. 2. Mal. iv. 5.
- Griesinger, cited, Dan. iii. p. 9; iv. 15.
- Gristled, the term explained, Gen. xxxi. 10.
- Grote, G., cited, Zech. ix. 1.
- Grotius, cited, Judg. xvi. 30. 2 Kings xi. 15. 2 Chr. xix. 11. Prov. xxvi. 2. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 121, *note 3*. Isa. xxvi. 19; xxx. 33; lvii. 1, 2. Ezek. ix. 4; xx. 25. Mic. v. 1. Nah. ii. 3. Zeph. i. 4. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. xi. 13.
- Grove, G., cited, Gen. xix. 24; xxii. 2; xxxv. 16. Deut. xi. 30; xvii. 8. Josh. ix. 3, 6; xii. 23; xiii. 26; xv. 1. 2 Kings v. 12; xviii. 17. 1 Chr. iv. 31, 39, 41. 2 Chr. xxvii. 3. Isa. xxxiv. 6. Jer. xxxi. 15. Ezek. vi. 11. Joel iii. 2.
- Grove (Heb. *eshel*), or tamarisk tree of Abraham in Beersheba, led to idolatry in later times, Gen. xxi. 33. Groves (Heb. *asherim* or *asheroth*), more probably columns, Ex. xxxiv. 13 (compare Ex. xxxii. 4). Deut. vii. 5; xvi. 21. Judg. iii. 7. 1 Kings xiv. 23; xv. 13; xvi. 33; xviii. 19. 2 Kings xiii. 6; xvii. 10, 16; xxi. 3, 7; xxii. 4, 6, 7, 14. 2 Chr. xiv. 3; xv. 16; xvii. 6; xxxiii. 19; xxxiv. 3. Isa. xvii. 8; xxvii. 9. Jer. xvii. 2. Mic. v. 14.
- Habakkuk, a Levite, Hab. iii. 19, significance of his name: his burden and Nahum's make a pair, Hab. p. 95. His unswerving faith in spite of carnal fear, Hab. iii. 16. Prophecies against Babylon, the type of idolatry, creature worship, and professed spiritual wisdom, now working in the Papacy, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xiv, xv. 95. Like Nahum's, his predictions reach on to the last times, p. 95. Hab. i. 12—17; ii. 2; iii. 11. His date: cited by Zephaniah, p. 95. His remembrance with God, Hab. i. 12—17. His vision directed to be written that, when accomplished, its inspiration might be seen, Hab. ii. 2. Preamble to the Apocalypse, v. 3. Adopts Isaiah's language, *vv.* 14, 17, 18. Christ's victory celebrated in his hymn, Hab. iii. 1. Shown by analysis, *vv.* 8—12, 18, 19. Epiphany derived from earlier poems, *vv.* 3, 8, 9.
- Habor, 2 Kings xvii. 6. See *Chebar*.
- Hachilah, 1 Sam. xxiii. 19.
- Hadad, the Syrian sun-god, 2 Sam. viii. 3. 1 Kings xv. 18. Amos i. 4. See *Benhadad*. Hence *Henhadad*, Ezra iii. 9.
- Hadadezer, or Hadarezer, 1 Chr. xviii. 5.
- Hadadrimmon, located, 2 Kings xxiii. 30. Zech. xii. 11.
- Hadrach, a symbolical name for Persia, or other worldly powers, Dan. viii. 6; x. 20. Zech. ix. 1.
- Hagarite, 1 Chr. v. 10. See *Ishmaelite*.
- Haggai, the prophet, his significant name, Hagg. p. 113. Contemporary with Zechariah, Hagg. ii. 4. Helps on by his encouragement the building of the second Temple (begun B.C. 535), Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. 113, 120. Analysis of his book, Ezra v. 1. His statements illustrated, Neh. iii. 8. A century later than Zephaniah, whose book stands next before his, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xvii. 113. His mission stated. The prophetic vista now cleared up to Christ's first Advent, p. xvii. His promise of the glory of the second Temple, by reason of the Lord's presence therein, p. 113. Chronology of his prophecies, Hagg. i. 1, 15; ii. 1, 10, 20.
- Hagiographa (Heb. *chetubim*) of Hebrew Bibles, its contents, Esther x. 3. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. iii, *note 3*. Follows the order of the Hebrew Calendar, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 133, *note 1*.
- Hahn, cited, Vol. v. Part 1. p. 115.
- Hair, polling of, in honour of heathen gods, Jer. ix. 26. Plucking off, *depilatio*, an ignominious judicial punishment. Jewish and modern feeling about it, Neh. xiii. 25. Jer. ii. 16. Perhaps of the beard, Isa. i. 6. Cut in mourning, Jer. vii. 29. Emblem of youthful vigour, Ps. lxxviii. 21. Cant. v. 11. Long hair effeminate, Ezek. xlv. 20. Syrian goat's hair soft, Cant. iv. 1.
- Halal, 2 Kings xvii. 6.
- Halak, rather an appellative, Josh. xi. 17.
- Hales, Dr., cited, Mic. v. 1.
- Halhul, Josh. xv. 58.
- Hali, Josh. xix. 25.
- Hallam, H., cited, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xv, *note 7*.
- Hallelujah, its use in the later Psalms, Ps. civ. 35. Prayer merged in praise, Ps. cvii. 170.
- Hall, Bp., cited, Josh. ii. 19; v. 2, 12; vi. 2; vii. 19, 25; ix. 14, x. 11. Judg. iii. 15, 21, 22; viii. 3, 6; ix. 4; xv. 19; xvi. 30; xvii. 5. Ruth iii. 14; iv. 16. 1 Sam. xiv. 6, 19, 24; xv. 2; xvii. 10; xxii. 19; xxx. 25. 2 Sam. vi. 6, 9. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. 94. 2 Sam. xiii. 11; xvi. 12; xvii. 23; xviii. 9, 33; xxi. 1; xxiv. 1, 24. 1 Kings ii. 23, 42; iii. 16; v. 1; vi. 7, 36; x. 1; xiii. p. 55; xiv. 6; xvii. 1; xviii. 40, 41; xix. 11, 12. 2 Kings i. 10; ii. 8, 9, 11; v. 12, 19; viii. 4; ix. 30; xii. 2; xiii. 11, 21; xvii. 29; xx. 11; xxii. 8, 14. Ezra ii. 62, 65. Esther i. 3; vi. 13; viii. 11. Joel iii. 16, 21.
- Ham, his sin, Gen. ix. 22, 23. The curse pronounced on his posterity, how turned into a blessing, *v.* 25.
- Haman, meaning of, Esther iii. 1. Hardly the person named Tobit xiv. 10; *ib.* A foreigner (as Viziers often are), hence called a Macedonian in the Apocryphal additions to Esther, *ib.* As an Analekite, specially detested by the Jews, *v.* 2. His superstitious *pur* led to unseasonable delay of vengeance, *v.* 7. His plot a type of that of the powers of darkness against Christ, *vv.* 12, 15. Esther vi. 4, 6; viii. 17. Like Satan, nailed on the cross, he set up for another. Even the Jews saw the parallel, Esther vii. 9.
- Hamath, region of, described, Num. xiii. 21; xxxiv. 8. 2 Sam. viii. 9. 1 Kings viii. 65. 2 Kings xvii. 24. 1 Chr. xiii. 5. Ezek. xlvii. 16. Amos vi. 2. Zech. ix. 2. The city, Isa. x. 9. Jer. xlix. 23. Hamathi-zobah, 2 Chr. viii. 3. The Hamathite, Gen. x. 18. Hamath of Judah, the term explained, 2 Kings xv. 23.
- Hammath, Josh. xix. 35.
- Hammond, H., characterized, Ps. lxxxiv. p. 133. Anecdote of, Ps. cxxxi. 1. Cited, Lev. xviii. 18. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xvi, *note 6*. Ps. iii. p. 5; xvi. p. 19; *vv.* 6, 9; xxii. 6; xxvi. p. 36; xxxv. 16; cix. p. 174; *v.* 31; cxiii. p. 179; cxx. p. 196; cxxviii. 12. Prov. i. 20; viii. 22, 30; ix. 1, 2. Hos. vi. 2. Zech. ix. p. 136.
- Hamonah, a symbolic name, Ezek. xxxix. 16.
- Hamon-gog, the grave of Antichrist, Ezek. xxxix. 11.
- Hamor, possibly an official name at Shechem, Gen. xxxiii. 19.
- Hanameel, Jeremiah's cousin, Jer. xxxii. 7, 8.
- Hananael, tower of, Neh. iii. 1. Jer. xxxi. 38. Zech. xiv. 10.
- Hanani, a seer, 2 Chr. xvi. 7.
- Hananiah, a false prophet, why so confident in his predictions, Jer. xxviii. 2.
- Hand, the open (Heb. *capb*), distinguished from that clenched for work (Heb. *yad*), Prov. x. 4; xxxi. 19, 20. "Hand in hand," explained, Prov. xi. 21.
- Handel's Messiah, Isa. xl. 9.
- Hanes, Isa. xxx. 4.
- Hanging, a Jewish punishment, contrasted with crucifixion, Deut. xxi. 22. Christ's death and burial foreshadowed. He became a curse for us, *v.* 23. Secondary and spiritual sense, Deut. xxviii. 66.
- Hammer, cited, 1 Kings iv. 33.
- Hannah, the name significant, 1 Sam. i. 2. Barren, like Sarah and Rachel, *ib.* Her Magnificat, like all sacred poetry, not egotistical, but reaching forwards to the birth of Christ, a golden link connecting other Bible songs, 1 Sam. ii. 1. To be compared throughout with the Blessed Virgin's: their language almost identical, *vv.* 4—9. The synagogue to be brought low before Christ, *ib.* First speaks of the Lord of Hosts and the King Messiah, *v.* 10. Compared with Ps. exiii. and the Church's Easter use of it, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. 179. Ps. cxiii. 9.

- Hannathon, its significant name and site, Josh. xix. 14.
Hannibal, derivation of, Ps. exiii. p. 179. Anecdote relating to him, Jer. xxxii. 9.
Haphraim, Josh. xix. 19.
Haphtarah. See *Calendar*.
Haran, its true situation, Gen. xi. 31; xxiv. 10. 2 Kings xix. 12. Ezek. xxvii. 23.
Hardwick, Archd., referred to, 1 Chr. xxi. 1.
Hare (Heb. *arnebeth*), pronounced nuclean, even though it chews not the cud, which to common observers it seems to do, Lev. xi. 6.
Harel, Ezek. xliii. 15.
Harlots, their half-sacred character in heathen rites, Gen. xxxviii. 21. Lev. xix. 29. Num. xxxi. 16. Deut. xxiii. 17. Hos. iv. 14. Mic. i. 7. The harlot Church, Prov. xxx. 20. The harlot pleading religion a portrait of the Mystery of Iniquity, Prov. vii. 14. Would fain imitate the perfume of the absent Divine Bridegroom, *vv.* 17. 19. Cursed with barrenness, Hos. ix. 14. In Zechariah and the Apocalypse opposed to the Bride, the woman in the wilderness, Prov. ix. 3. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xix.
Harness, the old sense of, 1 Kings xx. 11; xxii. 34. "Harnessed," the term explained, Ex. xiii. 18. Rendered by "armed," Josh. i. 11; vi. 7.
Harod, well of, Judg. vii. 1; 2 Sam. xxiii. 25.
Harosheth, derivation of, Judg. iv. 2.
Hartmann, cited, Gen. xxiv. 22.
Harveian discovery of the circulation of the blood, Eccles. xii. 6.
Harvest, its metaphorical sense, Hos. vi. 11; Joel iii. 13.
Hasselquist, cited, Mic. i. 16.
Hauran, Ezek. xlvii. 16.
Hävernäck, cited, Vol. iii. p. 300. Ezra vi. 22; vii. 6. 28; x. 1. 6. Vol. iii. p. 360, note 9. Esther i. 3. 10; ii. 23; iii. 2. 7; ix. 32. Also *passim*, throughout the poetical and prophetic books.
Havilah, Gen. x. 7.
Havoth-jair, probably two districts so named from different persons, Num. xxxii. 41. Judg. x. 4. Their number increased, 1 Chr. ii. 22, 23.
Haymo, cited, Isa. xxx. p. 89. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 278, note 7. Joel i. 4. Hag. ii. 7. Zech. ii. 1, 2.
Hazacl, meaning of, 2 Kings viii. 8. His exclamation explained, *v.* 13. Drew an evil conclusion from holy premises, *v.* 15. A mere instrument of the Divine wrath, 2 Kings x. 32; xii. 17; xiii. 22. His cruelties, Amos i. 3.
Hazereth, its probable site, Num. xi. 35.
Hazezon (or Hazazon)-tamar, account of, Gen. xiv. 7. 1 Sam. xxiii. 29. 2 Chr. xx. 2. Ezek. xlvii. 19.
Hazor, its site and history, Josh. xi. 1. 1 Kings ix. 15. 2 Kings xv. 29. Also a town in Judah, Josh. xv. 25. Hazor in the East, Jer. xlix. 28.
He paragonie, its fervour, Dan. ix. 19.
Heart (Heb. *leb*), including, together with the affections, the understanding and conscience also, Deut. vi. 5. 1 Sam. xxiv. 5. 1 Kings iv. 29. Prov. iii. 5. Jer. xvii. 9, 10. Ezek. xxviii. 2. Hence its interpretation varied in the New Testament, Deut. vi. 5. "Keep thy heart," Prov. iv. 23. The Hebrew word occurs 90 times in the Proverbs, with several different renderings, Prov. x. 8; y. 1.
Heathen learning enlisted in the Church's cause, 1 Chr. ii. 55; xxii. 14. Eminent Gentile teachers and bishops, Isa. lxi. 5; lxvi. 21. The heathen are God's jury when He judges His people, Amos iii. 9. Their visitation ultimately full of mercy, Zeph. ii. 4. 6, 7. 9. 11; iii. 8. 9. Peace assured to them, Zech. ix. 10. Learnt much from Jews with whom they came in contact, Jonah i. 2.
Heaven, its stories, Amos ix. 6.
Hebrew, why considered by some the original language, Gen. ii. 23. The question examined, Gen. xi. 1. Its connexion with Arabic, Gen. x. 29. Contrasted with Syriac, Gen. xxxi. 47. 2 Kings xviii. 26.
Hebrews, so called from Eber, Gen. x. 24; xi. 14. Abraham, why so called, Gen. xiv. 13. Why that name was given to Canaan, Gen. xl. 15.
Hebron (or *Kirjath-arba*, Gen. xxiii. 2), its description and history, Gen. xiii. 18. Josh. x. 3; xiv. 12-15; xx. 7; xxi. 13. 1 Sam. xxx. 31. 2 Sam. ii. 1; xv. 7. Neh. xi. 25. Its modern name, how appropriate, Josh. xv. 15. 2 Chr. xx. 7. Moved Caleb's heart by its reminiscences, Num. xiii. 22. Re-occupied by the heathen, Josh. x. 38; xv. 14. Caleb shares his inheritance with the Levites, Josh. xiv. 15. Cp. 1 Chr. ii. 42. Why named in connexion with the hill by Gaza, Judg. xvi. 3. Another town in Asher, Josh. xix. 28.
Heeren, cited, Gen. xlvii. 20. 1 Kings ix. 28. 2 Chr. viii. 19. Esther i. 1. Dan. vi. 8; vii. 5.
Hegesippus, cited, Num. vi. 3.
Heifer, the red, a figure of Christ, Num. xix. 2. Female sacrifices rare, why here prescribed, *ib.* Appointed when other sacrifices were suspended in the wilderness, as their sufficient substitute, *ib.* Permanent in its effects: only six ever offered, *ib.* Beyond all other sacrifices, prefigures the universality and perpetuity of Christ's one offering, *ib.* Why red and unyoked, *ib.* Christ both the Priest and Victim, *v.* 4. Ashes kept for water of separation typify both Sacraments, *vv.* 9. 12. Their use, Num. xxxi. 19. Heifer sacrificed when a man was slain, also typical, Deut. xxi. 3. 4.
Helan, 2 Sam. x. 16.
Helbon, Ezek. xxvii. 18.
Heclesaites, their error, 2 Kings v. 19.
Heleph, Josh. xix. 33.
Helkath, Josh. xix. 25.
Hell, the Lord's descent into, Jonah ii. 1.
Heman (1), the Kohathite singer, 1 Kings iv. 31? 1 Chr. vi. 33. His connexion with certain Psalms, Vol. iv. Part 2. pp. 73. 139: a seer, 1 Chr. xxv. 5. (2) Another, 1 Chr. ii. 6.
Hemath, Amos vi. 14. See *Hamath*.
Hena, 2 Kings xviii. 34.
Hengstenberg, cited, Gen. xlvii. 20; i. 2. 1 Kings xii. 28. 2 Kings xvii. 30; xxiii. 33. 2 Chr. xxxv. 22. Ezra ii. 2; iv. 6. Neh. i. 1; iii. 1. Esther i. 1. Also *passim*, throughout the poetical and prophetic books.
Henry III. and IV. of France, murdered for ambition under a cloak of godly zeal, 2 Sam. iv. 8. Some Churches canonize such deeds, *ib.*
Henry VIII. compared to Samson and Jehu (2 Kings x. 30): his bad passions over-ruled for the accomplishment of God's purposes, Judg. xv. 14.
Henry, Matthew, characterized, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 285, note 2. Happy in eliciting spiritual sense, *ib.* Mic. ii. 13. Cited, Lev. xvi. 8. Judg. vi. 11. 2 Sam. xviii. 11; xxii. p. 122. 1 Kings iv. 30. Vol. iii. p. 20. 1 Kings vi. 7; xviii. 33; xix. 11, 12. 2 Kings v. 19; vi. 3; xx. 17; xxi. 18. 1 Chr. vi. 10; xi. 39; xiii. 9; xv. 1. 11; xxi. 6. 18; xxviii. 11. 2 Chr. xi. 13, 14; xix. 11. Ezra ii. 63; viii. 13. Neh. viii. 10; xiii. 11. Prov. viii. 22. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 126, note 5. Isa. xxxv. 1; xlix. 21; lv. 18. 20; lxvi. 13. 20. 21. 23. Ezek. ix. 2; xvi. 3; xx. 25; xxxii. 27. *Retrospect*, pp. 275, note 4; 281, note 2; 285, note 2; 287, note 3. Hos. i. 11; vi. 2; xi. 1. Amos ix. 14, 15. Mic. ii. 13; iv. 1; v. 5. Nah. iii. 4. Hab. iii. 2. Zech. xi. 5. 6.
Hepher, site of, Josh. xii. 17. 1 Kings iv. 10.
Hephzibah (see *Hezekiah*), spiritualized, Vol. v. Part 1. p. 70. Isa. lxii. 4.
Heraclitus, cited, Ps. cxxxvii. 9.
Herbert, G., "the holy poet of the English Church," cited, Job xxxiii. 14. Lam. p. 145. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. ix. Alluded to, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. x.
Hereditary punishment only temporal, Ex. xx. 5: hereditary blessing long, *ib.* Lev. xxvi. 45. Such punishment inflicted only on those who themselves persist in sin, Ezek. xviii. 2. And on none other, Jer. xxxi. 29. Magistrates not to inflict it, as they cannot, like God, redress the wrong hereafter, Deut. xxiv. 16.
Heres (i.e. sun) mount, perhaps the same as *Ir-shemesh*, a scene of idolatrous worship, Judg. i. 34. Cp. Judg. viii. 13. *Ir-ha-heres* (Heliopolis), Isa. xix. 18.
Heresiarchs compared to wandering stars: their fate, Dan. viii. 10.
Heresies mutually destructive. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 115. Judg. xv. 4. Ezek. xxxviii. 21. Symbolized by poisonous herbs, 2 Kings iv. 41. Their specious sophistries by cobwebs, Isa. lix. 6. Mix truth with error, Jer. xxiii. 30; and mimic the language of truth, Prov. ix. 13. Represented by the Strange Woman in the Book of Proverbs, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xiii. Destined to spring up early, Cant. i. 6. Have seduced some of the greatest teachers, the Samsons, of Christendom, Prov. vii. 26. No compromise with them possible, Ps. cxli. 4. Towers and bulwarks to be maintained against them, Ps. xlviii. 12, 13. Should be nipped in the bud, Cant. ii. 15. In league with the infidel Antichrist, Dan. xi. 41. Heretics rejoice over the troubles of the Church, Obad. 12.
Hermion described: its supposed derivation, Deut. iii. 9. Ps. lxxxix. 12. Its peaks, Ps. xlii. 6. Its contrast with Zion explained, Ps. cxxxiii. 3.
Herod the Great, through mere secular motives, repairs the Temple, 2 Kings xii. 18. A true Idumaean, Isa. xxxiv. 5; lxiii. 1. "The water," Isa. liv. 16. His idolatrous compliances, Isa. lxv. 3.
Herodotus, truth and falsehood mingled in his history, Isa. xxxvii. 36. Sources of his Egyptian history not impartial, Ezek. xxix. 13. Cited, Gen. i. 1; x. 14; xi. 4; xvii. 10, 11; xxxviii. 21; xxxix. 5, 7; xl. 16; xli. 14. 41. 45; xlvii. 34;

- xlvi. 20, 22; 1. 2. 3. 11. Num. xi. 5. 1 Kings ii. 17; iv. 30. 2 Kings xvii. 30; xviii. 13; xix. 35; xx. 11; xxiii. 29, 33. 2 Chr. viii. 18; xxxv. 20, 22. Ezra iv. 5, 7, 9; v. 3; vi. 2, 10. 11, 22; vii. 14; viii. 17. Neh. i. 1; ii. 6. Vol. iii. pp. 361, 365. Esther i. 1, 2, 3, 9, 10, 12, 14, 19, 20; ii. 1, 18, 23; iii. 2, 11, 13; iv. 11; v. 4; vi. 8. Job xxix. 18; xxxvii. 22; xl. 15; xli. 18. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. ix, *note* 10. Isa. xiii. 8, 15; xviii. 2; xix. 2—4; xxi. 1, 5, 7; xxiii. 13; xxx. 4, 33; xxxvii. 25; xli. 5; xliiii. 14; xlv. 2; xlv. 1; xlvii. 10; lvii. 6. Jer. ii. 16; vii. 18; xxv. 20; xxxvii. 5; xlv. 30; xlv. 15; xlvii. 1; i. 24; ii. 31, 32, 41, 58; lii. 31. Ezek. xxvi. 8, 11; xxix. 2, 8, 14; xxx. 17, 18. Dan. ii. 2, 5; iii. 5, 6, 21; iv. p. 14; v. 30; v. 1, 2, 30; vi. 1; viii. 2; xi. 2. Jonah i. 17; iii. 3, 7, 8. Nah. ii. 1; iii. 8. Zeph. i. 4.
- Hervey, Lord A. C., cited, 1 Chr. ii. 11, 17, 51; iii. 16, 17, 18, 19, 24; vi. p. 180; *re*. 11, 12. 2 Chr. xxvi. 17. Vol. iii. p. 295, *note* 1. Ezra ii. 5, 68. Neh. i. 1. Vol. iii. p. 360, *note* 9.
- Heshbon, site of, Num. xxxii. 37. Isa. xv. 4. Jer. xlviii. 2. Its surviving pool, Cant. vii. 4.
- Hesiod, cited, Gen. x. 22. Job xxii. 8; xxxvii. 7. Prov. xxvii. 10. Ezek. xxxii. 26.
- Hessey, Dr., cited, 1 Kings xvii. 24. 2 Kings xvii. 24.
- Hesychius, cited, Lev. i. 1; viii. 30; ix. 23; xiv. 5; xvi. 21. Ps. viii. 6, 7; xxxv. p. 49; xxxviii. 3, 4; xlii. p. 63; lv. 9, 15; lxxx. 2; lxxxi. 9; cix. 2, 8.
- Hethlon, Ezek. xlvii. 15.
- Hezekiah, his name suggests his history, 2 Kings xviii. 1. Isa. xxv. 4; xxxv. 3, 4. Born too early to have been the child promised to Ahaz through Isaiah, 2 Kings xvii. 2. His zealous reformation more fully described in 2 Chr. xxx. 5, &c., v. 4. Invites all Israel to his passover, a noble act of faith, 2 Chr. xxx. 24; xxx. 1, 5, 10; xxxv. 18; not wholly vain, 2 Chr. xxxi. 1. Thus typical of the call of the nation to Christ, the true Passover, 2 Chr. xxx. 1. No comparison instituted between him and Josiah, though the same thing be said of both, 2 Kings xviii. 5. A cockatrice to Philistia, Isa. xiv. 29. Leans on Egypt, Ezek. xlvii. 21. His sickness and foreign danger came together, 2 Kings xviii. 13; xx. 1. Isa. xxxvii. 30. After his devotion to God's service, 2 Chr. xxxii. 1, 24. His faith more surprising than his weakness, 2 Kings xvii. 14. 2 Chr. xxxii. 3—8. No fanaticism in his faith, *ib.* Used means of defence, Isa. xlii. 8—11. Trusted not in a reed, but in the Rock, 2 Kings xvii. 21. His faith and patience tried for three years, 2 Kings xix. 29. Isa. xxx. 18; xxxvii. 30. His deliverance from Sennacherib a prophetic picture of Christ's Redemption, 2 Kings xix. 30. Isa. xxv. p. 70; *re*. 6, 7, 8; xxvi. 14; xxxi. 7; xxxiii. 1—4, 6, 19. Mic. v. 5, 10—14. Nah. p. 87; ch. i. 15. His change of mind and spirit, Isa. xx. 5, 6. Probable occasion of Ps. xlvii., Vol. iv. Part 2. p. 71. Isa. xxvi. 1; and of Ps. lxxvi., Vol. iv. Part 2. p. 119. Isa. xxx. 18; xxxvii. 36. Bowstrings of foe destroyed, Ps. xlv. 9. In his prayer Hezekiah pleads what God had enabled him to do, 2 Kings xx. 3. His healing typical, *re*. 5, 6, 11; Isa. xxvi. 19; xxxiii. 24; xxxvii. p. 109; xxxviii. v. 17. At that time childless, Isa. xxxviii. 19, 21, 22; xxxix. 7. The miracle of Ahaz's dial was some local change on that dial in the shadow of the sun and rays of light, 2 Kings xx. 11. His wealth, how obtained after the Assyrian invasion, 2 Chr. xxxii. 23. Isa. xxxix. 2. Less proof against prosperity than adversity, 2 Chr. xxxii. 25. His humility when rebuked, 2 Kings xx. 19. 2 Chr. xxxii. 31. His pool, 2 Kings xx. 20. Appoints Psalms to be sung in public worship, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. x, and *notes* 4 and 6. Isa. xxxviii. p. 110. Collects certain of Solomon's Proverbs, *ib.* Supported by Micah the prophet, Jer. xxvi. 18. Mic. i. 1, 10; iii. 12. Nah. i. 12. A type of Christ, as the names of his wife (see *Hephzibah*) and son suggest, 2 Kings xx. 21. Isa. xxv. p. 70; xxvi. 13; xxxviii. p. 110; xxxix. 7; xl. p. 115; liv. p. 157; lxii. 4. The last heard of him shows his weakness, lest he should be taken for the Messiah, Isa. xxxix. 7.
- Hezron, grandson of Judah, probably died at Ephraim during Israel's bondage in Egypt, 1 Chr. ii. 24.
- Hiatus, in Hebrew manuscripts, what ends they serve, Gen. xxxv. 22. Num. iii. 38. See *Vowel-points*.
- Hiddekel (or *Tigris*), Dan. x. 4.
- Higgaion, explained, Ps. ix. 11.
- High places tolerated for sacrifices till God's own Place should be clearly defined, 1 Kings iii. 2. Then ceased to be lawful, 1 Kings ix. 25; xii. 31. "House of high places," an idolatrous temple, *ib.* Asa removes them from Judah, 2 Chr. xiv. 3. Jehoshaphat vainly attempts the same, 2 Chr. xv. 33.
- High Priest, the Jewish, specially anointed, and thus an eminent type of Christ, Lev. iv. 3, 5, 16; vii. 12, 30; xxi. 10. To be but one: confusion noted in Luke iii. 2, 1 Kings ii. 27. His sins, how estimated, Lev. iv. 6. To be without blemish: spiritual significance of the precept, Lev. xxi. 17. Must not perform servile work, Lev. iv. 12; xxi. 10. The office alleged to have been transferred from Eleazar's to Ithamar's line, because the existing High Priest did not hinder Jephthah's sacrifice, Judg. xi. 40. Ithamar's line not recognized, since the perpetual priesthood belonged to Phinehas, 1 Chr. vi. 4. Eli, first of Ithamar's line, 1 Sam. i. 3. Succession in that line, 1 Kings ii. 27. How Zadok and Ahimelech were priests during Abiathar's priesthood, accounted for, 2 Sam. viii. 17; 1 Kings ii. 27. Threat to Eli fulfilled: typical meaning of the transfer to Zadok, *ib.* Lists of High Priests, 1 Chr. vi. 4. Ezra ii. 2; vii. 1. Repeated in brief, 1 Chr. vi. 50. High Priests foremost in the secularizing movement under Antiochus Epiphanes: fate of Jesus and Onias, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xvi. Christ our High Priest, Zech. iii. 7, 8. High Priest called "Ruler of the House of God," 1 Chr. ix. 11. His *sagan* or deputy, 2 Kings xxv. 18. Jer. lii. 24.
- Hilary, S., his treatise on the Psalms mostly from Origen, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xiii, *note* 11. Cited, Gen. i. 1. Ex. vii. 1; xvi. 26. Deut. xxxiii. 16. 1 Sam. xvi. 11; xxii. 19. 1 Kings xvii. 6. 2 Kings vi. 15—17. Ezra vii. 6. Job iii. 3. Vol. iv. Part 2. pp. v, ix, *note* 14. Ps. i. p. 1; lii. 8; lv. 6; lix. 11; lx. 6; lxi. 2; lxx. 12; lxxviii. 9. 17. 31; lxxx. 5, 22, 35; lxxxix. p. 141; xcii. p. 148; exlix. 5. Prov. i. 20; viii. 22. Ezek. xxxvii. 12. Dan. iii. 25. Mal. iv. 5.
- Hillel and Schammai, Jewish schools of, Deut. xxiv. 1.
- Hincks, Dr., his Assyrian studies, 2 Kings x. 32. Dan. v. 1. Hind, or gazelle, the, described, Prov. v. 19. Symbol of preachers of the word, Ps. xxix. 9.
- Hinnom, valley of, 2 Kings xxiii. 10; Isa. x. 16; xxvi. 11; xxxvii. 36. Jer. ii. 23; xxxi. 40. Whence Christ himself derived the name for hell, Josh. xv. 8. Isa. xxvii. 1; xxxiii. 14. Joel ii. 20.
- Hippolytus, S., referred to, 1 Sam. xxviii. 11, 12. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. vi, *note* 2. Cited, Gen. xlix. 7. Vol. i. Part 1. p. 289. Deut. xxxiii. 31. 1 Kings iii. 12. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 1. Prov. i. 1, 11; ix. 1, 2; xxxi. 14. Vol. v. Part 1. p. vi, *note* 1. Isa. xix. 1; xxvi. 19; xxxix. 11. Ezek. xxviii. p. 221. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xv, *notes* 3 and 7. Dan. i. 15; ii. 5, 31, 39, 40; iii. 1, 25; vii. p. 29; *re*. 2, 5, 6, 23; viii. 9; x. 13; xi. 21; xii. 7. Mal. iv. 5.
- Hiram (1), or Huram, perhaps the official name of kings of Tyre, 1 Kings v. 1. His helping David to build the Temple, how typical, 2 Sam. v. 11. 1 Chr. xxii. 4; also Solomon, 1 Kings v. 1. Two several grants made to him by Solomon in return for his aid, *re*. 11. 2 Chr. ii. 10. His contempt for Cabul and its cities emblematical of that of the world for the Church, 1 Kings ix. 13. (2) The architect of the Temple, his tribe and parentage, 1 Kings vii. 14. 2 Chr. ii. 14. Typical of the union of Jew and Gentile, *ib.* Of the same tribe as the builder of the Tabernacle, 1 Kings vii. 14.
- Hireling, the years of, Isa. xvi. 14.
- Hirtius, cited, Ezek. xxx. 15.
- Hissing, to gather bees, Zech. x. 8.
- History improperly divided into sacred and profane, Vol. iii. p. 299. Illustrated by that of Persia, p. 300. All history is sacred (Vol. iii. p. 365) as being a record of God's working, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiv. That of the Hebrews a divine Parable, Ps. lxxviii. 2. The historical books of the Old Testament have no real finality. Their seal is Malachi's prophecy, Esther x. 3.
- Hittite, Gen. x. 15. A general name for the Cuneanite, 1 Kings x. 29. Especially those in the north, 2 Kings vii. 6.
- Hitzig, characterized, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. x, *note* 1. Cited, 2 Chr. xxvi. 16. Also *passim*, throughout the Psalms and books which follow them.
- Hivite, the, located, Gen. x. 17.
- Hobbes, referred to, 2 Kings v. 19. Prov. xx. 27.
- Hodges, Dr. Walter, his view of Elihu misunderstood, Job xxxii. p. 72.
- Hofmann, cited, Gen. xlv. 6. Dan. ii. 39; v. 1; vii. 5; viii. 9. Amos ix. 1. Obad. p. 57. Zech. ix. 6.
- Holiness of the dead body caused by hope of a Resurrection, Gen. xxxv. 8; 1. 1. Lev. x. 6, 7. See *Resurrection*.
- Holon, or *Hilen* (1 Chr. vi. 58), Josh. xxi. 15.
- Holy One of Israel, in what Psalm the term is found, and with what special appropriateness, Ps. lxxi. 22. So Ps. lxxxix. 18. Why in Asaph's, Ps. lxxviii. p. 122. In what other books, Isa. i. 4.
- Holy and most Holy oblations distinguished, Num. xviii. 9. Holy things not to be eaten when in mourning, or in ceremonial uncleanness, Lev. xxi. 2—4.
- Holy Land of Ezekiel, its dimensions and ground plan, Ezek. xlv. 7; p. 265; xlviii. pp. 270—1; *re*. 15—18, 22. Ideal, Ezek. xlvii. 14, 22. Spiritualized, Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 285—9. The visible Church only thus described, p. 287, *note* 13. Boundaries carried to the extent of God's conditional promises to literal Israel, p. 288. Strangers also to inherit it, *ib.* Spiritual pastures and fastnesses of the Universal

- Church, Zech. x. 10. Jerusalem to be exalted above the hills around her, Zech. xiv. 10. Symbolical details, all representing the security of the glorified Canaan, *ib.*
- Holy Place, or Holy of Holies, its only light the Divine Shechinah, Ex. xxvi. p. 293. An emblem of heaven itself, v. 33. Lev. ix. 23. The High Priest's yearly entrance, Zech. iii. 7. The golden chains which shut us out from it drawn aside by Christ, 1 Kings vi. 21. Holy of Holies, a designation of Messiah, Dan. ix. 24—27.
- Holy Year, the [by Chr. Wordsworth, Bp. of Lincoln], cited, or referred to, 1 Sam. xvii. 40. 1 Kings vii. 25. 2 Kings iv. p. 100. 1 Chr. xvi. 4. Cant. ii. 2; 7; iii. 9. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 277, note 12.
- Homicide, involuntary, Ex. xxi. 13.
- Homer, Isa. v. 10. See *Measures*.
- Homer, characterized, Num. xxii. 29. Cited, or referred to, Gen. iv. 16; x. 22; xxxi. 20; xliii. 34; xlv. 4. Num. xxii. 29. Ezra ix. 3. Neh. iv. 13. Job vii. 12; ix. 9; xxi. 26; 29; xxxvii. 7; xxxix. 23. Ps. lxxxviii. 10. Prov. xxvii. 23—27. Cant. i. 10. Isa. lvi. 11. Jer. xxv. 18. Ezek. xxi. 21. Dan. iv. 13.
- Honey in the East, its two kinds, Gen. xliii. 11. 1 Sam. xiv. 25. Prov. v. 3. Used as food, Judg. xiv. 9. Prov. xxiv. 13; xxv. 16. Spiritualized, Deut. xxxii. 13. Judg. xiv. 9.
- Honorius and Theodosius, a law of, Esther vii. 9.
- Honorius, cited, Prov. xxxi. 10—31.
- Hooker, Richard, characterized, 2 Chr. xiii. 12. His fine style built on that of Christian antiquity, Vol. iv. Part 2, p. xv, note 7. Cited, Vol. i. Part 1. *Pref.* p. vii, note 2. Gen. ii. 21; xi. 9; xlviii. 14. Ex. iv. 26; xx. 8—11. Lev. xviii. 18; xix. 19. Num. xviii. 21. Deut. xvii. 3. 8. 12. Josh. iv. 23. 1 Sam. xvi. 16. 1 Kings iii. 12; iv. 2; viii. 10, 11. 2 Kings x. 30; xvii. 29; xviii. 4. 5. 1 Chr. xxiii. 24. 2 Chr. xiii. 12. Neh. vii. 7. 8. Job xxxviii. 1. Vol. iv. Part 2, p. xv, and note 7. Ps. cv. 28. Cant. i. 5; v. p. 145. Isa. i. 3. Jer. vii. 31; viii. 7. Dan. x. 13. Zeph. i. 5.
- Hor, mount of, where Aaron died, Num. xx. 22. Deut. xxxii. 50. See *Mosera*. Horite, described, Gen. xiv. 6; xxxvi. 20. Deut. ii. 22. Jakan of this tribe, Num. xxxiii. 31. Another Hor, Num. xxxiv. 8.
- Horace, cited, Gen. iv. 7; xxvi. 7. Lev. ii. 11. Num. vi. 3. Deut. xxi. 23. Judg. xvi. 23. Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 144. Judg. xiv. 24. 1 Sam. ix. 9. 1 Kings ix. 1, 2. 2 Kings xv. 10. 1 Chr. ii. 51. Vol. iii. p. 363, note 2. Job iii. 8; xi. 12; xiv. 7. 10; xix. 20. 22; xxi. 29; xxii. 12; xxviii. 1; xxx. 22; xl. 15; xli. 1. Ps. xxxii. 9; xlix. 18; cv. 12; cxxix. 3. Prov. vi. 6. 26; xxi. 30; xxii. 6; xxvi. 8; xxviii. p. 61; xxx. 15. Eccles. ii. 13; vii. 17; ix. 11; x. 19. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 124. Cant. vii. 4. Vol. v. Part 1, p. xx. Isa. ii. 1; vii. 6; xlv. 22; li. 6; lvi. 10. Jer. i. 10; xv. 20; xxii. 14. Ezek. xxvii. 7; xxiii. 18; xxxviii. 2. Dan. ii. p. 4. Vol. vi. Part 2, p. 1. Zech. ii. 4.
- Horeb (see *Sinai*), its distance from Kadesh-barnea, why expressly stated, Deut. i. 2. Almost constantly used for the mountain of the Law in Deuteronomy, v. 6.
- Hormah (i.e. destruction), Num. xiv. 45; xxi. 3. A town in Simeon, Josh. xii. 14. Judg. i. 17. 1 Sam. xxx. 30; also in Judah, Josh. xv. 30.
- Horn, figuratively denotes power or help, Ex. xxvii. 2. 2 Sam. xxii. 3. Ezek. xxix. 21. Amos vi. 13. Mic. iv. 12, 13. Zech. i. 18: or bright beams, Hab. iii. 4. First used metaphorically, 1 Sam. ii. 1. Thus connecting Hannah's and Zacharias' songs with David's, 2 Sam. xxii. 3. Ps. lxxxix. 17; cxxxiii. 17; cxlvi. p. 226. Horns of the altar emblems of safety, 1 Kings i. 50. Bearing of the figure on date of Ps. lxxxv, Vol. iv. Part 2, p. 119. Tinged with blood of victims, Zech. ix. 15. The notable horn, Dan. viii. 5. Ten horns and a little horn expounded, Dan. vii. 8. No longer little, v. 11. Both Antiochus Epiphanes (Dan. xi. 23) and the Papacy thus indicated, Dan. p. 48.
- Horne, Bp., cited, Gen. i. 26. Ps. xl. 6. 12; xlix. 5.
- Hornet, apparently only a figurative threat of, Ex. xxiii. 28.
- Horonaim, Isa. xv. 5. Jer. xlviii. 3.
- Horonite (i.e. Moabite), Neh. ii. 10.
- Horse, the, glory of Egypt, Ex. ix. 3; xiv. 6, 7: and of Assyria, Ezek. xxiii. 6. Mic. v. 10. Forbidden in excess to the Jews, 1 Kings i. 33; iv. 26; xi. p. 45. 2 Chr. ix. 28. Not among the possessions of Abraham or Job, Job i. 3. Their races discriminated, 1 Kings iv. 26. 28. Sacred to the sun, 2 Kings xxiii. 11. Persian king's horse a special breed, and wore a royal diadem, Esther vi. 8. The war horse, Job xxxix. 19—25. Emblem of strength, Zech. xiv. 20. Coloured horses of Zechariah's vision distinguished, Zech. i. 8—17. Israel Christ's goodly horse, Zech. x. 3.
- Horsley, Bp., cited, Gen. i. 1. 14; ii. 4. 25; iv. 3, 4; xxii. 2; xxv. 8. Ex. xxvi. p. 293. Deut. xxxii. 43; xxxiii. 7. 2 Sam. vii. 19.
- Isaia the prophet, son of Beeri, contemporary with Isaiah, their names having the same meaning, Vol. vi. Part 2, p. vii. Hos. i. 1. 7. Prophesied for more than sixty years, v. 1. His recorded prophecies a summary of his teaching, Hos. v. 1. As earliest of the minor prophets he takes up the language and imagery of the last preceding book, that of the Canticles, p. xii. Hos. i. 2. 10; ii. 2; iii. 1; ix. 14; xi. 4. Justifies God's dealings with the Hebrew nation, especially with the ten tribes (p. xvi. Hos. i. 7; vii. 3—6; xiv. 9) from the beginning, and gives its prophetic history for 400 years to come. Its conclusion, p. xii. Ch. i—iii. form a prologue, p. 1. Hos. iv. 1. Case of his wife considered, Hos. i. 2. The great scattering (v. 4) and spiritual re-gathering of Israel, v. 11. Hos. ii. 15. His bold, abrupt style, Hos. xii. 7. Epiphonema, Hos. xiv. 9.
- Hospitality, a virtue, 2 Kings iv. 10.
- Host of heaven, 2 Kings xvii. 16; xxi. 3; xxiii. 4: worshipped by Israel already in the wilderness, Deut. iv. 19. Cp. Zeph. i. 5. No proof of a later date for Deuteronomy to be gathered from the statement, Deut. iv. 19. This host to be dissolved at the last day, Isa. xxxiv. 4. Numbered by God, Isa. xl. 26. 27.
- Hosts, Lord of, the term first found and very appropriately, 1 Sam. i. 3. In what books it subsequently occurs, by way of contrast to the worship of heavenly bodies, *ib.* 1 Kings xix. 10. Ps. lxxx. 4.
- Hotham, H. J., his Calendar of Psalms according to the Sarum Use, Vol. iv. Part 2, p. xiv, note 2.
- Hottinger, cited, Vol. vi. Part 2, p. vii, notes 1 and 6.
- Houbigant's conjectures, Judg. xvi. 14; xvii. 7. Cant. iv. 15. Cited, Jer. iii. 1.
- Hours, twelve, the reckoning by them came from Babylon to Greece, Dan. iii. 6.
- House, winter and summer, discriminated, Jer. xxxvi. 22.
- Huetius, cited, Eccles. i. 1. Jer. xxxi. 22. Ezek. xxxiii. p. 231.
- Hugo, cited, Joel i. 4. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. viii. 20—22.
- Huldah, the prophetess, listened to by learned priests and a pious king, 2 Kings xxii. 14. Isa. lvii. 1, 2. Said to be descended from Rahab. Her holy boldness revered by the Jews, 2 Kings xxii. 14.
- Human feelings and actions referred to God, Gen. vi. 6; xi. 5. Ex. xx. 5; xxxii. 14. Deut. i. 34. Esther viii. 13. Isa. xxxiv. 5. Jer. xlii. 10.
- Humanity prescribed towards the irrational creation, Ex. xxiii. 19. Lev. xxii. 28. Deut. xxii. 6. Spiritual sense of this last precept in regard to Christ, *ib.* God to be regarded as the Preserver of all, Ex. xxiii. 19. Humanity towards our brethren, both in substance and in soul, for Christ's sake, Deut. xxii. 1. 4. Humility, true, abases us in our own sight, not that of others, 2 Sam. vi. 22. A pre-requisite for wisdom, 1 Kings iii. 7. All God's saints eminent for it, Dan. ii. 30.
- Hundred, a number of perfection, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 280. See *Arithmetic*.
- Hur, account of, Ex. xvii. 10.
- Husbandman's year, the, in Palestine, Lev. xxvi. 5.
- Husbandry, human and Divine compared, Isa. xxviii. 23—29. Spiritual, Jer. xxxi. 24.
- Huzzab, a symbolical name for Nineveh, Nah. ii. 7.
- Itycos, or shepherd kings of Egypt, were not Israelites, Gen. xlv. 6, but earlier in date, v. 34. See *Manetho*.
- Ilyde, cited, Ezek. viii. 17.
- Hymnology, its true end, God's glory, by rehearsal and remembrance of His mighty and merciful acts, Ex. xv. 1. 1 Chr. xvi. 4. First hymn in the Bible, Ex. xv. 1. Hymns of praise are also prayers of faith and hope, Hab. iii. 19. All genuine hymns doctrinal, Deut. xxxii. 1. Thirteen Psalms bear the title of *Maschil* (i.e. instruction), Vol. iv. Part 2, p. iii, note 3; p. 44. All psalmody ranged by S. Paul under teaching and praising, *ib.* Rapturous hymns unfit for mixed congregations, Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 127. Ancient Christian hymns, cited, Ezek. i. 5. Hos. vi. 5. Zech. xiv. 20.
- Hypocrite, the Hebrew (*chaneph*) rather means profane or corrupt, Job vii. 13; xxxvi. 13.
- Hyssop, described, Ex. xii. 22. 1 Kings iv. 33: and spiritualized, Ex. xii. 22. Ps. li. 7. As an instrument of cleansing, named in the history of the Passion, Lev. xiv. 4. Num. xix. 6.
- Ibleam, site of, Josh. xvii. 11. The locality described, 2 Kings ix. 27.
- Ibzan of Bethlehem, extension and fruitfulness of his house foreshadows the going forth of Emmanuel, Judg. xii. 9.
- Idalah, Josh. xix. 15.
- Ideier, his astronomical calculations fix the date of the first captivity by Nebuchadnezzar to B.C. 606, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xx, note 3. Cited, Jer. lii. 31. Ezek. viii. 14. Nah. ii. 1.

- Idolatry, first named in Scripture, Gen. xxxi. 30. How heinous in God's sight, Ezek. xxiii. 3. 20. Synonymous with "abomination," 2 Chr. xv. 8. Zabian adoration, Job xxxi. 26. Allurements of idolatry, Prov. ix. 17. Never named in the book of Proverbs: inference therefrom, Prov. iii. 32. Practised in some Christian Churches, Ex. xxxii. 4. 5. Isa. xlv. 3. 4. Zech. xi. 15. Not excused by the plea that men worship God in the idol, 1 Kings xii. 28. No such service should be countenanced by members of the Church of England, 2 Kings v. 19. Images or stone columns employed in such worship, 1 Kings xv. 23. 2 Kings x. 26; xvii. 10. See *Grove, Image*. Cakes offered in such worship, Hos. iii. 1. Jeroboam's idolatry sternly rebuked, 2 Chr. xi. 15. Israel since the Captivity almost free from idolatry, Ps. cvi. 37; cvii. p. 170; cxv. 4. Isa. xxvii. 9. Jer. iii. 25. Ezek. xxxvii. 23. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. vi. Part 2. p. xxv. Hos. i. 10; iii. 3. 4; xiv. 8. Mal. p. 156. Some compliances noted, Isa. lxx. 11; lxxi. 1.
- IHESUS, its letters make up the number SSS, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 280, note 4.
- Ignatius, S., cited, Vol. i. Part 1. *Preface*, p. xi, note 10. Ex. xiv. 2. Lev. xxiii. 17; xxvi. 11. Num. xviii. 2; xxviii. 2. 1 Sam. x. 5. Vol. iii. *Introd.*, p. xxiii. 1 Kings vi. 7. Vol. iii. p. 362. Job xvii. 12. Prov. xxvii. 14; xxx. 19. Cant. ii. 7. Vol. v. Part 1. p. v, note 3. Jer. vii. 4. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. x, note 10. Hos. xiii. 14.
- Ignorance, sins of, Lev. iv. 2. 14. Num. xv. 24. Not so easily expiated, Eccles. v. 6. Man's ignorance of the constitution of things calls for a revelation from God, Eccles. viii. 15. 17. Ije-abarim, its location, Num. xxi. 11; xxxiii. 44.
- Ijon, 2 Kings xv. 29.
- Image of God in man, wherein it consists, Gen. i. 26. Marred by the fall, but restored in Christ, Ps. viii. 3. 4. Image work, 2 Chr. iii. 10. Weeping and idolatrous whispering images, Ps. cxv. 7. "Image of jealousy," Ezek. viii. 3. Nebuchadnezzar's image a column, with human head, suggested by his dream, Dan. iii. 1.
- Immanuel, His eternal existence, Isa. viii. 8.
- Immigrations corrupted native simplicity in Arabia, Job xv. 19.
- Immolation of children by parents often worse than that of Jephthah, to covetousness, lust, or vows of celibacy, Josh. xi. 40.
- Imperfect tense used as an optative, Hos. vii. 13.
- Imposition of hands in blessing, Gen. xlviii. 14. On the Levites by the children of Israel, Num. viii. 10. On Joshua, Num. xxvii. 18.
- Impossibilities, physical, may represent spiritual truths, Ps. cxxxiii. 3.
- Impunity, sin's greatest punishment, Hos. iv. 4.
- Incarnation of Christ, the prophecy respecting it, explained and vindicated, Jer. xxxi. 22.
- Incense, a symbol of prayer (see *Frankincense*), not literally required in the Christian Church, Mal. i. 11. p. 160.
- Increase of Israel in Egypt, miraculous and prophetic, Ex. i. 7. Further considerations, Ex. xii. 37. Num. i. 46. True numbers of Israel at the Exodus, Ex. xii. 37. The mixed multitude, c. 38. Increase wholly checked in the wilderness by reason of sin: moral lesson, Num. xxvi. 51.
- India, whence named, Esther i. 1.
- Infallibility, the claim to (Ezek. xxviii. p. 221. Dan. vii. 25. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xv. Hab. p. 95. Zech. xi. 15. 17), involves the perpetual necessity of erring, both in Eastern potentates, and in Western Pontiffs, Esther ix. 16. Proclamation of the dogma (July 18, 1870), an act of idolatry, Dan. iii. 1.
- Infidelity, our danger from it, Ezek. xxxii. 2. Its main cause, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. viii.
- Inkhorn, Egyptian, Ezek. ix. 2.
- Innocent III., Pope, Ezek. xvii. 15.
- Innocent things to be avoided, if once tainted with idolatry, Hos. ii. 16.
- Inspiration of the Old Testament proved from the New, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xxv. The Gospels being true histories, their testimony is true, *ib.* According to their evidence, Christ sanctioned the Jewish opinion respecting the Divine authority of the Old Testament, p. xxvi.: even in such details as Jonah's history, Jonah i. 17. This Jewish testimony of the greater weight from the national enmity to the Gospel, Isa. liii. 1. Holy Scripture true in regard to natural phenomena as well as to doctrine, Vol. i. Part 1. p. xxix. The natural cosmogony in Genesis analogous to the spiritual cosmogony of the Gospel, *ib.* Respective provinces of Scripture and of profane history defined, p. xxx. Alleged contradictions between Scripture and science proceed from reading one or both amiss, p. xxxi. As in the Bible account of the creation, Gen. i. 1. Ps. xc. p. 145. Isa. xxiv. 10. Physical science may yet throw a new light on Scripture, and so further assure us of its Divine origin, Job. xxvi. 7. Examples showing that faith, patience, and humility (Eccles. vii. 23) are wise readers of the Bible, and time an excellent interpreter, p. xxxii. The argument recapitulated. Inspiration applies to the whole Bible, p. xli. Providential design whereby it has been kept intact, and its authority assured to us, displayed for 3000 years in the history of the Jews and of the Christian Church, ancient and modern, Vol. i. Part 1. pp. xlii-iii. Especially in the fact that the Jews preserved books which convey so unfavourable a description of their own nation, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. 157, and which so much oppose its prejudices, Mal. i. 11. Argument from fulfilment of prophecy, Vol. i. Part 1. p. xliii. From the unbroken chain of continuity, and harmonious unity of purpose throughout Scripture, Hos. i. 2. From the symmetry of its several parts, illustrating and supporting each other, p. xlv. Job xxxii. 2. Jer. x. p. 26. From the character of its writers, and from its beneficial effects on the world, Vol. i. Part 1. p. xlv. All Scripture is a gift of God in Christ, Eccles. xii. 11. Hence its writers are said to do what God does, Jer. i. 10. Scripture contains no exaggerated statements, Vol. iii. p. 19. Its references to fables, even if real, no argument against its inspiration, Job xxix. 18. Inspiration does not destroy a writer's personal identity, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 79. The whole sense of the Holy Spirit (which may be two-fold or manifold), was not necessarily seen by the writers of the word, Deut. xxx. 11-14. Job xix. 25. Ps. xl. 8. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 12. Prov. viii. p. 18. Jer. xxxi. 22. The Holy Spirit the true Author, Ps. xlv. 1. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 124. Inspired writers speak not of their own hearts, as did the false prophets, Ezek. xiii. 2. 3. Their veracity proved by the testimony they bear to the sins and infirmities of the nation and its best men, Deut. xxxi. 9. 1 Sam. xxi. 2. 2 Sam. xi. p. 91. Isa. i. 1. History of Joseph so written as to bring out, as in a mirror, a reflection of Christ's history, a typical Gospel, not a bare history like that of Josephus, Gen. xli. p. 166. Thus all patriarchal types indicate a well-ordered Divine plan, preparatory to Christ's coming, *ib.* An uninspired annalist could not have foreshadowed Christ so long before in the history of Sammel, of Saul, and of David, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. xiv. Which proves to readers a moral test. 2 Sam. xi. p. 94. Accommodation of Old Testament types in the New not arbitrary, but included in the mind of the Spirit when first written, Jer. xxxi. 15-17. Inspiration expressly claimed for Moses' Hymn, Deut. xxxi. 19. Inspiration of the book of Esther discussed, Vol. iii. p. 362. Esther iv. 11. The study of Scripture contrasted with that of worldly books, Eccles. xii. 12. The Holy Bible presented to English Sovereigns at their Coronation as "the lively Oracles of God," Vol. i. Part 1. p. xiv. Deut. xxxi. 9. 2 Kings xi. 12.
- Intelligence (Heb. *binah*), distinguished from wisdom (Heb. *choemah*), Prov. xvi. 16.
- Intercession, its power with God, Gen. xviii. 23. 32. Ex. xxxii. 10. That of Moses for his people typical of Christ's, Num. xii. 13. That of Aaron and Phinehas, Isa. lix. 16. Intercession of the saints, Jer. xv. 1. See *Prayer*.
- Interpretation. See *Allegorical interpretation*.
- Ipsus, battles of, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiii, note 6. Dan. viii. 8.
- Irenæus, S., his view of the Old Testament, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. viii. Cited, Vol. i. Part 1. p. xi, note 8. Gen. ii. 1. 9; iii. 7; ix. 22, 23. 27; xxviii. 2; p. 130; xxxviii. 28; xlix. 8. 17. Ex. i. 14; iii. 8; vii. 1; xiv. 2; xx. 12; p. 289. Ex. xxv. 31; xxvi. 11. Lev. x. 2-9. Num. xiv. 30; xv. 32; xxiv. 17. 23; xxvii. 15. Deut. iv. 14; x. 12; xxvii. 18; xxxiii. 9. Josh. ii. 18. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 77, note 6; p. 110. 1 Sam. xv. 22; xxi. 5. 2 Sam. xi. 27. 1 Kings iv. 1. 24. 33; xviii. 21; xix. 11, 12. 2 Kings ii. 11; iv. 29-37; vi. 6. Ps. xxxiii. 6. Prov. i. 20; iii. 19; viii. 15. 22. Isa. vii. 15; xlv. 8; xxvi. 19; xxvii. 6; xxxv. 3, 4, 5, 6; lx. 17; lxi. 1. Jer. ii. 13; vii. 22. Lam. iv. 20. Ezek. xxxvi. 26; xxxvii. 12. *Retrospect*, p. 280, note 4. Dan. ii. 40. 41. 45; iii. 1. 25; vii. p. 29; rr. 7. 8. 13. 25. Hos. i. 2. Amos viii. 9. Jonah i. 17. Mal. i. 11.
- Iris, the Divine messenger, Dan. iv. 13.
- Iron, Josh. xix. 38.
- Iron mines in Palestine, Deut. viii. 9. Iron worked by Tubal-Cain; hence no proof of a late date of Deuteronomy, *ib.*
- Irony in Scripture, Gen. xlv. 5. 1 Kings xi. p. 44; xviii. 27; xxii. 15. 2 Chr. xxv. 8. Job vii. 17; xxii. 8; xxvi. 2. 3. Ps. (xlix. 14); lxxviii. 41. Prov. xxi. 16. Isa. xvi. 3; xxxiii. 10; xli. 7. Jer. xii. 13; xvii. 4; xxii. 14; xli. 6; xlix. 11? Ezek. xxxiii. 23. Hos. iv. 15; x. 11. Amos iv. 4. Zech. xi. 12. Ir-slemesh, Josh. xii. 41. See *Heres*.
- Isaac, a type of Christ in his promised birth, Gen. xxi. 2: in

his nurture, *v.* 8: in his intended sacrifice, Gen. xxii. 2. 5. 6. 9. Isa. liv. p. 157. Zech. xii. 10. His meditative temper, Gen. xxiv. 63; xxv. 11. At Gerar his weakness was initiated from his greater father, Gen. xxvi. 7. His opening Philistine wells a type, *v.* 15. His life a placid reflection of Abraham's: its mystic significance, *v.* 33. His blessing a priestly act, Gen. xxvii. 4. His self-indulgence and its punishment, *v.* 44. Renews Jacob's blessing, Gen. xxviii. 1. His death told by anticipation to harmonize the history, Gen. xxxv. 28.

Isaiah the prophet, his significant name, 2 Kings xix. 2. Vol. v. Part 1. p. ix. Referred to, Isa. i. 1. His vision on Uzziah's death, 2 Kings xv. 7. His son a sign to Ahaz, and type of Immanuel, Isa. vii. 16; viii. 3. 4. His prophecy of spiritual blessings to afflicted Galilee, 2 Kings xv. 29. Comforts Judah against Rezin and Pekah, *v.* 37; xvi. 5. With Micah comforts Hezekiah, 2 Kings xix. 2, by promises reaching on to Christ, *v.* 30. 2 Chr. xxxii. 20. His inspiration asserted, 2 Kings xix. 20. His courageous firmness, 2 Kings xx. 14. Gives Hezekiah a public test of his mission, Isa. xxxvii. 30. His prophecy of the captivity of Babylon 125 years later improbable when delivered, 2 Kings xx. 17. His prophetic range extended far beyond it, *ib.* His denunciation of the people's sin a proof of his inspiration, Isa. i. 1. About 80 at Manasse's accession, 2 Kings xxi. 10. Said to have been put to death by him, *v.* 16. Isa. i. 1. In him prophecy received new functions and ampler proportions, Vol. v. Part 1. p. v. Exercised his office more than sixty years, p. vii. His central prophetic position described, *ib.* Moral design of his prophecies against the heathen, pp. vii. viii. xv. pp. 36—7. His prophecies of Christ extend to His second coming, pp. viii. ix. His writings provide against and anticipate the difficulties of the present times, pp. xi—xiii. Threatening as well as gracious, Isa. lxvi. 2, 3.

Isaiah, book of, how a vision, Isa. i. 1; ii. 1. 2. Well known to Ezra, Vol. iii. p. 320: its later chapters included, Ezra ix. 4. Analysis of its contents: two great portions, Vol. v. Part 1. p. xiii. Part 1 (ch. i.—xxxix.) subdivided into five. (1) A compendious prophecy by way of prologue (ch. i.—v.), *ib.*, reaching to the Roman siege of Jerusalem, Isa. i. 1; iv. 1. 4, the earliest of his works, Isa. vi. p. 15. (2) His enlarged commission, Isa. vi. p. 15, his first prophecies of Messiah, and denunciations of Assyria, the Anti-christian power (ch. vi—xii.), pp. xiii. xiv. (3) Burdens, or prophecies of judgment to the Jewish and heathen nations, applicable also to the history of Christ's Church and (ch. xxiv.) to the future judgment (ch. xiii.—xxvii.), pp. xiv. xv. 36—38. Isa. xvi. 3; xxvii. 7; xix. 1. 22. (4) Six woes tempered with mercy (ch. xxviii.—xxxv.), p. xv, passing into those pronounced by Christ, Isa. xxviii. p. 78; xxvii. p. 99. (5) History of Hezekiah's reign, ending with the prophecy of the Babylonish captivity (ch. xxxvi.—xxxix.), p. xvi. This history necessary to assure the fulfilment of the preceding prophecies, p. 104. Its slight variations from the corresponding portions of 2 Kings accounted for, Isa. xxxviii. 21, 22. Part 2 (ch. xl.—lvi.) opens with a prophecy of deliverance from Babylon (after a synoptical prologue, Isa. xl. 1—11, pp. 117, 118). The book could not suitably end with ch. xxxix., but is continued in ch. xl. p. 114. This second part also subdivided into three portions (ch. xl.—xlvi.), p. 142; xlix.—lvii. p. 167; lviii.—lvi.), each containing nine addresses, p. 115. History of Christ's Church, as set forth in the deliverance of the Jews by Cyrus, so clear as to be a touchstone of the reader's faith, p. xvi. Objections to the second part, as being the composition of Isaiah, stated and considered, pp. xvii—xxi; 113—115. Received as his by the Hebrew Church, and so cited in the New Testament, p. xix. Isa. xl. 3. The argument from diversity of style discussed, p. xix, *note* 1. Isa. i. 4; li. 11. Some portions of Part 2 admitted by all to be genuine, p. xx. Isa. lvi. 9. Arguments from Jeremiah's extensive use of Isaiah's writings, pp. 46. 99. The sceptical argument would extend to portions of Part 1. p. xx; and to Micah's prophecies, Mic. iv. 10. Connexion of this book with Deuteronomy in Hebrew Church lessons (see *Calendar*), Isa. i. 1. Close resemblance of this book to Micah, Isa. ii. 2. Mic. iv. 1. 10. Its imagery much like that of the Canticles, Isa. v. p. 11. *v.* 1; xxxv. 1, 2. English Church lessons much taken from it, Isa. i. p. 1; xi. 11; xxiv. p. 68; xxx. p. 89; xxxii. 1; xlix. 1; l. 5; liii. p. 153; lx. 1; lxiii. 1; lxx. 16. Commentators on the book, p. xxi.

Isih-bosheth, the name why varied, 2 Sam. ii. 8. 1 Chr. viii. 33. Not made king at once, and thus represents a state of transition, 2 Sam. ii. 9. Chronology of his reign, *v.* 10.

Ishmael, (1) a type of the Synagogue in its persecution of the Church, Gen. xxi. 9. 10. Yet shall he be refreshed with living water, *v.* 19. His twelve princes represent a promise verified, 1 Chr. ii. 29: (2) one of the seed royal, 2 Kings

xxv. 23. Jer. xl. 8. His infamy, Jer. xli. 9; xlii. p. 101.

Ishmaelites, their present condition a fulfilment of prophecy, Gen. xvi. 12. Their geographical distribution, Gen. xxv. 12—15. Traders, Gen. xxxvii. 25. Also called Hagarites, 1 Chr. v. 10.

Isidore of Pelusium, cited, Vol. iii. p. 296, *note* 6. Pa. xxiii. p. 32; xxxvii. 1: cxlviii. 12. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xi, *note* 11. Vol. v. Part 2. p. ix, *note* 6.

Isles, put for maritime countries, Ps. xevii. 1. Isa. xli. 1. 5. "Islands of the sea," Isa. xi. 11. "Of the Gentiles," explained, Gen. x. 5. Isa. li. 5; lix. 18; lxxi. 19. A mere speck of land, Isa. xx. 5, 6; xxi. 1.

Israel, a name first given to Jacob, then to his nation, then to Christ the King, Isa. xlix. 3. The nation in its fortunes a type of Christ, Hos. xi. 1. Hab. iii. 13. Its history an enigma to the unwise, Hos. xiv. 9. Its spiritual progeny numerous, Isa. lxx. 9. To continue for ever, Jer. xxxi. 35—37.

Israel, kingdom of, its extent compared with that of Judah, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. ix, *note* 2. Some good elicited from the evil of its separation from Judah, 1 Kings xi. 13. Judah by right the true Israel, 1 Chr. ix. 2. 2 Chr. xii. 6. Ezra ii. 2. Neh. xi. 3. Though the distinction was sometimes made even before the Revolt, 2 Sam. xvii. 25. Kings of Judah six times called Kings of Israel, 2 Chr. xxviii. 19, after the captivity of the ten tribes, Ezek. vii. 2. The northern kingdom founded in blood, 1 Kings xii. 18. So far from being national, it was corrupt, schismatical, heretical, and idolatrous, *v.* 31. Few of its kings were succeeded by their sons, 1 Kings xiv. 20. 2 Chr. xiii. 3. Weakened under Baasha, 2 Chr. xvii. 16—18. Yet their bloody revolutions led them not to repentance, 1 Kings xv. 28: in spite of the warnings of the prophets, 1 Kings xvi. 2. 7. Jehu's family reigned longest, 2 Kings x. 30. Then the kingdom dismembered, and henceforth of small account, *v.* 32. God graciously restores the kingdom for a while to prove the people, 2 Kings xiv. 26. 28. Jotham, king of Judah, his influence beyond Jordan, 1 Chr. v. 17. The people's rejection of Hezekiah's invitation to the Passover caused their final overthrow, 2 Kings xvii. 6. 2 Chr. xxx. 1. 10. Through their obstinate transgression, the kingdom virtually ends in Zechariah, his successors being but murderers, 2 Kings xv. 9. Carried into exile beyond the land whence Abraham came, a place known only to God, 2 Kings xvii. 6. The schism between the kingdoms thus healed, Ezra ii. 2. Isa. xi. 13. Mal. p. 156.

Issachar, his quiet lot spiritualized, Gen. xlix. 14. His increase under Judah's standard, Num. xxvi. 23—25. Joined with Zebulun in Moses' blessing, Deut. xxxiii. 18. Boundaries of the tribe, Josh. xix. 17. An understanding people, 1 Chr. xii. 32.

Issus, battle of, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xii. Dan. viii. 7. 8. Zech. ix. 1.

Italic type, some words so printed in the English Bible approved, 2 Sam. x. 18. Isa. xlviii. 11. The words in italic type would be better omitted in Gen. ii. 11. Josh. xxi. 13. 21; xxii. 34. Judg. v. 11; vii. 18; xi. 36; xiii. 18. 1 Sam. v. 4; xxi. 5. 2 Sam. i. (18). 21; v. 8; xv. 32. 34; xxiii. 3. 4, 5; 1 Kings iv. 28; v. 20. 2 Kings ii. 10; xii. 4. 2 Chr. i. 13; v. 5; xx. 17; xxx. 17. 19. Neh. iii. 8. Job iii. 19; ix. 13. 29; xiii. 1; xix. 26. 27; xxiv. 5; xxx. 14. Ps. liv. 7; lix. 10; lxx. 12; lxxiv. 7: lxxxix. 39; cxxviii. 6; cxxxiii. 3. Prov. xxv. 27; xxvii. 16. Eccles. xii. 11. 13. Cant. ii. 12; v. 4; vi. 12. Isa. ix. 1; xv. 5; xviii. 2; (xxii. 18); xxiii. 13; xxvi. 14. 19; xxxviii. 13. 20; xlviii. 8; lxxi. 17. Jer. ii. 23; vi. 25; ix. 3; xxxi. 3; xlvii. 21. Ezek. xvi. 32; xlvii. 5. Joel ii. 20. Amos viii. 8. Obad. 11. Zeph. ii. 2. Zech. iv. 10.

Itai, the Gittite, his loyal constancy, 2 Sam. xv. 19. 21. Strangers faithful to David, as to Christ, when friends fall away, *v.* 18.

Ittiobalus, prince of Tyre, Ezek. xxviii. 2.

Ivah, 2 Kings xviii. 34.

Ivory, works in, 1 Kings x. 18. Imported from Africa, *v.* 22. The Hebrew name discussed, *ib.* Anub's ivory house, 1 Kings xxii. 39. Amos iii. 15. Cp. Ps. xlv. 8. The jewel of animal life, Cant. v. 14.

Jaazaniah, Isa. lxvi. 17. Ezek. viii. 11.

Jaazer, or Jazer, site of, Num. xxi. 32. 2 Sam. xxiv. 5. 2 Chr. xxvi. 31. Lake of, Isa. xvi. 8. Jer. xlviii. 22.

Jabbok, the brook, meaning and location of, Gen. xxxii. 22. Num. xxi. 24. Deut. ii. 36. The upper, 2 Sam. xii. 27.

- Jabesh-gilead, its position and history, Judg. xxi. 8. 1 Sam. xi. 1; xxxi. 11.
- Jabez, a place, 1 Chr. ii. 55. The person, his name and character, 1 Chr. iv. 9. 10. A student of God's law and type of Christ, *ib.*
- Jabin, official name of kings of Hazor, Josh. xi. 1. Judg. iv. 2. Its meaning spiritualized, Josh. xi. 1. Judg. v. 19.
- Jabneh, Josh. xv. 11.
- Jabneh, 2 Chr. xxvi. 6.
- Jackals (rather than *foxes*, Ps. lxxiii. 10. Cant. ii. 15. Ezek. xiii. 4), abound near Gaza, Judg. xv. 4. Jackals, not *dragons* (Heb. *tannim*), Job xxx. 29. Ps. xlv. 19. Isa. xiii. 22; xxxiv. 13; xxxv. 7; xliii. 20. Jer. ix. 11; x. 22; xiv. 6; xlix. 33; li. 37. Ezek. xxxii. 2. Mic. i. 8. Mal. i. 3. Emblems of false teachers, Ezek. xiii. 4. 5. Damage the vineyards, Cant. ii. 15. To be taken when little, *ib.*
- Jackson, Dean, referred to, Gen. xlix. 10. Cited, Dent. xxviii. 1. 29. 30. 64; xxix. 19. 2 Kings xv. 17. 2 Chr. vii. 1; xxiv. 21; xxxvi. 22. Ezra ii. 63. Isa. vii. 16; xxxix. 7; xli. 8; xlv. 28; xlv. 1. Jer. xxxi. 22. Zech. ix. 1. 9; xi. 13; xii. 3; xiv. 4.
- Jacob, chosen of God, Gen. xxv. 23. Origin of his name, *v.* 26. His early bravery, holy alacrity, and pious ambition for precedence, Hos. xii. 3, 4; xiii. 13. His sin in regard of the birth-right, Gen. xxx. 31. His age when he obtained the blessing calculated, Gen. xxvii. 1. Shrinks from detection, not from fraud, *v.* 11. His "goodly raiment" the priestly robe of the first-born, *v.* 15. Typical significance of the narrative, *vv.* 15. 17. His self-deception, *v.* 19. His blessing how fulfilled, *v.* 29. His punishment, *v.* 44. Gen. xxix. 25. A type of Christ, Gen. xxviii. 3. 11. 12; xxix. 1. 2. 10. 18; xxxi. 20. 38; xxxiii. 11. Hos. xii. 3, 4. His godly training shown, Gen. xxviii. 16. His pillar, *v.* 22. Typical application of his marriage relations, Gen. xxix. 28. Eleven sons in seven years, Gen. xxx. 24. God's help against Laban's wrongdoing, *v.* 37. Gen. xxi. 12. His life at Padan-aram typical, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 130. Proposed as an example to his posterity, Hos. xii. 12. His prayer, Gen. xxxii. 9. 10. His wrestling, and with Whom, *v.* 24. "God of Jacob," why so named, Ps. lxxxv. 8. Typical of Christ's agony, Gen. xxxii. 24. Hos. xii. 3, 4. His name why changed (see *Name*), *v.* 28, and the change repeated, Gen. xxxv. 10. His halting, Gen. xxxii. 31. Enabled by conscious sin, Gen. xxxiv. 30. Chastened for polygamy and partiality in his family, Gen. xlii. 20. 38. 1-raed, this name when fitly used, Gen. xliii. 11; xlv. 1. Num. xxiii. 7. A pilgrim, his sorrows, Gen. xlvii. 9. Blesses Pharaoh as a priest, *v.* 10. His age, *v.* 28. Directions for his burial betoken faith and hope, *vv.* 29. 30; xlix. 29. His staff and why he bowed, Gen. xlvii. 31. Endowed with prophetic knowledge when near his end, Gen. xlviii. 8. 11; xlix. 1. His prophecy extends to the last days, *ib.* Why called "a Syrian perishing," Dent. xvi. 5.
- Jacob's family that went down to Egypt includes unborn founders of independent families, Gen. xlv. 8. 12. 21. Children included in parents, *v.* 12. Why 70 here, and 75 in St. Stephen's speech, *v.* 27. Rapid increase in Egypt typical of the growth of Christ's Church, *ib.* Order of tribes, Ezek. xlviii. 31.
- Jacob's sons, varied order of their arrangements, Ex. i. 2. Num. i. 4. Truth of their history thus demonstrated, Num. i. 4; ii. 3. 5. 10. 18. 25; vii. 12. Order of their genealogies, 1 Chr. ii. 1, 2; xxvii. 16—22.
- Jaddua, in the fourth generation from Eliashib, if the same person as was High Priest, n.c. 322, might have been born in n.c. 404, the latest date of any portion of Nehemiah, Neh. xii. 11. 25. His interview with Alexander, Dan. viii. 8.
- Jael (1), meaning of, Judg. iv. 17. Her act praised by Deborah, who knew the circumstances and was inspired by God, *v.* 23. Hence she must have received a special commission from God, which alone could justify what she did, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 99. Her zeal contrasted with lukewarmness of Meroz, Judg. *v.* 23. This Gentile woman delivers God's people from misery and shame, by virtue of a supernatural gushing forth of God's Spirit in a time of deep distress, *p.* 99. She received Sibera in good faith; the impulse came afterwards, with miraculous power for the deed, *ib.* The slaughter one of violence, not of mere surprise, Judg. iv. 21; *v.* 27. God the Author of life and death so ordered it, *p.* 99. The history spiritualized, pp. 100, 101. Ps. lxxviii. 12. (2) Perhaps a Judge of Israel, Judg. *v.* 6.
- Jahaz, site of, Num. xxi. 23. Josh. xiii. 18. Judg. xi. 20. Isa. xv. 4. *Jahazah*, Jer. xlviii. 21.
- Jahn, cited, Ex. xii. 9. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xvi, note 2. Joel iii. 14. Jair. See *Haroth-jair*.
- James, S., author of the Epistle, a spiritual Jeremiah or Ezekiel, Ezek. xxii. p. 205.
- Janoah, 2 Kings xv. 29.
- Janohah, Josh. xvi. 6.
- Japheth, his blessing of enlargement, both spiritual and temporal, Gen. ix. 27. Probably the eldest of Noah's sons, Gen. x. 21.
- Japhia, Josh. xix. 12.
- Japho, Josh. xix. 46, or *Joppa*, Jonah i. 3.
- Jarehi, Rabbi, S., cited, Lev. xviii. 21. Num. xiii. 22; xix. 3; xxiv. 19. Dent. xxxiii. 23. 1 Kings xi. p. 44; xix. 9. 2 Kings xi. 12. 1 Chr. iii. 24. 2 Chr. xxvii. 8. Esther i. 22. Job xxix. 18. Ps. exviii. 22. Cant. i. 7. Isa. xxviii. 16; lx. 6. Jer. xv. 4; xlv. 19; xlix. 25. Dan. vii. 13. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. p. 121.
- Jareb, king, the term explained, Hos. v. 13; x. 6.
- Jarmuth, site of, Josh. x. 3; xxi. 29.
- Jattir, Josh. xv. 48. 1 Sam. xxx. 27.
- Javan, delineated, Gen. x. 2. Isa. lxvi. 19. Ezek. xxvii. 13.
- Jebsite, the, Gen. x. 16. Spiritually a dweller at Jerusalem, the Church, Zech. ix. 7.
- Jeduthun. See *Ethan*.
- Jehiel, 2 Chr. xxxv. 8.
- Jehoahaz, a younger son of Josiah, called also *Shallum* (i.e. required), by Jeremiah (1 Chr. iii. 15), Jer. xxii. 11; xlv. 2: an unworthy usurper, 2 Kings xxiii. 30. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 1. Jer. xxii. 10. Ezek. xix. 3. How dethroned, 2 Kings xxiii. 33. Jer. xxii. 12.
- Jehoash, or Joash, (1) king of Judah, his fair beginning, 2 Kings xii. 2. 16, and miserable end, *v.* 20. 2 Chr. xxiv. 25. Undoes his own pious work, *v.* 18. 2 Chr. xxiv. 18. His polygamy not his own fault, 2 Chr. xxiv. 3. His history in the books of Kings and Chronicles quite consistent, 2 Kings xii. 17. 2 Chr. xxiv. 22. His misfortunes typical, *v.* 23. (2) King of Israel, chronology of his reign, 2 Kings xiii. 1. His regard for Elisha and his feeble faith, *vv.* 14—19. Orthography of his name, 2 Kings xiv. 15, 16. First robs the Temple at Jerusalem, *v.* 14, and soon dies, *vv.* 15, 16.
- Jehoiachin, his pretentious name why lopped into *Coniah* by Jeremiah, 2 Kings xxiv. 8. Jer. xxii. 24; xxxvii. 1. Also called Jeconiah, 1 Chr. iii. 17. Ezek. i. 2. His age at his accession, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 9. His wickedness much his mother's fault, Jer. xxii. 26; xxix. 2. His 37 years of captivity, 2 Kings xxiv. 15. At length comforted in exile on his repentance, 2 Kings xxv. 27. 29. Ps. evi. 46. Jer. xxii. 27; lii. 31. In what sense childless, Jer. xxii. 30.
- Jehoiada, or *Johanan*, the long-lived High Priest, 1 Chr. vi. 9. 2 Chr. xxiv. 15. His other name, 2 Chr. xxiv. 20—22. Not without blame, *v.* 3.
- Jehoiakim, or *Eliakim*, son of Josiah, 1 Chr. iii. 15. Ezek. xix. 5. 7. His insolent impiety, Jer. xxxvi. 23, and its aggravation, *v.* 24. In his violent death and lack of burial Jeremiah's prophecy fully accomplished, 2 Kings xxiv. 6. Jer. xxii. 19; xxxvi. 30; xxxvii. 1. Alleged idolatrous marks found on him, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 8. His pride and covetousness, Jer. xxii. 14. 17.
- Jehonadab, or *Jonadab* (meaning of the name, Jer. xxxv. 2), son of Rechab, of the Kenites, his reputed sanctity, 2 Kings x. 15. 1 Chr. ii. 55. Jer. xxxv. 2.
- Jehoram, or *Joram*, (1) son of Ahab, not utterly forgetful of God, 2 Kings vi. 21. Yet with sackcloth on his loins persecuted Elisha for sufferings which his own sin had caused, *v.* 31. His feeble act of faith and repentance procures relief for a time, *v.* 33. God's hand visible in the place of his death, 2 Kings ix. 21. (2) Son of Jehoshaphat, adopted as partner in his father's kingdom, 2 Kings viii. 16. His idolatrous marriage with Athaliah brought misery to Judah, *v.* 18. His partial service to God, 2 Kings xii. 18. Slays his brethren, 2 Chr. xxi. 4. His dishonoured death, 2 Kings viii. 24. 2 Chr. xxi. 20.
- Jehoshaphat, meaning of his name; a signal type of Christ, 2 Chr. xx. 37. Walked in the first ways of David, 2 Chr. xvii. 3. His kingdom increased by his piety, *vv.* 7. 16—18. His charitable hopes of Ahab, 1 Kings xxii. 5. 2 Chr. xviii. 1. In contrast with Aza, repents when rebuked of God, 2 Chr. xix. 2. 4. His admirable prayer, 2 Chr. xx. 6. His deliverance, *vv.* 17—21. Occasion of Ps. xlviii. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. 73. Ps. lxxxiii. p. 131. League with Ahaziah: the transaction examined, 2 Chr. xx. 36.
- Jehoshaphat, valley of, the name not local till the fourth century, but symbolical by reason of its derivation, Joel iii. 2.
- Jehovah. See *Divine Names*.
- Jehovah-nissi, its literal and symbolical sense, Ex. xvii. 15, 16. Isa. viii. 11. The banner of the Cross, Ps. lx. 4. Cant. ii. 4; *v.* 10; vi. 4. 10. Isa. xi. 10; xxxi. 9; lix. 19; lxii. 10. Opposed to the military ensigns of the Chaldeans, Ps. lxxiv. 4.
- Jehu (1), son of Hanani, the seer, 2 Chr. xix. 2. (2) King of Israel. Meaning of his name and patronymic, 2 Kings ix. 2.

- No usurper, *v.* 7. Evades the inquiries of his fellows, *v.* 11. God gave effect to his acts, without approving the means, 2 Kings x. 9. 19. His zeal for the Lord a pretext, *v.* 16. His worldly policy, *v.* 29. Yet his selfish obedience meets with a temporal reward, *v.* 30.
- Jehud, Josh. xix. 45.
- Jephthah, his tribe unnamed, Judg. xi. 1. His deeds irregular, like those of the Wesleys and Whitfield, *ib.* His notion of national deities, *v.* 24. Literally sacrificed his daughter, not against her will (like Iphigenia), as living at a time of degeneracy, far from the Tabernacle, separate from the congregation (*v.* 1), his own religious views being corrupted, *v.* 40. His daughter's willing self-sacrifice, not without tears, yet for her father's sinful vow, an image of Christ's death for the sins of men, *ib.* Zech. xii. 10. Four days of mourning yearly, *v.* 40. Jephthah imitates Gideon's moderation to the Ephraimites, Judg. xii. 1—3. His apparent repentance and departure in hope, *v.* 7.
- Jerahmeelites, who, 1 Sam. xxvii. 10. Cp. 1 Chr. ii. 9.
- Jeremiah, the priest, compared with Ezekiel, Vol. v. Part 2. p. vii. Jer. i. 1. Like that of other prophets, his name is significant, p. xii. His father Hilkiah, p. vii. Jer. i. 1. Sanctified from his birth, Jer. i. 5. His call, *vv.* 8. 9. Began to prophesy in the 13th year of Josiah, 2 Kings xxii. 3. Jer. i. 2, 3. Called "the prophet" 23 years later, Jer. xxv. 2. Probably present when Josiah's covenant was made, 2 Kings xxiii. 2. Jer. iii.—xi. a Divine comment on the sentence pronounced, 2 Kings xxv. 26. 27. Jer. xiii.—xx. xxii. xxvi. xxxv.—vi. mostly belong to reign of Jehoahaz and his successors, *v.* 37. 2 Kings xxiv. 1. Jer. xxxix.—xliv. an inspired comment on 2 Kings xxv. 1. 8. 17. 27, which is supposed to be known to the reader, Jer. xxxix. 9. 14. Jer. lii. evidently independent of 2 Kings xxiv. xxv., *ib.* Jer. lii. 12. 15. 20. 25. 28—30. 31. Not written by Jeremiah, Jer. li. 64. The broken Sabbaths, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 21. 22. Jer. xvii. 21. Prophesied for 40 years of probation to Judah: his life known intimately, but not his end: Rabbinical tradition, Vol. v. Part 2. p. vii. Full of the language and spirit of Deuteronomy, which book some have absurdly ascribed to him, pp. vii. viii. Jer. vii. 22. A second Moses, Jer. i. 1. 6. 11, 12, 13. Indirect references to the Pentateuch, Jer. ii. 19. 25. 34; iii. 1. iv. 4; v. 15. 19. 23. 28. 31; vi. 2; vii. 18. 19; ix. 16; x. 17. 18; xi. 2—5; xvi. 6; xxi. 8; xxxi. 5. 19; xlviii. 45. 46. His predictions against heathen nations and other passages reproduced with changes from Isaiah, whose prophecies he thus authenticates, Vol. v. Part 2. pp. viii. ix. Jer. x. p. 26; xxi. 13; xxxi. 5; xlvii. 10. 27; xlviii. 5; xlviii. p. 112; *vv.* 28. 29, &c., 43; i. p. 121; *vv.* 2, &c. His general tendency to build upon his predecessors, Jer. xlix. p. 116. Case of Obadiah considered, p. ix, note 2. Jer. xxxviii. 22; xlix. 7. 9. His work a tessellated pavement, p. ix. His study of earlier Scriptures an example to us, *ib.* Jeremiah as a suffering prophet (πολυπαθὴς, συμπαθὴς, p. ix, note 6), eminently a typical adumbration of the Man of Sorrows, *Christus patiens*, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 152. Jer. xi. 16. 19. 21; xviii. 18; xx. 2. 10; xxxvii. 16; xxxviii. 6. 13. The type fails just where the Antitype excels, Jer. xi. 20; xviii. 21; xx. 14—18. In this subordinate sense only (Jer. xx. 14—18), Ps. lxxix. and Isa. liii. may possibly apply to Jeremiah's history, Vol. v. Part 2. pp. ix, x. Hence the Lamentations read by the Church in the Holy Week, p. x. Jer. xi. 16. His works an autobiography, Vol. v. Part 2. p. x. Jer. xxxvi. 5; xxxvii. 14. 16. Summary of his prophetic work (*Pusey*), Jer. i. 18. His candour, Jer. xxvi. 8. His prophecy of the fate of Pharaoh-Hophra *no vaticinium post eventum*, Jer. xlv. 30. His tender and affectionate spirit, Vol. v. Part 2. p. xi. He and Baruch examples to Christ's ministers in these evil days, p. xi. A touch-stone to the people, Jer. vi. 27. Brightest prophecies of Christ in the darkest times of his country and himself, p. xii. Jer. xxxii. p. 78; xxxiii. 1; xlv. 27; xlix. 19. His grace, perseverance, and compassion, p. xi. Jer. iv. 19. His prophecies against Babylon, &c., typical of the last times, p. xiii. His prophecies stand not in chronological order, like Ezekiel's, but in logical order of their subject matter, pp. xiii, xiv, 46. Their harmonious inner symmetry, p. 28. Jer. xvii. 18; xxvi. 1; xxxv. 1; xxxvi. p. 88; xlv. 1. A series of commissions, Jer. xvii. 18. Those on the heathen why placed separately by themselves, p. xiv. Jer. xxv. 13; xlv. p. 108. His style mainly animated oratorical prose, p. xiv, with joyful outbursts of poetic ecstasies, Jer. xxx. p. 67. Preeminently the prophet of the sorrowful affections, even more than Euripides, p. xv. Jer. viii. 17. 18; ix. 1; xiii. 17; xxii. 29. "Goes off at a word," Jer. x. p. 25. His strong emotions cause him to lean on mechanical helps, p. xv: e.g. on alphabetical stanzas and ideal symbolisms, *ib.* Jer. xxv. 26; xxxi. 38, 39; i. 21. No prevaricator, Jer. xxxviii. 25—27. His writings afford an ingenuous view of his infirmities, Jer. xv. 18. 19; xviii. 21; xx. 14—18, as none others do, and so gain the more credence, Jer. xv. 15. The Septuagint version of this book a loose, inaccurate paraphrase and epitome (see *Septuagint*), Vol. v. Part 2. pp. xv—xvii. List of commentators upon Jeremiah, p. xvii. Ezekiel in Babylonia echoes Jeremiah's voice, Jer. i. 13; iii. 7. 12. 16; xv. 1; xiii. 3; xxxi. 5. 6. 29. 38, 39; xliii. 13; xlv. p. 108; xlviii. p. 112; i. 21. The prophecy looks onward from the first to the second capture of Jerusalem, Jer. vi. 6. "The days come" in Jeremiah a term referring to Christ's Advent, Jer. ix. 23. Authenticity and coherence of Jer. x. 1—16, maintained, as imitated from Isaiah, p. 25. Jer. x. 3. 12—16. 18. His journey to Euphrates a real visible act of obedience, Jer. xiii. 4. Forbidden to marry in troublous times, Jer. xvi. 2. His warnings to be repeated to several kings, Jer. xvii. 20; xix. 3; xxii. 2. Constrained by inspiration to speak against his own will, Jer. xx. 7. Silent testimony to his inspiration, Jer. xxi. 1; xxxix. 5. Like Job, purified by suffering, Jer. xx. 14—18; xlv. 5. His boldness at a later period, Jer. xxi. 4; xxii. 29; xxvi. 22, 23; xxviii. p. 64; v. 2; xxxvi. p. 85. His sudden and lively change of pronouns, Jer. xxii. 14; xxix. 19. His prophecy of Christ's Advent, Jer. xxiii. p. 50. Epistle for Sunday next before Advent: its full teaching vindicated, *vv.* 5—8. The message concerning the surrounding nations given for his comfort early in Jehoiakim's reign, delivered to the ambassadors in Zedekiah's, Jer. xxvii. 1. Abbreviated form of his name why used, Jer. xxviii. p. 64. Proofs to that generation of the truth of his mission, Jer. xxviii. 2; xxxvii. 17. Church Lessons taken from this book, Jer. xxi. p. 70; xxxi. 15—17. Prophecy of Christ's mysterious Incarnation, Jer. xxi. 22. What early prophecies were reduced to writing by Baruch, Jer. xxxvi. pp. 88, 89. Jeremiah imprisoned or restrained, *v.* 5. Why he left Jerusalem, Jer. xxxvii. 12. Jericho, "the city of palm-trees," Deut. xxxiv. 3. Josh. iv. 19. Judg. i. 16; iii. 13. Its orthography, meaning, and site: a type of the city of this world, Josh. ii. 1. Judg. i. 16. 2 Kings ii. 4. 20—22. Zech. ix. 14. Its mountain region, Josh. ii. 22. Its miraculous capture considered. The occasion adequate, the spiritual lesson most instructive, Vol. ii. Part 1. pp. 17—19. Test of the Israelite's faith (Josh. vi. 20) and obedience not incredible, Josh. vi. 3. Its fortifications only forbidden to be built, Josh. vi. 26. Mystical meaning of the prohibition, *ib.* Job xv. 28. Hiel built Jericho by Ahab's order in a spirit of defiance, 1 Kings xvi. 34. Water of Jericho, Josh. xvi. 1. 2 Kings ii. 19. The city saw the fall of the Hebrew monarchy, Jer. xxxix. 5. Jeroboam, (1) his name prophetic, 1 Kings xi. 26. Eccles. iv. 16. His tribe (Ephraim, *v.* 28; xii. 25) an encouragement to his ambitious views, as also his ancestor Joseph's fortunes in Egypt, *ib.* Uses ill means to gain what God had designed for him, *v.* 37. The "wise child," Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 86. Eccles. iii. 13—16; vi. 8. His schism wilful, 1 Kings xii. 27; a deliberate preference of worldly policy to God's will, *v.* 28. Eccles. x. 8; Hos. v. 5. His worship eclectic, Amos iv. 5: a parody of that in the Pentateuch, borrowed at once from Egypt, and from Aaron's bad example; the true God was to be worshipped under the form he chose, 1 Kings xii. 28. Himself assumes priestly functions, *v.* 33, takes for priests other than Levites, *v.* 31, and changes Feast of Tabernacles to suit the more northern climate, *v.* 32. The first royal Erastian, Amos vii. 13. Many brave confessors of the truth in his days, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 88. Eccles. v. 8. His eternal stigma, 1 Kings xii. 28. His worshipping of the calves an alleged reformation, Hos. xiii. 2. The altar he set up at Bethel doomed to be smitten, Amos ix. 1. His penitence when his hand was restored little more than policy, 1 Kings xiii. 7. Hardens his heart, like Pharaoh, after warning, *v.* 33. Had no faith in his own calves, 1 Kings xiv. 2. Stricken by his great defeat, 2 Chr. xiii. 20. No joy to his people, Eccles. iv. 16. His long reign and dishonoured memory foreseen by Solomon, Eccles. viii. 10. 11. (2) Jeroboam II., contemporary of Hosea and Amos, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xxix. 1. 39. Himself died in peace, Amos vii. 9. Jerome, S., his circumstances in A.D. 410, Vol. v. Part 1. p. i. Wrote in Palestine, Isa. lx. 10. His principles of interpretation, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. viii. His Hebrew teacher, *Pr.* xxx. p. 65. Cited, Vol. i. Part 1. *Pref.* p. xi, note 10. Gen. i. 2; vi. 3. 14; xii. 8; xiii. 18; xiv. 14. 18, 19; xvii. 10. 11. 15. 18; xviii. 6; xxii. 4; xxiv. 2. 3. 43. 63; xxvii. 15. 17; xxviii. 2; xxxi. 47; xxxii. 28; xxxvi. 34; xxxvii. 28; xli. 2; xlvii. 22; xlviii. 22; xlix. 4. 11. 21; i. 10. Vol. i. Part 1. p. 248. Ex. xiv. 2. xv. 25. 27; xix. 11. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 1. Lev. xxi. 10; xxiii. 17. Num. xiii. 23; xx. 1; xxiii. 1. 9. 14. 20. 22. 41; 42. 43. Deut. xi. 14; xxi. 11. 23; xxiv. 6. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xii, and note 1. Josh. ii. 18; iv. 19; vi. 4; xv. 59; xix. 35. 49; xxi. 18. Vol. ii. Part 1. pp. 76. 91. Judg. iv. 4; xi. 40; xiv. 9; xvi. 19. 30; p. 158, note 1; p. 160. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. vii, note 1; p. viii, note 2; p. xiv, note 1. 1 Sam.

- xix. 13; xxxi. 4. 2 Sam. v. 1; vi. 6. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xi. 1 Kings i. 2, 3; iii. 16—27; xiv. 21, 24; xv. 13. 2 Kings xiii. 20; xviii. 2; xx. 11. 1 Chr. iv. 23. 2 Chr. xx. 26; xxxvi. 8. 22. Vol. iii. pp. 295, 299, *note* 11. Ezra i. 1; vii. 6. Vol. iii. p. 325. Neh. i. 5; ii. 11; iii. 1. 2; ix. 23; xix. 25. v. 1; vii. 9. Job i. 5; ii. 11; iii. 1. 2; ix. 23; xix. 25. 26; xxviii. 1; xxxii. p. 71; xl. 15. 16. Vol. iv. Part 2. pp. v. vi. *note* 2; ix. *note* 14; xii. and *note* 8; xiii. *note* 11; 18. ii. p. 3; iii. p. 5; v. p. 7; xx. p. 26; xxii. p. 28; vv. 22. 23. 24. 31; xxiii. p. 32; xxiv. p. 33; v. 7; xxix. 5. 9; xxx. 5. 7; xxxi. p. 42; xxxv. 15; xxxvii. 7; xli. p. 61; v. 1; xlv. p. 66; xlv. p. 68; v. 2. 5. 9. 10. 17; xlvii. 3; xlviii. p. 73; v. 2. 5. 7; lxix. 22; lxxii. p. 112; lxxxv. p. 135; lxxxviii. p. 139; xevi. p. 152; eii. 6; eix. p. 174; ex. 7; exlii. 7. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xi. Prov. i. 6; ii. 17; iii. 18. 19; v. 3. 15. 19; ix. 17. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 71, *note* 2. Eccles. i. 1. 6, 7; ii. 4. 5; iii. 1; iv. 10. 11. 12; vii. 10. 16; ix. 7; x. 2; xii. 4. 5. 11. 12. 13. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 123, *note* 3. p. 124; p. 127, *note* 1. Cant. i. 2. 3. 6; iii. 10; v. 10; viii. 5. Vol. v. Part 1. pp. xii; xv, *note* 11; xvi. Isa. i. 1. 9. 26; i. 3. 22; iv. 5; vi. 1; vii. 12. 13. 15; viii. 3. 6; ix. 6; x. 32; xi. 6—9. 11. 12; xiii. 22; xiv. 21. 24. 29; xv. p. 46; v. 8; xvi. 1; xxi. 12; xxii. 1. 8—11. 25; xxiii. 1. 18; xxv. 6; xxvi. 19; xxvii. 13; xxviii. 9. 14. 28; xxix. 3. 11. 17. 23; xxx. p. 89; xxxi. 9; xxxii. 1. 2. 4. 14. 20; xxxiii. 14. 16; xxxv. 1. 5. 6. 8; xl. p. 114; rr. 6. 9. 31; xli. 2. 15; xlii. 3; xliii. 28; xlv. 1. 11. 25; xlviii. 1. 3. 16. 21; lii. 11. 13. 15; liii. 1. 4. 5. 8. 11; liv. 1. 13; lvi. 3. 10; lviii. 12; lix. 6. 20; lx. 1. 4. 6. 7. 10. 17. 19—22; lxi. 1. 5; lxii. 2. 3. 5. 10; lxiii. 1—18; lxiv. 10. 11; lxv. 3. 15. 18. 20. 22. 25; lxvi. 3. 5. 6. 7—9. 19. 20. 21. 23. 24. Vol. v. Part 2. pp. x. *note* 2; xii. *note* 10; xiv. *note* 3; xv. *note* 5. Jer. i. 1. 5. 11. 12. 14; ii. 32. 36; iii. 1. 2. 4. 7. 14. 15. 18; iv. 2. 6. 18. 23; v. p. 12; vi. 1. 4. 16. 20. 29; vii. 4. 8. 18; ix. 25. 26; x. 3. 4; xi. 16. 19; xiii. 1. 11; xiv. 1; xvii. 2; xviii. 14; x. 2; xxii. 11; xxiii. 4. 5; xxv. 26; xxvi. 18; xxxi. 5. 6. 8. 10. 12. 15—17. 22. 31. 35—37. 38. 39; xxxii. 44; xxxiii. 18—22; xlviii. 22. Ezek. ii. 1; iii. 23; iv. 13; v. 10; vi. 2. 14; vii. 26; viii. 14; ix. 4. 11; xi. 18. 22. 23; xii. 2; xiii. 17. 20; xvi. 4. 31. 53. 63; xvii. 23; xx. 3. 25. 40; xxi. 21. 26; xxiv. 6. 7. 11. 26. 27; xxv. 10. 14; xxvii. 11; xxviii. p. 221; xxix. 18. 21; xxx. 5; xxxii. 14. 19; xxxiv. 4. 6. 13. 14. 17. 18. 23; xxxv. 11; xxxvi. 28; xxxvii. 12. 23. 26; xxxviii. p. 246; v. 2. 8. 20. 21; xxxix. 9; xlv. 1. *Retrospect*, pp. 271. 275. 278. 279. *notes* 1. 3. 5. 6. 7; 281, *note* 5; 282, *notes* 2. 4. 5; 284, *notes* 3. 5. 6; 286, *notes* 2 and 7; 287, *notes* 11 and 12. Vol. vi. Part 1. *Introd.* pp. v; xii, *note* 4; xiii, *note* 8; xviii, *note* 15; xix. *note* 5. Dan. i. 2. 4; ii. p. 3; v. 4. 18. 31. 38. 39. 41. 45; iii. p. 10; v. 1. 12. 23. 25; iv. 13. 15. 19. 27. 31; v. 1. 29. 31; vi. 7. 10. 12; vii. p. 29; v. 2. 6. 7. 8. 25; viii. 9. 10. 11. 14. 16; ix. 3. 15. 21—27; x. 13; xi. 2. 3. 5. 6. 7. 8. 10. 11. 13. 14. 15. 18. 19. 20. 21. 25. 27. 31; xii. 3. 4. Hos. i. 1. 2. 3. 11; ii. 15. 16. 19. 21. 22; iii. 5; iv. 15; v. 1. 12; vi. 2. 11; vii. 8; ix. 13. 15; x. 1. 5; xii. 3. 4. 12; xiii. 14. Joel i. 4. 9; ii. 1. 23; iii. 2. 8. 13. 18. 21. Amos i. 1. 3. 6. 12; ii. 1. 6. 13; iii. 7. 12; iv. 3; v. 10; vii. 12. 13; viii. 9. 11; ix. 1. 14. 15. Obad. p. 57; v. 1. 12. 19. 20. 21. Jonah i. 1. 3. 5. 9. 17; iv. 7. Mic. i. 1; ii. 13; iv. 8. 12. 13; v. 3. 5. 8. 10—11; vii. 8. Nah. p. 87. ch. i. 1. 14. 15, ii. 8. 9. 12; iii. 17. Hab. p. 95. ch. i. 7; iii. 1. 2. 16. Zeph. i. 4. 10; ii. 6. 7. 11; iii. 8. 13. Hagg. i. 1; ii. 6. 7. Zech. i. 8—17. 18. 20; ii. 1. 2. 12; iii. 1. 3. 8. 9; v. 6. 11; vi. 13; viii. 3. 4. 5. 6. 20—22. 23; ix. 1. 8. 11. 13. 15; x. 6. 11. 12; xi. 1. 2. 8. 15. 17; xii. 2. 7. 9. 10. 11. 13; xiii. 1. 3; xiv. 5. 8. 12. 17. 20. Mal. p. 157. ch. ii. 13; iv. 5. 6.
- Jeremiaster, the name explained, 1 Sam. i. 1, *note* 1. Cited, 1 Sam. vii. 2; xii. 11; xiii. 9; xv. 12. 2 Sam. iii. 5; vii. 7. 14; xxi. 19. 1 Kings vii. 18; xiii. 2. 1 Chr. ii. 9. 2 Chr. iii. 1; vii. 7; xxiv. 7.
- Jerusalem, meaning of the word and early history of the place, Josh. x. 3. Its topography, Zeph. i. 10. Lower than the hills around, Zech. xiv. 10. Why the Jebusites held it so long, Josh. xv. 63. Judg. i. 8. A spiritual warning, *ib.* Joint occupation of Jebusites and Israel, Judg. i. 21. 1 Sam. xvii. 54. Called Jebus, Judg. xix. 10. 2 Sam. v. 6. Cp. Zech. ix. 7. "The blind and lame" explained to be tutelary idols, 2 Sam. v. 6. David takes up his abode there, v. 9 (see *Zion*). Called "The Holy City" after the walls were dedicated by Nehemiah, Neh. xi. 1 (see *Walls*). Cadytis of Herodotus, 2 Kings xxiii. 33. Trodden down by her foes for 1800 years, Isa. lxiii. 18; lxiv. 11. Its double captivity on the same day of the year, Vol. v. Part 2. p. x. Jer. xxxix. 8. 9. Its sentence to be twice burnt fulfilled, Ezek. xv. 6. Duration of Nebuchadnezzar's siege considered, Ezek. iv. 8. Thrice assaulted by the Chaldeans, Ezek. xxi. 14. Cp. Jer. xlvii. 1. Taken seventeen times, but only once by means of
- a trench, Amos ii. 5. Horrors of the Roman siege, Zech. xi. 9. How a burdensome stone to her foes, Zech. xii. 3. The ban upon her how fulfilled, Mal. iv. 6.
- Jeshimon (i. e. wilderness), Num. xxi. 20. 1 Sam. xxiii. 19. *Beth-jeshimoth*, Josh. xii. 3; xiii. 20.
- Jeshua (nearer than *Joshua* to *Jesus*), son of Jozadak (or Josedech, Hagg. i. 1, or Jehozadak, 1 Chr. vi. 15), the High Priest, was jointly with Zerubbabel a type of Christ and a saviour of the Jews, Ezra ii. 2; iii. 2. Hagg. i. 1. Zech. iii. 3. 4. Zechariah's language respecting them both, *ib.* Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xviii. xx. Represents the Hebrew nation in spiritual things, Zech. iii. p. 126; ch. iv. 6. A typical man, Zech. iii. 8. As such, justified, though unclean, *er.* 2. 4. 5. When the ecclesiastical, when the civil power, should take precedence, Ezra iii. 2. His line, Neh. xii. 9. His unworthy descendants, Ezra x. 18. Crowns or diadems set on his head to prefigure Christ's glory, Zech. vi. 10—14. The significant names of those who shall wear them, v. 13.
- Jeshurun, the term and passage explained, Deut. xxxii. 15. All the tribes summed up in this one name, and all the blessings concentrated, Deut. xxxiii. 26. *Jesurun*, Isa. xlv. 2.
- Jethlah, Josh. xix. 42.
- Jew, a name of union, when first found, Vol. iii. p. 299. Ezra i. 5. God's witnesses, Isa. xliii. 10. In spite of their sin, they must not be destroyed, Ps. lvii. p. 86; lix. 11: but reserved as witnesses of the Passion, p. 86; Ps. lxx. 25. Marvellous judicial blindness of the Jews in killing Christ, Ps. lxx. 21. 23. The sin which caused their rejection, v. 22. Hos. iii. 4. 5. Zech. p. 121. Their scoffing at Christ, Ps. cix. 13. 14. Their imprecations on themselves fulfilled, Hos. xii. 14. Cast off, Zeph. iii. 7. Why described as a little sister, Cant. viii. 8. Their shame, Ezek. xxxix. 26. Their wanderings, Amos viii. 11. An off-scouring till they return to Christ, Lam. iii. 45. Yet they lay it not to heart, Isa. lvii. 1. Their future return to their own land discussed (see *Restoration*), Cant. viii. 8. Unbelief of the Jews has become a reason for our belief, Isa. liii. 1. Ezek. xxxix. 22, 23.
- Jezebel, a by-word for false doctrine, idolatry, and harlotry, 1 Kings xvi. 31. How moved by Elijah's acts at Carmel, 1 Kings xix. 2. 2 Kings ii. 3. Attempts to overawe Jehu, 2 Kings ix. 31.
- Jezeel, in Judah, Josh. xv. 56. 1 Sam. xxv. 43. Valley of (see *Esdraelon*) described, Josh. xvii. 16. Judg. vi. 33. 2 Sam. ii. 9. The fountain therein, 1 Sam. xxix. 1. 2 Kings ix. 26. A city in Issachar, Josh. xix. 18. 1 Kings iv. 12; xviii. 45. The Windsor of Israel, 1 Kings xxi. 1. Its watch-tower, 2 Kings ix. 17. Its shearing-house, 2 Kings x. 12. Its rulers the instruments both of Ahab's sin and of its punishment, 2 Kings x. 1. Symbolic meaning of the name, Hos. i. 4. 10. 11. Zech. x. 9. Christ, the Divine Jezeel, Hos. ii. 21, 22.
- Jiphthah-el, its significant name and site, Josh. xix. 14. 27.
- Joab, his early history, 2 Sam. ii. 13. His treachery in slaying Abner, 2 Sam. iii. 27. His faith and resignation in war, 2 Sam. x. 11. His unscrupulous ambition, 2 Sam. xi. 16. Personifies Machiavellian shrewdness, and falls its victim, 2 Sam. xiv. 1. 2. 25. His selfishness, 2 Sam. xviii. 11. His politic arrogance, 2 Sam. xix. 5. Displaced by Amasa, 2 Sam. xx. 4, and by Abishai, his own brother, v. 6. Gibeon, the scene of his third murder and of his death, *er.* 8. 10. 1 Kings ii. 28. Yet prospers for the present, v. 23. Unnamed among the worthies, as degraded, 2 Sam. xxiii. 23. Two incidents to his credit recorded only in 1 Chr. x. 6—8, in a spirit of gentleness and charity, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xvii, *note* 2. Conscious of David's hatred, 1 Kings i. 7. His old age of impenitence an aggravation of his sin, 1 Kings ii. 6. The cruel messenger, Prov. xvii. 11.
- Joash, see *Jehoash*.
- Job, "the afflicted one," Job i. 1; xlii. 12. Compared with Christ, Isa. lii. 15; liii. 4. Why specially named by Ezekiel, Ezek. xiv. 14. His disease (see *Leprosy*), Job ii. 7. His wife another Eve, but Job wiser than Adam. Her probable repentance, v. 9. Though his complaints have a spiritual meaning and are typical, yet long affliction had produced some impenitence in one whose views of God's dealings were as yet imperfect, Job iii. 1. Suppression by him of the Divine Name in asking rash questions, v. 20. The argument urged against him, that affliction is due to a man's own sin, though abstractedly true, is false in its personal application, Job iv. 1; v. 6. He is weaned from self-righteousness by sanctified affliction, *er.* 17—26. Tossed by conflicting feelings, and driven to rash speeches, Job vi. 26; xix. 26; xxx. 21, he at first rather fears than loves God, Job ix. 15; x. 13. Where his friends see in God absolute justice in this life, Job can only see absolute power, Job x. 16. Yet shrinks from imputing evil to Him, Job ix. 24; xxi. 16. Had no earthly hope save in death, Job vi. 9; xiv. 13; xvi. 22. Hence may be illustrated the

- grand passage, his epitaph, his last will and testament, Job xix. 23—27. His Michtam, Ps. xvi. p. 19. v. 7. His sense of sin leads him to crave a Mediator, Job ix. 31. 33. 35; xvii. 3. His hope of future life lay dormant, almost bedridden in his soul, till quickened by suffering, Job xix. 26. *Apologia pro seipso*, Job xxvii. 1. His vindication contrasted with S. Paul's, in its lack of humility, Job xxxi. p. 66. Its egotism, *rv.* 5. 7. His pensive, meek silence prepares the way for explanation of the great mystery, *v.* 40. His humiliation and confession of helplessness, Job xl. 4. 14; xlii. 2. God owns His servant (see *Longevity*), *rv.* 7. 9. His daughters spiritually significant, *rv.* 14. 16.
- Job, book of, unique, Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introd.* p. iii. A great patriarchal drama, p. xiv. Job and his friends not Hebrews, nor subject to the Levitical Law, Job xlii. 8, but collaterally connected with Abraham, p. iii, *note* 2. Echo of God conversing with man in Paradise, *ib.* Job v. 23. 24; x. 9; xxviii. 28. Affords a glimpse of the faith and worship of pious Gentiles, p. xiv. A primeval revelation found in the Hebrew canon from the first, p. xvi: cited by inspired Hebrew writers, and bearing an independent testimony to them and the Gospel, pp. xvii, xviii. This book (1) teaches the same doctrines and speaks of the same God as the rest of the Old Testament, and is supplementary to it (not antagonistic, *note* 15), p. iv. Teaches more clearly than the Pentateuch the primitive doctrines of the soul's immortality, the body's resurrection, and the universality of God's love, *ib.* p. xiv. Job xiv. 12—14; xix. 26. (2) Affords evidence of the truth of Christianity, pp. v. xv. Speaking thus early of Christ the Mediator, Job xxxiii. 23, and the Conqueror of death and Satan, seen, as holy men saw him from afar, by the eye of faith, p. vi. Job xix. 25—27. Its reception by the Jews a kiss of peace to the Gentile world, p. vi. Its design in part to solve the perplexing problems of life, *ib.* p. xiv, by showing that evil comes from Satan, not from God who only permits it, p. xv. Job i. 6. His friends, holding it inconsistent with God's justice that the good should suffer as Job did, pronounce him evil, p. vii. This notion refuted by Job, who held that the righteous often suffer in this world, Ps. lxxiii. 15: the enigma solved, *rv.* 16, 17. He had conquered his friends, but not yet overcome Satan, p. viii. Interposition of Elihu (representing the office of God's minister, p. ix. xv.) most interesting and significant, *ib.* His speeches make the book what it is, one of the best manuals for the afflicted. He blames Job for trying to justify himself and for regarding God as his enemy, *ib.* Though possibly a little too severe in his strictures on Job, yet instructs him in the uses of affliction, p. ix. Elihu's argument unanswered by Job, sanctioned and followed up by Jehovah, *ib.* Who speaks in judicial questions, not in reasonings, Job xxviii. 1. God answers Job's self-righteous words and thoughts, Job xxiii. 7; xxvii. 6; xxix. 14; xxxi. 35; xxxii. p. 71; *rv.* 1. 2, that he might be, not a Prometheus (Job vii. 4), nor a Stoic (Job xxxii. p. 71), but a suffering saint, pp. x, xi. Behemoth and Leviathan, in God's speech, designed as emblems of the flesh and Satan, against whom Job had to fight, p. xi. Job xl. 14. 15; xli. 1. The dignity of this speech vindicated from unworthy objections, Job xli. 1. This once seen, and boasting excluded, Job's victory is won, he is accepted by God, acts as priest for his erring friends, Job xlii. 8, and so receives double of what he had lost, p. xii. His children not doubled, since those who had died yet live, *ib.* Job xlii. 13. Job in what particulars a type of Christ, pp. xii, xiii, xv. Job vi. 22; xvi. 10; xvii. 6. 8; xix. 13; xxii. 30; xxvii. 12; xxx. 10; xxxi. 31. 32; xlii. 8. 9. 11. 12. The type and antitype contrasted, Job xxxi. 35. The one self-excusing, the other the source of our justification, p. xiii. Isa. liii. an evangelical comment on this book, *note* 1. This book read in the ancient Church at season of Christ's passion, Job i. 1. Beautiful picture of primitive life and religious belief, p. xiv. The book historical, not an allegory, p. xvi. Job i. 1. 15; xlii. 9. Job recognized as a real person in Scripture, p. xvi. Probably lived in the age of the Exodus, to which event, but to none later, the book seems to refer, *ib.* Its scene, Job i. 1; xl. 23. The book written contemporaneously with, but not before the Pentateuch, p. xix. Not in Solomon's time or later, pp. xvi, xvii. List of passages in Proverbs (Job iii. 21) and in the Psalms (Job iii. 16: which seem the later, Job vii. 17; x. 8. 10. 21; xii. 21; xxx. 24) imitated from Job, pp. xvii—xix, *note* 3. Also by Amos (Job ix. 9), Isaiah (Job ix. 13), Jeremiah (list in Job iii. 3), p. xviii. An adjunct to the Pentateuch, checking the secular notions of the Jews, Job i. 1; xix. 26; xxi. 7. 20. 26. 30, and as such received from the first by the Hebrew Church, p. xix. Some possible references to, and citations from the Pentateuch, Job iv. 17; ix. 7. 8. 13; xviii. 15; xxi. 12. 13; xxii. 7. 16; xxvi. 10. 12; xxvii. 19; xxix. 6; xxxi. 33; xxxiv. 20. 28; xxxvii. 13. Author of the book, why a mystery, pp. xix, xx. Levitical appointments as yet unknown, Job i. 5. 20. Internal marks pointing to Moses, p. xix, *note* 2. Of the many commentators of this most difficult book, Schultens has shed most light on the language, p. xx. Authorized English Translation needs here much correction, *ib.* Declension of modern expositions in regard to spiritual interpretation, *ib.*, *note* 6. List of commentators, ancient and modern, *ib.*, *note* 7. Ancient Theology should be blended with modern philology, p. xx. Doubts thrown on the prologue and epilogue, p. 1. The name Jehovah used therein and once by Job: significance of the fact, Job i. 21. The writer knew much of Egypt, Job iii. 14; viii. 11; ix. 26; xxi. 32, 33; xxxvii. 1; xxxviii. 13; xl. 13. 15. 23; xli. 1. The speech of Elihu no interpolation (see *Elihu*), Job xxxii. pp. 70—72; xxxviii. 1. Jobab, Gen. x. 29.
- Joel, son of Pethuel, the precursor of Ezekiel, to whose pictures Joel supplies cartoons (Joel iii. 2. 21), takes up Hosea's message (Joel iii. 16), who is the prophet of Salvation, by regarding the God of Israel in a panoramic view, as the Judicial Ruler of all nations (Joel i. 15), correcting them by natural (Joel i. 4, &c.) or political sufferings (Joel iii. 8), and leading on to the Great Teacher of Righteousness, and the last conflict and victory of His people, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xii, xiii. 29. Meaning of his name. Subject of his prophecy, reaching from Sennacherib's invasion (Joel ii. 20), and the siege by the Romans (*v.* 31), to the Universal Judgment, p. 29. Joel ii. 1. 3. All seen in an ecstasy, as if already present, Joel ii. 11. Cited by Amos and Isaiah. His date and place in the Canon, p. 29. His characteristic habit of prophetic fore-shortening, Joel i. 9; ii. 3. 31; iii. 13. See *Fore-shortening*.
- Johanan, 2 Kings xxv. 23. See also *Jehoiada*.
- John, S., the Evangelist, as full of warnings as of love, Isa. lxvi. 24.
- John, S., Damascene, cited, Gen. xlvii. 31; xlviii. 14. Deut. xxxi. 9.
- Jokneam, site of, Josh. xii. 22; xix. 11. 1 Kings iv. 12.
- Joktan, Gen. x. 25.
- Joktheel, in Judah, Josh. xv. 38. In Edom, 2 Kings xiv. 7.
- Jonah, the prophet, 2 Kings xiv. 25. His grudging Hebrew spirit, like that of Saul of Tarsus, or of the elder brother in the Gospel, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. 62. Jonah iv. 2. The mourning dove, Jonah i. 1. A type of Christ, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xiv: yet a contrast with Him, Jonah i. 5. 9; iv. 1. His book a rainbow of hope, showing God's mercy even upon cruel and proud Assyria, p. xiv. Its connexion with the preceding books, p. 62. Jonah i. 1. Why a prophecy as well as a history, himself being the writer, p. 62. Jonah another Cain, Jonah i. 3. His own description of his stupid insensibility, *rv.* 4. 5. 6. His confession, *v.* 9. Adequate causes for the miracle wrought on him, whose typical character is vouched for by Christ, *v.* 17. His prayer mainly taken from the Psalms, Jonah ii. 1. His probable date, Jonah iii. 6, 7. Lessons which his history teaches, Jonah iv. 11.
- Jonadab, see *Jehonadab*.
- Jonathan, meaning of, Judg. xviii. 30: (1) Grandson of Manasseh or of Moses (see *Various Reading*), the idolatrous priest of Dan, if not of Micah, *ib.* (2) Son of Saul, the Nathanael of Old Testament, 1 Sam. xiv. 1. His conduct a practical condemnation of his father's, *ib.* Typical of the believing Jew, who strips himself of all for Christ, 1 Sam. xviii. 1—4. 1 Chr. ix. 35—44. Terms of his covenant with David, 1 Sam. xx. 14, 15. Their league and sorrow typical, *v.* 42. 1 Sam. xxiii. 17. "Felix opportunitate mortis," 1 Sam. xxxi. 2. His age when slain, 2 Sam. i. 25.
- Joram, a holy name given to a heathen prince accounted for, 2 Sam. viii. 10. Cp. 1 Chr. xviii. 10. See also *Jehoram*.
- Jordan, plain of (Heb. *ciccar*, or *arabah*), *El Ghor* of the Arabs, described, Gen. xiii. 10; xix. 17. Deut. iii. 17. Josh. xxii. 10. 2 Sam. i. 29; iv. 7; xv. 28. Neh. iii. 22. Hab. iii. 10. Fords of the river, Josh. ii. 7. Its flood, Josh. iii. 15. 1 Chr. xii. 15. Job xl. 23. Ps. lxxiv. 15. Jer. xii. 5; xlix. 19; i. 44. Israel's crossing it, typical of Baptism, especially of Christ's, Josh. iii. 7. 13. 15. Ps. cxiv. 3. The complement of the passage over the Red Sea, as being the entrance into their heavenly inheritance, which they seized with holy violence, Josh. iii. 16. The day of their crossing answers to our Palm Sunday: inferences therefrom, Josh. iv. 19. A spiritual Jordan crossed by Christ, between the Law and the Gospel, Josh. xxii. 10. This, like other of the holiest scenes and subjects, has led to the bitterest strife, Judg. xii. 6.
- Joseph, meaning of his name, Gen. xxx. 24. Two tribes spring from him, yet but twelve tribes in all generally specified, Gen. xxxv. 23. A type of Christ, Gen. xxxvii. 1. 7. 10. 13. 20. 23. 31; xxxix. 1.

- 11; xli. 14. 40. 57; xlii. 7; xliii. 25. 34; xlv. 5; xlv. 5. 27; xlvii. 2. 13. 14. 17. 21; xlix. 22. 23. 24. 26; l. 19. Deut. xxxiii. 16. 17. His coat possibly the priestly robe of the first born, Gen. xxxvii. 3. 31. His brethren's indifference to his sufferings, Amos vi. 6. His descent into the pit symbolical, Zech. ix. 11. His chastity reproduced in Greek stories, Gen. xxxix. 14. His charity, Gen. xl. 14. A voluntary sufferer, Ps. cv. 18. 19. In prison a type of Christ in the grave, Gen. xl. p. 160. His prison like a furnace to metal, Ps. cv. 19. Pharaoh's testimony to him, Gen. xli. 38. His exaltation *cr.* 41. 43, his marriage *v.* 45, and age *v.* 46, typical. His change of name a token of subjection, like that of Daniel, Dan. i. 7. Why he did not send to Jacob in his prosperity, *v.* 53. His strangeness to his brethren not vindictive, Gen. xlii. 7. Their trial, *cr.* 9. 13. 16. 17. 21; xlv. 5. Why he sends for Benjamin, Gen. xlii. 20; xliii. 11. Their reconciliation typical, Hos. xiv. 2. No divider, Gen. xlv. 5. His Egyptian policy wise, not harsh, Gen. xlvii. 13—26. In what sense he bound the princes, Ps. cv. 22; cxlix. 8. His treatment of the priests, Ps. cv. 22. His blessing from Jacob why one of the fullest of all, Gen. xlix. 22, 23. Exceeds in numbers all tribes except Judah, Num. i. 32. Moses' blessing to him bespeaks a nearer view than Jacob's, Deut. xxxiii. 13—17. How separate from his brethren, Gen. xlix. 26. Joseph's prophecy, Gen. l. 24, 25. Why his being put in coffin was an act of faith, *v.* 26. His bones removed, Ex. xliii. 19. His burial place, Josh. xxiv. 32. His tribe made to comprehend all Israel, 2 Sam. xix. 20. Takes Reuben's primogeniture, Ezek. xxxvii. 16. His double portion, Ezek. xlviii. 13.
- J**ehoiad, inclined to exaggerate, Ex. xiv. 6, 7. 1 Kings xi. 42. His spirit, Gen. xxxviii. 6. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introduct.* p. xviii. Gives us Bible history venerated, p. 79, *note* 9. Dared not embrace the Gospel, Judg. i. 24—26. Cited, Gen. ii. 7; *v.* 4; *v.* 2; vii. 1; *x.* 7. 15. 17; xi. 12; xiv. 13. 18—19; xvii. 10. 11. 25; xix. 24. 26; xxii. 2; xxv. 13; xxxvii. 3; xli. 41. 45; xlv. 10; xlv. 6. Ex. i. 8; ii. 2. 3. 5. 10; *v.* 21; xli. 2. 6. 40; *xv.* 20; xvii. 10; xxiii. 16; *xv.* 18; xxvi. p. 29; xxxvii. 4. 6; xxxviii. 15. Lev. xvii. 7; xxiii. 34. 40. Num. ix. 2; xvi. 35; *xx.* 12; xxiv. 24; xxvi. 2; xxxiv. 4. Deut. xii. 6; xiv. 28; xvii. 14; *xx.* 5; xxi. 23; xxiv. 1; xxviii. 56; xxxi. 9. 26. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introduct.* p. xviii. *note* 9. Josh. ii. 1; *iv.* 19; *v.* 9. 12; *vi.* 17. 26; *x.* 14; *xi.* 1. 1. 5. 6. 7; *xix.* 14; xxii. 10. Judg. iii. 15; *iv.* 4. 6; *vi.* 3; viii. 31; *ix.* 7; *x.* 4. 5; *xi.* 40; *xii.* 8; *xiii.* 24; *xv.* 9. 16. 19; *xvi.* 3. 4; *xxi.* 8. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 158. Ruth i. 1. 1 Sam. i. 3. 20; *ii.* 22; *iii.* 1; *v.* 3; *vi.* 19; *vii.* 1. 11; *ix.* 25; *x.* 25; *xii.* 17; *xiii.* 5. 8. 9; *xiv.* 34. 51; *xv.* 9. 11. 33; *xvi.* 11. 16; *xvii.* 55; *xx.* 42; *xxii.* 4. 19; *xxv.* 1. 3. 25; *xxviii.* 11. 12; *xxxi.* 5. 2 Sam. i. 10; *ii.* 13; *iii.* 26. 27; *v.* 6. 24; *vi.* 6. 19; *vii.* 18; *x.* 18; *xii.* 21; *xiv.* 1; *xv.* 7; *xvii.* 23. 25; *xviii.* 9; *xix.* 37; *xxi.* 6; *xxiii.* 13. 15. 16; *xxiv.* 15. 18. 1 Kings i. 9; *iv.* 22. 30. 33; *v.* 1. Vol. iii. pp. 19. 20. 1 Kings vi. 2. 3; viii. 1. 63; *ix.* 13; *x.* 5. 10; *xiii.* 1; *xv.* 2; *xvi.* 31; *xvii.* 1. 12; *xxii.* 24. 38. 2 Kings ii. 8; *iii.* 4; *iv.* 1; *vi.* 25. 28; *xi.* 5. 11; *xiii.* 1. 11. 21; *xv.* 1; *xvi.* 9. 10—15; *xvii.* 6. 21. 28. 30. 41; *xviii.* 13; *xix.* 35; *xx.* 9. 11. 14. 21; *xxi.* 16; *xxii.* 8. 11; *xxiii.* 29. 37; *xiv.* 1; *xv.* 8. 23. 27. 1 Chr. iii. 17; *xxi.* 6; *xxii.* 11; *xxiii.* 6; *xxviii.* 16. 2 Chr. iii. 4; *ix.* 4; *xi.* 20; *xii.* 2. 19; *xvi.* 16. 19; *xxvii.* 22. Vol. iii. p. 299, *note* 11. Ezra i. 1; *ii.* 61; *iv.* 5. 7; *vi.* 3. 4. 10. Neh. ii. 8. 14; *ix.* 28; *x.* 31; *xii.* 11; *xiii.* 28. Esther ii. 7; *iii.* 1. 2. 4; *v.* 11; *ix.* 26. Job xxviii. 1. 2. Ps. lxxii. 10. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 81. Eccles. ii. 5. Cant. vi. 11. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xviii. Isa. xlii. 20; *xiv.* 1; *xvii.* 5; *xix.* 16. 17. 19; *xli.* 13; *xxiii.* 1; *xxxvii.* 36; *xliii.* 11; *xlv.* 26. 28; *lx.* 7; *lxi.* 3; *lxvi.* 6. Jer. xli. 1; *xlii.* 19; *xliii.* 12; *xxxv.* 11; *xl.* 16; *xliii.* 13; *xlvii.* 4; *xlviii.* p. 112; *xlix.* p. 116; *v.* 22. Lam. p. 138. Ezek. iv. 2; *v.* 12; *vi.* 15; *xii.* 13; *xxv.* 2; *xxvi.* p. 215; *xxvii.* 17; *xxviii.* 2; *xxix.* 13; *xxx.* 5; *xxxiii.* p. 231. Vol. vi. Part 1. pp. xiii. *note* 14; *xvi.* *note* 3; *xviii.* Dan. i. 1; *ii.* 39; *iv.* p. 14; *vi.* 16. 30; *v.* 1; *viii.* 8. 9. 10. 14; *ix.* 23. 24—27; *xi.* 14. 15. 16. 20. 22. 24. 28. 45; *xii.* 7. Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. vii. *note* 1. Joel i. 9; *ii.* 31; *iii.* 3. Amos i. 1; *ii.* 1. Obad. 2. Nah. ii. 1. Zeph. i. 10. 12. Zech. xi. 1, 2.
- J**oshua, or *Jesus*. (1) "First gleams of the glory of that Holy Name," Ex. xvii. 9. Num. xxvii. 18. No accidental coincidence, Deut. xxxi. 3. Josh. i. 1. The two names were identical to the early Church, Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introduct.* p. x. Joshua first called Hoshea, Ex. xvii. 9. His new name had been used by anticipation, Num. xiii. 16. Moses' minister, Josh. i. 1. In what various ways a type of Christ, Ex. xiv. 14; xxxiii. 11. Num. xiv. 10; xxvii. 18; xxvii. 17. Deut. i. 38. Josh. ii. 9; *iii.* 7; *v.* 2; *xiv.* 1; *xix.* 49; *xxiv.* 33. 1 Chr. vii. 27: in His Humanity only, Josh. v. 13. Joshua's ancestry, 1 Chr. vii. 27. His jealousy for Moses, Num. xi. 28. Succeeds Moses by way of indicating the continuance of the Law till Jesus should come, Num. xvii. 15. Why associated with Moses in writing his hymn, Deut. xxxi. 19. His entering into Canaan typical throughout of things spiritual, Josh. iii. 7. 12. Magnified by God, as was his Antitype at the self-same Jordan, Josh. iv. 11. His promptitude, Josh. vi. 12; *x.* 7. Local coincidences with acts of Abraham's life, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. xi. Josh. viii. 9; *xi.* 1. His disinterestedness, Josh. xvi. 5; xvii. 15. Unlike Caleb, takes his inheritance last, and that, as Christ's, a poor one, Josh. xix. 49. (2) A son of Jehozadak, High Priest on the return from captivity, another typical Jesus, 1 Chr. vi. 15. See *Jeshua*. Joshua, book of, enumeration of the miracles told in it, Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introduct.* p. ix. If the history be like any found elsewhere, they must be rejected altogether, or assigned to natural causes, p. x. But it has a twofold character, looking back into the past history of Israel, and forward to the future destiny of the world, p. xi. Its moral as recording God's fulfilling old promises on the self-same spot where they were given, p. xi, which is an earnest of his fulfilment of spiritual promises by Jesus Christ, *ib.* The book is a prophetic representation both of his first and second Advent, *ib.* Josh. iv. 23. Hence the most stupendous miracles abundantly accounted for, p. xii. Yet, though its whole character be thus typical, modern expositors keep Jesus totally out of sight, p. xii, and *note* 4. Detailed analysis of its contents, perpetually referred to the Life and Second Coming of Christ, pp. xiii—xvii. Instruction to be derived from tracing such analogies, p. xvi. Even in regard to the destruction of the Canaanites, this book is an inspired typical Gospel, p. xviii. Josh. viii. 5—7. 12. 29. Written by a contemporary, Josh. v. 1; *vi.* 25, part probably by Joshua, some part by Phinehas (e.g. Josh. xix. 47), p. xix, and *note* 6. Its style midway between the archaisms of the Pentateuch (Josh. ii. 1; xiii. 12) and the later Hebrew, *ib.* Not to be disintegrated into loose fragments, *ib.* List of ancient and modern commentaries, *ib.* Connected (like Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Judges, and Ruth) by a particle with the preceding book, Josh. i. 1. Its many plain references to the Pentateuch confirm the genuineness of the latter, *v.* 3. Josh. v. 11; viii. 32; *xi.* 12; *xiii.* 8; *xvii.* 4; *xx.* p. 63; *xxiii.* 13. Marks of truthfulness, Josh. ii. 5. 6. Minute local knowledge of the writer, Josh. iii. 15; *xv.* p. 48; *xvi.* 2. Writing known at this time, Josh. xviii. 4. Divine arrangement for future events traced in this book, Josh. xxi. 4. 13. Well known in after times, 1 Kings ii. 2. 3; viii. 56. 57.
- J**oshiah, meaning of the name, 2 Kings xvii. 1. Contrasted with his father Manasseh, *v.* 2. Regarded in detail as a type of Christ, especially in suffering, Vol. iii. p. 160. Isa. lvii. 1, 2. Encouraged in his reformation by Jeremiah, 2 Kings xxii. 3. Temple copy of the Law found, *v.* 8: probably the sacred archetype, *v.* 11. 2 Chr. xxxiv. 14. Unable to work a thorough reformation in Judah, *v.* 33. His Passover, how surpassing Hezekiah's, 2 Chr. xxxv. 18. As God's vassal, extended the reformation to the northern kingdom, 2 Kings xxiii. 15. Fulfills a prophecy of 350 years standing, *v.* 17. Duty or policy of upholding Assyria, which had then become weak, *v.* 29. 2 Chr. xxxv. 21. Promise made to him of a peaceful death considered, 2 Kings xxii. 20. His death foretold by Isaiah, and its moral given, 90 years before, Isa. lvii. 1, 2. Mourning for him typical, 2 Kings xxiii. 30. 2 Chr. xxxv. 25. Zech. xii. 11.
- J**otham, king of Judah, no fault noted in him, 2 Chr. xxvii. 8. Joy, holy, the source of strength in the devout soul, and oil to the wheels of our obedience, Neh. viii. 10. Does not indispose us for godly sorrow, Neh. ix. 1.
- J**ubilee, every fiftieth year, immediately following the seventh Sabbatical year, Lev. xxv. 8. First rest, then joy, two sacred years coming together: typical of Christ's rest in the grave and of the joy of His resurrection, *ib.* Also of Evangelical blessings, Ps. lxxxi. p. 129. Isa. lxi. 2. Restitution then made, Ezek. xlvi. 16—18. Redemption how estimated, Lev. xxvii. 18. Its name derived from the sound of the trumpet. Its four characteristics and their Gospel antitypes, Lev. xxv. 10. Teaches lessons of trust, faith, and love; proclaiming God as our common Father, and preparing the way for Christ's coming, and the final restitution of all things, *v.* 54. Referred to in Daniel's seventy weeks, Dan. ix. 24—27.
- J**udah, meaning of the name, Gen. xxix. 35. This patriarch's family history, why related in full, Gen. xxxviii. 1. His sons and their mother why specially named in Christ's genealogy, *cr.* 27—30. Typical character of their actions, *v.* 28. His genealogy, as being Christ's, traced to his own times by the writer of the Chronicles, 1 Chr. ii. 3. With good reason, his tribe receives into it several times persons from other races,

- 1 Chr. ii. 17. 35. 42. 55; iv. 17. His work of reparation, Gen. xlii. 3. Pathos of his speech, Gen. xlii. 5. His grandsons why named before their birth, Gen. xlii. 12. Why he was sent before Jacob, v. 28. Jacob's blessing to him both worldly and spiritual (see *Shiloh*), Gen. xlii. 8. Ps. lx. 7. His blessing by Moses clearly points to the Messiah, Deut. xxxiii. 7. The Lion of Judah, Gen. xlii. 9. His fortunes typical of Christ's life on earth, v. 9. 10. His tribe the royal and most numerous one, Num. i. 26. Josh. xv. 1. Marched foremost in the host, Num. ii. 3. Increase in the second census, Num. xxvi. 19—22. Extent, fruitfulness, and strength of his land, Josh. xv. p. 48. List of his cities disfigured by errors of translation, v. 32. His three several districts, v. 48. As first in presumption, so first in punishment, Judg. xx. 18. His population decreased from David's reign to Rehoboam's, 1 Kings xii. 21. Then increased in Asa's, 2 Chr. xiv. 8, and yet more in Jehoshaphat's reign, 2 Chr. xvii. 16—18. By his connexion with Ahab's family, Judah was nearly given over to idolatry, 2 Kings viii. 28. Yet, with all its sins, this tribe had many good kings, was ever under God's care, and inherited the promises, 2 Chr. xiii. 3. Even regicides set up sons of the royal line, which, though often in danger, never failed, 2 Chr. xxiv. 27.
- Judaism, modern, demonstrated to be false, Ex. xxix. 29. Num. ix. 10. Josh. xxii. pp. 67, 68. In the Synagogue curses are daily imprecated on believers in Christ, Deut. xxviii. 30. Since the nation suffers, after having abandoned idolatry, it can only be for some heinous unrepented sin—the death of Christ. Prayer for their conversion, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 267. Mystery of God's purpose in the matter, Deut. xxix. 29. While they seem to have a great altar, it is useless for want of faith in the One Sacrifice, Josh. xxii. 10. Restoration of the Jews, whether local or purely spiritual, discussed, Deut. xxx. 3. 4. 11—14. 19 (see *Jew; Restoration*). Promised pardon at last, Deut. xxxii. 43.
- Judges (Heb. *pellim*), Job xxxi. 11. Local judges instituted with a view to the settling in Canaan, Deut. xvi. 18. "The judge" equivalent to "the priest," Deut. xvii. 9. 12: or "the ruler," Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 75, note 2. Judg. ii. 16; iii. 10. Ps. cxli. 6. Like the Carthaginian Sufletes (Heb. *shopettim*), Judg. ii. 16. Levitical and priestly judges, 1 Chr. xxvi. 29. 30. 2 Chr. xix. 8—10. Judges are God's viceregents, Ps. lxxxii. 2. 7. Jehoshaphat's circuits of judges, 2 Chr. xix. 5. "Their outward business," 1 Chr. xxvi. 29. Neh. xi. 16.
- Judges, book of, one of the Hebrew "Former Prophets," Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 123; most interesting and instructive, analogous to Acts of the Apostles in New Testament, pp. 75. 123: even in leaving so much unsaid, *ib.* The inspiration of silence (Judg. x. 1). Jael (Judg. v. 6) and Bedan not named at all, *ib.* 1 Sam. xxi. 11. Twelve Judges as twelve Apostles, p. 75, note 2; p. 93. Like the Apocalypse, this is a book of solemn warning against degeneracy within the Church, p. 76. Record of God's love and man's unthankfulness, *ib.* Received by the ancient Jewish Church, p. 91, in David's time, 2 Sam. xi. 21. Analysis of its contents, with typical application throughout, pp. 76-9. As "saviours" the Judges were fore-runners of Christ, p. 77. Judg. ii. 16; iii. 9. In what they did ill they were contrasts to Him, p. 79. The apparent trivialities met with in the book suggest something below the surface, p. 91. No ancient commentator expounded the book except spiritually, and moderns lose much by regarding it only as secular history, pp. 79. 91, 92. 123. We have here a priesthood without zeal, hence the best men, as Gideon and Jephthah, fall into will-worship, p. 80. No development of a religious system, but a gradual deflection from one already known, Judg. ii. 12. Here, too, we have a picture of a State without Religion, and what befalls it, p. 80. The corrupt religion and morality of the last five chapters (which belong to a time not long after the death of Joshua, p. 144; Judg. xviii. 30; xx. 28) arose in each case in one household, and that a Levite's, of Bethlehem, pp. 81, 82. 144. Judg. xvii. 7. Inferences therefrom. Man's worst punishment to be left to himself, p. 144. Judg. xvii. 6. Chronology of the book examined, p. 83. Written (comp. ch. viii. 14) between the loss of the ark (Judg. xviii. 30, 31) and taking of Jerusalem by David (Judg. i. 21), probably by one person, Samuel, of whose merits nothing is said, pp. 83, 84. The reception of such a picture of its manners by the Jewish nation an evidence of its truth and inspiration, p. 84. Facts and words adopted from the Pentateuch and from Joshua, Judg. i. 19. 21. 22; ii. 10; v. 8; vi. 8. 13; xiii. 5; xiv. 24. Repetitions from Joshua, Judg. i. 10—15; ii. 6—10; iii. 3. List of commentators, p. 81.
- Judging the judges, a Jewish proverb, Hos. iv. 4.
- Judgments defined, Ex. xxi. 1. Those of wrath sometimes exercised through the elements, Job xxxvi. 31. God's four sore judgments, Deut. xxxii. 24, 25. Ezek. xiv. 21. Mic. vi. 9. That on the cattle of the Egyptians vindicated, Ex. xii. 29. Such judgments adjust the course of this world, Ex. xi. 5. Eccles. iii. 15. 17; vii. 15. (see *Threatenings*). The general judgment (appointed by God, Mal. iii. 17) at midnight, Ex. xi. 6; xii. 29. Symbolized by the sound of the trumpet, Ex. xix. 16. Enoch's prophecy, Ps. xvi. 13. Christ the Winnower, Prov. xx. 8. 26. Every past work shall be brought into judgment, Eccles. iii. 15; xi. 9. The Judgment will correct all the inequalities of this life, Num. xxxi. 17. Jer. xxvi. 24. The great gathering by Kohleleth, the Gatherer, Eccles. xii. 13. Christ is ever judging the world, Mal. iii. 3. "Judgment" in the sense of "right," Prov. xiii. 23.
- Julian, the apostate Emperor, Isa. liv. 16. His false opinions, Ex. xxii. 28. His attempt to rebuild the Temple, Job xv. 28, wonderfully frustrated, Hag. ii. 9. His fate, Zech. xiv. 12. Cited, Num. xxv. 7. 1 Sam. xxvi. 25. Hos. xi. 1.
- Julius Africanus, cited, 1 Kings xiv. 25.
- Juniper, the, or broom, described, 1 Kings xix. 4. Food of the wretched, Job xxx. 4. Used for fuel, Ps. cxx. 4.
- Junius, with or without Tremellius (see *Tremellius*), cited, Isa. l. 11. Jer. v. 8; vi. 29. Ezek. xiii. 18. Dan. viii. 13. Hos. i. 2. Amos v. 26. Obad. 12. Nah. i. 14. Mal. ii. 16.
- Justice to be tempered with equity and mercy, Eccles. vii. 16.
- Justification, by God's mercy, through faith in Christ, although we are not righteous in ourselves, Ps. cxliii. 2. Zech. iii. 4: by instrumentality of the Word and Sacraments received with faith, Dan. xii. 3. Combined with Sanctification, Hos. x. 12.
- Justin, the historian, cited, Gen. xix. 24. Ex. ii. 2. 1 Kings xvi. 18. Esther i. 14; ii. 21; x. 1. Vol. vi. Part 1. pp. xii, notes 2 and 3; xiii, note 15. Dan. viii. 9; xi. 2. 4. 5. 7. 12. 13. 14. 18. 19. 30.
- Justin Martyr, S., his almost Apostolic power in arguing against Trypho, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxiv. That treatise abounds with expository remarks on Isaiah, Vol. v. Part 1. p. xxi. His view of the Old Testament, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. viii. Cited, Gen. ix. 25; xvii. 10, 11; xviii. 2. 8. Vol. i. Part 1. p. 130. Gen. xxxvii. 3; xlix. 10. Ex. xii. 9; xxxii. 6. Lev. xxvi. 40—45. Deut. viii. 4; x. 19; xiii. 1; xxx. 19; xxxiii. 20. 21. Josh. ii. 1. 18; v. 2. Judg. xi. 40. 1 Sam. xxviii. 11, 12. 1 Kings xi. p. 44; xix. 11, 12. 2 Kings ii. 23. 24; xxi. 16. 1 Chr. xvi. 7; Ezra ix. 4. Ps. xxii. 16; xlv. 6; lxxii. p. 112; xciii. 1; xevi. 10. Prov. viii. 22. Isa. ii. 4; xix. 24, 25; xxvii. 1; xxx. 13; xxxiii. 16; xxxv. 1. 5, 6; xl. 1; xlii. 1. 6, 7. 8. 19; xlv. 23; xlix. 7. 8; li. 3—7; lii. 13—15; liii. 1. 5 (Isa. liii. cited by him seventeen times); liv. 10, 11; lv. 3; lvi. 1, 2; lvii. 10. 12; lviii. 11; lxx. 1, 2. 9; lxxi. 5. Vol. v. Part 2. p. x, note 2. Jer. iii. 18; vii. 22; ix. 25; xi. 19; xxxi. 22. Lam. iv. 20. Ezek. iii. 17; xiv. 14; xxxvi. 12; xxxvii. 12. Dan. ii. 45; iii. 25; vii. 13. Mic. iv. 1. Zech. iii. p. 126; ix. 9. Mal. i. 11; iv. 5.
- Justinian, his pious zeal, Zech. i. 20.
- Juttah, Josh. x. 55.
- Juvenal, cited, Ex. iii. 5. Lev. iv. 2; viii. 3. Num. xxv. 8. Deut. xxviii. 27; xxxi. 9. 2 Sam. ii. 13; xvii. 13. 2 Kings xix. 24. 2 Chr. xvi. 14. Neh. v. 16. Esther i. 1. 22. Job xix. 20. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. x, note 5. Prov. v. 14. Isa. viii. 6. Dan. viii. 5. Hos. vii. 9.
- Kaaba, the, at Mecca, once sacred to Kronos, Isa. lviii. 6.
- Kadzeel, Josh. xv. 21. 2 Sam. xxiii. 20. *Jekabzeel*, Neh. xi. 25.
- Kadesh, site of, Gen. xiv. 7: described as Kadesh-barnea, Num. xiii. 26. Josh. xv. 3. The Israelites' second visit to the place, Num. xx. 1.
- Kadmonites, the, Gen. xv. 19.
- Kalisch, Dr., cited, Gen. xxii. 2; xxx. 41; xxxvii. 3; xlii. 20; xliii. 16. 32. Ex. vi. 16; ix. 12; xii. 6. 15. 37; xiv. 2; xxi. 17. Num. xviii. 18; xxiv. 24.
- Kamus, cited, Mic. i. 16.
- Kanah, the river, Josh. xvi. 8; xvii. 9.
- Kartah, Josh. xxi. 34.
- Kartan, Josh. xxi. 32.
- Kattath, Josh. xix. 15.
- Kay, Dr., cited, Ex. vi. 2, 3. 2 Sam. xxii. 15. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. iv, note 7. p. xiv. Ps. iii. 4; xxxvi. 1; xxxvii. 37; xxxviii. p. 56; xxxix. 6; xlii. 4. 5; xlv. p. 66; xlviii. 7; xlix. 10; lvi. 8; lxxii. p. 112; xevi. p. 152; cii. 9; ccxvii. 2; ccxxi. 2; ccxxii. 16; ccxxiii. 7; cxliii. 12; cxlvii. p. 224; v. 16.
- Keble, J., his poetical version of the Psalms characterized, Ps.

- xlvi. 4. Cited, 1 Kings xix. 9. 18; Ps. xxix. 10; xlv. 4; xlviii. 14; xlix. 14; lviii. 9; lxxii. 2; lxx. 12; lxxviii. 4. 13. 14. 17; lxxii. 6; lxxiii. 4; lxxvi. 10; lxxxi. 3; lxxxiii. 13; lxxxiv. 6; lxxxvii. 7; exviii. 22. 26; exxxiii. 2; cxli. 5. 7. 10; cxlii. 3; cxliv. 11; cxlvii. 14.
- Kedar, of Ishmael, Ps. exx. 5. Isa. xlii. 11; lx. 7. Jer. xlix. 28. Its dark tents of goat's hair, Cant. i. 5.
- Kedemoth, described, Deut. ii. 26. Josh. xiii. 13.
- Kedesh of Naphtali, site of, Josh. ii. 22; xx. 7. Judg. iv. 6. 2 Kings xv. 29.
- Keil, characterized, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xiii, note 1. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxix. Cited, Gen. vii. 8, 9; xii. 13; xlix. 11. Ex. xiii. 18. Lev. viii. 3; xxv. 33. Also *passim* throughout the later books.
- Keilah, 1 Sam. xxiii. 1. 1 Chr. iv. 19. Neh. iii. 17.
- Ken, Bp., cited, Prov. xi. 16. Dan. ix. 23.
- Kenath, 1 Chr. ii. 23.
- Kenites of Midian, the, their location, Gen. xv. 19. As friends of Israel, contrasted with the Amalekites, Num. xxiv. 21. 1 Sam. xv. 6. Their long continuance promised up to the Assyrian captivity, Num. xxiv. 22. United with Judah, as were proselytes and Gentiles with the early Church, Judg. i. 16. 1 Sam. xxvii. 10. 1 Chr. ii. 55. Migrate to the north of Palestine, Judg. iv. 11. Of simple ascetic life (see *Jehonadab*), and teachers of the law, 1 Chr. ii. 55.
- Kenizzite, the, Gen. xv. 19.
- Kennicott, Dr., his Hebrew manuscripts referred to, 1 Sam. vi. 19. 2 Sam. xxii. p. 122; xxiii. 8. 2 Chr. xiii. 2. Job xxvii. 1. Ps. xxii. 16. Eccles. ii. 25. Ezek. xx. 45.
- Kepler, cited, Job xxvi. 7.
- Kerieth, Jer. xlviii. 21. *Kiriath*, Amos ii. 2.
- Keturah, wife of Abraham, a type of wandering members of Christ's Church, Gen. xxv. 4: who thus fail of a full inheritance, *rr.* 5, 6.
- Keziz, valley of, Josh. xviii. 21.
- Kibroth-hataavah, its probable location, Num. xi. 35.
- Kibzaim, Josh. xxi. 22.
- Kidder, Bp., cited, Zech. ix. p. 136.
- Kidron, brook of, 2 Sam. xv. 23. 1 Kings ii. 37. 2 Kings xxiii. 4. Neh. ii. 15. Jer. xxxi. 40. Crossed in their affliction both by David and his Antitype, 2 Sam. xv. 23.
- Kimchi, D., cited, Gen. xxi. 33. Judg. xviii. 30. 1 Sam. xxviii. 6. 2 Sam. xxiii. 8. 1 Kings iii. 4. 2 Kings ix. 25; xxii. 14. 1 Chr. ii. 53; iii. 17; iv. 17; v. 4. Vol. iv. Part 1. p. xix, note 2. Ps. xxxv. 15. Cant. iv. 1. Isa. x. 28—32; xvii. 11; xxvi. 19; xxxvii. 25; xlii. p. 123; xlv. 13; lvii. 1. 2. Jer. xix. 2; xxx. 9; xxxvii. 12; lii. 20. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. vii, note 1. Hos. iii. 4; v. 1; xiii. 1. Joel iii. 2. Obad. 20. Mic. ii. 4. Nah. iii. 17. Mal. ii. 15; iii. 10.
- King, the, bound to punish wickedness and vice, 1 Kings ii. 6. 31. 45. Our duty to him, Eccles. viii. 2. 3; x. 20. In Israel, his setting up controlled, not approved, by God, Deut. xvii. 14. God had willed there should be a king, but not when Israel called for one, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. xi. Hence the people's sin was impatience and ingratitude to God, 1 Sam. viii. 5. Moses' prophetic mention of the contingency no proof of a late date of Deuteronomy, Deut. xvii. 14. Examples of kings given by God in anger, Hos. xiii. 11. The king's duty to transcribe the Law considered, Deut. xvii. 18; xxxi. 9. Abimelech first bore this title in Israel, Judg. ix. 6. A period of public confusion to be succeeded by David's kingdom, Judg. xxi. 25. David the first true monarch, to whom was given the promise of an everlasting kingdom, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. viii. In the book of Proverbs, the king's prerogative is dwelt upon chiefly in the second part, his duties chiefly in the third, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xv. Prov. xvi. 10. The king's garden at Jerusalem, near Sibam, 2 Kings xxv. 4. Neh. ii. 15. His high house, *v.* 25. "The king's mowings," Amos vii. 1.
- King of kings, to Whom the name belongs of right. Borne as a title by the monarchs of Babylon and Persia, Ezra vii. 12. So also "the great King," 2 Kings xviii. 19. Ezek. xxvi. 7. The Medo-Persian king regarded as an impersonification of Deity, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. viii. Dan. vi. 7. 8. "One king" explained, Isa. xxiii. 15. High head-dress of Chaldean kings, Ezek. xxiii. 15.
- Kings of Canaan, their conquest typical of the victory we should gain over our sins, and of Christ's putting all in subjection under Himself, Josh. x. 24. 26.
- Kings, the two books of, are properly one, united with those of Samuel (1 Kings i. 1), and carrying on the reigns of David's descendants continuously, Vol. iii. *Introd.* pp. vii, viii. A superstructure raised on the foundation of Samuel, showing more clearly as we proceed Christ the Prophet, Priest, and King, *ib.* Their own purpose to show the perpetuity of David's royalty, *ib.*, especially contrasted with the revolutions of the more powerful kingdom of Israel, p. ix. Its 19 kings of 7 dynasties in 253 years, with no hope of restoration save in Judah under Christ, contrasted with Judah's 19 of David's house in 387 years; often in peril through its sins, never destroyed: continued after the extinction of Jeconiah's line, and the substitution of Zerubabel's, who brings the Old Testament genealogies into contact with the New Testament in Christ, the Universal King, *ib.* These books also exhibit the development of the Prophetic office in Elijah and Elisha, whose precursor Samuel was, p. x. Hence they enlarge on the reigns of Ahab and his sons, p. x. note 7. 1 Kings xvi. 29. Prophets chiefly sent to Israel, as God's protest against sin was most called for there, p. x. 1 Kings xii. 31. Vol. iii. p. 66. In Judah's worst times they abounded there also, *ib.* The writer of this book lived after B.C. 561, and was probably Jeremiah, p. xi. But some portion must have been earlier, 1 Kings viii. 8. 2 Kings xxv. 27. He does not exaggerate facts, 2 Kings v. 19, nor disguise the failings of saints, 1 Kings xix. 10. 2 Kings xx. 14. Indirectly confirmed, 2 Kings vii. 8: by prophecy fulfilled, 2 Kings xx. 5, 6. Sources of the book, being the public records of the kingdom, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xi, note 11. 1 Kings xi. 41. 2 Kings xvi. 19.
- Kingdom of priests, the term how applicable to the Jewish and Christian Communities, Ex. xix. 6. Lev. xxi. 4.
- Kir, (1) of Moab, meaning and location of, Isa. xv. 1, or *Kir-hareseth*, 2 Kings iii. 25. Isa. xvi. 7. Jer. xlviii. 31. Perhaps the *Misgab* of Jer. xlviii. 1. (2) The river Cyrus, 2 Kings xvi. 9. Isa. xxii. 6. Amos i. 5; ix. 7.
- Kirjathaim, site of, Num. xxxii. 37. Jer. xlviii. 1. Ezek. xxv. 9.
- Kirjath-huzoth, site of, Num. xxii. 39.
- Kirjath-jearim, or *Kirjath-baal*, or *Baal-jehuda*, or *Baalath*, or *Baale*, meaning and site of the town, Josh. ix. 17; xv. 9. 60. Judg. xviii. 12. 2 Sam. vi. 2. 1 Chr. ii. 50. Jer. xxvi. 20. Resting-place of the Ark, 1 Sam. vi. 21. 1 Chr. xiii. 5; xvi. 33. Ps. xevi. 12; cxxxii. 6, for about seventy years, 2 Sam. vi. 3.
- Kirjath-sepher (see *Debir*), i.e. book-town, inferences from its name, Josh. xv. 15.
- Kirms, cited, Dan. iii. p. 9.
- Kishon, river, Judg. iv. 7. 1 Kings xviii. 20. 40.
- Kiss, the, a sign of loving reverence, 1 Sam. x. 1. Ps. ii. 12. Cant. i. 2. An Eastern mode of salutation, 2 Sam. xx. 9. A token of idolatrous worship, 1 Kings xix. 18. Job xxxi. 27.
- Kitto, Dr., cited, Gen. i. 2; xii. 11. Ex. ii. 10. Josh. iii. 15; v. 11. Judg. xvi. 14. 1 Sam. xiii. 9; xix. 13. 2 Sam. v. 6. 1 Kings xxi. 1. 2 Kings ii. 23; iii. 11; ix. 35; xx. 11. 1 Chr. xxii. 11. 2 Chr. ii. 8. Esther i. 1. Vol. iii. p. 377. Job ii. 4; xiv. 10; xix. 23; xxiv. 5. 16; xxix. 3; xxxii. p. 72. Cant. vi. 11. Isa. xlix. 12. Ezek. iv. 12; viii. 10. xiii. 10; xxi. 21.
- Klein, cited, Vol. v. Part 1. p. xix, note 1.
- Kleinert, cited, Mic. ii. 4. Nah. ii. 2. 3. 4; iii. 17; Hab. iii. 14. Zeph. i. 4; iii. 1.
- Klifoth, characterized, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxix. Cited, *passim* in Ezekiel, Daniel, and Zechariah.
- Kneeling at prayer, 1 Kings viii. 22. 2 Chr. vi. 12. Ezra ix. 5. "Sitting" not to be understood strictly, 2 Sam. vii. 18. Bowing the knee an acknowledgment of Divinity, Isa. xlv. 23.
- Knobel, A., cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 75, note 3. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xvi, note 2. Jer. ii. 32; xxxi. 15—17; xlvii. 4. Mic. i. 1.
- Knowledge, especially theological, a daughter of God, Prov. xxi. 29. That of God, full scriptural significance of the term, Ex. vi. 2, 3; vii. 5. Hab. ii. 14. As seen in His judgments, Hab. ii. 14. He is unknown to His evil ministers, 1 Sam. ii. 12. Sometimes the term is limited to a special revelation, 1 Sam. iii. 7.
- Koa, its symbolic meaning, Ezek. xxiii. 23.
- Kothath, the second son of Levi, his family, Num. iii. 27. His descendants appointed to bear the Ark, 1 Chr. v. 5. 22. 26. The priesthood in his family, Josh. xxi. 4. 1 Chr. xviii. 12. Provisionally settled near the future site of the Temple, Josh. xxi. 4.
- Köhler, cited, Isa. xxxiv. 16. Zech. xiv. 6.
- Korah, his lineage and jealousy, Num. xvi. 1. Joined by the neighbouring Reubenites, descendants of the disinherited firstborn, *ib.*, and by deputies from all the people, *v.* 2. The sins of each order discriminated, Ps. cvi. 16. Each kind of sin met with its suitable punishment, Num. xvi. 32. 35. He was not swallowed up with Dathan and Abiram (Ps. cvi. 17) and with his own goods (*v.* 32), but consumed by fire with the 250 representatives of the people (*v.* 35), with whom he went

- up (*rr.* 18, 19) to offer incense, Num. xvi. p. 135; *rr.* 27, 32. His fate a warning against the usurpation by the inferior orders of the ministry of the functions of the higher, *v.* 40. King Uzziah imitates Korah's sin, 2 Chr. xxvi. 16. His children spared, Num. xvi. 32; xxvi. 11. They served in God's house, 1 Chr. ix. 19, as porters and musicians, the tokens of a schism happily headed, *ib.* Ps. xlv. p. 68; lxxxiv. p. 133; *v.* 10. These Korhites were distinguished among the Kohathites, 2 Chr. xx. 19. Ps. xlviii. p. 73; lxxxiv. p. 133. Psalms written by the sons of Korah, Vol. iv. Part 2. pp. 63, 73. As missionaries they follow in the wake of David's, Ps. lxxxvii. p. 138. They were characterized by humility and the love of the Sanctuary, Ps. lxxxiv. p. 133; *v.* 10.
- Koran, the, cited, 1 Kings iv. 33.
- Kranichfeld, cited, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. v, note 3. Dan. i. 1, 5; ii. 2, 5, 44; 2. 12, 14; iv. 16; v. 1; vi. 18; vii. 12, viii. 2, 9.
- Krehl, cited, Isa. lvii. 6.
- Kneper, A., cited, Vol. v. Part 1. pp. 46, 99. Part 2. pp. viii, notes 1, 3 and 5; xv, note 2; xvi, note 5. Jer. i. 6; ii. 19, 25; v. 13, 23; vi. 2, 11; x. 3, 9; xlv. 10; xlvii. 1; xlviii. 4, 5, 43; xlix. 3, 7; 1 p. 121. Lam. p. 139. Obad. p. 57.
- Kurtz, cited, Ex. iii. 1. Hos. i. 2.
- Laban, ruler in his father's house, Gen. xxiv. 29. His covetousness seen at once, *v.* 30. His heterogeneous religion, Gen. xxx. 27; xxxi. 29, 53; xxxii. 10. Changes Jacob's wages, Gen. xxxi. 8. His character grows worse with time, Gen. xxiv. 30; xxxi. 19.
- Lachish, site of, Josh. x. 3. 2 Kings xiv. 19; xviii. 14; xix. 8. 2 Chr. xi. 9. Jer. xxxiv. 7. How the beginning of sin to Zion, Mic. i. 13.
- Lactantius, cited, Lev. vii. 38. 2 Kings ii. 24. Ezra ix. 4. Prov. viii. 30. Dan. vii. 7. Zech. xiii. 3.
- Ladder, Jacob's, how typical of the Incarnation of Christ, Gen. xxviii. 12.
- Laena, C. Popilius, his embassy, Dan. xi. 36.
- Lahmani, Josh. xv. 40.
- Lai-roi, well of, Gen. xvi. 14; xxv. 11.
- Laish (or *Leshem*, Josh. xix. 47), Judg. xviii. 7. Isa. x. 30.
- Lakum, Josh. xix. 33.
- Lamech, of Cain's line, his luxurious life, Gen. iv. 19. His boastful and reckless speech to his wives, *v.* 23. See *Strophical arrangement*.
- Lamentations of Jeremiah, book of, contains some references to Josiah's death, 2 Chr. xxxv. 25. The word used, Ezek. xix. 14. Read by the Church in Holy Week, Vol. v. Part 2. pp. x. 139. Lam. i. 12; iii. p. 145. By the Hebrews during the Fast of the fifth month, pp. x. 138, note 1, 139, and note 4. Most impassioned utterances of Hebrew poetry. Uses of alphabetical arrangement, p. xv. Details of such arrangement in each of the five elegies, *Introd.* p. 138. Ch. v. not alphabetical, *ib.* Why, Lam. v. pp. 149, 150. Title of the book. All authorities till Dr. Hardt, A.D. 1712, regarded the book as Jeremiah's, whose style it closely resembles, pp. 138, note 4, 139. Lam. i. 1. Commentators, p. 139. A symbolical prelude to the sufferings of Christ, whose type Jeremiah was, *ib.* Lam. iii. p. 145. A revised English Lectionary might admit portions of this book, of Ruth, and Canticles, for proper Lessons, p. 139, note 4. References to the Pentateuch, Lam. i. 9, 10; iv. 10. Peculiar use of the Divine names accounted for, Lam. i. 14; ii. 18. Imitated by Ezekiel, *v.* 14. A Passion Prayer, Lam. iii. 5, 7, 8, &c. 30, 55—66. Groundless objections to Jeremiah's authorship considered, Lam. iii. 27; iv. 20; v. 7. Calmer tone of last chapter, Lam. v. p. 150.
- Lamp, hung over the head in an Oriental tent or bed, Job xviii. 6; xxix. 3.
- Land, the, "catheti its inhabitants," the term explained, Num. xiii. 32.
- Lane's *Modern Egypt*, cited, Isa. xlix. 22. Jer. viii. 17; ix. 17; xxxvii. 21. Ezek. ix. 2; xxiii. 40. Amos v. 19.
- Lap, of a garment, Neh. v. 13. Prov. xvi. 33; xvii. 23; xxi. 14. Isa. xlix. 22. Jer. xxiii. 18.
- Lapping with the tongue, a token of earnest zeal, Judg. vii. 5. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 114.
- Lasha, Gen. x. 19.
- Lateran, the third Council of (A.D. 1179), Ezek. xvii. 15.
- Latimer, Bp., his valiant dying speech, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 115. Jer. xlv. 5.
- Latter (or *last*, Job xix. 25) days signify the times of Messiah, Gen. xlix. 1. Num. xxv. 14. Deut. v. 16. Isa. ii. 2. Jer. xxx. 24; xlviii. 47. Dan. ii. 28. Mic. iv. 1: even by the rule of Hebrew expositors, Hos. iii. 5. The latter end, Isa. xlii. 22. Time of the end, Hab. ii. 3. Characterized alike by the overflow of iniquity and by the spread of the Gospel, Isa. lix. 19. Shall be especially Theocratic, Ezek. xiv. 21.
- Laud, Archbp., cited, Ps. cxxii. 5. Mal. i. 11.
- Laver, the, of brass, described: its use and of what emblematical, Ex. xxx. 18, 19. 1 Kings vii. 25. 2 Kings xvi. 17. 2 Chr. iv. 3. Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 276, 7, note 12. Held a similar position in the Tabernacle to the font in our Churches, Ex. xxxviii. 8. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 277, note 12. The priests washing their feet therein when approaching the Holy Place, a symbolical act, Eccles. v. 1. The only vessel left uncovered when carried about: of what this was typical, Num. iv. 14. The molten sea substituted for it in Solomon's Temple, 1 Kings vii. 23. Its construction criticized, *ib.* Its size, *v.* 26. The twelve oxen which bore it typified, *v.* 25. 2 Chr. iv. 3. The laver for washing persons one, as Baptism is one; those for washing the sacrifices ten. Their bases, wheels, and ornaments minutely described, as all typical of spiritual things, 1 Kings vii. 27—39. Ahaz removes the sea from its place, 2 Kings xvi. 17. Taken (with the twelve bulls underneath) to Babylon, to return no more, Jer. lii. 17, 20.
- Law, the Levitical, imperfect, Num. xix. 7. Wholly typical, Josh. xxii. 28. Showing the promises afar off, Num. xxvii. 12. Spiritual things foreshadowed in its letter, Deut. xxi. 23; xxii. 1; xxv. 4. By a prophetic feeling, the curses of the Law were alone expressed, its blessings being reserved for the Gospel, Deut. xxvii. 4. See *Ebal*. The Law cannot bring us to Canaan, but Joshua or Jesus can, Deut. xxxi. 3; xxxii. 49; xxxiv. 1. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xi. Josh. i. 1; v. 2; xi. 23. See *Preparatory*.
- Laws of King Edgar, cited, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 3.
- Laws of Persia might not be changed when once enrolled, Esther i. 19; iii. 7. Dan. vi. 8: but might be counteracted, Esther viii. 11.
- Layard, H., his discoveries at Nineveh, Nah. iii. 18. Cited, Judg. xvi. 23. 2 Kings x. 32; xix. 8, 37. Job xxxix. 25. Dan. iii. 5; iv. 30; v. 5; vii. 4; viii. 2. Nah. ii. 4, 6, 12.
- Lead used to liquify silver, Jer. vi. 29.
- Leah, a type of the Jewish synagogue, Gen. xxix. 30; xxx. 14. Her significant name, Gen. xxix. 17. Her moral decline: "a troop cometh," Gen. xxx. 11. Receives God's gifts as they had been wages, *v.* 17—20. Clear of idolatry, as the Synagogue has been since Christ came, Gen. xxxi. 33. Leah usurping the place of the true wife, Rachel, Prov. xxx. 23.
- Lebanon, mount of, visible from Shittim, Josh. i. 4. A type of the Gentile world (Isa. lx. 13), as Sharron and Carmel of the Jewish, Cant. iv. 8. Isa. xxix. 17; xxxv. 1. Jer. xxii. 6, 20. Zech. x. 10; xi. 1, 2. Its cedars, 1 Kings v. 6. Isa. xl. 16. Ezek. xvii. 3: typical of Christ, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 193. Hewn down by the Assyrians, Isa. xxxiii. 9; xxxvii. 24. Hab. ii. 17. Zeph. ii. 14. Its snow, Jer. xviii. 14. The mount fortified by Solomon, Cant. vii. 4. His house of the forest of Lebanon at Jerusalem, 1 Kings vii. 2—6. 2 Chr. ix. 16. Jer. xxii. 23.
- Lebmoth, Josh. xv. 32.
- Le Blanc, cited, Ps. lxxxix. 3; cxxxix. 9.
- Lebonah, Judg. xxi. 19.
- Le Clerc (or *Clericus*), cited, Judg. xx. 16. 1 Sam. vi. 19. Ezra vi. 14. Neh. iii. 7. Jer. xxxi. 22.
- Lee, S., Professor, cited, Vol. iv. Part 1. p. xx. Job i. 20; iii. 8; iv. 15, 17; vi. 27; vii. 1; viii. 11; ix. 9; xiii. 15; xiv. 22; xvi. 20; xvii. 3; xix. 25, 26; xxiv. 3; xxvi. 13; xxviii. 28; xxxi. 33; xxxvii. 13, 18; xxxviii. 9; xxxix. 19; xl. 15, 24.
- Lee, W., Archbp., cited, Josh. v. 13; x. 13. 1 Sam. ii. 1. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xii, note 4. 1 Kings xi. 41. 1 Chr. vi. 77; ix. 1; xxix. 29. 2 Chr. xii. 15. Ezra i. 1. Vol. iii. p. 364, note 5. Job i. 1. Dan. v. 1. Hos. xi. 1.
- Lees, the, settling on, indicates carnal security and selfishness, Zeph. i. 12.
- Left hand, the, a Scripture expression for the north, Gen. xiv. 15. Isa. liv. 3: the right hand indicating the south, 2 Kings xxiii. 13. Isa. liv. 3: perhaps Ezek. x. 3. The origin of this arrangement explained, Job xxiii. 8, 9.
- Lehabim (i. e. Libyans), Gen. x. 13.
- Lehi, Judg. x. 9.
- Leighton, Archb., cited, Ps. xxxii. 6; xxxiv. 4. Isa. xxviii. 5; xxx. 18; lx. 1.
- Lengerke, cited, Dan. ii. 5; viii. 14; ix. 21; xi. 17, 37, 45.
- Le Normant, cited, Dan. iii. 1; iv. 16; v. 1.
- Leo, S., cited, Lev. i. 2; iv. 12. Ps. xxiv. 7. Dan. viii. 9.
- Leopard, the, for swiftness emblematical of the third empire, Dan. vii. 6.
- Leprosy, Ex. iv. 6. Job's the elephantiasis, Job ii. 7. Its symptoms, Job vii. 5; xviii. 13; xxx. 18, 30. All disease is the fruit

- of sin, which is typified in leprosy (Job ii. 7. Isa. vi. 1. Jer. xxxi. p. 78), and its different degrees, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 37. 2 Kings v. 1. Marcion's evils in respect to Christ's healing the leper, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 37. Not so regarded by the heathen, 2 Kings v. 1. Lev. xiii. a Divine directory to the Church in dealing with sin, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 38. Moses describes the white leprosy, *ib.* So 2 Kings v. 27. Sinners are often unconscious of their state, Lev. xiii. 2. The priest, rather than the physician, is resorted to in healing the effects of sin, Lev. xiv. 2. Excommunication not to be resorted to at once, Lev. xiii. 4. Danger of relapse, *v.* 8. Confession of sins necessary ere the spiritual leper can be pronounced clean, *rr.* 12—14. Wonderfully minute details both of the bodily and spiritual disease, *v.* 18. Christ treated as a leper "stricken, smitten of God," *ib.* Unblushing sin to be visited with merciful excommunication, *rr.* 41. 46. Leper houses, *v.* 46. A second cleansing vouchsafed to true repentance, *v.* 58. The priests and prophets of Jerusalem compared to lepers, Lam. iv. 15. Priests, like Christ whom they typify, seem exempt from contagion, Lev. xiv. 3. The two birds typical (see *Natures, two*), *rr.* 5. 6. Prov. i. 17. Christ's sufferings applied through the Christian Sacraments, Lev. xiv. 5. 6. Man's will must co-operate with God's grace, *v.* 8. Lepers at the city gate, 2 Kings vii. 3. Uzziah's "several house," 2 Chr. xxvi. 21. Leprosy of houses peculiar to the land of Israel: its spiritual meaning as a warning, Lev. xiv. 34. Process with houses (i. e. nations or Churches) slower and more minute than with persons, *v.* 39. True Reformation scrapes the walls, but pulls not down the house, *v.* 41. No cleansing but by Christ's death, *v.* 49.
- Lepsius, cited, Job xxix. 18. Isa. xxxvii. 36.
- Leslie, C., cited, Dent. xxxii. 8.
- Levi, the patriarch, see *Simeon*. The tribe, its zeal for God, Ex. xxxii. 28. God's covenant with them of life and peace, Mal. ii. 5. Chosen by Him in place of the first-born, Num. iii. 12. All Ekkanahs, i. e. acquired by God, 1 Sam. i. 1. Numbered apart, Num. i. 46. Their census, Num. iii. 39. Discrepancy explained (see *Census*). Smallest of the tribes throughout Jewish history, perhaps through losses incurred by their zeal for God, *ib.* Special fewness of the adult Kohathites, Num. iv. 36. Levites who were not priests set down in their genealogies down to and up through Samuel, 1 Chr. vi. 28. 33—38. Their number in David's age, 1 Kings viii. 63. Their chief houses, 2 Chr. xxix. 12. 13. Being numbered separately were excluded from the general sentence on the people in the wilderness, Num. xiv. 29. Jacob's curse upon Levi transformed into a blessing, Num. xxxv. 2. Hos. i. 4. Levitical cities and the space around them, Num. xxxv. 4. To be a holy heaven diffused throughout Israel, *v.* 2. Josh. xxi. p. 64. Changes made by lapse of time, 1 Chr. vi. 70. 77. "The Levite within thy gates" explained, Dent. xii. 18. Levites could not sell their land. Apparent exception in the case of Barnabas accounted for, Lev. xxv. 32. The tribe's full blessing by Moses fits the preceding history, Dent. xxxiii. 8. 9. Its portion, Eccles. xi. 2. With a view to future wants, the provision made for it not excessive, Josh. xxi. p. 64. Withheld in times of confusion, Judg. xvii. 7. In a later age Levites took too much to farming, Mal. ii. 3. To be sprinkled with water, not anointed with oil like the priests, and to wear no special dress, Num. viii. 7, nor in any way usurp the functions of the priesthood, Judg. xvii. 12. Watches of the Levites, Num. xviii. 3. 2 Kings xi. 4. 1 Chr. xxv. 8. Their duty represented as a warfare, Num. iv. 3. 1 Chr. ix. 18; xxv. 1; xxvii. 1. Dan. viii. 12. Commenced at the age of 25, Num. viii. 24. Their full service only from 30 to 50, contrasted in this respect with the lot of the Christian priesthood, Num. iv. 3. 1 Chr. xxiii. 3. The age reduced by David to 20, Num. viii. 24. 2 Chr. xxxi. 17. Ezra iii. 8. Their carelessness about the Ark accounted for, 1 Chr. viii. 7; xv. 13. Their courses, 1 Chr. xxiii. 6. Adjusted to those of the priests, 1 Chr. xxiv. 31. Their service by weeks, relieved each Sabbath, 2 Kings xi. 5. 7. Restored by Jehoida, *v.* 18. Few returned from Babylon, Ezra ii. 39. Their further backwardness, Ezra viii. 15. Neh. xiii. 10. A list of them, Neh. xii. 8. Unfaithfulness of some in Antiochus' time, Dan. viii. 12. As teachers of Israel, the Levites were a type of the great Teacher, Dent. xxxiii. 10.
- Leviathan, derivation of, Job iii. 8. A generic term, Ps. civ. 26: perhaps the crocodile (the beast of the Egyptian reed, Ps. lxxvii. 30), but certainly identified with the dragon (*Typhon*), a type of the Evil One, *ib.* Job xli. 1. Ps. lxxviii. 30; lxxiv. 13, 14. Isa. xxvii. 1; li. 9. None save the Great Deliverer dare stir him up, Job iii. 8; xli. 10. See *Serpent*. God alone can tame him, *rr.* 2. 12. 13. 18. 19. 21. 24. 30. 31, 34. The spiritual sense thus restored vindicates from fair objection both this portion of the Lord's speech, and the mention of Satan in the prologue, *v.* 1. Jewish fictions about Leviathan, *v.* 6.
- Leviticus, book of, clasped on to Exodus, as Numbers is to it, Lev. i. 1; viii. 2; x. 1. Dent. xxxi. 9. Whence and at what time its laws were delivered to Moses, Lev. i. 1. Occupies a lower level than the moral law, as being ceremonial and preparatory, *ib.* Summary of its contents, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* pp. xxiv, xxv. Designed for the edification of the Christian Church, Vol. i. Part 2. *Introd.* pp. i. vii. However much neglected, it is a manual of (1) Christian theology, exhibiting Christ's sacrifice under various aspects, and His two natures, being a creed of types, pp. ii—iv (so Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxiv); (2) of Christian worship, our degraded nature being sanctified by grace, pp. iv, v; (3) of Christian ethics, revealing the true nature of sin, *p.* v, and our religious and moral obligations, *p.* vi. Ezek. xlv. 21: (1) of Christian evidences. No sceptic denies its genuineness and unity, pp. vii and *note* 2, viii. Ewald and others falsely assign ch. xxvi. to the age of Hezekiah, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 82, by reason of the clearness of its prophecies, *rr.* 29—31. 38. Groundless opinion that the book did not exist in Jeremiah's age, Jer. vii. 22. List of recent commentators, Vol. i. Part 2. *p.* viii, *note* 1. Levitical code not derived from heathen usages, but designed to separate Israelites from other nations, *ib.* Ch. xxvii. like John xxi. appears supplemental, Lev. xxvii. 34.
- Lex *levitatis*, largely prevalent independently of the Levitical Law, Gen. xxxviii. 8. Its enactments in the Pentateuch consistent with the judicial process described in Ruth iv., Dent. xxv. 5. Perhaps explains some difficulties in our Lord's genealogy, *v.* 6. Neglect of the duty it involves entailed both ignominy and spiritual loss, *v.* 9.
- Lex *talionis*, discussed, Ex. xxi. 23, 24.
- Libertine, the, creed of, Zeph. i. 12.
- Libnah, site of, Josh. x. 29. 2 Kings viii. 22; xix. 8.
- Liddon, H. P., his Baupion Lectures characterized, Prov. viii. 22. Cited, Jonah i. 1. 2.
- Life, the future, implied in Nathan's promise to David, and so understood by him, 2 Sam. xii. 13. Also in the translation of Enoch, Gen. v. 24, and of Elijah, 2 Kings ii. 11. Also in the sorrows, the martyrdom, or violent death of God's servants, 2 Kings xxi. 16; xxiii. 29. Ezek. xxi. 3. Job's faith therein, Job vi. 10. A future life and retribution not denied in Isa. xxxviii. 18. Revealed long before the Babylonish captivity, Eccles. iii. 21; xii. 13. Clearly stated, Prov. xiv. 32; xxi. 16; xxiii. 18; xxiv. 14. Eccles. iii. 21; viii. 6. 14; ix. 2. 5; xii. 7.
- Lifting up the hand, the phrase explained, Ezek. xx. 5; xxxvi. 7; xlvii. 14. Dan. xii. 7.
- Lightfoot, *Temple Service*, &c., cited, Lev. i. 1. Dent. xxxiii. 12. Judg. xi. 40; xvi. 5. 1 Sam. vii. 2. 1 Kings vi. 31; vii. 19. 2 Kings x. 1. 25. 1 Chr. vi. 11; xvi. 12; xxii. 2; xxiii. 3; xxvi. 1. 17. 18. *p.* 223; xxviii. 2. 2 Chr. xxii. 2; xxiv. 20—22; xxvi. 5. Ezra vi. 2. Neh. iii. 15; viii. 7, 8. Ps. xxiv. *p.* 33. Vol. iv. Part 3. *p.* 121, *note* 3. Isa. xxxviii. 1. Jer. xi. 2; xxvi. 2. Ezek. viii. 16. *Retrospect*, *p.* 274. Dan. vii. 25; x. 13. Mal. ii. 12.
- Lily, the, a type of inward purity, 1 Kings vii. 18. 19. 26. 2 Chr. iv. 3. Ezek. *Retrospect*, *p.* 277, *note* 12. The Church a lily among thorns, Ps. ex. 2. Cant. ii. 1. 2. 16.
- Limborch, his conference with Orobio, Dent. xiii. 1.
- Limbus patrum*, Zech. ix. 11.
- Line and plummet, for building, not for destruction, 2 Kings xxi. 13. Line upon line explained, Isa. xxviii. 10.
- Linen yarn (Heb. *mikreh*), perhaps erroneously rendered, 1 Kings x. 28. Linen, of what symbolical, Prov. xxxi. 22.
- Lintel and side posts of the Temple, explained, 1 Kings vi. 31.
- Lion, the, a figure of Christ, Num. xxiii. 24; xxiv. 9. 1 Kings x. 19, 20. Prov. xxx. 30. Ezek. xiv. 7. Hos. xi. 10. Joel iii. 16. Mic. v. 8. Of God, Isa. xxxi. 4. Jer. xxv. 38. Of holy courage, 1 Kings vii. 36; x. 19. 20. 2 Chr. iv. 3. Prov. xix. 12. Of Judah, Ezek. xix. 2. Of Assyria, Isa. xv. 9. Nah. ii. 12. Of Babylon, Jer. iv. 7; xlix. 19; li. 38. Dan. vii. 4. Of Cyrus, Jer. l. 44. Of Satan, Nah. ii. 12. So Ps. lviii. 4. 9. Cant. iv. 8. Of evil rulers, Zech. xi. 3. Ariel, or lion-like man (*Cœur de Lion*), 2 Sam. xxiii. 20. Those in David's country, 1 Sam. xvii. 34, and elsewhere, 1 Chr. xi. 22. Not now found in Palestine, Judg. xiv. 5. Hebrew rich in synonyms of the beast, *ib.* Job iv. 10. The various names discriminated, *ib.*
- Little ones, the slaughter of, how to be reconciled with the Divine justice and mercy, Num. xxxi. 17.
- Liturgies, the ancient, testify to the Eucharistic sacrifice, Mal. i. 11. The Clementine, cited, Mal. p. 160.
- Liver, the, regarded as the seat of the deepest affections, Lam. ii. 11. Chaldean divination thereby, Ezek. xxi. 21.

- Livy, cited, Neh. v. 13. Job i. 21. Jer. xxxii. 9. Dan. xi. 17. 18. 25. 27. 30. 38.
- Lizard (Heb. *semanith*), *stellio*, not a spider, Prov. xxx. 28.
- Localities, some of the most interesting in Scripture history, perhaps hid from us designedly, Ex. iii. 1; xix. 1.
- Locust, not grasshopper, Judg. vi. 5; vii. 12. Prov. xxx. 27. Jer. xli. 23. Amos vii. 1. "The devourer," Mal. iii. 11. Their four kinds, real, yet also symbolical, Joel i. 4. Spoken of armies, Joel ii. 1. 5. 8. 17. 20. Of a swarm of mercenaries, Nah. iii. 17. Compared to horses, Joel ii. 4.
- Lod, 1 Chr. viii. 12. Neh. xi. 35.
- Lo debar, located, 2 Sam. ix. 4.
- Lofus, cited, Gen. x. 10.
- Loins, the seat of carnal appetite: behemoth's strength placed there, Job xl. 16.
- Longevity of the patriarchs confirmed from other sources, Gen. v. 4; xxv. 7. Its decline noted, Job viii. 9. Job must have lived 200 years. Comparison with other patriarchs, and inference as to his date, Job xlii. 16. Life, whether long or short, it matters not, Isa. lxx. 20.
- Lord (or *God*, or *Lord God*) of heaven, a title given to the Deity after the captivity, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. Vol. iii. p. 299, note 13. Ezra i. 2; v. 11; vi. 10. Neh. i. 4, 5. Ps. cii. 19. Dan. ii. 18. Vanity of the argument founded on the variety of the Divine Names in Nchemiah, Neh. i. 4, 5. Equivalent to "Maker of heaven and earth" in the Songs of Degrees, Ps. cxxi. 2.
- Lord's day, the, results of neglecting it, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 21. The keeping it conduces to public and private happiness, Isa. lviii. 14. Jer. xvii. 26. One blessing springing from keeping it, Vol. iii. p. 299, note 12. Referred to, Ps. cxviii. 24. See *Sabbath*.
- Lot, why called righteous, Gen. xix. 1. In some things more a warning than a pattern, v. 8. A proof of the power of evil company, v. 38. His escape to the mountain symbolical, Zech. xiv. 5. After his fall his intercourse with Abraham apparently ceased, Gen. xx. 1. His bad example imitated long afterwards, Judg. xix. 24.
- Lots, Scripture use of, Lev. xvi. 8. Josh. vii. 14. 1 Sam. x. 20. 1 Chr. xxv. 7—11. Directed by God's hand, Esther iii. 7. Jonah i. 7. Not used by the Apostles after the Spirit had been given, Josh. vii. 1; xiv. 2. Process and design of thus assigning the land of Canaan, *ib.* Persian *pur*, like the Chaldean, merely superstitious, though over-ruled by God's providence, Esther iii. 7. Chaldean lots, by means of arrows, Ezek. xxi. 21. 22: for dividing the spoil, Ezek. xxiv. 6.
- Louis XIV., his vices, Eccles. v. 6.
- Love, the ground of the Law as well as of the Gospel, Deut. v. 5; x. 12. Judg. v. 31. Though the latter affords higher and stronger motives for it, Deut. v. 5. What love includes, *ib.* God's for Israel, Hos. xi. 8. Secret (i. e. dormant and stagnant) love is no love, Prov. xxvii. 5. Clamorous professions to be distrusted, v. 14.
- Lowland, or Plains (Heb. *shephelah*) of Judah, its bounds, Josh. xv. 33. 2 Chr. xxvi. 10. Obad. 19. Zech. vii. 7.
- Lowth, R. Bp., cited, Ex. xv. p. 252. Judg. v. 1. 2 Sam. i. 21. Ps. xlix. 5. Hab. iii. 2.
- Lowth, W., cited, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 76, note 12. Isa. xlv. 28; liii. 4; lvi. 7. 11; lxx. 3. Jer. vi. 29; ix. 26; xiv. 6; xxvii. 7; xxxi. 26; xxxiii. 18—22; xxxv. 3; xliii. 7; xlix. 11; li. 58. Ezek. iv. p. 165. *re.* 5. 8; viii. 14; ix. 4; xii. 2; xvi. 53; xx. 25; xxiii. 45; xxviii. p. 221; xxxii. 27. *Retrospect*, p. 275, note 4. Hos. i. 2.
- Loyalty, true, looks to the Sovereign's office, not to his person, 1 Sam. iv. 20. Superseded by popular election of rulers, Dan. xi. 38.
- Lubim, or Libyans, Gen. x. 13. 2 Chr. xii. 3. Nah. iii. 9. Allies of spiritual Egypt, Dan. xi. 43.
- Lucan, cited, 2 Sam. xxiii. 16. Job xxvi. 7. Prov. xxviii. 3.
- Lucian, cited, Judg. xix. 29. Job xxxi. 27.
- Lucifer, literal and figurative application of the term, Isa. xiv. 12.
- Lucky days forbidden to be kept by the Jews, Lev. xix. 26. Those of the Chaldeans, Dan. ii. 8.
- Lucretius, cited, Prov. xxiv. 7. Ezek. viii. 14.
- Lud, in Armenia, Gen. x. 22. In Northern Egypt, Gen. x. 13 (*Ludim*). Jer. xli. 9. Ezek. xxvii. 10; xxx. 5.
- Ludolph, cited, Jer. xiv. 6.
- Luhith, Isa. xv. 5. Jer. xlviii. 5.
- Lukewarmness, fatal, Prov. xxviii. 4.
- Lunacies capable of religious impressions, Dan. iv. 16. 34.
- Lund, cited, Lev. iv. 12.
- Luther, M., cited, Gen. xix. 24; xxii. 16; xxv. 21; xli. 51; xlviii. 15. 16. Deut. xlii. 4. 2 Sam. xxiii. 2. 2 Chr. xxi. 12. Vol. iii. p. 359, note 10. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xx. Job xxiv. 36.
- Ps. xxxvii. 1. Prov. xxv. 11; xxviii. 7. Cant. i. 1; iv. 6; vii. 5. Isa. ii. 22; ix. 6; xix. 24, 25; liii. 12; lxi. 8. Jer. xxxi. 22. Ezek. i. 5. *Retrospect*, p. 275, note 4. Hab. p. 95. Hagg. ii. 7.
- Lycanthropy medically described by Dr. E. Palmer of Lincoln, Dan. iv. 16.
- Lye, an alkali, Job ix. 30. See *Soap*.
- Lyrans, cited, 1 Sam. xii. 18. 2 Chr. xxi. 12. Prov. v. 3; xxx. p. 65; v. 19. Isa. ii. 22; xiv. 12. Jer. iii. 16. Ezek. xxxviii. p. 246. *Retrospect*, p. 275, note 4. Hos. i. 2; vi. 2. Joel i. 4. Obad. 20. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. ii. 1, 2; xi. 15.
- Lysimachus, Alexander's successor, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiii, notes 6 and 7. Dan. viii. 8; xi. 4.
- Maacah, or *Michaiah* (variation of the name accounted for, 2 Chr. xiii. 2), granddaughter of Absalom, 2 Chr. xi. 20; xv. 16.
- Maacah, located, 2 Sam. x. 6. Jer. xl. 8. Called also *Abel-beth-maacah*, 1 Kings xv. 20. 2 Kings xv. 29: *Beth-maacah*, 2 Sam. xx. 14: *Syria-maacah*, 1 Chr. xix. 6: *Abel-maim*, 2 Chr. xvi. 4.
- Maaseiah, his rank and fate, Jer. xxxv. 4.
- Maceabees, alleged derivation of the name, Ex. xv. 11. Judg. iv. 21. Simon Maceabæus coined money, Gen. xxiii. 16. Idolatrous compliances of the Jews in their age, Isa. lxx. 3: especially on the part of the priests, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xvi. Their holy courage, pp. xvi. xvii. Their victories, Obad. 2. Mic. iv. 12, 13. Zech. ix. p. 136; v. 1; xii. 2. Regret that the first and second books of the Maceabees are not used as Church Lessons. They were formerly read in the Christian Church on their festival, August 1, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xvii, note 8. Dan. xi. 32. Cited, Dan. viii. 9. 21. 23. 25; xi. 24, 26, 28, 30, 31. 32. 33. 44.
- McCauley, Dr., cited, Gen. i. 1. 2. 5. 6. 7. 20; ii. 4. 5—7; xvii. 15; xlv. 12. Lev. xxiii. 34. Num. iii. 27, 28. 1 Chr. xvi. 30. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xvii, note 3.
- McCausland, Dr., cited, Gen. i. 5.
- Macedonians under Alexander adopted the Persian costume, Zeph. i. 8.
- Machpelah, cave of, Gen. xxiii. 9.
- Madai, or Medes, their history, Gen. x. 2. Isa. xlii. 17. Famous for archery, v. 18. Jer. i. 9. Historically set before the Persians, whose pre-eminence, however, is foretold, Dan. v. 25. 28; vi. 8. The Medo-Persian empire mostly retained the Chaldean form of polity, Dan. vi. 7. Prefigured by the ram with two horns, Dan. viii. 3. 4.
- Madmannah, or *Beth-mareaboth*, or *Madmenah*, or *Madmen*, Josh. xv. 31. Isa. x. 31; xxv. 10. Jer. xlviii. 2.
- Magicians of Egypt, Gen. xli. 8. Ex. vii. 9. 11. Their power proceeded from the Evil One, *ib.* Their last exploit is to produce evil, but not to remove it, Ex. viii. 7. 18. Of Babylon, Dan. ii. 2.
- Magog, his limits: Gog being his king. A foreshadowing of the power of Antichrist, Gen. x. 2. Ezek. xxxviii. 2.
- Mahakath, explained, Ps. liii. p. 82; lxxxviii. p. 139.
- Mahomet sprung from Ishmael, Gen. xvi. 2. Guards against one sin, while opening the door to another. God's grace alone can cleanse the whole man, Judg. xvi. 1. The Koran imitates Isa. xxxv. 7.
- Mahanaim, its derivation and locality, Gen. xxxii. 2. Josh. xiii. 26. 1 Kings iv. 14. Cant. vi. 13. Hos. xii. 5. Its historical associations, 2 Sam. ii. 8; xvii. 24. The two hosts of Jew and Gentile make up the Shulamite choir, Cant. vi. 13.
- Maimonides, cited, Gen. xxi. 33. Ex. xxi. 4. Lev. i. 11; iv. 14; xiv. 34; xvi. 4; xix. 14. 36; xx. 20; xxiii. 17; xxv. 10. 47; xxvii. 2. 18. Num. iv. 19; vi. 2. 23; viii. 2; xii. 7, 8; xxxv. 4. Deut. vii. 6—9; xiii. 1; xiv. 28; xvii. 8; xix. 3. 8; xx. 2; xxi. 22; xxiii. 6. 15; xxiv. 1; xxv. 2. 3; xxvi. 14. 2 Kings xxi. 18. Ezra vi. 10. Neh. xiii. 1. Isa. xliii. 24. Ezek. v. 1. Hos. i. 2. Hagg. ii. 7.
- Makkedah, its supposed site, Josh. x. 10.
- Maktesh, a symbolical name for Jerusalem, Zeph. i. 11.
- Malachi, "the seal of the prophets," closed the Old Testament Canon, Neh. xiii. 31. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. x, note 3. Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. vii. 112. Completes, with Ezra, the Canon, *ib.* Angel of the Old Covenant, and the last prophet for 400 years, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. 156. Sets the Spirit's seal on the Pentateuch, Mal. iv. 4. His description of priestly degeneracy in his age, Neh. x. 2—8. 36; xiii. 9. 10. 12. 25. Why the modern Jews and the Septuagint misplace the two concluding verses, and read v. 4 at the end of other books of

- Scripture, Mal. iv. 6. His book an inspired comment on that of Nehemiah, Neh. xiii. 9. Mal. i. 8; ii. 9; iii. 8. 9. 10; which indeed echoes it, Neh. xiii. 29. 31. Mal. p. 157. His quiet, though stern, moral homilies succeed Zechariah's glorious visions, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xxiii. 156. Analysis of his book: a rebuke to the Pharisee and murmuring (Mal. i. 2) feeling of his times, *ib.* Compared with John the Baptist, pp. 156—7. Reception by the Hebrew Church of such a book would alone suffice to prove its inspiration, p. 157. Malachi discourses in judicial interrogations, p. 156. Mal. i. 6. He foretells John the Baptist, Mal. iii. 1; iv. 5, who re-echoes the prophet's language, Mal. iv. 1. Expositions of the book, p. 157.
- Malan, S. C., cited, Gen. xii. 6; xxviii. 19; xxxix. 20; xl. 9; xli. 1. 43. 45; xlv. 10; xlv. 6. 2 Sam. xxiv. 1.
- Malcham, explained, Zeph. i. 5.
- Maldonatus, cited, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 286, note 12. Dan. iii. 1.
- Mallows (i. e. purslain), described, Job xxx. 4.
- Man, in his weakness (*ἀνθρώπος*, *homo*, Heb. *adam*), common man, Ps. xxxix. 5. Eccles. i. 3; vi. 1.7. Isa. lvi. 2. Ezek. xxxiv. 31; or (Heb. *enosh*), Ps. viii. 3, 4; cxlv. 3. Ezek. ix. 15. Dan. vii. 4. Distinguished from man in his strength (*ἀνὴρ*, *vir*, Heb. *ish*), Ps. lxxii. 9. Isa. liii. 3. Ezek. x. 8; or (Heb. *geber*), Prov. xx. 21. "A man's pen," explained, Isa. viii. 1.
- Man of God, a designation of all the prophets, Dent. xxxiii. 1. 1 Sam. ii. 27. 1 Kings xiii. 1. Of holy men, Jer. xxxv. 4. Hence rightly applied to himself by Moses, Dent. xxxiii. 1. The narrative of the man of God from Judah vindicated from Tindal's objections, 1 Kings xiii. pp. 51—56. The seeming unimportance of his act of disobedience no palliation. If deceived he had the means of knowing better. His message had been unavailing, had the messenger been spared, *ib.* God's mercy on his soul, p. 56.
- Manabath, 1 Chr. vii. 6.
- Manasseh, (1) meaning of the name, Gen. xli. 51. His great increase at the second census, as had been foretold, Num. xxvi. 35—37. His selfish dealings with the Canaanites, Josh. xvii. 12, 13. His tribe represented by Machir, the only son of Manasseh, Judg. v. 14. (2) King of Judah, with what hopes so named, 2 Kings xx. 21. How typical of God's people, *ib.* His reign the longest of all the kings, 2 Kings xxi. 17. His captivity, 2 Chr. xxxiii. 11, and prayer, v. 18. (3) Son of Josiah, Neh. xii. 11; xiii. 28.
- Mandrakes, described, Gen. xxx. 14. Cant. vii. 13.
- Maneh, or *mina*, explained, Ezek. xlv. 12.
- Manetho, the Egyptian annalist, his age doubtful and text corrupt, Gen. v. 4. His account of the *Hysesos* (see *Hysesos*) refers to the Israelites only by way of sarcastic allusion, Gen. xlv. 6. Cited, Ex. ii. 10. 2 Kings xvii. 4; xix. 9. 2 Chr. xiv. 9.
- Manicheans, see *Testament, the Old*.
- Manna, the gift of, plainly miraculous in all its circumstances, though something like it rests in small quantities on shrubs of the desert, Ex. xvi. 15. Meaning of the word, *ib.* Why called "angel's food," Ps. lxxviii. 25: "the bread of heaven," Ps. cv. 40. A mysterious type of Christ's Incarnate body, the spiritual food of His people, Ex. xvi. 15. Christ the hidden manna, *ib.* The living bread, Ps. lxxxi. 16. In what respects the details of the narrative are typical of Christ, Ex. xvi. 15. 16—23. Its daily supply taught humility, Dent. viii. 2. How long it continued, Ex. xvi. 35. Its cessation when no longer needed, as miracles have ceased in the Church, Josh. v. 12. Loathed, as men will the Sacraments, Num. xi. 6; xxi. 5.
- Manoah, in spirit resembles Joseph, the husband of the Blessed Virgin, Judg. xiii. 8, and Zacharias in his vision of Gabriel, v. 18, and Gideon, v. 19.
- Manu-cripts of Scripture to be thankfully received, when their evidence harmonizes parallel passages, 2 Chr. xxii. 2. German and Spanish manuscripts of the Hebrew Bible distinguished, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. iii, note 3.
- Many, the term does not exclude *all*, Dan. xii. 2.
- Maon, of Judah, Josh. xv. 55. 1 Sam. xxiii. 25; xxv. 2. 1 Chr. ii. 45.
- Maonites, the, of Arabia, Judg. x. 12. *Meonites*, 1 Chr. iv. 41. *Mehunim*, 2 Chr. xx. 1; xxvi. 7.
- Marathon, battle of, Neh. iv. 13. Vol. iii. p. 365, note 3. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiv. Dan. iii. 21. Zech. ix. 1.
- Marck, cited, Hos. i. 2.
- Marcion, see *Testament, the Old*.
- Marshall, Josh. xv. 44. 1 Chr. ii. 42; iv. 21. 2 Chr. xi. 8; xiv. 10; xx. 37. Mic. i. 15.
- Margin of the authorized Bible, like the Hebrew *keri* and *chetib* (Job xiii. 15—18), should be printed in all our copies, Jer. iii. 17. Obad. 12. Its superiority to the text questionable in 2 Chr. xx. 36. Isa. xl. 9. Mic. v. 6. Preferred to the rendering in the text, Isa. xl. 10. Jer. iii. 17; xx. 7; xxxi. 3; xxxvi. 26; xxxvii. 12; xliii. 13. Lam. iii. 19. Ezek. xxii. 16. Dan. vi. 6; ix. 27; xi. 20. Hos. iv. 8; vi. 7. 9; viii. 10; xiii. 2. 10. Joel ii. 23. Amos iv. 9; v. 9; ix. 1. Obad. 12. Mic. v. 14. Nah. i. 6. Zech. vi. 2.
- Mariolatry, embraced by some who once knew better, 2 Sam. ii. 8. Discountenanced, 1 Kings ii. 17. Jer. vii. 31. First associated with the worship of Christ, now almost to supersede it, 2 Kings xvi. 10—15. Has polluted the pure waters of Scripture, Prov. xxxi. p. 70. By a natural process of reaction leads to infidelity, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 122, note 3. Hinders the conversion of the Jews, Mic. vii. 8. See *Collyridian*.
- Maritime metaphors, occur but thrice in the Old Testament, Prov. xx. 18; xxiii. 34.
- Marriage, Scripture teaching respecting it, Gen. ii. 21—24; iii. 16; iv. 19. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 82. Dan. ii. 43. Hos. i. 2. Job's monogamy a protest, Job xix. p. 43. Marriage with a sister, Gen. xii. 13. Polygamy the bane of family life, Gen. xvi. 2. 5; xxix. 28. 1 Sam. i. 6. Protest against it, Gen. xlv. 19. Degrades woman, Eccles. vii. 28. Leads to idolatry, Judg. viii. 30. Marriage of daughters rested much with their parents, Gen. xxiv. 51. Num. xxx. 3. Marriage gifts, Gen. xxiv. 53. Marriage song, Ps. lxxviii. 63. Its festive week, Gen. xxix. 27. Judg. xiv. 10. Ceremony of a Hebrew marriage, Ruth iii. 9. A benediction from the Lord always till now regarded as essential to marriage, Ruth iv. 11. Desecration of marriage produces all kinds of sin, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 82. A wife endowed with her husband's goods, as Christ endowed the Church, Judg. xix. 1. Isa. lxii. 5. His loving care and zeal for her purity, Judg. xix. 25. 27. 29. Marriages of Jews with other nations than Canaanites not forbidden, if the wives became proselytes, Ezra ix. 1. Otherwise they surely led to idolatry, v. 2, and were no real marriages, Ezra x. 3. Solution of a practical difficulty in missionary work, *ib.* Political marriages unblest, Dan. ii. 43.
- Marsh, Bp., cited, Hos. xi. 1.
- Martial, cited, Gen. xxvi. 4. 16. Ps. lvi. 1. Isa. i. 22. Jer. iii. 6.
- Martin, S., of Tours, Amos vii. 13. Zech. xiii. 3.
- Martyr, Peter, cited, Ezek. xviii. 22.
- Maschil, explained, Ps. xxxii. p. 44; v. 8; lxxiii. p. 114; lxxxviii. p. 139; lxxxix. p. 141; cxlii. p. 218.
- Mash, Gen. x. 23.
- Masius, cited, Josh. v. 9.
- Masora, the, directions given in it, Mal. iv. 6. Cited, 2 Chr. xxviii. 19. Ps. lxxviii. 35. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xvii. Ezek. xxxvi. 23. Nah. i. 14.
- Mass Priests, Roman, their ignorance deplored by their own divines, Mal. ii. 7.
- Mather on *Types*, characterized, 1 Kings vii. 25. Cited, Gen. xli. 43. Dent. xviii. 15—19. Judg. xiv. 6. Ezra ii. 2.
- Mattana, site of, Num. xxi. 19.
- Maundrell, cited, Judg. iii. 31.
- Maurer, cited, Jer. iii. 1; viii. 13; xi. 15; xxxi. 22; xlv. 19; xlv. 20; xlix. 25. Ezek. vi. 9; xvi. 15. 31. Dan. iv. 16; viii. 14; xi. 17. 37. 45. Mic. i. 1. Zech. ix. 1.
- Maximilian and Maximian, the persecuting Emperors, their fate, Zech. xiv. 12.
- Mazzaroth, explained, Job xxxviii. 32.
- Mead, Dr., cited, Dan. iv. 16.
- Means must be employed, that God may do His part, when our faith and obedience are manifested, 2 Kings iii. 16. 2 Chr. xxiii. 3—8.
- Measures, Hebrew, tables of, Ex. xxix. 40. Lev. xxiii. 13. Uncertainty respecting all Hebrew weights and measures, 1 Chr. xii. 14. Why left in charge of the Levites, 1 Chr. xxiii. 29. Religious care of them, Prov. xvi. 11. Amos viii. 5. Particular measures: *bath*, Ezek. xlv. 11: *cab*, 2 Kings vi. 25: *cor*, 1 Kings iv. 22; v. 11. Ezek. xlv. 14: *ephah*, Ruth ii. 17. Isa. v. 10; xl. 12. Amos viii. 5: *hin*, Ezek. iv. 11: *homer*, Isa. v. 10: *omer*, Ex. xvi. 36. Num. xlviii. 5: *seah*, 1 Kings xlviii. 32. 2 Kings vii. 1. Isa. xxvii. 8.
- Meat-offering (Heb. *minchah*), its special significance, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 5. Consisted of all food (Lev. ii. 1), save animal, *ib.* Of oil and frankincense, Mal. i. 11. Mostly joined with drink offering (see *Drink offering*), Lev. xxiii. 13. Adjunct to burnt offering, and as the fruit of man's labour, given wholly to God, p. 5. Lev. xiv. 21. A memorial offered with incense, prefiguring the unbloody commemorative sacrifice of the Eucharist, p. 5. Lev. ii. 2. Mal. i. 11; iii. 4. Christ bruised as the corn, Mal. i. 11. Represents also man's work sanctified by God's grace, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 5. Zeph. iii. 10.

- Mal. i. 11. Why to be unleavened, Lev. ii. 4, and without honey, v. 11. Most holy, as a type of the Living Bread, Lev. x. 12. Morning meat-offering, 2 Kings iii. 20. Cp. 1 Chr. ix. 31. The converted Jews so brought by the heathen unto God, Zeph. iii. 10.
- Medal, papal, described, Zech. xi. 15.
- Mede, J., cited, Num. xx. 10, 11. Judg. i. 7. 1 Chr. xxviii. 2. Neh. xiii. 14. Esther i. 10. Dan. ii. 40. Mic. vii. 8. Zech. p. 136. Mal. i. 11.
- Medeba, site of, Num. xxi. 30. 1 Chr. xix. 7. Isa. xv. 2.
- Meditation, devout, the true mode of solving the problems of life and history, Ps. lxxiii. 17, 28. Examples of, Hab. ii. 1.
- Megiddo, site of, Josh. xii. 21; xvii. 11. Judg. v. 19. 1 Kings iv. 12; ix. 15. 2 Kings xxiii. 29. 2 Chr. xxxv. 22. Connected with the Apocalyptic Armageddon, Judg. v. 15. 2 Kings xxiii. 30.
- Meier, cited, Jer. xxii. 14; xxxviii. 10. Dan. iii. 5. Mic. i. 1.
- Mejarkon, Josh. xix. 46.
- Melchizedek, mistakes concerning him: his true royal and priestly offices, Gen. xiv. 18, 19. An eminent type of Christ our Righteousness: his sacramental character, *ib.*
- Meleom, the idol of Ammon, Jer. xlix. 1, 3.
- Melzar, explained, Dan. i. 11.
- Memphis, Hos. ix. 6. See *Noph*.
- Memorials, the three visible, of God's commandments, as used by the Jews, Ex. xiii. 16.
- Menachem, Rabbi, cited, Gen. xxx. p. 127. Ex. xvii. 16; xxxii. 32. Lev. i. 11; xix. 19; xxii. 27. Deut. xxxii. 8.
- Menander, referred to, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. x.
- Ménant, *Assyrian Grammar*, Dan. iv. 20. Cited, Isa. xx. 1.
- Menochius, cited, Ezek. xxxviii. p. 246. Zech. xiii. 6.
- Meonchim, explained, Judg. ix. 37.
- Mephaath, Jer. xlviii. 21.
- Mephibosheth, his name, 2 Sam. iv. 4. 1 Chr. viii. 34. In his lameness a type of helpless Israel, 2 Sam. ix. 6, 10. Mic. iv. 6: raised up in its humility by the Divine David, 2 Sam. ix. 6. His son, v. 12. Contrasted with Ziba, 2 Sam. xvi. 3, and with Shimei of his own tribe, 2 Sam. xix. 24. Credited by David, and fully regains his land, v. 29. Resembles the soul which seeks Christ for His own sake, and not for gain, v. 30.
- Merathaim, why a mystical name for Babylon, Jer. i. 21. Its meaning, Ezek. ii. 5.
- Mercer, cited, Hos. vi. 2. Joel iii. 14.
- Mercy-seat, covering the Ark, typified God's throne of grace in Christ, Ex. xxv. 17. Lev. xvi. 14. Why called the Oracle, Ex. xxv. 22. God's footstool, Ps. xcix. 5. Sprinkled with Christ's blood, Isa. lx. 13. See *Cherubim*.
- Mered of Judah, his Egyptian wife, 1 Chr. iv. 17.
- Meribah, Ezek. xlvii. 19.
- Merodach, a deity of Babylon, Isa. xlvi. 1. Jer. i. 2. Dan. iii. 1. Merodach (or *Berodach*) -baladin, king of Babylon, his history, 2 Kings xx. 12.
- Merom, waters of, their supposed position, Josh. xi. 5. Possible prophetic significance of the name, *ib.*
- Meroz, its site and offence, Judg. v. 23.
- Meshech, delineated, Gen. x. 2. Ezek. xxvii. 13; xxxii. 26; xxxviii. 2. Put generally for a barbarous tribe, Ps. cxx. 5.
- Mesopotamia described, Gen. xxiv. 10. 1 Chr. xix. 6.
- Messiah, "The Lord," Mal. iii. 1. Used absolutely, Dan. ix. 25. Whence the term has passed into popular language, *ib.* As Priest and King, Isa. lxii. 3. Zech. iii. 8; vi. 13. The Mighty God, Isa. ix. 6. Jesus alone could be "The Prince," Dan. ix. 25; "The Ruler," Mic. v. 2. His eternal generation, *ib.* Supposed by the Jews of our Lord's time, and by Judaizing Christian sects, to be merely human. Hence their rejection of Him in spite of His miracles, Deut. xiii. 1; xviii. 15—19. Why called Anani by the Jews, Dan. vii. 13. He must have come already, as the Temple is destroyed, Hagg. ii. 9. Mal. iii. 1. That he should only triumph, not suffer, is a recent Jewish figment, Isa. lii. 13; liii. 4. Zech. xii. 10. His sufferings vicarious, Isa. liii. 6, 10. Josiah a type of Him in death, Isa. lvii. 1, 2. A Conqueror, Isa. lxiii. p. 181; v. 1. His triumph to be consummated at the second Advent, v. 3. Isa. lxxv. 16. His Passion the cause of His victory, Isa. lxiii. 3. Zech. ix. 10. Called "David their King," Jer. xxx. 9. Mal. iv. 5. Cp. Mic. v. 4. Zech. xii. 8. Isaiah designates His Virgin mother, Micah His birthplace, Mic. v. 2. Represents three shepherds cut off in one month, Zech. xi. 8.
- Metaphors, broken, Ezek. xxix. 7; xxxi. 14. Softened, Hos. xiv. 2. Joel ii. 30. See *Maritime*.
- Metheg-ammah, explained, 2 Sam. viii. 1.
- Methodius, S., cited, Lev. xxiii. 31.
- Michael, the archangel, his significant name, Dan. xii. 1. Champion of the saints, Dan. x. 13.
- Michaelis, Ch. B., cited, Prov. viii. p. 18. Jer. xxiii. 4. xxxiv. 4, 5. Dan. vi. 7; vii. 12; ix. 19.
- Michaelis, J. D., cited, Lev. xi. 6. Num. xviii. 21. 2 Kings viii. 18; xii. 13. Ezra vi. 14. Ps. lxxix. 25. Prov. ii. 16. Cant. i. 2; iv. 9. Isa. xxx. 4; liii. 8. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xvi, note 2. Jer. iii. 19; xix. 2; xxiii. 26, 27; xl. 5; xli. 12; xlv. 20; xlviii. 4. Ezek. viii. 14; xvi. 43. Dan. iii. 6. Obad. 11. Nah. iii. 4. Zech. ix. 1.
- Micha, (1) a man whose character was unlike his name, Judg. xvii. 1. Designs to combine various kinds of worship, v. 3, as if to force a blessing, v. 13. Has four separate objects in view, v. 5. His mean dealings with the ministering Levite, v. 10. Self-convicted in his spiritual blindness, Judg. xviii. 24. (2) The prophet of Moresheth (Mic. i. 1), beginning his ministry under Jotham, 2 Kings v. 29, extends it to Hezekiah's reign, Jer. xxv. 18. Mic. i. 1, 10; iii. 12. Nah. i. p. 87. Subjects of his prophecy, 2 Kings xv. 29. As a messenger of Divine love, he contrasts with Jonah's narrow spirit, teaching the redemption of the world in Christ, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xv, xvi. 70. Meaning of the name (p. 70) referred to, Mic. vii. 18. How united to the preceding books in logical harmony, teaching that salvation is of the Jews, p. 70. Analysis of the book in three parts (Mic. iii. 1; vi. p. 82): its relation to Isaiah's, p. 70. Whose prophecy he continues to Hezekiah's comfort, Mic. i. 1. Its date and superscription, *ib.* The writer a younger contemporary and follower of Isaiah, *ib.* Cp. Mic. iv. 1, 10; v. 2, 3, 4. Adopts the language of his namesake, Micaiah, Mic. i. 2; ii. 7. Also of the Pentateuch and other earlier books, Mic. i. 2. In his turn cited by later writers, *ib.* Mic. iii. 12. Looks forward, like Isaiah, to the distant future, Mic. ii. 12, 13; iii. 12. Consummates the witness of the Old Testament respecting Christ, as a prelude to the Gospel history, Mic. v. pp. 78, 81.
- Michal, Saul's daughter, her pride and contempt of holy things punished by barrenness: a type of the Jewish Church, 2 Sam. vi. 16. 21—23. Her supposed children, 2 Sam. xxi. 8.
- Michmash, site of, 1 Sam. xiii. 2; xiv. 5. Isa. x. 28. Its passage, 1 Sam. xiii. 23; xiv. 4. Isa. x. 29.
- Michmethah, Josh. xvi. 6.
- Michtam, engraved as on a pillar, Ps. xvi. p. 18. Job's Michtam, *ib.* p. 19; v. 7.
- Middle state of the soul's consciousness after death implied in Gen. xv. 15; xxv. 8; xxxv. 29; xxxvii. 35; xlix. 33. Num. xx. 24. Deut. xxxii. 50. Ruth ii. 20. 2 Sam. xii. 23. 2 Kings ii. 9. To be inferred from dreams, 1 Kings iii. 6. Bringing up from Sheol, the term explained, 1 Sam. xxviii. 8, 13. Plainly stated and commented upon, Ps. xvi. 9.
- Midian, origin and location of, Gen. xxv. 2. Judg. vi. 1, 3. Ps. lxxxiii. 9. Isa. lx. 6. Why mixed with Ishmeelites, Gen. xxxvii. 25, 28. The southern Midianites, Ex. ii. 15. Those near Moab fell into idolatry, Num. xxii. 4; though descendants of Abraham, Num. xxv. 15, 17. Hence, and for other causes, more guilty than the Moabites; their punishment vindicated, Num. xxxi. 2, 17. Enemies of Israel, Hab. iii. 7. "The day of Midian," Isa. ix. 4. Cp. Isa. x. 26.
- Midwives, the Egyptian, Ex. i. 15. Their equivocation forgiven for the sake of their mercy, v. 21. See *Rahab*.
- Migdal-el, Josh. xix. 38.
- Migdol, of Egypt, Jer. xlv. 1; xlvii. 14. Ezek. xxix. 10; xxx. 6.
- Migron, 1 Sam. xiv. 2. Isa. x. 28.
- Mill, Dr. W.H., characterized, Josh. ii. 19. Cited also, Josh. v. 13; vi. 23. Ruth iv. 20. 2 Sam. vii. 14. 1 Chr. ii. 24, 49, 51; iii. 17, 18, 19, 21, 22, 24. Vol. iv. Part 1. p. xix, note 2. Job xix. 25; xxxii. p. 71. Jer. xxxi. 15—17, 22; xxxv. 19. Zech. xii. 12, 13. Mal. iii. 1.
- Millenary periods, opinion of the primitive Fathers respecting them, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 19.
- Miller, Hugh, referred to, Gen. i. 5.
- Millo, or tower, its derivation, Judg. ix. 6. Where situated in Jerusalem, 2 Sam. v. 9. 1 Kings ix. 15; xi. 27. 2 Kings xii. 20. 2 Chr. xxxii. 5.
- Millstones, the two, described, Deut. xxiv. 6. Judg. ix. 53. Both are needful for grinding, as both Testaments for obtaining the bread of life, Deut. xxiv. 6. The nether one fixed, Job xli. 24. Grinding was servile work, Judg. xvi. 21. Job xxxi. 10. Isa. xlvii. 2. Usually done by women, Eccles. xii. 3.
- Milton, John, his general accuracy, Gen. xi. 4: at fault, Gen. xi. 31. His *Samson Agonistes* criticized, Judg. xvi. 4, 31. His *Comus* and *Lycidas*, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 120. His notion about Paradise, Gen. ii. 8. Cited, Gen. i. 2; ii. 17, 19; iv. 22; vi. 2; xi. 4, 31. Ex. xiii. 17; xiv. 28; xx. 19; xxviii. 15. Vol. i. Part 2. *Introd.* p. ii. Judg. xix. 22. 2 Sam.

- xxi. 22. 1 Kings xi. 5; xii. 28; xvii. 4; xxii. 21. 2 Kings ii. 11; xxiii. 13. Job xli. 1. Ps. lxxxix. p. 141. Isa. xix. 1; xxvii. 1; xliii. 3. Ezek. viii. 14. Dan. vii. 10. Mic. iv. 3.
- Mines, old, of the precious metals, in Egypt, Sinai, Arabia, and Lebanon, Job xxviii. 1. 2. Their workings described, *vr.* 4. 5. 6. 9. 10. 11.
- Mingled people, the term explained, Jer. xxv. 20; 1. 37. Ezek. xxx. 5. Nah. iii. 17.
- Ministers of God, His gift to the Church, Ezek. iii. 17. Channels, not sources, of Divine grace, Num. xx. 10, 11. Christ the source of all their power, Num. xvii. 3. Its fruitfulness and permanence, *v.* 8. Ministers' double work of exhortation and intercession, Isa. lxii. 6. 7. Must retire for meditation and prayer, Ezek. iii. 21. Let ministers be content with poor cures, Josh. xxi. 18. They should seek to allay strife, 2 Sam. xx. 22. Why compared to oxen in Scripture, 1 Kings vii. 25. Must shoot out boldly the arrow of God's word, 2 Kings xiii. 17. 18. Ps. xlv. 5. Their work is to be done through the instrumentality of the Word and Sacraments, Job xxxviii. 1. They must not wonder if they suffer contempt, Prov. ix. 7. Their opportunity is but a moment: all their labour shall be fully repaid, Prov. xxvii. 25. Bound to be free from the pollutions of idolatry, Isa. lii. 11. See *Clergy*.
- Ministry, the Levitical (see *Levi*), no *honor sine onere*, Num. xviii. 1. Its maintenance, *vr.* 8. 9. 12. Deut. xxii. 10. Its share of the first-born, Num. xviii. 18, and of all other offerings, Lev. vii. 31, 32. Not entangled with worldly inheritance, as forsaking all for Christ, Num. xviii. 20. Its provision bountiful, *v.* 21. Should have set times and places for religious meditation, Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 282—3. Broad serenade of secular and spiritual functions, 1 Chr. vi. p. 180. A settled ministry after the same order designed by God for the whole Church, Josh. xx. p. 63. Its perpetuity promised, Jer. xxxiii. 18—22. Spiritual essence of the Levitical priesthood still retained in the Church, *ib.* Ordination after a Divine call resembles the coronation of a sovereign after his reign has begun, 2 Sam. ii. 4. See *Call*. The Christian ministry is only mandatory, to bring the penitent soul into personal communion with God, Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xv. Illustrative examples: Elihu's case, Job xxxviii. 1. This is the longing of the devout mind, which outward communion alone does not satisfy, Job xlii. 5.
- Minni, in Armenia, Jer. li. 27.
- Minnith, near Heshbon, Judg. xi. 33. Ezek. xxvii. 17.
- Minucius Felix, his discussion on the Jewish law and ritual, Deut. viii. 20.
- Miracles, not contrary to nature, though deviations from its usual course, Josh. x. 12, 13. For what purpose designed, Ex. iv. p. 210. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xi. Special reasons for those wrought when Israel was entering Canaan, Josh. iii. 7. Credentials of a prophet's mission to himself and others, 1 Kings xiii. 3. 4. A sign for assurance, Isa. vii. 3. 11; viii. 18. Why wrought so plentifully by Elijah and Elisha, not by the prophets who followed them, Vol. v. Part 1. p. vi. Miracles take no lasting effect on obstinate transgressors, Num. xxii. 29; though from the subjects of them they are designed to call forth faith and obedience, 2 Kings iv. 3; v. 10. 11; xx. 7. No other religion can lay claim to such wonderful and merciful signs, Deut. iv. 9. Yet they are no adequate tokens of true religion, as they may be wrought in a bad cause. Hence unlikely to be retained in a settled state of the Church, Deut. xiii. 1.
- Miriam, the same name as Mary. (1) The prophetess, what is known of her, Ex. xv. 20. A type of the Jewish synagogue murmuring against the call of the Gentiles, Num. xii. 10. While the Jew is shut out, there can be no progress to the heavenly Canaan, *v.* 15. Her insubordination to those set over her in the Lord punished, Deut. xxiv. 9. Her death, now that prophecy is to be fulfilled, Num. xx. 1. (2) A man's name, 1 Chr. iv. 17.
- Misheal, Josh. ix. 26.
- Mishna, the, (i.e. repetition, 2 Kings xxii. 14), cited, Lev. xvi. 2; 29; xxiii. 7. 24. 31. 36. 40; xxv. 6. 8; xxvii. 2. Num. ix. 10. Deut. xxiv. 1; xxvii. 12; xxxi. 9. Neh. x. 31. Esther ix. 26. Ps. cxxxvi. p. 210.
- Misrephoth-maim, signification and locality of, Josh. xi. 8. Typical of the last great conflict, *ib.*
- Missionary work must not be neglected for that at home, Num. vii. 3. Encouragement for it, Josh. xiii. 1; xiv. 15; v. p. 48. Should be orderly, not desultory, Josh. xviii. 3. Hymn suited for such occasions, Ps. lxxviii. 4. Every faithful soul has a missionary character, Ps. cxlvi. p. 223. This spirit the Church's essence, Cant. iv. 15; vii. 1. A missionary Church is ever recovering spoils for Christ, Prov. xxxi. 11: and planting a vineyard, *v.* 16. Israel, and therefore England, to be a missionary people to the whole world, Ps. cxlviii. 12. Especially the professed preachers of the Gospel, Isa. lxii. 10. Such expeditions typified by Solomon's voyages, Ps. lxxii. 10. First enterprizes were made westward, Isa. lx. 9: mainly by Jews, Obad. 20. 21. Mic. iv. 12, 13. Modern missions to the Jews, Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. 126—7. Cant. iii. 4. 5; viii. 1. 2. That best wine kept till last, Cant. vii. 9. Practical difficulties in regard to polygamy in South Africa, and former marriages of converts in India, Ezra x. 3.
- Mithras, the Persian genius of the sun, Ezra i. 8.
- Mitre, the priestly, Ezek. xxi. 26. Zech. iii. 5.
- Mixtures of kinds, moral and physical causes for forbidding them, Lev. xix. 19. Deut. xxii. 9. 10. 11. The notion applied to heretical doctrines and teachers, *ib.* Neh. xli. 3.
- Mizar, explained, Ps. xlii. 6.
- Mizpah, or *Mizpek*, i.e., a watch-tower (1) in Gilead, Gen. xxxi. 49: a religious sanctuary, Judg. x. 17; xi. 11: polluted by idolatry, Hos. v. 1. (2) By Hermon, Josh. xi. 3. (3) In Moab, 1 Sam. xxii. 3. (4) In Benjamin, Josh. xviii. 26. 1 Sam. iv. 1; vii. 5; x. 17. 1 Kings xv. 22. 2 Kings xxv. 23. Neh. iiii. 7. Used as a sanctuary and a national rendezvous, Judg. xl. 1. Jer. xl. 6. Baasha's pit there, Jer. xli. 9.
- Moabites, their origin and history, Gen. xix. 37. Their language the same as the Jews, Neh. xiii. 24. Lapsed into idolatry, Num. xxii. 2. Their human sacrifices, Mic. vi. 7. Were not to be distressed by Israel, yet punished by God, Deut. ii. 9. Some called to God's service under the Law, 1 Chr. xi. 39. A woman of Moab, if converted, might be married to an Israelite, Deut. xxi. 3. 1 Chr. viii. 8, 9. Neh. xiii. 1. Their corners, how smitten partially by David, fully by Christ, Num. xxiv. 17. 2 Sam. viii. 2. Ps. lx. 8. Their tribute in lambs, Isa. xvi. 1. Their rebellion against Israel, 2 Kings i. 1. Why Israel suffered for Mesha's sacrifice, 2 Kings iii. 27. His vengeance on the king of Edom, Amos ii. 1. Moab invades Israel, 2 Kings xiii. 20. Summary of his later history, Isa. xv. p. 45. Jer. xlviii. p. 112. Isaiah's compassion for him, Isa. xv. 5. His prediction of the nation's speedy calamity, Isa. xvi. 3. Conquered by Nebuchadnezzar, Jer. xlviii. p. 112: in retribution for cruelty to Israel, Jer. xlviii. 11. 27. The name disappears, Ezek. xxv. 10. Spiritual Moabites, Deut. xxiii. 3. 2 Kings xiii. 21. A type of false friends, Isa. xxv. 10. Dan. xi. 41: and lustful enemies, Jer. xlviii. 47. Their future call into the Church, *ib.* Zeph. ii. 9.
- Moladah, Josh. xv. 26. Neh. xi. 26.
- Moloch, or *Moloch*, the heathen Kronos, Lev. xviii. 21. Amos v. 26. How children were passed through the fire to him, Lev. xviii. 21. Deut. xii. 31. 2 Kings xvi. 3; xvii. 17; xxi. 6; Isa. lvii. 5. Jer. xvii. 2; xix. 4. Ezek. xvi. 21; xx. 25.
- Monastic institutions of the Papacy spoiled by the Infidel Antichrist, Dan. xi. 43.
- Moncoons, *Syria*, cited, Prov. xxv. 23.
- Money, not to be raised to advance works of piety and charity, by means of human vanity and self-conceit, Josh. xvi. 10.
- Montalambert, Count, his indignant protest against Papal idolatry, Zech. xi. 15.
- Montanus, cited, Nah. i. 14.
- Montfaucon, cited, Ezek. ix. 4.
- Mouth, the, of thirty days, Dan. vi. 7. Babylonish and Egyptian, Jer. lii. 31. The Hebrew: (1) *Abib*, Ex. xii. 2; xiii. 4; xl. 2. Lev. xxv. 8. 2 Chr. xxix. 3. Dan. x. 4: called also *Nisan*, Neh. ii. 1. Esther iii. 7. (2) *Zif*, 1 Kings vi. 37. (3) *Sivan*, Ex. xix. 11. Esther viii. 9. (5) *Ab*, Ezra vii. 8. (6) *Elul*, Neh. vi. 15; viii. 1. (7) *Tisri*, Lev. xvi. 2; xliii. 24; xxv. 8. Num. xxix. 1. Neh. vii. 73; viii. 1. Ps. lxxx. p. 129. Consummation of the religious year, Ezra iii. 1. Containing both the great Fast and the great Feast, *v.* 12: called also *Ethanim*, 1 Kings viii. 2. (8) *Bul*, 1 Kings vi. 38. (9) *Chisleu*, Ezra x. 9. Neh. i. 1. Jer. xxxvi. 22. Hagg. ii. 10. Zech. vii. 1. (10) *Tebeth*, Esther ii. 16. (11) *Sebat*, Zech. i. 7. (12) *Adar*, Ezra vi. 15. Esther iii. 7.
- Moon, or *Meni*, a heathen deity, Isa. lxv. 11.
- Moon-ornaments, connected with the worship of Astarté, Judg. vii. 21. Cakes moulded with the moon's image, Jer. xlv. 19.
- Mordecai, his worldliness depicted, Vol. iii. pp. 361—4. Esther ii. 10. His a religion of sullen protests, p. 364. The name connected with Merodach (see *Merodach*), Esther ii. 5. Cared not to return, *v.* 6: like many other rich Jews, Esther iii. 9. Laments, but prays not, Esther iv. 1. Exile teaches him reserve in naming God, and so injures his spiritual life, *v.* 14. In his exaltation faintly foreshadows Christ, Esther vi. 8. As in his speaking peace, Esther x. 3.
- More, Sir Thomas, anecdote of, 2 Sam. vi. 14.

- Moreh, perhaps an appellative, Gen. xii. 6. Compare, however, Deut. xi. 30.
- Moreseth, Jer. xxvi. 18. *Moreseth-gath*, Mic. i. 1. 14.
- Moriah, land of, at Jerusalem, rather than at Sichem, Gen. xxii. 2. 4. The Lord seen there, r. 14. Etymology of the word (Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxvi), including the Divine Name, *Jah*, r. 2. Site of David's sacrifice, 2 Sam. xxiv. 18. 1 Chr. xxii. 1: and of the Temple, 1 Kings vi. 1. 1 Chr. iii. 1. How called "the mount of the congregation," Isa. xiv. 13.
- Moschus, cited, Job xiv. 7. Ezek. viii. 14.
- Mosera (i. e. bond), a place in the district of mount Hor, where Aaron died, and his office passed on to Eleazar: a difficulty examined, Deut. x. 6.
- Moses, his lineage, Ex. ii. 1; vi. 16. "The servant of the Lord," dignity of the title, Deut. xxxiv. 5. Preserved in an ark of papyrus: spiritual sense, Ex. ii. 3. His parents exposed him in faith on God's Providence, *ib*. Derivation of his name, r. 10. Why he slew the Egyptian, r. 12. A type of Christ, Ex. ii. 14. 21; v. 6. 13. 19; xvii. 11. 16; xxxii. 27. 32. Num. xii. 1. 3. 7. 8; xxxi. 13. 26. 54. Deut. ix. 20. The first person empowered to work miracles, Ex. iv. p. 210. Why made leprous and restored, r. 6. His modesty, r. 10. 13. Num. xii. 3. Meeting with the angel at the inn, explained: its moral, Ex. iv. 24. 25. "Glory over me," his meaning, Ex. viii. 9. No magician, r. 18. His holy boldness, r. 26, 27; x. 26; xxxii. 26: and wrath, Ex. xi. 8. Magnifies his office, not himself, Ex. xi. 3. His life of faith, r. 8. His song in part prophetic, Ex. xv. 17. Sweetening of the waters by means of "the tree," r. 25. Moses smites the rock once, but was not to do so again. Typical significance of the act, as testified by S. Paul, Ex. xvii. 6. "Held up his hand" in prayer, a typical act, r. 11. Order of procedure at Sinai stated, Ex. xxiv. 1. 3. His sprinkling of the blood represents the death of Christ, r. 6. Why half sprinkled on the altar, half on the people. Sacramental significance of the act, *ib*. Sees the pattern of the Tabernacle, Ex. xxv. 9. Performs some exceptional priestly acts before Aaron is consecrated, Ex. xxix. 11. 12. Lev. viii. 19. 29. Hence called a priest, Ps. xcix. 6. Punished idolaters by God's command, Ex. xxxi. 27. His self-devotion, r. 32: and disinterestedness, Num. xiv. 12; xvi. 28. Mediator of the covenant, Ex. xxxiii. 11. Deut. v. 5. Led Israel like a flock, Hos. xii. 13. Why so earnest to see God, Ex. xxxiii. 14. 18. Glory of his countenance: in his statues represented *corvus* from the Vulgate version, Ex. xxxiv. 29. His vail: its spiritual significance, r. 33. Had access to God for counsel face to face, Lev. xxiv. 12. Num. vii. 89. His kindred, Num. iii. 1. His Psalm, Ps. xc. p. 145. His Song national, his Blessing individual, Deut. xxxiii. 1. His age, Num. xiv. 45. Ps. xc. 10. Union with Aaron figured union of Kingdom and Priesthood in Christ, Num. iii. 38. Tenderness like S. Paul's, Num. xi. 12. His Ethiopian wife hardly Zipporah, Num. xii. 1. Typical of the call of the Gentiles, and murmurs of the Synagogue, *ib*. The "*gradus Mosaleus*," why above others, r. 7, 8. Wherein his sin consisted, discussed, Num. xx. 10. 11. May see the land, not enter it, Num. xxvii. 12. Why God did not relent to him, Deut. xxxii. 51. His burying-place, why hid, Deut. xxxiv. 6.
- Moslem, derivation of, Isa. xlii. 19.
- Mother, reverence to, rather than to father, why enjoined, Lev. xix. 3; xxvii. 3. Has joint control with him over the children, Deut. xxi. 19. Giving the child its name, Judg. xiii. 24. The Jewish nation Christ's mother, Cant. iii. 11. The Church a nursing mother, Cant. vii. 2. 3.
- Mount of Corruption became a mount of combustion, Jer. li. 25.
- Mountains of idolatrous worship, Ezek. xviii. 6. Mountains of opposition removed by God's power, Zech. iv. 7.
- Mounts, i. e. besieging ramparts, Jer. xxxii. 24; xxxiii. 4, 5.
- Mountain country of Judah (Heb. *har*), its limits, Josh. xv. 48. Distinguished from the wilderness of Judah (Heb. *midbar*) r. 61. Suitable for the religious meditation of the priesthood, Josh. xxi. 15. 17.
- Mourning, why forbidden to the priests, Lev. x. 6, 7; xxi. 1. 4. 10: to Nazarites, Num. vi. 7: and to Israel in general, Deut. xiv. 1. Not so to Christians, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 32: save in excess, Lev. xix. 27. Deut. xiv. 1. 1 Chr. vii. 22. See *Death*. Period of mourning, Gen. i. 3. 10. Deut. xxiv. 8. Ezek. iii. 15. Its attire, Jer. viii. 21. Ezek. xxiv. 17. Mal. iii. 14: and bread, Ezek. xxiv. 17. Mourning women, Jer. ix. 17; xxii. 18. Amos v. 16. Heathenish rites practised by mourners, Jer. xvi. 6, 7. Outward signs of grief and indignation, Ezra ix. 3. Esther iv. 1. Jer. xiv. 2. 3; xli. 5; xlvii. 5.
- Mouse, the Egyptian hieroglyphic denoting pestilence, Isa. xxxvii. 36; lvi. 17.
- Mouth, of the sword, Prov. xii. 18. Isa. xlix. 2.
- Movers, *Phariseans*, cited, Gen. ix. 25. 2 Sam. viii. 3.
- 1 Kings v. 1. 6. 11; vii. 15; xiv. 24; xvi. 30—33: xviii. 28. 2 Kings v. 18; x. 25. 26; xvi. 3; xvii. 30. 31; xix. 37; xx. 13; xxi. 3. 1 Chr. iii. 24; iv. 42. 43; vi. p. 179; vii. 15; xix. 17; xxvii. 34; xxviii. 19; xxix. 7. 2 Chr. xxii. 8. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xvi, *notes* 1 and 3. Jer. x. 5; xxviii. p. 61; xli. 9. Ezek. viii. 14; xxvi. p. 215; xxvii. 3. 7. 13. 18.
- Mozah, Josh. xviii. 2. 6.
- Mulberry trees described, 2 Sam. v. 23. How made an appropriate sign of victory and of the Divine favour, r. 21.
- Mules, use of, explained, Gen. xxxvi. 24. 2 Sam. xiii. 29. The king's mule procured Absalom's death, 2 Sam. xviii. 9. Assigned to Solomon, 1 Kings i. 33. Employed for speed, Esther viii. 10.
- Müller, K. O., cited, Job xix. 25. Jonah i. 17.
- Müller, Max., cited, Dan. iii. 2.
- Munster, cited, Job ii. 23; iii. 2. Hagg. ii. 7.
- Munter, cited, Dan. vii. 4.
- Murder, punishment of death for, a command, not a mere permission, Gen. ix. 6. Man may not abolish it, Num. xxxv. 33. Yet there is in Christ pardon for all sin, Deut. xix. 11.
- Murmuring of Israel, our warning, Num. xi. 1. Its punishment the worse after the Law was given, *ib*. A proof or trial permitted by God, Deut. xxxiii. 8. The murmuring spirit of the nation, Mal. i. 2; iii. 14.
- Musical instruments of the Hebrews described and discriminated, 1 Sam. x. 5. 2 Sam. vi. 5. 1 Kings i. 40; x. 12. 1 Chr. xiii. 8; xv. 16. Job xxi. 12. All included in Ps. cl. 3—5. A false rendering, Eccles. ii. 8. Some invented by David, 1 Chr. xiii. 5. Amos vi. 5. Music of the Temple, spiritual and intellectual, rather than sensual, 1 Chr. xxv. 1. Danger of musical services without devotion, Amos v. 23. 24. Six kinds of instruments at Babylon distinguished, Dan. iii. 5.
- Muth-labben, explained, Ps. ix. p. 12.
- Mycale, battle of, Zech. ix. 1.
- Mylitta, the Syrian goddess, Dan. xi. 37.
- Myrrh, described, Gen. xxxvii. 25. Ex. xxx. 23. Chief of spices, its properties and relation to Christ's death, Cant. v. p. 145: and burial, Cant. i. 13.
- Myrtle, the lowly, how an emblem of Israel after the return from captivity, Zech. i. 8.
- Mystery of the call of the Gentiles, Isa. xliii. 9.
- Naamah, Josh. xv. 41. Job ii. 11.
- Naaman, how brought to be a meet receiver of God's benefit, 2 Kings v. 10. 11. 13. 15. Treated gently as being a fresh convert, r. 19. Taught disinterestedness by Elisha's example, *ib*. His healing an image of the Church working by the Word and Sacraments, *ib*.
- Naurath, Josh. xvi. 7.
- Nabal, like the other fool in the gospel, accounts all his own, not God's, 1 Sam. xxv. 11. 25.
- Nabonassar, era of, B.C. 747, 2 Kings xv. 25. His destruction of the acts of earlier kings, Isa. xliii. 13.
- Nabonedus, father of Belshazzar, Jer. xxvii. 7; li. 46. His reign and cylinders, Dan. v. 1.
- Nabopolassar, father of Nebuchadnezzar, his weakness, Jer. xli. 2. His conquest of Assyria, Hab. p. 95.
- Naboth, a type of Christ in his life and character, Vol. iii. p. 80. Hos. i. 11. His sons also slain, 2 Kings ix. 26.
- Nachmanides, cited, Ex. xii. 40.
- Nachon, and Chidon (1 Chr. xiii. 9) not Proper Names, 2 Sam. vi. 6.
- Nadab and Abihu perhaps sinned through wine, Lev. x. 1; xvi. 1; xxii. 2. Punished by that in which they sinned, Lev. x. 2. Their fate a warning against strange doctrine, *ib*. Defilement caused by their bodies, Num. ix. 6.
- Nævius, cited, Jer. vi. 9.
- Nägelsbach, cited, Vol. v. Part 2. p. xv, *notes* 2 and 4. Also *passim* throughout the book of Jeremiah and in Lam. i. 2; ii. 18; iii. 19. 20. 34—36.
- Nahaliel, stream of, its meaning and course, Num. xxi. 19.
- Nahallal, Josh. xiv. 15. *Nahallal*, Josh. xxi. 35.
- Nahshon, an ancestor of Christ, Num. i. 7. 1 Chr. ii. 10.
- Nahum, book of, a complement to Jonah, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xiv. Nah. i. 3. Since the repentance of Nineveh was not lasting, he speaks in wrath rather than in mercy, exhibiting the stricter side of God's dealings, *ib*. Connecting link of this book with Micah's, Nah. p. 87; ch. i. 4. Christ, the Avenger of His people, the principal agent in this spiritual prophecy, p. 87. Nahum's significant name (Nah. iii. 7. Hab. p. 95), and date, *ib*. View of the far off future beyond

- the horizon of the first sense, Nah. i. 15. Hab. p. 95. Nineveh, the conqueror of Egypt and Ethiopia, itself overthrown, Nah. iii. 10, 11, 18.
- Nail, its use in tents, applied spiritually in metaphor, Judg. iv. 21. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 100. Isa. xxii. 25. Zech. x. 4. Proenres shelter from wind and rain, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 91. Eccles. xii. 11.
- Naioth, not a Proper Name, 1 Sam. xiv. 19.
- Naked, used comparatively, not absolutely, 1 Sam. xiv. 21.
- Nakedness, the full meaning of the expression stated, Gen. ii. 25. Lev. xviii. 6. Deut. xxiv. 1.
- Name, often equivalent to person, Ex. xx. 7. God's revelation of Himself, Ps. cxxxviii. 2. God sanctifieth His Name, Ezek. xxxvi. 23. His Divine essence, Prov. xviii. 10. The Name absolutely, that of God, Lev. xxiv. 11: glorious and fearful, Deut. xxviii. 58. Also applied to Christ, *ib.* Planting for a Name, Ezek. xxxiv. 29: that One Name into which we are baptized, Zech. xiv. 9.
- Names sometimes given to places by anticipation, Gen. xi. 31; xii. 6, 8; xiv. 7, 14; xxxi. 21; xxxii. 3; xxxvi. 12. Josh. iv. 19. Judg. xv. 9. 1 Sam. iv. 1. Four persons named before their birth, Gen. xvii. 19. Isa. xlv. 28. Names prophetic of the person's destiny, Josh. vii. 28. 1 Kings xi. 26. Names given anew for a new reason, Gen. xxvi. 33. Judg. x. 4. Prescribing a change of another's name an assertion of ownership, 2 Kings xiii. 31; xxiv. 17. Dan. i. 7. Women sometimes renamed on their marriage, Gen. xxvi. 31. A variety of names sometimes given to the same person (2 Sam. xxiii. 8. 2 Kings xii. 21), to indicate various attributes, Gen. ii. 19: or names of cognate meaning, 2 Kings xiv. 21. Some names common to both sexes, 1 Chr. i. 36; iv. 17. Names sometimes belied by acts, Ezek. xi. 1. Names of martyrs and saints suppressed in Scripture, yet written in the Book of Life, 2 Sam. xxiii. 13. 1 Kings iv. 8. 2 Chr. xxvii. 8. Jer. xxvi. 20. Men were wont to inscribe on their persons the names of their gods, generals, or masters, Isa. xlv. 5. The case reversed in Christ, Isa. xlix. 16. The names of Cain's and of Seth's descendants much alike, yet this is no indication of confusion or falsehood. Moral significance of the fact, Gen. iv. 17. Names of evil things hateful to God, Zeph. i. 4. Zech. xiii. 2.
- Naphtali, how a hind let loose, Gen. xlix. 21. His proper place in the list of the tribes, Num. i. 4. Fertility of his country praised by Moses: how spiritually satisfied, Deut. xxxiii. 23. Boundaries of his tribe, within which Christ preached, Josh. xix. 32. Content to dwell with the Canaanites, even in a city of idolatry, Judg. i. 33.
- Naphtulim, located, Gen. x. 13.
- Napier, Sir R., conqueror of Abyssinia, Isa. xxviii. 7.
- Natalis Alexander, cited, Gen. v. 1; vii. 2, 8, 9. Josh. ix. p. 30. Judg. xi. 40; xvi. 30. 1 Kings iii. 7. Vol. iii. p. 361, note 4. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 74, note 3.
- Nathan, (1) the prophet, 2 Sam. vii. 2. His inconsiderate speech (*c.* 3) honestly corrected, *v.* 17. His holy boldness compared with similar cases, 2 Sam. xii. 7. "The holy one," Ps. lxxxix. 19. (2) Son of David, progenitor of Christ, 1 Kings iv. 5. 1 Chr. iii. 5. Ancestor of Salathiel, *v.* 17. A subordinate branch of David's house, Zech. xii. 12, 13.
- Nations, seventy, springing from Noah's three sons, their names and distribution, Gen. x. 1—32. Analogy of Israel, which people was a Microcosm, Dent. xxiii. 8.
- National establishments of true religion, prescribed by God, and a blessed institution, Isa. xlix. 23. Their overthrow a national calamity, but may incidentally minister to the promotion of personal religion, Ezek. xxxiii. 8. They have no claim to reverence, independently of God's appointment, Amos vii. 13.
- Natures, two, of Christ, manifested at Peniel, Gen. xxxii. 24: and at Gilgal, Josh. v. 13: to Manassah, Judg. xiii. 19. Dimly perceived from Job ix. 33; xvi. 21; xvii. 3; xix. 23, 25; xxxiii. 23. Typified by the two birds of the leper's offering, Lev. xiv. 4, 6, and by the two goats on the day of Atonement (*see Atonement*), Lev. xvi. 8. This doctrine the great stumbling-block of the Jews and other monotheists, yet a strong proof of the truth of Christianity, Deut. xiii. 1. Christ's proper humanity proved, Ps. xvi. 9. Isa. vii. 15; xxxii. 2. The two Natures set forth, Ps. xlv. p. 68; *vv.* 6, 7; lxviii. 18; lxxx. 17; lxxxv. p. 135. Cant. v. 11. Isa. xxxii. 2. Jer. xxxiii. 5, 6. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxii. Hag. ii. 7. Zech. vi. 10—14; viii. 23: and very clearly, Zech. xi. 13; xii. 10; xiii. 7.
- Nazarite, vow of, its purpose and spiritual significance, Num. vi. 2. Christian Nazarites, Amos ii. 11, 12. Christ not literally a Nazarite, yet He and His members are so in fact, Num. vi. 2, 8. Judg. xiii. 5. Like Samson the Nazarite we cannot lose our gifts but by our own act, Num. vi. 2. Hair
- the crown of man's glory, *v.* 5. Judg. xiii. 5; xvi. 19: much more of woman's, Num. vi. 2. S. Paul's action, *v.* 13. The four sacrifices represent the fulness of Christ's One Offering under different aspects, *v.* 14 (*see Sacrifice*). Our chief glory and emblem of strength must be resigned to God, as did Christ at Calvary, *v.* 18. Punctual observances of stated ordinances conduce to the highest degree of spirituality, Judg. xiii. 5. Lesson to the Christian Nazarite, Judg. xvi. 19. Respective deaths of the three Nazarites of New Testament, *v.* 30. Absalom alleged to be a Nazarite, 2 Sam. xiv. 26. Nazarites sullied with sorrow, Lam. iv. 7. Sin of tempting them, Amos ii. 12.
- Neale, Dr. J. M., cited, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xiv, notes 2 and 5. Ps. i. p. 2.
- Nearehus, his fleet, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xii, note 6.
- Nebaioth, located, Gen. xxv. 13. Isa. lx. 7. Ezek. xxvii. 18.
- Nebot, site of, Num. xxvii. 12; xxxii. 38. Isa. xv. 2. Jer. xlviii. 1. The idol, Isa. xvi. 1. Jer. xxix. 9. Dan. i. 7.
- Nebuchadnezzar (or -drezzar, Jer. xxv. 1, &c.), son of Nahopolassar, orthography and meaning of his name, 2 Kings xxiv. 1. His inscriptions at Babylon, Isa. xlv. 1; xlvii. 5. His father's partner in the kingdom when, in Jehoiaquin's third year, he set out against Jerusalem (Dan. i. 1), and in his first and Jehoiaquin's fourth year (Jer. xxv. 1), *b.c.* 606, he took it, 2 Kings xxiv. 1. Parallel case of Titus and Vespasian, *ib.* Date of his association in the kingdom, *v.* 12. The strict reckoning followed, Dan. ii. 1. A mere instrument in God's hands, 2 Kings xxiv. 3, 13. Jer. xxv. 11—14. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. vi. His self-dedication (Dan. iii. 1. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xv); summary of his life, *ib.* His arrogance, Hab. i. 7. How called God's servant, Jer. xxv. 9; xxvii. 12; xlix. 19, 38: and sword, Zeph. ii. 12. The seventy years begin with his reign, and the battle of Carchemish, Jer. xlv. 10, 11—14. His prostration to Daniel, why accepted, Dan. ii. 46—49. Probable motive for his self-dedication, Dan. iii. 1. His disease not unknown to heathen writers, Dan. iv. pp. 14, 15. Lyeanthropy: its period, Dan. iv. 16.
- Nebular hypothesis, somewhat confirmed by the Mosaic record, Gen. i. 5.
- Nebuzar-adan, meaning of his name, 2 Kings xxv. 8. His office, Jer. xxxix. 9. His pious confession, Jer. xl. 2. His conduct to Jeremiah, Jer. xxxix. 13, 14; xl. 1—4.
- Nechiloth, explained, Ps. v. p. 7.
- Neck, its figurative use in Scripture, Prov. i. 9; iii. 3. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 126, note 6. Cant. iv. 9; vii. 4. Emblem of dignity or stubbornness, Hab. iii. 13.
- Neginoth, or *neginah*, explained, Ps. iv. p. 6; lxi. p. 92. Hab. iii. 19.
- Nehemiah (i. e. the comforter, Vol. iii. pp. 295, 6. Isa. xl. 1), his zeal for the Sabbath, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xiv, note 1. Neh. x. 31; xiii. 15. Ezek. xxii. 26: in remembrance of Jeremiah's language, Neh. xiii. 15. The Sabbath's untold benefit in making known the Scriptures, Vol. iii. p. 299. The Tishathah, Neh. x. 1. Mal. i. 8. The pious courtier, Neh. i. 1: and godly layman, Ezek. xlii. 26. His sorrow connected with the hopes inspired by prophecy, Neh. i. 3. His set time probably enlarged, Neh. ii. 6. His wise precautions against attack, Neh. iv. 13. His twelve years' stay at Jerusalem, and liberal spirit, Neh. v. 14, 15, 16. Psalms probably written by him, Ps. cii. p. 158; *v.* 9. His ejaculations for the reward of faith hereafter have prophetic reference to the later Pharisaic spirit of his nation. Unselfishness regards itself *ab extra*, Neh. v. 19; xiii. 11. Assailed by treacherous foes and by false prophets, he commends his just cause to God, Neh. vi. 4—14. His absence in Persia, and the evils that ensued, Neh. xiii. 6. As cleansing the Temple a type of Christ, *vv.* 8, 9. His penal proceedings judicial, not passionate, *v.* 25. His prayer, *v.* 29.
- Nehemiah, book of (*see Ezra, book of*). Its unity of authorship vindicated from objections, Neh. i. 4, 5; xii. 11. Its impartiality, Neh. iii. 1. The writer identified with Nehemiah, notwithstanding some change of persons, Vol. iii. p. 300: which is easily accounted for, Neh. i. 1; vii. 9; x. 30; xii. 31. In ancient Canonical lists sometimes included under Ezra, pp. 300, 325. The list, *ch.* vii., and public ceremony, *ch.* viii., a recognition and memorial of Zerubbabel's work a century before, Neh. viii. 1. Noble scene displayed in *ch.* xii., Vol. iii. p. 298. The list in *ch.* xi. is carried down a century later than that in 1 Chr. ix., Neh. xi. 4—6. Latest date in this book is *b.c.* 404, Neh. xii. 11. List of commentators, p. 300. Its best is Malachi, Neh. xiii. 9, in whose book this one really closes, *v.* 31.
- Neith, the Egyptian Athena, enters into composition of many Egyptian names, Gen. xli. 45. Jer. vii. 18. Her worship, Ex. ix. 8; xii. 12.
- Nelson, R., cited, Mal. i. 11, p. 160.

- Nemi, lake of, "speculum Dianæ," Cant. vii. 4.
 Nephew, in the Authorized version of the Bible, means only grandson, Judg. xii. 14. Job xviii. 19. Isa. xiv. 22.
 Nephthoah, Josh. xv. 9.
 Nergal, whence derived, 2 Kings xvii. 30. The Assyrian war-god, Jer. xxxix. 3. Nah. ii. 12.
 Nero, anecdote of, Amos vi. 6.
 Nethinims, derivation of, Ezek. iii. 17. Their functions, Ezra ii. 13; viii. 20. Neh. iii. 26. See *Gibeonites*.
 Netophathi, or *Netophath*, 1 Chr. ix. 16. Neh. xii. 28. Jer. xl. 8.
 Neumann, cited, Vol. v. Part 2. pp. vii. *note* 3; xii. *note* 10. Jer. ii. 31; iii. 1; v. 7.8; xxvii. 1; xl. 5; xlv. 20; xlix. 11. Lam. p. 139, *note* 4.
 Newcome, Archbp., cited, Zech. ix. p. 136.
 Newton, Bp., cited, Gen. ix. 27; xxvii. 29. Isa. xliii. 8. Dan. ii. 40; vii. 5; viii. 8; xi. 7. 18. Nah. ii. 1.
 Next Kinsman (see *Avenger*) of Ruth, his selfish irresolution, Ruth iv. 4. Like those willing to help the Church only so long as it suits them. What he lost by it, *ib.* Ready to redeem the inheritance to his own profit, by purchasing the three interests upon it, but not to wed the holy spouse, *vv.* 5, 6. Ceremony of the shoe, of what emblematical, *v.* 8. This old custom an enlargement of the Levitical law, yet grounded on it, *v.* 7.
 Nibhaz, 2 Kings xvii. 31.
 Nieander, cited, Job xl. 19.
 Nice, council of, the number of Fathers composing it, Gen. xiv. 14. Its creed, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. x, *note* 15.
 Nicophorus, cited, Ps. xxxiv. p. 47.
 Nicodemus, a type of courageous confessors who were once fearful, Isa. xxxii. 4.
 Nicolaitans, doctrine of, dissuading from martyrdom, Ps. cxli. 4.
 Nicolas, Sir H., cited, Dan. viii. 9.
 Niebuhr, cited, 2 Kings xix. 12. Isa. xxiii. 13. Jer. xxxvi. 22; xlv. 30; li. 13. 27. Ezek. xxv. 2. Dan. v. 1. Nah. iii. 18.
 Niebuhr, Marcus von, cited, Isa. xxxvii. 37. Jer. xlvii. 1; xlix. 28. 34. Jonah i. 2; iii. 3; iv. 11. Nah. ii. 1.
 Nile, the, under what name worshipped in Egypt, Gen. xli. 1. Ex. ix. 9; vii. 17. Why Pharaoh was met on its banks, Ex. vii. 15. Its wholesome waters, *v.* 18; and abundance of fish, *ib.* Num. xi. 9. Isa. xix. 9. Its inundation, Job xl. 23. Jer. xlv. 7. 8. "Flood of Egypt," Amos viii. 8. Called also "the sea," Job xli. 31. Isa. xix. 5. Nah. iii. 8. See *Sihor*.
 Nimrim, located, Isa. xv. 6. Jer. xlviii. 34.
 Nimrod, a descendant of Cush, Gen. x. 8. His power and violence, *vv.* 9. 11. Connected with Nineveh, *v.* 11. Land of, Mic. v. 6. His supposed share in building the tower of Babel, Gen. xi. 4.
 Nineveh, site and modern discoveries there, Gen. x. 11. 12. 2 Kings xix. 36. Nah. iii. 18. Its fertilizing pool, Nah. ii. 8. How three days' journey through it, Jonah iii. 3. State of the city in Jonah's time, *vv.* 6, 7. Plan of its four component cities, Jonah i. 2. Its population, Jonah iv. 11. Precise date of its fall uncertain, 2 Kings xxiii. 29. Nah. ii. 1; about the end of Josiah's reign, Hab. p. 95. In Nahum's time had relapsed from its repentance in Jonah's, Nah. i. 3. Its intemperance (Nah. ii. 5) and revelry the immediate causes of its fall, *v.* 10. The inundation turned against it, Nah. ii. 6. Its cruelty, Nah. iii. 1, and treachery, *v.* 4. Representative of worldly power opposed to God, *v.* 11. See *Asshur*.
 Nisroch, the idol, how represented, 2 Kings xix. 37.
 Nitre, i. e. natron, or mineral alkali, carbonate of soda, Prov. xxv. 20. Opposed to vegetable soap, Jer. ii. 22.
 No, Egyptian Thebes, Jer. xli. 25. Ezek. xxix. 10; xxx. 14. *No-amon*, on both sides the Nile, Nah. iii. 8.
 Noadiah, the false prophetess, Neh. vi. 14.
 Noah, how a type of Christ (Isa. liv. p. 157; *vv.* 10, 11): order of his sons' births discussed, Gen. v. 29. 32; x. 21. Baptized in the waters of the Flood, Gen. vii. 16: which shall never cover the Ark of the Church, Isa. liv. 9. 10, 11. Seven traditional precepts delivered to his sons, Gen. ix. 4. His drunkenness possibly not blameworthy, *v.* 21. Noah and Job as devout Gentiles, specified with Daniel, each of the three representing a class, and being a signal example of piety, Ezek. xiv. 14. See *Flood*.
 Nob, abode of the Tabernacle, 1 Sam. vii. 2; xxi. 1; Isa. x. 32. Its conjectured site, Ps. lii. 8.
 Noetians, their error, Ex. xx. 3.
 Noldius, cited, Gen. i. 2; iv. 23; v. 32. Ex. iv. 25; vi. 2, 3. Num. xxiv. 22. Judg. viii. 27. Jer. li. 58. Ezek. xx. 4.
 Noph (see *Memphis*), Isa. xix. 13. Jer. ii. 16; xlv. 1; xlv. 14. Ezek. xxix. 10; xxx. 13. 16.
 North (Heb. *mezarim*, Job xxxvii. 9), the Hebrew symbol of evil and darkness, Lev. i. 11. Deut. xi. 29. Ps. xlviii. 2. Ezek. i. 4; iii. 12. *Retrospect* pp. 278; 288. Joel ii. 20. The region whence came the Chaldeans, Jer. i. 14; viii. 16; x. 22; xxxi. 8. Ezek. i. 4; xi. 3. Joel ii. 20: and the Medes, Jer. i. 3: whither the ten tribes had been carried captive, Jer. xli. 12. The King of the north means the King of Syria, in reference to Palestine, Dan. xi. 5. 10. See *South*.
 Nose, its various senses in Scripture, Cant. vii. 4. 8. Contraction and relaxation of the nostrils figuratively applied, Isa. xlviii. 9. Ezek. viii. 17.
 Novatian heretics, pure in their own eyes, Prov. xxx. 11.
 Numbers, round, when the census of Israel was taken, not merely approximate, but a symbol of the Church's symmetry and fulness, Num. i. 21. See *Arithmetic*.
 Numbers, book of, summary of its contents, Vol. i. Part 1. *Intro.* pp. xxxv—vi. Time when the numbering took place, Num. i. 1. Religion first provided for, then civil polity, *v.* 2. God's Church militant, *vv.* 3. 20. Num. v. vi. might seem better placed in Leviticus, but the several books are only parts of one work, Num. v. 1. Dent. xxxi. 9. Each book assumes an acquaintance with those preceding it, Num. v. 8; vi. 22. Each supplementary to and pre-supposing the other, Num. xv. 22. Portions of the book not written at the very time spoken of, Num. ix. 22. See *Pentateuch*.
 Numerals, transcriptional errors in them are common in all kinds of manuscripts, Ex. xiv. 6, 7. 1 Sam. vi. 19; xiii. 5. 2 Chr. xxii. 2. No reason exists for suspecting such errors in the chronology of the Judges, Ruth iv. 20.
 Numerical majorities are no test of God's truth, Judg. vii. 2. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 114. 1 Kings xxii. 8. They who stand for God ("the little flock") are "the people," the rest but cyphers, Judg. vii. 8. 12.
 Nursing mothers of Scripture proposed for an example, Gen. xxi. 7. Cp. Gen. xxxv. 8. 1 Sam. i. 23. Weaning long deferred, *v.* 24. Hos. i. 8. Nursing fathers of the Church should be wise and loving, Isa. xlix. 23; lx. 16.
 Nuts, i. e. walnuts (Heb. and Persian, *egoz*), emblems of the Church planted in heathen lands, Cant. vi. 11.
 Nyanza, Albert, lake of, Job xl. 15.
 Oath, when lawful, Gen. xxi. 24. Ex. xxii. 11. Num. v. 19. Its three concomitants, Jer. iv. 2. An act of worship, Deut. vi. 13. Ps. lxxiii. 11. Jer. iv. 2. A false or unrighteous oath, Eccles. ix. 2. Zech. v. 3, 4. Mal. iii. 5. Whether imposed by the Pope or by others, Jer. iv. 2. God sweareth by Himself, Gen. xxii. 16. "By the life of Pharaoh," no oath, Gen. xlii. 15. Rash swearing, Lev. v. 4. Its consequences evaded by violence and equivocation, Judg. xxi. 22. Sin increased, if men keep silent when adjured, Lev. v. 1. An oath must be kept, though extorted by fraud, as that made to the Gibeonites, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 29. Josh. ix. 15. Job's form of swearing, Job xxvii. 2. David's compared with Herod's, 1 Sam. xxv. 22. Another form, 1 Kings ii. 23. "Oaths of the tribes" explained, Hab. iii. 9. The Church hath no such power of absolving from oaths as certain Councils claim for it and the Pope, Ezek. xvii. 15. 19.
 Obadiah, the prophet, his name significant (Vol. vi. Part 2. p. 57), rather imitated by Jeremiah than the reverse. Vol. v. Part 2. p. ix, *note* 2. Jer. xxxviii. 22; xlix. 7. 9. Obad. p. 57. Monograph against Edom, as typical of an unbrotherly and uncharitable spirit in the Church's natural allies, a phase of Anti-christianism, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xiii. xiv. 57. How fulfilled, Obad. 2. Linked on to Amos by a word (Edom) expanding the prophecy, p. 57. His date and proper place in the canon, *ib.* Cites Joel and Amos, *v.* 17. Never uses the word Elohim: why, p. 57. A prophetic warning against Edom's hostility to Israel, not a narrative of the past, *vv.* 11. 12. Enlarges upon Joel's predictions of the extent of Christ's kingdom, *v.* 20: and that by means of the Apostles and preachers of the Gospel as saviours, *v.* 21. See *Edom*.
 Obed-edom, his courage and faith in receiving the Ark (see *Ark, in the Tabernacle*), 2 Sam. vi. 11. A blessing on him, 1 Chr. xxvi. 4. No chronological difficulty in regard to his grandsons, *ib.* His family, 2 Chr. xxv. 24.
 Oblation, the prayer of, in the primitive Liturgies, partly framed on David's Eucharistic supplication, 1 Chr. xxix. 11. 14.
 Oboth, in the Araba, its location and meaning, Num. xxi. 10; xxxiii. 43.
 Oded, (1) *z* Chr. xv. 1. (2) A prophet, 2 Chr. xxviii. 9.
 Oeheler, cited, Dan. v. 1.
 Oetinger, cited, Prov. xxvii. 17.

- Offertory, applicable to the maintenance of the clergy, Lev. i. 6; vii. 7. To be gathered from rich and poor alike, Lev. i. 14. Free will offerings for the cost of Divine Service, Vol. i. Part 2, p. 85.
- Officers, seven classes of in the Empire of Babylon discriminated, Dan. iii. 2.
- Oholah and Oholibah, symbolic names, explained, Ezek. xxiii. 4.
- Oil, its typical significance of spiritual grace, Gen. xxviii. 18. Ex. xxv. 31—39; xxx. 25. Lev. ii. 1; xiv. 17. 1 Kings i. 39. Zech. iv. 2. Mal. i. 11. Formed part of the daily offering, Mic. vi. 7. Its absence noted, Num. v. 15. The High Priest consecrated by anointing, Ex. xxix. 7. Ps. exxxiii. 2. See *Anointing*. The Spirit of Love is the unction from the Holy One, Ps. cxxxii. 2. Christ's name as ointment, Cant. i. 3. The oil of joy, Isa. lxi. 3: of grace, Ezek. xxxii. 14: of gold, Zech. iv. 12. Two "sons of oil," of what typical, Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. xix. 121. Zech. iv. 11: whether of Christ's Priesthood and Monarchy, or of the Old and New Testaments, Zech. iv. 11—14; vi. 13.
- Oken, cited, Jonah i. 17.
- Old age, its sorrows, Job xiv. 21, 22, due to sin: Josh. xiv. 10, 11. Conquests won by aged believers, *ib.* If holy, it should be honoured, 1 Kings ii. 6. Solomon's picture not one of unmingled gloom, Eccles. xii. 5. To be reckoned by wisdom not by years, Isa. lxx. 20. Regarded as a blessing, Zech. viii. 4.
- Oliver Cromwell, his guilty fears, Job xv. 21—23.
- Olives, mount of, its connexion both with David and with Christ, 2 Sam. xv. 30. Site of Solomon's idolatrous worship, 1 Kings xi. 5, 7. The mount of Corruption, 2 Kings xxiii. 13. Scene of Ezekiel's vision of the glory of God, on the site of Christ's Ascension, Ezek. xi. 22, 23. Titus began the siege of Jerusalem on this spot, Zech. xiv. 4. As Christ ascended thence, so there it may please Him to stand in glory, Zech. xiv. 4, 5. Symbolically represented as cleft asunder by an earthquake, *ib.*
- Ollivant, Bp., cited, Gen. ii. 4; p. 14.
- Olshausen, characterized, Vol. iv. Part 2, p. x, note 1.
- Olympiodorus, described, Job xlii. 1. Cited, Job i. 1, 4, 7; iii. 8; xxvi. 13; xxviii. p. 70; xxxiii. 8—10; xxxviii. 32; xl. 15, 16; xli. 1, 5, 13, 24, 30, 31; xliii. 13, 14. Prov. v. 3; vii. 26. Jer. xvii. 11.
- Omer (not *homer*), a measure filled by the grains of one sheaf, about four English pints, Ex. xvi. 36. Num. xxviii. 5. Its exact definition necessary, and no interpolation, Ex. xvi. 36. See *Measures*.
- Omission, sins of, first named, Num. xv. 22.
- Omri, regarded as the great founder of a dynasty, 1 Kings xvi. 16. 2 Kings viii. 26. 2 Chr. xxii. 2. Builds Samaria, 1 Kings xvi. 24. His statutes, Mic. vi. 16.
- On, or *Beth-shelesh* (which see), Heliopolis, described, Gen. xli. 45. Jer. xliii. 13. Or *Aven*, Ezek. xxx. 17.
- One to another, the Hebrew idiom expressing that notion explained, Ex. xxvi. 3. The phrase indicates the unity of the Church, *ib.* "One in the midst," how applicable to the Roman Pontiff, Isa. lxvi. 17.
- Ono, 1 Chr. vii. 12. Neh. vi. 2; xi. 35.
- Onomasticon, the, cited, 1 Sam. xxii. 5. 2 Sam. vi. 10. Jer. xlviii. 32, 34.
- Ophel, site of, 2 Chr. xxvii. 3; xxxiii. 14. Neh. iii. 26; xi. 21. Its derivation, Hab. ii. 4. "The tower that lieth out," Neh. iii. 26. "The forts," Isa. xxxiii. 14.
- Ophni, Josh. xviii. 24.
- Ophrah, in Benjamin, Josh. xviii. 23. 1 Sam. xiii. 17. A second, Judg. vi. 11.
- Ophir, its location, Gen. x. 29. In South Arabia, 1 Kings ix. 28; x. 14; xxii. 48. Job xxii. 24. Spiritual significance of Solomon's traffic there, 1 Kings ix. 28.
- Oppert, Dr. J., cited, 2 Kings x. 32; xv. 19. 2 Chr. xxxii. 1; xxxiii. 11. Isa. x. 8, 9, 28—32; xiv. 8, 14; xv. p. 45; xviii. p. 51; xx. 1, 5, 6; xxi. 11, 13; xlv. 1; xlvii. 5. Jer. li. 13, 27, 44. Ezek. iv. 1. Dan. iii. 1; iv. 30. Nah. iii. 10.
- Opportunity, that for doing good short, ere the night come, Eccles. xi. 3.
- Optatus, S., cited, Num. xxy. 7.
- Oracle, the (Heb. *dehir*), a spot in the Temple, 1 Kings vi. 5, 20. 2 Chr. iv. 20; v. 9. Divine utterance (Heb. *ne'um*), Ps. xxxvi. 1. Isa. lvi. 8. Heathen oracles often delivered in dark caves, Isa. xlv. 19; lxx. 4.
- Order prescribed in the Church, Num. i. 52; vii. 11; xvi. 46. Three orders of clergy in the Old Testament as in the New, Num. iii. 9; viii. 7; xviii. 2. Jer. xxxiii. 18—22. Possibly prefigured, Josh. xvii. 4.
- Origen, characterized, Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* pp. xi. note 2; xix. Dent. xiii. 1. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 123, note 3. Connected with Egypt, Ps. lxxviii. 31. Cited, Vol. i. Part 1. *Pref.* pp. xi, notes 4 and 8, 37. Gen. i. 29; xix. 32; xxi. 8, 19; xxii. 8; xxv. 11, 23, 24; xlix. 1, 3, 4, 8, 9, 10, 11. Vol. i. Part 1. p. 234. Ex. xiv. 23; xv. 25, 27; xvi. 5; xviii. 2, 3. Vol. i. Part 1. p. 289. Ex. xxv. 17; xxxiv. 29, 33. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 1. Lev. vi. 18. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 32. Lev. xi. 13; xii. 2; pp. 38, 48. Lev. xvi. 29 (his date); xix. 26. Num. i. 3; iii. 39; xii. 1, 14; xvi. 38; xvii. 8; xviii. 12; xxi. 16; xxii. 20, 22, 28; xxiii. 24; xxiv. 2, 9; xxv. 1, 7; xxvii. 15; xxviii. 2; xxxi. 22; xxxii. 20—33. Deut. i. 3; xiii. 1; xiv. 6; xxi. 11, 19; xxiv. 6; xxvii. 12; xxviii. 13; xxxiii. 2, 7. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xviii, notes 4 and 6. Josh. i. 12; ii. 18, 19; iii. 7, 16; iv. 10; v. 2, 9, 13. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 18. Josh. vi. 5; vii. 21; viii. 29, 30—35. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 30. Josh. x. 7, 42; p. 38; xi. 1; xiii. 1; xiv. 10, 11; xv. 63; xix. 49; xxii. p. 68; xxiv. 30. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 80, note 7. Judg. i. 1; ii. 22. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 91. Judg. iii. 11, 12, 29; iv. 23; v. 1; pp. 110, 114. Judg. xv. 4; pp. 158, 160, note 8. Ruth iii. 9. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. vii, note 1. 1 Sam. xxviii. 11, 12. 2 Kings xxi. 16. Vol. iii. p. 325. Job i. 1, 11; xix. 26; xl. 8; xli. 1, 5. Ps. xxii. 20; xxiii. p. 32; xxvii. p. 37; v. 5; xxxv. p. 49; xl. 6; xlvii. 5; xlviii. 12, 13; xlix. 14; lx. 1; lxi. 2; lxx. 9, 12; lxxi. p. 97; lxxix. 22; cxxvii. 2; cxlvii. 13; cxlix. 5; cl. 3—5. Prov. v. 15; vii. 26. Vol. iv. Part 3, pp. 123, 127, note 1. Cant. i. 1, 2, 3, 6, 14; ii. 15; iv. 3; vii. 11. Isa. ii. 22; iv. 1; vi. 1; xi. 6—9; xix. 1; xxxii. 20; xlviii. 16; lii. 13—15; lxiii. 1. Jer. i. 2, 3, 5; xiii. 11; xxxvi. 3; i. 8, 28; li. 7. Lam. p. 138; eh. iii. 5. Ezek. i. 1; vii. 10, 27; viii. 14; ix. 4; xiv. 14; xvi. 4, 53, 63; xvii. 23; xxv. 10; xxviii. p. 221. *Retrospect*, p. 278, note 7. Hos. vi. 2. Hab. iii. 2. Zech. iii. 4. Mal. i. 5.
- Original sin, a consequence of man's fall, Job xiv. 4. Eccles. vii. 29; viii. p. 110. Causes man to be impure, in birth, disease, and death, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 36, 37. Hence Christ's birthday alone is kept in the Church, Lev. xii. 2, 3. Why it should be confessed as personal guilt, Ps. li. 5. Its miserable condition, Ezek. xvi. 3, 4.
- Orion (Heb. *eesil*), the impious hunter Nimrod, Job ix. 9; xxxviii. 31. Isa. xliii. 10. Amos v. 8.
- Ormuzd, the Persian deity, Esther iii. 2. Dan. vi. 7.
- Osiander, cited, Deut. xxxiii. 1. Job xiv. 22. Cant. ii. 10. Isa. lxx. 9.
- Ostrich, the, why called *αστρογος*, the impious. Its description and habits, as contrasted with the stork (Ps. civ. 17), Job xxxix. 13, 14, 16, 17, 18. Lam. iv. 3.
- Othniel, of Judah, 1 Chr. iv. 13: first Judge of Israel, compared to S. Peter, the chief apostle: Babylonia also with Rome, Judg. iii. 10.
- Onches, the word explained, Ex. xxviii. 11.
- Outram, cited, Lev. iii. 1.
- Ovid, his primitive tradition respecting the creation, Gen. i. 26. Cited, Gen. xlv. 4. 2 Sam. xi. 1; xxiii. 16. Neh. iv. 17. Job xxvi. 7; xxix. 18. Prov. vi. p. 12; v. 13; ix. 17. Eccles. iii. 2. Dan. iv. 16. Hab. ii. 6. Zeph. ii. 2.
- Owl, the, or rather Ostrich, Job xxx. 29. Isa. xlii. 21; xxxiv. 13; xliii. 20. Mic. i. 8.
- Ox, the, an emblem of holy labour, 1 Kings vii. 27—39. 2 Chr. iv. 3: especially in the ministry, 1 Kings vii. 25. Eccles. xii. 11. Isa. xxxii. 20. A clean animal, as opposed to the ass, *ib.* The wild ox, or antelope, Isa. li. 26. Sacred ox (*Apis*) of Egypt, Jer. xlv. 15. Egypt, the fair heifer (*Io*), v. 20. Mystic exposition of, Hab. iii. 2.
- Oxymoron, the figure exemplified, Lam. i. 15. Zech. ix. 1.
- Padan, or *Padan-aram*, or *Aram*, location of, Gen. xxv. 20. Num. xxiii. 7.
- Pagnini, cited, Joel ii. 23. Zech. vii. 2.
- Painting the face, an Eastern custom, 2 Kings ix. 30. Prov. v. 25. Jer. iv. 30. Ezek. xxxii. 40: with *sibion*, Job xlii. 14. Isa. liv. 11.
- Palestina, Ex. xv. 14. Isa. xiv. 29, 31: or *Philistia*, Ps. lx. 8, the country of the Philistines. See *Philistines*.
- Palestine, or the Holy Land, its chief districts, Jer. xvii. 26. Not much larger than Devonshire and Cornwall, Vol. vi. Part 2, p. viii. Though of narrow limits and scanty population, Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. ix, yet it is to the spiritual world, what Attica was to the intellectual, a proof of the superiority of mind over matter, of spirit over sense, p. xii, and note 2: enabling us to contemplate the workings of Divine Power concentrated as in a focus, p. xiii. How an *ουφας* γης, Isa. xlii. p. 36. Its harvests, Josh. v. 11 (see *Rain*). Judg. xv. 1. Ruth i. 22. Its partridges, 1 Sam. xxvi. 20.

- Its sycomore trees, now rare, 1 Kings x. 27. Its vast population in David's age, 1 Chr. xxi. 5. Why called "the pleasant land," Dan. viii. 9. Zech. vii. 14: "the glorious land," Dan. xi. 16. 41. God's threatenings upon it accomplished both physically and spiritually, Deut. xxix. 23.
- Palimpsest, or *codex rescriptus*, an emblem of the present state of the book of nature, bleared and blotted by the enemy's hand, Gen. iii. 17.
- Palindromy of Isaiah, Isa. i. 30.
- Palladius, cited, Ezek. iv. 1.
- Palm-branches, figures of holy triumph, 1 Kings vii. 36. Suggestive of the feast of Tabernacles, 1 Kings vi. 29. Vitality of the palm-tree in the wilderness may have given rise to the fable of the phoenix, Job xiv. 7. Ps. xcii. 12. No reference to it in Job xxix. 18.
- Palm, the, of the open hand, a symbol of free grace, Ezek. Retrospect, p. 279.
- Palmer, Dr. E., of Lincoln, cited, Dan. iv. 16.
- Pannag, Ezek. xxvii. 17.
- Pantheism, the world's religion, Gen. xxxi. 53. 2 Kings xvii. 29. Its refutation, Deut. vi. 4. Jer. xiv. 22. The disease of some great wits, 1 Kings xi. p. 45. Idolatry first steals in by means of an equivocal syncretism, Judg. viii. 33. 1 Kings iii. 16—27. Zeph. i. 5. Mixed worship ends in the abolition of the true, 2 Kings xvi. 15. Cp. Ezra iv. 3. Put to flight in times of extreme danger, Jonah i. 6. Micah's a religion of compromise: his domestic pantheon, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 81. Judg. xvii. 3. Baal's altar must be thrown down before God's is built, Judg. vi. 25.
- Papacy, the, a spiritual Nile or Euphrates, Ex. vii. 17. An Egypt, Dan. xi. 40, 42, 43. The little horn, Dan. vii. 8. Its mysterious power, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xv. Spoiled by the Infidel Antichrist, Dan. xi. 43. See *Pope*.
- Papyrus Nilotica*, cyperus or bulrush, described, Ex. ii. 3. Job viii. 11. Isa. xxviii. 2. Ships of reed (Heb. *ebek*), Job ix. 26. Instrumental in preserving both the life and writings of Moses, Ps. lxxviii. 30.
- Parable (Heb. *mashal*), a divinely-inspired utterance, Num. xxi. 27; xxiii. 7. Job xxvii. 1. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xi, and note 3. Prov. i. 1. Hab. ii. 6: relating to deep mysteries, Job xxix. 1. The of the Old Testament are preparatory to Christ's teaching, 2 Sam. xii. 1. 1 Kings iv. 32. Isa. xxviii. 23—29. Jewish history rightly so called, Ps. lxxviii. 2. The term why applicable to a prophecy against Babylon, Isa. xiv. 4. Elicits self-condemnation from sinners, 1 Kings xx. 35—42: and tests men's tempers and dispositions, Ezek. xx. 49. See *Fable*, *Proverb*.
- Paradox, a noble, Prov. xvi. 17: a happy, Prov. xx. 30: an evangelical, Isa. ii. 2; x. 27.
- Parah, Josh. xviii. 23.
- Paran, wilderness of, Gen. xxi. 21. Deut. xxxiii. 2. Hab. iii. 3. *El-paran*, Gen. xiv. 6. Its geographical position, Num. x. 12; xii. 16. 1 Sam. xxv. 1. 1 Kings xix. 4. Its northern district also called *Zin*, Num. xiii. 21. Deut. i. 1.
- Parbar, 1 Chr. xxvi. 18.
- Parmenio, Alexander's general, Zech. ix. 1.
- Partridge, its alleged habits, Jer. xvii. 11.
- Parvaim, the word discussed, 2 Chr. iii. 6.
- Pascal, *Pensées*, cited, Gen. v. 32.
- Pashur, his rank and parentage, Jer. xx. 1. His name changed, v. 3.
- Passover, the, origin of the name, Ex. xii. 11. Reference to it, Isa. xxxi. 5. Celebrated the birth of the Jewish nation, Ex. xii. 2. Proved to be typical of Christ, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 234. Isa. liii. 7. He, our Passover (Ex. xii. 2) was murdered by those who were in the act of keeping it, Ps. xlv. 16; lviii. 9. This was the season both of the Jews' great sin and of their punishment, Hos. v. 7. The Passover now abolished in the letter, not in the spirit, Ex. xii. 6. 14. In the judgment of the Church of England the Passover is spiritually perpetuated in the Lord's Supper, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 234. The neglect of which is a sin the same in kind as to refuse to eat the Passover, Ex. xii. 15. A lamb or kid to be taken for a household of not less than ten, v. 3. Num. ix. 2. Why of the first year, Ex. xii. 5. "In the evening," explained, v. 6. Blood on the door-post typical of Christ's redemption, v. 7. 13. Bread why to be unleavened, v. 8. 15. Ex. xxiii. 18. Why no bone was to be broken, v. 46. Only one Passover kept in the wilderness, Num. ix. 2. Not many lambs left after it, Num. xi. 22. Thenceforward in abeyance during the wandering, Num. xxviii. 16. No servile work might be done on the first and seventh days, the holy convocations, Lev. xxiii. 7. Time of barley harvest, the wave-sheaf being offered on the 16th of Abib, v. 11: before which consecration it might not be eaten, v. 14. Type of the Resurrection of Christ, the First-fruits, v. 11. The offerings of that day foreshadow the Holy Eucharist, v. 13. Questions regarding the number of required victims, and the work devolving on only three officiating priests, Num. ix. 2. Supplementary passover in the second month for those unavoidably absent, v. 10. 2 Chr. xxx. 2. Its institution repeated with some additions, Deut. xvi. 2. All great national movements henceforth began with keeping it, Josh. v. 10. Full account of that of Josiah, just before God cast away His people, 2 Chr. xxxv. 1. 18. The modern Jews cannot keep a true Passover, Num. ix. 10. Those of Hezekiah and Josiah specially described, as just preceding the two dispersions of the nation, and leading the faithful mind to spiritual communion with Christ, 2 Kings xxiii. 21. That in Ezekiel's vision a continual feast, the offering of the True Passover, Ezek. xlv. 21.
- Past tense, the, used to denote the certainty of a future event, Num. xxiv. 17. Ps. cx. 5, 6; cxxxvii. 8. Jer. xxxiii. 4, 5. Wrongly set in the English version for the future, Obad. p. 57; v. 11. 12. Present would be preferable to future, Hab. i. 7.
- Pastors, Christian, must ever be hated by the world, Gen. xlv. 31. Those slighted by the world may prevail with God, Joel. ii. 16. Care for them in Christian states, Gen. xlvii. 22. Importance to theologians not to be exempt from the pastoral care, Mal. ii. 7. Their preaching, without God's Spirit, as the mere jawbone of an ass, Judg. xv. 17. Pastoral care of the Church, prospered by Christ the Shepherd waiting at the water-troughs of His Word and Sacraments, Cant. vii. 5. Pastors bound to warn of the approach of danger, Ezek. iii. 17, and to reclaim men from heresy, Ezek. xxxiv. 4. See *Clergy*. The term sometimes used of civil rulers, Jer. xxiii. p. 50. Ezek. xxxiv. 2, 10, 17.
- Pathros, i.e. Upper Egypt, Isa. xi. 11. Jer. xlv. 1. Ezek. xxix. 14. Pathrusim, located, Gen. x. 13.
- Patience, the, of God's people, tried to reward them that are steadfast, Hagg. i. 1.
- Patriarchs, their failings involve something figurative. The main defect of their moral character, Gen. xxvi. 7; xxvii. 19. Jacob's sons, twelve, like the Apostles; the two bodies compared, Gen. xxix. 35; xxxiv. 25—31; xxxv. 18. Successive, though varying, types of Christ from Abraham downwards, Gen. xxxiv. 1.
- Patrick, Bp., cited, Gen. i. 6; ii. 9; xvii. 10, 11; xxviii. 19. Ex. vi. 2, 3. Deut. vi. 4; xxxiii. 17. Josh. viii. 30—35. 1 Sam. vi. 19; vii. 16; xxvi. 11. 2 Sam. v. 8; xviii. 9; xxii. p. 122. 1 Kings xi. p. 45. 2 Kings xxii. 8. 14; xxiii. 5. 6. 27. 30. 1 Chr. i. 17; ii. 6; iii. 24; iv. 9; ix. 22; xxiii. 29. 2 Chr. iii. 1; vii. 1; xix. 11; xx. 6; xxii. 2; xxiv. 3; xxx. 1; xxxv. 3; xxxvi. 8. 9. Neh. x. 34. Job xxxii. p. 71.
- Paulinus, cited, Job viii. 14. Ps. xxxii. 22.
- Paulus Aegineta, cited, Dan. iv. 16.
- Paulus, cited, Zech. ix. p. 136.
- Pausanias, cited, Gen. xxviii. 19. Isa. xlii. 19.
- Peace, religious, what it comprises, Isa. xlviii. 22; liii. 5. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xvii, note 8. Mic. v. 5. It prevailed in the world when Christ came, Mic. iv. 3. Hagg. ii. 9.
- Peace offering, described, Ex. xx. 24. Lev. iii. 1. 1 Sam. ix. 13. Eucharistic in its character, Ex. xxiv. 5. Lev. iii. 1. 1 Sam. x. 8; xi. 15. What is signified thereby, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 1. Lev. iii. 1. Deut. xxvii. 6, 7. Part eaten by the offerer when feasting on the sacrifice, Lev. iii. 1; viii. 30. 1 Sam. i. 4. 25. 1 Kings viii. 63. 2 Chr. xxx. 22; xxxv. 13: which portion Eli's sons took by force, 1 Sam. ii. 13. When to be offered: why fourth in order after the sin-offering, burnt offering, and meat-offering, Lev. iii. 1. Cp. Lev. ix. 4: as being a consummation of the others, Num. vi. 18. A proper analogue to the Eucharist, both as a sacrifice and as a feast of love, Lev. iii. 1. Also as a thank-offering: this Levitical Law reading like an Eucharistic homily, Lev. vii. 11. 12. Leavened bread to be offered by itself: the typical sense of this requirement may perhaps have a prophetic meaning in regard to the Eucharistic controversy, v. 13. The remainder to be burnt on the third day, v. 17. The cup a part of the offering, Ps. cxvi. 13. Guilt of receiving unworthily, Lev. vii. 21. This called the sacrifice of perfecting or of salvation, Lev. viii. 22. Offered at Pentecost for the whole congregation, Lev. xxiii. 19.
- Peacock, the, this word seems rightly rendered only in 1 Kings x. 22. The name Eastern, *ib*. How the birds came into the West, *ib*. Solomon's concern for such things a token of moral degeneracy, *ib*. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 86, note 1.
- Pearson, Bp., characterized, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. x. Cited, Gen. i. 1; ii. 7; xxxvii. 28; xli. 43; l. 8. Ex. i. 1; vi. 2, 3; xii. 2. 5. 9. 46; xv. 20; xxii. 31. Vol. i. Part 1. p. 289. Ex. xxix. 7. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 14. Lev. xvi. 2; xviii. 18; xxv. 48. Num. xiii. 16; xviii. 8; xxii. 28. Deut. iv. 35; vi. 4. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. x. Josh. i. 1. 12; ii. 19; iii. 7; v.

- 2; x. 24. Judg. ix. 9; xvi. 3. 1 Sam. x. 1. 24; xxv. 6. 2 Sam. ii. 4; v. 3. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxv, note 2. 1 Kings i. 39; xvii. 17; xix. 16. 2 Kings ii. 2; xvii. 1; xxiv. 6. 1 Chr. iii. 21; xxiii. 13; xxix. 11. Ezra ii. 63. Neh. vii. 7, 8; ix. 6. 27. Job i. 21; v. 1; vii. 9; xiv. 4; xix. 25. 26. Ps. xvi. 9; xxvi. p. 36. Prov. iv. 3; xviii. 30. 34; xvi. 4. Cant. iii. 10; vi. 9. 12. Isa. vii. 14; xlv. 7; lii. 13—15. Jer. xxiii. 5. 6; xxx. 9; xxxi. 22; xxxiii. 15, 16. Ezek. xxiv. 23; *Retrospect* p. 284, note 3. Dan. vii. 13; xii. 2. Hos. xi. 1; xiii. 14. Mic. ii. 13; iv. 1. Hab. ii. 4. Hagg. p. 113; ch. ii. 6, 7. Zech. xii. 10.
- Pekod, its symbolical meaning, Jer. i. 21. Ezek. xxiii. 23.
- Pelagianism condemned, Job xxiii. 12; xxxii. p. 71. Leads to blank Atheism, Job xxxv. 22.
- Peleg, meaning of and inferences therefrom, Gen. x. 25; xi. 16. Reference to the name, Ps. lv. 9.
- Pelethites, David's guard, the name whence derived, 2 Sam. viii. 18; xv. 18.
- Pelican, the, Isa. xxxiv. 11. Zeph. ii. 14. The fable of, Ps. cii. 6.
- Pella, flight of Christians to, Jer. xxxvii. 12.
- Peniel, or *Penuel*, meaning and location of, Gen. xxxii. 30. 1 Kings xv. 25. Key of the great caravan routes, *ib.* Thankless scorn and punishment of its inhabitants, Judg. viii. 8. The true Peniel of the true Jacob, Ps. xxiv. 6.
- Pentateuch, the, its history extends over 2500 years, Vol. i. Part 1. *Preface*, p. vii. If viewed only in the letter, some portions may seem trivial and repulsive, pp. viii. 131. Not itself necessarily liable to error, because its writer Moses was peccable, *Introd.* p. xxx. No special names given by the writer to its several parts, Num. i. 1. Deut. xxxi. 9. One book or roll in five parts, all presumed to be already in the reader's hands p. xxxiii. Ex. i. 1; xvi. 35. Lev. i. 1; xxv. 32. Num. i. 1; v. 1. 8; vi. 22; xviii. 17. Deut. xxvii. 3. The whole Law formally delivered to the priests and elders, Deut. xxxi. 9. Kept by (not in) the Ark of God, p. xxxiii. Deut. xxxi. 26. "The Temple copy," *ib.* The original probably found there, 2 Chr. xxxiv. 14. Is a prophetic (Gen. xxxvi. 31) history of mankind, summed up in Christ. Analysis of the contents of each separate part, pp. xxxiii—vii. External proofs that it is a public national document (Ex. iii. 16) from the pen of Moses, p. xxxvii. Internal evidence from the archaic character of the style (p. xxxviii, note 2), and unity of plan (Vol. i. Part 2. p. 190), p. xxxviii. Real harmony of the whole volume even where there is seeming inconsistency, Num. xviii. 18. Deut. v. 12—15. Some passages could have proceeded from no other person, p. xxxix. Deut. iii. 25; xvii. 15—19. Inference from God's converse with Moses face to face, Ex. xxxiii. 11. Num. vii. 89; ix. 8. Modern opinions respecting its origin, the several theories of *Document-hypothesis*, *Fragment-hypothesis*, and *Completion-hypothesis* examined, pp. xl, xli. See *Divine Names*. Mutual contradictions of critics contrasted with the clear testimony of Christ and His Apostles, to the authorship of Moses, p. xli. Called "The Testimony," 2 Kings xi. 12. The Pentateuch, received by the Samaritans, 2 Kings xvii. 41. Divided by the Hebrew Church into 54 lessons for synagogue worship (see *Calendar*), p. 1. Neh. x. 31. Honesty of the writer in relating the sins and sorrows of the patriarchs, of his people, and of himself, strengthens our faith in the volume, Gen. xii. 13; xix. 32; xx. 2; xxvi. 7; xxix. 28; xxx. 11; xxxiv. 25—31; xxxviii. 1; xlix. 5. Ex. ii. 1. 12; iv. 10. 14. 24; v. 21; xiv. 10; xvii. 4; xxxii. 1. Lev. x. 1; xx. 11. 12. 17. Num. i. 46; xi. 15. 22; xii. 15; xiv. 12; xxvi. 51. Deut. i. 27; ix. 1; xii. 5. His simple ingenuousness, Ex. iii. 3. Num. iii. 39; xii. 3; xxvii. 12. 15. Moderation of statement, Ex. xiv. 6, 7. 24. Silent about his own gifts and graces, Ex. ii. 10. 22; xl. 35. Num. x. 31. Deut. i. 35; iii. 23—25. Frankly confesses his ill-treatment by his own people, Ex. iv. 31. Evidence of its Mosaic origin from the constant adaptation of the narrative to the circumstances of Israel in the wilderness, Gen. xiii. 1; xiv. 14; xv. 13; xxiv. 6; xxxviii. 1. Received by a new generation, though it tells of the sins and punishments of the people, and of miracles alleged to be performed before their own eyes, Num. xx. 12. Deut. iii. 11; viii. 4; xi. 2. Prophecies contained in it fulfilled, Ex. xxiv. 24. Lev. xvi. 7. Num. xxvi. 64. Threats of temporal visitations prove its Divine origin, Lev. xx. 3. 20. Num. v. 29. Testified to by the heathen, 1 Sam. vi. 7. Well known in 2 Sam. vi. 6; x. 1. 1 Kings ii. 3. 6; iii. 7; vii. 14; ix. 25; xviii. 40; xxi. 3. 10. 2 Kings xvii. 7. 8. 12. 37; xxi. 6; (especially xxii. 8); xxii. 19. 2 Chr. viii. 13; xiii. 12; xv. 13; xvii. 9; xix. 7—10; xxiv. 6; xxv. 4; xxvii. 7, 8; xxxiii. 8; xxxv. 6. Ezra ix. 11, 12. Neh. i. 5. 6; viii. 1; ix. 12. Solomon's prayer constantly refers to it, 1 Kings viii. 21—37. 50—60. The kings of Israel received it, though it condemned their schism, 1 Kings xi. 13; xii. 33. 2 Chr. xiii. 9. Retrospective reference to and sanction of it at the close of the Old Testament Canon, Mal. iv. 4. Directions to write the book, Ex. xvii. 14. It did not pass out of Moses' hand until all was completed, Ex. xvi. 35. Command to read it publicly at stated times observed, Lev. xxiii. 40. Deut. xxxi. 9. Neh. viii. 1. Written out and solemnly read by Joshua, Josh. viii. 32. (34). Lesser objections to details considered: Isaac's weakness at Gerar no confused version of his father's, Gen. xxvi. 7. 33. Hadar may have lived in Moses' time, Gen. xxxvi. 31. 39. The few Egyptian words found in his writings are rather a proof of genuineness, Gen. xli. 2. 43. 45. His use of the relative term "beyond Jordan," suits well one who wrote in the wilderness, Gen. i. 10. Cp. Num. xxxii. 19. Deut. i. 1. The *quasi* priestly acts performed by Samuel indicate no ignorance of the Pentateuch on his part, Vol. ii. Part 2. pp. ix, x.
- Pentecost, origin of the name in Greek, German, and English (*Whitsun*), Lev. xxiii. 16. How this "feast of weeks" was counted, *ib.* "The appointed weeks," Jer. v. 24. Christian doctrine taught therein, Lev. xxiii. 16. Lasting one day only, commemorating the wheat harvest, and the giving of the Law at Sinai, v. 17. Two wave-loaves as first fruits, with heaven, as of the Gospel, *ib.* Concentration of many sacrifices on that day symbolized the consummation of Christ's gift in the outpouring of the Spirit, v. 18. Hallowed with acts of mercy, v. 22. The Jewish and Christian feasts compared: appropriateness of the Church's Whitsun services, Ex. xix. 11.
- Poor, or *Baal-peor* or *Beth-peor* (Deut. iii. 29. Josh. xiii. 20), its site, Num. xxiii. 28. Scene of Israel's temptation to a double harlotry, *ib.* Hos. ix. 10. Phinehas' reference to it natural, Josh. xxii. 17.
- Perazim, mound, Isa. xxviii. 21.
- Pererius, cited, Ex. vi. 2. 3. Josh. v. 9. Dan. iii. 1.
- Period of Israel's sojourn in Egypt shown to be 215 years, Gen. xv. 13; xlv. 3. Ex. vi. 16; xii. 40. Josh. vi. 1. Its spiritual import, Ex. xii. 40. That in the wilderness 38 years, Num. xiv. 34. Occasion of writing, Ps. xc.: its three-score and ten years explained, v. 45.
- Perizonius, cited, Gen. xi. 4; xlv. 6. 2 Chr. xxii. 2.
- Perizzite, the (i.e. villager), located, Gen. xiii. 7. With the Canaanite held to comprise the whole population of Palestine, Judg. i. 4.
- Perowne, J. J. S. cited, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xiv, note 6. Ps. ii. p. 4; xxvi. p. 36; xxix. p. 39; lvii. 8; exx. p. 196.
- Persecution, Christ's voice to His Church when under persecution, Cant. ii. 10—14. "Wasters" proceed from Him, Isa. liv. 16. Persecution of heretics, no Christian duty, Zech. xiii. 3. Fate of persecutors of the Christians, Zech. xiv. 12.
- Persia (see *Elam*), a name unknown to the Jews before the captivity, Isa. xiii. 17. Its derivation: supremacy over Media, Dan. v. 25. 28. Its conquests helped to destroy idolatry, especially that of Egypt, Isa. xlv. 14. 36. Being free from idolatry, its Magi were admitted to see the Infant Saviour, Isa. xlv. 1. Its king regarded as an incarnation of Ormuzd, Esther iii. 2; iv. 11. Persian mode of worshipping the rising sun, Ezek. viii. 17. See *Dualism*.
- Persian language, and its dialects, Dan. i. 3. 5; iii. 2. Persian words explained, Ezra iv. 17; vii. 23. Neh. viii. 9. Esther i. 3. 20; ii. 7; iii. 7. 12; viii. 10. Jer. li. 27.
- Persius, cited, 2 Kings xx. 11. Prov. vi. 10; xxiii. 5. Eccles. i. 2. Isa. lviii. 9. Dan. iii. 5. 21.
- Personal assurance no safe ground for reliance as to the soul's state, 2 Sam. xii. 4. No sign of genuine faith, Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. 79. 127. Missed by some in the book of Ecclesiastes, Eccles. i. 13.
- Petavius, cited, Esther ii. 6. Dan. x. 13.
- Peter, S., genuineness of his second epistle, Dan. iv. 1.
- Pethor, site of: its hereditary connexion with the Moabites, Num. xxii. 5.
- Petra (i.e. the rock: see *Sela*), Judg. i. 36. Idol of Ares there, Isa. lvii. 6.
- Pfeiffer, *Dubia*, cited, Gen. i. 20; xiv. 18, 19; xv. 13; xvii. 14; xxv. 25; xlix. 10. Ex. ii. 10; vi. 2. 3. 1 Sam. xxviii. 11, 12; xxxi. 12. 2 Sam. xii. 11; xxiii. 1. 8. 2 Kings xx. 11; xxiii. 5. 1 Chr. xviii. 12. 2 Chr. xxviii. 19; xxvii. 9. Neh. ii. 13. Esther viii. 10. Job i. 6; iii. 8; xiv. 22. Ps. viii. 3, 4; xxii. 16; xxxiii. 6; xxxvii. 25; xl. 6; xcix. 6. Prov. xvi. 4; xxx. 19. Eccles. i. 1; vii. 16. Isa. vi. 3; vii. 14. 15; ix. 3. 7; xvi. 1; liii. p. 153; lxvi. 17. Jer. vii. 18; xxx. 9; xxxi. 22. Ezek. i. 5; xx. 25; xxi. 21. *Retrospect* p. 275, note 4. Dan. iii. 2; iv. 27. Hos. i. 2; xi. 1. Amos iii. 6; v. 26. Obad. 1. Jon. iii. 3; iv. 6. Mic. ii. 13.
- Pharaoh, an official title of the King of Egypt: derivation of,

- Gen. xii. 15; xli. 1. Joseph's Pharaoh not a Shepherd King, *ib.* He that knew not Joseph probably an Assyrian, Ex. i. 8. Pharaoh's free will in Exodus not constrained by God's foreknowledge (see *Free-will*), Ex. iii. 18; iv. 21; ix. 16; x. 3. Hardening his heart:—the process explained by noting the different expressions used, iv. 21; vii. 13. 14; ix. 12. 34, 35; xi. 10. First commanded, then warned, then plagued without warning, Ex. viii. 1. His brief repentance not rejected, Ex. ix. 27; x. 16. Humbled, but not humble, Ex. x. 24; xii. 32. Solomon's father-in-law and Rehoboam's conqueror identified, 1 Kings iii. 1. So also Pharaoh-necho, 2 Kings xxiii. 29. His history, 2 Chr. xxxv. 20, and Divine commission, v. 21. Jer. xxv. 1. Pharaoh-hophra's attempt to relieve Jerusalem, Jer. xxxiv. 11. Ezek. xvii. 7; xxiii. 42. Identical with Apries, Jer. xxxvii. 5. Ezek. xxix. 2. 8. His end, B.C. 570, Jer. xlv. 30.
- Pharisaism, the sin of the Jews after the Captivity, Zech. vii. 3. 9, 10. Mal. p. 156.
- Pharpar, the river of, 2 Kings v. 12.
- Phiccol, apparently an official name at Gerar, Gen. xxvi. 26.
- Philias, his chryselephantine work, 1 Kings x. 18.
- Philastrius, characterized, Gen. i. 1.
- Philippus, S. Jerome's scholar, cited, Job xix. 26; xxxii. p. 71; xlii. 16.
- Philistines (see *Palestina*), their origin and location, Gen. x. 14. Amos ix. 7. Their language understood by the Hebrews, Gen. xx. 2. Cp. Neh. xiii. 24. Their cities described, Josh. ii. 22. Their hostility to the Jews, Ezek. xxv. 15: and to God, Zech. ix. 5. Their idols burnt by David, and the Ichabod effaced, 1 Chr. xiv. 12. Wars with Ahaz and Hezekiah, Isa. xiv. 28. Their flourishing condition, Jer. xlvii. 1, and complete overthrow, v. 4. Evangelical labours in this region, Isa. xi. 14; Zeph. ii. 6, 7. Zech. ix. 7, 8.
- Philo, cited, Gen. xiii. 18; xiv. 18, 19; xvii. 10, 11. Ex. ii. 10; vii. 1; viii. 1; xv. p. 252. Lev. xvi. 18.
- Philostratus, cited, Esther iv. 11.
- Phinehas, meaning of the name. His act no precedent for irregular zeal, Num. xxv. 7. He "executed judgment," Ps. evi. 30. A type of Christ, the true Priest, and an example to Christian priests in days of apostasy, Num. xxv. 7. 15; xxxi. 6. 1 Chr. ix. 20. Found before the Ark at Shiloh, when Israel in its distress came at length to inquire of the Lord, Judg. xx. 28. His own fortunes and those of his descendants in their temporary loss of the High-priesthood contrasted with those of Eli, Num. xxv. 11—13.
- Photius, cited, Dan. viii. 9.
- Phut (Libya), delineated, Gen. x. 6. Jer. xli. 9. Ezek. xxvii. 10; xxx. 5. *Put*, Nah. iii. 19. So Isa. lxvi. 19 in the Septuagint.
- Phylacteries (Heb. *tephillin*), Jewish, what texts were written on them, Deut. vi. 4. Moses' precept understood literally by the Jews, Deut. vi. 6—9. Extravagances of the Talmud regarding them, *ib.* Fillets (Heb. *totaphoth*) bound round the neck, Prov. iii. 3; vi. 21.
- Phrynichus suggested to Æschylus the subject of his Persæ, Dan. vii. 9.
- Pi-beseth, derived and located, Ezek. xxx. 17.
- Pick, A., cited, Josh. x. 12, 13.
- Pierce, Dr. T., his Fast sermon, A.D. 1665, Mic. vi. 9.
- Pierrotti, cited, Neh. ii. 13.
- Pillar of the cloud, its typical meaning, Ex. xiii. 21. Neh. ix. 12: and spiritual application, Ex. xiv. 20. Descends on the Tabernacle, Ex. xxxiii. 9. Raised when the camp was to be moved, Num. ix. 15. 17; x. 11. Removed in anger, Num. xii. 10. Its presence wont to be manifested at a great crisis, Num. xiv. 10; xvi. 19. Rests on Solomon's Temple as a sign of God's approval, 1 Kings viii. 10, 11. 2 Chr. v. 13. "Pillars of smoke," Joel ii. 30.
- Pillar, the, set up by Jacob, its typical character, Gen. xxviii. 21, 22. Monuments of this form not to be erected, Deut. xvi. 22. Those in the Temple court, their dimensions, 1 Kings vii. 15: ornamental work, *vv.* 17—20: names and typical meaning, v. 21. Carried away to Babylon, Jer. lii. 17. The King's pillar in the Temple, 2 Kings xi. 14; xxiii. 3. The Church's seven pillars, Prov. ix. 1.
- Pindar, cited, Vol. iv. Part 2. Ps. i. p. 1. Dan. x. 13.
- Pineda, cited, Job xxxii. p. 71. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 71, note 3.
- Pintus, cited, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 286, note 12. Dan. iii. 1.
- Pirathon, located, Judg. xii. 13. 2 Sam. xxiii. 30.
- Piscator, cited, Obad. 12. Mal. ii. 16.
- Pisgah, ridge of, its site, Num. xxi. 20. *Ashdodh* (i. e. outpourings) — *pisgah*, Deut. iii. 17. Josh. xiii. 20. Moses, as representing the Law, had a far-off vision of the land to which Jesus brings us, Deut. iii. 27. 28.
- Pithom, located, Ex. i. 11.
- Pius IX., Pope, his decree of Dec. 8, 1854, Gen. iii. 15. Job
- xxxiii. 24. Isa. lxvi. 17. Worship received by him (June 17, 1846), Dan. vii. 8. Zech. xi. 15. See *Infallibility*.
- Place, God's gracious promise to the soul not limited by place in cases of necessity, Ps. lxxiii. 2. 4. 5. Ezek. x. 3, 4. While if His presence be wanting the magnificent minister is but a splendid cenotaph, Ezek. xi. 16. Why a fixed place for offering sacrifice was not mentioned till just before Canaan was entered, Deut. xii. 5. An ordinance to Israel, Ps. xxxii. 4: and a common centre of unity, Ps. cxxxiii. 3. Exceptional cases considered, Deut. xii. 5. The very fact that the Law was systematically violated in Israel, and often in Judah, a proof of the authenticity of the book in which it is promulgated (see *Deuteronomy*), *ib.* God's place not in Jerusalem only, but in all the earth, Ezek. iii. 12. The word Place (Heb. *gad*, hand) denotes a tomb, as *monumentum* from *monere*: 2 Sam. xviii. 18. Isa. lvi. 5: or hand-post, Ezek. xxi. 19.
- Plagues, the, of Egypt, designed to manifest God's power, Ex. vii. 17. In what particulars miraculous, *ib.* Ex. viii. 1. In what order they are recounted in the Psalms, and why, v. 3. Ps. cv. 28. Increase in their severity, Ex. viii. 1. By what means severally inflicted, *ib.* Ex. ix. 8. The river, as being worshipped for a deity, first stricken, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxiv, note 12. Frogs found in the ovens: figurative meaning of the fact, Ex. viii. 3. The third plague one of gnats, v. 16. The swarms of the fourth plague, v. 21. Inflicted chiefly on objects of Egyptian worship, Ex. vii. 15: viii. 16; ix. 8. 18. 23; x. 13. 21; xi. 5; xii. 29. The objections urged against the smiting of the first-born tell as much against natural as revealed religion: but readily answered, Ex. xi. 5. No contradiction between Moses and S. Paul in regard to the plague in the wilderness, Num. xxv. 9. Cattle-plagues may well be a punishment for men's sins, Hos. iv. 3.
- Plain. See *Lowland*.
- Plain Commentary, referred to, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xiv.
- Plaster, on walls, Dan. v. 5. Amos ii. 1.
- Plataea, battle of, Zech. ix. 1.
- Plato, cited, Gen. ii. 18. 19. 1 Kings vi. 16.
- Plautus, cited, Deut. xxviii. 25. Isa. xxii. 17, 18.
- Plébesites now made the origin and foundation of governments, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xv.
- Pleiaides, the (Heb. *eimah*), Job ix. 9; xxxviii. 31. Amos v. 8. The spiritual Pleiad, Zech. iii. 9.
- Pliny the elder, cited, Gen. xxx. 41. Ex. xxii. 29. 2 Chr. xvi. 14. Esther viii. 10. Job xxviii. 2. 4. 5. 6. 9. 10. 18. 19; xxxix. 18; xxxi. 27; xxxvii. 22; xxxix. 18. 25; xl. 15. 16; xli. 1. 2. Prov. vi. p. 13; v. 6; xxx. 28. Cant. i. 5. Isa. xlvii. 10. Jer. i. 11, 12; i. 16. Ezek. xxvii. 7. Dan. i. 4; viii. 2. Zech. xiv. 18.
- Plural, the, of excellence, Ps. cxvi. 7. Prov. i. 20. Eccles. xii. 1. Cant. v. 16.
- Plurality of Persons in the Godhead not safely inferred from expressions found in Gen. i. 1; iii. 22. Work of the Son and of the Holy Spirit in Creation, Gen. i. 2. Ps. cxxxiii. 6; cii. 25. Judgment of S. Ambrose, Num. xxi. 5. Prophetic intimation of, 2 Sam. vii. 23. Discerned in David's Last Words, 2 Sam. xxiii. 2. The doctrine of the Blessed Trinity in Unity may not be concluded *a priori* from many passages where it can be recognized *a posteriori*, Gen. i. 26; xl. 7; xviii. 2; xix. 24; xxxv. 7; xlviii. 15. 16. Ex. xxxiv. 5. Lev. ix. 22. Deut. v. 26. 1 Chr. xvii. 21. Eccles. xii. 1. Cant. i. 11. Isa. vi. 1. 3. 8; liv. 5. Jer. xxxiv. 12. Ezek. xxxiv. 23. *Retrospect* p. 282, note 2. Obad. 1. Mic. v. 5. Probably referred to in Job, Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introd.* p. v. Links of the chain, Ps. xcix. p. 155. Bright prophetic gleams of the doctrine, Isa. xxxiii. 22; xlviii. 16. Becomes gradually clearer, as the mystery of a Trinity is revealed, as in the Aaronic blessing, Num. vi. 23: and in later writings, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xi. Ps. xxix. 10; lxxvii. 1; ciii. 20.
- Plutarch, cited, 2 Kings vi. 25. Esther i. 6; ii. 1. 23; vi. 8; x. 1. Isa. xxxvii. 36; xlv. 7; xlvii. 11. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xii, note 6; xiii, note 1. Dan. vi. 7; viii. 5. 7. Jonah iii. 7, 8.
- Pocock, Dr., his valuable Expositions of the Minor Prophets, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxix. Cited, Hos. i. 2. 3; iii. 5; iv. 2. 4. 8; v. 2; vi. 2; viii. 10; x. 1. 12; xi. 1. Joel i. 4. 19; ii. 4. 6. 23. 28—32. 31; iii. 1. 2. 14. 16. Mic. i. 2; ii. 4. 12; iv. 1. 8; v. 1. 2. 3. 6. 10—14; vii. 8. 20; Hab. i. 5; ii. 4. Mal. p. 157; ch. i. 3. 7. 10; ii. 3; iii. 1; iv. 5. 6.
- Pococke, cited, Jer. vi. 1; xxxi. 22. 32. Ezek. xxi. 21.
- Pœcilè, the, at Athens, Dan. iii. 21.
- Pœtæ Gnomiæ, cited, Prov. x. p. 24.
- Poli Synopsis, cited, Eccles. xii. 6. Isa. x. 27; lvii. 8. Jer. xxiii. 6.
- Political prudence, a duty, Jer. xxvii. 12.
- Polyænus, cited, 2 Chr. viii. 18.
- Polybius, cited, Dan. viii. 7. 8. 9; xi. 7. 10. 11. 14. 18. 24. 25. 27. 28. 30. 45.

- Polycarp, S., his dying words, Ps. xxxi. 5; cxxxvii. 6.
- Polyhistor, who he was, Dan. iv. p. 14. Cited, Isa. cxxvii. 37. Dan. v. 1.
- Pomegranate (Heb. *rimmon*), the, a type of beauty and fruitfulness, Ex. xxviii. 33. 1 Kings vii. 18. 19. Cant. iv. 3. 13.
- Pompeii, its walls still covered with inscriptions on cement, Deut. xxvii. 2.
- Pompey, his miserable end, Zech. xii. 3.
- Pool, the king's, Neh. ii. 14. See also *Gibeon*, *Githon*.
- Poole, R. S., cited, Nah. iii. 8.
- Poor, the, may not be favoured unjustly, Ex. xxiii. 3. Mercy to be shown to them, Lev. xix. 9. 10. 13; xxiii. 22. Deut. xxiv. 13. 19. 20. Eccles. xi. 1. Why never to cease, Deut. xv. 11. Yet there was to be no beggar in Israel, v. 4. The poor are rightful possessors of other men's superfluities, Prov. iii. 27. Tender forbearance towards them coupled with the observance of the Sabbath, Neh. x. 31. The Hebrew *ani* suggests also the notion of piety, Ps. xxiv. 6. Constantly applied in the Psalms to Christ, Ps. lxxix. 29; cix. 16: who chose the poor as His disciples, Zeph. iii. 12. Zech. xi. 11. Other Hebrew synonyms, *rôsh* and *dâl*, also rendered "poor," discriminated, Prov. x. 4; xix. 1; xxii. 22; cxxviii. 3. The Hebrew *machesôr* applied to moral or intellectual poverty, Prov. xxi. 17.
- Poppe, the, a spiritual Nimrod, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 61. His sin, like Reuben's, p. 146. Gen. xlix. 4. A corrupt judge, like Dan, Gen. xlix. 17. His spirit, unlike Gideon's (Judg. viii. 23), resembles that of his son Abimelech, who usurped the kingly supremacy, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 123. Symbolized by the prince of Tyre, Ezek. xxviii. pp. 220-1. A Nebuchadnezzar, Dan. iii. 1. Hab. ii. 5. His title of King Vicar resembles the style of Nebuchadnezzar, Isa. xlvii. 5. Dan. iii. 1. The idol Shepherd, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxi. Zech. xi. 15. "The one in the midst," Isa. lxxvi. 17. The theory of his supremacy mars the symmetry of spiritual imagery, Josh. iv. 1-3. By degrading the Episcopate (Zech. xi. 15), he makes four orders in the Church, instead of three, Jer. xxxiii. 18-22. A Nahash the Ammonite, in the Church, 1 Sam. xi. 2. No place for him in Ezekiel's Temple, Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 283. 289, note 5. Has no right to assemble general Councils, Num. x. 2. His claim to infallibility involves the perpetual necessity of erring, Esther ix. 16. Claims to be the Husband of the Church, 1 Kings ii. 17. Thus putting himself into Christ's place, Prov. xxxi. 11: and claiming the attributes of God, Isa. xlvii. 8. His deification, 2 Sam. ii. 8. In what terms addressed at his Coronation (see *Pius IX.*), Hab. iii. 14. His adoration by the Cardinals, Zech. xi. 15. 17. How a fisher of men, Hab. i. 12-17. His galling yoke, Hab. ii. 6. His curse causeless, Prov. xxvi. 2. "The Lawless One," Zech. v. 11; xi. 15.
- Porphyry, his error respecting the book of Daniel, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xix, and note 5.
- Porter, J. S., cited, Josh. xi. 22. 1 Sam. xxviii. 4. 1 Kings iv. 13; v. 6.
- Porter, Ker, cited, Job xxxix. 5. Dan. iv. 30.
- Porters of the Temple, 1 Chr. ix. 17. 19; xxiii. 5. Neh. vii. 1. Arranged in twenty-four courses, 1 Chr. xxvi. 17.
- Posts, i. e. couriers, 2 Chr. xxx. 6. Esther iii. 13; viii. 10. Job ix. 25.
- Postans, cited, Ruth. iii. 4.
- Pot, the seething, of what symbolical, Jer. i. 13. In Levitical services, pots were less holy than bowls, Zech. xiv. 10.
- Potiphar, his condition, office (Dan. ii. 14), and meaning of his name, Gen. cxxvii. 36.
- Potipharah, derivation of, Gen. xli. 45.
- Potters, their abode near Jerusalem, 1 Chr. iv. 23. Jer. xviii. 3; xix. 2. Zech. xi. 13. Their wheels, Jer. xviii. 3.
- Praise to God, the strongest defence of the Church, Isa. lx. 18. Popular praise needs to be smelted of its dross by a man's consulting his own conscience, Prov. xxvii. 21.
- Prayer, should be public as well as private, Jer. xxix. 12. Spiritual incense, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 282. Its power with God, Gen. xxvii. 24. Ex. ix. 29. Hos. xii. 3, 4. Stated times approved by Him, 2 Sam. xxiv. 15. 1 Kings xviii. 29. 2 Kings iii. 20. The three chief hours of prayer, Dan. vi. 10. The same prayers repeated, Num. x. 35, 36. Proper at the beginning and end of work, Gen. xxiv. 12. Num. x. 35, 36. Hasten the coming of God's promises, Dan. ix. 3. Swiftly heard, v. 21. Though not immediately answered, yet, if offered with faith, always fresh with God, 1 Kings ix. 1. 2. Our prayers follow after Christ, Ps. lxxii. 15. Those slighted by the world prevail with God, Joel ii. 16. Prayer may preach, Ezra x. 1. No prayers to be offered to saints departed, 2 Kings ii. 9. This title (Heb. *tephillah*) why prefixed to five Psalms, Ps. xlvii. p. 20; lxxvi. p. 136. Cp. Hab. iii. 1. See *Intercession*.
- Precedents, evil, not to be followed, Jer. xxvi. 20.
- Preparatory character, the, of the Levitical code, as designed to separate the Jew from the heathen, accounts for many of its features, Lev. xx. 24; xxii. 10; xxvi. 46. Deut. xvi. 2; xxiii. 3. Jer. vii. 22. The Gospel the only legitimate offspring of the Mosaic Law, Cant. viii. 5. "Statutes not good" have no reference to it, Ezek. xx. 25. Gradual progress of the Divine dispensations, Dan. vi. 25.
- President (Chald. *sarac*), explained, Dan. vi. 2. 7.
- Prideaux, Dean, cited, Gen. xlix. 10. 2 Kings xviii. 18; xix. 35; xxi. 18. 26; xxii. 8; xxiii. 29; xxiv. 1. 2 Chr. v. 9. Ezra vi. 3. 14; vii. 6. 8. Neh. xii. 22; xiii. 28. Esther x. 1. Isa. lxxv. 3. Dan. vii. 25; viii. 8. 9; ix. p. 47.
- Priest (Heb. *cohen*) known before the Levitical Law, Ex. ii. 16; xix. 24. Princely priests, such as Melchizedek and Jethro, Ex. ii. 16. Job xii. 19. "The Priests the Levites," the term explained and vindicated as Mosaic (see *Deuteroanomy*), Vol. i. Part 2. p. 197. Deut. xvii. 9. 2 Chr. v. 4. The priesthood hereditary until the great High Priest came, Num. xx. 26. The priests' life a warfare (see *Levi*), Num. iv. 3. Why bound to serve unshod, Ex. iii. 5; xxviii. 4; xxx. 19. Their duties defined, 1 Chr. xxiii. 13. David's twenty-four weekly courses, 1 Chr. xxiv. 3. 2 Chr. xxxi. 2. Cp. Ezek. viii. 16. The whole order present when the Ark was brought into the Tabernacle, 2 Chr. v. 11. Jeroboam's priests taken from any tribe, 1 Kings xii. 31. 2 Chr. xiii. 10. These are meant in 1 Kings xxii. 6. 2 Kings xvii. 28. The true priests and Levites in Jeroboam's reign gave up their living for their office sake, 2 Chr. xi. 13, 14. Only four courses (though more than a tenth part of all the people) returned from Babylon, Ezra ii. 39. Neh. xii. 12-21. Priestly degeneracy in Ezra's age, Neh. x. 2-8. The priesthood's spiritual and typical character suggested the full genealogies of priests and Levites in 1 Chr. vi., ix., where even the Kohathite Moses is passed over as being a civil ruler, 1 Chr. vi. pp. 179, 180. Duties of the Christian priesthood defined, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 284. Mal. ii. 7. God's messengers. Their lips should keep knowledge (see *Teaching*), *ib.*: and they must learn to bear affliction, Mal. iii. 3. Their punishment, if evil, 1 Sam. ii. 17. 22. Sin of those who abet sin to gain profit by means of commutation of penance and absolution, Hos. iv. 8. In what sense the priesthood is perpetual, Jer. xxxiii. 18-22. Despising the priesthood a sin of the present time, Hos. iv. 4. On special occasions God makes priests of whom He will, Judg. vi. 26; xiii. 19. Vol. ii. Part 2. pp. ix, x. Thus Samuel, a Levite, after the Ark had left Shiloh, performed priestly acts as an eminent Prophet and type of Christ, *ib.* All Christians are in some sense priests, Zech. iii. 5. God's faithful Priest, in part Samuel and Zadok, mainly Christ, 1 Sam. ii. 35. Schismatical and idolatrous priests of the high places, 2 Kings xxiii. 9: called in Hebrew *cemarim*, v. 5. Hos. x. 5. Zeph. i. 4. The Hebrew *cohen* sometimes put for "princes," 2 Sam. viii. 18; xx. 26; 1 Kings iv. 5. Why not so, 1 Chr. xviii. 17.
- Priscillianists, their error, 2 Kings v. 19. Persecuted, Amos vii. 13.
- Prison, the, may become a pulpit, Jer. xxxvi. 5.
- Privileges, religious, the danger of resting on them, Amos v. 18.
- Procopius, cited, Josh. xi. 8. Isa. xxx. p. 89; xxxiii. 14.
- Prohibited degrees of marriage, the Levitical law a fresh promulgation of God's original decree, and so of universal obligation, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 57. Lev. xx. 17. Law of Christendom, respecting them, p. 57. The main principle that husband and wife are one flesh, Lev. xviii. 8. Case of the wife's sister to be thus ruled, v. 18. Though the words as they stand are most probably a prohibition of polygamy, *ib.* "Near of kin" as freely applied to relations by marriage as by blood, *ib.* Marriage with a deceased brother's widow a special exception made by the Lawgiver himself, *ib.* Doctrine of the Christian Church in ancient and modern times, *ib.* Warning to Christian nations, Hos. iv. 2.
- Promises relating to Christ in prophecy, Gen. iii. 15; xii. 3; xxi. 12; xxii. 17. Given from the first, Isa. xli. 1. First limited to the tribe of Judah, Gen. xlix. 10: then to David's house, 2 Sam. vii. p. 85; *ev.* 13. 14. Those to David respecting Solomon, conditional, and so failed; not so that concerning Christ, 1 Kings vi. 12, 13. All God's promises conditional, 1 Sam. ii. 30. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xx: and liable to fall short through man's sin, Gen. xv. 18. Ex. xxiii. 31. Contingent promise to Zedekiah, Jer. xxxiv. 4, 5. Promises and threatenings annexed to the Levitical as to the moral law, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 82. Those of the Law and Gospel compared, Deut. vii. 14.
- Prophecy, its final cause, Isa. xxiii. 9. Not designed to make us prophets, but to comfort us when it is fulfilled, Dan. vii. 25. Spoken not by the writers themselves, but by the Spirit

- of Christ (Dan. viii. 27) by and through them, as channels, not as sources, Vol. vi. Part 2, p. x. Hos. xi. 1. Not always understood by the writers, especially in its secondary sense: a proof of their inspiration, *ib.* Amos ii. 6. From the beginning its subject was Christ (Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. viii, ix): considered as prospective, Vol. v. Part 1, p. v: and retrospective (i. e. didactic or comminatory), as Elijah's or Elisha's, p. vi. Near events prophesied, that their fulfilment might give assurance to prophecies of things distant, Gen. xlix. 13. Vol. v. Part 1, pp. vi, and *note* 7; vii. *note* 1; ix. *note* 5. Isa. v. 19; vii. 8, 9; xiii. p. 37; xxi. 16, 17; xxii. 15; xxviii. p. 78. Jer. iv. 4. Ezek. xii. 23. Vol. vi. Part 2, p. xxv. Dies before the priesthood, but the Law survives, Num. xx. 1. Subordinate and preparatory tendency towards fulfilment of prophecies respecting Christ, Isa. vii. 16; viii. 8. Amos ii. 6. Mingled prophecies of kindred events, Isa. xxiv. p. 68; *re.* 10. 12. 17. Jer. xxix. 15—17. Prophecy sometimes causes its own fulfilment, Ezek. xxix. 13. Its accuracy, *re.* 15. Amos ii. 5. Every prophecy an enigma before its fulfilment, the testimony of the Spirit being the proper proof of its accomplishment, Hos. xi. 1. The four persons foretold by name, all signal types of Christ, thus encouraged to perform what was prophesied of them, 1 Kings xiii. 2. Evil men, even Satan himself, employed as prophets, 1 Sam. xix. 20—24. 1 Kings xiii. pp. 55, 56. False prophets induced by gain, Amos vii. 12. Mic. iii. 5. Without charity the gift profiteth nothing, Num. xxiv. 2. Hebrew prophets to be interpreted by the principles laid down by Christ and the Apostles, as applied by the ancient Fathers, not according to the letter which killeth, as matter for critical disquisition, Vol. vi. Part 2, p. viii. Hence the Hebrew prophecies ever fresh, and of present practical value, being better understood in these last days than by those who uttered them, pp. x, xi. Hos. xi. 1. They prepare us for the prevalence of unbelief (pp. xxvi, xxvii.), but comfort us with the promise of its final overthrow. A manual for the Christian preacher and citizen, p. xi. Symbolical prediction, founded on the then present state of things, often supplies the groundwork and prophetic images for the future Christian subject, Zech. vi. 13. Lessons to be gathered in these last times from the study of prophecy, and the contemplation of what has been fulfilled so far, pp. xxvii, xxviii. Chronological order of the prophetic books, a revised table, p. xxix. So p. 112. In Malachi prophecy resigns its charge to the Forerunner, and expires with the Gospel on its lips, Mal. iii. 1.
- Prophet, the, a great moral teacher, Isa. xlii. p. 37. His function to declare God's will generally, and to protest against sin in high places: not merely to reveal the future, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. x, and *note* 7. A gift to the Church, Jer. i. 18. His mission the first mode of Divine revelation, and also a sign of national degeneracy, ordinary means of grace now failing, Judg. vi. 8. Goes before Christ, *ib.* Silence of prophets God's punishment of a people, Ezek. iii. 26. Prophets led a Christ-ward life, Vol. v. Part 1, p. v. Compared to the chorus of a Greek drama, Vol. ii. Part 2, p. xiv. 1 Sam. ix. 9. Meaning of the name (Heb. *nabi*), Gen. x. 7. Ex. vii. 1. The Hebrew *nabi* distinguished from *roeh*, *ib.* 1 Chr. xxix. 29. Their ascetic dress, Isa. xx. 2. Zech. xiii. 4. Their supernatural mien, 2 Kings ix. 11. The company of the prophets, 1 Sam. x. 5. Sons of the prophets, 2 Kings ii. 3. The permanent office instituted with Samuel, to supplement a corrupt priesthood in times of national confusion, Vol. ii. Part 2, p. xiv. 1 Sam. iii. 21; iv. 1; ix. 9. Vol. iii. p. 66. Yet not to intrude upon the priestly duties, Hagg. ii. 11. Co-ordinate with the institution of royalty, 1 Sam. ix. 9. The office developed in the books of Kings, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. x. In the kingdom of the ten tribes prophets served as religious teachers, 2 Kings iv. 23. 42. Abounded during and after the captivity, Isa. xxx. 20. All preparatory to Christ, the Great Prophet and Teacher of the Church, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. x. Christ shown to be the Prophet like unto Moses, on the testimony of the Apostles: how He is such, Deut. xviii. 15—19. Test of a true prophet, Jer. xxiii. 18. His Divine inspiration how proved, Jer. xlii. 7. Ezek. xlii. 2, 3. False prophets, Isa. xxii. 1: bring retribution by their lies, Ezek. xiv. 9. Ahab's prophets probably attached to the golden calves, 1 Kings xxi. 6.
- Prophetesses, Ex. xv. 20. Judg. iv. 4. 2 Kings xxii. 14. In a proper sense types of the Blessed Virgin, Isa. viii. 3. An unworthy one, Neh. vi. 14. False prophetesses of Christian times, Ezek. xlii. 17.
- Prophets, the former, a name given by the Hebrew Church (and so regarded in the New Testament) to the books of Joshua, Judges, Samuel, and Kings, Neh. xiii. 31. All the books after Genesis are connected with those that go before and after, in preparing for Christ's coming, and in displaying His threefold office of Prophet, Priest, and King, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. vii. Each book down to Esther, one link in a chain, *ib.*
- Prophets, the four greater, compared and contrasted. Two living at Jerusalem, with names compounded with *Jah*; two in Babylonia with names compounded with the more universal *El* (see *Divine Names*), Vol. v. Part 2, pp. 152—3.
- Prophets, the twelve (Mal. iv. 6) lesser, form one book, constituting one harmonious whole, though each has a distinct character and purpose of its own, Vol. vi. Part 2, p. vii. Their intimate connexion, *ib.*, *note* 2. Stand in Hebrew and English in chronological order, p. vii. Obad. p. 57. Rise from a higher point of time than the major prophets and descend lower, Hos. i. 1. Connexion of the books with each other, pp. xii—xxiv. Four prophetic monographies against Assyria and Babylonia, those of Obadiah, Jonah, Nahum, Habakkuk, pp. xiii. xiv. Amos prophesied against lesser nations, Amos i. 3. The three post-captivity prophets stand nearest the threshold of the Church, Zeph. p. 105. Ancient and modern commentaries on the minor prophets, p. xxix.
- Prosopopœa, exemplified, Lam. ii. 18.
- Prosper Aquitanus, S., cited, Gen. xxii. 16. Ex. i. 12; xvii. 6. 12; xxv. 31—39; xxix. 7. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xviii, *note* 2. Josh. v. 2. Judg. iii. 10; iv. 23; pp. 110. 115. 123. Judg. xiv. 2; xvi. 5. 30. Ruth p. 160, *note* 8. Part 2, p. xv, *note* 1. 1 Kings iii. 16—27. Vol. iii. p. 20. 2 Kings ii. 9. Esther vii. 9. Job i. 1. Ezek. p. 246. Dan. ii. 45; vi. 17; x. 13.
- Prostration, an honour due to God, or to the king as his representative, Esther iii. 2.
- Proverbs, eastern, Job ii. 4; vii. 19; xiii. 14; xv. 20; xxx. 13; xxxix. 17. 18. Roman, Prov. xxvii. 10. A taunting, Isa. xiv. 4. Hab. ii. 6. Named in contempt, Job xiii. 12. See *Table, Parable*.
- Proverbs, book of, stands first of Solomon's trilogy, Vol. iv. Part 3. *Introd.* p. ix. The Song first written, Ecclesiastes last, Proverbs the fruit of mature age: its approximate date, *ib.* Prov. i. 4. The books placed as they stand in order of subjects. Proverbs written in an age of high material prosperity and intellectual wealth as a moral and spiritual manual, an antidote for their poison, pp. ix, x. Written (as was Ecclesiastes yet more) with a special view to Rehoboam, like Cicero's *De Officiis* for his son, p. x. Prov. i. 8; v. 3. 14; vi. p. 13; *re.* 4. 6. 12; vii. 7; x. 5; xvi. 10; xvii. 2. 16. 18—21; xix. 12. 13. 27; xxi. 17. 20. Even the Lord condescended to use a heathen proverb to Saul, and S. Paul to the Corinthians, p. x. But Solomon's come from above and look upward, making our duty to God the rule of life (Prov. xx. 22; xxi. 30), and so preparing for the teaching of the Divine Solomon in the Gospel, p. xi. Prov. i. 1; iii. 1; xxiv. 33, 34. The Hebrew *nashal* is rather *Parable* (which see) or similitude, than *Proverb*, p. xi, and *notes*, 2, 3. Prov. i. 1; viii. p. 18: intricate and dark sayings (Prov. i. 6), as in Matt. xiii. 35, pp. xi. 18. Deep spiritual mysteries, *ib.* Following ancient rather than modern expositions (Prov. vii. 22) this book should be regarded as one of practical apothegms (grounded on the Law of the Lord, Prov. i. 7), typical of the spiritual life, *ib.* Illustration in the contrast between Wisdom and the Strange Woman, pp. xii, xiii. Those high doctrines, such as that of the Trinity, found even by the Arians in this book in regard to Wisdom, not necessarily understood fully by Solomon, but to be explained of his Divine Antitype: written and deciphered for us by the Spirit, pp. xii, xiii. Prov. i. p. 1; viii. p. 18. Yet, from the Canticles, we know that Solomon's wisdom given him at Gibeon made him a recipient and dispenser of divine mysteries, p. xiii. Wisdom, something judicial and royal: that of God in its fullest sense rightly regarded by the Fathers as Christ, Prov. i. 20. 23. 24. 27; iii. 18. 19; viii. p. 18; *re.* 15. 17. 23. Hengstenberg's argument for this view, pp. 18, 19. While both the strange (Prov. ii. 16; vii. 14. Heb. *zarah* and *noeri*) and the virtuous (Prov. xxxi. 10) woman are to be taken literally, to our great profit, they also typify respectively heretical teaching (the harlotry of the intellect) and the True Church which it mimics, pp. xiii, xiv. Prov. ii. 17; ix. 13. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 124. Like the Pentateuch and the Psalms this book consists of five parts, each with its peculiar organization: (1) ch. i.—ix., introductory: (2) ch. x.—xxiv.: (3) ch. xxv.—xxix., proverbs of Solomon, copied by the men of Hezekiah: (4) ch. xxx. words of Agur: (5) ch. xxxi., words of Lemuel, p. xiv. In Part 1 the verses mostly consist of two synonyms, or *synthetical* members (see *Strophical arrangement*), in a rhetorical style, *ib.* In Part 2, ch. x.—xv. consist mostly of opposed or *antithetical* members, equipoised in systematic connexion contrasted by *vau* (p. 24), with some acrostic mnemonic arrangements, *ib.* Prov. x. 7. 10. 20. Triple antithesis, Prov. xii. 5. In ch. xvi.—xxii. 16, are found com-

plete synthetical parallelisms. In ch. xxii. 17—xxiv. they are synthetical, mostly supported by some reason, the prohibitory formula predominating, pp. xiv, xv. Pleadings with Rehoboam in personal apostrophe, Prov. xxii. 17; xxiii. 11. Part 3 consists of single Proverbs and similes of artificial construction (Prov. xxv. 11), ch. xxvii. 23—27 being an allegory of the pastoral care, ch. xxviii. xxix. being antithetical, p. xv. Parts 4 and 5 are synthetical. Catchwords (which see) connect the matter in the Proverbs as in the Psalms, p. xv. Prov. xx. 1. Objections to the portions ascribed to Solomon, from tautology or other more arbitrary reasons, not worth considering. Commentators ancient and modern, pp. xv, xvi. The book of Proverbs built on the Psalms and an echo of them, in an ethical and didactic sense, (Prov. xi. 28—31). Like them has a Prologue (ch. i.—ix.). Catchwords connect it with the Prologue to the Psalms, as does the continuity of the prophetic spirit, Prov. i. p. 1; v. 15; ch. ii. 20—22; iii. 1; x. p. 24. Internal marks of authenticity, Prov. xvi. 10. Identity of language with Ecclesiastes, proving sameness of author, Prov. i. 17; xii. 12; xxiii. 2; xxxi. 30. 31. Passages derived from Job, Prov. iii. 11, 13; viii. 11, 14; xxvi. 7; xxx. 4, 5, 32. No cause for doubting the authority of ch. vi. 1—19, which is suited to warn a luxurious age, p. 12. Repeated warnings about suretyship designed for the weak Rehoboam, p. 13: when bound for a friend to a strange lender, Prov. vi. 1. 3. Power of the Eternal Logos, or Divine Wisdom, in Creation, ch. viii., and in Grace, ch. ix. p. 22. His house the Church, Prov. ix. 1. His institution of the Sacramental feast, *re. 2*. 5. The first two parts put forth by Solomon a βασιλικὸν δῶρον to Rehoboam: those collected by Hezekiah's men (Isa. xxxviii. p. 110) an appendix of gleanings from the great harvest of three thousand parables or proverbs bound together with method and order, Prov. xxv. 1. Analogy of the first book of Psalms, collected by David himself, *ib.* The fourth part, one of the most profound passages of Holy Scripture, Prov. xxx. p. 64. Agur son of Jakeh probably symbolical for Solomon; so Ithiel and Ucal symbolical, *ib.* Cp. *v.* 17. As *Kohleth* (Rem.) of Ecclesiastes. This prologue promises a revelation of mysteries, Prov. xxx. 1. *Ser Quadrigena*, six sets of four things each, *v.* 10. Spiritual meaning, *re. 11*. 17, 19, 20, 21—23. The Church symbolized, *v.* 28; so also Christ, *re. 29*—31. The fifth part by Lemuel, a symbolical name for Solomon, as taught by his mother, the Hebrew Church, Prov. xxxi. 1. Acrostic (to aid the memory) on the Virtuous Woman, a type of the Hebrew, then of Christ's Church, in the world, and at the Last Day, *re. 10*—31. Her Husband Christ, *v.* 23.

Province, the, Ezra ii. 1. Neh. xi. 3. Provinces of the Persian Empire arranged for judicial purposes, Esther i. 1. Dan. vi. 1.

Psalms (Heb. *mizmor*, its derivation, Ps. iii. p. iv). Whence used in combination with Song (*shir*), with what distinction between them, Ps. lxi. p. 97. The book of the Hymn-book and Prayer-book of Christ, Ps. xxxi. 5. His voice insensibly melting into that of His Church, *v.* 22. Benefit of its daily use in the Church, yet danger lest familiarity with the words may impair men's sense of its meaning, Vol. iv. Part 2. *Introd.* p. iii. Especially when they are sung, as Athanasius and Augustine testify, *ib.* Which singing notwithstanding serves to God's praise, *ib.*, *note 2*. Hebrew title and place of the book of Psalms in manuscripts, *ib.*, *note 3*. Order of the Psalm not accidental, but divinely arranged according to an outward connexion of language (see *Catchwords*), and an inner one of mind and spirit, p. iv. Exemplified in Ps. i. ii. and other groups, *ib.* Arranged not in chronological order, but by a law of inward affinity in relation to Christianity, *ib.*, and *note 11*. Exemplified in Ps. ii. iii., and the octave Ps. xxii.—xxix., p. v. So p. 56. As the Fathers testify, the book speaks of Christ, and Christ in it, being the Hymn-book of the Universal Church, p. v. A prophetic Creed, p. vi. Christian doctrines gradually revealed, *ib.* A poetical Pentateuch, one book in five parts, *ib.* Hebrew history of a thousand years, from Moses to Malachi, set to music, *ib.* (1) Ps. i.—xli., spiritually concluding with the history of Christ on earth, *ib.* Ps. iii. p. 5. Beginning and ending with a blessing, Ps. xli. 13: (2) Ps. xlii.—lxxii., the promised Messiah, the nation's Hope, pp. vi, vii. Concluding words, Ps. lxxii. 20: (3) Ps. lxxiii.—lxxxix., meditative and historical (Ps. lxxiii. p. 114); its mournful ending full of sadness, with no hope but in Christ, p. vii. Its writers, Ps. lxxiii. p. 114. These three books each closing with a Doxology, which in the fourth is fuller, that of Zacharias, p. vii. Ps. xli. 13; lxxii. 18; cvi. 47, 48: (4) Ps. xc.—cvi., embracing the whole time from the *Ereodus* from Egypt to the *Anodus* from Babylon, closing with the *Eisodus*, not into Canaan, but into the Land of everlasting rest, pp. viii. 145. Cp. Ps. cxiv. 3; cxv. p. 181.

All anonymous except Ps. xc. (Moses'). ci. and ciii. (David's), p. 147: (5) Ps. cvii.—cl., the people now gathered in. Has a missionary character (p. xii). Though some written earlier (as by David, p. ix), yet all adapted to this late period, and illustrated by the books of Ezra and Nehemiah, pp. vii, ix. Ps. cxviii. p. 181. Books iv. and v. seem to have been arranged by Ezra, Ps. xc. p. 145. Few Psalms in them not anonymous: for what cause, Ps. cxviii. p. 155; cii. p. 158. Fifteen songs of Degrees or Up-goings, written on various occasions in relation to persons who were types of Christ, refer to the Great Antitype, pp. ix. 170. Why they obtained that name, Ps. cxx. p. 196. Ending in a chorus of praise, the five Hallelujah Psalms, *ib.*, p. 222. Gradual ascent to higher degrees of adoration, Ps. xli. 13; cxlviii. p. 225. Present order of the Psalms probably due to Ezra or his age, pp. ix, x. 213, when the Canon was sealed in Malachi, p. x, and *note 3*. Perhaps Books i. ii. thus arranged in Solomon's age, p. x. Notion of Hitzig and Olshausen that many or most Psalms are due to the Maccabean era inconsistent with all we know of the Psalter and of the Canon, p. x, and *note 1*. Use of Divine Names in the several books of the Psalter has no direct chronological significance: the case stated, *ib.*, (see *Divine Names*). The characteristic distinction between *Jehovah* and *Elohim* illustrated by passages from Ps. lxxvii. lxxviii. lxxxii. lxxxiii.; and by Ps. liii. compared with Ps. xiv. pp. xi. xii. 17, 82. Titles of Psalms ancient, and contain independent information, pp. xii. 9, 12, 47, 85. One hundred Psalms assigned to six writers. Not received for the writers' sakes, but for the Spirit's, pp. xii, xiii. 63. Ps. xlv. 1. How David's seventy-three are distributed, p. xii, and *note 11*. First book all written by him, p. 63. "Of (or to: *lamed auctoris*) David," i.e. inspired into, Ps. iii. p. 4; pp. 63, 112, 214. In the second book, David, his sons and friends mingle, p. 63. Asaph and the Sons of Korah, p. xiii, *note 1*. Ezra and his contemporaries wrote much of the fifty which they modestly left anonymous, pp. xiii. 170. Psalms in the later books ascribed to David, thought by some to be only composed after his model, Ps. lxx. p. 96. List of nine acrostic Psalms and of musical terms, p. xiii. Our Lord's discourses and the rest of the New Testament (which cites them about seventy times, *note 9*) form an inspired comment on the Psalms, *ib.* Christian expositors. From their teaching came our Proper Psalms for special occasions, *ib.* Wish that our Calendar of Proper Psalms might be enlarged, p. xiv, *note 1*. Sarum use, *note 2*. Differences of numbering the Psalms in Hebrew and English from Greek and Latin, tabulated, p. xiii, *note 12*. Mediaeval and modern commentators, p. xiv. English Prayer-book version (A.D. 1535—39) formed from the Gallican Psalter, p. xv: avoiding some of its errors, *ib.*, *note 1*. Compared with Jerome's and the Authorized version from the Hebrew, *ib.* Advantage of a strophical arrangement, *ib.*, *note 3*. Characteristics of the Psalms and how they are to be used, pp. xv, xvi. Antiphons of Western Liturgies, their use in interpreting, p. xiv, *note 2*. Ps. i. p. 2. The Psalms only 147 in an ancient Midrash, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. 65. Psalms composed on particular occasions, Num. xiv. 45. 1 Sam. xxi. 10; xxii. 19; xxiii. 19; xxiv. 22. 2 Sam. ii. 4; v. 11; vi. 18, 23; vii. 1, 18; viii. p. 88; xii. 13; xiii. p. 100; xiv. 25, 31, 34; xvii. 22. 1 Kings iv. 32. 2 Kings xix. 36; xxv. 8. 1 Chr. xvi. 7; xviii. 12. 2 Chr. vi. 41; xx. 14. Ezra ii. 65; iii. 11; vi. 16. Neh. ii. 12; iv. 4; vii. 6; xii. 27. Appropriateness of the English Church's Proper Psalm for Ascension Day and Whit Sunday, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. 81. 2 Sam. vi. 15. Psalm xviii. adapted for liturgical service; the form employed in David's private devotions represented in 2 Sam. xxii. p. 122. Their variations compared, *re. 5*. 46. Recording character of Psalmody (see *Hymnology*), identifying the people with their forefathers, 1 Chr. xvi. 4, 19. Ps. lxxxviii. the saddest of all, seems grounded on Job, Job xxx. 24. Penitential Psalms, the seven: S. Augustine's dying study, Ps. vi. xxxii. xxxviii. li. cii. cxxx. cxlii. p. 8. His Psalmi fugitivi, Ps. vii. 9; lii. p. 81. Alphabetical Psalms mainly didactic, to help the memory, Ps. ix. p. 12; cxix. p. 186. Ps. ix. x. virtually one, as in Vulgate, the acrostic being imperfect, p. 12. Corresponding irregularities of Ps. xxv. xxxiv. pp. 34, 47. So Ps. cxlv. p. 221. Comp. Ps. xxxvii. 39. Catechism of heaven, Ps. xxiv. p. 33. Hallelujah and Hodu Psalms, pp. 164, 170, 222, 223. Ps. i. and ii. virtually alone anonymous in Book i. Cause stated, as forming a pair, intimately connected by way of Prologue, pp. 1, 63. A vision of Judgment, p. 4. Ps. ii. Paschal, expressly assigned to David, p. 2. Ps. iii. David's morning, Ps. iv. his evening hymn: a pair, p. 6. Title adopted by Habakkuk, Hab. ii. 19. The first seven links in one continuous chain, Ps. vii. p. 10. Ps. viii. an octave of Ps. i, p. 10. Ps. ix.—xiv. Visions of Judgment, followed by Ps. xv., the octave, p. 12. Both Psalms

(viii. xv.) appointed for Ascension Day, p. 18. Ps. xv. "Jacob's Ladder of Angels," *ib.*, or Vision of Ascension of the Righteous, p. 19. Ps. xvi.—xxii. another octave, whose climax is the Passion of Christ, *ib.* Ps. xv. xvi. used by Latin Church for Easter Even, p. 20. Ps. xviii. in the Syriac called a Hymn on Christ's Ascension, p. 22. Ps. xix. connected by S. Paul with the subject of Ps. xviii. At what festivals used in the English and Latin Churches, Ps. xix. p. 24; v. 5. How a *Scala Sancta*, v. 7. Gradual development of the mystery of the Cross and offices of Christ in the prophetic Psalms. Ps. xx. xxi. a sacrificial pair, leading up to Ps. xxii. which Christ appropriated to Himself, p. 26. Ps. xxii. read by Jews at Purim, p. 29. Ps. xxii.—xxv. pre-adjusted to the Creed of the Gospel, *ib.* A greater than David speaks, Ps. xxii. 16. 31. Isa. liv. p. 157. Zech. xii. 10. Ps. xxii. an octave of holy sorrow; not unmingled with joy, v. 22. As in Isa. liii., v. 30. Ps. xxiii. converts Him who was the sheep into the Good Shepherd, p. 32. Ps. xxiv. rises from the two foregoing to Christ's Ascension, v. 7. So Ps. cix. ex. p. 176. When used in the Jewish (p. 31) and Christian services. Occasion of writing it, p. 33; v. 1. David might have been himself unconscious of its full significance, p. 34. Ps. xxv. and its two octaves (xxxii. p. 44; xxxix.), penitential, an adoration of the Creed, wherein the remission of sins follows Christ's Passion, Resurrection, and Ascension (pp. 55, 56). Made by Luther a death-bed Psalm: ecclesiastical use: "*Reminiscere*," v. 6, "*Oculi*," v. 12. Ps. xxv. pp. 34—5. The benefits of the Passion procured through the means of grace in communion with the Church. David speaks of himself as of a priest, Ps. xxvi. p. 36. Occasion of Ps. xxvii. and yearnings of David unto God, p. 37. Liturgical use of Ps. xxvii., p. 38. Ps. xxix. Pentecostal: the thunderstorm typifying the terrors of Sinai and the wonders of the outpouring of the Spirit, p. 39; v. 7. 9. 10. Ps. xxx. spiritualized in Christ's birth and resurrection, v. 5. 7. Connected with Ps. xxxi. and Ps. xxii. foreshadowing the Agony and Passion, p. 42. Adopted by Christ on the Cross, v. 5. The penitential Ps. xxi. (as also Ps. xxxviii., p. 56), used for the Hebrew Great Day of Atonement, p. 44. Ps. xxxiii. without inscription, as a continuation of the preceding one, p. 46. Ps. xxxiv. xxxv. also a pair, p. 48, the latter clearly prophetic of Christ's sufferings, p. 49; v. 10. 13. 16. 17. 21. In Ps. xxxv. the commendations are not from David, but from Christ, who warns in mercy (p. 107); whose Cross is become like a judgment-seat (see *Threatenings*), Ps. xxxv. 4; xl. 14; lv. 15; lxix. 22; (especially cix. p. 174; v. 31). Duly succeeded by its echo, a Psalm of Resurrection and Ascension, p. 51. Ps. xxxvii. seems to belong to David's period of old age and feebleness, and to Abiathar's rebellion: Ps. xxxvii. *Providentia Speculum*, may be referred typically to Christ's Passion week, "Fret not thyself," "Have faith in God," p. 52. A group of four (xxxviii.—xli.) closing the first book of Psalter, seem to belong to the time when David from his weakness (Ps. xxxviii. 8; xxxix. 13) was supernaturally raised up again, p. 55. See *David*. Second book of Psalter ends in a similar group of four (lxix.—lxxii.) composed on the same occasion, pp. 55. 61. 105. 109. 110; lxxi. 9. 18. 23; lxxii. p. 112. The two sets compared in parallel columns, p. 55. Ps. xxxviii. penitential, a sacrificial remembrance of sin, p. 56. Ps. xxxix. breathes the spirit of Job, v. 13. Ps. xl. on the Great Sacrifice: its Liturgical use, p. 58; v. 15. 17. "Mine ears hast thou opened," explained, and compared with the paraphrase of the Septuagint and S. Paul, v. 6. Its concluding verses (13—17) comprise Ps. lxx., a sequel of the Good Friday Passion Psalm, lxix. p. 61. Ps. xli. claimed for Himself by Christ, p. 61. Ps. xlii. beginning the second book, bears much resemblance to Ps. iii., the virtual commencement of the first. Both written during Absalom's rebellion (Ps. xlii. 6), p. 63. Analogies between the two books detailed. Like the first, foreshadows Christ, *ib.* The moral of both is sorrow, the road to blessedness. Use of *Jehovah* chiefly in Book i. *Elohim* in Book ii. accounted for, p. 64. Inscribed rather "of (to) the sons of Korah," as inspired writers, just as "of (to) David," p. 4. 66 (see *Korah*), like *karā* prefixed to the gospels; many writers, One Spirit, p. 63. The Korahites speak in David's name, *ib.* Ps. xlii. xliii. (really one, p. 65) written in banishment from the Temple (so Ps. lxxxiv. p. 133) during Absalom's rebellion. When used in Hebrew and Latin Liturgies, p. 61. Ps. xlv. "Of Martyrs," on occasion of an assault of heathens, perhaps the same as of the Edomites in Ps. lx. lxxx., leading on to Ps. xlv., which is one of triumph, p. 66. Ps. xlv., like Ps. viii. of first book, speaks of Christ's triumphant exaltation and the Church's glory, as the Queen and Bride, p. 68. When used in Western Churches, *ib.* Referred to Messiah both by the Jews and the Fathers, *ib.* Title and occasion examined, *ib.*

Compared with Canticles. Solomon's marriage a faint image of the glorious subject, which is Christ as God, *ib.* Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 123. Ps. xlv. on the Church's perpetuity, probably of Hezekiah's age, p. 71. Cp. p. 138. Ps. xlvii. for the Ascension (written on the same occasion of David's bringing up the Ark to Zion as Ps. xxiv. lxxviii.), a prelude to the Whitsunday Psalm xlviii., p. 72. Orderly progression and ascent of prophetic imagery from Ps. xlv. to Ps. xlviii., p. 73. This last a Whitsun Psalm of the Western Church. Written on occasion of Jehoshaphat's victory (2 Chr. xx. 1—23), *ib.*, v. 4. 7. 8. 10. 12, 13. Cp. Ps. lxxxiii. p. 131. Ps. xlix. rises from the victories of one people, to address the whole world. Can death (Ps. xlviii. 14) be subdued? p. 75. As Ps. xlix. speaks of redemption, so Asaph's Ps. l. of judgment, also addressed to the whole world, p. 77. A Vision of Judgment at Zion, Ps. l. 2. Ps. li. David's great penitential cry, denoting his deep remorse, p. 79. His prayer universal, v. 18. David and Solomon were both builders of the walls of Jerusalem, and cities of Judah, hence there is no mark of later date, *ib.* Ps. lix. 35. Ps. liii. an expansion of Ps. lii. p. 82: repeats Ps. xiv. with some later and original touches, v. 5. In Ps. liv. the Liturgies teach us to rise from David to Christ, v. 3. Ps. lv. passes (as often) from David's persecution by Saul to Absalom's rebellion, p. 83; v. 7. 9. 13. Ps. lvii. a Resurrection Psalm, v. 5. 8. So Ps. lviii. 9. Ps. lviii. lix. connected with it: the unjust judgment which condemned Christ, Ps. lviii. 1; Ps. lix. p. 88. Ps. lx. the Church triumphant, p. 90, while the vanquished rejoice, v. 8. Absalom's rebellion gave occasion also to Ps. lxi.—lxiv., all continuous, pp. 92—95. Cp. Ps. cxliii. 6. In Ps. lxx. (amplified in Ps. lxxi.) we have thanks for David's restoration, and for a bounteous harvest, pp. 96, 97. Ps. lxxxv. 12: spiritualized, Ps. lxx. 12. The subject expanded, Ps. lxxii., and applied to "The World's Harvest Home," p. 99: grounded on the Aaronic Benediction, v. 1. These several Psalms preparatory fort he great Pentecostal Psalm lxxviii., both of Hebrew (v. 8. 9) and Christian Church, p. 99. Written by David, when returning with the Ark (v. 1) after victory, p. 100. Higher spiritual meaning taught by S. Paul, *ib.*, v. 1. 11. 18. Repose of the Church between the two shepfoolds of Jew and Gentile flocks, v. 13. Pentecost followed by Passion Psalm, lxix. p. 105. When used in Liturgies, *ib.* This Psalm (which is much like Ps. xl.) and Ps. xxii. most frequently quoted in the New Testament, *ib.* Some portions of it only applicable to Christ, v. 3. 21: some partially to others as types, Jer. xxxviii. 6: David, as a prophet, being lifted up out of himself in uttering them, v. 3. 21. Ps. lxx. lxxi. both Passion Psalms, made up from others: when used in Liturgies, pp. 109, 110. Ps. lxxii. rather "to Solomon" (Ps. cxvii. p. 201). Written by him at David's side, p. 112. Fulfilled mainly in Christ, v. 3. 8. 10. 15. 17. Cited as such, Zech. ix. 10. Ps. lxxiii. opening of the third book, a moral Prologue, p. 115. Ps. lxxiv. one of distress, seems to date after the Captivity, p. 116. So Ps. lxxx. p. 126; lxxx. p. 127. Ps. lxxxv. one of thanksgiving, p. 118. Ps. lxxvi. of Hezekiah's age. A vision of Universal Judgment, p. 119. Ps. lxxviii. an historical *apologia* for Judah after rebellion of the Ten Tribes, p. 121; v. 67, 68. Ps. lxxx. a prayer for the dispersed people, v. 15. Ps. lxxxi. for the new and full moon of Tisri, anticipates a future deliverance, p. 129. This Psalm and the next were appointed to be sung at the Feast of Tabernacles, *ib.* Ps. lxxxiii. connected in language and tone (v. 4) with some just preceding, seems to have been written by Jahaziel, the Levite, in the time of Jehoshaphat's distress, p. 131. Ps. lxxxiv. on privileges of God's people, p. 132. Written on the same occasion as Ps. xlii. xliii., p. 133. Ps. lxxxv. refers to Christ's Incarnation rather than to the return from Babylon, p. 135. A Christmas Hymn of Pardon and so used in the Western Church, *ib.*, v. 1. 8. 9. 10. Ps. lxxxvi. The only one in the third book ascribed to David: why mixed up with the Psalms of others. Its subdued tone, typical meaning, and Latin use at the Feast of Epiphany, p. 136. Ps. lxxxvii. (like Ps. xlv.) by a large-hearted Korahite of Hezekiah's age, also an Epiphany Hymn, p. 138; v. 4. 6. 7. Ps. lxxxvii. best comment upon Isa. xlv. 5. The pair of Passion Psalms, lxxxviii. lxxxix., the former the saddest in the Psalter, written in some time of deep affliction, p. 139: prophetic of Christ, v. 3. 5. 18. Ps. lxxxix. a spiritual Allegro to that Penseroso, a Christmas carol of the Incarnation, telling of Christ's eternal kingdom (v. 25—29. 36. 37), designed to comfort Judah after the revolt of the ten tribes, when oppressed by Shishak, p. 141; v. 10. 18. 30. 40—44. The third book ends with a Doxology of joyful assurance, v. 52. Internal reasons for placing Moses' Psalm xc. at the opening of Book iv., p. 145. Compared with Ps. cxvii., v. 13—15. Ps. xci. perhaps belongs to the Captivity, v. 3. Quoted by Christ against

Satan, on whom it recoils, p. 147; r. 13. Ps. xcii.—iv., their place in the Hebrew ritual after the Captivity, referring to the Return and rebuilding of the Temple (Isa. lii. 7), illustrating Ezra's history, pp. 148, 149, 150. Ps. xciv. Christ's betrayal and unjust trial, r. 20. Ps. xcv. the great invitational Psalm of Western Liturgies. Ascribed to David in the Septuagint, but not in the Hebrew, or necessarily in Heb. iv. 7, p. 151. Ps. xcvi. how a new song, derived from David's, 1 Chr. xvi, fitted to commemorate mercies after the Captivity. "A missionary Hymn for all ages," an universal *Te Deum*, p. 152. Ps. xcvi.—xcix. a group celebrating Christ as Jehovah the King (Ps. xcix. 4) and Judge, p. 153. Ps. xcvi. a remarkable gloss adopted by certain Fathers, r. 10. Ps. xcvi. reaching on to the General Judgment: its Liturgical use, p. 164; r. 7. Ps. xcvi. of the *Andos*, Isa. lii. 10. Ps. c. sequel of the preceding, p. 156, but Ps. ci. David's, after he had brought up the Ark: placed here by the builders of the second Temple, p. 157. Ps. xv. and xxiv. its best comments, r. 2. Ps. cii. written on the Return, for the desolations of Zion, perhaps by Nehemiah, p. 158; rr. 6, 7, 8, 13, 14. Compared with Ps. cxlvii. of the same age, p. 158. Penitential Psalm for Ash Wednesday, *ib.* Ps. ciii., like Ps. ci., written by David, and transferred from its place for its adaptation to the wants of the returning pilgrims, p. 160. Ps. civ. *Hexameron*, an Oratorio of Creation, Gen. i. set to music: applied in the Liturgies to the work of Redemption and Sanctification, p. 161: reaching to the Judgment, rr. 32, 35. Of Nehemiah's age, r. 24: so also Ps. cv. 8, 9; cvi. 6, 19. Ps. cv. the earliest *Hodie* Psalm, partly derived from David, p. 161: Ps. cvi. a continuation of Ps. cv. by the same author, p. 167. David used the close of Ps. cvi. in 1 Chr. xvi. prophetically, rr. 47, 48. The fourth book ends in a prayer and blessing, which are answered in the fifth, p. 170. The fifth book comprises gleanings of the great harvest, stored in the first and second, fifteen being David's, one Solomon's, the rest anonymous, *ib.* Ps. cvii., fallen man in his fourfold misery: hungry, captive, sick, sea-tossed, p. 170. Ps. cviii. rightly ascribed to David, as being an Anthem composed after the return from Babylon, a new song made up from Ps. lvii. and lxx., p. 173. In Ps. cix. (*Psalmus Isaacioribus*, r. 3) Christ the King and Judge, though now suffering, speaketh through the prophet: the awful imprecations (retained in the Septuagint and New Testament) must not be softened into futures (see above, Ps. xxxv.), p. 174: directed against Judas and the treacherous Jews, whom he represents, Jer. xix. 11. The language adopted by Nehemiah, in whose time the Psalm must have obtained its present place in the Psalter, p. 174. Not prompted by passion, r. 4. The curse fulfilled in the next generation, rr. 13. These maledictions applicable by way of *anagogy* to our own sins, warning us of righteous judgment, r. 31. As between Ps. xxii.—xxiv. (p. 33), so now again, we pass from the Passion, Ps. cix., to the Resurrection and Exaltation of Christ, Ps. cx. Christ and even many Rabbis refer Ps. cx. to Messiah. Testimony to the Jews of a priesthood of Melchizedek, not Aaronic, p. 176. Liturgical use, p. 177. Christ's glorious Session, r. 1. The acrostic Psalms, cxi. cxii., closely parallel, the one speaking of the eternal endurance of God's commandments, the other of the security of those that keep them, p. 178. Ps. cxiii.—cxviii. the great Hallel, sung at all the Festivals, probably used by Christ and His disciples after His Paschal supper, p. 179. Ps. cxiv. the Exodus from Egypt prefiguring the Exodus from Babylon, that of Christ's Resurrection and Advent, and our deliverance from sin: an Easter Hymn, p. 180. Ps. cxiv. cxv. closely connected: joined in the versions, p. 181. Ps. cxvi. thanksgiving for the return from Babylon, might be Nehemiah's, rr. 1, 13, 16. Ps. cxvii. prophecies the conversion of the heathen, p. 184. Ps. cxviii. composed for the dedication of the second Temple (rr. 9, 10, 15). Interlocutory and anti-strophical in form, p. 184, rr. 19—21, 26. Prophetic of Christ's triumphal entry into Jerusalem (r. 25), an Easter Hymn (r. 27), *ib.* The Lord's Day, r. 21. Ps. cxix. alphabetical, to impress the memory. Probably written by Ezra (rr. 9, 46, 99, 100, 121, 126), when, in concert with Nehemiah (rr. 50, 51, 53, 54, 55, 57, 61, 69, 121), he read the Law to the people. A spiritual rebuilding of the Church by means of God's Word, p. 186. In each of the twenty-two stanzas, some special excellence of the Word celebrated, p. 187. The first or third persons used promiscuously for good cause, public worship being combined with private study, *ib.* Law, the general term, discriminated from testimonies, ways, precepts, statutes, commandments, judgments, word, oral promise (Heb. *inrach*), r. 1. Job imitated, r. 96. Ps. cxx.—cxxxiv. Songs of Degrees or Up-goings, of different dates. So called for various reasons. Two of them Christmas Hymns, all full

of joyful associations, composing a holy ladder reaching to heaven, Ps. cxx. p. 196—7. Isa. xxxv. 10; xl. p. 114; lii. 10. Jer. xxiii. 7, 8. Ps. cxx. of Nehemiah's age, p. 197; rr. 2, 4, 5. Ps. cxxi. perhaps Ezra's, r. 1. Ps. cxxii. David's joy on bringing up the Ark, revived in Zerubbabel (pp. 201—2): perhaps sung at the Dedication of Nehemiah's walls, p. 198; r. 3. Ps. cxxiii. also seems to be Nehemiah's, rr. 2, 3, 4. Ps. cxxiv. though David's, yet put here for its appropriateness to the times after the Return, p. 200. Ps. cxxv. suits returning exiles and pilgrims at the Festivals, rr. 1, 2. Of Nehemiah's age, rr. 3, 4. Ps. cxxvi. describes the people's joy when the Temple was rebuilt, r. 5. To be fully verified at the world's Harvest Home, r. 6. Ps. cxxvii. suggested "to Solomon" by the Holy Spirit: the builder of the first Temple expresses the feelings of the builders of the second, the present uniting with the past, p. 201—2. Compared with Ecclesiastes, Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 82. Christ, the Divine Archer, r. 5. Relation of Ps. cxxviii. (of later age) to the preceding, r. 1. A marriage Psalm, r. 3. Ps. cxxix. cxxx. connected: probably Nehemiah's, p. 204. Ps. cxxx. penitential: Liturgical use, *ib.* Watching for the day of Christ's Advent, r. 6. Ps. cxxxi. David's lowliness adopted to express the feeling of his descendant Zerubbabel and of Joshua, p. 205. Ps. cxxxii. on the Incarnation: God's promise to David of an everlasting seed, p. 206; rr. 17, 18. Later than his time, r. 10. Ps. cxxxiii. David's *circinicon* (p. 208), an exhortation to union, p. 207. Pentecostal, r. 3. Ps. cxxxiv. (last of Up-goings) of later date, the people's response to his call, p. 208. Ps. cxxxv.—cxxxvii. songs of praise for those who have gone up to Zion. Ps. cxxxv. a sacred mosaic from earlier Psalms, p. 209. Ps. cxxxvi. sometimes called the "Great Hallel," may have been sung when the foundation of the second Temple was laid, p. 210. Derived from the Pentateuch and earlier Psalms, *ib.* Ps. cxxxvii. song of the Church militant transfigured into the Church glorified, p. 211. Cyrus pronounced blessed, as fulfilling the Divine pleasure. The captives in this Psalm accept and re-echo the judicial decrees against Babylon revealed in God's word. Yet even David declares his hatred of what God hates (Ps. cxxxix. 19), r. 9. Eight Psalms which follow, ascribed to David, placed here by Ezra as a manual of private devotion (Ps. cxlii. 6). Their structure analyzed, p. 213. Ps. cxxxix. David's diction modernized by Aramaisms, p. 214. Ps. cxl. cxli. supplicatory: sequel to the preceding: their Liturgical use, p. 216. Ps. cxlii. Christ's cross our crown, r. 7. Ps. cxlii. a sequel. Penitential, p. 218. Written on the same occasion as Ps. lxiii. r. 6. Ps. cxliv. of praise on David's restoration, p. 219. Compared with Ps. xviii. his last song, rr. 5—7. Ps. cxlv. David's last Psalm consummated in praise. Its title stands alone, but gives its Hebrew name to the whole Psalter, p. 221. Whitsunday Hymn, preparatory to the commission to baptize in the name of the Blessed Trinity, r. 21. Close of Psalter in five Hallelujah Psalms (cxlvi.—cl.): their Liturgical use, and missionary function, pp. 22—3. Ps. cxlvi. 5, 6; cxlvii. 2, 18; cxlviii. 12. Ps. cxlvii. sung at the Dedication of Nehemiah's walls, p. 224; r. 13; cxlviii. 12. Reference to Job xxxviii—ix., rr. 4—16. Ps. cxlviii. rising from Jerusalem to the whole world, from God the Creator to the Redeemer and Sanctifier, pp. 225—6. Ps. cxlix. the clue to this Psalm, r. 4. The sword and fetters spiritual and Pentecostal, rr. 6, 8, 9. To be contrasted with and explained from Ps. ii., r. 8: and according to the written word, r. 9. Ps. cl. antithesis and counterpart of Ps. i. from Blessedness to Praise, both to the God of Creation and of the Church, p. 224; r. 1. Every faculty to be thus employed, rr. 3—5.

Psalter (Heb. *nebel*), in the other books: rendered by "viol" in the Prophets, Ps. lvii. 8. See *Musical Instruments*.

Pseudo-Smerdis, Dan. xi. 2.

Pthah, the god of fire at Memphis, Isa. xxxvii. 36.

Ptolemy, the successor of Alexander, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiii, note 7. Dan. viii. 8; xi. 4, 5.

Ptolemy, the geographer, cited, Gen. x. 23. Job i. 1. Ezek. i. 1; xxx. 5.

Pul, Isa. lxvi. 19. See *Phul*.

Punctuation, the, noticed, 2 Kings ii. 14. Neh. iii. 1; xi. 3. Job ix. 5. Ps. cx. 3; cxxi. 1. Isa. xx. 3; xxvii. 4; xliii. 9; lxvi. 5. Jer. xxiii. 39; xxxi. 9; lii. 28. Lam. ii. 18. Ezek. xiii. 20; xlii. 9, 11; xliii. 7; xlviii. 30. Hos. xiii. 15. Mic. vi. 5. Zech. iv. 10.

Punishments, ascending scale of, Lev. xxvi. 18. Inflicted by means of the sin itself, Hos. xiii. 11. Degrees of eternal punishment, Deut. xxv. 2. Cruelty in inflicting punishments, Dan. ii. 5; iii. 6; vi. 24. Nah. iii. 4.

Punon, meaning of the word: copper mines there, Num. xxxiii. 42.

Purgatory, the doctrine of, not to be built upon, Zech. ix. 11. Discouraged, Ezek. xviii. 22.

- Parim, the feast of, how a parallel to Easter, Esther vii. 9. "Esther's fast," Esther ix. 26.
- Pasey, Dr. E. B., characterized, Deut. xxxi. 9. Vol. iii. p. 300. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxix. Cited, Gen. xlix. 1. Deut. xxxi. 9. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 161. 2 Kings xvii. 3; xxiii. 29. 1 Chr. iii. 21; vi. 42. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 6. Ezra i. 1; iv. 7; vii. 6. 8; x. 6. Neh. i. 1. 4. 5. Vol. iii. p. 365, notes 1 and 4. Esther i. 1; ii. 1; ix. 32. Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xviii. Job iii. 3; xix. 26; xxxi. 33. Part 2. p. xii, note 9. Ps. i. p. 1; xxxiii. p. 46; cvii. p. 170; cxix. p. 187. Part 3. p. xvi, note 1. Prov. xxv. 1; xxx. p. 65; xxxi. 1. Part 3. pp. 7-56, note 3. Isa. ix. 6; x. 8; xiii. 8; xxi. p. 58; xxiii. 1. 15; xxv. 8; xxvi. 19; xxvii. 1; xxxiv. 16; lxvi. 24. Jer. i. 18; xiii. 18; xxii. 19. 30; xxv. 1. 10; xxvii. 7; xxxv. 19; xlv. 30; l. p. 121; li. 32. Ezek. i. 1; iv. 5; viii. 3; xii. 4; xxvi. p. 215; xxix. 13. 15; xxxviii. 17; xlvii. 1. Vol. vi. Part 1. *Introd.* pp. v. xxi. Dan. i. 1. 4. 7. 21; ii. 1. 2. 4. 20. 39; iii. p. 10; v. 1. 2. 5. 6. 12. 21. 23; iv. 15. 16; v. 1. 25. 31; vi. 7; vii. p. 29; v. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 13; viii. 2. 5. 8; ix. 3. 4. 21-27; p. 47; xi. 7. 36. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. vii, note 2. Hos. i. 2. 6; iv. 18; vi. 2; x. 15; xi. 3; xiii. 14. *Joel* i. p. 29; v. 4. 6. 19; ii. 6. 23. Amos iii. 12; v. 26; viii. 9; ix. 1. 3. Obad. p. 57; v. 11. 12. Jonah i. 2. 3; iv. 6. Mic. v. 2. Nah. i. 3. Zech. i. 18; vi. 1-8; ix. 1; xii. 10; xiii. 7. Mal. iii. 1.
- Pasey, P. E., his edition of Cyril of Alexandria, Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxix.
- Pythagoras, his *aurea carmina*, Ps. xvi. p. 19. Prov. iv. 23.
- Pyx, the chapel of, at Westminster Abbey, the depository of weights and measures, 1 Chr. xxiii. 29. Prov. xvi. 11.
- Quails, God's dealings in regard to them, Ex. xvi. 13. Num. xi. 31.
- Queen-mother (Heb. *gebirah*), her inordinate power in Judah, 1 Kings xiv. 21. 2 Kings x. 13; xviii. 2. 2 Chr. xii. 1; xv. 16. Isa. iii. 12. 16. Jer. xiii. 18; xxii. 26. and throughout the East, 1 Kings xv. 13. Cp. Dan. v. 10. Influence of the Persian Queen Consort (Heb. *shegal*), Neh. ii. 6. Dan. v. 2. Also of his mother, Esther ii. 1. The Queen (*shegal*) derives all from Christ, not of her own right, Ps. xlv. 9.
- Quotations from the Old Testament paraphrased in the New, so as to give the true and full sense, Ps. lxviii. 18; lxix. 22. Hab. i. 5; ii. 4. Or for greater clearness, Mic. v. 2. S. Matthew's citation considered, Zech. xi. 13. Combination of several passages from various prophets, Amos v. 27.
- Raamah, Gen. x. 7. Ezek. xxvii. 22.
- Raames, in the province of Ramesses or Goshen, located, Ex. i. 11.
- Rabbah, or Rabbath (*Philadelpia*, *Amman*), of the Ammonites, Og's trophy there, Deut. iii. 11. 2 Sam. xi. 1. Its position and history, 1 Chr. xx. 2. Jer. xlix. 2. Ezek. xxi. 20; xxv. 5. 10. Amos i. 14. Symbolically called *Bathrabbim*, Cant. vii. 4.
- Rabbith, Josh. xix. 20.
- Rab-mag, an official title, Jer. xxxix. 3.
- Rab-saris, and Rab-shakeh, official titles, 2 Kings xviii. 17. Jer. xxxix. 3. Dan. i. 11. Cp. Neh. i. 10.
- Rachel, a shepherdess, type of Christ's spouse, Gen. xxix. 9. 10; xxxv. 19. Her envy and impatience: her wrestling spiritualized, Gen. xxx. 1. 5. 8. Adversity increases her piety, v. 22. Tainted with idolatry, like some Christian Churches, Gen. xxxi. 34. Taught guile by her father, whom in turn she deceived, v. 35. Her tomb near Bethlehem, Gen. xxxv. 19. Jer. xxxi. 15-17. Rachel's children the holy innocents, *ib.* The true wife, and so named before Leah, Ruth iv. 11. Her sepulchre, 1 Sam. x. 2.
- Racine, his *Esther*, cited, Vol. iii. p. 359, note 6. His false estimate of her character derived from the Apocryphal interpolations, p. 361, note 4.
- Radulphus Flaviacus, cited, Lev. i. 1; xvi. 17.
- Rahab (1), literally a harlot, Josh. ii. 1. An example of the penitent and faithful soul turning to Christ, *ib.* Also a type of the Gentile Church, meaning of her name, *ib.* Her untruthfulness not to be excused, but palliated by her previous habits, v. 5. See *Midwives*. The process of her conviction traced, v. 9. As yet imperfect, v. 11. No salvation out of Christ, v. 18. Duty of keeping in His Church, v. 19. Mercy cannot be had when the Second Advent has arrived, v.
21. Josh. vi. 17. Saved though in the place of greatest danger, *ib.* Grafted into the good olive tree and receiving a place in the genealogy of Christ, v. 23.
- Rahab (2), i. e. pride, applied symbolically to Egypt, Job ix. 13; xxvi. 12. Ps. lxxxviii. 4; lxxxix. 10. Isa. xxx. 7; li. 9. Coupled with Babylon, Ps. lxxxvii. 4.
- Raiment, its miraculous preservation in the wilderness named only in Deut. vii. 4. Neh. ix. 21. Why fitly reserved for the last book of the Pentateuch, Deut. viii. 4. Suggestive reflections and spiritual inferences therefrom, *ib.* Oriental raiment of great value, Job xxvii. 16. A vesture, *ὑποστράδιος*, Job xxxviii. 14. Of needlework, Ps. xlv. 14. Cp. Ex. xxvi. 1. Raimundus, cited, Jer. xxiii. 6.
- Rain, its seasons in Palestine, Lev. xxvi. 4. Deut. xi. 14. 1 Sam. xii. 17. Job xxix. 23; xxxvii. 6. Jer. iii. 3; v. 24. Sent at a critical time, 2 Sam. xii. 9. 10. Not unusual in December, Ezra x. 9. Spiritual sense considered, Deut. xi. 14. Zech. xiv. 17. In the desert especially felt to be a sign of God's love, Job v. 10. Former and latter, of what respectively typical, Zech. x. 1. No rain in Egypt, Zech. xiv. 18.
- Rainbow, the, perhaps did not exist before the flood. Its typical and sacramental character, Gen. ix. 13. Only an occasional witness, Ps. lxxxix. 37.
- Rakkath, Josh. xix. 35.
- Ramah, (1), of Samuel, in Benjamin, Josh. xviii. 25. Judg. xix. 13. 1 Kings xv. 17. 2 Chr. xvi. 1. Isa. x. 29. Jer. xl. 1. Hos. v. 8: called also *Ramathaim-zophim*, 1 Sam. i. 1: (2), in Asher, Josh. xix. 29: (3), in Naphtali, v. 36: (4), Rachel's near Bethlehem, Jer. xxxi. 15. Probably an appellative, 1 Sam. xxii. 6.
- Ramath, or *Ramoth*, of the south, Josh. xix. 8. 1 Sam. xxx. 27.
- Rameses, Ex. xii. 37. See *Goshen*, *Raameses*.
- Ramoth, in Gilead, its position and history, Deut. iv. 43. 1 Kings iv. 13; xxii. 3. 2 Kings ix. 1. Jer. xlviii. 32. Called *Ramoth-mizpeh*, Josh. xiii. 26: *Ramah*, 2 Kings viii. 29. 1 Chr. vi. 80.
- Rambach, cited, Eccles. xii. 10.
- Ransom (Heb. *copher*) of the soul, Ps. xlix. 7. See *Redeemer*.
- Rashbam, cited, Gen. xlix. 3. Ex. xii. 40.
- Rashi, cited, Gen. xlix. 3. Ezek. xlv. 1.
- Rauner, cited, Gen. xxxii. 2. 22. 30; xxxiii. 17. Deut. iii. 10. Isa. xxxiv. 6. Jer. xix. 2; xlviii. 32. Amos ix. 3.
- Raven, the, opposed to the dove, represents the foes of the Church, Gen. viii. 7. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 115. Obedience of a gluttonous and unclean bird, rebukes man's disobedience, 1 Kings xvii. 4. 6.
- Rawlinson, G., cited, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxi, note. 2 Kings xv. 19; xviii. 17; xix. 12. 1 Chr. v. 26. 2 Chr. xxviii. 16; xxxii. 1; xxxiii. 11. Isa. xiii. 8. 15. 19; xiv. 12; xv. p. 45; xvii. 1. 2; xxiii. 13; xlvii. 1; xlviii. 10. 13. Jer. xxv. 1. 26; xxxix. 9; xlv. 2; xlvii. 4; li. 31. 37. 46. 58. Ezek. iv. 1; xxiii. 14. 15; xxvi. p. 215; xxix. 13. Dan. iii. 5; iv. p. 15; v. 30; v. 1; viii. 2. Jonah i. 2; iii. 7. Nah. ii. 1. 4. 5. 6. 8. 12; iii. 4. 10. 18. Hab. ii. 15. 16. 17. Zech. ix. 14.
- Rawlinson, Sir H., cited, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxi, note. 2 Kings xvii. 30. 2 Chr. xxxii. 1. Ezek. iv. 1. Dan. v. 1.
- Reading, the, fluctuates in 15 places between the Hebrew words for "not" and for "to him" or "to himself," Ex. xxi. 8. Lev. xxv. 30. 1 Sam. ii. 3. 2 Kings viii. 10. Job xiii. 15. Ps. c. 3. Isa. ix. 3; xlix. 5. Also between *daleth* and *resh*, 1 Chr. i. 41. Between "Oh that" and "not," Job ix. 33. So perhaps Job xiv. 4. See *Various Readings*.
- Rebekah, in her family, Gen. xxiv. 10. 15. Her kindly nature tested, v. 20. A type of Christ's Spouse, v. 36. 60. 67. Her share in deceiving Isaac how far to be palliated, Gen. xxvii. 5. Her punishment, v. 44. Disappears from history, Gen. xxxiv. 1; xxxv. 8.
- Rechabites, the, permanent in the East, Jer. xxxv. 19. Their abstinence not praised, but rather their dutiful obedience, v. 18.
- Recitative, in prose, a prelude to poetical prophecy, Amos vii. p. 50.
- Recognition, mutual, in another world, the question discussed, Gen. xxiii. 3; xxv. 8; xlix. 33. 2 Sam. xii. 23. 2 Kings v. 26.
- Recorder, office of, 2 Sam. viii. 16.
- Recovery from sickness commemorated, Ps. xxx. p. 41; v. 5. Isa. xxxviii. 15. 16.
- Red (or Weedy) Sea, Ex. x. 19. Attempts to fix localities in its neighbourhood, Ex. xiii. 20; xiv. 2; xvi. 1; xvii. 1. Its passage (made easy to God's people, Isa. xliii. 12. 14) typical of Holy Baptism, and the final victory of God's people, Ex. xiv. 14; xv. p. 253. Vol. i. Part 1. pp. 247-8. Ps. lxxvi. 6. Israel's baptismal font, Ps. cxiv. 2. A miniature of the work

- of Creation, Ps. xxxiii. 7: and a pledge of greater mercies to come, Isa. xliii. 2. The sea has apparently receded from the north, Ex. xiv. 2. Traditions respecting its drying up, v. 16. Eastern gulf of Akabah meant, Num. xiv. 25; xxi. 4. Deut. i. 1; ii. 1. Spiritually referred to, Isa. xi. 15, 16. Zech. x. 11. Not meant by *Sophah*, Num. xxi. 14.
- Redeemer (Heb. *goel*: see *Avenger*, *Next Kinsman*), in what sense applied to Christ in the Old Testament, Job xix. 25. Isa. xxxv. 9; xli. 14. Ezek. xi. 15. A Person not merely man: yet Job's apprehension of him imperfect, Job xix. 25. Used in connexion with the doctrine of the Resurrection, Ps. xix. 7. See *Ransom*.
- Redemption, personal, Lev. xxvii. 2. 2 Kings xii. 4. That of land must be made at the Jubilee, Lev. xxv. 10, 23. The next of kin, or redeemer, might purchase it, as Christ our Redeemer did the whole inheritance lost in Adam, re. 25, 27. Not so with houses in walled cities, re. 29.
- Reed, the measuring, its length, Ezek. xl. 3, 5; xlviii. 9, 15, 16. Used figuratively for the Canon of Scripture, Ezek. *Retro-spect*, p. 278, note 7.
- Reformatio Legum*, cited, Ex. xxii. 17. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 57. Lev. xviii. 18. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. x, note 2.
- Reformation, religious, if genuine, never an act of innovation, Gen. xxvi. 15; but of restoration and extension, Judg. x. 4. Ever blemished by human infirmities, 2 Sam. vi. 3. Ezra's reformation through the agency of the priests and Levites an encouragement to continental nations, and a lesson to ourselves, Ezra x. 20—22. That of the English Church characterized, Lev. xiv. 41. Cant. v. p. 145; v. 9. The evil times before it, Cant. v. p. 144. Conflict with heresy ends in enlargement, Gen. xxvi. 20—22. Hope for continental Churches, Judg. x. 4, which should be called not by their own names, but by Christ's, *ib*. A reformation adds to the guilt of those who retain corruptions in spite of it, Zeph. i. 4.
- Refrains, 1 Kings xii. 16. Ps. lvi. p. 85; lvii. 5; lix. 6; lxxx. 3. Ezek. viii. 14. Wrongly arranged in some musical settings, Ps. cvii. 8.
- Refuge, cities of, their design as penitential asylums with the benefit of religious comfort, Num. xxxv. 13. Josh. xii. 13. Christ our Refuge, Josh. xx. p. 63. The way to them made plain for all, Deut. xii. 3. Emblems of Christian Churches, Num. xxxv. 13: whose means of grace should be universally accessible, Deut. iv. 43. No person could be more than thirty miles from one, Num. xxxv. 14. Deut. iv. 43. One common faith for all, Josh. xx. p. 63; xxi. 41. Why the death of the High Priest was to release the fugitive: typical signification of that rule, Num. xxxv. 25, 28. New cities of refuge opened throughout the world, Deut. xix. 8.
- Rehoboam, meaning of the name, 1 Kings xi. 43. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 84, note 4. The weak son of a wise father, a child at forty, 1 Kings xi. 43. 2 Chr. xiii. 7. Eccles. x. 16. Compared with our Richard II. and some of the Stuarts, Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. 88-9. Eccles. vii. 1. His infatuation, 1 Kings xii. 18. Evil influence of the Queen-mother, 1 Kings xiv. 21, 31. 2 Chr. xii. 13: and of his father's bad example, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 81. Though Proverbs and Ecclesiastes were written with a special view to him, *ib*, p. x. Prov. i. 4, &c., (see *Ecclesiastes*, *Proverbs*), and Heman wrote Ps. lxxxix. to encourage him, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. 141. His polygamy, and wise treatment of his own sons, 2 Chr. xi. 23. Humbles himself in trouble, so that for a time all went well, 2 Chr. xii. 12, 14.
- Rekem, Josh. xviii. 27. 1 Chr. ii. 43?
- Reland, cited, Lev. xvi. 2. 1 Sam. xii. 17. Isa. xv. 1.
- Relative terms, varying with the writer's actual position or ideal stand-point, Gen. i. 10. "Beyond Jordan," *ib*. Isa. ix. 1. "On the other side Jordan" (Judg. vii. 25), 1 Sam. xxxi. 7. "On this side Jordan," Deut. i. 1. Josh. i. 15. Both senses, Num. xxxii. 19. Cp. Josh. xii. 11. 1 Kings iv. 24. (See *Pentateuch*). The sea, i. e. westward, Ex. x. 19. Isa. xxiv. 14.
- Religion, spiritual, contrasted with mere outward observances, Isa. lviii. 2. Ezek. xviii. 31. Value of personal religion, Ezek. xxxiii. 8. True religion diffusive, Zeph. i. 12. It cannot exist without honesty, 1 Chr. xxiii. 29: and holiness, Zech. i. 3; viii. p. 134. To be propagated by love, not by force, Gen. xxiv. 15, 25—31. Zech. xiii. 3.
- Relton, E. W., referred to, Isa. xl. p. 118.
- Remigius, cited, Hab. ii. 7. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. iii. 9; xi. 15; xii. 9.
- Remmon-methoar, explained, Josh. ix. 13.
- Rennie, cited, 1 Kings vi. 23.
- Repentance, however temporary or slight, not wholly ineffectual; if genuine, it can remove threatened judgments. Case of Ahab considered, 1 Kings xxi. 27—29. Universal repentance needed, Zech. xii. 12, 13. None on God's part for His good gifts, Hos. xiii. 14.
- Repetition and amplification of Scripture promises designed for men's more full assurance, Gen. ii. 4; xxxv. 10; xli. 32. Zeph. iii. 15. Zech. xi. 13; xiv. 8. Or they are repeated in ampler detail, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. vi. Ps. xlii. p. 63; lxix. p. 105. Prov. xxix. 1. Or with fresh obligations, Deut. xvi. 2. Always for emphasis, not tautology, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xv. Prov. ix. 18; xxxiii. 11. Cant. iii. p. 138. Especially characteristic of the prophetic books, Isa. xl. p. 117. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxiii. Triple, as a sing-song, Jer. vii. 4.
- Rephaim (sometimes rendered *giants*), their location, Gen. xiv. 5. Deut. iii. 11. "Dead things," Job xxvi. 5. Prov. ii. 18; xxi. 16. The wicked dead, Isa. xxvi. 19. Valley of, Josh. xv. 8. 2 Sam. v. 18. Its richness, Isa. xvii. 5.
- Rephidim, site of, Ex. xvii. 1. Num. xxxiii. 14.
- Reserve of language, Scripture examples of, 1 Sam. xxiv. 3. Eccles. xii. 5.
- Rest of God, in His love, Zeph. iii. 17.
- Restitution, that to be made by a thief, why more for an ox than for a sheep, Ex. xxii. 1. As much required of us as repentance for the sin, Lev. vi. 5. Cp. 2 Sam. xii. 6. All Creation to be restored through Christ's merits, Joel i. 18; ii. 21.
- Restoration of Israel (Amos vii. p. 50; ix. 11. Zech. x. p. 141; v. 10; xiv. 20), as of all other nations, chiefly spiritual, not literal, and so in part fulfilled, Jer. xii. 15. Ezek. xvi. 53; xx. 34, 39, 41; xxviii. 25; xxxiv. 13, 14. Hos. i. 10, 11; iii. 5. Joel iii. 1. Amos ix. 14, 15. Zech. x. 11. The subject discussed, Ezek. xxxvi. pp. 238-9 (see *Jew*). A great marvel, Zech. viii. 6: and comfort to Christ's Church, Ezek. xvi. 54; xxxvi. 24—26; xxxvii. 12—14, 24, 26.
- Restoration, the, of the English Church and monarchy largely promoted by the piety of holy Confessors, 2 Chr. xi. 13, 14. Lack of such spirit in too many concerned, Ps. cxxxi. 1.
- Resurrection, the, of the body, early traces of such a hope, Gen. xxii. 2; xxxvii. 10. Ex. iii. 6. Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introduct.* p. xii. Job xiv. 7, 10; xvi. 19; xix. 26. Isa. xxv. 8; xxvi. 19; lxxi. 24. Zeph. iii. 8. Mal. iv. 2. Job's glorious profession, Job xix. 25. Men's care for holy burial with their fathers, a testimony thereto, Gen. xxv. 8; i. 24, 25. Deut. xxxiv. 6. Judg. x. 1; xii. 7, 9. 1 Kings ii. 10. Neh. ii. 3. Contrasted with the solitary selfishness of those that built the pyramids, Job iii. 14. The just shall rise in the flesh, Ps. cxlv. 21: in joy, Ps. cxx. 5: in God's likeness, Ps. xvii. 13: in the morning, Ps. xlix. 14, 15: in their own identical persons, Job xix. 26. Who shall rise first, Dan. xii. 13. Job prophesied of it, Job xiv. 12—14. Ezekiel's vision implies it, Ezek. xxxvii. 12. The doctrine clearly stated, Dan. xii. 2. Hos. xiii. 14. Mic. ii. 13. Conjecture that the patriarchs arose when Christ died, Gen. xlvii. 29, 30. See also *Life*, the future.
- Retaliation, the law of, is for the magistrate, but the Gospel rule for private Christians, Ex. xxi. 23, 24. Retaliation for sin a law of our being, even under the Gospel, *ib*.
- Retribution, adjusting men's punishment to their sins: examples of this law of a Divine moral Governor, Judg. i. 7. Instances of a merciful abatement of its duration, Dan. viii. 14; ix. p. 46. If we knew men's secret sins, we should see much more clearly the cause of their miseries, 2 Sam. xi. p. 94. Why temporal retribution is inflicted on forgiven sinners, pp. 99, 100. Those who will not be God's servants will be men's slaves, 2 Chr. xii. 7, 8. Yet all suffering is not retribution, but sometimes only wholesome correction and godly trial, Job iv. 1. Eccles. ix. 1.
- Retrospections in the logical order no necessary mark of corruption of the text, but rather of the natural simplicity of ancient style, Job xxxi. 38, 39.
- Retrospective references to preceding portions in the concluding books of a series in Scripture, Mal. iv. 4.
- Return, the, from Babylon: (1) under Zerubbabel, B.C. 536-5, date and length of journey, Ezra i. 5. Oblations sent by many who chose to remain, v. 4. What tribes came back, v. 5. Variations in numbers between Ezra ii., Neh. vii., and 1 Esdras v. discussed, Ezra ii. 1, 5, 6, 42. The sum total how the same in Ezra and Nehemiah, though the details vary, v. 64. Neh. vii. 6. (2) That under Ezra, B.C. 458, Ezra viii. 1—14. Neh. viii. 1.
- Reuben, his sin which forfeited his birthright, Gen. xxxv. 22. Deut. xxvii. 13. Amos ii. 7. Why he ventures to speak to Jacob about Benjamin, Gen. xlii. 37. His portion in Jacob's prophecy, Gen. xlix. 3, 4. His unstable purposes, *ib*. Judg. v. 15, 16. Prone to stand aloof, like the Jews; from the Gospel of Christ, *ib*. Jealousy of his tribe against Judah, Num. xvi. 1. Why decreased, Num. xxvi. 5—7. Near neighbours of Gad in the camp, and receive an inheritance near him, Num. xxxii. 1. Moses seasonably prays for his increase, Deut. xxxiii. 6. How a type of faithful Israel under the Law, Josh. iv. 12.
- Reuel, or Jethro, his two names explained, Ex. ii. 18. A priest

- of God among his own people (see *Priest*), v. 16. Ex. xviii. 12. His visit and counsel to Moses, *vv.* 1. 21. Hobab, son of Raguel, was probably his son, Num. x. 29.
- Revolutions, popular, the necessary consequences of popular elections of rulers, Dan. xi. 38.
- Rezepl, 2 Kings xix. 12.
- Ribera, cited, Amos v. 26. Zech. xii. 2; xiii. 6.
- Riblah, meaning and position of, Num. xxxiv. 11. 2 Kings xxiii. 33; xxv. 6. Jer. xxii. 12. An important post, Jer. xxxix. 3. 5. Falsely conjectured, Ezek. vi. 14.
- Rieh, cited, Job xxxvi. 16.
- Richter, cited, Amos ix. 3.
- Riddles, usual at Oriental entertainments, Judg. xiv. 12. 1 Kings x. 1. When Christ came to wed His Church, He put forth parables, Judg. xiv. 12.
- Righteousness restored to man in his justification by the Lord our Righteousness, Job xxxiii. 23. 26. Cant. i. 15. Isa. liii. 11. Jer. xxxiii. 15, 16. Hos. x. 12. Joel ii. 23. Without Christ had it, He could not bring salvation, Isa. lix. 16. Application of the term to Him vindicated from Socinian objections, Jer. xxiii. 6. The word used for "alms" by the Rabbis, not in the Old Testament, Dan. iv. 27. "Sun of Righteousness," how a title of Christ, Mal. iv. 2.
- Rimmon, or *Haddad-rimmon* (cf. Zech. xii. 11), the Syrian sun-god, 2 Kings v. 18. The god of Damascus, Amos iv. 3. See *Haddad, Pomegranate*. The rock, Judg. xx. 47. A town of Judah, Zech. xiv. 1. A Levitical city, 1 Chr. vi. 77.
- Rimmon-parez, the name derived, Num. xxxiii. 19.
- Ring, the, or royal signet, an emblem of power, Gen. xli. 41. See *Seal*.
- Riphat, delineated, Gen. x. 3.
- Rithmah, its meaning and probable site, Num. xxxiii. 18. 1 Kings xix. 4. The Israelites were long in its neighbourhood during their 37 years of wandering, Num. xxxiii. 19.
- Ritter, cited, Eccles. ii. 5.
- River, the great, Euphrates, 1 Kings iv. 21; xiv. 15. Those of Babylon, Ps. cxxxvii. 1. That of Egypt, the Nile (Heb. *nahar*), Gen. xv. 18. The brook (Heb. *nahal*) of Egypt, the southern limit of Palestine, *ib.* Num. xxxiv. 5. 1 Kings viii. 65 (but cp. Ezek. xlvii. 9). Called *Shihor*, Josh. xiii. 3: *Shihor*, 1 Chr. xiii. 5. The river of the wilderness, Amos vi. 14.
- Roaring, of impenitence, distinguished from the cry of godly sorrow, Ps. xxxii. 3.
- Robinson, Dr. E., cited, Gen. xxi. 15; xxii. 4; xxxii. 2; xxxiii. 18; xxxvii. 17, 25; xlviii. 22. Num. xxxiii. 18. Deut. iii. 10. Josh. ii. 1. Judg. xix. 10, 12; xx. 47; xxi. 8. Ruth ii. 14, 17; iii. 4. 1 Sam. xiv. 4; xvii. 2; xxiii. 25; xxv. 2. 5; xxix. 1. 2 Sam. ii. 13. 1 Kings i. 9; v. 6, 17; x. 27; xvi. 24; xix. 4. 2 Kings ii. 19; iii. 9, 11; v. 12; vii. 3; ix. 17; xiv. 7, 13; xv. 29; xviii. 17; x. 20; xxiii. 33. 1 Chr. iv. 41. 2 Chr. xx. 13. Neh. ii. 8, 13, 15; iii. 15, 16. Isa. x. 28—32; xxii. 8—11; xxxiv. 6; lxiv. 10. Jer. i. 1; vi. 1. Ezek. xxvi. 4. Hos. x. 14. Amos i. 1. Obad. 3. Hab. i. 12—17.
- Rock, in the Old Testament, applied only to God and Christ, Deut. xxxii. 4. Josh. iv. 1—3. Judg. xiii. 19. 2 Sam. xxii. 32. Ps. xix. 7; lxi. 2; xlvii. 1. Prov. xxx. 19. Isa. xxxii. 2, xv. 8. *Sela* and *tsur* of the Hebrew discriminated, 2 Sam. xxii. 2, 3. See *Stones*. Uniting the songs of Moses, Hannah, and David, with Christ, 1 Sam. ii. 2. Hence interpret Matt. xvi. 18, Deut. xxxii. 4. Claim of the Papal See to this title, Josh. iv. 1—3. Ezek. xxxviii. p. 221.
- Roe, the, described, Prov. v. 19. Rather *gazelle*, in Prov. vi. 5. Cant. ii. 7, 9.
- Roebuck and hart, the, abound in Palestine. Clean for food, though not for sacrifice, Deut. xii. 15.
- Rogelin, 2 Sam. xix. 31.
- Rolls, the, on which ancient books were written (Jer. xxxvi. 2. Ezek. ii. 9. Zech. v. 2), made it easy to join on fresh books, such as the successive parts of the Pentateuch, and Joshua after them, Deut. xxxi. 9. Written in parallel columns, Jer. xxxvi. 23. Christ written of in the roll of the whole Law, included ἐν κεφαλῇ, i.e. the umbilicus or apex of the stick (Isa. xxxiv. 4) round which it was rolled, Ps. xl. 6. Rather render "tablet" in Isa. viii. 1. The book of Esther so called (Heb. *megillah*) by the Jews, Esther ix. 26.
- Rome, pagan, joined the deities of conquered nations to her own Pantheon, 2 Kings xvi. 10—15. The western Babylon, 2 Kings xx. 17; xxiv. 1. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 17. Hab. i. 5. Her military roads, Zech. i. 20. Her shaking of the nations before Christ came, Hagg. ii. 6, 7. Converted to Christ, Isa. lx. 14. Zech. viii. 6: her temples to Churches, Jer. xxxi. 40. Zech. iv. 7.
- Rome, the Church of, her erroneous teaching in some modern Catechisms, Ex. xx. 4. Why improperly retaining in her service the bells from the High Priest's robe, Ex. xxviii. 33.
- Why wrong in adoring the Holy Sacrament without participation thereof, Lev. viii. 31: and in repeating the One Sacrifice, Num. xx. 10, 11. Not truly the Mother and Mistress of the Churches, Isa. liv. 1. Rather the Apocalyptic Babylon, Jer. l. p. 121; li. 7. 45. Nah. p. 87. Hab. ii. 2, 3, 13, 14. Zech. v. 11: the true Merathaim and Pekod (which see), Jer. l. 21. Resembling Edom in withholding access to the well of Scripture, Num. xx. 18. A spiritual Cozbi (i.e. lie), the daughter of Zur (see *Rock*), Num. xxv. 15. Her false doctrine and worship, Num. xxxi. 16. Like to the Gibeonites in her pretence to antiquity, Josh. ix. 14: and to the lying old prophet of Bethel, Vol. iii. p. 55. The woman sitting on many waters, Josh. xi. 5. A Delilah, Judg. xvi. 17. The woman in the Ephah, Zech. v. p. 130; *vv.* 9, 11. Her idolatry rebuked, 2 Sam. v. 8. Her creature-worship, Josh. xxiv. 15. Mic. vii. 8. Her unholy gains, Josh. xvi. 10. Hos. vii. 7. A sacred spot degraded, Judg. i. 34. Usurps Christ's place, Deut. xxii. 5. Our duty of leaving her, Zech. ii. 7. Her numbers no proof of the righteousness of her claims, Vol. ii. Part I. p. 114. Her imposition of human traditions on the conscience, Isa. xxix. 13. Schism caused by the laying down unscriptural terms of communion is her sin, not ours, Judg. xii. 4. Hooker's earnest remonstrance with her, 2 Chr. xiii. 12. She is vainly warned, Jer. li. 9. Her dogma against keeping faith with heretics, Vol. ii. Part I. p. 30. 2 Sam. xxi. 6. Puts so-called heretics to death, Deut. xiii. 5. Is made an instrument of God's punishment on her votaries, Jer. li. 7. Her overthrow, Hab. iii. 13. No help for her then in her will-worship, Hab. ii. 18. A great jubilee at her fall, Jer. li. 48.
- Roots of houses in Palestine, being flat, used as places for recreation, Deut. xxii. 8. 2 Sam. xi. 2. Isa. xxii. 1: or for sleep, 1 Sam. ix. 26. 2 Sam. xvi. 22: for feasts, Neh. viii. 16: or for idolatrous worship, Jer. xix. 13; xlviii. 38. Holy Pisgahs of spiritual contemplation, Neh. viii. 16. Spiritual meaning of the precept to put battlements upon them, Deut. xxii. 8.
- Roorda, cited, Mic. v. 2.
- Rose, H. J., Arehd., cited, Vol. i. Part I. p. xl, *note* 8. Ps. ii. p. 4. Dan. vii. 13.
- Rose, the, rather *crocus*, Cant. ii. 1. Isa. xxxv. 1.
- Rosellini, cited, Gen. xl. 1. 9; xli. 1. 41, 48; xliii. 33; xlv. 6; 1. 2. 7. Ex. i. 14. Jer. xlv. 30. Dan. iii. 5.
- Rosenmüller, cited, Ruth iii. 1. Job iv. 15; vi. 25; xxvii. 16; xxix. 18; xxxix. 4. Ps. lxxvii. p. 100. Prov. iii. 35; xviii. 24; xxvi. 2. Isa. xxx. 4; xl. p. 113; lxiii. 3. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xvi, *note* 3. Jer. ii. 34; iii. 1; viii. 13; ix. 19; xxxi. 22; xxxvii. 12. 16; xli. 9; xlv. 19; xlv. 20; xlix. 7; li. 13. Ezek. xvi. 31. Mic. i. 11. Zech. ix. 1.
- Rosh, Ezek. xxxviii. 2; xxxix. 1.
- Rosmini, cited, Mal. ii. 7.
- Rubies (Heb. *peninim*), rather pearls, Job xxviii. 18. Prov. viii. 11. Lam. iv. 7. Called *carchedonius*, from Carthage, Ezek. i. 5.
- Rückert, cited, Hagg. ii. 7.
- Rufinus, cited, Ps. xxx. 5; lxxii. 6. Amos ii. 1; ix. 1.
- Ruhnken, cited, Judg. vii. 13. Jer. i. 10.
- Ruin, the, of nations and Churches always from themselves, Ezek. x. 2.
- Rulers, civil as well as spiritual, must rally round God's house in dangerous times, Neh. xi. 1. Even though heathens they should be prayed for, Jer. xxix. 7.
- Rupertus, cited, Dan. x. 13. Zech. viii. 20—22; xiii. 6.
- Rüppell, cited, Job xl. 16.
- Ruth, the Moabitess, her refreshing history, Num. xxxi. 18. Meaning of her name: she became a proselyte, Ruth i. 4. United in herself the characters of stranger, fatherless, and widow, Ps. cxlvi. 9. Her second husband Boaz (i.e. strength) contrasted with her first Mahlon (i.e. weakness): typically applied, Vol. ii. Part I. p. 161. Ruth ii. 1. Her conduct to Boaz not unbecoming, Ruth iii. 1. 4. Her best attire spiritualized, v. 3. Acting in faith and obedience she was justified by the event. Compared to the Blessed Virgin, v. 5. Her action typical of the love of the Gentile Church to Christ, v. 9. In betrothal, the covering with the skirt of Boaz a typical act, *ib.* Zech. viii. 23. Mal. ii. 16; iv. 2.
- Ruth, book of, rightly placed in the order of our Bibles, Vol. ii. Part I. p. 158. Joined by a particle to the preceding book, to which it refers, Ruth i. 1. Its place among the "Chetubim" in the present (not the primitive) Hebrew Bible caused by its appointment, in common with them, to be read at a special season, viz., Pentecost, p. 158. Ruth i. 22. Its typical significance, *ib.*; p. 161. Compared with Esther, p. 158. A beautiful contrast to the book of Judges (Ruth i. 1), which ends in an overclouded sunset, *ib.* As a Claude beside a Salvator Rosa, or an idyl of Theocritus beside a tragedy

- of Æschylus, p. 159. Analysis of its contents, *ib.* Written as a beautiful picture of pastoral piety in an evil age, *ib.*: but chiefly for the sake of the Lord Christ, born from and for the Gentiles, p. 160. Boaz a type of Christ marrying Ruth, the Gentile Church, and that at Bethlehem, *ib.* Written, possibly by Samuel, when the memory of the events was fresh, its seeming Chaldaisms being the colloquial language of peasant life, p. 161. Ruth i. 13; ii. 8. Knowledge of the Pentateuch presupposed, Ruth ii. 2. 11. 12. "In former time" implies no long space, Ruth iv. 7. The custom of redemption goes beyond the Levitical law, but does not contradict it, *ib.* Genealogy of David and of Christ considered, Ruth iv. 20.
- Saadia, cited, Dan. vi. 18.
- Sabbath, the, its origin, design, and observance by the patriarchs, Gen. ii. 3. Job i. 4. Its character before the Decalogue, Ex. xvi. 23. Neh. ix. 14. Ezek. xx. 12. Sin and punishment of breaking it (Lam. i. 7. Ezek. xxii. 26): analogy of the Lord's Day, Ex. xxxi. 13. Fourth commandment set after the fifth, Lev. xix. 3. Its universal obligation, as a precept partly positive, partly moral, Ex. xx. 8—11. Isa. lvi. 2. Sabbath-day's journey, how it originated, Ex. xvi. 29. The day to be kept every where as a season of rest and public worship, in the Tabernacle or Synagogues, Lev. xxiii. 3. Or even though these were not accessible, Jer. xvii. 21. Jewish abuse of it for luxury and revelry, Isa. lviii. 13. Rather to be spent in religious exercise, *ib.* Punishment for gathering sticks as for a presumptuous sin, Num. xv. 35. Kept in the wilderness when sacrifices were in abeyance, Num. xxviii. 9. Set in the first place as obligatory in substance and spirit to the Gentile world, Isa. lvi. 2; lviii. 14.
- Sabbatical year, the, Ex. xxiii. 11. Its spiritual purpose, Lev. xxv. 4. Deut. xv. 1. 12. The keeping it an act of faith and obedience, Lev. xxv. 4. 20: meat for the body, and soul of all alike, v. 6. Began with Tisri (see *Month*), v. 8. Release of debts at the end of it, v. 10. Promise for those who seek God's kingdom, v. 20. Results of neglecting it, Lev. xxvi. 34. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 21. 22. Jer. xxxiv. 17. Zedekiah's temporary regard to it, Jer. xxxiv. 9.
- Sabeans, the, located, Job i. 12. See *Sheba*.
- Sabellians, their error, Ex. xx. 3. Deut. vi. 4.
- Sabtah, Gen. x. 7.
- Sacraments, the holy, must not be neglected, Ex. iv. 24; v. 3; xii. 15. No grace without them given to such as despise them, Lev. xxi. 8. Our incorporation in Christ by them through faith, Zech. xii. 8. Sin of speaking lightly of them, Num. xxi. 5. Reverence due to them, 1 Sam. iv. 19. Yet not so as to become to us Nehustan, 2 Kings, xviii. 4. Typified in the ashes of the Red Heifer, Num. xix. 9. 12: provided for us, v. 13. As a live coal from the altar, Isa. vi. 6. Isaiah's prophecy respecting them, Isa. xxxiii. 16. Communion of the true Paschal Lamb in the Lord's Supper, Nah. i. 15. Christ's institution of it, Prov. ix. 2. Exhortation to receive it, Ps. cxvi. 13. Sorrow for unrequent communions, Zeph. iii. 18. Sin of hindering those willing to communicate, Amos ii. 12. A suitable Psalm of preparation, Ps. ci. p. 157. Romanist and Zwinglian errors on the subject contrasted, 2 Kings xvi. 15. The Holy Communion should begin every work: our *viaticum* for eternity, Num. x. 11. Josh. v. 10. May be restored to the lapsed on their repentance, Lev. xxii. 13. Sacraments to be administered to the people by the instrumentality of the Word, Num. xx. 10. 11. Yet their efficacy depends not on the faith of the person ministering, v. 11. Though the means seem so poor, yet must they be used because God commands, Vol. iii. p. 55. 2 Kings v. 12; xx. 7. How perverted by the Evil One into occasions for sin, Hos. iv. 15. See *Sacrifice, the Eucharistical*.
- Sacrifice used in patriarchal times, Gen. iii. 21; iv. 3. An act mediatorial and intercessory, Job i. 5. Abel's sacrifice that of faith: God regarding the heart more than the gift, Gen. iv. 4. 5. Typical character of Abraham's triple sacrifice, Gen. xv. 9: the covenant thus ratified, vv. 10, 11. The term defined, Ex. xviii. 12: the means appointed by God, whereby men communicate with Him, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 1. Job sacrificed as the head of a family, acting as its priest, Job i. 5; xlii. 8. Sacrifice offered by Christian priests, Mal. iii. 4. Daily sacrifices implying daily need of Sacramental grace, Ex. xxix. 38. Lev. vi. 20. Num. xxviii. 4. "The time appointed" is the evening sacrifice, at the hour when Christ died, 2 Sam. xxiv. 15. 1 Kings xviii. 29. Ezra ix. 4. Dan. ix. 21. The Levitical sacrifices were designed (1) to keep Israel from idolatry: (2) to give clear views of the nature of sin by a minute spiritual analysis of it: (3) to show the obligation of public worship (4) to typify Christ, the One perfect and sufficient Sacrifice (Ps. xl. 6), in His threefold or manifold character (Lev. viii. 14. 2 Chr. vii. 1. Isa. liii. 10; see *Burnt offering, Peace offering, Sin offering*): (5) to represent Him as Priest also, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 1: (6) to prove the truth of Christianity, as fulfilling the old types: (7) to show the spiritual disposition required of worshippers, by affording a Rule of Living, and a Manual of Devotion: (8) to demonstrate the Divine origin of a ritual, too burdensome to have been otherwise accepted: (9) to speak to the Jew by living examples, teaching him to look forward to Christ, and us Christians to look back upon the Law, and thus the better to understand the Gospel: (10) to make us understand the true nature of our relation to God, as sinners needing a Sacrifice to reconcile us to Him. In all these respects, if the letter killeth, the Spirit giveth life, p. 2. The efficacy of sacrifices consisted in the faith of the offerer, which was more or less clear-sighted, as also in his obedience: their acceptance was always in and through Christ, Lev. vii. 38. Mal. iii. 4. Why tame animals alone were to be offered, Lev. i. 2. Why to be unblemished, and of the best, Lev. xxii. 19. 22. Mal. i. 14: Fowls to suffice for the poor, Lev. i. 14; xii. 8. Four kinds of sacrifice for Atonement, Reconciliation, Justification, and Communion, Num. vi. 14; vii. 13. Legal sacrifices unavailing without obedience, Ps. xl. 6; i. 7. 8. 16. Isa. lxvi. 3. Jer. xvii. 26. Hos. v. 6. 7; vi. 6; viii. 13. Mal. iii. 4. Their spiritual nature seen more clearly in the later Psalms, Ps. xcix. 6. This characteristic of sacrifice chiefly insisted on when the dispersion of the nation is predicted, Mic. vi. 8. The spiritual offerings in Ezekiel's vision differ much from those prescribed by the Law, Ezek. xlv. 18; xlvii. 13. Bloody sacrifices, but not the offering of incense, suspended during the thirty-eight years of wandering, for the nation's sins, Num. xvi. p. 135. Amos v. 25. The laws renewed before entering Canaan, Num. xxviii. 2. Might be offered at any place where God had appeared, Deut. xii. 5. 1 Chr. xxi. 28. Or elsewhere in times of confusion, 1 Sam. xx. 6: or before God had appointed a fixed place, 1 Kings viii. 16. David, through haste, could not go to Gibeon to sacrifice, 1 Chr. xxi. 30. The kings not authorized to offer sacrifice in person, 1 Chr. vi. 49. Accepted through fire from heaven, 1 Kings viii. 62; ix. 1; xviii. 38. The daily sacrifice taken away by Antiochus Epiphanes, Dan. viii. 11. 12; xii. 11. Joel i. 9. Feast-day (Heb. *elag*), used figuratively for sacrifice, Ps. cxviii. 27. All men, even the wicked (Ezek. ix. 2), whether willingly or not, a sacrifice to God, Zeph. i. 7. Man's daily life his daily sacrifice, Ps. l. 23: the wicked offering their sins, v. 21. Our first offering should be ourselves, Ps. li. 19. Jer. vii. 22.
- Sacrifice, the Eucharistical, spoken of by the Christian Fathers, as offered not hypostatistically (Mal. p. 160), but only as commemorating a real Sacrifice already past, Mal. i. 11. Rhetorical expressions must be fairly interpreted by other passages, *ib.* The Roman Catholic Canon of the Mass cited, Mal. p. 160. The predictive revelation thereof at once a prophecy and a moral parable, Mal. iii. 4. See *Meat offering, Sacraments*.
- Sacrilege, the sin of, a moth which frets the garment of men's whole estate, Josh. vii. 25. Examples drawn from the families of those who seize tithes and Church lands, *ib.* A warning to such as rob the meanness of God's ministers (Ezek. xxxv. 10, 11): wrongs of the Church in Ireland, 2 Sam. xxi. 6. Sacrilege enacted by law must bring misery to Christian nations, Ezek. vii. 27. Symbolically represented, Joel iii. 4. Sadler, M. F., cited, Ps. xxii. p. 28; xlv. p. 68; cx. 4. Salamis, battle of, Vol. iii. pp. 360. 365, note 3. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiv. Zech. ix. 1. Anecdote relating to it, Job xiii. 14. The Æacidae invoked thereto, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. ix. The whole world may keep Purim for it, Vol. iii. p. 365. Esther ix. 16.
- Salathiel, of Nathan's line, David's heir when Solomon's line failed, 1 Chr. iii. 17.
- Salehah, located, Deut. iii. 10.
- Salem, its true position discussed, Gen. xiv. 18, 19; xxxv. 4. Enters into the root of the word Jerusalem, Ps. lxxvi. 2.
- Salma, 1 Chr. ii. 11. 51. Same as *Salmon*, Ruth iv. 20.
- Salmasius, cited, Neh. v. 11.
- Salmon (or *Zalmon*, Judg. ix. 48), the mount located: its snow, Ps. lxxviii. 14.
- Salonius, cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xii, note 2. Prov. i. 20; v. 15; ix. 1; xi. 26; xx. 8; xxvi. 5; xxvii. 23—27; xxix. 18; xxx. 28. 30; xxxi. 1. 10—31. Eccles. xii. 11.
- Salt, a twofold emblem, for that which preserves (Lev. ii. 13. Isa. xxx. p. 90), and that which makes barren, Gen. xix. 26.

- 2 Kings ii. 20—22. Ps. cvii. 34. Ezek. xlvii. 11. Salt of the Covenant, Lev. ii. 13. Covenant of salt, Num. xviii. 19. 2 Chr. xiii. 5. Ezra iv. 14. Custom of sowing destroyed cities with it exemplified, Judg. ix. 45. Added to the burnt offering, Ezek. xliii. 17. Gift of, Ezra vii. 22. Its typical significance as applied to infants, Ezek. xvi. 4.
- Salt Lake, the, in America, its physical beauties, Eccles. ii. 5. Salvia, cited, Gen. xix. 24. 2 Sam. vi. 6.
- Samaria, its pleasant site, 1 Kings xvi. 24. Isa. xxviii. 1. Isaiah's prophecy of the sixty-five years, how fulfilled, Isa. vii. 8, 9. Not burnt when taken, Ezek. xv. 6. Not literally to be rebuilt, Ezek. xvi. 53.
- Samaritan Pentateuch, the, its evidence in favour of the books of Moses as being genuine and authentic, 2 Kings xvii. 41. Its most notable variations from the Hebrew, Gen. iv. 8; v. 1; xi. 10. Ex. xii. 40; xx. 1. Num. xvi. 35; xxi. 30. Deut. xxvii. 4. Ezek. xxxviii. 2. A check upon the text as preserved by the Jews, Dent. xxxiii. 7. Apocryphal book of Joshua received by the Samaritans, Vol. ii. Part 1. *Intro.* p. xviii. Their religion one of mere fear, 2 Kings xvii. 32. Symbolized by the woman with whom Christ conversed, v. 30. The subsequent history of the nation explains the middle place between Jew and Gentile held by them in the New Testament, v. 41. Their precise position, Ezra iv. 3, and falsehood towards Israel, v. 12.
- Samgar, an official title, equivalent to *Rabshakeh*, Jer. xxxix. 3.
- Samson, meaning of, Judg. xiii. 24; xvi. 21. Resembles John the Baptist in his birth and power, Judg. xiii. 2. 4. See *Nazarite*. A type of Christ (v. 24), failing where Christ excels, showing declension from grace, and the danger of abusing spiritual gifts, v. 5. Judg. xiv. 6. Seeks a foreign bride: the act spiritualized, Judg. xiv. 2, 3, 4. Like David, first encounters the lion, then the Philistine, v. 5: as Christ subdued Satan, v. 6. His marriage-feast the crisis of his character; from modest he grows self-confident, boastful, and weak, v. 10, 14. Now a contrast to Christ, to whom the feast at Cana was the starting-point of glory, v. 20. After deserting his wife (v. 19), avenges the loss of her by spiteful cruelty to animals, Judg. xv. 3, 4. Egotistical, ascribing none of his acts to God, v. 11. Yet God's Spirit still strives with him and uses his instrumentality, v. 14. His "wheat harvest" contrasted with S. Peter's, v. 16. Made to feel his need of God v. 18: yet even now a contrast to Hagar's reverent gratitude, v. 19. His history one of the darkest in the Bible, teaching, as that of the Church at Corinth, that spiritual gifts may exist without spiritual grace, v. 20. Judg. xvi. 3. His carrying off the gates of Gaza compared with Christ's breaking through the gates of hell, *ib.* His three lies contrasted with Christ's three Scripture sayings addressed to the tempter, v. 10. Given over to a self-deceiving reprobate mind, v. 17. By reason of penitence he is restored, as the Christian who forfeits baptismal grace is not regenerated a second time, but called to prayer and repentance, v. 22. Like Christ mocked, but endured not the shame as He did, v. 25. He had faith at the last, but a spirit far other than Christ's, v. 28—30. An unhappy end, v. 30. Judged, but delivered not, Israel. That was reserved for Samuël, another and a better Nazarite, v. 31.
- Samuel, meaning of the name, 1 Sam. i. 20. Honour paid to him in the Levitical genealogies, 1 Chr. vi. 28. His a critical era, 2 Chr. xxxv. 18. As a Levite, would only be bound from 20 to 50 but for his mother's dedication, 1 Sam. i. 11. Though only a Levite, yet raised up as a prophet and a faithful priest in the time of the captivity of the Ark, v. 35. 1 Sam. iii. 20; iv. 11; vii. 9, 16; xvi. 2. Vol. iii. *Intro.* p. viii. Preparatory to the removal of the whole Levitical system in Christ, *ib.* By virtue of some special revelation set holy things in order, 1 Chr. ix. 22. His sacrifice accepted, 1 Sam. xii. 18. In his youthful call a type of Christ, 1 Sam. iii. 1. Privilege of holy children, v. 10, 21. His life of prayer, 1 Sam. vii. 8. Ps. xcix. 6. Stands at the head of the Prophets, Vol. iii. *Intro.* p. x. 1 Chr. ix. 22. His godly sorrow for Saul, 1 Sam. xv. 31, 35. Raises no party against him, 1 Sam. xix. 18. His gentle compassion for Saul even when brought up from the dead, 1 Sam. xxviii. p. 63. No phantasm or evil spirit, but a reality, pp. 62—64; v. 17.
- Samuel, the books of, properly (as with the Hebrews) one, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. vii. (2 Sam. i. 1), holding an intermediate position, yet a distinct whole, performing a peculiar work. Amidst present gloom looking joyfully forward to Christ, *ib.* Hannah's song a golden key for the interpretation of the whole book, p. viii. The contents analyzed, pp. viii—xiii. Objection to the Pentateuch from Samuel's alleged ignorance of its Levitical rites considered, pp. ix, x. (see *Priest*). The writer well acquainted with the Pentateuch, 1 Sam. i. 3, 11. This book first reveals the kingdom of Christ, and His Incarnation in David's family, p. x. This book no congeries of ill-digested materials, but prophetic history, one narrative and one type insensibly blending into another, p. xiii. Marks of veracity 1 Sam. xvi. 2; xxi. 2; xxvii. 11. 2 Sam. xi. p. 94; xxi. 2. Records the institution of the Prophetic office, supplementary to the Priesthood, and called into existence by its defects, p. xiv. All inspired foreshadowings of the Divine Prophet, Priest, and King, *ib.* Written in the purest Hebrew at intervals down to Solomon's reign, apparently not later, p. xv. Comprise 120 years down to B.C. 1016. Commentators ancient and modern, *ib.*
- Sanballat, the Horonite, Neh. ii. 10. A Moabite, *ib.* Cp. Isa. xv. 5.
- Sanctius, or Sanchez, cited, 2 Chr. xxi. 12. Isa. xxix. 5, 24; xxx. 33. Jer. xxviii. 1. Ezek. xxxviii. p. 246.
- Sanderson, Bp., his writings characterized, 2 Sam. vi. 6. Cp. Ps. lxxxiv. p. 133. Cited, Gen. i. 26; ix. 1; xi. 9; xix. 8; xx. 6; xlii. 15. Ex. i. 21; xx. 5. Num. xxx. 2. Deut. xv. 4; xxxix. 19. Josh. xxiv. 15, 24. Judg. iii. 21, 22. 1 Sam. iv. 18; viii. 9; xii. 3; xv. 13, 15, 30; xxi. 2; xxiv. 5, 13; xxv. 22, 32; xxvii. 1. 2 Sam. iii. 29; vi. 6; xii. 10; xv. 3; xxi. 6; xxiii. 16. 1 Kings iii. 9; x. 19, 20; xv. 5; xxi. 25, 27—29. 2 Kings viii. 27; x. 30; xx. 19. 1 Chr. xxvi. 29. 2 Chr. xxiv. 22; xxxii. 31. Neh. v. 15. Job i. 3, 9; v. 13; xiii. 8; xxix. 14. Ps. viii. 3, 4; xxvii. 14; lxxii. 1. Prov. iv. 23; viii. 15; xvi. 2, 7; xix. 21; xx. 27; xxiv. 10. Eccles. v. 1; vii. 1; ix. 1. Isa. xi. 3; xxxix. 13; xxxv. 7; lii. 3. Jer. ii. 13; iv. 2. Ezek. xviii. 2; xxix. 18; xxxiii. 14—16; xxxiv. 20. Hos. xiii. 9. Amos iii. 6; v. 11; vi. 5. Zeph. i. 12.
- Sanhedrim, the Jewish, a continuation of the seventy, Num. xi. 17 (see *Elders*). High court of judicature at Jerusalem, Deut. xvi. 8. Dan. vii. 9. Condemned our Lord, not for claiming to be the Messiah, but the Son of God, Deut. xiii. 1.
- Sanscrit, the language, Dan. i. 3, 5; v. 7.
- Sarah, presumed to be the same as Iscah, Gen. xi. 29; xx. 12. Her unbelieving laugh no token of her meek character. Type of the Spouse of Christ, Gen. xviii. 12. "Thus she was reproved," explained, Gen. xx. 16. Her *Magnificat*, Gen. xxi. 6, 7. The Mary of the Old Testament, Gen. xxiii. 1. The pit whence the Seed was digged, Isa. li. 1. When displaced or subjected to Hagar, a type of moral and religious confusion, Prov. xxx. 21—23.
- Sarcastic spirit rebuked, Zech. iii. 2.
- Sargon, captured Samaria as general under Shalmaneser, 2 Kings xvii. 4. Vol. v. Part 1. p. vii, *note* 3. Isa. xxi. 1. Mic. i. 7. Analogous to the case of Titus and Vespasian, Isa. xlviii. p. 51. Date of his reign, Isa. xxxvii. 37. A usurper, Dan. v. 1.
- Sarsechim, an official title, equivalent to *Rabsaris*, Jer. xxxix. 3.
- Satan, earliest mention of the name, Job i. 6. Bears no affinity to the Persian Ahriman, *ib.* His restlessness, v. 7. The false accuser, v. 9. Works all evil, but under restraint, v. 11. His personality, 1 Chr. xxi. 1. Job i. 6. Ever varies his method of assault, Gen. xxxi. 8. "The Strong Man," Isa. liii. 12. "The unclean spirit," Zech. xiii. 2. God uses him to punish the wicked, Ps. cx. 6. Satan must needs work by means, 1 Sam. xvi. 14. Antitype of Goliath, 1 Sam. xvii. 4, 8. His agency prompted David to number the people, though God ordered it, 2 Sam. xxiv. 1. Not wholly shut out of heaven before the Incarnation, 1 Kings xxi. 21. Job i. 6. In this world of trial God hath need of Satan, Job i. 12 (see *Job*). "Standing at the right hand," Zech. iii. 1. Always in the background of Christ's sufferings, Job xlii. 12. How identified with Lucifer, Isa. xiv. 12. His final doom, Isa. xxvi. 19; xxvii. 1.
- Satrap, Dan. vi. 1.
- Satyr, the term explained, Isa. xiii. 21.
- Saul, his lineage honourably recorded, 1 Chr. viii. p. 186; vv. 29—38; ix. 35—44. Chosen king on the ground of physical strength, as the people had desired, 1 Sam. viii. 5; ix. 2. Foreshadowed the passing Jewish dispensation, preparatory to the better one, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. xi. Vol. iii. pp. viii. 186. His reign a bitter disappointment, 1 Sam. viii. 5. Given as a chastisement, v. 22. His name an omen, 1 Sam. ix. 2. Contrasted with Saul of Tarsus, *ib.* 1 Sam. x. 11, 16; xv. 17; xviii. 11; xix. 24. His early modesty, 1 Sam. ix. 21; x. 16, 21, 27; xi. 13. Three signs given him to prove his call, 1 Sam. x. 2. His prophetic gift transitory, v. 13. Public recognition needed after private unction, 1 Sam. xi. 15. His taking a body-guard indicated lack of faith, 1 Sam. xiii. 2. His faith and obedience further tried and fails, v. 8. His first rejection in his family, not his person, v. 14. 1 Sam. xvi. 3.

- His reliance on outward forms of religion, 1 Sam. xiv. 18. 24; xxxi. 4. His self-complacency, 1 Sam. xv. 13. Emblem of rejected Israel, r. 28. 1 Sam. xvi. 1. 3; xvii. 33. 38. 39. 55; xx. 33. 42; xxxi. 4. 2 Sam. v. 1; ix. 6. His sorrow worldly, 1 Sam. xv. 30. His melancholy and envy changed by Satan into madness, 1 Sam. xvi. 14; xix. 9. His persecution of David typical, 1 Sam. xviii. 8. 11. 21. Like Laban punished through his daughter, 1 Sam. xix. 16. Banishes witches without destroying them as the Law commanded, 1 Sam. xxviii. 4. Asks of, but seeks not, God, r. 6. God raised up Samuel to converse with Saul, against the witch's design: the question discussed, *rr.* 8. 11, 12. Spiritual instruction to be drawn from the history, *ib.* His death of cowardice and sin, 1 Sam. xxxi. 4. 5. Circumstances of his death harmonized, 2 Sam. i. 10. 1 Chr. x. 10. Both accounts may be true, 2 Sam. i. 10. Retribution in falling by an Amalekite, *ib.*
- Scaliger, Joseph, cited, Vol. iii. p. 360. Esther i. 1.
- Scap-goat, the (Heb. *azazel*), its various interpretations discussed, Lev. xvi. 8. 10. Probably does not represent the Evil One, but Christ, who bore our sins, *ib.*, and became a curse for us, r. 22. Like Shiloh, Azazel has baffled conjecture: we cannot analyze the name, much less the mysterious work of Messiah, r. 8. "Free among the dead," explained, Ps. lxxxviii. 5.
- Scarlet thread signifies salvation through Christ's blood, Gen. xxxviii. 28. Num. iv. 8; xix. 6. Josh. ii. 18. Prov. xxxi. 21. Cant. iv. 3. Sub-apostolic testimony to its figurative meaning, Josh. ii. 18. Scarlet the colour of joy, health, and victory: also of Christ's robe, Lev. xiv. 4. Military colour of the Orientals, Nah. ii. 3.
- Scepticism, a hard taskmaster, Vol. v. Part I. p. xx.
- Schenkins, cited, Dam. iv. 16.
- Schirmer, cited, Ezra iv. 7.
- Schism, like heresy and unbelief, strengthen when they assail in vain, Num. xvi. 38. A comfort in these perilous times, *ib.* Korah's sin our warning. Why made the subject of the Proper Lesson for the first Sunday after Easter, r. 40. Though not a layman, punished for usurping the highest order in the ministry, *ib.* In zeal schism goes beyond God's law, Amos iv. 4. Culls what it pleases from the usages of the Church, and makes a boast of its sin, r. 5. Separation wont to be promoted by the lukewarmness and ignorance of the priesthood, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 80. Josh. xxi. 44. Judg. viii. 27; xi. 1. If the watchmen guide it not to Christ, the faithful soul must pass on without them, Cant. iii. 4. Yet even the wickedness of the priesthood no excuse for schism, 1 Sam. i. 3. Neh. x. 39. Raised on religious pretenses, 2 Sam. xv. 7. A source of weakness, 2 Chr. xiii. 3. Itself a punishment, 2 Kings xvii. 21. Wilful schism a deadly sin, 1 Kings iii. 16—27; xiv. 10. That of Israel (see *Israel, kingdom of*), healed by the sword and exile, Vol. iii. p. 299. Ezra i. 5. Ps. cxviii. 27; cxix. 67; cxx. p. 197; cxiii. 4. Jer. xxxi. 6; xli. 5. Ezek. xxxvii. 19—24. Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xxv. 113. Zech. i. 18; ix. p. 136.
- Schlottmann, cited, Job iii. 2; vi. 18; xxxiii. p. 72.
- Schnurrer, cited, Job vi. 14. Jer. xlix. 7.
- Schröder, cited, Ex. xxviii. 4.
- Schultens, A., characterized, Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xx. Cited, Job vi. 25; vii. 1; xi. 6. 10; xii. 6; xiii. 14; xiv. 6. 11. 14. 17. 22; xv. 19. 26; xvi. 8; xviii. 2. 13; xix. 23. 28. 29; xxi. 16. 17—21; xxiii. 2. 17; xxiv. 5; xxv. 5; xxvii. 19; xxviii. 4. 21; xxix. 18. 25; xxx. 24; xxxi. 22. 33; xxxii. pp. 70. 72; xxxiii. 24. 26; xxxvi. 13. 27; xxxvii. 22; xxxviii. 32; xxxix. 9. 11. 17; xl. 15. Prov. i. 6. 17. 33; ii. 12. 17; iii. 8; iv. 18. 19; v. 26. 27; vii. 16; viii. 15; ix. 13; x. 7. 13. 20; xi. 31; xii. 28; xiii. 2; xv. 7; xvi. 4. 7. 20. 30. xvii. 1; xviii. 24; xix. 24; xxi. 16; xxii. 6; xxiii. 8. 28. 32. 34; xxiv. 18; xxv. 20. 24. 22; xxvi. 6. 23; xxvii. 6; xxviii. 7. 11; xxx. 10. 29—31; xxxi. 3. 11. Jer. xli. 20. Ezek. xvi. 47.
- Schultetus, cited, Job i. 5; xxxiii. 24.
- Schultz, cited, Deut. xxvii. 12; xxxi. 9. 1 Kings i. 9. Amos ix. 3.
- Science, physical, though it is not the purpose of Scripture to teach it, yet may science throw new light upon it, and confirm its Divine origin, Job xvi. 7: by the discoveries of later ages being found previously revealed in Scripture, *ib.* Job xxxviii. 14. Solomon illustrated religion by science, and consecrated science by religion, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 121.
- Scott, G. G., cited, 1 Chr. xxiii. 29.
- Scourging, Jewish mode of, Deut. xxv. 2. 3. To be given according to the fault, and for correction not for abasement, *ib.*
- Scribe, political, office of, 2 Sam. viii. 17. Secretary of War, Jer. lii. 25. The teacher's office: its growing importance as prophecy ceased, Ezra vii. 6.
- Scripture, Holy, its simplicity and seeming inconsistencies try the strength of men's faith, Vol. i. Part 1. *Pref.* p. xii. Ezek. xii. 13. Rises more gloriously out of persecution, Jer. xxxvi. 27. Its continuity for 1500 years, Hos. i. 2. Its symmetry and unity described, Gen. iii. 24. Deut. xxv. 19. One part often clearing up another far distant, Ps. lx. 1. Prov. xxxi. 18. Its manifold sense, Isa. liii. 4: and dormant energy, Mic. iii. 12. "The words of the book," Isa. xxix. 18. A moral touchstone, Gen. xxx. p. 127. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 124. Jer. vi. 27. Ignorance of it is misery, Isa. viii. 21, 22. A blessing on him that dispenseth it, Prov. xi. 26. Its difficulties and its silence (see *Silence*) our moral probation, Ex. xii. 38. Must not be added to, Deut. iv. 2; xii. 32. To regard it by the light of nature only is to miss its better meaning, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 131. It cannot be understood without obedience, Ex. xxiv. 34. Taken as a whole, not garbled, the Rule of Faith, Ps. xci. 13. Its sufficiency in matters of faith, Deut. xvii. 3: without the aid of tradition, Isa. viii. 20. To be understood by all, Deut. xvii. 8. Duty of searching it, Isa. xxvii. 16. The false Church hides the candle of God's word, Prov. xxxi. 18. Forbidden to be translated into English by a Constitution of Archbp. Arundel, A.D. 1408, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xliii. Uniform plan for preserving Scripture from the first: the internal evidence whereof should not shut out from view the external, Deut. xxxi. 11. The whole course of Jewish history a proof of its Divine origin, 2 Chr. xiii. 3. (See *Testament, the Old*.) Why each several book is not complete in itself, 2 Chr. ix. 28. Substance of the whole is the record of a succession of falls under the power of evil, giving occasion to a higher rise in Christ, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xxiv. xxvi. Its distinct reading in public advocated, Neh. viii. 7, 8. This is the best preaching, *ib.* When most read, best loved, r. 18.
- Sea, the, i. e. the west (see also *Relative terms*), Ps. cxxxix. 9. The great, i. e. the Mediterranean, Num. xxvii. 6. Josh. xv. 12. Ezek. xlvii. 10. The (two) seas, Dan. xi. 45. The east and the utmost, Joel ii. 20. The former and the hinder, Zech. xiv. 8. The sea of Gibeon, Josh. xviii. 14 (see *Gibeon*). Of Jazer, Jer. xlviii. 32 (see *Jazer*). The inundations of the Upper Nile so called, Isa. xviii. 2. Nah. iii. 8. Of the Lower Nile, Isa. xix. 5. Of the Euphrates about Babylon, Isa. xxi. 1. Jer. li. 36.
- Seal, or signet (Heb. *chotham*), described; an emblem of faithfulness, Gen. xxxviii. 18: of authority, 1 Kings xxi. 8. Jer. xxii. 24: of ownership, Cant. viii. 6. See *Ring*. Sealing the covenant with God, Neh. x. 1: leading up typically to the sealing of the true Israel, *ib.* The seal of the Spirit, Job xxxiii. 16: in Baptism, Confirmation, and the Holy Communion, Hagg. ii. 23.
- Search after truth, a duty, Zeph. i. 6.
- Seba, or *Meroe*, located, Isa. xliii. 3. Ezek. xxxiii. 42; xxix. 10.
- Sebah, Gen. x. 7.
- Sechu, 1 Sam. xix. 22.
- Secret things of God, as contrasted with those revealed, Deut. xxxii. 29. His glory equally seen in both, Prov. xxv. 2. Declared by His prophets for our warning, Amos iii. 7. Secret things searched out by God for judgment, Zeph. i. 12.
- Seder Olam, the, cited, 2 Kings xv. 30. 2 Chr. xxi. 12; xxii. 2; xxxiii. 11. Job xxxii. p. 70. Isa. i. 1.
- Sedgwick, Adam, his geological theories, Gen. i. 2.
- Sedulius, his acrostic poem, Ps. ix. p. 12.
- Seer, distinguished from prophet, and the Hebrew *rôeh* from *chozeh*, the former being an absolute, the latter a relative term, 1 Chr. xxxix. 29.
- Seething a kid in its mother's milk, why expressly forbidden, Ex. xxiii. 19.
- Seetzen, cited, Ex. ii. 5. Num. xxxii. 38. Jer. xlviii. 1. 2. 24. 32. 34.
- Seir, a mountain (1) in Edom, Deut. xxxiii. 2. 2 Chr. xx. 10. Isa. xxi. 11. Placed in antithesis to Zion, Ezek. xxxv. 2. Why God is said to come from a heathen land, Deut. xxxiii. 2. The Simeonitish expedition thither, 1 Chr. iv. 42: (2) in Judah, Josh. xv. 10.
- Seirath (see *Devils*), Judg. iii. 26.
- Sela, or *Selah* (i. e. the cliff for refuge), not used figuratively by David, 2 Sam. xxii. 2, 3. The strong city Petra in Edom described, 2 Kings xiv. 7. Ps. lx. 9. Isa. xvi. 1. See *Petra*.
- Sela-hammahleketh, meaning of, 1 Sam. xxiii. 28.
- Selah, how often used, Ps. iii. (2). 4. Hab. iii. 3. Not found at the end of Psalms truly separate, Ps. iii. 4. A kind of *sursum corda*, Ps. ix. 11. Possibly a note of transition from *piano* to *forte*, *ib.*
- Selden, J., cited, Gen. xvii. 14; xxxii. 32. Ex. xviii. 22. Num. xi. 17; xxv. 11—13; xxvii. 7. Deut. vii. 5; xx. 5; xxiii. 1; xxiv. 1; xxxii. 15. Judg. xi. 40; xix. 1. Ruth iv. 5. 7.

- 1 Sam. i. 1. 1 Kings xv. 13. 2 Kings xvii. 30, 31; xxiii. 6, 10. 1 Chr. vi. p. 180; v. 11. 2 Chr. xxiv. 3; xxvi. 17. Ezra ii. 62. Ezek. viii. 11, 14.
- Selenus Nicator, Alexander's successor, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xiii, *note* 7. Dan. viii. 8, 9; xi. 4, 5.
- Self-deceit, Jer. xlii. 20; xlv. 19.
- Self-love ends in self-loathing, Eccles. ii. 1.
- Selwyn, Prof., cited, Isa. ix. 3.
- Seneca, cited, Prov. ix. 17; xxvii. 8.
- Sennacherib, the name not set down in error for Sargon, as the assailant of Hezekiah. The subject discussed and cleared, 2 Kings xviii. 13. Isa. xxxviii. p. 51; xx. 1; xxxvi. 1. Leading dates of his reign, 2 Chr. xxxii. 1. Its length, Isa. xxxvii. 37. His campaign and overthrow, Isa. x. 28—32; xiv. 25; xvii. 14; xviii. p. 51. Nah. i. 12, 14. See *Asshur*.
- Sense, twofold, of words, Dan. v. 25.
- Separation of Church and State, an abdication of Christianity (Isa. xlix. 23), the becoming a Julian from being a Constantine. Christianity does not need kings, but kings need Christianity, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 80. Comfort under the fear of this calamity, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 156. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxvii. Our present tendency to regard religious indifference as public policy, 1 Kings xviii. 21.
- Sepharad, a generic term for the two Iberias, Obad. 20.
- Sepharvaim, located, 2 Kings xvii. 24; xviii. 34.
- Septuagint, the Greek version of the Old Testament, its distinctive value as employed in the New Testament for reference and direct citation, Vol. i. Part 1. *Pref.* p. xvii.
- Spiritual insinuation, or catch-words in the New Testament derived from it, exemplified, pp. xviii—xx. Vocabulary of such catch-words called for, *ib.* Viaduct between the two Testaments, Gen. i. 1; ii. 4, 9; xviii. 14; xxi. 1; xxii. 16; xxv. 24; xxxviii. 26; xxxix. 21; xli. 46; xlv. 12. Ex. xix. 6; xxiv. 18; xxv. 17. Lev. viii. 14; xxi. 10; xxv. 10. Num. i. 5; iii. 32; ix. 2; xii. 12; xv. 20; xxvii. 21. Deut. vi. 4; xxviii. 3; xxx. 4; xxxi. 3; xxxii. 22, 43. Josh. ii. 15; iii. 7; vii. 1. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 39. Judg. i. 7; iii. 9, 16; p. 114. Judg. xiii. 2. Ruth i. 6. 1 Sam. ii. 1, 7, 8; ii. 26. 2 Sam. xvii. 23. 1 Kings i. 2, 3; xix. 13. 2 Kings ii. 9; vi. 6. Neh. iii. 1; x. 39. Esther v. 14; vi. 6; vii. 9. Ps. ii. 4; vi. 3; xvii. 15; xxii. 8, 20; xxxiii. 6; xxxviii. title; xlii. 6; xlix. 6, 7; lv. 2, 13; lxxviii. 5, 30; lxxix. 21; lxxxv. 9, 11; cvi. 20; cxxxiii. 1; cxlvi. 5, 6, 9; cxlvii. 2; cxlix. 6. Prov. vi. 1. Cant. iii. 10; vi. 9. Isa. v. 2; xv. 14; xxiv. 23; xxix. 9, 10. 13, 14, xxxv. 3; xxxvii. 32; xl. 1, 13; l. 6; liii. 5, 8; lvi. 7; lxxv. 2. Jer. vii. 11; xlv. 14; l. 29. Ezek. i. 1; xxxix. 11. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xix, *note* 17. Dan. ii. 8; vii. 8; ix. 27; xi. 31. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xix, *note* 15. Joel ii. 28—32. Amos v. 26. Obad. 17. Hab. ii. 3, 4. Zech. v. 11. An Hellenistic Targum, Gen. iv. 7. Ps. xl. 6. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xv. Amos ix. 12. Hab. i. 5; ii. 4. Renderings on the principle of allusive analogy, Zech. xii. 10. Readings sometimes better than that of Masoretic text in Gen. xlvii. 31. Not designed to be literal, but to be intelligible to the Gentiles, while true to the sense: exemplified, Mic. v. 2. Originating in Egypt, (Ex. ii. 3. Isa. xix. 16, 17. Vol. v. Part 2. p. xvi), and publicly read there, challenging the Egyptians in its witness against themselves, Gen. xlvii. 6. So Isa. xix. 19. Its special value in regard to Egypt, Ex. vii. 16. Its very words engraven on St. Stephen's mind, Ex. i. 23; ii. 25; iii. p. 209. Used especially by the author of the Epistle to the Hebrews, Hab. ii. 4. Chronological differences from the Hebrew examined, Gen. v. 1; xi. 10. Not the same translator to the whole Pentateuch, Lev. xxiii. 5. Or to the Pentateuch and later books, Deut. xxvii. 16. Josh. i. 14. Follows Alexandrine computation of money, Lev. xxvii. 2. Peculiar readings or renderings noticed, Gen. iv. 8. Num. iii. 34; iv. 8; x. 6; xvi. 15; xxi. 30; xxiv. 6. Deut. xxxii. 8. Josh. xxiv. 1, 25. Judg. i. 18; ii. 4. 2 Sam. viii. 4, 13; xv. 17; xxiv. 13. 1 Kings i. 40; viii. 1; xxii. 38. 2 Kings xvi. 6. 1 Chr. x. 13, 14. Job xxxix. 13. Ps. li. 4; lxix. 22; xcii. 4; xevii. 7; cv. 28; cvi. 30; ex. 3; cxviii. 27. Eccles. viii. 10. Isa. xlv. 1, 10; lxxvi. 19. Jer. viii. 7; xi. 15; xii. 1—4; xli. 5; xlv. 15; xlvii. 5; xlviii. 4; lii. 31. Ezek. xvi. 24; xxv. 16; xxvi. 17; xxxviii. 2; xlv. 1, 5. Dan. i. 2; xi. 30. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xix, *note* 16. Joel ii. 29, 31. Amos iv. 3; v. 26; ix. 5, 7, 12. Hab. iii. 2. Zeph. iii. 8. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. ix. 11. Particularly accurate in Ruth, &c., Ruth i. 6, 13. Very literal, Ps. cxviii. 23. Legitimate paraphrases, 1 Sam. vii. 16; ix. 25. Ps. xl. 6; lxxxvii. 4. Prov. iv. 8. Isa. xlix. 18; xli. 10; xlviii. 16, 28; xl. 13; lx. 17. Prefixes titles to Ps. cxlvi.—cxlviii. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. x, *note* 3. To Ps. xxvii. xxix. pp. 37, 39; xxxi. p. 42; xxxviii. p. 56; xlviii. p. 73; lxxvi. 10; lxxvi. p. 119; lxxx. p. 127; xcii.—xciv. pp. 119—50; xcv. p. 151; xcvi. p. 152; xciv. p. 180; cxxxix.
- p. 214. Larger interpolations, Josh. xv. 59; xxi. 40; xxiv. 30. Judg. xvi. 14. 1 Sam. v. 6. 1 Kings xiv. 21. Vol. iv. Part 1. p. xvi, *notes* 11 and 12. Ps. cxlv. p. 221. False arrangement of the number of the Psalms, Ps. cxlvii. 12. Erroneous translation, Prov. viii. 22. Jeremiah inaccurately rendered in a loose paraphrase, sometimes grounded on erroneous readings, Vol. v. Part 2. p. xv. Table of difference of order in the Hebrew and Greek of that book, p. xv, *note* 11; p. xvi. Jer. xxv. 13. Accounted for, *ib.* Shorter than the Hebrew by one-eighth, p. xvi. An epitome of the original, *ib.*, *note* 4. A few expository glosses and traces of ignorance of the original, pp. xvi, xvii. Title to Lamentations, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 138. Led the Greek Fathers into error, Mal. iv. 5. Transposition noted, Mal. iv. 6.
- Seraiah, (1) the Marshal, brother of Baruch, Jer. li. 59; (2) the High Priest, Jer. lii. 24.
- Seraphim, explained, Isa. vi. 2.
- Serarius, cited, Deut. xii. 5. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 81, *note* 3. 1 Sam. xiii. 8. 2 Sam. i. 10. Esther iv. 11; ix. 32.
- Sermons, those the best which we apply to ourselves, 2 Sam. xii. 5. Unprofitable hearing of them, Ezek. xxxiii. 30. Sur-reptitious reporting, an abuse, Deut. xxiii. 24.
- Serpent, the, an instrument of the Evil One and object of heathen worship, Gen. iii. 1. Ex. iv. 3. Job xxvi. 13. Testimony of ancient astronomy, *ib.* Why punished at the Fall, Gen. iii. 14. Num. xxi. 9. An agent of divination, Gen. xxx. 27; xlv. 5. Eccles. x. 11. Jer. viii. 17. His bruising man's heel referred to, Gen. xlix. 17. Ps. xlix. 5; lvi. 6. The wounding of his head, Ps. cx. 6. His licking the dust, Mic. vii. 17; and eating it, Isa. lxxv. 25. Tamed in Egypt, Ex. iv. 3; and elsewhere, Ps. lxxviii. 5. Various kinds, all being God's instruments, Amos ix. 3. Called Typhon (Ex. xiv. 2) or Python, Lev. xix. 31. Isa. li. 9 (see *Leviathan*). The Brazen Serpent, a type of Christ, as declared by Himself, Ex. vii. 12. Num. xxi. 8, 9; xxxiii. 41. Appropriateness of the figure, Num. xxi. 9. Why destroyed, 2 Kings xviii. 4. A wholesome lesson to be cautiously applied (see *Sacraments*), *ib.* The serpent and lion typify man's spiritual foes, Ps. lxxviii. 4. The serpent upon the Rock spiritualized, Prov. xxx. 19. Lurks in walls, Eccles. x. 8. Amos v. 19.
- Servant and slave. Our duty of religiously caring for them, Gen. xii. 5; xiv. 14; xliii. 23. Judg. vi. 27. Abraham's faithful steward, Gen. xxiv. 2, 36. Slavery a contravention of primitive jurisprudence as given by God, Job xxxi. 13. Ground of its condemnation, v. 15. Laws relating to it set by God's condescension immediately after the Decalogue, not as of perpetual obligation, but such as men could then bear, Ex. xxi. pp. 27—45. Slavery recognized merely as an institution capable of being mitigated, Lev. xix. 20; xxv. 42; Job xxxi. 13. Discountenanced in the Gospel, 1 Sam. xxx. 13. Heathen slaves not to be ill treated: the Jews more humane to them than were the Greeks and Romans, Ex. xxi. 20, 21. 26. Cruelty to one punished, 1 Sam. xxx. 13. Fugitives not to be given up to their masters, who notwithstanding were not to be defrauded: an emblem of Gospel liberty, Deut. xxiii. 15. Case of the Midianitish tribute to the Lord, Num. xxxi. 40. The Hebrew servant could not be perpetually bound, Ex. xxi. 2, 4, 6. Lev. xxv. 39, 42. 2 Kings iv. 1. Neh. v. 5. What his emancipation in the sabbatical year typifies, Ex. xxi. 2. Discouraged from marrying a heathen, v. 4. Custom of boring his ear explained, v. 6. Ps. xl. 6. Hebrew slaves serving a heathen to be redeemed at the Jubilee, as a type of Christ's redemption, Lev. xxv. 47, 48. Hebrew maid-servant an inferior wife: the law designed to mitigate inveterate evils, Ex. xxi. 7. Polygamy tolerated, not approved, v. 10. See *Marriage*. Solomon's servants, who, Ezra ii. 55. Neh. xi. 3.
- Servant of Jehovah, a term applied to Israel (Isa. xlii. 19), to Cyrus, and in its highest sense to Christ, their Antitype, Isa. xlii. 1; xlix. 3, 6, 8; l. 5; lii. 13; liii. p. 154. Zech. iii. 8; xi. 13. Partial truth of the rival interpretations, Isa. xlii. 1; liii. 8.
- Servius, on Virgil, cited, Dan. iv. 16.
- Seven (composed of 3 + 4, Gen. xxi. 30. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 280, *note* 3), a sacred number of time (*ib.*, p. 276, *note* 4), expressing rest, finality, universality, perfection, Gen. ii. 1; xv. 10, 11, 21; xxi. 30. Ex. xx. 8—11. Lev. iv. 6; xiv. 7; xxiii. 18. Num. xix. 4, 12; xxiii. 1; xxix. 36. Deut. xxviii. 7, 22. Judg. xvi. 8. 1 Kings vi. 1; xviii. 43. 1 Chr. xv. 18. 2 Chr. xxix. 21; xxxvi. 21. Job i. 2. Ps. cxx. p. 197; cxlv. p. 221. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xiii, *note* 2. Prov. ix. 1. Isa. iv. 1. Ezek. xxxix. 9. Mic. v. 5. Hab. p. 95. Zech. iii. 9. A favourite Persian number, perhaps astrological, Ezra vii. 14. Esther i. 10, 14. Mic. v. 5. Septenary combinations collected, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 280, *note* 3. Seven times, i. e. continu-

- ally, Ps. exix. 161: or indefinitely, Dan. iv. 16. Sevenfold, i. e. fully, Prov. vi. 31. The sevenfold graces of the Spirit, Cant. iv. 1. Zech. iii. 9. "At the end of seven years;" its meaning, Jer. xxiv. 14. Seven weeks explained, Dan. ix. 25. See *Arithmetic*.
- Seven nations of Canaan, the, variously recited, Deut. vii. 1.
- Seventy, a sacred number, Gen. xvi. 27. Num. xi. 16. Deut. xxxii. 8. Judg. i. 7; viii. 30. Seventy weeks of years link on the Captivity of Judah (Jer. xvi. p. 57) with the end of all things, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. Vol. iii. p. 298. Dan. ix. 21—27. How divided into several portions, *ib.*, pp. 46—7. Why a precise date, not a round number, was assigned for the duration of the Captivity, and with what moral purposes, Jer. xxv. 11—14; xxxix. 10. Those great portions of seventy weeks noted, Ezra vi. 11. Those of Daniel (relating to Christ, Dan. ix. 21—27) counted from the edict of Artaxerxes (not of Cyrus), Ezra vii. 8: or rather from the mission of Nehemiah, Neh. i. 1, or from the building of the walls of Jerusalem, Neh. viii. 17. The question fully discussed, Dan. ix. p. 47. Those of Zechariah for the Captivity reckoned from the destruction of the Temple (B.C. 586), Zech. i. 12.
- Seventy-seven, a mystic number, Gen. iv. 21. Judg. viii. 11. 1 Kings xviii. 43.
- Severian, cited, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xxxix, note 4. Gen. xxxvii. 3.
- Severus in *Calend.* cited, Job xxxiii. 4; xli. 13.
- Shaalabbin, Josh. xix. 42, or *Shaalbim*, 1 Kings iv. 9.
- Shaaraim, 1 Sam. xvii. 52. See *Sharaim*.
- Shaftesbury, Lord, his *Characteristics* cited, Ezek. xx. 25.
- Shaking of nations before Christ came, explained, Hagg. ii. 6, 7.
- Shakespeare, owes much of his imagery to the Bible, Job xxx. 29. Cited or referred to, Judg. xiv. 8. 2 Sam. xviii. 9. 2 Kings ix. 26. Job vii. 4; xvi. 22; xxx. 29. Eccles. v. 10; vii. 1, 16; xii. 5.
- Shalem, its meaning and position, discussed, Gen. xxxiii. 18.
- Shalim, 1 Sam. ix. 4, or *Shual*, 1 Sam. xiii. 17.
- Shalisha, or *Baal-shalisha*, 1 Sam. ix. 4. 2 Kings iv. 42.
- Shallecheth, 1 Chr. xxvi. 16.
- Shalmanser, or *Shalanar*, 2 Kings xvii. 3. Hos. x. 11. See *Asshur*.
- Shame, abstract for concrete, put for idols, Jer. iii. 21, 25; xi. 13.
- Shangzar, his ox-goad a formidable weapon, Judg. iii. 31: the distress in his days, Judg. v. 6. Compared to S. John among the Apostles, Judg. iii. 31.
- Shamir, Josh. xv. 48.
- Sharaim, Josh. xv. 36. See *Shaaraim*.
- Sharzer, meaning of, Jer. xxxix. 3.
- Sharon, (1) in Gilead, 1 Chr. v. 16: (2) in Judah, its site, 1 Chr. xxvii. 29. Described, Cant. ii. 1. Isa. xxxiii. 9; xxxv. 1. A general name used spiritually, Isa. lxx. 10.
- Sharpe, *Egyptian Mythology*, cited, Isa. xxxvii. 36; li. 9. Ezek. viii. 10.
- Shaving, a token of mourning or of humiliation, Gen. xli. 14; i. 4. Lev. xix. 27. Job i. 20. Mic. i. 16. Hence usually forbidden to priests, Ezek. xliv. 20: yet commanded to Ezekiel, Ezek. v. 1.
- Shaw, Dr., his *Travels* cited, Ex. xvii. 6. Judg. iv. 21; v. 11. 1 Sam. xxvi. 20. Job xxx. 29. Prov. xav. 20.
- Sheba, or *Shebah*, described, Gen. x. 7. Jer. vi. 20. Ezek. xxxviii. 13. Three races so named, Job i. 15 (*Sabeans*); vi. 19. Isa. xlv. 14. Joel iii. 8. That in Africa, Ps. lxxxi. 10. The Queen of Sheba's visit connected with Solomon's trade to Ophir, 1 Kings x. 1. Its typical meaning, *re.* i. 3. Her devout amazement and her gifts, *re.* 6—9. Received, like Christ's people, a proportionate return, *re.* 13. 2 Chr. ix. 12. Christ connects His reference to her with the parallel blessing uttered by the pious woman, *re.* 7. An emblem of the wise men coming to Christ, Isa. lx. 6.
- Sheba, his rank and history, 2 Kings xviii. 18. His crafty ambition and fall, Isa. xlii. 15—18.
- Shechaniah, son of Jehiel, the names significant, Ezra x. 2.
- Shechem, or *Shecan*, or *Shechar*, its Scripture history, Gen. xii. 6; xxxiii. 18; xxxv. 4. Deut. xxvii. 12. Josh. xx. 7; xxiv. 1. 3. Judg. ix. 1. 1 Kings xii. 25. Ps. lvi. 6. Jer. xli. 5. Hos. vi. 9. A burial-place of the Patriarchs, Gen. xlii. 9; xxxiii. 19. Uniformity of the Divine plan indicated by identity of place, Gen. xxxiii. 20; xxxiv. 25—31. Play on the meaning of the word, Gen. xlviii. 22. A marked place in sacred history, Josh. viii. 30—35. Journey of the Israelites to the neighbourhood accounted for. A greater than Joshua herefirst revealed Himself as the Messiah, *ib.* As a Levitical city spoke warning and encouragement to that tribe, Josh. xli. 21. A noble name in Canaan, and still so regarded, Judg. ix. 28. A national sanctuary, 1 Kings xii. 1.
- Shechinah, the Divine glory, Num. xx. 6. Isa. lx. 1. Risen on the Christian Church, *ib.* Seen by Ezekiel leaving the first Temple, Ezek. x. 18; xi. 1. That of Christ's glory illuminated the second Temple, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xiv. Leaves the literal Temple for the spiritual, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 283.
- Shckel, the, value of, Gen. xx. 16; xxiii. 15. 1 Kings x. 29. 2 Kings vi. 25. Jer. xxxii. 9. In weight, Ezek. iv. 10; xlv. 12. Sin of making it small or great, Amos viii. 5. Half-shekel (Heb. *beka*), Gen. xxiv. 22. Thirty shekels the price of a woman or of a slave, Lev. xxvii. 4; fifty of a freeman, Ex. xxi. 32: fifteen of a vile person, Hos. iii. 2. Hence the price paid for the Divine Shepherd an insult, Zech. xi. 12. The shekel of the sanctuary (Prov. xvi. 11) equal to two common ones, Ex. xxx. 13. 2 Sam. xiv. 26. That of gold, and how so vast a sum was obtained, Ex. xxxviii. 24. Called also silverlings, Isa. vii. 23. One third of a shekel yearly given to the sanctuary after the Captivity, and subsequently increased to half, Neh. x. 32. Job's *Kesitah* probably four shekels, Job xlii. 11.
- Shem, his spiritual blessing, Gen. ix. 26, 27. Why reserved to the last in the series of families, yet always named first among the sons of Noah, Gen. x. 21. 1 Chr. i. 4.
- Shemaiah, the false prophet, Neh. vi. 10.
- Sheminih, explained, 1 Chr. xv. 21. Ps. vi. p. 8.
- Shenir, its probable meaning, Deut. iii. 9.
- Shepherd, the Divine David, both prince and servant, Ezek. xxxiv. 23. Zech. xiii. 6. Mal. iv. 5. Such statements not to be taken literally, Ezek. xxxiv. 23. The point fully discussed, Ezek. xxxvi. pp. 238—9. God's Fellow, Zech. xiii. 7.
- Sherlock, Bp., cited, Hos. xi. 1.
- Sheshach, an alphabetical symbolism (see *Athbash*) for Babel, Jer. xxv. 26; li. 41.
- Sheth, the children of, variously understood, Num. xxiv. 17.
- Shewbread (Heb. *bread of faces*), described: represents a weekly offering to God (2 Chr. ii. 4), especially in the Holy Communion, Ex. xxv. 30. Num. iv. 7. The food ministered by the Church, Lev. xxiv. 5. 1 Kings vii. 48. The frankincense intermixed with it indicates prayer, Lev. xxiv. 7. Continual bread renewed each Sabbath, Num. iv. 7. 1 Chr. ix. 32. By whom it might be eaten, 1 Sam. xxi. 4. Why given to David, *re.* 5. One table for it in the Tabernacle, ten others in the Temple, 1 Kings vii. 48. 1 Chr. xxviii. 16. 2 Chr. iv. 8. The pure table, 2 Chr. xiii. 11.
- Shibboleth, explained, Judg. xii. 6. Ritual differences lie deeper than the expression, often springing from an unsanctified heart, *ib.*
- Shibmah, or *Sibmah* (Num. xxxii. 38). Josh. xiii. 19. Isa. xvi. 8. Jer. xlviii. 32.
- Shicron, Josh. xv. 11.
- Shield, figurative use of, 2 Sam. xxii. 3. Put for rulers, Hos. iv. 18. God the true Shield of His people, Ps. v. 12; xlvii. 9; lxxxix. 18. Cant. iv. 4. Solomon's shields discriminated, 1 Kings x. 16, 17: brazen substituted for golden, 1 Kings xv. 27.
- Shiggaion, or *Shigionoth*, explained, Ps. vii. p. 8. A lyrical ode, Hab. iii. 1.
- Shihon, Josh. xix. 19.
- Shihor, see *Shihor*.
- Shihor-libnath, Josh. xix. 26.
- Shilhim, Josh. xv. 32.
- Shiloah, or *Siloam*, its site and typical meaning, Isa. viii. 6; xii. 3; xxxiii. 21. Meaning of the word, Gen. v. 21. This pool, like the Sheep-gate, connected with Christ's miracles, Neh. iii. 15. Its precise site and subterranean connexion with Gihon, *ib.* The only fountain in Jerusalem in Jerome's time, Jer. xiv. 1.
- Shiloh (1) by all confessed to be a title of the Messiah, or to refer to Him. Evidence of ancient Jewish interpreters, of the Septuagint version, even of modern Jews accounting thus far with the Christian Fathers; however they may differ as to the grammatical analysis of the word. Various opinions discussed. How the prophecy was fulfilled historically and literally in Christ, Gen. xlix. 10. "He whose right it is" explained, Ezek. xxi. 27. The promise of a kingdom continued through David and Zerubbabel unto Christ, Hagg. ii. 21—23. He is exalted in the fall of the literal kings of Judah, Ezek. xxi. 26. His garments how washed in wine, Isa. lxiii. 3.
- Shiloh, (2) i. e. peace. Site of the place and its history in connexion with the Tabernacle, Josh. xviii. 1. Judg. xx. 27? xxi. 2? li. 19, 21. 1 Sam. i. 3; iii. 21. Ps. lxxviii. 67, 68. Jer. vii. 12; xxvi. 6; xli. 5. Hence the Shilonite, 1 Kings xi. 29: but rather genealogical in 1 Chr. ix. 5.
- Shimei, (1) his course causeless, Prov. xxvi. 2. Cases where he is to be answered, where not, *re.* 4, 5. (2) A subordinate branch of Levi's house, Zech. xii. 12, 13.

- Shimron, Josh. xiv. 15.
- Shinar, the older name for Babylonia, Gen. x. 10. Isa. vi. 11. Zech. v. 11. Grown antiquated, Dan. i. 2. Its Hamite origin confirmed by modern discoveries, Gen. x. 10.
- Shishak, his identity fixed, 1 Kings xiv. 25. His connexion with Jeroboam, 1 Kings xi. 26, 10. 2 Chr. xii. 2.
- Shittah or *Shittim* wood (the acacia), Ex. xxv. 5; xxvi. 15. Isa. xli. 19.
- Shittim, the Israelites' encampment there, Num. xvii. 1. Described historically, Num. xxv. 1. Josh. ii. 1. Joel iii. 18. Mic. vi. 5.
- Shoa, its symbolical meaning, Ezek. xxiii. 23.
- Shoe, the casting to one, a sign of his subjugation, Ps. ix. 8. Its spiritual significance, Cant. vii. 1.
- Shoshannim, the lily among thorns, Ps. xlv. p. 68; lxix. p. 105. *Shushan-eduth*, Ps. lx. p. 90.
- Shoulder, i.e. coast, Isa. xi. 11. Ezek. xxv. 9. Children carried on the shoulder, Isa. xlv. 22.
- Shuite, the, located, Job ii. 11.
- Shulamite, "the peaceable," explained, Cant. vi. 13.
- Shunem, its site and history, Josh. xiv. 18. 1 Sam. xxviii. 1. 1 Kings i. 2, 3. 2 Kings iv. 8: near Nain, *c.* 36.
- Shushan, (1) site of, Neh. i. 1. Esther i. 2. Dan. viii. 2. Its wealth, Esther i. 7. Its sorrow, Esther iii. 15. The metropolis (Heb. *birah*), Esther ix. 6. Its ruins and neighbourhood, Dan. viii. 2. (2) A gate of the Temple, why so called, Ezra vi. 2.
- Sibour, Archbp., his protest against Roman idolatry, Zech. xi. 15.
- Sibraim, explained, Ezek. xlvii. 16.
- Sibylline verses, the, derive their imagery from Scripture, Isa. lxx. 25.
- Sicarii, the, of our Lord's age, Dan. xi. 14.
- Siddim, vale of, Gen. xiv. 3.
- Sidon, or *Zidon*, located and described, Gen. x. 15. The mother city of Tyre, Isa. xxiii. 2. Once the capital of Phœnicia, Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xix. Josh. xi. 8. Canaanites who fled thence, *ib.* Given to mechanical works, as Tyre was to commerce, 1 Kings v. 6. Its overthrow by Nebuchadnezzar, Jer. xlvii. 1. Ezek. xxviii. 21. Had infected Israel with idolatry, *ib.* Its worldly wisdom, Zech. ix. 2.
- Sigonius, cited, Dan. vii. 8.
- Shihor, the Black River, the Nile, Isa. xxiii. 3. Jer. ii. 18. See also *Shihor* and *Shihor under River*.
- Silence, the inspiration of, Judg. x. 1. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. 362. Esther iv. 11. Isa. xxi. 9. The devout soul is all ear, Ps. lxii. 1. Stillness in the Church of God, and in the work of the Spirit, 1 Kings vi. 7.
- Silius Italicus, cited, 2 Kings x. 22.
- Simoon, the meaning of his name, Gen. xxix. 33. Why selected by Joseph to be bound, Gen. xlii. 19, 21. His tribe diminished (Num. iii. 39. 1 Chr. iv. 27) through the sin and plague at Shittim, Num. xxv. 11. This tribe unblest by Moses, *ib.* Inference therefrom as to the authenticity of his Blessing, Deut. xxxiii. 1, 8. Restored to its inheritance with Judah at Shiloh, Josh. xiv. 1. Part of the tribe clave to Judah at Jeroboam's revolt, 2 Chr. xi. 12.
- Simoon and Levi, brethren in cruelty, contrasted at Shechem with Peter and John at Samaria, Gen. xxix. 25, 30. Their lot foretold by Jacob, and spiritualized, Gen. xlix. 5-7. Separated in the sin at Shittim, Num. xxv. 11. Become teachers of the Law in synagogues and schools, Gen. xlix. 7. Vol. i. Part 2, p. 200.
- Sin, or *Pelusium*, Ezek. xxx. 15.
- Sins committed by men through others will be traced in the Judgment to those who employed them, 2 Sam. xii. 9. To dally with one, is to become the slave of all, 1 Kings p. 45. Those seemingly forgotten shall yet be visited, Joel iii. 21. The three distinct characters of sin discriminated, Ps. li. 1, 2. Christ became sin for us, Ps. xli. 4. Yet its nature not altered by reason of God's pardon, 2 Chr. xvii. 3. Its guilt rather revealed by Christ's sufferings, Job xxvii. 6. Conscience of sin the first step to intelligence, Ps. xxxii. p. 14. Sorrow for sin graciously received (Cant. vi. 2). Sin is first taken away by Christ (Ps. xl. 12), then covered, or put out of remembrance, *c.* 1. The sins of the wicked prove in their fruits the truth of God's word, Dan. xi. 11. National sins no lawful means of gain, Hos. vii. 7.
- Sin-offering (Heb. *chattah*) first named, Ex. xxix. 11. Vol. i. Part 2, p. 9. Not named in Joshua or Judges, Josh. viii. 31. Such were Job's and Balaam's sacrifices, Job xlii. 8. Derivation of the word, Lev. iv. 2. What it implies, Vol. i. Part 2, pp. 1, 9. Why offered first of all, Num. vi. 16. A substitute for the sinner, Lev. vi. 25: in its nature penitential, *c.* 26. Mode of sacrifice: all the blood to be poured out, Vol. i. Part 2, p. 9. To be offered even for sins of ignorance, Lev. iv. 2: varying with the condition of the sinner, *c.* 3. May be due from a whole people, as well as from individuals, *c.* 13. Emblematic meaning of the several ritual observances prescribed in offering it, Lev. vi. 25-30. Why it must not be wholly burnt, but part eaten, Lev. x. 16. The goat a sin-offering typifying Christ, Prov. xxx. 31. Not to be offered for Gentiles, Ezra vi. 10. Sin money explained, 2 Kings xii. 16. Sin-offering of fools, Prov. xiv. 9.
- Sinai, the peninsula of, described: able to maintain cattle, Ex. iii. 1; xxxiv. 3. Horeb, where named: its probable site, Ex. iii. 1. Deut. i. 6 (see *Horeb*). Good pasture in the region, Ex. xii. p. 241. Stations of Israel on the western side: Shur, Ex. xv. 22; Marah, *c.* 23; Elim, *c.* 27; Sin and the station by the sea, Ex. xvi. 1; Rephidim, Ex. xvii. 1. Mount Sinai or Horeb, Ex. xxiii. 5; xiv. 1. Water found there, Ex. xiv. 10; xxxii. 20. Deut. iv. 21. Terrors of Mount Sinai contrasted with the beatitudes of the Sermon on the Mount, Ex. xiv. 13; xv. 1. Israel abode there about eleven months, Num. i. 1. Deut. i. 6.
- Sinaitic manuscript, the, cited, Ps. i. p. 1.
- Sinim, probably China, Isa. xlix. 12.
- Sinite, the, Gen. x. 17.
- Sion, see *Zion*.
- Sijarum or *Shaphar*, whence probably derived, Jer. xliii. 10.
- Sirah, well of, 2 Sam. iii. 26.
- Sirénus, Julius, cited, Gen. xlv. 5.
- Siron, its probable meaning (see *Shenir*). Need of these geographical details, Deut. iii. 9.
- Six, a number exponent of preparation for rest, or of labour, Gen. ii. 1: or of defection from completeness, 1 Kings x. 14. Dan. iii. 1: or a crisis of suffering, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 279. Dan. iv. 16. Symbolical use of 666, 1 Kings x. 14. 2 Chr. ix. 13. Ezra ii. 13; viii. 13. Dan. iii. 1. See *Arithmetic*.
- Skirt (*hem*, or *wing*, Heb. *canaph*) of a garment, illustrated, Hagg. ii. 12. Its use in the Hebrew ceremony of betrothal, the bridegroom's *tallith* being placed on the bride's head, Ruth iii. 9. Ezek. xvi. 7, 8. Zech. viii. 23. Mal. ii. 16; iv. 2. Emblematical of the act of faith which holds on Christ, Zech. viii. 23. Mal. iv. 2.
- Slander, the love of, Prov. xviii. 8.
- Slave, see *Servant*.
- Sleep, God conveys His blessings to His beloved when sleeping, Ps. cxxvii. 2. Specially true of the great Jedidiah, Solomon's Antitype, *ib.*
- Smith's Dictionary of the Bible characterized, Vol. i. Part 1. *Pref.* p. xxii. Vol. ii. Part 2, p. ix, note 5. Cited, Ex. i. 8, and *passim*.
- Smiting on the thigh in sorrow, Jer. xxxi. 19.
- Soap, lye or alkali, Mal. iii. 2.
- Socoh, Josh. xv. 35. 48: or *Shachoh*, 1 Sam. xvii. 1. 2 Chr. xi. 7: or *Sochoh*, 1 Kings iv. 10: or *Schoh*, 1 Chr. iv. 18.
- Socrates, the historian, cited, Hagg. ii. 9.
- Sodom, its site, Gen. xiii. 10. Its overthrow, Gen. xix. 24. The city of Sodom not to be literally rebuilt, Ezek. xvi. 53.
- Sodonites (Heb. *Kedeshim*), in Job's age, Job xxxvi. 11. Engaged in idolatrous worship, 1 Kings xiv. 24.
- Solemn League and Covenant, the, an unlawful oath, Jer. iv. 2.
- Solimus, cited, Cant. i. 5.
- Solomon, i.e. Peaceable (Prov. i. 1. Zech. ix. 10), or Jedidiah (Ps. cxxvii. 2), his very name suggestive of Christ, 2 Sam. xii. 24. 1 Chr. xxii. 9. Further named the Beloved in reference to Him, 2 Sam. xii. 25. Different phrases of Christ's office (completely represented in neither) noted in him and in David, Vol. ii. Part 2, p. 100. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. viii. 1 Kings iv. 2. 1 Chr. xxii. 2. Solomon in what respects a type of Christ, 1 Kings iv. 21, 24, 30; vii. p. 24; *rr.* 13, 14; x. 11, 19, 20. Ps. xlv. p. 68; *c.* 16; lxxii. p. 112. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 125. His failures as a type, 1 Kings vi. 12, 13; viii. 11; xl. p. 45. His being anointed in David's lifetime intimates continuity, and is thus typical of Christ the Conqueror passing into the King of Peace, 1 Kings i. 34. 1 Chr. xxi. 1; xxviii. 11; xxix. 29. Ps. lxxii. p. 112. His second unction, 1 Chr. xxix. 22. His acts to Joab and Shimei magisterial, not in hatred, Vol. iii. p. 5. 1 Kings ii. 3, 31. Bound by his royal word to punish Shimei, *c.* 42. Marrying a foreign wife not forbidden, but of holy example, and even typical, 1 Kings iii. 1. 2 Chr. vii. 11. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. 121. In his youth brings the Egyptian, his sole consort (1 Kings vii. 8), to the worship of God: the direct converse of his conduct in his old age, 1 Kings iii. 1. In his visit to Gibeon gives honourable burial to the Tabernacle, now about to be superseded, as did our Lord and His apostles to the Jewish Law, *c.* 4. 2 Chr. i. 3. In his own eyes a little child, when in his father's a wise man, 1 Kings iii. 7. His wisdom of what character, *c.* 12. Vol. iv. Part 3, p. xiii. Prov. i. 3. His judgment typical of Christ's as Judge: a protest against

- schism, 1 Kings iii. 16—27. His household of 11,000 persons, 1 Kings iv. 22. The number of his bondsmen in 1 Kings and 2 Chr. harmonized, 1 Kings v. 16. His palace why so fully described, 1 Kings vii. p. 24. His blessing a kingly, not a priestly, act, 1 Kings viii. 14. His enlightened interest in strangers, v. 41. God's second appearance to him when 44 years old, 1 Kings ix. 2. 2 Chr. vii. 12. His piety thus far, 1 Kings ix. 24. 25. His gradual moral decline traced to its causes, 1 Kings x. 22. 23. 29; xi. p. 44. 2 Chr. ix. 28. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 86. His offences enumerated, Eccles. v. 1. In his fall, in premature old age (1 Kings xi. 4) a contrast to Christ and a type of the great apostasy of the last days, 1 Kings xi. pp. 45. 46. His repentance uncertain, 1 Kings xi. 43. 2 Chr. ix. 28. Book of Ecclesiastes, Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. 74—92. See *Ecclesiastes*.
- Solomon, Rabbi, cited, Ps. xlv. p. 68. Mic. vii. 8. Zech. vii. 2. Solon, anecdote of, Prov. iii. 32.
- Son (Heb. *bar*), the rendering vindicated, Ps. ii. 12 (p. 3). Spoken of a member of a guild, Neh. iii. 8. See *Father*.
- Son of God, in what sense used by Nebuchadnezzar, Dan. iii. 25. Sons of God, not angels, but men of a godly race, Gen. vi. 2. Christ so called in the highest sense, *ib*.
- Son of Man, expounded by the Jews to be the Messiah, Dan. vii. 13. A name adopted by Christ Himself, *ib*. What prophets so called and why, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 153. Ezek. ii. 1. Dan. viii. 17.
- Song of Solomon, or Song of Songs (i. e. queen of songs, Cant. i. 1) or Canticles, the Hebrew and Christian Churches ascribe this book to Solomon, Vol. iv. Part 3. *Introd.* p. 120. The flower of his thousand and five songs, Cant. i. 1. Written in the freshness of holy youth spent in God's favour, p. 120. His foreign marriage after good examples, and spiritually significant of the call of the heathen to Christ, p. 121. Ps. xlv. an overture to this poem, *ib*, p. 124. Cant. i. 3. 4. 13; iii. 8; iv. 3. 14. So Ps. lxxiii. 16, Cant. iv. 8. Solomon representing Christ, Cant. iii. 7. He and David a composite type of Christ, p. 121. See *Solomon*. Canticles describes the gathering of the world to Christ: spiritualization of natural objects by one deeply versed in physical science, *ib*. Objections to his authorship on the ground of style very slight, *ib*. Cant. iii. 9; iv. 13; vi. 11. The Hebrew relative pronoun discussed, Cant. i. 7. Canticles neither composed of amatory idylls, nor a Persian tale (p. 126), a poetical romance of earthly love, pp. 121—2. All ancient writers except Theodore of Mopsuestia (p. 122, note 7) held its spiritual sense in reference to Christ and His Church, pp. 122—124. In this sense referred to in the New Testament, p. 123, and notes 4 and 7. So modern expositors of 17th century, Reformed and Roman, p. 124, and note 5. This figure of the conjugal relation pervades Scripture from the Pentateuch to the Apocalypse, p. 124. Imagery anticipates that of Isaiah, Isa. iv. 5; v. p. 11; v. 1. On no other supposition would the composition be chaste, or the metaphors abounding in it coherent, pp. 124—5. Cant. ii. 4; iv. 9; especially as regards the characters of the Bridegroom and the Bride, and the significant proper names of places (Cant. i. 14; ii. 1. 17; iv. 8; vi. 12; vii. 4; viii. 11), p. 125. Thus resembling the Apocalypse, *ib*. Like that book very practical in its character, pp. 126; 127, note 3. Every soul in the Church is a Church in itself: but Christ also the Husband of the Church Universal, p. 126. This book, though the highest flight of poetical rapture in the Bible, teaches the duty of holy obedience and unselfishness; and the obligation of missionary labour, pp. 126—7. Like some other parts of Scripture, not read in private by the young Hebrews, but most appropriately in public at the Pass-over, p. 127, and note 1. Cant. iii. 11. Desire for the public reading of the Canticles and Apocalypse in the English Church, p. 127, and note 3. Propriety of the modern order of Solomon's trilogy, though not chronological, p. 127. Hymns grounded upon the Canticles unfit for mixed congregations, *ib*. Bp. Taylor's judgment of emotional religion, *ib*. Headings of the pages. Commentators ancient and modern, p. 128. The Bride's mother's children, the Jews, Cant. i. 6; iii. 1. She herself a daughter of the ancient Church, led through the wilderness by the pillar of cloud and smoke, Cant. iii. 6; viii. 1. 5. Her duty of patient waiting for the Bridegroom, Cant. ii. 7. A chorus of the faithful speaks, Cant. iii. 6; vi. 10; viii. 5. Christ espoused at His Passion, His crown a crown of thorns, Cant. iii. 11. The Divine Name (*Yah*) used but once: for what reason, Cant. viii. 6. Unity of plan observable in this book, Cant. viii. 13.
- Song, the Apocryphal, of the Three Holy Children, from Theodotion's version, its date and place of origin, Dan. iii. 23.
- Song (Heb. *shir* or *shirah*) of David, Ps. xviii. p. 21; xxx. p. 41; lxi. p. 97. See *Psalms*. Those of women in Scripture, Ex. xv. 18. Judg. xi. 34. 1 Sam. ii. 1; xviii. 6. Cant. vi. 13. Even in the Temple service, Ezra ii. 65. National song relating to the Moabitish wars, Num. xxi. 14. 27. That of "the well," v. 16. Songs of holy joy commended, v. 27. That of Moses an epilogue of the Law, inspired and prophetic, Deut. xxxi. 19. Its contents analyzed, Deut. xxxiii. 1. Songs of victory throughout Scripture, Judg. v. 1. Song of "the bow," 2 Sam. i. 18. David's song rises from personal mercies to Christ's Redemption, as do those of Moses and Hannah, 2 Sam. xxi. p. 122. Songs in the night, Job xxxv. 10. "A new song," explained, Ps. xvi. p. 152; cxlix. 1. Sophocles, cited or referred to, Gen. xxxix. 7. Job xxxiii. 1. Eccles. v. 9; xii. 4. 5.
- Sorek, Judg. xvi. 4. Isa. v. 2. Jer. ii. 21.
- Soul (Heb. *nephesh*), the animal life, Prov. xiv. 10; xxiii. 2. 7. Isa. xlix. 7. Lam. iii. 51. The weaker vessel, Ps. xlii. 5: distinguished from the higher principle, the spirit (Heb. *ruach*), Job xii. 10. Ps. cxxxi. 2; cxlii. 3. Lam. iii. 20.
- Soundness and fruitfulness, especially of the spirit, approved by God, Deut. xxiii. 1.
- South, Dr., cited, 1 Kings vii. 28. 31.
- South, the district of Palestine (Heb. *negeb*), Gen. xii. 9; xx. 1. Num. xiii. 17. Deut. xxxiv. 3. Josh. xv. 21. 1 Sam. xxvii. 10. Jer. xxxii. 44. Obad. 19. Zech. vii. 7. The region of light and warmth, Deut. xi. 29; xxvii. 12. Its streams dried up by the summer heat, to return in winter, Ps. cxvii. 4. The chamber (Heb. *cheder*), Job xxxvii. 9. Judaea as opposed to Chaldaea, Ezek. xx. 46. The king of the south, i. e. of Egypt, Dan. xi. 5. 40. See *North*.
- Sozomen, cited, Hagg. ii. 9.
- Spanheim, cited, Ruth iv. 20. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 120, note 4. Dan. viii. 5.
- Spanhem, cited, Job xxxii. p. 71.
- Spear, the, at the head of a sleeping person, an Oriental token of chieftancy, 1 Sam. xxvi. 11. Its nether end pointed, 2 Sam. ii. 23.
- Spelman, Sir H., cited, Josh. vii. 25.
- Spencer, cited, Gen. xvii. 10, 11. Ex. xxi. p. 275. Lev. xviii. 21. Deut. iv. 8; xxvi. 14. Judg. xvi. 13. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 8. Ezek. xx. 25.
- Spicery described, Gen. xxxvii. 25. Its different sorts, Ex. xxx. 23. 24. 31. 2 Kings x. 20.
- Spiegel, cited, Ezra iv. 5. 6; vi. 12; vii. 12. Esther i. 1; iii. 12.
- Spies, the, in the wilderness, Num. xxi. 1. Those sent by Joshua despatched before God's command to cross the Jordan, Josh. ii. 1. These spies typified John the Baptist, *ib*.
- Spinning, the art of, exactly described, Prov. xxxi. 19. 20.
- Spinosa, referred to, Deut. iii. 11. 1 Kings vii. 23.
- Spirit, the Holy, is God, Ps. lxxviii. 56. Isa. lxi. 1. His Personality, Job xxxiii. 4. Isa. lxiii. 10. His life-giving power, Ps. lxxviii. 10. Why poured upon all flesh, Joel ii. 28—32. Excites a spirit of supplication, Zech. xii. 10. A right or steadfast spirit, to enable man to hold communion with the Holy One, Ps. li. 10. A spirit free, i. e. liberal, ungrudging, not servile, v. 12.
- Spiritual blindness of some learned men in regard to Scripture Revelation, its cause, Num. xxii. 23.
- Spoil, to be equally divided between the present and absent, a variation from Moses' rule. Its moral significance considered, 1 Sam. xxx. 24. 25. Ps. lxxviii. 12.
- Sponsors in Baptism may enter into covenant for infants, Deut. xxix. 11—15.
- Spontaneous development, the physical theory of, refuted, Gen. i. 11.
- Standards, proper, of the twelve tribes, as derived from Jewish expositors, Num. ii. 2. That of the cross lifted on high, Zech. ix. 16. See *Jehovah-nissi*.
- Stanley, Dean, characterized, Vol. v. Part 1. pp. xvii. 113. Cited, Josh. iii. 15; ix. 6; x. 10; xv. 31; xvi. 1. Judg. v. 20; ix. 7; xviii. 30; xix. 29. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. ix, note 2. 1 Sam. xiii. 9. Vol. iii. p. 5. 1 Kings ii. 10; vi. 1. 3; vii. 2; viii. 14; x. 22; xi. 5; xii. 31; xvi. 24; xviii. 20. 2 Kings i. 10; ii. 21; xvii. 6; xxi. 19; xxiii. 16. 1 Chr. xxviii. 11. 2 Chr. xxvi. 16. Ps. lii. 8; lxix. 22. Eccles. ii. 5. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 122, note 2. Vol. v. Part 1. pp. xvii—xx. Isa. xl. p. 113; lvi. p. 163; lxiii. 1. Jer. xxvii. 12; xxxvi. 22; xxxviii. 6. 25—27; xxxix. 5; xl. 6; xlviii. 40. Obad. 3. Zeph. i. 1.
- Star, the, of Balaam, understood of Christ by Jews and Christians both ancient and modern; by the wise men of the East and by Barcochbas, Num. xxiv. 17. Stars represent the saints in glory, Ps. cxlvii. 4—16; also conspicuous persons in the Church, both bad and good, Dan. xii. 10: especially teachers of Divine knowledge, Dan. xii. 3.
- Statute of Appeals (24 Henry VIII.), cited, Deut. xvii. 9.

- Staveley *On Churches*, cited, Isa. xli. 1.
- Staves, the, of the Ark, made more visible in the Temple than in the Tabernacle, to intimate a growing revelation, 1 Kings viii. 8. 2 Chr. v. 9. Those of Zechariah the Good Shepherd's crooks: why two, Zech. xi. 7. The second cut asunder, *v. 14*.
- Sticks, two, united, Ezek. xxxvii. 16. Zeph. iii. 13. Zech. x. 6. See *Bands*.
- Stier, R., characterized, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 54. Cited, Prov. xxv. 11, 22, 23; xxvi. 2. 10. 16. 22, 23; xxxvii. 5. 6. 12; xxxviii. 12. 21; xxxix. 8. 21. Eccles. xii. 11. Vol. v. Part 1. p. 113. Isa. xli. 15. 22; xlii. 1; xlv. 14; liii. p. 153; *cc. 1*. 8; lvii. 8; lix. 19; lxiii. 1. 3. 11; lxx. 11; lxxvi. 17.
- Stocks, the, in prison, 2 Chr. xvi. 10. Isa. x. 4. Jer. xxxvii. 16. Rather "collar," Jer. xxix. 26.
- Stoics, the, their spirit discernible in Job, Vol. iv. Part 1. p. 71.
- Stones, (1) preferred by the Jews to iron for weights, Lev. xix. 36. Prov. xi. 1. Smooth stones employed in idolatrous worship, Isa. lvii. 6. The stone at Shechem, appealed to by Joshua, a prophetic pre-announcement of Christ, Josh. xxiv. 27. The word frequently used emblematically in his book, Josh. iv. 1—3; v. 2; xxiv. 30: of the two sets of twelve he set up, those at Gilgal typify the work, those in the Jordan the continuance of the Apostolic Church, Josh. iv. 9. The Apostles compared to stones, 2 Sam. ii. 16. God's people hewn by the prophets, Hos. vi. 5. Great stones of Solomon's Temple described, and referred to Christ the chief Corner Stone, 1 Kings v. 17. The Head Stone of the Corner (Zech. x. 4) acknowledged by the Jews to be the Messiah, Ps. cxviii. 22. He is the Stone of trial, Isa. xxxviii. 16: the Stone, Dan. ii. 45; viii. 25: the Living, Seeing Stone, Zech. iii. 9; which shall crush His foes, Zech. iv. 10.
- Stones, (2) precious: the sapphire, Ex. xxiv. 10. The twelve on the High Priest's breastplate described, with their spiritual significance, Ex. xxviii. 17—20. Cant. v. 14. Zech. iii. 9. Types of God's jewels, Ex. xxviii. 30. Mal. iii. 17, or peculiar treasure, *ib.* Also of faithful preachers of the Gospel, Zech. ix. 16. Glistering stones explained, 1 Chr. xxix. 2. Those worn by the prince of Tyre, Ezek. xxviii. 13.
- Stork (Heb. *chasidukh*), why the, pious, Job xxxix. 13. Zech. v. 9. Represents faithful Churches, *ib.*
- Story (Heb. *midrash*), the term explained, 2 Chr. xiii. 22.
- Strabo, cited, Vol. i. Part 1. p. xxxii. Gen. xvii. 10, 11; xix. 24; xxv. 13; xlvii. 20. Ezra viii. 17. Neh. i. 1. Esther i. 3. Isa. xlii. 19. 20; xli. 1; xlv. 4; xlvii. 10. Jer. xv. 11—14; xxv. 25; xliii. 13; li. 58. Ezek. i. 1; viii. 17; xxvii. 18. Dan. i. 4; xi. 18. 19. Nah. iii. 8. Zech. ix. 1.
- Stranger, or proselyte (2 Chr. xxx. 25), distinguished from a mere sojourner in the land, Ex. xxii. 21. Love for him proves the comprehensiveness of the Law, Deut. x. 19. Care for him spiritualized in the Gospel, 1 Kings viii. 41. Admitted to work on the Temple of Solomon, 2 Chr. ii. 17: who might have been once a royal missionary to them, 1 Kings viii. 41. Strangers like the Idumeans and the Romans threatened to be made lords over the Jewish people, Deut. xxviii. 43.
- Strauss, cited, Hos. xi. 1. Nah. ii. 4.
- Straw, broken up by threshing, Job xxi. 18. The nature of that mixed with the oldest Egyptian bricks, Ex. v. 7.
- Street, i. e. a broad open space, Ezra x. 9. Neh. viii. 1. 16. Job xxix. 7. Why appropriately near the Water Gate, Neh. viii. 1. The Baker's street, Jer. xxvii. 21.
- Strewing garments an Oriental token of homage, 2 Kings ix. 13.
- Stricken in years (Heb. *came into days*), a term used only of holy persons, Josh. xiii. 1. 1 Kings i. 1.
- Striking hands in suretyship, Job xvii. 3. Prov. vi. 1; xxii. 26. In scorn, Job xxiv. 37. In grief and alarm, Ezek. vi. 11. In wrath, Ezek. xxi. 17; xiii. 13.
- Strong Man, the, i. e. Christ (Isa. ix. 6). Jer. xxxi. 22. See also *Satan*.
- Strophical arrangement of Hebrew poetry, what it implies, Gen. iv. 23; xxv. 23; xxvii. 27—29. Its advantages, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xv. note 3. Synthetical and antithetical parallelisms exemplified, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. xiv. Often subdivided into stanzas, 2 Sam. i. 19. Job iii. 2. Rhythm of Moses' first song, Ex. xv. p. 252. Responsive chorus, *v. 21*. Antiphonal chants, Ruth i. 16. Ezra iii. 11. Neh. xii. 24. Interlocutory Psalm, Ps. cxviii. p. 184. Much is lost if Job be not strophically arranged, as in the earliest manuscripts of the Septuagint, Job iii. 2. The ethical and spiritual books all thus written, *ib.* How rightly called *masnal* or proverb, Num. xxi. 27; xxiii. 7. See *Alphabetical arrangement and Proverbs*.
- Suburbs, the term explained, 2 Kings xxiii. 11. Ezek. xlvi. 15. 17.
- Succoth, meaning and position of the place, Gen. xxxiii. 17. Josh. xiii. 27. 1 Kings vii. 46. Ps. —x. 6. Scorn and punishment of its people, Judg. viii. 5—7.
- Succoth-benoth, spiritual inference from our entire uncertainty about the word, 2 Kings xvii. 30. The *succah* or booth of David, Amos ix. 11.
- Suetonius, cited, Judg. i. 6. 1 Kings xviii. 20.
- Suicer, cited, Gen. xiv. 18, 19. Ex. xx. 1. 2 Kings xvii. 24. Mal. iv. 5.
- Suicide, the sin of, Ex. xx. 13. 2 Sam. xvii. 23. Even in Samson's case, Judg. xvi. 30. Saul leads on another by his ill example, 1 Sam. xxi. 5. Never contemplated by Job in his anguish, Job vii. 15.
- Suidas, cited, Isa. lvii. 6. Ezek. xxx. 15.
- Sukkiins, located, 2 Chr. xii. 3.
- Sulpicius Severus, cited, Esther i. 12. Dan. viii. 9. Amos vii. 13. Zech. xiii. 3.
- Sumphoniayah, not for certain a Greek word, Dan. iii. 5.
- Sun and moon, their standing still at Joshua's bidding, as prompted by God (*v. 13*), a miracle wrought for a sufficient immediate end, and symbolical of the prolonging among men of the light of the Gospel (Hab. iii. 11). Like similar phenomena in Scripture (see *Hezekiah*), the effect seems to have been only local, rays of light being stayed rather than the luminaries themselves, Josh. x. 12, 13. Duration of daylight for 36 hours, *v. 13*. The Canaanites thus plagued by the objects of their idolatrous worship, *ib.* Josh. xxi. 17. Other Hebrew words used for these luminaries, Isa. xxiv. 23.
- Sun images, idolatrous, described, Lev. xxvi. 30. 2 Chr. xiv. 5. Isa. xvii. 8; xxvii. 9. Ezek. vi. 4.
- Superstition often a shelter for sin, 2 Sam. xi. 4.
- Supremacy, the royal, represented by the prince in the Church, Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 285. 288. A professed zeal for it to the oppression of Christ's Church, Ezra iv. 13. Isa. xlix. 23; lx. 16. Amos vii. 13.
- Surenhusius, his *Catallage* cited, 2 Kings xii. 21. Amos v. 26. 27; ix. 12. Mic. v. 2. Hab. i. 5. Zech. xi. 13.
- Suretyship, why Solomon so earnestly warned against it, Prov. vi. 13. Spiritual application to pastors and sponsors, *v. 5*.
- Sweet savour, a sacrificial phrase, connecting the patriarchal types with the Gospel antitypes, Gen. viii. 21: *cp.* Gen. xxvii. 27. So in the Levitical law, Ex. xxix. 18. Lev. i. 9. 17. The phrase only used in the Pentateuch and in Ezekiel, Ezek. vi. 13. Emblematical of Christ's prevailing intercession (Amos v. 21) and God's acceptance of prayer through Him, Lev. ii. 1; iv. 7. Christ's Gospel is our savour, Ps. xlv. 8. His scent rejoiced in the perception of God's will, Isa. xi. 3.
- Sycamore, the tree described, 1 Chr. xxvii. 28. Very common in Palestine, Isa. ix. 10. The fruit eaten only by herdsmen, Amos vii. 14.
- Syrene, located, Ezek. xxix. 10; xxx. 6.
- Symbolical names found in the prophets, Jer. xxxi. 38, 39. Exemplified, Ezek. xxiii. 23; xxxviii. p. 246; xlvii. 10. Dan. viii. 6. Hos. i. 3. 4. 6. 8; ii. 1; v. 13. Joel iii. 2. Nah. ii. 7. Zeph. i. 11. Zech. ix. 1.
- Symmachus, the Greek translator of the Old Testament, cited, Gen. ii. 21; xxxvii. 3; xlix. 3. Ps. lxxiv. 8; cxx. p. 196. Prov. vi. 3; xxv. 20. Amos iv. 3. Hab. iii. 2. Also *passim*.
- Sympathy, true, a gift from God, Ezek. xxxi. 16.
- Synagogues, erected after the Captivity. The service rendered by them in preserving and making known the Scriptures (see *Calendar*): the practice of public reading authorized by our Lord, Deut. xxxi. 11. Vol. iii. p. 299. Ezra viii. 17. Neh. x. 31. The Gospel thus preached to greater advantage, *ib.* Jer. xvi. 21. Christians still cursed in them, Isa. lxxi. 5. The word (Heb. *mōed*) improperly thus rendered, Ps. lxxiv. 8.
- Synecdoche, poetical, Amos v. 8.
- Syria, first subject to Nineveh, then to Nebuchadnezzar, Jer. xxxv. 11.
- Syriac (i. e. Aramaic, Dan. ii. 4) version of the Old Testament, its appropriate title to the Books of Kings, Vol. iii. *Intro.* p. x, note 4. Also to certain Psalms, Ps. xvii. p. 22; xxxii. p. 44; xli. p. 61; xlv. p. 68; xlviii. p. 73; l. p. 77; lix. p. 89; lxxvii. p. 99; lxxix. p. 105; lxxxv. p. 135; c. p. 156; cvii. p. 170; cx. p. 176; cxiv. p. 180; cxx. pp. 196—7; cxxvi. p. 201; cxxx. p. 204; cxxxi. p. 205; cxxvii. p. 210. Ezek. xxxvii. 12—14. Peculiar readings or expositions of, Ex. xix. 6. 2 Sam. v. 6; xxiii. 8. 1 Kings i. 33. 2 Kings ix. 13. Esther viii. 10. Ps. liv. 7; lvii. 9; lx. 8; lxxii. 2; cix. 3. Isa. liii. 8; lxx. 11. Dan. viii. 5. 8; ix. 24—27; xi. 5. 9.
- Taanach, its site, Josh. xii. 21; xvii. 11. Judg. v. 19. 1 Kings iv. 12.

- Taanath-shiloh, Josh. xvi. 6.
 Tabbath, Judg. vii. 22.
 Tabeal, explained, Isa. vii. 6.
 Taberning, illustrated, Nah. ii. 7.
 Tabernacle, the, its several names and spiritual significance, Vol. i. Part 1. pp. 288-9. Ex. xxvi. 1; xxix. 45. Rather "of meeting" than "of the congregation" (Heb. *mōed*: see *Synagogue*), r. 42. Lev. viii. 3. Isa. xiv. 13. Its dimensions only moderate, Ex. xxv. p. 288. Designed as a place for worship and a shadow of better things to come, *ib.* Made after God's own pattern, as a figure of Christ's own body, the Church militant and triumphant, Vol. iii. p. 19. Hence only temporary, but its sacrifices efficacious, Vol. i. Part 1. p. 289. Size of its two divisions, position, ground plan, and mode of construction, Ex. xxvi. p. 293. Its ten curtains emblems of the ten commandments, Ex. xxvi. 3. In this respect compared to heaven, Ps. civ. 2. Had no real door, Lev. viii. 3. The one house indicates the unity of the Church, Ex. xxvi. 6. Three gradations of approach to God, before the Holiest place was opened to us by Christ, r. 36. Cruciform arrangement of its furniture, Ex. xxx. 1. Duty of caring how it was built, Ex. xxxvii. 29; xxxix. 32. Its station on a march, Num. ii. 17. When at Shiloh called a palace, 1 Sam. i. 9. Its removal to Nob and to Gibeon, 1 Sam. vii. 2. 1 Chr. xv. 1; xvii. 5. When brought from Gibeon, its materials were absorbed into the Temple (1 Chr. xxii. 19), as was the Law into Christ's Church, 1 Kings viii. 4. The fact spiritualized, 2 Chr. i. 4; v. 5. A provisional Tabernacle set up while the second Temple was building, 1 Chr. ix. 19. Named once by Ezekiel to show the identity of the three several fabrics and dispensations, Ezek. xli. 1.
 Tabernacles, the feast of (Heb. *succah*), meaning a booth or arbour as well as a tent, Lev. xxiii. 34. Neh. viii. 14. On the full moon of Tisri (see *Month*), Ps. lxxxix. p. 129; r. 3. Israel dwelt in such in the wilderness, as do the Bedouins now, Lev. xxiii. 34. Called "the great feast" (Jer. xxvi. 2), or "the feast" (Judg. xxi. 19. Hagg. p. 113) in memory of their sojourn, r. 40. Neh. viii. 14. Typifies as well the sojourn of our earthly pilgrimage, and the ingathering of fruits (Jer. xli. 5), as chiefly the Incarnation of Christ, Lev. xxiii. 34. Dent. xvi. 13. 1 Kings viii. 66. Vol. iii. p. 297. Ezra iii. 4. Neh. viii. 14. Ps. lxxxix. p. 129. Isa. iv. 6; xii. 3. Ezek. xxxvii. 27, 28; xlv. 25. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxiii. Hos. xii. 9. Hagg. ii. 1. Zech. xiv. 16: the feast we keep at Christmas, Nah. i. 5. "Solemn assembly" or "restraint," explained, Lev. xxiii. 36. Called "the great Hosanna" (Ps. cxviii. p. 184); willows (Isa. xlv. 4), and palm branches being carried (1 Kings viii. 66), besides other observances superadded in later times, Lev. xxiii. 40. Isa. xii. 3. Indicated by the palm-tree ornaments of the Temple, 1 Kings vi. 29. The Law was read at this festival on the Sabbatical year, Lev. xxiii. 40. The book of Ecclesiastes always read at that season, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 80, *note* 14. The sacrifices gradually diminished during the days this feast lasted, and on the eighth or great day (Neh. viii. 18) was reduced to one. Typical significance of the appointment, Num. xxix. 17, 35. This feast foreshadowed heavenly joy, Isa. xxx. 29. The consummation and crown of all Hebrew festivals, Vol. iii. p. 297. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxiii. To be kept in spirit by all nations, Isa. lvi. 2; lxxi. 23. Jer. xxxiii. 18-22. Zech. xiv. 16. Probably the feast named, Judg. xxi. 19. Followed Solomon's feast of Dedication of his Temple, 1 Kings viii. 2, 66. The second Temple begun at that feast, Hagg. p. 113; ch. ii. 1. Its greatest celebrations, Ezra iii. 4. Neh. viii. 14. A continuous chain of celebrations at critical eras for a thousand years lead on to Zechariah's prophecy, *ib.* Why specially joyful at that period, r. 17.
 Tables of stone, the two sets discriminated, and the moral lesson they teach, Ex. xxxi. 18. Why the first pair was broken. Commemorated in a Jewish fast, Ex. xxxii. 19. The second pair, Ex. xxxiv. 1. Placed alone in the Ark in the Temple, 1 Kings viii. 9.
 Tables, Oriental, described, Job xxxvi. 16. The King and Bridegroom at His holy table, Cant. i. 12. Table of the sacrificial ritual, Ps. lxxix. 22. Mal. i. 7. The eight wooden and four stone tables in Ezekiel's Temple spiritualized (see *Shewbread*), Ex. *Retrospect*, p. 281.
 Tablets (Heb. *cumaz*), explained, Ex. xxxv. 22. Those made of metal to write on, Isa. xxx. 8. See *Roll*.
 Tabor, Josh. xix. 22. Judg. viii. 18. The mount, Judg. iv. 6. Ps. lxxxix. 12. Jer. xli. 18. Degraded to a scene of idolatrous worship, Hos. v. 1.
 Tabrets or timbrels, Jer. xxxi. 4. See *Musical Instruments*.
 Tacitus, cited, Gen. x. 11; xix. 24; xxxvi. 24; xli. 45. 1 Sam. xxxi. 2. 1 Kings xviii. 20. Vol. iii. p. 364. Job xv. 21-23; xxix. 18; xxxi. 27. Prov. xxvi. 28. Eccles. vii. 21. Isa. xiv. 1. Nah. iii. 18.
 Tadmor, or *Palmgra*, described: why said to be "in the land," 1 Kings ix. 18. A city of store, r. 19.
 Tahapanes, or *Tahpanhes*, or *Tephanehes*, located, 1 Kings xi. 19. Jer. ii. 16; xliii. 7; xlv. 1; xlv. 14. Ezek. xxx. 18.
 Tahpenes, her name derived, 1 Kings xi. 19.
 Tahiti-hodshi, probable interpretation of, 2 Sam. xxiv. 6.
 Talent, the, value of, 1 Kings xvi. 24. 2 Kings v. 5; xv. 19. That in the books of Chronicles seems much less, 1 Chr. xxii. 14. 2 Chr. viii. 18.
 Talmuds, the, cited, Ex. xii. 40; xv. 20; xx. 1. Lev. xvi. 21; xix. 23. Dent. vi. 6-9; xxv. 12. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 81. Judg. xviii. 30. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xx, and *note* 2. 2 Kings xvii. 41; xxiii. 11. 2 Chr. xxxvi. 8. Ezra ii. 63. Vol. iv. Part 1. pp. xvi, *note* 2; xix, *note* 2. Job xxix. 18; xxxii. p. 71; xli. 6. Ps. xcii. p. 148; exx. p. 197. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xvii. Isa. xl. 1.
 Tammuz, or *Adonis*, the Phœnician sun-god, his idolatrous worship, Ezek. viii. 14.
 Tanchum, Rabbi, cited, Mic. v. 1. Mal. ii. 15, 16; iii. 17.
 Tappuah, site of, Josh. xii. 17; xvi. 8: or *En-tappuah*, Josh. xvii. 7. Cp. 1 Chr. ii. 43.
 Targum, the Chalde Paraphrase: that on Ecclesiastes, characterized, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 87, *note* 4. Cited, Gen. x. 14. 1 Sam. i. 1. 2 Sam. xxiii. 8. 2 Kings ii. 12; iv. 1; xxiii. 11. 1 Chr. xxix. 11. 2 Chr. iii. 1; xii. 15; xx. 22. Vol. iii. p. 361. Esther i. 22; iv. 14; v. 1. 10; vi. 2; viii. 10, 17. Job vii. 1; ix. 5, 30; x. 15; xii. 5; xv. 8; xviii. 13; xxvii. 19; xxix. 18; xxxi. 33; xxxiv. 31, 36; xlii. 14. Ps. i. p. 1; xviii. p. 22; xxi. p. 27; xxii. p. 28; xxxvii. 20, 37; xlv. p. 68; lxi. 6; lxxv. 1; lxxviii. 10, 14, 18, 30; lxxxii. p. 112; r. 1; lxxvi. 2; lxxviii. 25, 41, 64; lxxx. 15; lxxxix. p. 129; r. 7; cxviii. 22, 27; cxviii. 5; cxxxvii. 9; cxxxix. 16; cxli. 5, 8; cxlii. 7; cxlix. 6. Prov. v. 19; vi. 3; xvi. 22; xviii. 24; xix. 18; xxv. 20. Eccles. i. 1; ii. 21; iv. 15; viii. 10; ix. 4; xii. 4. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 120. Cant. i. 1, 7, 10; iv. 6; vi. 11; vii. 5. Isa. i. 31; ii. 18, 22; ix. 6; x. 27; xi. 6-9. 15; xiv. 13, 29; xvi. 1, 3; xix. 18; xxvi. 19; xxvii. 1; xxxviii. 16, 28; xxxix. 1, 21; xxx. 4, 21; xxxi. 9; xxxii. 12; xxxiii. 14, 23; xlii. p. 123; xlix. 5; l. 11; li. 6, 20; lii. 2; liii. 10; lvii. 8; lix. 19; lx. 5; lxi. 10; lxvi. 4, 5. Jer. xii. 1, 14; v. 7; vi. 29; ix. 26; x. 9; xi. 8; xv. 14; xxxiii. 6; xxv. 13; xxvi. 10; xxx. 9, 21; xxxi. 15-17, 26; xxxiii. 15, 16; xxxvii. 12; xxxviii. 23; xli. 6; li. 11; lii. 24, 28-30. Ezek. iii. 15; iv. 2; v. 7; viii. 11; x. 3, 13; xvii. 22; xxi. 22, 26; xxxiii. 3; xxxvii. 17; xxxix. 23; xxxvi. 5, 8; xxxviii. 21; xxxix. 2; xliii. 26; xlv. 1, 5. Dan. ii. 5; vi. 13; ix. 24-27. Hos. i. 2; ii. 2, 8; iii. 5; iv. 2; v. 15; ix. 13; x. 10; xi. 9; xiii. 1; xiv. 7. Joel ii. 23. Amos ii. 1; iii. 12; iv. 3, 4, 9; v. 2; ix. 7. Obad. 20. Mic. i. 7; iv. 8; v. 1, 2, 10-14. Nah. i. 11; ii. 2. Hab. i. 5; ii. 1; iii. 6, 9, 11, 13. Zeph. i. 9; ii. 1. Hagg. i. 4; ii. 5. Zech. i. 8-17, 18; iii. 8; vi. 10-14; ix. 1, 15. Mal. ii. 16.
 Targum, the, on Canticles, cited, Ex. xxxiii. 2.
 Targum, the Jerusalem, cited, Gen. ii. 21; iv. 8; x. 9; xi. 1, 28; xiv. 7; xvii. 17; xxii. 2; xlviii. 14; xlix. 3, 7, 10. Ex. xix. 6. Num. xxiv. 1, 7, 17. Dent. xxvi. 3; xxvii. 12. 2 Kings xxii. 10.
 Targum, the, of Jonathan, cited, Gen. x. 1, 13; xlviii. 14; xlix. 3, 17. Ex. iv. 25; xii. 40; xiv. 2; xix. 6; xx. 1. Lev. xxii. 28; xxiii. 11, 40. Num. xxiii. 7; xxiv. 17. Dent. xxxi. 26; xxxiii. 6. Josh. viii. 29; xvii. 17. Judg. i. 19; iii. 15; v. 8, 10, 11, 13; viii. 13; xi. 40; xvi. 14; xv. 18. Ruth i. 1, 22; ii. 18; iii. 9. 1 Sam. i. 1; ii. 1. 2 Sam. ii. 9; v. 6. 1 Kings i. 33. Isa. lii. 13. Hab. iii. 13.
 Targum, the, of Onkelos, cited, Gen. i. 2; iv. 7; viii. 21; ix. 27; x. 11, 21; xiv. 7; xvii. 17; xx. 16; xxi. 33; xxii. 2; xxv. 22; xxx. 41; xxxvi. 6; xxxviii. 6; xlix. 3, 10, 16. Ex. iii. 1; iv. 25; xii. 38; xix. 6; xx. 5; xxi. 10; xxiv. 5. Lev. xx. 27; xxi. 4; xxiii. 11, 40. Num. xxii. 5; xxiv. 1, 3, 6, 17, 20, 21; xxvi. 59. Dent. iii. 4, 22; xiii. 13; xvii. 18; xx. 19; xxxi. 6; xxxiii. 6, 12. Isa. li. 20.
 Tarnovius, cited, Zeph. i. 4. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. i. 8-17. Tartak, 2 Kings xvii. 31.
 Tartan, Isa. xx. 1. An official title, 2 Kings xviii. 17.
 Tattooing, the practice why forbidden in the Law, Lev. xix. 28.
 Tavernier, cited, Jer. xxxvi. 22.
 Taylor, Jeremy, Bp., characterized, Ps. lxxxiv. p. 133. Cited, Ps. lxxxv. 13. Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. 127-8. Dan. xi. 37.
 Teaching, a priestly office (2 Chr. xvii. 7, 9. Ezek. xlv. 23), not to be too much confined to school-masters, as with the Jews, Lev. x. 11. 2 Chr. xv. 3. The prevailing lack of it, *ib.* Attempt to separate secular from Scriptural education, Dan. xii. 11. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. xxvii. The teaching others,

- not mere knowledge, rewarded, Dan. xii. 3. In the Church teaching is God's work, the human intelligence being absorbed into Divine inspiration, Jer. xxxi. 31. Pastoral teaching a warfare against error, Mic. v. 6. False teachers in the Church make a traffic of godliness, Mic. iii. 5. Zech. xi. 5: but are emissaries of Satan, Zech. xiii. 3.
- Tehillah (see *Praise, Psalms*) gives its name to the whole Psalter, Ps. cxlv. p. 221.
- Tekoa, its site and history, Josh. xv. 59. 2 Sam. xiv. 2 (*Tekoah*). 1 Chr. ii. 24. 2 Chr. xi. 6; xx. 13. Jer. vi. 1. Amos i. 1.
- Tel-abib, explained, Ezek. iii. 15.
- Tela'im, 1 Sam. xv. 4.
- Tema, located, Job vi. 19. Jer. xxv. 23.
- Teman, an Idumean race, Gen. xxxvi. 11. Where located, Job ii. 11. Jer. xlix. 7. Obad. 9. Hab. iii. 3. In the south of Edom, Ezek. xxv. 13. Amos i. 12. See *Dedan*.
- Temple, the, of Solomon, called "the palace," Ezek. viii. 16. Such buildings not used by the idolatrous Canaanites, 1 Kings xiv. 23. The treasures accumulated by David to build it, great almost beyond computation (1 Chr. xxviii. 11), may have consisted in part of unsmelted ore, 1 Chr. xxii. 14. Resembled the Tabernacle (which see), the details being modified by Divine appointment, but having the same typical significance as there, Vol. iii. p. 19. The pattern given by God to David, by David to Solomon, 1 Chr. xxviii. 11, 12, 17, 19. Date of its commencement symbolical, 2 Chr. iii. 2. Its dimensions small, but as a whole double of those of the Tabernacle; an expansion and development of it (Vol. iii. p. 223. 2 Chr. vii. 1), yet essentially the same, Vol. iii. p. 19. 1 Chr. xxv. 1. Strength of its materials typical, Vol. iii. p. 20. Its porch and the dimensions thereof, 1 Kings vi. 3. Not excessive in height, *ib.*, 2 Chr. iii. 4. Between the porch and the altar a space for the priests to weep for the people's sins, Ezek. viii. 16. The dimensions of the porch the same as those of the flying roll, Zech. v. 2. Windows of narrow lights, what is meant by them, 1 Kings vi. 4. Its chambers or stories, and lean-to buildings, *v.* 5. Aisles in the Temple, with windows in the clerestory above them, *v.* 10. Furniture far grander than in the Tabernacle, 2 Chr. iv. 1. Trees probably not planted in the Courts, Ps. lii. 8. Harmony of proportions within and without, 1 Kings vi. 6. Its dedication, 1 Kings viii. 1. That feast flowed on into the feast of Tabernacles (which see), with what spiritual significance, *r.* 66. Imagery of the Temple spiritualized in the Christian Church, Isa. lvi. 7; lx. 13; lxi. 23. Christ our common Temple, Isa. lxi. 13. Solomon's prayer of Dedication concluded with David's Psalm on bringing up the Ark to Zion, 2 Chr. vi. 41. Fire from heaven at the Dedication of the Temple, as of the Tabernacle, why probably at the time of evening sacrifice: its typical character, 2 Chr. vii. 1: and glory, *v.* 2.
- Temple, the second, built after 66 years of desolation (Hagg. ii. 3), why its foundations were laid in weeping and shouting, Ezra iii. 12. In its dimensions compared with Solomon's, Ezra vi. 3. Begun B.C. 535, interrupted for 15 years, and completed under difficulties, Hagg. p. 113; ch. ii. 1. Zech. p. 120. Dedicated in B.C. 515, 20 years after Cyrus' decree, Ezek. vi. 15. No offerings made in it by Gentiles, like as in the first, Hagg. ii. 7. Despised, yet more glorious than the first, *r.* 9. Zech. iv. 10. Prosperity of its builders, Zech. viii. 10: a pledge of good for those who edify Christ's Church, *r.* 12. The bronze gate flew open before its fall, Zech. xi. 1, 2. Both Temples destroyed the same day of the year, Ezra vii. 8.
- Temple, the, of Ezekiel, the vision when seen, Ezek. xl. 1. Its literal exposition, Ezek. xl. 3—xliv. 4. Ground plan, Ezek. xl. p. 253. Symbolizes the Church Universal, Ezek. xl. 38. So Zech. ii. 1, 2. Not a renewal of the Levitical ritual, *rv.* 42, 44; xliii. 17. Its dimensions prove the description figurative, Ezek. xlii. 16. Why without an Ark, Ezek. xliii. 7. *Retrospect*, p. 283. The vision designed to comfort God's people, but not to be taken literally, except in a subordinate sense, *Retrospect*, pp. 274—5. Its middle place between the Old Testament and the Apocalypse, pp. 275—6. Its numbers symbolical, pp. 276—8. The Temple spiritualized in detail, pp. 278—284. None must look back, p. 286. The physical fact of the perennial fountain issuing from the Lord's house spiritualized, *Retrospect*, pp. 286—7. Joel iii. 18. Zech. xiv. 8. Opened at Calvary, and ministered to the Church in the Word and Sacraments, Zech. xiii. 1.
- Temporal visitations fit subjects for special prayer, 1 Kings viii. 35—37, 48: as well as internal plagues of the heart, *r.* 38.
- Ten, a number of perfection, completeness, and unity, Ex. xxvi. 1. Zech. viii. 23. Its cube, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 276, note 4. See *Arithmetic*. Ten times equivalent to many times, Num. xiv. 22.
- Tent, or tabernacle of our bodies, the metaphor used, Job iv. 21; xxvii. 8. Isa. xxxviii. 12. Typical also of the Church, Isa. liv. 2. Jer. x. 20. The tent (Heb. *ohel*) of God in Jerusalem, Ezek. xxiii. 4. The Hebrew *kabbah* explained, Num. xxv. 8. Ezek. xvi. 24.
- Terah, his sons in their order: his age at Abraham's birth, Gen. xi. 26. His migration to Haran, *v.* 31. Had died before Abraham left Haran, *ib.*
- Teraphim, idolatrous, described, Gen. xxxi. 19. Judg. xvii. 5. 1 Sam. xv. 23. 2 Kings xxiii. 24. Ezek. xxi. 21. Hos. iii. 4. How Michal became possessed of them, 1 Sam. xix. 13. The Septuagint rendering (*κεντάφρα*) commented upon, Ps. lix. 15.
- Terebinth tree, the, Abraham's resting-place at Moreh, Gen. xii. 6: at Mamre, Gen. xiii. 18. Also Jacob's at Shechem, Gen. xxxv. 4. Josh. xxiv. 26. The scene of Abimelech's blasphemy, Judg. ix. 6. The patriarchs abode near conspicuous trees, Josh. xxiv. 26. Judg. iv. 5; vi. 11. Vale of (*Heb. elah*), 1 Sam. xvii. 2; xxi. 9. Such places the seats of idol worship, Isa. i. 29, 30. Hos. iv. 13. "The great terebinth," known as well as King Charles' oak, 2 Sam. xviii. 9. Cp. 1 Kings xiii. 14. 1 Chr. x. 12.
- Terence, cited, Prov. xvii. 17. Jer. xxxviii. 7. Ezek. ii. 1.
- Tertullian, his fight for the Old Testament against Marcion, Vol. iii. *Introd.* pp. xxiii—iv. Cited, Gen. i. 1, 26; ii. 21, 23; xviii. 21, 23; xix. 24; xxiv. 65; xxxii. 21; xlv. 27; xlviii. 14. Ex. i. 12; iii. 2; iv. 13; vii. 14; xii. 40; xv. 25, 27; xix. 24; xx. 5; xxi. 2, 23, 24; xxxii. 6, 10; xxxiii. 11; xxxiv. 33. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 2. Lev. xiii. p. 37; *rv.* 12, 13; xvi. 8. Num. v. 2; xxi. 9. Dent. xxxi. 9. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xv. Josh. i. 1; iii. 7, 12; v. 2. Judg. ii. 2. 1 Sam. x. 6; xxviii. 11, 12. 2 Sam. v. 6, 8; vii. 13. 1 Kings iii. 12; xi. p. 44; xiii. 1; xvii. 16. 2 Kings ii. 11; iv. 29—37; v. 19; vi. 31; xxi. 13. Ezra iv. 13. Job i. 6; ii. 9; xxix. 18; xlii. 13. Vol. iv. Part 2. p. v. Ps. xxxvii. 1; lxvii. p. 112; xevi. 10. Prov. i. 20; vii. 26; viii. 22, 30; xix. 27; xxviii. 12. Cant. iv. 8; vi. 12. Isa. ii. 4; iii. 20; viii. 3; xiv. 12; xxvi. 19; xxxv. 5, 6; lii. 11; liii. 1; lx. 1; lxiii. 1; lxvi. 7—9. Vol. v. Part 2. p. x, note 2. Jer. xi. 19. Lam. iv. 20. Ezek. ix. 2, 4; xxviii. p. 221; xxxv. 15; xxxviii. 11; xxxvii. 12. *Retrospect*, p. 286, note 11. Dan. ii. 45; iii. 25; vii. p. 29; ix. 24—27. Hos. vi. 2. Joel ii. 16, 31. Jonah i. 6, 17. Zech. xiii. 3. Mal. i. 11; iv. 5.
- Testament, the Old, can be understood only through the previous study of the New, Vol. i. Part 1. *Preface*, pp. vii. ix. *Introd.* p. xxxii. No ordinary history, p. vii. For what causes disparaged by the Marcionites (Ex. xx. 12; xxi. 2, 23, 24; xxxii. 10). Vol. i. Part 2. pp. 2, 37. Num. v. 2. Deut. vi. 11. Josh. x. 24. 2 Sam. v. 8. Isa. liv. 1), and by the Manicheans (Gen. xxix. 28; xxx. 14; xxxv. 28; xxxviii. 1. Ex. xx. 12; xxi. 23, 24; xxxii. 20. Vol. i. Part 2. p. 2. Deut. iv. 24; vi. 11; xxi. 23; xxviii. 10. Job i. 6. Isa. liv. 1. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. viii), Vol. i. Part 1. p. viii. The New Testament is enfolded in the Old, the Old unfolded in the New, Ps. lxxviii. 17. The Old is the germ of the New, the New the consummation of the Old, Ezek. xvi. 60. Students of the mere letter may know nothing of its spirit, like the Jewish Rabbis (Vol. vi. Part 2. p. ix), who yet were faithful guardians of the Sacred Volume, Vol. i. Part 1. p. x. A sealed book to the Jews, Isa. xxix. 11. Events related in the Old Testament typical of better things in the New, Vol. i. Part 1. pp. xiii—xvi. Gen. xxxv. 18. The principle finally exemplified in detail, Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. viii—x. Helps to the study of the Hebrew Bible enumerated: (1) The whole body of the Canonical Scriptures. (2) The Hebrew tables of parallel lessons from the Law and the Prophets (see *Calendar*). (3) The Greek versions (see *Septuagint*). (4) Ancient Christian Fathers. (5) Modern Commentators. Vol. i. Part 1. pp. xvi—xxii. Christ, who knew all the difficulties that ever have or can be raised against the historical books, yet commanded us to receive them as inspired, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xxii. The Levitical covenant made by Christ's death a true *Testament* to us, Ex. xxiv. 6.
- Testimony, the term explained, 2 Kings xi. 12. Isa. viii. 20.
- Tetrarchies of the Gospels, a parallel to, Ezra v. 3.
- Thales, a saying of, Prov. vi. p. 13.
- Thanksgiving, a duty, in order that we may express the gratitude we feel, Dent. xxvi. 5. Self-abasement should accompany praise and self-consecration, *rv.* 5, 10. The Holy Eucharist our highest service of joy, *r.* 11. The worshipper needs be cleansed from dead works, as of old from Levitical uncleanness, *v.* 14. Harvest thanksgivings commended, *v.* 5.
- Thanksgiving offering not to be made with leaven, Amos iv. 5. Neglect of it in Jewish feasts, Zech. vii. 6.

- Tharshish, or *Tarshish*, its location in Spain and history, Gen. x. 4. 1 Kings x. 22. Isa. xxiii. 6; lvi. 19. Jer. x. 9. Ezek. xxvii. 12; xxxviii. 13. Jonah i. 3. Its commerce clearly distinct from that of Ophir, 1 Kings x. 22. Solomon sent thither direct, *ib.* His commerce, like the Universal Church, spreading both east and west, *ib.* Ps. lxxii. 10. Paul intended to preach in Spain, Isa. lx. 9. Ships of Tharshish, explained, 1 Kings xxii. 48. 2 Chr. ix. 21. Ps. xlviii. 7. Isa. ii. 16; xxiii. 1; lx. 9. Ezek. xxvii. 25.
- Thau, the crosslike shape of that letter in the Samaritan, the Phœnician, and Ethiopic, Job xxxi. 35. Ezek. ix. 4.
- Thebez, located, Judg. ix. 50.
- Thelassar, or *Telassar*, located, 2 Kings xix. 12.
- Themius, cited, 1 Sam. ii. 1; xxvi. 1. 1 Kings iv. 2; v. 11; vii. 19; viii. 1. 2 Kings xv. 16; xxiii. 29. 2 Chr. v. 9; xxvi. 9; xvi. 25; xxxv. 8. Neh. ii. 13. Jer. xxxi. 15—17; xxxix. 3. 1; lii. 12. Lam. p. 138, note 4; v. 5.
- Theocritus, cited, Gen. xii. 13; xviii. 10. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 159. Ruth ii. 14. Ps. cxxvi. 1. Prov. vi. 6. Cant. ii. 15. Ezek. viii. 14.
- Theodore of Mopsuestia, his errors, Job xl. 15. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 123, note 7. Amos ix. 14, 15.
- Theodoret, characterized, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 123. Cited, Gen. i. 4. 11. 26. 29; xix. 38; xxii. 9; xxiv. 22; xxxii. 24; xxxviii. 14; xli. 53; xliii. 19; xlvii. 22; xxv. 30, 31; xlviii. 11; xlix. 1. 7. 9. 11. Ex. iv. 21. Vol. i. Part 1. p. 234. Ex. xiv. 2; xv. p. 253; xx. 5; xxi. 23, 24; xxix. 18; xxxii. 10; xxxiv. 33. Lev. xiii. 12, 13. 46; xv. 6. 34; xvi. 8. Num. i. 46; xxi. 9; xxvii. 15; xxviii. 20—33. Dent. vi. 16; x. 19; xii. 6; xxviii. 10; xxxiii. 9. Josh. i. 1; ii. 1; iii. 7; iv. 1—3; v. 2 vi. 17. 26; viii. 1; xix. 49; xx. 4; xxii. pp. 67, 68. Judg. ii. 1. Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 110; p. 111. Judg. xi. 40; p. 141; xvii. 7; xviii. 30; pp. 159, 160. Ruth iii. 10; iv. 11. 15. 1 Sam. iii. 10. 21; iv. 11; vi. 4; viii. 3; x. 13; xvi. 2; xvii. 51. 52. 54; xxii. 17; xxviii. 11, 12. 2 Sam. iii. 27; v. 23; vi. 10. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. 85; vii. 10, 11; xii. 11; xvi. 12. 21; xviii. 33; xxiv. 14. 15. 1 Kings i. 37; ii. 10. 27; iii. 16—27; xiii. p. 54; xvii. 6. 9; xix. 16; xx. 30; xxii. 38. 2 Kings i. 10; iv. 13; vi. 6; ix. 2; xviii. 5; xix. 2. 1 Chr. iii. 5; xxii. 9. 2 Chr. xiii. 3; xxvi. 16; xxxv. 3. Ezra vii. 6. Job i. 1; ix. 33; xxxiii. 4. Vol. iv. Part 2. Ps. i. p. 1; ii. p. 3; iii. 5; viii. p. 10; ix. 6, 7; xv. 5; xvi. 1. 9; xvii. 13; xxii. pp. 28, 29; xx. 12. 20. 30. 31; xxiii. p. 32; xxiv. p. 33; v. 7; xxix. 3. 7. 9; xxx. 5; xxxii. p. 44; xxxiii. 6; xl. 12; xli. p. 61; xlv. p. 68; xvi. 1. 8. 10. 16; xlviii. 2. 12. 13; xlix. 14; lvii. p. 86; lix. 11; lxxvi. p. 97; lxxviii. 4. 27. 31; lxxx. 22; lxxvi. p. 119; lxxviii. 25; lxxxvii. p. 138; lxxxix. 10; cvii. 20; cix. 21; cx. 4. 7; cxx. p. 196; cxlv. p. 221. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 122, note 2. p. 123. Cant. ii. 15; iii. 11; vi. 8. 12; viii. 8. Vol. v. Part 1. p. xvii, note 1. Isa. iv. 5; xi. 6—9; xix. 1; xxii. 21—25; xxvii. 13; xxix. 17; xxx. p. 89; xxxii. 20; xxxv. 1; xl. 6; xli. 15; lvi. 10; lx. 1. 6; lxxi. 7—9. Jer. i. 6; ii. 2. 5; xiv. 10; ix. 25; xiii. 4; xlviii. 4; xxv. 25; xlix. 11. Lam. iii. 5. Ezek. iv. p. 165; v. 8; vii. 27; viii. 11; x. 13; xi. 18. 22, 23; xvii. 22. 23; xxi. 26; xxix. 24; xxx. 5; xxxii. 19; xxxiv. 13, 14. 25. 27; xxxvi. p. 239; xx. 12. 21. 25. 26. 27; xxxvii. p. 1. 8. 19—21. 27, 28; xxxviii. 2. *Retrospect*, pp. 284, note 3; 286, note 12; 287, note 3. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xviii, note 15. Dan. iii. 1. iv. 16; vi. 18; vii. p. 29; v. 5; viii. 10. 24; ix. 21—27; xi. 22. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. vii, note 1. Hos. i. 2; ii. 19; xi. 1. Joel i. 4; ii. 1. 31. Amos i. 3; ix. 1. Obad. 11. Jonah iv. 1. Mic. i. 9; vii. 19. Nah. i. 11. 15. Hab. ii. 1; iii. 1. Zeph. i. 5; ii. 11. Hagg. ii. 9. Zech. ii. 1, 2; v. 6; viii. 20—22; ix. 11; xi. 4. 8. 15; xii. 2. 10; xiv. 8. 21. Mal. i. 10; iv. 6.
- Theodoric, king of the Goths, Jer. xvii. 11.
- Theodosius, the Emperor, rebuked by S. Ambrose, 2 Sam. xii. 7; xxiv. 17. Ezek. iii. 17. Builds up the Church, 1 Kings v. 1. See *Honorius*.
- Theodotion, his version of Daniel, Dan. iii. 23. 25. Chigi manuscript of, Dan. iv. 13. Cited elsewhere, Job xvi. 25. Isa. lii. 5. Hab. iii. 2.
- Theophilus Anglicanus [by Chr. Wordsworth, Bp. of Lincoln], cited or referred to, Gen. xxv. 5, 6. 2 Kings x. 30; xvii. 29; xviii. 5. 2 Chr. xix. 11. Prov. viii. 15; xvi. 2. Cant. vi. 9. Theophilus Antiochenus, cited, Gen. i. 1. Ex. xii. 40.
- Theophrastus, cited, Job xxviii. 6.
- Theophylact, cited, Hos. xi. 1. Hab. ii. 7; iii. 1. Mal. iv. 6.
- Thirty-eight, of what remarkable events it indicates the time, Num. xiv. 34. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xi.
- Thirty-nine, wanting one of the complete number forty, Ezek. iv. 5.
- Thomson, Dr., *The Land and the Book*, cited, Gen. xix. 1; xxxv. 4. Ex. xxix. 22. Lev. vii. 3; xxvi. 5. Dent. xlvii. 2. Josh. iii. 15; xi. 1. 7. 8; xvii. 16; xxiv. 32. Judg.
- iii. 31; iv. 5. 10. 19. 21; v. 23; vi. 11; vii. 13. 23; ix. 7; xiv. 1. 5; xvi. 26; xviii. 7. 9; xx. 16. Ruth ii. 3. 14; iii. 4. 1 Sam. ix. 26; xvii. 55; xxi. 10; xxiii. 29; xxiv. 14; xxvi. 11; xxviii. 4. 8. 2 Sam. vi. 3; xxii. 34. 1 Kings v. 6; ix. 11; xvi. 24; xvii. 19; xviii. 33. 46; xix. 19. 2 Kings i. 8; iii. 11; iv. 19; v. 1; vii. 1. 3; viii. 6; ix. 17. 26. 27. 30. 1 Chr. v. 23. Job iii. 21; v. 5; vi. 19; xxiv. 16; xxx. 4. Prov. v. 19; vi. 6; xv. 19; xxxi. 10. Eccles. ii. 5; xii. 5. Cant. ii. 1. Isa. xxxiii. 12; xl. 11; xlix. 16; lxi. 10. Jer. i. 15; ii. 22; viii. 22; ix. 17; xxxi. 15—17; xxxvi. 22. Ezek. xxvi. 4; xxvii. 3. Joel i. 6. Amos i. 1; vii. 14.
- Thomson, James, the poet, characterized and cited, Job vi. 19.
- Thomdike, cited, Ruth iv. 11. 1 Chr. xxv. 1.
- Thorns, burnt as fuel, Ps. lviii. 9. Isa. xxxiii. 12. Used for making a fence, Nah. i. 10.
- Thorwaldsen's frieze, Dan. viii. 8.
- Thousands, the term applied to families under a head, Mic. v. 2.
- Threatenings of God in Dent. xxviii. now accomplished on the Jews, who show themselves conscious of the fact, yet are not moved, Dent. xxviii. 1. Threatenings are not unconditional, but may be averted by true repentance, 1 Kings xxi. 27—29. 2 Kings viii. 4. Ezek. xxxiii. 14—16; or revived when sin is renewed, 2 Kings xxxiii. 26. See *Judgments*. Will be discharged by preachers of the Gospel like stones from a sling, Zech. ix. 15. Ever concluded by promises of mercy, Mic. vii. 20. Those in the comminatory Psalms are solemn warnings, uttered by the inspired writer in the name of Christ, in whom is an Ebal as well as a Gerizim, Ps. xxxv. 4; xl. 14; lv. 15; lxxix. 2; cix. p. 174.
- Three, its mystic import as an emblem of the Blessed Trinity, or of the day of Christ's Resurrection, Josh. i. 11; iii. 2. 1 Kings vi. 16; vii. 26. 2 Kings xix. 29; xx. 5, 6. Vol. iii. p. 361. Esther v. 1. Job i. 2. Ps. cxlv. p. 221. Isa. xxxviii. p. 109; *re. 21*. 22. See *Arithmetical*. The three-fold cord illustrated, Eccles. iv. 12. So in regard to the dimensions of the Temple, Vol. iii. p. 20. Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 275, note 5: the three stories of its chambers with an inner staircase suggest a deep mystery, 1 Kings vi. 8.
- Three days, in Scripture often put for the third day, Num. x. 33. Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xx. "The third day," a prophecy, whether conscious or not, of Christ's rising, Hos. vi. 2.
- Three years and a half, or 42 months (see *Forty-two*), or 1260 days, not designed to form a prophetic almanack, but a chronological symbol of distress, followed by victory, Dan. vii. 25. Yet shown to have a scriptural and historical basis, and analogical value, *ib.* The actual term of the persecution of Antiochus, the type of that of Antichrist, Dan. xii. 7: which will last one month more, *re. 11*. Also the duration of Christ's earthly ministry, Dan. ix. p. 46.
- Threshing-floors, three remarkable in Scripture as types, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 110. Of what significant, pp. 110. 160. Ruth iii. 9. 2 Sam. xxiv. 24. Jer. i. 11; li. 2. Amos ix. 9. Mic. iv. 12, 13. Mal. iv. 3. Where usually placed, 1 Sam. xxiii. 1. 2 Sam. xxiv. 18. Job v. 26. Ps. lxxii. 16. The site of the Temple a spiritual threshing-floor still, 2 Sam. xxiv. 24. 1 Chr. xxi. 18. Babylon made God's threshing-floor unto Judah, Isa. xxi. 10. The world such at the Judgment Day, Isa. xxvii. 12. Threshing instruments, Amos i. 3.
- Thrupp, J. F., on the Psalms and Canticles, characterized, Vol. iv. Part 2. p. xv, note 4. Part 3. pp. 120, note 2; 122, note 2; 127, note 3; 128. Cited, Ps. ii. p. 3; vii. p. 9; xxv. p. 34; xxxv. p. 47; lii. 8; cxlv. p. 221. Cant. iii. 9; iv. 4; v. p. 145; vi. 8. Hos. i. 2.
- Theucydides, cited or referred to, 2 Chr. viii. 18. Ezra vi. 22. Neh. ii. 8. Esther ii. 23.
- Tiberius, the Emperor, his guilty fears, Job xv. 21—23.
- Tiglath-pileser, or *Tilgath-pileser*, etymology of the word, 2 Kings xv. 29. Order of his conquests, *ib.* 1 Chr. v. 6. 26. 2 Chr. xxviii. 16. 20.
- Tile, or brick, of Babylon, from its large size used for inscriptions, Ezek. iv. 1.
- Tillemont, referred to, Job xv. 28.
- Times, how changed by the papal power (see *Papacy*), Dan. vii. 25. A time and times, and the dividing of time, explained, *ib.*
- Timna, (1) or *Tinnah*, a name given to persons of either sex, 1 Chr. i. 36. (2) *Tinnah* or *Tinnah*, or *Thinnath*, located, Gen. xxxviii. 12. Josh. xv. 10. 57; xix. 43. Judg. xiv. 1.
- Timmath-erah, of Joshua, Josh. xix. 49. Why called *Timmath-heres*, Judg. ii. 9.
- Tim, i. e. lead, the alloy of silver, Isa. i. 25.
- Tindal, the infidel, cited or referred to, Gen. xxxviii. 1. 1 Kings xiii. p. 54. Jer. vii. 22; xv. 18; xx. 7; xxvii. 6. Mic. vi. 7.

- Tiphshah (i. e. ford), located, 1 Kings iv. 24. 2 Kings xv. 16.
- Tiraboschi, cited, Josh. x. 12, 13.
- Tiras, delineated, Gen. x. 2.
- Tirhakah, identified: king of Egypt as well as of Ethiopia, 2 Kings xix. 9.
- Tirinus, cited, Job xiv. 22. Zech. xiii. 6.
- Tirshatha (Heb. *pechah*), derivation of, Ezra ii. 63. Neh. viii. 9. Applied both to Zerubbabel and Nehemiah, Ezra ii. 63. Neh. x. 1. The Persian Governor, like the Roman, resided near or at Jerusalem, Neh. iii. 7. His bread, Neh. v. 14.
- Tirzah, its site and history, Josh. xii. 24. 1 Kings xv. 17. 2 Kings xv. 14. Inference from its mention, Cant. vi. 4.
- Tithes, the duty of paying them, Gen. xiv. 20; xxviii. 21, 22. Pre-Mosaic, Lev. xxvii. 30. Levitical, Num. xviii. 21. Three different kinds discriminated, Deut. xii. 6. Mal. iii. 8. Second or third, Deut. xiv. 28; xxvi. 14. Paid by the people to the Levites, by the Levites to the Priests, Neh. x. 38.
- Tob, Judg. xi. 3. *Ish-tob*, 2 Sam. x. 6.
- Tobiah, the servant, how so called, Neh. ii. 10. Lam. v. 8. His good deeds praised to Nehemiah, against whom he plotted, as the virtues of heresiarchs are now, Neh. vi. 19. The High Priest in league with him, Neh. xiii. 4. 5. Profanes the Temple, Mal. i. 11.
- Tobit, the book of, preserves the old traditions respecting the fortunes of the ten tribes in their captivity, 2 Kings xvii. 6. Also concerning Sennacherib, Isa. xxxvii. 37. Cites, Amos viii. (9). 10. Cited, Nah. ii. 1.
- Togamah, delineated, Gen. x. 3. Ezek. xxvii. 14; xxxviii. 6.
- Tongue, the sins of, specially rebuked, Job i. 22; v. 21. Ps. xii. p. 16; lxiv. p. 95; v. 8; exl. 11. Prov. x. 6; xi. 13; xii. 13. 18. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 89.
- Tonus peregrinus*, the ninth Gregorian tone, said to be derived from the Hebrew liturgical use, Ps. cxiv. p. 180.
- Tophel, possible site of, Deut. i. 1. Inference drawn from our uncertainty about this and other interesting sites, *ib*.
- Tophet, or *Topheth*, its fires and abominations, 2 Kings xxiii. 10. Isa. xxx. 33. Jer. vii. 31, 32. Once defiled to Molech, Isa. xxx. 32. Probable scene of the overthrow of Sennacherib's host, Isa. xxx. 32; xxxi. 9; xxxiii. 4, 12; xxxvii. 36. Jer. xix. 11. Typical of the fire prepared for Satan, Isa. xxx. 33; xxxii. 1; xxxiii. 14. The scene of Judas' suicide, a spot held in abhorrence, Jer. xix. 4.
- Tower of the watchmen, explained, 2 Kings xvii. 9. Movable towers for the attack and defence of cities, Nah. ii. 5.
- Townsend, Canon, cited, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 9.
- Transfiguration, that of Christ foreshadowed, Deut. xxxi. 14, 15.
- Traducianists, the term explained, Gen. v. 3.
- Treasure, or store, cities of Egypt, where situated, Ex. i. 11. God's treasures kept against the day of wrath, Deut. xxxii. 34. Job xxxvi. 13. Treasuries in heathen temples, Judg. ix. 4. Those in God's house, 1 Chr. xxvi. 20, 28. Hoarded treasures, Isa. xlv. 3. Storehouses, Mal. iii. 10: or secret depositories of corn, &c., Jer. xli. 8.
- Tree of life, the, illustrated, Gen. iii. 24. Such is Christ's cross to us, Isa. lxxv. 22; lxxvi. 17.
- Tregelles, Dr., cited, Gen. iii. 15. Ps. vii. p. 9; viii. 3, 4.
- Tremellius (see *Junius*), cited, Job xxix. 18. Prov. vi. 3. Jer. vi. 2; xix. 2; xxxvii. 12.
- Trench, Archbp., cited, 2 Kings xvii. 24. Ps. cxxvii. 2. Isa. xlvii. 11.
- Trent, Council of, its errors, Isa. viii. 20; Hos. xiii. 14. Mal. p. 160.
- Trespass offering (Heb. *asham*), how it differs from the sin offering (which see), as does a state of guilt from an act of sin, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 13. Lev. v. 7. Offered, Ezra x. 19. Its ethical character. The trespass abides in its evil effects after the sin has been repented of, Lev. v. 7. Better rendered "guilt" than "trespass," p. 14. Its sacrifice involves the duty of reparation, *ib*. Christ's soul made a guilt offering, Isa. liii. 10. Trespass money explained, 2 Kings xii. 16.
- Tribes, the English word stands for two in Hebrew: *shebel*, a political community; *matteh*, (also denoting "staff" or "sceptre," Hab. iii. 14), a genealogical, Deut. i. 13. Josh. iii. 12. Each tribe of Israel had its ruler, 1 Chr. xxvii. 16—22; xxviii. 1. Its subdivisions, Josh. vii. 14; xv. 1. Typical significance of the location in the Land of Promise of the trans-Jordanic tribes (Josh. xx. 8), of Judah, Joseph, and each of the other seven respectively, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 56. Josh. xix. 1. 10. They that have passed over the stream under the Law have the same altar and sacrifice as we have who remain behind, Josh. xxii. p. 67. The ten tribes known as the Dispersion, Zeph. iii. 10.
- Tribute, he that was over, the term explained, 2 Sam. xx. 21.
- 1 Kings iv. 6; xii. 18. The Hebrew *mas* rendered by "levy," 1 Kings v. 13; ix. 15.
- Trinity, the Blessed, see *Plurality of Persons*.
- Tristram, H. R., *Land of Israel*, cited, Gen. xix. 24; xxxiii. 18. 1 Sam. xxiii. 29. 1 Kings v. 6; xviii. 20, 33. 2 Kings v. 12. Cant. ii. 12. Also *passim*.
- Trumpet (1) (Heb. *shophar*), the sacred, its curved shape, Lev. xxiii. 24. Used to sound an alarm, (Heb. *teruah*), *ib*. Num. xxiii. 21. Hos. v. 8. Amos iii. 6; and to usher in the Jubilee, Lev. xxv. 9. Josh. vi. 4 (Heb.). Ps. xxvii. 6. Isa. lviii. 1. Commemorative of the sound at Sinai, Ps. lxxxi. 5, 7; and of the miracle at Jericho, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 18. Zech. ix. 14. Emblematical of the Judgment, Ex. xx. 18. Lev. xxiii. 24. Vol. ii. Part 1. pp. 18, 19. Isa. xxvii. 13; and of the Apocalyptic trumpets, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 18. Their sounding at appointed seasons serves to connect the past with the present history of Christ's Church, and to carry forward our thoughts to His second coming, Ps. xlvii. 5. (2) The straight trumpet (Heb. *chatsotserah*) used for joyful occasions. Such are seen on the Arch of Titus, Num. x. 2, 10. 2 Chr. xiii. 12. These two silver trumpets must give no uncertain sound for an assembly or for war, Num. x. 3, 9.
- Trumpets, the feast of, proclaimed by the *shophar*, on New Year's day in Tisri, Lev. xxiii. 24. Neh. viii. 10. Ps. lxxxi. p. 129. Emblematical of the call to repentance, Joel ii. 15; also of the preaching of the Word, Vol. ii. Part 1. p. 114. Ps. lxxxi. p. 129. The beginnings of months were also thus made known, Num. x. 10; xxviii. 11. 2 Chr. xxix. 27.
- Trusen, cited, 1 Kings i. 2, 3. Dan. iv. 16.
- Tubal, delineated, Gen. x. 2. Isa. lxvi. 19. Ezek. xxvii. 13; xxxii. 26; xxxviii. 2.
- Tubal-cain, Jabel, and Jubal, sons of Lamech in Cain's family, are named from a common root, Gen. iv. 22.
- Tudela, Benjamin of, referred to, Isa. lxiv. 10.
- Turpie, D., referred to, Isa. lxiv. 4. Jer. xxxi. 32. Amos v. 26.
- Turtle, the harbinger of spring, Cant. ii. 12.
- Twelve, a mystic number, Ex. xv. 27; xxviii. 21. Num. ii. 34; vii. 3, 13; xi. 16. xxxiv. 28; xxxv. 7. Deut. xxxii. 8. Josh. iii. 7, 12; xxi. 41. 1 Kings iv. 2, 7, 8; xix. 19. 1 Chr. xxvii. 1; xxviii. 1. 2 Chr. iv. 3. Ezra viii. 14: referring to man in union with God, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 276, note 4. Parallel between the twelve stones and the twelve Apostles, Josh. iv. 1—3, 8, 9. 1 Kings xviii. 31. Also the twelve oxen, 1 Kings vii. 25: and the twelve lions, 1 Kings x. 19, 20. Its frequent appearance in the Temple arrangements no arbitrary invention, but of typical significance, 1 Chr. xxv. 11. Twelve heads of the new community of Israel, Ezra ii. 2. Instances of twelves collected, Ezek. *Retrospect*, pp. 276—8, 288 and note 5, 289, note. The 144,000 elect not a quantity, but a quality, *ib*. p. 276, note 4. See *Arithmetic*.
- Two persons joined in executing a weighty matter, examples of, Ex. xxxi. 6. Judg. i. 3. 1 Kings xix. 19. Two indicating the union of Jew and Gentile, Cant. iii. 7; iv. 2, 5; vi. 13; vii. 3. Also in reference to the two Testaments, Cant. iv. 2; vii. 3.
- Tyndal, W., translated the first printed New Testament in English, about A.D. 1526, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xliii.
- Types of Christ and of His redemption, a group and galaxy in the Old Testament, such as no one set of men or of circumstances would suffice to represent (see *Allegorical interpretation*), Josh. iii. 15. They die, but the Divine Antitype liveth, Josh. xxiv. 33: compared with Whom they are all shadows, and often absolute contrasts to His purity, Vol. ii. Part 2. p. xii. All human types fail in some points, Isa. xxxix. 7. Jer. xi. 20; xxiii. 21; xx. 14—18. Jonah, p. 62; ch. i. 9. Composite types defined, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 121. Isa. xl. p. 115. Sudden transition from the type to the Antitype exemplified, Dan. xi. 36.
- Tyre, Josh. xix. 29. Ps. xlv. 12. Planted in a fair place, Hos. ix. 13. Her island, Isa. xxiii. 2. Ezek. xxvi. p. 215; *re*. 2, 3. Her two harbours, Ezek. xxvii. 3. Her pillars, Ezek. xxvi. 11. Produced little corn or oil, 1 Kings v. 11. How ships therefrom reached the Red Sea, 2 Chr. viii. 18. Her burden, as doomed to be conquered by the Chaldeans, Isa. xxiii. 1. Jer. xlvii. 4. Ezek. xxix. 18. Amos i. 9. Made her daughter's daughter, Isa. xxiii. 10. Her seventy years explained, *re*. 15. Conquered by Alexander, in spite of her wisdom: a symbol of earthly power, opposed to God, Zech. ix. 2. Her gradual decline, Ezek. xxvi. p. 215: and present condition, *re*. 4. Converted to the Gospel, Isa. xxiii. 18: and Christian up to A.D. 1289, *ib*. The spiritual Tyre (see *Rome, Church of*), Ezek. xxvii. 30; xxviii. 2; p. 220—1; xxxii. 2.

- Ulai, river, its probable position, Dan. viii. 2.
- Umbreit, cited, Job xviii. 20. Eccles. iii. 21. Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 122, note 2. Vol. v. Part 1. p. 153. Part 2. pp. xv. note 1; xvi. notes 2 and 3. Jer. iii. 1; xvii. 6; xxiii. 26, 27; xxiv. 9; xxv. 31; xxx. 15; xxxi. 22; xl. 5; xlv. 20; xlviii. 4; l. p. 121. Mic. i. 1.
- Ummah, Josh. xix. 30.
- Uncircumcised, the term how applied to trees, Lev. xix. 23. Spiritually to the Egyptians, Ezek. xxxii. 19. See *Circumcision*.
- Uncle (Heb. *dād*), the term sometimes used in a less restricted sense, 1 Chr. xxvii. 32.
- Uncleanness, ceremonial, even if natural or involuntary, has its source in man's sin. Designed to make known to us our misery and Christ's redemption, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 46. Acts, unclean in others, have healing power in Him, Lev. xv. 8: by Whom was cleansed the corruption of the first Adam, v. 30. The uncleanness of death (see *Death*), Num. xix. 14. One defiled by a dead body might not eat the Passover, Num. ix. 6.
- Undutifulness of disciples to teachers symbolized, and corruption of disciples by them, Ezek. v. 10.
- Unicorn, or rhinoceros (Heb. *re'em*), Num. xxiii. 22. Probably a bison or buffalo, Job xxxix. 9. Isa. xxxiv. 7: or wild ox, Ps. xxii. 21; xxix. 6; xlii. 10.
- Unity in religious worship, in regard of place and officiating minister, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 55. Of time and place, Lev. xxiii. 2. Deut. xvi. 2. Josh. xv. p. 63. Isa. lvi. 23. The same offering from all Churches, Num. vii. 48. Unity of the Church, Num. vii. 7. Vol. iii. p. 19. 1 Kings vii. 8; viii. 6. Cant. i. 4; vi. 9. Isa. lxii. 4. Protest against schism, though men are no longer bound to one place, Vol. i. Part 2. p. 55. Latitudinarian syncretisms forbidden, Lev. xix. 19. 1 Kings iii. 16—27. Christ not content with a niche in the Pantheon of indifference, Lev. xix. 19. Uniformity in worship and Church government needful, Num. xxxv. 8. Yet the outward symbols of unity must not be confounded with the thing itself, 1 Chr. xxi. 30. Duty of unity, as opposed to schism, prescribed, Josh. ii. 19. Disregarded by the Church's rivals, 1 Kings iii. 16—27. United efforts of the priesthood and faithful people blessed, Josh. vi. 5. Also of kings and the priesthood, 2 Kings xii. 16. Unity of the twelve tribes symbolized, 1 Kings xviii. 31. Yet alien communions, possessing some of God's gifts, are not without grace and fruit through His mercy, Prov. xxvi. 29. Cant. vi. 8.
- Universities, the English, their importance as schools of religious worship, Mal. ii. 7.
- Unto this day, and such like expressions, imply in Scripture no long period, Dent. iii. 14; xxiv. 10. Vol. ii. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xix, note 7. Josh. iv. 9; x. 14. Vol. ii. Part 2. p. xv. Sometimes true only for the source from which the actual writer transcribed, 2 Chr. v. 9; x. 19. The phrase does not necessarily imply a termination at the time named, Dan. i. 21.
- Uphaz, Jer. x. 9.
- Upper-room, the best part of an eastern house, 1 Kings xvii. 19. 2 Kings i. 2; iv. 10.
- Ur of the Chaldees, located, Gen. xi. 28.
- Uriah, his known fidelity, 2 Sam. xi. 14.
- Urijah, (1) the High Priest who complied with Ahaz, and was therefore excluded from the list, 2 Kings xvi. 16. His evil example infected other priests, 2 Chr. xxix. 34. No friend to Isaiah, Isa. viii. 2. (2) A faithful prophet, Jer. xxvi. 20.
- Urim and Thummim, meaning of the words. How rendered in the Greek versions. Not made, but imparted direct from God. Hence implying spiritual life, "illuminating and perfecting," infused into the gems as grace is to Christians, by the Word and Sacraments, Ex. xxxiii. 30. Dent. xxxiii. 8. Light and Truth, Ps. xliii. 3. What Holy Scripture is to us, Josh. ix. 14. Asking thereby, Judg. i. 1. 1 Sam. xxiii. 9; xxviii. 6. 2 Sam. ii. 1. Saul shrinks from naming them, 1 Sam. xxviii. 15. Not possessed after the return from Babylon, but their restoration looked forward to in the days of Messiah, Ezra ii. 63. Employed to test the true spiritual priesthood, *ib.*
- Usher, Archbp., his *Annals*, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xx, note 3. Cited, 2 Kings xv. 30; xxiv. 1. 2 Chr. xxx. 1; xxxv. 25. Ezra iv. 5; vi. 22; vii. 23. Neh. i. 1; ii. 8; xii. 22. Esther i. 1; ii. 1. Jer. xxvi. 2; lii. 30. Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xvi, note 3. Dan. vii. 25; viii. 8, 9; xi. 31; xii. 7. Vol. vi. Part 2. p. 29. Amos viii. 9.
- Usury, its true nature appears in its Hebrew name. Reasonable interest not forbidden to Christians, Ex. xxii. 25. Dent. xxiii. 19. Jer. xv. 10. To lend without interest commended in the Gospel, Deut. xxiii. 19. Spiritual and holy usury, Deut. xxviii. 12. Twelve per cent. the ordinary interest in the East, exacted by Jews of their brethren, after the return from Babylon, Neh. v. 4, 7, 10, 11.
- Uz, the location of, Gen. x. 23. Job i. 1. Jer. xxv. 20. Joined with Buz (see *Buz*), Gen. xxii. 21. Jer. xxv. 23. Indicating Job's collateral connexion with Abraham, Vol. iv. Part 1. *Introd.* p. iii, note 2.
- Uzal, Ezek. xxvii. 19.
- Uzzah, or *Uzza*, his case a warning against doing unlawful acts with good intentions, especially in things sacred, 2 Sam. vi. 6, 7. Peculiar need of a lesson so severe, 1 Chr. xiii. 7, 9.
- Uzzen-sherah, 1 Chr. vii. 24.
- Uzziah, king of Judah, why also called Azariah, 2 Kings xiv. 21. 2 Chr. xxvi. 1. The chronological difficulty respecting his accession discussed, 2 Kings xv. 1. Six kings of Israel during his single reign, *ib.*: and five contemporary prophets, v. 5. His elation, v. 3. This sin told in the Chronicles, its punishment in the Book of Kings, v. 5. How enticed to his presumptuous act, 2 Chr. xxvi. 16. The earthquake probably connected with his sin, Amos i. 1. Mercy shown to him in his visitation, 2 Chr. xxvi. 19, 21. His dishonoured burial, v. 23. Isaiah's vision in the year he died, 2 Kings xv. 7. Isa. vi. 1.
- Vaihinger, his strictures on the neologians, Prov. xxiv. 21. His Commentary on Proverbs characterized, *ib.* Cited, Prov. vi. 3, 5; viii. 22; x. 14; xii. 9, 12; xiv. 9; xviii. 1; xix. 18; xx. 25; xxi. 4; xxii. 7.
- Vail (Heb. *masce*), that hiding the Holy of Holies in the Tabernacle and in the Temple (2 Chr. iii. 14), denoting the mysteries of the old dispensation, Num. iv. 5. Not to be uncovered by the bearers, but now revealed in Christ, *ib.* Spiritualized, Isa. xxx. 1. Why not found in Ezekiel's Temple, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 282. A woman's vail, Gen. xx. 16; xxiv. 65. A harlot's, Gen. xxxviii. 14.
- Valekenae, L. C., cited, Vol. i. Part 1. *Preface*, p. xx, note 7.
- Valerian, the Emperor, his fate, Zech. xiv. 12.
- Valerius Maximus, cited, Esther i. 3. Dan. viii. 9.
- Valley, the, of salt, 2 Sam. viii. 13. 2 Kings xiv. 7. 2 Chr. xxv. 11. Of craftsmen, 1 Chr. iv. 14. Neh. xi. 35. Of Jehoshaphat, 2 Chr. xx. 37. Joel iii. 14. Of Baeca, spiritualized, Ps. lxxxix. 6. See *Berachah*. Of vision (Heb. *gehazi*), Jerusalem why so called, Isa. xxii. 1. Of the passengers, Ex. xxxix. 11. Of God's mountain, Zech. xiv. 3, 4. That of Ezekiel's vision (Heb. *bikeah*), Ezek. xxxvii. 1, 2. The lowland on the west coast of Palestine (Heb. *shephelah*), Jer. xxxii. 44.
- Vandevelde, cited, Gen. xxxvii. 17; xxxviii. 12. Josh. iii. 16, vii. 2; ix. 6; x. 10. Judg. v. 23; xix. 12, 13; xx. 47. 1 Sam. xxiv. 3; xxviii. 4. 1 Kings xviii. 20, 33, 40. 2 Kings vi. 13; xxiii. 29. Neh. ii. 13; vi. 2. His *Atlas*, Gen. xix. 24. Josh. xv. 1.
- Various Readings in the Hebrew text discussed, Gen. xxxi. 51; xlvii. 31. Josh. v. 1; xii. 36, 37. Judg. xviii. 30. Ruth iv. 4. 1 Sam. iv. 13; vi. 19; xiii. 1, 5; xiv. 18. 2 Sam. iii. 18; viii. 1, 13; xiv. 4; xv. 7; xviii. 3; xxi. 8; xxiii. 8. 1 Kings i. 18; iv. 26; vi. 31; vii. 40; xii. 48. 2 Kings ii. 14 (*accut*); viii. 10 (*keri*). 16. 1 Chr. vii. 14, 28; xi. 11; xviii. 11; xxiv. 6. 2 Chr. i. 5; xiii. 2; xx. 2; xxxvi. 9. Neh. iii. 30 (*keri*); iv. 23. Job xxiv. 12; xxvii. 19; xxxiii. 21 (*keri*). Ps. x. 10 (*chetib*); xvi. 9; xxii. 16. Prov. xx. 16 (*keri*). 20 (*chetib*); xxi. 4. Eccles. ii. 25; ix. 4 (*keri*). Isa. xxix. 13. Jer. v. 7; xi. 15; xiii. 4; xv. 14; xxv. 3 (*keri*); xxxi. 40; xxxviii. 23; xli. 17 (*keri*); xlii. 12; xlviii. 1; li. 2. Lam. v. 22. Ezek. iii. 15 (*keri*); viii. 16 (*keri*); xxxvi. 23. Zech. xiv. 6 (*chetib*). See *Reading*. The *keri* and *chetib* referred to, Obad. 12.
- Varro, cited, Gen. v. 1. Isa. xxxvii. 36.
- Vatablus, cited, 2 Chr. xx. 22. Ps. xxvii. 2. Prov. iii. 35; vi. 3. Isa. xxvi. 19; xxxiii. 23; liii. 11; lx. 1. Jer. iii. 16; vi. 29; ix. 26. Ezek. iv. 8; viii. 14; xxxviii. p. 216. *Retrospect*, p. 286, note 12. Joel ii. 23. Obad. 20. Nah. ii. 6. Hagg. ii. 7. Zech. ii. 1, 2; vii. 2; xi. 15; xii. 2, 9. Mal. i. 10; iii. 17.
- Vater, cited, Deut. xii. 5, 6.
- Vatican manuscript of the Greek Bible, its peculiar readings, Lev. xviii. 18. Josh. xxiv. 30. Its characteristic differences from the Alexandrian, Judg. v. 1. 8, 13, 19. 1 Kings xii. 24. Ps. xxvii. 7.
- Velleius Paterculus, cited, Dan. viii. 9.
- Venema, cited, Jer. xxxii. 1; xxxi. 26; xxxiv. 4, 5; xlix. 3.

- Vespasian, a coin of, Isa. iii. 26. His case analogous to Sargon's, Isa. xviii. p. 51. Abolishes the Jew's Temple in Egypt, Isa. xix. 19.
- Vessels, used figuratively for bodies, 1 Sam. xxi. 5. Eccles. xii. 6. Dan. v. 2. Those of the Temple taken on two occasions, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 7. 17. Jer. xxvii. 16. Their subsequent history, Ezra i. 7. Isa. lii. 11. Jer. li. 44. Lam. i. 10. Dan. i. 2; v. 2. Mic. i. 7. Their number discussed, Ezra i. 11. God's care for them typical, *et*. 7. 10. 11. Others bestowed freely by Artaxerxes, Ezra vii. 19. Every vessel holy in the glorified Church, Zech. xiv. 20.
- Victorinus, cited, Ezek. i. 1.
- Victory (Heb. *netsach*), how an equivalent for "Eternity," Isa. xxv. 8.
- Villalpandus, cited, Vol. v. Part 2. p. 157. Ezek. i. 5; viii. 14; xxviii. p. 221; xl. 11.
- Villein-socage, Job vii. 1.
- Vincent, Dean, cited, Vol. vi. Part 1. p. xii, *note* 6.
- Vine, the, trained to houses or trees, a type of Christ's Church, 1 Kings iv. 25. He is the true vine, Ps. lxxx. 15. Ezek. xix. 14. The figure transferred to His own bride, the Church, Ps. cxviii. 3. The unfruitful vine, Ezek. xv. 2. Vineyards put for Churches, Jer. xxxi. 5. Metaphors derived from vintage, Isa. lxiii. 3. Jer. vi. 9; viii. 13.
- Vinegar, light acid wine, Num. vi. 3. Ruth ii. 14. Ps. lxxix. 21.
- Virgil, cited, Gen. ii. 17; xi. 31; xii. 13; xlv. 4; xlix. 4. Ex. viii. 21; ix. 76; xxii. 6. 21; xxxv. 29. Lev. xix. 31. Josh. x. 12, 13. 1 Sam. xix. 24. Esther v. 4. Job viii. 17; xii. 6; xxvi. 10; xxix. 6; xxxi. 40; xxxiv. 33; xxxix. 20. 21. 24; xli. 22; xlii. 8. Ps. xxxix. 9; xxxvi. 1; lxxv. 11; cx. 3. Prov. vi. 6; xxii. 6. Eccles. i. 5; xii. 4. Isa. ii. 4; v. 26; vii. 6; xvi. 2; xlvii. 13; lxxv. 25; lxxvi. 18. Jer. vi. 4. 20; xlvii. 20. Ezek. vii. 7; xxvii. 6; xxxi. 3; xxxii. 27. Dan. ii. 40; iv. 16; xi. 38. Amos i. 3; vi. 5. 13. Mic. ii. 1. Zech. iii. 9.
- Virginity not requisite for the reception of spiritual gifts, 2 Kings xxii. 14. The Blessed Virgin (over Virgin, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 284, *note* 3), and the mystery of the Incarnation referred to, Prov. xxx. 19. When the Hebrew *almah* is used. Isa. vii. 14. The honour due to her made by the Evil One an occasion of sin, Hos. iv. 15.
- Visitation of the Sick in the Book of Common Prayer cited, Job. iv. 1. God's visitations made partial and extraordinary that they may be the more plainly discerned, Amos iv. 7.
- Vitrunga, his *Commentary on Isaiah* cited, Isa. i. 27, and *passim* throughout that book. Also, Jer. xxxi. 38, 39. Ezek. xx. 25; xxv. 16; xxviii. p. 221. *Retrospect*, p. 278, *note* 7. Dan. vii. 25. Mic. vii. 8. Nah. p. 87.
- Viziers of Eastern Kings are often foreigners, Esther iii. 1; viii. 2.
- Voice, a, portending the fall of Jerusalem, Isa. lxvi. 6. That of Christ at the Resurrection, Ezek. xxxvii. 12.
- Volney, cited, Lev. xiv. 34. Neh. v. 11.
- Voltaire, referred to, 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. Ezra vi. 2. Vol. iii. p. 359.
- Von Bohlen's erroneous notion respecting the authorship of the Pentateuch, Vol. i. Part 1. *Introd.* p. xxxii. Cited or referred to, Gen. xxxvi. 31; xl. 9; xli. 6. 45. 54. Ex. xxxviii. 24. Prov. viii. 11. Vol. v. Part 2. p. vii, *note* 5. Jer. i. 1. Dan. ii. 6.
- Von Essen, L. V., cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. pp. 74, *notes* 1 and 2; 75, *note* 3; 76, *note* 1. Eccles. ii. 8; iii. 21.
- Von Raumer, cited, Gen. xiv. 7. Cant. vii. 5. Isa. xxxiv. 6. Jer. xix. 2; xlviii. 32. Also *passim*: see *Raumer*.
- Votive offerings made by heathens and by some Christian Churches, 1 Sam. vi. 4.
- Vow, Jacob's the first in Scripture, Gen. xxviii. 20. Rules for payment of vows to the sanctuary, Lev. xxvii. 2. That of Israel in the wilderness, Num. xxi. 2. Rash vows, Jer. xlv. 17. 19. Vows must be made to God only, and unless rash or evil, cannot be relaxed, Num. xxx. 2. More solemn than a promise made to man, Judg. xi. 40. Voluntary vows, Num. xxx. 3. Deut. xxii. 21. Eccles. v. 4. Vows to abstain from things innocent are of doubtful lawfulness, Jer. xxxv. 18. Vows made at Baptism in the name of children too often resented or censured, Judg. xi. 40.
- Vowel points of the Hebrew dropped, Num. vii. 19—83. See *Hiatius*. Other special peculiarities in Hebrew manuscripts noted, Lev. i. 1. Num. iii. 38; ix. 10; x. 35; xv. 24. Deut. vi. 4; xxxix. 28. 29; xxxii. 6. Judg. xviii. 30. 1 Chr. iii. 2. Neh. ii. 13. Esther ix. 7—13. Isa. ix. 7.
- Vulgate Latin Bible, where erroneous, Gen. iii. 15. Ex. xxxiv. 29. Isa. xl. 2. Hos. xiii. 14. The Sixtine edition, 2 Sam. xv. 7. A manuscript rendering, Ps. cv. 28. The earlier Latin translation, Mal. iv. 5. Its peculiar renderings, 1 Sam. ix. 25. 2 Sam. xiv. 14; xix. 22. 1 Kings v. 18. 2 Kings xvi. 6. 1 Chr. iv. 22; vii. 15. Vol. iii. p. 359, *note* 6. Job
- xxxiv. 36. Ps. xxix. 1. Eccles. iii. 1; v. 1. Hab. iii. 18. Zeph. iii. 3. Hagge. ii. 7. Zech. ix. 11.
- Vulture, the bald, Mic. i. 16.
- Wagging the hand in dismissal, Zeph. ii. 15.
- Wagner, cited, Deut. vii. 15.
- Wailing-place of the Jews, Isa. lxiv. 10.
- Waiting in patience, Zeph. iii. 8.
- Walls of Jerusalem rebuilt (Mic. vii. 11) in Nehemiah's time, 70 years later than the second Temple, Ps. cii. p. 158. Isa. xlv. 28. Hagge. ii. 1. Zech. ii. 1, 2; viii. 3. The 42 portions, by whom respectively built, Vol. iii. p. 328. Neh. iii. 2. 7. 10. 13. 17. 22. The course taken round the city, p. 328. Jeremiah's prophecy on the subject expounded, *ib.* Neh. iii. 1. Its moral and spiritual application, Jer. xxxi. 38, 39. Finished in 52 days; how possible and whereof typical, Neh. vi. 15. A portion of the old city (The Broad Wall, Neh. xii. 38) left out, Neh. iii. 8. Tower of the furnaces, v. 11. "The turning," 2 Chr. xxvi. 9. See *Gates of Jerusalem*. This building of the walls the era from which Daniel's seventy weeks should be reckoned, Neh. viii. 17. Their dedication, Neh. xii. 27. Spiritual grounds of the people's joy, v. 43. When the walls of the Church are finished, the end will come, Neh. iii. 31. Eastern walls often of clay, Ezek. xiii. 10. Walls of chambers covered with idolatrous pictures, Ezek. viii. 10—12; xxiii. 14.
- Walton, Bp., cited, Gen. v. 3. Ex. xx. 1. Josh. xxiv. 30. Ps. xlix. 10. Ezek. ix. 4. Dan. iii. 23.
- Wangemann, cited, Vol. iv. Part 3. p. 75, *note* 3. Eccles. ii. 25; iii. 11; xii. 5.
- War, when lawful, Deut. xx. 1—4. Exemptions from it why granted under the Law, v. 5. Deut. xxiv. 5. That with the Canaanites commanded by God, Deut. xx. 10. 17. Not inconsistent with holiness of life, Deut. xxiii. 9. The idol of the infidel Antichrist in these evil days, and deified as the sovereign arbiter of the world: its inventions and cost, Dan. xi. 38. Our spiritual warfare, Deut. xx. 3. 5.
- Warburton, Bp., cited, Gen. xxii. 2. 8. 12. 14. Ex. xxi. 1. Josh. vi. 26.
- Ware, Sir John, his *Foxes and Firebrands*, Judg. xv. 4.
- Warning from God always precedes punishment, Obad. p. 57. Given by the very Apostle of love, that we may escape the final malediction, Mal. iv. 6.
- Washing, in what way emblematical, Ex. xix. 10. Lev. viii. 6; xvi. 4. Num. xix. 7.
- Waste, both in the natural and spiritual world, only apparent, 1 Kings iv. 32. The fact illustrated by Solomon's lost proverbs and Christ's unrecorded sayings, *ib.*
- Watches, the Hebrew, described, Ex. xiv. 24. Judg. vii. 19. Lam. ii. 19. The Levitical, Num. xviii. 3. Those of the Levites and of the singers corresponded in their course, Neh. xii. 9. The prophets said to keep watch, Mic. vii. 4. Hab. ii. 1. So should the ministers of the Church (Jer. xxxi. 6. Ezek. xxxiii. 2. 7), though too often blind and faithless, directing her to other objects of adoration than Christ, Cant. iii. 3. Their twofold function of vigilance and care: their beacon-fire, Ezek. iii. 17. Ephraim how a watchman, Hos. ix. 8.
- Watcher, an angel, Dan. iv. 13. Among the Levites opposed to the answerer, Mal. ii. 12.
- Water, living or running, an emblem of Christ, Ex. xxxii. 20. Ps. xxxvii. 8. 9. Joel iii. 18: of the Holy Spirit, Num. xxi. 16; xxiv. 7. Deut. x. 7. Ps. xlvii. 4: of the Word and Sacraments, Cant. iv. 12: of repentance, in what way, 1 Sam. vii. 6. An instrument both of God's wrath and mercy, Ex. vii. 17. Living waters flowed from the Temple, Ezek. xlvii. 1. *Retrospect*, pp. 286—7. Joel iii. 18. Zech. xiii. 1; xiv. 8.
- Waterland, Daniel, his *Scripture Unveiled*, &c., cited, Gen. ii. 19; iii. 1, 14; v. 6; vii. 21. ii. 4; xii. 13; xv. 16; xvii. 10, 11; xxi. 14; xxvii. 5; xxxviii. 1. Ex. xxi. 1. Lev. xxvii. 29. Deut. i. 34. Josh. ii. 5; xv. 63. Judg. iii. 21, 22; iv. 23; ix. 13. 1 Sam. xv. 2. 3; xxviii. 11, 12. 2 Sam. xxi. 1. 1 Kings ii. 8, 9; xiii. 11. Vol. iii. p. 55. 1 Kings xvii. 1; xxii. 6. 22. 2 Kings i. 10; ii. 24; viii. 7. 9. 10; xxii. 20. Job i. 6. Ps. lxxxix. p. 141; cix. p. 174; cxxxvii. 9. Prov. iv. 23; xvi. 4. 18; xxii. 6. Isa. xx. 2. 3; lxiii. 17. Jer. iv. 10; vii. 22; xiii. 4; xv. 18; xx. 7; xxvii. 6. Ezek. iv. p. 165; xii. 4; xx. 25. Hos. i. 2. Mic. vi. 7. Zech. xii. 10. Mal. i. 11.
- Wave offering, distinguished from *heave offering*, Ex. xxix. 24. Lev. vii. 30. Mal. iii. 8. Indicates the acceptance of the

- peace offering, and typifies Christ in the Eucharist, Ex. xxix. 24. Lev. viii. 26. They both pre-signify the gifts of praise, thanksgiving, and alms therein offered: *Sorsum corda*, Lev. x. 11. The wave sheaf of harvest, Lev. xxiii. 11. Two wave loaves at the Feast of Weeks, v. 17, with a wave offering, *re*. 18. 19. A verbal coincidence noticed, Ps. lxxviii. 9. The holy portion of the land and its fruits a heave offering, Ezek. xlv. 13—17; xlviii. 9. 15. 20. Why so called; Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 285.
- Way, the, an equivalent for the true faith, Ps. lxxxiv. 5. Isa. xxx. p. 89. Cp. Amos viii. 14. The way to life one, to ruin many, Ps. xvii. 4. The highways of God contrasted with the hills of pride, Ps. lxxxiv. 5. The way of duty, Ps. xci. 11; xxxviii. 5: that of suffering and obedience to God's will, Ps. ex. 7. Christ the way, Isa. xxxv. 8. Zech. iii. 7.
- Weeks, feast of, see *Pentecost*. Weeks of days distinguished from those of years, Dan. x. 2.
- Wells, Dr., cited, Hos. i. 2.
- Well, connected with visions of joy, Gen. xxix. 2. Those famous in Scripture enumerated, Num. xxi. 16. Places of abode in patriarchal times, Josh. xxiv. 26. Water drawn thence chiefly by women, Josh. ix. 21. The custom spiritualized, Judg. v. 11.
- Wesley, Samuel, father of John, his Commentary on Job, Vol. iv. Part 1, p. xx, note 7. Regards Leviathan as an adumbration of the King of evil spirits, Job xli. 1. 6. Cited, Job xxxiii. 23.
- Westcott, Prof., cited, Gen. v. 24. Vol. iii. p. 295, note 1. Vol. vi. Part 1, p. xvi, notes 3 and 6.
- Wetstein, J. J., his *New Testament*, cited, Deut. xxv. 3. Josh. vi. 23.
- Wheels of the bases of the Temple lavers, emblems of the eagerness of the Divine love to cleanse us, 1 Kings vii. 32. Figurative use of, Prov. xxxv. 11. Wheels at wells, Eccles. xii. 6. Those in Ezekiel's vision, Ezek. i. 5.
- Whewell, W., referred to, Gen. i. 7.
- Whiston, W., cited, 2 Kings xix. 29.
- Whitgift, Archbp., his dying words, 1 Sam. iv. 18. Ps. cxxxvii. 6. Cited, Josh. vii. 25.
- Whitsunday, the consummation of the Gospel festivals, Ps. cxlv. p. 224.
- Who would...? equivalent to "Oh that....!" Mal. i. 10.
- Whoredom, spiritual, or idolatry, Ex. xxxiv. 15. Lev. xvii. 7. Num. xxxi. 16. Deut. xxxii. 16. 21. Isa. i. 24. Ezek. xxiii. 3. 20. Amos vii. 17. Usually joined with the carnal sin, Ex. xxxiv. 15. Judg. viii. 30. 2 Kings ix. 22. Its punishment, Judg. xv. 6.
- Wickliffe, John, translated the Bible into English 500 years ago, Vol. i. Part 1. *Intro.* p. xliii.
- Wieseler, cited, Dan. viii. 11.
- Wild beasts still in Palestine, though its population is two millions. Sceptical objections refuted, Ex. xxiii. 29.
- Wilderness, the, often means only a sheep walk, Ex. xii. 38. Jer. xii. 12. How made a type of heaven, Lev. xvi. 22. Israel's sojourn there a figure of his probation in his present dispersion, Ezek. xx. 10. 23. "Wilderness of the peoples," *re*. 34. 38. 41. That of Judah, 1 Sam. xxiii. 14. 2 Chr. xvi. 10. Of Jerud, 2 Chr. x. 13. Of Tekoa, *re*. 20.
- Wilkins, Bp., cited, Gen. vii. 8, 9.
- Wilkinson, Sir J. Gardner, cited, Gen. xxxix. 1; xl. 1. 9; xli. 1. 14. 15. 15; xlii. 26; xliii. 33; xlv. 10; xlvii. 20; 1. 2. 11. Ex. i. 14. Josh. xvii. 16. 2 Kings xvii. 4; xxiii. 29. Job iii. 8; xix. 23; xxi. 32, 33; xxviii. 2. 17; xxix. 18. Ezek. xxix. 8.
- Will-worship, 1 Sam. xiv. 24. Jer. vii. 31. Amos iv. 4.
- Williams, G., *Holy City*, cited, Gen. xiv. 7; xvi. 14. Num. xii. 26. Neh. ii. 13.
- Williams, Isaac, cited, Gen. i. 2. 5. 20; ii. 4; iv. 4. 5.
- Willow of Babylon, Ps. cxxxvii. 2. Isa. xlv. 4. Brook of willows, Isa. xv. 7. See *Tabernacles, the Feast of*.
- Wilton, E., *Negeb*, cited, Gen. xli. 9; xiv. 7; xx. 1; xlix. 9. Num. xlii. 17. 26; xli. 1. Josh. xv. 1. 21. 31. Judg. xiv. 5. 1 Sam. xvii. 34; xxvii. 6. Job xxxviii. 31.
- Wind from the desert, Job i. 19: from the north, Jer. iv. 11, 12. See *East*. Temple of the Winds at Athens, Job xxxviii. 37. Hos. iv. 19.
- Windows, latticed, in the Temple, their significance, Ezek. *Retrospect*, p. 279.
- Wine, how said to cheer God, Judg. ix. 13. The fruit of God's works, Ps. cv. 15. Cant. i. 2. Why obtained from by Samson's mother, Judg. xiii. 4. Wine on the lees, Isa. xxv. 6. New wine finding vent, Job xxxii. 19. Spiritually applied, *ib*. Zech. ix. 15. Emblematical of pure doctrine, Isa. xxvii. 2.
- Winepress, the king's, Zech. xiv. 10. A symbol of the Judgment, Isa. lxiii. 3. Joel iii. 13. Wine-fats, Prov. iii. 10.
- Winer, cited, Gen. xiv. 7. Ex. xxi. 1. Num. xiii. 26. Judg. xiv. 5. 1 Kings iii. 1. 2 Kings xxiii. 29. Job xix. 23. Jer. xv. 11—14; xxvi. 17; xxxvii. 21; xxxviii. 7; xli. 8; xlv. 30. Lam. ii. 19. Ezek. vii. 7; viii. 10. 14. Dan. ii. 5.
- Wisdom Divine, whether moral or physical, God's own gift to men: a lesson for the present age. Its only well-spring is in God, Job xxviii. 1. 28. Eccles. vii. 29. Only to be found in Christ and His Gospel, Job xxviii. 14. Flow at once a Mother, Sister, and Wife, Prov. vii. 4. Cannot co-exist with self-indulgence, Eccles. ii. 9. That of martyrs and confessors, Dan. xi. 33. Wise men become fools, Dan. xii. 10.
- Wisdom, the ecclesiastical book of, and its author, Ex. viii. 21; x. 21. Num. xxi. 9. 1 Kings iii. 1. 12; iv. 32. Vol. iii. p. 19. 2 Kings xviii. 4. Job ix. 26. Isa. lviii. 1. 2; lxx. 20. Dan. xi. 35. Amos vii. 7. Antistrophically arranged, Job iii. 2.
- Witchcraft, not an impossible sin, though one unfit to be punished by human laws, Ex. xxii. 18. Lev. xix. 31. Virtually implied in disobedience to God, 1 Sam. xv. 23. Suggestions regarding it addressed to modern times, Ex. xxii. 18. Lev. xix. 6. 7. Deut. xviii. 11. Josh. vi. 26. Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 81. 1 Sam. xxviii. 11, 12. 2 Kings xvii. 17. Hos. iv. 12. Penal by the Roman law, and condemned in the New Testament, Ex. xxii. 18. Curiosity on the subject forbidden, Deut. xii. 30. Its several kinds discriminated, Deut. xviii. 10. 11. 2 Kings xxi. 6. Dan. ii. 2. Day-cursers, Job iii. 8. See *Familiar Spirits*.
- Witnesses, the two, expounded, Dan. vii. 25; xii. 11.
- Witsius, cited, Gen. xvii. 10, 11; xxxvi. 31. Ex. xxi. 1. 2 Kings xxii. 11. Ezek. iv. p. 165. Hos. i. 2.
- Woes pronounced by Isaiah and by Christ compared, Isa. v. 8. 15; xxvii. p. 78.
- Wolf, the, represents the enemies of the Church, Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 115. Evening wolves, Zeph. iii. 3.
- Wolff, Dr. Joseph, cited, Jer. xxxv. 19.
- Wolffius, cited, Dan. iv. 16.
- Women, who publish God's glad tidings, weak by nature, strong by grace, Ps. lxxviii. 11. The feminine gender very employed in that passage, Prov. ix. 3. Their special religious duties, Ex. xxxviii. 8. Should devote all to God, *re*. 24. Three holy women of Scripture, 2 Kings xi. 2. Revelations made directly to such, Judg. xiii. 3. 2 Kings xxii. 11. Wont to be liberal Church-builders, Neh. iii. 12. Through woman man fell and was redeemed, Judg. xvi. 16. Dignified in the Blessed Virgin, Lev. xxvii. 5. 1 Chr. ii. 16. Eccles. vii. 26. Woman's princely freedom, Job i. 4. Much impaired before Christ's Incarnation, Vol. iii. p. 365. Esther ii. 3: though Persian wives had a free position, Esther v. 10. Elevation of women under the Levitical law, Num. xxvii. 8: much more in Christ, Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 82. Job xlii. 14. Their religious songs, Ex. xv. 18. Perhaps employed in the Temple worship, 1 Chr. xxv. 5. Should not be mingled in choirs with men, Ps. cxlviii. 12. Their timbrels and dances, Judg. xi. 34. Israelitish women in the wilderness, who did not murmur with the men, entered on the promised inheritance: compared with the faithful women in the Gospel, Num. xxvii. 1—4. Their prayers effectual, Josh. xv. 19. The Temple Court reserved for them, Ezek. viii. 14. Sometimes made God's weak instruments to overthrow his enemies, Judg. ix. 53. Confusion of attire and functions with men forbidden them, Deut. xxii. 5. Modesty prescribed, *ib*. Deut. xxv. 11. Jewish women eating their children in the famine, Deut. xxviii. 56.
- Wonder, or sign (Heb. *mopheth*), Christ's sufferings compared to, as trying men's faith, Ps. lxxi. 7.
- Wonderful, not secret, the true rendering of the Hebrew *peti*, Judg. xiii. 18. A title of Christ, Isa. ix. 6. Dan. viii. 13.
- Wood, Sir W. P. (Lord Hatherley), cited, Lev. xviii. 18.
- Woodford, J. R., cited, Deut. xxxiv. 6.
- Wood offering, the, explained, Neh. x. 34; xiii. 31.
- Word, the transition frequent in S. Paul, and elsewhere in Scripture, from the word written to the Word Incarnate, Deut. xxx. 11—14. Isa. lxvi. 2. Zech. iv. 11—14. The former proceeds from the latter, Zech. iv. 2. The Divine Word Incarnate contrasted with the Baptist's voice, Isa. xl. 6. 9: abode with the Church in the wilderness, Hag. ii. 5. God's word revealing men's tempers, a judicial process, Mal. iii. 2.
- Wordsworth, Charles, Bp., cited, Ex. xx. 1.
- Wordsworth, Christopher, Bp. of Lincoln, his various works, cited, Vol. ii. Part 1, p. 30. Job xxxviii. 37. Prov. xx. 21. Isa. lviii. 14. Jer. xxxi. 34; xlii. 10; l. p. 121. Ezek. i. 5. Nah. p. 87. See also *Holy Year, Theophilus Anglicanus*.
- Wordsworth, William, cited, Ps. lxxxiv. 3. Prov. xxvii. 5. Eccles. xii. 4.

- Work (Heb. *poal* and *maasch*) its two senses discriminated, Ps. xcii. 4; xc. 9.
- Worldly policy, how it misses its own ends, 1 Sam. xiii. 15.
- Worm, the, yielding scarlet juice, how typical, Ps. xxii. 6.
- Wormwood, its spiritual significance, Deut. xxix. 18. Prov. v. 4.
- Worship, public, ought to be sober, not voluptuary, Lev. ii. 11. Manual for those shut out from it, Ps. lxxiii. p. 91. Its observances to be enlarged on the Church's weekly festival, Num. xxviii. 9. Worship, a term expressing obedience to superiors, as well as honour to God, 1 Chr. xxix. 20. Dan. ii. 46—49.
- Wouvers, cited, Gen. v. 3; vi. 2. Josh. ix. p. 30. Judg. viii. 27; xi. 40; xvi. 30. 2 Sam. vii. p. 85; viii. 4; xv. 7. 1 Kings iii. 7. 2 Kings x. 19. Neh. i. 1. Dan. ix. p. 47.
- Wrath, "a little," explained, Isa. liv. 8.
- Writing, alphabetical, and engraving, their high antiquity, Job xix. 23. Affixing one's mark (see *than*) in courts of justice, Job xxxi. 35.
- Xenophon, cited, Gen. x. 9. 1 Chr. xxix. 7. Ezra v. 13. Neh. i. 1. Esther i. 8. 11; iii. 2. 13. Ps. cxxv. 1, 2. Prov. viii. p. 18. Isa. xlii. 8. 15; xiv. 19; xxi. 1, 5; xlv. 11; xlvii. 11. Jer. li. 30. Ezek. xxvii. 23. Dan. ii. 4; v. 1. 2. 7. 30. 31; vi. 1; viii. 2. Nah. iii. 18.
- Xerxes, Dan. ix. p. 47; xi. 2. See *Ahasuerus*.
- Year, the Hebrew, had four several beginnings, Lev. xxiii. 24. Its sacred and civil commencing, Gen. vii. 11; viii. 13, 14. Ex. xii. 2. See *Sabbatical year*. Regnal years of Jewish kings only reckoned from Nisan to Nisan, Vol. iii. *Introd.* p. xx, and *note* 2. 1 Kings xv. 2. 25. 2 Kings xiv. 1. Their confusion in times of confusion, as ours in the Great Rebellion, 2 Kings xv. 30. Not by years but by acts of faith and obedience, is the true life of men and nations measured, 2 Kings x. 32.
- Yod (or *chirek*) *compaginis*, an archaism adopted for musical euphony, and in compound Proper Names, Ps. cxliii. p. 179. *Scriptio plena* in Chaldee, 1 Chr. ii. 15.
- Young, Dr., cited, Ps. lxxi. 1.
- Young, Professor J. R., cited, Gen. vi. 20. Josh. x. 12, 13.
- Young kings may do more for God's service than aged priests, 2 Kings xii. 16. Responsibility of youth, 2 Kings xxiii. 31. The time for serving God, Eccles. xi. 10; xii. 1, 6.
- Young men equivalent to attendant ministers, Ex. xxiv. 5. The term includes maidens, Ruth ii. 21. Job i. 19. Armour-bearers, 1 Kings xx. 11. Used in contempt, 2 Kings xix. 6. "Brats," Job xxx. 12.
- Zadok, of Eleazar's line, may have ministered in the Tabernacle while separate from the Ark, 2 Sam. viii. 17. 1 Chr. xv. 11; at Gibeon, 1 Chr. xvi. 39. Takes precedence of Abiathar the actual High Priest, 2 Sam. x. 24. 29. 1 Chr. xv. 11. A seer, 2 Sam. xv. 27; and a warrior, 1 Chr. xii. 28. His anointing to the High Priesthood typical, 1 Chr. xxix. 22. An emblem of faithful priests, Ezek. xlv. 15.
- Zair, 2 Kings viii. 21.
- Zalmon, see *Salmon*.
- Zalmonah, its meaning. The supposed scene of the lifting up of the brazen serpent, Num. xxxiii. 41.
- Zamzummins, or *Zuzians*, Gen. xiv. 5. Meaning of the word, Deut. ii. 20.
- Zanoah, Josh. xv. 31. 1 Chr. iv. 18. Neh. iii. 13.
- Zaphnath-paaneah, its meaning discussed, Gen. xli. 45.
- Zaphon, Josh. xiii. 27.
- Zared, or *Zered*, the brook, Num. xxi. 12. Deut. ii. 13.
- Zarephath, site of, 1 Kings xvii. 9. Obad. 20.
- Zaretan, supposed site of, Josh. iii. 16. Perhaps the same as *Zerethai*, Judg. vii. 22; and *Zartanah*, 1 Kings iv. 12; and *Zarthan*, near Adam, 1 Kings vii. 46; and *Zereda*, 1 Kings xi. 26.
- Zareth-shahar, Josh. xiii. 19.
- Zed, without knowledge, 2 Sam. xxi. 2. That of idolaters and schismatics in going beyond God's law in their will-worship, Amos iv. 4.
- Zebaim, 1 Sam. xiii. 18. Hos. xi. 8. Cp. Jer. xlix. 18.
- Zebulun, his lot both temporal and spiritual, Gen. xlix. 13. His increase under Judah's standard, Num. xxi. 26, 27. Came to David in most numbers, 1 Chr. xii. 33. Divers also went to Hezekiah's Passover, 2 Chr. xxx. 11. Famous for commerce. Together with Issachar a spiritual merchantman in the Gospel, as they comprise Galilee between them, Deut. xxxiii. 18. Josh. xix. 10. 1 Chr. xii. 33.
- Zechariah, (1) son of Jehoiada or Barachias, the last of the Old Testament martyrs, as Abel was the first, 2 Chr. xxiv. 20—22. A type of Christ. Why our Lord preferred the patronymic Barachias, *ib.* (2) A seer and interpreter of visions in Uzziah's reign, 2 Chr. xxvi. 5. (3) The second priest, 2 Chr. xxxv. 8. (1) Son of Jeberchiah, Isa. viii. 2: by some supposed to have written Zech. ix.—xiv., Vol. vi. Part 2, p. 136. (5) The son of Barachiah, son of Iddo, writer of the book bearing his name, the prophetic interpreter of the book of Ezra, and leading on to Christ, Ezra v. 1. Significance of his name: a priest foretelling Christ's Priesthood, Zech. i. 1. Moved by God's Spirit to stir up the people to build the Temple, Zech. iv. 6.
- Zechariah, the book of, written in the spirit of Jeremiah, Zech. xi. 13. Supplies a sequel to Daniel's prophecies, Dan. x. 20; and to his contemporary Haggai's (Hagg. i. 1), extending onwards to Christ's first and second Advents, Vol. vi. Part 1, pp. xvii. 120. 156. Zech. i. 20; viii. 3; xiii. 8, 9; xiv. 2: in one panoramic picture, Zech. xii. p. 116; v. 2. One of the most sublime of the prophets, p. 156. Why obscure to the Jews, but not to us, pp. xvii. 121. His seven visions analyzed, pp. xviii—xx. 120, 121. Zech. i. 7. 18. 20; ii. 1, 2; v. p. 130; vi. 1—8. Their chronology Zech. i. 7; vii. 1. Followed by practical instructions, p. xx. Zech. vii. p. 133. Christ's manifold functions displayed by His many names, pp. xviii—xxi. Zech. iii. 9. Proof of His Divinity, Zech. xii. 10. Zechariah's imagery compared to that of the Apocalypse, p. xix. The four earthly empires (Zech. vi. 1, being a continuation of Daniel's four horns, Zech. i. 18) yield to the Universal Kingdom, p. xx. He prophesies of a lowly suffering Messiah, pp. xxi. 121. Zech. xii. 10; xiii. 6. 7. Destruction of Jerusalem prophesied (Zech. xi. 1. 2. 6. 9; xiv. 1) for its sin of the crucifixion, p. 121. A double Zechariah falsely presumed, as author of the seven prophecies (no longer visions) inch. ix.—xiv.; the subject discussed, Zech. p. 136; xi. 13.
- Zedad, site of, Num. xxxiv. 8.
- Zedekiah, (1) the last king of Judah, his changed name suggested faulty, but his heart false, 2 Kings xxiv. 17. Ezek. i. 2. Nebuchadnezzar not unkind to him, Ezek. xlvii. 5; but requited with treachery, Jer. xxxix. 3; xxxix. 5. Ezek. xvii. 7; xxi. 23. How called the son of Jeconiah, 1 Chr. iii. 15. 16. Sent for to Babylon, Jer. li. 59. Sequence of the events of his reign, Jer. xxxix. 9. Why spoken of by name years before, Jer. xxvii. 1. In weakness and moral cowardice like Pilate, Jer. xxxviii. 5. 11. The wickedness of weakness, v. 22. Sentence on his perjury, 2 Kings xxv. 6. 7. Ezek. xvii. 13. 20. A fit punishment, Jer. lii. 11. Prophecy minutely fulfilled in his case, Ezek. xii. 5. 13. 14. (2) A false prophet, Jer. xxix. 22.
- Zelah, Josh. xviii. 28. 1 Sam. xxvi. 13. 2 Sam. xvi. 11.
- Zelophehad, meaning of the name and history of, Num. xxvii. 1—4. His five daughters compared to the five wise virgins in the Gospel, *ib.* The law of female inheritance may have some bearing upon the genealogy of Christ, Num. xxxvi. 7. 8. Priests, Levites, and women not heiresses might marry out of their tribe, v. 8.
- Zemaraim, mount, Josh. xviii. 22. 2 Chr. xiii. 1.
- Zemarite, the, Gen. x. 18.
- Zenan, Josh. xv. 37. Perhaps identical with *Zaranan*, Mic. i. 11.
- Zendavesta, the, cited, Ezek. viii. 17.
- Zeno, S., of Verona, cited, Job xlii. 12.
- Zephaniah, (1) the prophet, probably present when Josiah renewed the Covenant, 2 Kings xxiii. 2. Zeph. i. 1. Meaning of his name, Zeph. p. 105; ch. ii. 3. Descended from Hezekiah, Zeph. i. 1. His language much adopted by Jeremiah, Jer. xlix. p. 116. The last prophet before the Captivity. Linked on to Habakkuk (Zeph. p. 105; ch. i. 3. 7; iii. 8), and to other prophets (Zeph. i. 7; ii. 11), vindicating God's dealings with the two tribes as a Supreme Governor, Vol. vi. Part 2, pp. xvi. 105. Compared with Hosea: his mission of mercy in troublous times, pp. xvi. 105. Foretells no Seythian inroad, Zeph. i. 4. Proclaims the triumph of the Church, p. 105. Like Hosea, closes his prophecy with the announcement of the restoration of the Jews to God's favour,

- Zeph. iii. 13. (2) Son of Maaseiah, *Sagan*, or priest next in rank to the High Priest, Jer. xxi. 1; xxix. 25; xxxvii. 3-5; lii. 24.
- Zephath, Judg. i. 17.
- Zerah seems to be the Egyptian King Osorkhan, 2 Chr. xiv. 9.
- Zeresh, Esther v. 10.
- Zerubbabel, legally the son of Pedaiiah and of Jeconiah, (Ezra ii. 2. Ezek. xvii. 22), by nature the son of Salathiel, 1 Chr. iii. 18, 19. Hagg. i. 1. Meaning of his name, *ib.* (apparently referred to, Ps. xcvii. 11), 1 Chr. iii. 18, 19. Ezra i. 8; ii. 2: also of Sheshbazzar, his title, *ib.* His genealogy carried no lower than his grandchildren (*Pasey*), 1 Chr. iii. 21. As a restorer, a type of Christ, Vol. iii. p. 297. Ezra ii. 2. Hagg. i. 1. Christ called by his name, Zech. iv. 6, 7. The monarchy in abeyance awaiting Christ's Advent, Ezra ii. 2. Hagg. ii. 21-23. His office that of Tirshatha, Ezra ii. 63. See *Jeshua*. His official relation to the Governor of Syria, Ezra v. 3.
- Zeruah, probably half-sister to David, 1 Chr. ii. 16. Brought forward in the genealogy as of David's house, *ib.*
- Zidon, see *Sidon*.
- Ziklag, its site and history, Josh. xv. 31. 1 Sam. xxvii. 6. 1 Chr. iv. 30.
- Zimri, kings of, Jer. xxv. 25.
- Zin, wilderness of, Num. xiii. 21. Josh. xv. 1. See *Paran*.
- Zion, or *Sion*, its dryness answering to the name, Ps. cxxxiii. 3. The fortified hill, where David's palace was, distinguished from the wider term Jerusalem, Ps. ii. p. 3. A second or lower city, Aera, to the north of Zion, Zeph. i. 10. How said to be "on the sides of the north," Ps. xlviii. 2. Isa. xiv. 13. Her site among the hills (Cant. ii. 8) recognized by exiles and pilgrims, Ps. cxxv. 1, 2. Its spiritual sense, Ps. ii. p. 3. The hill of the Lord, Ps. xxiv. p. 33. To be the throne, the centre, and origin of the Church Universal, Ezek. xvii. 23. The holy mountain, spiritualized, Dan. xi. 41. 45. Zech. viii. 3. The very heart and centre of Israel's religion, Ps. cxxvi. 1. The name fondly repeated in the last book of the Psalter, Ps. cxxviii. 3. The Law of the new dispensation also cometh from Zion, to intimate its harmony with the old, Mic. iv. 1. Thereby uniting Christ's Church with that of the Patriarchs and Prophets, Isa. liv. 1. Hence, from a material city and country, Zion and Palestine come to represent the Universal Church, Isa. lx. 16; lxii. 1, 2. 4. 10. Ezek. xxviii. 25; xxxiv. 13, 14. 26; xxxvi. pp. 238-9; *vr.* 8. 9. 12. Hab. ii. 20. Zech. ii. 4. The whole world a Holy Land, Amos ix. 1-4, 15. Obad. 19. Zech. ii. 6: Zion being every where, Hos. xi. 9. Joel ii. 27. Zech. viii. 19. The pastoral fortress, Mic. iv. 8. Christ rebuilds her, Mic. vii. 11. Zech. ii. 1, 2. She shall exist to the end of the world, Isa. lxii. 10. Thus Christians of all nations are her true citizens, *v.* 12. Jer. xii. 15; xxx. 3; xxxi. 8; xxxiii. 6. 12: and, inasmuch as from her the Church expanded, Zion is the Mother and Centre of Christendom, Isa. xlix. 14. 17; lv. 5; lix. 20. 21; lx. 1. 10. 12; lxi. 11; lxxv. 18; lxxvi. 7-9. 10, 11. Jer. iii. 14. 16. 17. 18; xxxiii. 6. Ezek. xvi. 61; xx. 40. 44; xxxvi. p. 239. Dan. ix. 16. Vol. vi. Part 2. pp. xvi, xvii. Hos. i. 10. 11; iii. 5; xi. 11. Joel iii. 16. 20. Obad. 17. Mic. p. 70; ch. iv. 1; v. 7. Zeph. iii. 11. 18. Zech. viii. 20-22; xii. 2; xiv. 10. The Christian Church the only legitimate Israel of God, Zech. xii. 2. 8. Hedwelleth in the midst of her, Zech. ii. 10. The remnant of Israel (Zeph. iii. 13) are the Apostles and first Jewish preachers of the Gospel, Mic. v. 7: who shall bring the heathen unto Zion, Zech. p. 121; ch. ii. 8, 9, 11. 12; iv. 7. The Jews cling more to her material ruins than to the spiritual fabric, Isa. lxxv. p. 185 (see *Jerusalem*). But shall look rather to their own great sin of the crucifixion (Zech. p. 121) in the days of their general repentance, Ezek. xxiv. 22.
- Ziph, Josh. xv. 55. 1 Sam. xxiii. 14; xxvi. 2. 1 Chr. ii. 42. 2 Chr. xi. 8. Its persevering hatred to David, 1 Sam. xxvi. 1. Another, Josh. xv. 24.
- Ziphron, differently placed by various writers, Num. xxxiv. 9.
- Ziz, ascent of, 2 Chr. xx. 13.
- Zoan, *Tanis* in Egypt, Num. xiii. 22; Isa. xix. 11; xxx. 4. Ezek. xxix. 10; xxx. 14.
- Zoar, or *Bela*, its site and history, Gen. xiii. 10; xix. 23. Isa. xv. 5.
- Zobah, or *Zoba*, located, 2 Sam. viii. 3; x. 6; 1 Chr. xviii. 5.
- Zohelath, the stone of, 1 Kings i. 9.
- Zophar, i. e. *chirper*, the most passionate of Job's friends, Job iv. 1; xi. 1. 2. Put to silence, Job xxvii. 1.
- Zophim, field of, Num. xxiii. 14.
- Zoreah, Josh. xv. 33, or *Zorah*, Josh. xix. 41. Judg. xiii. 2. 2 Chr. xi. 10. The Zareathites, 1 Chr. ii. 53.
- Zünder, cited, Dan. v. 1.
- Zuph, the land of, 1 Sam. ix. 5.

ΔΟΞΑ ΤΩ ΘΕΩ ΤΩ ΔΟΝΤΙ ΤΕΛΟΣ.

WELLESLEY COLLEGE LIBRARY



3 5002 03477 6828

qBS 491 .W6 6

Bible.

The Holy Bible

